



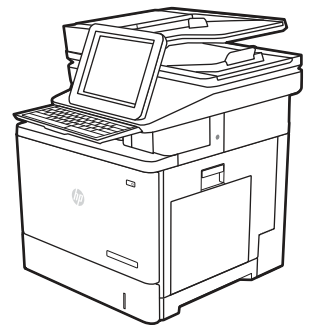
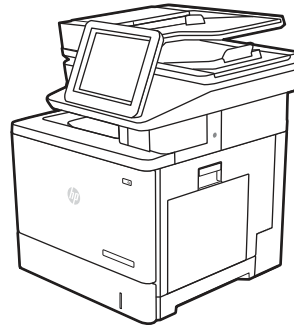
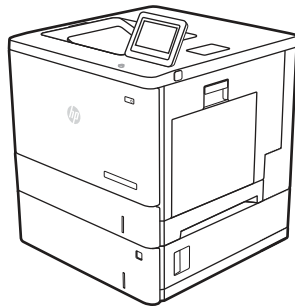
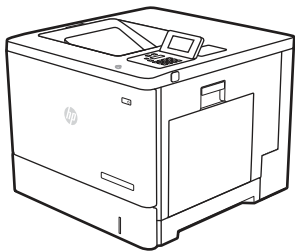
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553, M554, M555

HP Color LaserJet Managed E55040

HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577, MFP M578

HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E57540

Service Manual



www.hp.com/videos/LaserJet
www.hp.com/support/colorlj552
www.hp.com/support/colorlj553
www.hp.com/support/colorlj554

www.hp.com/colorljM577mfp
www.hp.com/colorljM578mfp
www.hp.com/colorljE55040
www.hp.com/colorljE57540mfp



HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553,
M544, M555, MFP M577, MFP M578,
Managed E55040, and Managed MFP E57540
- Service Manual

SUMMARY

Learn about printer theory of operation, how to diagnose and solve printer problems, and how to remove and replace supported printer service parts.

Legal information

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2021 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 10, 3/2022

Revision history

View a list of document revisions.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Table Revision history

Revision number	Revision date	Revision notes
10	3/2022	Updated procedure note for ITB with: "For late production M552/M553/E55040/ E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed." See and Remove the ITB on page 528 , and Install the ITB on page 532
9	9/2021	Updated DC controller (DCC) part numbers for M552, M553, M577, E55040, and E57540. See Removal and replacement: DC controller (DCC) on page 867 and Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1942 .
8	9/2020	Migration into SDL Tridion Docs. RRP/TTS structure changed to combined service manual (CSRM) format. Updated content to include the M554, M555, and MFP M578 printers. Added M554 control panel removal. See Removal and replacement: Control panel (M552dn/M553n/dn/M554) on page 760 . Added M555 control panel removal. See Removal and replacement: Control panel (M553x/M555/E55040) on page 457 . Added M554/M555/M578 toner cartridges part numbers. See Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges on page 384 . Minor edits and inclusions per HP Tech Marketing Engineer comments.

Table Revision history (continued)

Revision number	Revision date	Revision notes
6	6/2020	<p>Updated the error codes and control panel message troubleshooting topic. See Control panel messages document (CPMD) on page 290.</p> <p>Updated the firmware upgrades topic. See Firmware upgrades on page 144.</p> <p>Changes in part numbers/descriptions in the following list are reflected globally throughout the service manual.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hard-disk drive (HDD) kit part, see Removal and replacement: Hard-disk drive (HDD) (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 402. • Dual in-line memory module part, see Removal and replacement: Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 419. • ADF kit (Workflow/Enterprise), see Removal and replacement: Document feeder (M577/M578/E57540) on page 537. • Document feeder rollers, see Removal and replacement: Document feeder rollers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 498. • Tray 2-X paper pickup roller and separation rollers, see Removal and replacement: Tray 2-X paper pickup roller and separation roller assemblies on page 512. • ITB, see Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) on page 527. • Scanner control board, see Removal and replacement: Scanner control board (SCB) (M577/M578/E57540) on page 547. <p>Accessories tables updated. See Supplies and accessories on page 1920.</p>
5	1/2020	<p>Updated Document feeder rollers firmware reset instructions. See Removal and replacement: Document feeder (M577/M578/E57540) on page 537.</p> <p>Updated the ITB (part number) removal topic, see Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) on page 527.</p>

Table Revision history (continued)

Revision number	Revision date	Revision notes
4	7/2019	<p>Updated content to include the managed E55040 and E57540 printers.</p> <p>Updated additional service and support pages, see HP service and support on page vii.</p> <p>Updated the upper cover (part numbers) removal topic. See Removal and replacement: Upper cover (M553/M555/E55040) on page 689.</p> <p>Updated the formatter (M552/M553/E55040) (part numbers) removal topic. See Removal and replacement: Formatter (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 917.</p> <p>Updated the fuser power supply (part numbers) removal topic. See Removal and replacement: Fuser power supply (FPS) on page 951.</p> <p>Updated the low-voltage power supply (part numbers) removal topic. See Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) on page 961.</p> <p>Added the fixed tray guide install topic. See Removal and replacement: Fixed tray guide kit on page 506.</p> <p>Updated the document feeder and scanner whole units part numbers topic. See Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926.</p>

Conventions used in this guide

Learn about the conventions used in this publication.



TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.



NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.



CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.



WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).



[View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.](#)

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select [Services & Support](#) (near the top of the screen).
2. Under [Services Delivery](#), select [Technical Support](#).
3. Select [Technical Documentation](#).

Find information about the following topics

- [Service manuals](#)
- [Service advisories](#)
- [Up-to-date control panel message \(CPMD\) troubleshooting](#)
- [Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues](#)
- [Remove and replace part instructions and videos](#)
- [Install and configure](#)
- [Printer specifications](#)
- [Warranty and regulatory information](#)

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:



[View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.](#)

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)

- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Additional technical support WISE videos

The videos below provide additional ways to access printer information using WISE.



[View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(model number search\).](#)



[View a video of ow to use WISE to find technical support videos \(Product detail page \[PDP\] search\).](#)

Table of contents

1 Printer information, configurations, and specifications	1
Information (document feeder and scanner)	1
Document feeder and scanner front view	1
Specifications (document feeder and scanner).....	2
Technical specifications.....	2
Information (base printer).....	4
Printer front view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models).....	4
Printer back view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models)	5
Printer front view (M577, M578, and E57540 models)	6
Printer back view (M577, M578, and E57540 models).....	7
Configuration (base printer).....	7
Configuration (base printer M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040)	7
Configuration (base printer M577, M578, and E57540).....	9
Specifications (base printer)	10
Technical specifications (M552/M553)	10
Technical specifications (M554/M555)	11
Technical specifications (E55040)	13
Technical specifications (M577)	14
Technical specifications (M578)	16
Technical specifications (E57540)	19
Printer dimensions (SFP)	21
Printer dimensions (MFP).....	24
Printer space requirements	26
Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions	26
Operating-environment range.....	27
Information (input devices).....	27
550-sheet paper feeder front view	27
2 Printer installation and maintenance	28
Document feeder / scanner	28
Clean the pickup rollers and separation pad in the document feeder (MFP).....	28
Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges	29
Base printer.....	31
Formatter accessories.....	31
Supplies	31

Security setup.....	33
Advanced security configuration with the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	35
How to access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS).....	35
Security tab	36
HP Cartridges with JetIntelligence.....	37
Dynamic security.....	38
Printer security features	38
Introduction.....	38
Security statements	38
Assign an administrator password.....	38
IP Security	39
Encryption support: HP High Performance Secure Hard Disks.....	40
Lock the formatter	40
Cleaning	40
Print a cleaning page	40
Automatic cleaning page	41
Clean the Tray 1 rollers	41
Remove the Tray 1 pickup roller.....	42
Remove the Tray 1 separation roller	44
Clean the Tray 1 rollers	47
Clean the Tray 2-X rollers	48
Remove the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly	48
Remove the Tray 2-X separation roller	54
Clean the Tray 2 rollers	55
Input devices	56
Clean the Tray 2-X rollers	56
Remove the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly	57
Remove the Tray 2-X separation roller	62
Clean the Tray 2 rollers	64
3 Theory of operation.....	65
Document feeder / scanner	65
Document feed system.....	65
Sensors in the document feeder	65
Document feeder paper path.....	66
Document feeder simplex operation.....	67
Document feeder e-duplex operation.....	68
Deskew operation	68
Document feeder hinges	69
Scanning and image capture system.....	70
Base printer.....	71
Basic operation.....	71
Sequence of operation.....	73
Formatter-control system	75
Power management.....	76
Power management M552/M553/M554/M555/M577/M578/E55040/E57540.....	76
Power management M577/M578/E55040/E57540	77
Power management E55040/E57540.....	78

Power management M552/M553/M554/M555/M577	79
Printer job language (PJL)	79
Printer management language (PML)	79
Control panel	80
Walk-up USB	80
Wireless	81
Near field communication (NFC)	81
Low end data model (LEDM) overview	81
CPU	81
Input/output (I/O)	81
Memory.....	82
Engine-control system.....	82
DC controller	83
Motors.....	84
Fans.....	85
Solenoids.....	86
Clutches	86
Switches.....	86
Sensors.....	87
Low-voltage power supply	88
Low-voltage power supply voltages description	89
Over-current/over-voltage protection	90
Low-voltage power supply failure detection	90
Low-voltage power supply functions	90
High-voltage power supply	91
High-voltage power supply circuits.....	92
Fuser bias	93
Fuser control.....	93
Fuser circuits.....	93
Fuser control functions	95
Fuser temperature control	95
Fuser heater protection.....	97
Fuser unit life detection	97
Fuser identification	97
Engine laser/scanner system	97
Laser/scanner failure detection	98
Safety.....	99
Image-formation process	99
Step 1: Pre-exposure.....	103
Step 2: Primary charging	103
Step 3: Laser-beam exposure.....	104
Step 4: Development	104
Step 5: Primary transfer.....	105
Step 6: Secondary transfer	105
Step 7: Separation.....	106
Step 8: Fusing	106
Step 10: Drum cleaning.....	107
Step 10: Drum cleaning.....	107
Toner cartridges	108

Design	108
Toner cartridge seal	109
Memory chip	109
Toner level and cartridge life detection	110
HP Cartridges with JetIntelligence.....	110
Dynamic security.....	111
Developing unit engagement and disengagement control	111
Intermediate transfer belt assembly	112
Primary-transfer roller engagement and disengagement control.....	113
ITB unit detection	114
ITB cleaning mechanism	115
Secondary transfer roller functions	116
Color self calibration.....	116
Engine pickup, feed, and delivery system.....	117
Photo sensors and switches	118
Motors, clutches, and solenoids	120
Tray 1 (multipurpose)/Tray 2 (base printer)	122
Duplexing unit (duplex models).....	128
Duplexing reverse and duplex feed control	128
Jam detection/prevention.....	129
Fuser wrapping jam detection	131
Input devices	132
Tray 3-5	132
Paper path.....	133
Tray 3-5 paper feeder controller	133
Tray 3-5 motor control	134
Electrical components, pickup and feed.....	134
Tray 3-5 multiple feed prevention	135
Tray 3-5 tray presence detection.....	135
Tray 3-5 tray lift operation.....	135
Tray 3-5 jam detection.....	136
4 Solve problems.....	139
HP service and support	139
Determine the problem source.....	140
Pre-troubleshooting checklist.....	141
Troubleshooting flowchart	142
Firmware upgrades.....	144
Determine the installed revision of firmware	144
HP Embedded Web Server	146
USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) (SFP)	146
USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) (MFP).....	147
USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) (SFP)	148
USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) (MFP)	148
Comprehensive list of troubleshooting tools	149
Engine test	149
Pre-boot menu options.....	149
Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel	150

Open the Pre-Boot menu from an LCD control panel	151
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel	151
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from an LCD control panel	152
Remote Admin	159
Required software and network connection	159
Connect a remote connection	161
Disconnect a remote connection	165
Advanced configuration with the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	167
Introduction	167
How to access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	167
HP Embedded Web Server features	168
Information tab	169
General tab	170
Other Links list	171
Copy/Print tab	171
Scan/Digital Send tab	171
Fax tab	173
Supplies tab	173
Troubleshooting tab	173
Security tab	174
HP Web Services tab	175
Networking tab	175
Print menu	177
Defeating interlocks	188
LED Diagnostics (formatter)	190
Scanner tests (MFP)	194
Disable cartridge check	196
Print/stop test	197
Individual component diagnostics	198
Paper path test	198
Print/stop test	199
Paper path sensors test	200
Manual sensors test	201
Tray/bin manual sensors test	203
Component test	204
Diagrams	206
Diagrams: Block diagrams	206
Sensors and switches	206
Cross section diagrams	208
Printed circuit assembly (PCA) connector locations	211
Diagrams: External plug and port locations	216
Diagrams: Major component locations	217
Diagrams: General timing chart	221
Diagrams: General circuit diagrams	222
Internal test and information pages	225
Reports menu	229
Settings menu	230
General menu	231
Print menu	236

Manage Supplies menu	247
Networking menu	249
Supplies menu	253
Trays menu	254
Support Tools menu	254
Maintenance menu	254
Backup/Restore menu.....	255
Calibration/Cleaning menu	255
USB Firmware Upgrade menu.....	257
Service menu	257
Troubleshooting menu.....	257
Printer resets	259
Format Disk and Partial Clean functions	261
Troubleshooting power-on or blank control panel problems.....	264
Troubleshooting an unresponsive printer	266
Engine diagnostics	268
Engine test	268
Defeating interlocks.....	269
Control panel troubleshooting	271
Control panel system diagnostics (MFP)	271
Touchscreen diagnostic mode (M553x, M555, M577, M578, and E57540).....	271
Control panel diagnostic flowcharts (M553x, M555, M577, M578, and E57540).....	274
Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)	274
Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone	275
No control panel sound.....	276
Home button is unresponsive.....	277
Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)	278
Open the control panel system diagnostic tests	279
Screen test	281
Touch test.....	285
SoftKey test.....	286
Backlight test	288
Sound test	288
Version.....	289
Control panel messages document (CPMD)	290
How to search for printer documentation.....	290
How to search WISE for printer documentation.....	290
How to search GCSN for printer documentation.....	292
Error-code and control-panel-message troubleshooting overview	294
Error codes (types and structure).....	294
Solve paper handling problems	296
Clear paper jams (SFP)	296
Jam locations	297
Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams.....	297
Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?	297
Clear paper jams in Tray 1 (13.A1)	298
Clear paper jams in Tray 2 (13.A2)	299

Clear paper jams in Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5 (13.A3, 13.A4, 13.A5)	302
Clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area (13.B)	305
Clear paper jams in the output bin (13.E1)	310
Change jam recovery (non-touchscreen)	310
Clear paper jams (MFP)	311
Jam locations	311
Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams	312
Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?	312
Clear paper jams in the document feeder (31.13.yz)	312
Clear paper jams in Tray 1 (13.A1)	315
Clear paper jams in Tray 2 (13.A2)	317
Clear paper jams in Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5 (13.A3, 13.A4, 13.A5)	321
Clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area (13.B)	324
Clear paper jams in the output bin (13.E1)	329
Change jam recovery (touchscreen)	329
Printer feeds incorrect page size	330
Printer pulls from incorrect tray	330
Printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly (duplex models)	331
Paper does not feed from Tray 2-X	331
Output is curled or wrinkled	331
The printer does not pick up paper	332
The printer picks up multiple sheets of paper	333
The document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper (MFP)	333
Paper does not feed automatically	333
Image-quality troubleshooting	334
Print-quality troubleshooting	335
Repetitive image defect ruler	335
Print-quality troubleshooting pages	336
Print the print-quality troubleshooting pages	336
Print the print-quality assessment page	339
Calibrate the printer	341
Calibrate the printer	342
Use manual print modes	342
Print from a different software program	344
Check the paper-type setting for the print job	344
Check the paper type setting on the control panel	344
Check the paper type setting (Windows)	345
Check the paper type setting (macOS)	345
Check toner-cartridge status	345
Step one: Print the Supplies Status Page	345
Step two: Check supplies status	346
Print a cleaning page	346
Check paper and the printing environment	347
Step one: Use paper that meets HP specifications	347
Step two: Check the environment	347
Step three: Set the individual tray alignment	347
Try a different print driver	348
Troubleshoot image defects	348

Copy-quality troubleshooting	356
Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges	357
Vertical lines, bands, or streaks	358
Modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality	362
Light or faint copies (color models).....	363
Performance and connectivity troubleshooting.....	365
Solve fax or email problems.....	365
Solve performance problems.....	366
Factors affecting print performance	366
Print speeds	368
The printer does not print.....	368
The printer prints slowly	369
Solve connectivity problems	369
Solve USB connection problems.....	369
Solve wired network problems	369
Introduction.....	370
Poor physical connection.....	370
The computer is using the incorrect IP address for the printer	370
The computer is unable to communicate with the printer	370
The printer is using incorrect link and duplex settings for the network	371
New software programs might be causing compatibility problems.....	371
The computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly.....	371
The printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect	371
Solve fax or email problems.....	371
5 Removal and replacement	373
HP service and support	373
Order parts, accessories, and supplies	374
Ordering.....	374
Orderable parts	375
Supplies and accessories	375
Customer self-repair parts	378
HP service and support	379
Assembly locations	381
Printer front view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models).....	381
Printer back view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models)	382
Printer front view (M577, M578, and E57540 models)	382
Printer back view (M577, M578, and E57540 models).....	383
Customer self-repair (CSR) A parts and accessories	384
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges	384
Remove the toner cartridges	386
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	387
Install the toner cartridges	388
Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU)	390
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	391
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	392
Install the TCU.....	393

Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	394
Remove the staple cartridge	395
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	396
Install the staple cartridge.....	397
Removal and replacement: Fuser.....	398
1 Remove the fuser	399
2 Unpack the replacement assembly	400
3 Install the fuser	400
4 Reset the supplies counter.....	402
Removal and replacement: Hard-disk drive (HDD) (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040).....	402
1 Remove the formatter cover.....	403
2 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)	404
3 Unpack the replacement assembly	406
4 Install the hard-disk drive (HDD)	407
5 Install the formatter cover	410
6 Reinstall the product firmware	410
Removal and replacement: Hard-disk drive (HDD) (M577/M578/E57540)	411
1 Remove the formatter cover.....	411
2 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)	412
3 Unpack the replacement assembly	415
4 Install the hard-disk drive (HDD)	415
5 Install the formatter cover	418
6 Reinstall the product firmware	418
Removal and replacement: Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)	419
Remove the formatter cover.....	420
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	420
Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM).....	421
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	422
Install the DIMM.....	423
Install the HDD.....	424
Install the formatter cover.....	425
Remove the formatter cover.....	426
Removal and replacement: Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) (M577/M578/E57540).....	427
Remove the formatter cover	428
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	428
Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM).....	429
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	431
Install the DIMM.....	431
Install the HDD.....	433
Install the formatter cover.....	434
Remove the formatter cover.....	434
Removal and replacement: embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC) (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)	435
Remove the formatter cover	436
Remove the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC)	437
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	437
Install the eMMC	438
Install the formatter cover.....	439
Remove the formatter cover.....	439
Reinstall the product firmware	440

Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer roller	441
Remove the secondary transfer roller.....	441
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	443
Install the secondary transfer roller.....	444
Removal and replacement: Universal Serial Bus (USB) cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040).....	445
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	446
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	447
Remove the USB cover	447
Removal and replacement: Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)	448
Remove the HIP cover	449
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	451
Install the HIP cover	452
Removal and replacement: Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover (M577/M578/E57540)	453
Remove the HIP cover	454
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	455
Install the HIP cover	456
Removal and replacement: Control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)	457
1 Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	458
2 Unpack the replacement assembly	462
3 Install the control-panel assembly	462
Removal and replacement: Control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	465
1 Remove the control-panel cover (MFP).....	466
2 Remove the control panel (MFP).....	467
3 Unpack the replacement assembly	470
4 Install the control panel (MFP).....	470
5 Install the control-panel cover (MFP).....	475
Removal and replacement: Keyboard (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	476
Remove the control-panel cover (MFP)	477
Remove the keyboard (MFP)	479
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	481
Install the control panel (MFP)	481
Install the control-panel cover (MFP).....	484
Removal and replacement: White backing (M577/M578/E57540)	485
Remove the white backing (MFP)	486
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	488
Install the white backing (MFP)	489
Removal and replacement: Retention clips (M577/M578/E57540).....	491
Remove the retention clips (MFP)	492
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	494
Install the retention clips (MFP)	494
Removal and replacement: Document feeder rollers (M577/M578/E57540).....	498
Remove the pickup and feed roller assembly	499
Remove the separation roller	500
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	502
Install the separation roller	502
Install the pickup and feed roller assembly	504
Customer self-repair (CSR) B parts and accessories	506
Removal and replacement: Fixed tray guide kit.....	506

Remove Tray 2	507
Install the fixed tray guide	508
Removal and replacement: Tray 2-X paper pickup roller and separation roller assemblies	512
Remove the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly	513
Remove the Tray 2-X separation roller	519
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	520
Install the Tray 2-X separation roller	521
Install the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly	522
Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	527
1 Remove the ITB.....	528
2 Unpack the replacement assembly	532
3 Install the ITB.....	532
Document feeder / scanner	537
Removal and replacement: Document feeder (M577/M578/E57540).....	537
1 Remove the formatter cover.....	538
2 Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)	539
3 Remove the left upper cover (MFP)	540
4 Remove the document feeder (MFP).....	542
5 Unpack the replacement assembly	545
6 Install the white backing (MFP).....	545
7 Reset the firmware counter	547
Removal and replacement: Scanner control board (SCB) (M577/M578/E57540)	547
1 Remove the formatter cover.....	548
2 Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)	549
3 Remove the scanner control board (SCB)	551
4 Unpack the replacement assembly	553
Removal and replacement: Image scanner (M577/M578/E57540).....	553
1 Remove the control-panel cover (MFP).....	554
2 Remove the white backing (MFP).....	555
3 Remove the keyboard (flow models)	557
4 Remove the control panel (MFP)	559
5 Remove the formatter cover.....	561
6 Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	562
7 Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)	564
8 Remove the left upper cover (MFP)	566
9 Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	567
10 Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	568
11 Remove the document feeder (MFP)	570
12 Remove the scanner control board (SCB) (MFP).....	573
13 Remove the image scanner assembly (MFP).....	575
14 Unpack the replacement assembly	577
15 Install the white backing (MFP)	577
Removal and replacement: External panels, covers, and doors (base printer)	579
Removal and replacement: Tray 2	579
Remove Tray 2	580
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	581
Removal and replacement: Stapler cover assembly (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models).....	581
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	582

Unpack the replacement assembly.....	584
Removal and replacement: Right front upper cover (M577/M578/E57540 non-stapler models)	585
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	586
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	587
Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover (M577/M578/E57540).....	587
Remove the formatter cover.....	588
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	589
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	591
Removal and replacement: Left upper cover (M577/M578/E57540).....	591
Remove the formatter cover.....	592
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	593
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	595
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	596
Removal and replacement: Right upper cover (M577/M578/E57540).....	597
Remove the formatter cover.....	598
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	598
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	600
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	601
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	603
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	606
Removal and replacement: Top rear cover (M577/M578/E57540).....	607
Remove the formatter cover.....	608
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	609
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	610
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	612
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	613
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	615
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	618
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	620
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	622
Removal and replacement: Paper feed cover (M577/M578/E57540).....	622
Remove the formatter cover.....	623
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	624
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	626
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	627
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	629
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	630
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	634
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	636
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP).....	637
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	638
Removal and replacement: Top cover (M577/M578/E57540).....	639
Remove the formatter cover.....	640
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	640
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	642
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	644
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	645
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	647
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models).....	650

Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	651
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	653
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP).....	655
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	656
Remove the top cover (MFP)	657
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	659
Removal and replacement: Right door.....	660
Remove the Right Door.....	661
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	665
Removal and replacement: Front door.....	666
Remove Tray 2	666
Remove the front door.....	667
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	670
Removal and replacement: Formatter cover.....	670
Remove the formatter cover	671
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	672
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040).....	672
Remove the formatter cover	673
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	674
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	675
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (M577/M578/E57540)	676
Remove the formatter cover	676
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	677
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	679
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	680
Removal and replacement: Left cover.....	680
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	681
Remove the formatter cover	683
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	684
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	685
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	687
Remove the left cover	687
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	689
Removal and replacement: Upper cover (M553/M555/E55040).....	689
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	690
Remove the HIP cover	691
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	693
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	696
Remove the formatter cover	698
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	699
Remove the left cover	700
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	701
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	703
Removal and replacement: Output bin.....	704
Remove the formatter cover	705
Remove the formatter cover	705
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	706
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	707
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	711

Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	712
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	714
Remove the left cover	714
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	716
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	717
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	719
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	720
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	722
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models).....	725
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	726
Remove the top rear cover (MFP).....	728
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP).....	730
Remove the top cover (MFP)	731
Remove the output bin	733
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	734
Removal and replacement: Right rear cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)	734
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	735
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	736
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	740
Remove the formatter cover.....	741
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	742
Remove the left cover	743
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	745
Remove the right rear cover.....	746
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	747
Removal and replacement: Right rear cover (M577/M578/E57540).....	748
Remove the formatter cover.....	749
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	749
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	751
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	753
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	754
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	757
Remove the right rear cover.....	758
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	759
Removal and replacement: Control panel (M552dn/M553n/dn/M554).....	760
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	761
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	762
Remove the formatter cover.....	763
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	764
Remove the left cover	765
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	767
Remove the control panel	768
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	771
Removal and replacement: Internal parts and assemblies (base printer).....	772
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 pickup and separation rollers.....	772
Remove the Tray 1 pickup roller.....	772
Remove the Tray 1 separation roller	775
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	777

Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer assembly	778
Remove the secondary transfer assembly	779
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	781
Removal and replacement: Near field communication (NFC) PCA (M553x/E55040).....	781
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	782
Remove the control panel (M553x/E55040).....	783
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	787
Remove the formatter cover.....	788
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	789
Remove the left cover	790
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	792
Remove the NFC PCA.....	793
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	794
Removal and replacement: Near field communication (NFC) PCA (M577z)	794
Remove the NFC.....	795
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	798
Removal and replacement: Wireless PCA (M553x/M555/M577z/M578/E55040dw)	798
Remove the formatter cover	799
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	800
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	802
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	803
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	806
Remove the left cover	807
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	809
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	810
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	812
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	813
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	815
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	816
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models).....	820
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	821
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	823
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP).....	824
Remove the top cover (MFP)	825
Remove the output bin	827
Remove the wireless PCA	828
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	829
Removal and replacement: Switch (SW4) PCA	830
Remove the formatter cover	830
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	831
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	833
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	834
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	837
Remove the left cover	838
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	840
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	841
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	843
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	844
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	846

Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	847
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)	851
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	852
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	854
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)	855
Remove the top cover (MFP)	856
Remove the switch (SW4) PCA	858
Unpack the replacement assembly	861
Removal and replacement: Stapler unit (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	862
Remove the staple cartridge	863
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	864
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)	865
Unpack the replacement assembly	866
Removal and replacement: DC controller (DCC)	867
1 Remove the formatter cover	868
2 Remove the rear cover (SFP)	869
3 Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)	870
4 Remove the rear cover (MFP)	872
5 Remove the DC controller	872
6 Unpack the replacement assembly	874
Removal and replacement: Delivery assembly	874
Remove the formatter cover	875
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	876
Remove the USB cover (SFP)	877
Remove the fuser	878
Remove the ITB	879
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)	883
Remove the rear cover (SFP)	887
Remove the left cover	888
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	889
Remove the control panel	891
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)	894
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)	896
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	897
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	898
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	900
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)	904
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	905
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	907
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)	908
Remove the top cover (MFP)	909
Remove the top bracket (MFP)	911
Remove the output bin	913
Remove the delivery assembly	914
Unpack the replacement assembly	917
Removal and replacement: Formatter (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)	917
1 Remove the formatter cover	919
2 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)	920
3 Remove the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC)	921

4 Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM)	921
5 Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)	922
6 Remove the formatter (SFP)	923
7 Unpack the replacement assembly	924
Removal and replacement: Formatter (M577/M578/E57540)	925
1 Remove the formatter cover.....	926
2 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)	927
3 Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	928
4 Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM)	930
5 Remove the formatter (MFP)	931
6 Unpack the replacement assembly	933
Removal and replacement: Formatter case assembly	933
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	934
Remove the formatter cover	936
Remove the formatter (SFP)	937
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	938
Remove the fax PCA (fax models)	939
Remove the formatter (MFP)	941
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	942
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	943
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	945
Remove the left cover	946
Remove the formatter case	948
Removal and replacement: Fuser power supply (FPS)	951
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	952
Remove the formatter cover	953
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	954
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	955
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	957
Remove the left cover	957
Remove the fuser power supply	959
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	961
Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS).....	961
1 Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	962
2 Remove the formatter cover.....	964
3 Remove the formatter (SFP)	965
4 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) (MFP)	966
5 Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	967
6 Remove the formatter (MFP)	969
7 Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	970
8 Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)	971
9 Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	973
10 Remove the left cover.....	974
11 Remove the formatter case.....	976
12 Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	979
13 Unpack the replacement assembly.....	981
Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	981
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	982
Remove the formatter cover	984

Remove the formatter (SFP)	985
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	986
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	987
Remove the formatter (MFP)	989
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	990
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	991
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	993
Remove the left cover	994
Remove the formatter case	996
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	999
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1001
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1002
Removal and replacement: Drum motor 1 (M1)	1003
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1003
Remove the formatter cover.....	1005
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1006
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1007
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1008
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1010
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1011
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1012
Remove the rear cover (MFP)	1014
Remove the left cover	1015
Remove the formatter case	1017
Remove drum motor 1 (M1).....	1020
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1020
Removal and replacement: Power-supply fan (FM1)	1021
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1022
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1022
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1026
Remove the formatter cover.....	1027
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1028
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1029
Remove the rear cover (MFP)	1031
Remove the left cover	1032
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	1034
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	1035
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1037
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	1038
Remove the right rear cover	1040
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1041
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1043
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1044
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1046
Remove the formatter case	1047
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1050
Remove the power supply fan (FM1).....	1052
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1054
Removal and replacement: Developing disengagement motor (M6).....	1054

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	1055
Remove the formatter cover	1056
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1057
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1059
Remove the fax PCA (fax models)	1059
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1061
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1062
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1063
Remove the rear cover (MFP)	1065
Remove the left cover	1066
Remove the formatter case	1068
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1071
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1073
Remove the developing disengagement motor (M6)	1074
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1075
Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly.....	1075
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	1076
Remove the formatter cover	1078
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1079
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1080
Remove the fax PCA (fax models)	1081
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1083
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1084
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1085
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1087
Remove the left cover	1088
Remove the formatter case	1090
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1093
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1095
Remove the auto close assembly	1096
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1097
Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly	1098
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	1098
Remove the formatter cover	1100
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1101
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1102
Remove the fax PCA (fax models)	1103
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1105
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1106
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1107
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1109
Remove the left cover	1110
Remove the formatter case	1112
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1115
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1117
Remove the auto close assembly	1118
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1120
Removal and replacement: Laser/scanner assembly	1120
1 Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1121

2 Remove the toner cartridges.....	1123
3 Remove the formatter cover.....	1124
4 Remove the formatter (SFP).....	1125
5 Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)	1126
6 Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1127
7 Remove the formatter (MFP)	1129
8 Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1130
9 Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)	1131
10 Remove the rear cover (MFP)	1133
11 Remove the left cover.....	1134
12 Remove the formatter case.....	1136
13 Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1139
14 Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1141
15 Remove the laser/scanner assembly.....	1142
16 Unpack the replacement assembly	1146
Removal and replacement: Delivery fan (FM3)	1147
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1147
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1148
Remove Tray 2	1152
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1153
Remove the formatter cover.....	1154
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1155
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1157
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1157
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1159
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1160
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1161
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1163
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1164
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	1166
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	1167
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	1169
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	1172
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	1174
Remove the left cover	1176
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	1177
Remove the formatter case	1179
Remove the delivery fan (FM3).....	1182
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1184
Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply T (HVPST).....	1184
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1185
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1186
Remove Tray 2	1190
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1191
Remove the formatter cover.....	1192
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1193
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1195
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1195
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1197

Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1198
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1199
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1201
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1202
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1204
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1205
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1207
Remove the right upper cover (MFP).....	1210
Remove the top rear cover (MFP).....	1212
Remove the left cover.....	1214
Remove the upper cover (SFP).....	1215
Remove the formatter case.....	1217
Remove the right rear cover.....	1220
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket.....	1221
Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST).....	1222
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1224
Removal and replacement: Drum motor 2 (M2).....	1225
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1226
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1226
Remove Tray 2.....	1230
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1231
Remove the formatter cover.....	1232
Remove the formatter (SFP).....	1233
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1235
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1235
Remove the formatter (MFP).....	1237
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1238
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1239
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1241
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1242
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1244
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1245
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1247
Remove the right upper cover (MFP).....	1250
Remove the top rear cover (MFP).....	1252
Remove the left cover.....	1254
Remove the upper cover (SFP).....	1255
Remove the formatter case.....	1257
Remove the right rear cover.....	1260
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket.....	1261
Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST).....	1262
Remove drum motor 2 (M2).....	1264
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1265
Removal and replacement: Drum motor 3 (M3).....	1265
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1266
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1267
Remove Tray 2.....	1271
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1272
Remove the formatter cover.....	1273

Remove the formatter (SFP)	1274
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1276
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1276
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1278
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1279
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1280
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1282
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1283
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	1285
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	1286
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	1288
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	1291
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	1293
Remove the left cover	1295
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	1296
Remove the formatter case	1298
Remove the right rear cover.....	1301
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1302
Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)	1303
Remove drum motor 3 (M3).....	1305
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1306
Removal and replacement: Fuser motor 3 (M4)	1306
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1307
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1308
Remove Tray 2	1312
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)	1313
Remove the formatter cover.....	1314
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1315
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1317
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1317
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1319
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1320
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1321
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1323
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1324
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)	1326
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)	1327
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)	1329
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	1332
Remove the top rear cover (MFP).....	1334
Remove the left cover	1336
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	1337
Remove the formatter case	1339
Remove the right rear cover.....	1342
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1343
Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)	1344
Remove fuser motor (M4)	1346
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1347
Removal and replacement: Environmental sensor printed circuit assembly (PCA)	1347

Remove the formatter (SFP)	1348
Remove the rear cover (SFP)	1349
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1350
Remove the rear cover (MFP)	1352
Remove the environmental sensor PCA	1353
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1355
Removal and replacement: Fuser drive assembly.....	1355
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1356
Remove the fuser.....	1357
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1358
Remove Tray 2	1362
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1363
Remove the formatter cover	1364
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1365
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1367
Remove the fax PCA (fax models)	1367
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1369
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1370
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1371
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1373
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1374
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1376
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1377
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1379
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models).....	1382
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	1383
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	1385
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP).....	1387
Remove the top cover (MFP)	1388
Remove the top bracket (MFP).....	1390
Remove the left cover	1391
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	1393
Remove the formatter case	1394
Remove the right rear cover.....	1397
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1398
Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)	1399
Remove the fuser drive assembly.....	1401
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1405
Removal and replacement: Duplex drive assembly and motor.....	1406
Remove the fuser.....	1406
Remove the ITB	1407
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1412
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1413
Remove Tray 2	1416
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1417
Remove the formatter cover	1419
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1420
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1421
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1422

Remove the formatter (MFP)	1424
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1425
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1426
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1428
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1429
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1431
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1432
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1434
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models).....	1437
Remove the right upper cover (MFP).....	1438
Remove the top rear cover (MFP).....	1440
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP).....	1442
Remove the top cover (MFP).....	1443
Remove the top bracket (MFP).....	1445
Remove the left cover	1446
Remove the upper cover (SFP).....	1448
Remove the control panel	1449
Remove the output bin	1452
Remove the formatter case	1453
Remove the right rear cover.....	1456
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1457
Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)	1458
Remove the fuser drive assembly.....	1460
Remove the delivery assembly.....	1464
Remove duplex drive assembly and motor	1467
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1468
Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly and motor (M5)	1468
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1469
Remove the formatter cover.....	1471
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1472
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1473
Remove the formatter (SFP).....	1476
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1477
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1478
Remove the formatter (MFP).....	1480
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1481
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1482
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1484
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1485
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1487
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1488
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1490
Remove the right upper cover (MFP).....	1493
Remove the left cover	1495
Remove the upper cover (SFP).....	1497
Remove the right rear cover.....	1498
Remove the formatter case	1499
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1502
Remove the power supply fan (FM1).....	1504

Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1506
Remove the auto close assembly	1507
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1508
Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5).....	1509
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1511
Removal and replacement: Registration assembly.....	1512
Remove the secondary transfer assembly	1512
Remove the ITB	1515
Remove Tray 2	1519
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1520
Remove the formatter cover	1522
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1523
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1524
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1527
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1528
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1529
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1531
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1532
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1533
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1535
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1536
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1538
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1539
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1541
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	1544
Remove the left cover	1546
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	1548
Remove the right rear cover	1549
Remove the formatter case	1550
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1553
Remove the power supply fan (FM1).....	1555
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1557
Remove the auto close assembly	1558
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1559
Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5).....	1560
Remove the registration assembly	1562
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1567
Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly	1568
Remove the secondary transfer assembly	1569
Remove the ITB	1571
Remove Tray 2	1575
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1576
Remove the formatter cover	1578
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1579
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1580
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1583
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1584
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1585
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1587

Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1588
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1589
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1591
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1592
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1594
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1595
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1597
Remove the right upper cover (MFP).....	1600
Remove the left cover.....	1602
Remove the upper cover (SFP).....	1604
Remove the right rear cover.....	1605
Remove the formatter case.....	1606
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).....	1609
Remove the power supply fan (FM1).....	1611
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1613
Remove the auto close assembly.....	1614
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket.....	1615
Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5).....	1616
Remove the registration assembly.....	1618
Remove the paper pickup assembly.....	1623
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1629
Removal and replacement: Density-detect assembly.....	1629
Remove the secondary transfer assembly.....	1630
Remove the ITB.....	1632
Remove Tray 2.....	1637
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1638
Remove the formatter cover.....	1639
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1640
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1641
Remove the formatter (SFP).....	1645
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1646
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1647
Remove the formatter (MFP).....	1649
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1650
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1651
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1653
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1654
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1656
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1657
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1659
Remove the right upper cover (MFP).....	1662
Remove the left cover.....	1664
Remove the upper cover (SFP).....	1666
Remove the right rear cover.....	1667
Remove the formatter case.....	1668
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).....	1671
Remove the power supply fan (FM1).....	1673
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1675
Remove the auto close assembly.....	1676

Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1677
Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5).....	1678
Remove the registration assembly	1680
Remove the paper density-detect assembly	1685
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1687
Removal and replacement: Main-drive assembly	1688
Remove the USB cover (SFP).....	1689
Remove the fuser.....	1689
Remove the ITB	1691
Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040).....	1695
Remove Tray 2	1698
Remove the toner collection unit (TCU).....	1699
Remove the formatter cover	1701
Remove the formatter (SFP)	1702
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1703
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1704
Remove the formatter (MFP)	1706
Remove the rear cover (SFP).....	1707
Remove the rear upper cover (MFP).....	1708
Remove the rear cover (MFP).....	1710
Remove the left upper cover (MFP).....	1711
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models).....	1713
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models).....	1714
Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP).....	1716
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models).....	1719
Remove the right upper cover (MFP)	1720
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)	1722
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP).....	1724
Remove the top cover (MFP)	1725
Remove the top bracket (MFP).....	1727
Remove the left cover	1728
Remove the upper cover (SFP)	1730
Remove the formatter case	1731
Remove the right rear cover.....	1734
Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)	1735
Remove the power supply fan (FM1).....	1737
Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).....	1738
Remove the auto close assembly	1740
Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket	1741
Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)	1742
Remove the fuser drive assembly.....	1744
Remove the main-drive assembly	1748
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1754
Install the main-drive assembly	1755
Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder	1763
Removal and replacement: Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.....	1763
Remove the tray.....	1764
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1765

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1765
Remove the rear cover	1766
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1767
Removal and replacement: Right door (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1768
Remove the rear cover	1769
Remove the right door	1770
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1771
Removal and replacement: Right door hinge bracket (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1772
Remove the rear cover	1772
Remove the right door	1773
Remove the right door hinge bracket	1775
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1776
Removal and replacement: Right-lower cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1776
Remove the rear cover	1777
Remove the right door	1778
Remove the right-lower cover	1780
Remove the right-door link	1781
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1782
Removal and replacement: Right-door link (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1783
Remove the rear cover	1783
Remove the right door	1784
Remove the right-lower cover	1786
Remove the right-door link	1787
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1788
Removal and replacement: Left cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1789
Remove the left cover	1789
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1790
Removal and replacement: OP drawer holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1791
Remove the rear cover	1791
Remove the OP drawer holder.....	1792
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1793
Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1794
Remove the tray.....	1795
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1796
Remove the rear cover	1797
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1798
Remove the auto close assembly	1798
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1800
Removal and replacement: Switch button (SW12) (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1800
Remove the tray.....	1801
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1802
Remove the rear cover	1803
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1804
Remove the switch button (SW12)	1804
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1805
Removal and replacement: Drawer connector holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1806
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1806
Remove the rear cover	1807
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1808

Remove the drawer connector holder	1809
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1810
Removal and replacement: Paper-feeder drive PCA (1x550-sheet paper feeder)	1811
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1811
Remove the rear cover	1812
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1813
Remove the paper-feeder drive PCA.....	1814
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1815
Removal and replacement: Paper-feed assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1815
Remove the tray.....	1816
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1817
Remove the rear cover	1818
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1819
Remove the right door	1820
Remove the drawer connector holder	1822
Remove the paper feed assembly	1823
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1828
Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1829
Remove the tray.....	1829
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1830
Remove the rear cover	1831
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1832
Remove the drawer connector holder	1833
Remove the paper feed assembly	1834
Remove the paper pickup assembly.....	1839
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1841
Removal and replacement: Feeder drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)	1842
Remove the tray.....	1843
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1844
Remove the rear cover	1845
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1846
Remove the right door	1846
Remove the right-lower cover	1848
Remove the drawer connector holder	1849
Remove the feeder drive assembly	1850
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1854
Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)	1855
Remove the tray.....	1856
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).....	1857
Remove the rear cover	1858
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1859
Remove the right door	1859
Remove the right-lower cover	1861
Remove the drawer connector holder	1862
Remove the feeder drive assembly	1863
Remove the lifter drive assembly.....	1867
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1870
Removal and replacement: Accessories.....	1871

Removal and replacement: Fixed tray guide.....	1871
Remove Tray 2	1872
Install the fixed tray guide	1873
Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module (M552/M553).....	1877
Remove the formatter cover.....	1878
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1879
Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)	1880
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1881
Install the trusted platform module (TPM)	1881
Install the HDD.....	1882
Install the formatter cover.....	1883
Remove the formatter cover	1884
Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module (M577/E57540).....	1885
Remove the formatter cover.....	1886
Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).....	1886
Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)	1887
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1888
Install the trusted platform module (TPM)	1889
Install the HDD.....	1890
Install the formatter cover.....	1891
Remove the formatter cover	1891
Removal and replacement: Internal USB ports (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040).....	1892
Remove the formatter cover.....	1893
Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)	1894
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1896
Install the internal USB ports module.....	1897
Install the formatter cover.....	1900
Remove the formatter cover	1901
Removal and replacement: Internal USB ports (M577/M578/E57540)	1902
Remove the formatter cover.....	1902
Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)	1903
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1905
Install the internal USB ports module.....	1905
Install the formatter cover.....	1908
Remove the formatter cover	1909
Removal and replacement: Fax PCA (M577/M578/E57540).....	1910
Remove the formatter cover.....	1910
Remove the fax PCA (fax models).....	1911
Unpack the replacement assembly.....	1913
Install the fax PCA (fax models).....	1913
Install the formatter cover.....	1915
Remove the formatter cover	1915
6 Parts and diagrams	1918
HP service and support	1918
Order parts by authorized service providers	1919
Ordering.....	1919
Orderable parts	1920
Supplies and accessories	1920

Customer self-repair parts	1923
How to use parts lists and diagrams	1924
Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540).....	1926
Parts and diagrams: Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040).....	1928
Parts and diagrams: Covers (M577/M578/E57540)	1931
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 5).....	1934
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 5).....	1937
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 5).....	1939
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 5).....	1942
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 5).....	1946
Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder covers	1948
Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder main body.....	1949
Alphabetical parts list.....	1951
HP service and support	1918
Order parts by authorized service providers	1919
Ordering.....	1919
Orderable parts	1920
Supplies and accessories	1920
Customer self-repair parts	1923
How to use parts lists and diagrams	1924
Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540).....	1926
Parts and diagrams: Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040).....	1928
Parts and diagrams: Covers (M577/M578/E57540)	1931
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 5).....	1934
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 5).....	1937
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 5).....	1939
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 5).....	1942
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 5).....	1946
Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder covers.....	1948
Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder main body.....	1949
Numerical parts list.....	1959
HP service and support	1918
Order parts by authorized service providers	1919
Ordering.....	1919
Orderable parts	1920
Supplies and accessories	1920
Customer self-repair parts	1923
How to use parts lists and diagrams	1924
Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540).....	1926

Parts and diagrams: Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040).....	1928
Parts and diagrams: Covers (M577/M578/E57540)	1931
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 5).....	1934
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 5).....	1937
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 5).....	1939
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 5).....	1942
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 5).....	1946
Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder covers	1948
Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder main body.....	1949
Appendix A	1967
Certificate of Volatility	1967
Glossary of terms.....	1984
Index.....	1993

1 Printer information, configurations, and specifications

Learn about printer configuration and specifications.

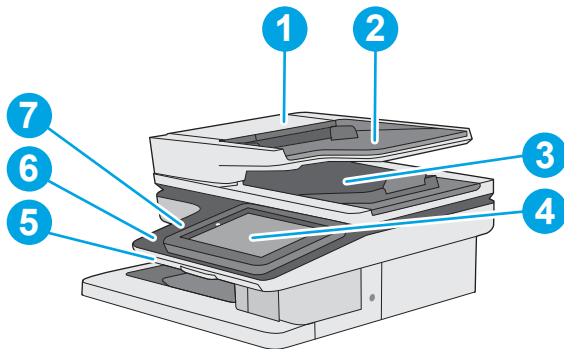
Information (document feeder and scanner)

Learn about the document feeder and scanner.

Document feeder and scanner front view

Learn about the document feeder and scanner components.

Figure 1-1 Document feeder and scanner front view



Item	Description
1	Document-feeder cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Document-feeder input tray
3	Document-feeder output bin
4	Control panel with color touchscreen display
5	Physical keyboard (flow models only)
6	Easy-access USB port (on the side of the control panel)
7	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

Specifications (document feeder and scanner)

Learn about the document feeder and scanner specifications.

Technical specifications

Learn about the document feeder and scanner specifications.

Review the technical specifications for the document feeder and scanner.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp> for current information.

Table 1-1 Copy and scan specifications (M577)

Copy and scan features	M577dn	M577f	M577c (flow)	M577z (flow)
	B5L46A	B5L47A	B5L54A	B5L48A
Copies 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	No	No	Yes	Yes
Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	No	No	Yes	Yes
SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	No	No	Yes	Yes
Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	No	No	Yes	Yes
Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	No	No	Yes	Yes
Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Send documents to SharePoint®	No	No	Yes	Yes

Table 1-2 Copy and scan specifications (M578)

Copy and scan features	M578dn	M578f	M578c (flow)	M578z (flow)
	7ZU85A	7ZU86A	7ZU87A	7ZU88A
Copies 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Send documents to SharePoint®	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Table 1-3 Copy and scan specifications (E57540)

Copy and scan features	E57540dn	E57540c (flow)
	3GY25A	3GY26A
Copies 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	Yes	Yes
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	Yes	Yes

Table 1-3 Copy and scan specifications (E57540) (continued)

Copy and scan features	E57540dn 3GY25A	E57540c (flow) 3GY26A
HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	No	Yes
Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	No	Yes
SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	No	Yes
Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	No	Yes
Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	No	Yes
Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	Yes	Yes
Send documents to SharePoint®	No	Yes

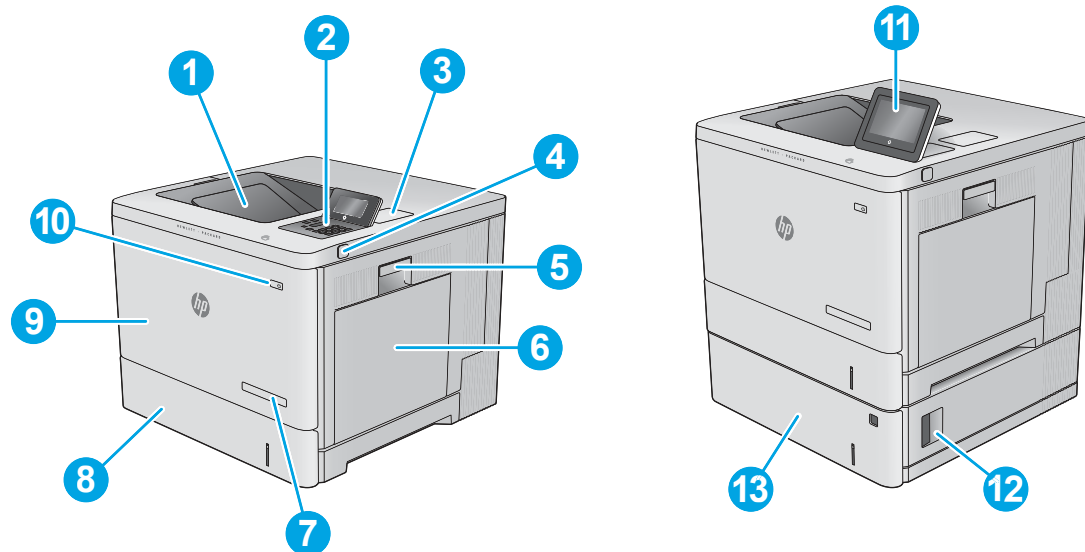
Information (base printer)

Learn about the base printer.

Printer front view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models)

Identify the parts on the front of the printer (SFP).

Figure 1-2 Printer front view (SFP)



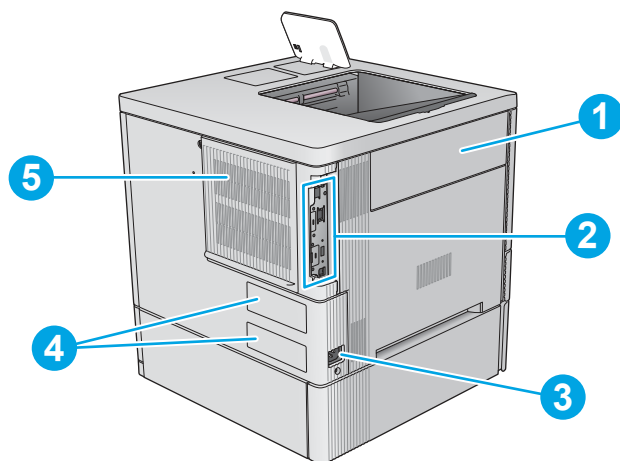
Number	Description
1	Standard output bin
2	4-line LCD control panel with keypad (n and dn models only)
3	Hardware integration pocket for connecting accessory and third-party devices (dn and x models only)
4	Easy-access USB port
5	Right door (access to the fuser and for clearing jams)
6	Tray 1
7	Model name
8	Tray 2
9	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)
10	On/off button
11	Control panel with color touchscreen display (M553x/M555/E55040)
12	Lower-right door for the 550-sheet paper feeder (access for clearing jams)
13	550-sheet paper feeder, Tray 3 (included with the x model, optional for the other models)

NOTE: The M552 model accepts one 550-sheet paper feeder. All other models accept up to three 550-sheet paper feeders.

Printer back view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models)

Identify the parts on the back of the printer (SFP).

Figure 1-3 Printer rear view (SFP)



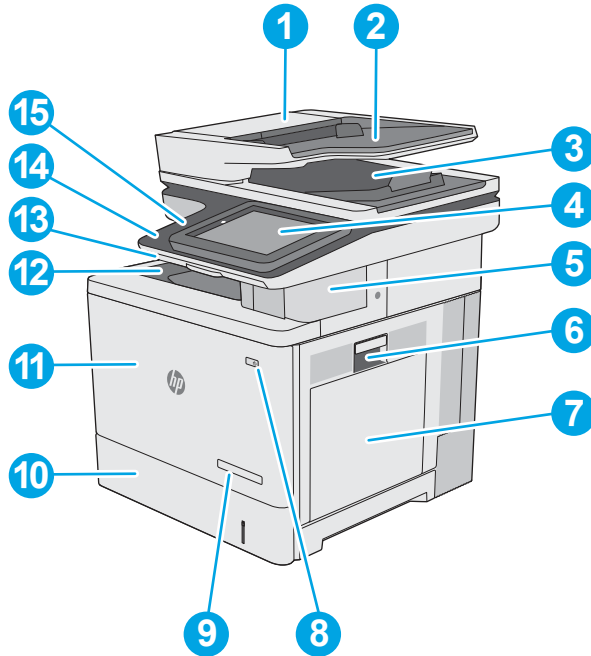
Number	Description
1	Toner-collection-unit door
2	Formatter (contains the interface ports)
3	Power connection
4	Serial number and product number label

Number	Description
5	Formatter cover

Printer front view (M577, M578, and E57540 models)

Identify the parts on the front of the printer (MFP).

Figure 1-4 Printer front view (MFP)

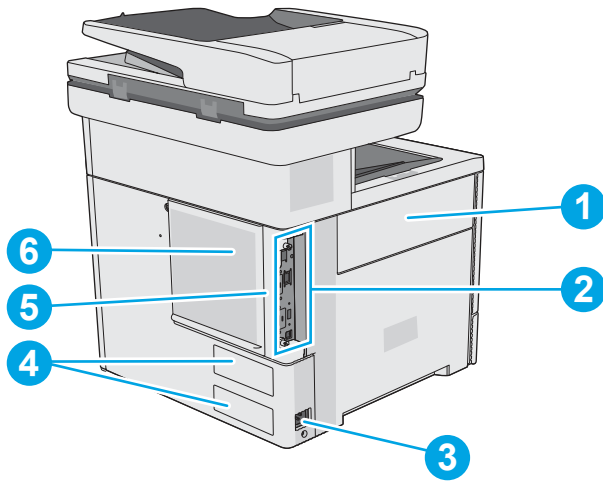


Number	Description
1	Document-feeder cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Document-feeder input tray
3	Document-feeder output bin
4	Control panel with color touchscreen display
5	Convenience stapler (c/f/z models only)
6	Right door (access to the fuser and for clearing jams)
7	Tray 1
8	On/off button
9	Model name
10	Tray 2
11	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)
12	Standard output bin
13	Physical keyboard (c/z models only)
14	Easy-access USB port (on the side of the control panel)
15	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

Printer back view (M577, M578, and E57540 models)

Identify the parts on the back of the printer (MFP).

Figure 1-5 Printer rear view (MFP)



Number	Description
1	Toner-collection-unit door
2	Formatter (contains the interface ports)
3	Power connection
4	Serial number and product number label
5	Slot for a cable-type security lock (on the rear cover of the printer)
6	Formatter cover

Configuration (base printer)

Learn about the base printer configurations.

Configuration (base printer M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040)


Learn about the base printer SFP configurations.

Figure 1-6 HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 printer (touchscreen model shown)




HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040


- 33/35 pages per minute (A4/letter) (M552)
37/40 pages per minute (A4/letter) (M553/E55040)
56/35 pages per minute (A4/letter) (M554)
56/40 pages per minute (A4/letter) (M555)
- FutureSmart 3 firmware (M552/M553)
FutureSmart 4 firmware or FutureSmart 5 firmware (M554/M555/E55040)
- Trusted platform module 2.0 (security)

 **NOTE:** Standard for the M554/M555 printers. Optional for all other printers.


- Automatic duplex printing

 **NOTE:** Not available for the M553n. Standard for all other printers.


- Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)
- Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)
- 4-line graphical display with 10-key keypad (M552/M553n/dn)
- 68.58 mm (2.7 in) color graphical display with 10-key keypad (M554)
- 109.22 mm (4.3 in) color touchscreen display (M553x/M555/E55040)
- 1.0 GB base memory

 **NOTE:** Expandable to 2 GB (M553/M554/M555/E55040). The M552 printer does not support memory expansion.

- HP Secure High-Performance Hard Disk

 **NOTE:** Not available for the M552. Optional for all other printers.

- 4GB eMMC mass storage (M554/M555/E55040)
- 550-sheet paper feeder

 **NOTE:** Standard for the M553x/M555x. Optional for all other printers.

HP Color LaserJet Managed E55040 only

- Managed contractual toner cartridges with lowest possible cost per page

Configuration (base printer M577, M578, and E57540)

Learn about the base printer MFP configurations.

Figure 1-7 HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M577, M578, and E57540 printer



HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M577, M578, and E57540


- 38/40 pages per minute (A4/letter) (M577/E57540)
56/40 pages per minute (A4/letter) (M578)
- FutureSmart 4 firmware or FutureSmart 5 firmware
- Trusted platform module 2.0 (security)

 **NOTE:** Standard for the M578 printer. Optional for all other printers.

- Automatic duplex printing
- Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)
- Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)
- Color touchscreen control panel
- 1.75 GB base memory

 **NOTE:** Expandable to 2.5 GB (M577/E57540). The M578 printer supports a 3.8 GB memory expansion.

- 320 GB Hard Disk Drive (M577/E57540)
500 GB Hard Disk Drive (M578)
- 550-sheet paper feeder (optional accessory)

 **NOTE:** Up to three 550-sheet paper feeders are supported.

HP Color LaserJet Managed E57540 only

- Managed contractual toner cartridges with lowest possible cost per page

Specifications (base printer)

Learn about the base printer specifications.

Technical specifications (M552/M553)

Review the technical specifications for the M552/M553 printers.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- M552dn - B5L23A
- M553n - B5L24A
- M553dn - B5L25A
- M553x - B5L26A

Table 1-4 Paper handling specifications (M552/M553)

Paper handling features	M552dn	M553n	M553dn	M553x
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tray 3 (1 x 550-sheet paper feeder)	Optional	Optional	Optional	✓
NOTE: The M552 model accepts one optional feeder. All other models support up to three optional feeders.				
Printer stand	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Automatic duplex printing	✓	Not supported	✓	✓

Table 1-5 Connectivity specifications (M552/M553)

Connectivity features	M552dn	M553n	M553dn	M553x
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hi-speed USB 2.0	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-5 Connectivity specifications (M552/M553) (continued)

Connectivity features	M552dn	M553n	M553dn	M553x
Walk-up USB port	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	Not supported	✓	✓
HP Internal USB Ports	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/wireless accessory for printing from mobile devices	Optional	Optional	Optional	Not supported
Integrated HP near-field communication (NFC) and Wi-Fi Direct functionality for printing from mobile devices	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	✓
HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server accessory for wireless connectivity	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional

Table 1-6 Print specifications (M552/M553)

Print features	M552dn	M553n	M553dn	M553x
Prints 33 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 36 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Prints 37 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	Not supported	✓	✓	✓
Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	Not supported	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-7 Other specifications (M552/M553)

Other features	M552dn	M553n	M553dn	M553x
1.0 GB base memory	✓	✓	✓	✓
NOTE: Expandable to 2 GB (M553). The M552 printer does not support memory expansion.				
HP Secure High-performance Hard Disk	Not supported	Optional	Optional	Optional
109.22 mm (4.3 in) color touchscreen control panel	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	✓
4-line graphical display with 10-key keypad	✓	✓	✓	Not supported
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional

Technical specifications (M554/M555)

Review the technical specifications for the M554/M555 printers.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- M554dn - 7ZU81A
- M555dn - 7ZU78A
- M555x - 7ZU79A

Table 1-8 Paper handling specifications (M554/M555)

Paper handling features	M554dn	M555dn	M555x
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓
Tray 3 (1 x 550-sheet paper feeder)	Optional	Optional	✓
NOTE: Up to three optional feeders are supported.			
Printer stand	Optional	Optional	Optional
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-9 Connectivity specifications (M554/M555)

Connectivity features	M554dn	M555dn	M555x
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓	✓
Hi-speed USB 2.0	✓	✓	✓
Walk-up USB port	✓	✓	✓
Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓	✓
HP Internal USB Ports	Optional	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect LAN Accessory	Optional	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless Accessory for printing from mobile devices	Optional	Optional	Optional
NOTE: For use in the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) or the rear host USB port. The HP Jetdirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless Accessory requires the HP Internal USB ports accessory.			

Table 1-10 Print specifications (M554/M555)

Print features	M554dn	M555dn	M555x
Prints 56 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 35 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	Not supported	Not supported
Prints 56 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	Not supported	✓	✓
Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	✓	✓	✓
Store jobs in the printer memory to print later or print privately	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-11 Other specifications (M552/M553)

Other features	M554dn	M555dn	M555x
1.0 GB base memory	✓	✓	✓
NOTE: Expandable to 2 GB.			
HP Secure High Performance Hard Disk Drive FIPS Drive	Optional	Optional	Optional
4 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	✓	✓	✓
109.22 mm (4.3 in) color touchscreen control panel	Not supported	Not supported	✓
68.58 mm (2.7 in) color graphics display with 10-key	✓	✓	Not supported
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	✓	✓	✓

Technical specifications (E55040)

Review the technical specifications for the E55040 printer.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- E55040 - 3GX98A

Table 1-12 Paper handling specifications (E55040)

Paper handling features	E55040dw
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓
Tray 3 (1 x 550-sheet paper feeder)	✓
NOTE: Up to three optional feeders are supported.	
Printer stand	Optional
Automatic duplex printing	✓

Table 1-13 Connectivity specifications (E55040)

Connectivity features	E55040dw
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓
Hi-speed USB 2.0	✓
Walk-up USB port	✓
Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓
HP Internal USB Ports	Optional

Table 1-13 Connectivity specifications (E55040) (continued)

Connectivity features	E55040dw
HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/Wireless Accessory for printing from mobile devices	Optional
NOTE: For use in the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) or the rear host USB port. The HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/Wireless Accessory requires the HP Internal USB ports accessory. If the J8030A is connected using the rear host USB, the HIP is not used.	
Integrated HP near-field communication (NFC) and Wi-Fi Direct functionality for printing from mobile devices	✓
HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server accessory for wireless connectivity	Optional

Table 1-14 Print specifications (E55040)

Print features	E55040dw
Prints 37 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	✓
Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	✓
Store jobs in the printer memory to print later or print privately	✓

Table 1-15 Other specifications (E55040)

Other features	E55040dw
1.0 GB base memory	✓
NOTE: Expandable to 2 GB.	
109.22 mm (4.3 in) color touchscreen control panel	✓
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	Optional

Technical specifications (M577)

Review the technical specifications for the M577 printer.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp> for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- M577dn - B5L46A
- M577f - B5L47A
- M577c flow - B5L54A
- M577z flow - B5L48A

Table 1-16 Paper handling specifications (M577)

Paper handling features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-16 Paper handling specifications (M577) (continued)

Paper handling features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tray 3 (1 x 550-sheet paper feeder)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
NOTE: Up to three optional feeders are supported.				
Printer stand	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓	✓	✓
Convenience stapler	Not supported	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-17 Connectivity specifications (M577)

Connectivity features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hi-speed USB 2.0	✓	✓	✓	✓
Walk-up USB port	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓	✓	✓
HP Internal USB Ports	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/wireless accessory for printing from mobile devices	Optional	Optional	Optional	Not supported
Integrated HP near-field communication (NFC) and Wi-Fi Direct functionality for printing from mobile devices	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	✓
HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server accessory for wireless connectivity	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional

Table 1-18 Print specifications (M577)

Print features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
Prints 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓	✓	✓
Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Store jobs in the printer memory to print later or print privately	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-19 Copy and scan specifications (M577)

Print features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
Copies 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-19 Copy and scan specifications (M577) (continued)

Print features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	✓	✓	✓	✓
HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓
Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓
SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓
Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓
Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓

Table 1-20 Digital Send specifications (M577)

Print features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	✓	✓	✓	✓
Send documents to SharePoint®	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓

Table 1-21 Other specifications (M577)

Other features	M577dn	M577f	M577c flow	M577z flow
1.75 GB base memory	✓	✓	✓	✓
NOTE: Expandable to 2.5 GB.				
320 GB Hard Disk Drive	✓	✓	✓	✓
Color touchscreen control panel	✓	✓	✓	✓
Physical keyboard	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Fax	Optional	✓	✓	✓

Technical specifications (M578)

Review the technical specifications for the M578 printer.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp> for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- M578dn - 7ZU85A
- M578f - 7ZU86A
- M578c - 7ZU87A
- M578z - 7ZU88A

Table 1-22 Paper handling specifications (M578)

Paper handling features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tray 3 (1 x 550-sheet paper feeder)	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
NOTE: Up to three optional feeders are supported.				
Printer stand	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓	✓	✓
Convenience stapler	Not supported	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-23 Connectivity specifications (M578)

Connectivity features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hi-speed USB 2.0	✓	✓	✓	✓
Walk-up USB port	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓	✓	✓
HP Internal USB Ports	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect LAN Accessory	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless Accessory for printing from mobile devices	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
NOTE: For use in the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) or the rear host USB port. The HP Jetdirect 3100w NFC/Wireless Accessory requires the HP Internal USB ports accessory. If the J8030A is connected using the rear host USB, the HIP is not used.				

Table 1-24 Print specifications (M578)

Print features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
Prints 56 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-24 Print specifications (M578) (continued)

Print features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Store jobs in the printer memory to print later or print privately	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-25 Copy and scan specifications (M578)

Print features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
Copies 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓	✓	✓
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	✓	✓	✓	✓
HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	✓	✓	✓	✓
Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	✓	✓	✓	✓
SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	✓	✓	✓	✓
Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	✓	✓	✓	✓
Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-26 Digital Send specifications (M578)

Print features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	✓	✓	✓	✓
Send documents to SharePoint®	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓

Table 1-27 Other specifications (M578)

Other features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
1.75 GB base memory	✓	✓	✓	✓
NOTE: Expandable to 3.8 GB.				
500 GB Hard Disk Drive	✓	✓	✓	✓
Color touchscreen control panel	✓	✓	✓	✓
Physical keyboard	Not supported	Not supported	✓	✓

Table 1-27 Other specifications (M578) (continued)

Other features	M578dn	M578f	M578c	M578z
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	Optional	Optional	Optional	Optional
Fax	Optional	✓	✓	✓

Technical specifications (E57540)

Review the technical specifications for the E57540 printer.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp> for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- E57540dn - 3GY25A
- E57540c - 3GY26A

Table 1-28 Paper handling specifications (E57540)

Paper handling features	E57540dn	E57540c
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓
Tray 3 (1 x 550-sheet paper feeder)	Optional	Optional
NOTE: Up to three optional feeders are supported.		
Printer stand	Optional	Optional
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓
Convenience stapler	Not supported	✓

Table 1-29 Connectivity specifications (E57540)

Connectivity features	E57540dn	E57540c
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓
Hi-speed USB 2.0	✓	✓
Walk-up USB port	✓	✓
Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓
HP Internal USB Ports	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/Wireless Accessory for printing from mobile devices	Optional	Optional
HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server accessory for wireless connectivity	Optional	Optional

Table 1-30 Print specifications (E57540)

Print features	E57540dn	E57540c
Prints 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓
Easy-access USB printing (no computer required)	✓	✓
Store jobs in the printer memory to print later or print privately	✓	✓

Table 1-31 Copy and scan specifications (E57540)

Print features	E57540dn	E57540c
Copies 38 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 40 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	✓	✓
HP EveryPage Technologies including ultrasonic multi-feed detection	Not supported	✓
Embedded optical character recognition (OCR) provides the ability to convert printed pages into text that can be edited or searched using a computer	Not supported	✓
SMART Label feature provides paper-edge detection for automatic page cropping	Not supported	✓
Automatic page orientation for pages that have at least 100 characters of text	Not supported	✓
Automatic tone adjustment sets contrast, brightness, and background removal for each page	Not supported	✓

Table 1-32 Digital Send specifications (E57540)

Print features	E57540dn	E57540c
Send documents to E-mail, USB, and shared folders on a network	✓	✓
Send documents to SharePoint®	Not supported	✓

Table 1-33 Other specifications (E57540)

Other features	E57540dn	E57540c
1.75 GB base memory	✓	✓
NOTE: Expandable to 2.5 GB.		
320 GB Hard Disk Drive	✓	✓
Color touchscreen control panel	✓	✓
Physical keyboard	Not supported	✓
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	Optional	Optional
Fax	Optional	✓

Printer dimensions (SFP)

Make sure your printer environment is large enough to accommodate the printer.


 **NOTE:** Values subject to change. For the most current information, go to www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp>

Figure 1-8 Dimensions for the M552/M553n/dn/M554/M555dn printers

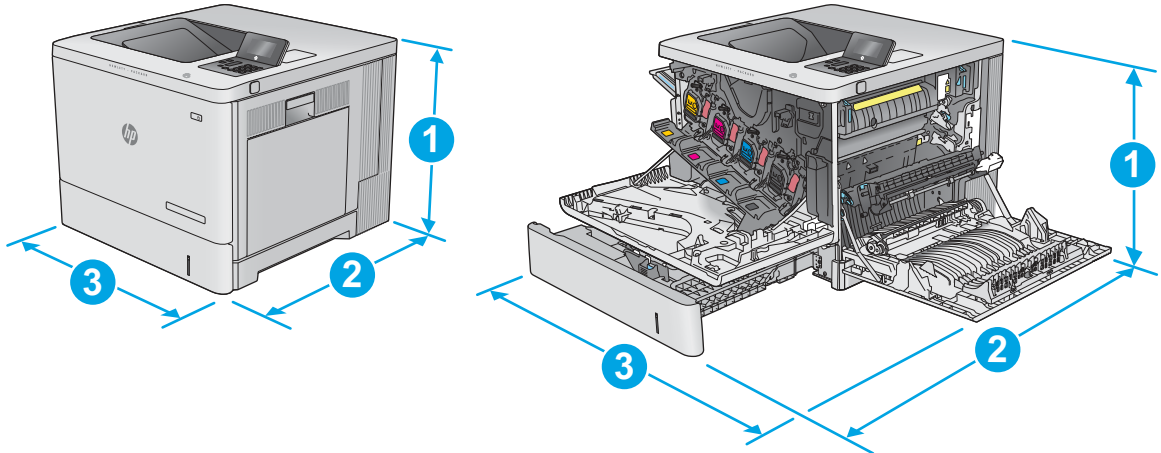


Table 1-34 Dimensions for the M552/M553n/dn/M554/M555dn printers

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Height	399 mm (15.7 in)	399 mm (15.7 in)
2. Depth	479 mm (18.9 in)	771 mm (30.4 in)
3. Width	458 mm (18.0 in)	826 mm (32.5 in)
Weight	27 kg (59.5 lb) (n models) 27.5 kg (60.6 lb) (dn models)	18.9 kg (41.67 lb)

Figure 1-9 Dimensions for the M553x/M555x/E55040 printers

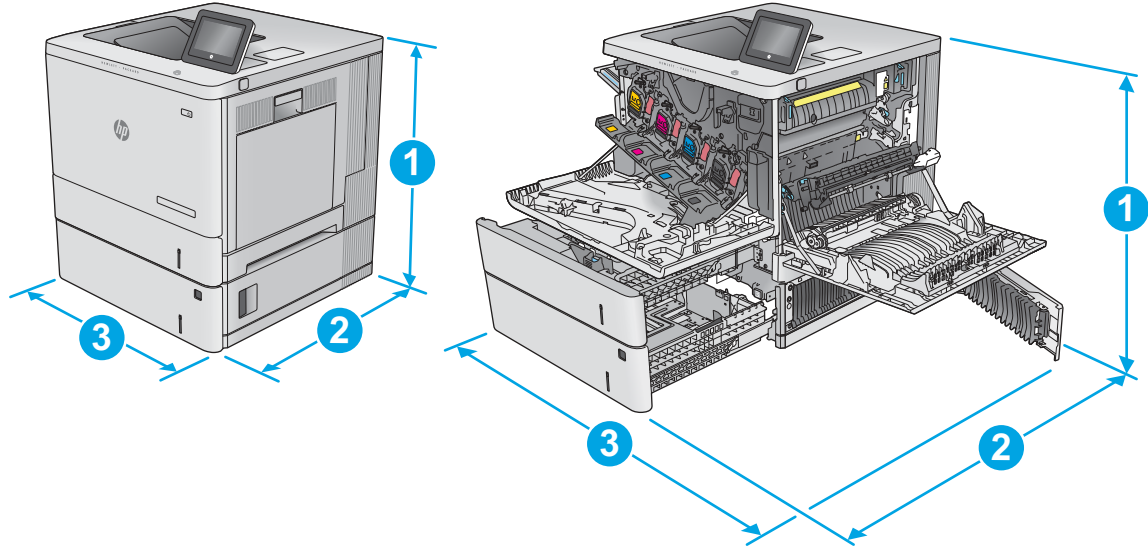


Table 1-35 Dimensions for the M553x/M555x/E55040 printers

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Height	581 mm (22.9 in)	581 mm (22.9 in)
2. Depth	479 mm (18.9 in)	771 mm (30.4 in)
3. Width	458 mm (18.0 in)	853 mm (33.6 in)
Weight	33.4 kg (73.6 lb)	33.4 kg (73.6 lb)

Figure 1-10 Dimensions for the M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040 printers with one 550-sheet tray and stand

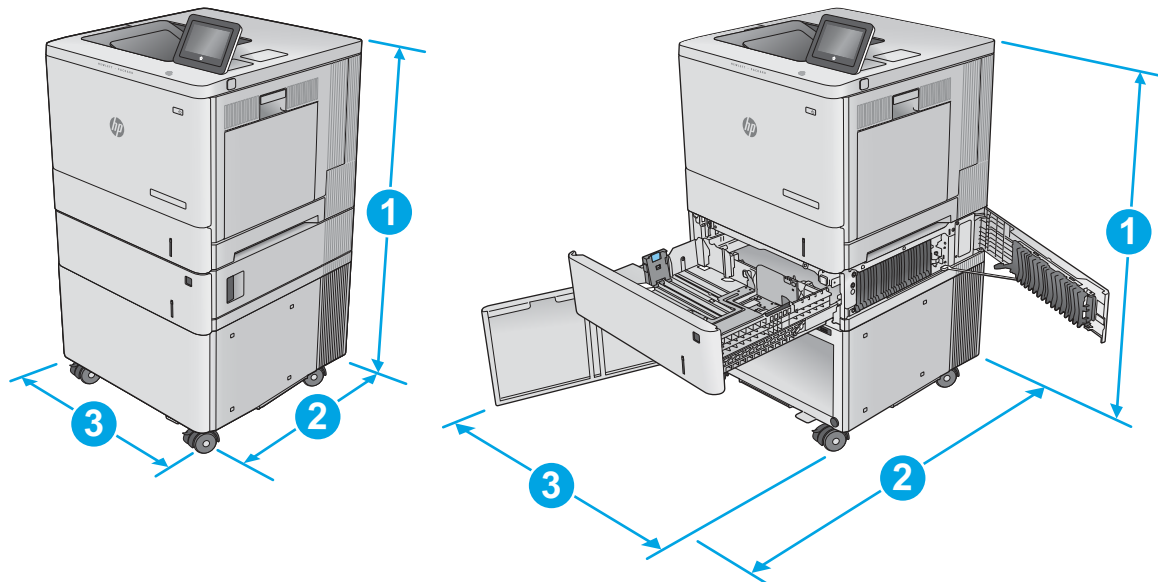


Table 1-36 Dimensions for the M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040 printers with one 550-sheet tray and stand

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Height	876 mm (34.5 in)	876 mm (34.5 in)
2. Depth	479 mm (18.9 in)	900 mm (35.4 in)

Table 1-36 Dimensions for the M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040 printers with one 550-sheet tray and stand (continued)

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
3.Width	458 mm (18.0 in)	853 mm (33.6 in)
Weight	51.1 kg (112.7 lb)	51.1 kg (112.7 lb)

Figure 1-11 Dimensions for the 550-sheet tray

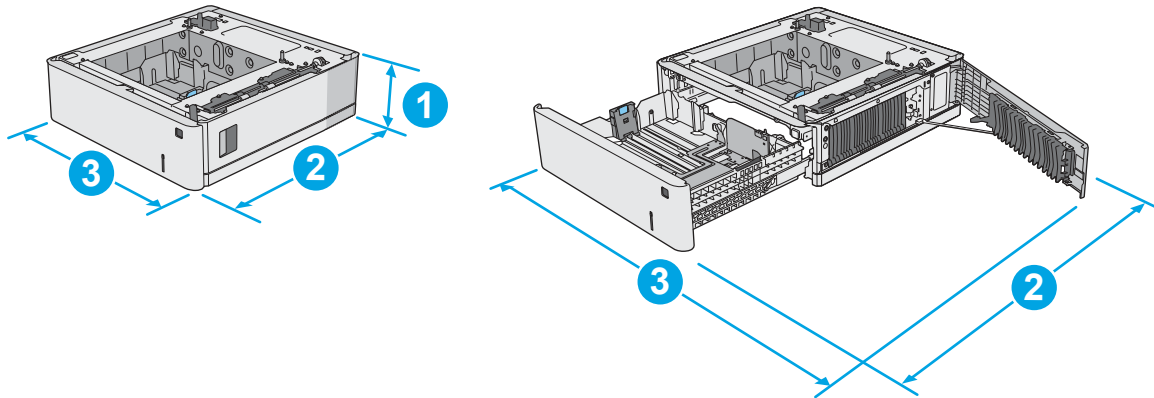


Table 1-37 Dimensions for the 550-sheet tray

Measurement	Tray fully closed	Tray fully opened
1. Height	130 mm (5.1 in)	130 mm (5.1 in)
2. Depth	465 mm (18.3 in)	768 mm (30.2 in)
3. Width	458 mm (18.0 in) (lower-right door open)	853 mm (33.6 in) (lower-right door closed)
Weight	5.8 kg (12.8 lb)	5.8 kg (12.8 lb)

Figure 1-12 Dimensions for the printer stand

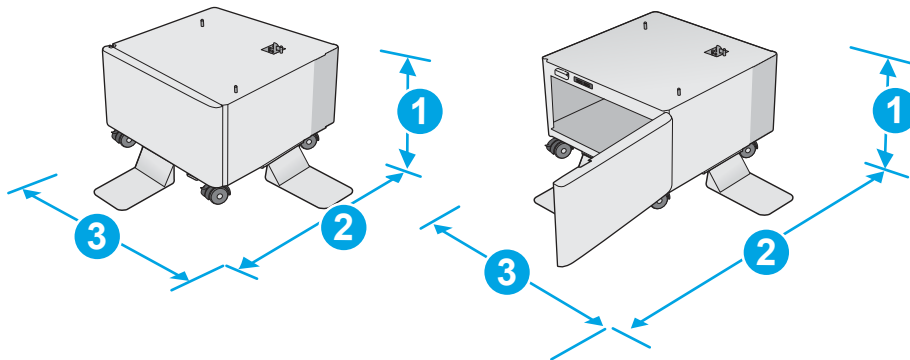


Table 1-38 Dimensions for the printer stand

Measurement	Stand fully closed	Stand fully opened
1. Height	295 mm (11.6 in)	295 mm (11.6 in)
2. Depth	869 mm (34.2 in)	1113 mm (43.8 in)
3. Width	884 mm (34.8 in)	884 mm (34.8 in)
Weight	17.7 kg (39 lb)	17.7 kg (39 lb)

Printer dimensions (MFP)

Make sure your printer environment is large enough to accommodate the printer.


 **NOTE:** Values subject to change. For the most current information, go to www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp>

Figure 1-13 Dimensions for the M577/M578/E57540 printers

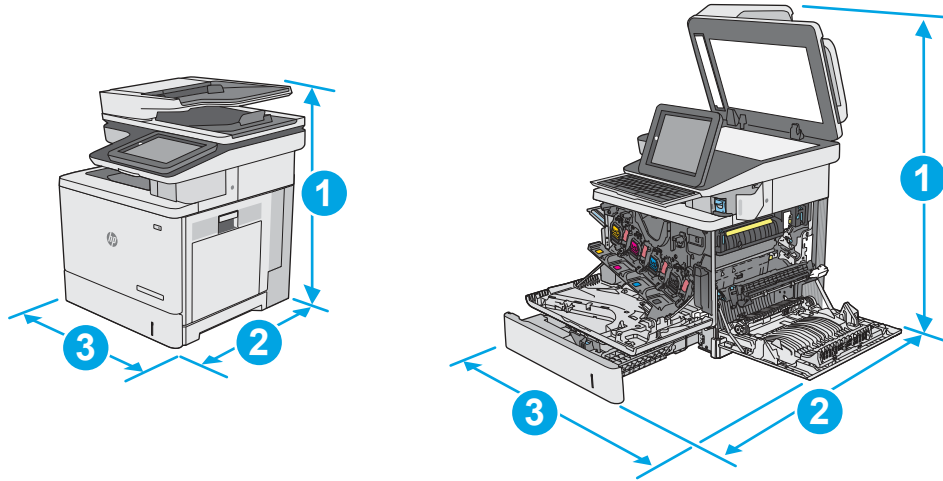


Table 1-39 Dimensions for the M577/M578/E57540 printers

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Height	583 mm (23.0 in)	837 mm (33.0 in)
2. Depth	504 mm (19.8 in)	853 mm (33.6 in)
3. Width	482 mm (19.0 in)	803 mm (31.6 in)
Weight	38.1 kg (84.0 lb) (dn models)	38.1 kg (84.0 lb) (dn models)
	38.3 kg (84.5 lb) (f models)	38.3 kg (84.5 lb) (f models)
	38.6 kg (85.0 lb) (c/z models)	38.6 kg (85.0 lb) (c/z models)

Figure 1-14 Dimensions for the M577/M578/E57540 printers with one 550-sheet tray and stand

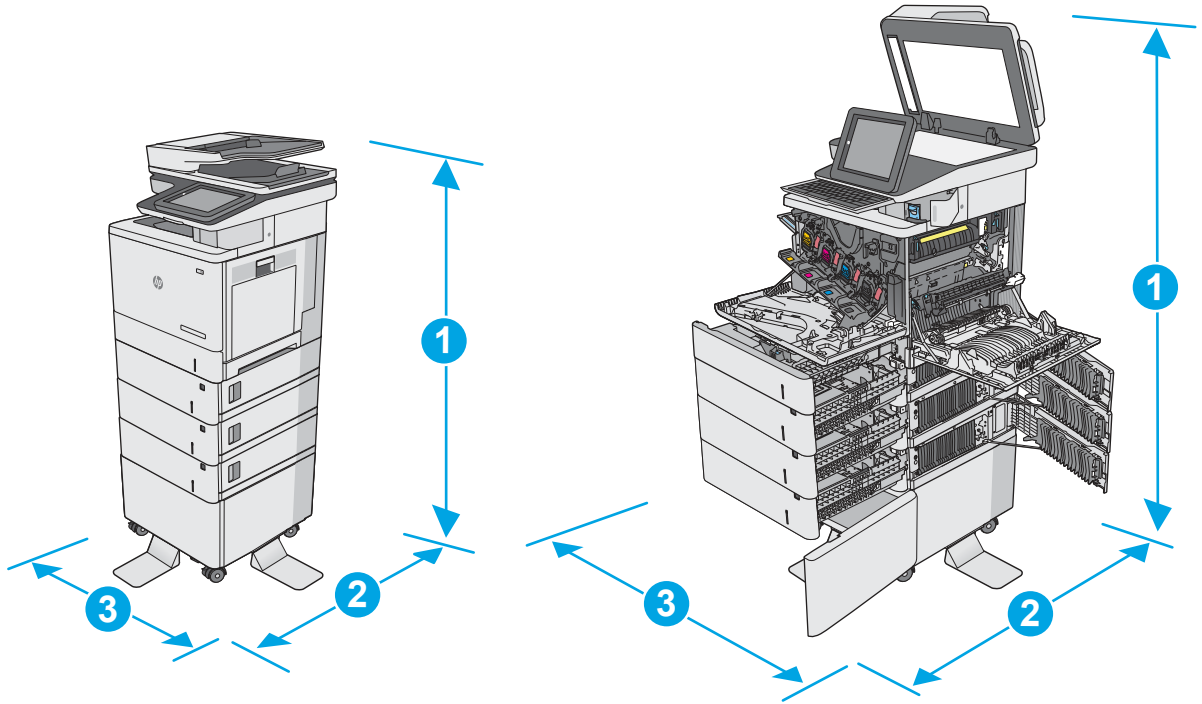


Table 1-40 Dimensions for the M577/M578/E57540 printers with one 550-sheet tray and stand

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Height	1268 mm (49.9 in)	1522 mm (59.9 in)
2. Depth	869 mm (34.2 in)	1113 mm (43.8 in)
3. Width	884 mm (34.8 in)	853 mm (33.6 in)
Weight	73.2 kg (161.4 lb) (dn models)	73.2 kg (161.4 lb) (dn models)
	73.4 kg (161.8 lb) (f models)	73.4 kg (161.8 lb) (f models)
	73.7 kg (162.5 lb) (c/z models)	73.7 kg (162.5 lb) (c/z models)

Figure 1-15 Dimensions for the 550-sheet tray

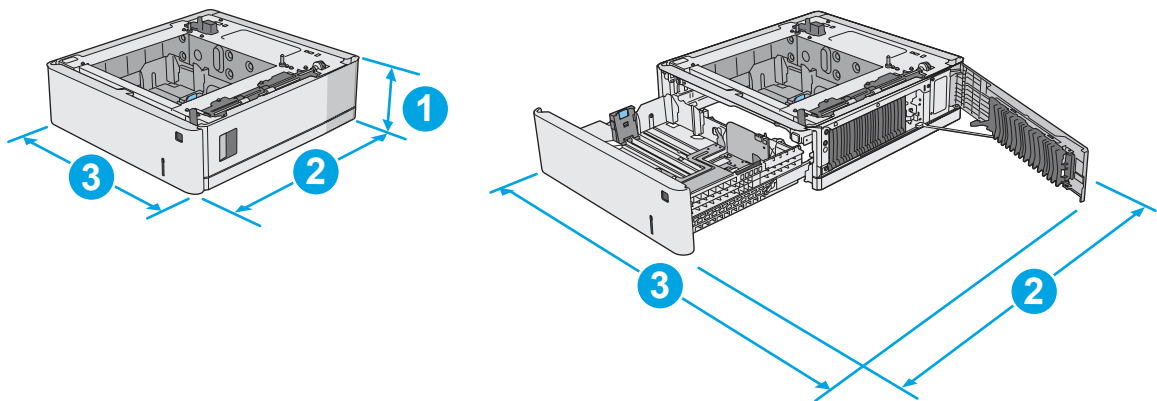


Table 1-41 Dimensions for the 550-sheet tray

Measurement	Tray fully closed	Tray fully opened
1. Height	130 mm (5.1 in)	130 mm (5.1 in)
2. Depth	465 mm (18.3 in)	768 mm (30.2 in)
3. Width	458 mm (18.0 in) (lower-right door open)	853 mm (33.6 in) (lower-right door closed)
Weight	5.8 kg (12.8 lb)	5.8 kg (12.8 lb)

Figure 1-16 Dimensions for the printer stand

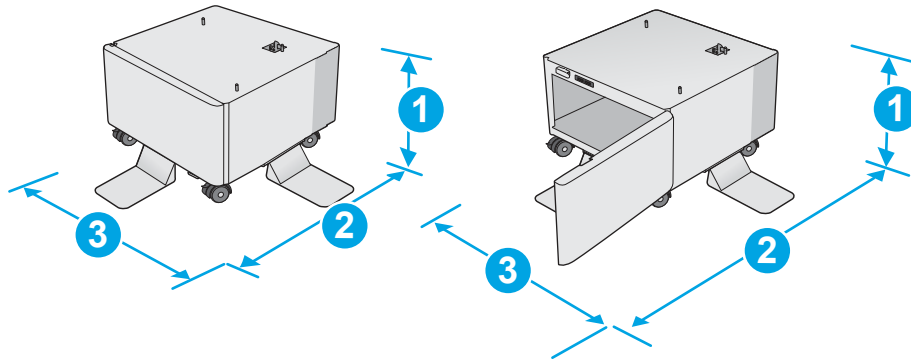


Table 1-42 Dimensions for the printer stand

Measurement	Stand fully closed	Stand fully opened
1. Height	295 mm (11.6 in)	295 mm (11.6 in)
2. Depth	869 mm (34.2 in)	1113 mm (43.8 in)
3. Width	884 mm (34.8 in)	884 mm (34.8 in)
Weight	17.7 kg (39 lb)	17.7 kg (39 lb)

Printer space requirements

Learn about the printer space requirements

HP recommends that 30 mm (1.81 in) be added to the printer dimensions to make sure there is sufficient space to open doors and covers, and to provide proper ventilation. See [Printer dimensions \(SFP\) on page 21](#) and/or [Printer dimensions \(MFP\) on page 24](#).

Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain power specifications.

See www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp> for current information.

CAUTION: Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

Operating-environment range

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain specifications.

Table 1-43 Operating-environment specifications

Environment	Recommended	Storage
Temperature	17° to 25°C (62.6° to 77°F)	15° to 30°C (59° to 86°F)
Relative humidity	30% to 70% relative humidity (RH)	10% to 80% RH

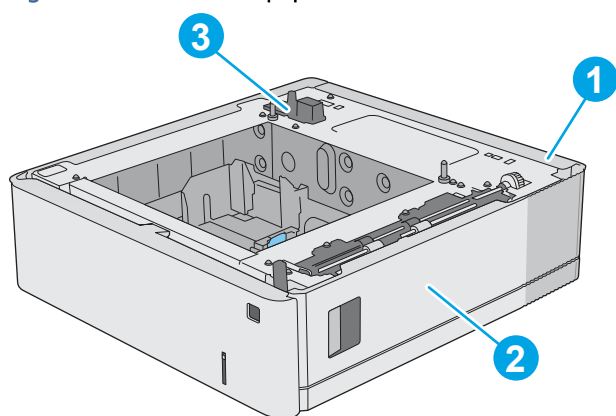
Information (input devices)

Learn about the printer input devices.

550-sheet paper feeder front view

Identify the parts on the 550-sheet paper feeder.

Figure 1-17 550-sheet paper feeder front view



Number	Description
1	550-sheet paper feeder (whole unit)
2	Tray 3/4/5 (cassette)
3	Drawer connector

2 Printer installation and maintenance

Learn about printer installation and maintenance.

Document feeder / scanner

Learn about the printer document feeder and scanner installation and maintenance.

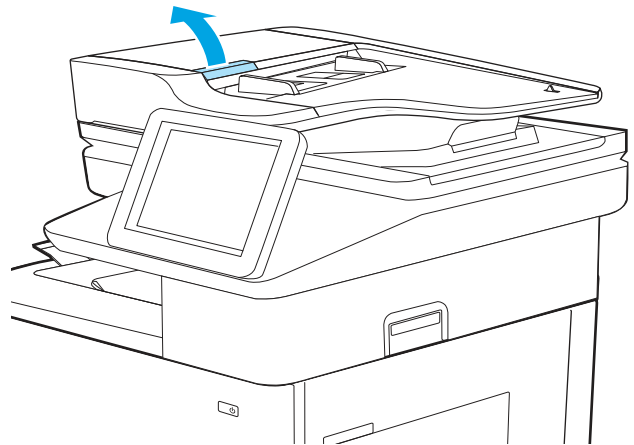
Clean the pickup rollers and separation pad in the document feeder (MFP)

Learn about cleaning the document feeder rollers and pads.

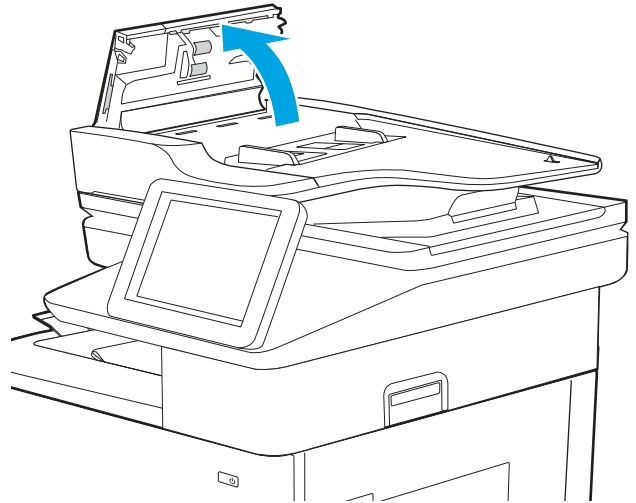
Over time, specks of debris might collect on the document feeder rollers and pads which can affect performance.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a typical MFP printer. However, the procedure is correct for all MFP printers.

1. Lift the document-feeder latch.

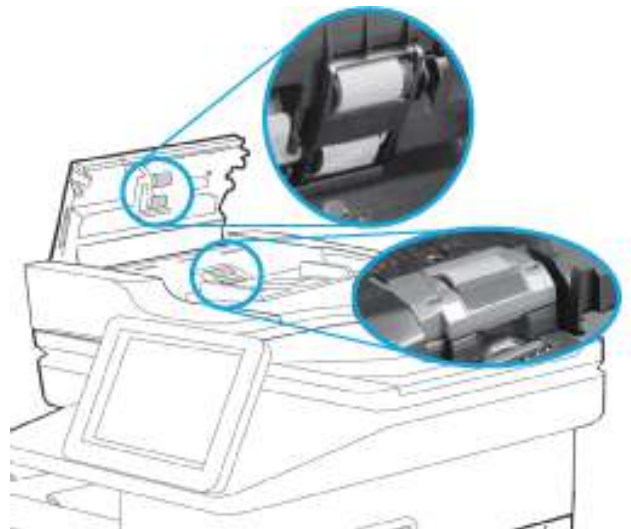


2. Open the document-feeder cover.



3. Remove any visible lint or dust from each of the feed rollers and the separation pad using compressed air or a clean lint-free cloth moistened with warm water.

 **NOTE:** Lift up the roller assembly to access and clean the second roller.



4. Close the document-feeder cover.

Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges

Learn about solving copy-quality debris problems.

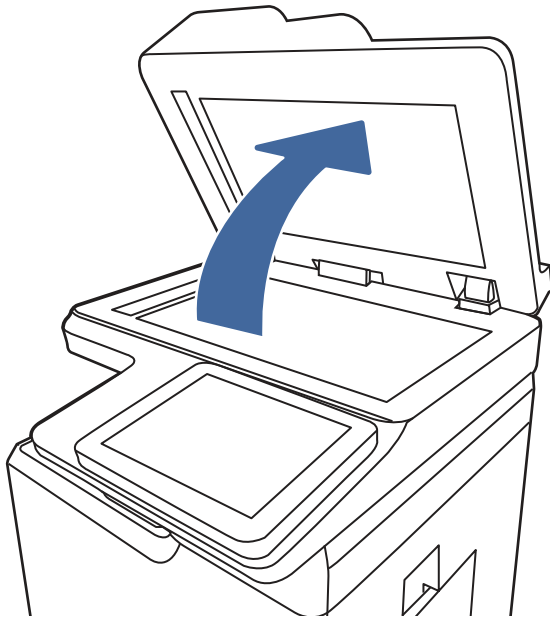
Over time, specks of debris might collect on the scanner glass and document feeder white plastic backing, which might cause print defects. Use the following procedure to clean the scanner if the printed pages have streaks, unwanted lines, black dots, poor print quality, or unclear text.

 [View a video of cleaning the document feeder glass and flatbed glass.](#)

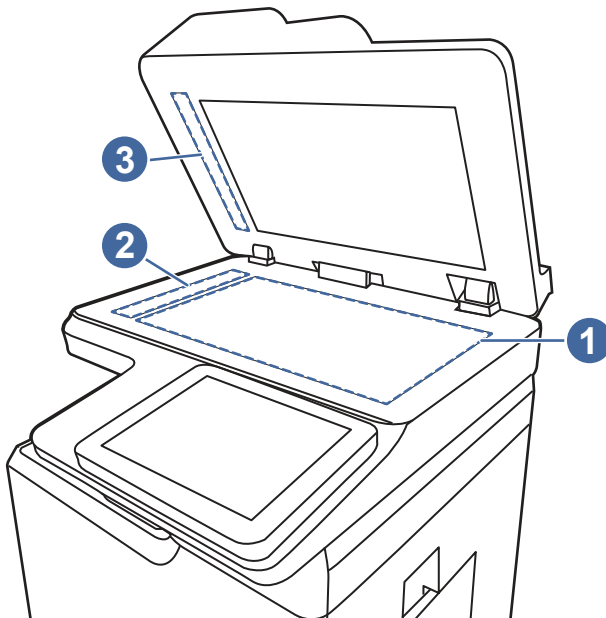
1. Press the power button to turn the printer off, and then disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.



2. Open the scanner lid.



3. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) and the document feeder strips (callout 2, callout 3) with a soft cloth or sponge that has been moistened with nonabrasive glass cleaner.



⚠ CAUTION: Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ammonia, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on any part of the printer; these can damage the printer. Do not place liquids directly on the glass or platen. They might seep and damage the printer.

📝 NOTE: If you are having trouble with streaks on copies when you are using the document feeder, be sure to clean the small strips of glass on the left side of the scanner (callout 2, callout 3).

4. Dry the glass and white plastic parts with a chamois or a cellulose sponge to prevent spotting.

5. Connect the power cable to an outlet, and then press the power button to turn the printer on.



Base printer

Learn about the base printer installation and maintenance.

Formatter accessories

Learn about the printer formatter accessories.

Table 2-1 Formatter accessories

Item	Description	Part number
1GB DDR3 Slim DIMM (SFP) NOTE: M553/M554/M555/E55040 only.	Memory	G6W84A (new) 5851-6422 (service)
1GB DDR3 x32 144-Pin 800MHz SODIMM (MFP)	Memory	E5K48A (new) E5K48-67902 (service)
HP Foreign Interface Harness	Optional port for connecting third-party devices	B5L31A (new) B5L31-67902 (service)
HP internal USB ports	Two optional USB ports for connecting third-party devices	B5L28A (new) B5L28-67902 (service)
HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server	USB wireless print server accessory	J8031A
HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/Wireless Accessory	Wi-Fi direct accessory for “touch” printing from mobile devices	J8030A
HP Jetdirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless Accessory NOTE: M578 only.	Wi-Fi direct accessory for “touch” printing from mobile devices	3JN69A
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 600	Optional fax accessory for the MFP dn models	B5L53A (new) B5L53-67901 (service)
HP secure 500 GB high-performance hard disk drive NOTE: Not supported for the M552dn.	Hard-disk drive (HDD)	B5L29A (new) B5L29-67903 (service)
HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM)	Automatically encrypts all data that passes through the product	F5S62A (new) F5S62-61001 (service)

Supplies

Learn about the printer supplies.

Table 2-2 Supplies

Item	Description	Part number
HP 508A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	Standard-capacity replacement black toner cartridge	CF360A (new) CF360-67901 (service)
HP 508X High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	High-capacity replacement black toner cartridge	CF360X (new) CF360-67902 (service)
HP 508A Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	Standard-capacity replacement cyan cartridge	CF361A (new) CF361-67901 (service)
HP 508X High Yield Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	High-capacity replacement cyan toner cartridge	CF361X (new) CF361-67902 (service)
HP 508A Yellow Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	Standard-capacity replacement yellow toner cartridge	CF362A (new) CF362-67901 (service)
HP 508X High Yield Yellow Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	High-capacity replacement yellow toner cartridge	CF362X (new) CF362-67902 (service)
HP 508A Magenta Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	Standard-capacity replacement magenta toner cartridge	CF363A (new) CF363-67901 (service)
HP 508X High Yield Magenta Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge (M552/M553/M557)	High-capacity replacement magenta toner cartridge	CF363X (new) CF363-67902 (service)
SVC Cartridge LJ Black Managed Toner (E55040/E57540)	Managed black toner cartridge	W9060-67901
SVC Cartridge LJ Cyan Managed Toner (E55040/E57540)	Managed cyan toner cartridge	W9061-67901
SVC Cartridge LJ Yellow Managed Toner (E55040/E57540)	Managed yellow toner cartridge	W9062-67901
SVC Cartridge LJ Magenta Managed Toner (E55040/E57540)	Managed magenta toner cartridge	W9063-67901
SVC Cartridge-212A Black LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	Standard-capacity replacement black toner cartridge	7ZU81-67905
SVC Cartridge-212X Black LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	High-capacity replacement black toner cartridge	7ZU81-67909
SVC Cartridge-212A Cyan LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	Standard-capacity replacement cyan toner cartridge	7ZU81-67906
SVC Cartridge-212X Cyan LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	High-capacity replacement cyan toner cartridge	7ZU81-67910
SVC Cartridge-212A Yellow LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	Standard-capacity replacement yellow toner cartridge	7ZU81-67907
SVC Cartridge-212X Yellow LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	High-capacity replacement yellow toner cartridge	7ZU81-67911
SVC Cartridge-212A Magenta LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	Standard-capacity replacement magenta toner cartridge	7ZU81-67908

Table 2-2 Supplies (continued)

Item	Description	Part number
SVC Cartridge-212X Magenta LaserJet Toner (M554/M555/M578)	High-capacity replacement magenta toner cartridge	7ZU81-67912
HP toner-collection unit	Replacement toner-collection unit with attached door	B5L37A (new) B5L37-67901 (service)
HP LaserJet 200 ADF Roller Replacement Kit (M577/M578/E57540)	Replacement feed rollers for the document feeder	B5L52A (new) W5U23-67901 (service)
Fuser kit (110V)	Replacement fuser	B5L35A (new) B5L35-67902 (service)
Fuser kit (220V)	Replacement fuser	B5L36A (new) B5L36-67902 (service)
HP Staple Cartridge Pack (stapler models only)	Replacement staple cartridges (two staple cartridges - 1500 staples each)	Q7432A

Security setup


Learn about the base printer security.

Security settings on the information pages

Print and find printer security information on the configuration and HP embedded Jetdirect information pages.

 **NOTE:** Depending on the model, up to three pages print when printing a configuration page. In addition to the main configuration page, the HP embedded Jetdirect configuration and the wireless pages print.

Print a configuration page from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Reports](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration/Status Pages](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration Page](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the print icon . Press the [OK](#) button to print the pages.

Print a configuration page from an MFP control panel


1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Configuration/Status pages](#)
3. Touch [Configuration Page](#) to select it.
4. Touch the print icon  to print the pages.

Figure 2-1 Configuration page printer security information

Configuration Page
HP LaserJet M404
Page 1

Device Information

Product Name: HP LaserJet M505
 Device Name: HP LaserJet M505
 Model Number: C3923A
 DC Controller Version: 1.102
 Device Serial Number: XXXXXXXXXX
 Formatter Number: XXXXXXXXXX
 Firmware Bundle Version: 324
 Firmware Revision: 235730_4B246
 Firmware Datecode: 20143617
 HP ePrintSmart Level: HP ePrintSmart 3
 NFC revision: Not Installed
 Service ID: 00000
 Maintenance Kit Interval: 225000
 Pages Since Last Maintenance: 0
 PS wait time: 330 seconds
 Engine Cycles*: 7
 *Not weighted for billing.

Installed Personalities and Options

PCL: 20113402
 PCLXL: 20110402
 PDS/SCRIPT: 20114402
 PDF: 20130901
 A/Print: 2040201
 Internal Disk - Hard Disk: Enabled
 Serial Number: D160332
 Model: Toshiba 09240C
 Capacity: 3775 MB
 Hard Disk Encryption Status: Disk cannot be encrypted
 HP Printer Trusted Platform Module: Enabled
 Firmware: 01.02.149.32
 GC Thumbprint:
 CA91A0435F33210A0F479F99129FC54E038A9
 SK: Thumbprint:
 F03F40D435783D10A0F479F99129FC54E038A9
 Embedded HP JetDirect J-BAC: NP1245593
 Wireless HP JetDirect J8032E: C.0.0.0

HP Web Services

HP Web Services: Disabled
 ePrint: Disabled

Memory

Total RAM: 512 MB

Event Log

Number of Entries in Use: 17
 Three Most Recent Entries:


Number	Cycles	Event
17	7	13.05.00
16	7	03.02.02
15	7	03.02.02

Security


Hard Disk Encryption Status:
 Internal Disk: Disk cannot be encrypted
 Job Data Encryption Status: Encrypted (AES-128)
 Job Data Persistence: (configurable)
 File Erase Mode: Non-Secure Fast Erase (No overwrite)
 Control Panel Password: Disabled
 Support Key: R6SP-7FMS-UEX6
 Host USB print and play: Enabled
 Device USB: Enabled

Paper Trays and Options

Default Paper Size: Letter
 Tray 1 Size: Any Size
 Tray 1 Type: Any Type
 Tray 2 Size: Letter
 Tray 2 Type: Plain
 1: Output Bin 1: 500 Sheets, Standard bin (correct order)
 2: Output Bin 2: 100 Sheets, Rear bin (straightest path)

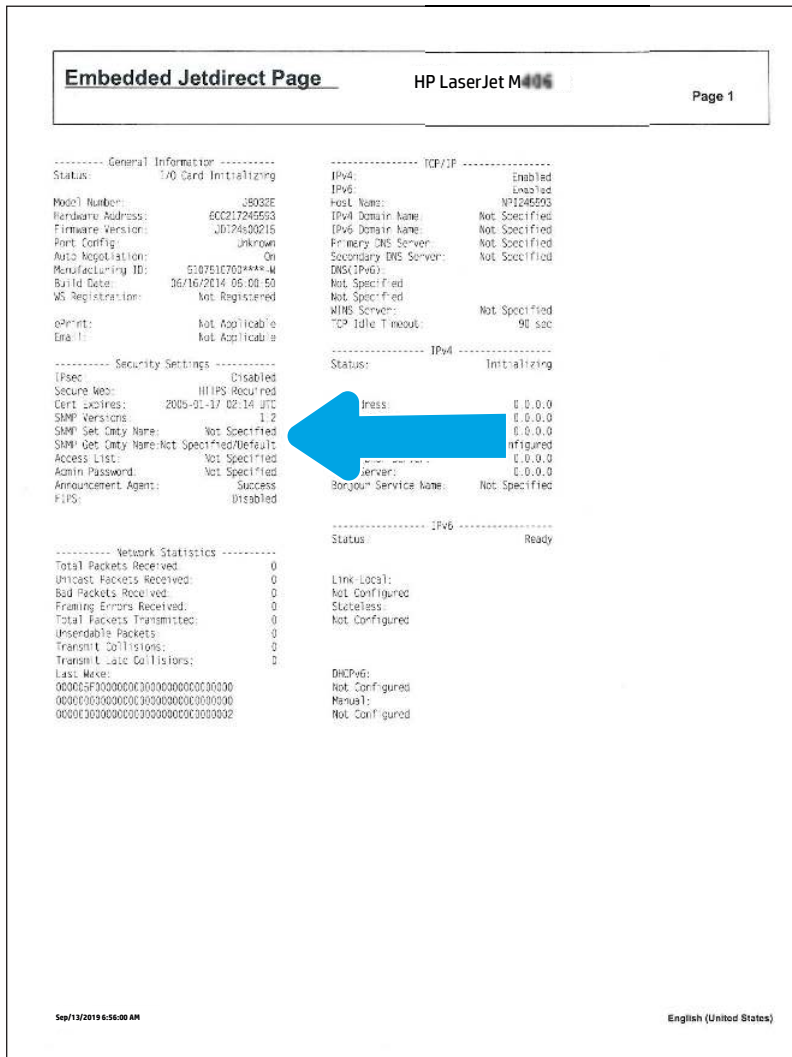


Sep/13/2019 6:56:00 AM



English (United States)

Figure 2-2 HP embedded Jetdirect page printer security information





Advanced security configuration with the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)


Use the HP Embedded Web Server to manage printer security.

How to access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

Use the following steps to open the Embedded Web Server.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **Enter** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS web page opens.

 <https://10.10.XX.XXX>

 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

To use the HP Embedded Web Server, the browser must meet the following requirements:

Windows® 7

- Internet Explorer (version 8.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

Windows® 8 or greater

- Internet Explorer (version 9.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

Windows 10 or greater

- Microsoft Edge (version 93 or greater)
- Internet Explorer (version 9.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

macOS

- Safari (version 5.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)

Linux

- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

Security tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Security** tab.

Table 2-3 HP Embedded Web Server Security tab

Menu	Description
General Security	Settings for general security, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Configure an administrator password to restrict access to certain features on the printer.• Set a custom device Service Access Code.• Set PjL password for processing PjL commands.• Set file system access and firmware upgrade security.• Enable or disable the Host USB port on the control panel or the USB connectivity port on the formatter for printing directly from a computer.• View the status of all security settings.

Table 2-3 HP Embedded Web Server Security tab (continued)

Menu	Description
Account Policy	Enable administrator account settings.
Access Control	Configure access to printer functions for specific individuals or groups, and select the method individuals use to sign in to the printer.
Protect Stored Data	Configure and manage the internal storage for the printer. Configure settings for jobs that are stored on the printer internal storage.
Manage Remote Apps	Manage or whitelist remote apps by importing or deleting certificates that allow devices to use this product.
Certificate Management	Install and manage security certificates for access to the printer and the network.
Email Domain Restriction	If email functionality is enabled, administrators can limit the email addresses to which the printer can send messages.
Web Service Security	Allow resources on this printer to be accessed by web pages from different domains. If no sites are added to the list, then all sites are trusted.
Self Test	Verify that the security functions are running according to expected system parameters.

HP Cartridges with JetIntelligence

Learn about toner cartridge JetIntelligence.

HP Cartridges with JetIntelligence support two features for managing toner cartridges.

- The HP Cartridge Policy feature allows customers to specify the use of only genuine HP toner cartridges in the printer.
- The anti-theft feature enables locking a cartridge to a specific printer or fleet of printers.

HP Cartridge Policy

The genuine HP Cartridge Policy feature allows a customer to specify that only genuine HP supplies can be used in a printer. If anything but a genuine HP supply is installed, the printer will not print. This feature is disabled by default, and can be enabled or disabled from the control panel, the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS), or HP Web Jetadmin.

If a genuine HP cartridge has passed the low state and is installed in a printer that has this feature enabled, the printer will display an **Unauthorized Cartridge** message on the control panel and will not print.

If a non-HP toner cartridge is used in a printer with this feature enabled, the message **Unauthorized Cartridge** appears on the control-panel display and the printer will not print.

 **NOTE:** If a customer suspects they have a counterfeit cartridge, they should report it by going to www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit and selecting **Report now**.

Anti-theft or cartridge protection

The toner cartridge anti-theft feature allows a customer to configure the printer to automatically lock toner cartridges to a specific printer or fleet of printers when they are installed. A locked toner cartridge will work only in the specified printer or fleet of printers. This feature prevents toner cartridges from being stolen and used in another printer, or from being moved from an authorized printer to an unauthorized printer. This feature is disabled by default. Cartridge protection to a single printer can be enabled or disabled from the control panel or

the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS). Cartridge protection for a printer fleet can be enabled only by using HP Web Jetadmin.

When the anti-theft feature is enabled, the toner cartridge in a printer will only work in the specified printer or fleet of printers. If a locked toner cartridge is moved to another printer, the cartridge will not print and the message **Protected Cartridge** appears on the control-panel display.



NOTE: When a toner cartridge is locked to a specific printer or fleet of printers, it cannot be unlocked. This is a permanent operation.

Dynamic security

Learn about dynamic-security-enabled printers.



NOTE: All printer models might not support the Dynamic security feature.

Certain HP printers use cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip or modified or non-HP circuitry* might not work. And, those that work today might not work in the future.

As is standard in the printing business, HP has a process for authenticating cartridges. HP continues to use security measures to protect the quality of our customer experiences, maintain the integrity of our printing systems, and protect our intellectual property. These measures include authentication methods that change periodically and might prevent some third-party supplies from working now or in the future. HP printers and original HP cartridges deliver the best quality, security and reliability. When cartridges are cloned or counterfeited, the customer is exposed to quality and potential security risks, compromising the printing experience.

***Non-HP Chips and modified or non-HP electronic circuitry** are not produced or validated by HP. HP cannot guarantee that these chips or circuitry will work in your printer now or in the future. If you are using non-original HP cartridges, please check with your supplier to ensure your cartridge has an original HP security chip or unmodified HP electronic circuitry.

Printer security features

Restrict who has access to configuration settings, secure data, and prevent access to valuable hardware components.

Introduction

The printer includes several security features to restrict who has access to configuration settings, to secure data, and to prevent access to valuable hardware components.

Security statements

Review this important security statement.



The printer supports security standards and recommended protocols that help you keep the printer secure, protect critical information on your network, and simplify the way you monitor and maintain the printer.

Assign an administrator password

Assign an administrator password for access to the printer and the HP Embedded Web Server so that unauthorized users cannot change the printer settings.

Use the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) to set the password

Use the following steps to set a password for the printer.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS):
 - a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
 - b. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **ENTER** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS opens.




 **NOTE:** If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

2. Click the **Security** tab.
3. Open the **General Security** menu.
4. In the area labeled **Set the Local Administrator Password**, enter the name to associate with the password in the **Username** field.
5. Enter the password in the **New Password** field, and then enter it again in the **Verify Password** field.

 **NOTE:** To change an existing password, first enter the existing password in the **Old Password** field.

6. Click the **Apply** button.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make note of the password and store it in a safe place. The administrator password cannot be recovered. If the administrator password is lost or forgotten, contact HP Support for the assistance required to completely reset the printer.

[Click here to contact HP Support about resetting the printer password.](#)

Provide user access credentials at the printer control panel

Use the following steps to sign into the control panel.

Some features on the printer control panel can be secured so that unauthorized people cannot use them. When a feature is secured, the printer prompts you to sign in before you can use it. You can also sign in without waiting for a prompt by selecting **Sign In** from the printer control panel.

Typically, the credentials for signing in to the printer are the same as for signing in to the network. Consult the network administrator for this printer if you have questions about which credentials to use.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select **Sign In**.
2. Follow the prompts to enter the credentials.

 **NOTE:** To maintain security for the printer, select **Sign Out** when you have finished using the printer.

IP Security

IP Security (IPsec) is a set of protocols that control IP-based network traffic to and from the printer. IPsec provides host-to-host authentication, data integrity, and encryption of network communications.

For printers that are connected to the network and have an HP Jetdirect print server, you can configure IPsec by using the **Networking** tab in the HP Embedded Web Server.

Encryption support: HP High Performance Secure Hard Disks

The hard disk provides hardware-based encryption so you can securely store sensitive data without impacting printer performance. This hard disk uses the latest Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) and has versatile time-saving features and robust functionality.

Use the **Security** menu in the HP Embedded Web Server to configure the disk.

Lock the formatter

The formatter has a slot that you can use to attach a security cable.

Locking the formatter prevents someone from removing valuable components from it.

Cleaning

Learn about the base printer cleaning functions and procedures.

Over time, particles of toner and paper accumulate inside the printer. This can cause print-quality problems during printing. Cleaning the paper path eliminates or reduces these problems.

Clean the paper path and toner-cartridge areas every time that the toner cartridge is changed or whenever print-quality problems occur. As much as possible, keep the printer free from dust and debris. To clean the printer paper path at regularly scheduled intervals, go to [Automatic cleaning page on page 41](#).

Printer rollers might require cleaning if the printer is experiencing pickup and feed problems or frequent paper jams that involve the rollers.

Print a cleaning page

Learn how to print a cleaning page.



IMPORTANT: The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Print a cleaning page from a SFP control panel

1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to **Support Tools**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Maintenance**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Calibration/Cleaning**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Cleaning page**, and then press the **OK** button.



TIP: Use this screen to set up automatic cleaning page intervals if desired.

5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Print** (at the bottom of the control-panel display), and then press the **OK** button to print the cleaning page.



NOTE: A **Cleaning...** message displays on the control-panel display. Do not turn the printer off until the cleaning process has finished. When it is finished, discard the printed page.

Print a cleaning page from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Maintenance](#)
 - [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
3. Touch [Cleaning Page](#), and then touch the [Print](#) button to print the cleaning page.



NOTE: A [Cleaning...](#) message displays on the control-panel display. Do not turn the printer off until the cleaning process has finished. When it is finished, discard the printed page.



TIP: Use this screen to set up automatic cleaning page intervals if desired.

Automatic cleaning page

Learn how to set up automatic cleaning page intervals.

Enable and configure auto cleaning from a non-touchscreen control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Maintenance](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Calibration/Cleaning](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Cleaning page](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the desired automatic cleaning page interval, and then press the [OK](#) button to print the cleaning page.
6. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Done](#) (at the bottom of the control-panel display), and then press the [OK](#) button.

Enable and configure auto cleaning from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Maintenance](#)
 - [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
 - [Cleaning Page](#)
3. Touch the desired automatic cleaning page interval, and then touch the [Done](#) button.

Clean the Tray 1 rollers

Learn about cleaning the Tray 1 rollers.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-4 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L24-67905	Multipurpose/tray 1 pick-up roller and separation assembly

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the Tray 1 pickup roller

Follow these steps to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup roller.

- Remove the Tray 1 pickup roller.
 - a. Open Tray 1.

Figure 2-3 Open Tray 1



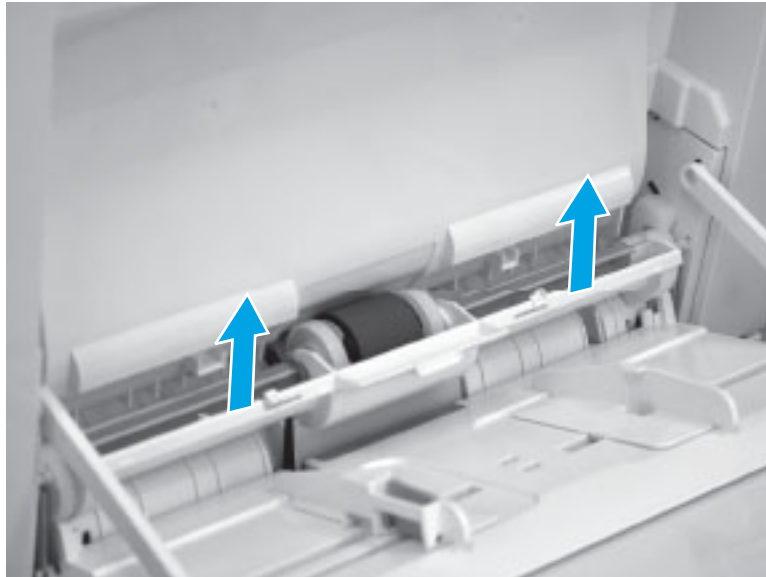
- b. Pull on the center of the cover to open it.

Figure 2-4 Open the roller cover



- c. Pull the cover straight off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-5 Remove the cover

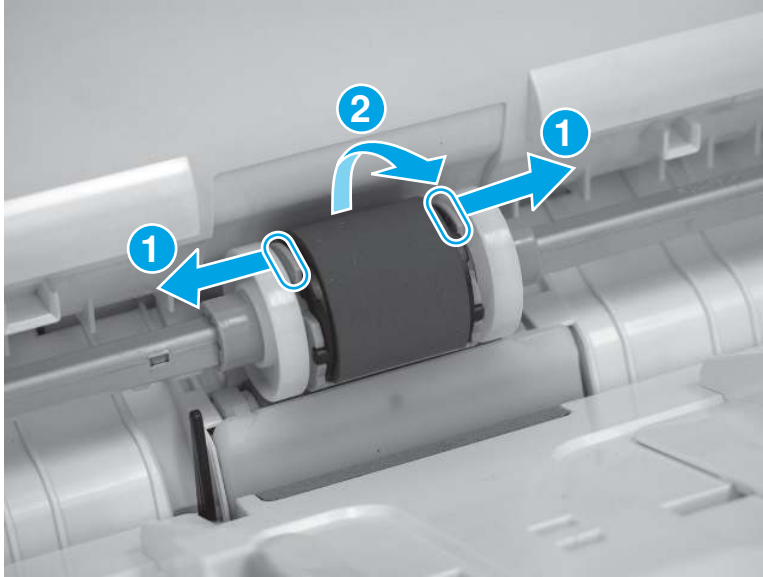


- d. Release two tabs (callout 1) between the roller collar and roller, and then rotate the top of the roller (callout 2) out and away from the printer.



TIP: Pushing down on the top of the roller might make it easier to release the tabs.

Figure 2-6 Release two tabs



- e. Remove the roller.

Figure 2-7 Remove the roller



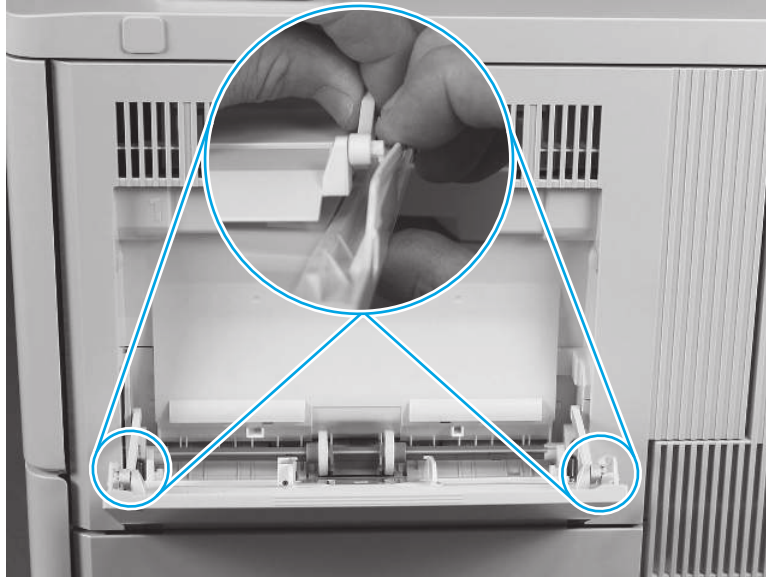
Remove the Tray 1 separation roller

Follow these steps to remove and replace the Tray 1 separation roller.

- Remove the Tray 1 separation roller.
 - a. Carefully flex the right- and left-side tray retainers to release them.

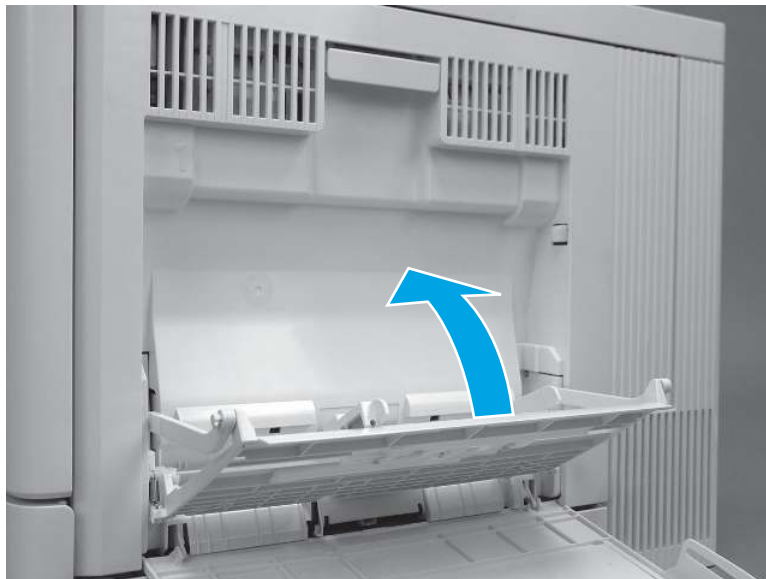
 **TIP:** Raise the tray to the halfway closed position to make it is easier to release the retainers.

Figure 2-8 Release the tray retainers



- b. Carefully raise Tray 1 up into the printer.

Figure 2-9 Raise Tray 1 up



- c. Firmly grasp the corners of the separation roller cover, and then rotate it down and away from the printer to remove it.

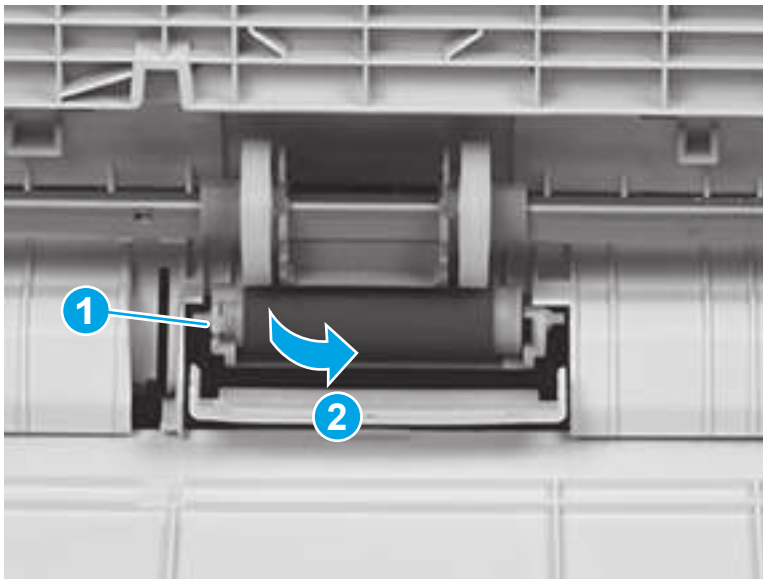
Figure 2-10 Open the roller cover



- d. Release one tab (callout 1), and then rotate the end of the roller out and away from the holder (callout 2).

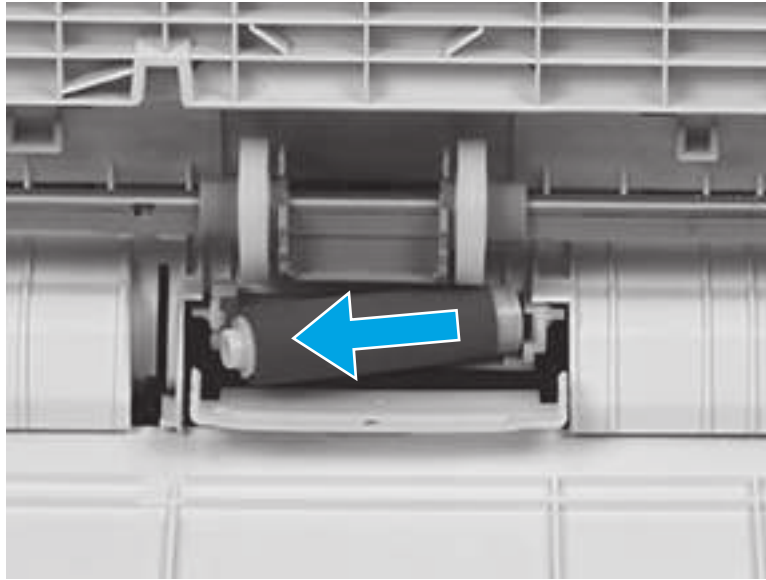
 **TIP:** It might be necessary to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to complete this step.

Figure 2-11 Release one tab



- e. Slide the roller out of the holder to remove it.

Figure 2-12 Remove the roller



Clean the Tray 1 rollers

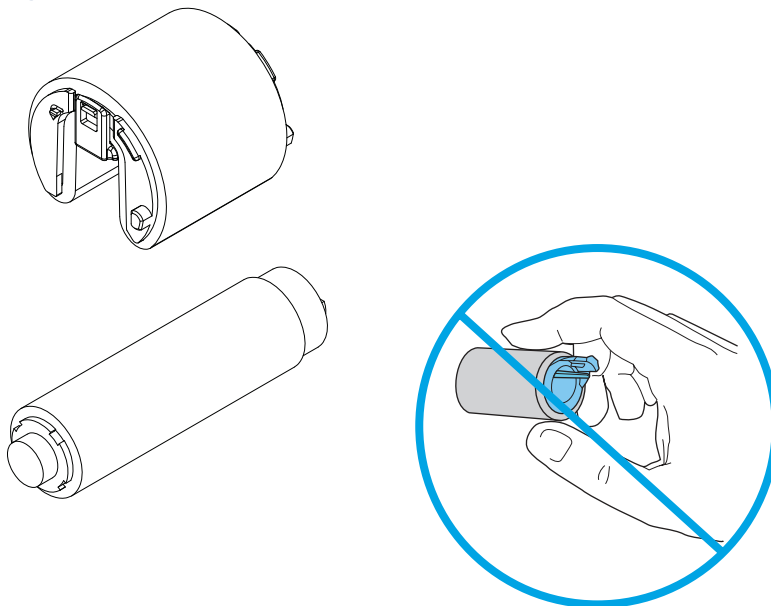
Learn about cleaning the Tray 1 rollers.

- Clean the Tray 1 rollers, and then reverse the removal steps to reinstall them.

Use a damp, lint-free cloth to gently clean the roller and pad.


CAUTION: When handling the roller and/or pad, avoid touching the spongy surfaces. Skin oils and fingerprints on a roller surface can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 2-13 Clean the rollers



Clean the Tray 2-X rollers


Learn about cleaning the Tray 2-X rollers.

 **NOTE:** The procedure in this section shows Tray 2 in the figures. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-5 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-6577-000CN	Kit-Tray 2-X roller

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly

Learn about removing the Tray 2-X rollers.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

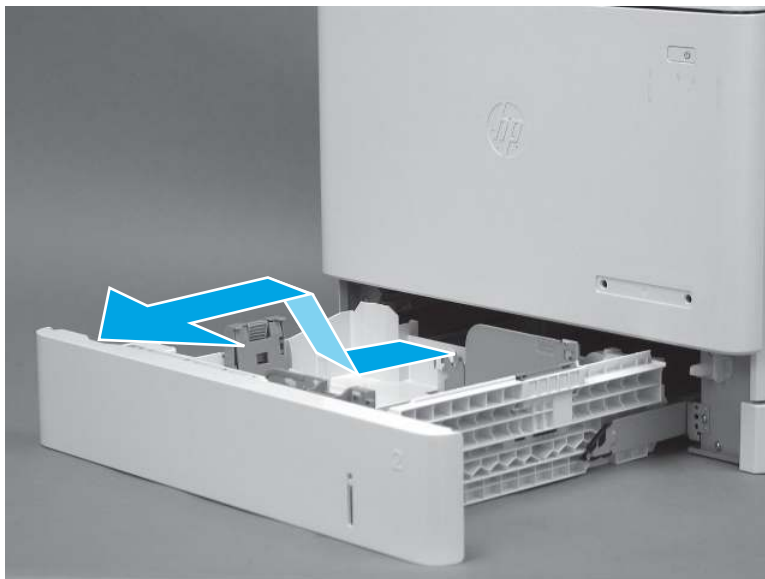
1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 2-14 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-15 Remove the tray



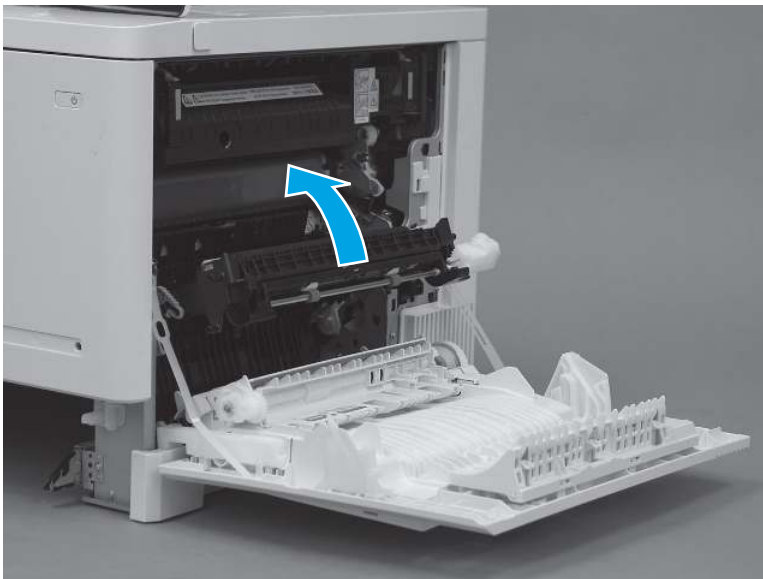
3. Open the right door.

Figure 2-16 Open the right door



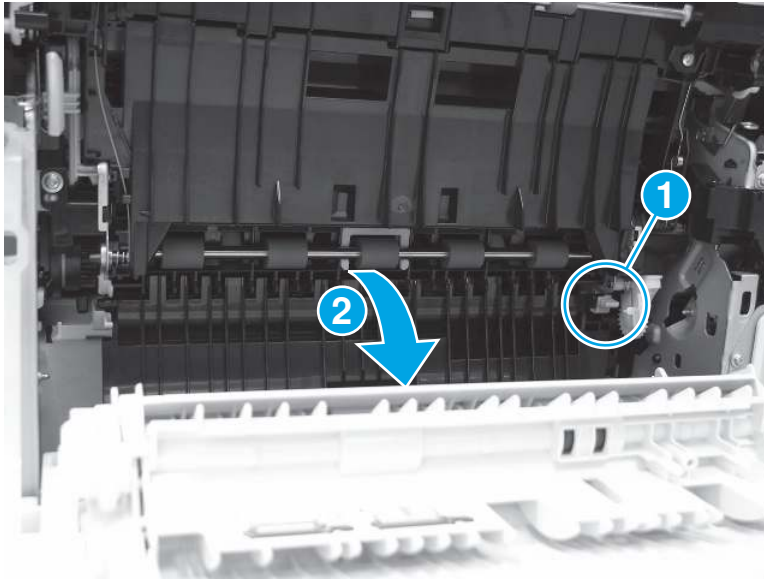
4. Carefully raise the transfer roller assembly up and into the printer.

Figure 2-17 Raise the transfer roller assembly



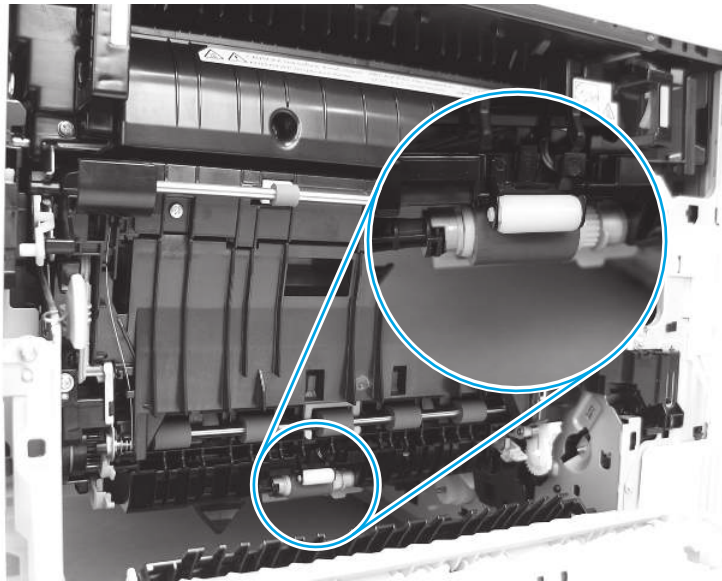
5. Release the green handle (callout 1), and then lower the paper guide (callout 2).

Figure 2-18 Lower the paper guide



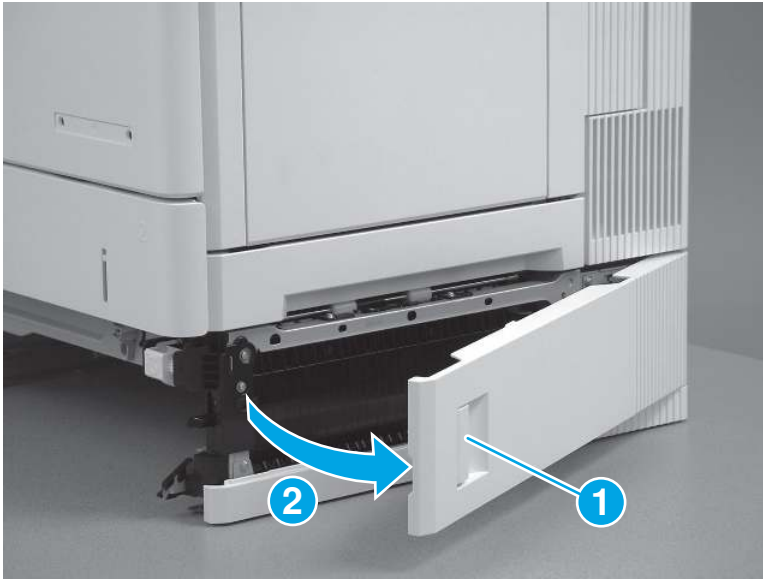
6. Locate the tray pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-19 Locate the tray pickup roller



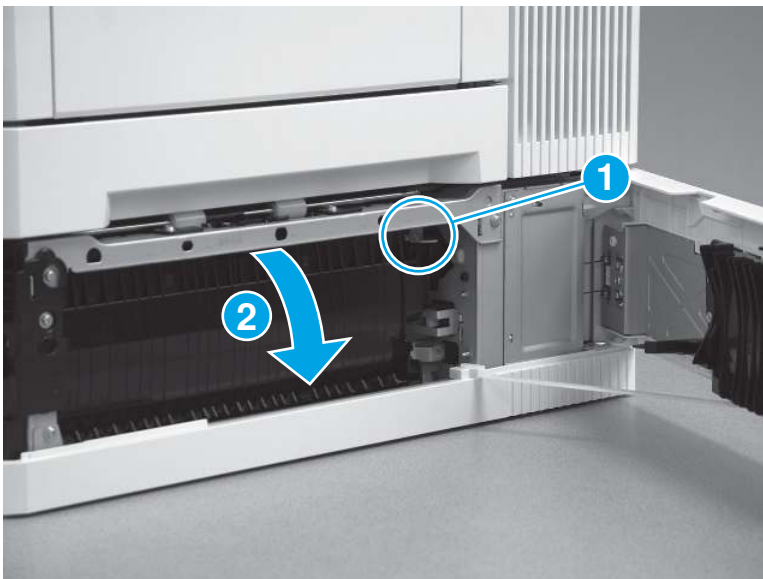
7. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Release the latch (callout 1), and then open the right door (callout 2).

Figure 2-20 Open the Tray 3, 4, or 5 right door



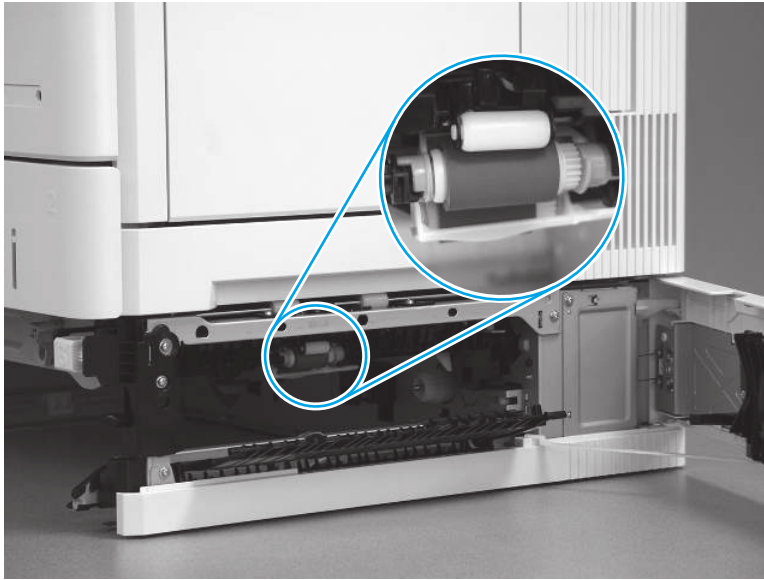
8. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Release the green handle (callout 1), and then lower the paper guide (callout 2).

Figure 2-21 Lower the Tray 3, 4, or 5 paper guide



9. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Locate the tray pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-22 Locate the Tray 3, 4, or 5 pickup roller assembly



10. Slide the assembly to the left to compress the spring loaded shaft (callout 1), and then rotate the right end of the assembly down and away from the printer (callout 2).


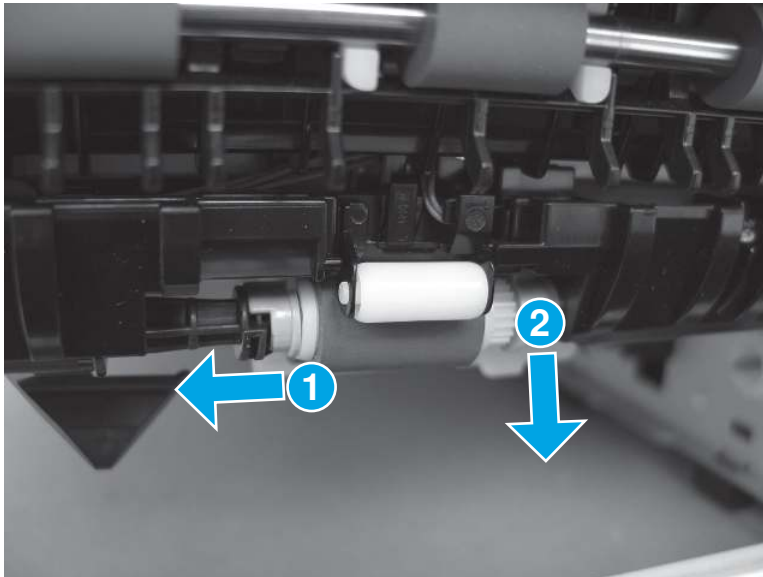
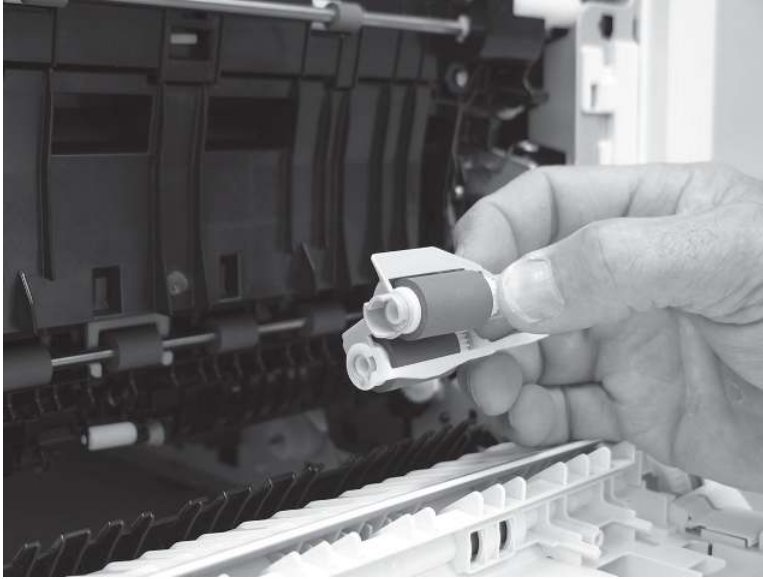
 **TIP:** It might be easier to access the roller through the tray cavity, while viewing it through the right door opening.

Figure 2-23 Slide the assembly to the left



11. Remove the roller assembly.

Figure 2-24 Remove the roller assembly

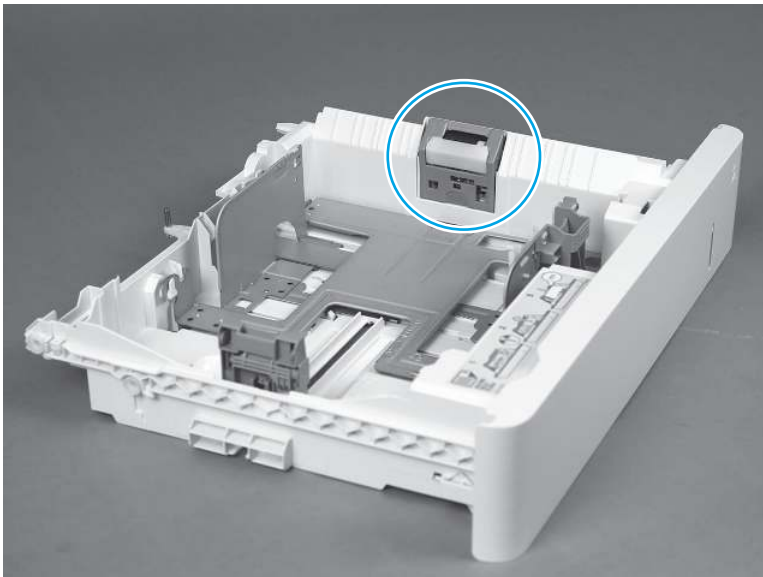


Remove the Tray 2-X separation roller

Learn about removing the Tray 2-X separation roller.

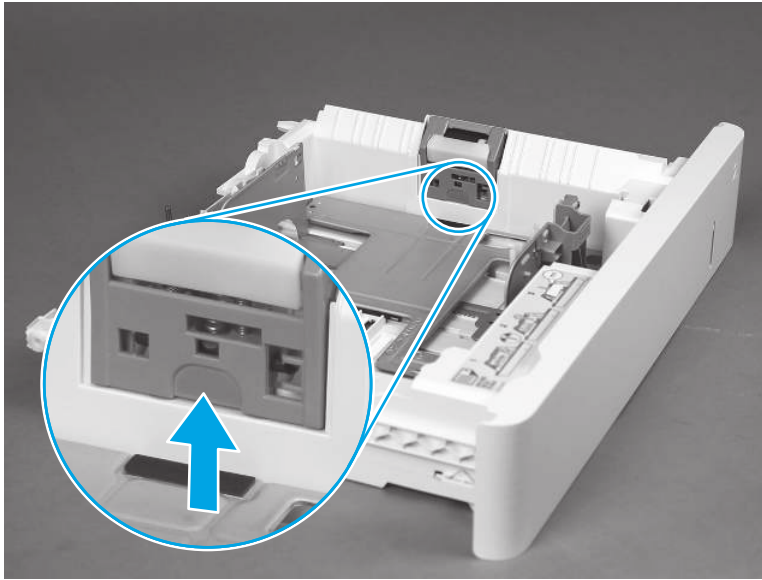
1. Locate the tray separation roller.

Figure 2-25 Locate the roller assembly



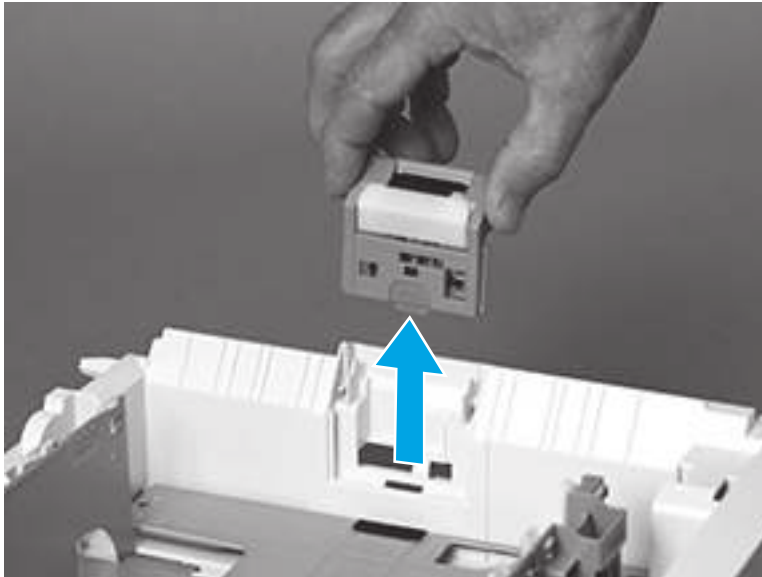
2. Push up on the blue label to release the roller assembly.

Figure 2-26 Push up on the blue label



3. Slide the roller assembly straight up to remove it.

Figure 2-27 Remove the roller assembly



Clean the Tray 2 rollers

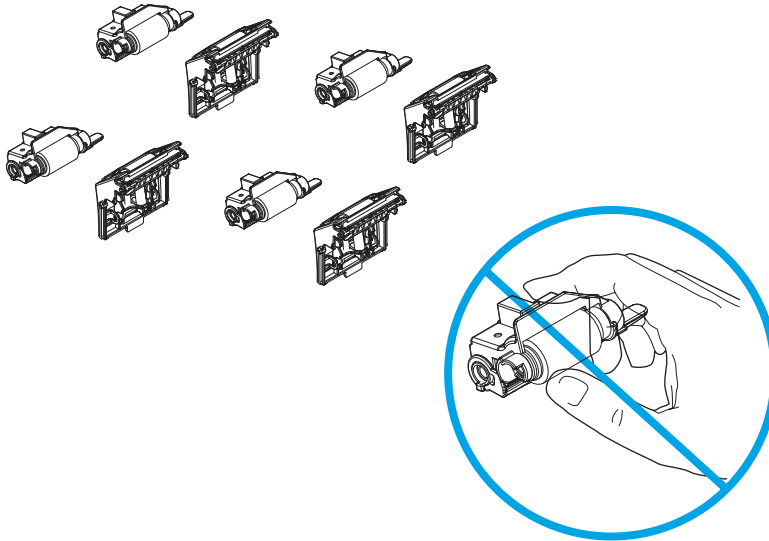
Learn about cleaning the Tray 2 rollers.

- Clean the Tray 2 rollers.
 - Use a damp, lint-free cloth to gently clean the rollers.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the spongy portion of the roller. Skin oils on the roller can cause paper handling problems. HP recommends washing your hands before handling the assembly.

 **NOTE:** The number of rollers depends on the number input accessories installed.

Figure 2-28 Clean the rollers



Input devices

Learn about input device installation and maintenance.

Clean the Tray 2-X rollers


Learn about cleaning the Tray 2-X rollers.

 **NOTE:** The procedure in this section shows Tray 2 in the figures. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 2-6 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-6577-000CN	Kit-Tray 2-X roller

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly

Learn about removing the Tray 2-X rollers.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

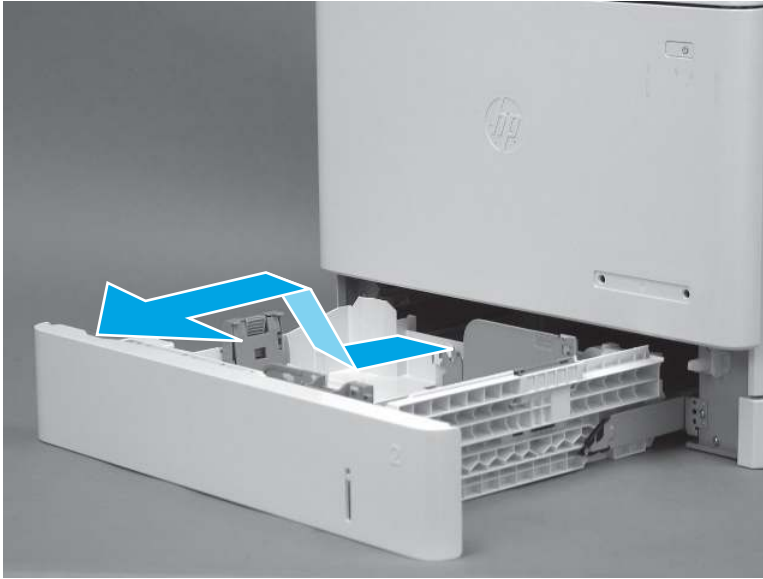
1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 2-29 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-30 Remove the tray



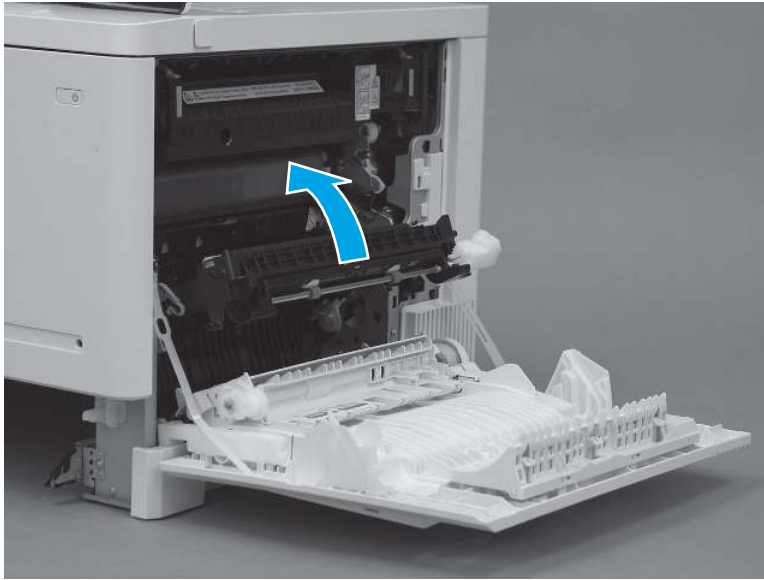
3. Open the right door.

Figure 2-31 Open the right door



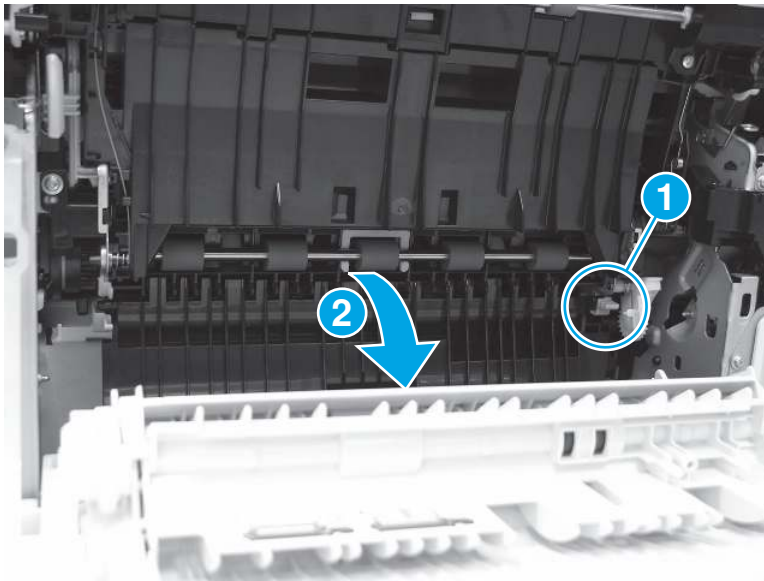
- Carefully raise the transfer roller assembly up and into the printer.

Figure 2-32 Raise the transfer roller assembly



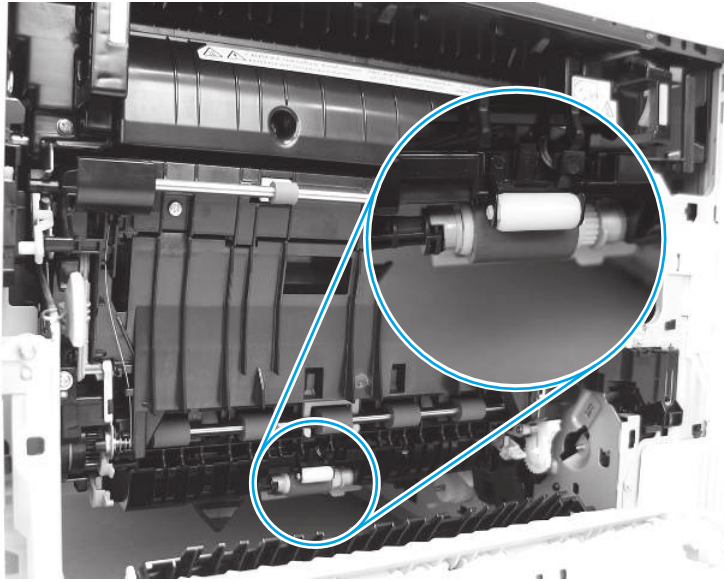
- Release the green handle (callout 1), and then lower the paper guide (callout 2).

Figure 2-33 Lower the paper guide



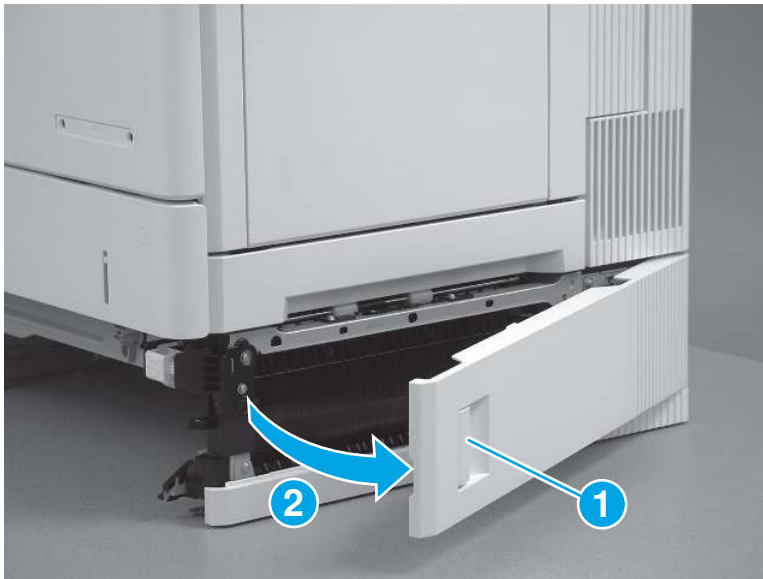
6. Locate the tray pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-34 Locate the tray pickup roller



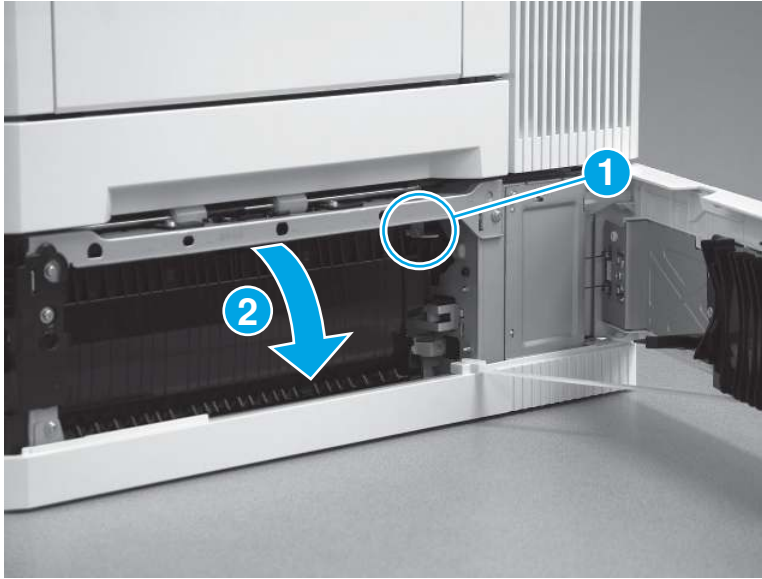
7. Trays 3, 4, or 5 only: Release the latch (callout 1), and then open the right door (callout 2).

Figure 2-35 Open the Tray 3, 4, or 5 right door



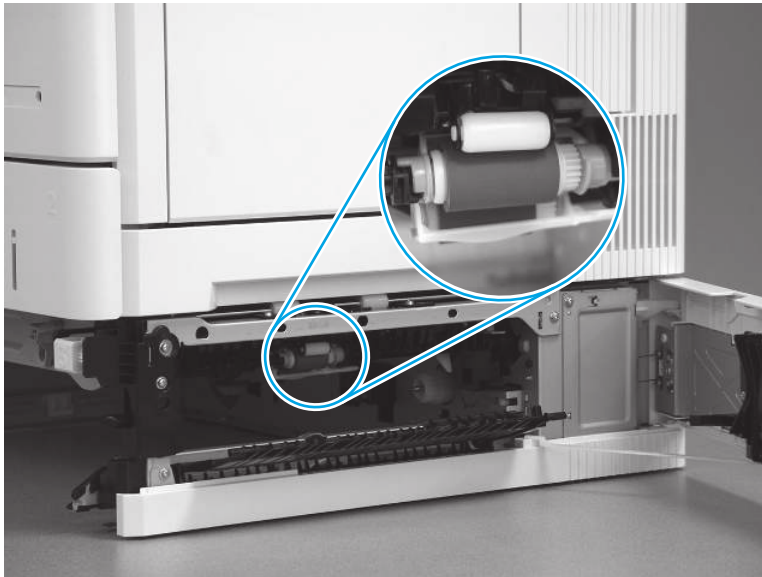
8. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Release the green handle (callout 1), and then lower the paper guide (callout 2).

Figure 2-36 Lower the Tray 3, 4, or 5 paper guide



9. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Locate the tray pickup roller assembly.

Figure 2-37 Locate the Tray 3, 4, or 5 pickup roller assembly



10. Slide the assembly to the left to compress the spring loaded shaft (callout 1), and then rotate the right end of the assembly down and away from the printer (callout 2).


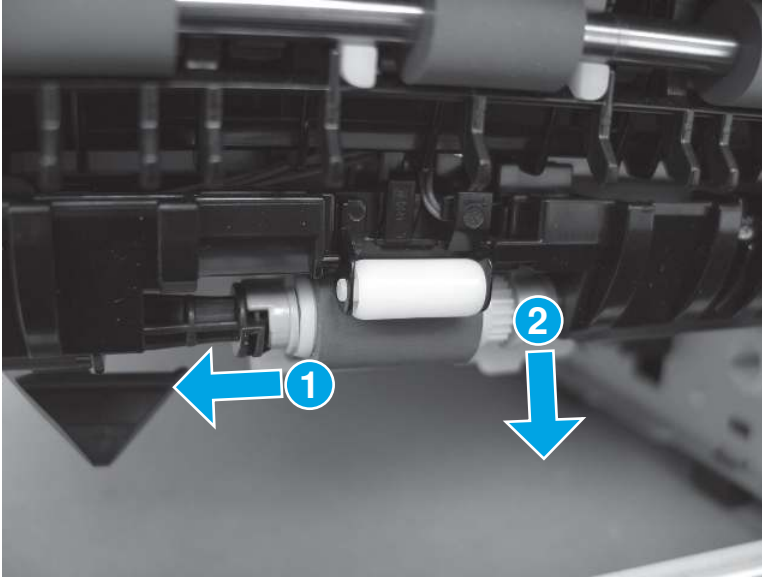
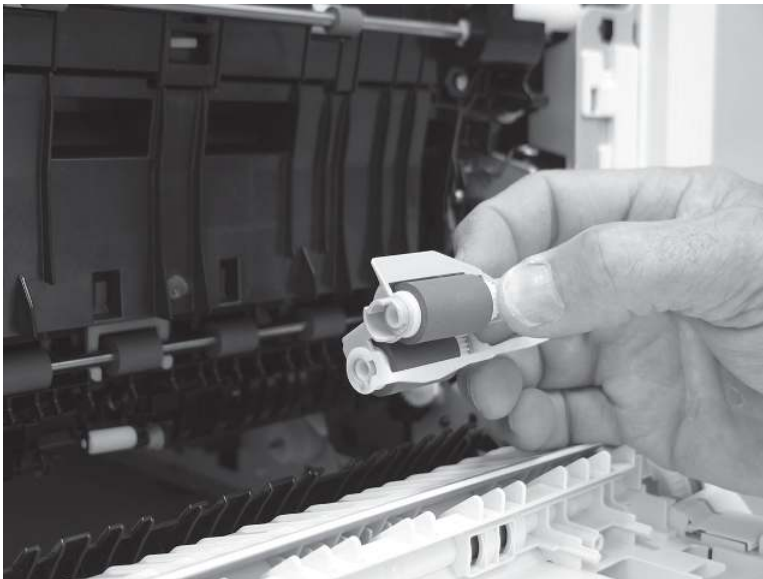
 **TIP:** It might be easier to access the roller through the tray cavity, while viewing it through the right door opening.

Figure 2-38 Slide the assembly to the left



11. Remove the roller assembly.

Figure 2-39 Remove the roller assembly

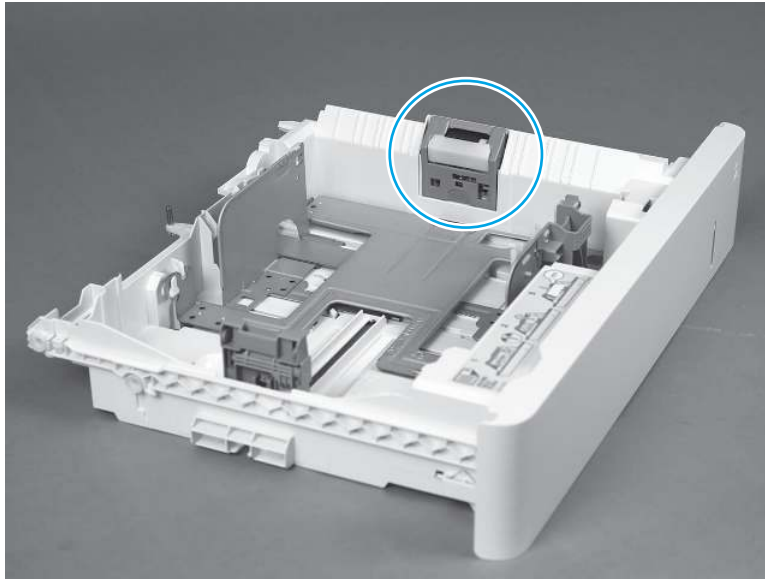


Remove the Tray 2-X separation roller

Learn about removing the Tray 2-X separation roller.

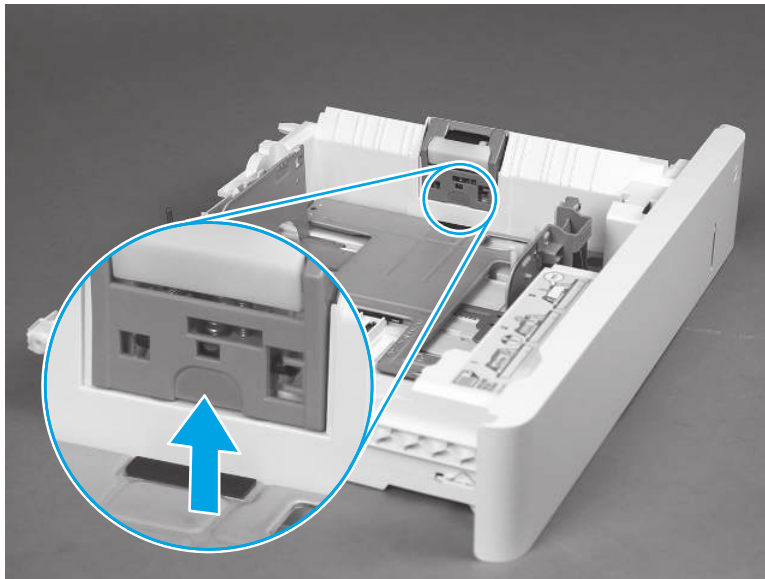
1. Locate the tray separation roller.

Figure 2-40 Locate the roller assembly



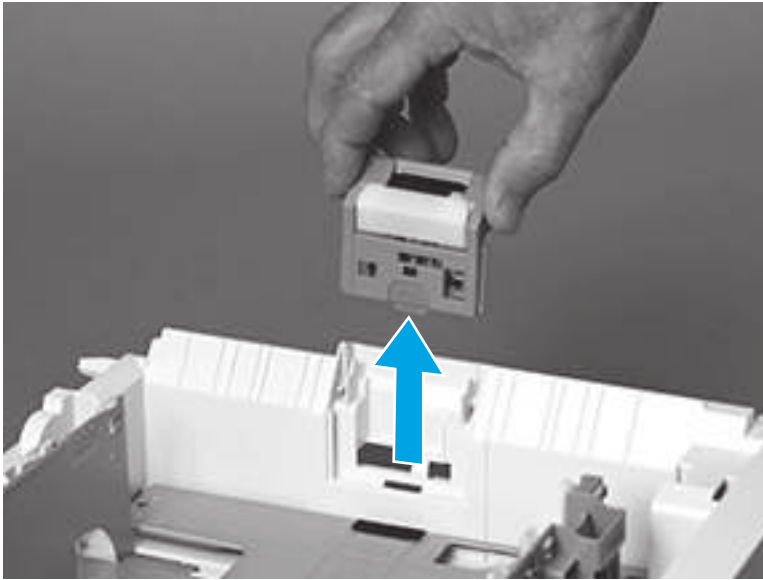
2. Push up on the blue label to release the roller assembly.

Figure 2-41 Push up on the blue label



3. Slide the roller assembly straight up to remove it.

Figure 2-42 Remove the roller assembly



Clean the Tray 2 rollers

Learn about cleaning the Tray 2 rollers.

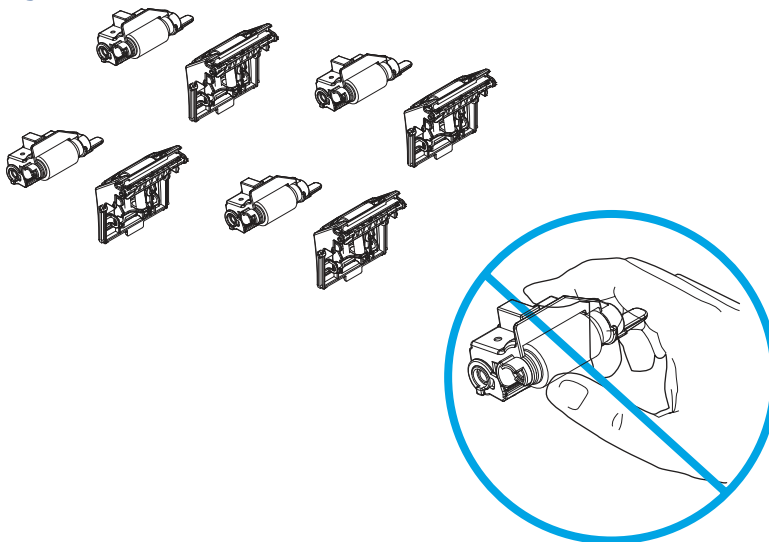
- Clean the Tray 2 rollers.

Use a damp, lint-free cloth to gently clean the rollers.

CAUTION: Do not touch the spongy portion of the roller. Skin oils on the roller can cause paper handling problems. HP recommends washing your hands before handling the assembly.

NOTE: The number of rollers depends on the number input accessories installed.

Figure 2-43 Clean the rollers



3 Theory of operation

Learn about the printer theory of operation.

Document feeder / scanner

Learn about the printer document feeder and scanner components.

 **NOTE:** This section is for MFP printers only.

Document feed system

Learn about the various components of the document feed system.

This section describes the following:

- Sensors in the document feeder
- Document feeder paper path
- Simplex single-pass scanning
- Electronic duplexing (e-duplex) single-pass scanning
- Deskew operation
- Document feeder hinges

The printer supports single-pass electronic duplexing (e-duplex) copy jobs. Two separate scan modules scan the front-side and back-side of an e-duplex copy job page in a single pass through the document feeder.

For some printer bundles, this ADF supports a smart background feature which auto-crops and adjusts the image extents (see printer specifications for more information).


Sensors in the document feeder

Learn about the document feeder sensor locations and functions.

The document feeder contains the following sensors:

- **ADF paper present sensor:** Detects whether a document is present in the document feeder. If paper is present in the document feeder when copies are made, the printer scans the document using the document feeder. If no paper is present when copies are made, the printer scans the document using the scanner glass.
- **ADF Y (length) sensor:** Detects whether a legal-size original is present in the document feeder.

- **ADF jam cover sensor:** Detects whether the document feeder cover is open or closed.
- **ADF paper path deskew sensor:** Detects the top of the page as it enters the deskew rollers.
- **ADF paper path pick success sensor:** Detects a successful one page feed from the document feeder tray.

 **NOTE:** This sensor uses ultrasonic sound to detect a multi-page paper feed.

- **Paper path sensor 1:** Detects the top of the page as it approaches the front-side scan module (document feeder glass).

Figure 3-1 Document feeder sensors

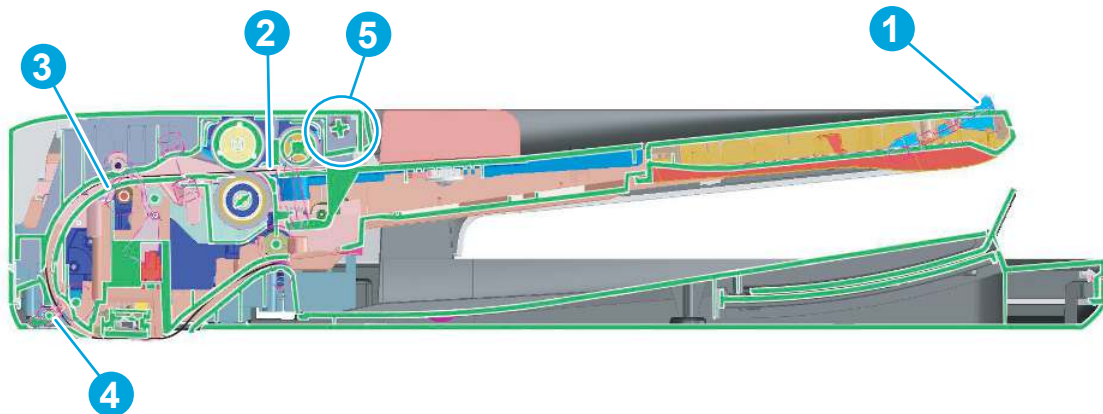


Table 3-1 Document feeder sensors

Item	Description
1	ADF Y (length) sensor
2	ADF paper present sensor
3	ADF deskew sensor
4	Paper path sensor 1 NOTE: For an e-duplex copy job, this sensor is used to activate the front-side scan module (in the scanner base) and the front-side background selector (in the document feeder), if needed.
5	ADF jam cover sensor (open the jam access cover and insert a folded piece of paper to activate the flag)

Document feeder paper path

Review the following information about the document feeder paper path.

Figure 3-2 Document feeder paper path

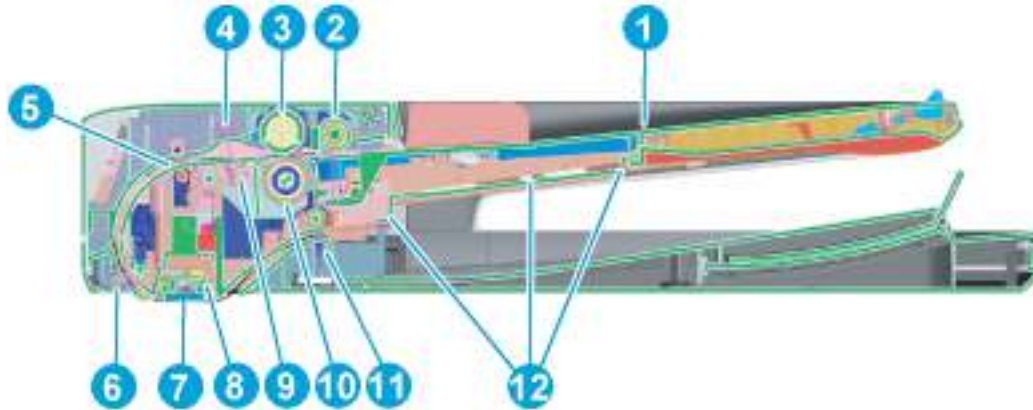


Table 3-2 Document feeder paper path

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Input tray	7	Front-side scan module location NOTE: This scan module (document feeder glass) is located in the scanner base and is not pictured.
2	Pre-pick roller	8	Back-side scan module
3	Pick roller	9	ADF pick success transmitter
4	ADF pick success receiver	10	Separator roller
5	Deskew drive roller	11	Exit drive roller
6	Prescan drive roller	12	Lift plate

Document feeder simplex operation

Following is the basic sequence of operation for a document feeder simplex job.

1. The ADF jam cover sensor detects when the cover door is in the closed position.
2. The ADF paper present sensor activates when paper is loaded onto the input tray.
3. The feed motor rotates to raise the lift plate and starts to pick the loaded paper.
4. The ADF multi-pick (ultrasonic) sensor activates when the leading edge of the media is driven past the sensor. The printer firmware registers a successful pick operation.
5. The ADF paper path deskew activates when the leading edge of the paper passes it. The printer firmware registers the leading edge of the paper position.
6. The leading edge of the paper drives into the nip point of the deskew drive roller and the deskew pinch rollers. This creates a buckle of paper by the nip point for pick-skew correction.
7. The deskew motor rotates the deskew drive roller to pull the paper into the prescan drive roller.
8. The pick motor stops turning and allows both the pick and feed roller to turn freely while the paper is pulled in by the deskew drive roller.
9. The feed motor rotates to drive the paper into the prescan front-side sensor. The firmware registers the leading edge position of the paper as the multi-pick sensor activates.

10. The feed motor continues to rotate and drive the leading edge of the paper through the preset distance from the multi-pick sensor to the front-side scan zone. The scanner begins the scanning and data retrieval process.
11. The ADF multi-pick (ultrasonic) sensor deactivates when the trailing edge of the paper passes the sensor. The firmware registers the trailing edge of the paper position.
12. The feed motor continues to rotate and drive the trailing edge of the paper through the preset distance from the ADF multi-pick (ultrasonic) sensor to the front-side scan zone. The scanner ends the scanning and data retrieval process.
13. The feed motor continues to rotate and ejects the trailing edge of the paper into the output bin.
14. One of the following occurs:
 - If the copy job is complete, the ADF paper present sensor deactivates. The feed motor reverses rotation to raise the pick roller.
 - If the copy job is not complete, the ADF paper present sensor is active. The printer firmware detects additional pages in the input tray and the process repeats.

Document feeder e-duplex operation

Following is the basic sequence of operation for a document feeder simplex job.



NOTE: For an e-duplex copy job, the background scan operation begins immediately after the simplex sequence of operation ends.

1. The feed motor continues to drive the paper until the leading edge activates the prescan back-side sensor. The printer firmware registers the position of the leading edge of the paper.
2. The feed motor continues to rotate to drive the leading edge of the paper through the preset distance from prescan back-side sensor to the back-side background selector scan zone. The back-side background scan module begins scanning and retrieval of the data.
3. The prescan back-side sensor deactivates when the trailing edge of the paper passes it. The printer firmware registers the trailing edge of the paper position.
4. The feed motor continues to rotate to drive the trailing edge of the paper edge past the back-side background selector scan zone.
5. The feed motor continues to rotate and ejects the trailing edge of the paper into the output bin.
6. One of the following occurs:
 - If the copy job is complete, the ADF paper present sensor deactivates. The feed motor reverses rotation to raise the pick roller.
 - If the copy job is not complete, the ADF paper present sensor is active. The printer firmware detects additional pages in the input tray and the process repeats.

Deskew operation

Learn about the document feeder deskew features.



NOTE: For printer deskew specifications, go the HP Web-based interactive Search Engine (WISE) and search for [HP LaserJet Enterprise, Managed, HP PageWide Pro, Enterprise, Managed - Skew Guide](#) (C06363769).

Sliding side guides on the input tray make sure that the paper stack is correctly aligned at the center of the input tray when paper is loaded in the tray. The correct position of the loaded paper is parallel with the direction of travel into the document feeder paper path.

The document feeder further reduces paper skew due to improper loading of paper in the input tray by buckling the paper to create a paper buffer.

The document feeder aligns the leading edge of the paper parallel with the deskew drive rollers before the paper is driven further into the document feeder paper path.


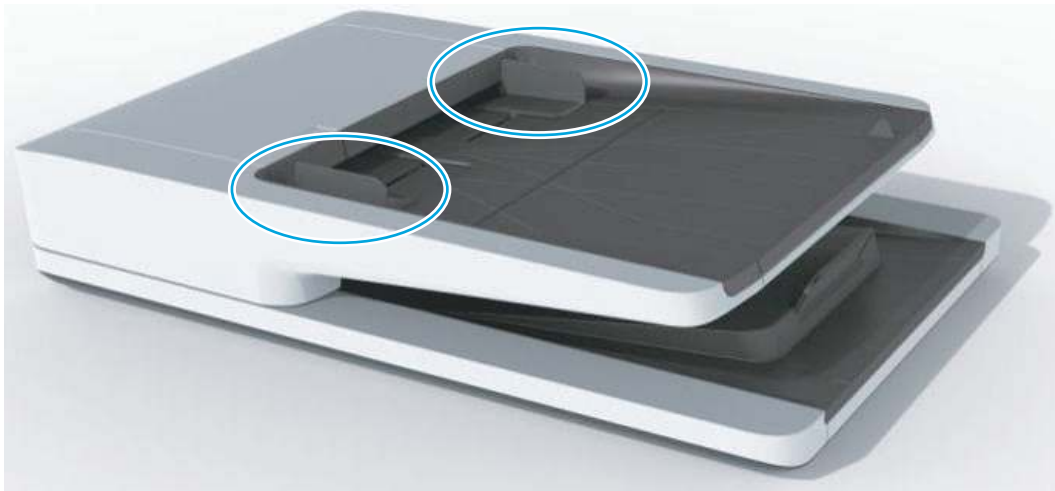
 **NOTE:** If the page to be copied is smaller than the minimal sliding guide setting, do not use the document feeder for the copy job. Attempting to copy too small of a page using the document feeder might result in document feeder jams and/or damage to the original page. Instead, use the flatbed glass to copy the page.

Figure 3-3 Document feeder side guides



Document feeder hinges

Review the following information about the document feeder hinges.

The document feeder hinges allow positioning the assembly vertically above the scanner glass to accommodate the placement of books and other objects up to 25 mm (1.0 in) in height on the scanner glass. The document feeder still closes (the bottom of the ADF is kept parallel to the scanner glass) and allows the printer to operate.

The document feeder will withstand a downward force of about 4.5 kg (10 lb) applied at the front edge center of the assembly—when the fulcrum (such as the spine of a book) is located anywhere on the scanner glass and parallel to its long axis—without breaking, deforming, detaching or experiencing performance degradation.

The document feeder hinges support the assembly in the open position and prevent the document feeder from suddenly closing and causing damage or a loud noise.

The hinges can hold the document feeder static in all positions higher than 100 mm (3.93 in); measured at the front of the assembly. Less than 2.3 kg (5 lb) of force is required to open or close the document feeder.

The hinges allow the document feeder to open to an angle of between 60° and 80° from the horizontal position (this angle will not allow the printer to tip over).

Figure 3-4 Document feeder open (book mode)

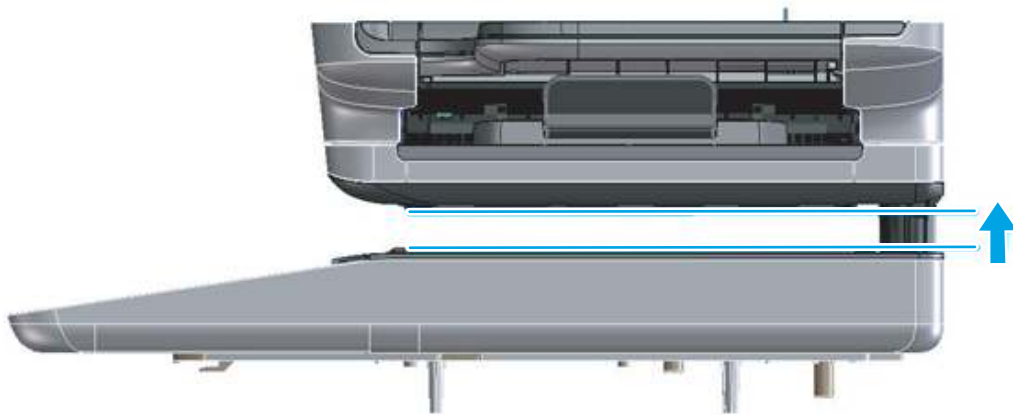


Figure 3-5 Document feeder open (60° to 80°)



Scanning and image capture system

Learn about the scanning and image capture system.

The scanner is a carriage-type platen scanner which includes the frame, glass, scan module, and a scan control board (SCB). The scanner has a sensor to detect legal-sized media and a switch to indicate when the document feeder is opened.

The document feeder and control panel are attached to the scanner. If the scanner fails, it can be replaced as a whole unit. The scanner replacement part does not include the document feeder, control panel, or SCB.

Base printer

Learn about the base printer components.

Basic operation

Learn about the basic operation of the printer.

The printer routes all high-level processes through the formatter, which stores font information, processes the print image, and communicates with the host computer.

The basic printer operation comprises the following systems:

- The engine-control system, which includes the power supply and the DC controller printed circuit assembly (PCA)
- The laser scanner system, which forms the latent image on the photosensitive drum
- The image-formation system, which transfers a toner image onto the paper
- The pickup, feed, and delivery system, which uses a system of rollers and belts to transport the paper through the printer
- Accessory (optional paper feeder)
- Integrated scanner assembly (document feeder and sub-scanner assembly)

Figure 3-6 Relationship between the main printer systems

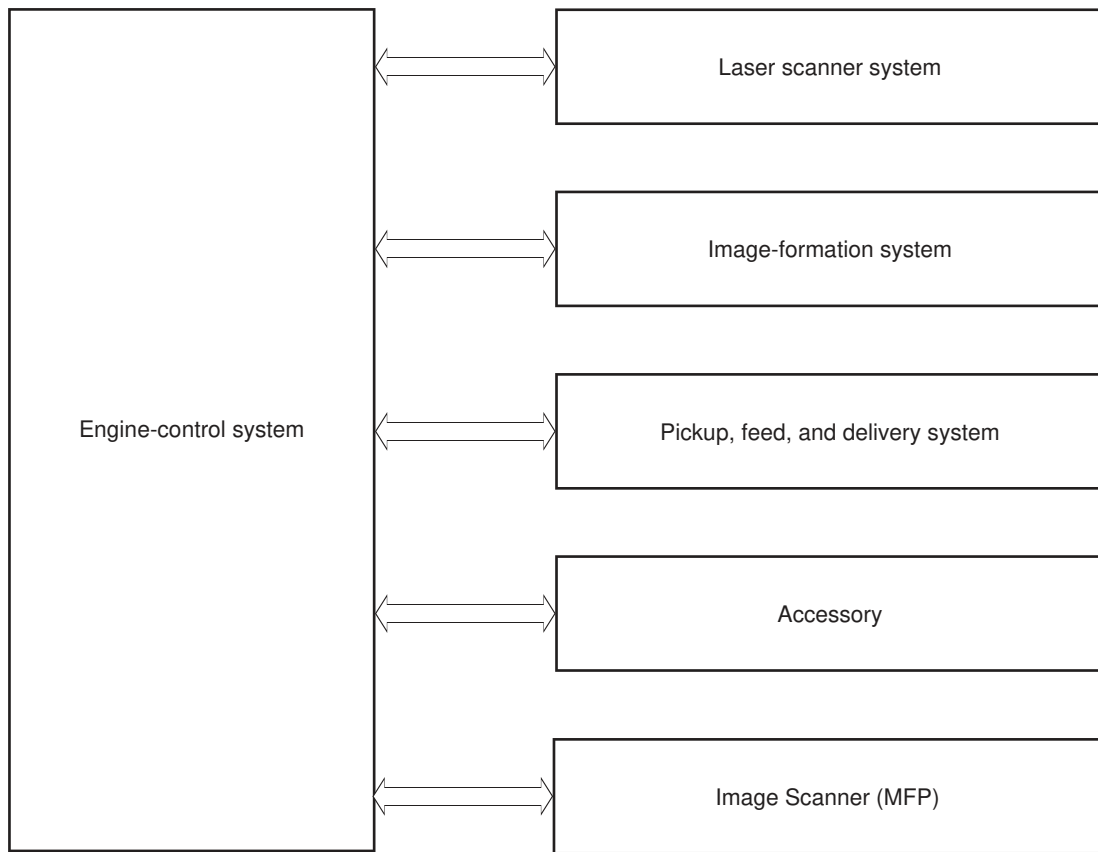
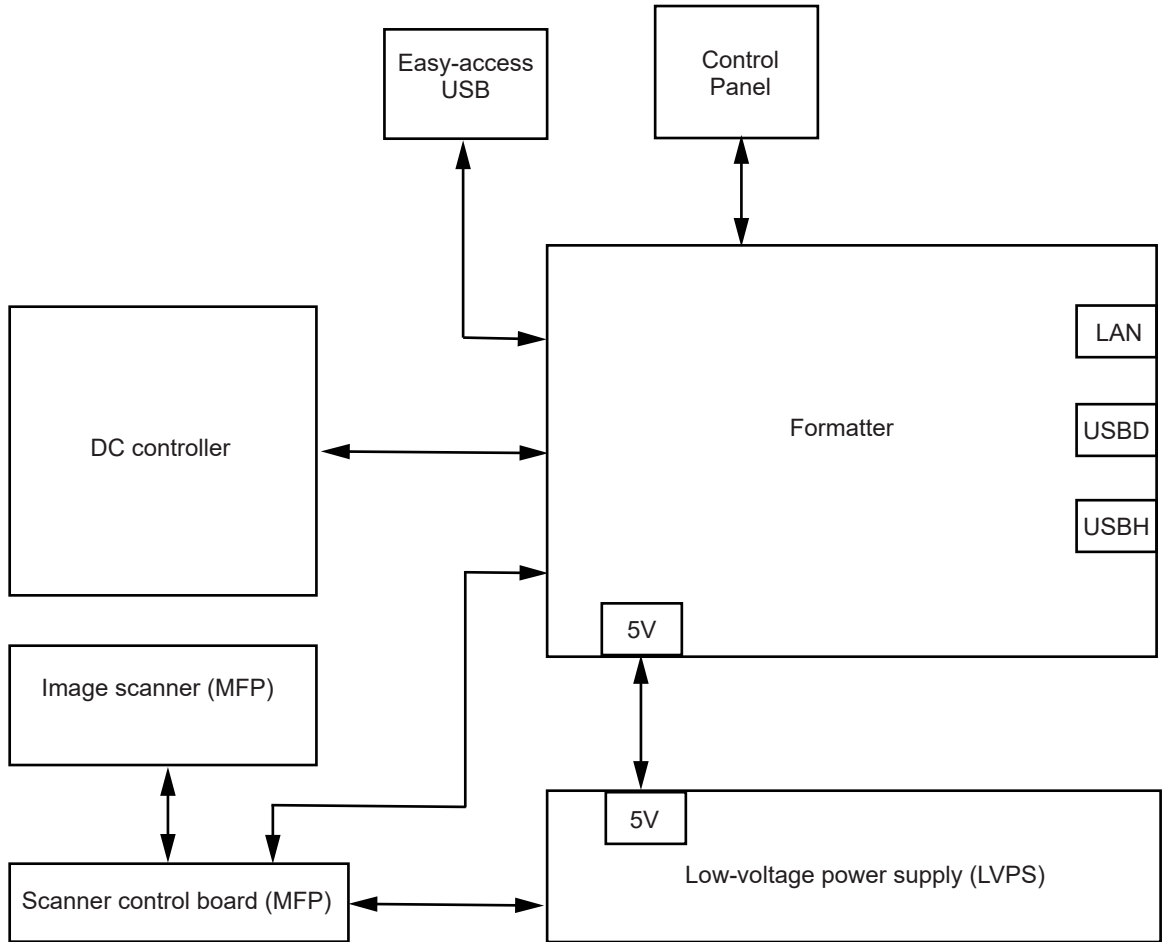


Figure 3-7 System block diagram



Sequence of operation

Learn how the DC controller PCA controls the printer operating sequence.

The DC controller PCA controls the operating sequence, as described in the following table.

Table 3-3 Sequence of operation

Period	Duration	Description
Waiting	From the time the power is turned on, the door is closed, or when the printer exits Sleep mode until the printer is ready for printing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Detects the fuser • Heats the fuser sleeve in the fuser • Pressurizes the pressure roller in the fuser • Detects the toner cartridges • Separates all of the developer rollers from the photosensitive drums • Separates all of the transfer rollers from the photosensitive drums • Rotates and stops each motor • Rotates and stops each fan • Detects the ITB • Cleans the ITB • Cleans the ITB secondary transfer roller
Standby	From the end of the waiting sequence or the last rotation, until the formatter receives a print command, or until the printer is turned off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is in the Ready state • Enters Sleep mode if the formatter sends the sleep command • Rotates and stops each fan • Calibrates the printer if the calibration command is sent
Initial rotation	From the time the formatter receives a print command until the paper enters the paper path.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rotates each motor • Rotates each fan • Activates the high-voltage power supply (high-voltage bias) • Prepares the laser/scanner unit • Warms the fuser to the correct temperature
Printing	From the time the first sheet of paper enters the paper path until the last sheet has passed through the fuser.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Forms the image on the photosensitive drums • Picks paper from the tray. • Transfers the toner to the paper • Fuses the toner image onto the paper

Table 3-3 Sequence of operation (continued)

Period	Duration	Description
Last rotation	From the time the last sheet of paper exits the fuser until the motors stop rotating.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Moves the last printed sheet into the output bin• Stops each motor• Stops each fan• Stops the high-voltage power supply (high-voltage bias)• Stops the laser/scanner unit• Turns the fuser heater off• If another print command is received, the printer enters the initial rotation period when the last rotation is complete.

Formatter-control system

Learn about how the formatter operates.

CAUTION: Under **NO** circumstances should a formatter from a different printer be installed during the repair or troubleshooting processes. The formatter stores important data specific to the model of printer it is installed in and is not deigned to be swapped or repurposed in any way. Return a used formatter to HP.

Issues that can occur from swapping a formatter include:

- Serial number, product number, product name, page count, and supported cartridges information change and might make a product unusable
- 33.02.01 Used board/Disk installed errors

If a used formatter is installed and causes this issue, the **partner** must cover the costs of the repair in the form of a product replacement. **There is no method in the field to recover a printer where a used formatter is installed.**

IMPORTANT: When a formatter PCA or DC controller is replaced a pairing operation must be completed to make the printer functional.


The formatter performs the following functions:

- Controls the sleep delay function
- Receives and processes print data from the various printer inputs
- Monitors control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel and the network or bi-directional interface
- Develops and coordinates data placement and timing with the DC controller PCA
- Stores customer configuration settings and paper types.
- Stores font information
- Communicates with the host computer through the network or the bidirectional interface

The formatter receives a print job from the network or bidirectional interface and separates it into image information and instructions that control the printing process. The DC controller PCA synchronizes the image formation system with the paper input and output systems, and then signals the formatter to send the print image data.

Power management

Learn about printer power management.


 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Power management conserves power after the printer has been idle for an adjustable length of time. When the printer is in sleep mode, the control-panel back-light is turned off, but the printer retains all printer settings, downloaded fonts, and macros. The setting can be modified or turned off from the control-panel menus.

The printer exits sleep mode and enters the warm-up cycle when any of the following occurs.


- A print job, valid data, or a PML or PJP command is received at the serial port.
- A print job or fax (fax models) is received.
- The control panel is touched (button press or touchscreen touch depending on model).
- A document is loaded in the document feeder (MFP only).
- Opening the scanner lid (model dependent).
- The power button is pressed for 3 seconds or less.
- Connecting an operational live network Ethernet cable or fax line (fax models).
- Inserting a USB drive in either the front USB port or the USB port on the back of the device.
- Connecting a USB cable to an operating computer.
- Opening the cartridge, front, or rear door (model dependent).

 **NOTE:** Opening a paper tray does not wake up the printer.

 **TIP:** Error messages override the sleep delay message. The printer enters sleep mode at the selected time, but the error message continues to appear.

Power management M552/M553/M554/M555/M577/M578/E55040/E57540

Learn about printer power management (all models).


 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

This topic includes power management features shared by the M552/M553/M554/M555/M577/M578/E55040/E57540 printers.


Set the sleep timer and configure the printer to use 1 watt or less of power

The sleep settings affect how much power the printer uses, the wake/sleep time, how quickly the printer enters sleep mode, and how quickly the printer wakes up from sleep mode.

To configure the printer to use 1 watt or less of power while in sleep mode, enter times for both the [Sleep after Inactivity](#) and [Auto Off after sleep](#) settings.

 **NOTE:** HP does not recommend using deep sleep settings if you have Security Solutions installed. In some situations, the printer does not wake from deep sleep. For additional information, contact your HP representative.


1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
 - a. [General](#)
 - b. [Energy Settings](#)
 - c. [Sleep Settings](#)
3. Select [Sleep after Inactivity](#) to specify the number of minutes the printer is inactive before it enters sleep mode. Enter the appropriate time period.
4. Select [Auto Off after sleep](#) to put the printer into a deeper power save mode after a period of sleep. Enter the appropriate time period.

 **NOTE:** By default, the printer will wake from Auto Off in response to any activity other than USB or Wi-Fi. For greater energy settings, you can set it to wake only to the power button by selecting [Shut down \(wake on power button only\)](#).

5. Select [Done](#) to save the settings.

Power management M577/M578/E55040/E57540

Learn about printer power management (M577/M578/E55040/E57540).

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

This topic includes power management features shared by the M577/M578/E55040/E57540 printers.

Set the sleep schedule


Use the [Sleep Schedule](#) feature to configure the printer to automatically wake or go into Sleep mode at specific times on specific days of the week.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, navigate to the [Settings](#) application, and then select the [Settings](#) icon.
2. Open the following menus:
 - a. [General](#)
 - b. [Energy Settings](#)

- c. [Sleep Schedule](#)
3. Select the [New Event](#) button, and then select the type of event to schedule: [Wake Event](#) or [Sleep Event](#).
4. For a wake or sleep event, configure the time and the days of the week for the event. Select [Save](#) to save the setting.

Power management E55040/E57540

Learn about printer power management (E55040/E57540).

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

This topic includes power management features shared by the E55040/E57540 printers.

Set the Sleep/Auto Off After Inactivity setting

Use the control panel menus to set the amount of idle time before the printer enters sleep mode.

Complete the following procedure to change the [Sleep/Auto Off After](#) setting:

1. On the printer control panel, open the [Setup](#) menu.
2. Open the following menus:
 - a. [System Setup](#)
 - b. [Energy Settings](#)
 - c. [Sleep/Auto Off After](#)
3. Use the arrow keys to select the time for the [Sleep/Auto Off After](#) delay, and then press the [OK](#) button.

Set the Delay Shut Down setting

Use the control panel menus to select whether or not the printer delays shutting down after the power button is pressed.

Complete the following procedure to change the [Delay Shut Down](#) setting:

1. On the printer control panel, open the [Setup](#) menu.
2. Open the following menus:
 - a. [System Setup](#)
 - b. [Energy Settings](#)
 - c. [Delay Shut Down](#)
3. Select one of the delay options:
 - [No Delay](#): The printer shuts down after a period of inactivity determined by the [Delay Shut Down](#) setting.
 - [When Ports Are Active](#): When this option is selected the printer will not shut down unless all ports are inactive. An active network link or fax connection will prevent the printer from shutting down.

Power management M552/M553/M554/M555/M577

Learn about printer power management (M552/M553/M554/M555/M577).



IMPORTANT: The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

This topic includes power management features shared by the M552/M553/M554/M555/M577 printers.



TIP: For firmware versions prior to FutureSmart 4, the **Idle Settings** feature described in this section is termed **Optimum Speed/Energy Usage** (**Administration** > **General Settings** > **Energy Settings** > **Optimum Speed/Energy Usage**)

Set the idle settings

This setting affects energy use while the product is idle, not while in Sleep Mode. **Start faster** results in a quicker first-page-out time, but uses more power. **Save energy** conserves power, but could result in a slower first-page-out time.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, open the **Settings** menu.
2. Open the following menus:
 - a. **General**
 - b. **Energy Settings**
 - c. **Idle Settings**
3. Adjust the slider, and then select **Done** to save the setting.

Printer job language (PJM)

Learn about printer job language (PJM).

PJM is an integral part of printer configuration, in addition to the standard PCL and PostScript (PS). With standard cabling, the printer can use PJM to perform a variety of functions.

- **Dynamic I/O switching:** The printer can be configured with a host on each I/O by using dynamic I/O switching. Even when the printer is offline, it can receive data from more than one I/O simultaneously, until the I/O buffer is full.
- **Context-sensitive switching:** The printer can automatically recognize the personality (PS or PCL) of each job and configure itself to serve that personality.
- **Isolation of print environment settings from one print job to the next:** For example, if a print job is sent to the printer in landscape mode, the subsequent print jobs print in landscape only if they are formatted for landscape printing.

Printer management language (PML)


Learn about printer management language (PML)

PML allows remote configuration of the printer and status read-back from the printer through the I/O ports.

Control panel

Learn about the control panel.

The formatter sends and receives printer status and command data to and from the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The 10.9 cm (4.37 in) and 20.3 cm (8.0 in) control panels have a diagnostic mode to allow testing of the touchscreen, [Home](#) button, and speaker. The control panels do not require calibration.

SFP printers

- M552/M553
6.85 cm (2.7 in) four-line color display with numeric keypad and additional buttons for navigating control-panel menus.
- M554
6.9 cm (2.7 in) QVGA LCD color control panel with numeric keypad.
- M553X/M555/E55040
10.9 cm (4.37 in) full-color SVGA with infrared touchscreen and adjustable viewing angle.

MFP printers

- M577/M578/E57540
20.3 cm (8.0 in) full-color SVGA with infrared touchscreen and adjustable viewing angle.

Walk-up USB

Learn about the walk-up USB function.

 **NOTE:** Touchscreen models only.

This printer features printing from a USB flash drive. This printer supports printing the following types of files from the USB flash drive.

- .pdf
- .jpg
- .prn and .PRN
- .pcl and .PCL
- ps and .PS
- doc and .docx
- .ppt and .pptx

When a USB flash drive is inserted into the front of the printer, the control panel will display the [USB Flash Drive menu](#). The files present on the USB flash drive can be accessed from the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The USB flash drive must be formatted using the FAT32 format. Drives formatted with NTFS will not work.

Any files in a supported format on the USB flash drive can be printed directly from the printer control panel. Pages also can be scanned and saved to the USB flash drive from the control panel.

Wireless

Learn about the wireless feature.

The M553x, M555x, M577z, M578z, and E55040 models contain a wireless card to enable wireless direct printing over a 802.11b/g/n wireless connection.

Near field communication (NFC)

Learn about the NFC feature.

The M553x, M577z, and E55040dw models support NFC capabilities. NFC enables a connection between the printer and a mobile device, such as a smart phone or tablet, by touching the device to the NFC icon on the bottom of the control panel. Documents and images from the mobile device can then be printed through the wireless card on the printer.

Low end data model (LEDM) overview

Learn about the low-end data model (LEDM).

The low-end data model (LEDM) provides one consistent data representation method and defines the dynamic and capabilities tickets shared between clients and devices, as well as the access protocol, event, security, and discovery methods.

CPU

Learn about the printer microprocessor.

The formatter incorporates a 1.2 GHz processor.

Input/output (I/O)

Learn about printer I/O functionality.



NOTE: Some of the following printer I/O functions are model specific. For example, not all printer models have a fax function.

Universal serial bus (USB)

The printer includes a USB 2.0 connection.

Universal serial bus (USB) hosts

The printer includes USB hosts for USB flash drive and job storage.

10/100/1000 networking

The printer includes a 10/100/1000 network (Ethernet) connection.

Fax

The printer includes a fax phone line connection.



NOTE: For some fax model printers, the telephone extension port is plugged and not operational.

Walk-up USB

The port is located on or near the control panel.



NOTE: Model specific feature.

Wireless

Wireless products contain a wireless card to enable 802.11 b/g/n wireless communication with dual band support for 2.4GHz and 5 GHz.



NOTE: Wireless models only.

Memory

Learn about printer memory functionality.



NOTE: Some of the following printer memory functions are model specific. For example, not all printer models have Flash memory.

Firmware

The formatter stores the printer firmware. A remote firmware upgrade process is used to overwrite and upgrade the firmware.



NOTE: For more information about a specific printer model, see the *Printer information, configurations, and specifications* section in the service manual.

Nonvolatile random access memory (NVRAM)

The printer uses nonvolatile memory (NVRAM) to store I/O and information about the print environment configuration. The contents of NVRAM are retained when the printer is turned off or disconnected.

Flash memory

NAND: Stores fax memory.

Random access memory

The printer uses the following RAM:

- SFP: 1.0 GB
- MFP: 1.75 GB

HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt)

The HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) effectively doubles the standard memory through a variety of font- and data-compression methods.



NOTE: MEt is available only in PCL mode; it is not functional when printing in PS mode.

Engine-control system

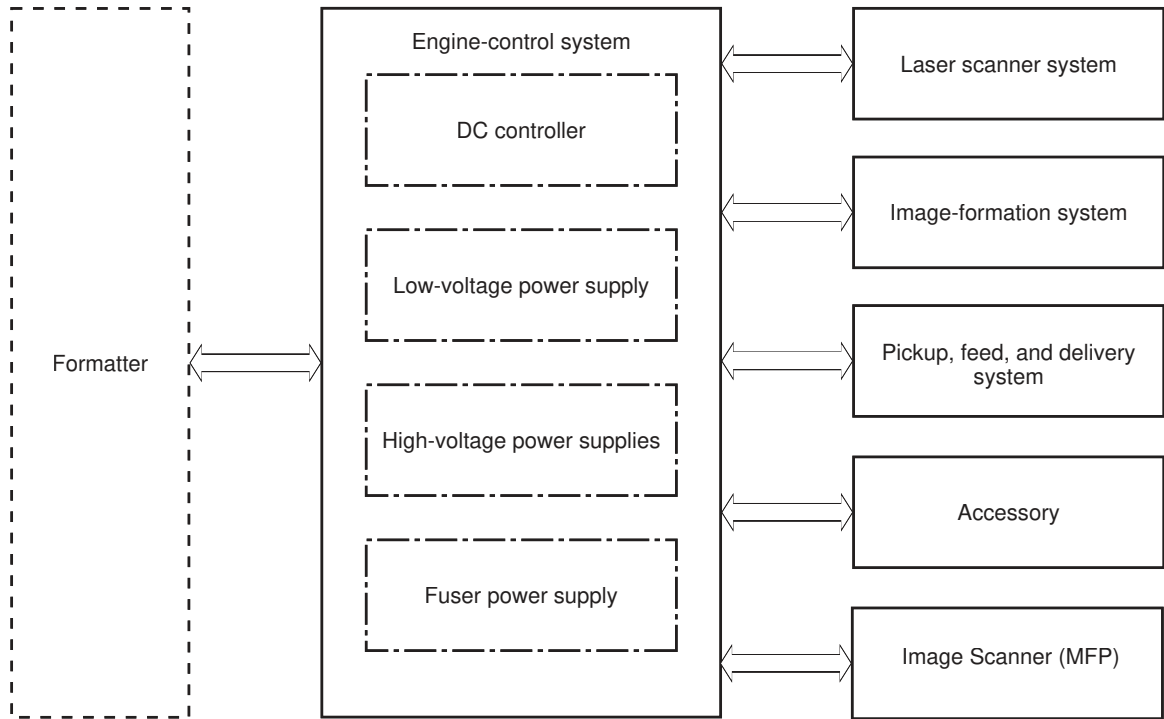
Learn about the engine control system.

The engine-control system receives commands from the formatter and interacts with the other main systems to coordinate all printer functions. The engine-control system consists of the following components:

- DC controller

- Low-voltage power supply (LVPS; one unit)
- High-voltage power supplies (HVPS; two units)
- Fuser power supply (FPS; one unit)

Figure 3-8 Engine-control system

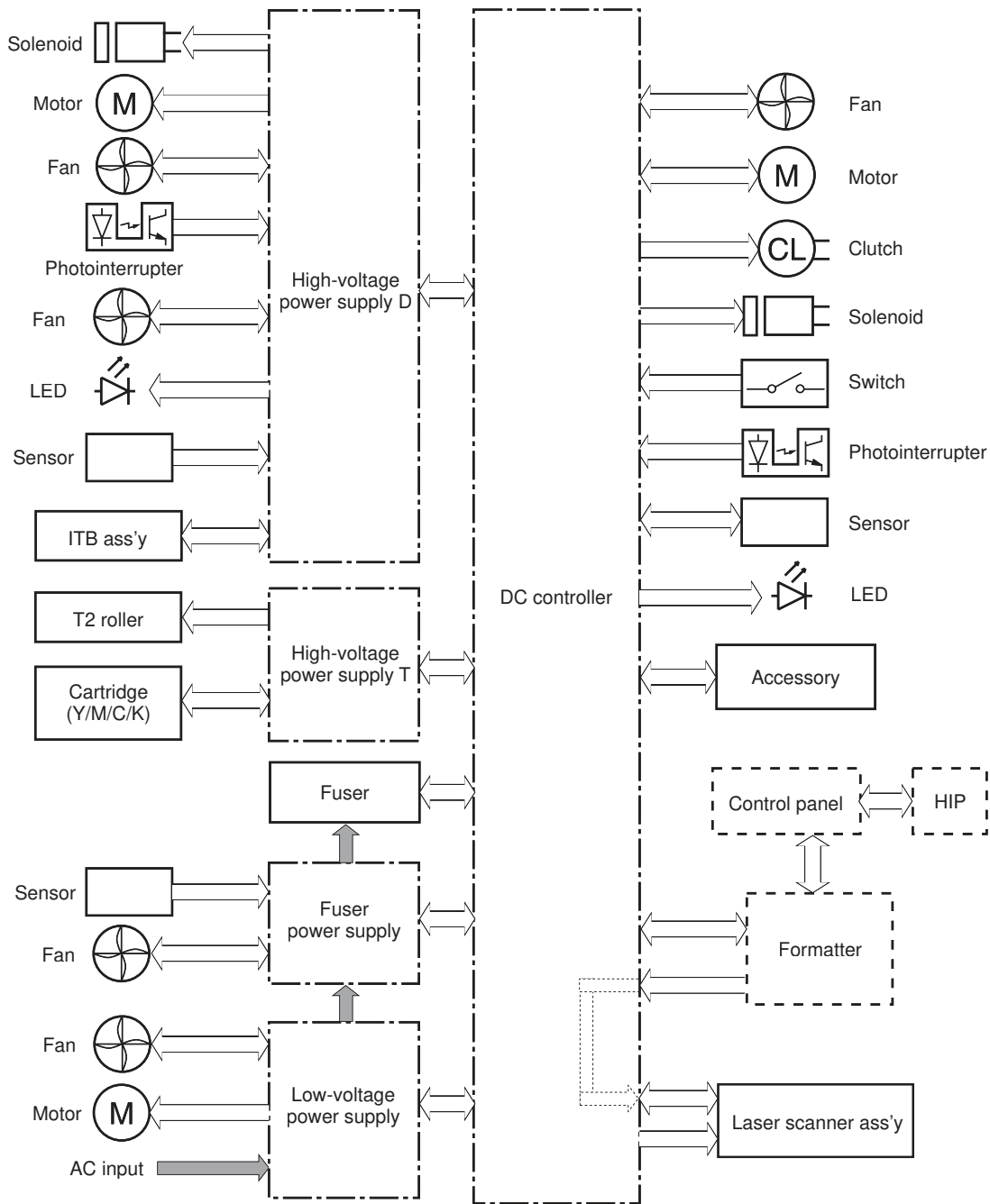


DC controller

Learn about the DC controller.

The DC controller controls the operation of the printer and its components. The DC controller starts the printer operation when the printer power is turned on and the power supply sends DC voltage to the DC controller. After the printer enters the standby period, the DC controller sends out various signals to operate motors, solenoids, and other printer components based on the print command and image data that the host computer sends.

Figure 3-9 DC controller block diagram



Motors

Learn about the printer motors.

The printer has eight motors. The motors drive the components in the paper-feed and image-formation systems.

The DC controller monitors the fuser motor; the scanner motor, and drum motors 1, 2, and 3 to determine if a motor has failed. It notifies the formatter when it encounters the following conditions:

- Start-up failure: the motor does not reach a specified speed within a specified time from when the motor starts.
- Rotational failure: the rotational speed of the motor is not in the specified range for a specified time after the motor reaches a specified speed.

Table 3-4 Motors

Abbreviation	Name	Purpose	Failure detection	Part number
M1	Drum motor 1	Drives the yellow photosensitive drum, yellow developing roller, and magenta developing roller	Yes	Drum motor (RM2-0078-000CN)
M2	Drum motor 2	Drives the magenta photosensitive drum, cyan photosensitive drum, and cyan developing roller	Yes	Drum motor (RM2-0078-000CN)
M3	Drum motor 3	Drives the black photosensitive drum, black developing roller, and ITB	Yes	Drum motor (RM2-0078-000CN)
M4	Fuser motor	Drives the pressure roller and delivery roller; the pressurization and release of the pressure roller; and the engagement and disengagement of the primary and secondary transfer rollers	Yes	Fuser drive assembly (RM2-0009-010CN; M552dn, M553dn, M553x, E55040, M577, E57540) (RM2-0091-010CN; M553n)
M5	Pickup motor	Drives the registration roller, Tray 1 pickup roller, Tray 2 pickup roller, and Tray 2 feed roller	No	Paper pickup drive assembly (RM2-0008-000CN)
M6	Developer disengagement motor	Drives the engagement and disengagement of the developing rollers	No	Stepping motor (RK2-6027-000CN)
M7	Scanner motor	Drives the scanner mirror	Yes	Laser scanner assembly (RM2-6545-010CN)
M8	Duplex reverse motor (duplex models only)	Drives the duplex reverse roller	No	Duplex drive assembly (RM2-0006-000CN)

Fans

Learn about the printer fans.

The printer has four fans for preventing the temperature from rising in the printer and for cooling the printed pages.

The DC controller determines if there is a fan failure and notifies the formatter if the fan locks for a specified time from when the fan starts.

Table 3-5 Fans

Abbreviation	Name	Cooling area	Type	Speed	Part number
FM1	Power supply fan	LVPS	Intake	Full/half	Fan (RK2-2416-010CN)
FM2	Cartridge fan	Toner cartridges	Intake	Full	Fan (RK2-6124-000CN)
FM3	Delivery fan	Output tray and fuser area	Exhaust	Full/half	Fan (RK2-2728-000CN)
FM4	Fuser fan	Fuser	Exhaust	Full/half	Fan (RK2-2418-000CN)

Solenoids

Learn about the printer solenoids.

Table 3-6 Solenoids

Abbreviation	Name
SL1	Primary transfer roller disengagement solenoid
SL2	Tray 1 pickup solenoid
SL3	Duplex reverse solenoid (duplex models only)

Clutches

Learn about the printer clutches.

Table 3-7 Clutches

Abbreviation	Name
CL1	Tray 2 pickup clutch
CL2	Duplex re-pickup clutch (duplex models only)

Switches

Learn about the printer switches.

Table 3-8 Switches

Abbreviation	Name	Part number
SW1	24V interlock switch	Interlock switch cable assembly (RM2-7206-000CN; not available)
SW3	Right door switch	Switch button (WC2-5806-000CN)
SW4	Power supply switch	Lever, switch (RC4-0131-000CN; not available)
SW5	Tray 2 detection switch	Switch button (WC2-5806-000CN)
SW1001	Test print switch	Not available

Sensors

Learn about the printer sensors.

Table 3-9 Sensors

Abbreviation	Name	Part number
PS1	Loop sensor	Not available
SE1	Media sensor	Registration assembly <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RM2-0093-000CN (M553n) • RM2-0018-000CN (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M557, M558, E55040, E57540)
SR1	Drum home position sensor 1	Not available
SR2	Drum home position sensor 2	Not available
SR3	Drum home position sensor 3	Not available
SR4	Developing home position sensor	Not available
SR5	Primary transfer roller disengagement sensor	Estrangement detect PCA assembly (RM2-7157-000CN)
SR6	Top-of-page (TOP) sensor (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M557, M558, E55040, E57540)	Not available
SR6N	Top-of-page (TOP) sensor (M553n)	Not available
SR8	Tray 1 media-out sensor	Not available
SR9	Fuser delivery sensor	Not available
SR10	Output bin media-full sensor	Not available
SR11	Fuser pressure release sensor	Photointerrupter (WG8-5953-000CN; not available)
SR12	Tray 2 media-out sensor	Not available
SR13	Media width sensor, front (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M557, M558, E55040, E57540)	Not available
SR13N	Media width sensor, front (M553n)	Not available
SR14	Media width sensor, rear (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M557, M558, E55040, E57540)	Not available
SR14N	Media width sensor, rear (M553n)	Not available
	Registration density sensor	Density detect assembly (RM2-7160-000CN)
	Environment sensor (temperature and humidity)	Environment sensor PCA (RM2-7154-000CN)
	Yellow toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)
	Magenta toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)

Table 3-9 Sensors (continued)

Abbreviation	Name	Part number
	Cyan toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)
	Black toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)
	Residual toner collection unit full sensor	Waste toner detect PCA (RM2-7130-000CN)
	Pre-exposure LED 1-3	Pre-exposure PCA (RM2-7168-000CN)
	Pre-exposure LED 4	Pre-exposure PCA (RM2-7169-000CN)

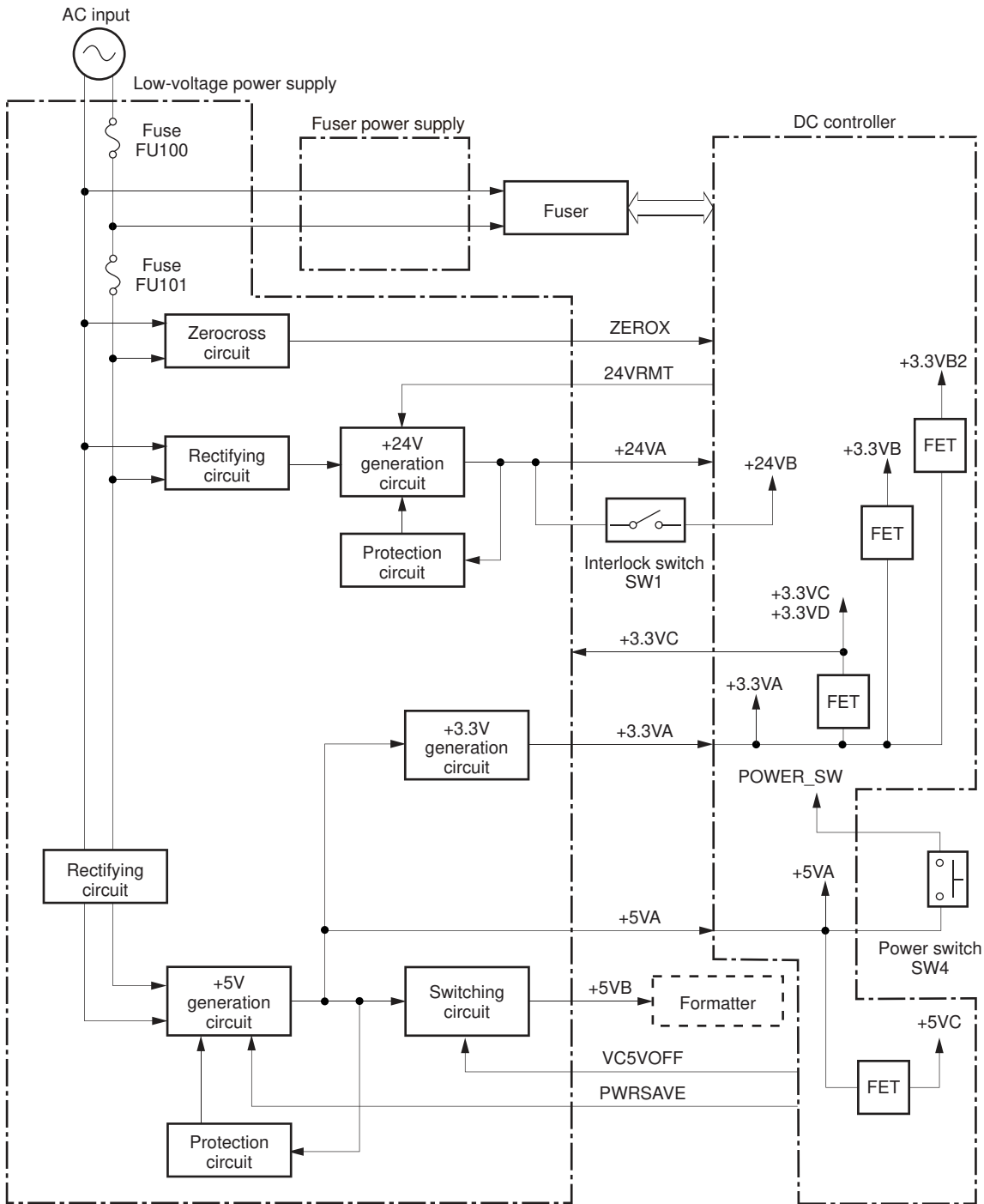
Low-voltage power supply

Learn about the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

The low-voltage power-supply (LVPS) circuit converts the AC power from the wall receptacle into the DC voltages used by the printer components.



IMPORTANT: Make sure to plug the printer into the correct power source (110/220V).



Low-voltage power supply voltages description

Learn about LVPS voltages.

The low-voltage power supply converts the AC power into three DC voltages, which it then subdivides, as described in the following table.

Table 3-10 Converted DC voltages

Main DC voltage	Sub-voltage	Behavior
+24 V	+24 VA	Constantly supplied Stopped during active OFF or inactive OFF
+24 V	+24 VB	Interrupted when the right door is open (SW1)
+24 V	+24 VC	Interrupted when the right door is open (SW1)
+5 V	+5 VA	Constantly supplied
+5 V	+5 VB	Constantly supplied
+5 V	+5 VC	Constantly supplied Stopped during active OFF or inactive OFF
+3.3 V	+3.3 VA	Constantly supplied
+3.3 V	+3.3 VB	Constantly supplied Stopped during inactive OFF
+3.3 V	+3.3 VC	Constantly supplied Stopped during active OFF or inactive OFF
+3.3 V	+3.3 VD	Constantly supplied Stopped during active OFF or inactive OFF

Over-current/over-voltage protection

Learn about LVPS protections.

The low-voltage power supply automatically stops supplying the DC voltage to the printer components whenever it detects excessive current or abnormal voltage. The low-voltage power supply has a protective circuit against over-current and over-voltage to prevent failures in the power supply circuit.

⚠ CAUTION: If DC voltage is not being supplied from the low-voltage power supply, the protective function might be running. In this case, turn the power switch off and unplug the power cord.

Do not turn the power switch on until the root cause is found and corrected.

If the protective function is active, the DC controller notifies the formatter of a low-voltage power supply failure. In addition, the low-voltage power supply has two fuses to protect against over-current. If over-current flows into the AC line, the fuse stops the AC power.

Low-voltage power supply failure detection

Learn about LVPS failure detection.

The DC controller determines a low-voltage power supply failure and notifies the formatter when the low-voltage power supply does not supply +24 V.

Low-voltage power supply functions

Learn about LVPS functions.

The printer has the following low-voltage power supply functions.

Table 3-11 Low-voltage power supply functions

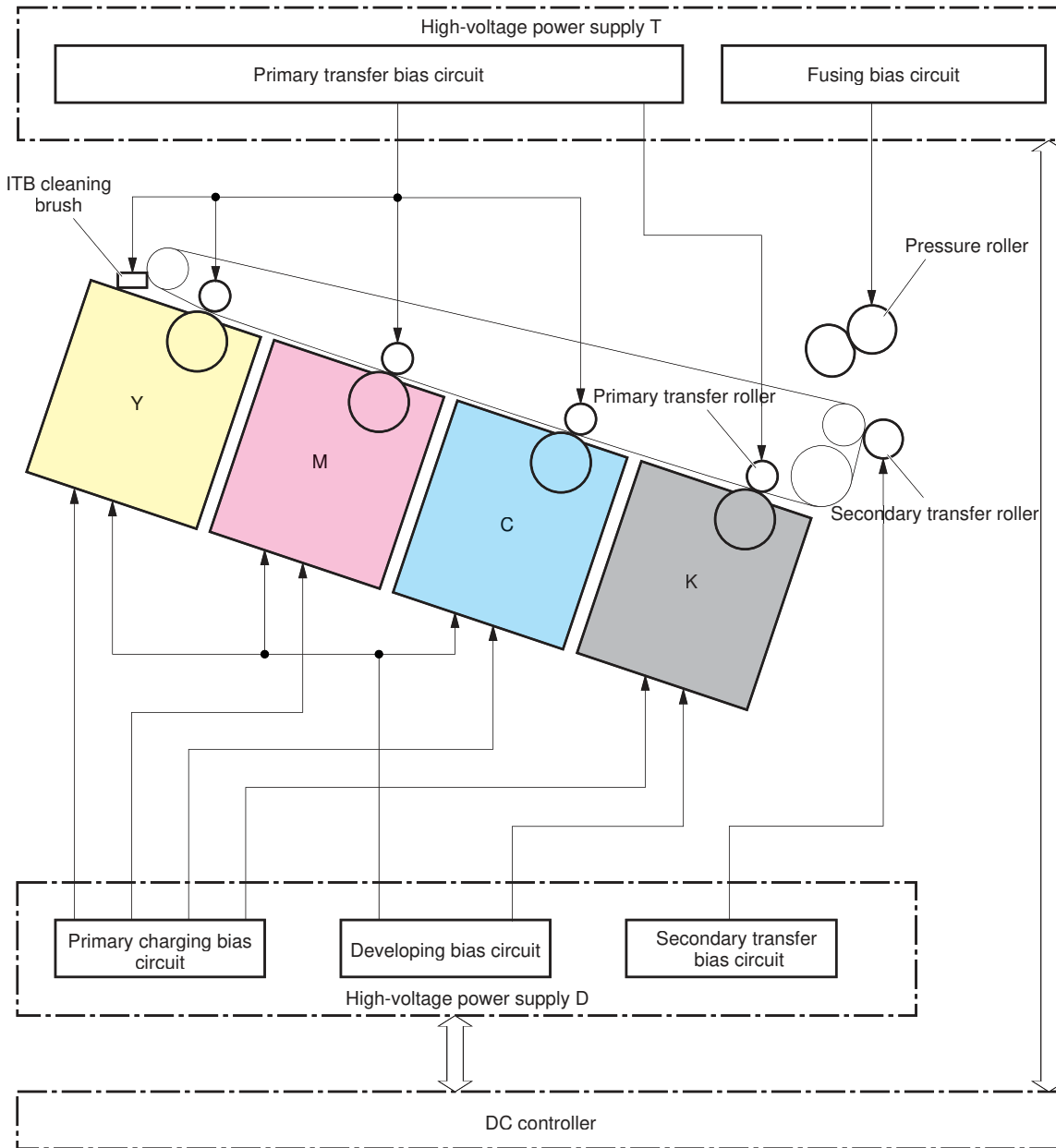
Function	Supported feature
Sleep mode	Yes
Power supply voltage detection	Yes
Automatic power OFF	Yes
Automatic power ON/OFF	Yes
Active OFF	Yes
Inactive OFF	Yes
Network mode	No
Power switch illumination	Yes
Low-voltage power supply failure detection	Yes
Power save mode	No

High-voltage power supply

Learn about the high-voltage power supply (HVPS).

The DC controller controls the high-voltage power supply (HVPS) to generate biases. The high-voltage power supply delivers the high-voltage biases to the following components used to transfer toner during the image-formation process:

- Primary charging roller (in the toner cartridges)
- Developing roller (in the toner cartridges)
- Primary transfer roller
- Secondary transfer roller
- Pressure roller
- ITB cleaning brush



High-voltage power supply circuits

Learn about HVPS circuits.

The high-voltage power supply contains the following separate circuits.

- **Primary-charging-bias generation**

The primary charging bias negatively charges the surface of the photosensitive drum to prepare for image formation.

- **Developing-bias generation**

The developing bias adheres toner to an electrostatic latent image formed on the photosensitive drums.

- **Primary-transfer-bias generation**

The primary transfer bias transfers the toner from each photosensitive drum onto the ITB.

- **Secondary-transfer-bias generation**

The positive secondary transfer bias transfers the toner image from the ITB onto the paper. The negative bias transfers residual toner on the secondary transfer roller back to the ITB. The residual toner on the ITB is deposited in the toner collection unit.

Fuser bias

Learn about HVPS fuser bias.

The printer uses instant-on fusing. The fuser bias is DC positive for improved print quality. The fuser bias circuit is located in the high-voltage power supply, HVPS (T).

Fuser control

Learn about fuser control operation.

The DC controller and components in the fuser perform the following functions related to fuser operation:

- Control fuser temperature
- Detect fuser failures
- Prevent excessive temperature rise
- Detect remaining life in the fuser
- Determine if the correct fuser is installed

Fuser circuits

Learn about fuser circuits.

The fuser heater control circuit and the fuser heater safety circuit control the fuser temperature according to commands from the DC controller. The fuser consists of the following major components:

Figure 3-10 Fuser components

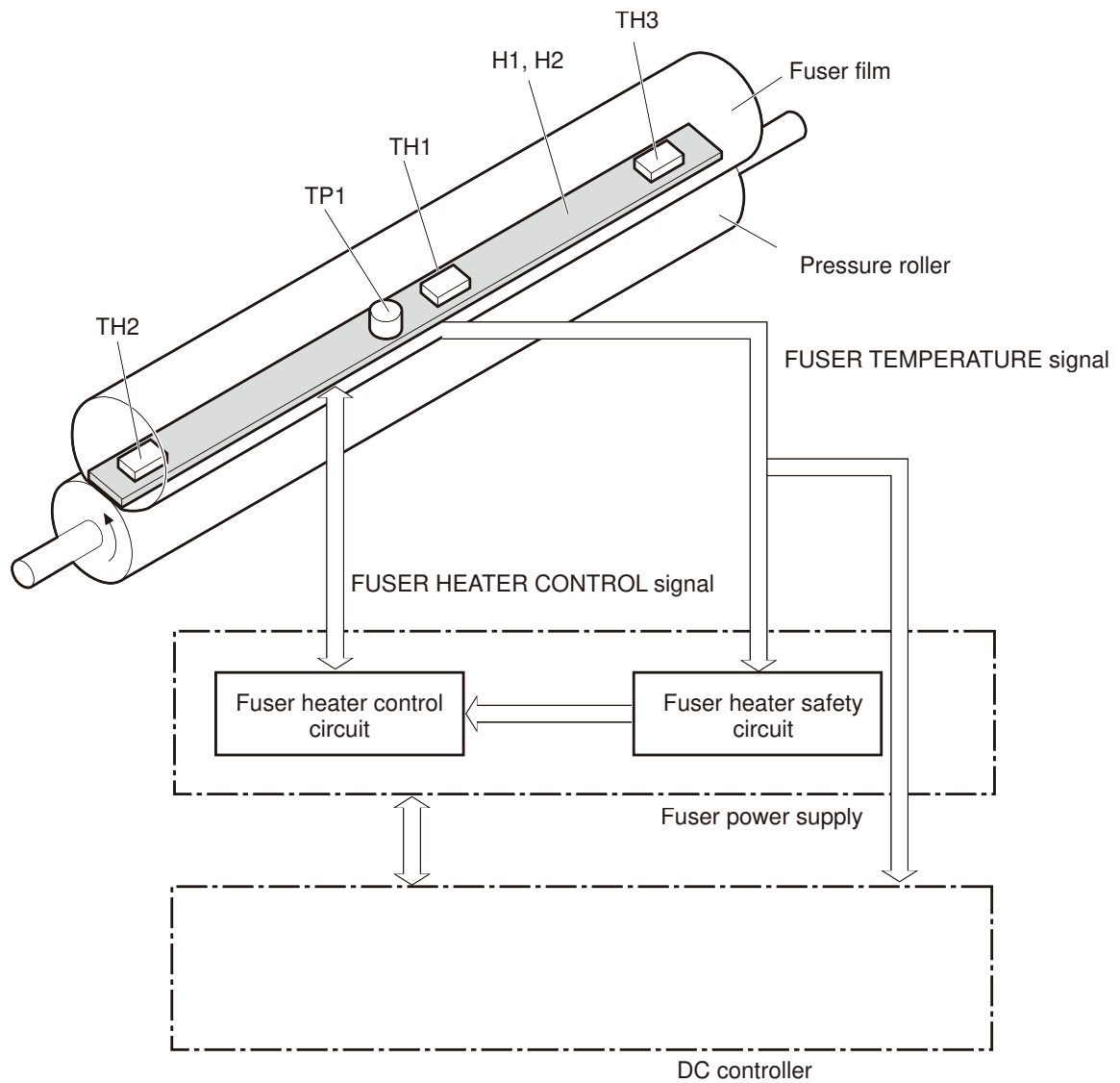


Table 3-12 Fuser components

Component	Abbreviation	Name	Function
Heater	H1	Fuser main heater	Heats the center of the fuser sleeve
Heater	H2	Fuser sub-heater	Heats the edge of the fuser sleeve
Thermistor (captive type)	TH1	Main thermistor	Detects the center temperature of the fuser heater
Thermistor (captive type)	TH2	Sub-thermistor 1	Detects the temperature at one end of the fuser heater
Thermistor (captive type)	TH3	Sub-thermistor 2	Detects the temperature at one end of the fuser heater

Table 3-12 Fuser components (continued)

Component	Abbreviation	Name	Function
Thermoswitch (non-captive type)	TP1	Thermoswitch	Prevents an abnormal temperature rise in the fuser heater

Fuser control functions

Learn about fuser control functions.

The printer has the following fuser control functions.

Table 3-13 Fuser control functions

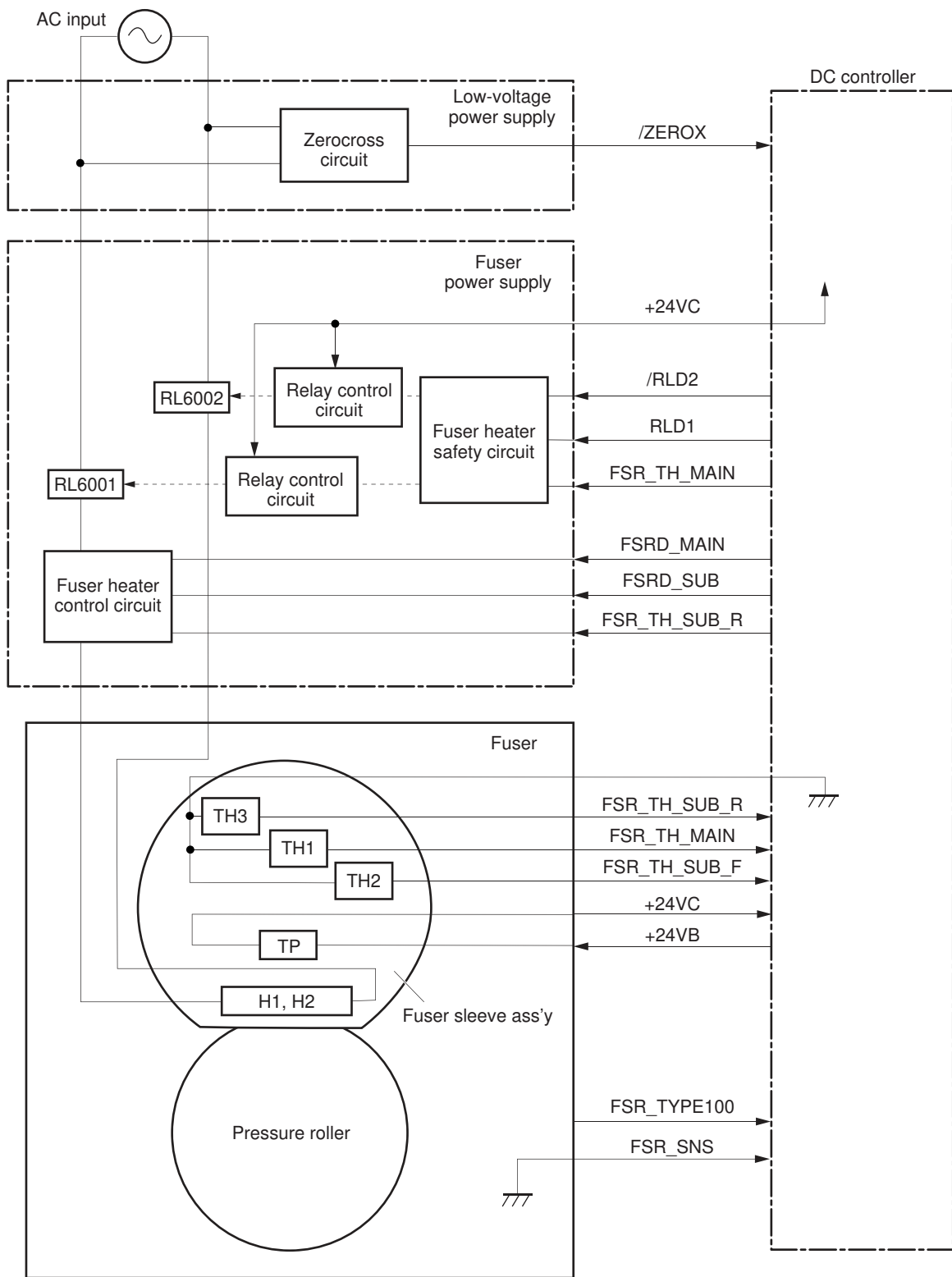
Function	Supported feature
Fuser temperature control	Yes
Fuser failure detection	Yes
Frequency detection circuit failure detection	Yes
Fuser pressure release mechanism failure detection	Yes
Fuser type discrepancy detection	Yes
Fuser type identification detection	Yes
Fuser presence detection	Yes
Fuser life detection	Yes
Relay failure detection	No
Pressure roller cleaning	Yes

Fuser temperature control

Learn about fuser temperature control.

The temperatures of the two rollers in the fuser fluctuate according to the stage of the printing process. The DC controller sends commands to the fuser-control circuit to adjust temperatures.

Figure 3-11 Fuser temperature-control circuit



Fuser heater protection

Learn about fuser heater protection.

Fuser heater protection is a feature that detects excessive temperatures in the fuser and interrupts the power supply to the fuser heater.

The following three protective components prevent the fuser heater from excessive rising temperature:

- **DC controller**

When a thermistor or sub-thermistor detects a temperature above a certain threshold, the DC controller interrupts power to the specific heater.

- **Fuser-heater safety circuit**

The fuser heater safety circuit monitors the detected temperature of the sub-thermistors.

- **Thermoswitch**

If the temperature in the heaters is abnormally high, and the temperature in the thermoswitch exceeds a specified value, the contact to the thermoswitch breaks.

Fuser unit life detection

Learn about fuser unit life detection.

Fuser life is tracked by fuser rotations, and not by the number of pages printed. This is the most accurate tracking method since the fuser rotates for every print job.

Variations in fuser life depend on customer usage. Customers who are running one- and two-page intermittent jobs with long pauses between each job might reach the fuser low message sooner due to the fuser rotating more times per page than it would for larger print jobs.



NOTE: For more information, see [HP LaserJet Enterprise - How to obtain the status of the maintenance kit.](#)

Fuser identification

Learn about fuser unit life detection.

The printer detects the type and presence of the fuser. The DC controller notifies the formatter when it fails to detect the type or presence of the fuser.



NOTE: This printer detects if a fuser of the correct voltage for the printer is installed. If a fuser of the incorrect voltage is installed, the DC controller notifies the formatter and an error message is displayed on the control panel.

Engine laser/scanner system

Learn about the engine laser/scanner system.

The laser/scanner system forms the latent electrostatic image on the photosensitive drums inside the toner cartridges.

The DC controller receives instructions from the formatter regarding the image of the page to be printed. The DC controller signals the lasers to emit light, and the laser beams pass through lenses and onto the scanner mirror, which rotates at a constant speed. The mirror reflects the beam onto the photosensitive drum in the pattern required for the image, exposing the surface of the drum so it can receive toner.

The main components of the laser/scanner system are the laser assembly and the scanner motor assembly.


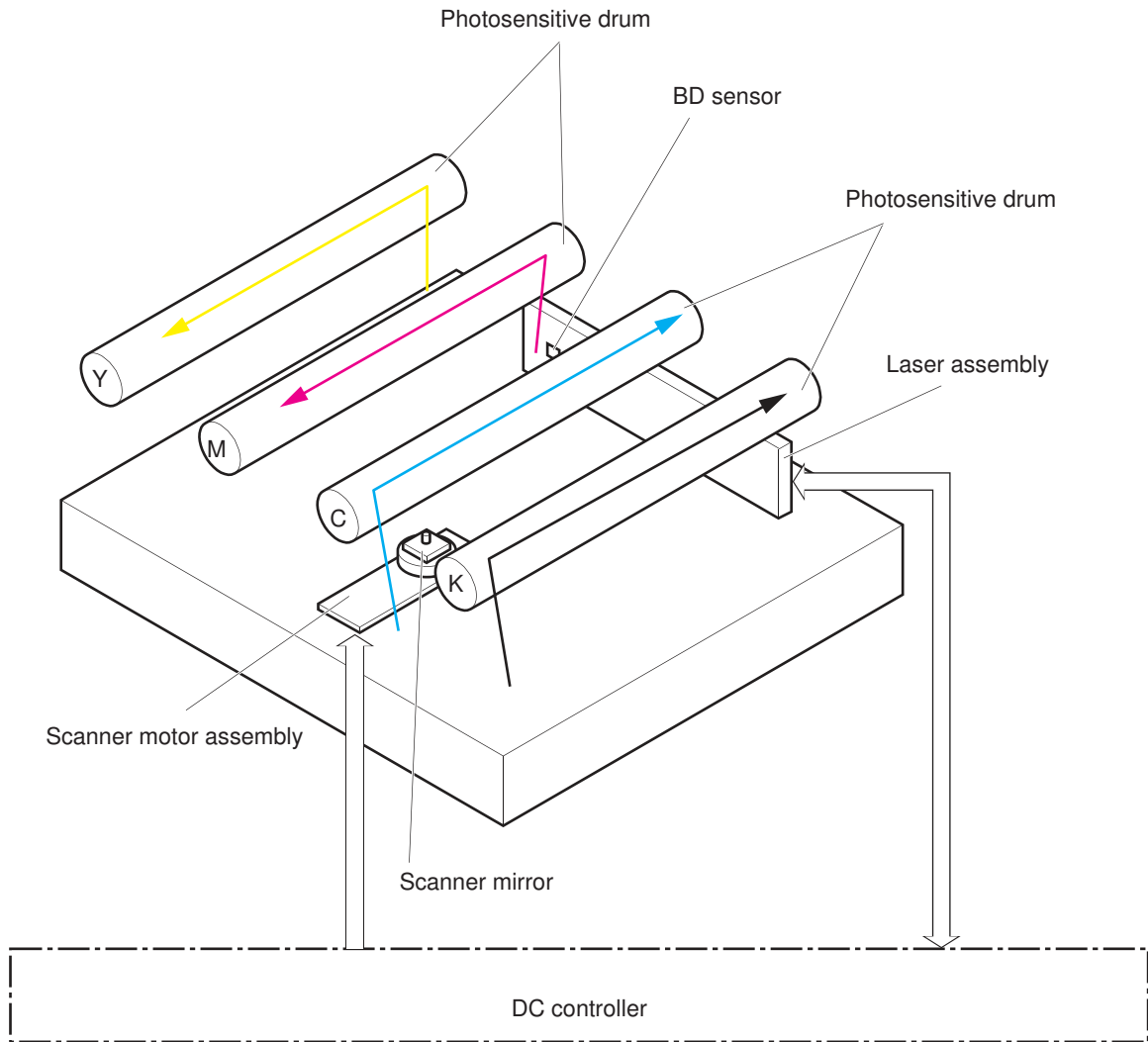
 **NOTE:** The printer has one laser/scanner assembly for yellow, magenta, cyan and black which are controlled by signals sent from the DC controller.

Figure 3-12 Laser/scanner system



Laser/scanner failure detection

Learn about laser/scanner failure detection.

The DC controller determines an optical unit failure and notifies the formatter of the error status when any of the following occurs:

Laser scanner failure detection

- **Laser/scanner motor startup failure**

The scanner motor does not reach a specified rotation frequency within a specified period of time from when the laser/scanner starts up.

- **Laser/scanner motor abnormal rotation**

The laser/scanner motor does not reach a specified rotational frequency within a specified period of time during a print operation.

Safety

Learn about laser/scanner safety.

The laser/scanner assembly has a mechanical laser shutter. For the safety of users and service technicians, the laser shutter interrupts the optical path of the laser/scanner assembly when the top door is opened (SW101).

Image-formation process

Learn about the image-formation process.

The image-formation system creates the printed image on the paper. The system consists of the following components:

- Toner cartridges
- Intermediate Transfer Belt (ITB)
- Primary transfer roller
- Secondary transfer (T2) roller
- Fuser
- Laser/scanner assembly
- High-voltage power supply D
- High-voltage power supply T

The DC Controller controls the internal components of the image formation system (according to commands received from the formatter) to form the toner images on the photosensitive drum surfaces. The toner images are then transferred to the print media and fused.

Figure 3-13 Image-formation system

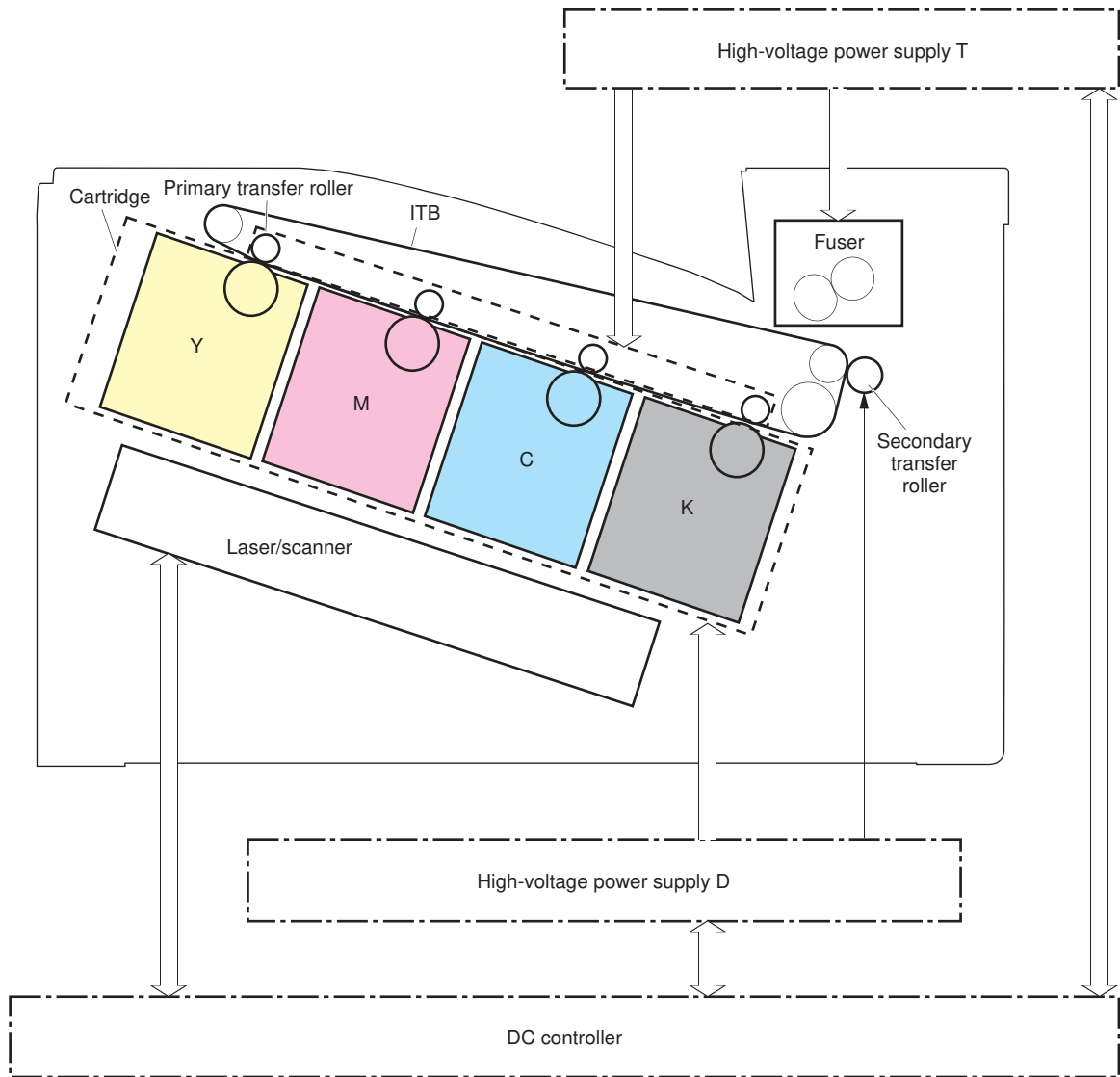


Image-formation system motors

The following figure shows the motors for the image-formation system.

Figure 3-14 Image-formation system motors

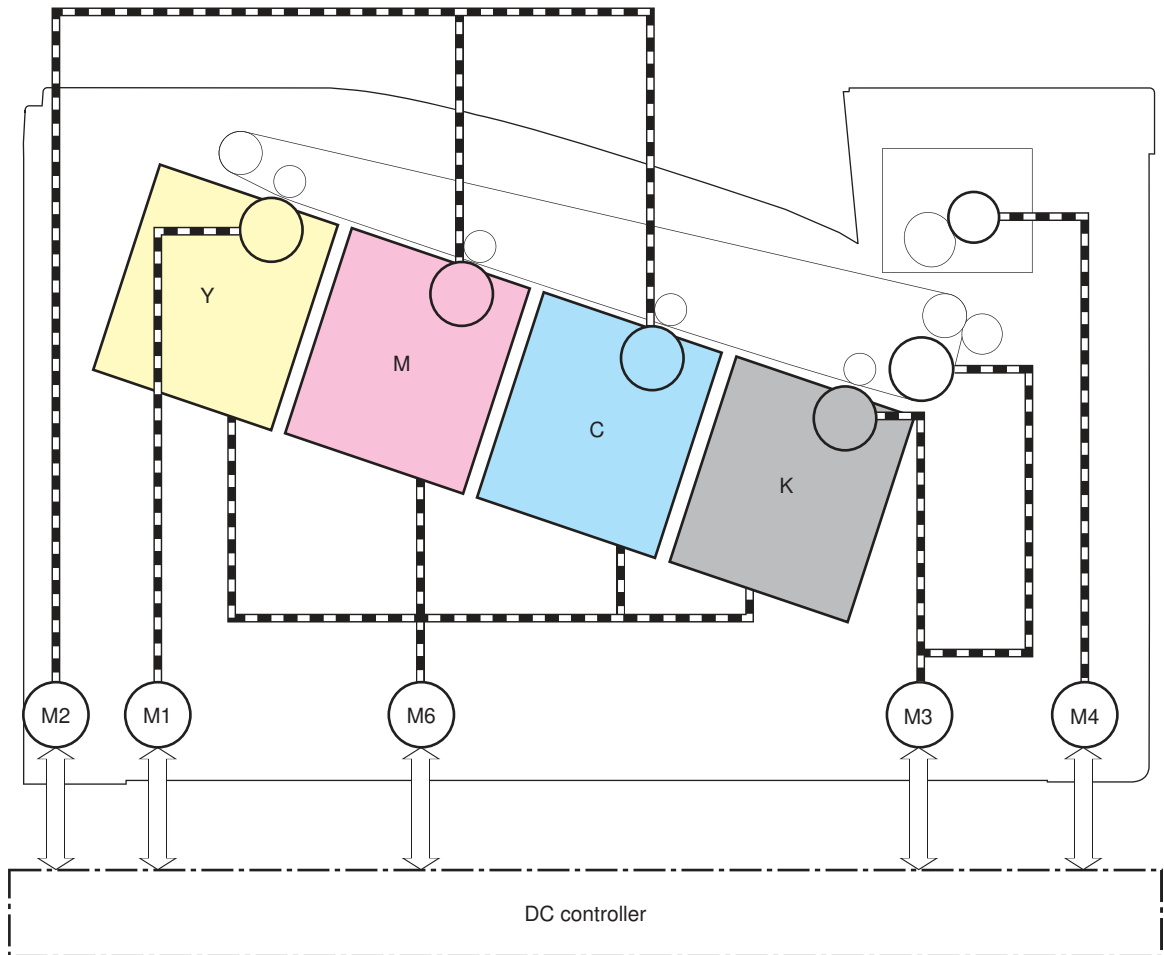


Table 3-14 Image-formation system motors

Abbreviation	Component	Par number
M1	Drum motor 1	Drum motor assembly (RM2-0078-000CN)
M2	Drum motor 2	Drum motor assembly (RM2-0078-000CN)
M3	Drum motor 3	Drum motor assembly (RM2-0078-000CN)
M4	Fuser motor	Fuser motor assembly (RM2-0077-000CN)
M6	Developer disengagement motor	Stepping motor (RK2-6027-000CN)

Image-formation system sensors

The following figure shows the sensors for the image-formation system.

Figure 3-15 Image-formation system sensors

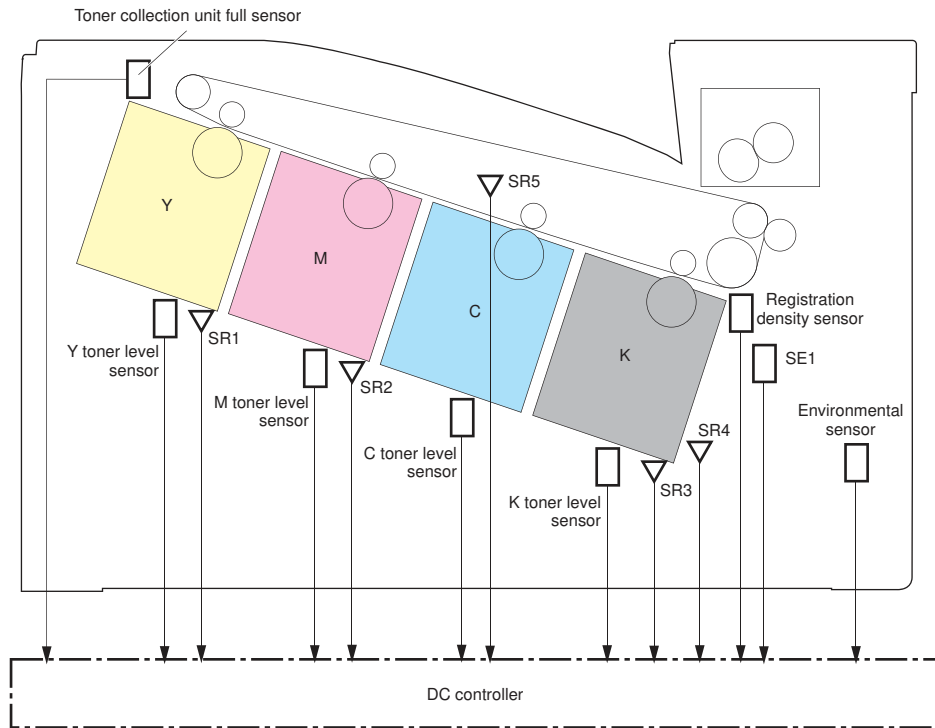


Table 3-15 Image-formation system sensors

Abbreviation	Name	Part number
SR1	Drum home position sensor 1	Not available
SR2	Drum home position sensor 2	Not available
SR3	Drum home position sensor 3	Not available
SR4	Developing home position sensor	Not available
SR5	Primary transfer roller disengagement sensor	Estrangement detect PCA assembly (RM2-7157-000CN)
SE1	Media sensor	Registration assembly <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RM2-0093-000CN (M553n) • RM2-0018-000CN (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M557, M558, E55040, E57540)
	Yellow toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)
	Magenta toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)
	Cyan toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)
	Black toner-level sensor	Cartridge lift-up rail assembly (RM2-0025-000CN; not available)
	Registration density sensor	Density detect assembly (RM2-7160-000CN)

Table 3-15 Image-formation system sensors (continued)

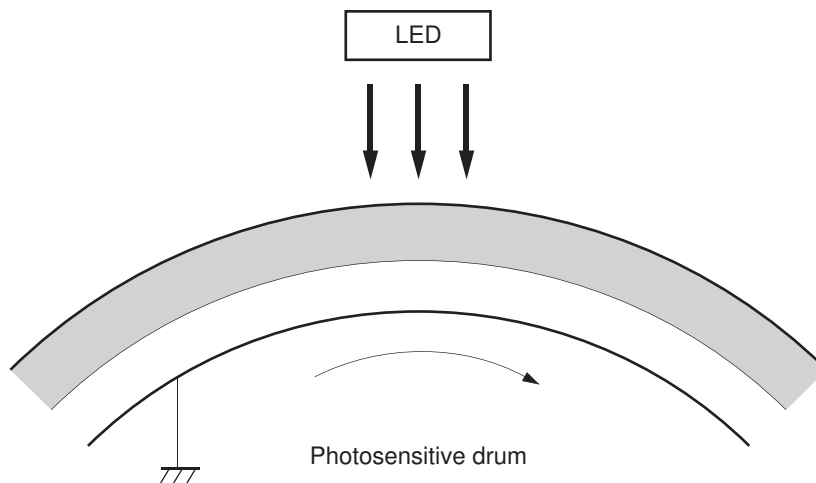
Abbreviation	Name	Part number
	Environment sensor (temperature and humidity)	Environment sensor PCA (RM2-7154-000CN)
	Residual toner collection unit full sensor	Waste toner detect PCA (RM2-7130-000CN)
	Pre-exposure LED 1-3	Pre-exposure PCA (RM2-7168-000CN)
	Pre-exposure LED 4	Pre-exposure PCA (RM2-7169-000CN)

Step 1: Pre-exposure

Learn about the image formation pre-exposure step.

Light from the pre-exposure LED strikes the surface of the photosensitive drum to remove any residual electrical charges from the drum surface.

Figure 3-16 Pre-exposure

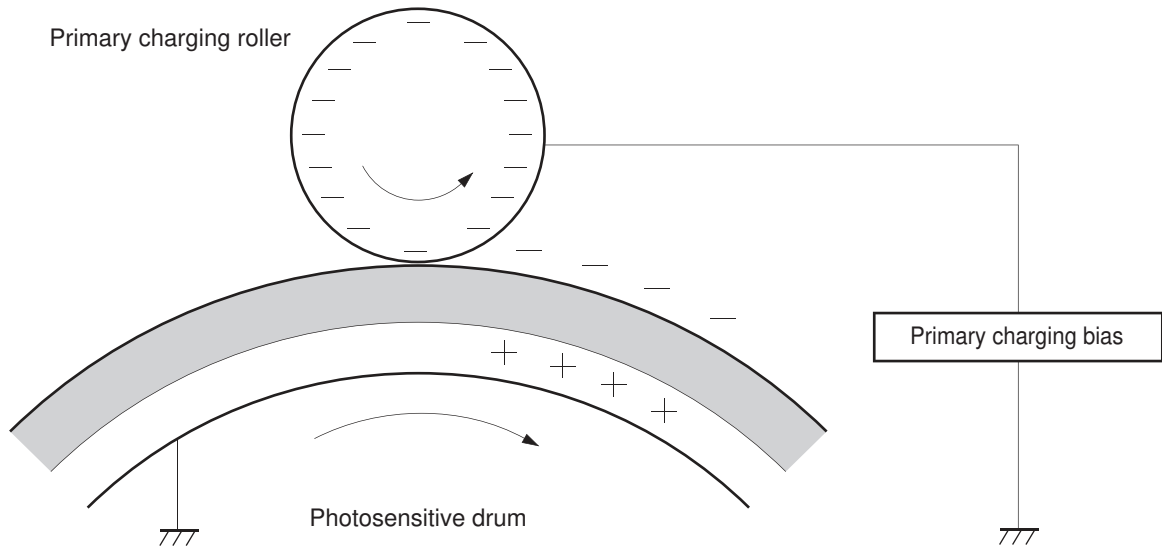


Step 2: Primary charging

Learn about the image formation primary charging step.

To prepare for latent image formation, the surface of the photosensitive drum is charged with a uniform negative charge. The primary charging roller receives the primary charging bias, and then the roller charges the drum by direct contact.

Figure 3-17 Primary charging

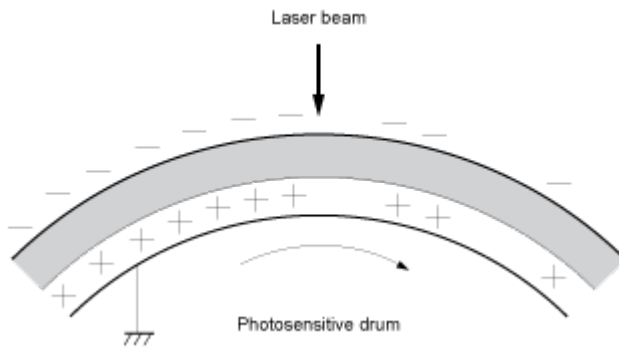


Step 3: Laser-beam exposure

Learn about the image formation laser-beam exposure step.

The laser beam strikes the photosensitive drum to neutralize the negative charge on the portions of the drum surface where the image will form. An electrostatic latent image forms where the negative charge was neutralized. The neutralized areas on the drum are ready to accept toner.

Figure 3-18 Laser-beam exposure

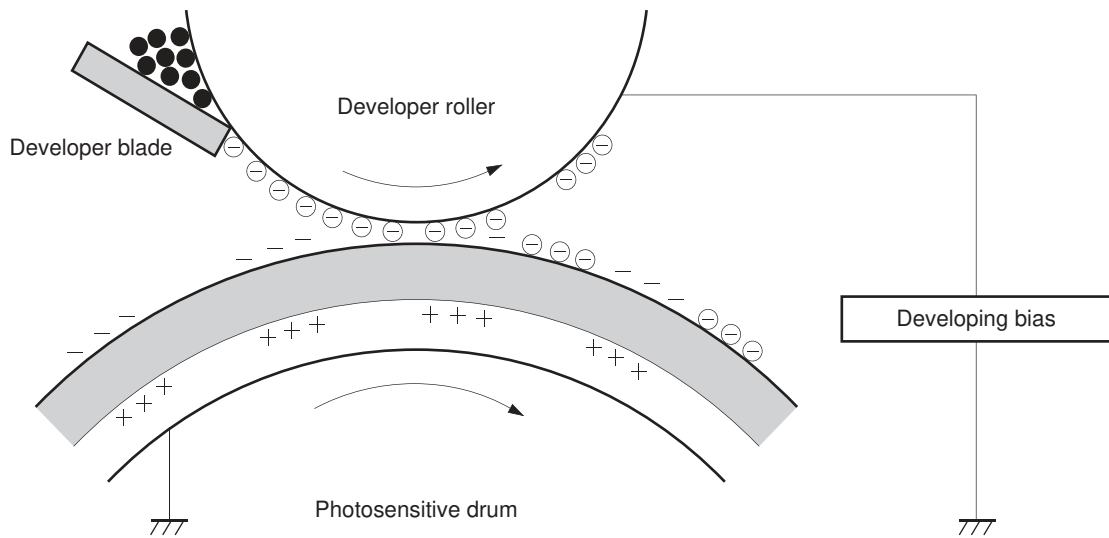


Step 4: Development

Learn about the image formation development step.

A developing bias is applied to the developing roller. The toner acquires a negative charge as a result of the friction from the developing roller rotating against the developing blade. Because the negatively charged surface of the photosensitive drums were neutralized where they have been struck by the laser beam, the toner adheres to those areas on the drums. The latent image becomes visible on the surface of the drum.

Figure 3-19 Development

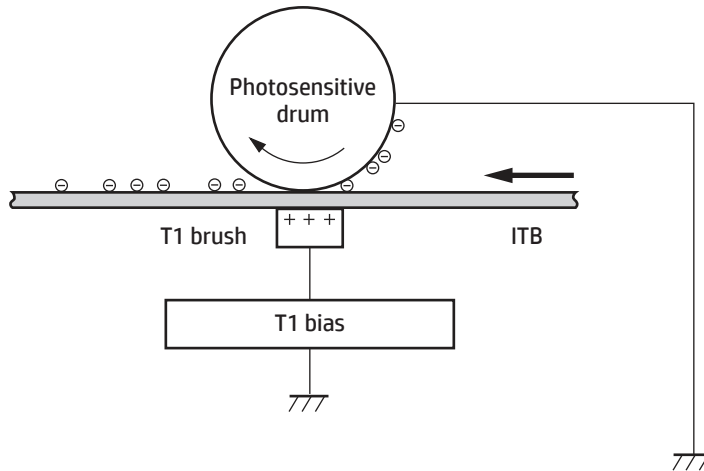


Step 5: Primary transfer

Learn about the image formation primary transfer step.

The positively charged primary-transfer brushes contact the ITB, giving the ITB a positive charge. The ITB attracts the negatively charged toner from the surface of each photosensitive drum, and the complete toner image transfers onto the ITB.

Figure 3-20 Primary transfer

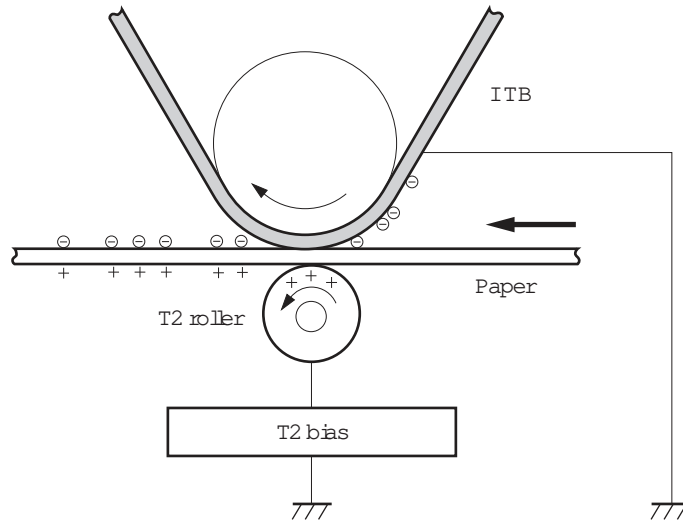


Step 6: Secondary transfer

Learn about the image formation secondary transfer step.

The paper acquires a positive charge from the secondary-transfer roller, and attracts the negatively charged toner from the surface of the ITB. The complete toner image transfers onto the paper.

Figure 3-21 Secondary transfer

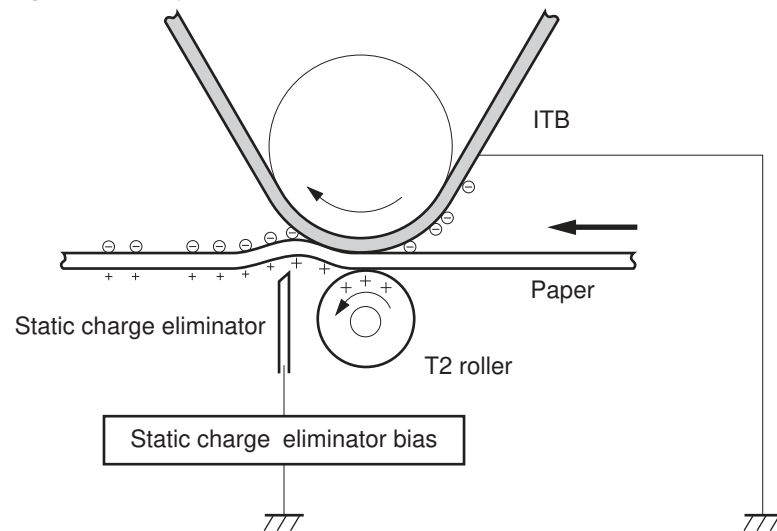


Step 7: Separation

Learn about the image formation separation step.

The stiffness of the paper causes it to separate from the ITB as the ITB bends. The static-charge eliminator removes excess charge from the paper for stable paper feeding and print quality.

Figure 3-22 Separation

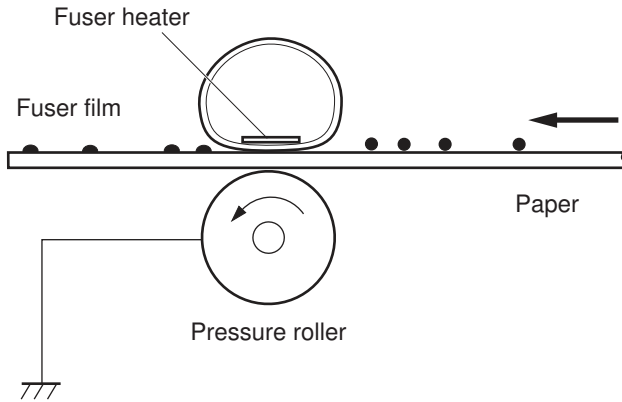


Step 8: Fusing

Learn about the image formation fusing step.

The printer uses an on-demand fusing method to adhere the toner image onto the page. As the page passes through the heated and pressurized rollers in the fuser the toner melts onto the page. The toner image is now permanently fused to the page. A fusing bias applied to the pressure roller improves image quality.

Figure 3-23 Fusing

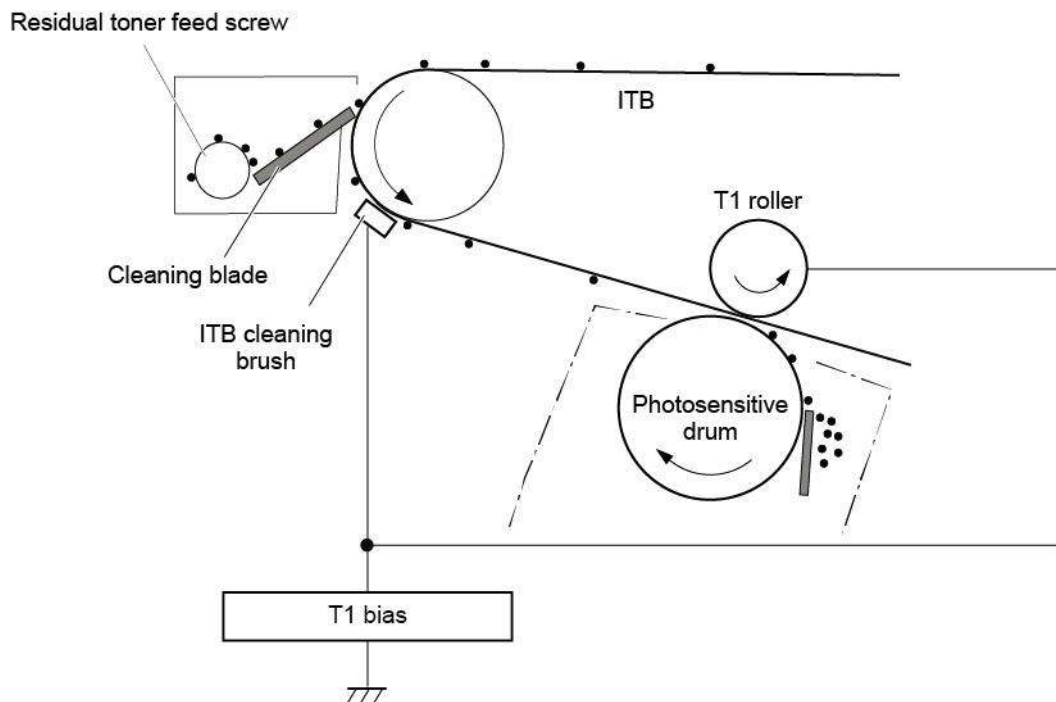


Step 10: Drum cleaning

Learn about the image formation ITB cleaning step.

The cleaning blade scrapes the residual toner off the surface of the ITB. The residual toner feed screw deposits residual toner in the toner collection unit. The residual toner which cannot be removed by the cleaning blade is charged by the ITB cleaning brush, and then transferred from the ITB surface to the photosensitive drum by the primary transfer (T1) roller.

Figure 3-24 ITB cleaning

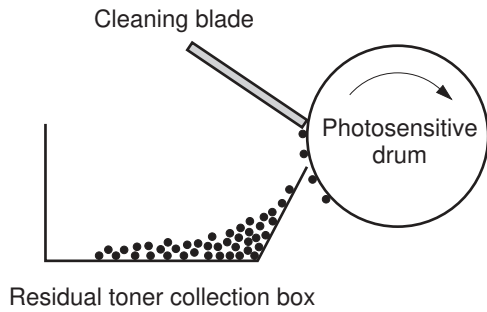


Step 10: Drum cleaning

Learn about the image formation drum cleaning step.

The cleaning blade scrapes the residual toner off the surface of the photosensitive drum and deposits it in the toner collection portion of the cartridge or in an external toner collection unit (TCU). The drum is now clear and ready for the next image-formation process.

Figure 3-25 Drum cleaning



Toner cartridges

Learn about the toner cartridges.

The following sections discuss the printer toner cartridges. The printer has four toner cartridges, one for each color: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black.

Design

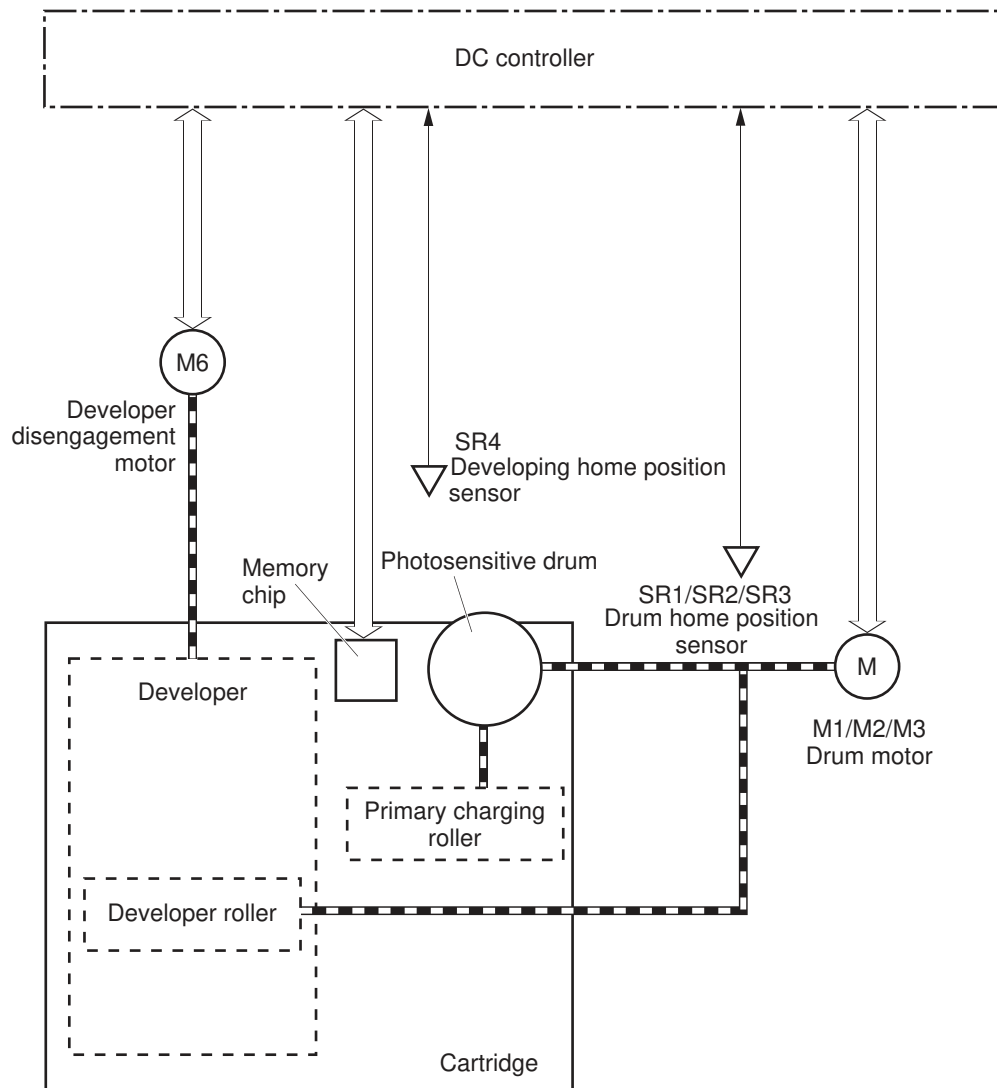
Learn about toner cartridge design.

Each toner cartridge is filled with toner and consists of the following components:

- Photosensitive drum
- Developer
- Primary-charging roller
- Memory chip

The DC controller rotates the drum motor to drive the photosensitive drum, developer roller, and the primary-charging roller.

Figure 3-26 Toner cartridge block diagram



Toner cartridge seal

Learn about the toner cartridge seal.

The toner cartridge seal is opened automatically when the toner cartridge is installed into the printer.

Memory chip

Learn about the toner cartridge memory chip.

The memory chip is non-volatile memory that stores information about the usage of the toner cartridge and helps protect the customer from counterfeit cartridges. This chip is also used to detect the presence of a cartridge within the printer or when a cartridge is installed in the wrong slot. The printer reads and writes the data in the memory chip.

Toner level and cartridge life detection

Learn about the toner level and cartridge life detection.

Toner level detection: The DC controller detects the remaining toner in the cartridge by the optical detection method and then notifies the formatter of the remaining toner level.

Cartridge life detection: Cartridge life detection is measured in two ways.

- Toner level

For the first 75% of cartridge life, toner level is measure through pixel counting by the DC controller. Once the level reaches 25%, the toner level sensor utilizes electrical properties to determine the amount of toner remaining.

- Rotations of internal components (OPC and developer roller)

The DC controller monitors these two life parameters and reports them to the formatter as percent life remaining. End of cartridge life is determined by the lower value of the two.

HP Cartridges with JetIntelligence

Learn about toner cartridge JetIntelligence.

HP Cartridges with JetIntelligence support two features for managing toner cartridges.

- The HP Cartridge Policy feature allows customers to specify the use of only genuine HP toner cartridges in the printer.
- The anti-theft feature enables locking a cartridge to a specific printer or fleet of printers.

HP Cartridge Policy

The genuine HP Cartridge Policy feature allows a customer to specify that only genuine HP supplies can be used in a printer. If anything but a genuine HP supply is installed, the printer will not print. This feature is disabled by default, and can be enabled or disabled from the control panel, the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS), or HP Web Jetadmin.

If a genuine HP cartridge has passed the low state and is installed in a printer that has this feature enabled, the printer will display an **Unauthorized Cartridge** message on the control panel and will not print.

If a non-HP toner cartridge is used in a printer with this feature enabled, the message **Unauthorized Cartridge** appears on the control-panel display and the printer will not print.



NOTE: If a customer suspects they have a counterfeit cartridge, they should report it by going to www.hp.com/go/anticounterfeit and selecting **Report now**.

Anti-theft or cartridge protection


The toner cartridge anti-theft feature allows a customer to configure the printer to automatically lock toner cartridges to a specific printer or fleet of printers when they are installed. A locked toner cartridge will work only in the specified printer or fleet of printers. This feature prevents toner cartridges from being stolen and used in another printer, or from being moved from an authorized printer to an unauthorized printer. This feature is disabled by default. Cartridge protection to a single printer can be enabled or disabled from the control panel or the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS). Cartridge protection for a printer fleet can be enabled only by using HP Web Jetadmin.

When the anti-theft feature is enabled, the toner cartridge in a printer will only work in the specified printer or fleet of printers. If a locked toner cartridge is moved to another printer, the cartridge will not print and the message **Protected Cartridge** appears on the control-panel display.

 **NOTE:** When a toner cartridge is locked to a specific printer or fleet of printers, it cannot be unlocked. This is a permanent operation.

Dynamic security

Learn about dynamic-security-enabled printers.

 **NOTE:** All printer models might not support the Dynamic security feature.

Certain HP printers use cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip or modified or non-HP circuitry* might not work. And, those that work today might not work in the future.

As is standard in the printing business, HP has a process for authenticating cartridges. HP continues to use security measures to protect the quality of our customer experiences, maintain the integrity of our printing systems, and protect our intellectual property. These measures include authentication methods that change periodically and might prevent some third-party supplies from working now or in the future. HP printers and original HP cartridges deliver the best quality, security and reliability. When cartridges are cloned or counterfeited, the customer is exposed to quality and potential security risks, compromising the printing experience.

***Non-HP Chips and modified or non-HP electronic circuitry** are not produced or validated by HP. HP cannot guarantee that these chips or circuitry will work in your printer now or in the future. If you are using non-original HP cartridges, please check with your supplier to ensure your cartridge has an original HP security chip or unmodified HP electronic circuitry.

Developing unit engagement and disengagement control

Learn about developer unit operation.

The printer can print in full-color mode or in black-only mode. To print in black-only mode, the printer disengages the developing rollers in the cyan, magenta, and yellow toner cartridges, which maximizes the life of the cartridges.

When the printer is turned on and when each print job is completed, all four of the developing units are disengaged from the photosensitive drums. When development is not needed, a special cam mechanism on the developer roller stops the rotation separate from the developer disengagement cam, providing even more life for the cartridge.

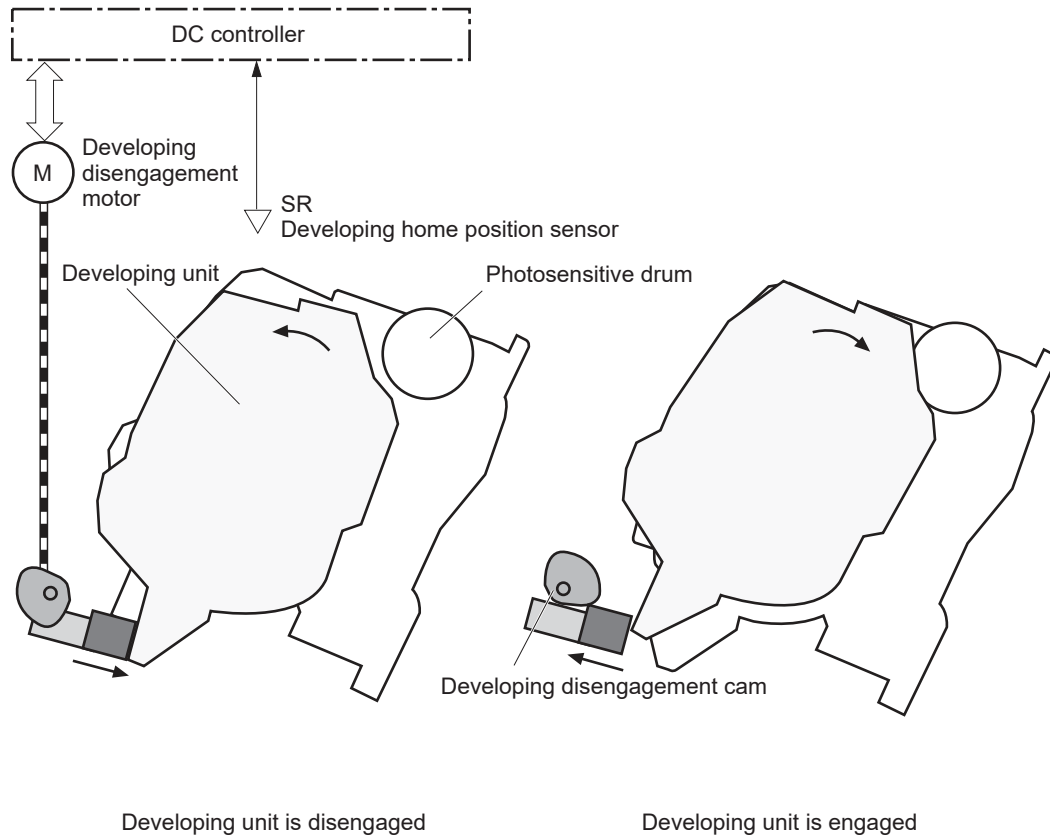
- The drive of the developer disengagement motor rotates the developer disengagement cam.
- As the cam rotates, the developing unit engages with or separates from the photosensitive drum.

When the print mode is full color, the developing units engage with the drums. When the print mode is black-only, only the black developing unit engages with the drum.

The DC controller determines a developer disengagement motor failure and notifies the formatter when it does not detect a specified signal from the developer disengagement sensor during the developing unit engagement and disengagement operation.

 **NOTE:** The figure below is representational only. The toner cartridge configuration varies by printer design.

Figure 3-27 Toner cartridge block diagram



Intermediate transfer belt assembly

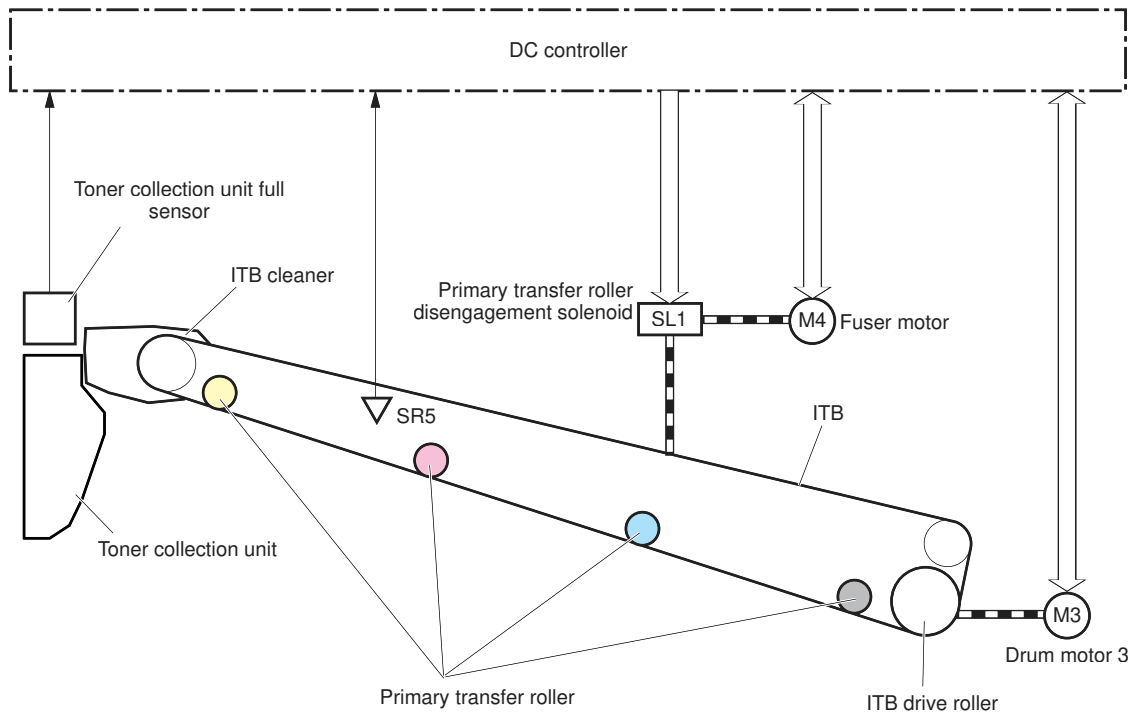
Learn about the Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) assembly.

The ITB unit accepts the toner images from the photosensitive drums and transfers the completed image to the paper. The ITB unit has the following main components:

- Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)
- ITB-drive roller
- Primary-transfer roller
- ITB cleaner

Drum motor 3 drives the ITB drive roller, which rotates the ITB. The motion of the ITB causes the primary transfer rollers to rotate. The ITB cleaner cleans the ITB surface.

Figure 3-28 ITB unit



Primary-transfer roller engagement and disengagement control

Learn about ITB primary-transfer roller engagement and disengagement control.

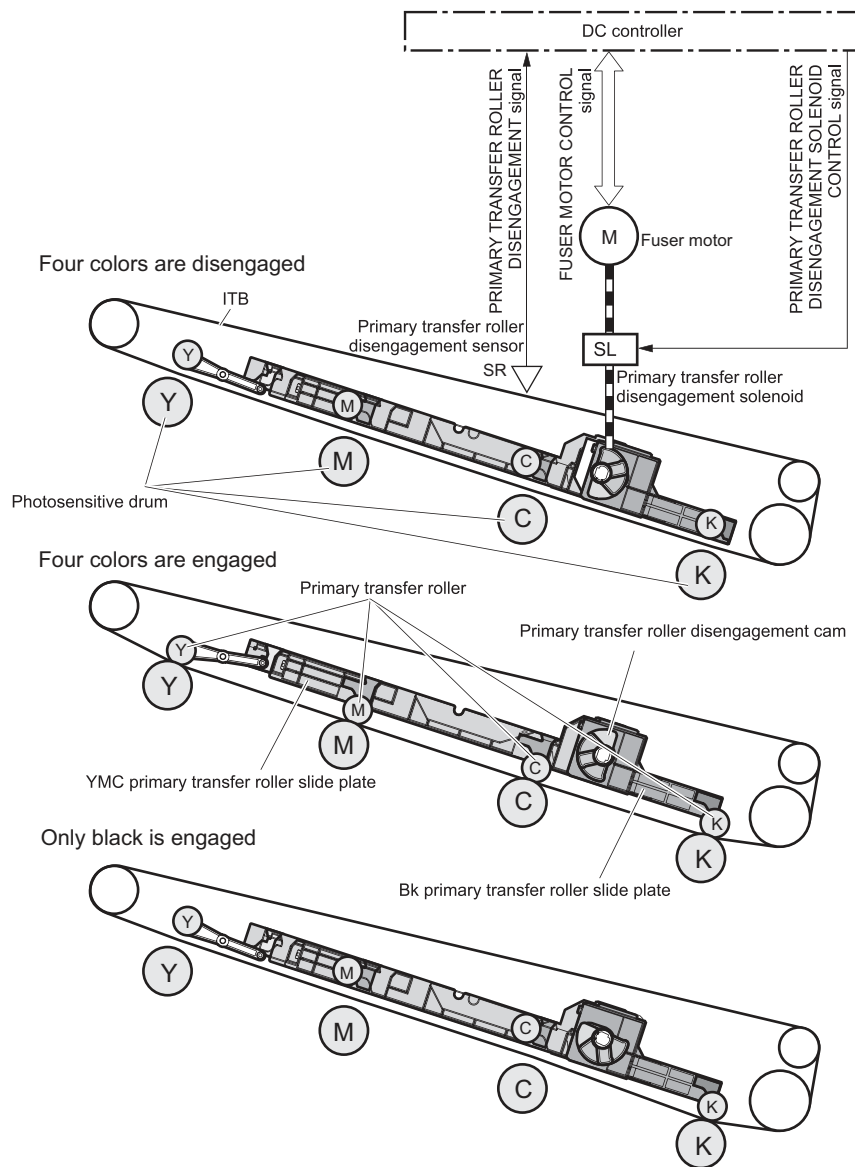
Depending on the requirements of the print job, the primary-transfer rollers engage with the ITB so it can receive toner from the photosensitive drums. The primary-transfer rollers have three engagement states.

Primary-transfer roller engagement states

- **All rollers disengaged**
The ITB is disengaged from all the four photosensitive drums. This state is the home position for the ITB unit.
- **All rollers engaged**
The ITB is engaged with all four photosensitive drums. This is the state for full-color printing.
- **Black roller engaged**
The ITB is engaged with only the black photosensitive drum. This is the state for black-only printing.

 **NOTE:** The figure below is representational only. The ITB configuration varies by printer design.

Figure 3-29 Three states of primary-transfer roller engagement and disengagement



The primary-transfer-roller disengagement motor rotates or reverses to place the primary-transfer-roller disengagement cam into one of three positions. The cam causes the transfer-roller slide plate to move to the right or left. This movement causes the primary-transfer rollers to move up to engage the ITB with the photosensitive drum or down to disengage it.

The DC controller expects to receive a signal from the ITB home-position sensor when the primary-transfer roller engages or disengages. If the DC controller does not receive this signal, but detects that the primary-transfer-roller disengagement motor is rotating, the DC controller determines that the primary-transfer-disengagement mechanism has failed, and notifies the formatter.

ITB unit detection

Learn about ITB unit detection.

The DC controller monitors several signals from the ITB unit to detect status.

Table 3-16 ITB unit detection

Item	Description
ITB unit life detection	<p>The DC controller detects whether the ITB unit is new by monitoring the new ITB unit sensor. The DC controller determines the ITB unit is at end of life and notifies the formatter when a specified number of pages are printed after the ITB unit is</p> <p>If swapping ITB units between two printers for troubleshooting purposes, be sure to return the ITB units to their original printers to maintain the correct life count.</p>
ITB unit presence detection	<p>The DC controller detects the presence of an ITB unit by monitoring the primary-transfer roller disengagement sensor. The DC controller turns on the primary-transfer disengagement solenoid for specified times during an initial rotation period when the following events occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The printer is turned on• The printer exits sleep mode• The door is closed <p>The DC controller determines the absences of an ITB unit and notifies the formatter when it does not detect a specified signal from the new primary-transfer roller disengagement sensor.</p>

ITB cleaning mechanism

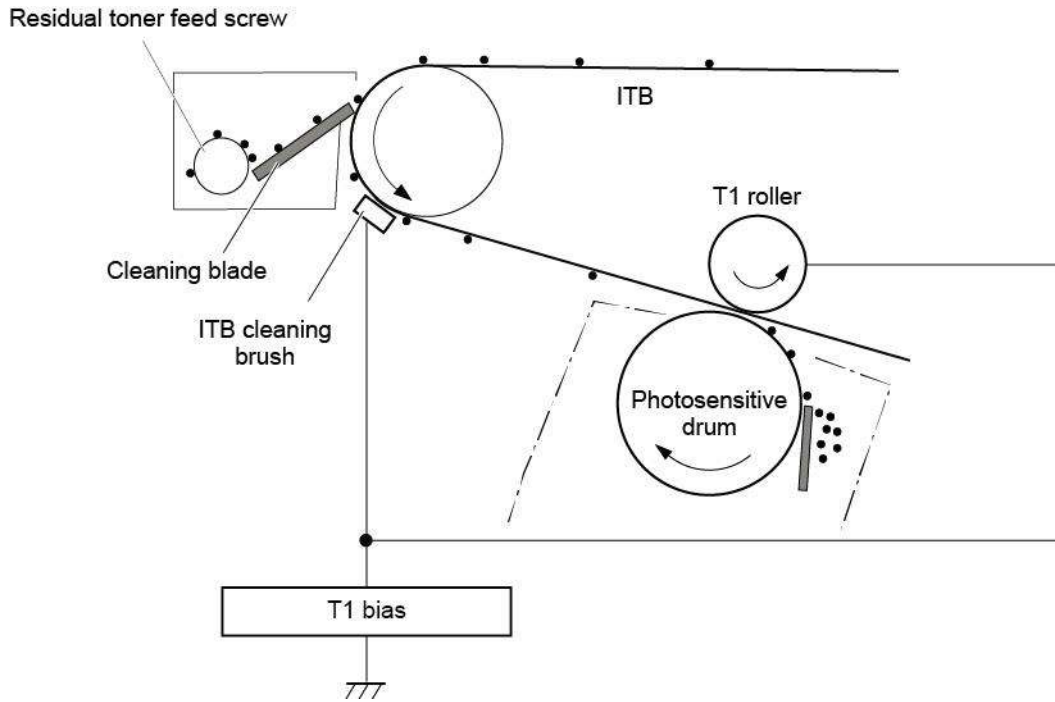
Learn about ITB cleaning.

The cleaning blade in the ITB cleaner scrapes the residual toner off the ITB surface and deposits the residual toner into the toner collection unit. The residual toner feed screw deposits the residual toner to the residual toner feed unit. The ITB motor and the residual toner feed motor drive the screw.

The residual toner that cannot be removed by the cleaning blade is charged by the ITB cleaning brush, and then transferred from the ITB surface to the photosensitive drum by the primary transfer (T1) roller. The DC controller detects whether the toner collection unit is full by using the toner collection unit full sensor, and then notifies the formatter.

 **NOTE:** The figure below is representational only. The ITB configuration varies by printer design.

Figure 3-30 ITB cleaning process



Secondary transfer roller functions

Learn about secondary transfer roller functions.

The secondary transfer roller transfers the image from the ITB onto the paper.

The printer has the following secondary transfer roller functions.

Table 3-17 Secondary transfer roller functions

Function	Supported feature
Secondary transfer roller cleaning mechanism	Yes
Secondary transfer roller presence detection	No
Secondary transfer roller life detection	No
Secondary transfer roller alienation control	Yes

Color self calibration

Learn about printer color self calibration.

The printer calibrates itself to maintain proper print-quality. The calibration corrects color-misregistration and color-density variation due to environmental changes or internal variation in the printer.

The printer has the following calibration functions.

Table 3-18 Calibration functions

Function	Supported feature
Color-plane registration correction control	Yes
Environment correction control	Yes
Image density control (DMAX)	Yes
Image halftone control (DHALF)	Yes
Registration density sensor failure detection	Yes
Color sensor control	No
Gray axis control (GAS)	No
Environment sensor failure detection	Yes

Engine pickup, feed, and delivery system

Learn about the printer pickup, feed and delivery system.

The DC controller controls the pickup, feed, and delivery system according to commands from the formatter. The pickup, feed, and delivery system uses a series of rollers to move the paper through the printer.

The pickup, feed, and delivery system consists of the following three functional blocks.

- **Pickup-and-feed-block:** Controls the movement of the paper from each pickup source to the fuser inlet
- **Fuser-and-delivery-block:** Controls the movement of the paper from the fuser to the delivery destination
- **Duplex block:** Controls the movement of the paper from the duplex switchback unit to the duplex re-pickup unit (duplex models only)

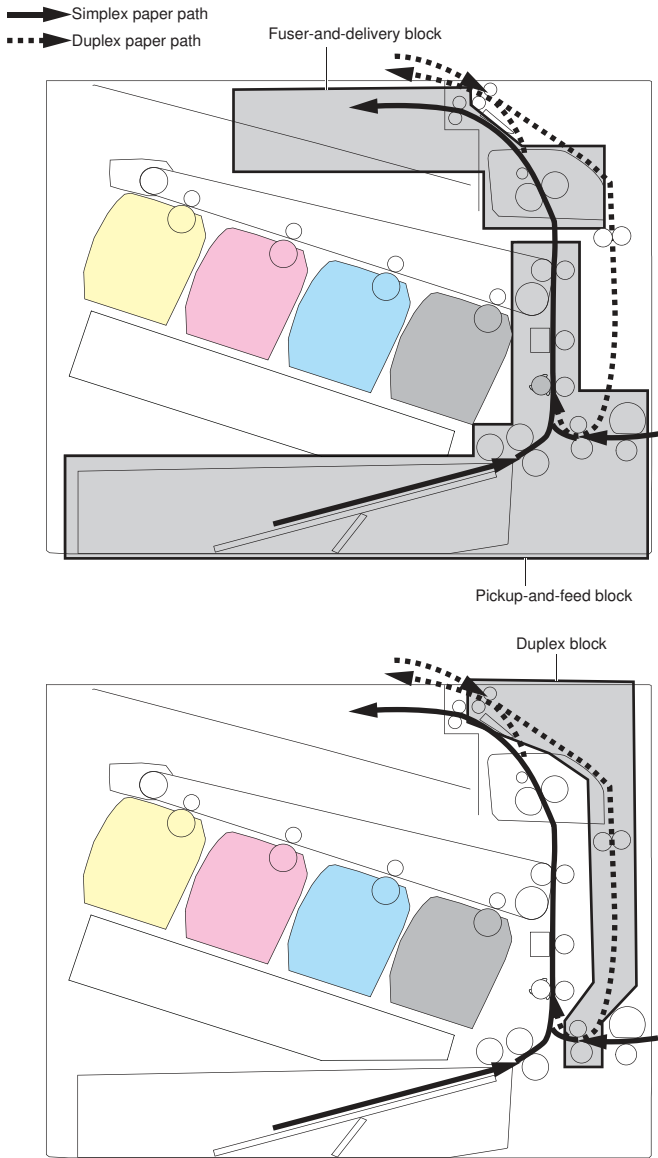


Photo sensors and switches

Learn about the engine pickup, feed, and delivery sensors and switches.

The following figure shows the sensors and switches for the engine pickup, feed, and delivery system.

Figure 3-31 Photo sensors and switches (engine pickup, feed, and delivery system)

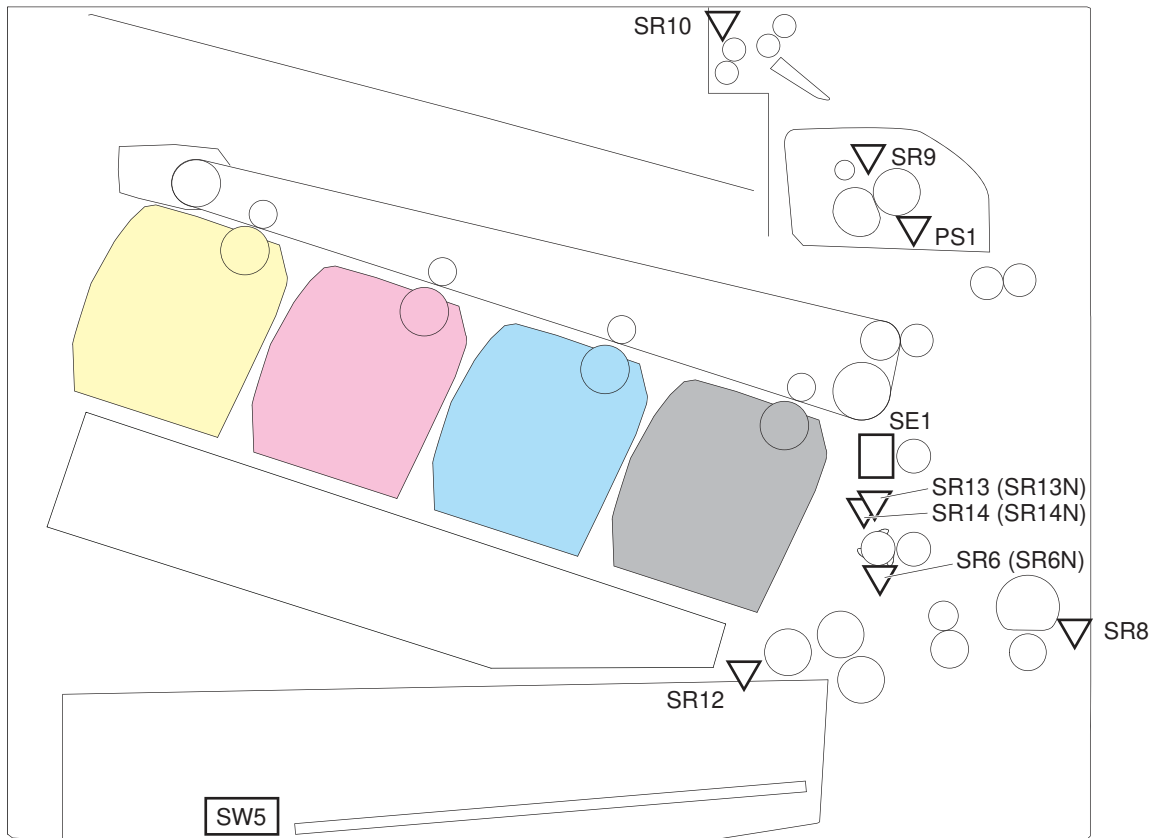


Table 3-19 Photo sensors and switches (engine pickup, feed, and delivery system)

Abbreviation	Component	Part number
PS1	Loop sensor	Fuser <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • B5L35-67902 (110V) • B5L36-67902 (220V)
SE1	Media sensor	Registration assembly <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RM2-0093-000CN (M553n) • RM2-0018-000CN (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)
SR6	Top-of-page (TOP) sensor (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)	Registration assembly (RM2-0018-000CN)
SR6N	Top-of-page (TOP) sensor (M553n)	Registration assembly (RM2-0093-000CN)
SR8	Tray 1 media-out sensor	Right door assembly (RM2-0019-000CN)
SR9	Fuser delivery sensor	Fuser <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • B5L35-67902 (110V) • B5L36-67902 (220V)

Table 3-19 Photo sensors and switches (engine pickup, feed, and delivery system) (continued)

Abbreviation	Component	Part number
SR10	Output bin media-full sensor	Paper delivery assembly <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RM2-0092-000CN (M553n) • RM2-0016-000CN (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)
SR11	Fuser pressure release sensor	Not available
SR12	Tray 2 media-out sensor	Paper pickup assembly (RM2-6556-000CN)
SR13	Media width sensor, front (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)	Registration assembly (RM2-0018-000CN)
SR13N	Media width sensor, front (M553n)	Registration assembly (RM2-0093-000CN)
SR14	Media width sensor, rear (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)	Registration assembly (RM2-0018-000CN)
SR14N	Media width sensor, rear (M553n)	Registration assembly (RM2-0093-000CN)
SW5	Tray 2 detection switch	Not available

Motors, clutches, and solenoids

Learn about the engine pickup, feed, and delivery motors, clutches, and solenoids.

The following figure shows the motors, clutches, and solenoids for the engine pickup, feed, and delivery system.

Figure 3-32 Motors, clutches, and solenoids (engine pickup, feed, and delivery system)

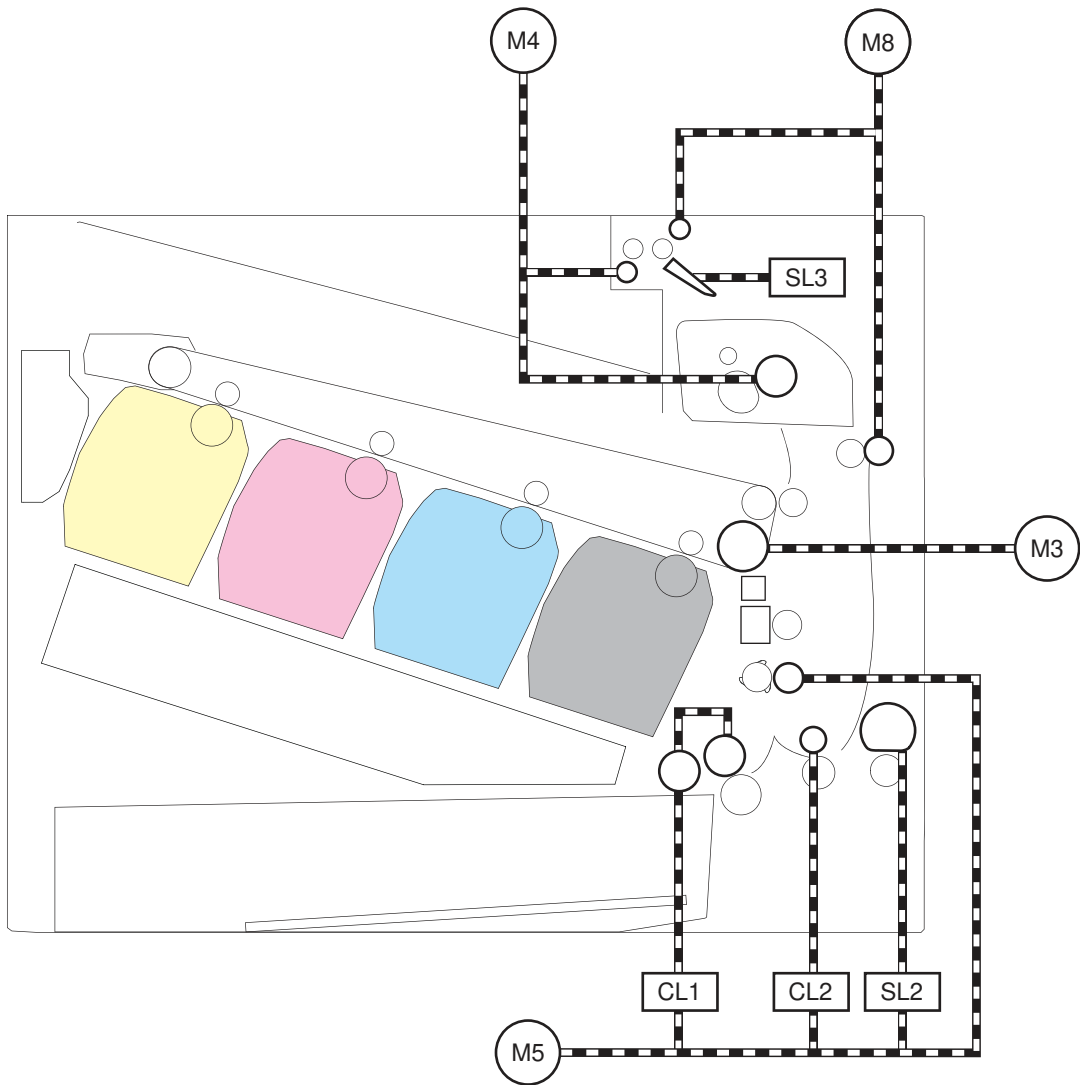


Table 3-20 Motors, clutches, and solenoids (engine pickup, feed, and delivery system)

Abbreviation	Component	Part number
M3	Drum motor 3	Drum motor assembly (RM2-0078-000CN)
M4	Fuser motor	Fuser motor assembly (RM2-0077-000CN)
M5	Pickup motor	Paper pickup drive assembly (RM2-0008-000CN)
M6	Developer disengagement motor	Stepping motor (RK2-6027-000CN)
M7	Scanner motor	Laser scanner assembly (RM2-0100-000CN; not orderable)
M8	Duplex reverse motor (duplex models)	Duplex drive assembly (RM2-0006-000CN)
CL1	Tray 2 pickup clutch	Lifter drive assembly (RM2-0010-000CN)
CL2	Duplex re-pickup clutch (duplex models)	Duplex drive assembly (RM2-0006-000CN)

Table 3-20 Motors, clutches, and solenoids (engine pickup, feed, and delivery system) (continued)

Abbreviation	Component	Part number
SL1	Primary transfer roller alienation solenoid	Fuser drive assembly <ul style="list-style-type: none">• RM2-0091-010CN (M553n)• RM2-0009-010CN (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)
SL2	Tray 1 pickup solenoid	Right door assembly (RM2-0019-000CN)
SL3	Duplex reverse solenoid (duplex models)	Duplex drive assembly (RM2-0006-000CN)

Tray 1 (multipurpose)/Tray 2 (base printer)

Learn about the engine pickup, feed, and delivery for Tray 1 (multipurpose) and Tray 2 (base printer).

Moving paper from Tray 1 and Tray 2 involves the interaction of multiple components within the printer. The following sections describe these processes.

Tray 1 paper pickup and feed

The printer picks up one sheet of paper from Tray 1. The Tray 1 media-out sensor (SR8) detects whether paper is present in Tray 1.



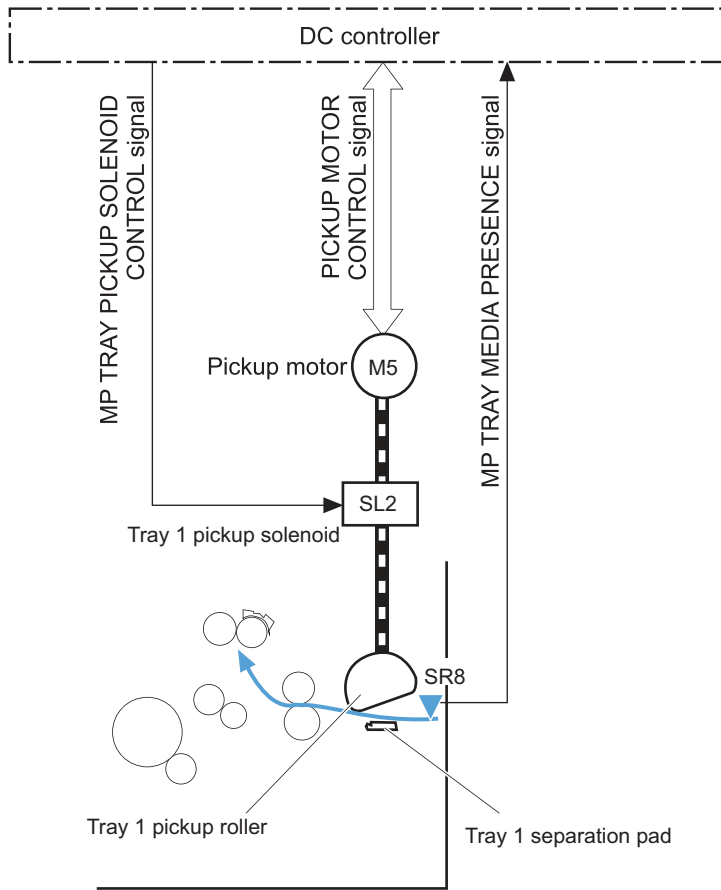
NOTE: Tray 1 and Tray 2 are optimal for paper pickup when using special paper or media other than 20 lb plain paper. For Tray 1, the printer increases the number of attempts to pick up a page, which increases the reliability of successfully picking the page from the tray and decreases the possibility of a mis-pick jam.

HP recommends using Tray 1 or Tray 2 if the printer is experiencing excessive or reoccurring jams from trays other than Tray 1 and Tray 2, or for print jobs that require media other than 20 lb plain paper.

Following are the sequence of steps for the Tray 1 pickup operation.

1. The pickup motor reverses when a print command is received from the formatter.
2. When the DC controller turns on the Tray 1 pickup solenoid, the Tray 1 pickup roller rotates and the lifting plate lifts.
3. As the lifting plate rises, the paper is picked up.
4. The Tray 1 separation pad removes any multiply-fed sheets, and one sheet is fed into the printer.

Figure 3-33 Tray 1 pickup mechanism



Tray 2 paper presence detection

The Tray 2 media-out sensor (SR12) detects the presence of paper in Tray 2.

The DC controller notifies the formatter when the Tray 2 media-out sensor detects that paper is absent.

Tray 2 lift operation

The printer keeps the paper stack surface at the correct pickup position. The Tray 2 lift-up operation is performed under the following conditions.

- The printer is turned on
- Tray 2 is installed
- The paper stack surface in Tray 2 lowers

The operational sequence of the Tray 2 lift operation is as follows.

1. The pickup motor (M5) rotates and the lifter moves up. Note that this printer uses the pickup motor rather than a dedicated lifter motor.
2. When the Tray 2 media stack surface sensor 2 detects the stack surface of media, the lifter motor stops.

3. The lifter motor rotates again to lift the lifter when the Tray 2 media stack surface sensor 1 detects the stack surface and then lowers during printing.

When a Tray 2 media stack surface sensors does not detect the stack surface within a specified time period after the lifter motor starts rotating, the DC controller determines a lifter motor failure and notifies the formatter.

Tray 2 paper pickup



NOTE: Tray 1 and Tray 2 are optimal for paper pickup when using special paper or media other than 20 lb plain paper. For Tray 1, the printer increases the number of attempts to pick up a page, which increases the reliability of successfully picking the page from the tray and decreases the possibility of a mis-pick jam.

HP recommends using Tray 1 or Tray 2 if the printer is experiencing excessive or reoccurring jams from trays other than Tray 1 and Tray 2, or for print jobs that require media other than 20 lb plain paper.

Following are the sequence of steps for the Tray 2 pickup operation.

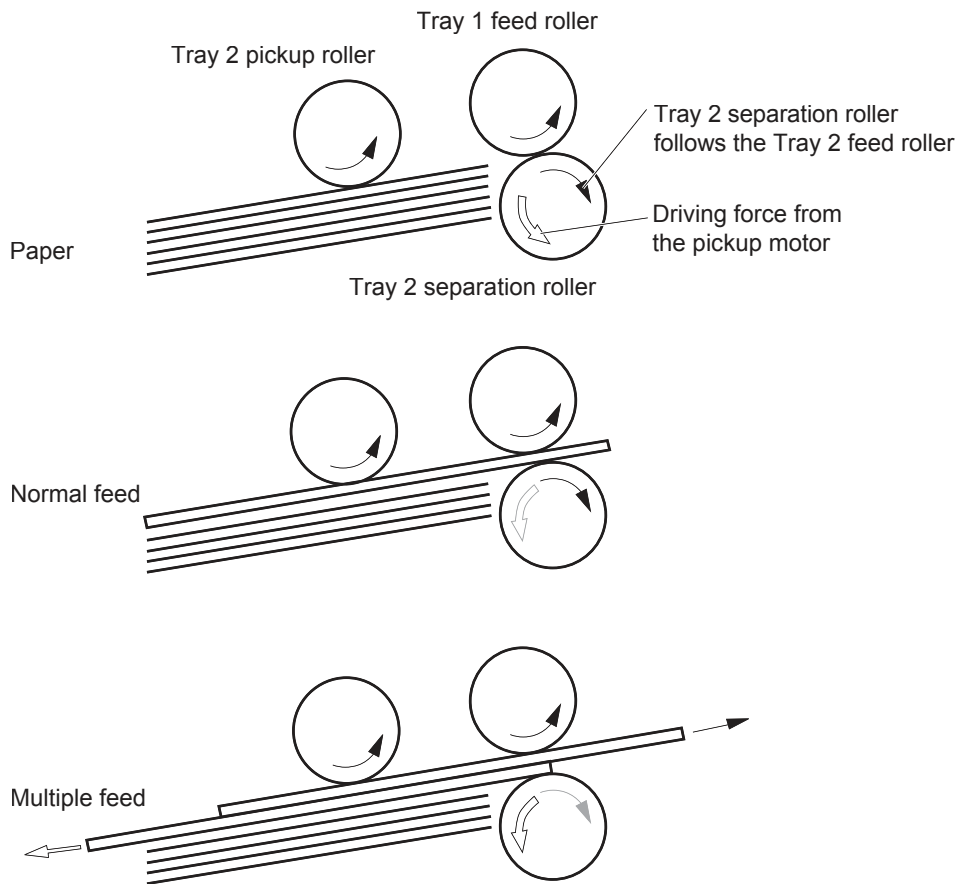
1. The printer is turned on or Tray 2 is inserted.
2. The tray lift-up operation raises the lifting plate so paper can be picked up.
3. The pickup motor rotates when a print command is received from the formatter.
4. The Tray 2 pickup roller and Tray 2 feed roller rotate.
5. The Tray 2 pickup solenoid turns on at a specified time.
6. The Tray 2 pickup cam rotates.
7. As the pickup arm lowers, the Tray 2 pickup roller touches the surface of the paper stack.
8. One sheet of paper feeds into the printer.

Tray 2 multiple-feed prevention

The printer uses a separation roller method to prevent multiple sheets of print media from entering the paper path.

The separation roller overruns if just one sheet of paper is picked. If two or more sheets are picked, only the top sheet will be fed to registration and the multiply-fed sheets will be held at the pickup location by the separation roller. This printer does not have an actively-driven separation roller.

Figure 3-34 Tray 2 multiple-feed prevention



Tray 2 presence detection

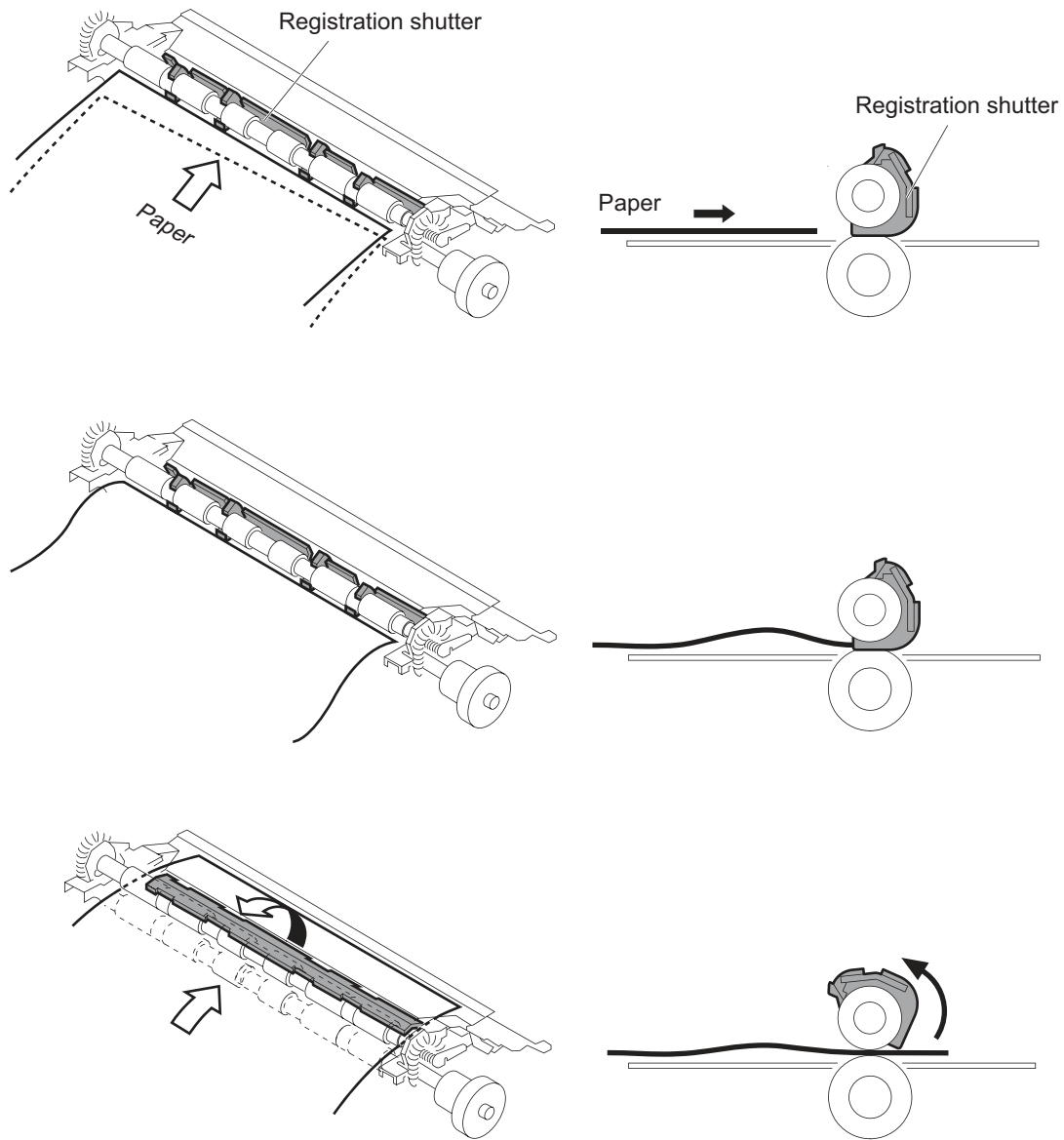
The Tray 2 presence sensor is in the lifter drive unit. The sensor detects the tray-presence sensor flag and determines whether the cassette is installed correctly.

Tray 2 skew feed prevention

The printer can straighten the paper without slowing the feed operation.

1. The leading edge of paper strikes the registration shutter, and the leading edge is aligned with the shutter.
2. As the feed rollers keep pushing the paper, the paper warps.
3. When the force is great enough, the registration shutter rotates, and the paper passes through straightened.

Figure 3-35 Skew-feed prevention



Tray 2 media type detection

The printer selects the optimal print mode based upon the media type detected by the media sensor. The media sensor consists of an optical sensor, which detects the surface texture of the paper, and an ultrasonic sensor, which measures the thickness of the paper.

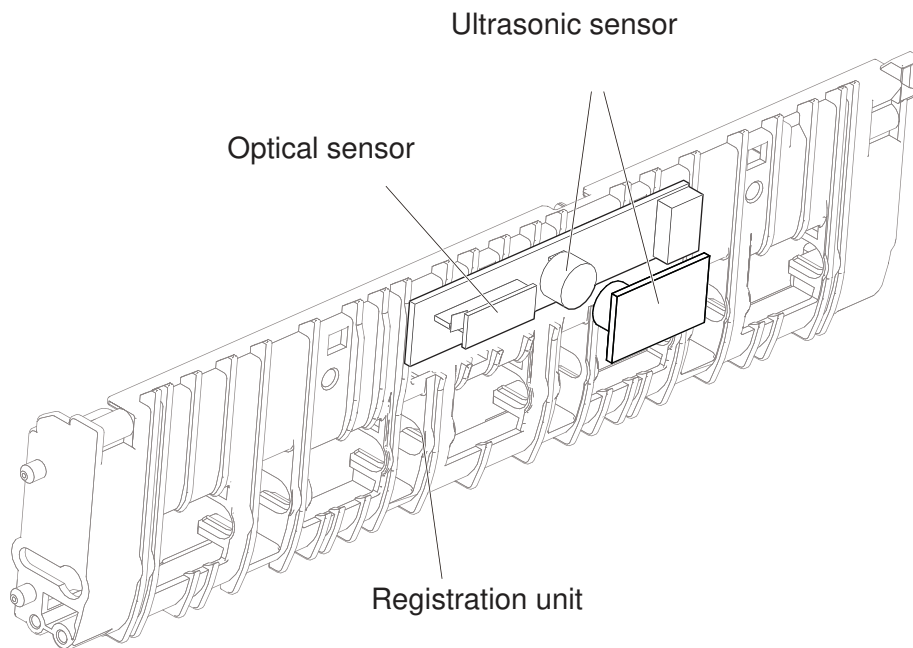
Following are the print modes detected by the printer.

- Normal
- Heavy media 1
- Heavy media 2
- Heavy media 3

- Light media
- Glossy media 1
- Glossy media 2
- Glossy media 3
- LBP_OHT

The DC controller determines a media sensor error and reports it to the formatter when the value detected by the media sensor is out of a specified range of values.

Figure 3-36 Media sensors



Feed speed control

The DC controller adjusts the feed speed to improve the print quality depending on the paper type. The paper is fed at a specified speed according to the print mode designated by the formatter.

Speed for both full color and black and white pages

- 1/1 speed = 210 mm/s
- Pro speed = 174 mm/s
- 1/2 speed = 105 mm/s
- 1/3 speed = 70 mm/s

Table 3-21 Print mode and fan speed

Print mode	Fan speed	Media sensor detection
Normal	1/1 speed = 210 mm/s	Yes
Heavy media 1	Pro speed = 174 mm/s	No

Table 3-21 Print mode and fan speed (continued)

Print mode	Fan speed	Media sensor detection
Heavy media 2	1/2 speed = 105 mm/s	Yes
Heavy media 3	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	Yes
Light media 1	1/1 speed = 210 mm/s	Yes
Light media 2	1/1 speed = 210 mm/s	Yes
Light media 3	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	Yes
Glossy media 1	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	Yes
Glossy media 2	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	Yes
Glossy media 3	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	Yes
Glossy film	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	Yes
Envelope 1	1/2 speed = 105 mm/s	No
OHT	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	Yes
Label	1/2 speed = 105 mm/s	No
Designated media 1	1/2 speed = 105 mm/s	No
Designated media 2	1/3 speed = 70 mm/s	No
Designated media 3	Pro speed = 174 mm/s	No

Duplexing unit (duplex models)

Learn about the duplexing unit.



NOTE: To identify duplex printer models, see the *Printer information, configurations, and specifications* section of the service manual.

The duplexing unit reverses the paper and feeds it through the paper path to print the second side.

Duplexing reverse and duplex feed control

Learn about the engine pickup, feed, and delivery duplexing reverse and duplex feed control.

The duplex reverse control reverses the paper after the first side is printed and feeds it to the duplex re-pickup position to print the second side of the page.

1. At a specified time after the first side of a page is printed, the duplex reverse motor rotates, and the duplex reverse solenoid is turned on.
2. The duplex flapper moves, and the paper feeds to the duplex reverse unit.
3. After a specified period of time, the duplex reverse motor reverses, and the paper feeds to the duplex feed unit.
4. The duplex reverse motor and the pickup motor move the paper to the duplex re-pickup position.
5. The duplex reverse motor and the duplex feed clutch stop, and the paper feed operation pauses.

6. After a specified period of time, the duplex reverse motor rotates, and the duplex feed clutch is turned on. The paper is then picked up again.

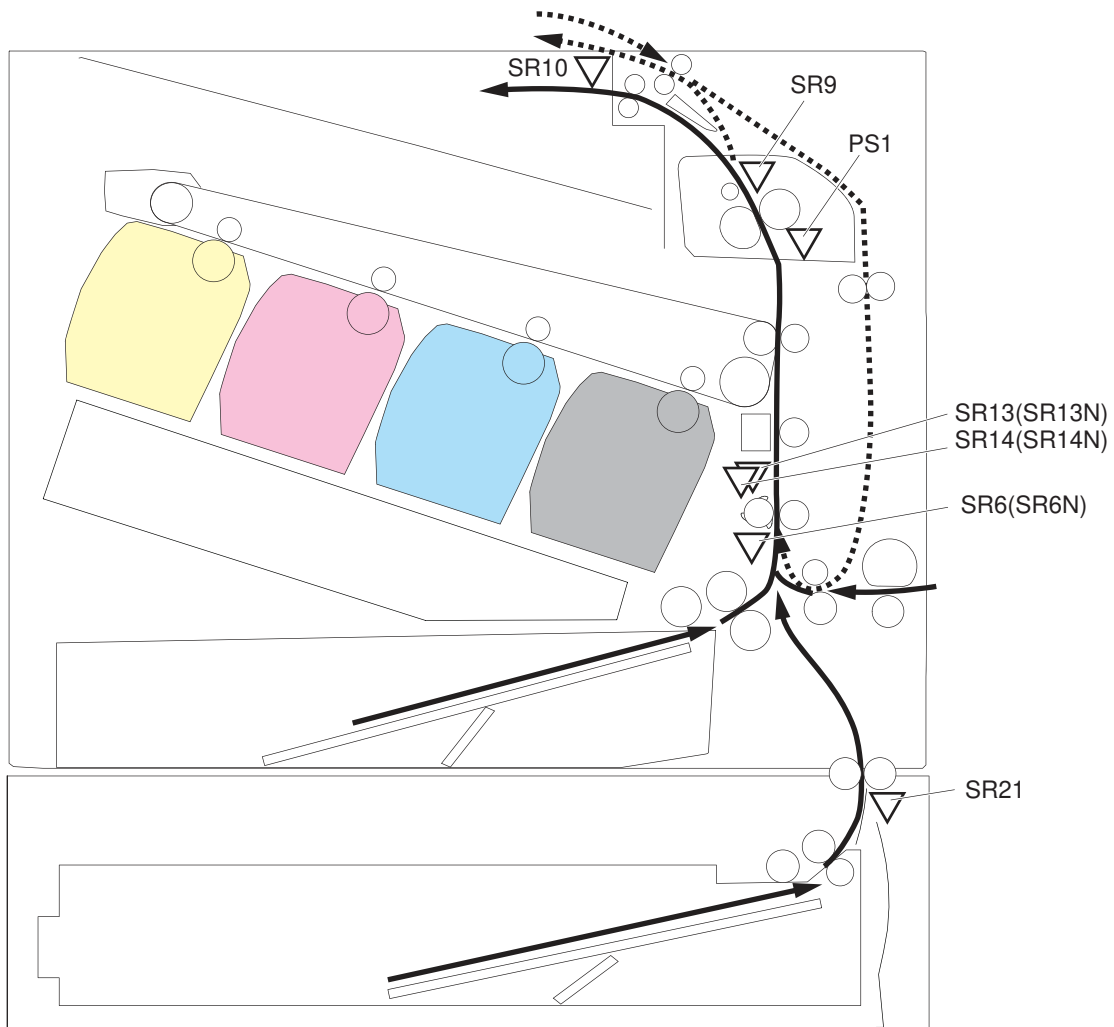
Jam detection/prevention

Learn about the engine pickup, feed, and delivery jam detection/prevention.

The printer uses the following sensors to detect the paper as it moves through the paper path and to report to the DC controller if the paper has jammed.

- Top of page (TOP) sensor (SR6/SR6N)
- Media width sensor (front, SR13/SR13N)
- Media width sensor (rear, SR14/SR14N)
- Loop sensor (PS1)
- Fuser delivery sensor (SR9)
- Output bin media-full sensor (SR10)
- 1x550 sheet paper feeder media feed sensor (SR21)

Figure 3-37 Jam detection sensors



The printer determines that a jam has occurred if one of these sensors detects paper at an inappropriate time. The DC controller stops the print operation and notifies the formatter.

Table 3-22 Detected jam types

Jam	Description
Media input delay jam 1	Media did not reach the registration sensor in time.
Media input delay jam 2	Media did not reach the source tray feed sensor in time.
Media input delay jam 3	Media did not reach the tray 3 feed sensor in time.
Duplex re-feed jam 1	Media did not reach the registration sensor in time.
Media input stay jam 1	Media remained at the registration sensor longer than legal-sized media should remain.
Fuser delivery delay jam 1	Media did not reach the fuser output sensor in time.
Fuser delivery stay jam 1	Media stayed at fuser output sensor longer than it should stay. Media is in duplex path.

Table 3-22 Detected jam types (continued)

Jam	Description
Fuser delivery stay jam 2	Media stayed at fuser output sensor longer than it should stay. Media is in simplex path.
Wrap jam 1	Media is first detected at fuser output sensor and then disappeared from the sensor before it should have disappeared.
Door open jam	A door is open while paper is moving through the printer.
Residual Media in paper path jam 1	Media detected in the paper path.

Fuser wrapping jam detection

Learn about the engine pickup, feed, and delivery fuser wrapping jam detection.

The printer includes controls for detecting when a jam occurs causing the paper to wrap around the fuser roller.

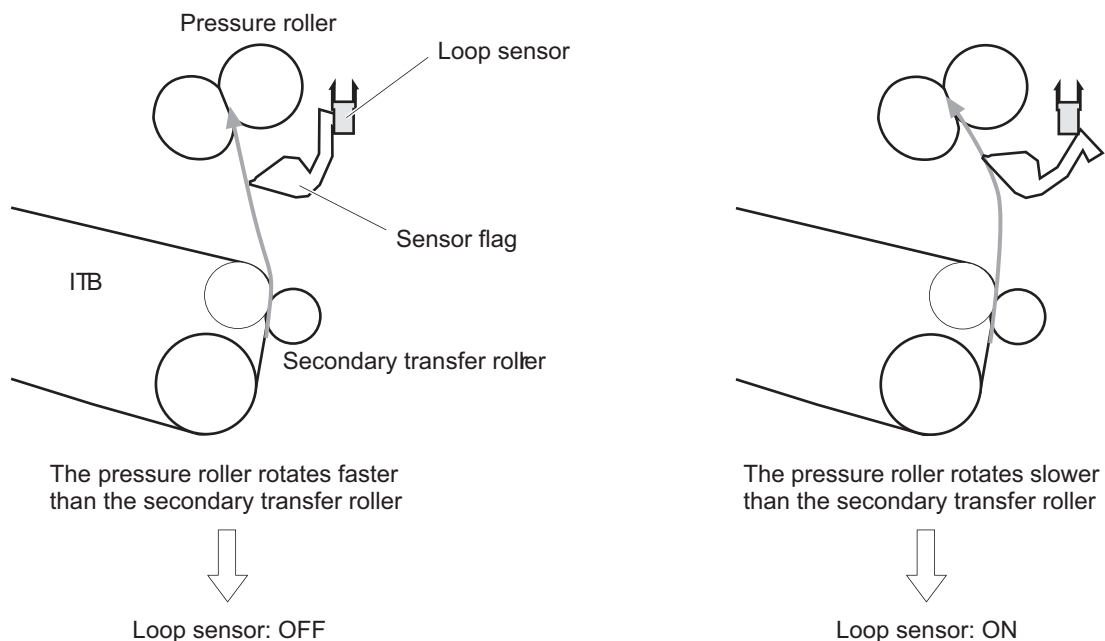
Loop control

The loop control stabilizes the paper feed operation before the paper enters the fuser.

- If the pressure roller rotates slower than the secondary transfer roller, the paper loop increases and an image defect or paper crease occurs.
- If the pressure roller rotates faster than the secondary transfer roller, the paper loop decreases and a vertical scanning magnification failure occurs because the pressure roller pulls the paper.

To prevent these problems, the loop sensor detects the paper loop before the paper enters the fuser. The DC controller adjusts the rotational speed of the fuser motor according to the output signals from the loop sensor and maintains the paper loop. The DC controller slows the fuser motor when the sensor is off and speeds up the motor when the sensor is on.

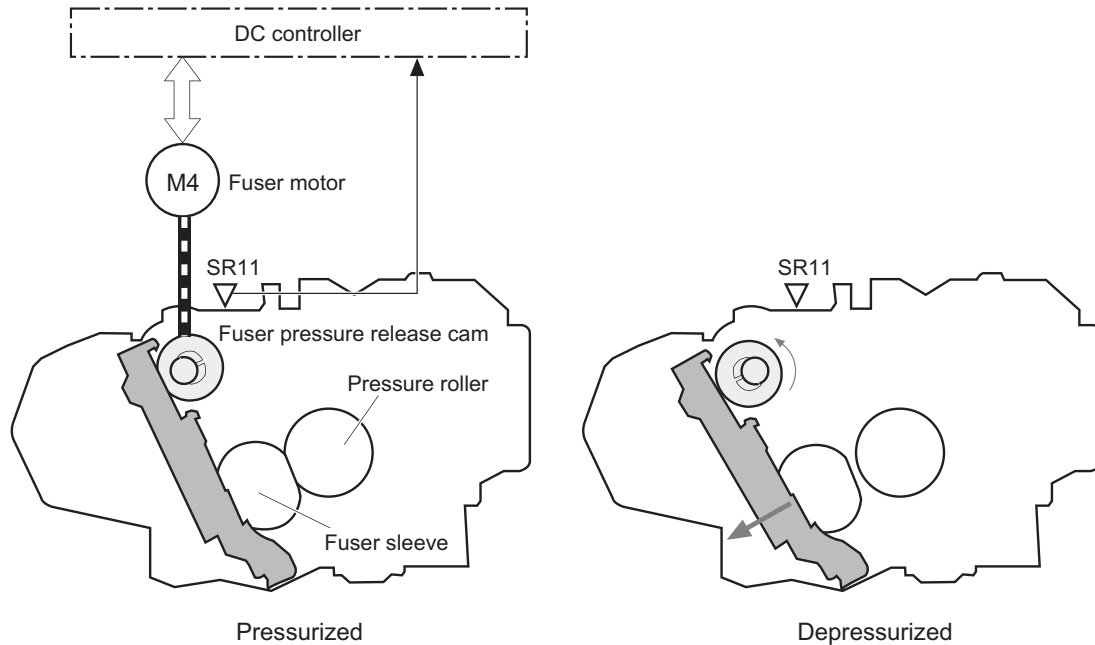
Figure 3-38 Fuser loop control mechanism



Pressure roller pressurization and depressurization control

To prevent excessive wear on the pressure roller and help with jam-clearing procedures, the pressure roller pressurizes only during printing and standby. The DC controller reverses the fuser motor. The fuser motor rotates the fuser pressure-release cam.

Figure 3-39 Pressure roller pressurization control



The pressure roller depressurizes under the following conditions.

- The printer is turned off
- Any failure occurs
- During power-save mode
- A paper jam is detected

If the DC controller does not sense the fuser pressure-release sensor for a specified period after it reverses the fuser motor, it notifies the formatter that a fuser pressure-release mechanism failure has occurred.

Input devices

Learn about the input devices.

Tray 3-5

Learn about the optional 550-sheet paper feeder (optional Tray 3-5).

The 550-sheet paper feeder is optionally installed at bottom of the printer. It picks up the print media and feeds it to the printer. The paper DC controller controls the operational sequence of the paper feeder. The printer supports up to three of these paper feeders at a time.

Paper path

Learn about the Tray 3-5 paper path.

The 550-sheet paper feeder is installed under the printer. It picks up paper and feeds it into the printer. The figure below shows the optional Tray 3-5 paper path.


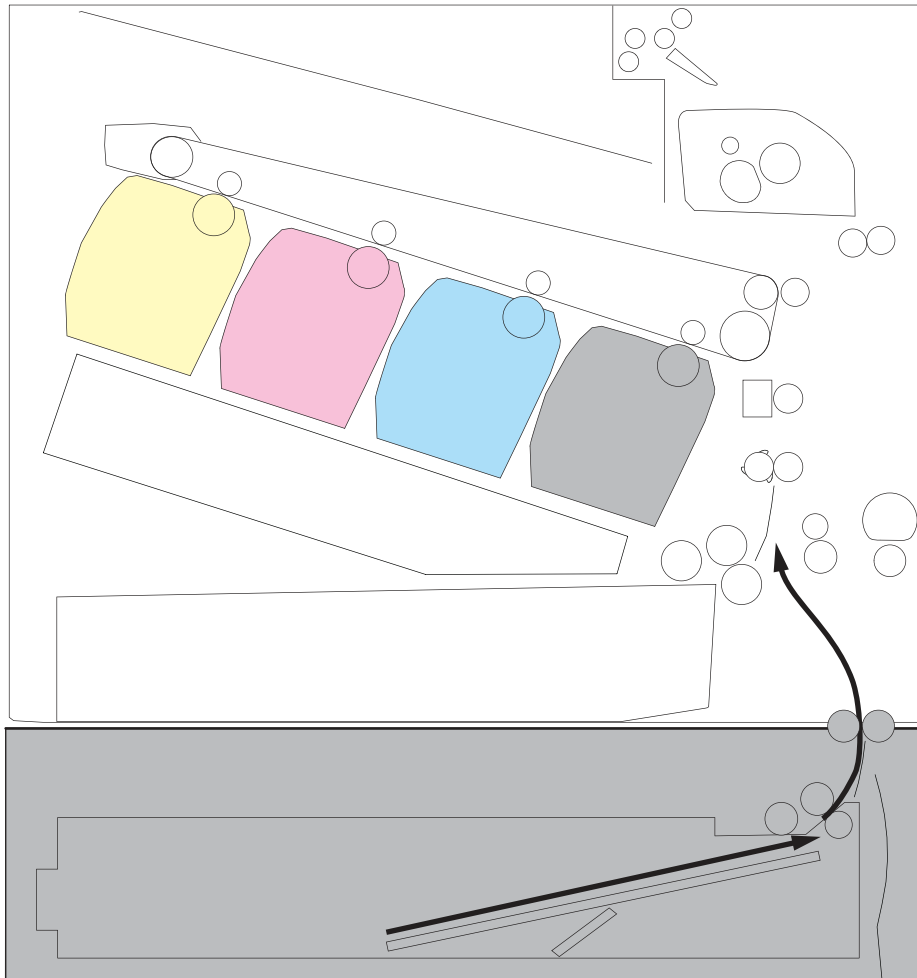
 **NOTE:** If more than one paper feeder is installed (Trays 4/5), the paper feeds up through each paper feeders to the print engine.

Figure 3-40 550-sheet paper feeder

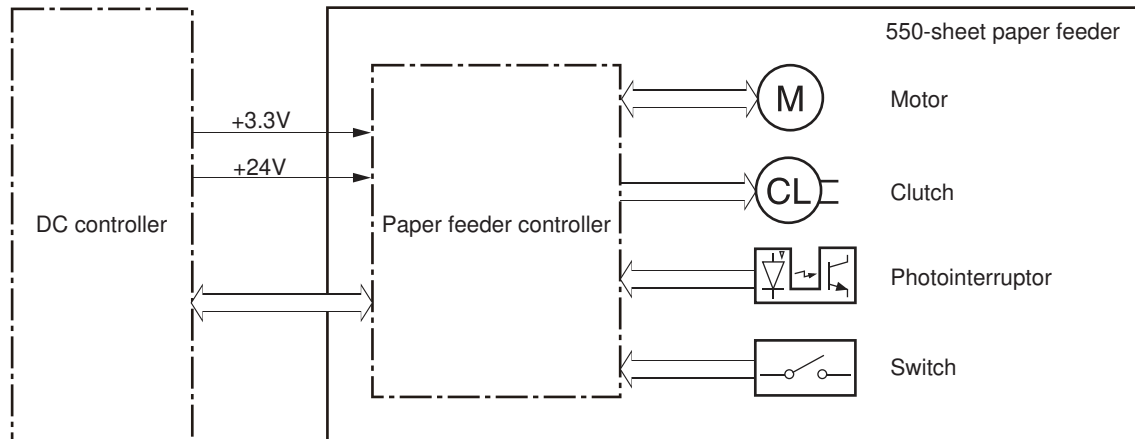


Tray 3-5 paper feeder controller

Learn about the paper feeder controller.

The figure below shows the paper feeder controller block diagram. The table in this topic describes the paper feeder electrical components. The paper feeder controller controls the operational sequence of the paper feeder.

Figure 3-41 Paper feeder controller



Tray 3-5 motor control

The 550-sheet paper feeder has one motor for lifting the tray and feeding paper.

The 550-sheet paper feeder has one motor for lifting the tray and feeding paper.

Table 3-23 Tray 3-5 motor control

Abbreviation	Component	Drives	Failure detection
M20	Feed motor (550-sheet paper feeder)	Tray pickup roller (B5L24-67904)	No
		Tray feed roller (B5L24-67904)	
		Paper feed assembly (RM2-5145-000CN)	
		Lifter drive assembly (RM2-5149-000CN)	

Electrical components, pickup and feed

Learn about the Tray 3-5 electrical components.

The paper feeder contains several motors, solenoids, sensors, and switches, as described in the following table.

Figure 3-42 Electrical components (Tray 3-5)

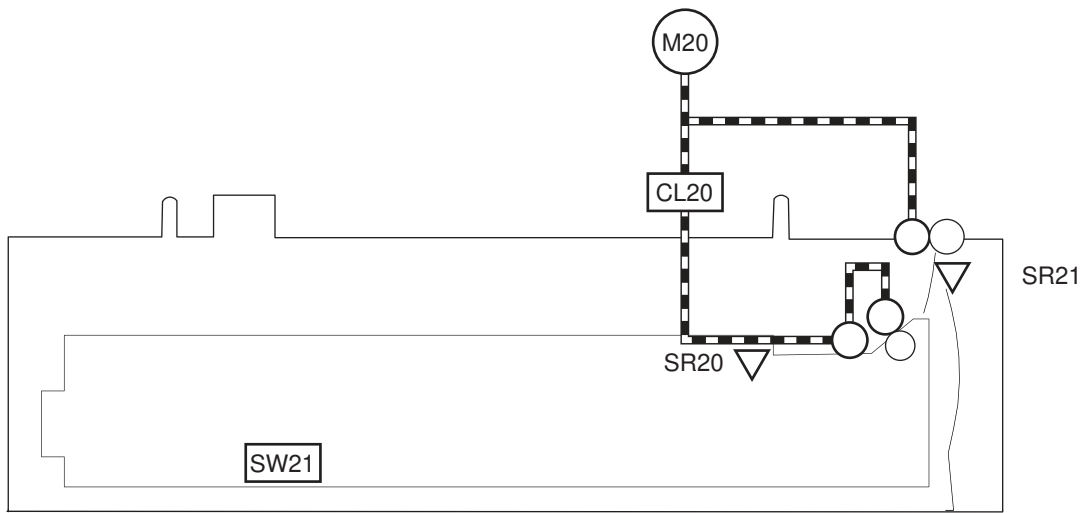


Table 3-24 Electrical components (Tray 3-5)

Component type	Abbreviation	Component name	Part number
Motor	M20	Feed motor	Paper feed assembly (RM2-5145-000CN)
Clutch	CL20	Tray pick up clutch	Lifter drive assembly (RM2-5149-000CN)
Switch	SW20	Right door switch	Right door (RM2-5146-000CN)
Switch	SW21	Tray detection switch	Switch button (WC2-5806-000CN)
Sensor	SR20	Tray media-out sensor	Paper pickup assembly (RM2-5154-000CN)
Sensor	SR21	Feed sensor	Paper feed assembly (RM2-5145-000CN)

Tray 3-5 multiple feed prevention

Learn about the Tray 3-5 multiple feed prevention.

The multiple-feed prevention for the 550-sheet paper feeder is operated in the same way as that of the printer base.

Tray 3-5 tray presence detection

Learn about the Tray 3-5 tray presence detection.

The presence detection for the 550-sheet paper feeder is the same way as that of the printer base.

Tray 3-5 tray lift operation

Learn about the Tray 3-5 tray lift operation.

The 550-sheet paper feeder keeps the paper stack surface at the correct pickup position. The tray lift operation occurs under the following conditions.

- The printer is turned on
- The tray is inserted
- The paper stack surface of the tray lowers

Tray lift sequence

1. The feeder tray-lifting motor rotates and the lifter moves up.
2. When the paper-feeder media-stack-surface sensor detects the stack surface of the paper, the lifting motor stops.
3. The lifting motor rotates again to lift the lifter when the paper-feeder media-stack-surface sensor detects the stack surface, and then lowers during printing.

If a tray media-stack-surface sensor does not detect a stack surface within a specified period after the lifting motor starts rotating, the paper feeder driver determines that the lifting motor has failed and notifies the formatter through the DC controller.

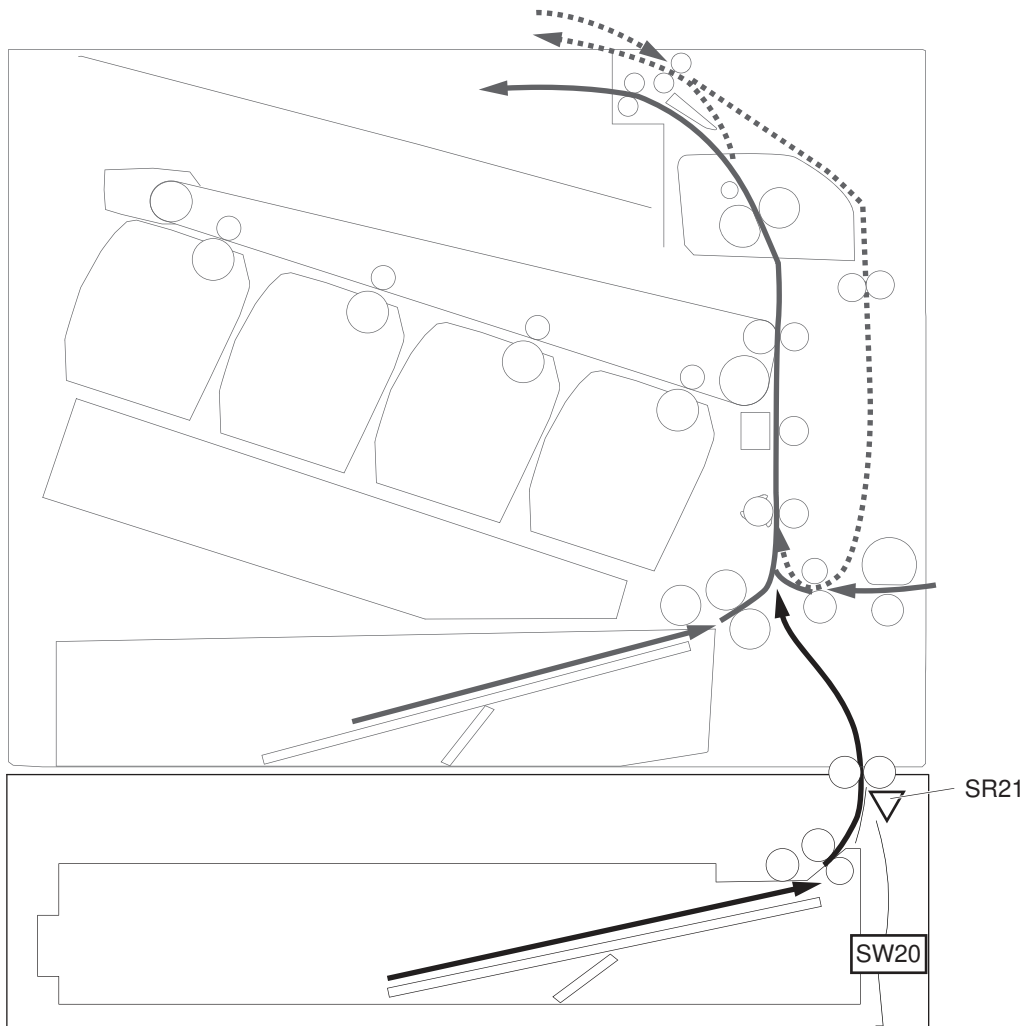
The paper-feeder driver notifies the formatter if either of the paper-feeder media-stack-surface sensors fails to detect the stack surface within a specified period from when a lift-up operation starts.

Tray 3-5 jam detection

Learn about Tray 3-5 jam detection.

The 550-sheet paper feeder uses the feed sensor (SR21) and right door switch (SW20) to detect the presence of paper and to check whether paper has jammed

Figure 3-43 Jam detection (Tray 3-5)



The 550-sheet paper feeder detects the following jams.

- **Media input delay jam 1**
Paper did not reach the registration sensor in time.
- **Media input delay jam 2**
Paper did not reach the source tray feed sensor in time.
- **Media input delay jam 3**
Paper did not reach the tray 3 feed sensor in time.
- **Pickup stationary jam**
The feed sensor does not detect the trailing edge of paper within a specified time after the sensor detects the leading edge.
- **Residual paper jam**
The feed sensor detects the presence of paper for a specified time during an automatic delivery operation.

- **Right door open jam**

The right door open is detected during a paper feed operation.

4 Solve problems

Learn about solving printer problems.

HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).



[View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.](#)

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select [Services & Support](#) (near the top of the screen).
2. Under [Services Delivery](#), select [Technical Support](#).
3. Select [Technical Documentation](#).

Find information about the following topics

- Service manuals
- Service advisories
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Warranty and regulatory information

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:



[View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.](#)

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)
- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Additional technical support WISE videos

The videos below provide additional ways to access printer information using WISE.



[View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(model number search\).](#)



[View a video of ow to use WISE to find technical support videos \(Product detail page \[PDP\] search\).](#)

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts the user to the situation.


This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist and a troubleshooting flow chart to filter out many possible causes of the problem.

- Use the pre-troubleshooting check list to gather information about the problem from the customer.
- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?

- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?

 **NOTE:** To print a configuration page using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

 **NOTE:** The customer is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Pre-troubleshooting checklist

The following table includes basic questions to ask the customer to quickly help define the problem(s).

Table 4-1 Pre-troubleshooting checklist

General topic	Questions
Environment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the printer installed on a solid, level surface (+/- 1°)? • Is the power-supply voltage within ± 10 volts of the specified power source? • Is the power-supply plug inserted in the printer and the wall outlet (not a surge protector)? • Is the operating environment within the specified parameters? • Is the printer exposed to ammonia gas, such as that produced by diazo copiers or office cleaning materials? <p>NOTE: Diazo copiers produce ammonia gas as part of the copying processes. Ammonia gas (from cleaning supplies or a diazo copier) can have an adverse effect on some printer components (for example, the toner cartridge or cartridges OPC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the printer exposed to direct sunlight? • Is the printer exposed to an air conditioning or heating vent that can cause temperature fluctuations?
Media	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does the customer use only supported media? • Is the media in good condition (no curls, folds, or distortion)? • Is the media stored correctly and within environmental limits?
Input trays	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the amount of media in the tray within specifications? • Is the media correctly placed in the tray? • Are the paper guides aligned with the stack (no gaps in the stack or excessive pressure causing the stack to bow)? • Is the tray (or trays) correctly installed in the printer?
Toner cartridge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the toner cartridge (or cartridges) installed correctly? <p>NOTE: If country/region specific toner cartridges are available for the printer, make sure the correct cartridge is installed.</p>
Transfer unit and fuser	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Are the transfer unit and fuser installed correctly? <p>NOTE: For printers with an intermediate transfer belt (ITB), is the ITB installed correctly and fully seated. If a replacement ITB was installed, was all of the packing materials removed?</p>
Covers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the toner cartridge door closed?


Table 4-1 Pre-troubleshooting checklist (continued)

General topic	Questions
Condensation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does condensation occur following a temperature change (particularly in winter following cold storage)? If so, wipe affected parts dry or leave the printer on for 10 to 20 minutes. Was a toner cartridge (or cartridges) opened soon after being moved from a cold to a warm room? If so, allow the toner cartridge (or cartridges) to sit at room temperature for 1 to 2 hours.
Miscellaneous	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for and remove any non-HP components (toner cartridges, memory modules, and EIO cards) from the printer. Remove the printer from the network and ensure that the failure is associated with the printer before beginning troubleshooting. For any color print-quality issues (color printers only), calibrate the printer, and then print a diagnostics page to verify print quality.

Troubleshooting flowchart

This flowchart highlights the general processes to follow to quickly isolate and solve printer hardware problems.

Each row depicts a major troubleshooting step. Follow a “yes” answer to a question to proceed to the next major step. A “no” answer indicates that more testing is needed. Go to the appropriate section in this chapter and follow the instructions there. After completing the instructions, go to the next major step in this troubleshooting flowchart.

 **NOTE:** For solutions that require printing a page, see the following.

To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

Table 4-2 Troubleshooting flowchart

Step	Question	Action
1 Power on	Is the printer on and does a readable message display?	<p>Basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the on position.</p> <p>During normal operation cooling fans and/or motors should be operating. Place a hand over fan intake or exhaust vents to determine if the fan or fans are spinning. Lean close to the printer to hear motors rotating.</p> <p>If fans and/or motors are operating, the dc side of the power supply is functioning.</p> <p>Always make sure that the printer is plugged into a known-functioning wall receptacle. Remove power strips and plug the printer directly into a wall receptacle.</p> <p>After the control panel display is functional, see step 2.</p>
	<p>Yes ↓</p> <p>No →</p>	

Table 4-2 Troubleshooting flowchart (continued)

Step	Question	Action
2 Control panel messages	Does the message Ready display on the control panel?	After the errors have been corrected, go to step 3. Use the control panel message document (CPMD) section in this manual to correct any displayed error messages.
	Yes ↓ No →	
3 Event log	Open the Troubleshooting menu and print an event log to see the history of errors with this printer. Does the event log print?	If the event log does not print, check for error messages. If paper jams inside the printer, see the jams section of the printer service manual. If error messages display on the control panel when trying to print an event log, see the control panel message document (CPMD) section of this manual. After successfully printing and evaluating the event log, see step 4.
	Yes ↓ No →	
4 Information pages	Open the Reports menu and print the configuration pages to verify that all the accessories are installed. Are all the accessories installed?	If accessories that are installed are not listed on the configuration page, remove the accessory and reinstall it. Make sure that the most recent firmware is installed. See the firmware upgrade section of this manual for more information. After evaluating the configuration pages, see step 5.
	Yes ↓ No →	
5 Print quality	Does the print quality meet the customer's requirements?	Compare the images with the sample defects in the Image-quality troubleshooting section of this manual. Solve print-quality and copy-quality issues as needed. After the print quality is acceptable, see step 6.
	Yes ↓ No →	
6 Interface	Can the customer print successfully from the host computer?	

Table 4-2 Troubleshooting flowchart (continued)

Step	Question	Action
	Yes. This is the end of the troubleshooting process.	No →
		<p>Verify that all I/O cables are connected correctly and that a valid IP address is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page.</p> <p>If error messages display on the control panel or appear in the event log, see the control-panel message document (CPMD) section of this manual.</p> <p>When the customer can print from the host computer, this is the end of the troubleshooting process.</p>

Firmware upgrades

Learn about printer firmware upgrades.

To download the most recent firmware upgrade for the printer, go to:

- In the US, go to www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp>.

- a. Select **Get drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select the appropriate product by name.



NOTE: More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

- b. Select the driver language and operating system.
- c. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.

- Outside the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support.

- Select your country/region.
- Select **Drivers & Downloads**.
- Enter the product name in the **Find my product** dialogue box, and then select **Go**.



TIP: Click on the **How do I find my product name/number?** link to see a short video on identifying the printer's name and number.

- Select the appropriate product by name.




NOTE: More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

- Select the driver language and operating system.
- Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.


Determine the installed revision of firmware

Learn about how to determine the version of installed printer firmware.

Print a configuration page to determine the installed revision of firmware.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Print the configuration page from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Configuration/Status pages](#)
3. Touch [Configuration Page](#) to select it.
4. Touch the print icon  to print the pages.

Print the configuration page from a SFP control panel


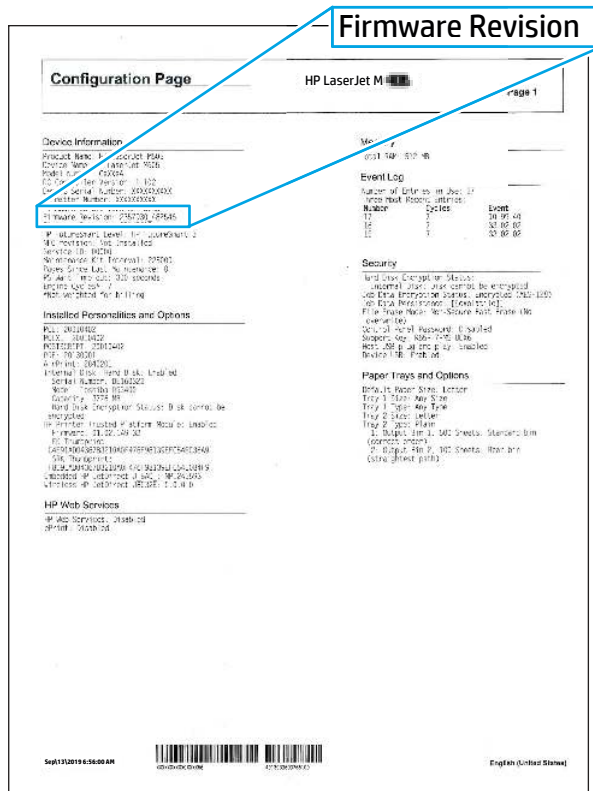
1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Reports](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration/Status Pages](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration Page](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the print icon . Press the [OK](#) button to print the pages.

Figure 4-1 Configuration page firmware version



HP Embedded Web Server

Learn how to perform a firmware upgrade using the HP Embedded Web Server.

 **NOTE:** The printer should be at the **Ready** state.

The firmware update might take 10 minutes or longer based on the input/output (I/O) transfer rates and the time it takes for the printer to reinitialize.

1. Open an Internet browser window.
2. Enter the printer IP address in the URL line.
3. Select the **Firmware Upgrade** link from the **General** tab or from the **Troubleshooting** tab.
4. Browse to the location that the firmware upgrade file was downloaded to, and then select the firmware file. The file has a .bdl file extension. Select the **Install** button to perform the upgrade.

 **NOTE:** Do not close the browser window OR interrupt communication until the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) displays the confirmation page.

5. After the printer reinitializes, print a configuration page and verify that the latest firmware version has been installed.

USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) (SFP)

Learn how to perform a USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) update using a SFP control panel.

1. Press the **Cancel** button when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3 Administrator, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +1 Download, and then press the OK button.
4. Insert the USB flash drive with the .bdl file on it into the USB port on the printer.

 **NOTE:** If the error message **No USB Thumbdrive Files Found** displays on the control panel display, try using a different portable storage device.

5. Use the arrow buttons to highlight **USB Thumbdrive**, and then press the OK button.
6. Use the arrow buttons to highlight the .bdl file, and then press the OK button.

 **NOTE:** The upgrade process can take 10 minutes or longer to complete.

 **TIP:** If there is more than one .bdl file on the storage device, make sure to select the correct file for this printer.

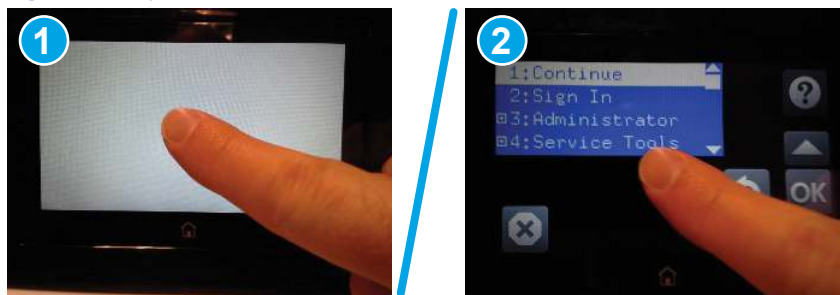
7. When the message **Complete** displays on the control panel display, turn the printer power off, and then on again.
8. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.

USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) (MFP)

Learn how to perform a USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) update from an MFP control panel.

1. Copy the .bdl file to a portable USB flash drive.
2. Touch the middle of the control panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.


Figure 4-2 Open the Pre-boot menu



3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3 Administrator, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +1 Download, and then touch the OK button.
5. Insert the USB flash drive with the .bdl file on it into the USB port on the printer.

 **NOTE:** If the error message **No USB Thumbdrive Files Found** displays on the control panel display, try using a different portable storage device.

6. Use the arrow buttons to highlight **USB Thumbdrive**, and then touch the OK button.
7. Use the arrow buttons to highlight the .bdl file, and then touch the OK button.

 **NOTE:** The upgrade process can take 10 minutes or longer to complete.

 **TIP:** If there is more than one .bdl file on the storage device, make sure to select the correct file for this printer.

8. When the message **Complete** displays on the control panel display, touch the down arrow ▼ button several times until the message **Continue** displays.
9. Touch the **OK** button to begin the upgrade. When the upgrade is complete, the printer will initialize to the **Ready** state.
10. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.

USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) (SFP)

Learn how to perform a USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) update from a SFP control panel (FutureSmart 4 firmware or later).

1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Support Tools**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - **Maintenance**
 - **USB Firmware Upgrade**
3. Insert the USB flash drive with the .bdl file on it into the USB port on the printer.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the appropriate .bdl file, and then press the **OK** button.
5. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.

USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) (MFP)

Learn how to perform a USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) update from a n MFP control panel.

1. Copy the .bdl file to a portable USB flash drive.
2. Turn the printer on, and then wait until it reaches the **Ready** state.
3. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the **Support Tools** button.
4. Open the **Maintenance** menu.
5. Touch the **USB Firmware Upgrade** button.
6. Insert the USB flash drive with the .bdl file on it into the USB port on the printer.
7. Touch the .bdl file, and then touch the **Upgrade** button.

 **TIP:** If there is more than one .bdl file on the storage device, make sure to select the correct file for this printer.

8. Select one of the following options:

- **Upgrade**

 **NOTE:** The upgrade process can take 10 minutes or longer to complete.

- Re-install
 - Downgrade
9. When the upgrade is complete, the printer will initialize to the **Ready** state.
 10. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.


Comprehensive list of troubleshooting tools

Learn about the printer troubleshooting tools.

Engine test

Learn about troubleshooting the printer using the engine test diagnostic.

When the engine test is performed, a test page with lines prints if the engine is functioning correctly.

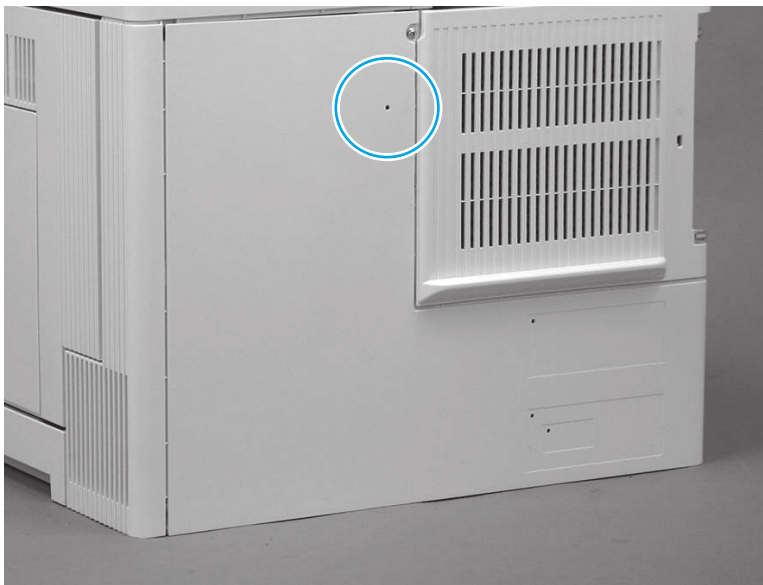
 **NOTE:** Depending on printer models, either a simplex engine test page, a duplex engine test page, or both simplex and duplex engine test pages might be available.

Use a small pointed object to depress and hold the engine test button (location varies depending on the printer model). An engine test page prints. The test page can use only Tray 2 as the paper source, so make sure that paper is loaded in Tray 2.

Possible engine test pages (printer dependent)

- A series of lines parallel to the **short** end of the page.
- A series of lines parallel to the **long** end of the page.

Figure 4-3 Engine test button



Pre-boot menu options

The **Pre-boot** menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

CAUTION: The *Format Disk* option performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action unless it is specified as a solution in the CPMD.

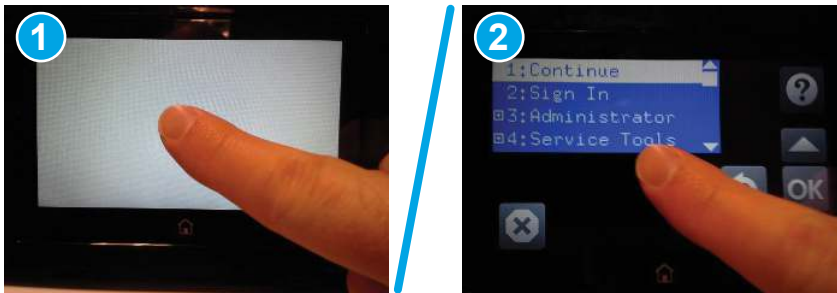
TIP: The *Pre-boot* menu is also remotely accessible by using a telnet network protocol (Remote Admin) to establish an administration connection to the printer.

Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Use the following procedure to open the *Pre-boot* menu from a touchscreen control panel.

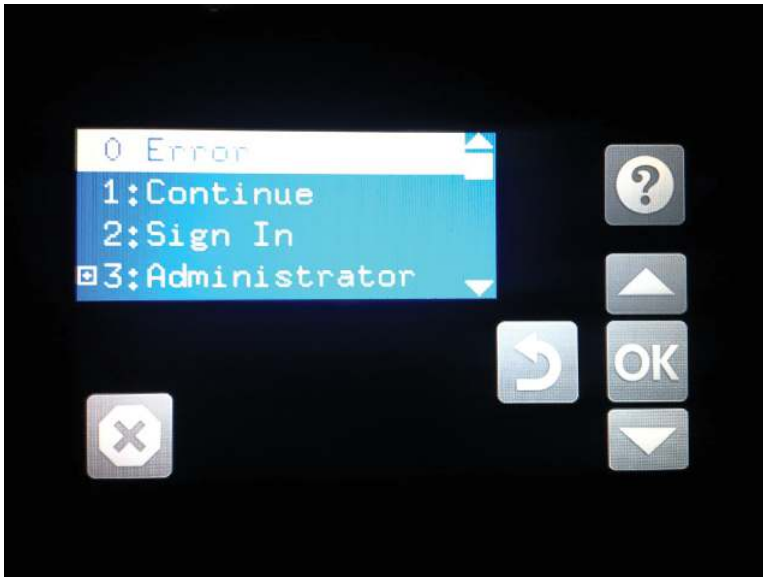
1. Turn the printer on.
2. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 4-4 Open the Pre-boot menu



3. On the *Pre-boot* menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 4-5 Pre-boot menu





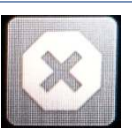



Button

Description




Use this button to see more information about a selected item.

Button	Description
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the [Pre-boot](#) menu.
5. Touch the [OK](#) button to select a menu item.

Open the Pre-Boot menu from an LCD control panel

Use the following procedure to open the [Pre-Boot](#) menu from an LCD control panel.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. Press the [Cancel](#)  button when you see the [1/8](#) under the logo.
3. Use the arrow buttons on the control panel to navigate the [Pre-Boot](#) menu.
4. Press the [OK](#) button to select a menu item.

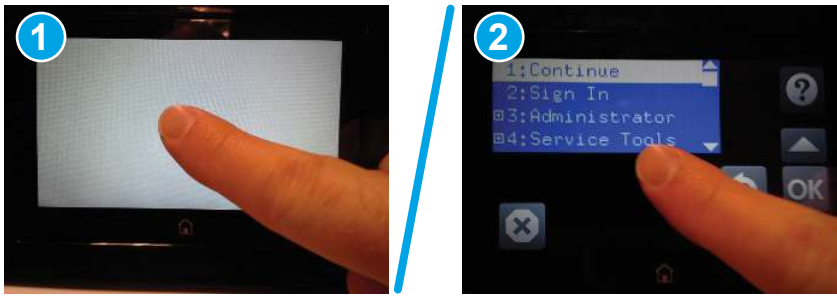
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Use the following procedure to perform a cold reset using the [Pre-boot](#) menu from a touchscreen control panel.

⚠ CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 4-6 Open the Pre-boot menu




2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button.
3. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then touch the OK button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

 **NOTE:** The printer will initialize.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from an LCD control panel

Use the following procedure to perform a cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from an LCD control panel.

 **CAUTION:** This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Press the Cancel  button when you see the 1/8 under the logo.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then press the OK button.
4. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then press the OK button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

 **NOTE:** The printer will initialize.


 **NOTE:** Some of the pre-boot options in the following tables are not supported by the current version of the printer firmware and are included for information only. Future versions of firmware will support these options.

Table 4-3 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Continue				<p>Selecting the Continue item exits the Pre-boot menu and continues the normal boot process.</p> <p>If a selection is not made in the initial menu within 30 seconds, the printer returns to a normal boot (the same as selecting Continue).</p> <p>If the user navigates to another menu, the timeout does not apply.</p>
Sign In				Enter the administrator PIN or service PIN if one is required to open the Pre-boot menu.
Administrator				<p>This item navigates to the Administrator submenu.</p> <p>If authentication is required (and the user is not already signed in) the Sign In prompt displays. The user is required to sign in.</p>
Administrator	Download	Network		This item initiates a Pre-boot firmware download process. A USB Thumbdrive option will work on all FutureSmart printers. USB or Network connections are not currently supported.
		USB		
		USB Thumbdrive		
Administrator	Format Disk			<p>This item reinitializes the disk and cleans all disk partitions.</p> <p>CAUTION: Selecting the Format Disk item removes all data.</p> <p>A delete confirmation prompt is not provided.</p> <p>The system is not bootable after this action and a 99.09.67 error displays on the control panel. A firmware download must be performed to return the system to a bootable state.</p>
Administrator	Partial Clean			<p>This item reinitializes the disk (removing all data except the firmware repository where the master firmware bundle is downloaded and saved).</p> <p>CAUTION: Selecting the Partial Clean item removes all data except the firmware repository. A delete confirmation prompt is not provided.</p> <p>CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).</p> <p>This allows a user to reformat the disk by removing the firmware image from the active directory without having to download new firmware code (printer remains bootable).</p>
Administrator	Change Password			Select this item to set or change the administrator password.

Table 4-3 Pre-boot menu options (1 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Clear Password			<p>Select the Clear Password item to remove a password from the Administrator menu. Before the password is actually cleared, a message will be shown asking to confirm that the password should be cleared. Press the OK button to confirm the action.</p> <p>When the confirmation prompt displays, press the OK button to clear the password.</p>

Table 4-4 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk	Clear disk		<p>Select the Clear disk item to enable using an external device for job storage. Job storage is normally enabled only for the Boot device. This will be grayed out unless the 99.09.68 error is displayed.</p>
Administrator	Manage Disk	Lock Disk		<p>Select the Lock Disk item to lock (mate) a new secure disk to this printer.</p> <p>The secure disk already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer. Use this function to have more than one encrypted disk accessible by the printer when using them interchangeably.</p> <p>The data stored on the secure disk locked to this printer always remains accessible to this printer.</p>
Administrator	Manage Disk	Leave Unlocked		<p>Select the Leave Unlocked item to use a new secure disk in an unlocked mode for a single service event. The secure disk that is already locked to this printer will remain accessible to this printer and uses the old disk's encryption password with the new disk.</p> <p>The secure disk that is already locked to this printer remains accessible to this printer.</p>
Administrator	Manage Disk	Clear Disk Pwd		<p>Select the Clear Disk Pwd item to continue using the non-secure disk and clear the password associated with the yet-to-be installed secure disk.</p> <p>CAUTION: Data on the missing secure disk will be permanently inaccessible.</p>
Administrator	Manage Disk	Retain Password		<p>Select the Retain Password item to use the non-secure disk for this session only, and then search for the missing secure disk in future sessions.</p>
Administrator	Manage Disk	Boot Device	Secure Erase	<p>Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required.</p> <p>This might take a long time.</p> <p>NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command is a one-pass overwrite, which erases the entire disk including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.</p>

Table 4-4 Pre-boot menu options (2 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	Boot Device	Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all data on the disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. It erases the encryption key. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.
Administrator	Manage Disk	Boot Device	Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 4-5 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Manage Disk (continued)	Internal Device		Select the Internal Device item to erase the internal device or get a status about the internal device.
Administrator	Manage Disk	Internal Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
Administrator	Manage Disk	Internal Device	Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow the user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The HP High Performance Secure Hard Disk is erased.
Administrator	Manage Disk	Internal Device	Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.
Administrator	Manage Disk	External Device		Select the External Device item to erase the external device or get status about the external device.
Administrator	Manage Disk	External Device	Secure Erase	Select the Secure Erase item to erase all of the data on the disk and unlock it if required. This might take a long time. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The ATA secure-erase command erases the entire disk, including firmware. The disk remains an encrypted disk.
Administrator	Manage Disk	External Device	Erase/Unlock	Select the Erase/Unlock item to cryptographically erase all of the data on disk and unlock the disk to allow a user to gain access to it from any printer. NOTE: The system will be unusable until the system files are reinstalled. The encryption key is erased, so the disk becomes a non-encrypted disk.

Table 4-5 Pre-boot menu options (3 of 7) (continued)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator	Manage Disk	External Device	Get Status	This item provides disk status information if any is available.

Table 4-6 Pre-boot menu options (4 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [DHCP]		The network can be configured to obtain the network settings from a DHCP server or as static. Use this item for automatic IP address acquisition from the DHCP server.
Administrator	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [STATIC]		Use this item to manually assign the network addresses.
Administrator	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [STATIC]	IP Address	Use this item to manually enter the IP addresses.
Administrator	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [STATIC]	Subnet Mask	Use this item to manually enter the subnet mask.
Administrator	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [STATIC]	Default Gateway	Use this item to manually enter the default gateway.
Administrator	Configure LAN NOTE: This configuration is only active when the Pre-boot menu is open.	IP Mode [STATIC]	Save	Select the <i>Save</i> item to save the manual settings.

Table 4-7 Pre-boot menu options (5 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Startup Options			Select the Startup Options item to specify options that can be set for the next time the printer is turned on and initializes to the Ready state.
Administrator	Startup Options	Show Revision		<p>Not currently functional: Select the Show Revision item to allow the printer to initialize and show the firmware version when the printer reaches the Ready state.</p> <p>Once the printer power is turned on the next time, the Show Revision item is unchecked so that the firmware revision is not shown.</p>
Administrator	Startup Options	Cold Reset		<p>Select the Cold Reset item to clear the IP address and all customer settings. (This item also returns all settings to factory defaults.)</p> <p>NOTE: Items in the Service menu are not reset.</p>
Administrator	Startup Options	Skip Disk Load		Select the Skip Disk Load item to disable installed third-party applications.
Administrator	Startup Options	Skip Cal		Select the Skip Cal item to skip the printer calibration for the very next power-initialization cycle only.
Administrator	Startup Options	Lock Service		<p>CAUTION: Select the Lock Service item to lock the Service menu access (both in the Pre-boot menu and the Device Maintenance menu).</p> <p>Service personnel must have the administrator remove the Lock Service setting before they can open the Service menu.</p>
Administrator	Startup Options	Skip FSCK		Select the Skip FSCK item to disable Chkdisk/ScanVolume during startup.
Administrator	Startup Options	First Power		<p>Not currently functional: This item allows the printer to initialize as if it is the first time it has been turned on.</p> <p>For example, the user is prompted to configure first-time settings like date/time, language, and other settings.</p> <p>Select this item so that it is enabled for the next time the printer power is turned on.</p> <p>When the printer power is turned on the next time, this item is unchecked so that the pre-configured settings are used during configuration, and the first-time setting prompt is not used.</p>
Administrator	Startup Options	Embedded Jetdirect Off		<p>Select the Embedded Jetdirect Off item to disable the embedded HP Jetdirect.</p> <p>By default this item is unchecked so that HP Jetdirect is always enabled.</p>
Administrator	Startup Options	WiFi Accessory		Select the WiFi Accessory item to enable the wireless accessory.

Table 4-8 Pre-boot menu options (6 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Diagnostics			Diagnostic items are useful to diagnose hardware components and their interface connections. Use these items to troubleshoot specific hardware components, and the interface between them and other components.
Administrator	Diagnostics	Memory	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Memory diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
Administrator	Diagnostics		Short	Use the Short item to select a brief memory test. NOTE: This test requires about four minutes to execute.
Administrator	Diagnostics		Long	Use the Long item to select an extended memory test. NOTE: This test requires about twenty minutes to execute.
Administrator	Diagnostics	Disk	Do Not Run	Use the Do Not Run item to exclude the Disk diagnostic when executing multiple diagnostics.
Administrator	Diagnostics		Short	Use the Short item to select a brief firmware self-test. NOTE: This test requires about two or three minutes to execute.
Administrator	Diagnostics		Long	Use the Long item to select an extended firmware self-test. NOTE: This test requires about sixty minutes to execute.
Administrator	Diagnostics		Optimized	Use the Optimized item to select a test that checks the active sectors on the disk. NOTE: This test requires about thirty minutes to execute.
Administrator	Diagnostics		Raw	Use the Raw item to select a test that checks every sector on the disk. NOTE: This test requires about fifty minutes to execute.
Administrator	Diagnostics		Smart	Use the Smart item to select a very brief test that checks the drive self-monitoring analysis and reporting technology (SMART) status—the drive detects and reports reliability indicators to help anticipate disk failures (SMART status).
Administrator	Diagnostics	CPB		Use the CPB item to verify the integrity of the copy processor board (CPB) and the formatter PCA connections.
Administrator	Diagnostics	Interconnect		Use the Interconnect item to verify the integrity of the interconnect PCA (ICB) and its connections.
Administrator	Diagnostics	Run Selected		Select the Run Selected item to execute a selected test. NOTE: If more than one test is selected, they are executed in sequence.


Table 4-9 Pre-boot menu options (7 of 7)

Menu option	First level	Second level	Third level	Description
Administrator (continued)	Remote Admin	Start Telnet		<p>The Remote Admin item allows a service technician to access to the printer Pre-boot menu remotely, and to navigate the menu selections from a remote location.</p> <p>IMPORTANT: A Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.</p> <p>This person will also need to provide a randomly generated PIN to the remote service technician.</p> <p>NOTE: For more information about using the Remote Admin function, see "Remote Admin (M506/M507/E50145, M527/M528/E52645)" in the Troubleshooting Manual.</p>
Administrator	Remote Admin	Stop Telnet		
Administrator	Remote Admin	Refresh IP		
Administrator	System Triage	Copy Logs		<p>If the device will not boot to the Ready state, or the diagnostic log feature found in the Troubleshooting menu is not accessible, then use the System Triage item to copy the diagnostic logs to a USB flash drive at the next printer start up.</p> <p>The files can then be sent to HP to help diagnose the problem.</p>
Administrator	Change Svc PWD			Use this item to change the Service menu personal identification number (PIN).
Administrator	Reset Svc PWD			If the Service menu personal identification number (PIN) has been changed. Use this item to reset it to the original PIN.
Service Tools	Reset Password			Use this item to reset the Pre-boot administrator password.
Service Tools	Subsystems			For manufacturing use only. Do not change these values.
Developer Tools	Netexec			

Remote Admin

Learn about the printer Remote Admin function.

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer [Pre-boot](#) menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the [Pre-boot](#) menu.

 **IMPORTANT:** While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the [Pre-boot](#) menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

Required software and network connection


Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed and enabled on the remote telnet client computer.

 **NOTE:** This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows-based system; however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

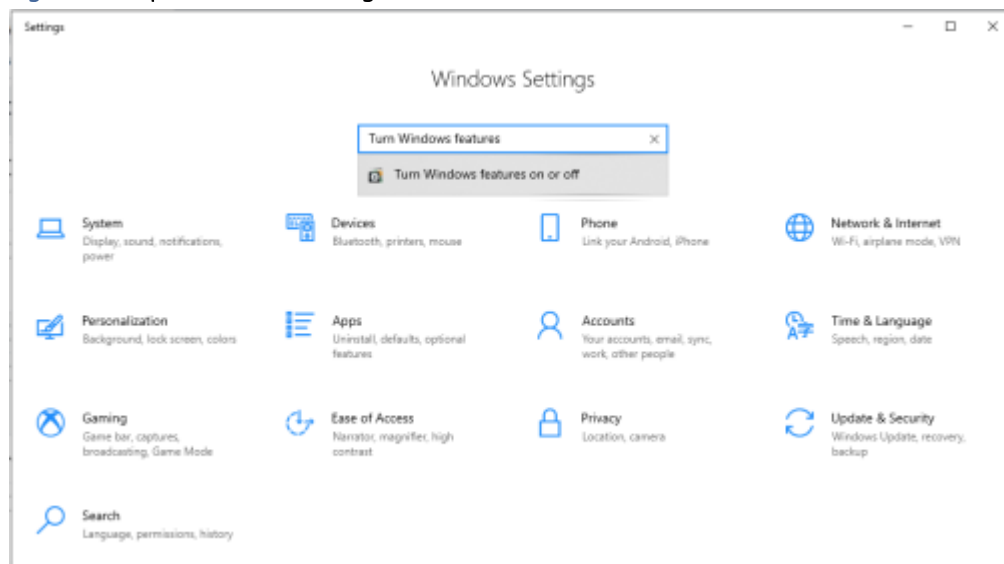
Enable the Windows telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

 **NOTE:** The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 10® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Windows Settings** dialog box, and then search for **Turn Windows features on or off**. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item.

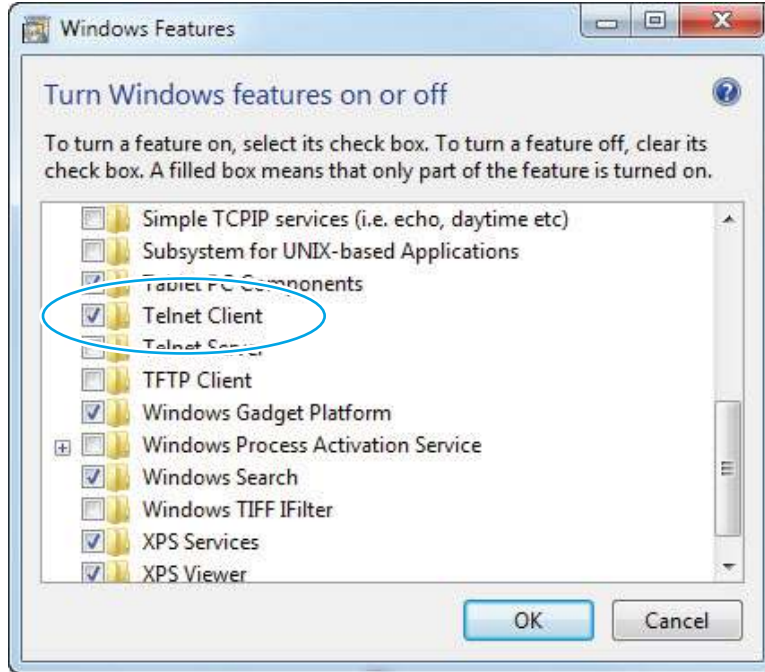
Figure 4-7 Open Windows Settings



2. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.

 **TIP:** If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 4-8 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer.

The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.

If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Use the following procedures to connect a remote connection.

Start the telnet server function at the printer

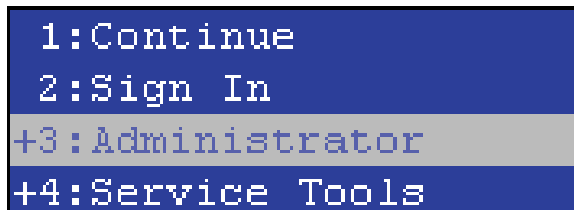
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

NOTE: This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a $1/8$ with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the [Pre-boot](#) menu.

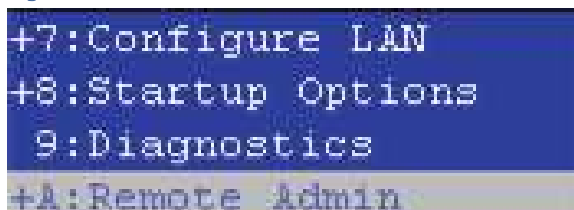
- Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the `+3:Administrator` item, and then touch the `OK` button to select it.

Figure 4-9 Select the `+3:Administrator` item



- Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the `+A:Remote Admin` item, and then touch the `OK` button to select it.

Figure 4-10 Select the `+A:Remote Admin` item



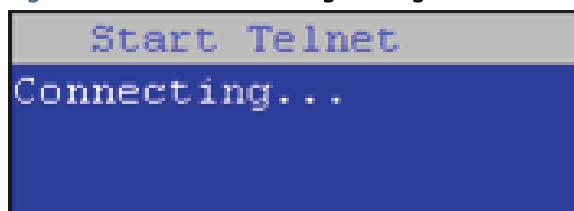
- Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the `1:Start Telnet` item, and then touch the `OK` button to select it.

Figure 4-11 Select the `1:Start Telnet` item



- Do one of the following
 - If a connecting message displays briefly, go to 7..

Figure 4-12 Telnet connecting message



- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 4-13 Telnet error message

```
Start Telnet
Unable to connect
Contact network
administrator.
```

- a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.
 - b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.
 - The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.
 - The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.
 - c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.
7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.



NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP:** The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port:** The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin:** A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 4-14 Telnet server function initialized

```
Start Telnet
IP: 16.88.109.66
Port: 23
Pin : 4031
```

Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

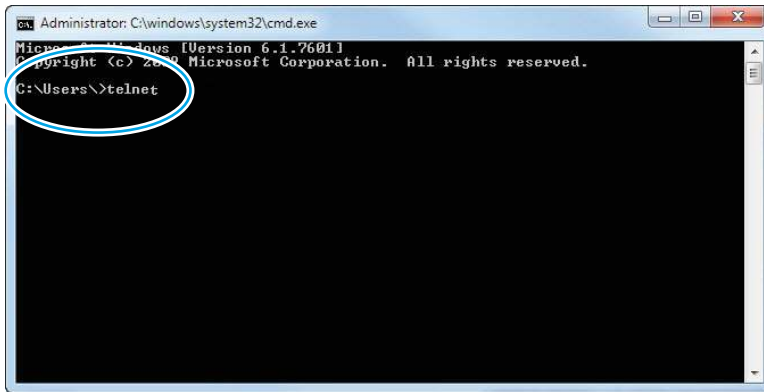
1. From the **Start** menu open the **Command Prompt** desktop application.



TIP: Type `cmd` in the application search dialogue box to find the application.

- From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-15 Start a telnet session



- Type `<IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

 **NOTE:** For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step 7 of the "Start the telnet server function at the printer" topic.


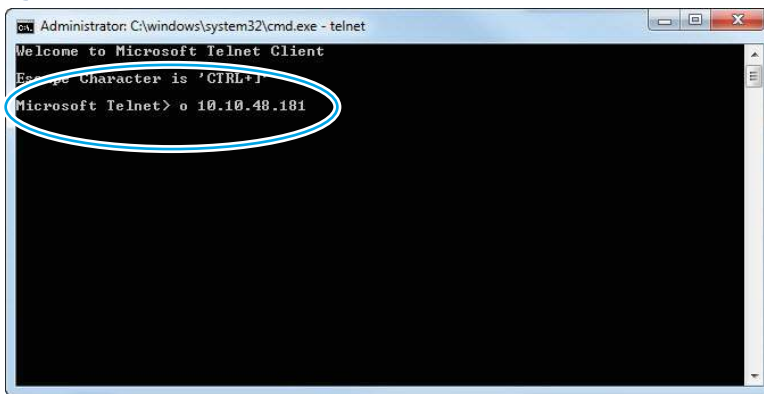
 **TIP:** If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network than the remote telnet client computer.

Figure 4-16 Establish a telnet connection



- Type the PIN that was displayed in step 7 of the "Start the telnet server function at the printer" topic at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.


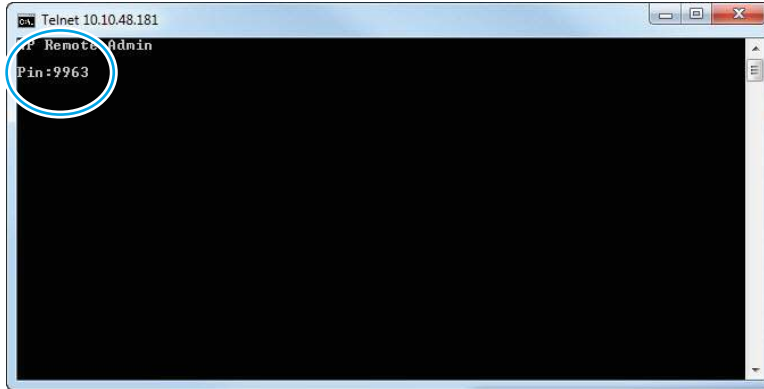

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See the "Start the telnet server function at the printer" topic.

Figure 4-17 Enter the PIN



5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered, and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see "Pre-boot menu options" in the printer *Service Manual*.

 **NOTE:** Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecured telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.

Figure 4-18 Remote Admin window



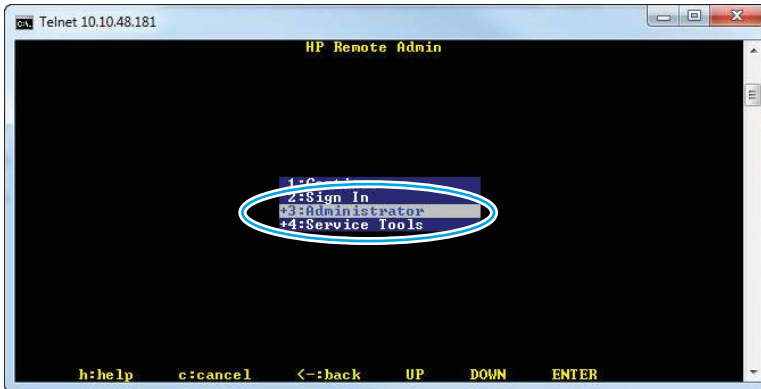
Disconnect a remote connection

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

 **NOTE:** The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

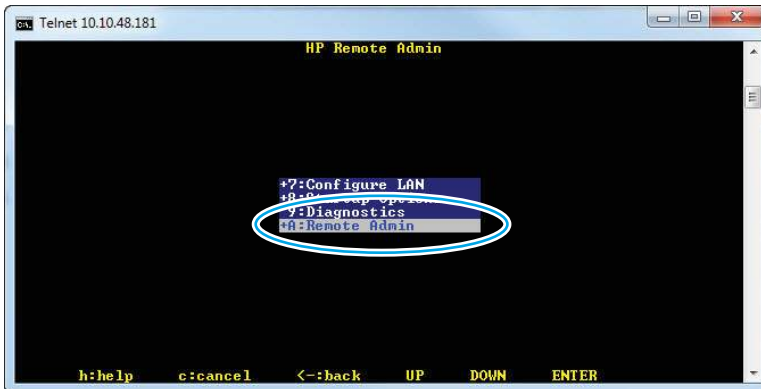
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-19 Access the administrator menu



2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 4-20 Access the remote admin menu

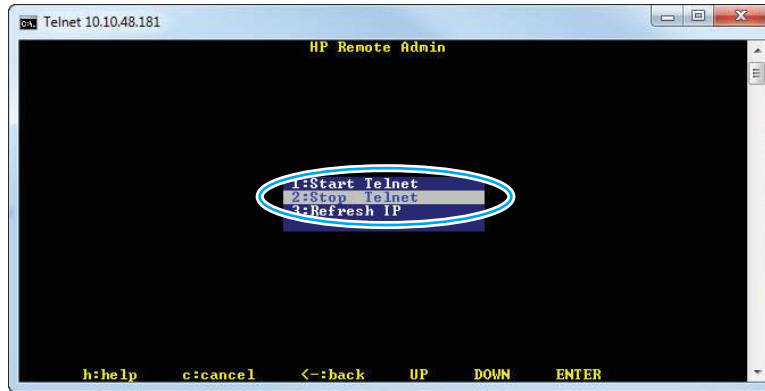


3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

 **IMPORTANT:** The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the **Home** button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the **OK** button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 4-21 Terminate the telnet connection



Advanced configuration with the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

Use the HP Embedded Web Server to manage advanced printing functions.


Introduction

Use the HP Embedded Web Server to manage printing functions from a computer instead of the printer control panel.

- View printer status information
- Determine the remaining life for all supplies and order new ones
- View and change tray configurations
- View and change the printer control-panel menu configuration
- View and print internal pages
- Receive notification of printer and supplies events
- View and change network configuration



The HP Embedded Web Server works when the printer is connected to an IP-based network. The HP Embedded Web Server does not support IPX-based printer connections. Internet access is not needed to open and use the HP Embedded Web Server.

When the printer is connected to the network, the HP Embedded Web Server is automatically available.

 **NOTE:** The HP Embedded Web Server is not accessible beyond the network firewall.

How to access the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

Use the following steps to open the Embedded Web Server.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, touch the Information icon , and then touch the Ethernet icon  to display the IP address or host name.
2. Open a web browser, and in the address line, type the IP address or host name exactly as it displays on the printer control panel. Press the **ENTER** key on the computer keyboard. The EWS web page opens.

 <https://10.10.XX.XXX>



NOTE: If the web browser displays a message indicating that accessing the website might not be safe, select the option to continue to the website. Accessing this website will not harm the computer.

To use the HP Embedded Web Server, the browser must meet the following requirements:

Windows® 7

- Internet Explorer (version 8.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

Windows® 8 or greater

- Internet Explorer (version 9.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

Windows 10 or greater

- Microsoft Edge (version 93 or greater)
- Internet Explorer (version 9.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

macOS

- Safari (version 5.x or greater)
- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)

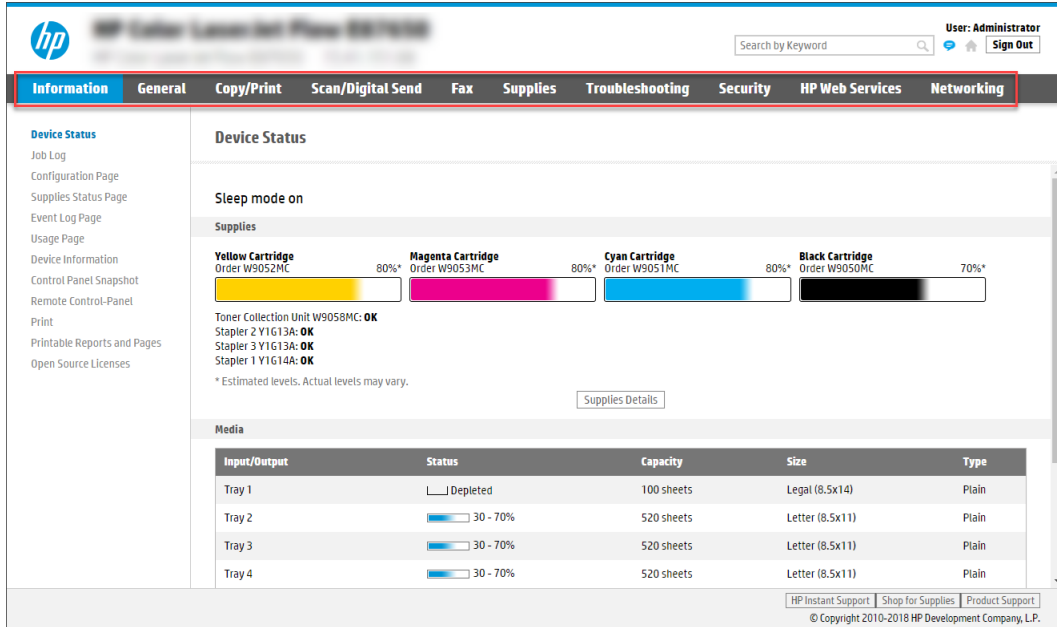
Linux

- Google Chrome (version 34.x or greater)
- Firefox (version 20.x or greater)

HP Embedded Web Server features

Learn about the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) features available on each tab.

Figure 4-22 EWS Tabs



NOTE: Copy/Print, Scan/Digital Send, and Fax tabs only appear for multi-function printers (MFPs). A Print tab appears for single-function printers (SFPs).

Information tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Information** tab.

Table 4-10 HP Embedded Web Server Information tab

Menu	Description
Device Status	Shows the printer status and shows the estimated life remaining of HP supplies. The page also shows the type and size of paper set for each tray. To change the default settings, click the Change Settings link.
Job Log	Provides a list of the jobs that have been processed.
Configuration Page	Shows the information found on the configuration page.
Supplies Status Page	Shows the status of the supplies for the printer.
Event Log Page	Shows a list of all printer events and errors. Use the HP Instant Support link (in the Other Links area on all HP Embedded Web Server pages) to connect to a set of dynamic web pages that help solve problems. These pages also show additional services available for the printer.
Usage Page	Shows a summary of the number of pages the printer has printed, grouped by size, type, and paper print path.
Device Information	Shows the printer network name, address, and model information. To customize these entries, click the Device Information menu on the General tab.
Control Panel Snapshot	Shows an image of the current screen on the control panel display.
Remote Control-Panel	Provides a way to troubleshoot or manage the printer from a browser window on a desktop or laptop.
Print	Allows the user to send a print-ready file to the printer to be printed.
Printable Reports and Pages	Lists the internal reports and pages for the printer. Select one or more items to print.

Table 4-10 HP Embedded Web Server Information tab (continued)

Menu	Description
Open Source Licenses	Shows a summary of the licenses for open source software programs that can be used with the printer.

General tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **General** tab.

Table 4-11 HP Embedded Web Server General tab

Menu	Description
Control Panel Customization	Reorder, show, or hide features on the control-panel display. Change the default display language and keyboard layouts.
Quick Sets	Configure jobs that are available in the Quick Sets area of the Home screen on the printer control panel.
Alerts	Set up email alerts for various printer and supplies events.
Control Panel Settings App	Shows the Settings app options that are available on the printer control panel.
General Settings	Configure how the printer recovers from jams and other general printer settings.
AutoSend	Configure the printer to send automated emails regarding printer configuration and supplies to specific email addresses.
Edit Other Links	Add or customize a link to another website. This link displays in the footer area on all HP Embedded Web Server pages.
Ordering Information	Enter information about ordering replacement toner cartridges. This information displays on the supplies status page.
Device Information	Name the printer and assign an asset number to it. Enter the name of the primary contact who will receive information about the printer.
Language	Set the language in which to display the HP Embedded Web Server information.
Firmware Upgrade	Download and install printer firmware upgrade files.
Date/Time Settings	Set the date and time or synchronize with a network time server.
Energy Settings	Set or edit a wake time, sleep time, and sleep delay for the printer. Set a different schedule for each day of the week and for holidays. Set which interactions with the printer cause it to wake from sleep mode.
Back up and Restore	Create a backup file that contains printer and user data. If necessary, use this file to restore data to the printer.
Reset Factory Settings	Restore printer settings to the factory defaults.
Solution Installer	Install or remove third-party software packages that extend or modify the functionality of the printer.
Job Statistics Settings	Provides connection information about third-party job-statistics services, or enables local serverless device job accounting.
Quota Settings	Provides connection information about third-party job-quota services, or enables local device quota service.

Other Links list

Configure which links display in the footer of the HP Embedded Web Server by using the **Edit Other Links** menu on the **General** tab.


 **NOTE:** The following are the default links.

Table 4-12 HP Embedded Web Server Other Links list

Menu	Description
HP Instant Support	Connect to the HP website to find solutions to printer problems.
Shop for Supplies	Connect to the HP website for information on purchasing original HP supplies, such as cartridges and paper.
Product Support	Connect to the support site for the printer to search for help on various topics.

Copy/Print tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Copy/Print** tab.

Table 4-13 HP Embedded Web Server Copy/Print tab

Menu	Description
Print from USB Drive Settings	Enable or disable the Print from USB Drive menu on the control panel.
Manage Stored Jobs	Enable or disable the ability to store jobs in the printer memory. Configure job-storage options.
Default Print Options	Configure the default options for print jobs.
Restrict Color (Color printers only)	Permit or restrict color printing and copying. Specify permissions for individual users or for jobs that are sent from specific software programs.
PCL and PostScript Settings	Adjust the PCL and PostScript settings for all print jobs, including copy jobs and received faxes.
Print Quality	Configure the print quality settings, including color adjustment, image registration, and allowed paper types.
Copy Settings	Configure the default options and Quick Sets for copy jobs. NOTE: If job-specific copy setting options are not set from the control panel at the start of a job, the default settings will be used for the job.
Expert Copy	Enable or disable Expert Copy and set the initial copy view. The Expert Copy feature is available only on some HP MFPs with larger control panels, and is available in FutureSmart 4 firmware 24.7.3 release or later.
Manage Trays	Configure settings for paper trays.
Manage Stapler/Stacker	Configure settings for the stapler/stacker for printers that have this feature.

Scan/Digital Send tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Scan/Digital Send** tab.

Table 4-14 HP Embedded Web Server Scan/Digital Send tab

Menu	Description
Email Setup	Configure the default email settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings for the outgoing mail (SMTP) server • Settings for Email Quick Sets jobs • Default message settings, such as the "From" address and the subject line • Settings for digital signatures and encryption • Settings for email notifications • Default scan settings for email jobs • Default file settings for email jobs
Scan to Network Folder	Configure the network folder settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings for Quick Sets jobs saved in a network folder • Settings for notifications • Default scan settings for jobs saved in a network folder • Default file settings for jobs saved in a network folder
Scan to SharePoint®	Configure the SharePoint settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings for Quick Sets jobs saved in a document library on the SharePoint site • Default settings for jobs saved in a document library on the SharePoint site
Scan to USB Drive	Configure the USB settings for digital sending, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings for Quick Sets jobs saved on a USB flash drive • Settings for notifications • Default scan settings for jobs saved on a USB flash drive • Default file settings for jobs saved on a USB flash drive
Contacts	Manage contacts, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add email addresses into the printer one at a time. • Import a large list of frequently-used email addresses on to the printer all at once, rather than adding them one at a time. • Export contacts from the printer into a .CSV file on the computer to use as a data backup, or import the records onto another HP printer. • Edit email addresses that have already been saved in the printer.
Preferences	Manage general scanning settings.
Email and Scan to Network Folder Quick Setup Wizards	Configure the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. Configure the printer to save scanned images to network-folder Quick Sets. Quick Sets provide easy access to files saved on the network.
Digital Sending Software Setup	Configure settings related to using optional Digital Sending software.

Fax tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Fax** tab.

Table 4-15 HP Embedded Web Server Fax tab

Menu	Description
Fax Send Setup	Configure settings for sending faxes, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Default settings for outgoing faxes• Settings for fax Quick Sets jobs• Settings for notifications• Default setting for sending faxes using the internal fax modem• Settings for using a LAN fax service• Settings for using an Internet fax service
Fax Speed Dials	Manage speed dials, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Import .CSV files containing email addresses, fax numbers, or user records, so that they can be accessed on this printer.• Export email, fax, or user records from the printer into a file on the computer to use as a data backup, or import the records onto another HP printer.
Fax Receive Setup	Configure default print options for incoming faxes, and set up a fax printing schedule.
Fax Archive and Forwarding	Enable or disable fax archiving and fax forwarding, and configure basic settings for each: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fax archiving is a method to send a copy of all incoming and outgoing faxes to an email address, a network folder, or an FTP server.• Fax forwarding is a method to forward incoming faxes to a different fax device.
Fax Activity Log	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.

Supplies tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Supplies** tab.

Table 4-16 HP Embedded Web Server Supplies tab

Menu	Description
Manage Supplies	Configure how the printer reacts when supplies reach a Very Low state.

Troubleshooting tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Troubleshooting** tab.

Table 4-17 HP Embedded Web Server Troubleshooting tab

Menu	Description
General Troubleshooting	Use the following options as appropriate: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reports and Tests area: Select and print several types of reports and tests. Some reports can be viewed in the Embedded Web Server by clicking the View button. • Fax Tools area: Configure settings for fax troubleshooting. (MFP and Digital Sender products with HP analog fax accessory only) • OXPd Troubleshooting area: Enable or disable the Allow a Non-Secure Connection for Web Services option • Auto Recovery area: Enable or disable the Enable Auto Recovery option, which allows the printer to auto recover from errors that might require the power to be turned off and on (for example, a 49 error).
Online Help	Link to HP cloud-based online help to assist in troubleshooting printing issues.
Diagnostic Data NOTE: This item is available only if an administrator password is set from the Security tab.	Export printer information to a file that can be useful for HP technical support to use for detailed problem analysis.
Calibration/Cleaning (Color LaserJet printers only)	Enable the automatic cleaning feature, create and print the cleaning page, and select an option to calibrate the printer immediately.
Reset Factory Settings	Restore printer settings to factory defaults.
Firmware Upgrade	Download and install printer firmware upgrade files.

Security tab

Refer to the table for settings in the **Security** tab.

Table 4-18 HP Embedded Web Server Security tab

Menu	Description
General Security	Settings for general security, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Configure an administrator password to restrict access to certain features on the printer. • Set a custom device Service Access Code. • Set PJI password for processing PJI commands. • Set file system access and firmware upgrade security. • Enable or disable the Host USB port on the control panel or the USB connectivity port on the formatter for printing directly from a computer. • View the status of all security settings.
Account Policy	Enable administrator account settings.
Access Control	Configure access to printer functions for specific individuals or groups, and select the method individuals use to sign in to the printer.
Protect Stored Data	Configure and manage the internal storage for the printer. Configure settings for jobs that are stored on the printer internal storage.

Table 4-18 HP Embedded Web Server Security tab (continued)

Menu	Description
Manage Remote Apps	Manage or whitelist remote apps by importing or deleting certificates that allow devices to use this product.
Certificate Management	Install and manage security certificates for access to the printer and the network.
Email Domain Restriction	If email functionality is enabled, administrators can limit the email addresses to which the printer can send messages.
Web Service Security	Allow resources on this printer to be accessed by web pages from different domains. If no sites are added to the list, then all sites are trusted.
Self Test	Verify that the security functions are running according to expected system parameters.

HP Web Services tab

Use the **HP Web Services** tab to configure and enable HP Web Services for this printer. It is necessary to Enable HP Web Services to use the HP ePrint feature.

Table 4-19 HP Embedded Web Server HP Web Services tab

Menu	Description
Web Services Setup	Connect this printer to HP Connected on the web by enabling HP Web Services.
Web Proxy	Configure a proxy server if there are issues enabling HP Web Services or connecting the printer to the Internet.
HP JetAdvantage	Access solutions that extend the capabilities of the printer
Smart Cloud Print	Enable Smart Cloud Print, which allows access to web-based apps that extend the capabilities of the printer.

Networking tab

Use the **Networking** tab to configure and secure network settings for the printer when it is connected to an IP-based network. This tab does not display if the printer is connected to other types of networks.

Table 4-20 HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Configuration settings

Menu	Description
Wireless Station	Configure the initial wireless settings. NOTE: The configuration options available depend on the print server model.
Wi-Fi Direct	Configure Wi-Fi Direct settings for printers that include embedded Wi-Fi Direct Print and NFC printing or that have a wireless accessory installed. NOTE: The configuration options available depend on the print server model.
TCP/IP Settings	Configure TCP/IP settings for IPv4 and IPv6 networks. NOTE: The configuration options available depend on the print server model.
Network Settings	Configure IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, DLC/LLC, and SNMP settings, depending on the print server model.
Other Settings	Configure general printing protocols and services supported by the print server. The available options depend on the print server model, but can include firmware update, LPD queues, USB settings, support information, and refresh rate.

Table 4-20 HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Configuration settings (continued)

Menu	Description
AirPrint	Enable, set up, or disable network printing from Apple-supported printers.
Select Language	Change the language displayed by the HP Embedded Web Server. This page displays if the web pages support multiple languages. Optionally, select supported languages through language-preference settings in the browser.
Select Location	Select a country/region for the printer.

Table 4-21 HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Google Cloud Print settings

Menu	Description
Setup	Set up Google Cloud Print options.
Web Proxy	Configure proxy settings.

Table 4-22 HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Security settings

Menu	Description
Settings	View and restore current security settings to factory-default values. Configure security settings using the Security Configuration Wizard. NOTE: Do not use the Security Configuration Wizard to configure security settings if using network-management applications, such as HP Web Jetadmin.
Authorization	Control configuration management and use of this printer, including limiting host access to this printer through an Access Control List (ACL) (for selected print servers on IPv4 networks only).
Secure Communication	Configure Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol and encryption options.
Mgmt. Protocols	Configure and manage security protocols for this printer, including the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set the security management level for the HP Embedded Web Server, and control traffic over HTTP and HTTPS. • Configure the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) operation. Enable or disable the SNMP v1/v2c or SNMP v3 agents on the print server. • Control access through protocols that may not be secure, such as printing protocols, print services, discovery protocols, name resolution services, and configuration-management protocols.
802.1X Authentication	Configure 802.1X authentication settings on the Jetdirect print server as required for client authentication on the network, and reset the 802.1X authentication settings to factory-default values. CAUTION: When changing the 802.1X authentication settings; the printer might lose its connection. To reconnect, it might be necessary to reset the print server to a factory-default state and reinstall the printer.
IPsec/Firewall	View or configure a Firewall policy or an IPsec/Firewall policy.
Announcement Agent	Enable or disable the HP Device Announcement Agent, set the configuration server, and configure mutual authentication using certificates.

Table 4-23 HP Embedded Web Server Networking tab > Diagnostics settings

Menu	Description
Network Statistics	Display network statistics that are collected and stored on the HP Jetdirect print server.
Protocol Info	View a list of network-configuration settings on the HP Jetdirect print server for each protocol.
Configuration Page	View the HP Jetdirect configuration page, which contains status and configuration information.

Print menu

Review the following information about the [Print](#) menu in the [Settings](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Settings](#), and then select [OK](#). Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to [Print](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

Table 4-24 Print menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Enable Print from USB Drive				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
Managed Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date*	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
Managed Stored Jobs	Retain Temporary Jobs			Do not retain Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
Managed Stored Jobs	Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
Managed Stored Jobs	Standard Stored Job Retention			Off 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 1 week 4 weeks	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Standard Stored Job Retention feature specifies the amount of time jobs can be stored on the printer.

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Default Print Options	Number of Copies			Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.
Default Print Options	Paper Selection			Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension		Range: 2.52-12.60 inches Default = 12.60 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects Custom as the paper size for a print job.
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	Y Dimension		Range: 5-18 inches Default = 18 inches	
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	Use Inches		Enabled* Disabled	
Default Print Options	Output Sides			1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.
Default Print Options	Quality Level			Normal* Enhanced Fine Lines	Use to select the level of desired print quality.
Default Print Options	Edge-to-Edge			Normal (recommended)* Edge-to-Edge output	Use to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.
PCL and Postscript Settings	Suppress Blank Pages			Off* On	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the On option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	Courier Font			Regular	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular , which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.
				Dark	
PCL and Postscript Settings	Wide A4			Enabled	Changes the printable area of A4-size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.
				Disabled*	
PCL and Postscript Settings	Print PS Errors			Enabled	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
				Disabled*	
PCL and Postscript Settings	Print PDF Errors			Enabled	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
				Disabled*	
PCL and Postscript Settings	Personality			Auto*	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
				PCL	
				PS	
				PDF	
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.
				Disk resident*	

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL		Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL		Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user soft -default vertical form length.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Orientation	Portrait Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.
Print Quality	Adjust Color	Tonal Range		Highlights Midtones Shadows	Select the tonal range to adjust.
Print Quality	Adjust Color	Cyan Magenta Yellow Black		Use the arrow keys to adjust the sliding bar for each color.	
Print Quality	Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4 Tray 5 Depends upon the number of trays installed		Specify tray to be adjusted

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Image Registration	Front-side Horizontal Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the image printed on the back.
		Front-side Vertical Shift			The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page.
		Back-side Horizontal Shift			The direction that the paper feeds through the printer is referred to as Y. Y1 is the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page.
		Back-side Vertical Shift			Use the Adjust Tray <X> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary. You can adjust values for X1 Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Image Registration	Print Test Page			Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
Print Quality	Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page Sense first page Sense transparency only	
Print Quality	Auto Sense Behavior	All Other Trays		Sense first page Sense transparency only	
Print Quality	Adjust Paper types			Select from a list of paper types Reset Paper Types	
Print Quality	Optimize	Normal Paper		Standard Smooth	Set to Smooth when printing on smooth paper of normal weight.
Print Quality	Optimize	Heavy paper		Standard Smooth	Set to Smooth when printing on smooth, heavy media types.
Print Quality	Optimize	Envelope control		Normal Reduced Temp	Set to Reduced Temp if envelopes are sticking due to moisture in the envelop adhesive.
Print Quality	Optimize	Tray 1		Normal Alternate	Set the mode to Alternate if marks appear on the back side of the paper when printing from Tray 1. This sets the printer to initiate a clean sequence every time a job finishes when the printer is set for Any Size and Any Type for Tray 1.
Print Quality	Optimize	Background		Normal Alternate	Set to Alternate when a background occurs all over the page.

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Optimize	Uniformity Control		Normal	Set to Alternate 1 to improve uniformity on any paper type.
				Alternate 1	
				Alternate 2	
				Alternate 3	
Print Quality	Optimize	Cac03		Off	Set to On if printing with media that contains a high calcium carbonate content. Engine print speed is slowed so that less paper dust is produced.
				On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Best Normal		Off	Set to On to try and improve print quality.
				On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Tracking Control		Off	Improves color stability by adjusting the bias voltage. Make sure this mode is set to On .
				On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Registration		Normal	Set to Alternate when color misregistration occurs.
				Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Transfer Control		Normal	Set to Alternate to reduce primary transfer bias and to resolve low density or blotchy images.
				Alternate 1	
Print Quality	Optimize	Moisture Control		Normal	Set to Alternate if the printer is installed in a high-humidity environment.
				Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Reset Optimize		Reset	Use Reset to reset the menu defaults.
Print Quality	Edge Control			Off	
				Light	
				Normal*	
				Maximum	

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* When available	<p>Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available:</p> <p>Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty.</p> <p>When available: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the specific tray was indicated for the job.</p>
Manage Trays	Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Prompt on mismatch	<p>Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available:</p> <p>Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray.</p> <p>Prompt on mismatch: A prompt displays only if the size or type do not match or the tray is empty.</p>

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	<p>Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available:</p> <p>Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message.</p> <p>Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.</p>
Manage Trays	Use Another Tray			Allow* Do not allow	<p>Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available:</p> <p>Allow: When this option is selected the user is prompted to either add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray. This is the factory default.</p> <p>Do not allow: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.</p>

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Alternative Letterhead Mode			Disabled* Enabled	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
Manage Trays	Duplex Blank Pages			Automatic* Always	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Automatic: Choose this option to skip printing blank sides during a two-sided print job. The printer can print jobs faster when blank sides are skipped. Always: Choose this option to print all sides of a two-sided job, even if one side is blank. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 4-24 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Override A4/Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.
Manage Trays	Unsupported Size Behavior			Use default size automatically* Prompt for user response	Use this feature to identify the desired behavior when printing a document on a paper size that the printer does not support.
Manage Trays	Rotate Offset			Automatic* Off	Allows printing of multiple copies of a print job in alternate orientations. For example, the first copy outputs in landscape orientation, the second outputs in portrait orientation, the third in landscape, and so on. This feature works only with Letter or A4-sized paper and requires the use of at least two paper trays. One tray is loaded to feed paper in the long-edge orientation and the other is loaded to feed paper in the short-edge orientation.

Defeating interlocks

Learn about defeating printer interlocks.

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or rear door is open.

To operate the printer with the doors open, the interlock switch levers must be depressed to simulate a closed-cover position.

⚠ WARNING! Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with the covers removed. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

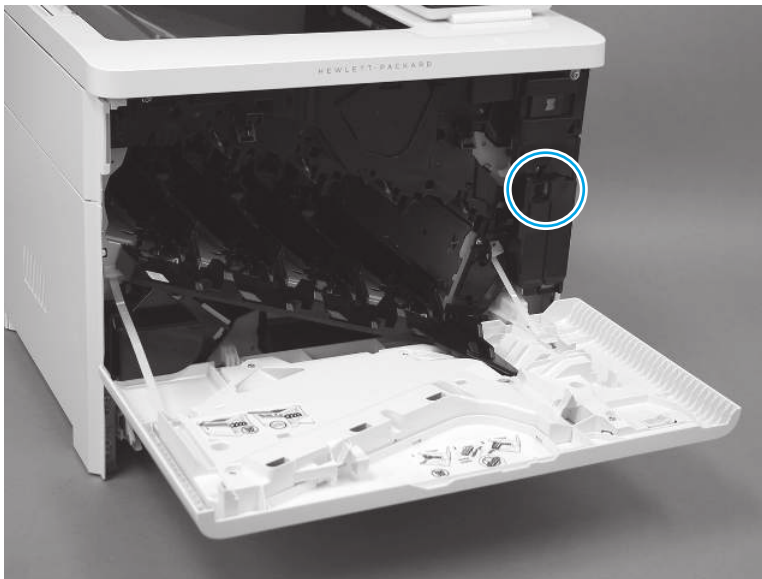
💡 TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a 10 mm (.375 in) strip, and insert the strip into the slots for the front door and right door logic switches.

Defeat the front (cartridge) door interlock

1. Open the front door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

💡 TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a 10 mm (.375 in) strip, and insert the strip into the slots for the front door and right door logic switches.

Figure 4-23 Defeat the front door interlock



Defeat the right door interlock

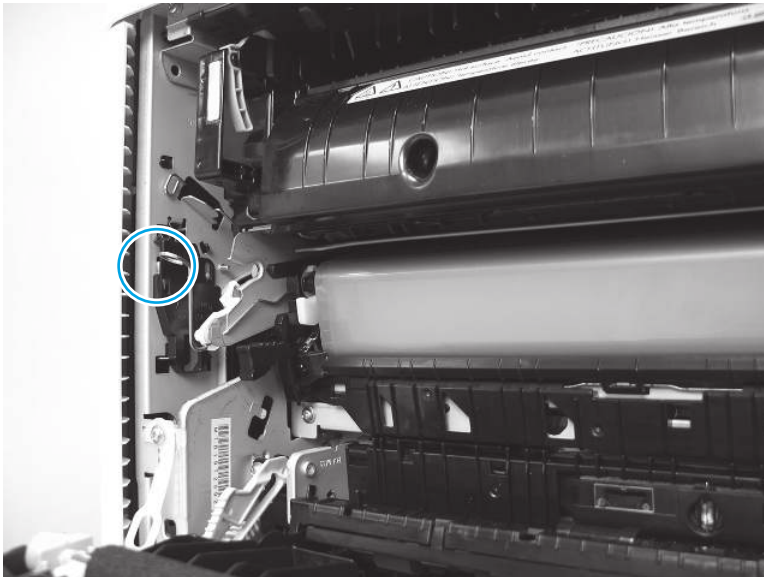
1. Open the right door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

💡 TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a 10 mm (.375 in) strip, and insert the strip into the slots for the front door and right door logic switches.

Figure 4-24 Defeat the right door interlock (right side)



Figure 4-25 Defeat the right door interlock (left side)



LED Diagnostics (formatter)

Learn about troubleshooting the printer using formatter LEDs.

Understand lights on the formatter

Two LEDs on the formatter indicate that the printer is functioning correctly.

Figure 4-26 LEDs (formatter)

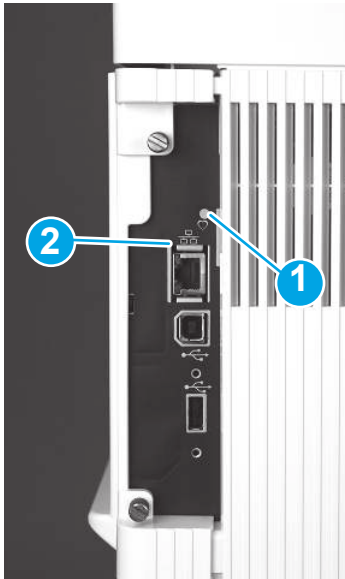


Table 4-25 LEDs (formatter)

Item	Description
Heartbeat LED	Indicates that the formatter is functioning.
HP Jetdirect LEDs	Indicates network activity and link status.

CAUTION: Under **NO** circumstances should a formatter from a different printer be installed during the repair or troubleshooting processes. The formatter stores important data specific to the model of printer it is installed in and is not designed to be swapped or repurposed in any way. Return a used formatter to HP.

Issues that can occur from swapping a formatter include:

- Serial number, product number, product name, page count, and supported cartridges information change and might make a product unusable
- 33.02.01 Used board/Disk installed errors

If a used formatter is installed and causes this issue, the **partner** must cover the costs of the repair in the form of a product replacement. **There is no method in the field to recover a printer where a used formatter is installed.**

For more information, see [HP LaserJet Enterprise, HP LaserJet Managed, HP PageWide Enterprise, HP PageWide Managed - 33.02.01 error or printer name and/or product number changes after replacing the formatter.](#)



This part contains components that are electrostatic discharge (ESD) sensitive. To reduce the possibility of ESD damage, always touch the sheet-metal chassis to ground yourself before touching an ESD sensitive part.

Heartbeat LED

The heartbeat LED indicates that the formatter is functioning correctly. While the product is initializing after it is turned on, the LED blinks rapidly, and then turns off. When the product has finished the initialization sequence, the heartbeat LED pulses on and off.

The following table describes the heartbeat LED operation while the product is executing the firmware boot process.



NOTE: If after initialization, the heartbeat LED is not solid green, see [Table 4-27 Heartbeat LED, product operational on page 193](#).

Table 4-26 Heartbeat LED, product initialization

Initializing state	Heartbeat LED, normal state	Heartbeat LED, error state
No power (power cable disconnected or power switch off)	Off	Not applicable
Power on (immediately after the power switch pressed)	Red, solid <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Duration should be 1 second or less 	Red, solid <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firmware error; problem finding hardware and booting the serial peripheral interface flash memory (boot process halted) Replace the formatter.
Serial peripheral interface (SPI) flash memory boot	Green, solid	Red, solid <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firmware error; problem finding hardware and booting the serial peripheral interface flash memory (boot process halted) Replace the formatter.
HW checks on board DRAM	Green, solid	Red, solid <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Firmware error; problem finding hardware and booting the serial peripheral interface flash memory (boot process halted) Replace the formatter.
Control panel connection initializes	Green, solid <p>NOTE: Control panel communication successful. If an error occurs, a message should appear on the control-panel display.</p>	Yellow, fast flash <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formatter to control panel connection failed (boot process halted) Check the cables between the formatter and control panel for damage. Make sure that the cables are fully seated.
Pre-boot menu available (including diagnostics)	Green, solid	Red, solid <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diagnostic failure (Follow diagnostic instructions) Turn the power off, and then on again to restart the initialization process.
Accessing disk for firmware image	Green, solid <p>NOTE: If applicable, disk error messages appear on the control-panel display.</p>	Yellow, fast flash <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control panel not connected

Table 4-26 Heartbeat LED, product initialization (continued)

Initializing state	Heartbeat LED, normal state	Heartbeat LED, error state
Firmware boot	Green, solid NOTE: If applicable, disk error messages appear on the control-panel display.	Yellow, fast flash <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control panel not connected
Product operational	Green, heartbeat blink NOTE: If applicable, disk error messages appear on the control-panel display.	Yellow, fast flash <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control panel not connected
49.XX.YY error or initialization freezes	Not applicable	LED off NOTE: An error message (for example, 49.XX.YY) might appear on the control-panel display. Eventually a formatter connection missing message appears. Turn the power off, and then on again to restart the initialization process. If the error persists, perform a firmware upgrade.
Control panel connection interrupted after the product is operational	Not applicable	Yellow, fast flash <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control panel not connected
Flat flexible cable (FFC) between the formatter and DC controller is not connected or damaged	Not applicable	Yellow, solid <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formatter to DC controller connection failed <p>Check the cable between the formatter and DC controller for damage. Make sure that the cable is fully seated.</p>
Sleep Mode	Green, slow blink	Not applicable
Approaching Sleep Mode	Green, slow blink	Not applicable
Wake up from Sleep Mode	Follows initialization progression	Follows initialization progression
Approaching wake up from Sleep Mode	Follows initialization progression	Follows initialization progression

The following table describes the heartbeat LED operation when the product completes the firmware boot process and is in the **Ready** state.

Table 4-27 Heartbeat LED, product operational

Green	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal operation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Formatter is operating normally Firmware is operating normally Control panel is connected
-------	---


Table 4-27 Heartbeat LED, product operational (continued)

Yellow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Formatter cannot connect to the control panel <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Check control panel connections – Verify control panel functionality
Red	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Formatter error or failure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Serial peripheral interface (SPI) flash memory boot error – Power on self test (formatter) failed – Diagnostic (formatter) failed
Off	<p>TIP: The heartbeat LED is off if the power cable is disconnected, the product power switch is in the off position, or the product is in Sleep Mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Firmware or system freeze <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Check control panel for an error message – Control panel failure <p>NOTE: This condition is not usually caused by a formatter failure. Turn the power off, and then on again. If the error persists, perform a firmware upgrade.</p>

HP Jetdirect LEDs

The embedded HP Jetdirect print server has two LEDs. The yellow LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status. A blinking yellow LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed.


For link failures, check all the network cable connections. In addition, try to manually configure the link settings on the embedded print server by using the printer control-panel menus.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Administration](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Network Settings](#)
 - [Embedded Jetdirect Menu](#)
 - [Link Speed](#)
3. Select the appropriate link speed, and then touch the [OK](#) button.

Scanner tests (MFP)

Learn about troubleshooting the MFP scanner tests.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Document feeder and image scanner replacement parts

If a document feeder or image scanner sensor fails, replace the following assemblies:

- Document feeder sensors

 **NOTE:** All include a replacement white backing kit.

- Kit - ADF whole unit Enterprise; B5L47-67906
- Kit - ADF whole unit Workflow; B5L47-67907
- Image scanner whole unit; B5L46-67904

Scanner tests

Use these diagnostic tests to manually test the document feeder and scanner sensors.

Scanner test sensors

- ADF paper present
 - ADF Y (length)
 - ADF jam cover
 - ADF paper path deskew
 - ADF paper path pick success
 - Paper path sensor 1 (unreachable)
 - Paper path sensor 2 (unreachable)
 - Flatbed Y (length)
 - Flatbed cover
1. From the Home screen on the product control panel, scroll to and select the [Support Tools](#) item.
 2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)
 - [Manual scanner sensor test](#)
 3. Select the sensor name on the screen to display a sensor location graphic on the control-panel display.
 4. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control-panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
 - The [State](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.

- The [Toggle](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).

For example, opening the flatbed cover increments the [Flatbed cover Toggle](#) item count two times—once when the door is opened, and once when the door is closed.

5. Select the [Reset sensors](#) item to reset the [Toggle](#) count item.

-or-

Touch the [Cancel](#) button to exit the [Scanner Tests](#) screen, and then touch the [Cancel](#) button again to return the [Diagnostic Tests](#) menu.

Disable cartridge check

Learn about the disable cartridge check troubleshooting diagnostic.



IMPORTANT: The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Use this diagnostic test to print internal pages or send an external job to the printer when the toner cartridge is removed or exchanged. Supply errors are ignored while the printer is in this mode.

When the printer is in this mode, access the troubleshooting menus and print internal pages (the print quality pages will be the most useful). This test can be used to isolate problems, such as noise, and to isolate print-quality problems that are related to the toner cartridge.



NOTE: Do not remove or exchange the toner cartridge until after beginning the disable cartridge check diagnostic.

Disable cartridge check from a non-touchscreen control panel


1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Troubleshooting](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Diagnostic Tests](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Select [Continue](#) to enter *Maintenance Mode*.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Disable Cartridge Check](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

Disable cartridge check from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)
 - [Disable Cartridge Check](#)

Print/stop test

Learn about the print/stop test troubleshooting diagnostic.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Use this diagnostic test to isolate the cause of problems such as image-formation defects and jams within the engine.

During this test, stop the paper anywhere along the printer paper path. The test can be programmed to stop printing internal pages or an external print job when the paper reaches a certain position. The test can also be programmed to stop from 0 to 60,000 ms. If the timer is set to a value that is greater than the job-print time, the printer can recover in one of two ways.

Printer recovery (print/stop test)

- After the print job is completed press the **OK** button to return to the **Troubleshooting** menu before the timer times out.
- After the timer times out, touch the **Stop** button. Activate the door switch to restart the engine and return it to a normal state.

Common print/stop test timing millisecond (ms) stops

- **600 ms:** The page has passed the registration area and the leading edge is just short of entering the fuser. The image can be seen on the paper but has not fused. If the defect is visible then the cause might be the drum, transfer roller, or a roller prior to, or in, the registration area.
- **1200 ms:** The leading edge is about 18mm (0.71 in) into the top output bin. The image has gone through the fuser. If the defect was not visible prior to the fuser, and is visible after the fuser, then the fuser is the likely cause of the print quality defect. Inspect the fuser for damage, debris, or labels stuck to the fuser. Replace the fuser. Discuss media specifications and proper care of the fuser with the customer.

Print/stop test from a SFP control panel

1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to **Support Tools**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Troubleshooting**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Diagnostic Tests**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Select **Continue** to enter **Maintenance mode**.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Print/Stop Test**, and then press the **OK** button.


Print/stop test from an MFP control panel

1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the **Support Tools** button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - **Troubleshooting**
 - **Diagnostic Tests**

- [Print/Stop Test](#)
3. Enter a range, and then touch the [OK](#) button.


Individual component diagnostics

Learn about printer individual component diagnostics.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Paper path test

Learn about the paper path test troubleshooting diagnostic.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

This diagnostic test generates one or more test pages. Use these pages to isolate the cause of jams.

To isolate a problem, specify which input tray to use, and specify the number of copies to print. Print multiple copies to help isolate intermittent problems. The following options become available after beginning the diagnostic feature:

- [Print Test Page](#): Run the paper-path test from the default settings: Tray 2, no duplex, and one copy. To specify other settings, scroll down the menu, and select the setting, and then scroll back up and select [Print Test Page](#) to start the test.
- [Source Tray](#): Select Tray 1, Tray 2, or the optional tray.
- [Number of Copies](#): Set the numbers of copies to be printed; the choices are 1, 10, 50, 100, or 500.

Paper path test from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Troubleshooting](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Diagnostic Tests](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Select [Continue](#) to enter **Maintenance mode**.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Paper Path Test](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.


Paper path test from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)

- [Paper Path Test](#)
3. Select the paper path test options for the test.

Print/stop test

Learn about the print/stop test troubleshooting diagnostic.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Use this diagnostic test to isolate the cause of problems such as image-formation defects and jams within the engine.

During this test, stop the paper anywhere along the printer paper path. The test can be programmed to stop printing internal pages or an external print job when the paper reaches a certain position. The test can also be programmed to stop from 0 to 60,000 ms. If the timer is set to a value that is greater than the job-print time, the printer can recover in one of two ways.

Printer recovery (print/stop test)

- After the print job is completed press the **OK** button to return to the [Troubleshooting](#) menu before the timer times out.
- After the timer times out, touch the **Stop** button. Activate the door switch to restart the engine and return it to a normal state.

Common print/stop test timing millisecond (ms) stops

- **600 ms:** The page has passed the registration area and the leading edge is just short of entering the fuser. The image can be seen on the paper but has not fused. If the defect is visible then the cause might be the drum, transfer roller, or a roller prior to, or in, the registration area.
- **1200 ms:** The leading edge is about 18mm (0.71 in) into the top output bin. The image has gone through the fuser. If the defect was not visible prior to the fuser, and is visible after the fuser, then the fuser is the likely cause of the print quality defect. Inspect the fuser for damage, debris, or labels stuck to the fuser. Replace the fuser. Discuss media specifications and proper care of the fuser with the customer.

Print/stop test from a non-touchscreen control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the **OK** button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Troubleshooting](#), and then press the **OK** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Diagnostic Tests](#), and then press the **OK** button.
4. Select [Continue](#) to enter **Maintenance mode**.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Print/Stop Test](#), and then press the **OK** button.

Print/stop test from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:

- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)
 - [Print/Stop Test](#)
3. Enter a range, and then touch the [OK](#) button.

Paper path sensors test

Learn about the paper path sensor test troubleshooting diagnostic.



IMPORTANT: The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Paper path sensor test from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Troubleshooting](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Diagnostic Tests](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Select [Continue](#) to enter **Maintenance mode**.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Paper Path Sensors](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.



NOTE: Exiting the [Paper Path Sensors](#) menu and then reentering the test will clear the test values from the previous test.

The menu list of sensors and switches for the [Paper Path Sensors](#) test varies depending on which optional accessories are installed.

For trays other than Tray 1 or Tray 2, the tray number associated with a sensor or switch depends on the number of accessories installed.

Paper path sensor test from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)
 - [Paper Path Sensors](#)
3. Touch [Start](#) to run the test.



NOTE: Exiting the [Paper Path Sensors](#) menu and then reentering the test will clear the test values from the previous test.

The menu list of sensors and switches for the [Paper Path Sensors](#) test varies depending on which optional accessories are installed.


For trays other than Tray 1 or Tray 2, the tray number associated with a sensor or switch depends on the number of accessories installed.

Table 4-28 Paper-path sensors diagnostic tests

Sensor	Abbreviation	Description	Part number
Tray 3 feed sensor (optional accessory)	SR21	Paper feed assembly	RM2-5145-000CN
Registration sensor	SR6	Registration assembly	RM2-0093-000CN (M553n) RM2-0018-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040. E57540)
Fuser loop 1 sensor	PS1	Fuser	B5L35-67902 (110 V) B5L36-67902 (220 V)
Front media width sensor	SR13	Registration assembly	RM2-0093-000CN (M553n) RM2-0018-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040. E57540)
Rear media width sensor	SR14	Registration assembly	RM2-0093-000CN (M553n) RM2-0018-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040. E57540)
Fuser pressure release sensor	SR11	Fuser	B5L35-67902 (110 V) B5L36-67902 (220 V)
Fuser output sensor	SR9	Fuser	B5L35-67902 (110 V) B5L36-67902 (220 V)
Developer alienation sensor	SR4	Main drive assembly	B5L25-67902
Output bin full sensor	SR10	Paper delivery assembly	RM2-0092-000CN (M553n) RM2-0016-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040. E57540)

Manual sensors test

Learn about the manual sensor test troubleshooting diagnostic.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Manual sensor test from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Troubleshooting](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Diagnostic Tests](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Select [Continue](#) to enter **Maintenance mode**.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Manual Sensor Test](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
6. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control-panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
 - The [State](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.
 - The [Toggle](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).

Manual test from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)
 - [Manual Sensor Test](#)
3. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control-panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
 - The [State](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.
 - The [Toggle](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).



NOTE: The following table describes the sensor tests available with an optional 1x550-sheet paper feeder installed.

For trays other than Tray 1 or Tray 2, the tray number associated with a sensor or switch depends on the number of accessories installed.

Table 4-29 Manual sensor diagnostic tests


Sensor	Abbreviation	Description	Part number
Front door opening/closing sensor	SW4	Switch PCA assembly	RM2-7133-000CN
Right door opening/closing sensor	SW3	Switch button assembly	WC2-5806-000CN
Tray 3 feed sensor (optional accessory)	SR21	Paper feed assembly	RM2-5145-000CN
Registration sensor	SR6	Registration assembly	RM2-0093-000CN (M553n) RM2-0018-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)

Table 4-29 Manual sensor diagnostic tests (continued)

Sensor	Abbreviation	Description	Part number
Fuser loop 1 sensor	PS1	Fuser	B5L35-67902 (110 V) B5L36-67902 (220 V)
Front media width sensor	SR13 SR13N (M553n)	Paper pickup assembly	RM2-6556-000CN
Rear media width sensor	SR14 SR14N (M553n)	Paper pickup assembly	RM2-6556-000CN
Fuser pressure release sensor	SR11	Fuser	B5L35-67902 (110 V) B5L36-67902 (220 V)
Fuser output sensor	SR9	Fuser	B5L35-67902 (110 V) B5L36-67902 (220 V)
Output bin full sensor	SR10	Paper delivery assembly	RM2-0092-000CN (M553n) RM2-0016-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)

Tray/bin manual sensors test

Learn about the tray/bin manual sensor test troubleshooting diagnostic.


 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Tray/bin manual sensor test from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Troubleshooting](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Diagnostic Tests](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Select [Continue](#) to enter **Maintenance mode**.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Tray/bin Manual Sensor Test](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
6. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control-panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
 - The [State](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.
 - The [Toggle](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).

Tray/bin manual test from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)
 - [Tray/bin Manual Sensor Test](#)
3. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control-panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
 - The [State](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.
 - The [Toggle](#) virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).

 **NOTE:** The following table describes the sensor tests available with an optional 1x550-sheet paper feeder installed.


For trays other than Tray 1 or Tray 2, the tray number associated with a sensor or switch depends on the number of accessories installed.


Table 4-30 Tray/bin manual sensor diagnostic tests

Sensor	Abbreviation	Description	Part number
Tray 2 paper sensor	SR5	Switch button assembly	WC2-5806-000CN
Tray 1 paper sensor	SR8	Right door assembly	RM2-0019-000CN
Cassette media out sensor	SR12	Paper pickup assembly	RM2-6556-000CN
Tray 3-X media out sensor (optional accessories)	SR20	Paper pickup assembly	RM2-5154-000CN
Tray 3-X cassette sensor (optional accessories)	SW21	Switch button assembly	WC2-5806-000CN
Tray 3-X feed sensor (optional accessories)	SR21	Paper feeder assembly	RM2-5145-000CN
Right door sensor (optional accessories)	SW20	Right door assembly	RM2-5146-000CN
Output bin full sensor	SR10	Paper delivery assembly	RM2-0092-000CN (M553n) RM2-0016-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)

Component test

Learn about the component test troubleshooting diagnostic.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

 **NOTE:** The front door or right side door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests. Some tests might require that the ITB and toner cartridges be removed. A control-panel display prompt appears indicate removing some, or all of the cartridges, during certain tests.

Component test from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Troubleshooting](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Diagnostic Tests](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Select [Continue](#) to enter **Maintenance mode**.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Component Test](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
6. Select a component, and then select [Start](#) to begin the test.
7. Select [Stop](#) to end the test

Component test from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Diagnostic Tests](#)
 - [Component Test](#)
3. Select the component test options for the test.

 **NOTE:** The menu list of components for the [Component Test](#) varies depending on which optional accessories are installed.

The table in this section describes the components available with an optional 1x550-sheet paper feeder installed.

For trays other than Tray 1 or Tray 2, the tray number associated with a sensor or switch depends on the number of accessories installed.

Table 4-31 Component test details

Component test	Item tested	Part number	Comments
Drum motors	M1/M2/M3	RM2-0078-000CN	Activates the specified motor.
Fuser drive assembly	M4	RM2-0091-010CN (M553n) RM2-0009-010CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)	Activates the specified motor.
Fuser pressure release motor	M6	RK2-6027-000CN	Activates the specified motor.
Tray 2 pickup motor	M5	RM2-0008-000CN Pickup drive assembly	Activates the specified motor.

Table 4-31 Component test details (continued)

Component test	Item tested	Part number	Comments
Tray 3 pickup motor (optional accessory)	M20	RM2-5145-000CN Paper feed assembly	Activates the specified motor.
Duplexer pickup motor (duplex models)	M8	RM2-0006-000CN Duplex drive assembly	Activates the specified motor.
Tray 1 pickup solenoid	SL2	RM2-6556-000CN Paper pickup assembly	Activates the specified solenoid.
Tray 2 pickup solenoid	SL1	RM2-0090-000CN (M553n) RM2-0022-000CN (M522, M553dn, M553x, M577, M578, E55040, E57540) Tray 1 roller alienation (part of secondary transfer assembly)	Activates the specified solenoid.
Tray 3-X pickup solenoid (optional accessories)	Not applicable	RM2-5154-000CN Paper pickup assembly	Activates the specified solenoid.
Duplex switchback solenoid (duplex models)	SL3	RM2-0006-000CN Duplex drive assembly	Activates the specified solenoid.
Feed roller clutch	CL1	RM2-0010-000CN Lifter drive assembly	Activates the specified clutch.
Laser Scanner motor	M7	RM2-6545-010CN Laser/scanner assembly	Activates the specified motor.

Diagrams

View diagrams for the printer.

Use the diagrams in this section to identify printer components.

Diagrams: Block diagrams

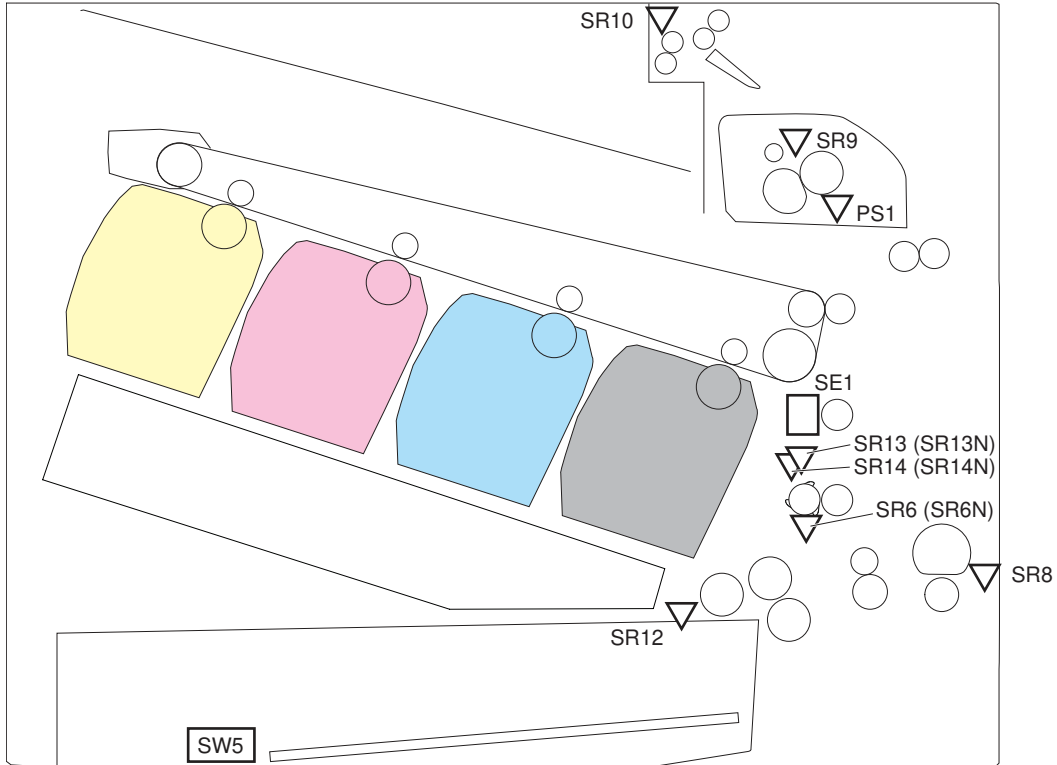
View block diagrams for the printer.

Sensors and switches

View document feeder, printer, and paper feeder sensor and switch diagrams.

Sensors and switches (printer base)

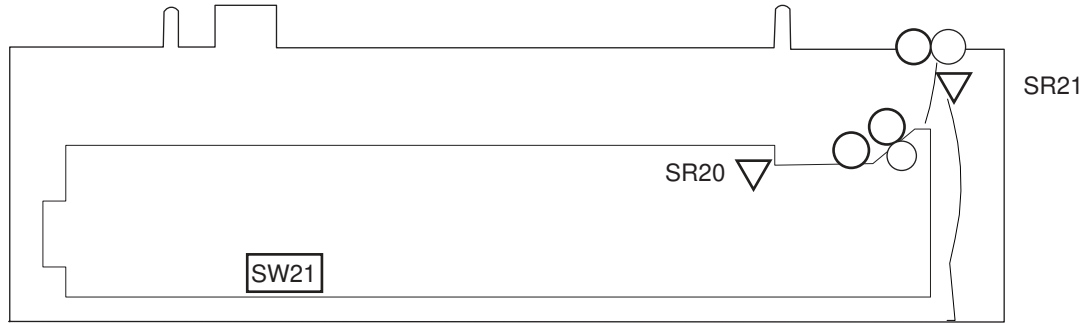
Figure 4-27 Sensors and switches (printer base)



Item	Description	Item	Description
SR6	Top-of-Page (TOP) sensor (duplex models)	SR13N	Media width (front, simplex models)
SR6N	Top-of-Page (TOP) sensor (simplex models)	SR14	Media width (rear, duplex models)
SR8	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) media-out sensor	SR14N	Media width (rear, simplex models)
SR9	Fuser delivery sensor	PS1	Loop sensor
SR10	Output bin media-full sensor	SE1	Media sensor
SR12	Tray 2 (cassette) media-out sensor	SW5	Tray 2 (cassette) detection switch
SR13	Media width (front, duplex models)		

Sensors and switches (550-sheet paper feeder)

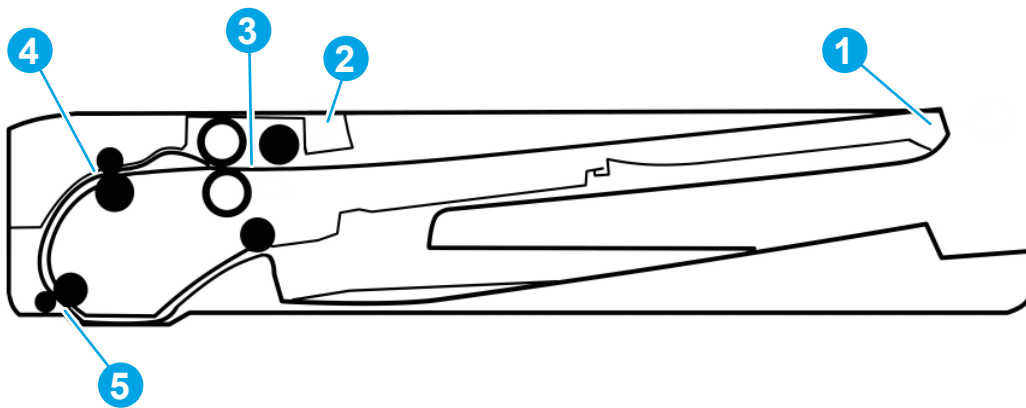
Figure 4-28 Sensors and switches (550-sheet paper feeder)



Item	Description
SR20	Tray 3/4/5(cassette) media-out sensor
SR21	Paper feeder media feed sensor
SW21	Tray 3/4/5(cassette) detection switch

Sensors and switches (document feeder)

Figure 4-29 Sensors and switches (document feeder)



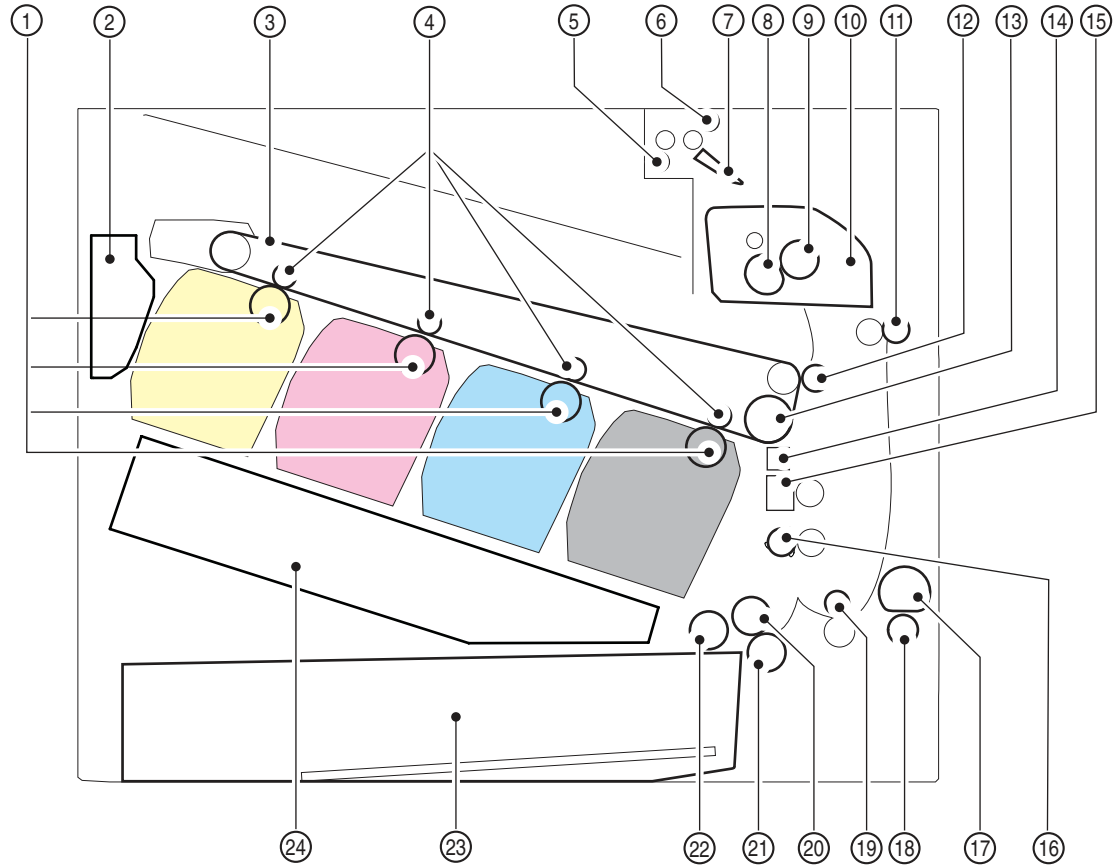
Item	Description
1	Length sensor
2	Jam cover sensor
3	Paper present sensor
4	Deskew sensor
5	Paper path sensor

Cross section diagrams

View printer and paper feeder cross section diagrams.

Cross-sectional view of the printer

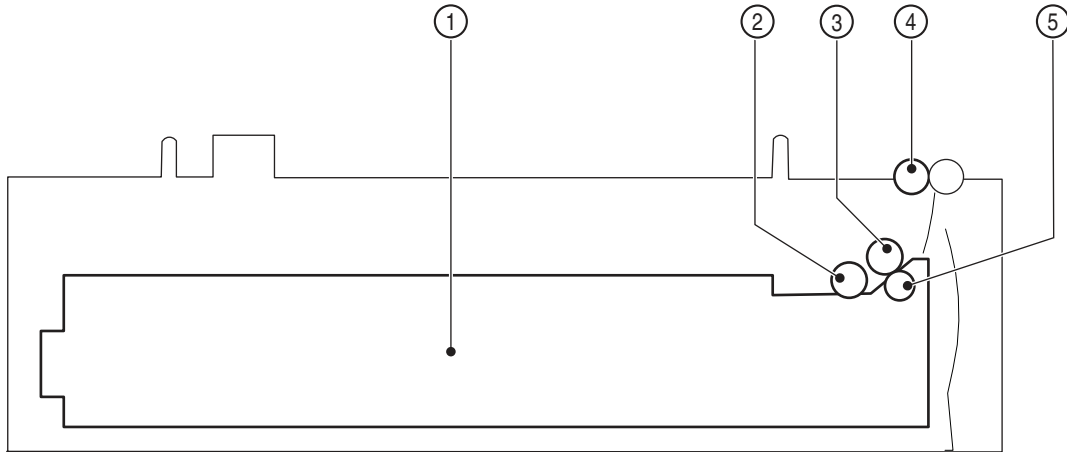
Figure 4-30 Cross-sectional view of the printer



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Photosensitive drum	13	ITB drive roller
2	Toner collection unit (TCU)	14	Registration density sensor
3	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	14	Media sensor
4	Primary transfer (T1) roller	16	Registration roller
5	Output roller	17	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) pickup roller
6	Duplex switchback roller (duplex models)	18	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) separation roller
7	Duplex flapper (duplex models)	19	Duplex re-pickup roller (duplex models)
8	Fuser film	20	Tray 2 feed roller
9	Pressure roller	21	Tray 2 separation roller
10	Fuser	22	Tray 2 pickup roller
11	Duplex feed roller (duplex models)	23	Tray 2
12	Secondary transfer (T2) roller	24	Laser/scanner assembly

Cross-sectional view of the 550-sheet paper feeder

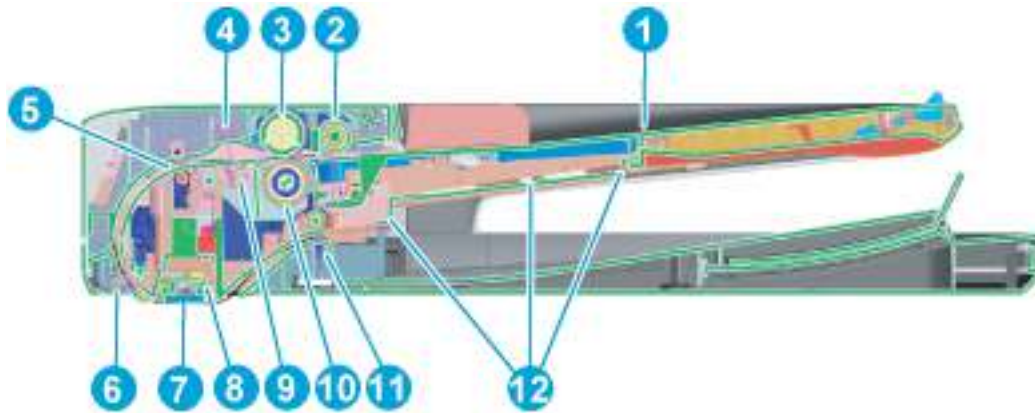
Figure 4-31 Cross-sectional view of the 550-sheet paper feeder



Item	Description
1	Tray 3/4/5
2	Tray 3/4/5 pickup roller
3	Tray 3/4/5 feed roller
4	Tray 3/4/5 feed roller
5	Tray 3/4/5 separation roller

Cross-sectional view of the document feeder

Figure 4-32 Document feeder paper path



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Input tray	7	Front-side scan module location NOTE: This scan module (document feeder glass) is located in the scanner base and is not pictured.
2	Pre-pick roller	8	Back-side scan module
3	Pick roller	9	ADF pick success transmitter

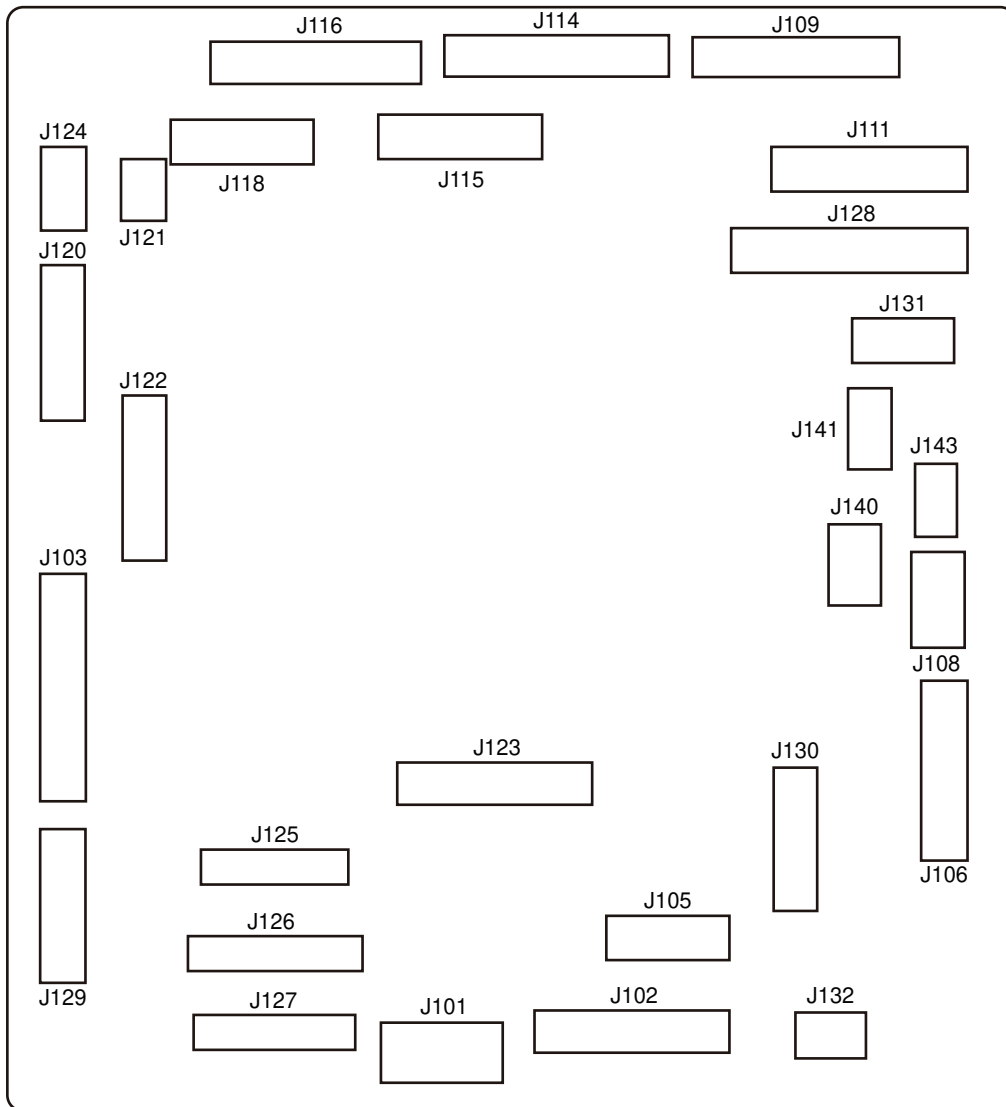
Item	Description	Item	Description
4	ADF pick success receiver	10	Separator roller
5	Deskew drive roller	11	Exit drive roller
6	Prescan drive roller	12	Lift plate

Printed circuit assembly (PCA) connector locations

View printed circuit assembly (PCA) diagrams.

DC controller PCA connections

Figure 4-33 DC controller PCA connections

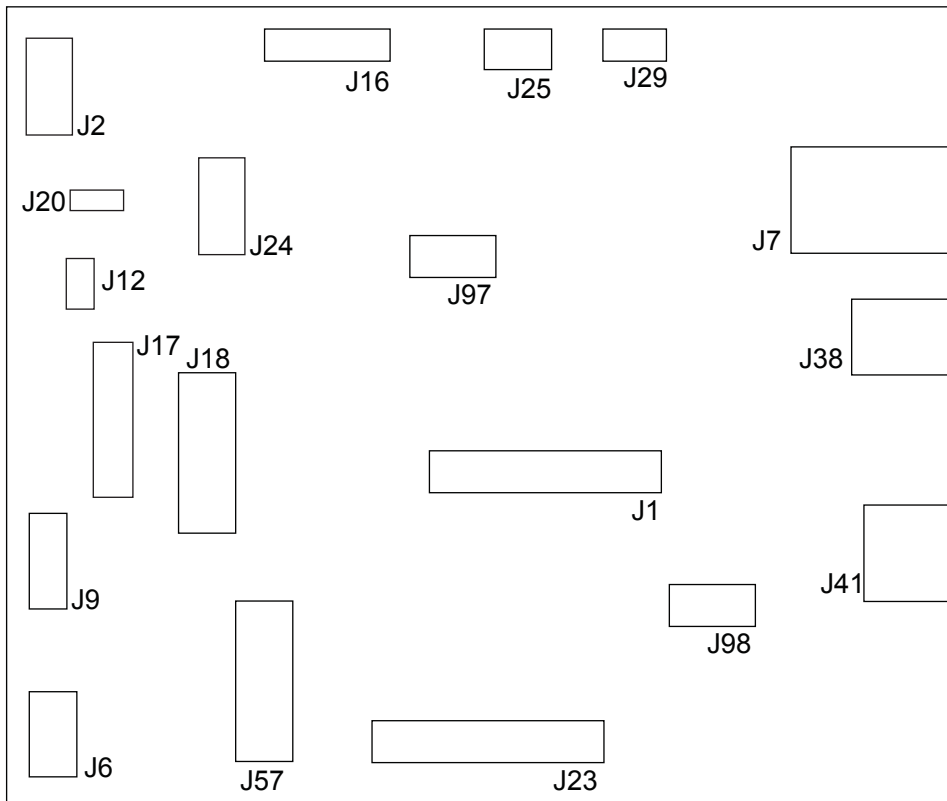


Item	Description	Item	Description
J101	Low-voltage power supply assembly (LVPS) 24V interlock switch	J122	Tray 2 (cassette) pickup clutch (CL1) Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) pickup solenoid (SL2) Tray 2 (cassette) detection switch (SW5) Environmental sensor Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) media-out sensor (SR8)
J102	LVPS	J123	Upper cartridge guide switch
J103	Scanner motor (M7) Memory chip, toner cartridges Paper feeder	J124	Media sensor (SE1)
J105	LVPS	J125	High-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)
J106	Formatter	J126	Y/M laser assembly
J108	Empty	J127	C/K laser assembly
J109	High-voltage power supply T (HVPST)	J128	Fuser power supply (FPS)
J111	Drum motor 1 (M1) Drum motor 2 (M2)	J129	Y/M/C/K toner level sensor
J114	Fuser motor (M4) Primary transfer (T1) roller alienation solenoid Drum home position sensor 1 Drum home position sensor 2 Drum home position sensor 3	J130	Drum motor 3 (M3) Developer home position sensor
J115	Right door switch Power supply switch Fuser pressure release sensor Pre-exposure LED 3 - 4	J131	Output bin media-full sensor (SR10) High-voltage power supply T (HVPST)
J116	Fuser	J132	Developer alienation (disengagement) motor (M6)

Item	Description	Item	Description
J118	Duplex re-pickup clutch (CL2; duplex models only) Top-of-Page (TOP) sensor (SR6, duplex; SR6N, simplex) Media width sensor, front (SR13, duplex; SR13N simplex) Media width sensor, rear (SR14, duplex; SR14N simplex)	J140	Empty
J120	Registration density sensor, front Registration density sensor, rear	J141	Empty
J121	Tray 2 (cassette) media-out sensor	J143	Empty

Formatter PCA connections

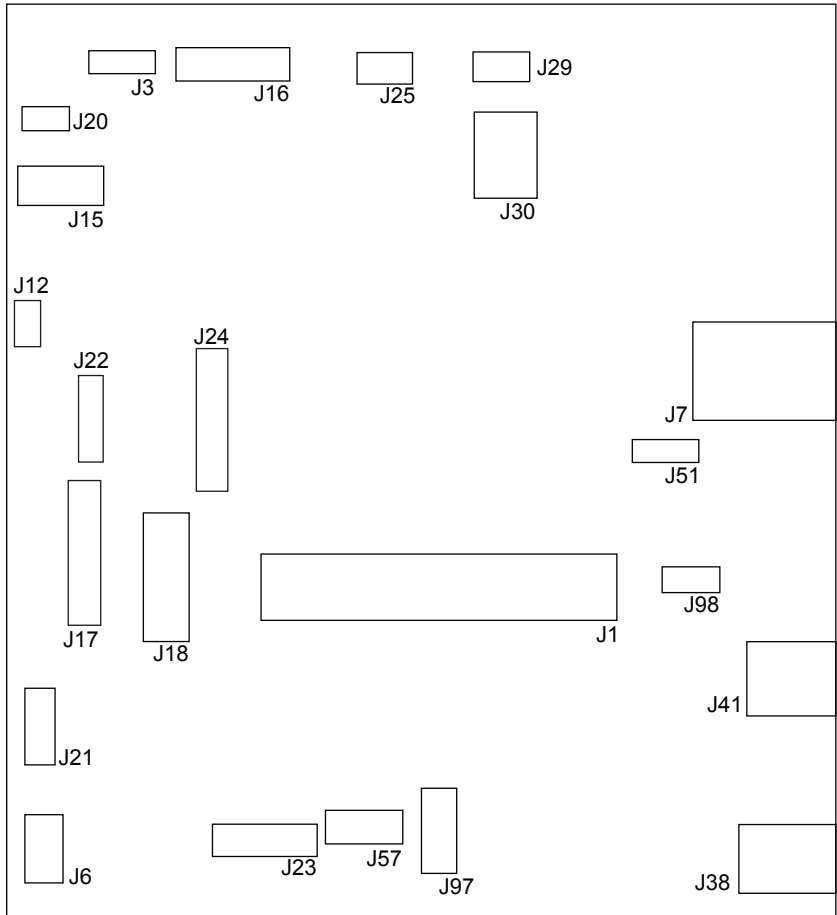
Figure 4-34 Formatter PCA connections (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)



Item	Description	Item	Description
J1	Slim DIMM	J23	Not used
J2	Control panel (touchscreen models)	J24	Not used

Item	Description	Item	Description
J6	Formatter Power Cable	J25	Wireless cable
J7	Network LAN	J29	IOD
J9	AA module power cable	J38	USB-device
J12	HIP/AA USB	J42	USB-host
J16	Control panel power cable	J57	BASH
J17	DC controller (flat cable)	J97	Embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC)
J18	Hard-disk drive (optional HDD)	J98	Trusted Platform Module
<p>NOTE: The TPM is factory installed for the M554, M555, and M578 printers and is not field replaceable. It is optional for all other models.</p>			
J20	Walkup USB		

Figure 4-35 Formatter PCA connections (M577/M578/E57540)

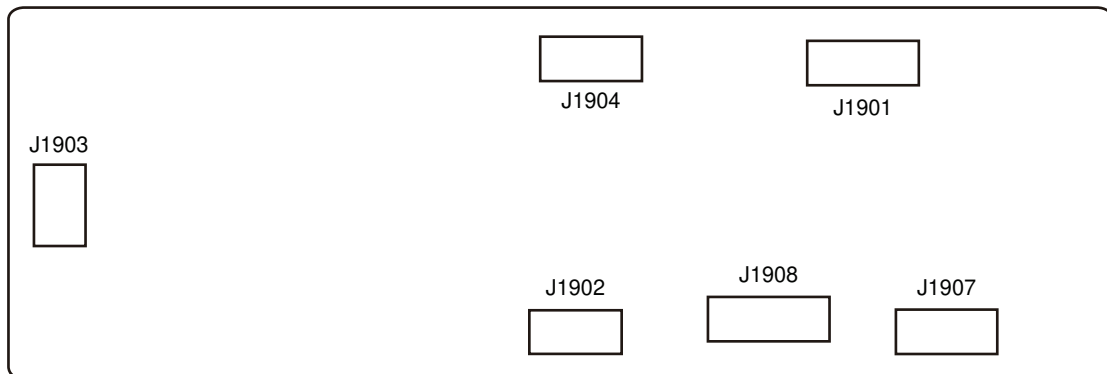


Item	Description	Item	Description
J1	DIMM	J23	Not used

Item	Description	Item	Description
J3	Dedicated NFC (not used)	J24	Not used
J6	Formatter power cable	J25	Wireless cable
J7	Network LAN	J29	Island of Data (IOD)
J12	HIP	J30	Control panel HDMI
J15	Fax	J38	USB-device
J16	Control panel sideband cable	J41	USB-host
J17	DC controller (flat cable)	J51	BASH
J18	Hard-disk drive	J57	Debug
J20	Walkup USB	J97	Embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC)
J21	Accessible Architecture (AA)	J98	Trusted Platform Module NOTE: The TPM is factory installed for the M554, M555, and M578 printers and is not field replaceable. It is optional for all other models.
J22	Scanner HDMI		

550-sheet paper feeder PCA connectors

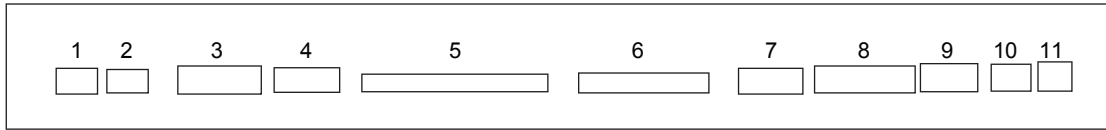
Figure 4-36 550-sheet paper feeder PCA connectors



Item	Description	Item	Description
J1901	DC controller PCA for paper feeder	J1904	Tray 3/4/5 (cassette) media-out sensor (SR20) Feed sensor (SR21)
J1902	Tray 3/4/5 (cassette) pickup clutch (CL20) Right door switch Tray 3/4/5 (cassette) detection switch (SW21)	J1907	Paper feeder
J1903	Feed motor (M20)	J1908	Empty

Scanner control board PCA connectors

Figure 4-37 Scanner control board PCA connectors



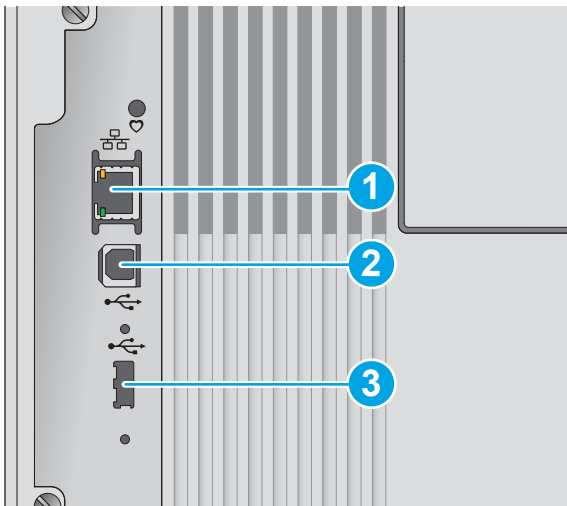
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Stapler power	7	Document feeder motors (feed and deskew)
2	Scan control board power (24V)	8	Document feeder sensors (prescan, media present, and top hatch)
3	PAM to SCAM communication (HDMI)	9	Document feeder ultrasonic sensor receiver and deskew sensor
4	Image scanner sensors (paper feeder open and image scanner media length) and cave LED	10	Document feeder letter/legal input tray sensor
5	Image scanner (S1) FFC (scanner data and image scanner motor)	11	Document feeder ultrasonic sensor transmitter
6	Document feeder (S2) FFC (scanner data)		

Diagrams: External plug and port locations

View printer external plugs and ports diagrams.

External plug and port locations

Figure 4-38 External plug and port locations



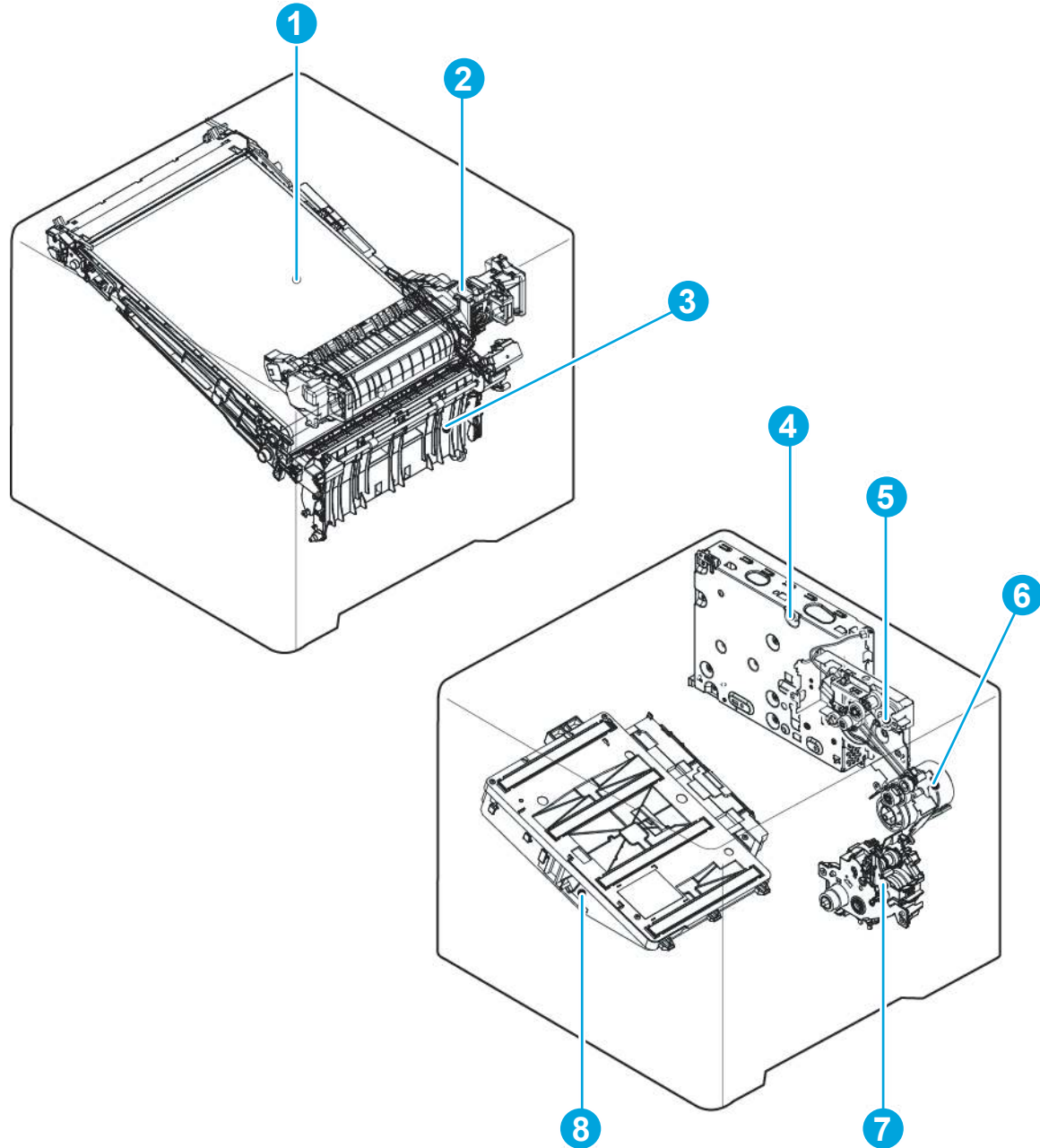
Item	Description
1	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet (RJ-45) network port
2	Hi-Speed USB 2.0 printing port
3	USB port for connecting external USB devices (this port might be covered) NOTE: For Walkup USB printing, use the USB port near the control panel.

Diagrams: Major component locations

View printer major component locations diagrams.

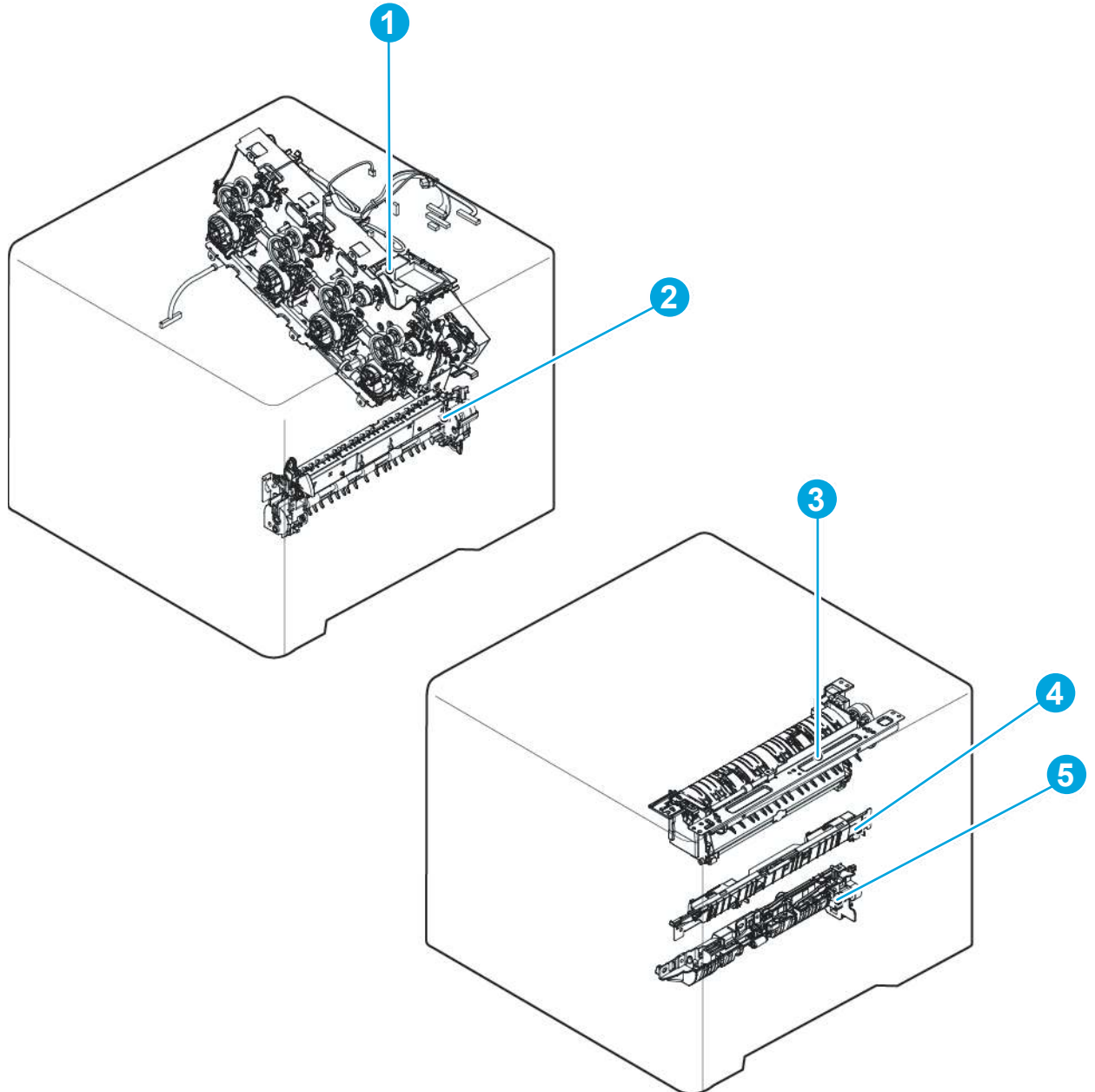
Major components (printer base)

Figure 4-39 Major components (printer base 1 of 2)



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	5	Fuser drive assembly
2	Fuser	6	Pickup drive assembly
3	Secondary transfer (T2) roller assembly	7	Lifter drive assembly
4	Formatter case assembly	8	Laser/scanner assembly

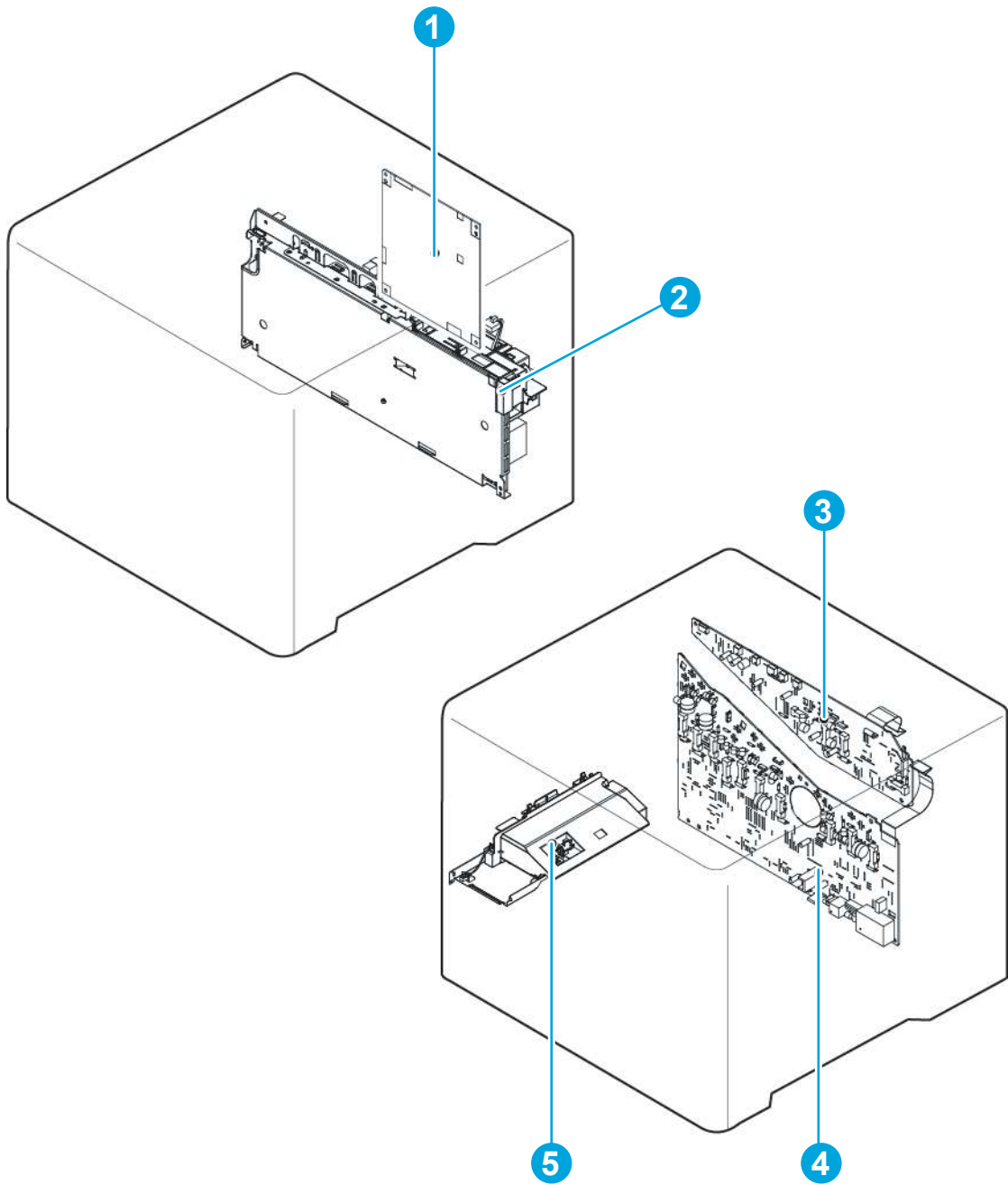
Figure 4-40 Major components (printer base 2 of 2)



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Main drive assembly	4	Registration density sensor assembly
2	Registration assembly	5	Cassette pickup assembly
3	Delivery assembly		

Printed circuit assemblies (printer base)

Figure 4-41 Printed circuit assemblies (printer base)



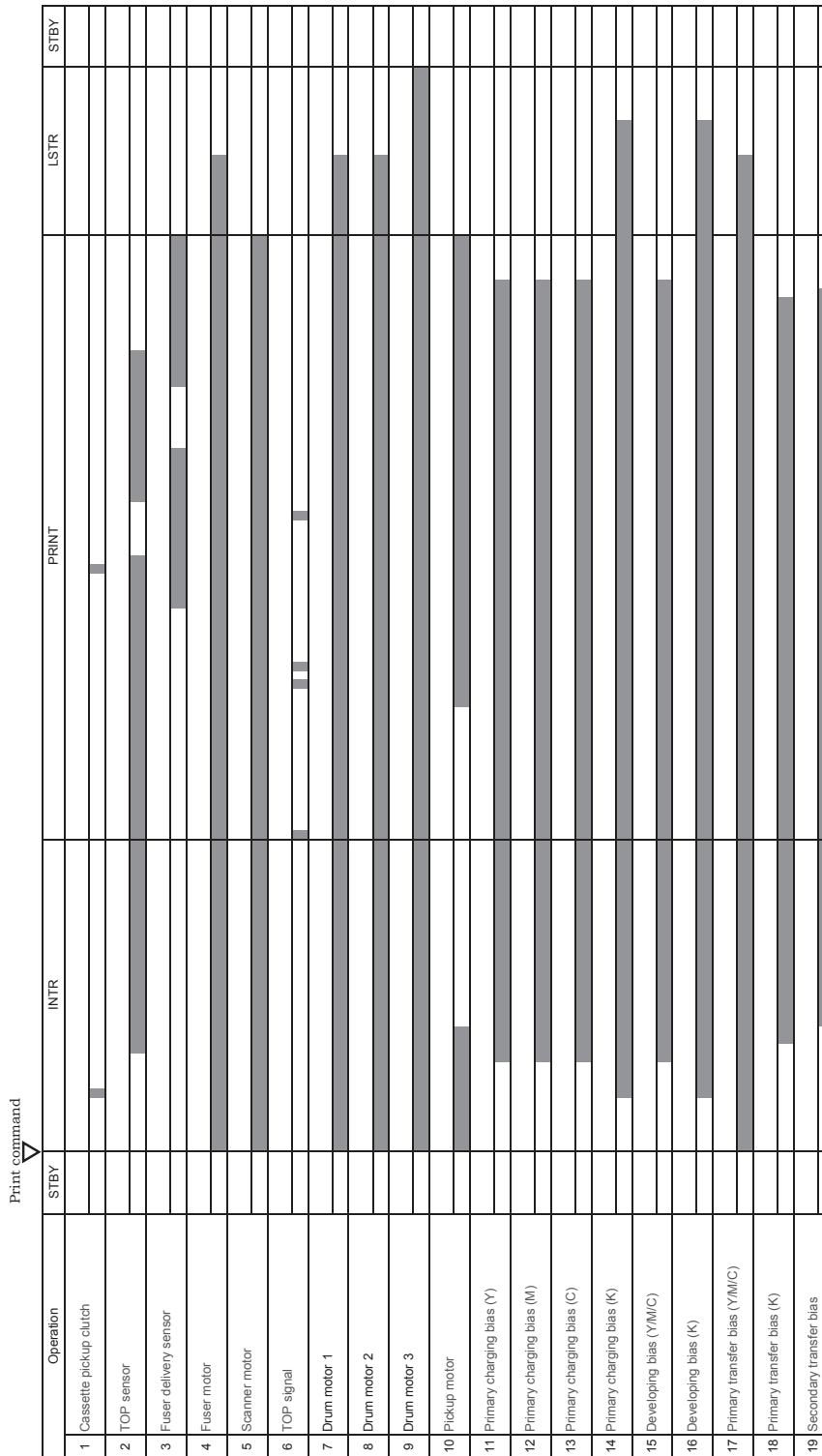
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	DC controller	4	High-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)
2	Low-voltage power supply	5	Fuser power supply (FPS)
3	High-voltage power supply T (HVPST)	Not shown	Formatter

NOTE: Located to the right of the DC controller.

Diagrams: General timing chart

View the printer timing chart diagram.

Figure 4-42 Timing chart



Diagrams: General circuit diagrams

View the printer circuit diagram.

Figure 4-43 General circuit diagram (base printer 1 of 2)

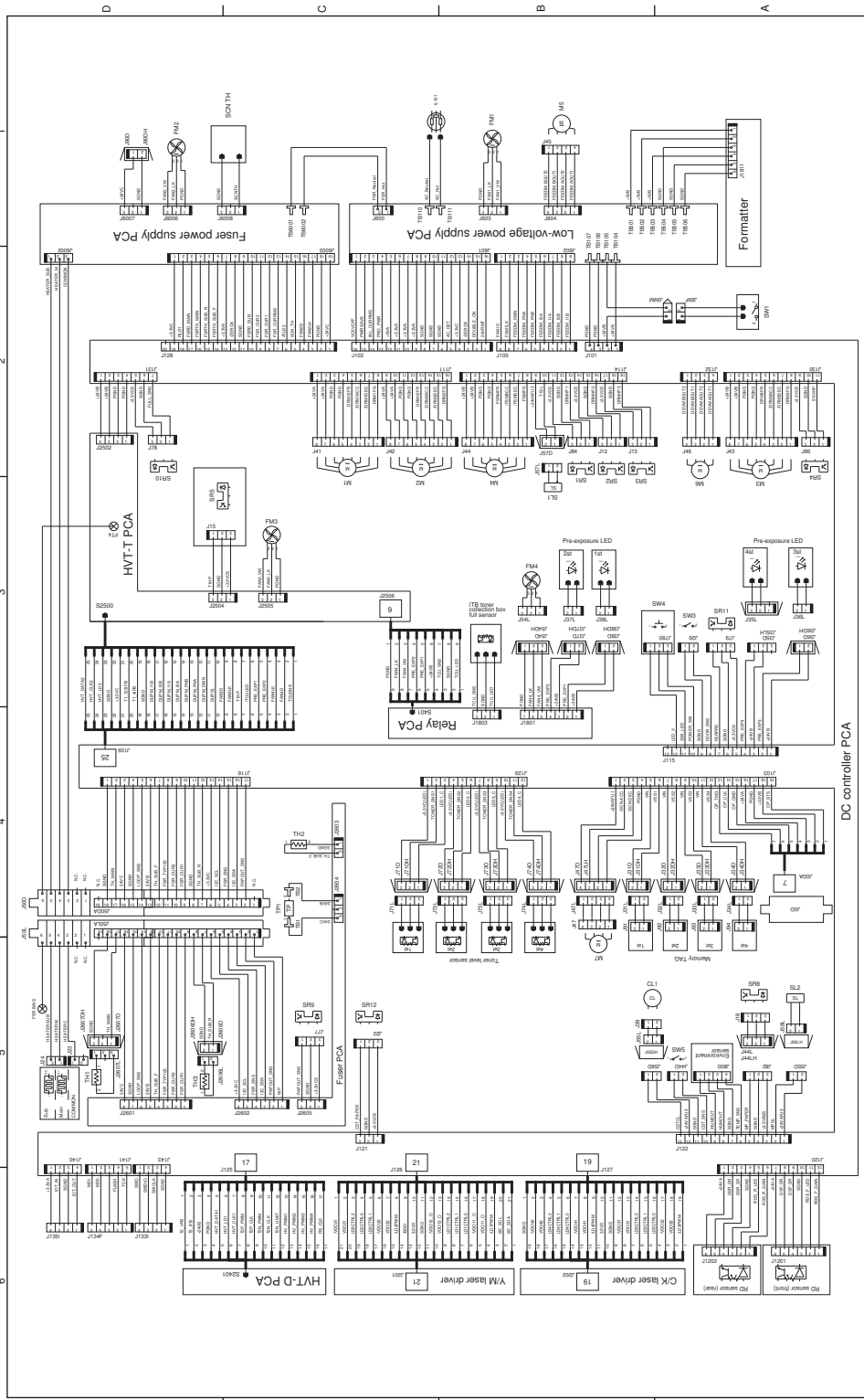
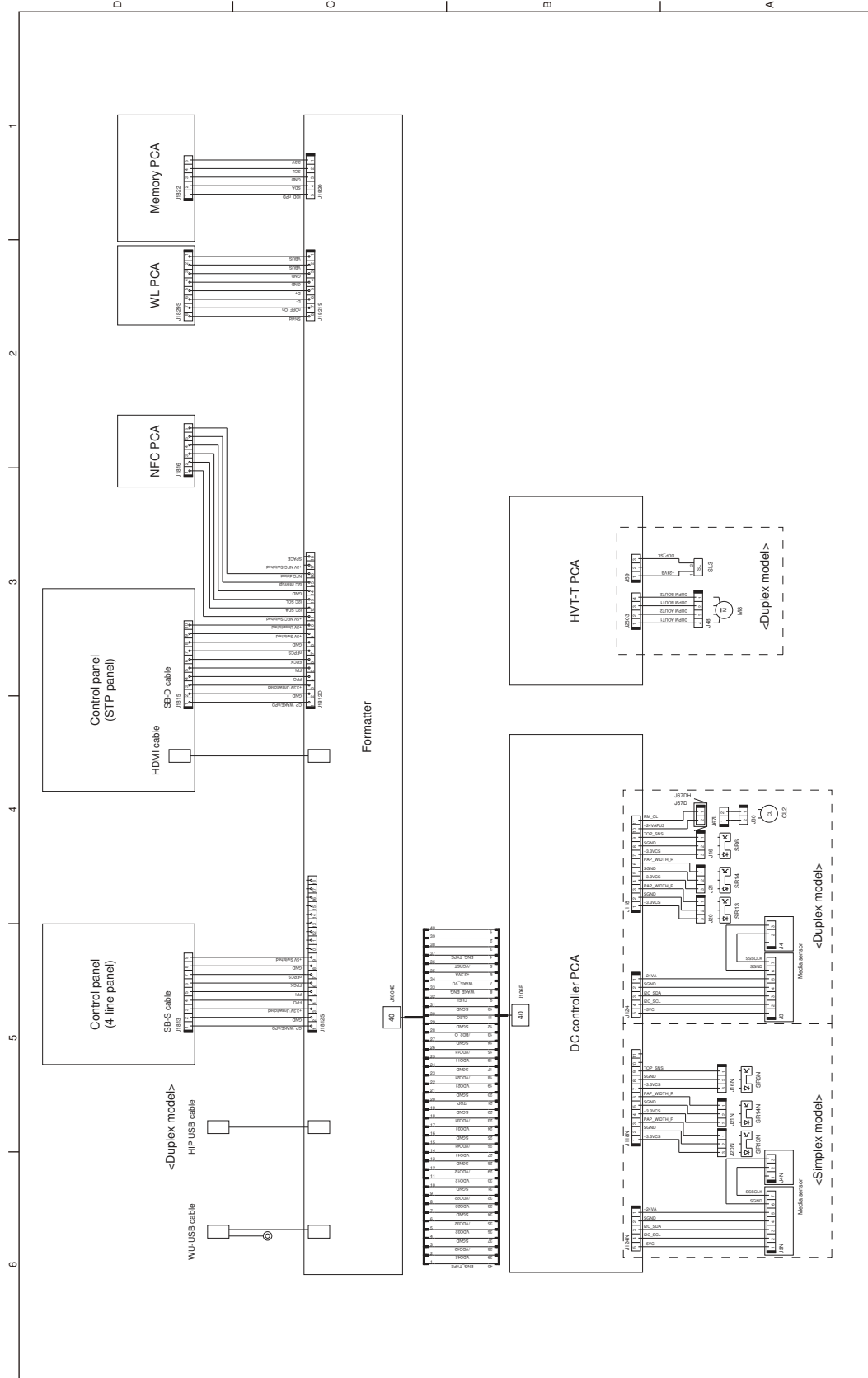



Figure 4-44 General circuit diagram (base printer 2 of 2)



Internal test and information pages

Learn about printer test and information pages.


 **NOTE:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Configuration and Jetdirect page

Print and find printer information on configuration and HP embedded Jetdirect information pages.

 **NOTE:** Depending on the model, up to three pages print when printing a configuration page. In addition to the main configuration page, the HP embedded Jetdirect configuration and the wireless pages print.

Print the configuration page from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Reports](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration/Status Pages](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration Page](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the print icon . Press the [OK](#) button to print the pages.

Print the configuration page from an MFP control panel


1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Configuration/Status pages](#)
3. Touch [Configuration Page](#) to select it.
4. Touch the print icon  to print the pages.

Figure 4-46 Configuration page

Configuration Page
HP LaserJet M404
Page 1

1 Device Information

Product Name: HP LaserJet M505
 Device Name: HP LaserJet M505
 Model Number: C8333A
 CC Controller Version: 1.102
 Device Serial Number: XXXXXXXXXX
 Formatter Number: XXXXXXXXXX
 Firmware Bundle Version: 303a
 Firmware Revision: 255730_462546
 Firmware Datecode: 20140617
 HP FutureSmart Level: HP FutureSmart 3
 NFC revision: Not Installed
 Service ID: 00000
 Maintenance Kit Interval: 225000
 Pages Since Last Maintenance: 0
 PS Job Time-out: 300 seconds
 Engine Cycles*: 7
 *%: weighted for billing

2 Installed Personalities and Options

PCL: 20110402
 PCLXL: 20110402
 PDS/SCRIP: 20110402
 PDF: 20130501
 AirPrint: 2040201
 Internal Disk: Hard Disk: Enabled
 Serial Number: DC160322
 Model: Toshiba 99G40C
 Capacity: 3275 MB
 Hard Disk Encryption Status: Disk cannot be encrypted
 HP Printer Trusted Platform Module: Enabled
 Firmware: 01.02.149.32
 iCC ImagePrint:
 C4E314043543210A0F47679B139EFC54E335A9
 Sdk Thumbprint:
 78D9140435763210A0F47679B139EFC54E335A9
 Encoded HP JetDirect J-Box: NP-245593
 Wireless HP JetDirect J8032E: 0.0.0.0

3 HP Web Services

HP Web Services: Disabled
 ePrint: Disabled

4 Memory

Total RAM: 512 MB

5 Event Log

Number of Entries in Use: 17		
Three Most Recent Entries:		
Number	Cycles	Event
17	7	13.09.40
16	7	33.02.02
15	7	33.02.02

6 Security

Hard Disk encryption Status:
 Internal Disk: Disk cannot be encrypted
 Job Data Encryption Status: Encrypted (AES-128)
 Job Data Persistence: [Available]
 File Erase Mode: Non-Secure Fast Erase (No overwrite)
 Control Panel Password: Disabled
 Support Key: ROP-PPM-EXE
 Host USB plug and play: Enabled
 Device USB: Enabled

7 Paper Trays and Options

Default Paper Size: Letter
 Tray 1 Size: Any Size
 Tray 1 Type: Any Type
 Tray 2 Size: Letter
 Tray 2 Type: Plain
 1: Output Bin 1, 500 Sheets, Standard bin (correct order)
 2: Output Bin 2, 100 Sheets, Rear bin (straightest path)

Sep13/2019 6:56:00 AM
English (United States)

Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Device information	5	Event log
2	Installed personalities and options	6	Security
3	HP Web services	7	Paper trays and options
4	Memory		

Certain information, such as the firmware date codes, the IP address, and the email gateways, is especially helpful while servicing the printer. This information is on the various configuration pages.

Table 4-32 Important information on the configuration pages

Type of information	Specific information	Configuration page
Firmware Bundle Version	Firmware information	Main configuration page (Device information)

Table 4-32 Important information on the configuration pages (continued)

Type of information	Specific information	Configuration page
Firmware Revision	Firmware information	Main configuration page (Device information)
Firmware Datecode	Firmware information	Main configuration page (Device information)
<p>Accessories and internal storage</p> <p>All optional devices that are installed on the printer should be listed on the main configuration page.</p> <p>Separate pages print for the optional paper handling devices and the fax accessory. These pages list more-detailed information for those devices.</p>	Optional installed formatter devices and accessories information	Main configuration page (Installed Personalities and Options)
Memory	Total RAM information	Main configuration page (Memory)
Tray and bin information	Size and type by tray (including installed optional paper feeders) information	Main configuration page (Paper Trays and Options)
Engine cycles, service ID, and cartridge information	Engine information	Main configuration page (Device Information)
Event-log information	Error information	Main configuration page (Event Log)

The second configuration page is the HP embedded Jetdirect page, which contains the following information:

Figure 4-47 HP embedded Jetdirect page

Embedded Jetdirect Page
HP LaserJet M406
Page 1

1 ----- General Information -----
Status: I/O Card Initializing

Model Number: J8032E
Firmware Address: ECC217265593
Firmware Version: J6174503215
Port Config: unknown
Auto Negotiation: On
Manufacturing ID: 5107510700****M
Build Date: 06/16/2014 05:00:50
MS Registration: Not Registered

ePrint: Not Applicable
Email: Not Applicable

2 ----- Security Settings -----
IPsec: Disabled
Secure Web: HTTPS Required
Cert. Expires: 2005-01-17 02:14 UTC
SNMP Versions: 1.2
SNMP Set Only Name: Not Specified
SNMP Get Only Name: Not Specified/Default
Access List: Not Specified
Admin Password: Not Specified
Announcement Agent: Success
FIPS: Disabled

3 ----- Network Statistics -----
Total Packets Received: 0
Unicast Packets Received: 0
Bad Packets Received: 0
Framing Errors Received: 0
Total Packets Transmitted: 0
Unsendable Packets: 0
Transmit Collisions: 0
Transmit Late Collisions: 0
Last Wake: 0000CF00000000000000000000000000
00000000000000000000000000000000
00000000000000000000000000000000

4 ----- TCP/IP -----
IPv4: Enabled
IPv6: Loaded
Host Name: NP1246E93
IPv4 Domain Name: Not Specified
IPv6 Domain Name: Not Specified
Primary DNS Server: Not Specified
Secondary DNS Server: Not Specified
DNS(IPv4): Not Specified
DNS(IPv6): Not Specified
NTPS Server: Not Specified
TCP Idle Timeout: 90 sec

5 ----- IPv4 -----
Status: Initializing
IP Address: 0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask: 0.0.0.0
Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0
Config By: Not Configured
BOOTP/DHCP Server: 0.0.0.0
TFTP Server: 0.0.0.0
Bonjour Service Name: Not Specified

6 ----- IPv6 -----
Status: Ready
Link Local: Not Configured
Stableless: Not Configured
DHCPv6: Not Configured
Manual: Not Configured


Sep/13/2019 6:56:00 AM
English (United States)

Item	Description
1	General Information indicates the printer status, model number, hardware firmware version, port select, port configuration, auto negotiation, manufacturing identification, and manufactured date.
2	Security Settings information
3	Network Statistics indicates the total packets received, unicast packets received, bad packets received, framing errors received, total packets transmitted, unsendable packets, transmit collisions, and transmit late collisions.
4	TCP/IP information, including the IP address
5	IPv4 information
6	IPv6 information

Reports menu

Learn about the control-panel [Reports](#) menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Reports](#) menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the [OK](#) button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.


 **NOTE:** The [View](#) option is control-panel type dependent (might not be available).

Table 4-33 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Cancel	Shows a map of the entire control panel system and the selected values for each setting.
		View	
		Print	
Configuration/Status Pages	Current Settings Page	Cancel	Shows a summary of the current settings for the printer. This might be helpful if you plan to make changes and need a record of the present configuration.
		View	
		Print	
Configuration/Status Pages	Configuration Page	Cancel	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
		View	
		Print	
Configuration/Status Pages	How to Connect Page	Cancel	Shows the network information typically needed to connect the printer to a network.
		View	
		Print	
Configuration/Status Pages	Supplies Status Page	Cancel	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different than the approximations provided.
		View	
		Print	
Configuration/Status Pages	Usage Page	Cancel	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex or duplex, and reports the page count.
		View	
		Print	

Table 4-33 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	File Directory Page	Cancel	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
		View	
		Print	
Configuration/Status Pages	Web Services Status Page	Cancel	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
		View	
		Print	
Fax Reports Fax models only	Fax Activity Log	Cancel	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.
		View	
		Print	
Fax Reports Fax models only	Billing Codes Report	Cancel	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
		View	
		Print	
Fax Reports Fax models only	Blocked Fax List	Cancel	A list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
		View	
		Print	
Fax Reports Fax models only	Speed Dial List	Cancel	Shows the speed dials that have been set up for this printer.
		View	
		Print	
Fax Reports Fax models only	Fax Call Report	Cancel	A detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
		View	
		Print	
Other Pages	PCL Font List	Cancel	Prints the available PCL fonts.
		Print	
Other Pages	PS Font List	Cancel	Prints the available PS fonts.
		Print	

Settings menu

Learn about the control-panel [Settings](#) menu.



NOTE: You can perform basic printer setup by using the [Settings](#) menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a Web browser.



TIP: If prompted, enter the EWS personal identification number (PIN) from a sticker on the printer (typically located inside the front door or on a toner cartridge tray).

General menu

Review the following information about the [General](#) menu in the [Settings](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Settings](#), and then select [OK](#). Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to [General](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

Table 4-34 General menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time	Date			Select the date from a pop-up calendar.
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time	Time			Select the time from a pop-up keypad.
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time	Time Zone			Select the time zone.
Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.	Select an event from the list to edit it	For the selected event, change the time and days settings as desired. Done Select the trash can icon to delete the event	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. NOTE: You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.
Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	New event	Event Type	Wake Sleep	Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	New event	Time		Set the wake or sleep event time parameters.
Energy Settings	Sleep Schedule	New event	Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	Set the wake or sleep event day parameters.

Table 4-34 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Energy Settings	Sleep Settings	Sleep After Inactivity Auto Off After Sleep Select one of these items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HP Auto Off/ Auto On (Wake on most events) • Shut down (Wake on power button only) 		Range: 1 to 110 minutes Default = 0 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Use the arrow buttons on the control panel to increase or decrease the number of minutes.
Display Settings	Display Brightness	A sliding bar displays with the indicator set in the middle. Use the arrow keys to select the desired brightness and then select Done.			Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
Display Settings	Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
Display Settings	Language Settings	Keyboard Layout		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
Display Settings	Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.

Table 4-34 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Display Settings	Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.
Display Settings	Clearable Warnings			Display during job* Display until cleared	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.
Display Settings	Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.
Enable Device USB				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive

Table 4-34 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Jam Recovery				Auto*	<p>This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options:</p> <p>Auto: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.</p> <p>Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal.</p> <p>NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost.</p> <p>On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause overall performance to suffer.</p>
				Off	
				On	
Auto Recovery				Enabled	<p>The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available.</p>
				Disabled*	

Table 4-34 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Enable AutoSend				Disable* Enable	<p>Browse to the HP Embedded Web Server AutoSend configuration page for advanced set up and the HP online Privacy Statement Information.</p> <p>Use the Enable AutoSend menu to enable or disable the AutoSend feature. The AutoSend feature enables your product to periodically send product configuration information including serial number, event logs, page usage counts and supplies status information to HP web addresses (URLs), or email addresses. Information sent to HP is used to improve products and services, and to monitor the product if you have a relationship with HP that provides you services such as proactive cartridge replacement, pay-per-page contracts, support agreements, or usage tracking.</p>
Hold Off Print Job				On* Off	<p>Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.</p>
Reset Factory Settings				Cancel Reset	<p>Touch Reset to reset current user-specified default settings to the factory default settings.</p>

Print menu

Review the following information about the [Print](#) menu in the [Settings](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Settings](#), and then select [OK](#). Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to [Print](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

Table 4-35 Print menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Enable Print from USB Drive				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
Managed Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date*	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
Managed Stored Jobs	Retain Temporary Jobs			Do not retain Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.
Managed Stored Jobs	Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
Managed Stored Jobs	Standard Stored Job Retention			Off 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 1 week 4 weeks	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Standard Stored Job Retention feature specifies the amount of time jobs can be stored on the printer.
Default Print Options	Number of Copies			Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.
Default Print Options	Paper Selection			Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size used for print jobs.

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension		Range: 2.52-12.60 inches Default = 12.60 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects Custom as the paper size for a print job.
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	Y Dimension		Range: 5-18 inches Default = 18 inches	
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	Use Inches		Enabled* Disabled	
Default Print Options	Output Sides			1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.
Default Print Options	Quality Level			Normal* Enhanced Fine Lines	Use to select the level of desired print quality.
Default Print Options	Edge-to-Edge			Normal (recommended)* Edge-to-Edge output	Use to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.
PCL and Postscript Settings	Suppress Blank Pages			Off* On	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the On option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.
PCL and Postscript Settings	Courier Font			Regular Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular , which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	Wide A4			Enabled	Changes the printable area of A4-size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.
				Disabled*	
PCL and Postscript Settings	Print PS Errors			Enabled	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
				Disabled*	
PCL and Postscript Settings	Print PDF Errors			Enabled	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
				Disabled*	
PCL and Postscript Settings	Personality			Auto*	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
				PCL	
				PS	
				PDF	
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.
				Disk resident*	

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL		Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL		Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user soft -default vertical form length.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Orientation	Portrait Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.
Print Quality	Adjust Color	Tonal Range		Highlights Midtones Shadows	Select the tonal range to adjust.
Print Quality	Adjust Color	Cyan Magenta Yellow Black		Use the arrow keys to adjust the sliding bar for each color.	
Print Quality	Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4 Tray 5 Depends upon the number of trays installed		Specify tray to be adjusted

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Image Registration	Front-side Horizontal Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the image printed on the back.
		Front-side Vertical Shift			The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page.
		Back-side Horizontal Shift			The direction that the paper feeds through the printer is referred to as Y. Y1 is the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page.
		Back-side Vertical Shift			Use the Adjust Tray <X> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary. You can adjust values for X1 Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Image Registration	Print Test Page			Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
Print Quality	Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page Sense first page Sense transparency only	
Print Quality	Auto Sense Behavior	All Other Trays		Sense first page Sense transparency only	
Print Quality	Adjust Paper types			Select from a list of paper types Reset Paper Types	
Print Quality	Optimize	Normal Paper		Standard Smooth	Set to Smooth when printing on smooth paper of normal weight.
Print Quality	Optimize	Heavy paper		Standard Smooth	Set to Smooth when printing on smooth, heavy media types.
Print Quality	Optimize	Envelope control		Normal Reduced Temp	Set to Reduced Temp if envelopes are sticking due to moisture in the envelop adhesive.
Print Quality	Optimize	Tray 1		Normal Alternate	Set the mode to Alternate if marks appear on the back side of the paper when printing from Tray 1. This sets the printer to initiate a clean sequence every time a job finishes when the printer is set for Any Size and Any Type for Tray 1.
Print Quality	Optimize	Background		Normal Alternate	Set to Alternate when a background occurs all over the page.

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Optimize	Uniformity Control		Normal	Set to Alternate 1 to improve uniformity on any paper type.
				Alternate 1	
				Alternate 2	
				Alternate 3	
Print Quality	Optimize	Cac03		Off	Set to On if printing with media that contains a high calcium carbonate content. Engine print speed is slowed so that less paper dust is produced.
				On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Best Normal		Off	Set to On to try and improve print quality.
				On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Tracking Control		Off	Improves color stability by adjusting the bias voltage. Make sure this mode is set to On .
				On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Registration		Normal	Set to Alternate when color misregistration occurs.
				Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Transfer Control		Normal	Set to Alternate to reduce primary transfer bias and to resolve low density or blotchy images.
				Alternate 1	
Print Quality	Optimize	Moisture Control		Normal	Set to Alternate if the printer is installed in a high-humidity environment.
				Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Reset Optimize		Reset	Use Reset to reset the menu defaults.
Print Quality	Edge Control			Off	
				Light	
				Normal*	
				Maximum	

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* When available	<p>Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available:</p> <p>Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty.</p> <p>When available: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the specific tray was indicated for the job.</p>
Manage Trays	Manually Feed Prompt			Always* Prompt on mismatch	<p>Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available:</p> <p>Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray.</p> <p>Prompt on mismatch: A prompt displays only if the size or type do not match or the tray is empty.</p>

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	<p>Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available:</p> <p>Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message.</p> <p>Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.</p>
Manage Trays	Use Another Tray			Allow* Do not allow	<p>Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available:</p> <p>Allow: When this option is selected the user is prompted to either add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray. This is the factory default.</p> <p>Do not allow: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.</p>

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Alternative Letterhead Mode			Disabled* Enabled	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
Manage Trays	Duplex Blank Pages			Automatic* Always	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: <i>Automatic:</i> Choose this option to skip printing blank sides during a two-sided print job. The printer can print jobs faster when blank sides are skipped. <i>Always:</i> Choose this option to print all sides of a two-sided job, even if one side is blank. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 4-35 Print menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Override A4/Letter			Yes*	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.
				No	
Manage Trays	Unsupported Size Behavior			Use default size automatically*	Use this feature to identify the desired behavior when printing a document on a paper size that the printer does not support.
				Prompt for user response	
Manage Trays	Rotate Offset			Automatic*	Allows printing of multiple copies of a print job in alternate orientations. For example, the first copy outputs in landscape orientation, the second outputs in portrait orientation, the third in landscape, and so on. This feature works only with Letter or A4-sized paper and requires the use of at least two paper trays. One tray is loaded to feed paper in the long-edge orientation and the other is loaded to feed paper in the short-edge orientation.
				Off	

Manage Supplies menu

Review the following information about the [Manage Supplies](#) menu in the [Settings](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Settings](#), and then select [OK](#). Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to [Manage Supplies](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

Table 4-36 Manage Supplies menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Low Warning Thresholds	Yellow Cartridge	1-100%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.
	Magenta Cartridge	Default = 5%	
	Cyan Cartridge		
	Black Cartridge		
Low Warning Threshold Message		On	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
		Off	
Very Low Behavior	Color Cartridges	Stop	
	Black Cartridge	Continue	
	Drums 1-3	Prompt to continue	
	Drum 4		
	Transfer Kit		
	Fuser Kit		
Restrict Color Use		Enable color	Use this feature to enable, restrict, or disable color printing.
		Color if allowed*	
		Disable color	
Color/Black Mix		Auto	Instructs the printer when to switch between color and monochrome printing modes for the best overall performance. Auto: Uses the mode that is appropriate for the first page of the job. If necessary, the printer switches modes during the middle of a job and then stays in that mode until the job is finished. Mostly color pages: The printer uses color mode for all jobs, even if the job contains no color pages. Mostly black pages: The printer uses monochrome mode until it detects a color page. The printer switches back to monochrome mode when it detects a sequence of several monochrome pages.
		Mostly color pages	
		Mostly black pages	

Table 4-36 Manage Supplies menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Store Usage Data		On supplies Not on supplies	Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
Cartridge Protection		Off* Protect Cartridges	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
Cartridge Policy		Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this printer.

Networking menu

Review the following information about the [Networking](#) menu in the [Settings](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Settings](#), and then select [OK](#). Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to [Networking](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

Table 4-37 Networking menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	Information	Print Security Report		Yes No*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Host Name		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. NPIXXXXXX*	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPIxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.

Table 4-37 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv4 Settings	Config Method	<p>Bootp</p> <p>DHCP*</p> <p>Auto IP</p> <p>Manual</p>	<p>Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server.</p> <p>Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server.</p> <p>DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options.</p> <p>Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically.</p> <p>If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.</p>

Table 4-37 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv4 Settings	Default IP	Auto IP* Legacy	Specify the IP address to default to when the print server is unable to obtain an IP address from the network during a forced TCP/IP reconfiguration (for example, when manually configured to use BootP or DHCP). NOTE: This feature assigns a static IP address that might interfere with a managed network. Auto IP: A link-local IP address 169.254.x.x is set. Legacy: The address 192.0.0.192 is set, consistent with older HP Jetdirect printers.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv4 Settings	DHCP Release	Yes No*	
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv4 Settings	DHCP Renew	Yes No*	
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv4 Settings	Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
Ethernet		IPv4 Settings	Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv6 Settings	Enable	Off On*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv6 Settings	Address	Manual Settings Enable Address	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.

Table 4-37 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv6 Settings	DHCPv6 Policy	Router Specified Router Unavailable* Always	<p>Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server.</p> <p>Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.</p> <p>Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.</p>
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv6 Settings	Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPv6 Settings	Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 4-37 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Proxy Server		Select from a provided list.	<p>Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients.</p> <p>To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets.</p> <p>For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.</p>
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Proxy Port		Range: 1-65535 Default = 00080	<p>Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.</p>
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Idle Timeout		Range: 1-3600 Default = 0270	<p>The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).</p>

Supplies menu

Review the following information about the [Supplies](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Supplies](#), and then select [OK](#).

Table 4-38 Supplies menu

First level	Values	Description
Supplies Summary		View a summary of the status of all printer supplies.
Yellow Cartridge	Status	Select a supply from the list to see the current status of the supply, the part number used to order a replacement, the number of pages printed, and the approximate number of pages remaining.
Magenta Cartridge	Order HP Part	
Cyan Cartridge	Pages Printed	
Drum 1	Approximate Pages Remaining	
Drum 2		
Drum 3		
Drum 4		
Black Cartridge		
Toner Collection Unit	Status	Select a part from the list to see the current status of the part and the part number used to order a replacement.
Transfer Kit	Order HP Part	
Fuser Kit		

Trays menu

Review the following information about the [Trays](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Trays](#), and then select **OK**.

Table 4-39 Trays menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Tray 1	Size	Select paper size from a list of supported sizes.	Choose the paper size for the tray
Tray 2-x			
Tray 1	Type	Select paper type from a list of supported types.	Choose the paper type for the tray.
Tray 2-x			

Support Tools menu

Learn about the control-panel [Support Tools](#) menu.



NOTE: The [Support Tools](#) sub-menu contains the options for maintaining the printer and troubleshooting printer problems.


Maintenance menu

Learn about the control-panel [Maintenance](#) menu.

Backup/Restore menu

Learn about the control-panel [Backup/Restore](#) menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Support Tools](#) menu, select the [Maintenance](#) menu, and then select the [Backup/Restore](#) menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the [OK](#) button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.


Table 4-40 Backup/Restore menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values
Back up Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Backup Time	Enter a time
Back up Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Days Between Backups	Enter the number of days
Back up Data	Back up Now		
Back up Data	Export Last Backup		
Restore Data			Insert a USB drive that contains the backup file.

Calibration/Cleaning menu

Learn about the control-panel [Calibration/Cleaning](#) menu .

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Support Tools](#) menu, select the [Maintenance](#) menu, and then select the [Calibration/Cleaning](#) menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the [OK](#) button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 4-41 Calibration/Cleaning menu

First level	Values	Description
Cleaning Page	Automatic Cleaning Interval	Use this menu to configure the settings for the product to automatically print a cleaning page.
	Off*	
	1000 pages	Select a cleaning interval to set the number of pages to be printed before an automatic cleaning page is printed.
	2000 pages	
	5000 pages	
	10000 pages	
20000 pages	Touch Print to manually print a cleaning page.	
		NOTE: Cleaning pages print on the default paper size configured for the printer.

Table 4-41 Calibration/Cleaning menu (continued)

First level	Values	Description
Quick Calibration	Start	<p>The printer automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, the user can calibrate the printer immediately if the printer experiences problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a partial calibration. Use this calibration if color density or tone seem incorrect.</p> <p>Before calibrating, make sure that the Ready indicator displays on the control panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.</p>
Full Calibration	Start	<p>The printer automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, the user can calibrate the printer immediately if the printer experiences problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a full calibration, which can take up to three minutes. Use this calibration if the color layers seem to be shifted on the page.</p> <p>Before calibrating, make sure that the Ready indicator displays on the control panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.</p>
Power on Calibration	No delay Delay 15 minutes	This feature controls the timing of calibration when the printer wakes up or is turned on.
Calibrate Scanner MFP	Done Start	Touch Start to calibrate the device scanner. Messages on the control panel display will lead you through the calibration process.
Reset Calibration	Reset Cancel	<p>Use this feature to return the product to the factory-set default values for color calibration.</p> <p>Select Reset to reset the color calibration. The printer will restart with the factory-set defaults.</p> <p>Select Cancel to close the menu without resetting the color calibration.</p>

USB Firmware Upgrade menu

Learn about the control-panel [USB Firmware Upgrade](#) menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Support Tools](#) menu, select the [Maintenance](#) menu, and then select the [USB Firmware Upgrade](#) menu.

Insert a USB storage device with a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Service menu

Learn about the control-panel [Service](#) menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the [Support Tools](#) menu, and then select the [Service](#) menu.

The [Service](#) menu is locked and requires a personal identification number (PIN) for access. This menu is intended for use by authorized service personnel. See the [Service menu](#) section of this manual.

Troubleshooting menu

Review the following information about the [Troubleshooting](#) menu.

To display: From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then select [OK](#). Navigate to [Maintenance](#), and then select [OK](#). Navigate to [Troubleshooting](#), and then select [OK](#).

Table 4-42 Troubleshooting menu



First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Reports	Configuration/Status Pages		Settings Menu Map	Select the desired report and then select the print icon  to print the page.
			Current Settings Page	
			Configuration Page	
			How to Connect Page	
			Supplies Status Page	
			Usage Page	
			File Directory Page	
Reports	Configuration/Status Pages	Other Pages	Demonstration Page	Select the desired report and then select the print icon  to print the page.
			RBG Samples	
			CMYK Samples	
			PCL Font List	
			PS Font List	
Print Quality Pages	PQ Troubleshooting Pages		Print	Use to print pages that can help you resolve problems with print quality.

Table 4-42 Troubleshooting menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Print Quality Pages	Diagnostics Page		Print	Use to print a diagnostics page. The page includes color swatches, diagnostic information, and calibration information.
Print Quality Pages	Color Band Test		Print	Use to print a page that helps you resolve problems with print quality.
Event Log			Print Cancel	Use to print a list of the 50 most recent events in the event log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.
Paper Path Page			Print	Shows how many pages were printed from each tray.
Diagnostic Tests	Disable Cartridge Check		Continue	Use this diagnostic test to print internal pages or send an external job to the printer when the toner cartridge is removed or exchanged. Supply errors are ignored while the printer is in this mode.
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Test	Number of Copies	Range: 1-500 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy or Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen. The factory default setting is 1.
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Test	Paper Tray	Select from a list of the available trays.	Generates a test page for testing paper handling features. You can define the path that is used for the test in order to test specific paper paths.
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Test	Output Sides	1-sided* 2-sided	
Diagnostic Tests	Print/Stop Test		Stop Next Print Job* Delay	
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Sensor Test		Select from a list of the printer sensors.	Initiates a test of the paper path sensors.

Table 4-42 Troubleshooting menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Values	Description
Diagnostic Tests	Manual Sensor Test		Select from a list of available components. Reset Sensors	Test the printer sensors and switches for correct operation. Each sensor is displayed on the control panel screen, along with its status. Manually trip each sensor and watch for it to change on the screen. Select the Stop button to abort the test.
Diagnostic Tests	Component Test		Select from a list of available components. Repeat	Use this item to exercise individual parts independently to isolate noise, leaking, or other issues. To start the test, select one of the components. The test will run the number of times specified by the Repeat option. The user might be prompted to remove parts from the printer during the test. Select the Stop button to abort the test.
Generate Debug Data			Start	
Retrieve Diagnostics Data			Send to email	Create files that contain information about the printer that can help identify the cause of problems.

Printer resets

Learn about the printer resets.



IMPORTANT: The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Restore factory-set defaults from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Settings](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [General](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Restore Factory Settings](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. A verification message advises that completing the reset function might result in loss of data. Select the [Reset](#) button to complete the process.

Restore factory-set defaults from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Settings](#) button.

2. Open the following menus:
 - [General Settings](#)
 - [Reset Factory Settings](#)
3. A verification message advises that completing the reset function might result in loss of data. Touch the [Reset](#) button to complete the process.

Restore the Service ID

When replacing the formatter, the Service ID date is lost. Use this menu item to reset the date to the original date that the printer was first used. The date format is YYDDD. Use the following formula to calculate the Service ID.

Calculate the service ID

For the calculation below, the placed-in-service date is 17OCT2002.

1. To calculate YY, subtract 1990 from the calendar year. If the printer was first used in 2002, calculate YY as follows: $2002 - 1990 = 12$. YY = 12.
2. Subtract 1 from 10 (October is the tenth month of the year): $10 - 1 = 9$.
 - Multiply 9 by 30: $9 \times 30 = 270$ and add 17 to 270: $270 + 17 = 287$. Thus, DDD = 287.
3. In this example the Service ID is 12287.

Convert the Service ID to an actual date

Use the printer Service ID number to determine whether the printer is still under warranty. Use the following formula to convert the Service ID into the actual date the printer was placed-in-service. For the example below, use the Service ID previously calculated (12287).

1. Add 1990 to YY to get the actual year that the printer was installed.
2. Divide DDD by 30. If there is a remainder, add 1 to the result. This is the month.
3. The remainder from the calculation in step 2 is the date.
 - a. $12 + 1990 = 2002$, so the year is 2002.
 - b. 287 divided by $30 = 9$ with a remainder of 17 . Because there is a remainder, add 1 to 9 to get 10, which represents October.
 - c. The remainder in step 2 is 17, so that is the date. The complete date is 17-October-2002.



NOTE: A six-day grace period is built into the date system.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a SFP control panel


CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Press the [Cancel](#) button when you see the [1/8](#) under the logo
2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight [+3:Administrator](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight [+8:Startup Options](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to highlight [2 Cold Reset](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.

5. Press the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then press the OK button.

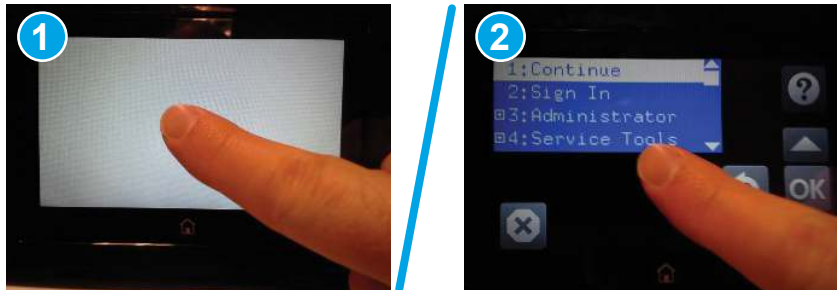
 **NOTE:** The printer initializes.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from an MFP control panel

 **CAUTION:** This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo

Figure 4-48 Open the Pre-boot menu (MFP)



2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +8:Startup Options item, and then press the OK button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to highlight 2 Cold Reset item, and then press the OK button.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then press the OK button.

 **NOTE:** The printer initializes.

Format Disk and Partial Clean functions

Learn about the printer [Format Disk](#) and [Partial Clean](#) functions.

Active and repository firmware locations

The firmware bundle consists of multiple parts. The main components are the Windows CE Operating System and the printer/peripheral firmware files.

There are two locations/partitions on the hard drive where the firmware components are stored:

- The Active, where the operating system and firmware currently are executing.
- The Repository, the recovery location.

If the Active location is damaged, or a [Partial Clean](#) was performed, the printer automatically copies over the OS and firmware files from the Repository location and the printer recovers.

If both the Active and Repository locations are damaged, or a [Format Disk](#) was performed, then both locations are gone and the error message **99.09.67** displays on the control-panel display. The user must upload the firmware to the printer in order for it to function again.

CAUTION: The [Format Disk](#) option performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) are completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

Partial Clean

The [Partial Clean](#) option erases all partitions and data on the disk drive, except for the firmware repository where a backup copy of the firmware file is stored. This allows the disk drive to be reformatted without having to download a firmware upgrade file to return the printer to a bootable state.

Characteristics of a [Partial Clean](#)

- Customer-defined settings, third-party solutions, firmware files, and the operating system are deleted.
- Rebooting the printer restores the firmware files from the Repository location, but does not restore any customer-defined settings.
- For previous HP printers, a Hard Disk Initialization is similar to executing the [Partial Clean](#) function for this printer.

CAUTION: HP recommends backing-up printer configuration data before executing a [Partial Clean](#) to retain customer-defined settings (if needed). See the [Backup/Restore](#) item in the [Device Maintenance](#) menu.

Reasons for performing [Partial Clean](#)

- The printer continually boots up in an error state.

 **NOTE:** Try clearing the error prior to executing a [Partial Clean](#).

- The printer will not respond to commands from the control panel.
- Executing the [Partial Clean](#) function is helpful for troubleshooting hard disk problems.
- To reset the printer by deleting all solutions and customer-defined settings.
- The printer default settings are not properly working.

Execute a [Partial Clean](#) from a non-touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Press the [Cancel](#) button when you see the [1/8](#) under the logo
2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight [+3:Administrator](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight [Partial Clean](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Press the [OK](#) button again.
5. Press the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the [Continue](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.

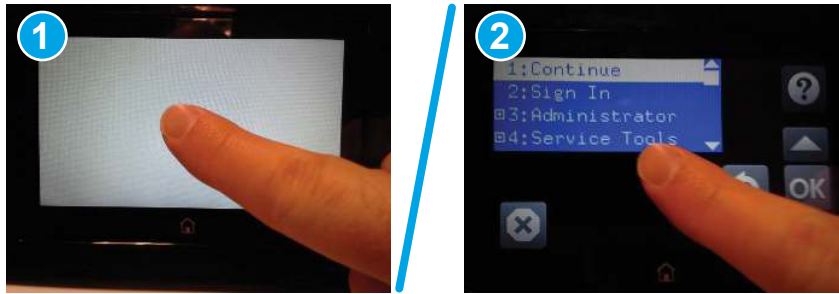
 **NOTE:** The printer initializes.

Execute a [Partial Clean](#) from a touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo

Figure 4-49 Open the Pre-boot menu (MFP)



2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight Partial Clean item, and then press the OK button.
4. Press the OK button again.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the Continue item, and then press the OK button.

 **NOTE:** The printer initializes.

Format Disk

The [Format Disk](#) option erases the entire disk drive.


 **CAUTION:** After executing a [Format Disk](#) option, the printer is not bootable.

Characteristics of a [Format Disk](#)

- Customer-defined settings, third-party solutions, firmware files, and the operating system are deleted.

 **NOTE:** Rebooting the printer *does not* restore the firmware files


- Rebooting the printer restores the firmware files from the Repository location, but does not restore any customer-defined settings.
- After executing the [Format Disk](#) function, the message **99.09.67** displays on the control panel.
- After executing the [Format Disk](#) function, the printer firmware must be reloaded.

 **CAUTION:** HP recommends not using the [Format Disk](#) option unless an error occurs and the solution in the printer service manual recommends this solution. After executing the [Format Disk](#) function, the printer is unusable.

HP recommends backing-up printer configuration data before executing a [Format Disk](#) to retain customer-defined settings (if needed). See the [Backup/Restore](#) item in the [Device Maintenance](#) menu.

Reasons for performing [Format Disk](#)

- The printer continually boots up in an error state.

 **NOTE:** Try clearing the error prior to executing a [Format Disk](#).

- The printer will not respond to commands from the control panel.
- Executing the [Format Disk](#) function is helpful for troubleshooting hard disk problems.
- To reset the printer by deleting all solutions and customer-defined settings.

Execute a [Format Disk](#) from a non-touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Press the [Cancel](#) button when you see the 1/8 under the logo
2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight [Format Disk](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Press the [OK](#) button again.

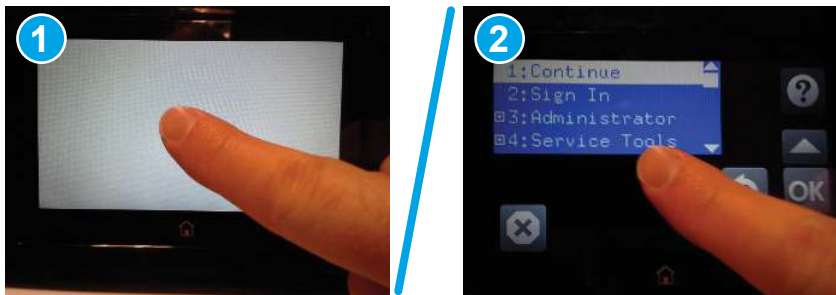
 **NOTE:** When the [Format Disk](#) operation is complete, reload the printer firmware.

Execute a [Format Disk](#) from a touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo

Figure 4-50 Open the Pre-boot menu (MFP)



2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight [Format Disk](#) item, and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Press the [OK](#) button again.

 **NOTE:** When the [Format Disk](#) operation is complete, reload the printer firmware.

Troubleshooting power-on or blank control panel problems

If the printer is not powering on correctly, use the following steps to begin troubleshooting the problem.

1. Verify that power is available to the printer. If the printer is plugged into a surge protector or uninterruptible power supply (UPS), remove it. Plug the printer directly into a known operating wall receptacle (make sure that the wall receptacle provides the correct voltage and current for the printer).



NOTE: Unplug any other devices on the same circuit that the printer is using.

2. Try another known operating wall receptacle and a different power cord.
3. To eliminate a thermal switch issue, unplug the power cord and leave it unplugged for over 20 minutes. Re-attach the power cord, and then turn the power on again.
4. During normal operation, a cooling fan or fans begin to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place a hand over the cover vent or vents to feel air passing out of the printer. Lean close to the printer to hear the fan or fans operating. Look for illuminated lights on the control panel and formatter LEDs.



NOTE: Operational fans, motors, and control-panel lights indicate the following:

- AC power is present at the printer.
 - The power supply is providing either or both 24 Vdc and 5 Vdc voltages.
 - The DC controller microprocessor is functioning.
-
5. If the printer powers on, but the control panel is blank, make sure that the control-panel display wire harness or harnesses and flat flexible cable or cables (FFCs) are connected.



NOTE: The following conditions indicate that the printer has frozen while in Sleep mode or Sleep delay. Opening a door or pressing a control-panel button should cause the printer to wake up from Sleep mode or Sleep delay.

- The control panel home button LED is illuminated
 - The power-switch LED flashes once every three to five seconds
-

If the control panel is not responding, or if it appears black or blank, try the following:

- a. Turn the printer power off, and then on again.
 - b. Verify that the system is correctly functioning by printing a test page. Does the test page print correctly?

Is the printer HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) accessible?
 - c. Verify that the control panel is correctly functioning. If it is not, turn the printer off and reseal the control-panel assembly cable connections at the control-panel assembly and the formatter.
 - d. Try upgrading the firmware. If the firmware upgrade fails to resolve the problem, and the printer still freezes while in Sleep mode or Sleep delay, elevate the case.
 - e. If the error persists and the EWS functions correctly, replace the control-panel assembly.
6. If normal start-up noises are not heard, turn the printer off, and then remove any installed accessories (for example, envelope feeders, paper feeders, or output accessories).
 7. Turn the printer on, and then listen for start-up noises. If normal start-up noises are heard, the problem might be with an accessory.

8. Perform an engine test. The engine test procedure varies by printer, so refer to the printer Service Manual to get instructions.
9. If the engine test page prints, the print engine is operating normally. Replace the formatter.

⚠ CAUTION: Under **NO** circumstances should a formatter from a different printer be installed during the repair or troubleshooting processes. The formatter stores important data specific to the model of printer it is installed in and is not designed to be swapped or repurposed in any way. Return a used formatter to HP.

Issues that can occur from swapping a formatter include:

- Serial number, product number, product name, page count, and supported cartridges information change and might make a product unusable
- 33.02.01 Used board/Disk installed errors

If a used formatter is installed and causes this issue, the **partner** must cover the costs of the repair in the form of a product replacement. **There is no method in the field to recover a printer where a used formatter is installed.**

For more information, see the following topic (c06360930):

- HP internal link: [33.02.01 error or printer name and/or product number changes after replacing the formatter](#)
- HP external partner link: [33.02.01 error or printer name and/or product number changes after replacing the formatter](#)

To access the HP partner link, you must first log in to the HP Partner First Portal and then connect to WISE.

🔧 NOTE: If the engine test page does not print, turn the printer off, reconnect the formatter power connector, remove the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC), and then try the engine test again. If the page prints, the problem might be the eMMC.

-
10. If after replacing the formatter or eMMC normal start-up noises are still not heard, replace the DC controller.
 11. If the print engine appears to be correctly operating (the engine test page successfully printed) and the control panel is still blank, replace the power supply.

Troubleshooting an unresponsive printer

If the printer powers up normally and the control panel displays correctly, but the printer appears unresponsive to print jobs, use the following steps to troubleshoot the issue.

1. The control panel should indicate a **Ready**, **Paused**, **Sleep mode on** or **Sleep delay on** status. If an error message displays, resolve the error. Resolve any supply issues.
2. For network connection errors, verify that the network port is active and that the cables are securely seated.
 - a. Check the network cable connections between the printer and the computer or network port. Make sure that the connections are secure.
 - b. Make sure that the cables are not faulty by trying different cables, if possible.
3. Check the network LEDs (callout 1) to see if they indicate any issues.

🔧 NOTE: The figure below is representational only. Network LED location varies by printer.

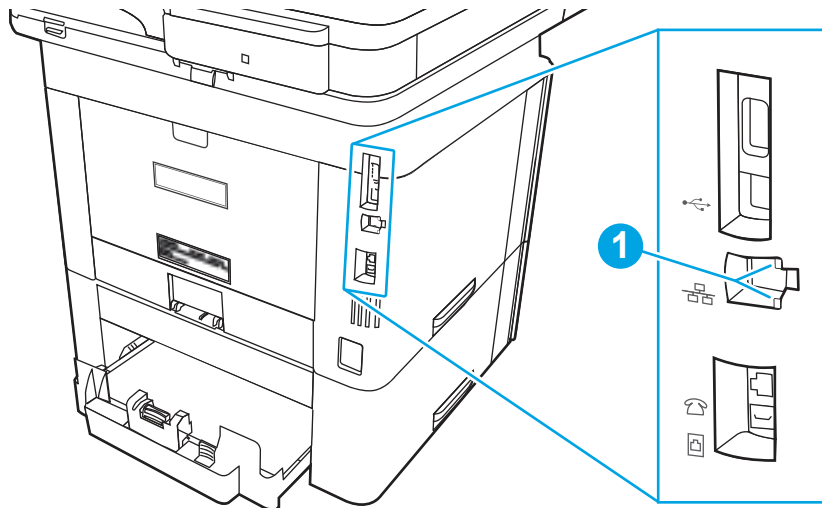






Table 4-43 Network LEDs

LED light pattern	Description
	Solid green light and flashing yellow light indicates a successful network connection.
	No lights on indicates a faulty network connection. Disconnect and reconnect the cable to the port. In the Network Settings Menu, verify the link settings and make sure that the port is enabled.

4. Use one of the following options to print a configuration page. If the printer is connected to a network, an HP Jetdirect page also prints.


 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.


Print the configuration page from a SFP control panel

- a. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to [Reports](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
- b. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration/Status Pages](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
- c. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Configuration Page](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
- d. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the print icon . Press the [OK](#) button to print the pages.

Print the configuration page from an MFP control panel

- a. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Reports](#) button.
- b. Open the following menus:
 - [Configuration/Status pages](#)
- c. Touch [Configuration Page](#) to select it.

- d. Touch the print icon  to print the pages.
5. Check to see if there is a newer version of the firmware available. If there is, update the firmware.
6. Verify that the correct print driver for this printer is installed. Check the program to make sure that the print driver for this printer is used. The print driver can be downloaded from support.hp.com.
7. Print a short document from a different program that has worked in the past. If this solution works, the problem is with the program. If this solution does not work (the document does not print), complete these steps:
 - a. Try printing the job from another computer that has the printer software installed.
 - b. If the printer is connected to the network, connect the printer directly to a host computer with a USB cable. Redirect the printer to the correct port, or reinstall the software (make sure to select the new connection type).

 **NOTE:** The host USB port may be disabled from the factory. If so, this port needs to be activated first before connecting the printer to the USB port.

For more information about troubleshooting an unresponsive printer and about troubleshooting connectivity issues, see the "Performance and connectivity troubleshooting" section of the Service manual.

Engine diagnostics

Learn about internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Engine test

Learn about troubleshooting the printer using the engine test diagnostic.

When the engine test is performed, a test page with lines prints if the engine is functioning correctly.

 **NOTE:** Depending on printer models, either a simplex engine test page, a duplex engine test page, or both simplex and duplex engine test pages might be available.

Use a small pointed object to depress and hold the engine test button (location varies depending on the printer model). An engine test page prints. The test page can use only Tray 2 as the paper source, so make sure that paper is loaded in Tray 2.

Possible engine test pages (printer dependent)

- A series of lines parallel to the **short** end of the page.
- A series of lines parallel to the **long** end of the page.

Figure 4-51 Engine test button



Defeating interlocks

Learn about defeating printer interlocks.

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the toner cartridge door or rear door is open.

To operate the printer with the doors open, the interlock switch levers must be depressed to simulate a closed-cover position.

⚠ WARNING! Be careful when performing printer diagnostics to avoid risk of injury. Only trained service personnel should open and run the diagnostics with the covers removed. Never touch any of the power supplies when the printer is turned on.

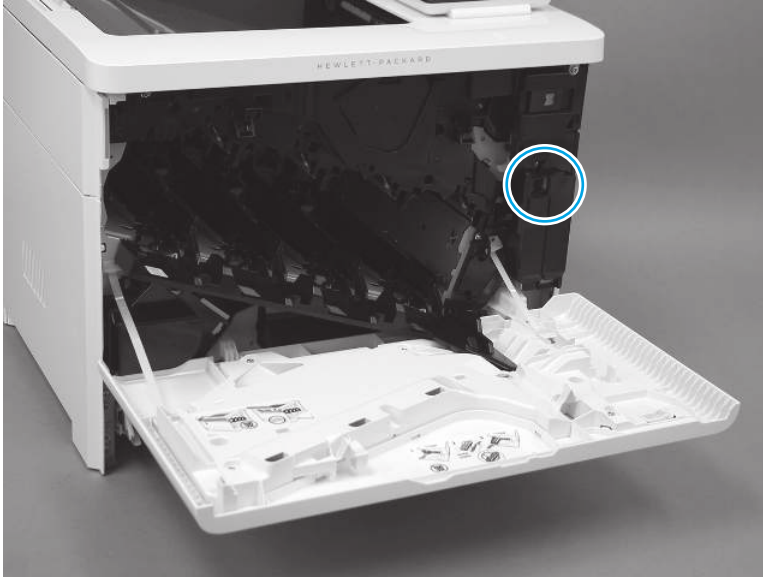
💡 TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a 10 mm (.375 in) strip, and insert the strip into the slots for the front door and right door logic switches.

Defeat the front (cartridge) door interlock

1. Open the front door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

💡 TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a 10 mm (.375 in) strip, and insert the strip into the slots for the front door and right door logic switches.

Figure 4-52 Defeat the front door interlock



Defeat the right door interlock

1. Open the right door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.


 **TIP:** Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a 10 mm (.375 in) strip, and insert the strip into the slots for the front door and right door logic switches.

Figure 4-53 Defeat the right door interlock (right side)

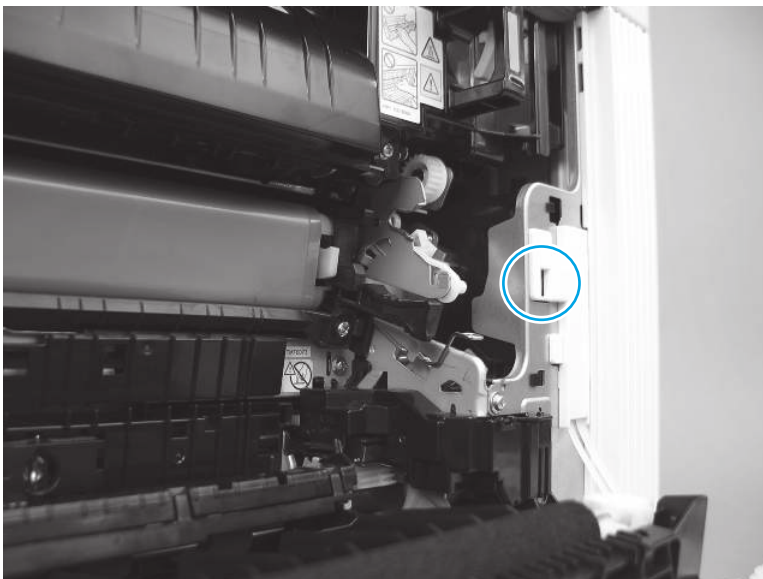
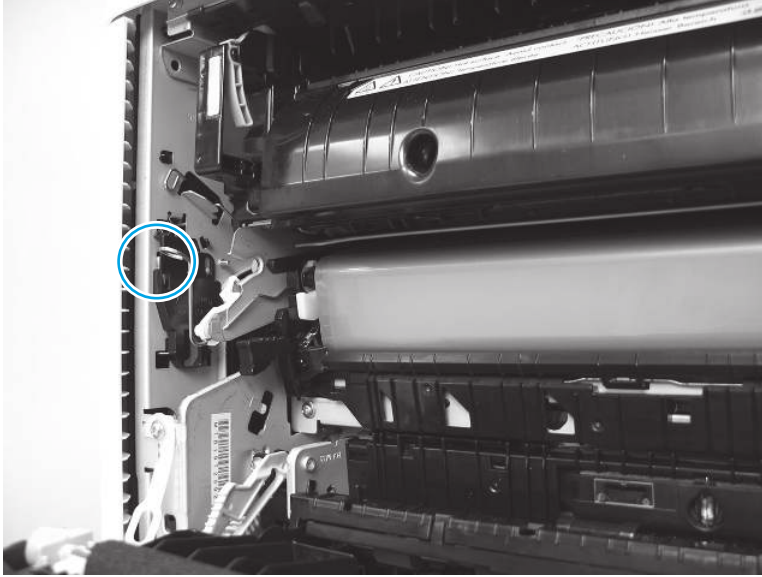


Figure 4-54 Defeat the right door interlock (left side)



Control panel troubleshooting

If the control panel is not responding normally or has display issues, use the following procedures to troubleshoot the issues.

Control panel system diagnostics (MFP)

Learn about MFP printer firmware control panel troubleshooting.

Use the diagnostics in this section to test the control panel hardware and display using the printer firmware system diagnostics.

Touchscreen diagnostic mode (M553x, M555, M577, M578, and E57540)

Learn about touchscreen diagnostic mode.

Use the diagnostics in this section to test the control-panel hardware and embedded firmware. These tests are useful for checking control-panel functionality independent of the printer control-panel system diagnostics. To test the control panel using the system diagnostics, see [Open the control panel system diagnostic tests on page 279](#).

1. **M553x, M555, E55040:** Locate the diagnostic-tests access button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-55 Diagnostic-tests access button



2. **M553x, M555, E55040:** Press the diagnostics-access button. Repeatedly pressing the button cycles through the available diagnostics.

 **NOTE:** A pen, pencil, or other small blunt object is needed to press the button.


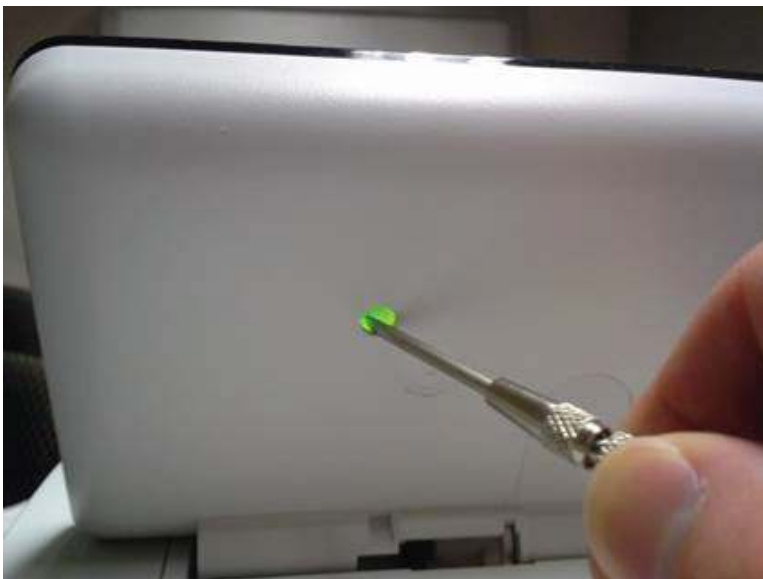
 **TIP:** When pressed, the button illuminates green.

Figure 4-56 Press the diagnostics-access button



3. **M577, M578, and E57540:** Locate the diagnostic-tests access button on the back of the control panel.

Figure 4-57 Diagnostic-tests access button




4. **M577, M578, and E57540:** Press the diagnostics-access button. Repeatedly pressing the button cycles through the available diagnostics.

Figure 4-58 Press the diagnostics-access button



5. A yellow screen appears (after the first press of the button) indicating that the control-panel firmware is version A (a magenta screen indicates version B firmware).

 **NOTE:** If a different color appears on the screen, escalate the problem using the HP support process.


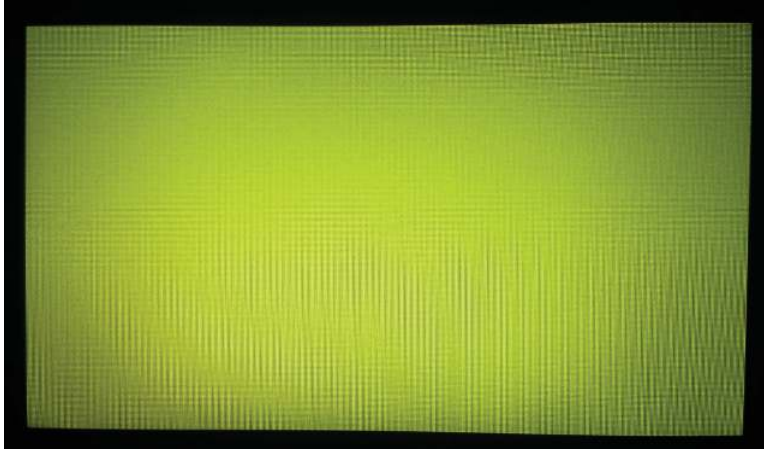

 **TIP:** After 4 seconds of inactivity, the diagnostic mode times out and is exited.

Figure 4-59 Control-panel version A yellow screen



6. Touch the screen to cycle the screen through the following:

 **NOTE:** Depending on where the control panel was manufactured, a magenta, a green, and a blue screen might appear before the white screen. Touch the screen to cycle past these screens.

- Five brightness levels of a white screen.
- A final black screen.

 **TIP:** When the final black screen displays, press the Home button to cycle through the diagnostic screens again.

7. Pressing the diagnostic-tests button with the black screen displayed, exits the diagnostic mode.

Control panel diagnostic flowcharts (M553x, M555, M577, M578, and E57540)

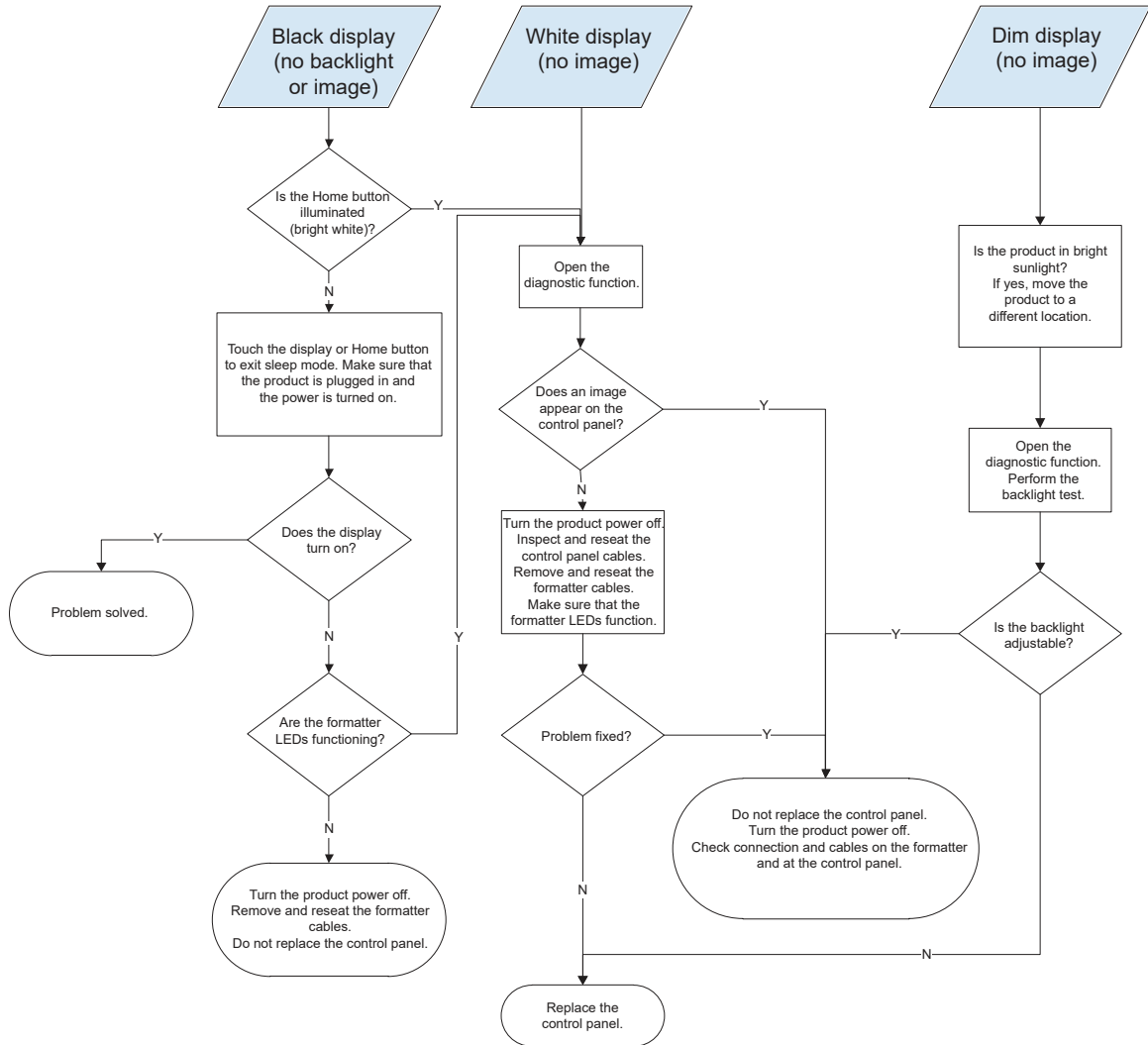
Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- Home button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

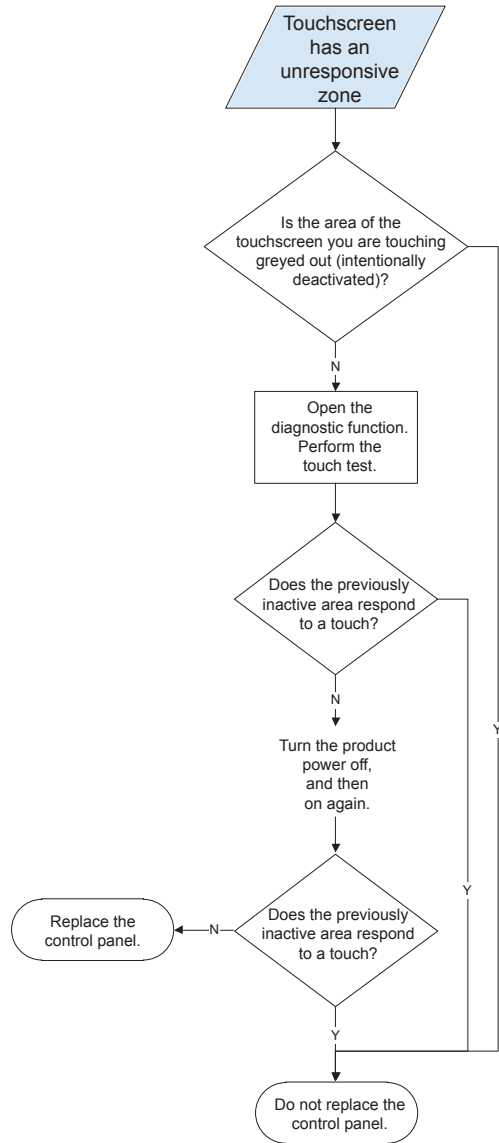
Figure 4-60 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)



Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

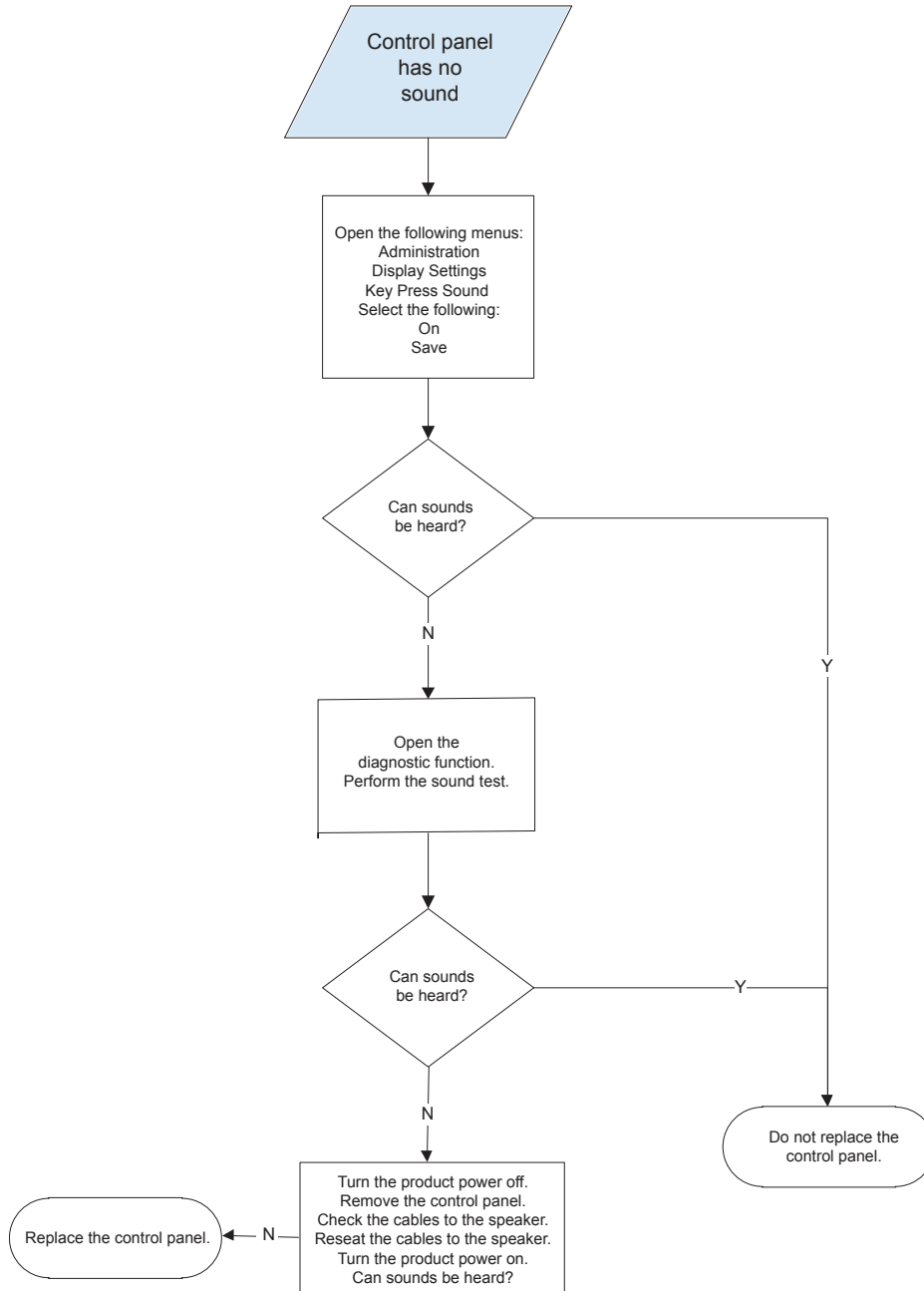
Figure 4-61 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



No control panel sound

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

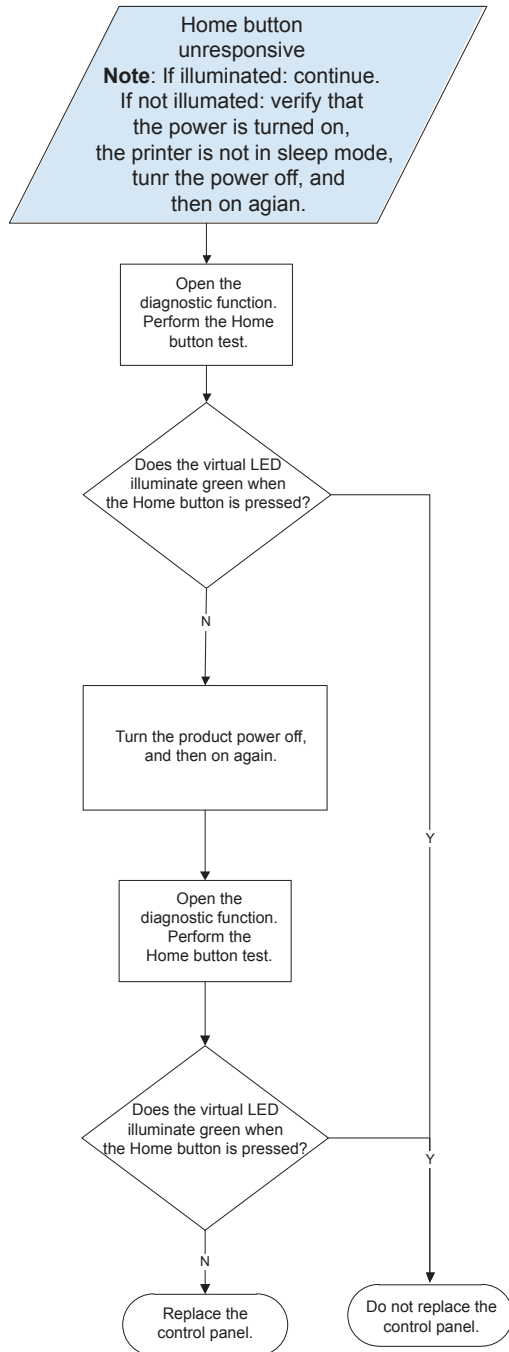
Figure 4-62 No control panel sound



Home button is unresponsive

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

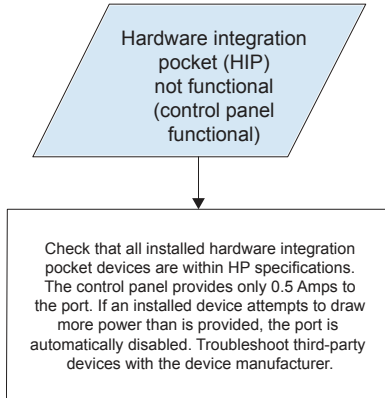
Figure 4-63 Home button is unresponsive



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Review the following information when the HIP is not functioning, but the control panel is functional.

Figure 4-64 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



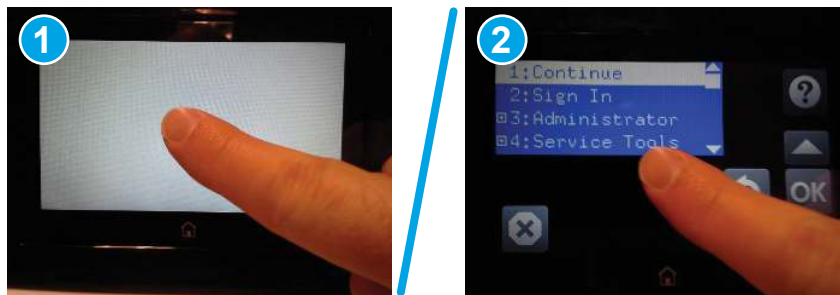
Open the control panel system diagnostic tests

Learn about accessing the control panel system diagnostics tests from a touchscreen control panel.

Use the following procedure to open the control panel system diagnostics tests (MFP).

1. Turn the printer power off, and then on again.
2. Touch the middle of the control panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 4-65 Open the Pre-boot menu



- On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 4-66 Pre-boot menu

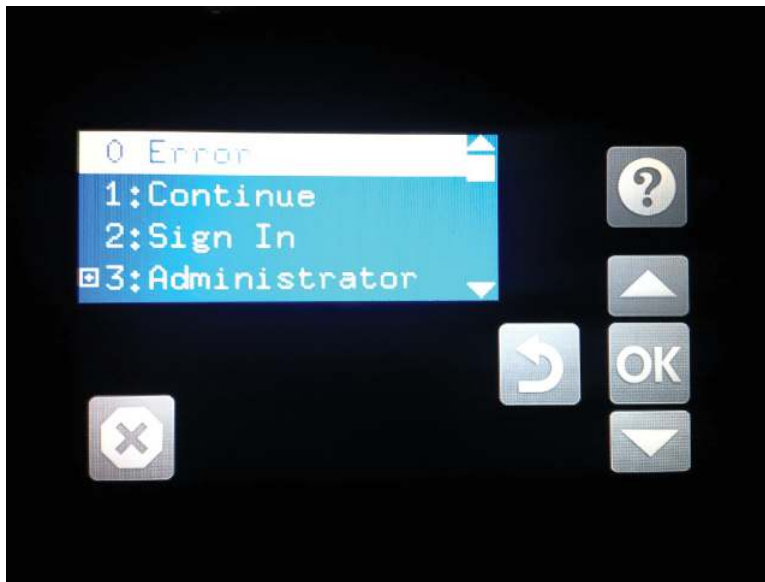







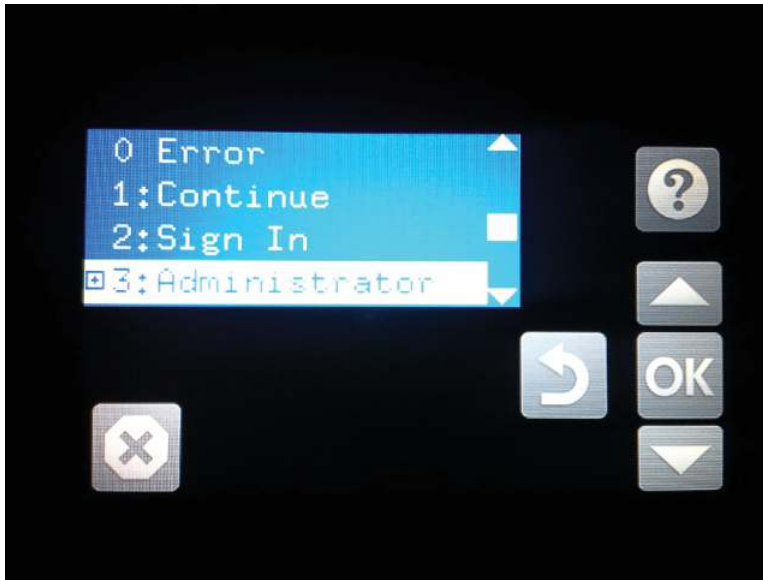


Table 4-44 Pre-boot menu button descriptions

Button	Description
	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.
	Use this button to exit a diagnostic test.

4. Use the **down arrow ▼** button to scroll to **+3 Administration**, and then press the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-67 Access the administration menu



5. Use the **down arrow ▼** button to scroll to **+E CP Diagnostics**, and then press the **OK** button to select it.

 **NOTE:** An administrator password might be required to continue.

Figure 4-68 Access the diagnostics menu



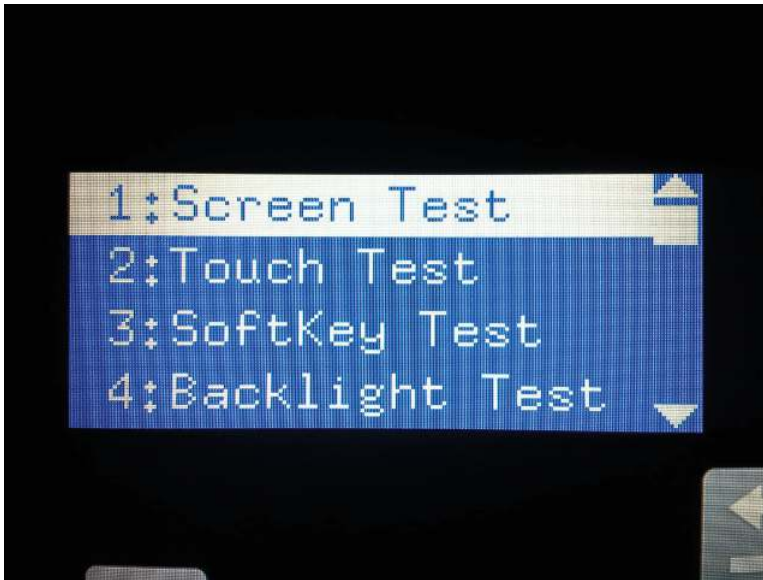
Screen test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic screen test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.

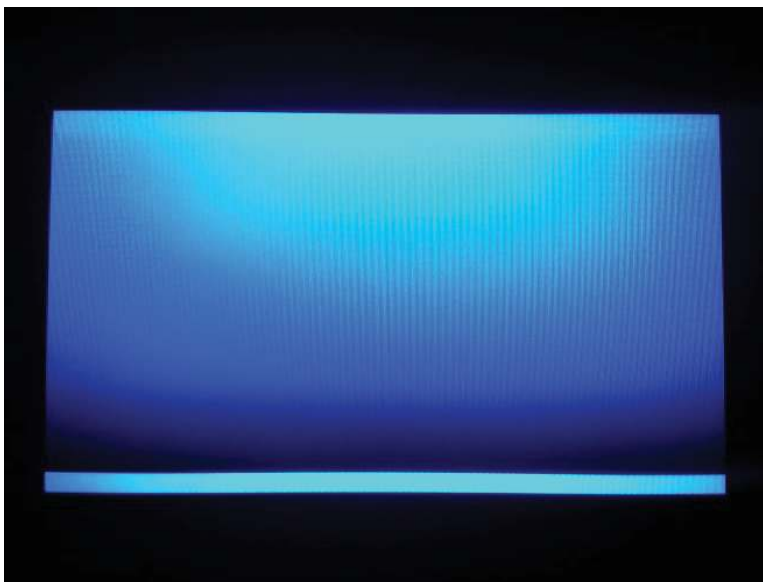
2. With 1 Screen Test highlighted, press the OK button to select it.

Figure 4-69 Open the screen test



The blue vertical gradient screen appears.

Figure 4-70 Blue vertical gradient screen



3. Touch the touchscreen to scroll through the remaining touchscreen test screens.

 **NOTE:** Touch the Home button to exit the test.

Table 4-45 Touchscreen test screens



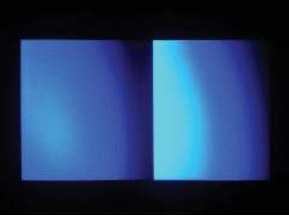
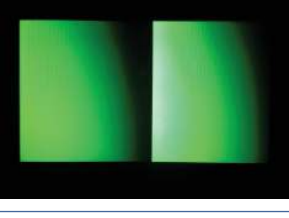



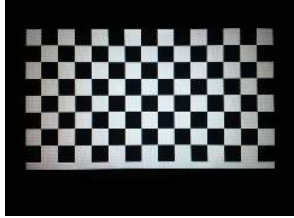

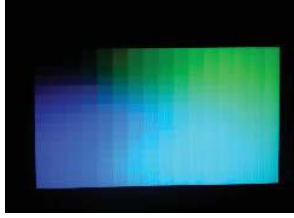
Screen	Description
	Green vertical gradient
	Red vertical gradient
	Blue horizontal gradient
	Green horizontal gradient
	Red horizontal gradient
	Blue with black horizontal interlaced

Table 4-45 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

Screen	Description
	Green with black horizontal interlaced
	Red with black horizontal interlaced
	Blue with black vertical interlaced
	Green with black vertical interlaced
	Red with black vertical interlaced
	Black with white center

Table 4-45 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

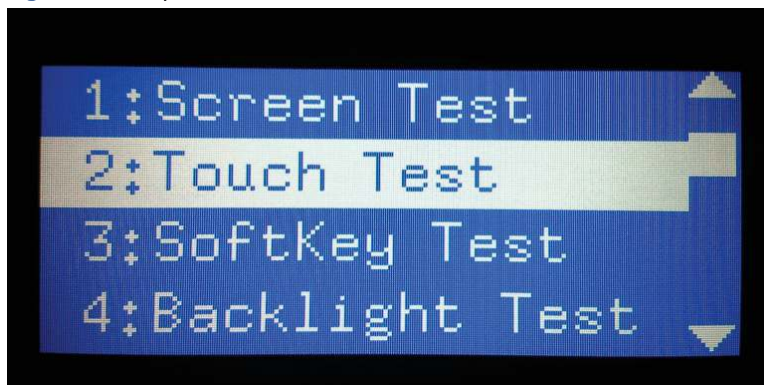
Screen	Description
	White with black center
	Checkerboard
	Multicolor stripes
	Blue green grid meshing

Touch test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic touch test.

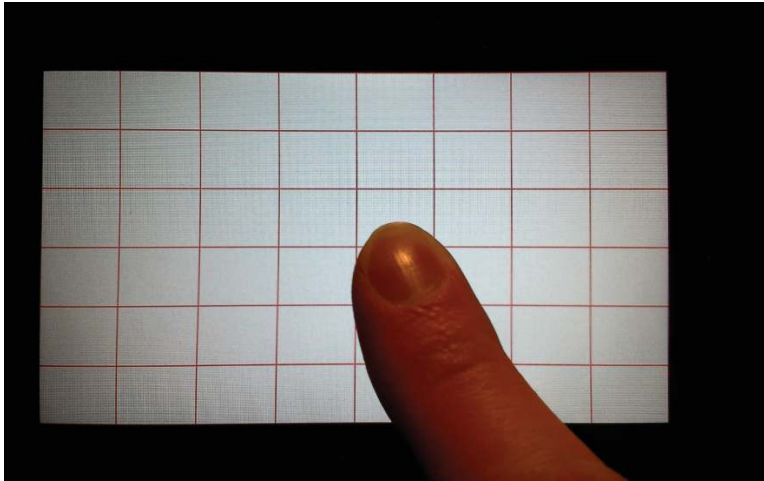
1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the **down arrow ▼** button to scroll to **2 Touch Test**, and then press the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-71 Open the touch test



3. Use your finger to touch the white grid on the display.

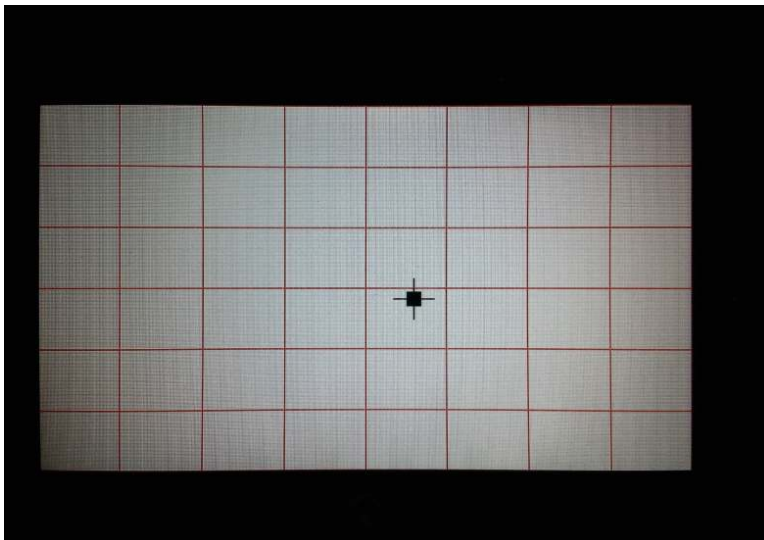
Figure 4-72 Touch the white grid



A mark appears on the grid where it was touched.

 **NOTE:** Touch the [Home](#) button to exit the test.

Figure 4-73 Verify the mark



SoftKey test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic SoftKey test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.

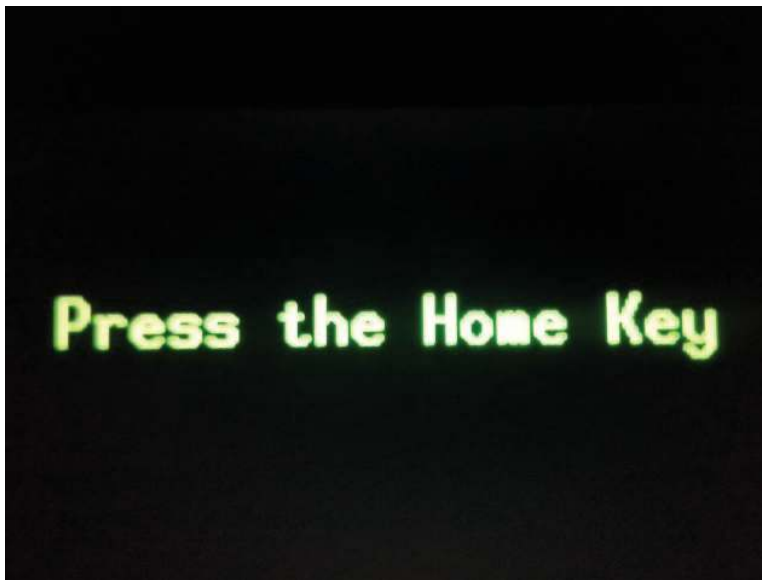
- Use the **down arrow ▼** button to scroll to **3 SoftKey Test**, and then press the **OK** button to select it.

Figure 4-74 Open the softkey test



- When prompted, touch the **Home** button.

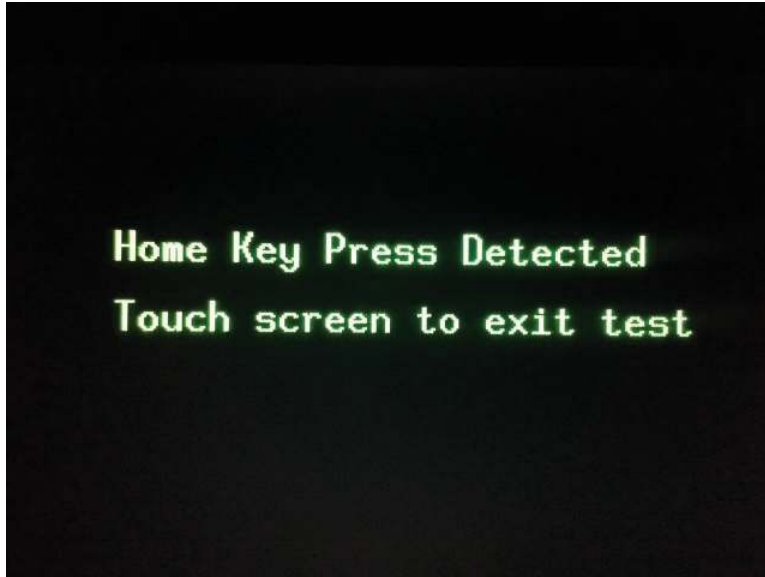
Figure 4-75 Touch the **Home** button



If the test is successful, the following screen appears on the display.

 **NOTE:** Touch the screen to exit the test.

Figure 4-76 Successful test



Backlight test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic backlight test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the [down arrow ▼](#) button to scroll to [4 Backlight Test](#), and then press the [OK](#) button to select it.
After selecting the [4 Backlight Test](#), the screen automatically dims, and then returns to full brightness.


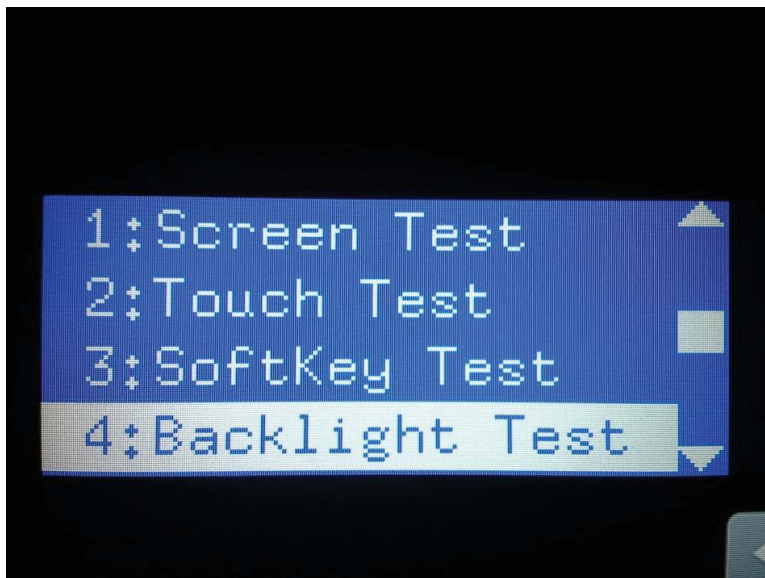
 **NOTE:** Touch any key to exit the test.

Figure 4-77 Open the backlight test



Sound test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic sound test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
 2. Use the **down arrow ▼** button to scroll to **5 Sound Test**, and then press the **OK** button to select it.
- After selecting the **5 Sound Test**, the printer emits a series of audible tones.


 **NOTE:** Touch any key to exit the test.


Figure 4-78 Open the sound test




Version

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic version information.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the **down arrow ▼** button to scroll to **7 Version**, and then press the **OK** button to select it.

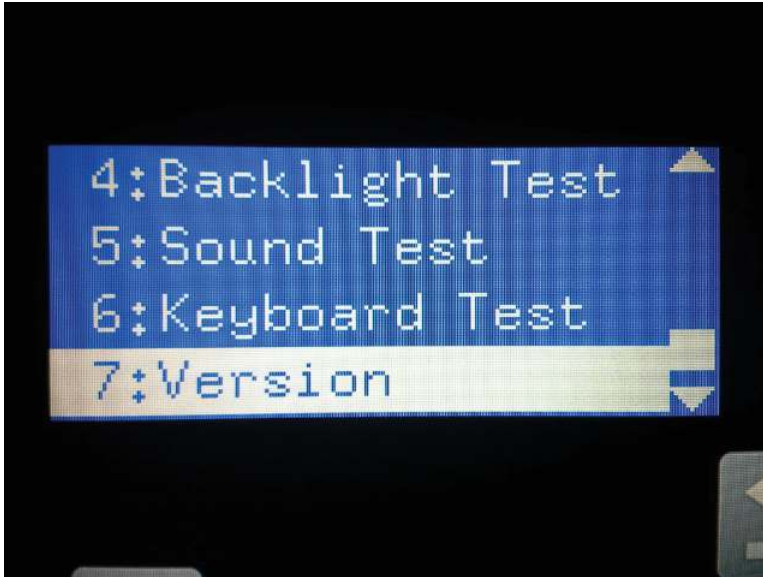
 **NOTE:** Touch any key to exit the test.

Select **7 Version** to view the following types of information:

 **NOTE:** The following types of information are for the control panel only, not the printer.


- Panel ID
- Hardware (version)
- Firmware (version)
- KB Hw (version)
- KB Firm (version)
- LCD Vendor
- Touch Controller Version

Figure 4-79 Open the version information



Control panel messages document (CPMD)

Learn about the printer control panel messages document (CPMD).

 **NOTE:** A complete CPMD is not included in this service manual.

[Click here to access the current CPMD for this printer.](#)

How to search for printer documentation

The CPMD, error codes, and other support documentation for each printer is found on the internal HP portals.

These portals are on WISE for Channel (please see [{Xref Error! Target does not exist.}](#) below for instructions on how to navigate to the site) and [WISE](#). WISE for Channel is available to HP channel partners and WISE is available to call agents, service technicians, and other HP internal users. The level of detail available will depend on your access credentials. To learn how to find support content in WISE, [watch the video here](#).

How to search WISE for printer documentation

These instructions are for HP internal use by call agents, service technicians, and other internal users.

To learn how to find support content in WISE, watch the video here: [Finding Error Code and Control Panel Message Document in WISE](#).

To view a list of control panel message documents per printer in **WISE**, go to [HP LaserJet, OfficeJet, PageWide, ScanJet Enterprise - Control panel message document \(CPMD\) list](#) (HP internal only).

How to search for specific error codes

Use WISE to quickly find error code troubleshooting procedures using the following steps.

1. Type the printer model number (for example, M609) in the dialog box search field.

Figure 4-80 WISE search box



2. A drop-down list appears. Click on the full printer series name (for example, HP LaserJet Enterprise M609 series) in the list.

Figure 4-81 WISE drop-down list



3. Type the error code (for example, 13.E1.D3) in the keyword field. The error code troubleshooting content displays in the **All Search Results** area.


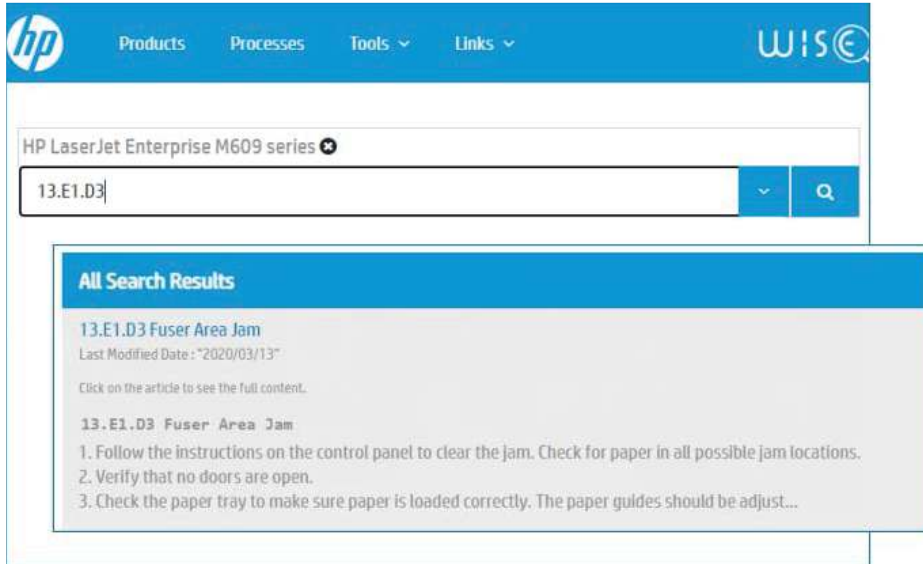
 **TIP:** Another method to find error code information is to use WISE to navigate to the printer detail page (PDP), and then search **Troubleshooting > Error Code Search**.

Figure 4-82 WISE search results

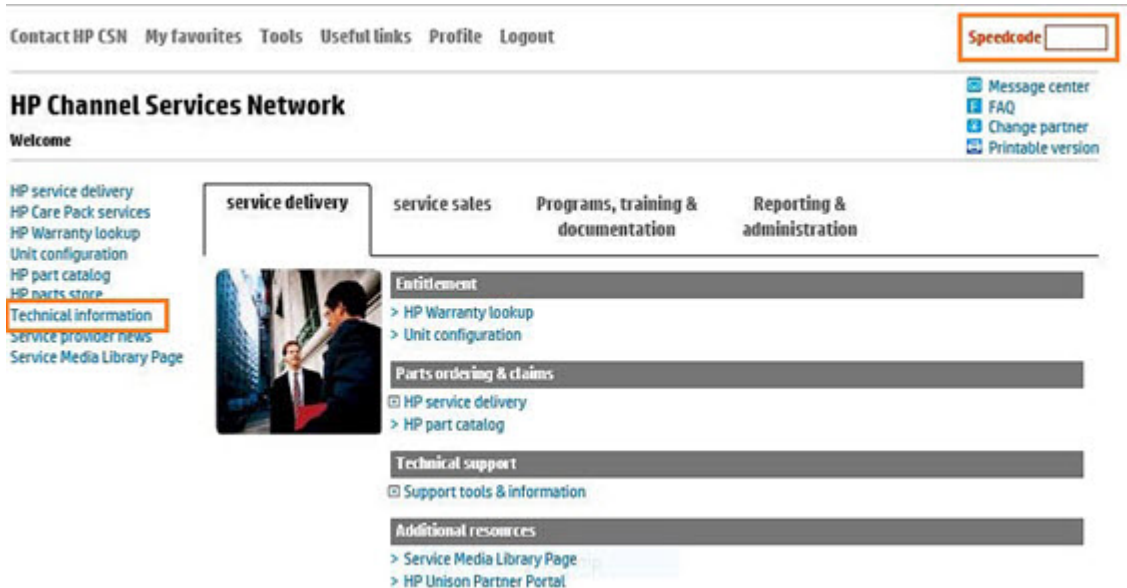


How to search GCSN for printer documentation

These instructions are for internal use by HP Channel Partners.

To learn how to find support content in GCSN, [watch the video here: Finding Error Code and Control Panel Message Documents in GCSN](#) or follow these steps:

1. On the Home screen in GCSN, open **Technical information** using one of the following two methods:
 - Type `TINF` in the **Speedcode** field found in the upper right corner and press [Enter](#).
 - On the Home page, click **Technical information** in the left pane.



- Under **Product Search**, select the **Type**, **Category**, **Family**, and **Series** that match your product model (leave the **Model** field as blank or the default).


 **NOTE:** Make sure to log in to GCSN using your service-qualified credentials to access the most comprehensive content list available. To find out how to become service-qualified, contact your HP representative.

Figure 4-83 Sample product search criteria



Product Search **Add Favorites**

Type
Printers and Multifunction

Category
Multifunction and All-in-One

Family
HP LaserJet MFP and All-in-One Products

Series
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M682 series

Model
Select a Model

- Click **Add Favorites** and then click **Add** to add the printer to your Favorites list and allow you to bypass the **Product Search** fields next time for that particular model (optional).



Product Search **Add Favorites**

Type
Printers and Multifunction

Category
Multifunction and All-in-One


Family
HP LaserJet MFP and All-in-One Products

- Clear all of the high-level check boxes.

Select the appropriate check boxes for the document types you wish to review.

<input type="checkbox"/> Support Communications	<input type="checkbox"/> Manuals and Guides	<input type="checkbox"/> Support Information
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Advisory	<input type="checkbox"/> Illustrated Parts Map	<input type="checkbox"/> ActionProcedureMap
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Bulletin	<input type="checkbox"/> Install Guide	<input type="checkbox"/> CPMDMap
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Notice	<input type="checkbox"/> Maintenance/Service Guide	<input type="checkbox"/> Support Information
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Work Instruction (CSR)	<input type="checkbox"/> Parts Guide	<input type="checkbox"/> Top Issue (Note: If you are selecting top issue it will return only top issue documents)
<input type="checkbox"/> Product Change Notification	<input type="checkbox"/> QuickSpec	<input type="checkbox"/> Software Support & Drivers Information
<input type="checkbox"/> Security Bulletin	<input type="checkbox"/> Reference Manual	<input type="checkbox"/> Product Bulletin/QuickSpec
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Action Advisory	<input type="checkbox"/> Service Guide/Manual	<input type="checkbox"/> Buy Care Packs
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Advisory	<input type="checkbox"/> Technical Reference Guide	
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Bulletin	<input type="checkbox"/> Training Material	

- Select the check boxes for the document types for which you want to search.

 **NOTE:** Select only the high-level **Manuals and Guides** search option if you are not sure in which type of manual or guide the content might be listed.

Select the appropriate check boxes for the document types you wish to review.

<input type="checkbox"/> Support Communications	<input type="checkbox"/> Manuals and Guides	<input type="checkbox"/> Support Information
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Advisory	<input type="checkbox"/> Illustrated Parts Map	<input type="checkbox"/> ActionProcedureMap
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Bulletin	<input type="checkbox"/> Install Guide	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> CPMDMap
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Notice	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Maintenance/Service Guide	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Support Information
<input type="checkbox"/> Customer Work Instruction (CSR)	<input type="checkbox"/> Parts Guide	<input type="checkbox"/> Top Issue (Note: If you are selecting top issue it will return only top issue documents)
<input type="checkbox"/> Product Change Notification	<input type="checkbox"/> QuickSpec	<input type="checkbox"/> Software Support & Drivers Information
<input type="checkbox"/> Security Bulletin	<input type="checkbox"/> Reference Manual	<input type="checkbox"/> Product Bulletin/QuickSpec
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Action Advisory	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Service Guide/Manual	<input type="checkbox"/> Buy Care Packs
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Advisory	<input type="checkbox"/> Technical Reference Guide	
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Bulletin	<input type="checkbox"/> Training Material	
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Notice	<input type="checkbox"/> Troubleshooting Guide	
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Product Announcement	<input type="checkbox"/> Upgrade Manual	
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Program Announcement	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> User Guide	
<input type="checkbox"/> Technical Work Instruction (TWI)	<input type="checkbox"/> Warranty Statement	
	<input type="checkbox"/> White Papers	

- Select **Submit**.
- If needed, click **Back To selection Criteria** and narrow your search (the maximum allowed search result is 100 documents).


 **NOTE:** Do not select the **Top Issue** option unless you only want to view top issues for that model. All other available content will be filtered out.

Table 4-46 Information on WISE

Technical information type	Select this checkbox
CPMD	CPMD-Map
List of all CPMDs per product	Support Information
Installation Guide or Hardware Install Guide	Maintenance/Service Guide or Install Guide
Service cost document	Install Guide or Service Guide/Manual
Service guide or Service manual	Service Guide/Manual
Self-solve or troubleshooting document	Support Information
User manual or User guide	User Guide
Warranty and Legal Guide	Warranty Statement

Error-code and control-panel-message troubleshooting overview

This section provides information on error codes and searching for information.

Error codes (types and structure)

Error codes and control-panel messages display on the printer control panel to indicate the current printer status or situations that might require action. Error codes are numerical, or alphanumeric, and have a set structure with six characters (example: 13.WX.YZ).

- The first two characters are numeric and represent the system component that is causing the error. For example, in error code 10 . 22 . 15, **10** = **Supplies** for HP LaserJets.
- The remaining four characters (W, X, Y, and Z values) further define the error.

HP LaserJet and HP PageWide Enterprise error codes are documented in the control panel message document (CPMD) for each printer.

The CPMD is a comprehensive list of error codes, diagnostic and troubleshooting steps to clear or resolve the error, and other helpful information such as service mode pins and part numbers.

The CPMD is continually updated and republished with the latest information for the following error codes.

Table 4-47 ERROR CODES: The first two characters

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
10.WX.YZ	Supplies (LaserJet)	Supply error or supply memory error.
11.WX.YZ	Real-time clock	Internal error with the clock on the formatter.
13.WX.YZ	Jam (LaserJet)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
15.WX.YZ	Jam (PageWide)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
17.WX.YZ	Supplies (PageWide)	Supply error or supply memory error.
20.WX.YZ	Printer memory	Insufficient memory or buffering error.
21.WX.YZ	Page	Page complexity causing a decompression error when trying to process job.
30.WX.YZ	Scanner	Flatbed scanner error occurring inside the unit.
31.WX.YZ	Document feeder	Document feeder, scanner, or jam error.
32.WX.YZ	Backup, restore, or reset	Backup, restore, or reset notification or error.
33.WX.YZ	Security	Backup, Disk, EFI BIOS, Firmware integrity (SureStart), or Trusted Platform Module (TPM) notification or error.
40.WX.YZ	Input/Output (I/O)	Partition manager, secure erase, or USB accessory error.
41.WX.YZ	Fuser, Laser scanner, or Paper path	Miscellaneous error including general and misprint or mismatch errors typically involving (but not limited to) the fuser, the laser scanner, or the paper path.
42.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving the Event Log, Shell, System Manager, or other component.
44.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving a digital sending component.
45.WX.YZ	OXPd/Web Kit (PageWide)	Informational notifications involving the OXPd Web Kit (communications log).
46.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	Engine communication error.
47.WX.YZ	Firmware	Job parser or printer calibration error.
48.WX.YZ	Firmware	PJA job accounting, job management, or job pipeline error.
49.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware communication error.
50.WX.YZ	Fuser (LaserJet)	Fuser error.

Table 4-47 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
51.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner beam error.
52.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner startup error.
54.WX.YZ	Sensor	Sensor error (not jam related).
55.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller communication error.
56.WX.YZ	Paper handling (LaserJet)	Paper input/output or accessory error.
57.WX.YZ	Fan	Fan error.
58.WX.YZ	Sensor	Engine sensor failure.
59.WX.YZ	Motor (LaserJet)	Motor error.
60.WX.YZ	Tray motor error (LaserJet)	Tray lifting or pick up error.
61.WX.YZ	Engine (PageWide)	Print engine error with the 8-bit data package.
62.WX.YZ	System (LaserJet) Print bar (PageWide)	LaserJet internal system error. PageWide print system error.
63.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	General engine error (electrical, communication, etc.).
65.WX.YZ	Connector	Output accessory connection error.
66.WX.YZ	Output accessory	Output accessory error.
67.WX.YZ	Input accessory	Input accessory connection error
69.WX.YZ	Duplexer	Duplexer error.
70.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller firmware error.
80.WX.YZ	Managed device	Embedded Jetdirect error.
81.WX.YZ	Near Field Communication (NFC)	Wireless, Bluetooth or internal EIO error.
82.WX.YZ	Memory (hard disk, EMMC, etc.)	Disk hardware error.
90.WX.YZ	Internal diagnostics	Internal test of systems (i.e. disk, CPB, display) or interconnection error.
98.WX.YZ	Hard disk	Hard disk partition error.
99.WX.YZ	Firmware installer	Remote Firmware Upgrade (RFU), firmware install (engine or accessory), or disk error.

Solve paper handling problems

Review the following information to solve paper handling problems.

Clear paper jams (SFP)

Use the procedures in this section to clear jammed paper from the printer paper path.



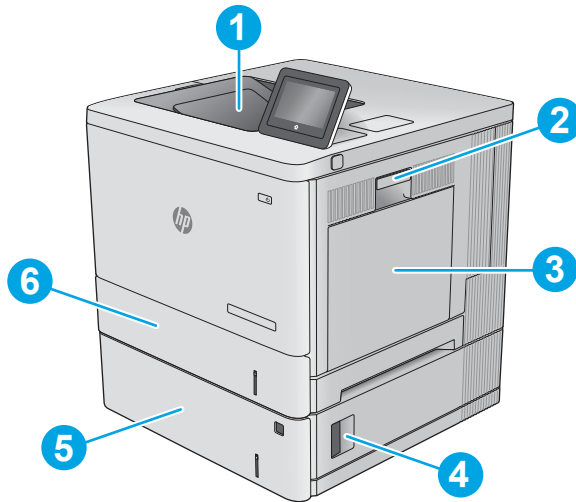
NOTE: To avoid tearing the paper, pull the jammed paper out slowly and gently.

Figures in this section are representational only. The actual printer being serviced might look slightly different depending on the model and installed accessories.

Jam locations

Jams can occur in these locations (SFP).

Figure 4-84 Paper jam locations (SFP)



Item	Location
1	Output bin
2	Right door and fuser area
3	Tray 1
4	Lower-right door
5	Optional 550-sheet trays
6	Tray 2

Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams

Learn about printer jam clearing auto-navigation.

The auto-navigation feature assists in clearing jams by providing step-by-step instructions on the control panel.

When you complete a step, the printer displays instructions for the next step until you have completed all steps in the procedure.

Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?

To reduce the number of paper jams, try these solutions.

 [View a video that demonstrates how to load paper in a way that reduces the number of paper jams](#)

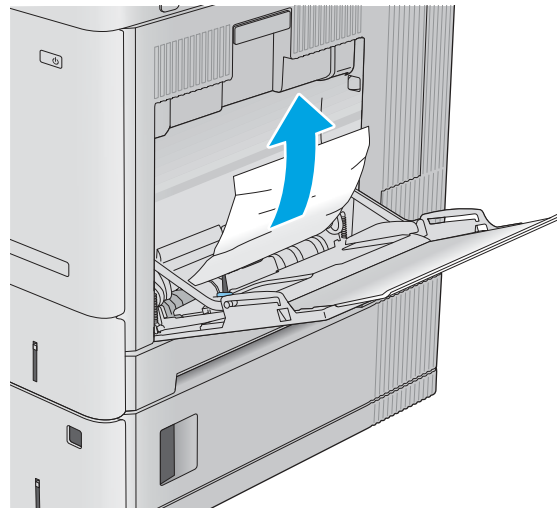
1. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
2. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
3. Use paper that has not previously been printed or copied on.

4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides so they are touching the paper stack without bending it.
6. Make sure that the tray is fully inserted in the printer.
7. If you are printing on heavy, embossed, or perforated paper, use the manual feed feature and feed sheets one at a time.
8. Open the **Trays** menu on the printer control panel. Verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.
9. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

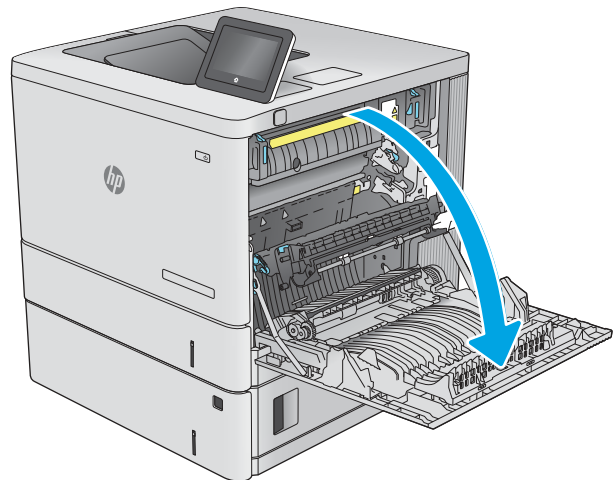
Clear paper jams in Tray 1 (13.A1)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

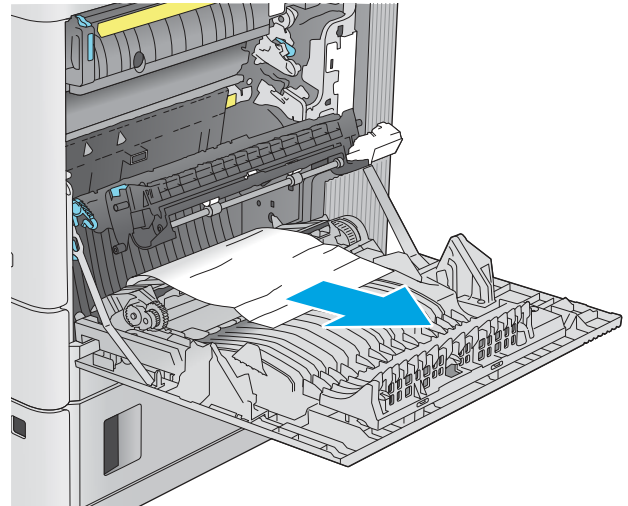
1. If jammed paper is visible in Tray 1, clear the jam by gently pulling the paper straight out. Touch the **OK** button to clear the message.



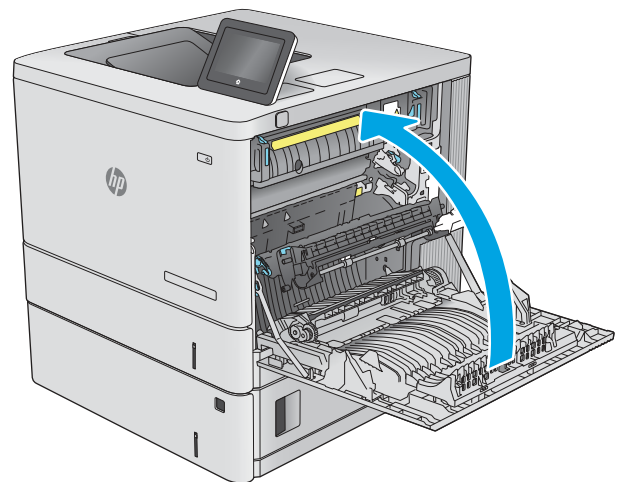
2. If the paper remains stuck, or if no jammed paper is visible in Tray 1, remove any remaining paper in the tray, and then close Tray 1 and open the right door.



3. If jammed paper is present, gently pull it out.



4. Close the right door.



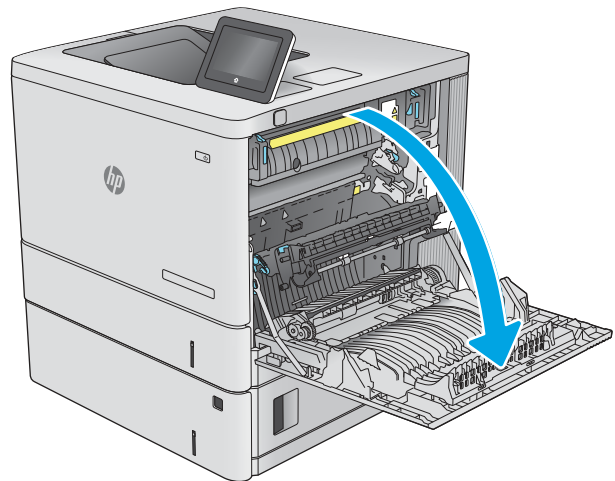
Clear paper jams in Tray 2 (13.A2)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

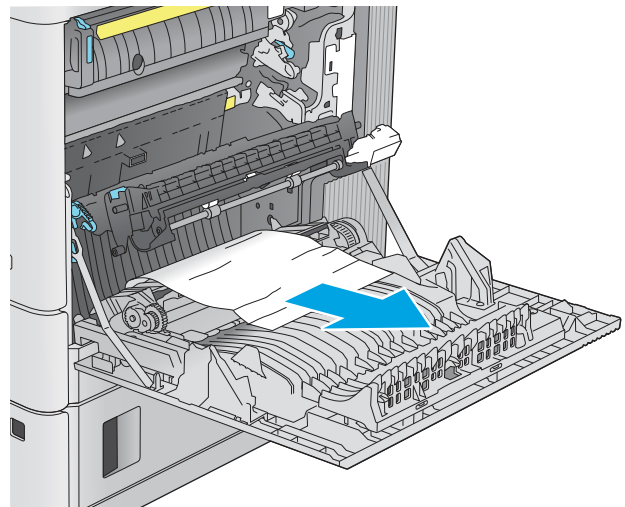
1. Lift the latch on the right door to release it.



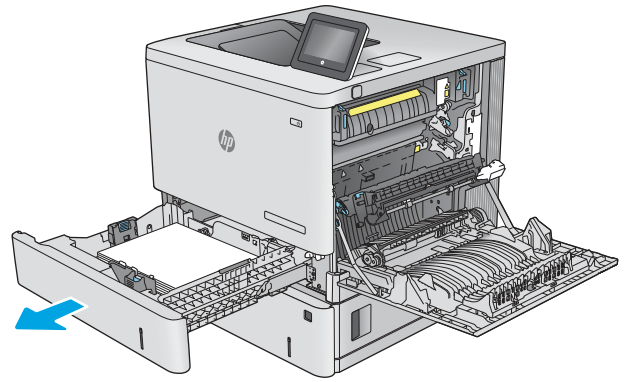
2. Open the right door.



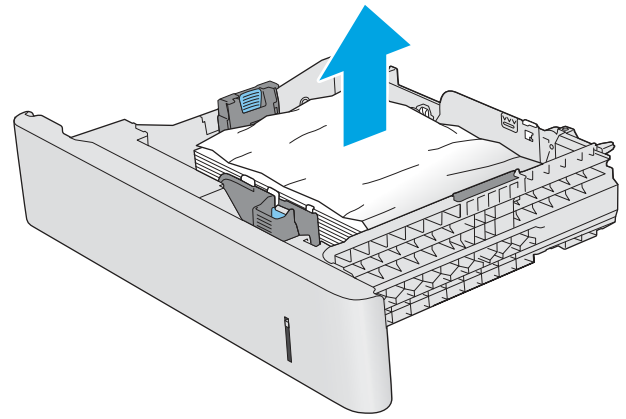
3. Gently pull out any jammed paper from the pick up area.



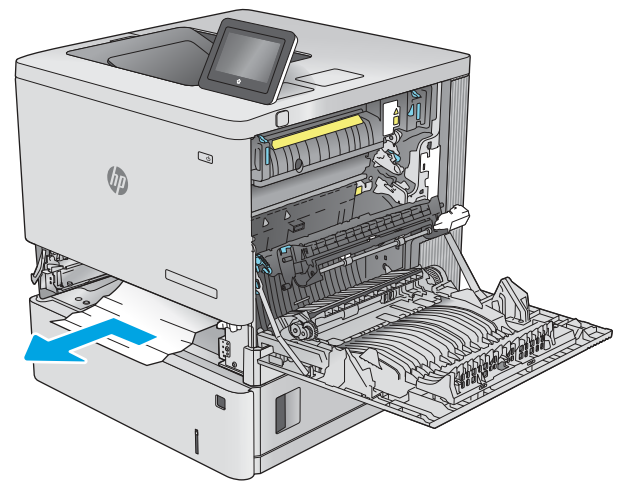
4. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.



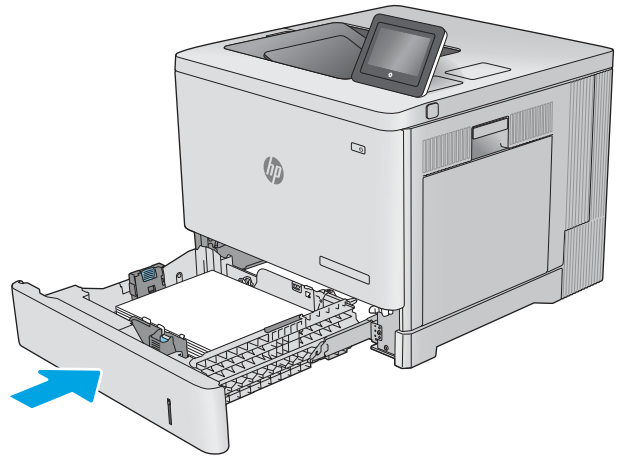
5. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



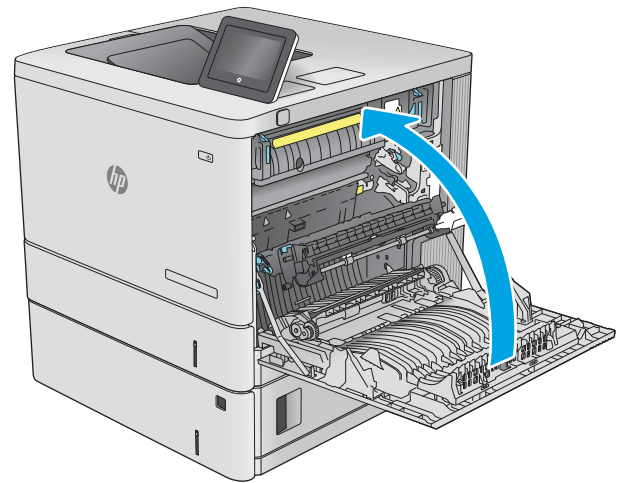
6. Remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



7. Reinsert and close the tray.



8. Close the right door.



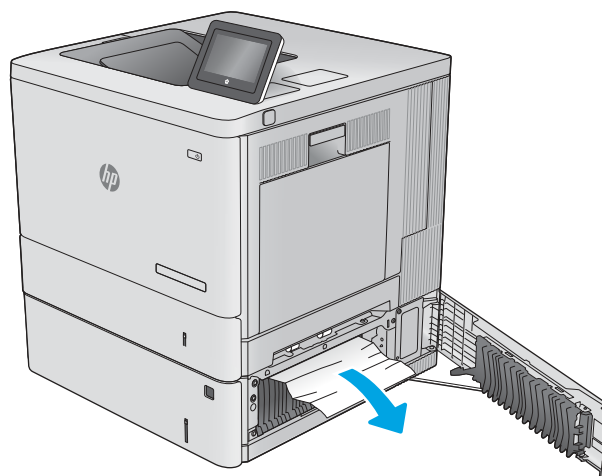
Clear paper jams in Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5 (13.A3, 13.A4, 13.A5)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the optional 550-sheet paper feeders. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

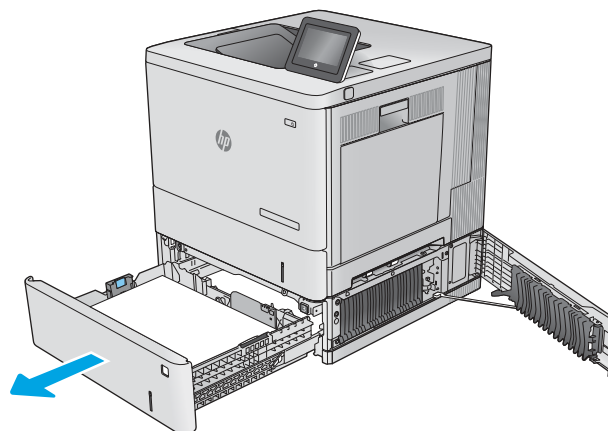
1. Open the lower-right door.



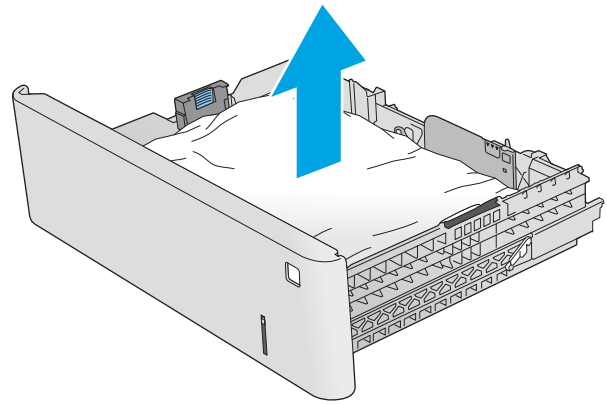
2. Gently pull out any jammed paper.



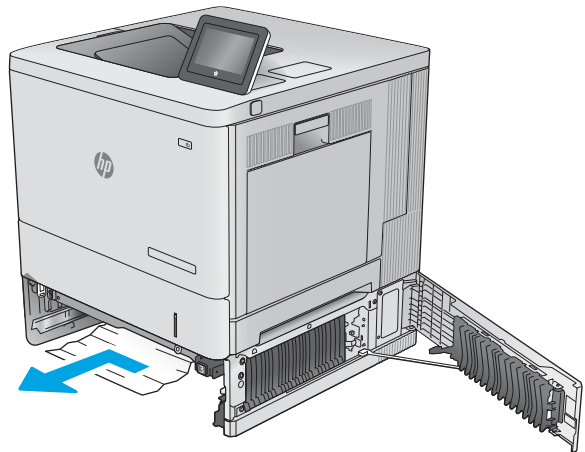
3. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.



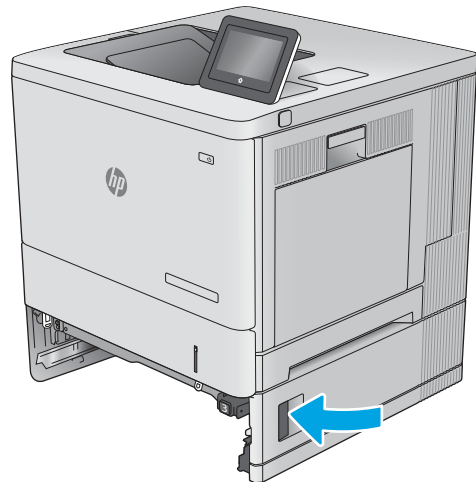
4. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



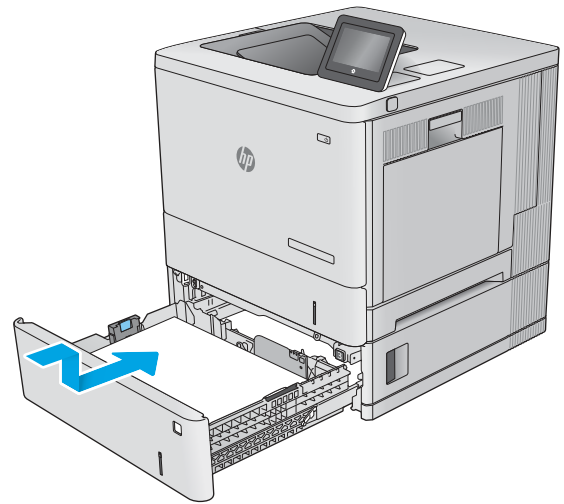
5. Remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



6. Close the lower-right door.



7. Reinsert and close the tray.



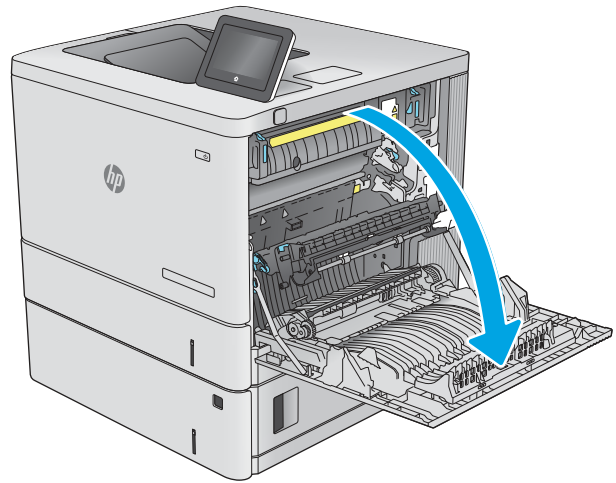
Clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area (13.B)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations inside the right door. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

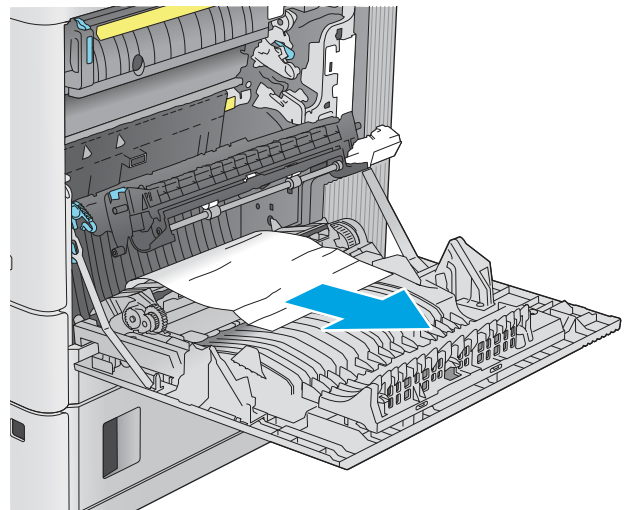
1. Lift the latch on the right door to release it.



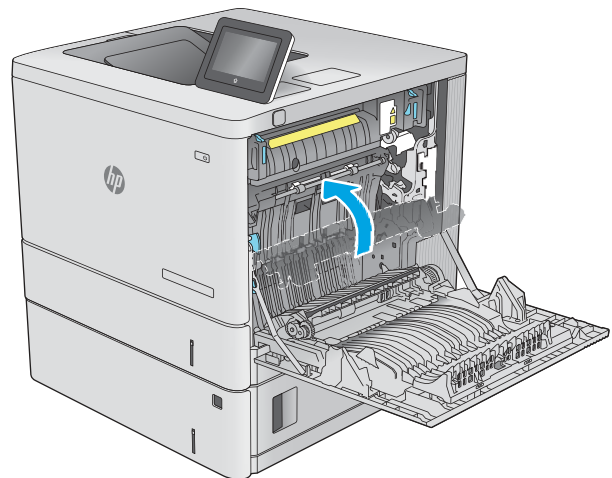
2. Open the right door.



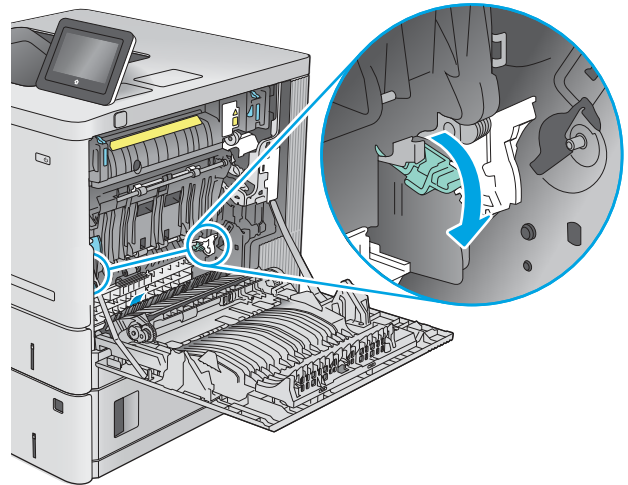
3. Gently pull out any jammed paper from the pick up area.



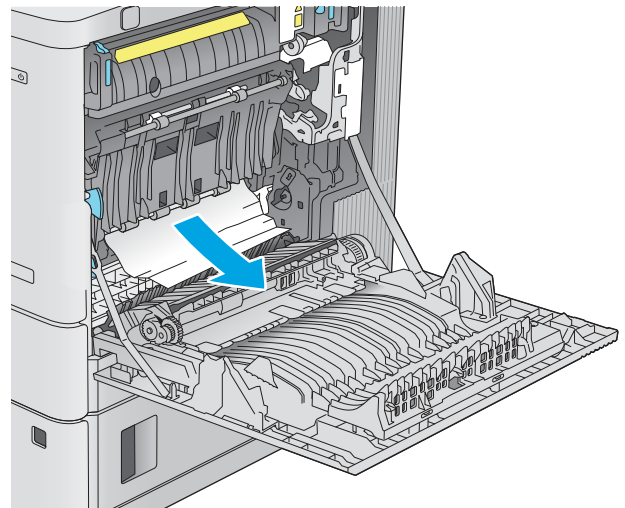
4. Close the transfer assembly.



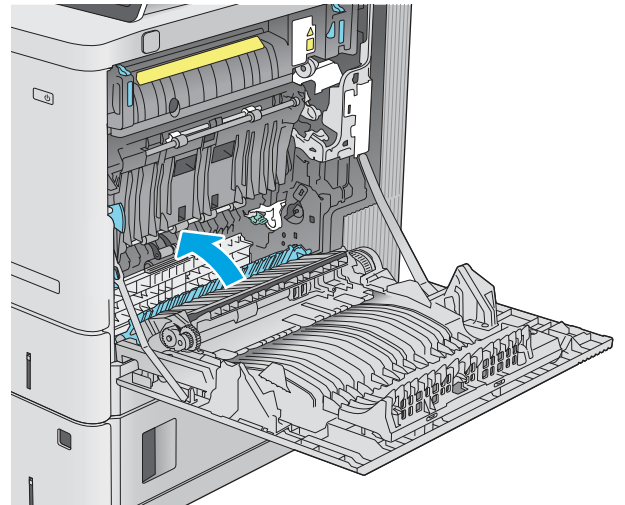
5. Push down on the green levers to release the jam-access cover.



6. Gently pull out any jammed paper. If the paper tears, make sure to remove all remnants.

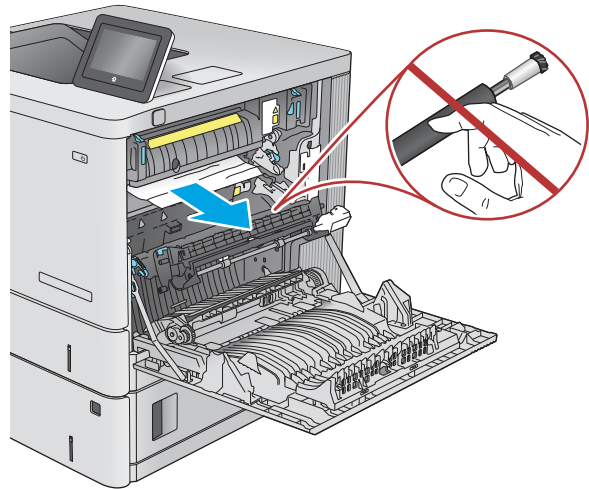


7. Close the jam-access cover, and then lower the transfer assembly.

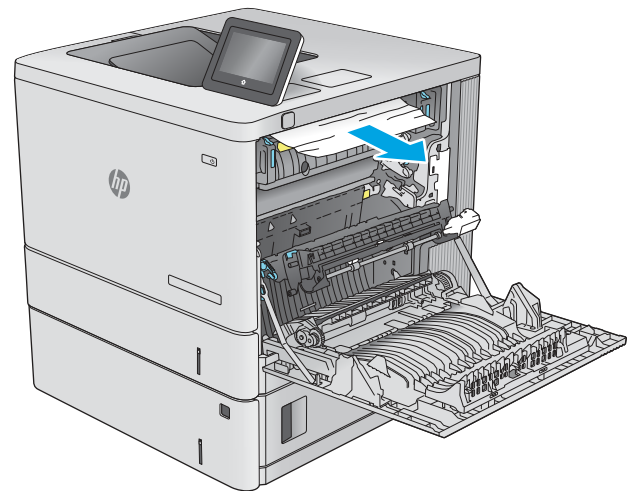


8. If paper is visible entering the bottom of the fuser, gently pull downward to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not touch the foam on the transfer roller. Contaminants can affect print quality.

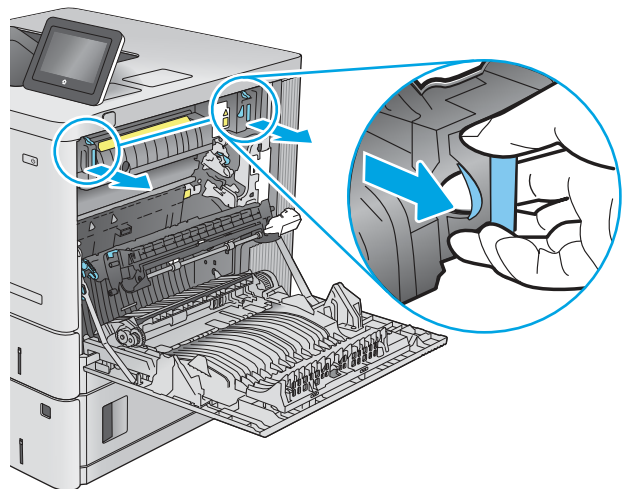


9. If paper is jammed as it enters the output bin, gently pull the paper out to remove it.



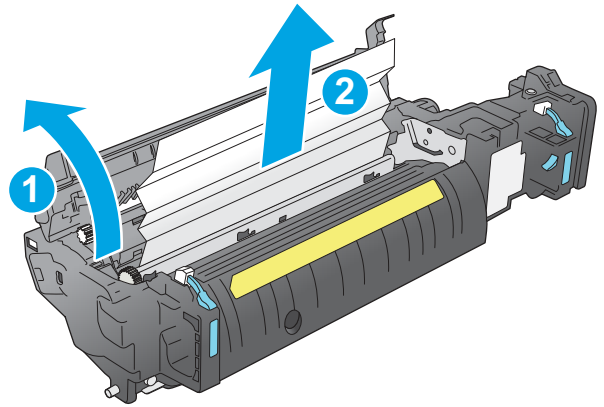
10. Paper could be jammed inside the fuser where it would not be visible. Grasp the fuser handles, lift up slightly, and then pull straight out to remove the fuser.

CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

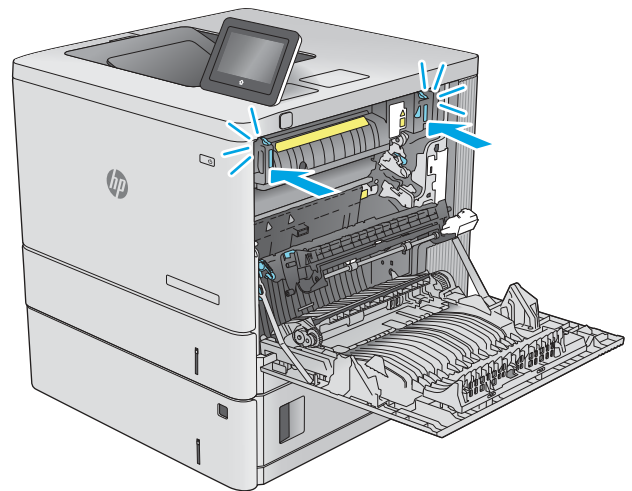


11. Open the jam-access door. If paper is jammed inside the fuser, gently pull it straight up to remove it. If the paper tears, remove all paper fragments.

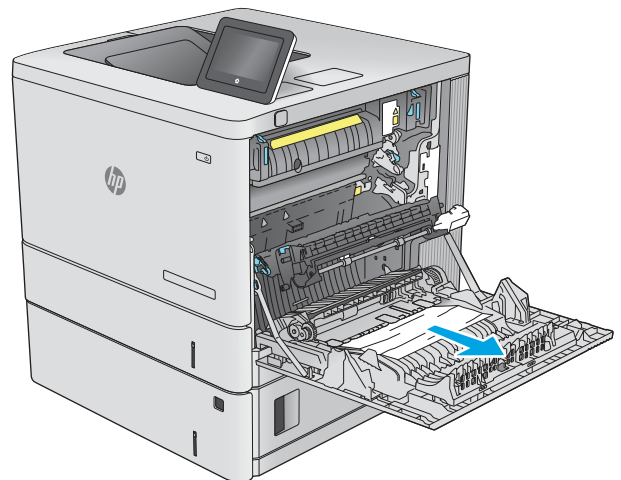
CAUTION: Even if the body of the fuser has cooled, the rollers that are inside could still be hot. Do not touch the fuser rollers until they have cooled.



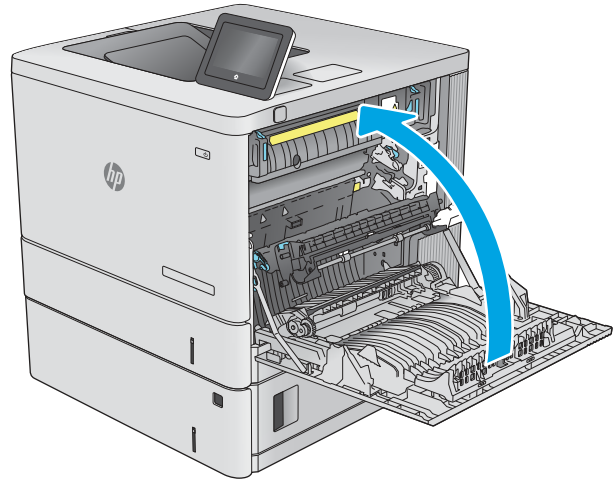
12. Close the jam-access door, and push the fuser completely into the printer until it clicks into place.



13. Check for jammed paper in the duplex path inside the right door, and remove any jammed paper.



14. Close the right door.



Clear paper jams in the output bin (13.E1)

Use the following procedure to clear jams in the output bin. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

1. If paper is visible in the output bin, grasp the leading edge and remove it.



Change jam recovery (non-touchscreen)

Use the following procedure to change jam recovery from a non-touchscreen control panel (FutureSmart 4 firmware or later).

1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to **Settings**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Use the buttons to scroll to **General**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Jam Recovery**, and then press the **OK** button.

4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to an option, and then press the **OK** button to select it.
 - **Auto** — The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.
 - **Off** — The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal.

 **NOTE:** Some pages can be lost if the printer runs out of paper while printing a duplex job with **Jam Recovery** set to **Off**.

- **On** — The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed.

Clear paper jams (MFP)

Use the procedures in this section to clear jammed paper from the printer paper path.

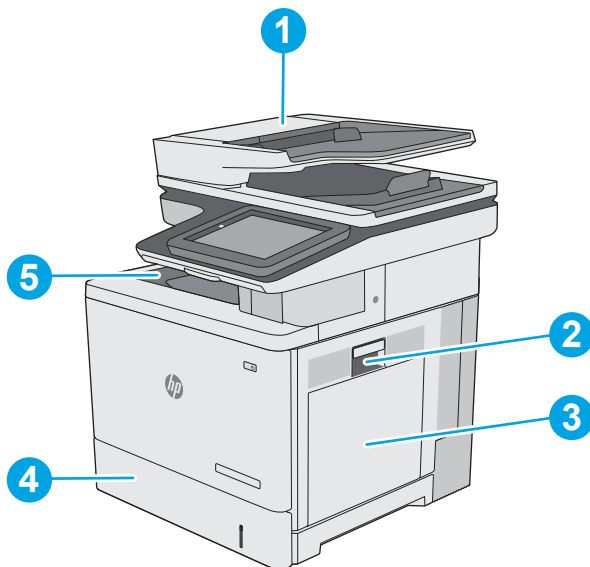
 **NOTE:** To avoid tearing the paper, pull the jammed paper out slowly and gently.

Figures in this section are representational only. The actual printer being serviced might look slightly different depending on the model and installed accessories.

Jam locations

Jams can occur in these locations (MFP).

Figure 4-85 Paper jam locations (MFP)



Item	Location
1	Document feeder
2	Right door and fuser area
3	Tray 1
4	Tray 2
5	Output bin

Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams

Learn about printer jam clearing auto-navigation.

The auto-navigation feature assists in clearing jams by providing step-by-step instructions on the control panel.

When you complete a step, the printer displays instructions for the next step until you have completed all steps in the procedure.

Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?

To reduce the number of paper jams, try these solutions.



[View a video that demonstrates how to load paper in a way that reduces the number of paper jams](#)

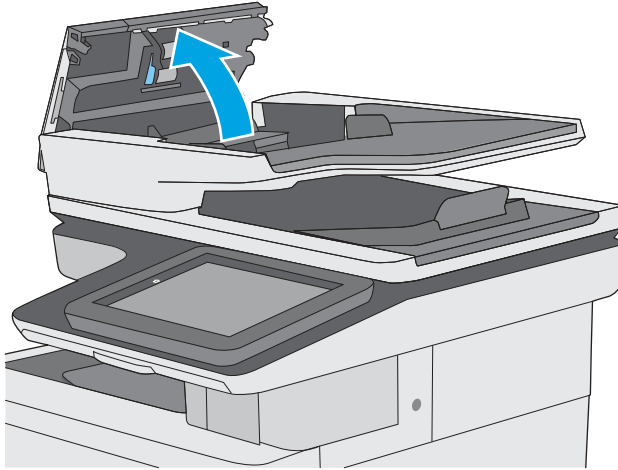
1. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
2. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
3. Use paper that has not previously been printed or copied on.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides so they are touching the paper stack without bending it.
6. Make sure that the tray is fully inserted in the printer.
7. If you are printing on heavy, embossed, or perforated paper, use the manual feed feature and feed sheets one at a time.
8. Open the [Trays](#) menu on the printer control panel. Verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.
9. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

Clear paper jams in the document feeder (31.13.yz)

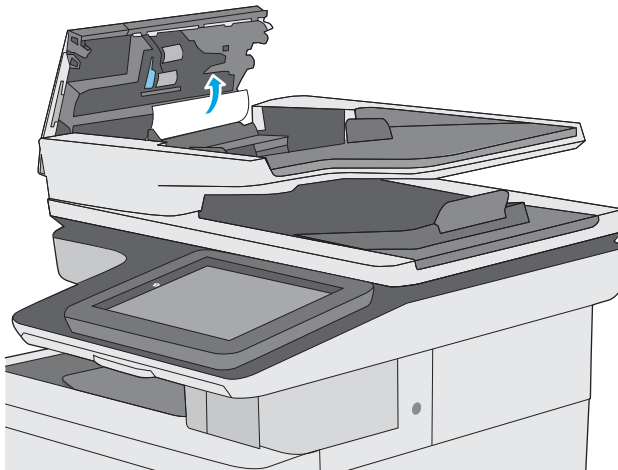
Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the document feeder.

When a jam occurs, the control panel might display a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

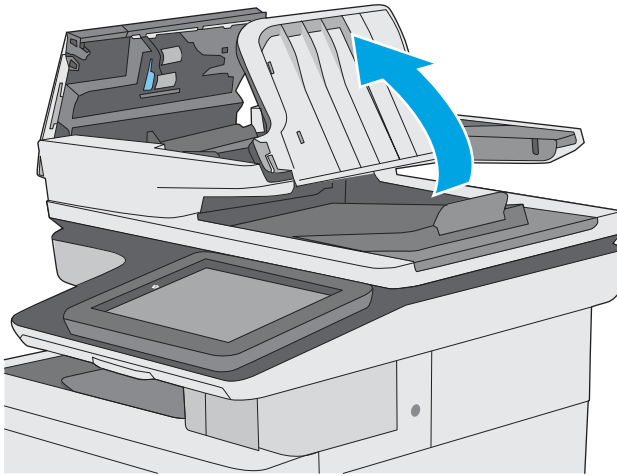
1. Open the document feeder cover.



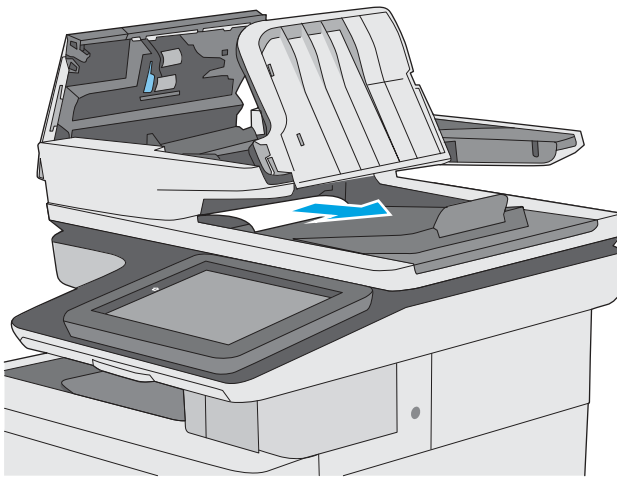
2. Remove any jammed paper.



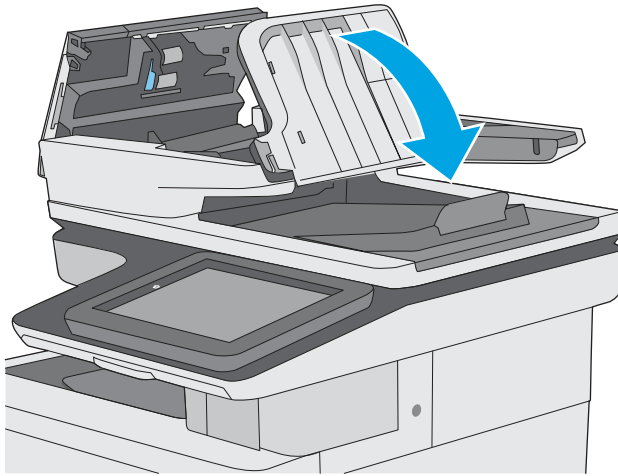
3. Lift the document-feeder input tray.




4. Remove any jammed paper.

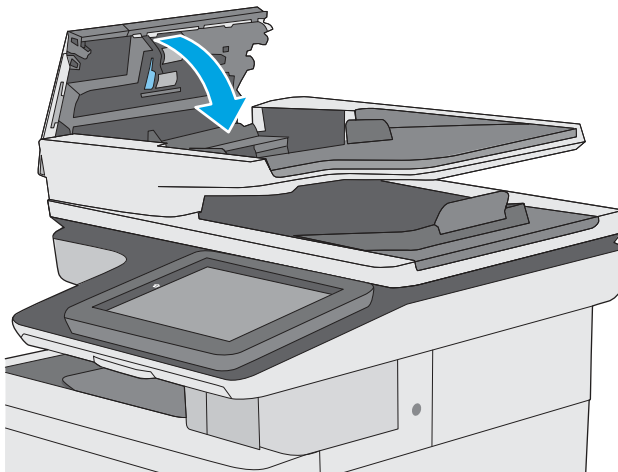



5. Lower the document-feeder input tray.



6. Close the document feeder cover.

 **NOTE:** Verify that the latch on the top of the document-feeder cover is completely closed. Misfeed or no-pick errors might occur if the document-feeder cover is not completely closed.



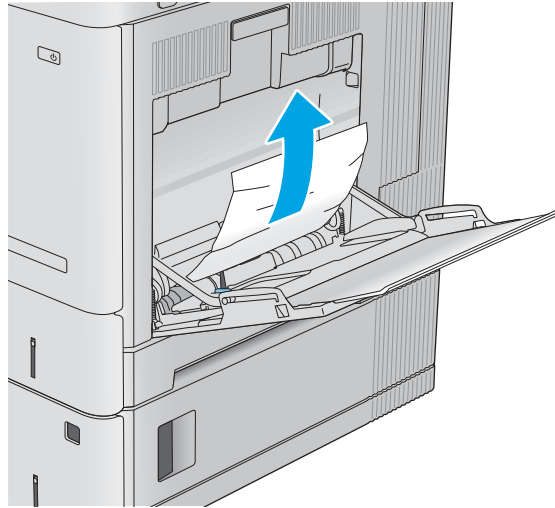
 **NOTE:** To avoid jams, make sure the guides in the document feeder input tray are adjusted tightly against the document. Remove all staples and paper clips from original documents.

 **NOTE:** Original documents that are printed on heavy, glossy paper can jam more frequently than originals that are printed on plain paper.

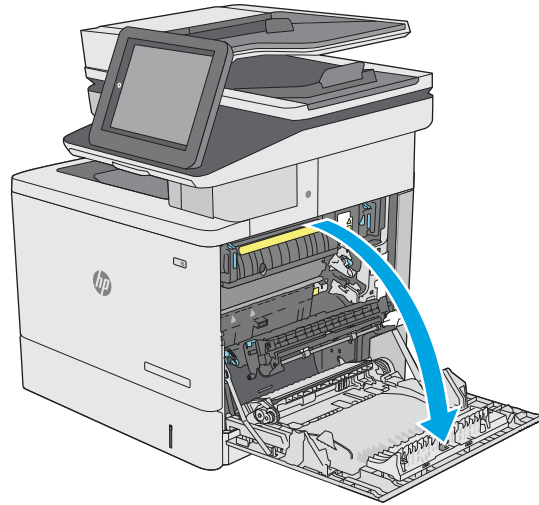
Clear paper jams in Tray 1 (13.A1)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 1. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

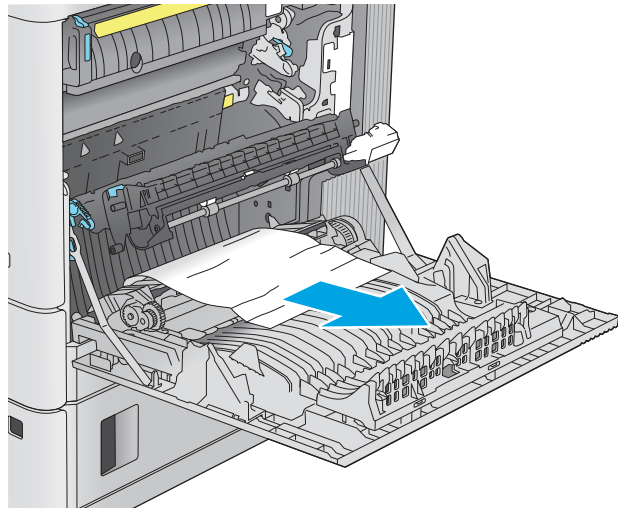
1. If jammed paper is visible in Tray 1, clear the jam by gently pulling the paper straight out. Touch the **OK** button to clear the message.



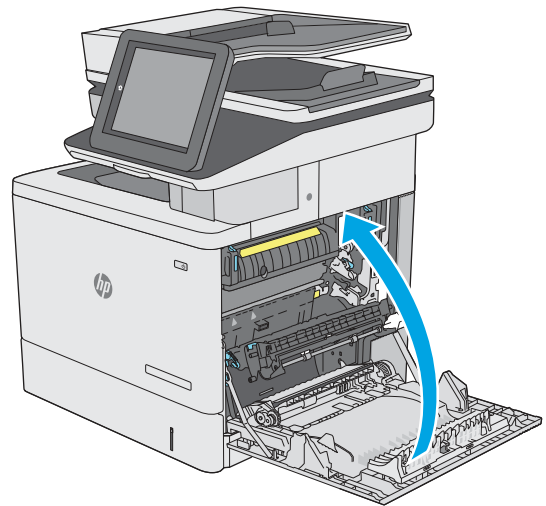
2. If the paper remains stuck, or if no jammed paper is visible in Tray 1, remove any remaining paper in the tray, and then close Tray 1 and open the right door.



3. If jammed paper is present, gently pull it out.



4. Close the right door.



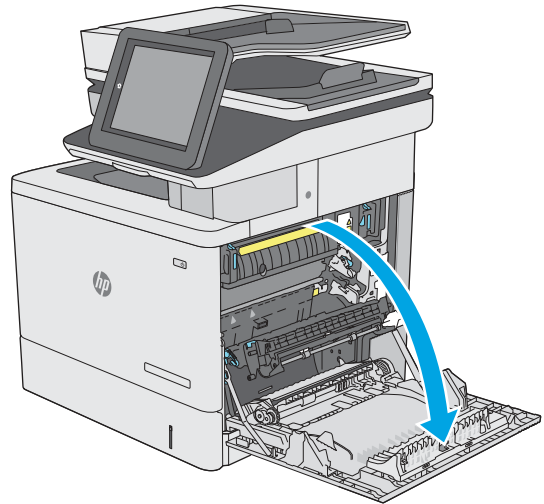
Clear paper jams in Tray 2 (13.A2)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

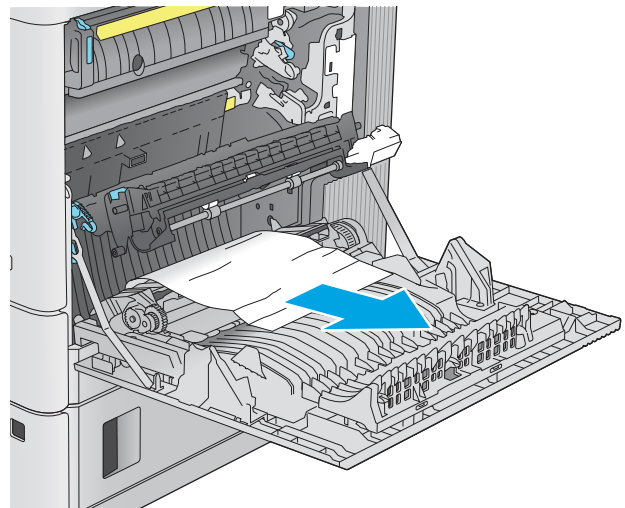
1. Lift the latch on the right door to release it.



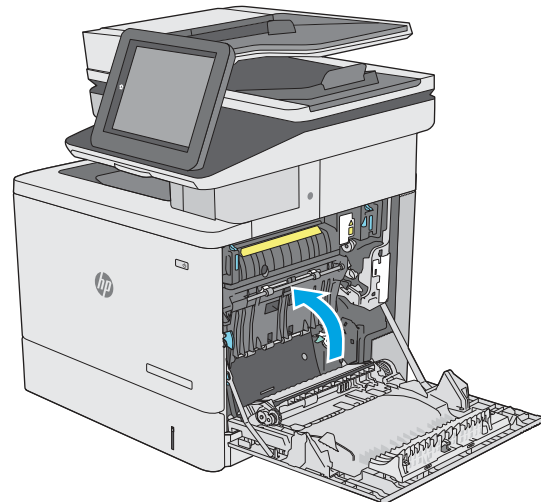
2. Open the right door.



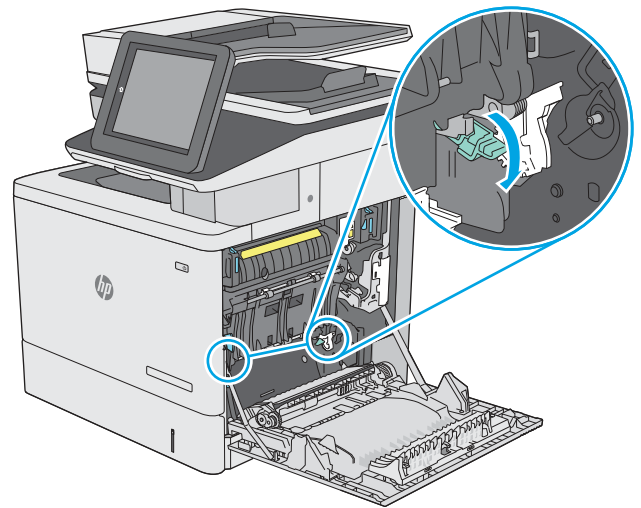
3. Gently pull out any jammed paper from the pick up area.



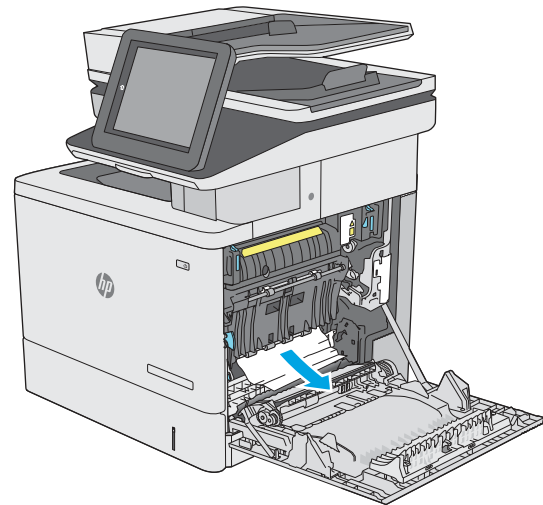
4. Close the transfer assembly.



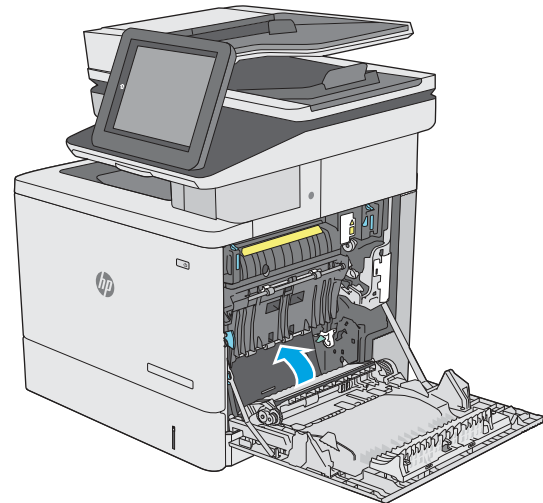
5. Push down on the green levers to release the jam-access cover.



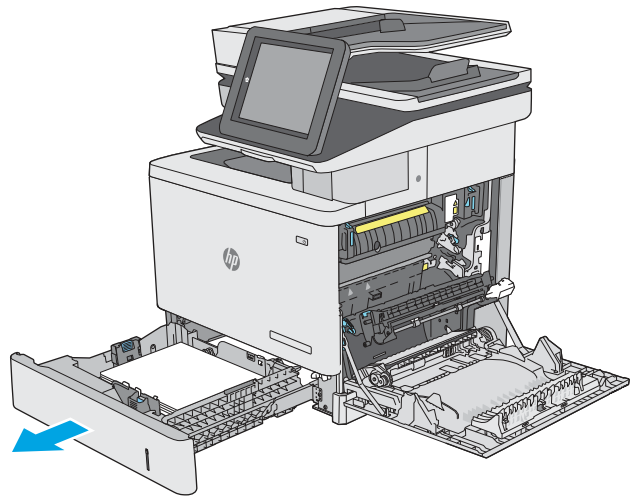
6. Gently pull out any jammed paper. If the paper tears, make sure to remove all remnants.



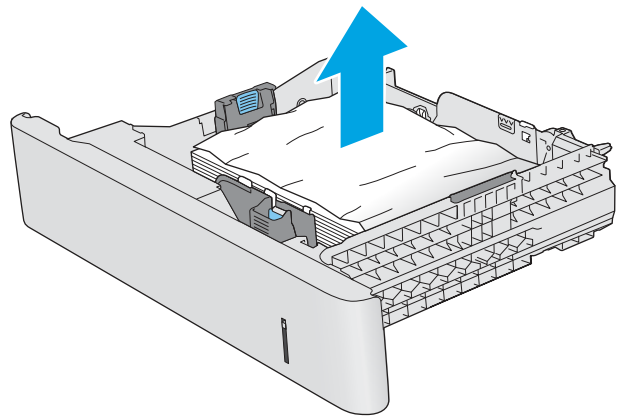
7. Close the jam-access cover, and then lower the transfer assembly.



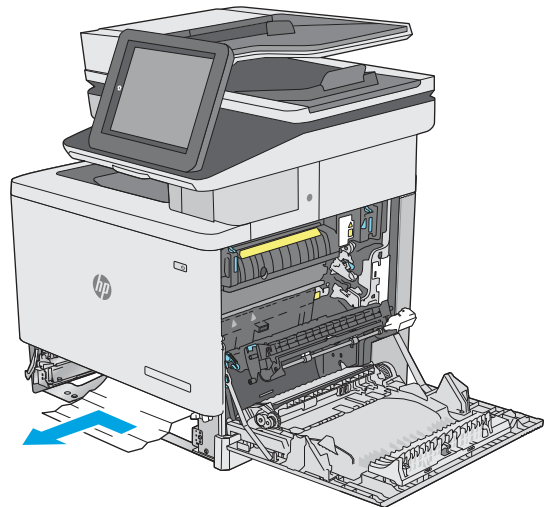
8. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.



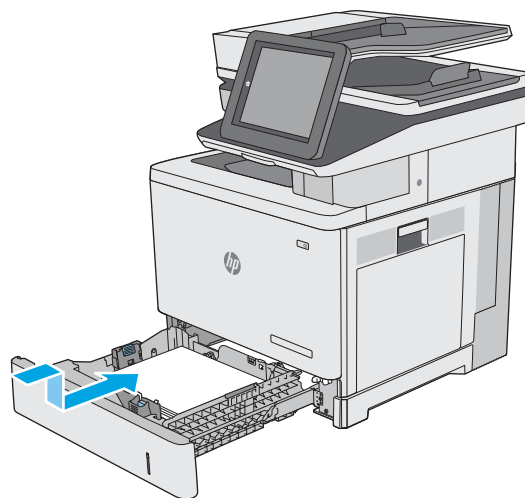
9. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



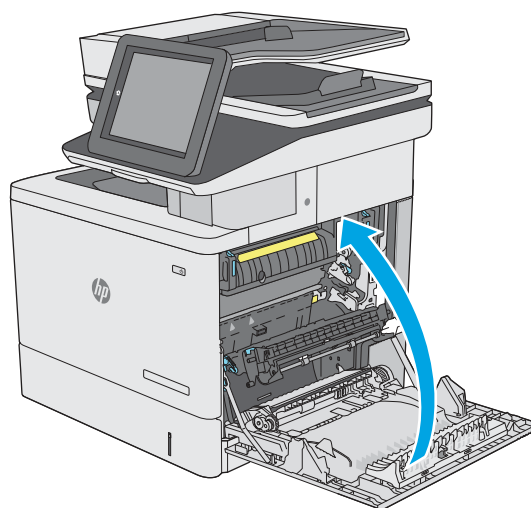
10. Remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



11. Reinsert and close the tray.



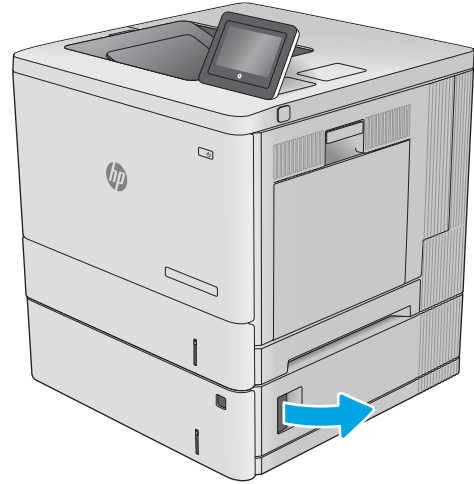
12. Close the right door.



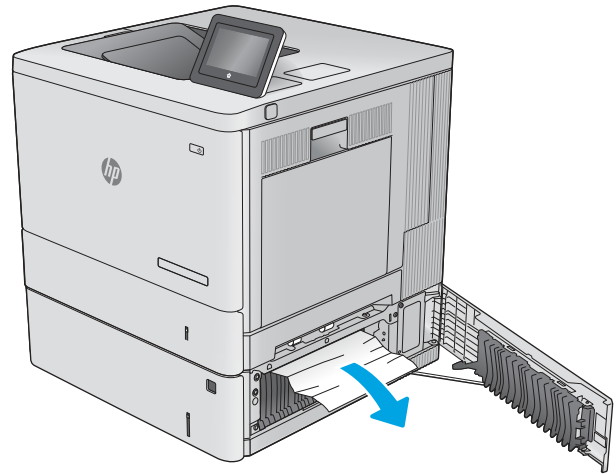
Clear paper jams in Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5 (13.A3, 13.A4, 13.A5)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the optional 550-sheet paper feeders. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

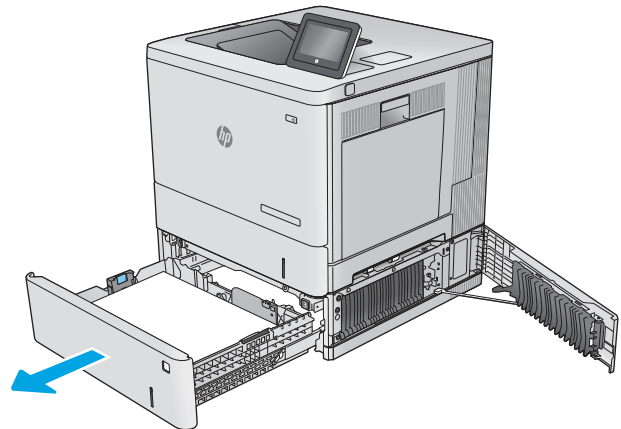
1. Open the lower-right door.



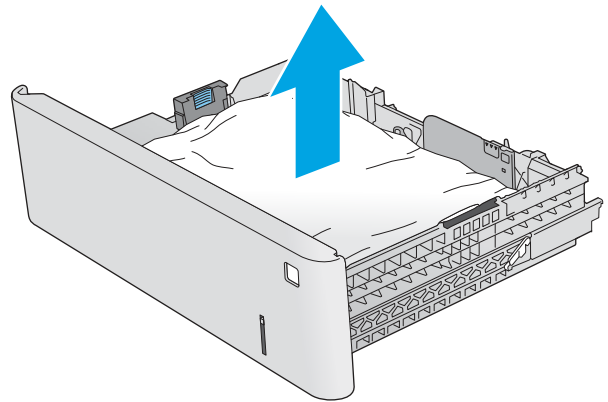
2. Gently pull out any jammed paper.



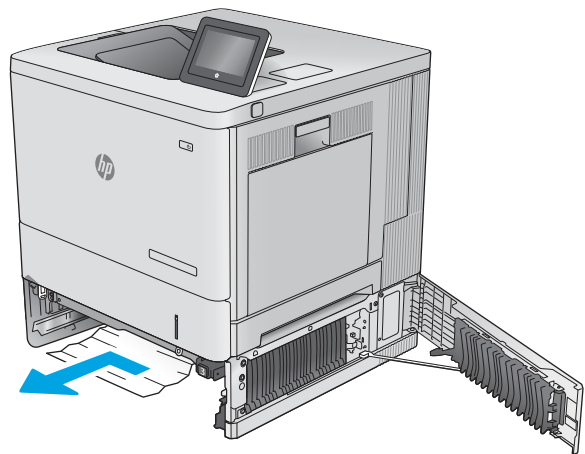
3. Pull the tray completely out of the printer by pulling and lifting it up slightly.



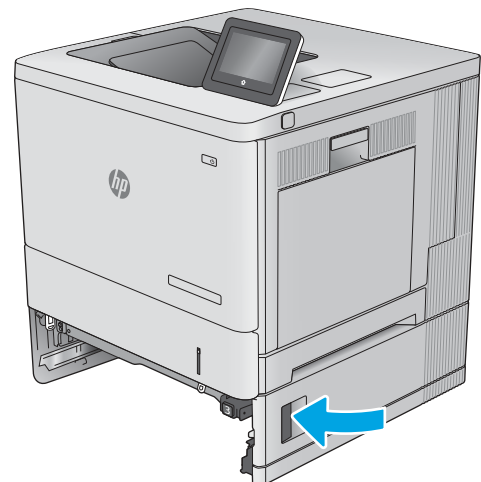
4. Remove any jammed or damaged sheets of paper. Verify that the tray is not overfilled and that the paper guides are adjusted correctly.



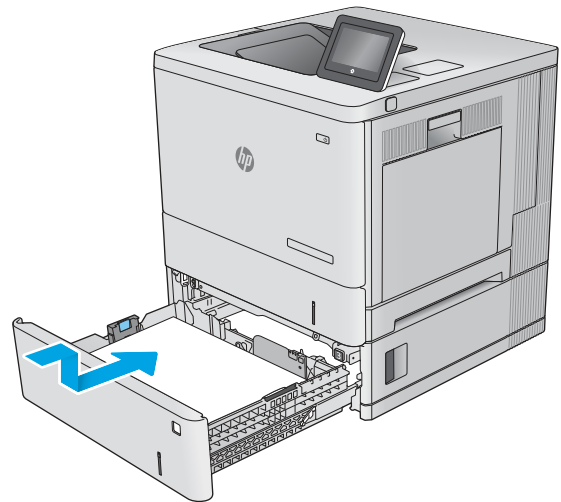
5. Remove any paper from the feed rollers inside the printer. First pull the paper to the left to release it, and then pull it forward to remove it.



6. Close the lower-right door.



7. Reinsert and close the tray.



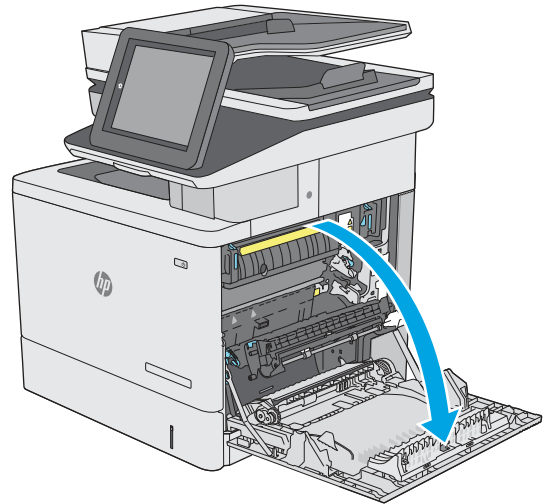
Clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area (13.B)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations inside the right door. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

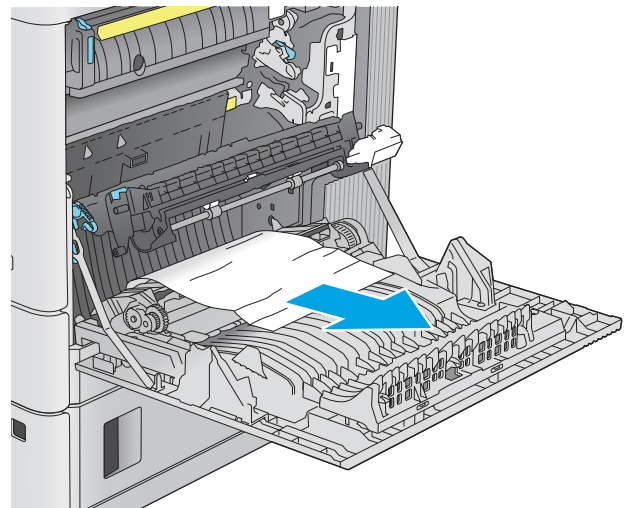
1. Lift the latch on the right door to release it.



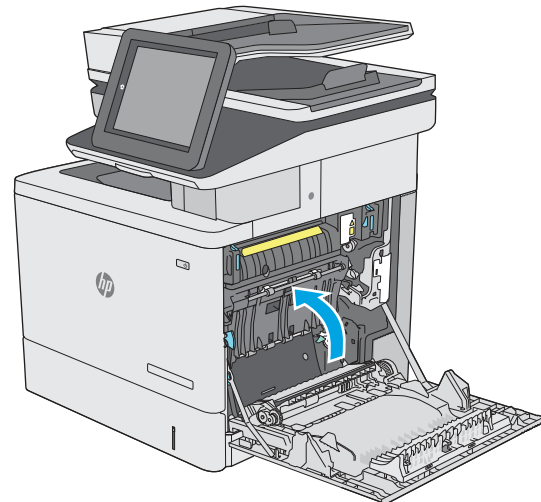
2. Open the right door.



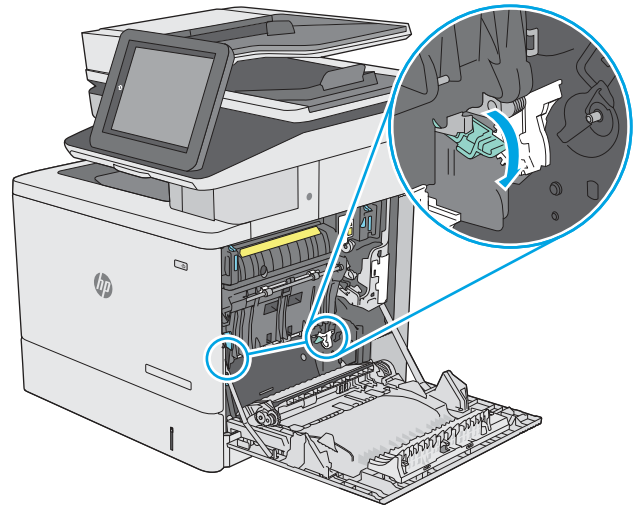
3. Gently pull out any jammed paper from the pick up area.



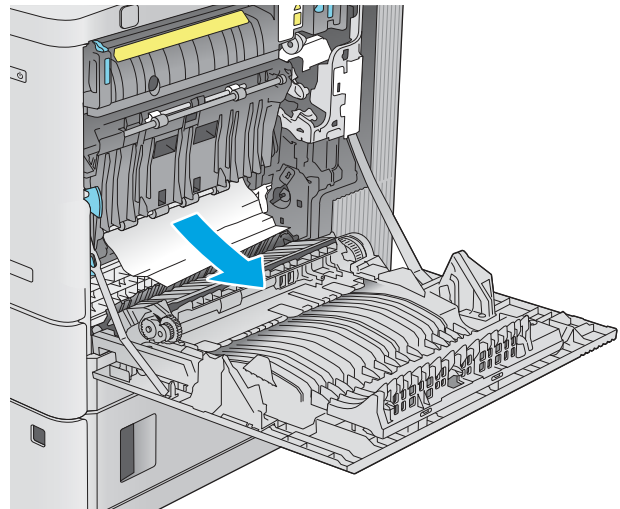
4. Close the transfer assembly.



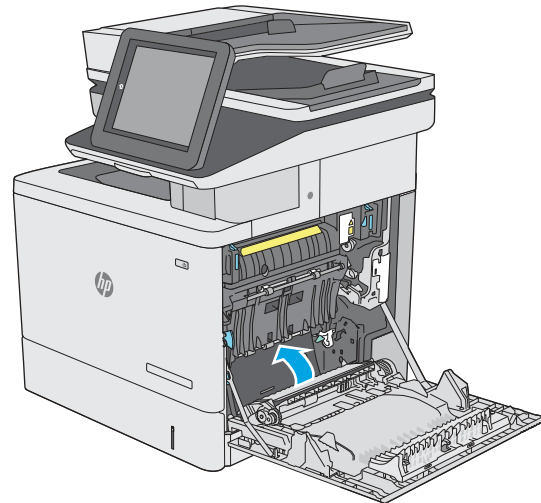
5. Push down on the green levers to release the jam-access cover.



6. Gently pull out any jammed paper. If the paper tears, make sure to remove all remnants.

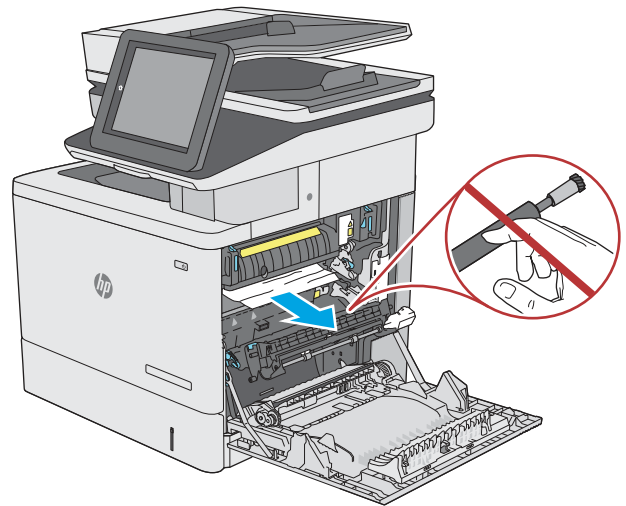


7. Close the jam-access cover, and then lower the transfer assembly.

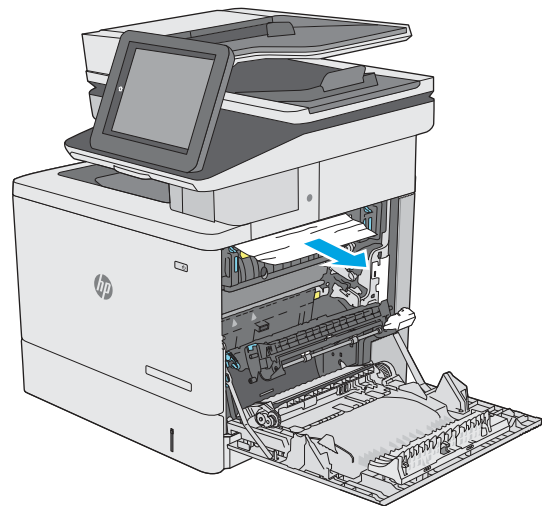


8. If paper is visible entering the bottom of the fuser, gently pull downward to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not touch the foam on the transfer roller. Contaminants can affect print quality.

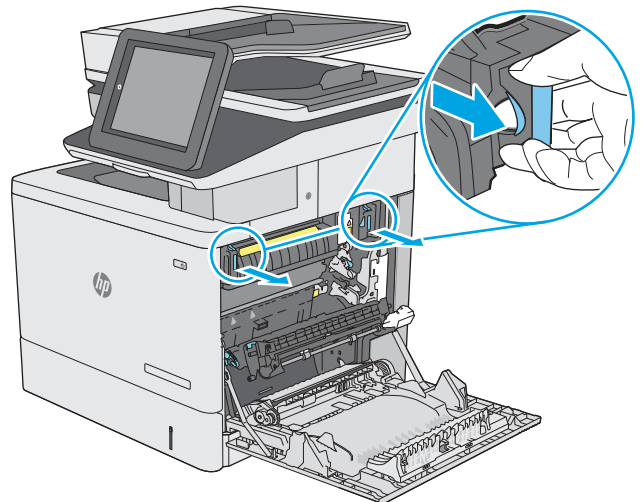


9. If paper is jammed as it enters the output bin, gently pull the paper out to remove it.



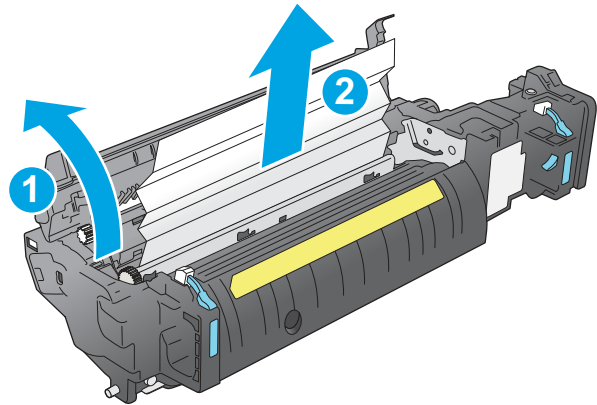
10. Paper could be jammed inside the fuser where it would not be visible. Grasp the fuser handles, lift up slightly, and then pull straight out to remove the fuser.

CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

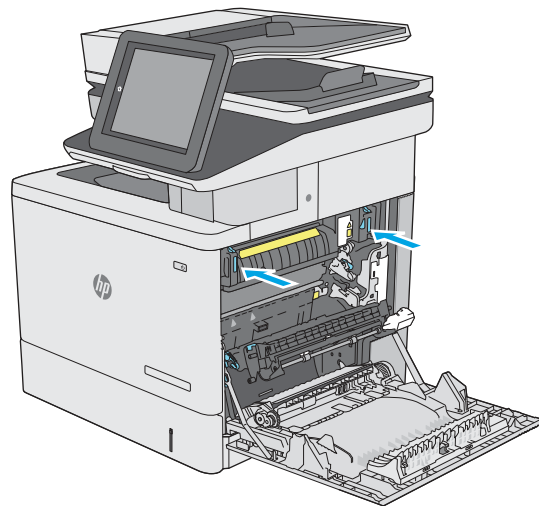


11. Open the jam-access door. If paper is jammed inside the fuser, gently pull it straight up to remove it. If the paper tears, remove all paper fragments.

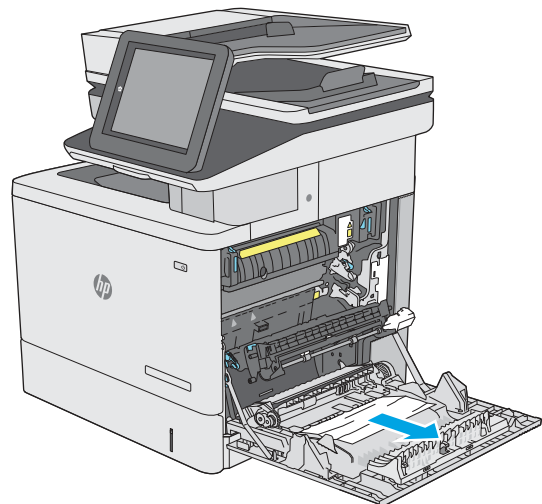
⚠ CAUTION: Even if the body of the fuser has cooled, the rollers that are inside could still be hot. Do not touch the fuser rollers until they have cooled.



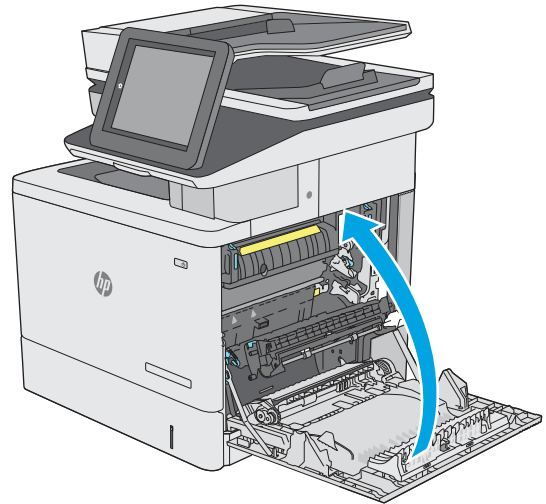
12. Close the jam-access door, and push the fuser completely into the printer until it clicks into place.



13. Check for jammed paper in the duplex path inside the right door, and remove any jammed paper.



14. Close the right door.



Clear paper jams in the output bin (13.E1)

Use the following procedure to clear jams in the output bin. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

1. If paper is visible in the output bin, grasp the leading edge and remove it.



Change jam recovery (touchscreen)

Use the following procedure to change jam recovery from a touchscreen control panel.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Settings](#) button.
2. Open the [General](#) menu, and then open the [Jam recovery](#) menu.
3. Select one of the following options:
 - [Auto](#) — The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting.

- **Off** — The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal.

 **NOTE:** Some pages can be lost if the printer runs out of paper while printing a duplex job with **Jam Recovery** set to **Off**.

- **On** — The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed.

Printer feeds incorrect page size

Review the following information when the printer feeds an incorrect page size.


 **NOTE:** To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

Table 4-48 Printer feeds incorrect page size

Cause	Solution
The correct size paper is not loaded in the tray.	Load the correct size paper in the tray.
The correct size paper is not selected in the software program or printer driver.	Confirm that the settings in the software program and printer driver are correct, because the software program settings override the printer driver and control panel settings, and the printer driver settings override the control panel settings.
The correct size paper for the tray is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the control panel, select the correct size paper for the tray.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the tray.	Print a configuration page to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the paper guides are touching the paper.

Printer pulls from incorrect tray

Review the following information when the printer pulls from an incorrect tray.


 **NOTE:** To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

Table 4-49 Printer pulls from incorrect tray

Cause	Solution
A driver for a different printer is in use.	Use a driver for this printer.
The specified tray is empty.	Load paper in the specified tray.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the guides are touching the paper.

Printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly (duplex models)

Review the following information when the printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly.

Table 4-50 Printer will not duplex (print 2-sided jobs) or duplexes incorrectly

Cause	Solution
The duplex job is trying to use unsupported paper.	Verify that the paper is supported for duplex printing.
The printer driver is not set up for duplex printing.	Set up the printer driver to enable duplex printing.
The first page is printing on the back of preprinted forms or letterhead.	Load preprinted forms and letterhead in Tray 1 with the letterhead or printed side down, with the top of the page leading into the printer. For Tray 2-X, load the paper printed side up with the top of the page toward the right of the printer.
The printer model does not support automatic 2-sided printing.	The printer model does not support automatic 2-sided printing.

Paper does not feed from Tray 2-X

Review the following information when the paper does not feed from Tray 2-X.



NOTE: To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

Table 4-51 Paper does not feed from Tray 2-X

Cause	Solution
The correct size paper is not loaded.	Load the correct size paper.
The input tray is empty.	Load paper in the input tray.
The correct paper type for the input tray is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the printer control panel, select the correct paper type for the input tray. Trays configured for a paper type with a specific weight range will not match a print job that specifies an exact weight, even if the specified weight is within the weight range.
Paper from a previous jam has not been completely removed.	Open the printer and remove any paper in the paper path. Closely inspect the fuser area for jams.
None of the optional trays appear as input tray options.	The optional trays only display as available if they are installed. Verify that any optional trays are correctly installed. Verify that the printer driver has been configured to recognize the optional trays.
An optional tray is incorrectly installed.	Print a configuration page to confirm that the optional tray is installed. If not, verify that the tray is correctly attached to the printer.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the guides are touching the paper.

Output is curled or wrinkled

Review the following information when the output is curled or wrinkled.

Table 4-52 Output is curled or wrinkled

Cause	Solution
Paper does not meet the specifications for this printer.	Use only paper that meets the HP paper specifications for this printer. Non-recycled, 75 g/m ² (20 lb) paper is optimal for office use.
The correct paper type for the input tray is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the printer control panel, select the correct paper type for the input tray. Trays configured for a paper type with a specific weight range will not match a print job that specifies an exact weight, even if the specified weight is within the weight range.
Paper is damaged or in poor condition.	Remove paper from the input tray and load paper that is in good condition.
The printer is operating in an excessively humid environment.	Verify that the printing environment is within humidity specifications.
The print job consist of large, solid-filled areas.	Large, solid-filled areas can cause excessive curl. Try using a different pattern.
Paper used was not stored correctly and might have absorbed moisture.	Remove paper and replace it with paper from a fresh, unopened package. Store paper in a plastic bag to protect it from humidity.
Paper has poorly cut edges.	Remove paper, flex it, rotate it 180 degrees or turn it over, and then reload it into the input tray. Do not fan paper. If the problem persists, replace the paper.
The specific paper type was not configured for the tray or selected in the software.	Configure the software for the paper (see the software documentation). Configure the tray for the paper.
The paper has previously been used for a print job.	Do not re-use paper.

The printer does not pick up paper

If the printer does not pick up paper from the tray, try these solutions.



NOTE: Tray 1 and Tray 2 are optimal for paper pickup when using special paper or media other than 20lb plain paper. For Tray 1 and Tray 2 the printer increases the number of attempts to pick up a page, which increases the reliability of successfully picking the page from the tray and decreases the possibility of a mispick jam.

HP recommends using Tray 1 or Tray 2 if the printer is experiencing excessive or reoccurring jams from trays other than Tray 1 and Tray 2, or for print jobs that require media other than 20lb plain paper.

1. Open the printer and remove any jammed sheets of paper.
2. Load the tray with the correct size of paper for the job.
3. Make sure the paper size and type are set correctly on the printer control panel.
4. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides to the appropriate indentation in the tray.
5. Check the printer control panel to see if the printer is waiting for an acknowledgment to the feed the paper manually prompt. Load paper, and continue.
6. The rollers above the tray might be contaminated. Clean the rollers with a lint-free cloth dampened with warm water.

The printer picks up multiple sheets of paper

If the printer picks up multiple sheets of paper from the tray, try these solutions.

1. Remove the stack of paper from the tray and flex it, rotate it 180 degrees, and flip it over. *Do not fan the paper.* Return the stack of paper to the tray.
2. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
3. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides to the appropriate indentation in the tray.
6. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.
7. The tray pick and/or feed rollers might be contaminated. Clean the rollers with a lint-free cloth dampened with warm water.

The document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper (MFP)

Learn about MFP document feeder paper handling problems.

Review the following information when the document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper.

- Check to see if there are areas on the page that might have had staples removed. This can cause jams and/or mispicks.
- The original might have something on it, such as staples or self-adhesive notes that must be removed.
- Check that all rollers are in place and correctly installed.
- Make sure that the top document-feeder cover is closed.
- The pages might not be placed correctly. Straighten the pages and adjust the paper guides to center the stack.
- The paper guides must be touching the sides of the paper stack to work correctly. Make sure that the paper stack is straight, and the guides are against the paper stack.
- The document feeder input tray or output bin might contain more than the maximum number of pages. Make sure the paper stack fits below the guides in the input tray and remove pages from the output bin.
- Verify that there are no pieces of paper, staples, paper clips, or other debris in the paper path.
- Clean the document-feeder rollers and the separation pad. Use compressed air or a clean, lint-free cloth moistened with warm water. If misfeeds still occur, replace the rollers.
- Use the control panel menus to check the status of the document-feeder kit and replace it if necessary.

Paper does not feed automatically

Review the following information when the paper does not feed automatically.



NOTE: To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

Table 4-53 Paper does not feed automatically

Cause	Solution
Manual feed is selected in the software program.	Load Tray 1 with paper, or, if the paper is loaded, press the OK button.
The correct size paper is not loaded.	Load the correct size paper.
The input tray is empty.	Load paper into the input tray.
Paper from a previous jam has not been completely removed.	Open the printer and remove any paper in the paper path.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the rear and width paper guides are touching the paper.

Image-quality troubleshooting

Learn about image-quality troubleshooting.

Use the information in this topic to troubleshoot and resolve image-quality (what you see on the final printed page) problems including copy-quality, print-quality, and color problems (color printers only).

Various printer hardware problems can cause image-quality defects. This topic is a guide to the steps used to isolate the specific areas of the printer that are causing image-quality defects on the printed page, and to provide solutions to resolve those image-quality defects.

Image-quality problems are defined as:

- **Print-quality (PQ) problems:** PQ problems are associated with the print engine (printer base) of an MFP printer (single function non MFP image-quality problems are always PQ defects). PQ defects appear on pages that are **printed** by the print engine and not fed through an integrated scanner assembly (ISA).
- **Copy-quality (CQ) problems:** CQ problems are associated with the integrated-scanner assembly (ISA) portion of an MFP printer. CQ defects appear on pages that are **copied** using the document feeder or flatbed glass.

If the print defect is already known to be a PQ or CQ problem, skip to the appropriate troubleshooting topic listed below. Otherwise, follow the steps in the next section below to get started troubleshooting image-quality problems.

- **Print-quality (PQ) problems:** See [Print-quality troubleshooting on page 335](#).
- **Copy-quality (CQ) problems:** See [Copy-quality troubleshooting on page 356](#).

Get started troubleshooting image-quality problems

Print a demonstration page to identify the defect as a PQ (print engine) or CQ (ISA) problem.



NOTE: If the image defect appears on the printed demonstration page, the issue is a print-quality (PQ) problem (associated with the print engine and not the document feeder or flatbed glass) and not a CQ problem.

Make sure that the demonstration page is printed on **plain paper**.

Enterprise printers

1. Select **Reports** > **Other pages**.
2. Select [Demonstration Page](#).

Pro printers


1. At the printer, scroll to or select [Setup](#).
2. Go to [Reports](#), and then select [Demonstration Page](#).

Does the demonstration page show any image-quality defects?

- **Yes:** If defects appear on the printed demonstration page the issue is PQ related. See [Print-quality troubleshooting on page 335](#).
- **No:** If defects does not appear on the printed demonstration page the issue is CQ related. See [Copy-quality troubleshooting on page 356](#).

Print-quality troubleshooting

Learn about the print-quality troubleshooting.

 **NOTE:** Print-quality (PQ) problems are associated with the print engine (printer base) of an MFP printer (single function non MFP image-quality problems are always PQ defects). PQ defects appear on pages that are **printed** by the print engine and not feed through an integrated scanner assembly (ISA).


Repetitive image defect ruler

Review the following information about a repetitive image defect ruler.

When troubleshooting the source of some print image defects, one solution is to identify if it is a repetitive defect (does the print quality defect appear multiple times on the printed page?). If this is the case, use a ruler to measure occurrences of repetitive image defects to help solve image-quality problems. For more information, see [Using a ruler to measure between repetitive defects](#).

Use a ruler to measure occurrences of repetitive image defects to help solve image-quality problems. Place the ruler next to the first occurrence of the defect on the page. Find the distance between identical defects and use the table below to identify the component that is causing the defect.

 **CAUTION:** Do not use solvents or oils to clean rollers. Instead, rub the roller with a lint-free cloth. If dirt is difficult to remove, rub the roller with a lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water.

 **NOTE:** The primary charging roller, photosensitive drum, and developer roller cannot be cleaned because they are internal assemblies in the toner cartridge or imaging drum. If one of these assemblies is causing the defect, replace the toner cartridge.

The primary fuser sleeve unit or pressure roller cannot be cleaned because they are internal assemblies in the fuser. If one of these assemblies is causing the defect, replace the fuse


 **TIP:** To make a printer specific repetitive defect ruler, use a metric ruler to transfer the measurements in the table below to a transparency or the edge of a piece of paper—clearly label each ruler mark with the associated defective assembly.

Table 4-54 Repetitive defects


Assembly	Distance between defects
Primary charging roller	27 mm (1.06 in)


Table 4-54 Repetitive defects (continued)


Assembly	Distance between defects
Developer roller	32 mm (1.26 in)
Registration roller	42 mm (1.65 in)
Secondary transfer roller	50.0 mm (1.97 in)
Fuser film	58 mm (2.28 in)
Pressure roller	69 mm (2.83 in)
Photosensitive drum	75 mm (2.95 in)

Print-quality troubleshooting pages

Learn about the available print-quality troubleshooting pages.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

 **NOTE:** To get further assistance in print quality troubleshooting, go to www.hp.com/support/colorljm552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljm553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljm554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorlje55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljm577mfp or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljm578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorlje57540mfp> and select **PQ Troubleshooting Tools**.

 **TIP:** Form more information about print-quality troubleshooting, go to [HP LaserJet, HP OfficeJet, HP PageWide - Image Quality Troubleshooting Guide \(IQTG\)](#) on the HP WISE service portal.

Print the print-quality troubleshooting pages

Learn how to print the print-quality troubleshooting pages.

Print the print-quality troubleshooting pages from a non-touchscreen control panel

1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to **Support Tools**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Troubleshooting**, and then press the **OK** button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Print Quality Pages**, and then press the **OK** button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Print PQ Troubleshooting Page**, and then press the **OK** button.
5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the **Print** icon (at the bottom of the control-panel display), and then press the **OK** button to print the pages.

Print the print-quality troubleshooting pages from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the **Support Tools** button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - **Troubleshooting**

- [Print Quality Pages](#)
- [Print PQ Troubleshooting Page](#)

3. Touch the [Print](#), button to print the pages.

Figure 4-86 Print-quality troubleshooting procedure page



Figure 4-87 Yellow print-quality troubleshooting page

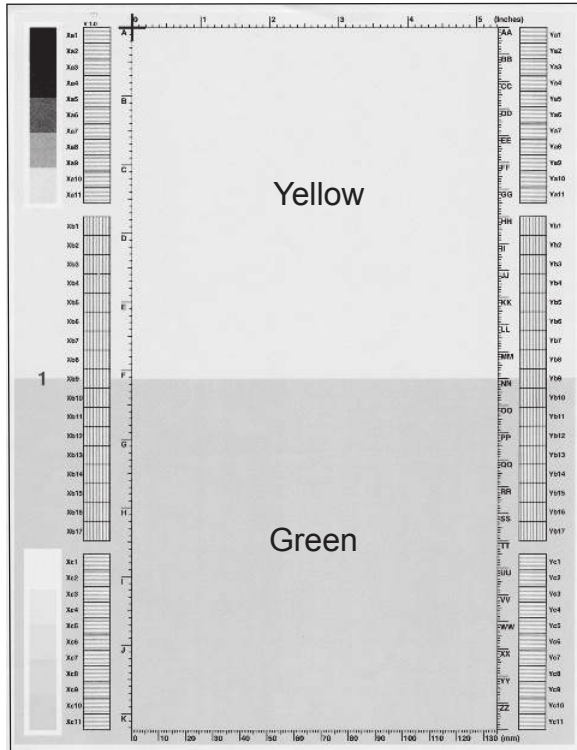
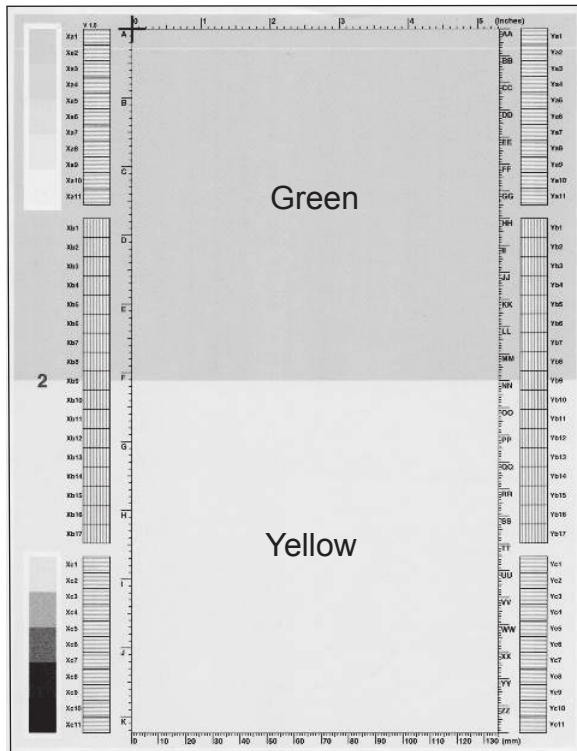
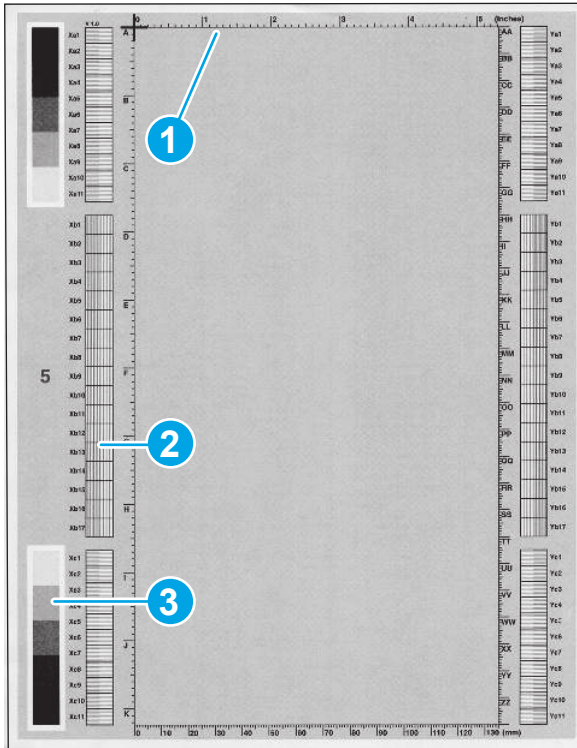


Figure 4-88 Yellow comparison page




Yellow cannot be easily seen unless combined with cyan, so half of each page is yellow and the other half is an amplified version of yellow print problems (green half). Compare the yellow on page one with the corresponding green on page two for defects. Also check the cyan page for defects.

Figure 4-89 Black print-quality troubleshooting page



Item	Description
1. Grids	The grids are in inches and millimeters. They are labeled with letters and numbers so that defects can be described by position and by distance between repeats.
2. Color plane registration (CPR) bars	After printing, the box with no extra color in each area on each page shows how far off the CPR of that color is. Each page has two process direction areas and three scan direction areas that are labeled x and y and 1–11. The page should be fed by the long edge. Each square from the center equals 42 microns.
3. Color ramp patches	Used to detect offset for the OPC or developer in the image drum or offset in the fuser.

 **NOTE:** To get further assistance in print quality troubleshooting, go to www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp> and select **PQ Troubleshooting Tools**.

Print the print-quality assessment page

Learn how to print the print-quality assessment page.

Print the print-quality assessment page from a non-touchscreen control panel

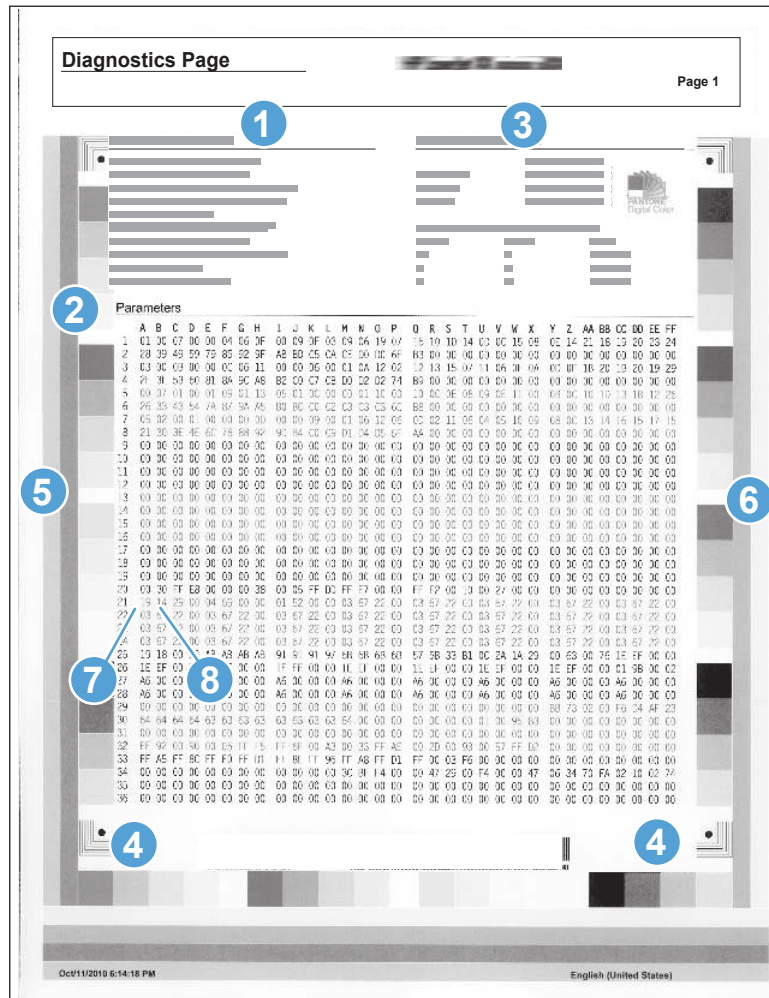
1. From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to **Support Tools**, and then press the **OK** button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Troubleshooting**, and then press the **OK** button.

- Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Print Quality Pages**, and then press the **OK** button.
- Use the arrow buttons to scroll to **Diagnostics page**, and then press the **OK** button.
- Use the arrow buttons to scroll to the **Print** icon (at the bottom of the control-panel display), and then press the **OK** button to print the pages.

Print the print-quality assessment page from a touchscreen control panel

- From the **Home** screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the **Support Tools** button.
- Open the following menus:
 - **Troubleshooting**
 - **Print Quality Pages**
 - **Diagnostics Page**
- Touch the **Print**, button to print the pages.

Figure 4-90 Print-quality assessment page



Item	Description
1	Calibration information
2	Parameters
3	Color density
4	Color plane registration
5	Primary colors
6	Secondary colors
7	Temperature values (21A)
8	Humidity values (21B)

Calibrate the printer

Learn how to calibrate the printer.



IMPORTANT: The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Calibration is a printer function that optimizes print quality. Follow these steps to resolve print-quality problems such as misaligned color, colored shadows, blurry graphics, or other print-quality issues.

Calibrate the printer from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Maintenance](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Calibration/Cleaning](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Full Calibration](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

A **Calibrating** message displays on the printer control panel. The calibration process takes a few minutes to complete. Do not turn the printer off until the calibration process has finished.

5. Wait while the printer calibrates, and then try printing again.

Calibrate the printer from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Maintenance](#)
 - [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
 - [Full Calibration](#)
3. Touch the [Start](#), button.

A **Calibrating** message displays on the printer control panel. The calibration process takes a few minutes to complete. Do not turn the printer off until the calibration process has finished.

4. Wait while the printer calibrates, and then try printing again.

Calibrate the printer

Learn how to calibrate the printer.

Calibration is a printer function that optimizes print quality. Follow these steps to resolve print-quality problems such as misaligned color, colored shadows, blurry graphics, or other print-quality issues.

Calibrate the printer from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Maintenance](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Calibration/Cleaning](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Full Calibration](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

A **Calibrating** message displays on the printer control panel. The calibration process takes a few minutes to complete. Do not turn the printer off until the calibration process has finished.

5. Wait while the printer calibrates, and then try printing again.

Calibrate the printer from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Maintenance](#)
 - [Calibration/Cleaning](#)
 - [Full Calibration](#)
3. Touch the [Start](#), button.

A **Calibrating** message displays on the printer control panel. The calibration process takes a few minutes to complete. Do not turn the printer off until the calibration process has finished.

4. Wait while the printer calibrates, and then try printing again.

Use manual print modes

Learn about manual print modes..



IMPORTANT: The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus* (c04574398) or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus* (c04796059) for more information.

Try using manual print modes to see if they solve the image-quality problems.



NOTE: Tray 1 and Tray 2 are optimal for paper pickup when using special paper or media other than 20lb plain paper. For Tray 1 and Tray 2 the printer increases the number of attempts to pick up a page, which increases the reliability of successfully picking the page from the tray and decreases the possibility of a mis-pick jam.

HP recommends using Tray 1 or Tray 2 if the printer is experiencing excessive or reoccurring jams from trays other than Tray 1 and Tray 2, or for print jobs that require media other than 20lb plain paper.

Select a manual print mode from a SFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Settings](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Print](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Print Quality](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Adjust Paper Types](#) or [Optimize](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

 **NOTE:** The [Adjust Paper Types](#) and [Optimize](#) submenus vary by printer model.

Select a manual print mode from an MFP control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Settings](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Print](#)
 - [Print Quality](#)
 - [Adjust Paper Types](#) or [Optimize](#)

 **NOTE:** The [Adjust Paper Types](#) and [Optimize](#) submenus vary by printer model.

Table 4-55 Optimize submenu

Optimize item	Values	Comments
Normal Paper	Standard Smooth	Set to Smooth when printing on smooth paper of normal weight.
Heavy paper	Standard Smooth	Set to Smooth when printing on smooth, heavy media types.
Envelope control	Normal Reduced Temp	Set to Reduced Temp if envelopes are sticking due to moisture in the envelop adhesive.
Tray 1	Normal Alternate	Set the mode to Alternate if marks appear on the back side of the paper when printing from Tray 1. This sets the printer to initiate a clean sequence every time a job finishes when the printer is set for Any Size and Any Type for Tray 1.
Background	Normal Alternate	Set to Alternate when a background occurs all over the page.
Uniformity Control	Normal Alternate 1 Alternate 2 Alternate 3	Set to Alternate 1 to improve uniformity on any paper type.

Table 4-55 Optimize submenu (continued)

Optimize item	Values	Comments
Cac03	Off On	Set to <i>On</i> if printing with media that contains a high calcium carbonate content. Engine print speed is slowed so that less paper dust is produced.
Best Normal	Off On	Set to <i>On</i> to try and improve print quality.
Tracking Control	Off On	Improves color stability by adjusting the bias voltage. Make sure this mode is set to <i>On</i> .
Registration	Normal Alternate	Set to <i>Alternate</i> when color misregistration occurs.
Transfer Control	Normal Alternate	Set to <i>Alternate</i> to reduce primary transfer bias and to resolve low density or blotchy images.
Moisture Control	Normal Alternate	Set to <i>Alternate</i> if the printer is installed in a high-humidity environment.
Reset Optimize	Reset	Use <i>Reset</i> to reset the menu defaults.

Print from a different software program

Try printing from a different software program.

If the page prints correctly, the problem is with the software program from which you were printing.

Check the paper-type setting for the print job

Check the paper type setting when printing from a software program and the printed pages have smears, fuzzy or dark print, curled paper, scattered dots of toner, loose toner, or small areas of missing toner.

Check the paper type setting on the control panel

Check the paper type setting on the printer control panel, and change the setting as needed.


1. Open and close the paper tray.
2. Follow the control panel prompts to confirm or modify the paper type and size settings for the tray.
3. Make sure the paper loaded meets specifications.
4. Adjust the humidity and resistance setting on the control panel to match the environment.
 - a. Open the following menus:
 - i. [Settings](#)
 - ii. [Copy/Print](#)
 - iii. [Print quality](#)
 - iv. [Adjust paper type](#)

- b. Select the paper type that matches the type loaded in the tray.
 - c. Use the arrows to increase or decrease the humidity and resistance setting.
5. Make sure the driver settings match the control panel settings.

 **NOTE:** The print driver settings will override any control panel settings.

Check the paper type setting (Windows)

Check the paper type setting for Windows, and change the setting as needed.

 **NOTE:** The print driver settings will override any control panel settings.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button.
3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. From the **Paper Type** drop-down list, click the **More...** option.
5. Expand the list of **Type is:** options.
6. Expand the category of paper types that best describes your paper.
7. Select the option for the type of paper you are using, and click the **OK** button.
8. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box. In the **Print** dialog box, click the **OK** button to print the job.


Check the paper type setting (macOS)

Check the paper type setting for macOS, and change the setting as needed.

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. In the **Printer** menu, select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**.
4. Open the menu drop-down list, and then click the **Paper/Quality** menu.
5. Select a type from the **Media Type** drop-down list.
6. Click the **Print** button.

Check toner-cartridge status

Follow these steps to check the estimated life remaining in the toner cartridges and if applicable, the status of other replaceable maintenance parts.

 **IMPORTANT:** The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

Step one: Print the Supplies Status Page

The supplies status page indicates the cartridge status.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the [Reports](#) menu.
2. Select the [Configuration/Status Pages](#) menu.
3. Select [Supplies Status Page](#), and then select [Print](#) to print the page.

Step two: Check supplies status

Check the supplies status report as follows.

1. Look at the supplies status report to check the percent of life remaining for the toner cartridges and, if applicable, the status of other replaceable maintenance parts.

Print quality problems can occur when using a toner cartridge that is at its estimated end of life. The supplies status page indicates when a supply level is very low. After an HP supply has reached the very low threshold, HP's premium protection warranty on that supply has ended.

The toner cartridge does not need to be replaced now unless the print quality is no longer acceptable. Consider having a replacement available to install when print quality is no longer acceptable.

If you determine that you need to replace a toner cartridge or other replaceable maintenance parts, the supplies status page lists the genuine HP part numbers.

2. Check to see if you are using a genuine HP cartridge.


A genuine HP toner cartridge has the word "HP" on it, or has the HP logo on it. For more information on identifying HP cartridges go to www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

Print a cleaning page


Learn how to print a cleaning page.

Print a cleaning page from a non-touchscreen control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow keys to navigate to [Support Tools](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Maintenance](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Calibration/Cleaning](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Cleaning page](#), and then press the [OK](#) button.

 **TIP:** Use this screen to set up automatic cleaning page intervals if desired.

5. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to [Print](#) (at the bottom of the control-panel display), and then press the [OK](#) button to print the cleaning page.

 **NOTE:** A [Cleaning...](#) message displays on the control-panel display. Do not turn the printer off until the cleaning process has finished. When it is finished, discard the printed page.

Print a cleaning page from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the [Home](#) screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the [Support Tools](#) button.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Maintenance](#)
 - [Calibration/Cleaning](#)

3. Touch [Cleaning Page](#), and then touch the [Print](#) button to print the cleaning page.

 **NOTE:** A **Cleaning...** message displays on the control-panel display. Do not turn the printer off until the cleaning process has finished. When it is finished, discard the printed page.

 **TIP:** Use this screen to set up automatic cleaning page intervals if desired.

Check paper and the printing environment

Use the following information to check the paper selection and the printing environment.

Step one: Use paper that meets HP specifications

Some print-quality problems arise from using paper that does not meet HP specifications.

- Always use a paper type and weight that this printer supports.
- Use paper that is of good quality and free of cuts, nicks, tears, spots, loose particles, dust, wrinkles, voids, staples, and curled or bent edges.
- Use paper that has not been previously printed on.
- Use paper that does not contain metallic material, such as glitter.
- Use paper that is designed for use in laser printers. Do not use paper that is designed only for use in Inkjet printers.
- Use paper that is not too rough. Using smoother paper generally results in better print quality.

Step two: Check the environment

The environment can directly affect print quality and is a common cause of print-quality or paper-feeding issues. Try the following solutions:

- Move the printer away from drafty locations, such as open windows or doors, or air-conditioning vents.
- Make sure the printer is not exposed to temperatures or humidity outside of printer specifications.
- Do not place the printer in a confined space, such as a cabinet.
- Place the printer on a sturdy, level surface.
- Remove anything that is blocking the vents on the printer. The printer requires good air flow on all sides, including the top.
- Protect the printer from airborne debris, dust, steam, grease, or other elements that can leave residue inside the printer.

Step three: Set the individual tray alignment

Follow these steps when text or images are not centered or aligned correctly on the printed page when printing from specific trays.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the [Settings](#) menu.
2. Select the following menus:
 - a. [Copy/Print](#) or [Print](#)
 - b. [Print Quality](#)

- c. Image Registration
3. Select **Tray**, and then select the tray to adjust.
4. Select **Print Test Page**, and then follow the instructions on the printed pages.
5. Select **Print Test Page** again to verify the results, and then make further adjustments if necessary.
6. Select **Done** to save the new settings.

Try a different print driver

Try a different print driver when printing from a software program and the printed pages have unexpected lines in graphics, missing text, missing graphics, incorrect formatting, or substituted fonts.

Download any of the following drivers from the HP Web site: www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp>.

Table 4-56 Print drivers

Driver	Description
HP PCL.6 driver	If available, this printer-specific print driver supports older operating systems like Windows XP and Windows Vista. For a list of supported operating systems, go to www.hp.com/go/support .
HP PCL 6 driver	This printer-specific print driver supports Windows 7 and newer operating systems that support version 3 drivers. For a list of supported operating systems, go to www.hp.com/go/support .
HP PCL-6 driver	This product-specific print driver supports Windows 8 and newer operating systems that support version 4 drivers. For a list of supported operating systems, go to www.hp.com/go/support .
HP UPD PS driver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recommended for printing with Adobe software programs or with other highly graphics-intensive software programs • Provides support for printing from Postscript emulation needs, or for Postscript flash font support
HP UPD PCL 6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recommended for printing in all Windows environments • Provides the overall best speed, print quality, and printer feature support for most users • Developed to align with Windows Graphic Device Interface (GDI) for best speed in Windows environments • Might not be fully compatible with third-party and custom software programs that are based on PCL 5

Troubleshoot image defects

Review examples of image defects and steps to resolve these defects.

Table 4-57 Image defects table quick reference



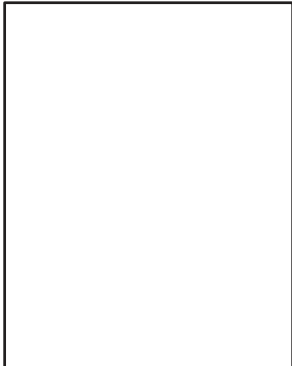

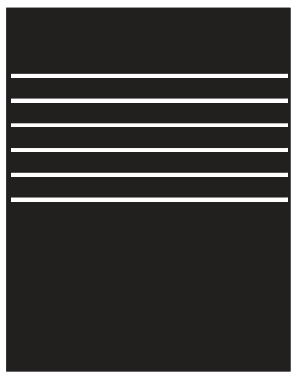
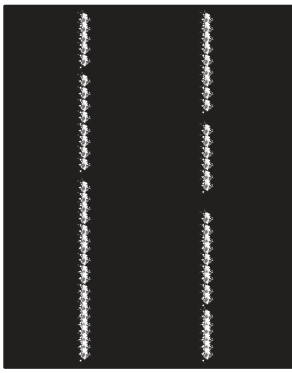
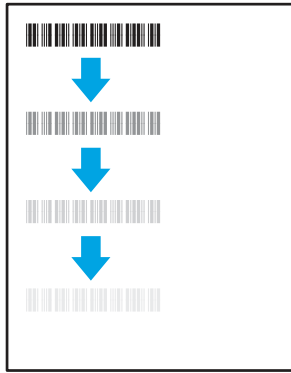



Defect	Defect	Defect
Table 4-65 Light print on page 354	Table 4-63 Gray background or dark print on page 353	Table 4-60 Blank page — No print on page 352
		
Table 4-59 Black page on page 351	Table 4-58 Banding defects on page 351	Table 4-67 Streak defects on page 355
		
Table 4-62 Fixing/fuser defects on page 352	Table 4-64 Image placement defects on page 354	Table 4-61 Color plane registrations defects (color models only) on page 352
		

Table 4-57 Image defects table quick reference (continued)

Defect	Defect	Defect
Table 4-66 Output defects on page 355		
		

Image defects, no matter the cause, can often be resolved using the same steps. Use the following steps as a starting point for solving image defect issues.

1. Reprint the document. Print quality defects can be intermittent in nature or can go away completely with continued printing.
2. Check the condition of the cartridge or cartridges. If a cartridge is in a **Very Low** state (it has passed the rated life), replace the cartridge.
3. Make sure that the driver and tray print mode settings match the media that is loaded in the tray. Try using a different ream of media or a different tray. Try using a different print mode.
4. Make sure the printer is within the supported operating temperature/humidity range.
5. Make sure that the paper type, size, and weight are supported by the printer. See the printer support page at support.hp.com for a list of the supported paper sizes and types for the printer.

 **NOTE:** The term "fusing" refers to the part of the printing process where toner is affixed to paper.

The following examples depict letter-size paper that has passed through the printer with the short edge first.

Table 4-58 Banding defects


Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>Dark or light lines which repeat down the length of the page, and are wide-pitch and/or impulse bands. They might be sharp or soft in nature. The defect displays only in areas of fill, not in text or sections with no printed content.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Try printing from another tray. 3. Replace the cartridge. 4. Use a different paper type. 5. Enterprise models only: From the Home screen on the printer control panel, go to the Adjust Paper Types menu, and then choose a print mode that is designed for a slightly heavier media than what you are using. This slows the print speed and might improve the print quality. 6. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-59 Black page


Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>The entire printed page is black.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Visually inspect the cartridge to check for damage. 2. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly. 3. Replace the cartridge. 4. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-60 Blank page — No print

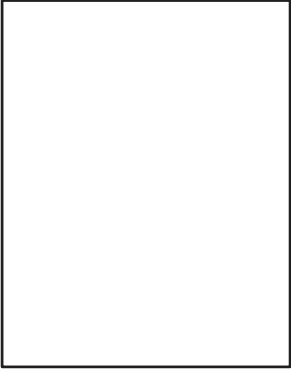
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	The page is completely blank and contains no printed content.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure that the cartridges are genuine HP cartridges. 2. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly. 3. Print with a different cartridge. 4. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a lighter paper type. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-61 Color plane registrations defects (color models only)


Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	One or more color plane(s) is not aligned with the other color planes. This registration error will typically occur with yellow.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. From the printer control panel, calibrate the printer. 3. If a cartridge has reached a Very Low state, or the printed output is severely faded, replace the cartridge. 4. From the printer control panel use the Restore Calibration feature to reset the printer's calibration settings to the factory defaults. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-62 Fixing/fuser defects

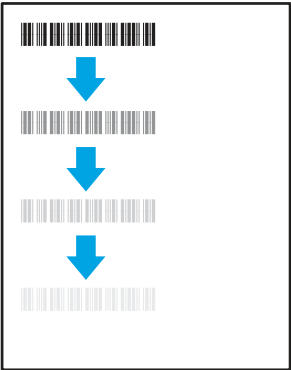
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	Slight shadows or offsets of the image are repeated down the page. The repeated image might fade with each recurrence.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a lighter paper type. 3. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-62 Fixing/fuser defects (continued)

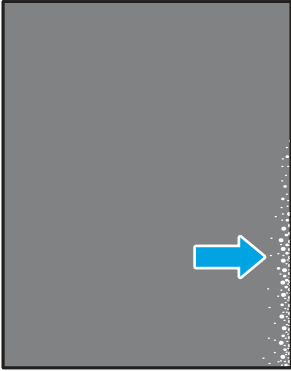
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>Toner rubs off along either edge of the page. This defect is more common at the edges of high-coverage jobs, and on light media types, but can occur anywhere on the page.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a heavier paper type. 3. Enterprise models only: From the printer control panel, go to the Edge-to-Edge menu and then select Normal. Reprint the document. 4. Enterprise models only: From the printer control panel, select Auto Include Margins and then reprint the document. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-63 Gray background or dark print


Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>The image or text is darker than expected and/or the background is gray.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure that the paper in the trays has not already been run through the printer. 2. Use a different paper type. 3. Reprint the document. 4. Mono models only: From the Home screen on the printer control panel, go to the Adjust Toner Density menu, and then adjust the toner density to a lower level. 5. Make sure that the printer is within the supported operating temperature and humidity range. 6. Replace the cartridge. 7. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-64 Image placement defects


Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>The image is not centered, or is skewed on the page. The defect occurs when the paper is not positioned properly as it is pulled from the tray and moves through the paper path.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the paper and then reload the tray. Make sure that all the paper edges are even on all sides. 3. Make sure that the top of the paper stack is below the tray-full indicator. Do not overfill the tray. 4. Make sure that the paper guides are adjusted to the correct size for the paper. Do not adjust the paper guides tightly against the paper stack. Adjust them to the indentations or markings in the tray. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-65 Light print

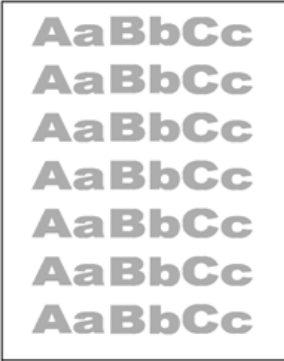
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>The printed content is light or faded on the entire page.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see <i>Replace the toner cartridges</i>. 3. Mono models only: Make sure that the EconoMode setting is disabled, both at the printer control panel and in the print driver. 4. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly. 5. Print a Supplies Status Page and check the life and usage of the cartridge. 6. Replace the cartridge. 7. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-66 Output defects


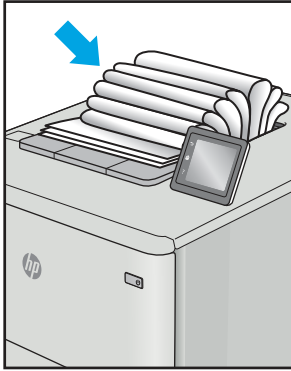
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>Printed pages have curled edges. The curled edge can be along the short or long side of the paper. Two types of curl are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Positive curl: The paper curls toward the printed side. The defect occurs in dry environments or when printing high-coverage pages. • Negative curl: The paper curls away from the printed side. The defect occurs in high-humidity environments or when printing low-coverage pages. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Positive curl: From the printer control panel, select a heavier paper type. The heavier paper type creates a higher temperature for printing. Negative curl: From the printer control panel, select a lighter paper type. The lighter paper type creates a lower temperature for printing. Try storing the paper in a dry environment prior to use, or use freshly opened paper. 3. Print in duplex mode. 4. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.
	<p>The paper does not stack well in the output tray. The stack might be uneven, skewed, or the pages might be pushed out of the tray and onto the floor. Any of the following conditions can cause this defect:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extreme paper curl • The paper in the tray is wrinkled or deformed • The paper is a non-standard paper type, such as envelopes • The output tray is too full 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Extend the output bin extension. 3. If the defect is caused by extreme paper curl, refer to the troubleshooting steps for "Output curl." 4. Use a different paper type. 5. Use freshly opened paper. 6. Remove the paper from the output tray before the tray gets too full. 7. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 4-67 Streak defects

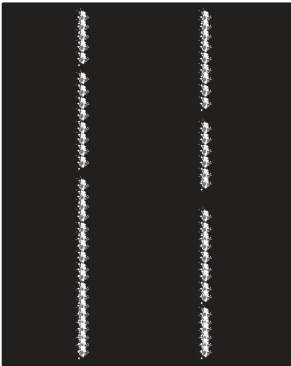
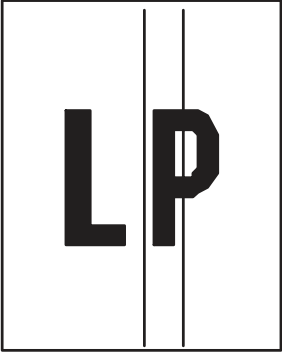

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>Light vertical streaks that usually span the length of the page. The defect displays only in areas of fill, not in text or sections with no printed content.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see <i>Replace the toner cartridges</i>. 3. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com. <p>NOTE: Both light and dark vertical streaks can occur when the printing environment is outside the specified range for temperature or humidity. Refer to your printer's environmental specifications for allowable temperature and humidity levels.</p>

Table 4-67 Streak defects (continued)

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	<p>Dark vertical lines which occur down the length of the page. The defect might occur anywhere on the page, in areas of fill or in sections with no printed content. On color models, these lines or streaks will also be visible on the ITB cleaning page.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see <i>Replace the toner cartridges</i>. 3. Print a cleaning page. 4. Check the toner level in the cartridge. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.


Copy-quality troubleshooting

Learn about copy-quality troubleshooting.

 **NOTE:** Copy-quality (CQ) problems are associated with the integrated-scanner assembly (ISA) portion of an MFP printer. CQ defects appear on pages that are **copied** using the document feeder or flatbed glass.

Identify the location and type of the CQ problem

Resolving CQ problems involves isolating the defect to the document feeder or flatbed glass. Comparing printed output between the document feeder and the flatbed glass might determine the ISA location that is causing the CQ defect.

 **NOTE:** If a CQ defect appears on printed output from both the document feeder **and** the flatbed glass, carefully inspect the original source for a print-quality (PQ) problem.

Document feeder isolation test

1. Mark a printed page in a way that clearly identifies it as the source document used in this isolation procedure.
2. Place the source page in the document feeder, and then make a copy.
3. Mark the copied output page to clearly identify it as output from the document feeder.
4. Compare the original and copied pages. Defects appearing on the copied page are caused by a problem in the document feeder.

Flatbed isolation test

1. Mark a printed page in a way that clearly identifies it as the source document used in this isolation procedure.
2. Place the source page on the flatbed glass, and then make a copy.
3. Mark the copied output page to clearly identify it as output from the flatbed.
4. Compare the original and copied pages. Defects appearing on the copied page are caused by a problem in the flatbed.

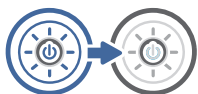
Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges

Learn about solving copy-quality debris problems.

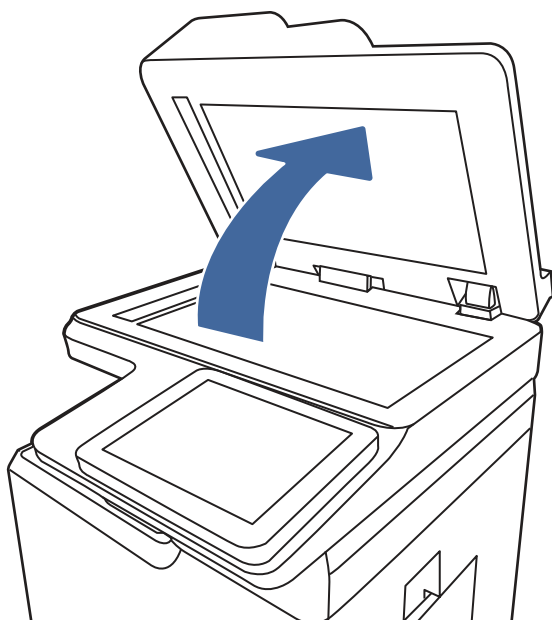
Over time, specks of debris might collect on the scanner glass and document feeder white plastic backing, which might cause print defects. Use the following procedure to clean the scanner if the printed pages have streaks, unwanted lines, black dots, poor print quality, or unclear text.

 [View a video of cleaning the document feeder glass and flatbed glass.](#)

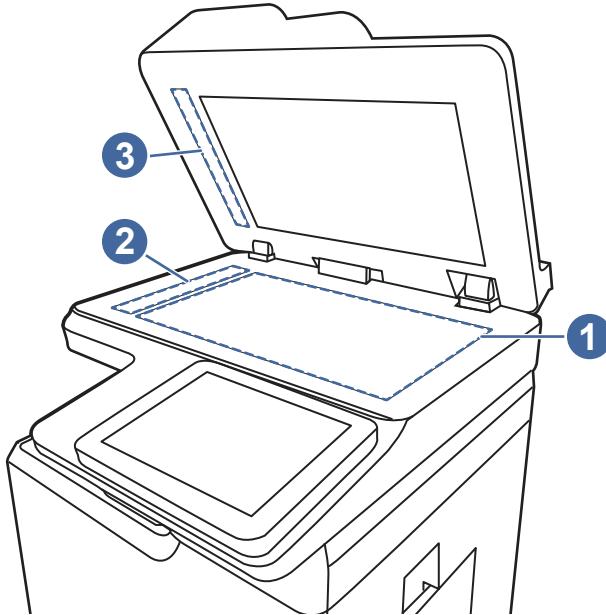
1. Press the power button to turn the printer off, and then disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.



2. Open the scanner lid.



3. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) and the document feeder strips (callout 2, callout 3) with a soft cloth or sponge that has been moistened with nonabrasive glass cleaner.



CAUTION: Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ammonia, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on any part of the printer; these can damage the printer. Do not place liquids directly on the glass or platen. They might seep and damage the printer.

NOTE: If you are having trouble with streaks on copies when you are using the document feeder, be sure to clean the small strips of glass on the left side of the scanner (callout 2, callout 3).

4. Dry the glass and white plastic parts with a chamois or a cellulose sponge to prevent spotting.
5. Connect the power cable to an outlet, and then press the power button to turn the printer on.



Vertical lines, bands, or streaks

Learn about vertical lines, bands, or streaks copy-quality problems.

Vertical lines or streaks appear on copies and/or scans in the same direction that the paper feeds when copying and/or scanning from the document feeder. Lines or streaks might be visible on the front and/or the back side of the page. Copies and/or scans from the flatbed glass look normal. Printouts also look normal.

The line or streak might be black or in color, and can also be present on fax or digital send output (for example, when using [Scan to folder](#) or [Scan to email](#) features).

NOTE: HP has determined that **99%** of all lines and streaks on copies made by feeding the original documents through the document feeder are caused by **debris on the document feeder glass strip**. Even small specks can cause the light reflected off the original to be distorted, resulting in a line, streak, or smudge on copies or scans made from the document feeder.

Even if the document feeder glass strip and/or flatbed glass has been wiped clean, the defect might persist. Persistent vertical lines, bands, or streaks when copying from the document feeder might mean that the debris causing the print quality are not readily visible and cannot be removed with a quick cleaning.

Use the procedures below to resolve persistent lines, bands, or streak copy-quality (CQ) problems.

Locate debris and thoroughly clean the document feeder glass

1. Place a blank sheet of paper in the document feeder and mark an **X** in the lower right corner as shown.

Figure 4-91 Load the document feeder



2. Press the **Start** button to make a copy of the blank page.
3. Place the copied paper face-up on the flatbed glass with the **X** located as shown.

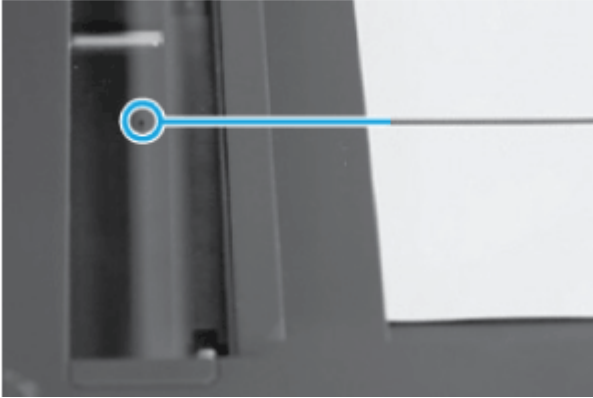
 **NOTE:** Make sure the upper left corner of the copy is aligned with the upper left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 4-92 Place the copy on the flatbed



4. Follow the line or streak on the paper to the area on the document feeder glass that is causing the CQ problem.

Figure 4-93 Identify the CQ defect location



5. Use a fingernail to loosen any stubborn debris.

⚠ WARNING! Use only a fingernail. Other objects can scratch the document feeder glass.

Clean this specific area again (with a lint-free cloth dampened with water), and then dry the glass with a soft, lint-free cloth.

Figure 4-94 Clean the glass



6. Make another copy or scan to determine if the defect is gone.

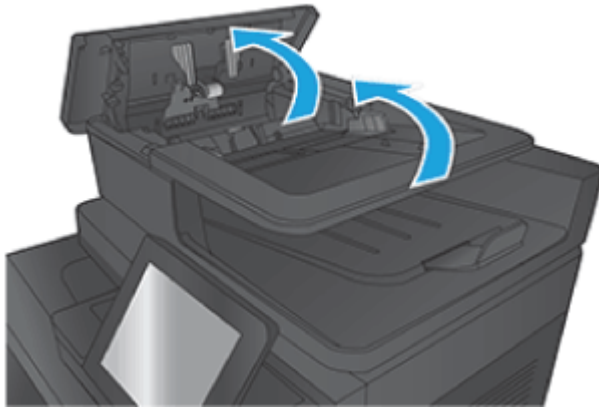
Clean the duplexer scanner glass (model specific)

📄 NOTE: Not all MFP printers use a background selector for duplex printing.

If a *Side 2 Background Selector* cannot be located for the printer (it might not include one) skip this procedure.

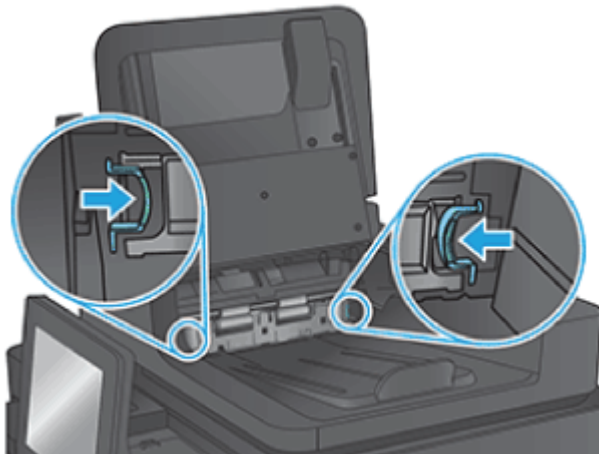
1. Release the latch and open the document feeder jam-access door.

Figure 4-95 Open the jam-access door



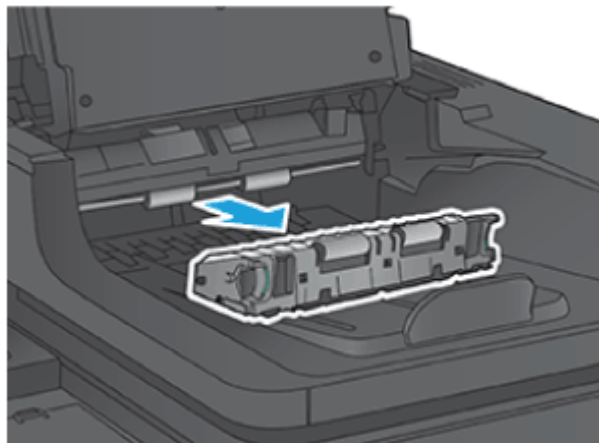
2. Unlock the Side 2 Background Selector by pressing and holding both green tabs inward towards each other.

Figure 4-96 Release the Side 2 Background Selector



3. While holding the green tabs, pull out and remove the Side 2 Background Selector.

Figure 4-97 Remove the Side 2 Background Selector



4. Rotate the top to reveal the white and black backside reflector (circled in blue).


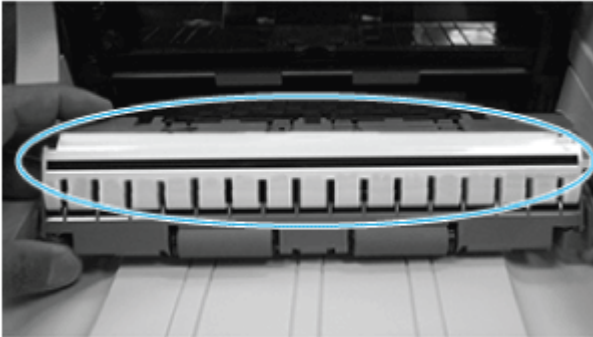

 **NOTE:** If the white and black areas do not come clean, try again using isopropyl alcohol, and then wipe the surface thoroughly with a damp cloth to remove any residual alcohol. Dry the area with a soft, dry cloth to prevent spotting.


Figure 4-98 Locate the backside reflector



5. With the background selector removed from the document feeder, clean the inside of the scan module.
6. In the back area from where the background selector was removed, locate the Side 2 Scan Module glass found under the top area.

 **NOTE:** The glass surface of the Side 2 Scan module sits horizontally flat and might not be easily viewable.

7. Use a soft, lint-free cloth moistened with water and apply pressure upwards behind the rollers to clean the Side 2 Scan Module Glass, making sure to that the entire width of the glass is cleaned from left to right.

 **NOTE:** If needed, lens cleaner or non-abrasive glass cleaner can be applied to the cloth before cleaning the glass. Spray only onto the cloth and not directly onto the glass or device. Do not spray water or glass cleaner on the glass as it can seep under it and possibly damage the printer. Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on the glass; these can damage it and/or leave residue on the glass resulting in degraded copy/scan quality.

8. Reverse the removal steps to reinstall the Side 2 Background Selector.
9. Make another copy or scan to determine if the defect is gone.

Modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality

Learn about printer settings to improve scan or copy quality.

Optimize printer settings to potentially improve scan or copy quality.



 **IMPORTANT:** The printer settings described in this section are firmware dependent and might not be available for a specific printer (for example, color adjustment settings do not apply to mono printers).

Image Adjustment settings

 **NOTE:** [Settings > Print \(SFP\) or Copy/Print \(MFP\) > Image Adjustment > Background Cleanup.](#)

Use the sliders to perform a [Background Cleanup](#), adjust the image [Darkness](#) as well as changing the [Sharpness](#) and [Contrast](#).

Use this feature to improve the overall quality of the copy (for example, adjusting the [Darkness](#) and [Sharpness](#)). Use the [Background Cleanup](#) setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.

- [Darkness](#): Adjust this setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
- [Contrast](#): Adjust this setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
- [Background Cleanup](#): Adjust this setting if copying a faint image is a problem.
- [Sharpness](#): Adjust this setting to clarify or soften the image. Increasing the sharpness might make text appear crisper, but decreasing it would make photographs appear smoother.

Optimize Text/Picture settings



NOTE: [Settings](#) > [Scan/Digital Send Settings](#) > [Optimize Text/Picture](#).

Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture.

Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.

- [Mixed](#): Use to optimize the setting for text and for pictures.
- [Text](#): Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original.
- [Printed picture](#): Use to optimize line drawing and preprinted images such as magazine clippings or pages from a book. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting [Printed picture](#) to improve quality.
- [Photographs](#): Use to optimize photographic prints.

Color/Black settings



NOTE: [Settings](#) > [Scan/Digital Send Settings](#) > [Color/Black](#).


Use to enable or disable color scanning.(some highlighters will not auto detect as color).

- [Automatically detect color or black](#): When pages without color are detected, the printer creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in grayscale.
- [Automatically detect color or gray](#): When pages without color are detected, the printer creates an image of the page in grayscale. Select this option for the best image quality for non-color pages.
- [Color](#): Scans the documents in color.
- [Black](#): Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
- [Black/Gray](#): Scans or prints documents in grayscale.

Light or faint copies (color models)

Learn how to resolve light or faint copy-quality problems.

Are you attempting to copy or scan highlighted text?

 **NOTE:** When digitally sending or copying highlighted images or text objects, the image might appear lighter than expected or does not show up at all with certain brands/types of highlighter pens.

Highlighters come in bright, often fluorescent colors. Fluorescent highlighter inks tend to reflect more light than that which is absorbed by the paper source. This reflection might cause the image to not show up as well as non-fluorescent colors depending upon the scanner/MFP being used.

The most common color for highlighters is yellow, but many other colors are also found such as pink, blue, green, orange, and purples. Yellow is often the preferred color to use when making a photocopy as it tends to not produce as much of a shadow on copies or scans.

There are different color and ink properties depending upon the brand of highlighters used. Due to these differences, scanning of the images might vary greatly from not being seen at all to changing colors (for example, orange highlighter might appear brown in the copy or scan or yellow highlighter might appear green).

Automatic color detect

HP has a feature in all FutureSmart (LaserJet Enterprise Series only) printers which automatically detects color on each page. Depending upon the amount of color information on a page, the scanner might determine the page to be black and white due to a very, very small amount of color which might be considered background artifacts. This helps to reduce the file size of sent files as well as toner usage on a copied page. You might see small highlighted marks on pages print out in black and white or even disappear.

The black and white effect is due to the printer not seeing enough color on the page, in which case the whole image is rendered as a black and white page. The highlighted mark disappearing might be due to the marker characteristics not being detected by the scanner.

Does the printer have the latest firmware version installed?

A Firmware enhancement has been introduced for certain LaserJets to help with the reproduction of highlighted images.

 **NOTE:** Some Multifunction Printers (MFPs) using FutureSmart firmware v3.5.3 or later have improved color reproduction of fluorescent highlighters when scanning or copying.

No or I don't know

Use the following steps to identify the installed firmware version, and then upgrade the firmware if needed.

1. Print a configuration page (from the printer control panel).
2. On the printed configuration page look in the section marked **Device Information**, and then identify the **Firmware Datecode** and **Firmware Revision**.


This is the current version of firmware installed on this printer.

3. In the US, go to www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp>.


- a. Select **Get drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select the appropriate product by name.

 **NOTE:** More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

- b. Select the driver language and operating system.
 - c. Locate the firmware download. If the firmware version is more recent than the one shown on the printed configuration page, select **Download**.
4. Outside the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support.
 - a. Select your country/region.
 - b. Select **Drivers & Downloads**.
 - c. Enter the product name in the **Find my product** dialogue box, and then select **Go**.

 **TIP:** Click on the **How do I find my product name/number?** link to see a short video on identifying the printer name and number.

 - d. Select the appropriate product by name.

 **NOTE:** More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

 - e. Select the driver language and operating system.
 - f. Locate the firmware download. If the firmware version is more recent than the one shown on the printed configuration page, select **Download**.
5. Perform a firmware upgrade. See the *Firmware upgrades* topic in the product service manual.
6. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.

Yes

These procedures help provide settings which affect the way highlighters are scanned or copied. A firmware enhancement is available for certain printers that helps with the reproduction of highlighted images.

- **Enable Firmware Enhancement**

1. From the Home screen, select the desired scanning application (for example, [Copy](#), [E-Mail](#), [Save to Network Folder](#)).
2. Select [More Options](#) > [Optimize Text/Picture](#) > [Text](#) button (not slider). This enables the improved color reproduction of fluorescent highlighters.

 **TIP:** Administrators can set Text as the default setting on the device.

- **Alternative Settings**

See [Modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality on page 362](#) for more information.

Performance and connectivity troubleshooting

Learn about performance and connectivity troubleshooting.

Solve fax or email problems

Learn about solving fax and email problems.

Fax or email troubleshooting information is not provided in this service manual. The most current information is available in WISE. Search using model number then use "fax troubleshooting" as the search term.

For HP Channel partners, open the HP Partner First Portal located at <https://partner.hp.com>, and then do the following:

1. Select the **Services & Support** tab, and then select **Technical Support**.
2. Select **Technical Documentation**.
3. You will be taken to the WISE portal.

For HP service personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engines (WISE) sites:

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)
- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (API)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Solve performance problems

Review the following information and procedures to solve performance problems.



NOTE: Tray 1 and Tray 2 are optimal for paper pickup when using special paper or media other than 75-80gsm (20lb) plain paper. For Tray 1 and Tray 2 the printer increases the number of attempts to pick up a page, which increases the reliability of successfully picking the page from the tray and decreases the possibility of a mis-pick jam.

HP recommends using Tray 1 or Tray 2 if the printer is experiencing excessive or reoccurring jams from trays other than Tray 1 and Tray 2, or for print jobs that require media other than 75-80gsm (20lb) plain paper.

Factors affecting print performance

Review the following information about factors affecting print performance.



NOTE: To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

Table 4-68 Solve performance problems

Problem	Cause	Solution
Pages print but are totally blank.	The document might contain blank pages.	Check the original document to see if content is present on all of the pages.
Pages print but are totally blank.	The printer might be malfunctioning.	To check the printer, print a Configuration page.
Pages print but are totally blank.	Make sure that the printer is not feeding multiple pages (especially if very thin paper is used).	Make sure that the paper meets HP specifications for this printer. For a complete list of specific HP-brand paper that this printer supports, go to www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp .
Pages print very slowly. NOTE: Some software programs process print jobs slowly.	Heavier paper types can slow the print job.	Print on a different type of paper.
Pages print very slowly. NOTE: Some software programs process print jobs slowly.	Complex pages can print slowly.	Proper fusing might require a slower print speed to ensure the best print quality.
Pages print very slowly. NOTE: Some software programs process print jobs slowly.	Large batches, narrow paper, and special paper such as gloss, transparency, cardstock, and HP Tough Paper can slow the print job.	Print in smaller batches, on a different type of paper, or on a different size of paper.
Pages did not print.	The printer might not be pulling paper correctly.	Make sure paper is loaded in the tray correctly.
Pages did not print.	The paper is jamming in the printer.	Clear the jam.
Pages did not print.	The USB cable might be defective or incorrectly connected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disconnect the USB cable at both ends and reconnect it. • Try printing a job that has printed in the past. • Try using a different USB cable.
Pages did not print.	Other devices are running on the host computer.	The printer might not share a USB port. If an external hard drive or network switchbox is connected to the same port as the printer, the other device might be interfering with the printer. To connect and use the printer, disconnect the other device or use two USB ports on the host computer.
Pages did not print.	The print job might not have arrived at the printer.	Check the printer status queue. Also, the Printing message should appear on the control panel display.

Print speeds

Print speed is the number of pages that print in one minute. Print speed depends on different engine-process speeds or operational pauses between printed pages during normal printer operation. Factors that determine the print speed of the printer include the following:

- Page formatting time

The printer must pause for each page to be formatted before it prints. Complex pages take more time to format, resulting in reduced print speed. However, most jobs print at full engine speed.

- Media size

Legal-size media reduces print speed because it is longer than the standard Letter- or A4-size media. A reduce print speed is used when printing on narrow media to prevent the edges of the fuser from overheating.

- Media mode

Some media types require a reduced print speed to achieve maximum print quality on that media. For example, glossy, heavy, and specialty media (for example, envelopes or photos) require a reduced print speed. To maximize the print speed for special media types, make sure that the correct media type in the print driver is selected.

- Printer temperature

To prevent printer damage, print speed is reduced if the printer reaches a specific internal temperature (thermal slow down). The starting temperature of the printer, ambient environment temperature, and the print job size effect the number of pages that can be printed before the printer reduces the print speed. Thermal slow down reduces print speed by printing four pages and then pausing for an amount of time before printing continues.

- Other print speed reduction factors

Other factors (especially during large print jobs) that can cause reduced print speeds include:

- Density control sequence; occurs every 150 pages and takes about 120 seconds

The printer does not print

If the printer does not print at all, try the following solutions.



NOTE: To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

1. Make sure the printer is turned on and that the control panel indicates it is ready.
 - If the control panel does not indicate the printer is ready, turn the printer off and then on again.
 - If the control panel indicates the printer is ready, try sending the job again.
2. If the control panel indicates the printer has an error, resolve the error and then try sending the job again.
3. Make sure the cables are all connected correctly. If the printer is connected to a network, check the following items:
 - Check the bottom LED next to the network connection on the printer. If the network is active, the light is green.

- Make sure that a network cable and not a phone cord is used to connect to the network.
 - Make sure the network router, hub, or switch is turned on and that it is working correctly.
4. Install the HP software for the printer. Using generic printer drivers can cause delays clearing jobs from the print queue.
 5. From the list of printers on your computer, right-click the name of this product, click **Properties**, and open the **Ports** tab.
 - If a network cable is used to connect to the network, make sure the printer name listed on the **Ports** tab matches the one on the printer configuration page.
 - If a USB cable is used, and the printer is connected to a wireless network, make sure the box is checked next to **Virtual printer port for USB**.
 6. If a personal firewall system on the computer is used, it might be blocking communication with the printer. Try temporarily disabling the firewall to see if it is the source of the problem.
 7. If the host computer or the printer is connected to a wireless network, low signal quality or interference might be delaying print jobs.

The printer prints slowly

If the printer prints, but it seems slow, try the following solutions.

1. Make sure the computer meets the minimum specifications for this printer. For a list of specifications, go to this Web site: www.hp.com/support/colorljM552 or www.hp.com/support/colorljM553 or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM554> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE55040> or www.hp.com/support/colorljM577MFP or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljM578mfp> or <http://www.hp.com/support/colorljE57540mfp>.
2. When the printer is configured to print on some paper types, such as heavy paper, the printer prints more slowly so it can correctly fuse the toner to the paper. If the paper type setting is not correct for the type of paper you are using, change the setting to the correct paper type.
3. If the host computer or the printer is connected to a wireless network, low signal quality or interference might be delaying print jobs.

Solve connectivity problems

Review the following information and procedures to solve connectivity problems.

Solve USB connection problems

If you have connected the product directly to a computer, check the cable.

- Verify that the cable is connected to the computer and to the product.
- Verify that the cable is not longer than 2 m (6.65 ft). Try using a shorter cable.
- Verify that the cable is working correctly by connecting it to another product. Replace the cable if necessary.

Solve wired network problems

Review the following information and procedures to solve wired network problems.

Introduction

Learn about solving wired network problems.

Certain types of problems can indicate there is a network communication problem. These problems include the following issues:

- The periodic loss of ability to communicate with the printer
- The printer cannot be found during driver installation
- A periodic failure to print

Check the items in this topic to verify that the printer is communicating with the network. Before beginning, print a configuration page from the printer control panel and locate the printer IP address that is listed on this page.



NOTE: To print using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

Poor physical connection

Use the following procedure when the printer has a poor physical connection.

1. Verify that the printer is attached to the correct network port using a cable of the correct length.
2. Verify that cable connections are secure.
3. Look at the network port connection on the back of the printer, and verify that the amber activity light and the green link-status light are lit.
4. If the problem continues, try a different cable or port on the hub.

The computer is using the incorrect IP address for the printer

Use the following procedure when the computer is using the incorrect IP address for the printer.

1. Open the printer properties and click the **Ports** tab. Verify that the current IP address for the printer is selected. The printer IP address is listed on the printer configuration page.



NOTE: To print a configuration page using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

2. If you installed the printer using the HP standard TCP/IP port, select the box labeled **Always print to this printer, even if its IP address changes**.
3. If you installed the printer using a Microsoft standard TCP/IP port, use the hostname instead of the IP address.
4. If the IP address is correct, delete the printer and then add it again.

The computer is unable to communicate with the printer

Use the following procedure when the computer is unable to communicate with the printer.

1. Test network communication by pinging the network.

- a. Open a command-line prompt on your computer.
 - For Windows, click **Start**, click **Run**, type `cmd`, and then press **Enter**.
 - For macOS, go to **Applications**, then **Utilities**, and open **Terminal**.
 - b. Type `ping` followed by the IP address for your printer.
 - c. If the window displays round-trip times, the network is working.
2. If the ping command failed, verify that the network hubs are on, and then verify that the network settings, the printer, and the computer are all configured for the same network.

The printer is using incorrect link and duplex settings for the network

HP recommends leaving these settings in automatic mode (the default setting). If you change these settings, you must also change them for your network.

New software programs might be causing compatibility problems

Verify that any new software programs are correctly installed and that they use the correct print driver.

The computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly


Use the following procedure when the computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly.

1. Check the network drivers, print drivers, and the network redirection settings.
2. Verify that the operating system is configured correctly.

The printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect

Use the following procedure when the printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect.

1. Review the configuration page to check the status of the network protocol. Enable it if necessary.

 **NOTE:** To print a configuration page using an HP Plus printer, the printer must have genuine original HP toner cartridges installed, must have an ongoing internet connection and an active HP Plus account (for more information, go to hp.com/plus).

2. Reconfigure the network settings if necessary.

Solve fax or email problems

Fax or email troubleshooting information is not provided in this service manual. The most current information is available in WISE or HP Channel Services Network (CSN). Search using model number then use "fax troubleshooting" as the search term.

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)

- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

5 Removal and replacement

When servicing the printer, several items must be considered to ensure a successful repair and to avoid damage to the printer or personal injury. Learn about these considerations and find detailed instructions for removing and replacing printer parts.

HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).



[View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.](#)

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select [Services & Support](#) (near the top of the screen).
2. Under [Services Delivery](#), select [Technical Support](#).
3. Select [Technical Documentation](#).

Find information about the following topics

- Service manuals
- Service advisories
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Warranty and regulatory information

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:

 [View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.](#)

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)
- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Additional technical support WISE videos

The videos below provide additional ways to access printer information using WISE.

 [View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(model number search\).](#)

 [View a video of ow to use WISE to find technical support videos \(Product detail page \[PDP\] search\).](#)

Order parts, accessories, and supplies

Find information about ordering parts and supplies for the printer.

Ordering

Order parts by authorized service providers.

Table 5-1 Ordering

Item or provider	Description
Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order parts from authorized service providers	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the exploded assembly diagrams are orderable parts.

Refer to the tables following the diagrams or the alphabetical/numerical parts lists to determine if a part is orderable.

Supplies and accessories

Learn about the supplies and accessories that are available for the printer.

To order cartridges, visit <http://www.hp.com> (some portions of the HP Web site are available in English only). Ordering cartridges online is not supported in all countries/regions. However, many countries/regions have information about ordering by telephone, locating a local store, and printing a shopping list. In addition, go to hp.com/supplies to obtain information about purchasing HP products in your country/region.

Use only the replacement cartridges that have the same cartridge number as the cartridge that is being replaced. Find the cartridge number in the following places:

- On the label of the cartridge that is being replaced.
- On a sticker inside the printer. Open the cartridge door to locate the sticker.
- Open the printer software (**HP Printer Assistant**), and then click **Shop > Shop For Supplies Online**.
- Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS), and then click **Tools > Supply Status** (under the **Product Information** item).

Table 5-2 Supplies part numbers

Item	Description	Part number (service)	Product number (new)
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF360-67901	CF360A
Toner cartridge	HP 508X High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner cartridge	CF360-67902	CF360X
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF361-67901	CF361A
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508X High Yield Cyan Original LaserJet Toner cartridge	CF361-67902	CF361X
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Yellow Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF362-67901	CF362A
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508X High Yield Yellow Original LaserJet Toner cartridge	CF362-67902	CF362X
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Magenta Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF363-67901	CF363A
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508X High Yield Magenta Original LaserJet Toner cartridge	CF363-67902	CF363X
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	SVC Cartridge LJ Black Managed Toner	W9060-67901	
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	SVC Cartridge LJ Cyan Managed Toner	W9061-67901	
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	SVC Cartridge LJ Yellow Managed Toner	W9062-67901	

Table 5-2 Supplies part numbers (continued)

Item	Description	Part number (service)	Product number (new)
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	SVC Cartridge LJ Magenta Managed Toner	W9063-67901	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212A Black LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67905	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212X Black LaserJet Toner (High Yield)	7ZU81-67909	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212A Cyan LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67906	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212X Cyan LaserJet Toner (High Yield)	7ZU81-67910	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212A Yellow LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67907	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212X Yellow LaserJet Toner (High Yield)	7ZU81-67911	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212A Magenta LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67908	
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	SVC Cartridge-212X Magenta LaserJet Toner (High Yield)	7ZU81-67912	
HP toner-collection unit		B5L37-67901	B5L37A
HP Staple Cartridge Pack (stapler models)			Q7432A
HP LaserJet 200 ADF Roller Replacement Kit (MFP)		W5U23-67901	B5L52A
Fuser kit (110V)		B5L35-67902	B5L35A
Fuser kit (220V)		B5L36-67902	B5L36A

Table 5-3 Accessories (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040)

Description	Description	Part number (service)	Product number
550-sheet paper feeder NOTE: The M552 model accepts one 550-sheet paper feeder. The M553 and E55040 models accept up to three 550-sheet paper feeders.	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder (included with the x model)	B5L34-67901	B5L34A
Fixed tray guide kit	Fixed tray guide kit for cassette trays.	5851-7708	
HP secure 500 GB high-performance hard disk drive NOTE: Not supported for the M552dn.	Optional hard drive	B5L29-67903	B5L29A
Printer stand and storage	Optional stand with storage to support the printer Recommended when using multiple optional paper feeders.	B5L51-67901	B5L51A

Table 5-3 Accessories (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040) (continued)

Description	Description	Part number (service)	Product number
1GB DDR3 Slim DIMM (SFP)	Optional DIMM for expanding the memory	5851-6422	G6W84A
NOTE: M553/M554/M555/E55040 only.			
HP internal USB ports	Two optional USB ports for connecting third-party devices	B5L28-67902	B5L28A
HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM)	Automatically encrypts all data that passes through the printer	F5S62-61001	F5S62A

Table 5-4 Accessories (M577, M578, and E57540)

Description	Description	Part number (service)	Product number
550-sheet paper feeder	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder (included with the x model)	B5L34-67901	B5L34A
NOTE: The printer accepts up to three 550-sheet paper feeders.			
Fixed tray guide kit	Fixed tray guide kit for cassette trays.	5851-7708	
HP secure 500 GB high-performance hard disk drive	Optional hard drive	B5L29-67903	B5L29A
NOTE: Not supported for the M552dn.			
Printer stand and storage	Optional stand with storage to support the printer Recommended when using multiple optional paper feeders.	B5L51-67901	B5L51A
1GB DDR3 x32 144-Pin 800MHz SODIMM (MFP)	Optional DIMM for expanding the memory	E5K48-67902	E5K48A
HP internal USB ports	Two optional USB ports for connecting third-party devices	B5L28-67902	B5L28A
HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM)	Automatically encrypts all data that passes through the printer	F5S62-61001	F5S62A
HP LaserJet Keyboard Overlay Kit for Simplified Chinese & Traditional Chinese	Language-specific, adhesive overlay for the physical keyboard		A7W12A
HP LaserJet Keyboard Overlay Kit for Swedish	Language-specific, adhesive overlay for the physical keyboard		A7W14A
HP Smartcard NIPRNet Solution for US Government	Nonsecure Internet Protocol (IP) Router Network for transmitting non-classified information		CC543B
NOTE: Requires installing the HP Internal USB ports accessory (B5L28A).			

Table 5-4 Accessories (M577, M578, and E57540) (continued)

Description	Description	Part number (service)	Product number
HP Smartcard NIPRNet Solution for US Government NOTE: Requires installing the HP Internal USB ports accessory (B5L28A).	Secret Internet Protocol (IP) Router Network for transmitting classified information		F8B30A
HP Foreign Interface Harness	Optional port for connecting third-party devices	B5L31-67902	B5L31A
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 600	Optional fax accessory for the dn model	B5L53-67901	B5L53A
HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server	USB wireless print server accessory		J8031A
HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/Wireless Accessory	Wi-Fi direct accessory for “touch” printing from mobile devices		J8030A

Customer self-repair parts

Learn about printer customer self-repair parts.

Customer self-repair (CSR) parts are available for many HP LaserJet printers to reduce repair time.



NOTE: More information about the CSR program and benefits can be found at www.hp.com/go/csr-support and www.hp.com/go/csr-faq.

Genuine HP replacement parts can be ordered at www.hp.com/buy/parts or by contacting an HP-authorized service or support provider. When ordering, one of the following will be needed: part number, serial number (found on back of printer), product number, or printer name.

- Parts listed as **A**: Easy
- Parts listed as **B**: Difficult and/or require tools
- Parts listed as **Mandatory**: Customer installed self-replacement parts (unless the customer is willing to pay for HP service personnel to perform the repair). For these parts, on-site or return-to-depot support is not provided under the HP printer warranty.
- Parts listed as **Optional**: HP service personnel installed self-replacement parts by customer request for no additional charge during the printer warranty period.

Table 5-5 Customer self-repair (CSR) parts

Kit name	Description	CSR level	Part number
Control panel kit (M553x/M555/E55040)	Control panel	A	B5L24-67903
Control panel kit (MFP)	Control panel	A	B5L47-67018
Secondary transfer roller kit	Secondary transfer roller	A	RM2-6575-000CN
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	ITB	B	RM2-6576-000CN
Tray 2-5 roller kit	Rollers for Tray 2 and the optional 550-sheet paper feeders	A	RM2-6577-000CN

Table 5-5 Customer self-repair (CSR) parts (continued)

Kit name	Description	CSR level	Part number
ADF roller replacement Kit	Replacement feed rollers for the document feeder	A	W5U23-67901
Fuser kit (110V)	Fuser (110V)	A	B5L35-67902
Fuser kit (220V)	Fuser (220V)	A	B5L36-67902
embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC) kit (SFP)	eMMC module	A	5851-6436
320GB encrypted hard disk drive kit (MFP)	Replacement hard disk drive	A	5851-6712
White backing kit (MFP)	White backing for the document feeder	A	5851-7740
Retention clip kit (MFP)	Retention clips for the document feeder white backing	A	5851-6573
Keyboard kit (flow models)	Keyboard	A	B5L47-67019 (US) B5L47-67020 (UK)
Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6019
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6020
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA: UK Kybd) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6021
Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6022
Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6023
Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6024

HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).

 [View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.](#)

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select [Services & Support](#) (near the top of the screen).
2. Under [Services Delivery](#), select [Technical Support](#).
3. Select [Technical Documentation](#).

Find information about the following topics

- Service manuals
- Service advisories
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Warranty and regulatory information

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:

 [View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.](#)

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)
- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Additional technical support WISE videos

The videos below provide additional ways to access printer information using WISE.

 [View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(model number search\).](#)

 [View a video of ow to use WISE to find technical support videos \(Product detail page \[PDP\] search\).](#)

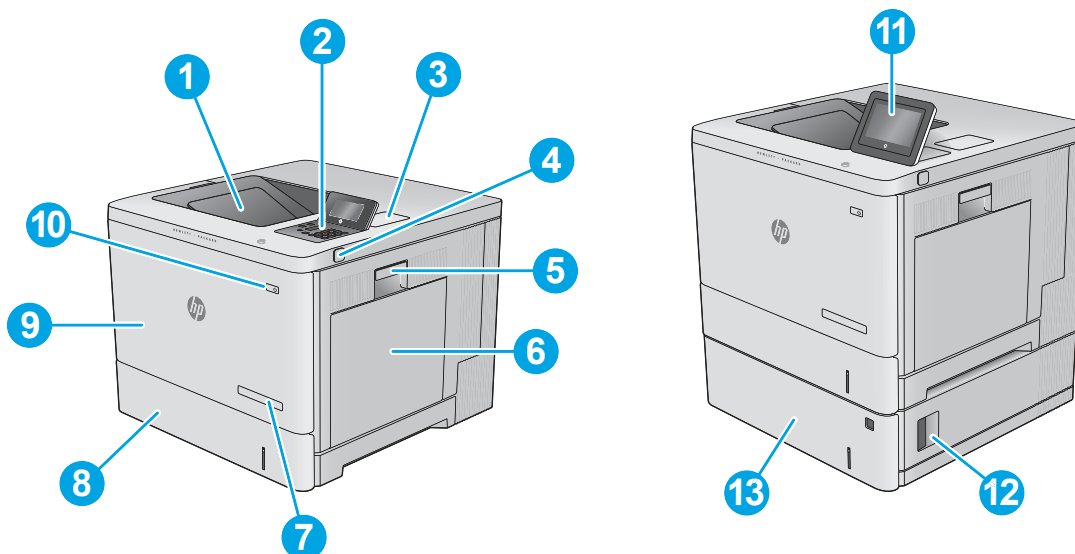
Assembly locations

Learn about major printer assembly locations.

Printer front view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models)

Identify the parts on the front of the printer (SFP).

Figure 5-1 Printer front view (SFP)



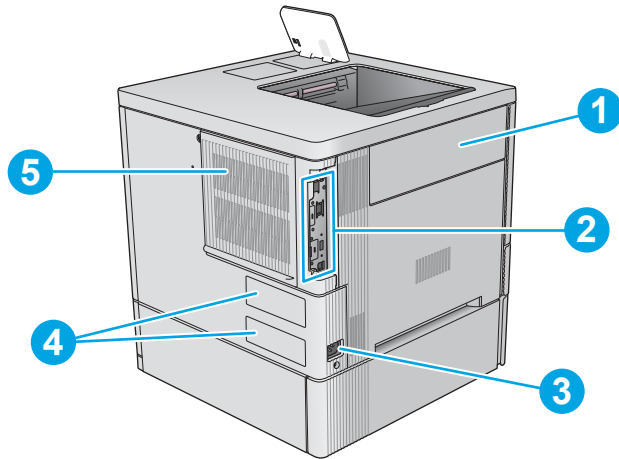
Number	Description
1	Standard output bin
2	4-line LCD control panel with keypad (n and dn models only)
3	Hardware integration pocket for connecting accessory and third-party devices (dn and x models only)
4	Easy-access USB port
5	Right door (access to the fuser and for clearing jams)
6	Tray 1
7	Model name
8	Tray 2
9	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)
10	On/off button
11	Control panel with color touchscreen display (M553x/M555/E55040)
12	Lower-right door for the 550-sheet paper feeder (access for clearing jams)
13	550-sheet paper feeder, Tray 3 (included with the x model, optional for the other models)

NOTE: The M552 model accepts one 550-sheet paper feeder. All other models accept up to three 550-sheet paper feeders.

Printer back view (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 models)

Identify the parts on the back of the printer (SFP).

Figure 5-2 Printer rear view (SFP)

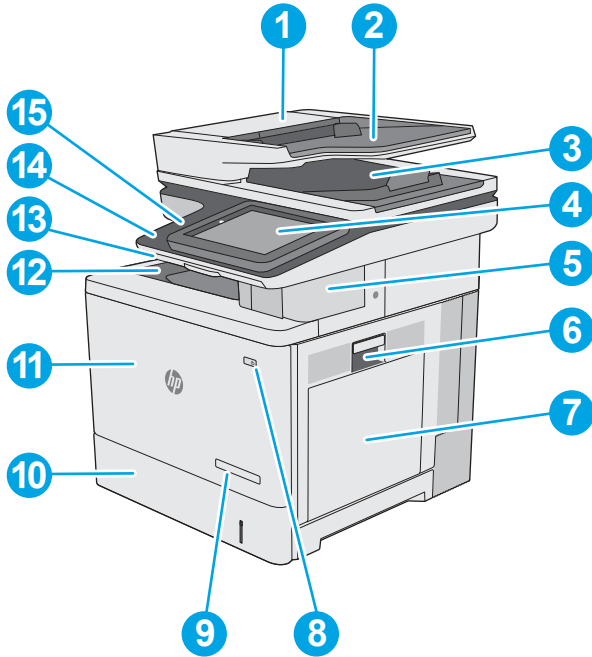


Number	Description
1	Toner-collection-unit door
2	Formatter (contains the interface ports)
3	Power connection
4	Serial number and product number label
5	Formatter cover

Printer front view (M577, M578, and E57540 models)

Identify the parts on the front of the printer (MFP).

Figure 5-3 Printer front view (MFP)

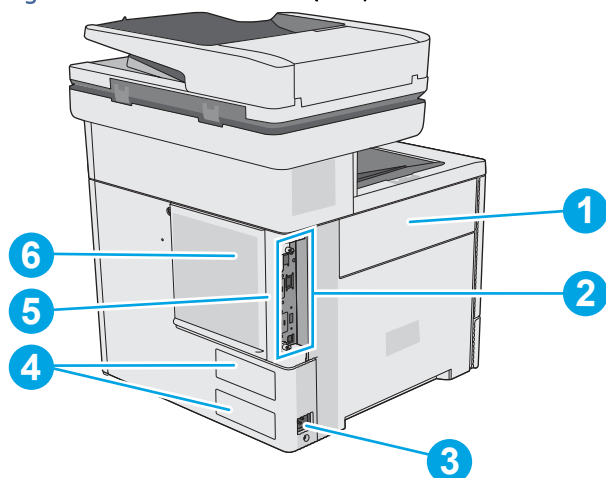


Number	Description
1	Document-feeder cover (access for clearing jams)
2	Document-feeder input tray
3	Document-feeder output bin
4	Control panel with color touchscreen display
5	Convenience stapler (c/f/z models only)
6	Right door (access to the fuser and for clearing jams)
7	Tray 1
8	On/off button
9	Model name
10	Tray 2
11	Front door (access to the toner cartridges)
12	Standard output bin
13	Physical keyboard (c/z models only)
14	Easy-access USB port (on the side of the control panel)
15	Hardware integration pocket (for connecting accessory and third-party devices)

Printer back view (M577, M578, and E57540 models)

Identify the parts on the back of the printer (MFP).

Figure 5-4 Printer rear view (MFP)



Number	Description
1	Toner-collection-unit door
2	Formatter (contains the interface ports)
3	Power connection
4	Serial number and product number label
5	Slot for a cable-type security lock (on the rear cover of the printer)
6	Formatter cover

Customer self-repair (CSR) A parts and accessories

Customer self-repair (CSR) A parts are parts that a customer replaces without assistance from a field technician. These parts can be replaced without the use of any tools.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner cartridges.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-6 Part information

Part number	Part description
CF360-67901	Standard-capacity replacement black toner cartridge with instruction guide
CF360-67902	High-capacity replacement black toner cartridge with instruction guide NOTE: M552/M553/M577 Enterprise and managed only.
CF361-67901	Standard-capacity replacement cyan cartridge with instruction guide
CF361-67902	High-capacity replacement cyan toner cartridge with instruction guide NOTE: M552/M553/M577 Enterprise and managed only.
CF362-67901	Standard-capacity replacement yellow toner cartridge with instruction guide
CF362-67902	High-capacity replacement yellow toner cartridge with instruction guide NOTE: M552/M553/M577 Enterprise and managed only.
CF363-67901	
CF363-67902	NOTE: M552/M553/M577 Enterprise and managed only.
W9060-67901	SVC Cartridge LJ Black Managed Toner NOTE: E55040 and E57540 only.
W9061-67901	SVC Cartridge LJ Cyan Managed Toner NOTE: E55040 and E57540 only.
W9062-67901	SVC Cartridge LJ Yellow Managed Toner NOTE: E55040 and E57540 only.
W9063-67901	SVC Cartridge LJ Magenta Managed Toner NOTE: E55040 and E57540 only.
7ZU81-67905	SVC Cartridge-212A Black LaserJet Toner
7ZU81-67909	SVC Cartridge-212X Black LaserJet Toner NOTE: M554/M555/M578 only.
7ZU81-67906	SVC Cartridge-212A Cyan LaserJet Toner
7ZU81-67910	SVC Cartridge-212X Cyan LaserJet Toner NOTE: M554/M555/M578 only.
7ZU81-67907	SVC Cartridge-212A Yellow LaserJet Toner
7ZU81-67911	SVC Cartridge-212X Yellow LaserJet Toner NOTE: M554/M555/M578 only.
7ZU81-67908	SVC Cartridge-212A Magenta LaserJet Toner
7ZU81-67912	SVC Cartridge-212X Magenta LaserJet Toner NOTE: M554/M555/M578 only.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 4 (FS4) or later firmware installed. For printers with FS3 firmware installed, go to the HP WISE web site and search for *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M552, M553 - Control-panel menus (c04574398)* or *HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577 - Control-panel menus (c04796059)* for more information.

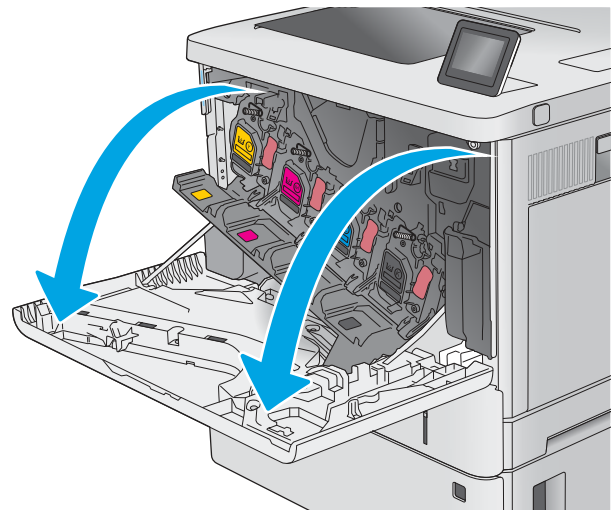
1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, open the [Support Tools](#) menu.
2. Open the following menus:
 - [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Print Quality Pages](#)
 - [Color Band Test](#)
3. Select the [Print](#) or [OK](#) button to print the pages.

Remove the toner cartridges

Follow these steps to replace a toner cartridge.

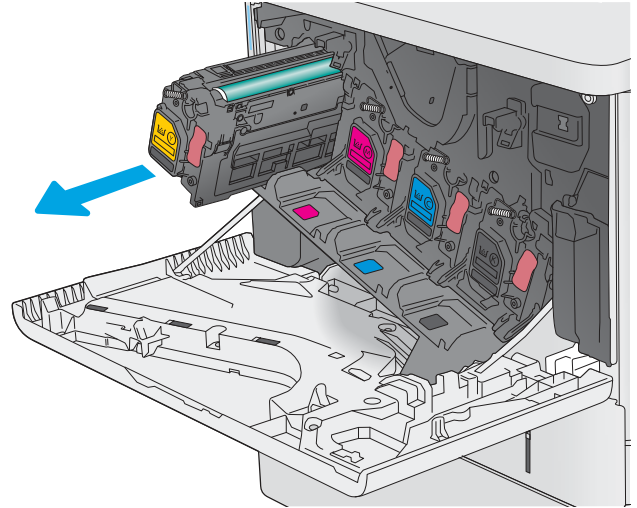
1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-5 Open the front door



2. Grasp the handle of the used toner cartridge and pull out to remove it.

Figure 5-6 Remove the toner cartridge

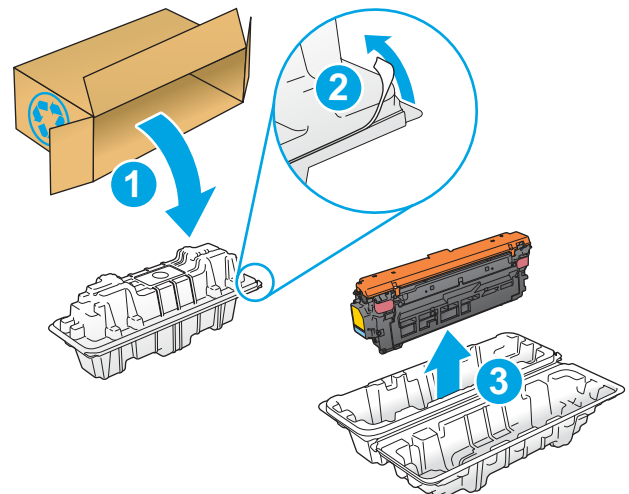


Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack a toner cartridge.

1. Remove the new toner cartridge from its protective shell by tearing off the plastic strip and opening the package. Save all packaging for recycling the used toner cartridge.

Figure 5-7 Unpack the toner cartridge

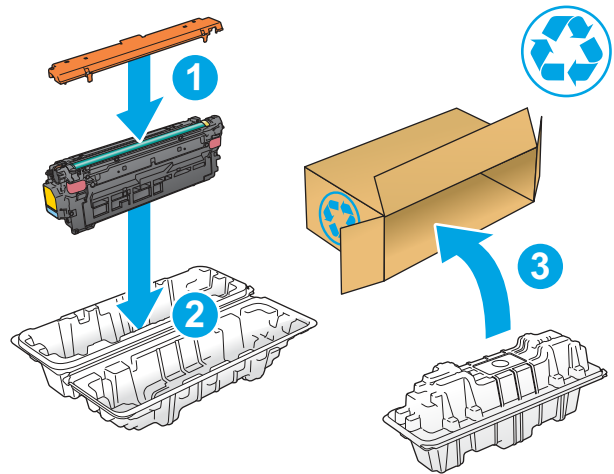


2. Pack the used toner cartridge into the box that the new cartridge came in, or use a large cardboard box and fill it with several cartridges that you need to recycle. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

In the U.S., a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used cartridge to HP for recycling.

Figure 5-8 Recycle the used cartridge

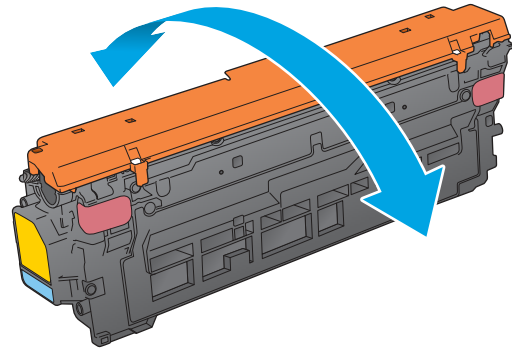


Install the toner cartridges

Follow these steps to replace a toner cartridge.

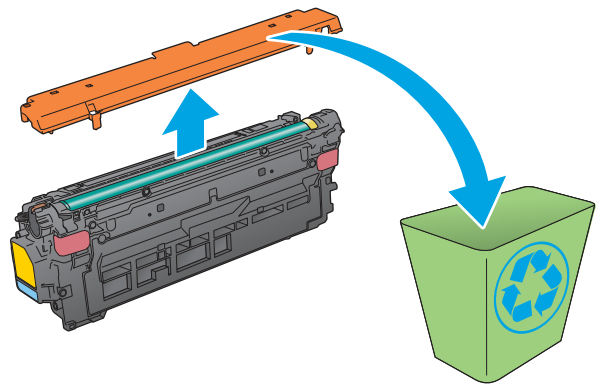
1. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it 5-6 times.

Figure 5-9 Rock the toner cartridge



2. Remove the protective shield from the toner cartridge.

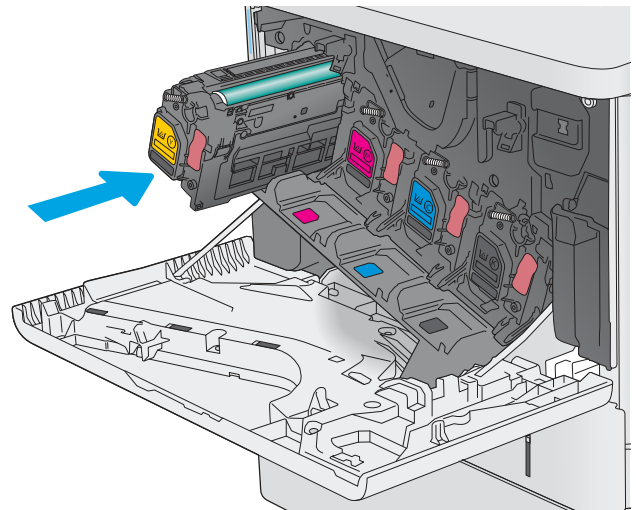
Figure 5-10 Remove the protective shield



3. Support the toner cartridge underneath with one hand while holding the cartridge handle with the other. Align the toner cartridge with its slot on the shelf, and then insert the toner cartridge into the product.

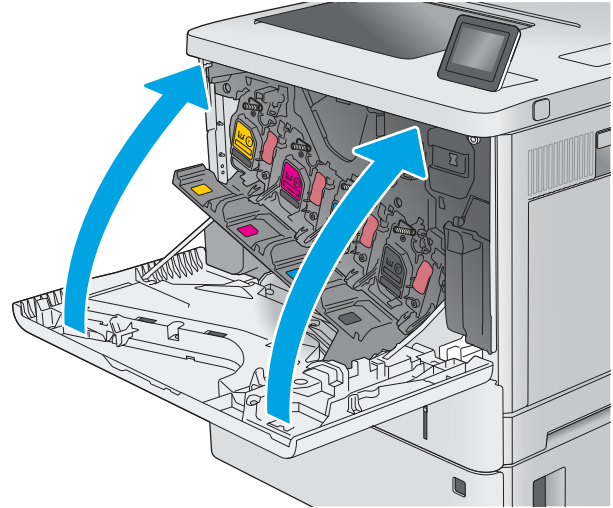
CAUTION: Avoid touching the green imaging drum. Fingerprints on the imaging drum can cause print defects.

Figure 5-11 Install the toner cartridge



4. Close the front door.

Figure 5-12 Close the front door



Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit (TCU).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-7 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L37-67901	Toner collection unit (TCU) with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-13 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-14 Open the TCU

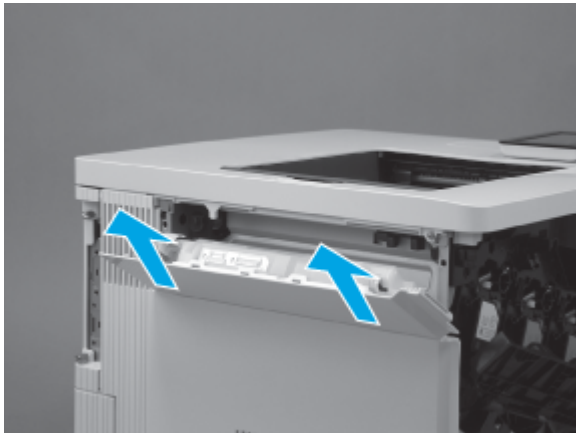


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.




Figure 5-15 Remove the TCU



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

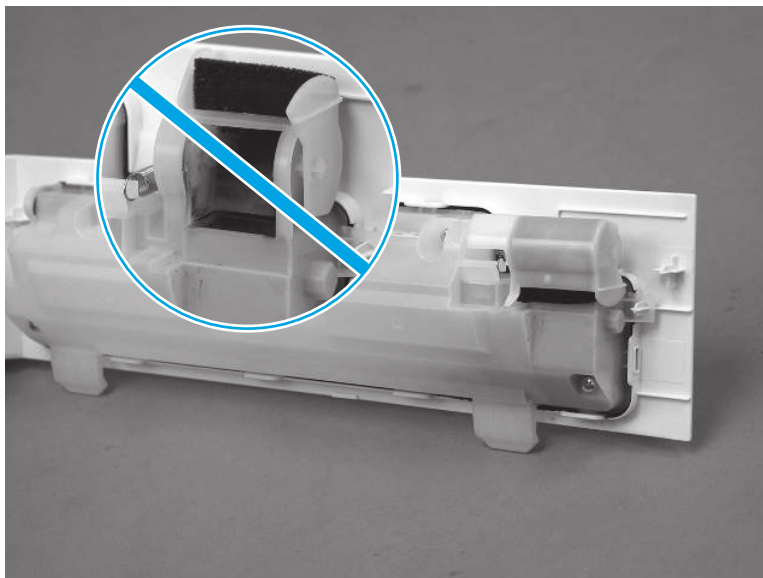
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the TCU

Follow these steps to install the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the TCU.

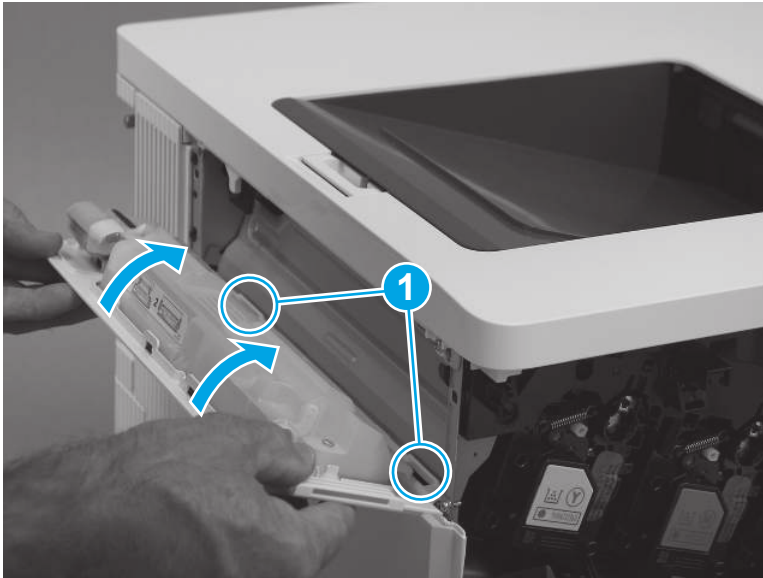
Figure 5-16 Verify that the toner collection hatch cover is closed



2. Position the TCU with the hinges in the slots provided in the printer (callout 1), and then rotate the TCU up and into the closed position.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically opens when the TCU is closed.

Figure 5-17 Install the TCU



3. Close the front door.

Figure 5-18 Close the front door



Removal and replacement: Staple cartridge (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)

Learn about removing and replacing the staple cartridge.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-8 Part information

Part number	Part description
Q7432A	HP staple cartridge pack

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the stapler to staple two pages together.

Remove the staple cartridge

Follow these steps to remove the staple cartridge.

1. Open the stapler door.

Figure 5-19 Open the stapler door



2. Pull the staple cartridge straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-20 Remove the staple cartridge



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the staple cartridge

Follow these steps to install the staple cartridge.

1. Push the staple cartridge straight out of the printer to install it.

Figure 5-21 Install the staple cartridge



2. Close the stapler door.

Figure 5-22 Close the stapler door



Removal and replacement: Fuser

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser.

 [View a video to remove and replace a fuser \(M553\)](#)

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-9 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L35-67902	Fuser (110V) with instruction guide
B5L36-67902	Fuser (220V) with instruction guide

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this part.

After performing service

Make sure that the right door is fully closed after replacing the fuser.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

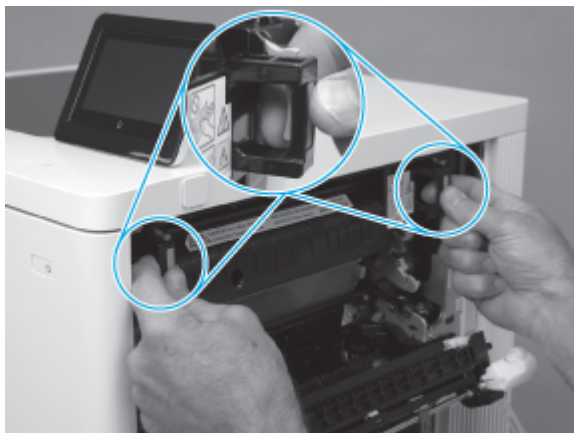
⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the printer power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

Figure 5-23 Open the right door



2. Grasp the two fuser handles, and then squeeze the two blue triggers on the handles to release the fuser.

Figure 5-24 Release the fuser



3. Slide the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-25 Remove the fuser



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

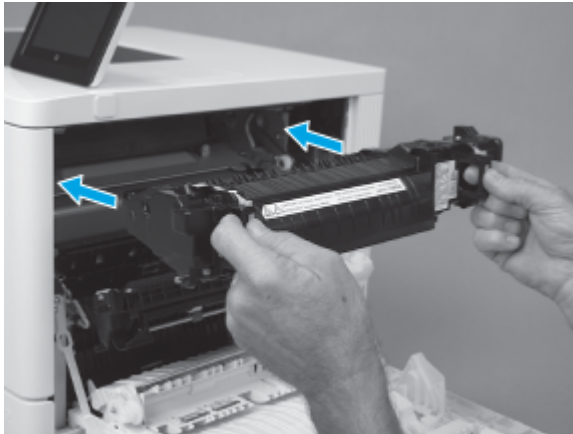
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3. Install the fuser

Follow these steps to install the fuser.

1. Align the fuser with the opening in the printer.

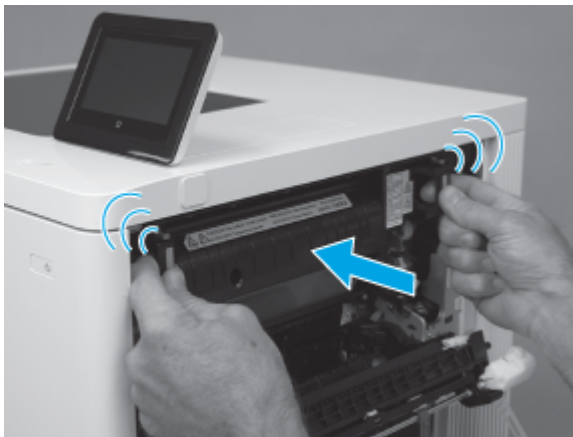
Figure 5-26 Align the fuser with the opening



2. Slide the fuser into the printer, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.

 **TIP:** When the fuser is fully seated, the two blue triggers on the handles make an audible click.

Figure 5-27 Install the fuser



3. Close the right door.

Figure 5-28 Close the right door



4. Reset the supplies counter

Follow these steps to reset the supplies counter.

The procedures in this section are for printers with FutureSmart 3 (FS3) firmware installed only)

- Turn the printer power on, and then do one of the following:

Reset the fuser counter from a touchscreen control panel

- a. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the **Administration** button.
- b. Open the following menus:
 - **Manage Supplies**
 - **Reset Supplies**
 - **New Fuser Kit**
- c. Select the **Yes** item to reset the fuser counter.

Reset the fuser counter from an SFP control panel

- a. From the Home screen on the control panel, use the down arrow button to scroll to **Administration**, and then press the **OK** button.
- b. Use the down arrow button to scroll to **Manage Supplies**, and then press the **OK** button.
- c. Use the down arrow button to scroll to **Reset Supplies**, and then press the **OK** button.
- d. Use the down arrow button to scroll to **New Fuser Kit**, and then press the **OK** button.
- e. Use the down arrow button to scroll to **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button to reset the fuser counter.

Removal and replacement: Hard-disk drive (HDD) (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the SFP hard-disk drive (HDD).



[View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the hard-disk drive.](#)

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.



IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and eMMC PCA or hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-10 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L29-67903	HP secure 500 GB high-performance hard disk drive (HDD)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove this part.

After performing service

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

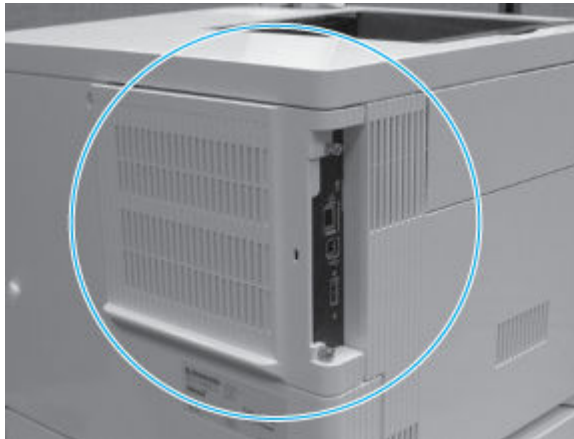
Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

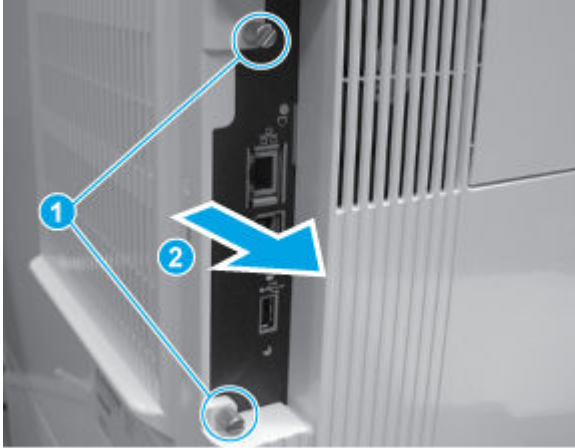
Figure 5-29 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-30 Loosen the thumbscrews

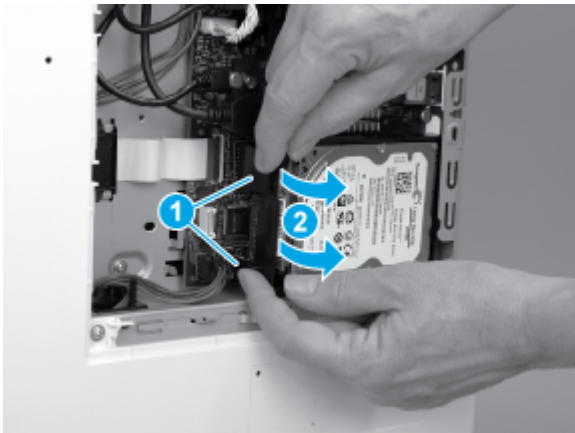


2. Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter.

Figure 5-31 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.

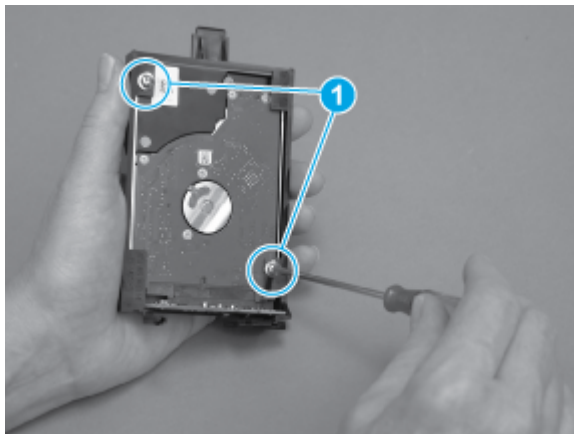
Figure 5-32 Remove the HDD



3. Using the screwdriver provided with the replacement HDD, remove two screws (callout 1). Save these screws. They will be installed on the replacement HDD.

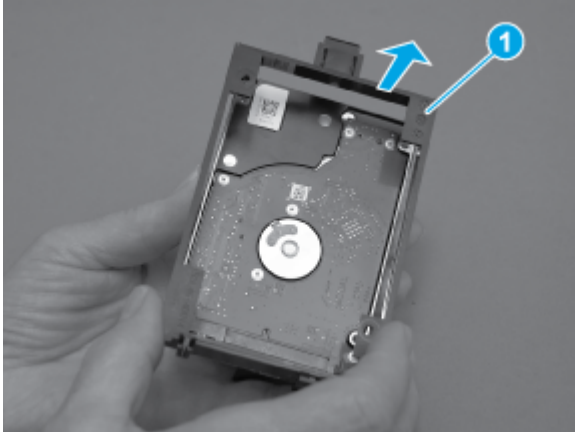
 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-33 Remove two screws



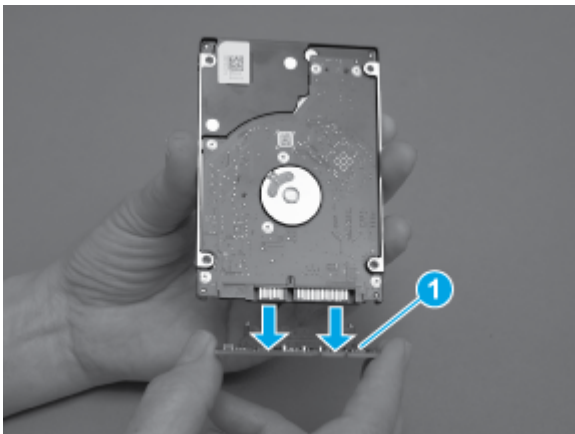
4. Lift the bracket (callout 1) up and off of the HDD. Save this bracket. It will be installed on the replacement HDD.

Figure 5-34 Remove the bracket



5. Grasp the PCA card (callout 1) attached to the end of the HDD and pull it away from the HDD to remove it. Save this PCA. It will be installed on the replacement HDD.

Figure 5-35 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

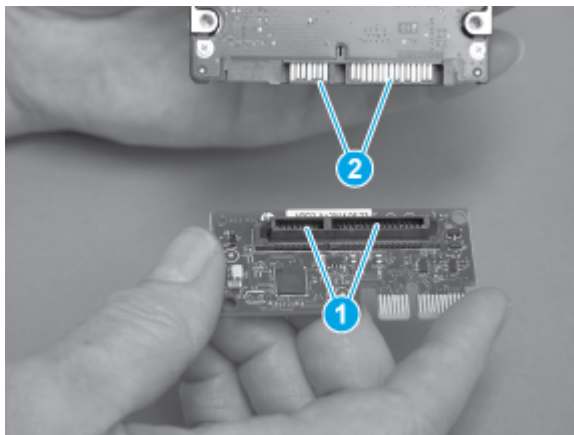
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4. Install the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to install the hard-disk drive (HDD).

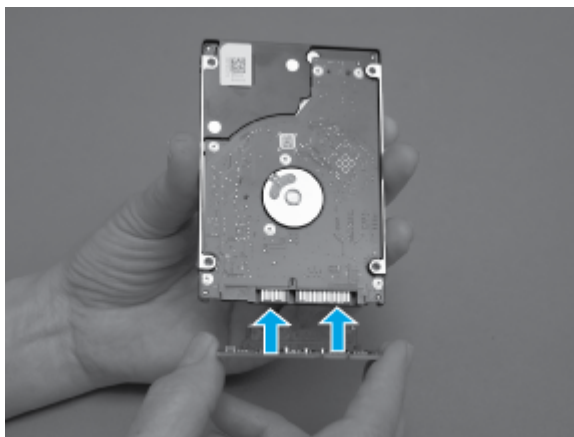
1. Align the slots (callout 1) on the PCA with the connectors (callout 2) on the replacement HDD.

Figure 5-36 Align the PCA



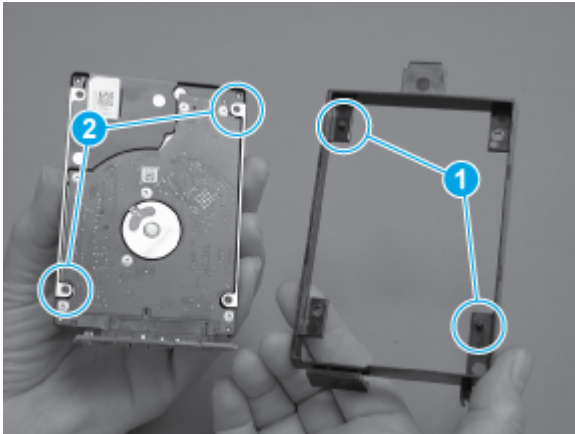
2. Press the PCA onto the HDD connectors. Make sure that the PCA is fully seated on the connectors.

Figure 5-37 Install the PCA



3. Align the tabs (callout 1) on the bracket with the holes (callout 2) in the back side of the HDD.

Figure 5-38 Align the tabs on the bracket



4. Install the bracket on the HDD.


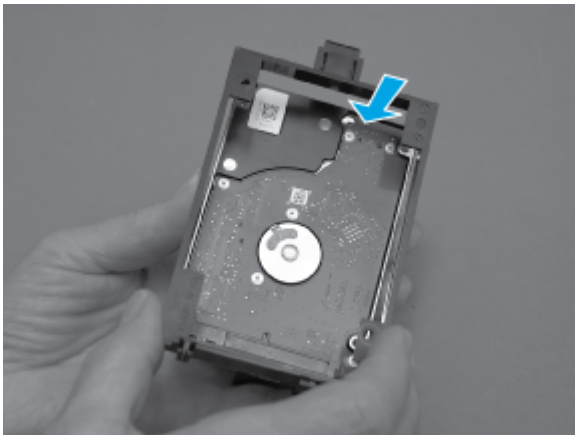
 **NOTE:** If the bracket is difficult to install, make sure that the holes in the HDD are correctly aligned with the tabs on the bracket.

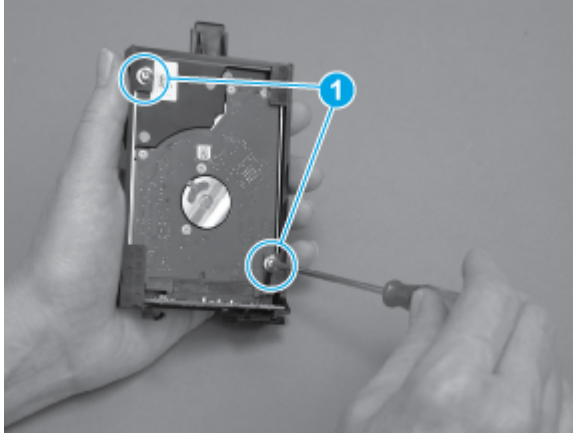
Figure 5-39 Install the bracket



5. Install two screws (callout 1).

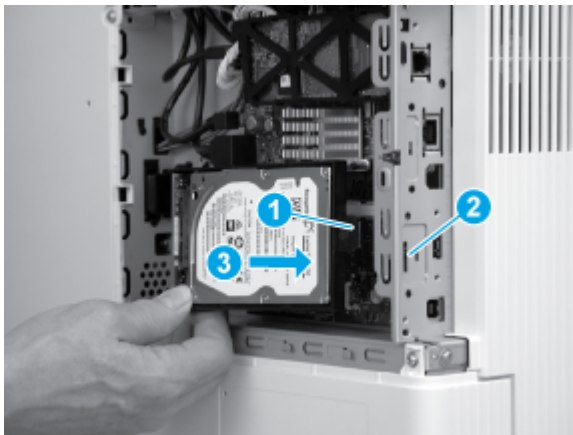
 **CAUTION:** Tighten the screws just enough to secure the HDD to the bracket. Do not over-tighten.

Figure 5-40 Install two screws



6. Align the end of the bracket (callout 1) with the slot in the chassis (callout 2), and then slide the HDD into the printer (callout 3) to engage the bracket with the chassis.

Figure 5-41 Install the holder



7. Hold the HDD connector latch (callout 1) in the released position, and then rotate the HDD down and into the connector on the formatter to install it.


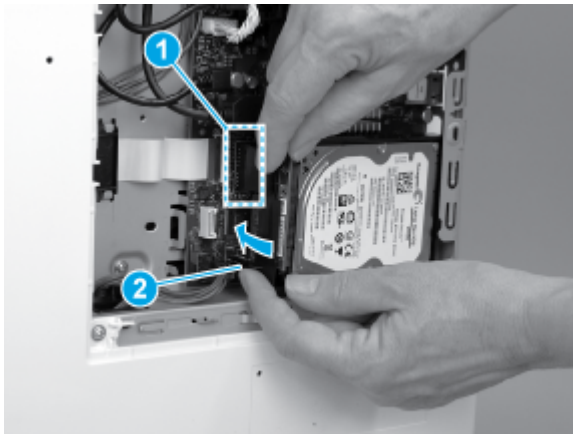
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tab (callout 2) snaps into place, and that the HDD is securely installed.

Figure 5-42 Release the HDD



5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).


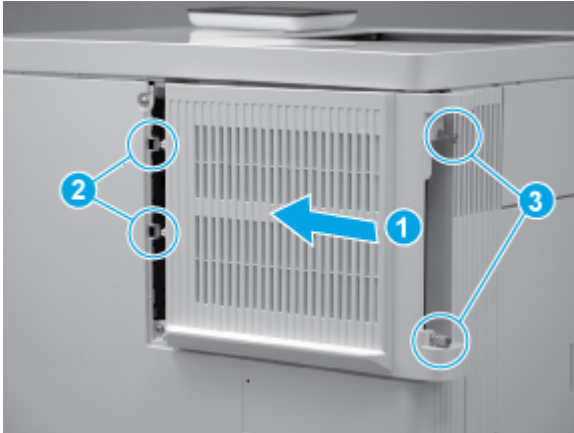
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-43 Install the cover



6. Reinstall the product firmware

Follow these steps to reinstall the product firmware.

1. Go to www.hp.com/go/futuresmart.
2. Select the **Upgrade now** button.
3. Use the drop-down lists to find the HP Enterprise or HP Managed printer model.
4. Select the **Link to Firmware download page**.
5. Select **Firmware** from the list of software and drivers.

 **CAUTION:** Downgrading from FutureSmart 4 to FutureSmart 3 will result in a loss of custom settings. Before upgrading to FutureSmart 4, go to the [FutureSmart Navigation Compass](#) to review the display differences and any feature modifications.

6. Select **Download** next to the desired firmware version.
7. For installation instructions, go to one of the following support sites:
 - One HP printer: [Updated firmware using a USB flash drive or the Embedded Web Server \(EWS\)](#)
 - Multiple HP printers at one time: [Updated firmware using Web Jetadmin](#)

 **NOTE:** To view installation instructions, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/futuresmart>. Select **Upgrade now**, and then select **How to perform a firmware update**.

Removal and replacement: Hard-disk drive (HDD) (M577/M578/E57540)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the MFP hard-disk drive (HDD).



[View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the hard-disk drive.](#)

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.



IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and eMMC PCA or hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-11 Part information

Part number	
5851-6712	500GB secure hard disk drive (HDD) assembly

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove this part.

After performing service

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

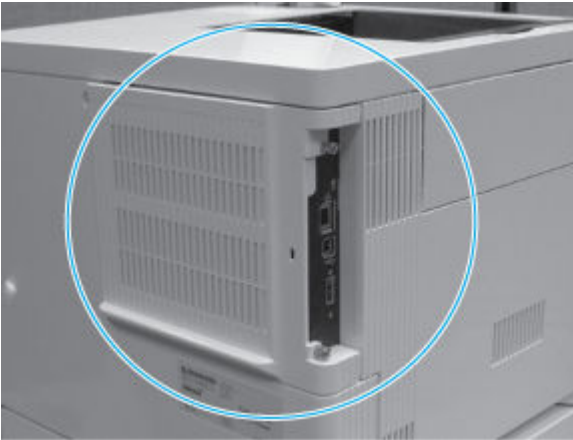
Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

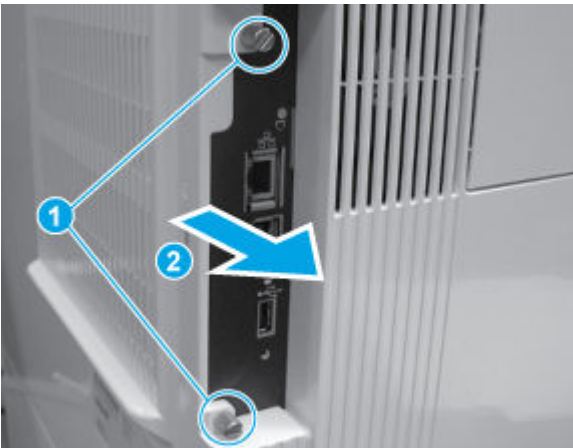
Figure 5-44 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-45 Loosen the thumbscrews

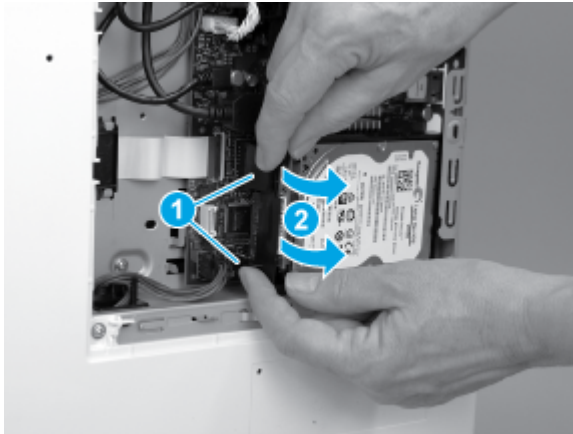


2. Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter.

Figure 5-46 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.

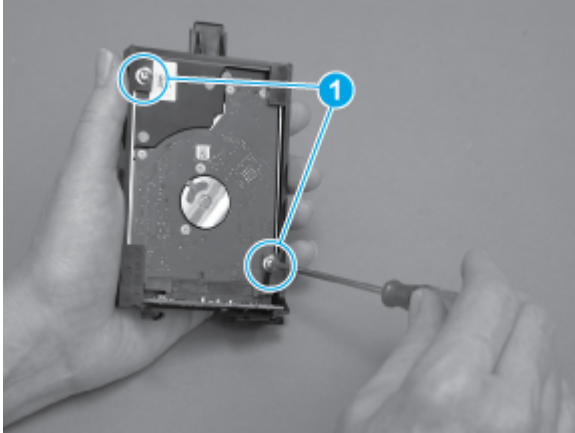
Figure 5-47 Remove the HDD



3. Using the screwdriver provided with the replacement HDD, remove two screws (callout 1). Save these screws. They will be installed on the replacement HDD.

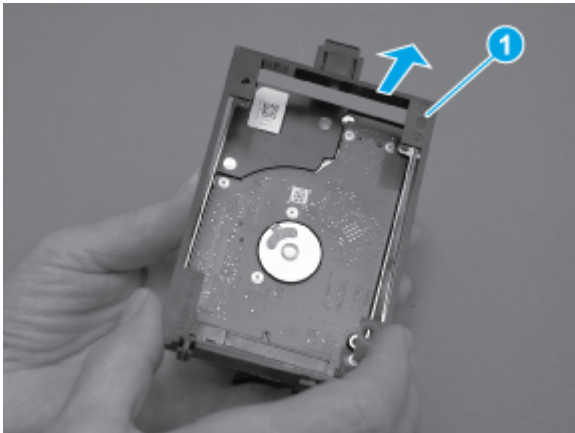
 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-48 Remove two screws



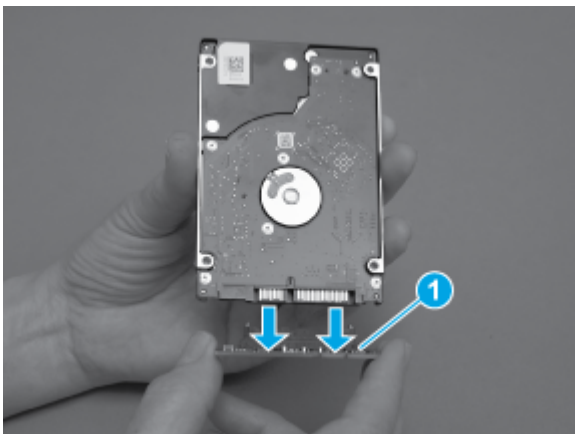
4. Lift the bracket (callout 1) up and off of the HDD. Save this bracket. It will be installed on the replacement HDD.

Figure 5-49 Remove the bracket



5. Grasp the PCA card (callout 1) attached to the end of the HDD and pull it away from the HDD to remove it. Save this PCA. It will be installed on the replacement HDD.

Figure 5-50 Remove the PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

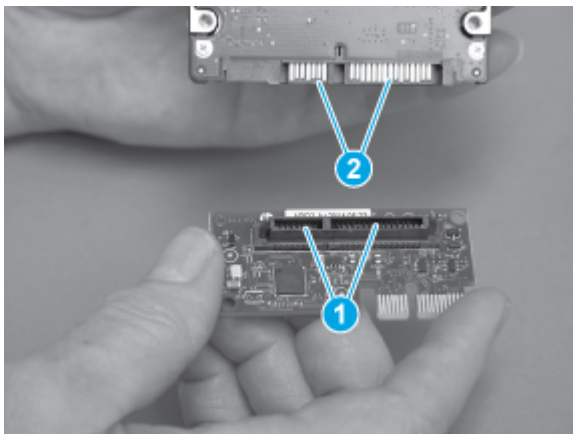
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4. Install the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to install the hard-disk drive (HDD).

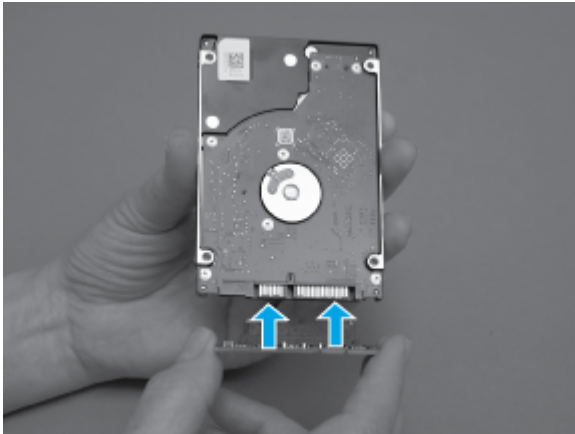
1. Align the slots (callout 1) on the PCA with the connectors (callout 2) on the replacement HDD.

Figure 5-51 Align the PCA



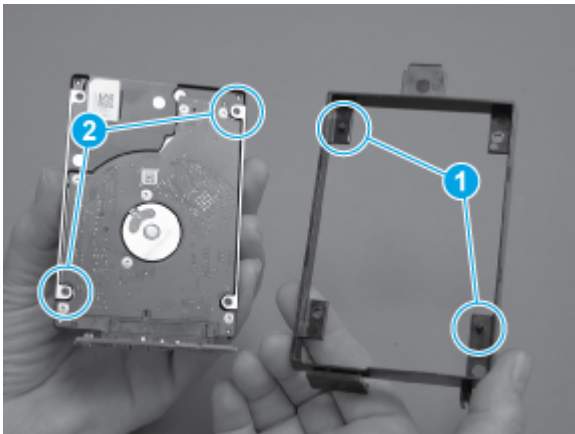
2. Press the PCA onto the HDD connectors. Make sure that the PCA is fully seated on the connectors.

Figure 5-52 Install the PCA



3. Align the tabs (callout 1) on the bracket with the holes (callout 2) in the back side of the HDD.

Figure 5-53 Align the tabs on the bracket



4. Install the bracket on the HDD.


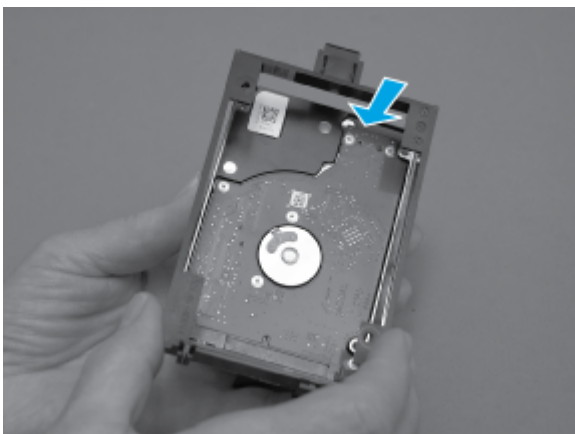
 **NOTE:** If the bracket is difficult to install, make sure that the holes in the HDD are correctly aligned with the tabs on the bracket.

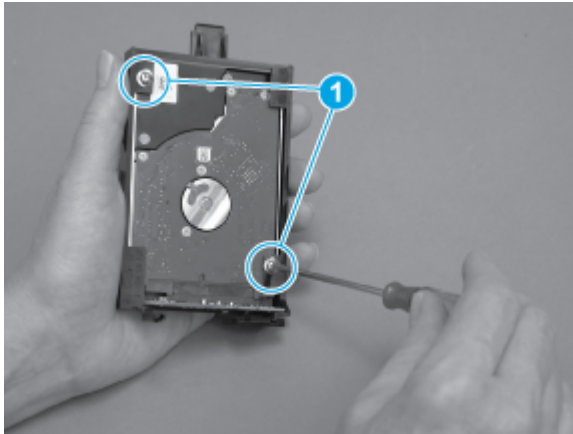
Figure 5-54 Install the bracket



5. Install two screws (callout 1).

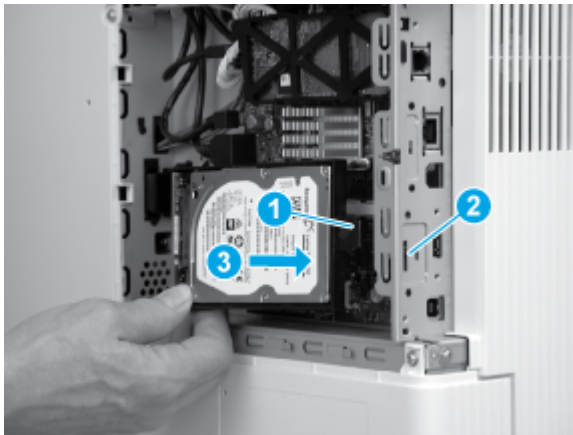
CAUTION: Tighten the screws just enough to secure the HDD to the bracket. Do not over-tighten.

Figure 5-55 Install two screws



6. Align the end of the bracket (callout 1) with the slot in the chassis (callout 2), and then slide the HDD into the printer (callout 3) to engage the bracket with the chassis.

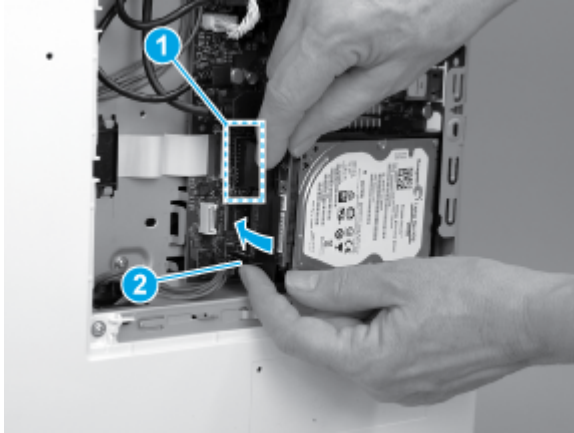
Figure 5-56 Install the holder



7. Hold the HDD connector latch (callout 1) in the released position, and then rotate the HDD down and into the connector on the formatter to install it.

NOTE: Make sure that the tab (callout 2) snaps into place, and that the HDD is securely installed.

Figure 5-57 Release the HDD



5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).


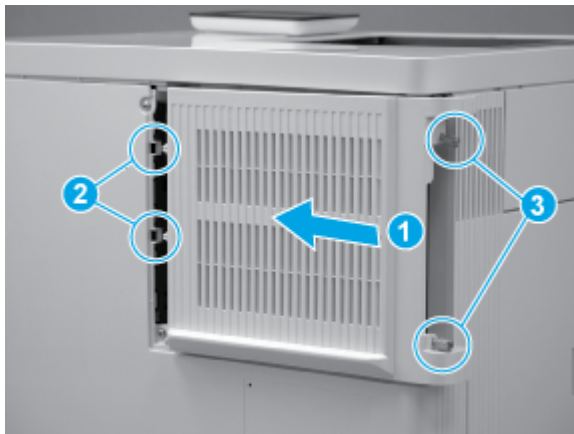
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-58 Install the cover



6. Reinstall the product firmware

Follow these steps to reinstall the product firmware.

1. Go to www.hp.com/go/futuresmart.
2. Select the **Upgrade now** button.
3. Use the drop-down lists to find the HP Enterprise or HP Managed printer model.
4. Select the **Link to Firmware download page**.

5. Select **Firmware** from the list of software and drivers.

⚠ CAUTION: Downgrading from FutureSmart 4 to FutureSmart 3 will result in a loss of custom settings. Before upgrading to FutureSmart 4, go to the [FutureSmart Navigation Compass](#) to review the display differences and any feature modifications.

6. Select **Download** next to the desired firmware version.

7. For installation instructions, go to one of the following support sites:

- One HP printer: [Updated firmware using a USB flash drive or the Embedded Web Server \(EWS\)](#)
- Multiple HP printers at one time: [Updated firmware using Web Jetadmin](#)

📄 NOTE: To view installation instructions, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/futuresmart>. Select **Upgrade now**, and then select **How to perform a firmware update**.

Removal and replacement: Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

Learn about removing and replacing the dual in-line memory module (DIMM).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-12 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-6422	1GB DDR3 Slim DIMM

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

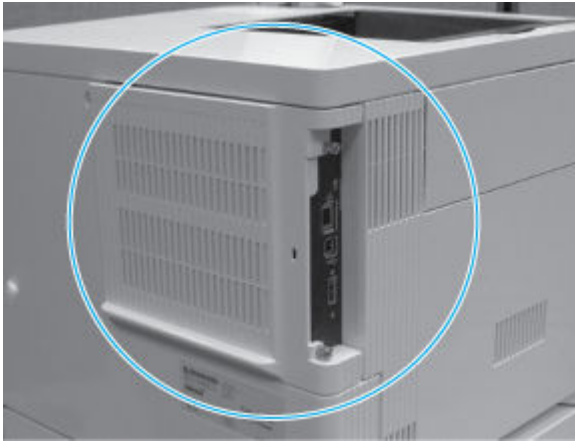
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

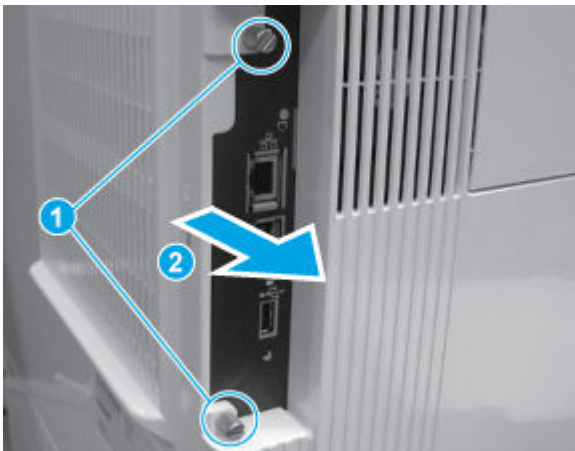
Figure 5-59 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-60 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

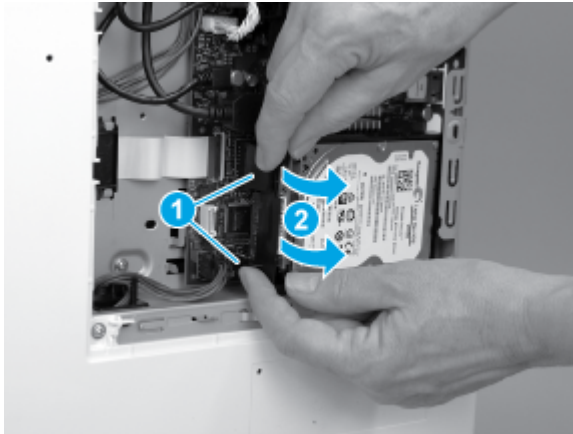
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-61 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-62 Remove the HDD



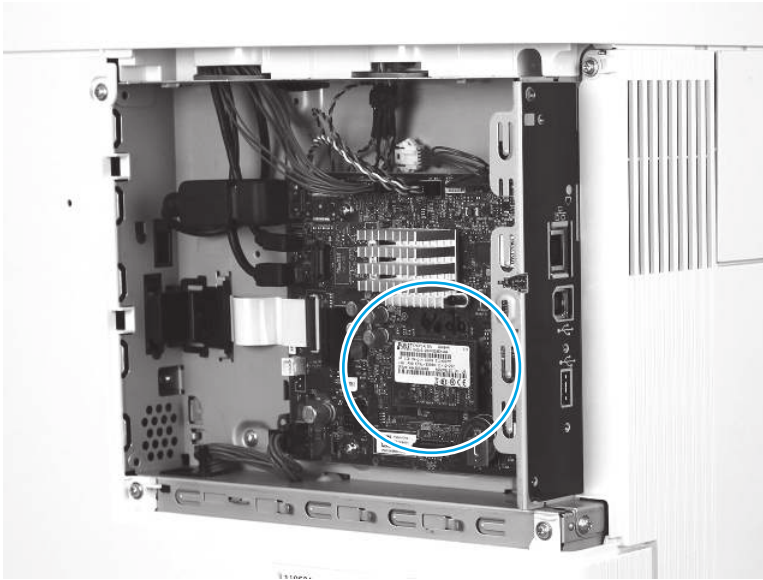
Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM)

Follow these steps to remove the DIMM.

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

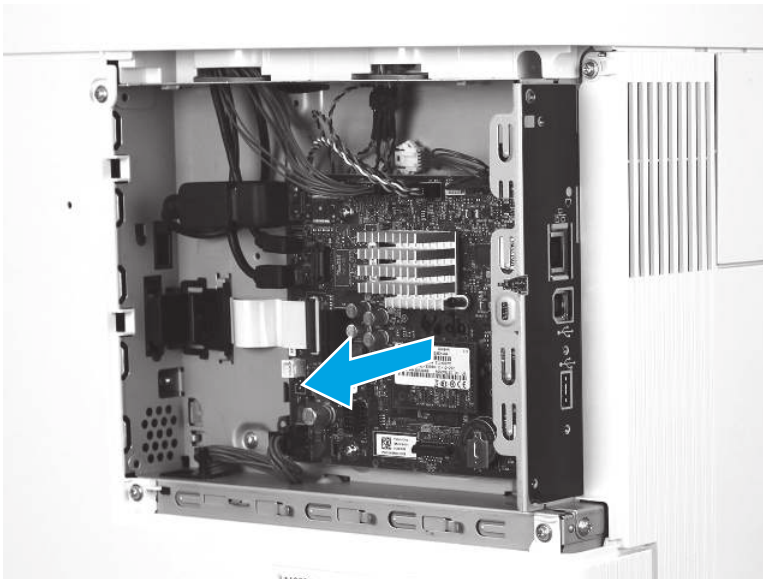
1. Locate the DIMM component on the formatter.

Figure 5-63 Locate the DIMM



2. Pull the DIMM straight off of the formatter to remove it.

Figure 5-64 Remove the DIMM



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

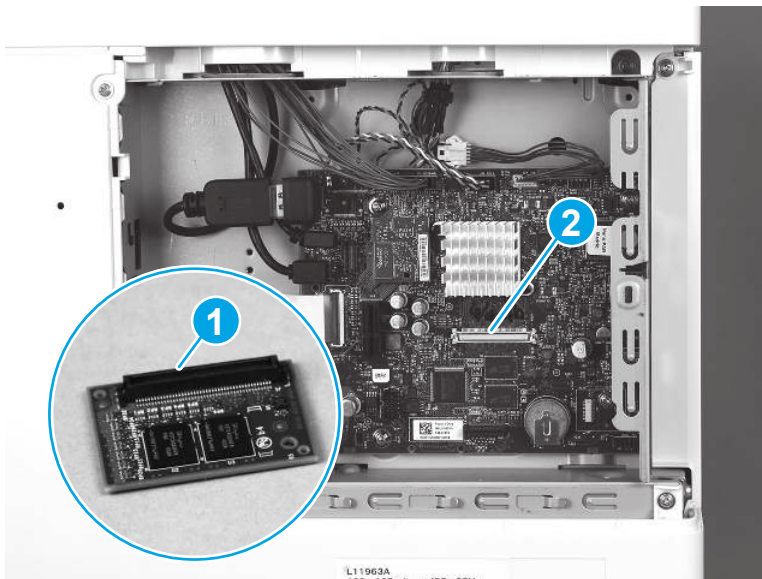
Install the DIMM

Follow these steps to install the DIMM.

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

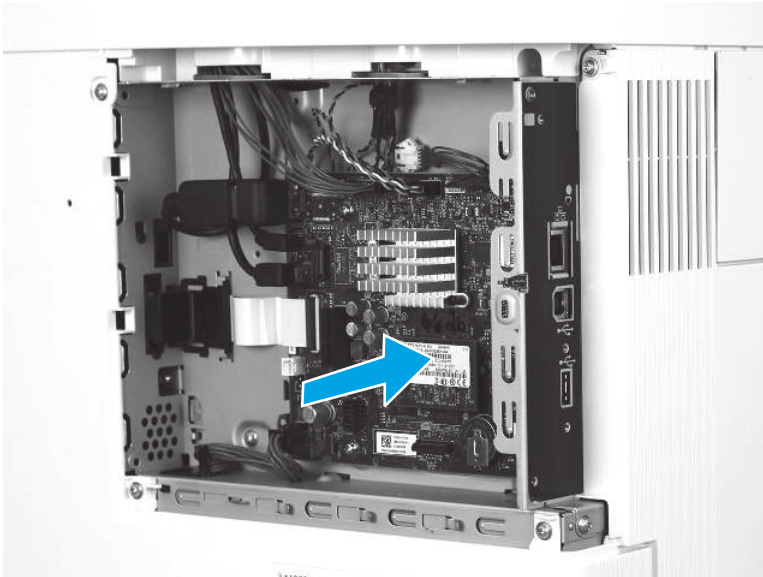
1. The DIMM connector (callout 1) is keyed, and can only be installed in one direction in the formatter connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-65 The DIMM connector



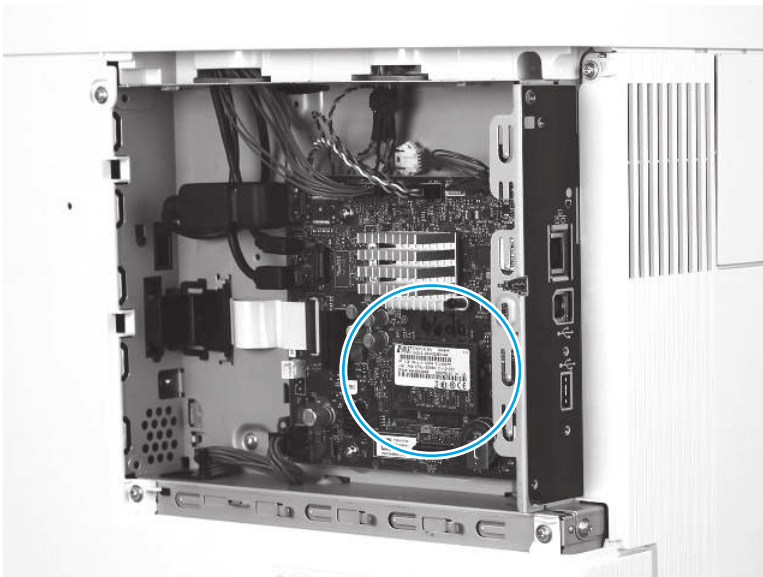
2. Align the connector on the DIMM with the connector on the formatter, and then push the DIMM onto the formatter to install it.

Figure 5-66 Install the DIMM



3. Verify that the DIMM is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 5-67 Verify the installation



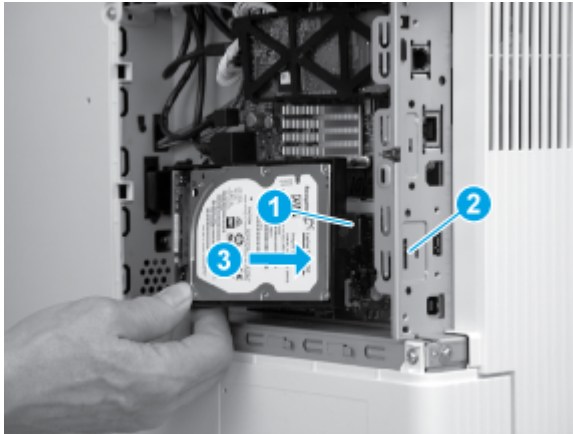
Install the HDD

Follow these steps to install the HD).

An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

1. Align the end of the bracket (callout 1) with the slot in the chassis (callout 2), and then slide the HDD into the printer (callout 3) to engage the bracket with the chassis.

Figure 5-68 Install the holder



2. Hold the HDD connector latch (callout 1) in the released position, and then rotate the HDD down and into the connector on the formatter to install it.


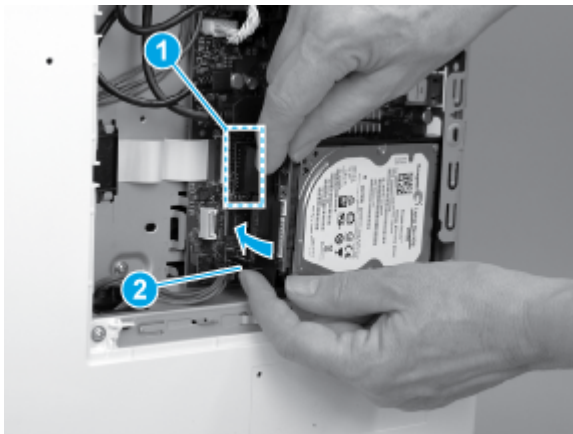
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tab (callout 2) snaps into place, and that the HDD is securely installed.

Figure 5-69 Release the HDD



Install the formatter cover

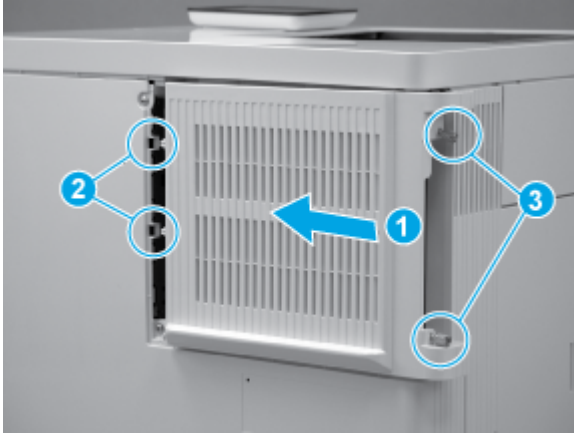
Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-70 Install the cover

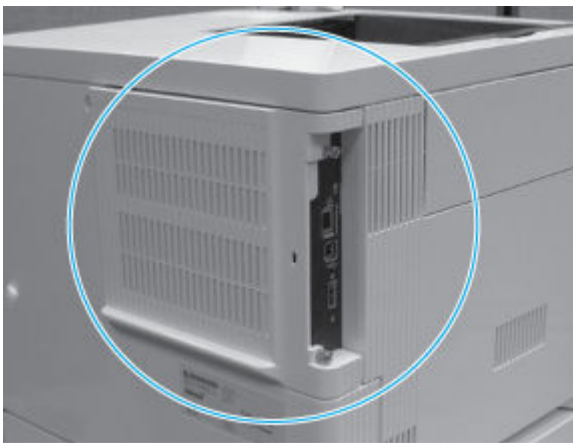


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-71 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-72 Loosen the thumbscrews



Removal and replacement: Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the dual in-line memory module (DIMM).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-13 Part information

Part number	Part description
E5K48-67902	1GB Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) with instruction guide (MFP)
5851-6581	2 GB Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) with instruction guide (MFP)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

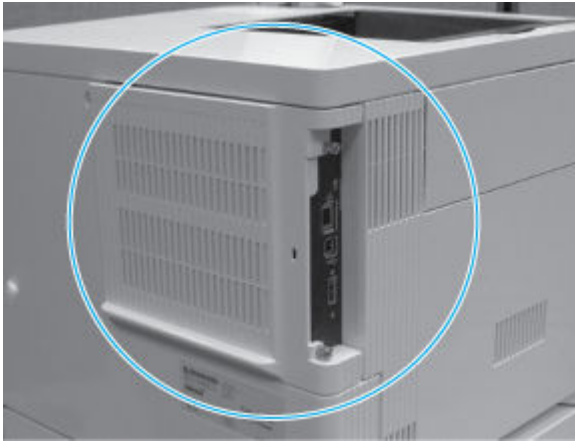
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

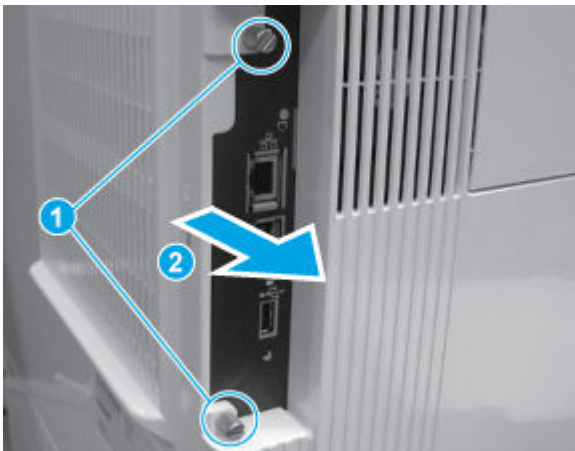
Figure 5-73 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-74 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

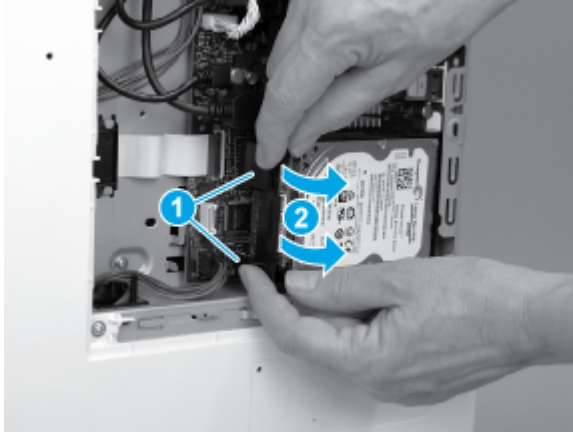
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-75 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-76 Remove the HDD



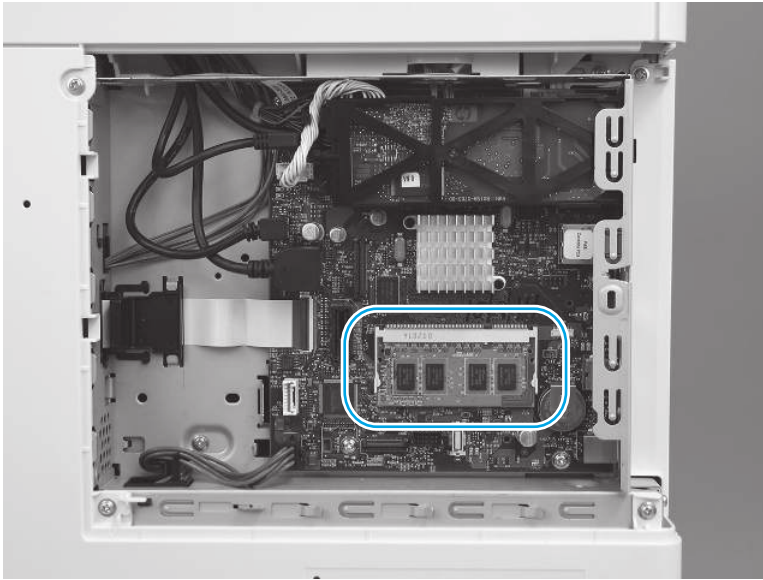
Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM)

Follow these steps to remove the DIMM.

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

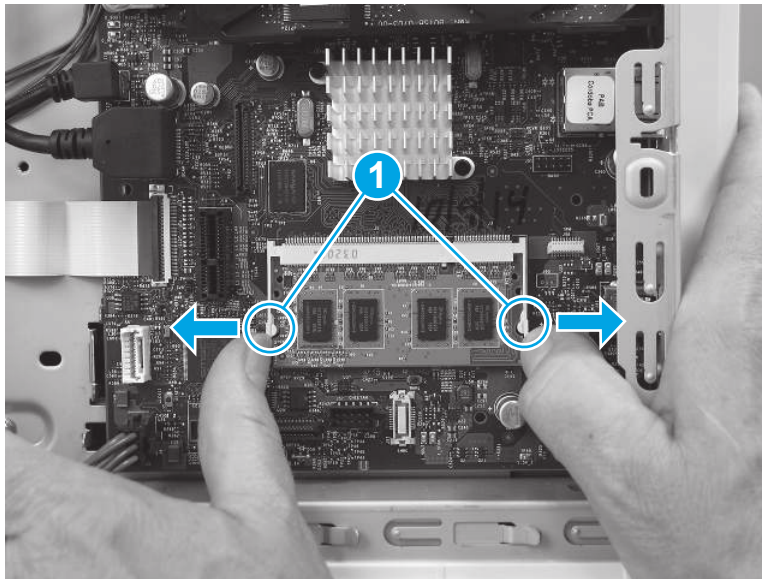
1. Locate the DIMM component on the formatter.

Figure 5-77 Locate the DIMM



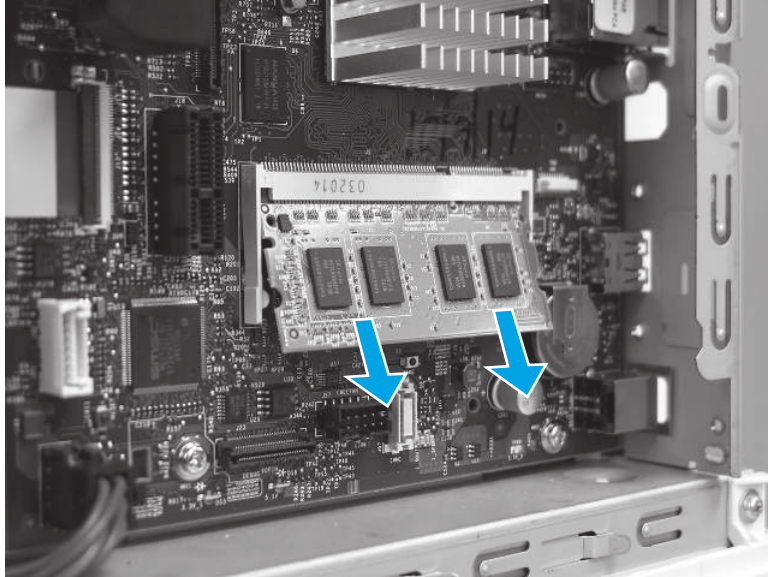
2. Do the following:
 - a. Release two locking arms (callout 1).

Figure 5-78 Release the DIMM



- b. Pull the DIMM down and away from the holder to remove it.


Figure 5-79 Remove the DIMM



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the DIMM

Follow these steps to install the DIMM.

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Insert the top edge of the DIMM (callout 1) in the holder (callout 2).


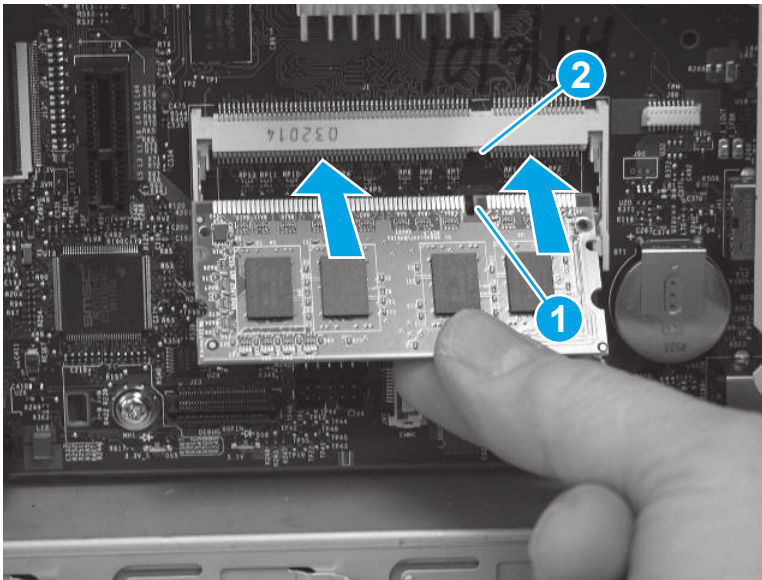
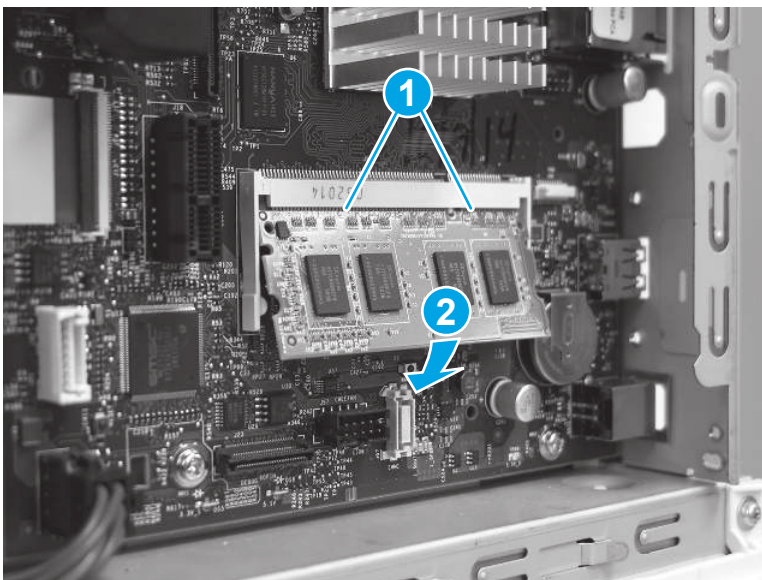
 **NOTE:** The DIMM is keyed and can only be inserted in the holder one way.

Figure 5-80 Insert the DIMM



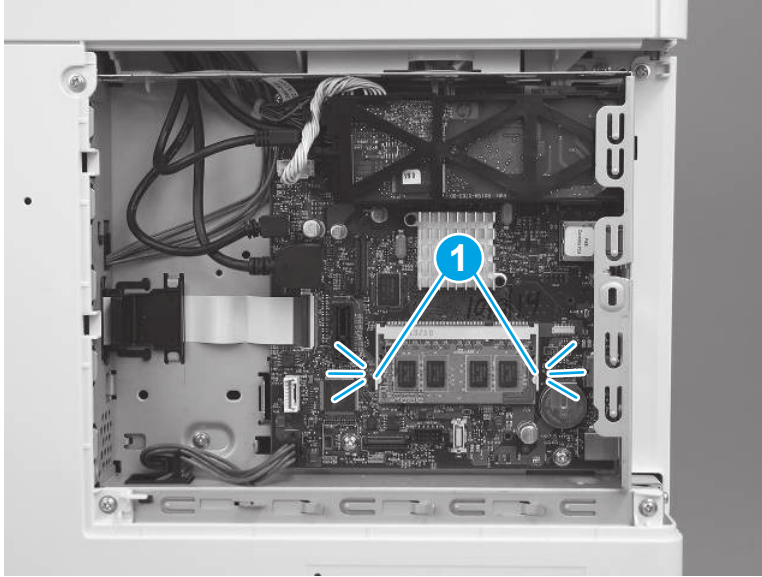
2. Make sure that the DIMM is fully installed in the holder (callout 1), and then rotate the bottom edge of the DIMM toward the holder (callout 2).

Figure 5-81 Install the DIMM



3. Make sure that the DIMM snaps into the locking arms (callout 1).

Figure 5-82 Snap the DIMM into place



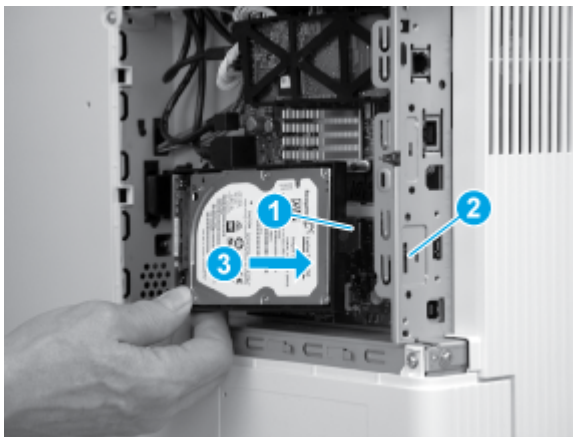
Install the HDD

Follow these steps to install the HD).

An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

1. Align the end of the bracket (callout 1) with the slot in the chassis (callout 2), and then slide the HDD into the printer (callout 3) to engage the bracket with the chassis.

Figure 5-83 Install the holder



2. Hold the HDD connector latch (callout 1) in the released position, and then rotate the HDD down and into the connector on the formatter to install it.


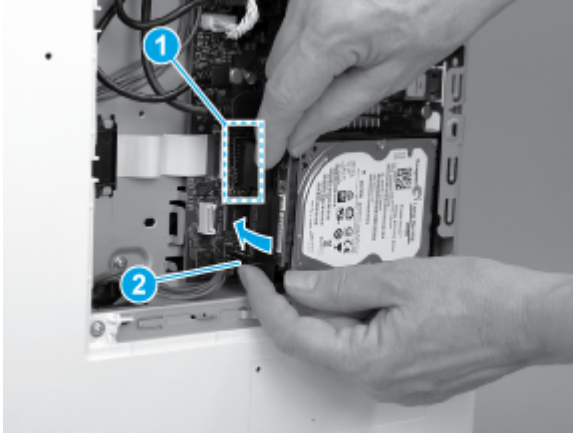
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tab (callout 2) snaps into place, and that the HDD is securely installed.

Figure 5-84 Release the HDD



Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).


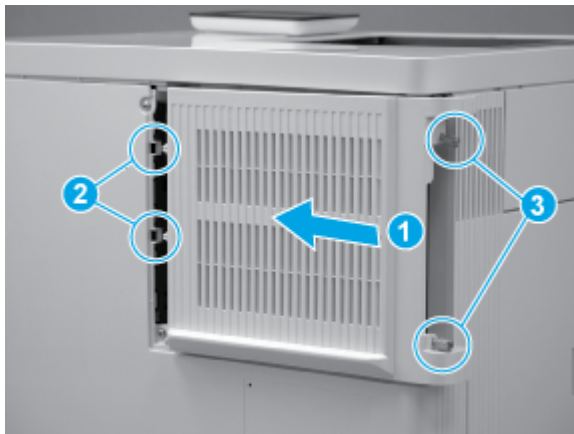
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-85 Install the cover

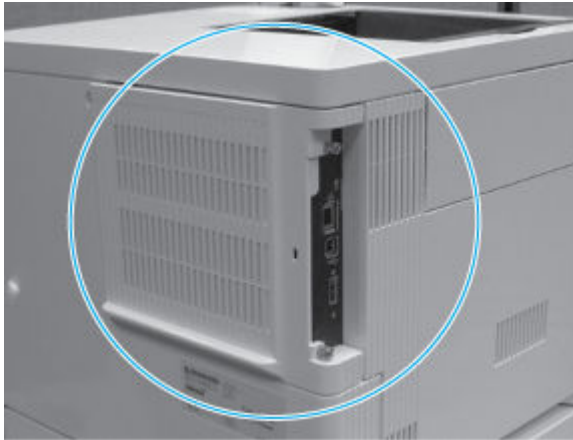


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-86 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


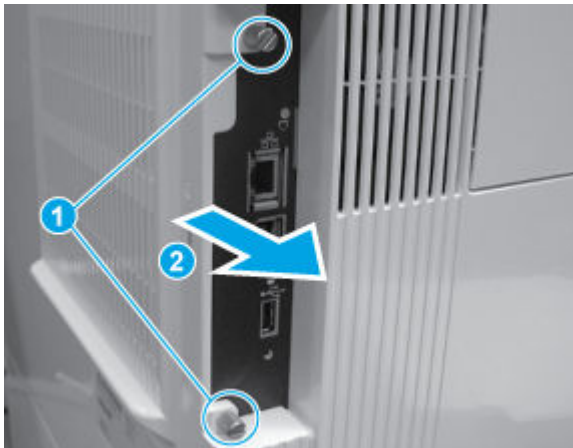
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-87 Loosen the thumbscrews




Removal and replacement: embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC) (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)


Learn about removing and replacing the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-14 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-6436	4 GB embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC) with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

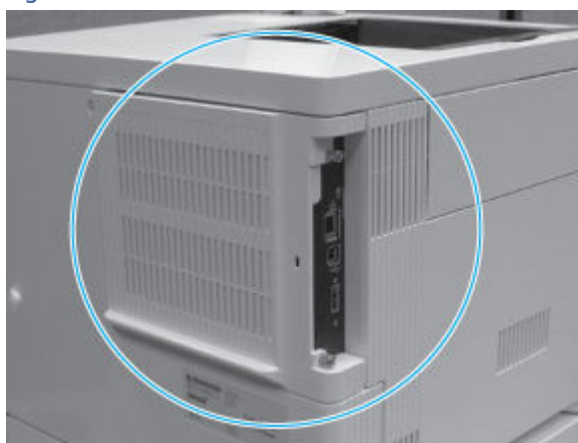
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-88 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


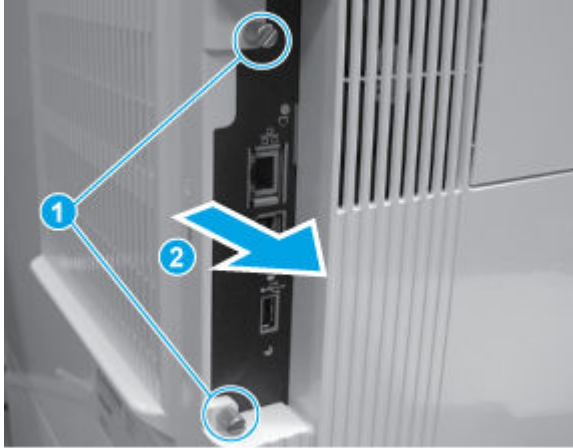
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-89 Loosen the thumbscrews



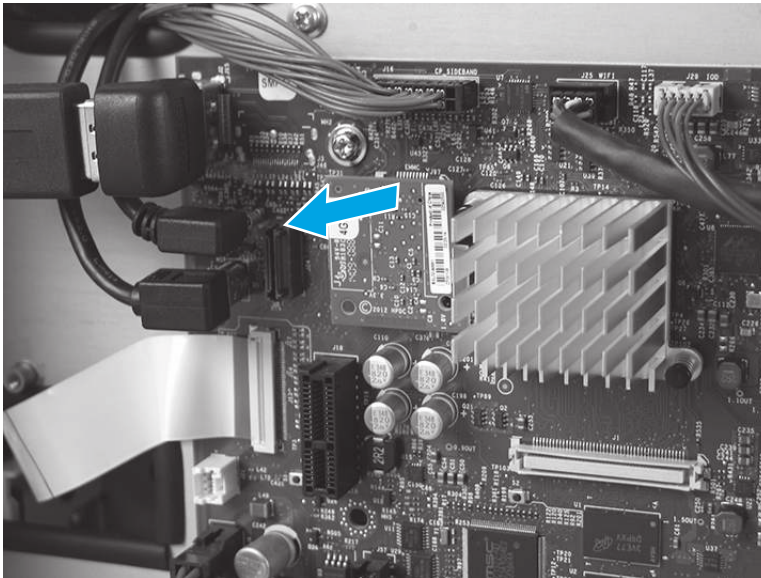
Remove the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC)

Follow these steps to remove the eMMC.

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

- Locate the eMMC component on the formatter, and then pull it straight off of the formatter to remove it.

Figure 5-90 Remove the eMMC



Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the eMMC

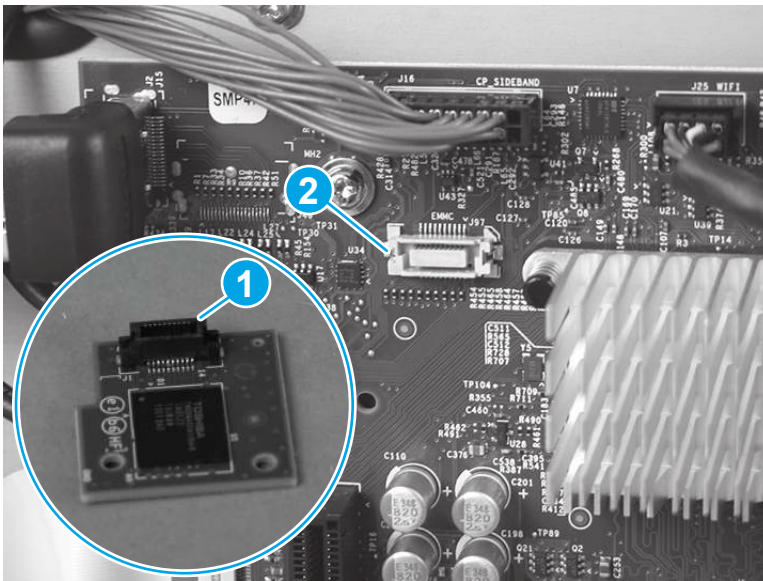
Follow these steps to install the eMMC.

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Align the connector on the replacement eMMC (callout 1) with the connector on the formatter (callout 2), and then push the eMMC onto the formatter to install it.

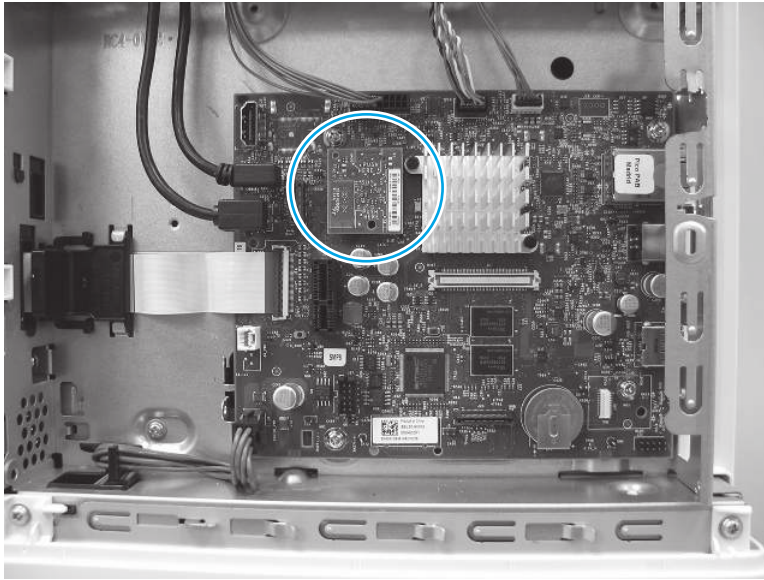
NOTE:  The eMMC can only be installed in one direction on the formatter

Figure 5-91 Install the eMMC



2. Push down on the eMMC to make sure that it is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 5-92 Verify the installation



Install the formatter cover

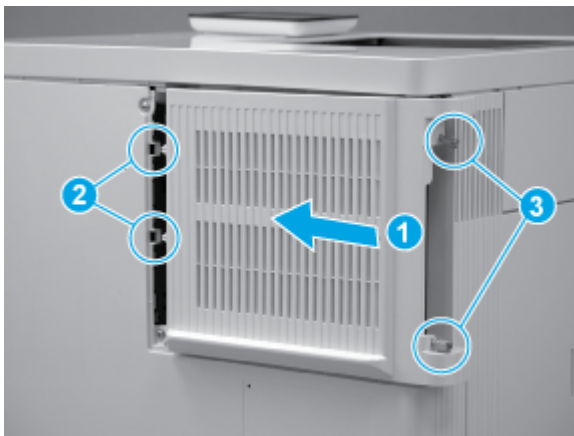
Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-93 Install the cover

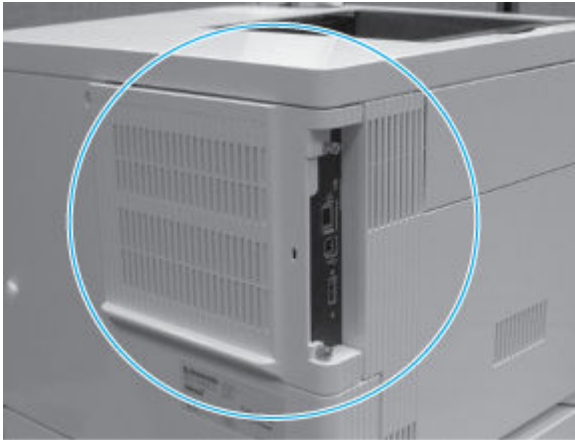


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

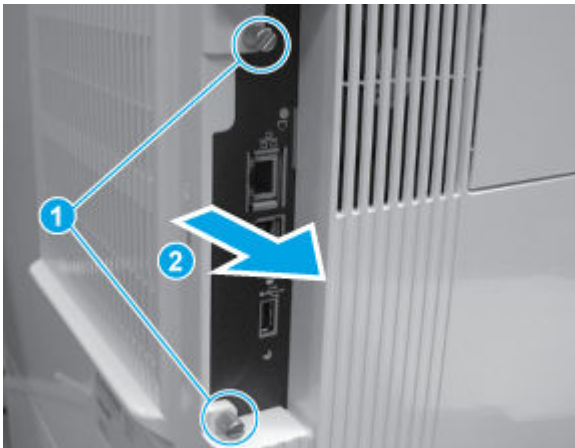
Figure 5-94 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-95 Loosen the thumbscrews



Reinstall the product firmware

Follow these steps to reinstall the product firmware.

1. Go to www.hp.com/go/futuresmart.
2. Select the **Upgrade now** button.
3. Use the drop-down lists to find the HP Enterprise or HP Managed printer model.
4. Select the **Link to Firmware download page**.
5. Select **Firmware** from the list of software and drivers.

 **CAUTION:** Downgrading from FutureSmart 4 to FutureSmart 3 will result in a loss of custom settings. Before upgrading to FutureSmart 4, go to the [FutureSmart Navigation Compass](#) to review the display differences and any feature modifications.

6. Select **Download** next to the desired firmware version.
7. For installation instructions, go to one of the following support sites:
 - One HP printer: [Updated firmware using a USB flash drive or the Embedded Web Server \(EWS\)](#)
 - Multiple HP printers at one time: [Updated firmware using Web Jetadmin](#)

 **NOTE:** To view installation instructions, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/futuresmart>. Select **Upgrade now**, and then select **How to perform a firmware update**.


Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer roller


Learn about removing and replacing the secondary transfer roller.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-15 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-6575-000CN	Secondary transfer roller with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the secondary transfer roller

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer roller.

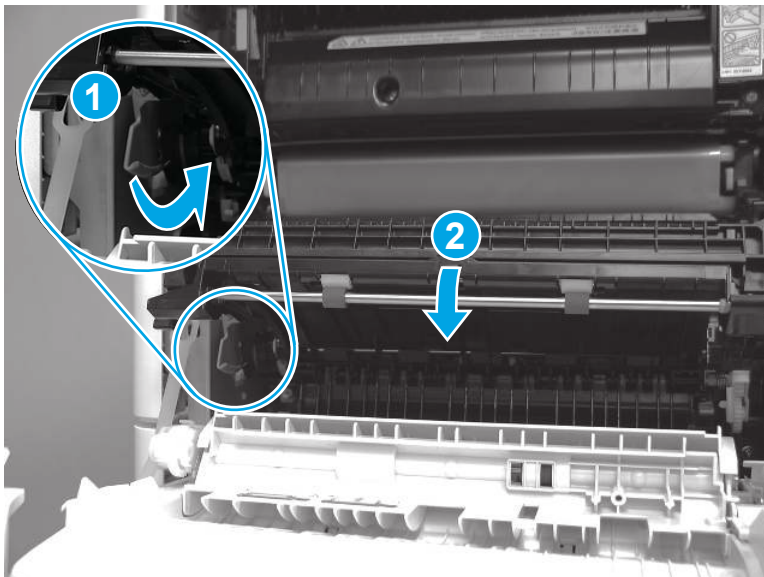
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-96 Open the right door



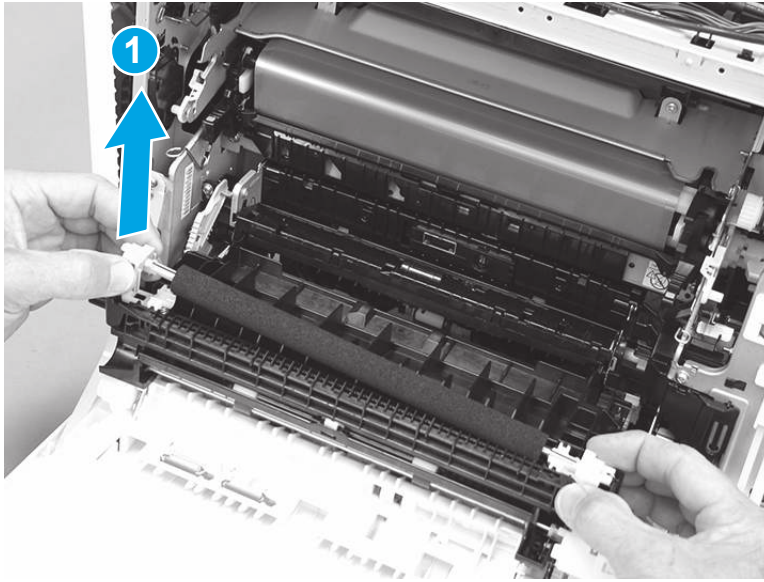
2. Push in on the blue lever (callout 1) to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then lower the assembly (callout 2) to the service position.

Figure 5-97 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



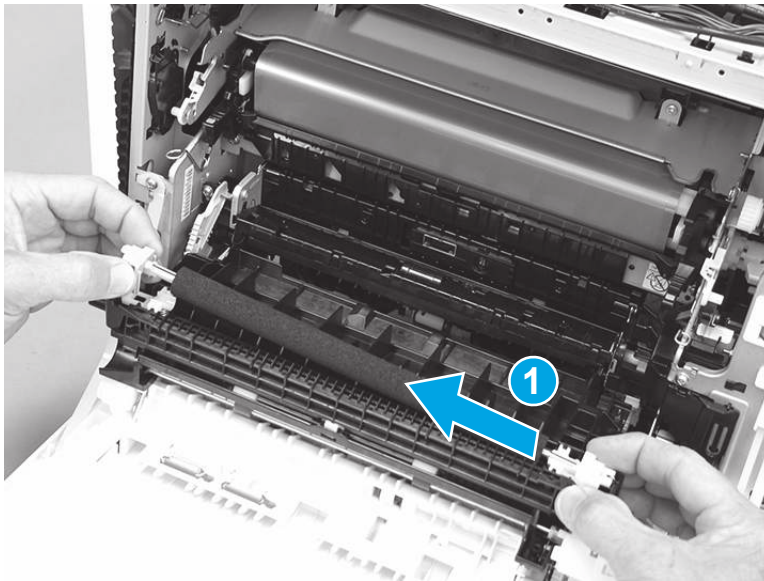
3. Slightly lift the left end of the roller shaft (callout 1; near the gear) to release the transfer roller clip.

Figure 5-98 Release the secondary transfer roller clip



4. Slide the right end roller collar (callout 1) to the left to remove the transfer roller.

Figure 5-99 Remove the secondary transfer roller



Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the secondary transfer roller

Follow these steps to install the secondary transfer roller.

1. Insert the right end (white plastic) of the replacement roller into the holder (callout 1), and then push down on the left end (blue plastic clip; callout 2) until the roller snaps into place.


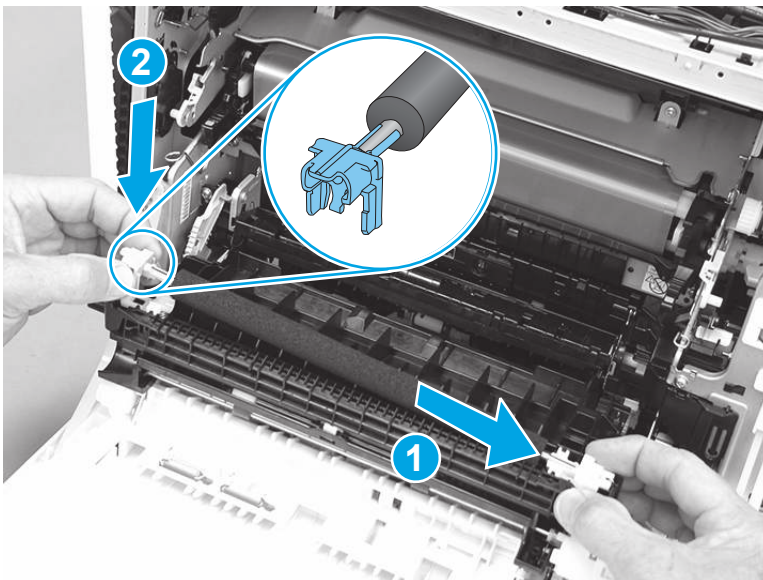
IMPORTANT:  Make sure that both ends of the roller assembly are fully seated in the holders.

Figure 5-100 Install the secondary transfer roller



2. Close the right door.

Figure 5-101 Close the right door



Removal and replacement: Universal Serial Bus (USB) cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

Learn about removing and replacing the USB port cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-16 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-0214-000CN	USB cover

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

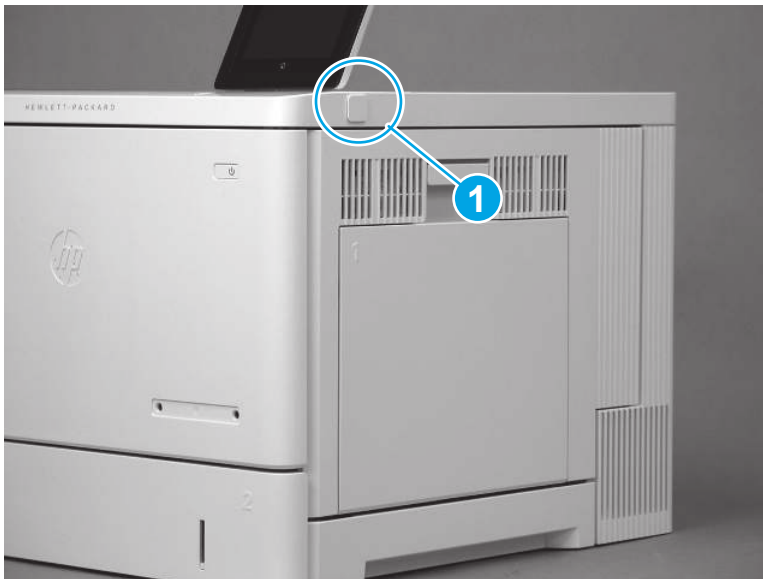
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-102 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-103 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the USB cover

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

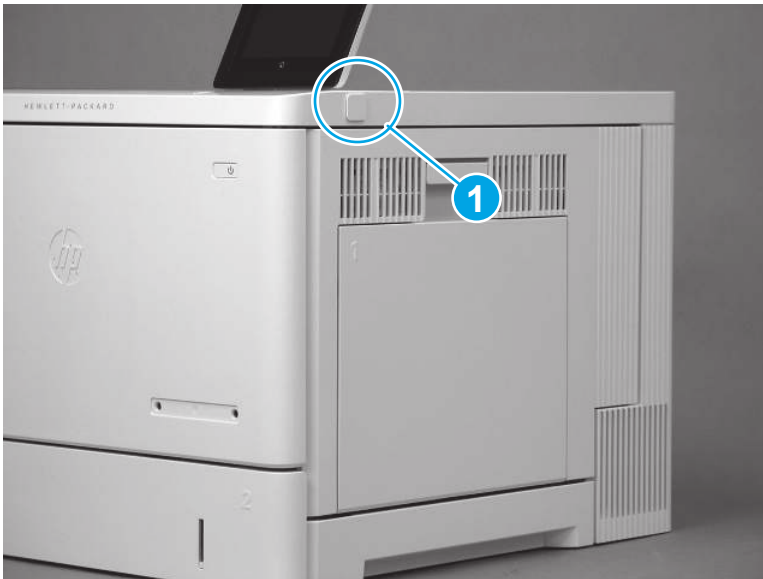
1. Push the cover into the USB port to install it.

Figure 5-104 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the USB cover (callout 1) is fully seated after installing it.

Figure 5-105 Check the installation



Removal and replacement: Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

Learn about removing and replacing the hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-17 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-1812-000CN	HIP cover

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the HIP cover

Follow these steps to remove the HIP cover.

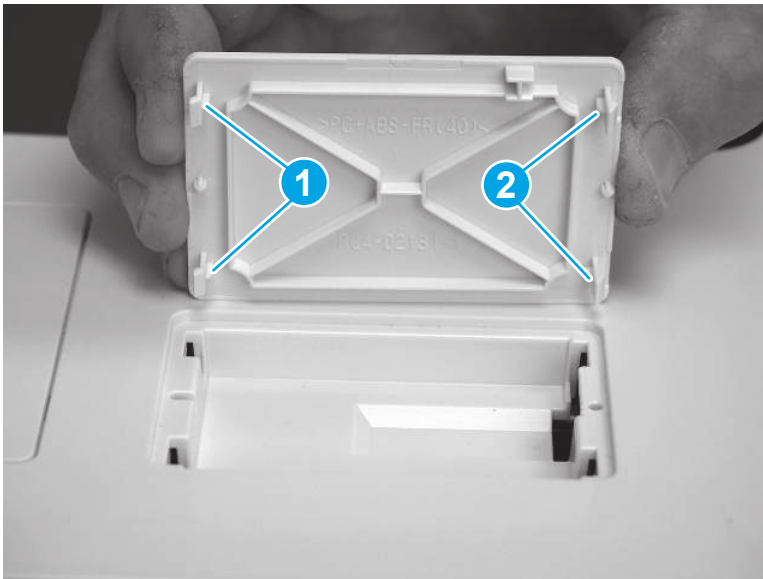
1. Locate the HIP cover.

Figure 5-106 Locate the HIP cover



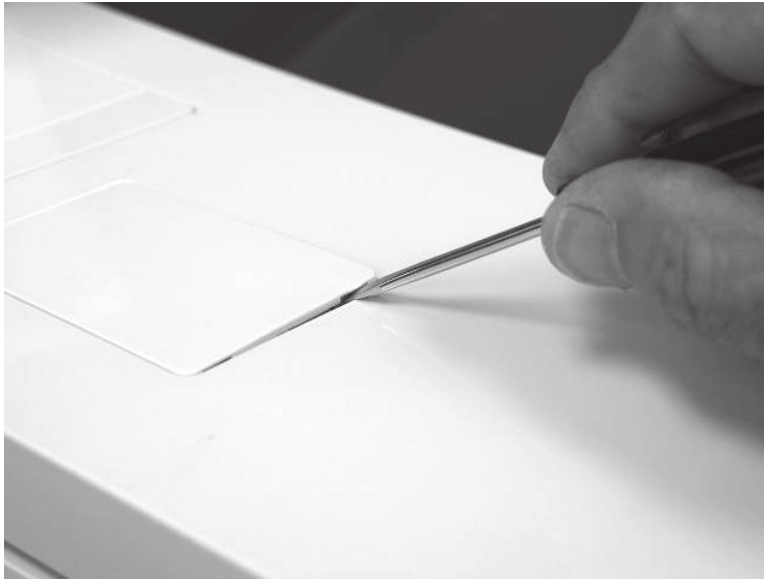
2. Before proceeding, take note of the mounting feet (callout 1) and tabs (callout 2) on the HIP cover.

Figure 5-107 Note the mounting feet and tabs



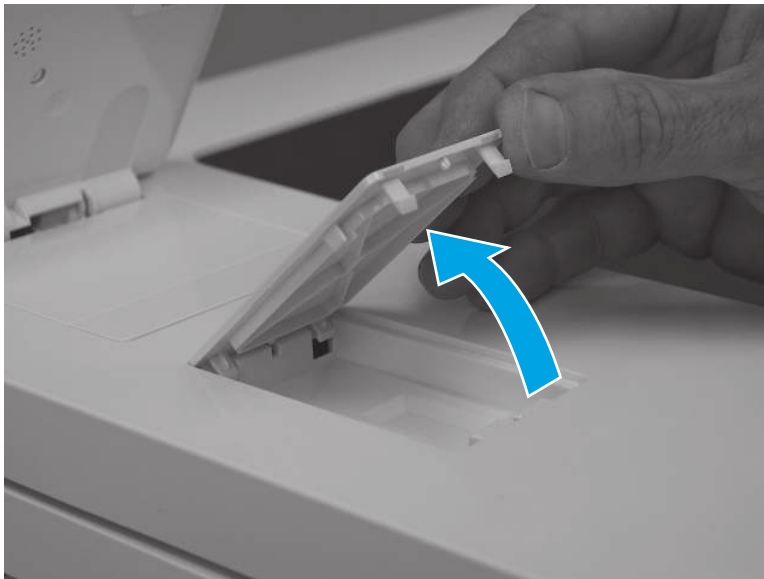
3. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release the tabs on the HIP cover.

Figure 5-108 Release the cover



4. Rotate the cover up and off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-109 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the HIP cover

Follow these steps to remove the HIP cover.

1. Position the HIP cover mounting feed in the slots (callout 1) provided in the top cover, and then rotate it down to install it.


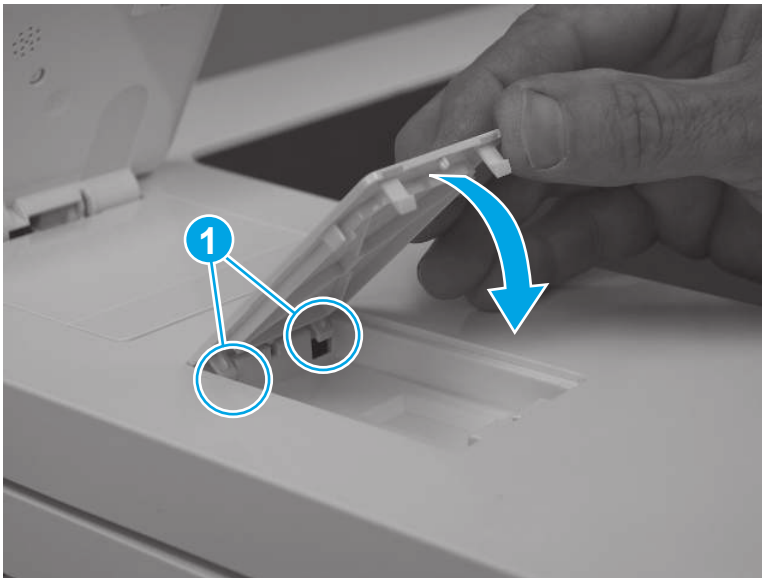
NOTE:  Make sure that the tabs on the cover snap into place.

Figure 5-110 Install the cover



2. Make sure that the HIP cover is fully seated after installing it.

Figure 5-111 Check the installation



Removal and replacement: Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-18 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L46-40021	HIP cover

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the HIP cover

Follow these steps to remove the HIP cover.

1. Locate the HIP cover.

Figure 5-112 Locate the HIP cover



2. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release the tabs on the HIP cover.

Figure 5-113 Release the cover



3. Rotate the cover up and off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-114 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

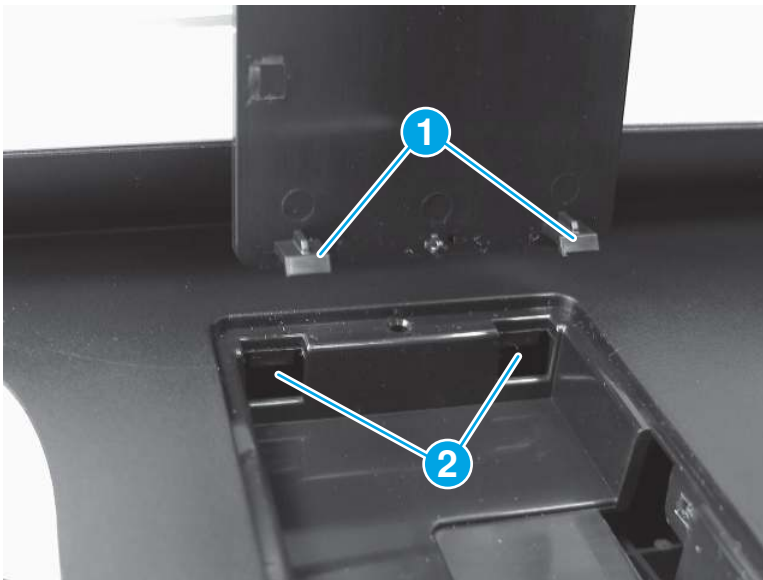
NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the HIP cover

Follow these steps to remove the HIP cover.

1. Position the tabs (callout 1) on the HIP cover in the slots (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-115 Position the cover



2. Rotate the cover down.

NOTE:  Make sure that the tabs on the cover snap into place.

Figure 5-116 Install the cover



3. Make sure that the HIP cover is fully seated after installing it.

Figure 5-117 Check the installation



Removal and replacement: Control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the control panel.


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-19 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L24-67903	Control panel (M553x/E55040dw/E55040dn)
KOQ15-67904	Kit - control panel 4.3 inch CLJ M555

Required tools

- Reversible small, flat-blade screwdriver and #2 Phillips screwdriver (included with the control panel)

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

The printer includes a diagnostic test mode for the control panel. For more information, see the control panel checks section of the printer troubleshooting manual.

1. Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-118 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-119 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-120 Remove the cover

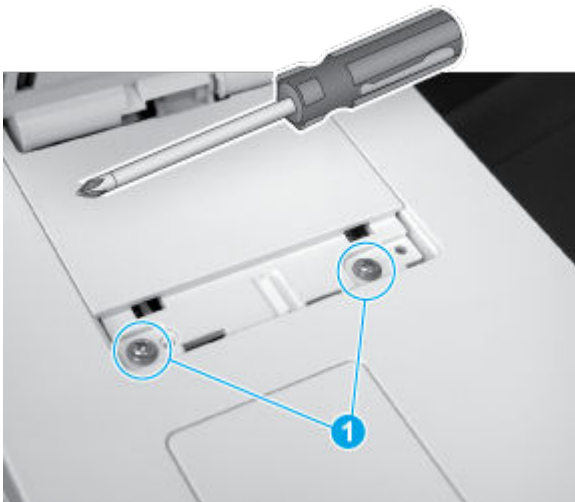


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-121 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-122 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

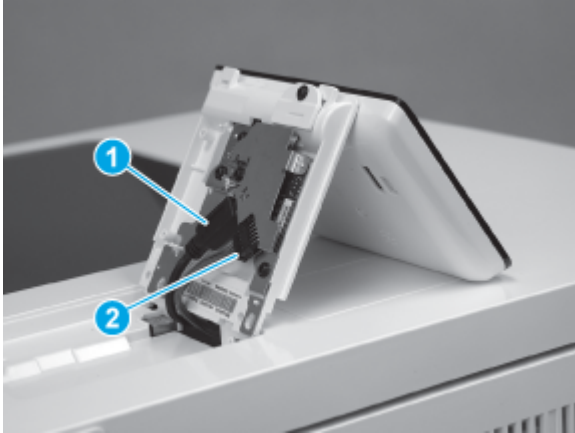
Figure 5-123 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.

📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-124 Disconnect two connectors



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3. Install the control-panel assembly

Follow these steps to install the control-panel assembly.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this procedure show the M553x printer. The M555 control panel uses a flat cable to connect to the formatter. However, installing the control panel is similar to the following procedure.

1. Place the control panel on the printer as shown.

Figure 5-125 Place the control panel on the product



2. Connect one USB cable (callout 1), and one connector (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** M555 only: Connect one flat cable (not shown).


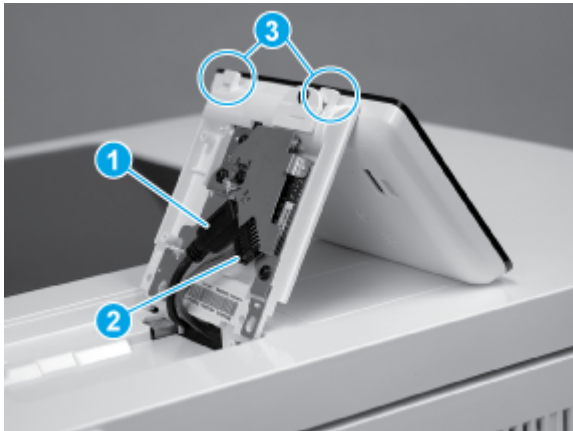
 **TIP:** Take note of the location of the two mounting tabs (callout 3) on the control-panel assembly.

Figure 5-126 Connect two connectors



3. Turn the control panel over, and then position the front edge tabs (callout 1) in the slots in the top cover.

Figure 5-127 Turn the control panel over



4. Rotate the control-panel base down onto the printer.

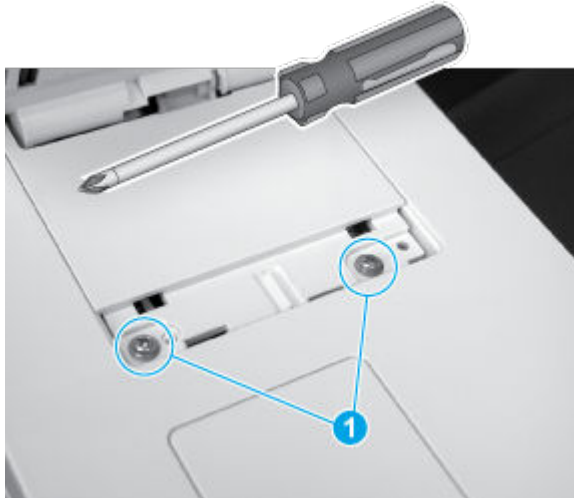
Figure 5-128 Rotate the control-panel base down



5. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to install two screws (callout 1).

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

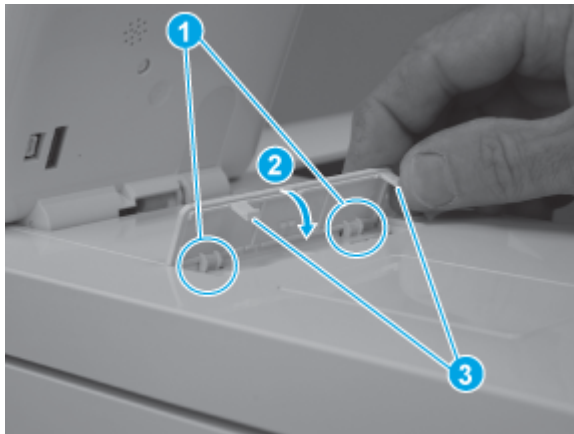
Figure 5-129 Install two screws



6. Position the screw cover mounting feet into the slots in the top cover (callout 1), and then rotate the cover down (callout 2) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Press down on the cover firmly to make sure that the tabs on the cover (callout 3) snap into place.

Figure 5-130 Install the cover



Removal and replacement: Control panel (M577/M578/E57540)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the control panel (MFP).

 [View a video on how to replace the control panel](#)

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-20 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L47-67018	Control panel and reversible screwdriver with instruction guide

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

The printer includes a diagnostic test mode for the control panel. For more information, see the control panel checks section of the printer troubleshooting manual.

1. Remove the control-panel cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control-panel cover (MFP).

1. Open the document feeder (callout 1).

📝 NOTE: If the control panel is not fully tilted forward, tilt it forward now until it stops (callout 2).

Figure 5-131 Open the document feeder



2. Beginning at the right side of the control-panel cover, carefully release five tabs along the top edge of the cover.

 **NOTE:** The thin, black plastic cover will separate from the white plastic control-panel base.

Figure 5-132 Release five tabs



3. Continue to lift the top edge of the cover away from the printer, and then remove the cover.

Figure 5-133 Remove the cover



2. Remove the control panel (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel (MFP).

1. **Flow models:** Open the latch (callout 1) to release the keyboard flat cable.


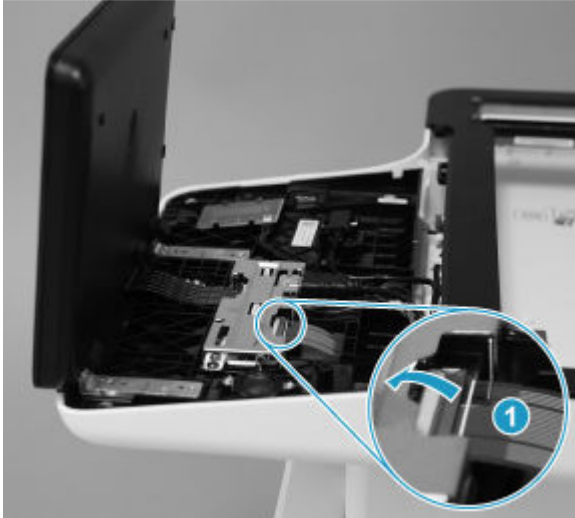
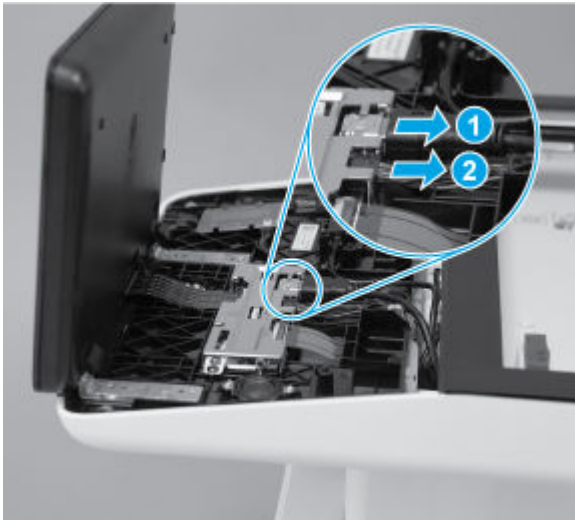
 **CAUTION:** The latch must be opened to release the cable.

Figure 5-134 Disconnect the keyboard flat cable (flow models)



2. Disconnect one HDMI cable (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2).

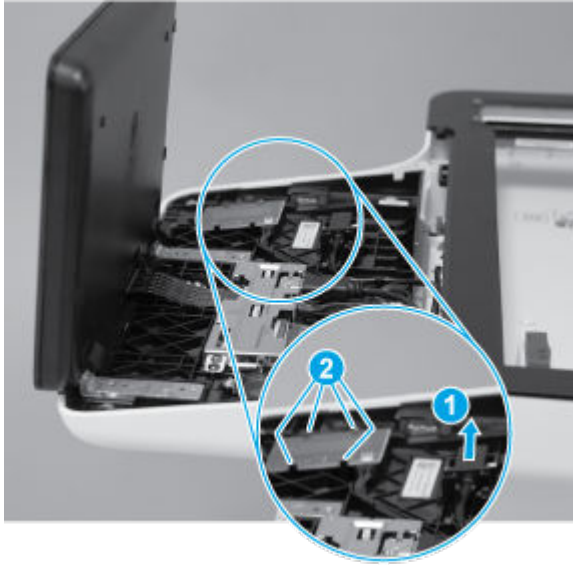
Figure 5-135 Disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB cable (callout 1) from the holder.

Flow models: Release four tabs (callout 2), and then remove the near-field communication (NFC) printed circuit board.

Figure 5-136 Disconnect connectors



4. Remove three screws (callout 1).


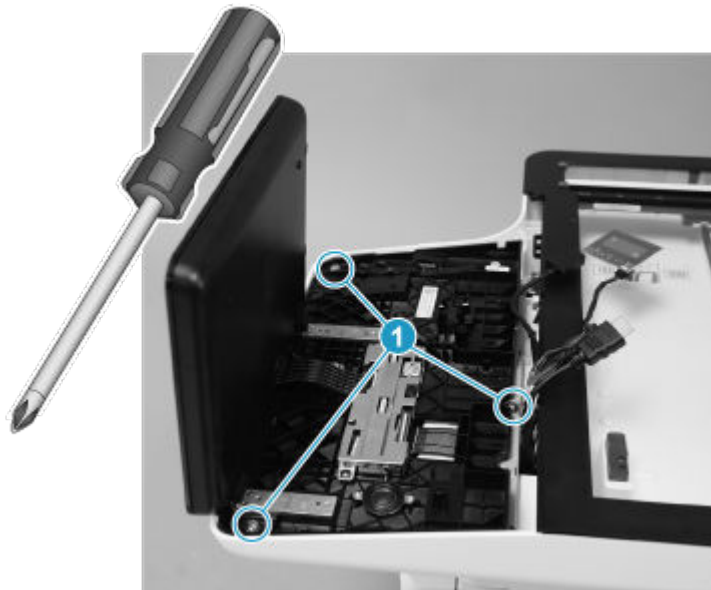
 **TIP:** The screwdriver (supplied with the kit) has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-137 Remove three screws



5. Lift the front of the control panel off of the printer (callout 1), and then slide it towards the front of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-138 Remove the control panel



3. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

4. Install the control panel (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the control panel (MFP).

1. **Flow models:** Open the latch (callout 1) to release the keyboard flat cable.

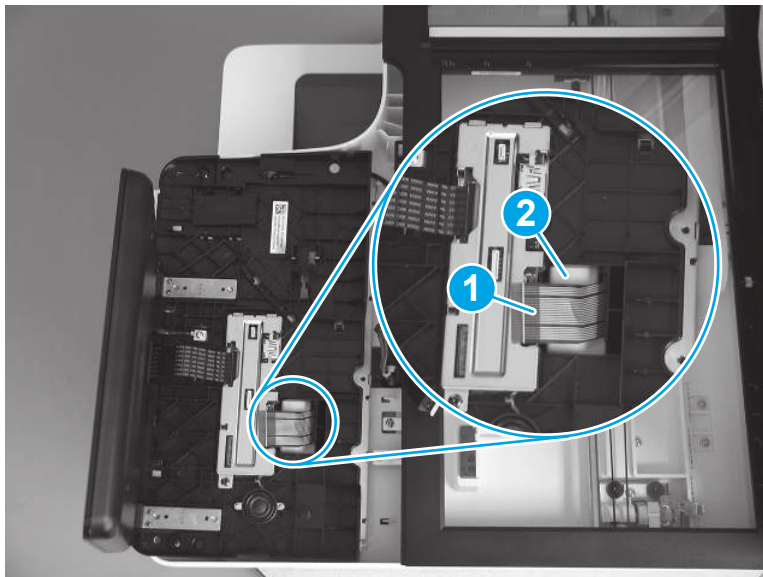
 **CAUTION:** The latch must be opened to release the cable.

Figure 5-139 Disconnect the keyboard flat cable (flow models)



2. **Flow models:** Make sure to feed the keyboard flat cable (callout 1) through the opening (callout 2) in the control-panel base when installing the control panel.

Figure 5-140 Feed the keyboard flat cable through opening



3. Locate the four hooks on the printer and matching slots in the control-panel base (callout 1). The hooks fit into the slots (callout 2) when the assembly is installed.


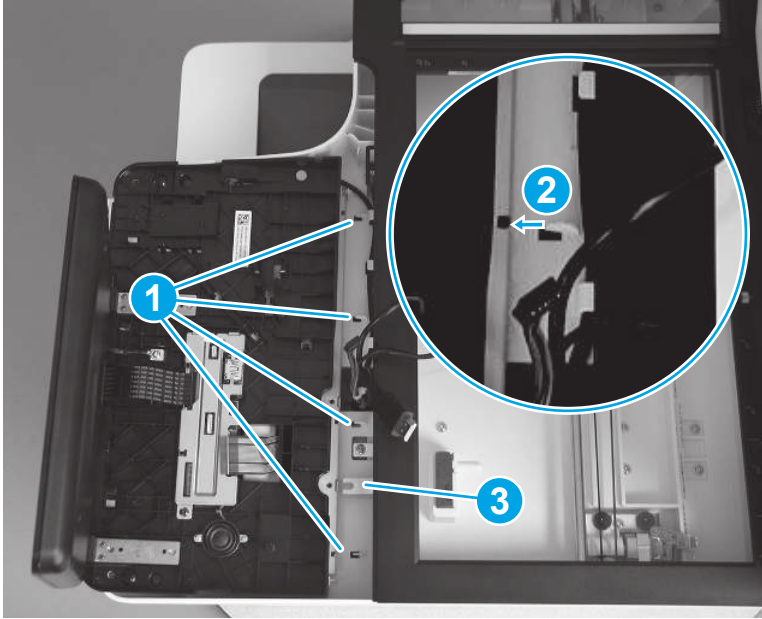
 **NOTE:** Make sure that the grounding clip (callout 3) is on top of the assembly base when it is installed.

Figure 5-141 Locate hooks and grounding clip



4. Position the rear edge of the control panel in the printer (callout 1), and then lower the front edge down (callout 2) to install it.


 **NOTE:** If the control panel is difficult to install, make sure that the hooks, slots, and grounding clip are correctly engaged. See the previous step.

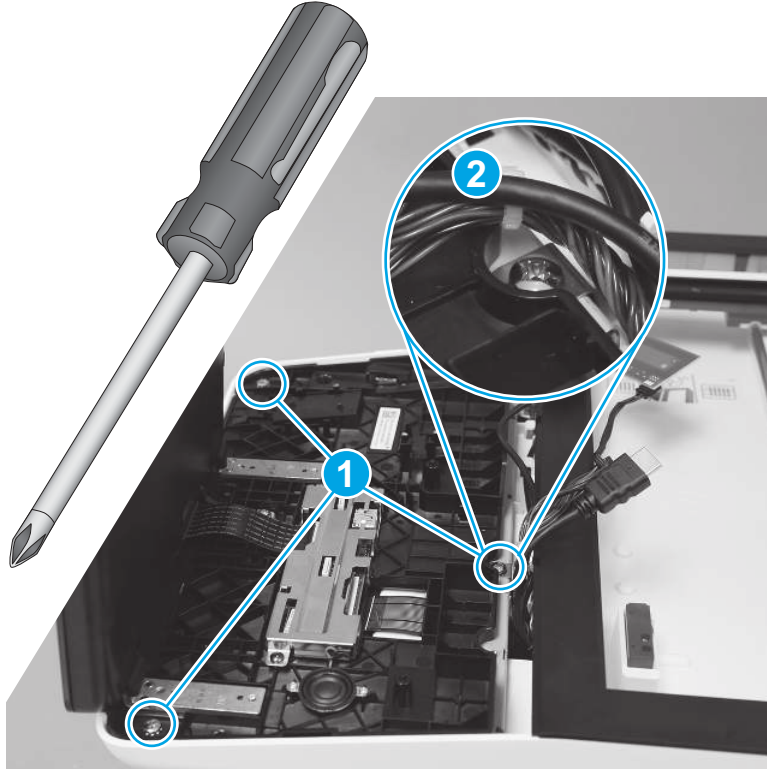
Figure 5-142 Install the control panel



5. Install three screws (callout 1), making sure that the grounding clip is correctly installed (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** The screwdriver (supplied with the kit) has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-143 Install three screws



6. Connect one HDMI cable (callout 1), and one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-144 Connect connectors



7. Install the USB cable (callout 1) in the holder.


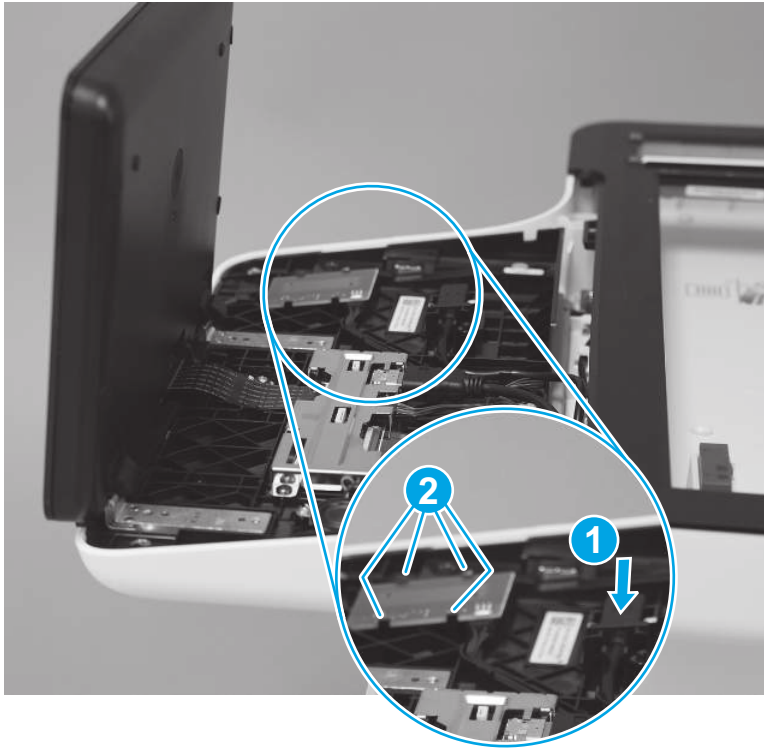
 **NOTE:** **NFC models only:** Install the near-field communication (NFC) printed circuit board under the four tabs (callout 2).

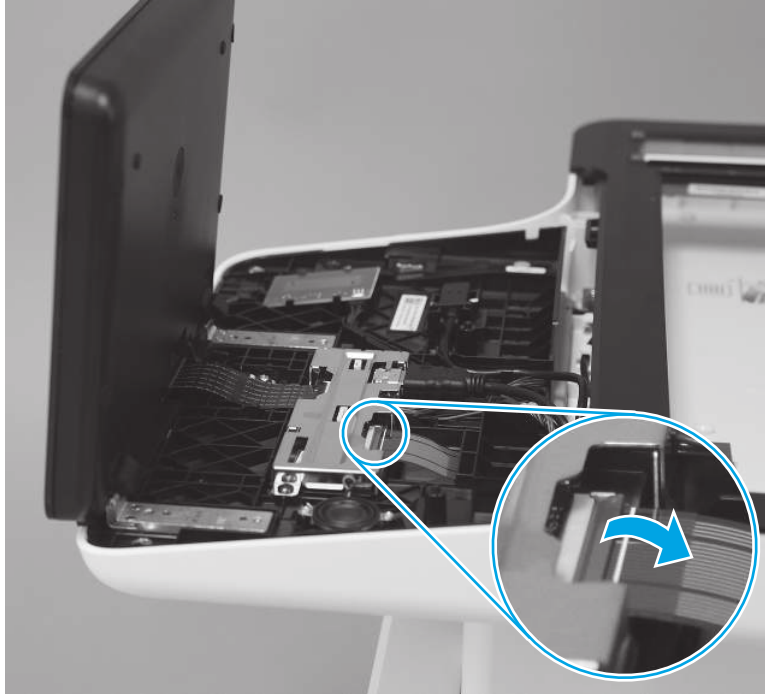
Figure 5-145 Install USB and NFC



8. **Flow models:** Position the keyboard flat cable in the connector, and then close the latch (callout 1).

 **NOTE:** Slightly tug on the cable to make sure that it is fully captured in the connector.

Figure 5-146 Connect the keyboard flat cable



5. Install the control-panel cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the control-panel cover (MFP).

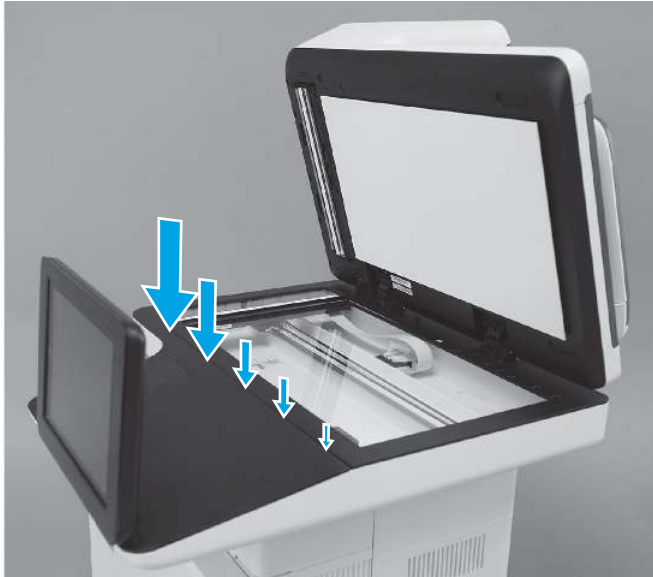
1. Position the control-panel cover on the printer.

Figure 5-147 Install the cover



2. Beginning at the left side of the control-panel cover, carefully push down along the top edge of the cover to engage five tabs.

Figure 5-148 Engage five tabs



3. Close the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** Adjust the control panel to the desired angle.

Figure 5-149 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: Keyboard (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)

Learn about removing and replacing the keyboard.

Introduction

 [View a video of how to remove and replace the keyboard.](#)

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-21 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L47-67019	US English Keyboard Kit
B5L47-67020	UK English Keyboard Kit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the control-panel cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control-panel cover (MFP).

1. Open the document feeder (callout 1).

📝 NOTE: If the control panel is not fully tilted forward, tilt it forward now until it stops (callout 2).

Figure 5-150 Open the document feeder



2. Beginning at the right side of the control-panel cover, carefully release five tabs along the top edge of the cover.



NOTE: The thin, black plastic cover will separate from the white plastic control-panel base.

Figure 5-151 Release five tabs



3. Continue to lift the top edge of the cover away from the printer, and then remove the cover.

Figure 5-152 Remove the cover



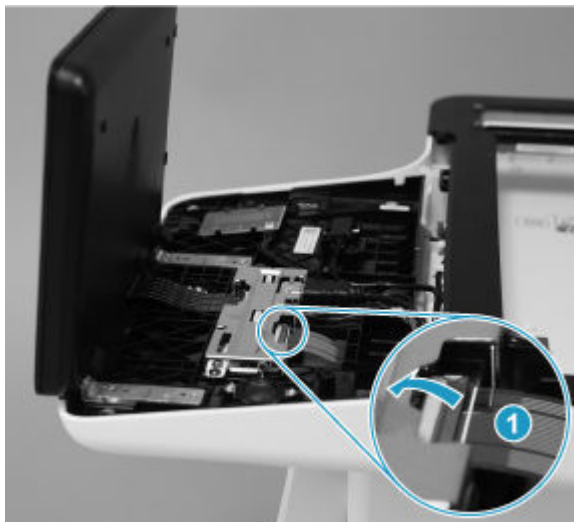
Remove the keyboard (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the keyboard.

1. Open the latch (callout 1) to release the keyboard flat cable.

⚠ CAUTION: The latch must be opened to release the cable.

Figure 5-153 Disconnect the keyboard flat cable



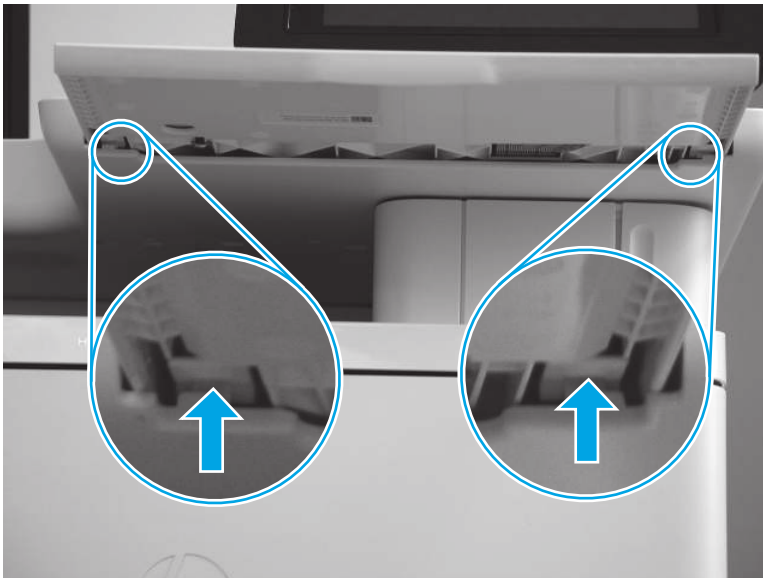
2. Slide the keyboard tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-154 Slide the keyboard out



3. Push up on the keyboard tray to release two tabs on the bottom of the tray, and then slide the tray toward the front of the printer to disengage the tabs.

Figure 5-155 Release two tabs



- Slide the keyboard (callout 1) all of the way out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-156 Remove the keyboard



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


- Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


- Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the control panel (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the keyboard.

1. Position the flat cable (callout 1) on the keyboard into the keyboard slot (callout 2).

Figure 5-157 Install the flat cable through the slot



2. Slide the keyboard tray into the slot.


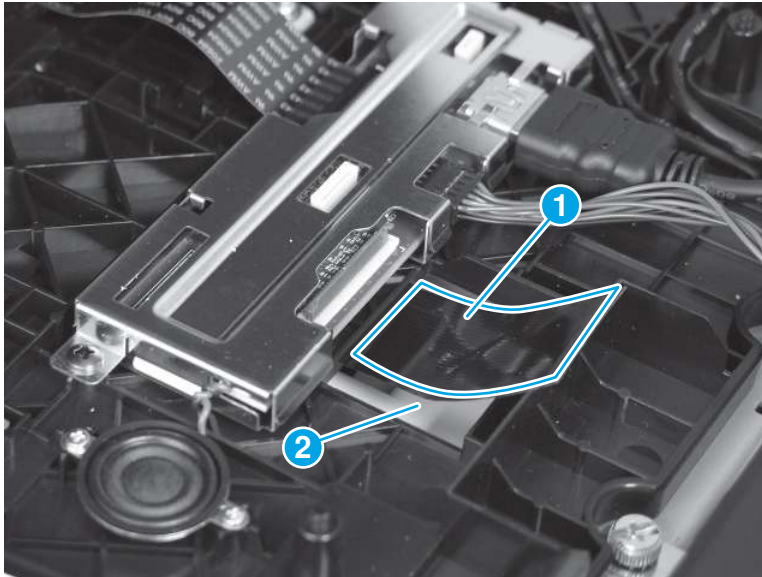
 **NOTE:** Only slide the tray halfway into the opening. This makes connecting the cable in the next step easier.

Figure 5-158 Slide the keyboard into the slot



3. If the flat cable (callout 1) is not in the opening (callout 2) in the control panel base, carefully reach in and thread the flat cable through the opening.

Figure 5-159 Check the flat cable

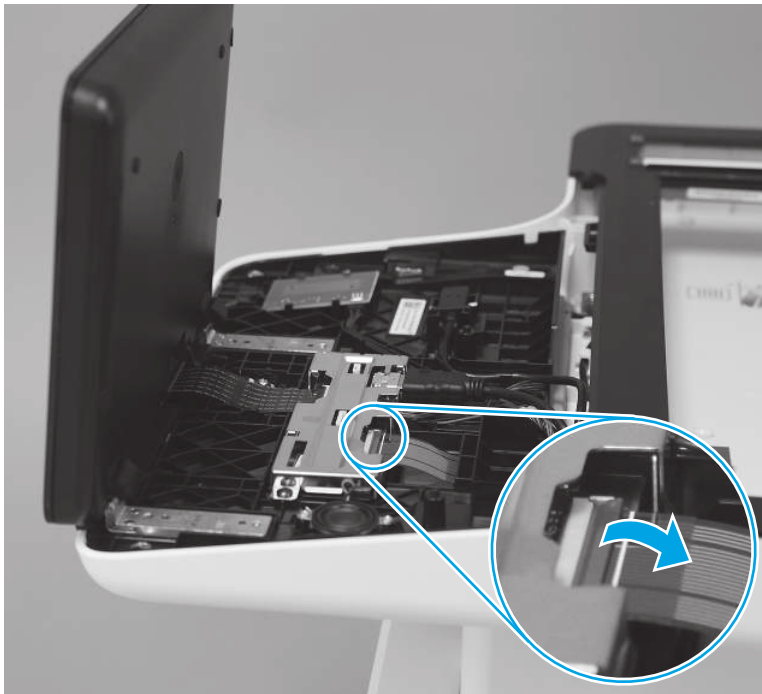


4. Position the keyboard flat cable in the connector, and then close the connector latch.

 **IMPORTANT:** Slightly tug on the cable to make sure that it is fully captured in the connector.

 **NOTE:** When the connector latch is closed and the cable is correctly installed, the white line on the cable is parallel to the connector latch.

Figure 5-160 Install the keyboard



Install the control-panel cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the control-panel cover (MFP).

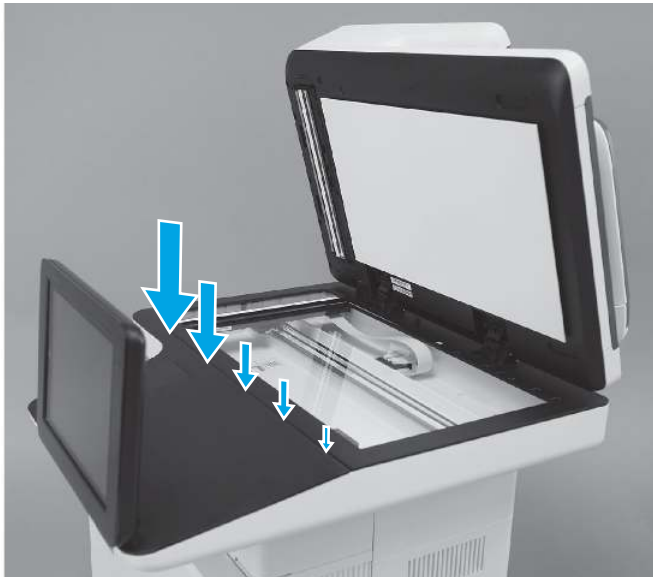
1. Position the control-panel cover on the printer.

Figure 5-161 Install the cover



2. Beginning at the left side of the control-panel cover, carefully push down along the top edge of the cover to engage five tabs.

Figure 5-162 Engage five tabs



3. Close the document feeder.

 **NOTE:** Adjust the control panel to the desired angle.

Figure 5-163 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: White backing (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-22 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-7740	White backing kit with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the white backing (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the white backing.

1. Open the document feeder.

Figure 5-164 Open the document feeder



2. Remove the white backing.

Figure 5-165 Remove the white backing



3. One or more of the retention clips (callout 1) that fit in the openings (callout 2) in the document feeder might remain attached to the white backing when it is removed. If this happens, remove the clip from the white backing.

 **NOTE:** If none of the retention clips remain attached to the white backing, skip the remaining sub-steps in this removal procedure.

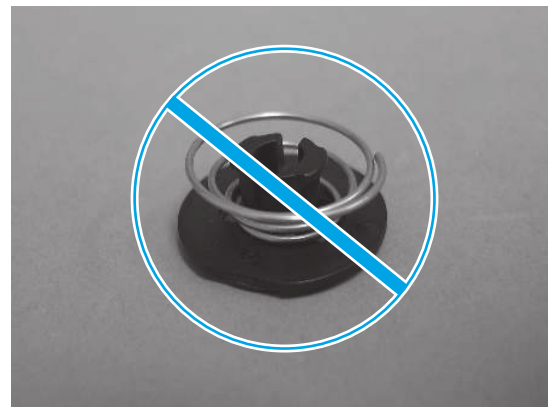
Figure 5-166 Check the retention clips



4. If a spring comes off of a retention clip, make sure that it is correctly repositioned on the clip.

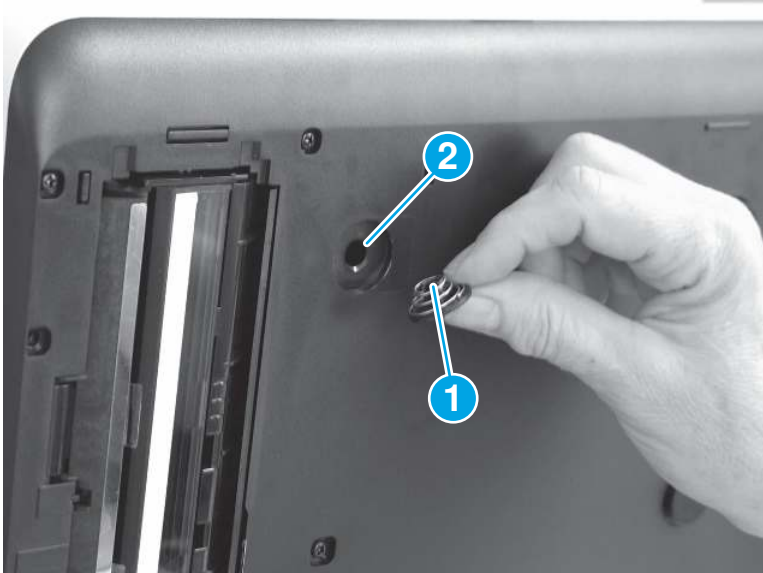
 **NOTE:** If any of the retention clips or springs are damaged, replace them with the clips supplied in the kit.

Figure 5-167 Check the retention clip spring



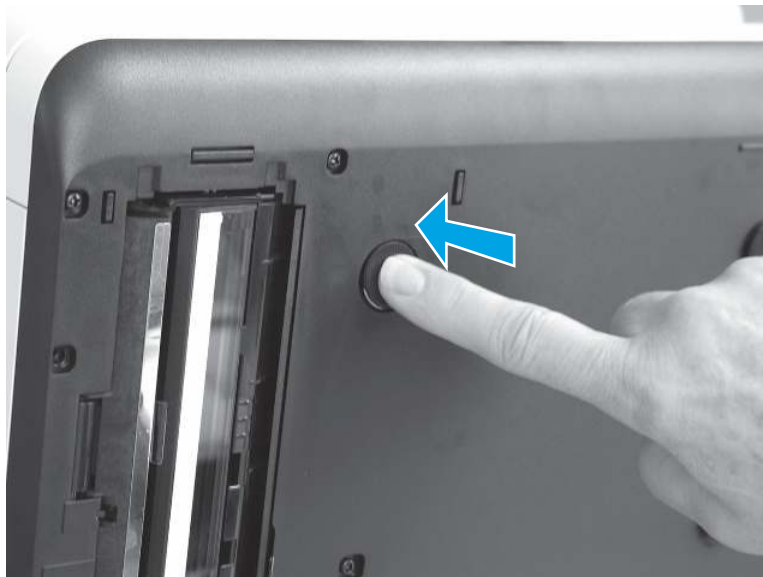
5. Install the clip (callout 1) in the opening (callout 2) in the document feeder.

Figure 5-168 Install the retention clip



6. Press the clip to make sure it is securely installed.

Figure 5-169 Press the retention clip



Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the white backing (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the white backing.

1. Open the document feeder, and then place the replacement white backing on the flatbed scanner glass, as shown.

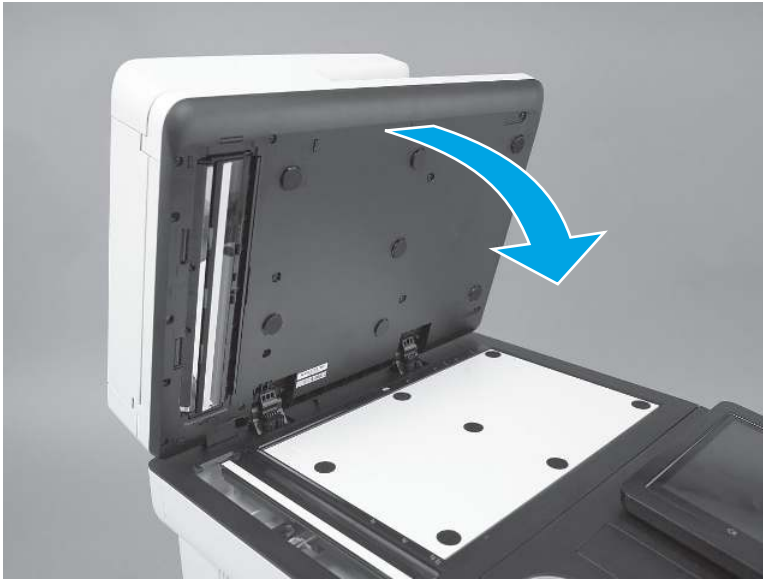
NOTE:  Place the corner of the backing that does not have a hook-and-loop fastener in the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 5-170 Install the white backing



2. Close the document feeder.

Figure 5-171 Close the document feeder



3. Open the document feeder and make sure that the white backing is securely attached.

Figure 5-172 Check the white backing



4. Close the document feeder.

Figure 5-173 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: Retention clips (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder white backing retention clips.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-23 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-6573	Retention clips kit with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the retention clips (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the white backing retention clips.

1. Open the document feeder.

Figure 5-174 Open the document feeder



2. Remove the white backing.

Figure 5-175 Remove the white backing



3. If any of the retention clips (callout 1) remain attached to the white backing remove them. Check to see if any clips remain attached to the document feeder (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** If none of the retention clips remain attached to the white backing, proceed to the next step.

Figure 5-176 Check the retention clips



4. Remove any damaged retention clips from the document feeder.


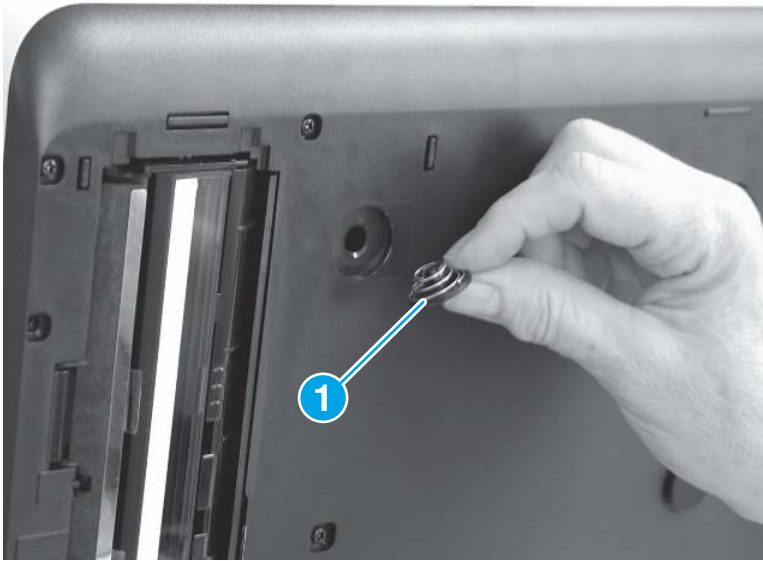
 **TIP:** Use the edge of a coin to loosen the clip.

Figure 5-177 Loosen damaged clips



5. Remove the retention clip (callout 1).

Figure 5-178 Remove the retention clip



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

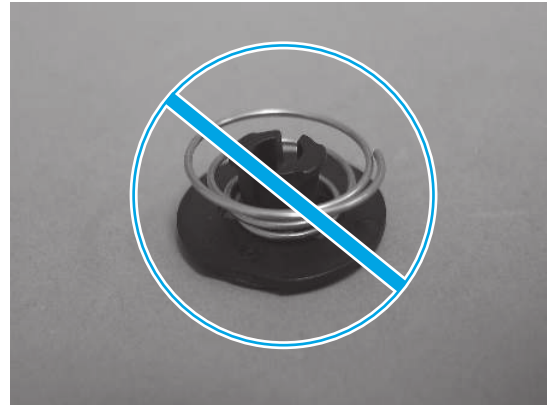
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the retention clips (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the white backing retention clips.

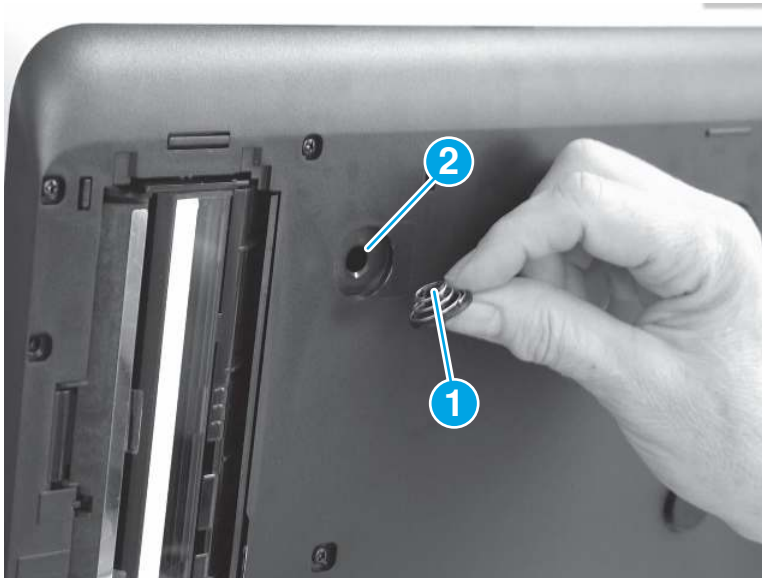
1. If a spring comes off of a retention clip, make sure that it is correctly repositioned on the clip.

Figure 5-179 Check the retention clip spring



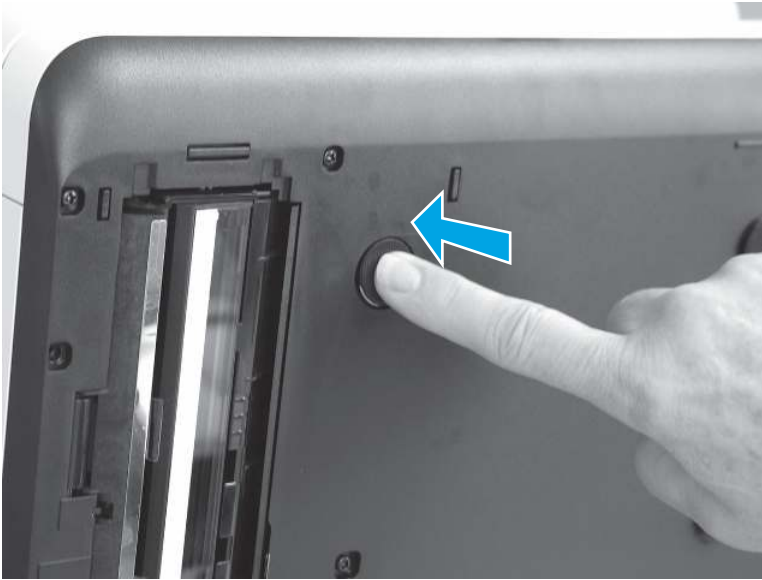
2. Install the clip (callout 1) in the opening (callout 2) in the document feeder. Repeat this step until all of the retention clips are installed.

Figure 5-180 Install the retention clip



3. Press the clip to make sure it is securely installed. Repeat this step until all of the retention clips are secure.

Figure 5-181 Press the retention clip



4. Place the white backing, on the flatbed scanner glass as shown.


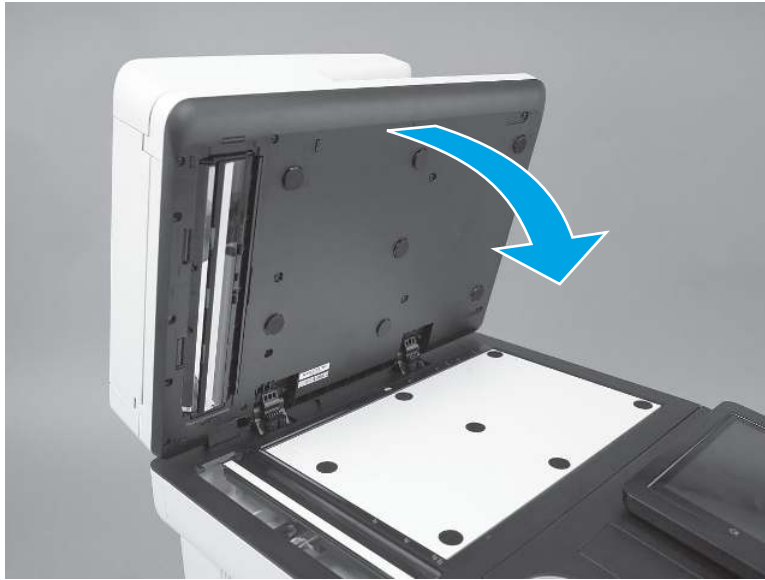
 **NOTE:** Place the corner of the backing that does not have a hook-and-loop fastener in the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.

Figure 5-182 Install the white backing



5. Close the document feeder.

Figure 5-183 Close the document feeder



6. Open the document feeder and make sure that the white backing is securely attached.

Figure 5-184 Check the white backing



7. Close the document feeder.

Figure 5-185 Close the document feeder



Removal and replacement: Document feeder rollers (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder rollers.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-24 Part information

Part number	Part description
W5U23-67901	ADF maintenance kit with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the pickup and feed roller assembly

Follow these steps to remove the pickup and feed roller assembly.

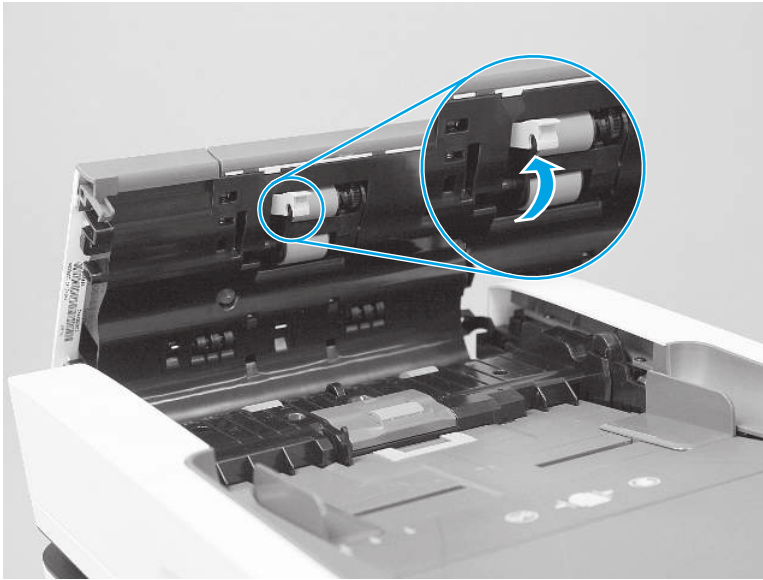
1. Open the document-feeder jam access door.

Figure 5-186 Open the document-feeder jam access door



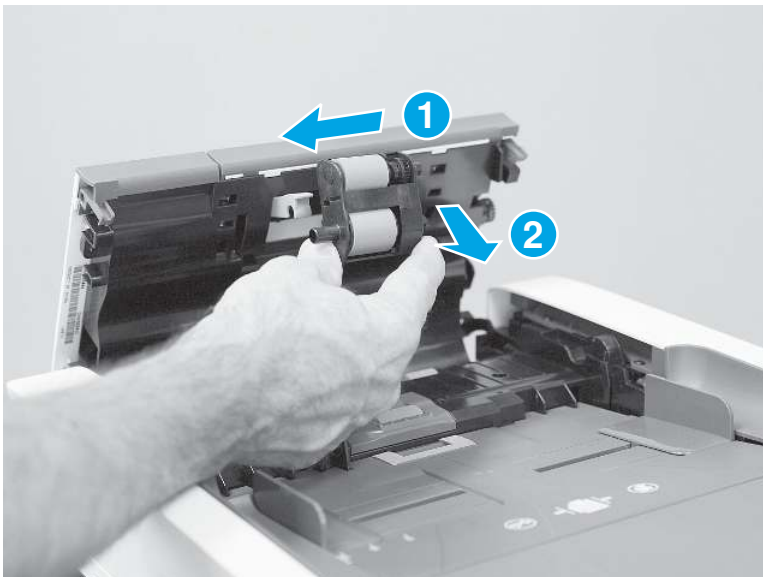
2. Release the blue locking arm.

Figure 5-187 Release the blue locking arm



3. Slide the pickup and feed roller assembly to the left (callout 1), and then pull it away from the document feeder (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-188 Remove the roller assembly



Remove the separation roller

Follow these steps to remove the separation roller.

1. Rotate the top edge of the separation roller cover away from the printer to release it.

Figure 5-189 Release the separation roller cover



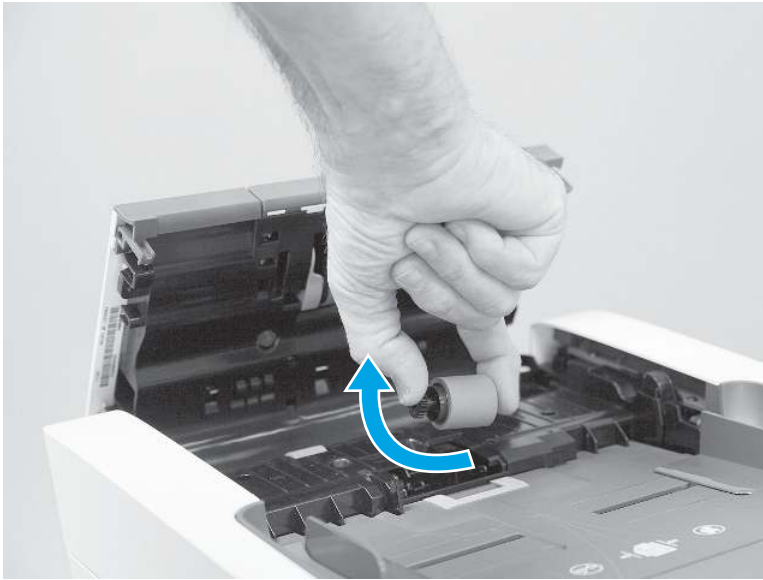
2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-190 Remove the cover



3. Slide the separation roller to the left, and then lift it up and away from the document feeder to remove it.


Figure 5-191 Remove the roller



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the separation roller

Follow these steps to install the separation roller.

1. Lower the separation roller into the document feeder, and then slide it to the right to install it.

Figure 5-192 Install the roller



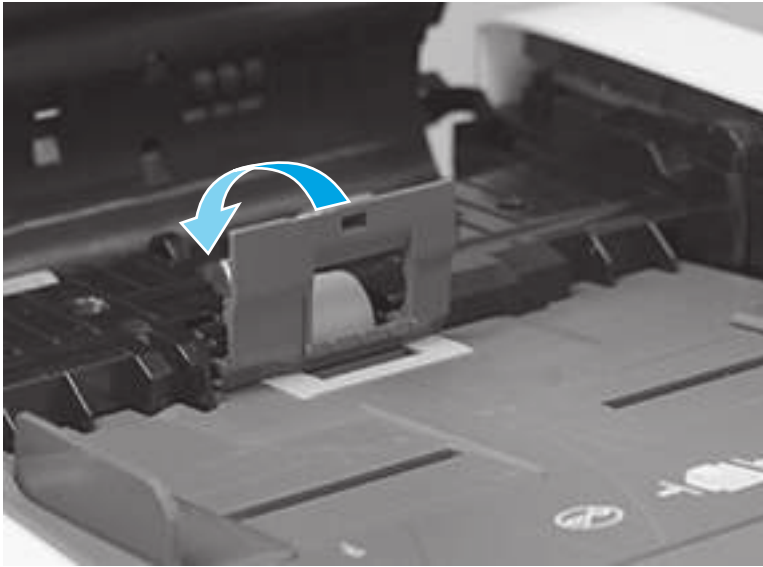
2. Position the bottom edge of the separation roller cover on the printer.

Figure 5-193 Position the separation roller cover



3. Rotate the cover down to close it.

Figure 5-194 Close the separation roller cover



4. The roller might seem loose until the cover is snapped closed. The cover helps hold the roller in place.

Figure 5-195 Snap the cover closed



Install the pickup and feed roller assembly

Follow these steps to install the pickup and feed roller assembly.

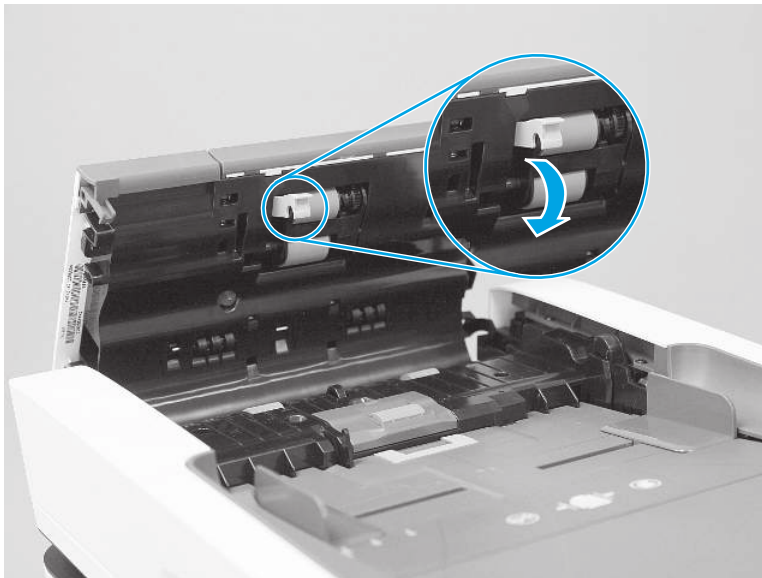
1. Position the pickup and feed roller assembly in the document feeder (callout 1), and then slide the assembly to the right (callout 2) to install it.

Figure 5-196 Install the roller assembly



2. Close the blue locking arm.

Figure 5-197 close the blue locking arm



3. Close the document-feeder jam access door.

Figure 5-198 Close the document-feeder jam access door




Customer self-repair (CSR) B parts and accessories

Customer self-repair (CSR) B parts are parts that a customer replaces without assistance from a field technician. These parts might require the use of tools.

Removal and replacement: Fixed tray guide kit


Learn about removing and replacing the fixed tray guide kit.

 **NOTE:** The procedure in this section shows Tray 2 in the figures. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-25 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-7708	Fixed tray guide kit with instruction guide

NOTE: The kit includes four length guide locks, four width guide locks, and eight screws. Only one kit is required per printer.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

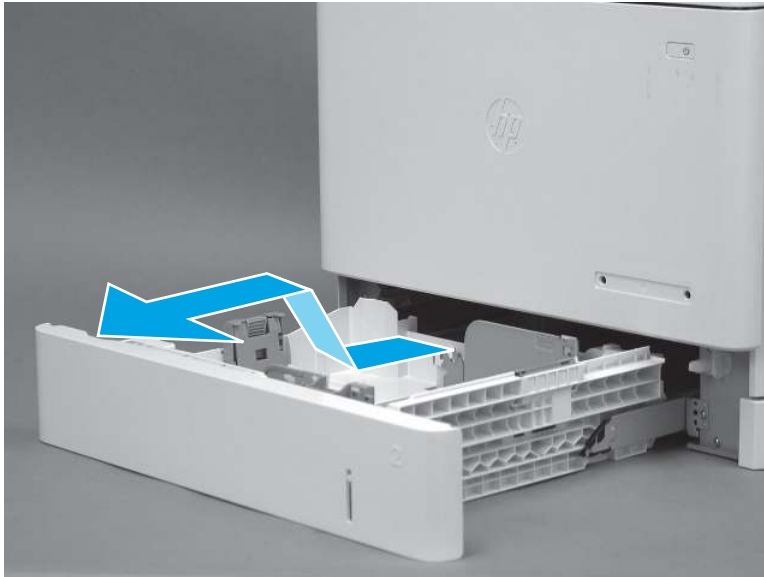
Figure 5-199 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-200 Remove the tray



Install the fixed tray guide

Learn about installing the fixed tray guide.

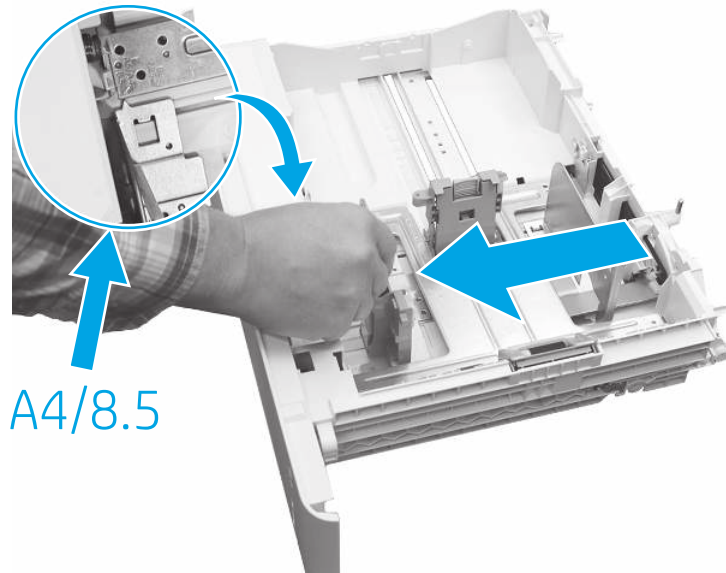
1. Identify the kit components.
 - **Callout 1:** Width guide lock
 - **Callout 2:** Length guide lock
 - **Callout 3:** Screws (self tapping)

Figure 5-201 Identify kit components



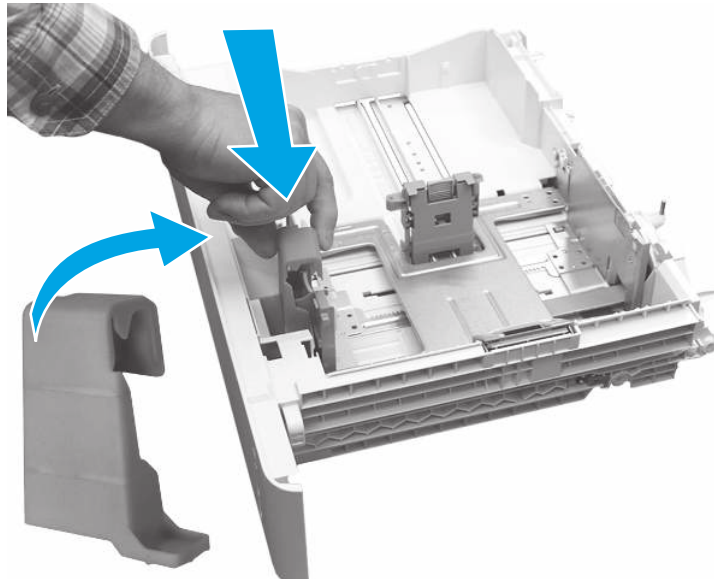
2. Adjust the sliding tray paper width guide to the **A4/8.5** setting.

Figure 5-202 Adjust the tray paper width guide



3. Install the width guide lock over the width guide in the tray.

Figure 5-203 Install the width guide lock

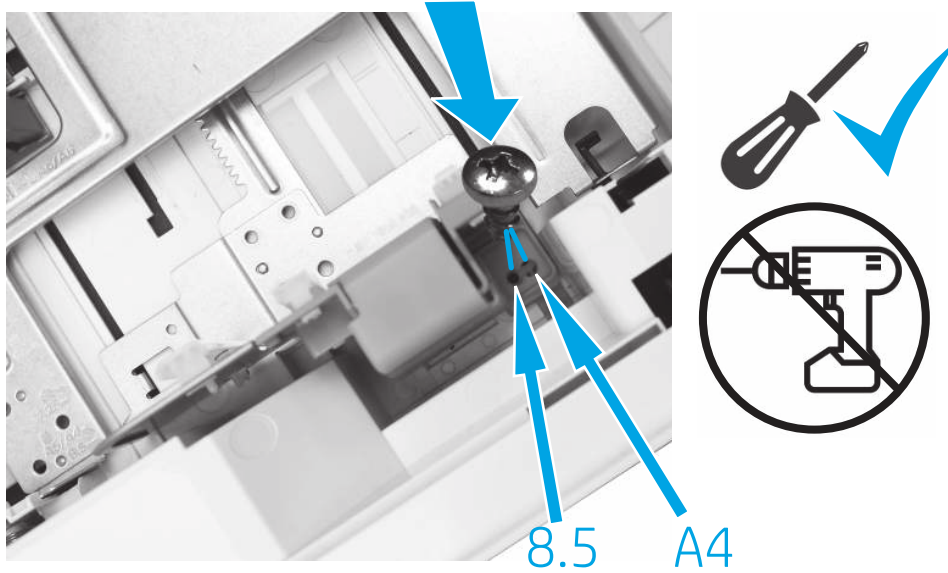


4. Install one screw to secure the lock in place.

CAUTION: Do not use a power screwdriver to install the screw.

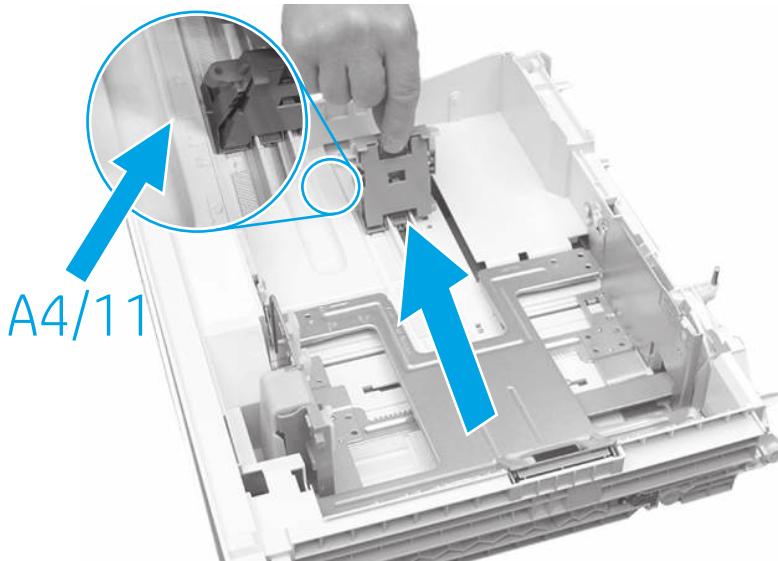
NOTE: Verify that the tray paper width guide is set to the **A4/8.5** setting.

Figure 5-204 Install one screw



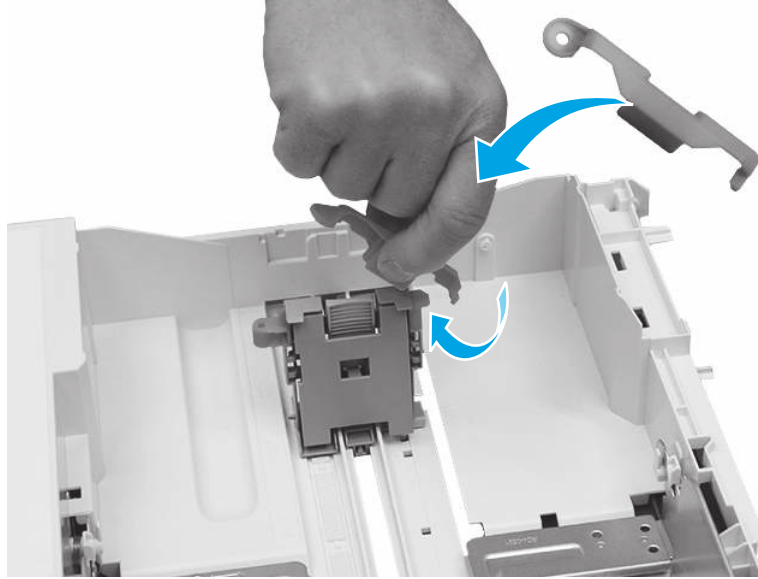
5. Adjust the sliding tray paper length guide to the **A4/11** setting.

Figure 5-205 Adjust the tray paper length guide



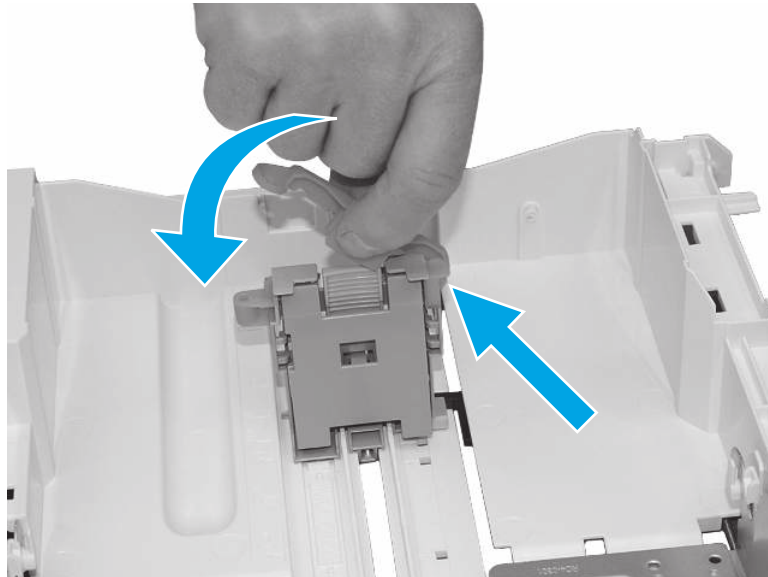
6. To install the length guide lock on the length guide in the tray, do the following:
 - a. Position the hooked end of the lock under the rear edge of the length guide (as shown).

Figure 5-206 Install the length guide lock (1 of 2)



- b. Rotate the lock down and onto the length guide.

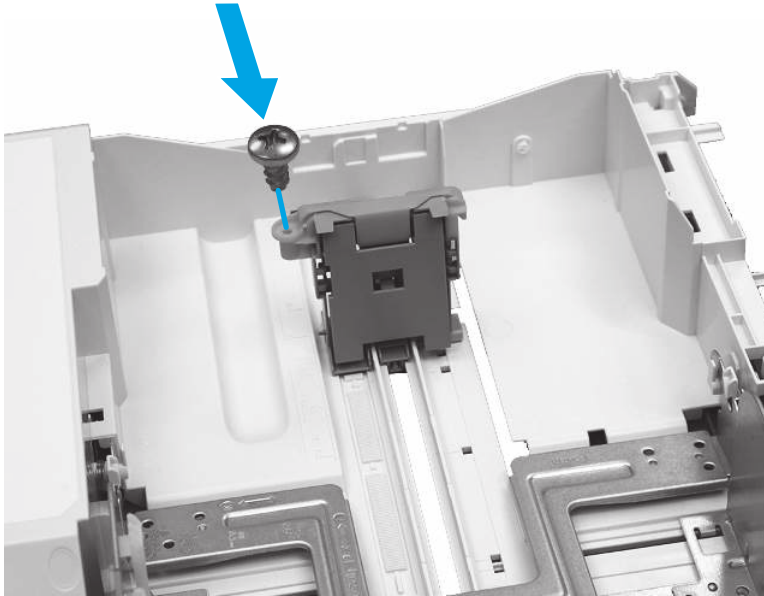
Figure 5-207 Install the length guide lock (2 of 2)



- 7. Verify that the lock is correctly installed on the length guide. The lock mounting screw hole must align with the hole in the guide.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the hole in the lock and the guide are not aligned, remove the lock and reinstall it.

Figure 5-208 Check length guide installation

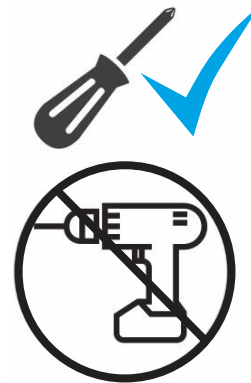
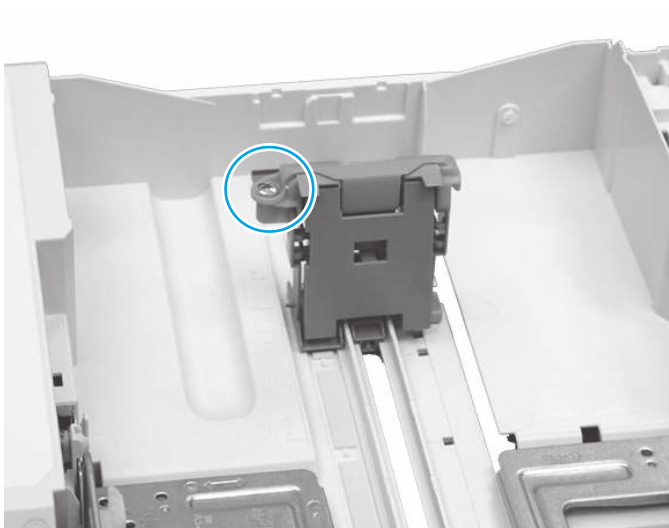


8. Install one screw to secure the lock in place.

CAUTION: Do not use a power screwdriver to install the screw.

NOTE: Reinstall the tray.

Figure 5-209 Install one screw



Removal and replacement: Tray 2-X paper pickup roller and separation roller assemblies


Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2-X rollers.

NOTE: The procedure in this section shows Tray 2 in the figures. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-26 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-6577-000CN	Kit-Tray 2-X roller

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly

Learn about removing the Tray 2-X rollers.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

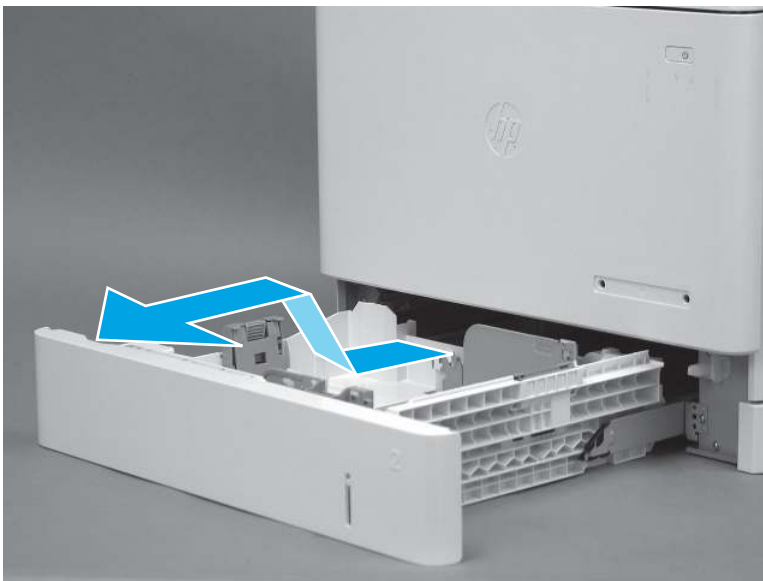
1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-210 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-211 Remove the tray



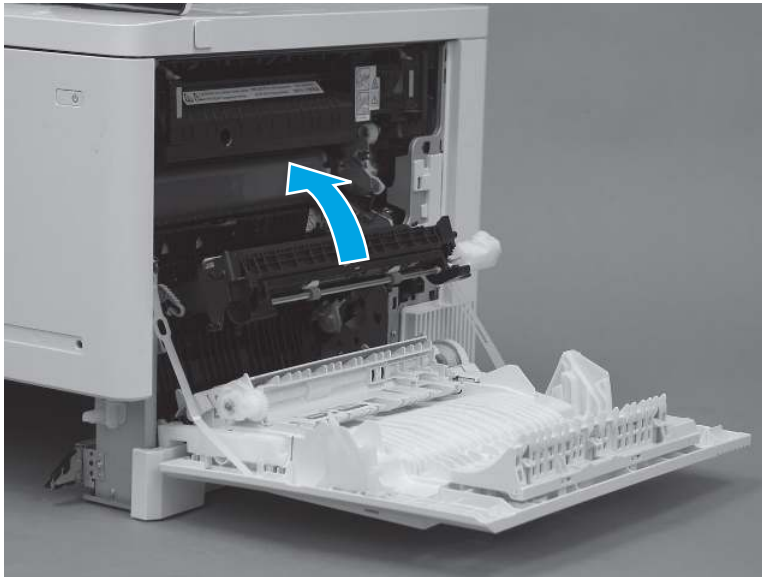
3. Open the right door.

Figure 5-212 Open the right door



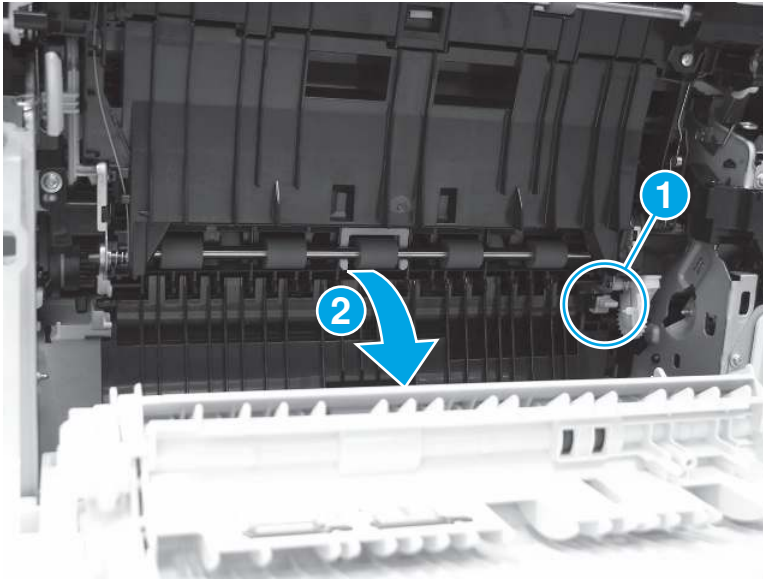
4. Carefully raise the transfer roller assembly up and into the printer.

Figure 5-213 Raise the transfer roller assembly



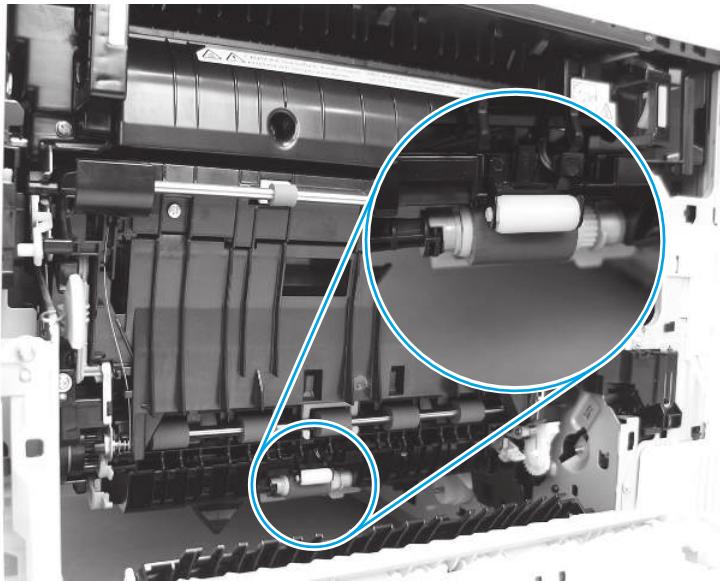
5. Release the green handle (callout 1), and then lower the paper guide (callout 2).

Figure 5-214 Lower the paper guide



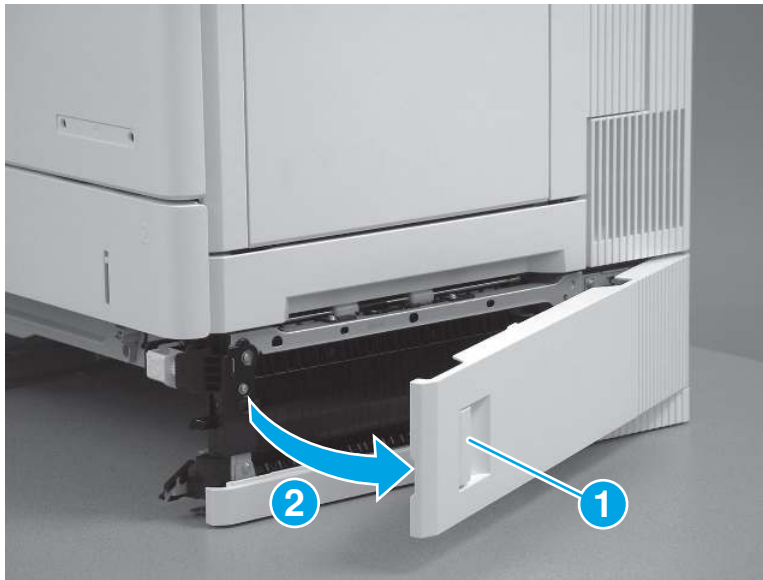
6. Locate the tray pickup roller assembly.

Figure 5-215 Locate the tray pickup roller



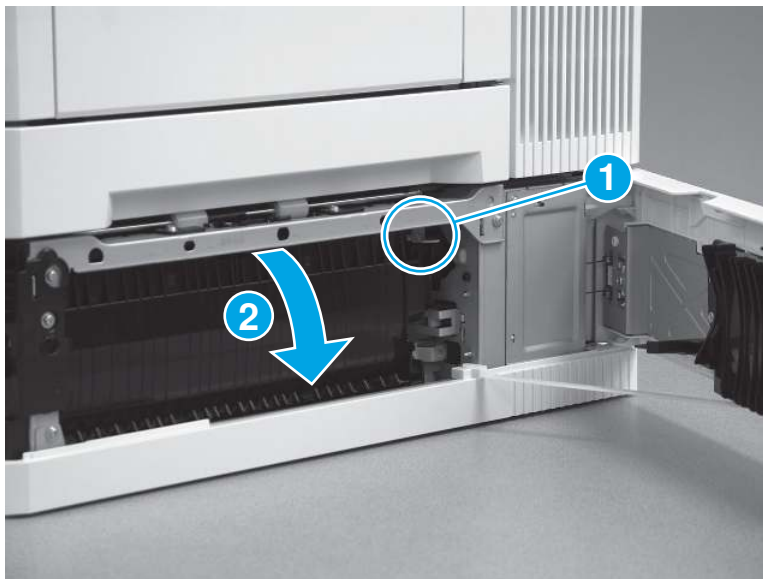
7. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Release the latch (callout 1), and then open the right door (callout 2).

Figure 5-216 Open the Tray 3, 4, or 5 right door



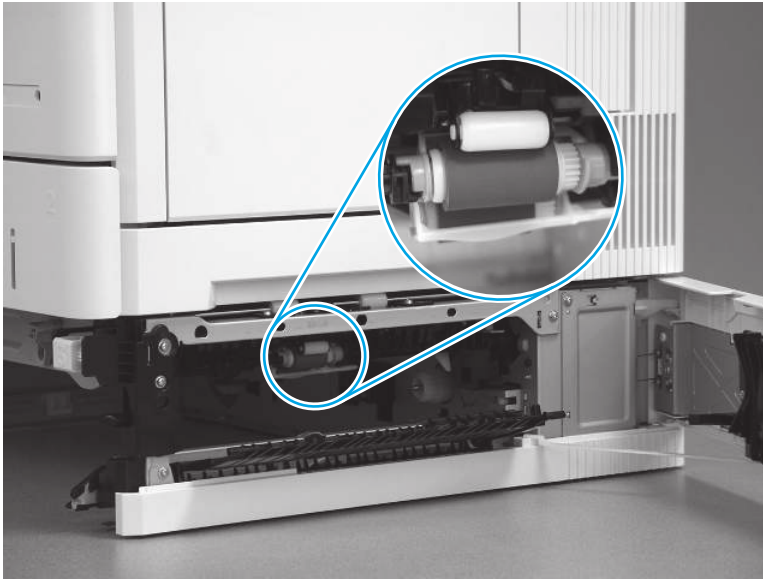
8. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Release the green handle (callout 1), and then lower the paper guide (callout 2).

Figure 5-217 Lower the Tray 3, 4, or 5 paper guide



9. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Locate the tray pickup roller assembly.

Figure 5-218 Locate the Tray 3, 4, or 5 pickup roller assembly



10. Slide the assembly to the left to compress the spring loaded shaft (callout 1), and then rotate the right end of the assembly down and away from the printer (callout 2).


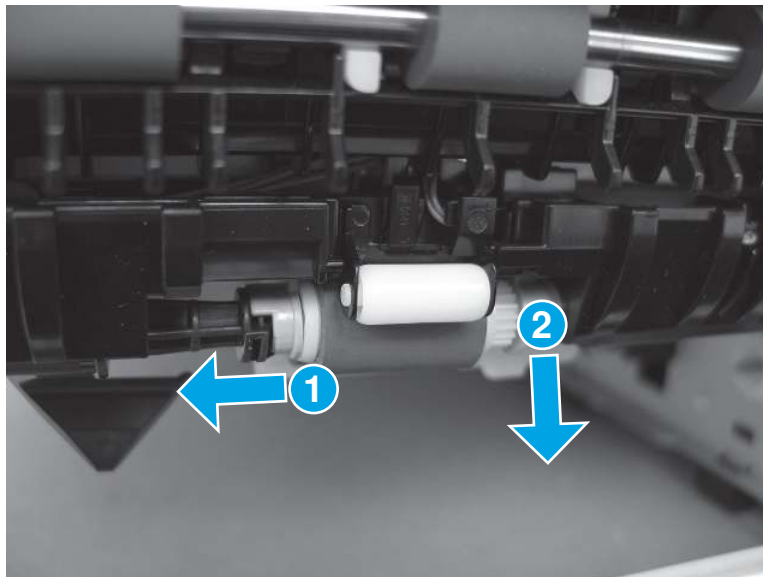
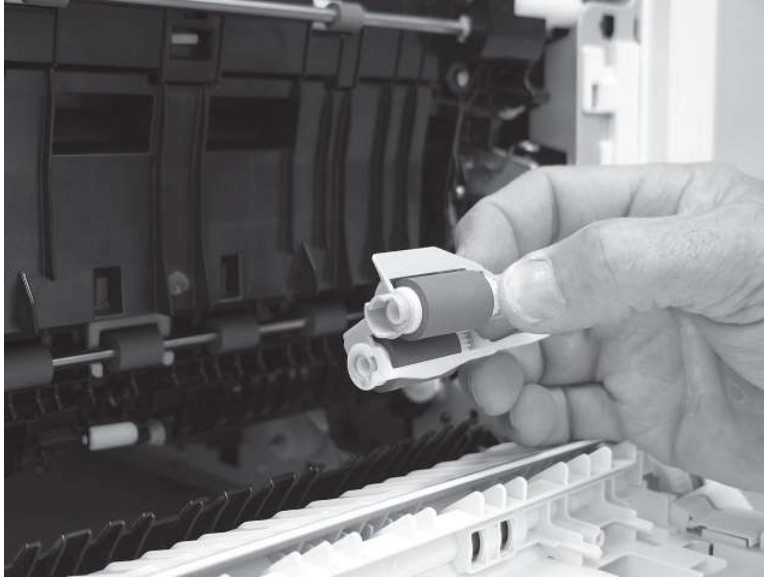
 **TIP:** It might be easier to access the roller through the tray cavity, while viewing it through the right door opening.

Figure 5-219 Slide the assembly to the left



11. Remove the roller assembly.

Figure 5-220 Remove the roller assembly

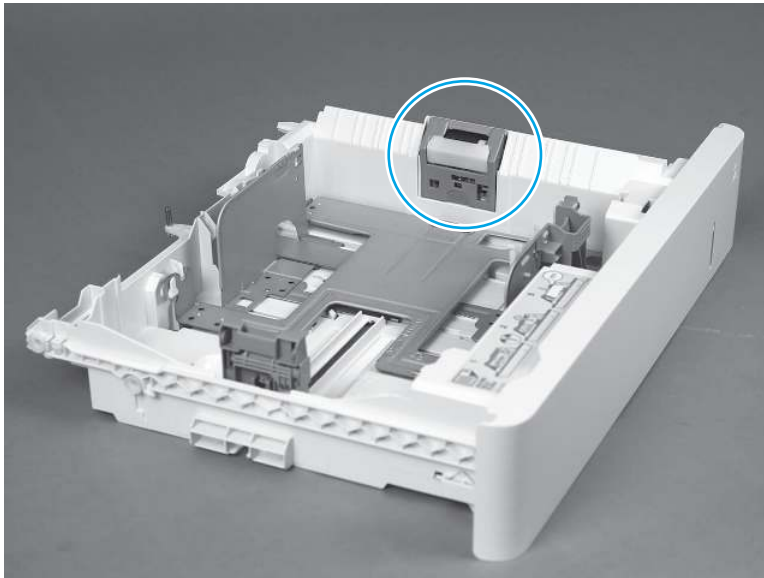


Remove the Tray 2-X separation roller

Learn about removing the Tray 2-X separation roller.

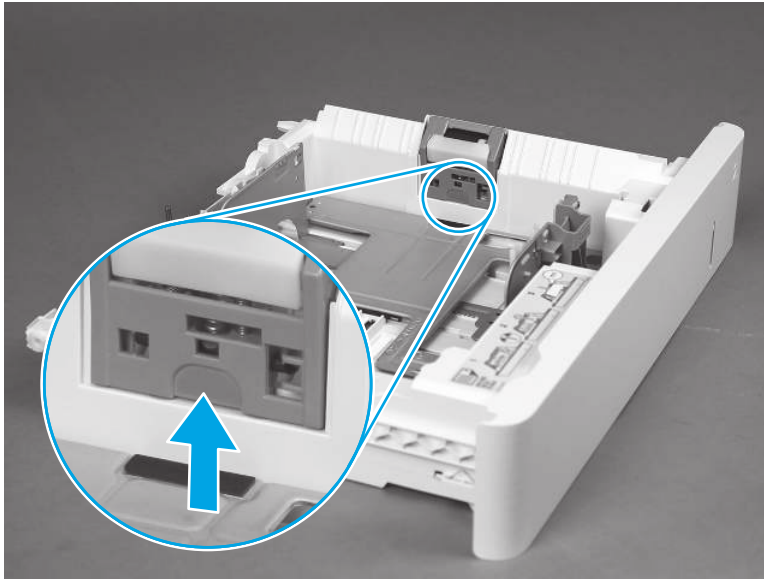
1. Locate the tray separation roller.

Figure 5-221 Locate the roller assembly



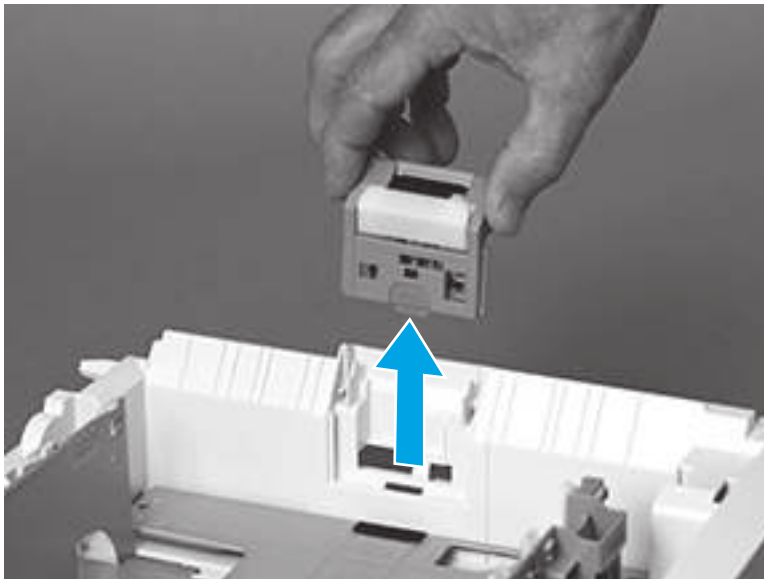
2. Push up on the blue label to release the roller assembly.

Figure 5-222 Push up on the blue label



3. Slide the roller assembly straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-223 Remove the roller assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

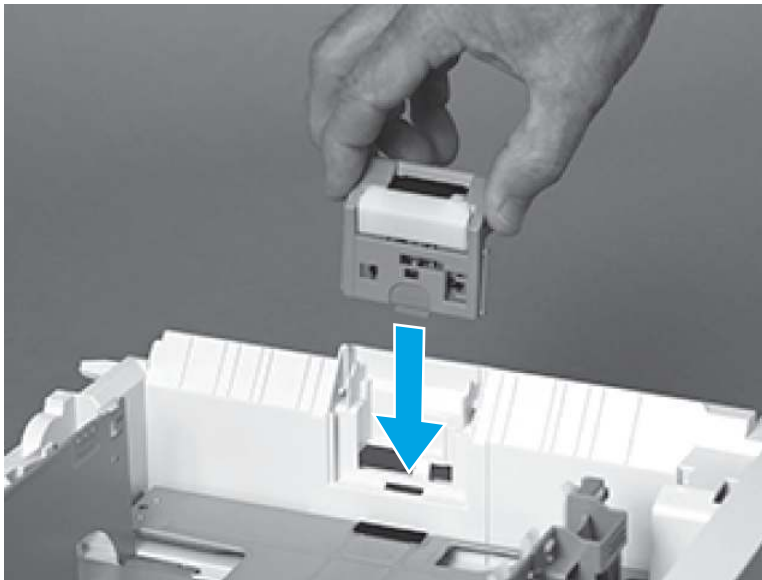
NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the Tray 2-X separation roller

Learn about installing the Tray 2-X separation roller.

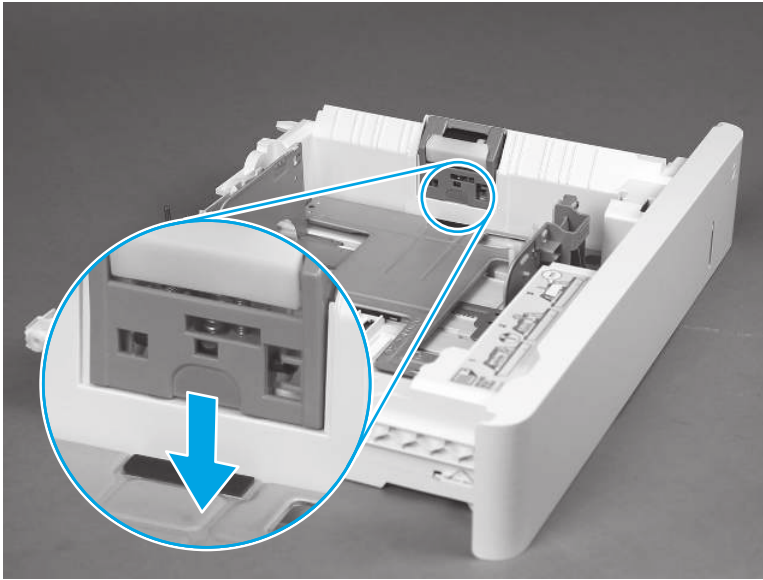
1. Slide the roller assembly straight into the tray to install it.

Figure 5-224 Install the roller assembly



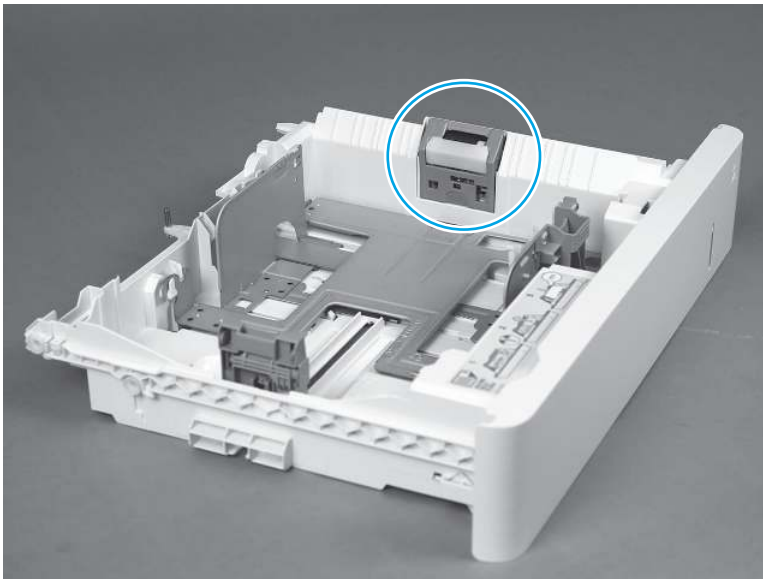
2. Make sure that the roller assembly is fully seated.

Figure 5-225 Fully seat the roller assembly




3. Verify that the roller assembly is correctly installed—it should be firmly attached to the tray.

Figure 5-226 Check the installation



Install the Tray 2-X paper pickup roller assembly

Learn about installing the Tray 2-X rollers.

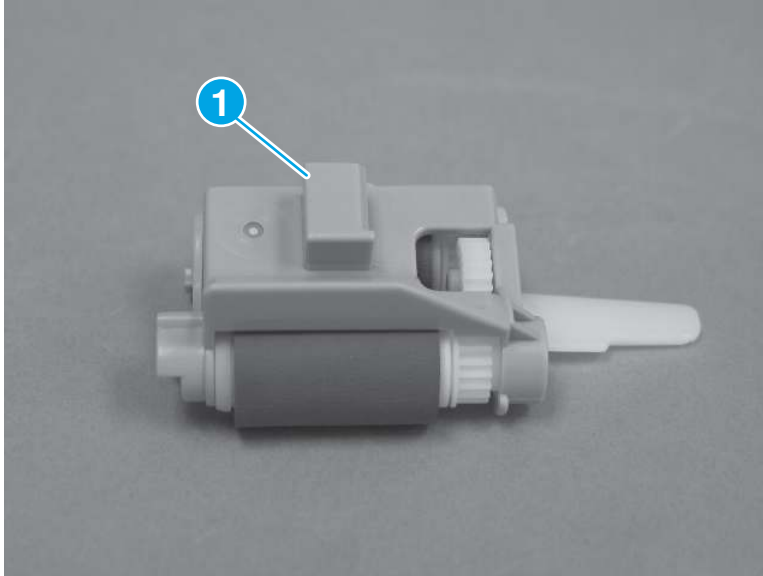
 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Before proceeding, take note of the mounting tab (callout 1) on the replacement roller assembly.

 **IMPORTANT:** When correctly installed, a black-plastic protrusion in the printer fits into this tab to hold the roller in the upright position.

Figure 5-227 Note the mounting tab



2. Position the roller assembly in the printer with the spring loaded shaft compressed (callout 1), and then rotate the right end of the assembly up and into the printer (callout 2).


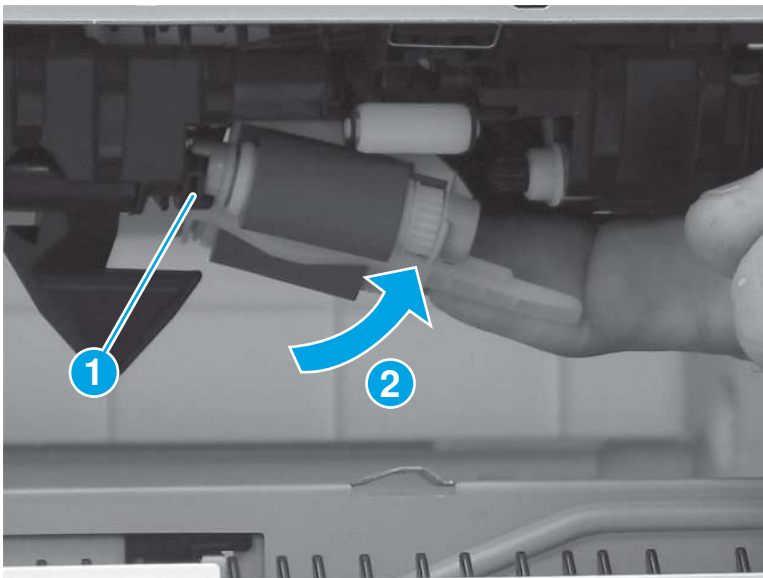
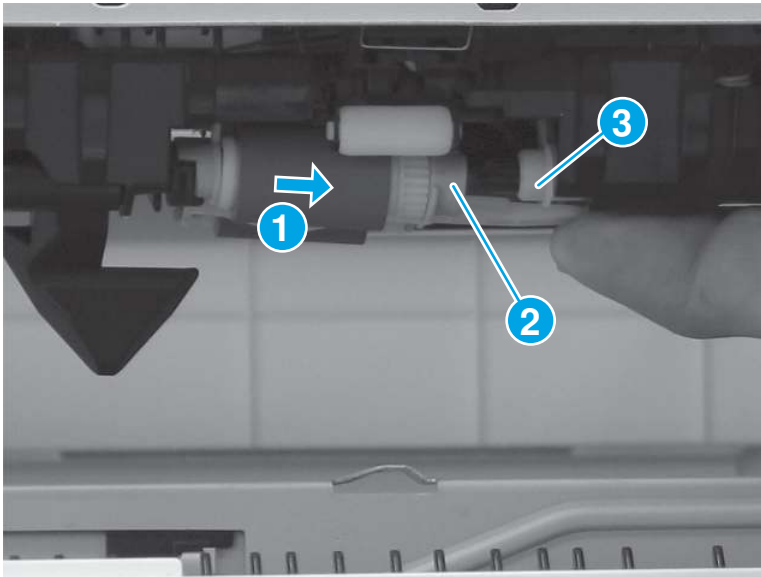
 **TIP:** It might be easier to access the roller through the tray cavity, while viewing it through the right door opening.

Figure 5-228 Position the roller assembly in the printer



3. Carefully release the spring loaded shaft (callout 1) with the roller in place. The collar (callout 2) on the assembly fits over the bushing (callout 3) in the printer.

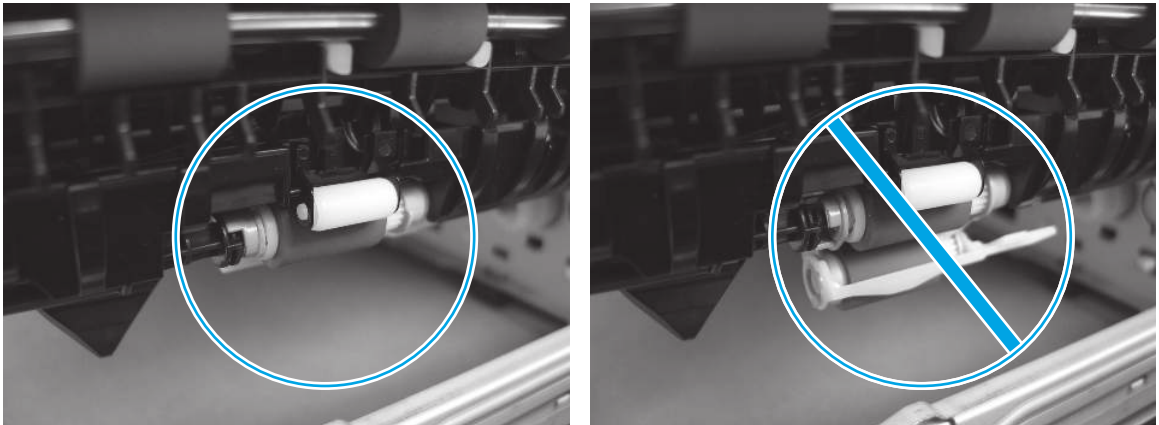
Figure 5-229 Release the spring loaded shaft



4. Make sure that the roller assembly is correctly installed. It must not hang down into the tray cavity. If the roller hangs down into the tray cavity, remove it, and then reinstall it.

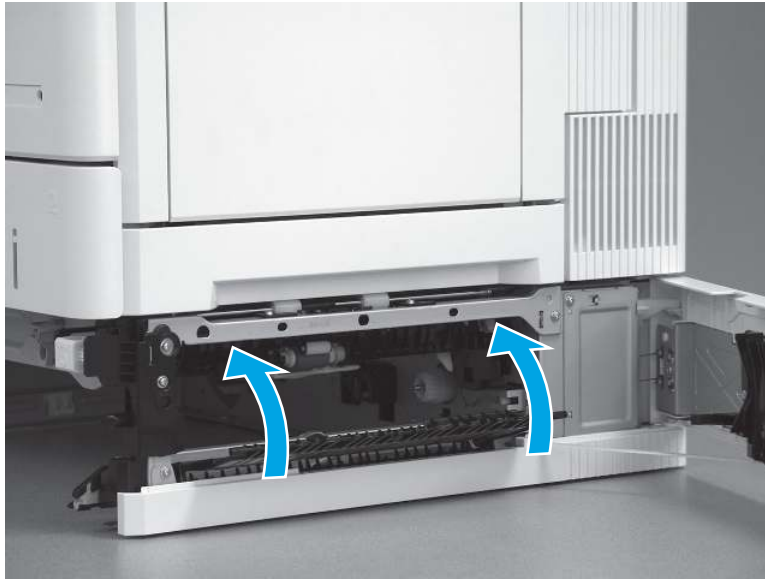
⚠ CAUTION: If the roller assembly is not correctly installed, it will be damaged when the tray is installed

Figure 5-230 Verify the roller installation



5. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Raise the paper guide.

Figure 5-231 Raise the Tray 3, 4, or 5 paper guide



6. **Trays 3, 4, or 5 only:** Close the right door.

Figure 5-232 Close the Tray 3, 4, or 5 right door



7. Close the right door.

Figure 5-233 Close the right door



8. With the front of the tray slightly lifted, align the sides of the tray with the rails in the printer, and then carefully slide the tray into the printer.

 **TIP:** As the tray slides into the printer, lower the front of it.

Figure 5-234 Install the tray



9. Close the tray.

Figure 5-235 Close the tray



Removal and replacement: Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the intermediate transfer belt (ITB) assembly.

 [View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the Intermediate transfer belt.](#)

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 5-27 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-6576-000CN	Intermediate transfer belt assembly
B5L24-69001	Intermediate transfer belt assembly (refurbished)

Required tools

No special tools are required to install this assembly.

After performing service

Make sure that the right door is fully closed after replacing the ITB.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

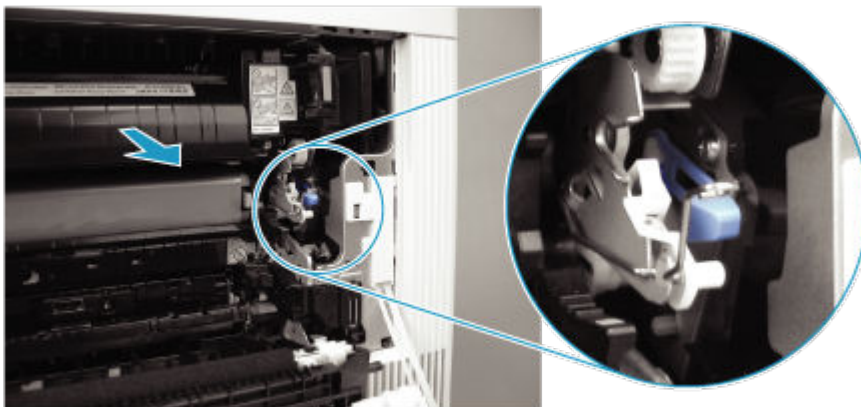
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-236 Open the right door



2. Pull the blue lever to release the ITB drive coupling.

Figure 5-237 Release the ITB drive coupling



3. Push in on the blue arm to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then completely lower the assembly.


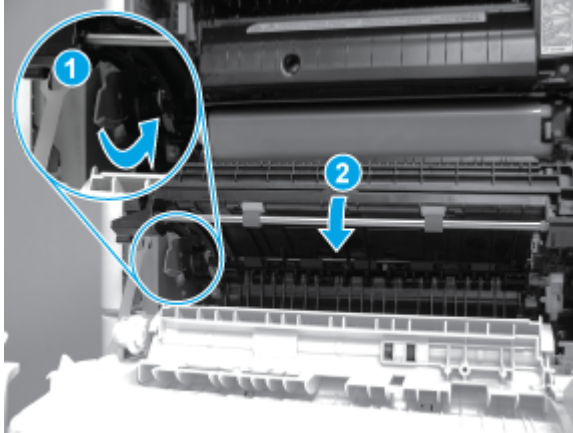
 **NOTE:** Press the blue arm on the secondary transfer roller assembly a second time to release the roller assembly when it stops at the halfway open position.

Figure 5-238 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



4. Release the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).


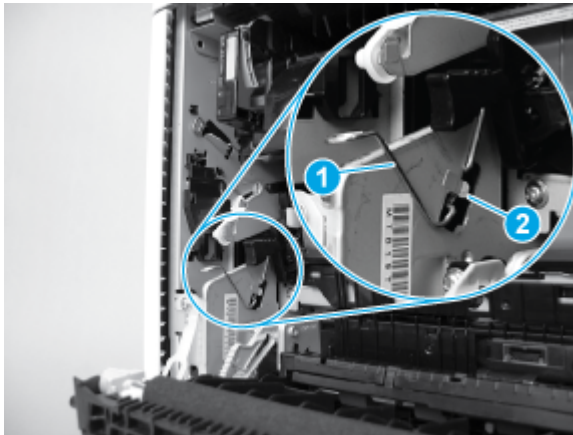

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-239 Release the front-side ITB spring

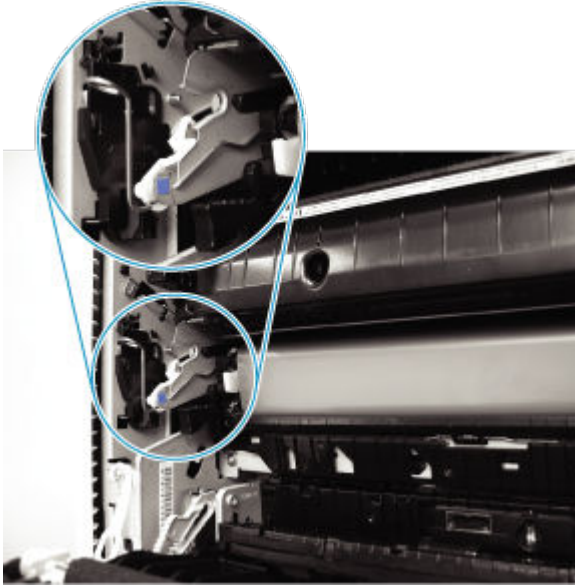


5. Place the left-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

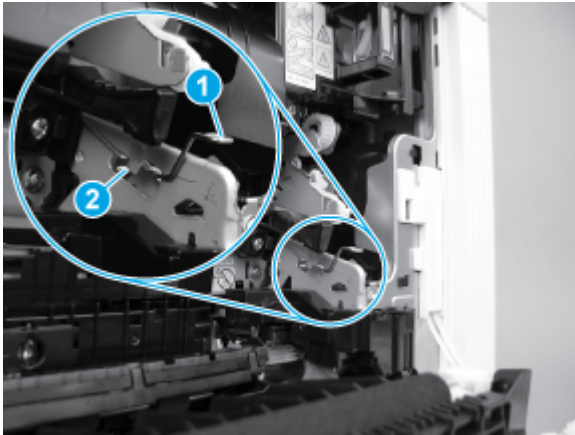
 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-240 Place the spring on the holder



6. Release the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).

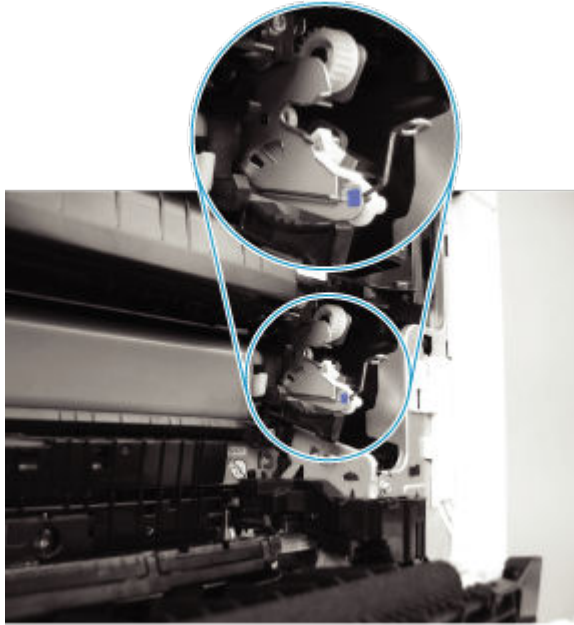
Figure 5-241 Release the rear-side ITB spring



7. Place the right-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

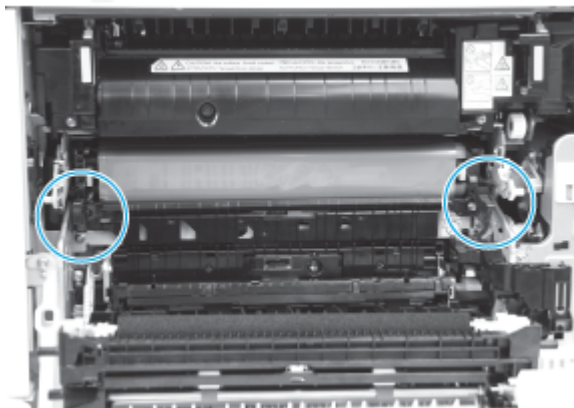
Figure 5-242 Place the spring on the holder



8. Grasp the two blue handles on the ITB.

⚠ CAUTION: If the ITB is removed to access other assemblies in the printer, use care. The ITB is a sensitive assembly. Be careful when handling the ITB so that it is not damaged. Always place the ITB in a safe and protected location.

Figure 5-243 Grasp the ITB handles



9. Pull the ITB out of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 5-244 Remove the ITB



2. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

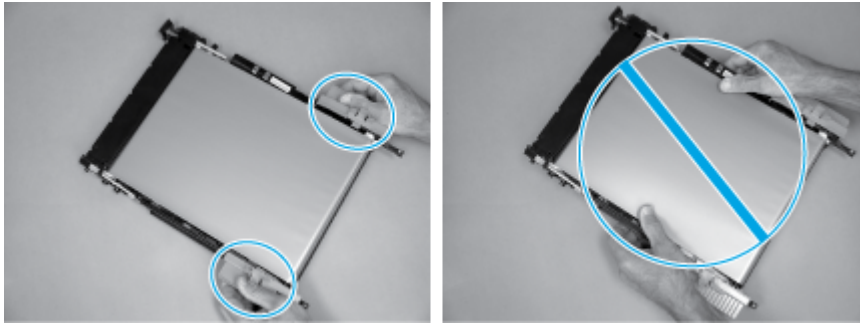
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

3. Install the ITB

Follow these steps to install the ITB.

1. Hold the ITB by the orange handles.

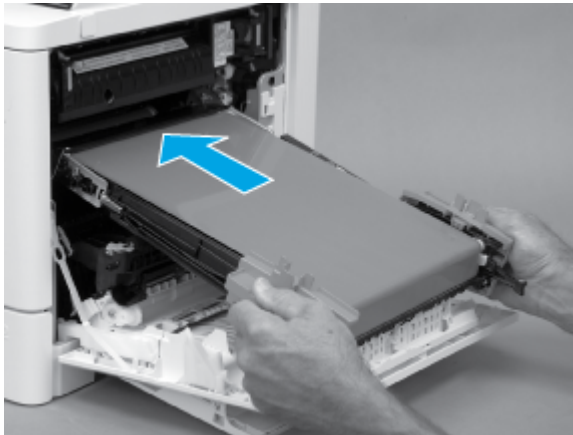
Figure 5-245 Handle the ITB by the edges



2. Align the ITB with the slots in the printer, and then carefully push it into the printer.

 **NOTE:** Be careful. Do not dislodge the ITB retainer springs from the holders on the chassis. The springs can interfere with installing the ITB.

Figure 5-246 Align the ITB with the slots in the product



3. Continue to carefully push the ITB into the printer until the orange handles stop it.

Figure 5-247 Orange handles stop



4. Release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-248 Release one tab



5. Remove the orange handle. Repeat this step for the remaining orange handle.

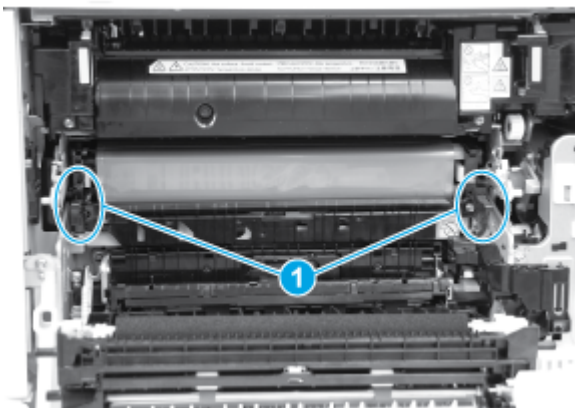
 **TIP:** HP recommends recycling the plastic handles.

Figure 5-249 Remove the orange handle



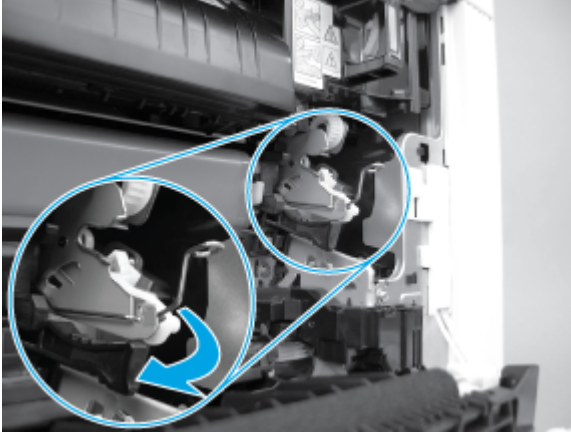
6. Continue to carefully push the ITB into the printer until it is fully installed.

Figure 5-250 Install the ITB



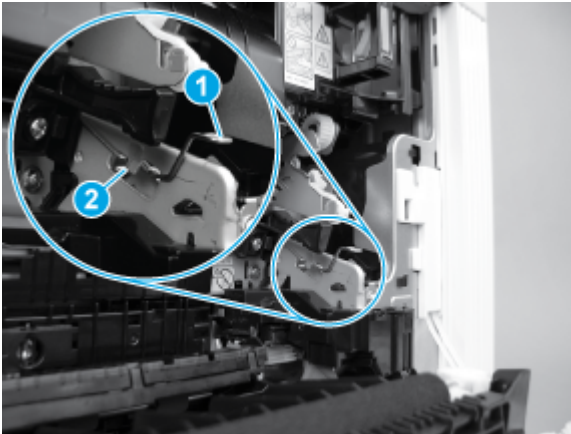
7. Remove the right-side ITB spring from the holder.

Figure 5-251 Remove the spring from the holder



8. Fasten the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) under the tab (callout 2).

Figure 5-252 Fasten the rear-side ITB spring



9. Remove the left-side ITB spring from the holder.


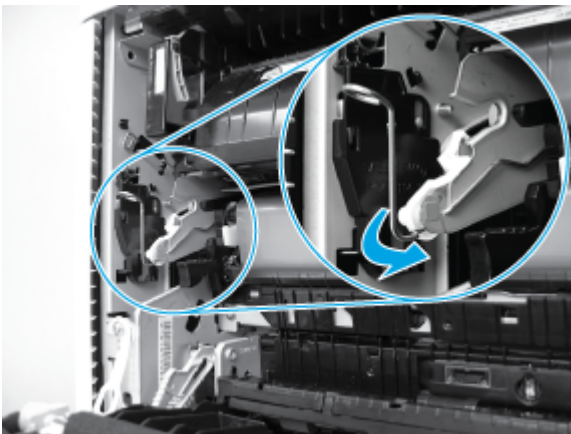
 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-253 Remove the spring from the holder



10. Fasten the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) under the tab (callout 2).


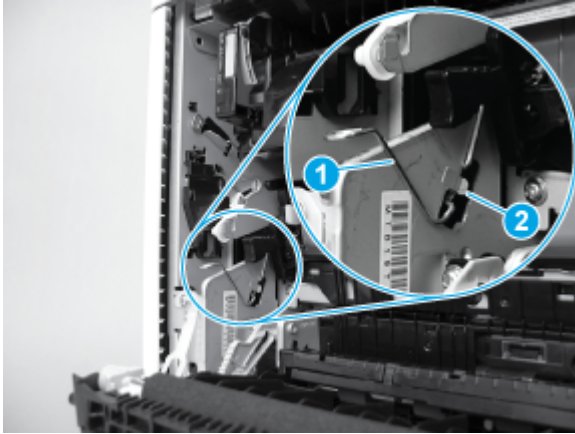
 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

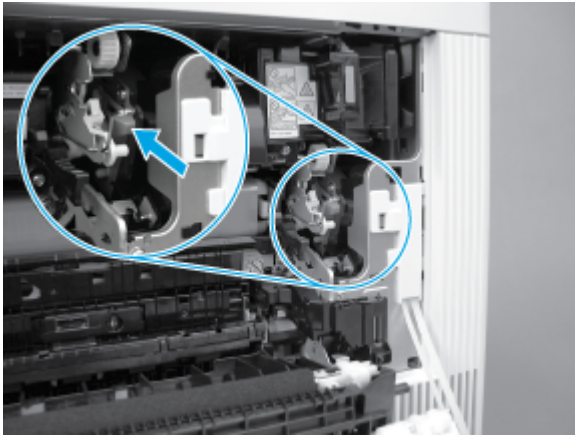
Figure 5-254 Fasten the front-side ITB spring



11. Push in the blue lever to engage the ITB drive coupling.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the ITB drive coupling is not fully engaged, the right door will not properly close.

Figure 5-255 Engage the ITB drive coupling



12. Close the right door.

 **TIP:** The right door should close easily if the ITB assembly is correctly installed.

Figure 5-256 Close the right door



Document feeder / scanner

Learn about document feeder and scanner parts removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder (M577/M578/E57540)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder (MFP).



[View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the document feeder.](#)

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-28 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L47-67906	Kit - ADF whole unit Enterprise
B5L47-67907	Kit - ADF whole unit Workflow

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip.
- Small flat-blade screwdriver.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

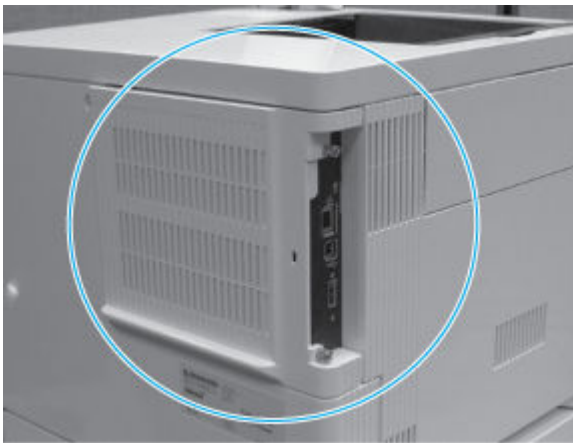
Use the document feeder to make a copy to make sure that it is properly functioning.

1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

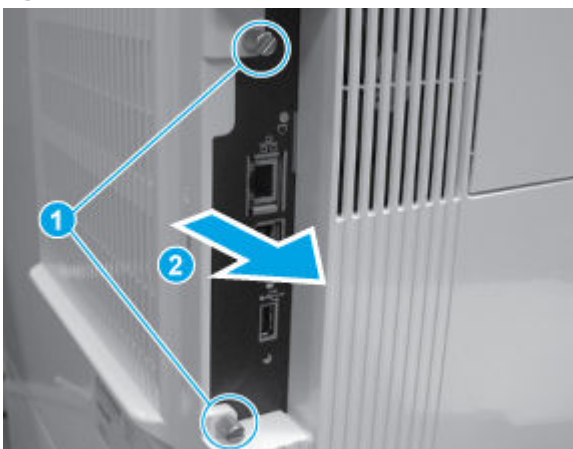
Figure 5-257 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-258 Loosen the thumbscrews



2. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

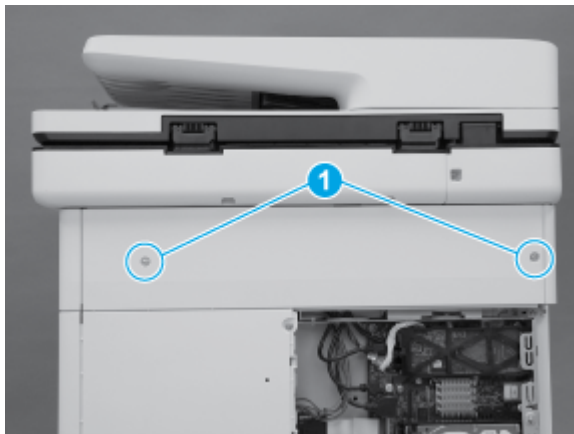
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

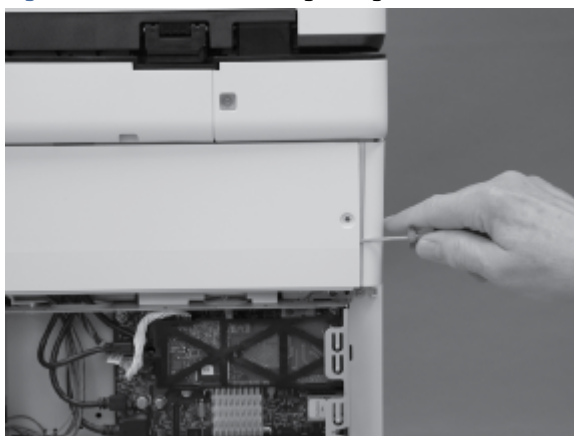
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-259 Remove two screws



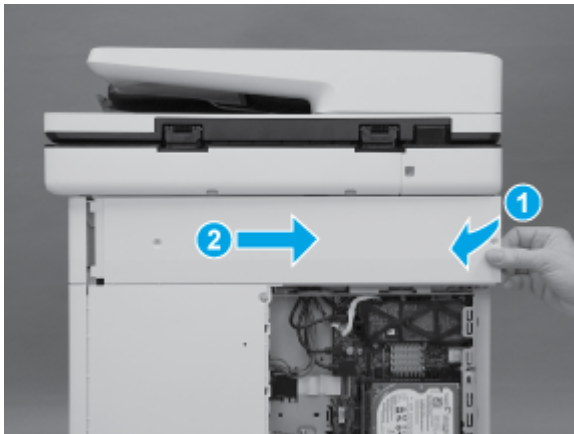
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-260 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-261 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-262 Remove the cover



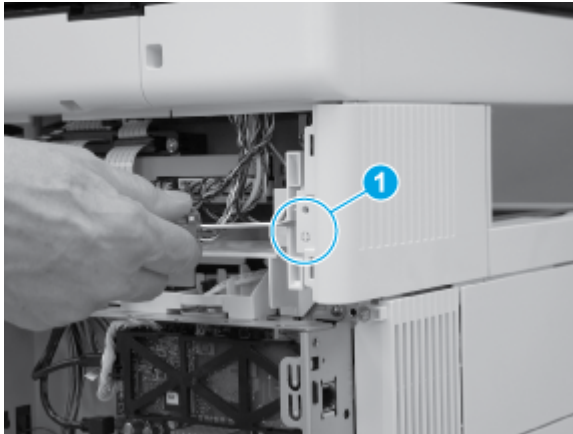
3. Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-263 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-264 Slide the cover back



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-265 Remove the left upper cover



4. Remove the document feeder (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (MFP).

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).


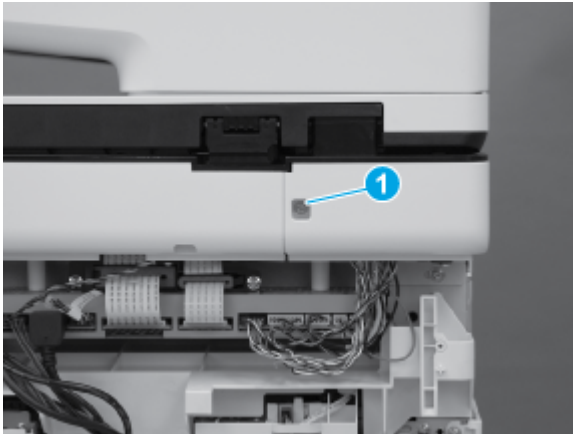
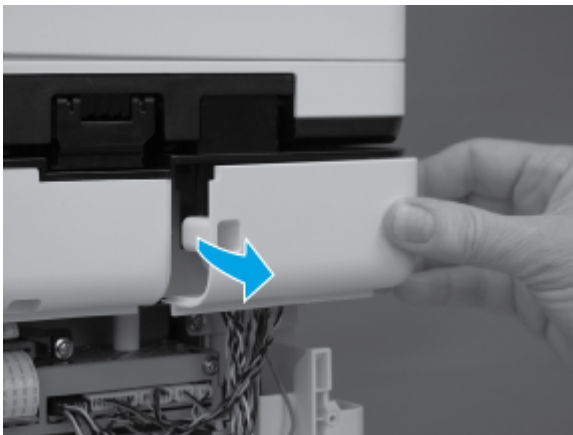
 **TIP:** This is a self-tapping screw for plastic. When reinstalling, rotate the screw counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw hole.

Figure 5-266 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-267 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1), remove one ground screw (callout 2) to release the grounding cable, and then disconnect all of the connectors (callout 3) on the scanner control board.


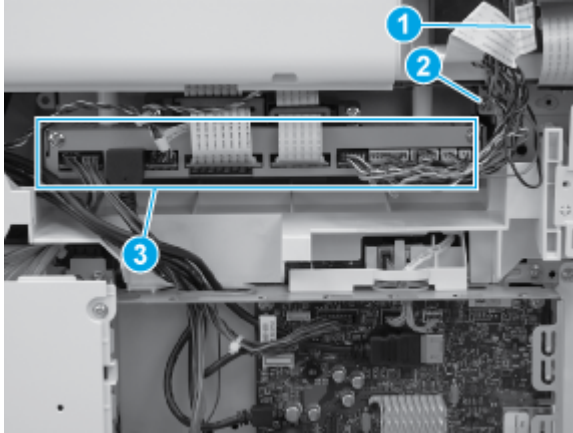
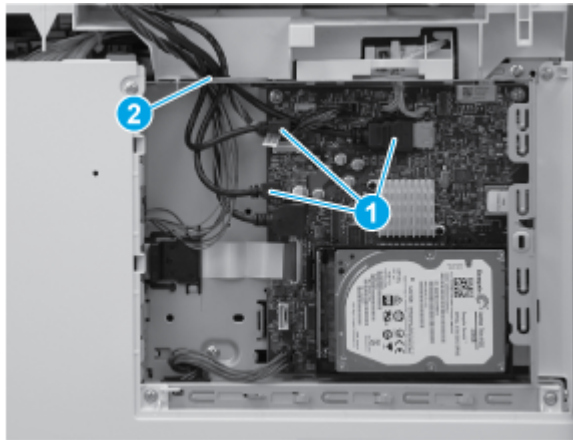
 **TIP:** There are eight wire-harness connectors, two flat cables, and one high-definition multimedia interface (HDMI) cable connector.

Figure 5-268 Disconnect the flat cable, ground cable, and connectors



4. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) from the formatter, and then release three black cables through the opening (callout 2) in the formatter case.

Figure 5-269 Disconnect three connectors



5. Open the document feeder.

Figure 5-270 Open the document feeder



6. Tilt the document feeder back until it stops (callout 1), and then lift it off of the scanner until it stops (callout 2).

Figure 5-271 Raise the document feeder



7. Support the document feeder, and then use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the document feeder hinges.

Figure 5-272 Release two tabs



8. Lift the document feeder up to remove it.


 **NOTE:** While removing the document feeder, carefully pass the wire harnesses and the flat cable through the opening in the scanner.

Figure 5-273 Remove the document feeder



5. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

6. Install the white backing (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the white backing (MFP).

 **IMPORTANT:** When a replacement image scanner or document feeder is installed, make sure to install a replacement white backing (supplied with the image scanner or document feeder).

1. Open the document feeder, and then place the replacement white backing on the flatbed scanner glass, as shown.

 **NOTE:** Place the corner of the backing that does not have a hook-and-loop fastener in the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.

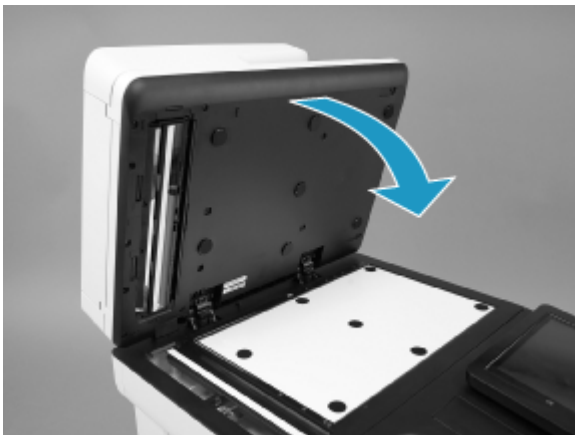
If any of the retention clips or springs on the document feeder are damaged, replace them with the clips supplied in white backing kit (part number 5851-7740).

Figure 5-274 Install the white backing



2. Close the document feeder.

Figure 5-275 Close the document feeder



3. Open the document feeder and make sure that the white backing is securely attached.

Figure 5-276 Check the white backing



7. Reset the firmware counter

Follow these steps to reset the firmware counter.

1. From the Home screen on the control panel, scroll to and touch the [Device Maintenance](#) button.
2. Scroll to and touch the [Service](#) button.
3. On the sign-in screen, select the [Service Access Code](#) option from the drop-down list.
4. Enter the following service access code for this printer: 11057715.
5. Scroll to and touch the [Cycle Counts](#) item.
6. Reset the following items:
 - [Document Feeder Kit Interval](#); set to zero
 - [ADF Count](#); set to zero

Removal and replacement: Scanner control board (SCB) (M577/M578/E57540)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner control board (SCB).



[View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the scanner control board.](#)

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-29 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L47-67903	Scanner control board kit with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required for this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

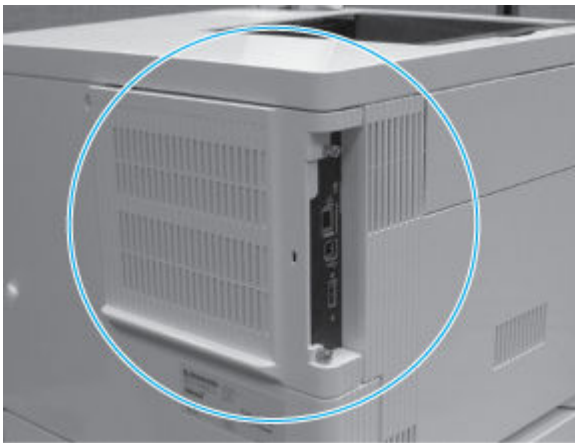
Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

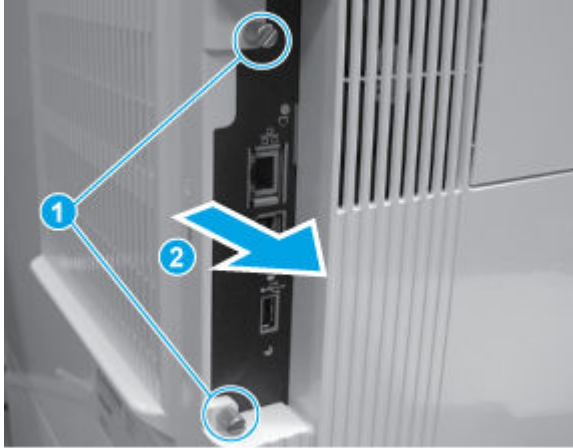
Figure 5-277 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-278 Loosen the thumbscrews



2. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).


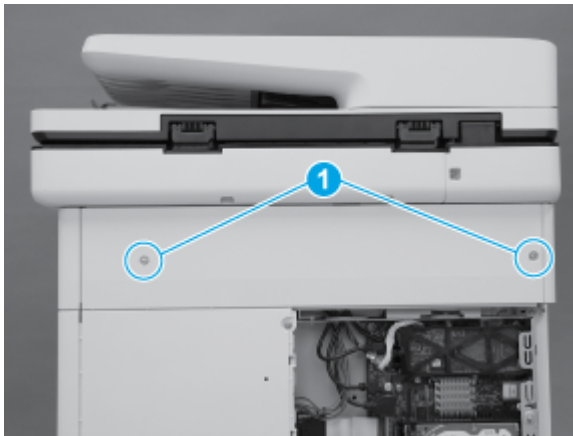
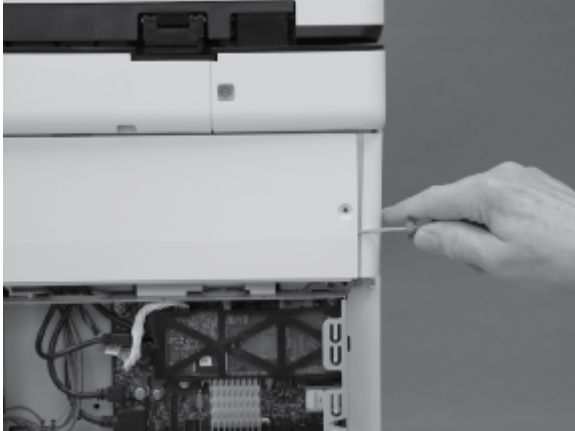
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-279 Remove two screws



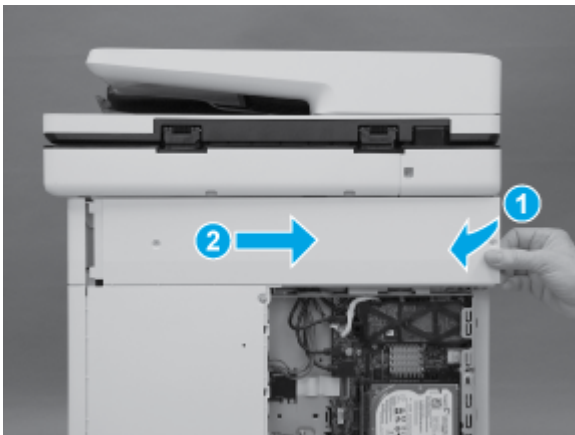
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-280 Release the right edge



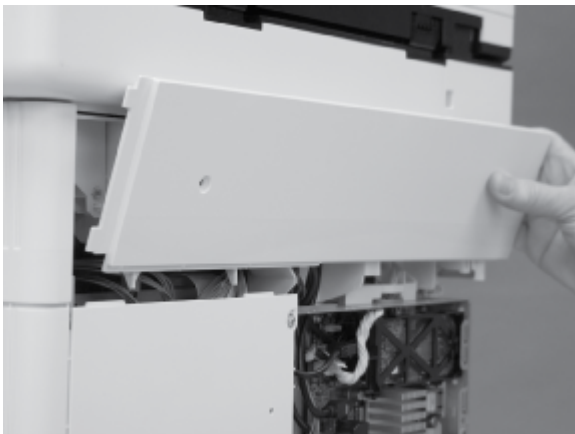
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-281 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-282 Remove the cover



3. Remove the scanner control board (SCB)

Follow these steps to Remove the scanner control board (SCB).

1. Disconnect all of the connectors (callout 1) from the SCB.


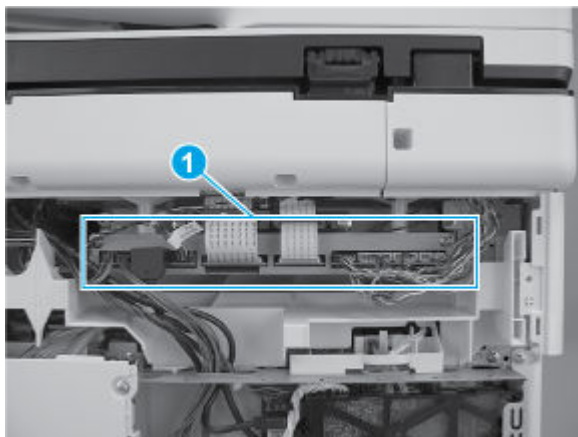
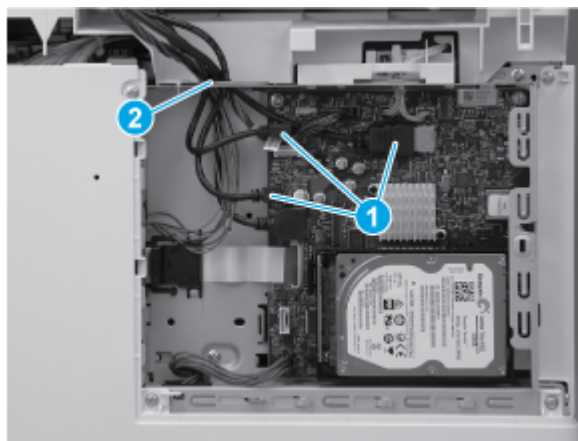
 **TIP:** There are eight wire-harness connectors, two flat cables, and one high-definition multimedia interface (HDMI) cable connector.

Figure 5-283 Disconnect all of the connectors



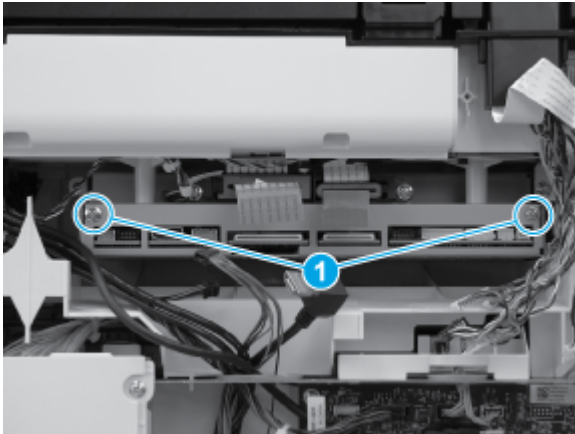
2. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) from the formatter, and then release three black cables through the opening (callout 2) in the formatter case.

Figure 5-284 Disconnect three connectors



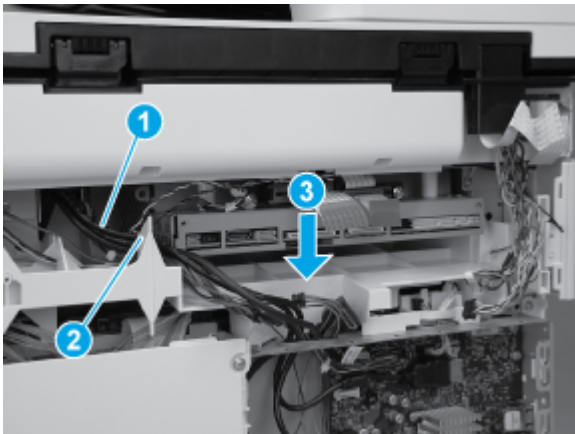
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-285 Remove two screws



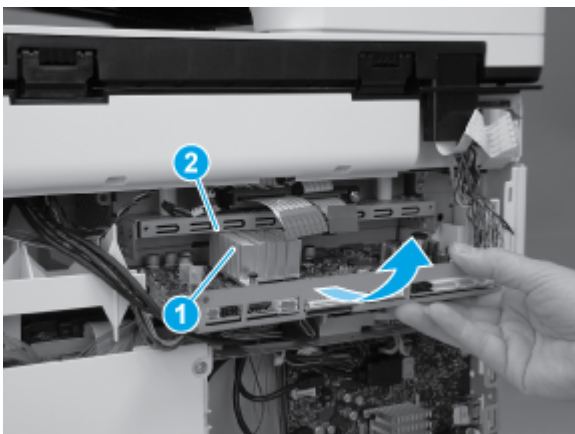
4. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), and then lower the SCB (callout 3).

Figure 5-286 Slide the SCB out



5. Rotate the SCB up and out of the printer. Make sure that the heat sink (callout 1) on the SCB does not get caught on the edge of the sheet metal (callout 2).

Figure 5-287 Remove the SCB



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Image scanner (M577/M578/E57540)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the image scanner.



[View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the image scanner.](#)

Mean time to repair: 35 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-30 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L46-67904	Image scanner whole unit kit with instruction guide

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver.
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page, and then make a copy using the flatbed glass to make sure that it is properly functioning.

Print a configuration page, and then make a copy using the document feeder to make sure that it is properly functioning.

1. Remove the control-panel cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control-panel cover (MFP).

1. Open the document feeder (callout 1).

 **NOTE:** If the control panel is not fully tilted forward, tilt it forward now until it stops (callout 2).

Figure 5-288 Open the document feeder



2. Beginning at the right side of the control-panel cover, carefully release five tabs along the top edge of the cover.

 **NOTE:** The thin, black plastic cover will separate from the white plastic control-panel base.

Figure 5-289 Release five tabs



3. Continue to lift the top edge of the cover away from the printer, and then remove the cover.

Figure 5-290 Remove the cover



2. Remove the white backing (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the white backing (MFP).

1. Remove the white backing.

Figure 5-291 Remove the white backing



2. One or more of the retention clips (callout 1) that fit in the openings (callout 2) in the document feeder might remain attached to the white backing when it is removed. If this happens, remove the clip from the white backing.

 **NOTE:** If none of the retention clips remain attached to the white backing, skip the remaining sub-steps in this removal procedure.

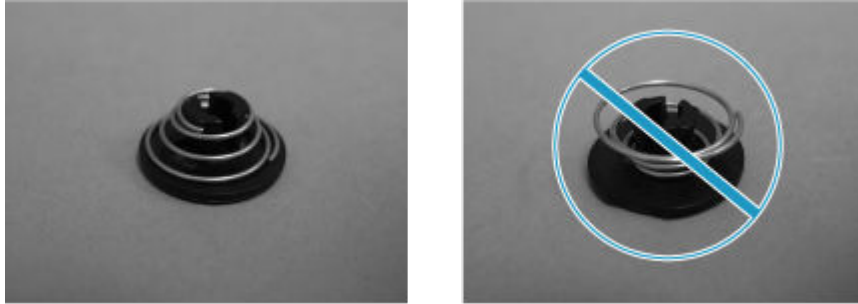
Figure 5-292 Check the retention clips



3. If a spring comes off of a retention clip, make sure that it is correctly repositioned on the clip.

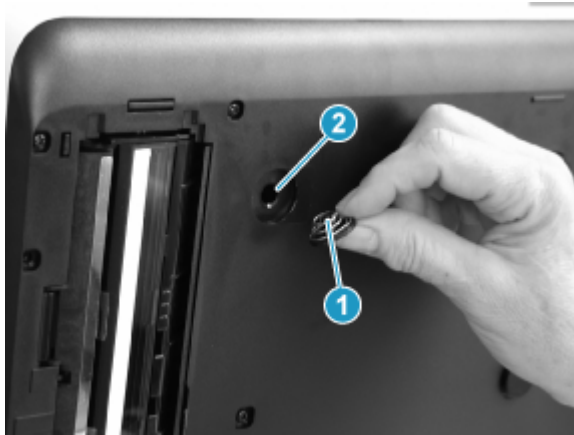
 **NOTE:** If any of the retention clips or springs are damaged, replace them with the clips supplied in this white backing kit (part number 5851-7740).

Figure 5-293 Check the retention clip spring



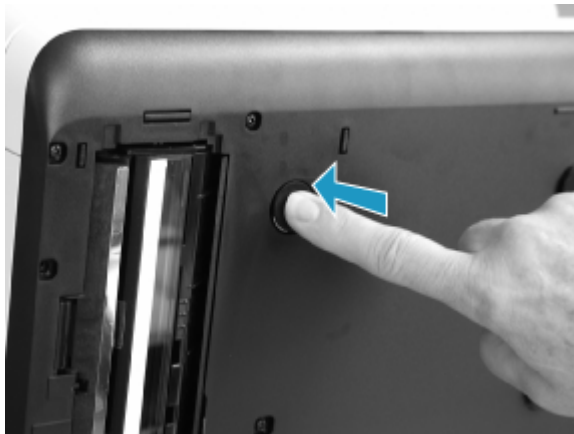
4. Install the clip (callout 1) in the opening (callout 2) in the document feeder.

Figure 5-294 Install the retention clip



5. Press the clip to make sure it is securely installed.

Figure 5-295 Press the retention clip



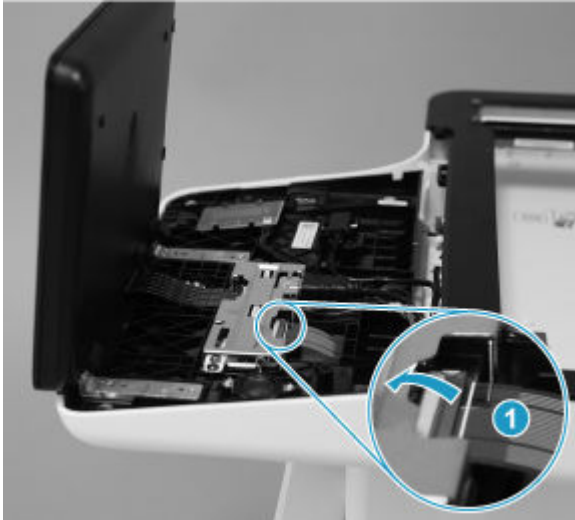
3. Remove the keyboard (flow models)

Follow these steps to remove the keyboard (flow models).

1. Open the latch (callout 1) to release the keyboard flat cable.

⚠ CAUTION: The latch must be opened to release the cable.

Figure 5-296 Disconnect the keyboard flat cable



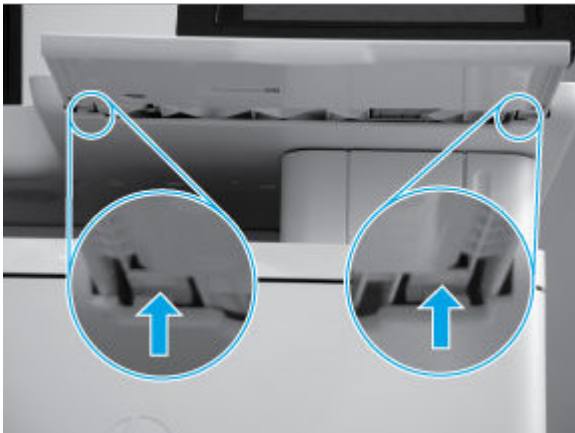
2. Slide the keyboard tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-297 Slide the keyboard out



3. Push up on the keyboard tray to release two tabs on the bottom of the tray, and then slide the tray toward the front of the printer to disengage the tabs.

Figure 5-298 Release two tabs



4. Slide the keyboard (callout 1) all of the way out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-299 Remove the keyboard



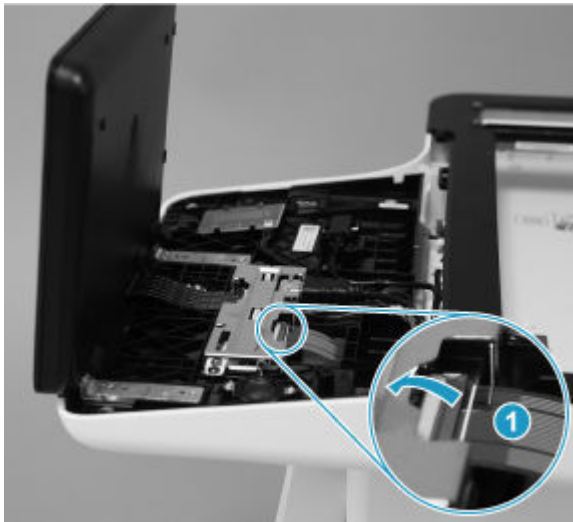
4. Remove the control panel (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel (MFP).

1. **Flow models:** Open the latch (callout 1) to release the keyboard flat cable.

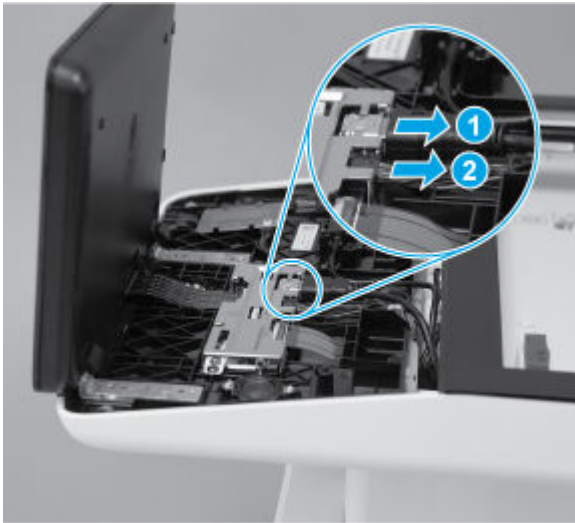
⚠ CAUTION: The latch must be opened to release the cable.

Figure 5-300 Disconnect the keyboard flat cable (flow models)



2. Disconnect one HDMI cable (callout 1) and one connector (callout 2).

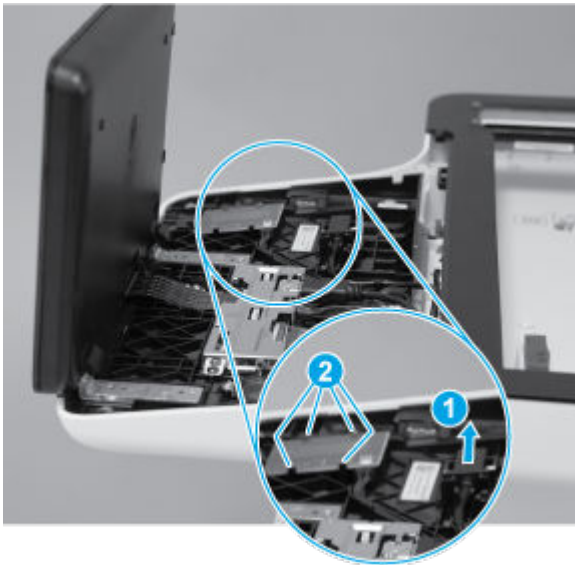
Figure 5-301 Disconnect connectors



3. Remove the USB cable (callout 1) from the holder.

Flow models: Release four tabs (callout 2), and then remove the near-field communication (NFC) printed circuit board.

Figure 5-302 Disconnect connectors



4. Remove three screws (callout 1).


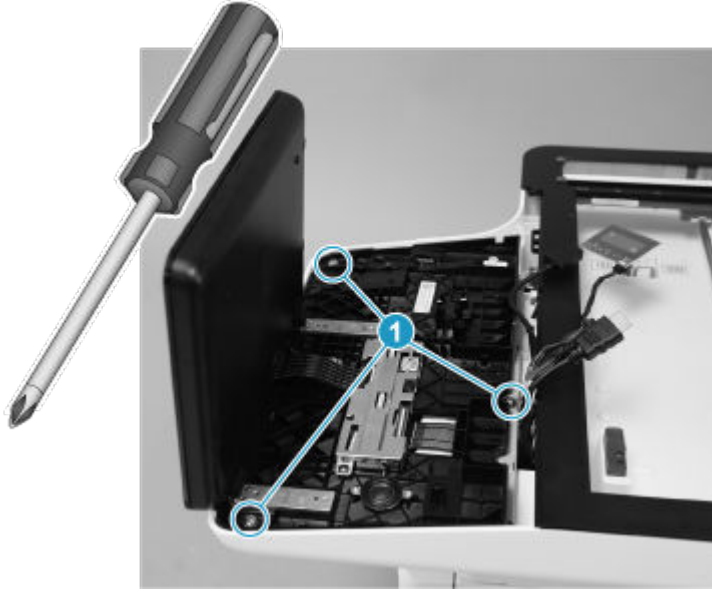
 **TIP:** The screwdriver (supplied with the kit) has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-303 Remove three screws



5. Lift the front of the control panel off of the printer (callout 1), and then slide it towards the front of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-304 Remove the control panel

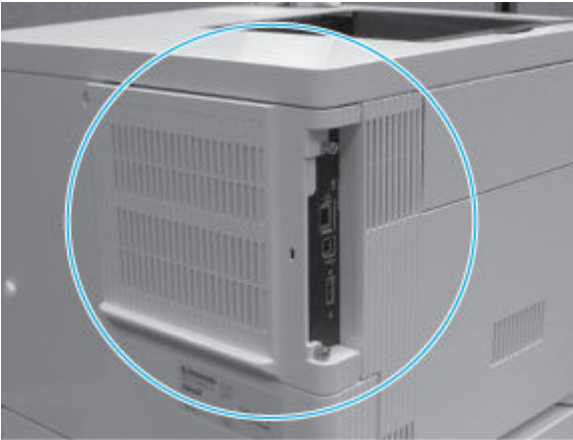


5. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

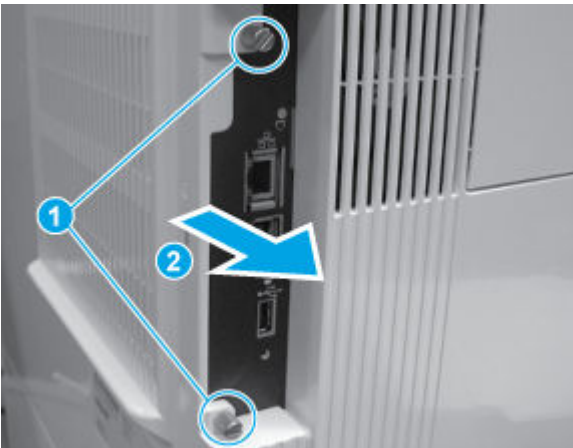
Figure 5-305 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-306 Loosen the thumbscrews



6. Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

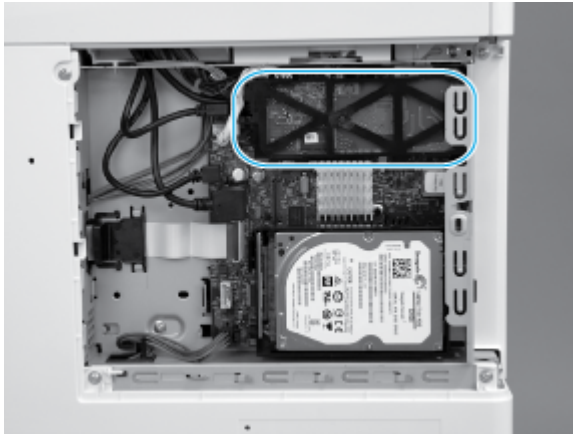
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

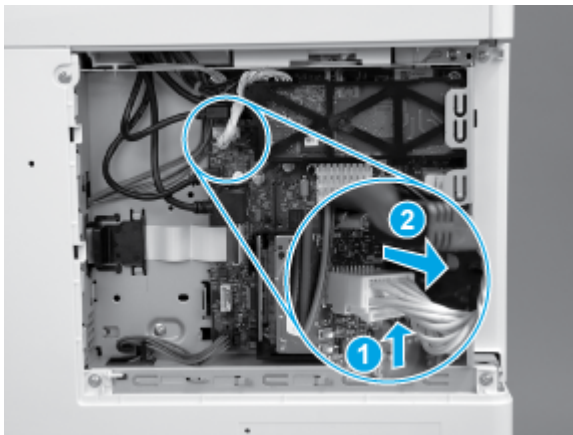
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-307 Locate the fax PCA



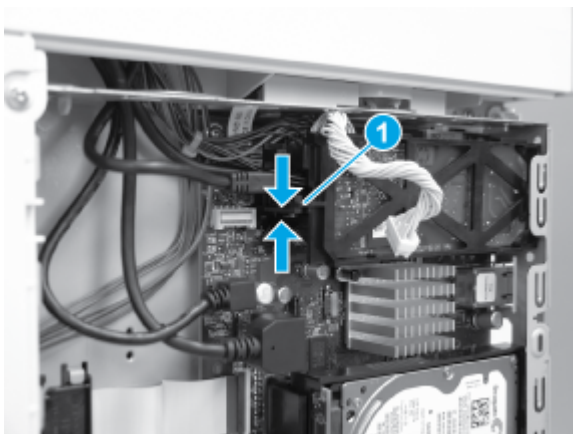
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-308 Disconnect one connector



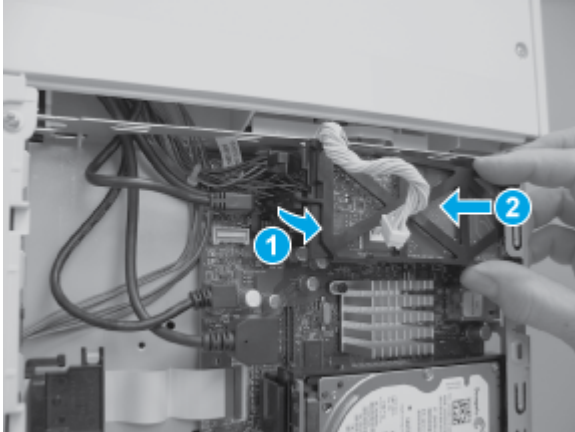
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-309 Release one latch




4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-310 Remove the fax PCA



7. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).


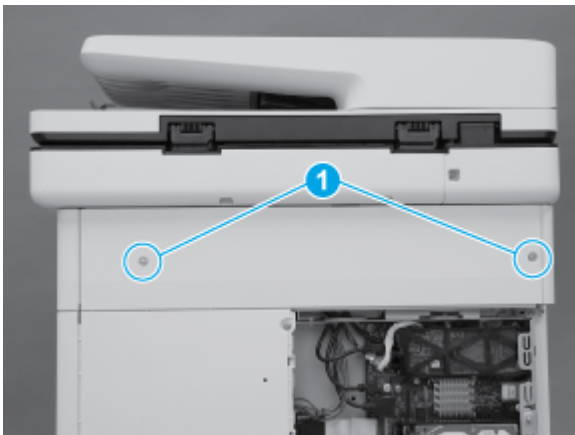
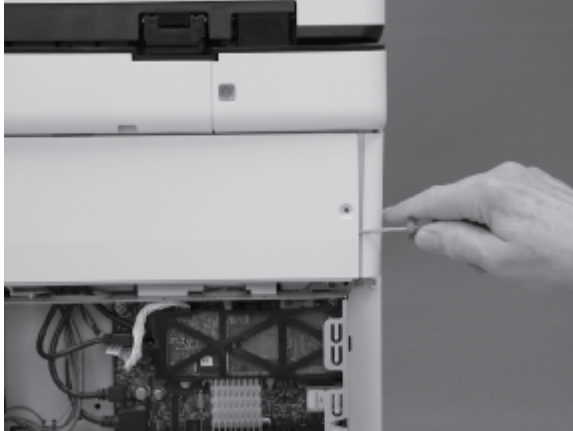
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-311 Remove two screws



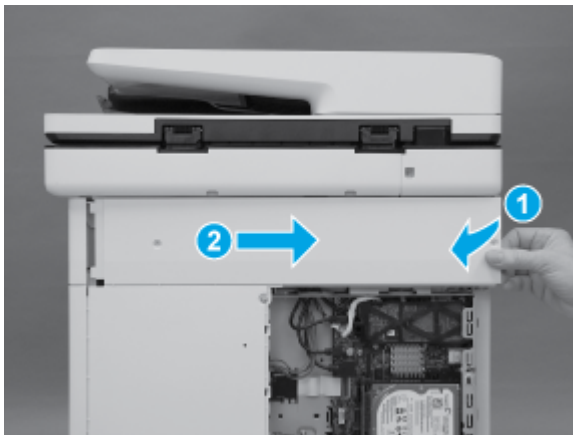
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-312 Release the right edge



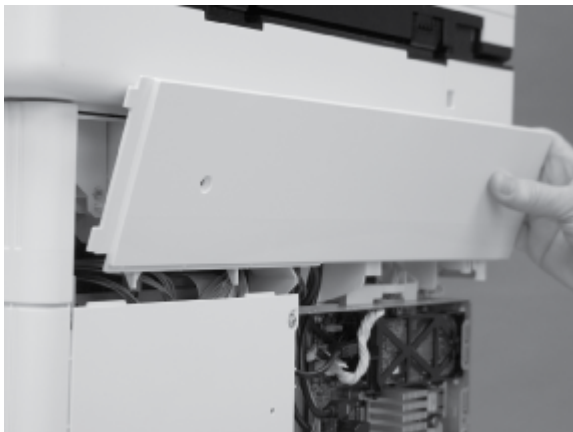
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-313 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-314 Remove the cover



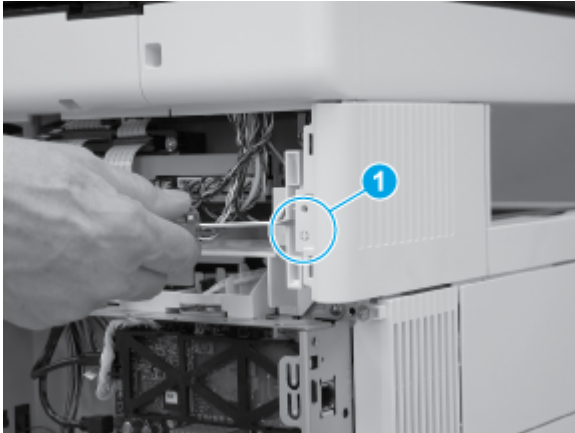
8. Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-315 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-316 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-317 Remove the left upper cover



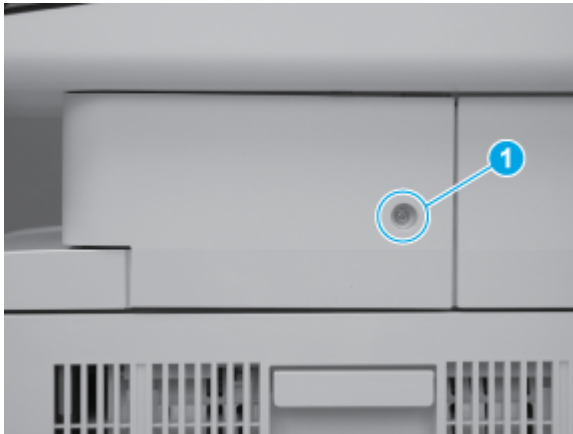
9. Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-318 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-319 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-320 Rotate the cover



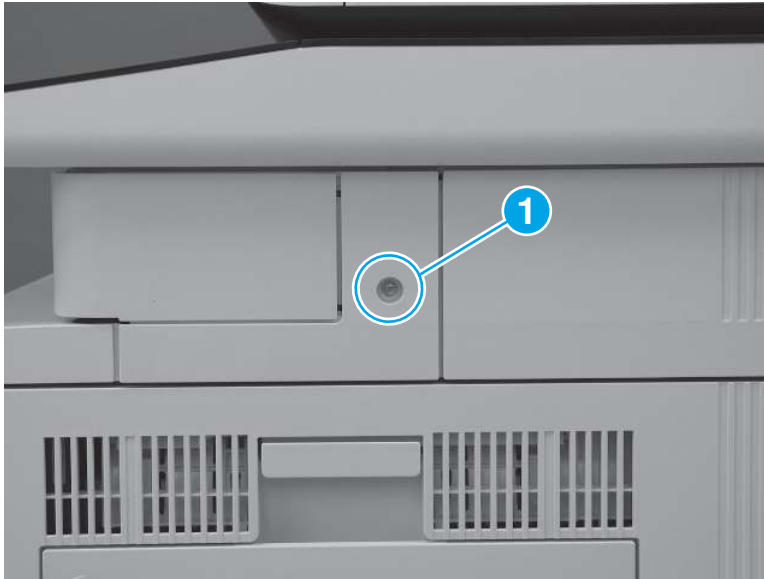
10. Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-321 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-322 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-323 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-324 Remove the cover



11. Remove the document feeder (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder (MFP).

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).


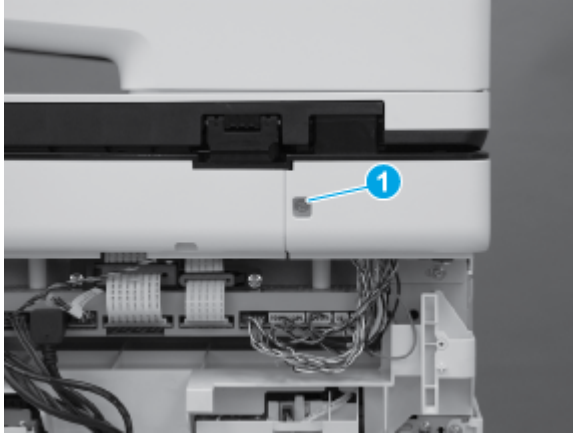
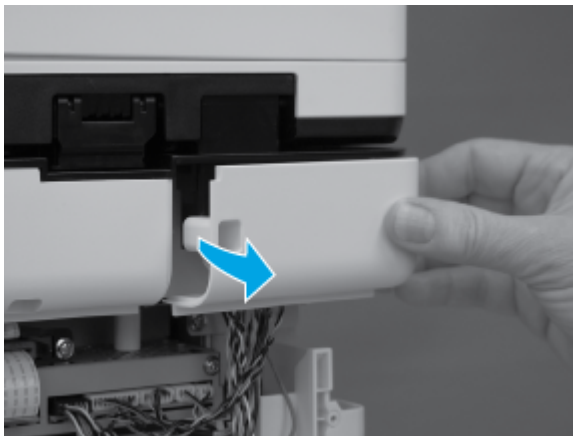
 **TIP:** This is a self-tapping screw for plastic. When reinstalling, rotate the screw counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw hole.

Figure 5-325 Remove one screw



2. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-326 Remove the cover



3. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1), remove one ground screw (callout 2) to release the grounding cable, and then disconnect all of the connectors (callout 3) on the scanner control board.


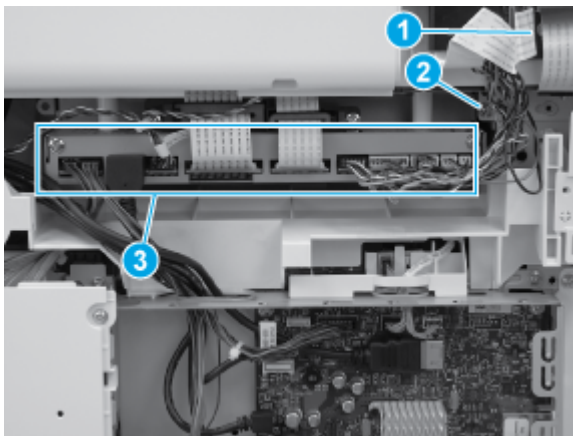
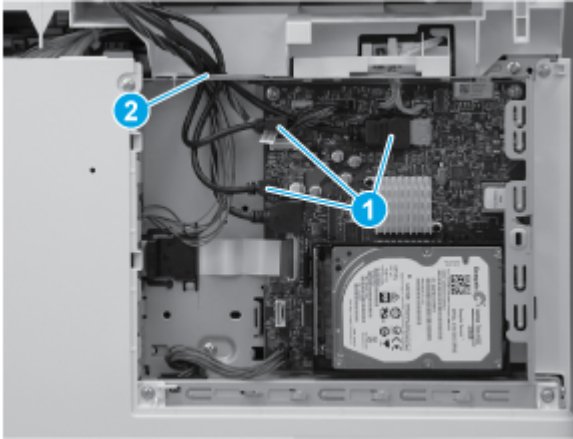
 **TIP:** There are eight wire-harness connectors, two flat cables, and one high-definition multimedia interface (HDMI) cable connector.

Figure 5-327 Disconnect the flat cable, ground cable, and connectors



4. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1) from the formatter, and then release three black cables through the opening (callout 2) in the formatter case.

Figure 5-328 Disconnect three connectors



5. Open the document feeder.

Figure 5-329 Open the document feeder



6. Tilt the document feeder back until it stops (callout 1), and then lift it off of the scanner until it stops (callout 2).

Figure 5-330 Raise the document feeder



7. Support the document feeder, and then use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the document feeder hinges.

Figure 5-331 Release two tabs



8. Lift the document feeder up to remove it.


 **NOTE:** While removing the document feeder, carefully pass the wire harnesses and the flat cable through the opening in the scanner.

Figure 5-332 Remove the document feeder

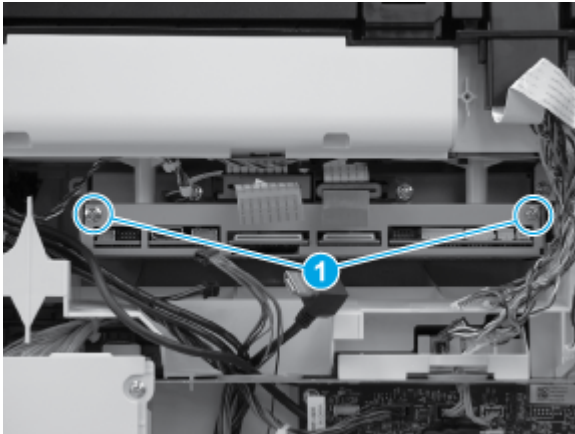


12. Remove the scanner control board (SCB) (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the scanner control board (SCB) (MFP).

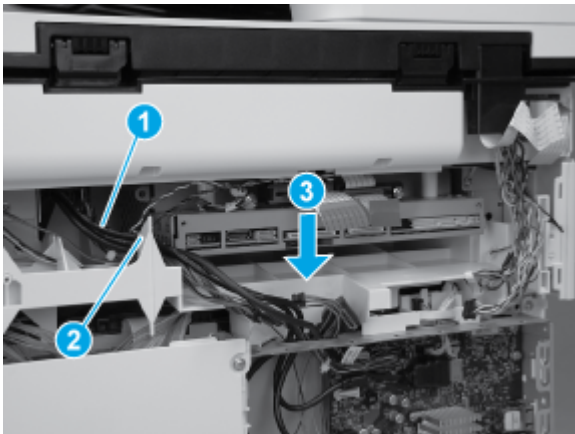
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-333 Remove two screws



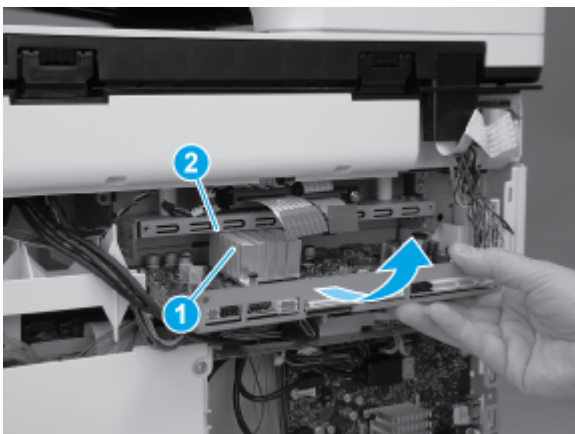
2. Remove the cables (callout 1) from the guide (callout 2), and then lower the SCB (callout 3).

Figure 5-334 Slide the SCB out



3. Rotate the SCB up and out of the printer. Make sure that the heat sink (callout 1) on the SCB does not get caught on the edge of the sheet metal (callout 2).

Figure 5-335 Remove the SCB

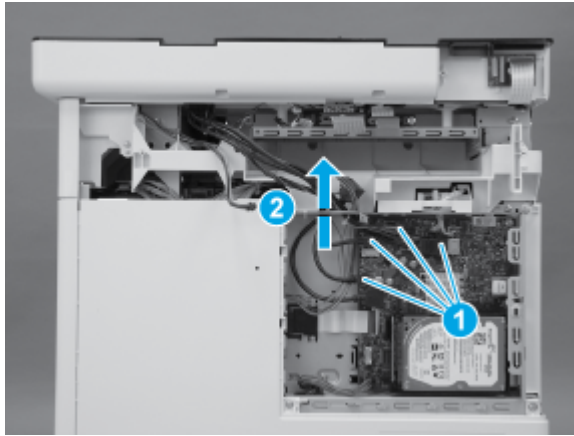


13. Remove the image scanner assembly (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the image scanner assembly (MFP).

1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

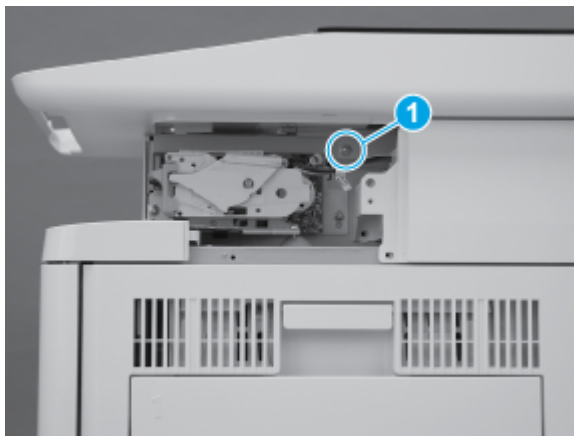
Figure 5-336 Disconnect cables and connectors



2. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

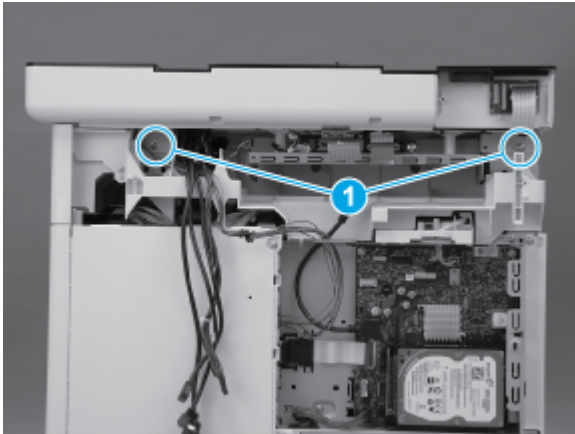
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-337 Remove one screw



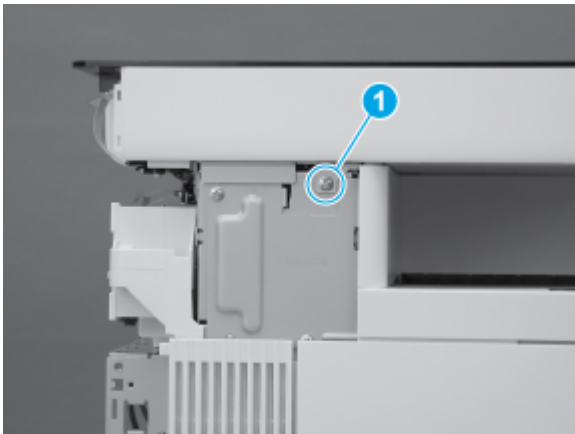
3. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-338 Remove two screws



4. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-339 Remove one screw



5. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-340 Release the image scanner



6. Lift the image scanner straight up to remove it.


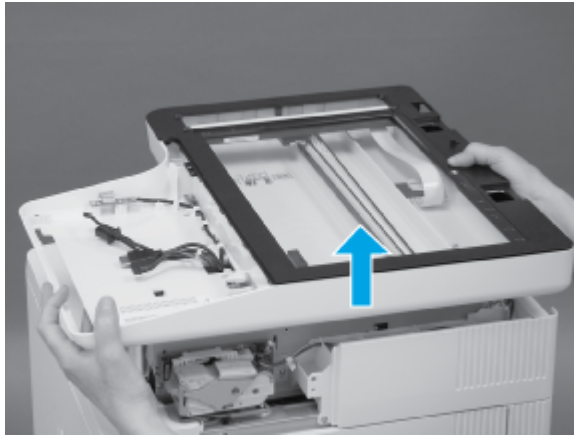
 **Reinstallation tip:** **Replacement image scanner kit:** Make sure to install the keyboard cover (non-flow models) supplied with the image scanner.


Figure 5-341 Remove the image scanner



14. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.


 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

15. Install the white backing (MFP)

Follow these steps to install the white backing (MFP).

 **IMPORTANT:** When a replacement image scanner or document feeder is installed, make sure to install a replacement white backing (supplied with the image scanner or document feeder).

1. Open the document feeder, and then place the replacement white backing on the flatbed scanner glass, as shown.

 **NOTE:** Place the corner of the backing that does not have a hook-and-loop fastener in the upper-left corner of the scanner glass.

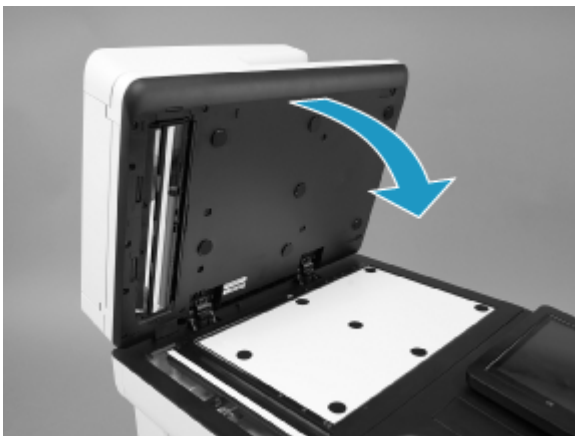
If any of the retention clips or springs on the document feeder are damaged, replace them with the clips supplied in white backing kit (part number 5851-7740).

Figure 5-342 Install the white backing



2. Close the document feeder.

Figure 5-343 Close the document feeder



3. Open the document feeder and make sure that the white backing is securely attached.

Figure 5-344 Check the white backing



Removal and replacement: External panels, covers, and doors (base printer)

Learn how to remove and replace the printer external panels, covers, and doors.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2

Learn about removing and replacing Tray 2.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-31 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0007-020CN	Tray 2

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-345 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.


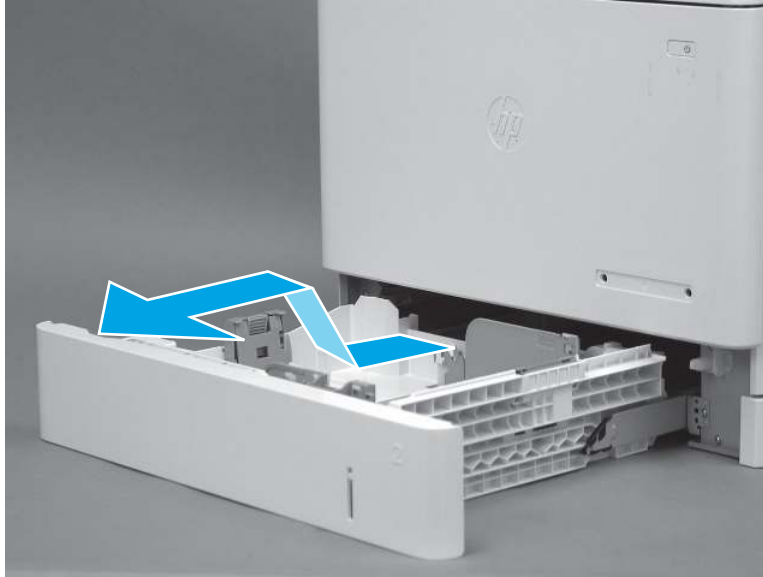
 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25–67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-346 Remove the tray



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler cover assembly (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)

Learn about removing and replacing the stapler cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-32 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L46-60121	Stapler cover assembly

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

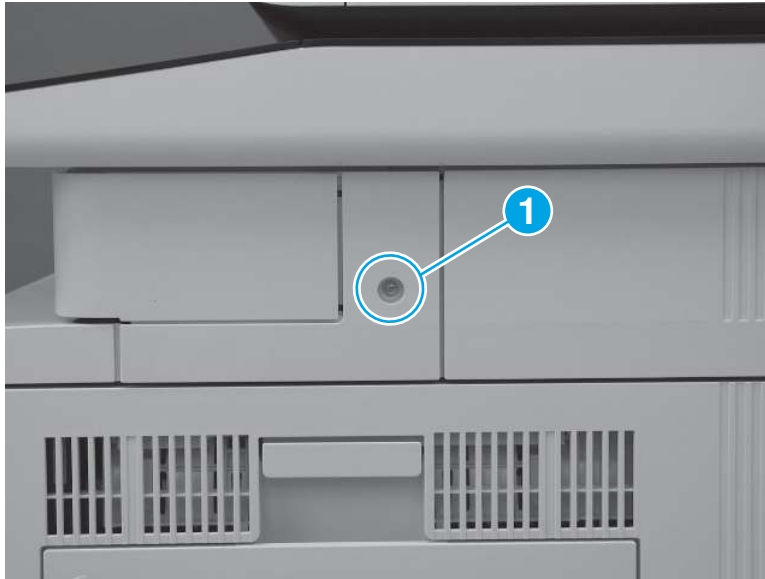
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

📝 NOTE: This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-347 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-348 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-349 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-350 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Right front upper cover (M577/M578/E57540 non-stapler models)


Learn about removing and replacing the right front upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-33 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L46-40024	Right front upper cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

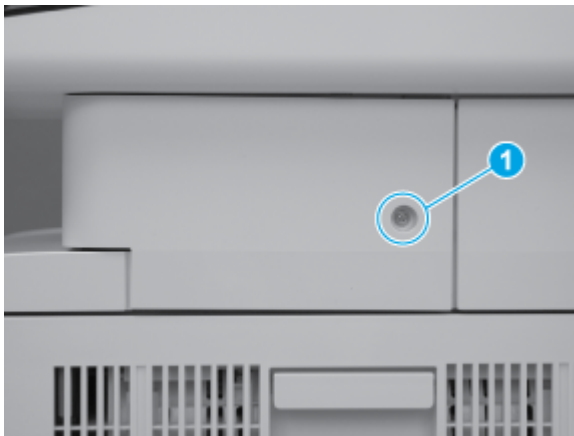
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-351 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-352 Release two tabs



3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.


Figure 5-353 Rotate the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-34 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-3385-000CN	Rear upper cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

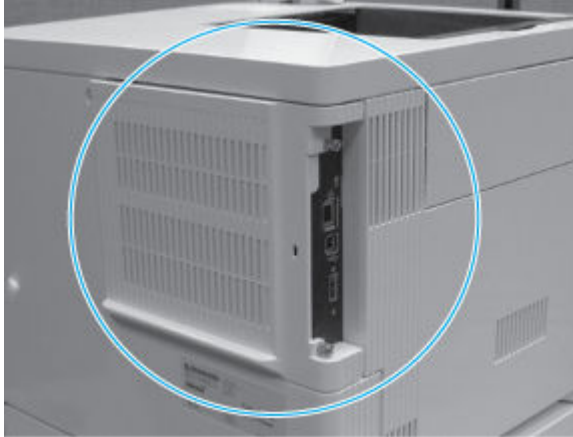
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

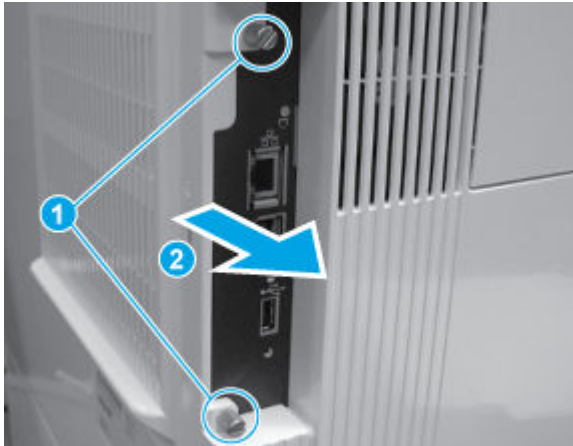
Figure 5-354 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-355 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

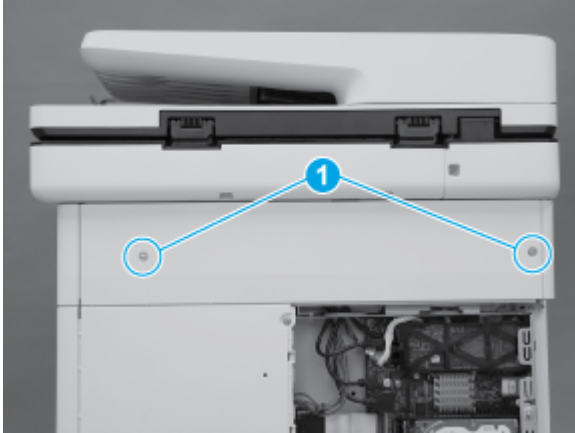
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

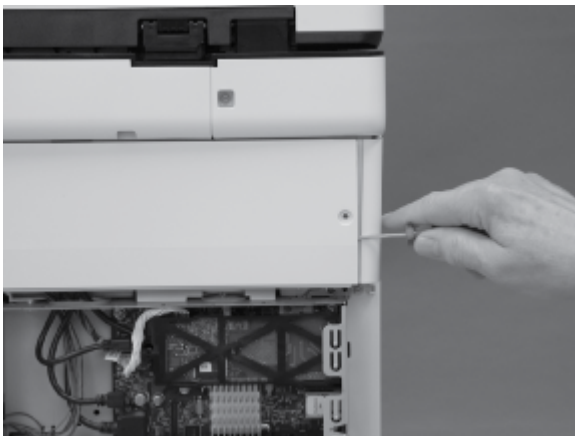
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-356 Remove two screws



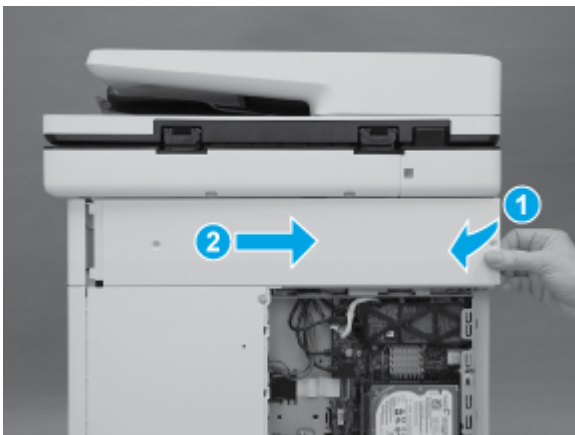
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-357 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-358 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-359 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left upper cover (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the left upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-35 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-3384-000CN	Left upper cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

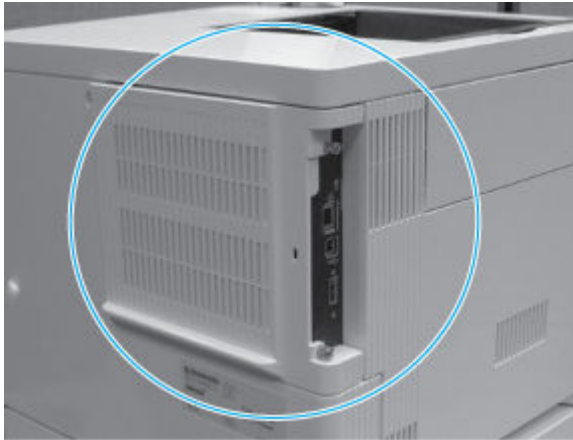
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

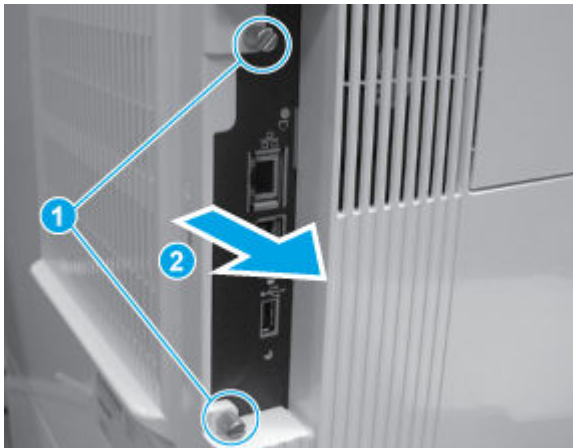
Figure 5-360 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-361 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

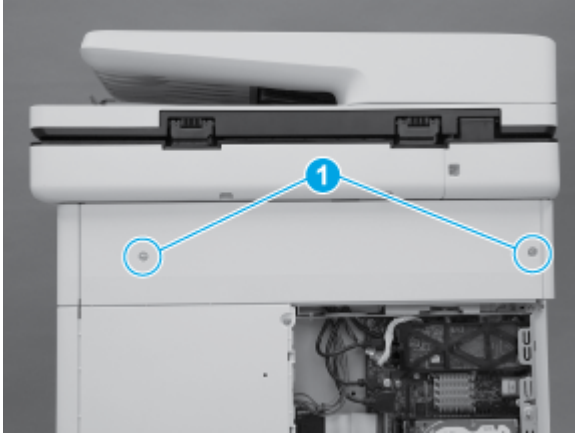
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

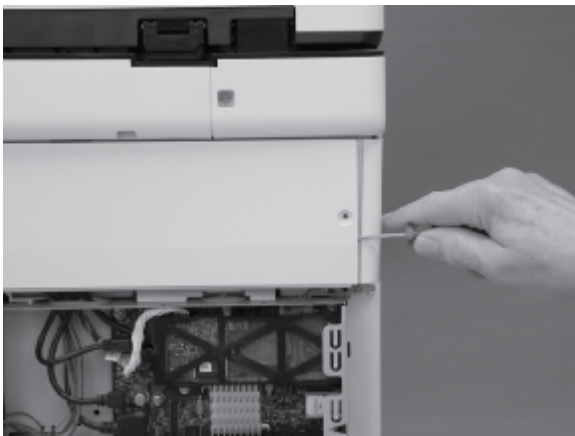
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-362 Remove two screws



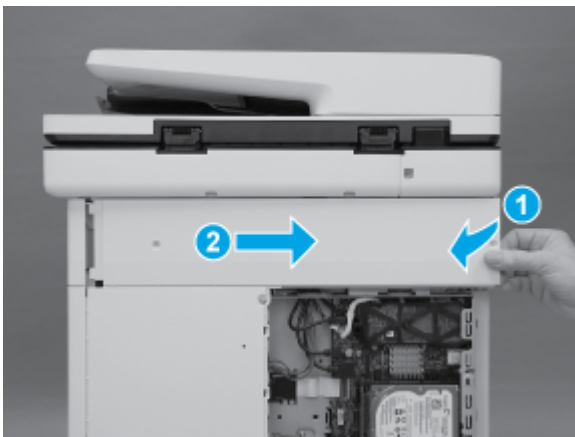
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-363 Release the right edge



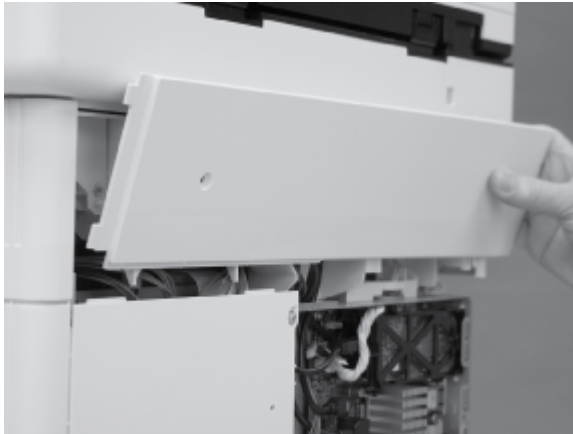
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-364 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-365 Remove the cover



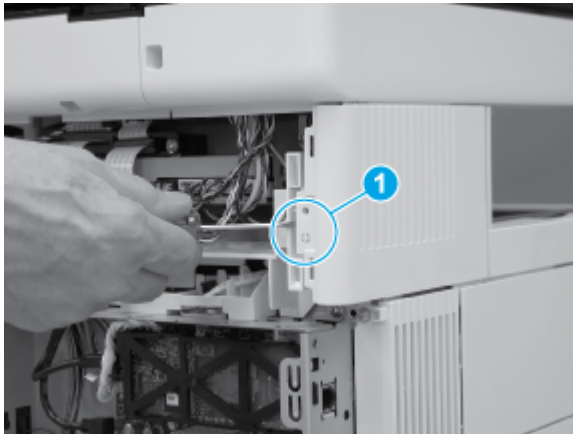
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-366 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-367 Slide the cover back



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-368 Remove the left upper cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Right upper cover (M577/M578/E57540)


Learn about removing and replacing the right upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-36 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-3386-000CN	Right upper cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

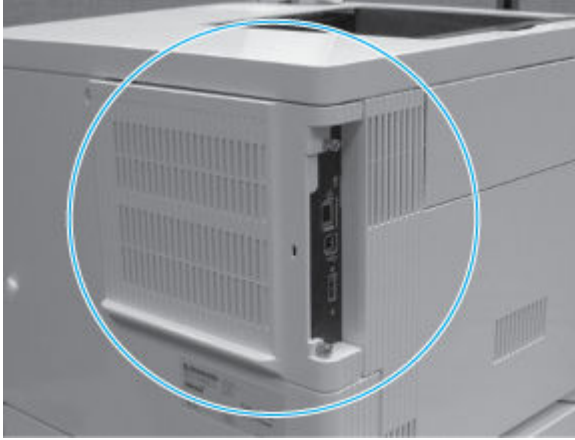
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

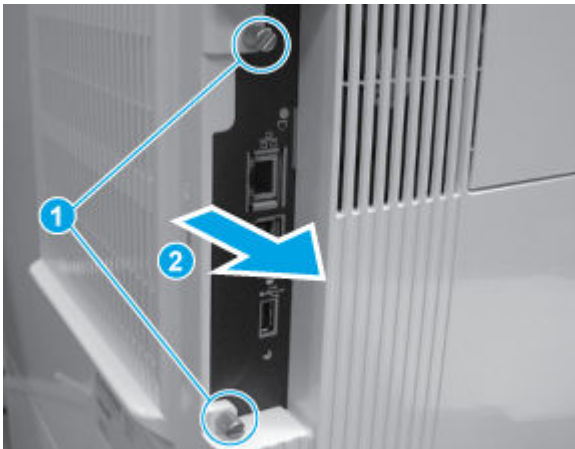
Figure 5-369 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-370 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

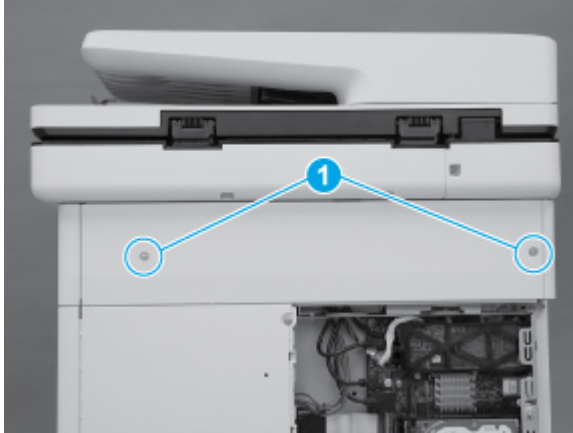
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

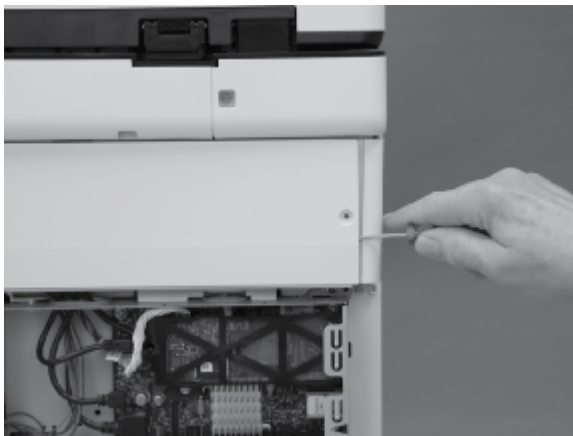
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-371 Remove two screws



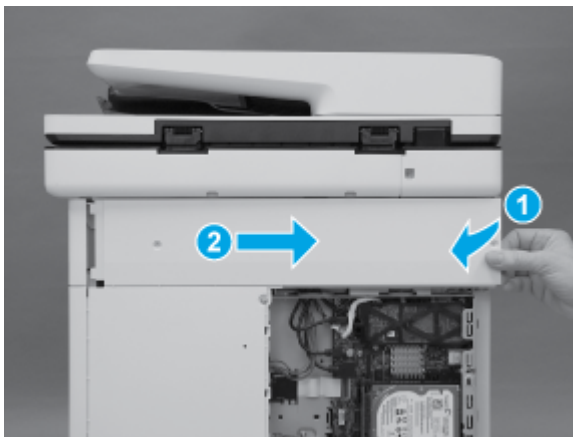
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-372 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-373 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-374 Remove the cover



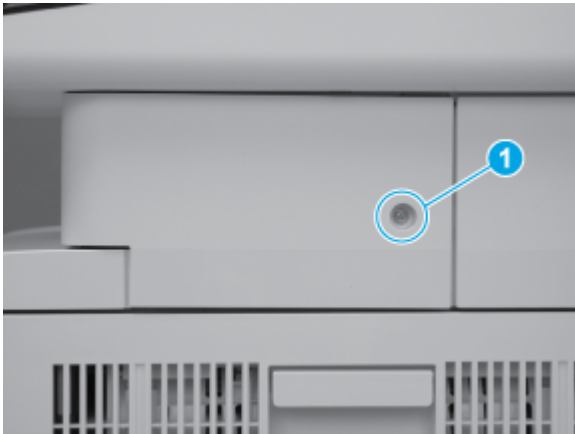
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-375 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-376 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-377 Rotate the cover



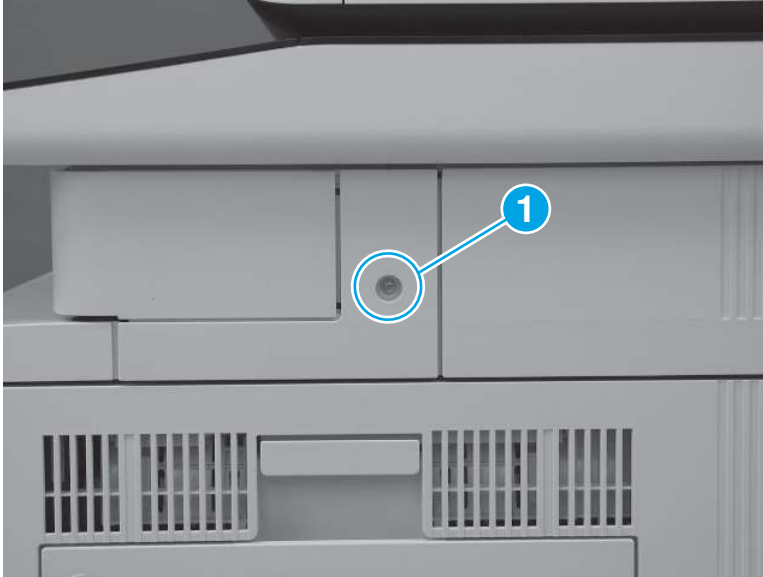
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-378 Remove one screw



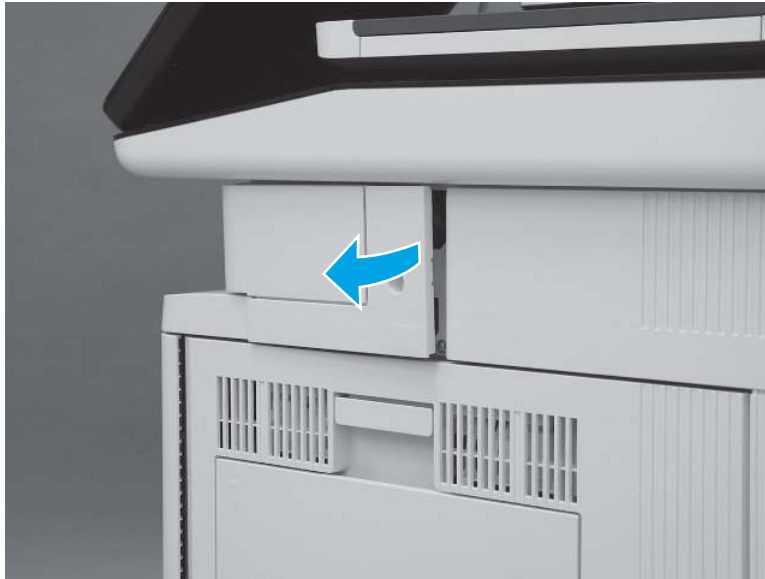
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-379 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-380 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-381 Remove the cover



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

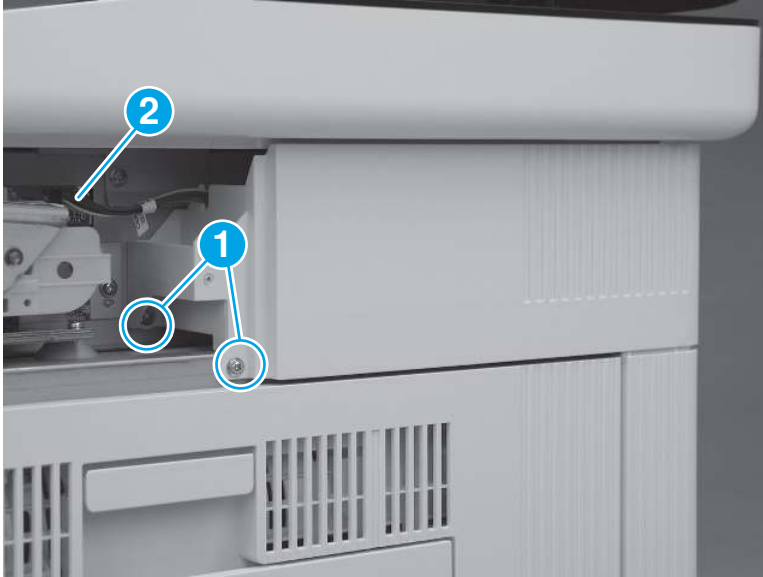
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-382 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


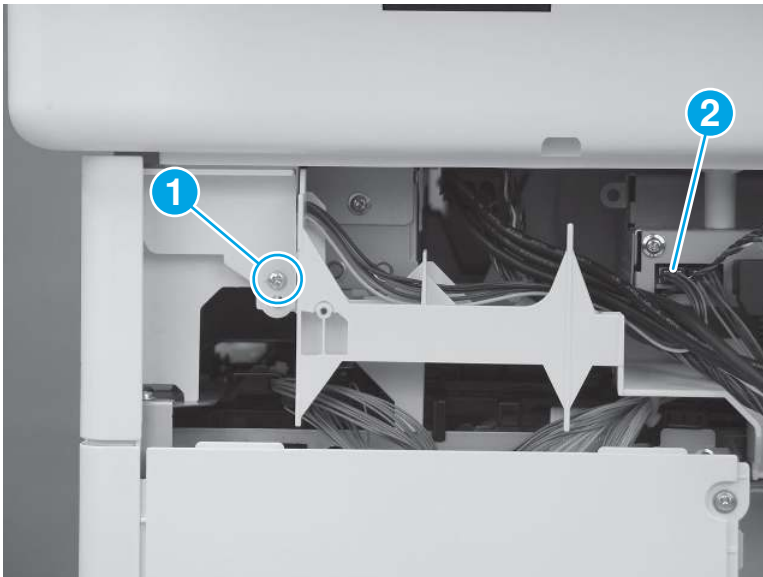
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-383 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

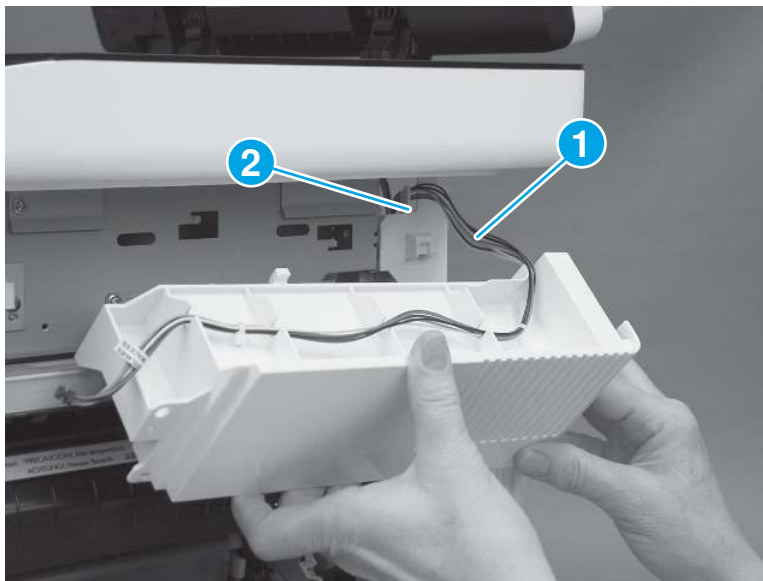
Figure 5-384 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

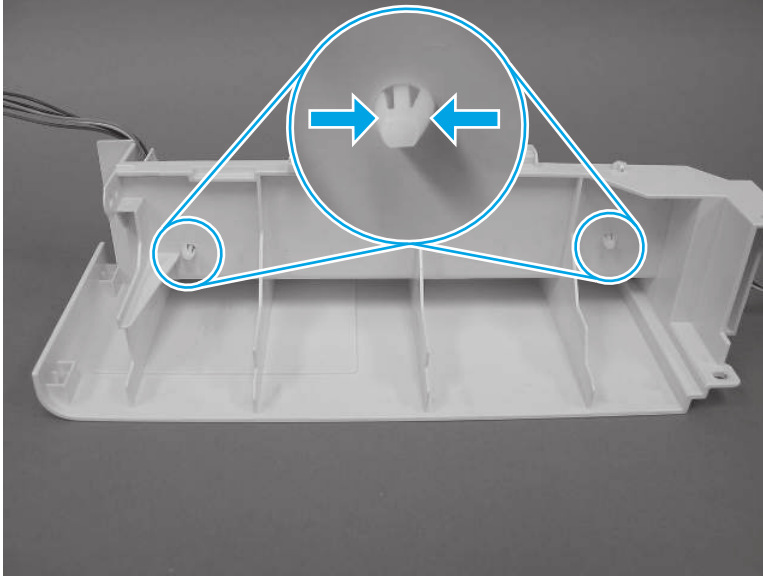
M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-385 Remove the cover



5. **M577/M578z:** Release two retainers on the bottom side of the cover.

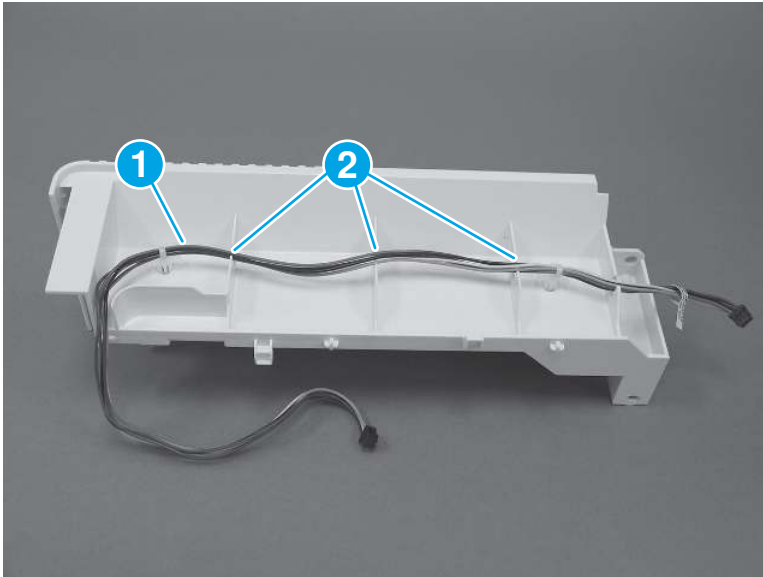
Figure 5-386 Release two retainers



6. **M577/M578z:** On the top of the cover, release the wires (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2) in the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** Set the wire harness aside for installation on the replacement right upper cover.

Figure 5-387 Remove the wire harness





Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Top rear cover (M577/M578/E57540)


Learn about removing and replacing the top rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-37 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-3383-000CN	Top rear cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

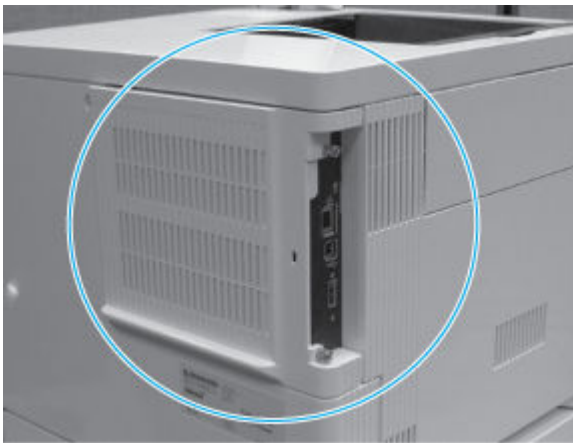
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

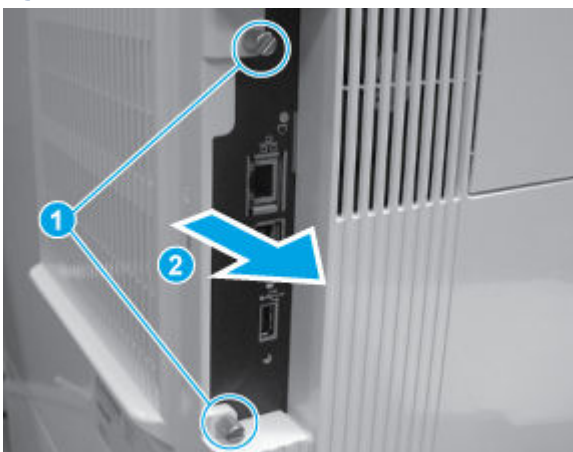
Figure 5-388 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-389 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

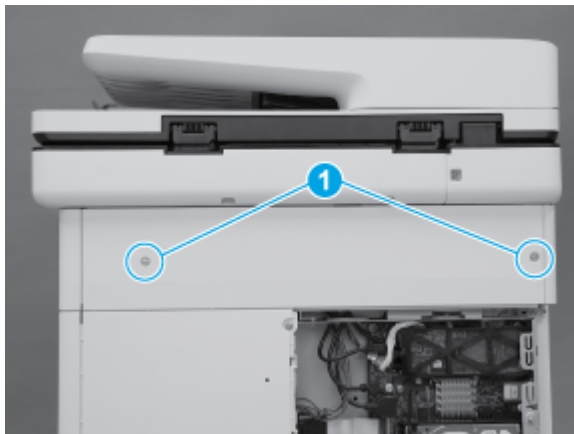
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

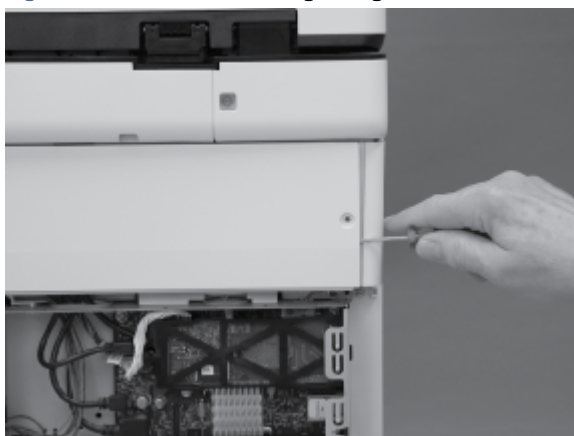
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-390 Remove two screws



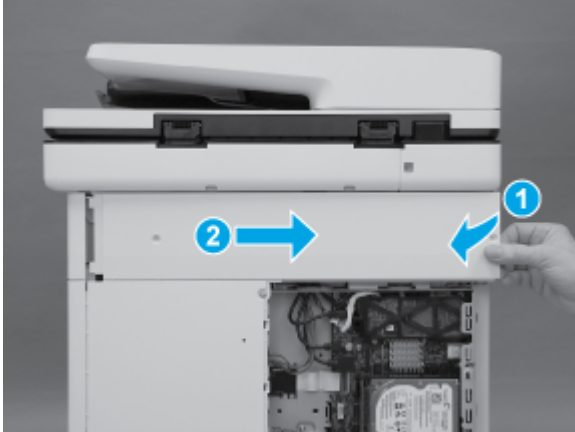
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-391 Release the right edge



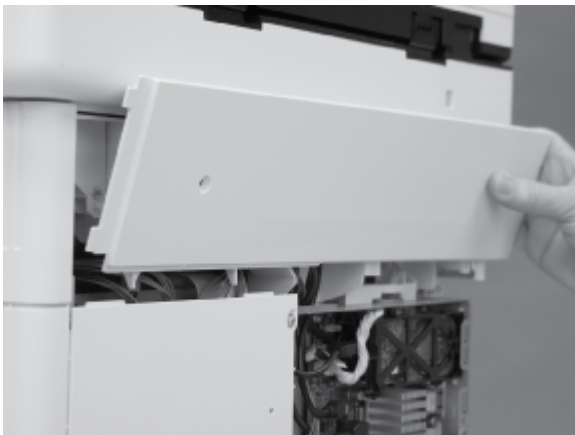
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-392 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-393 Remove the cover



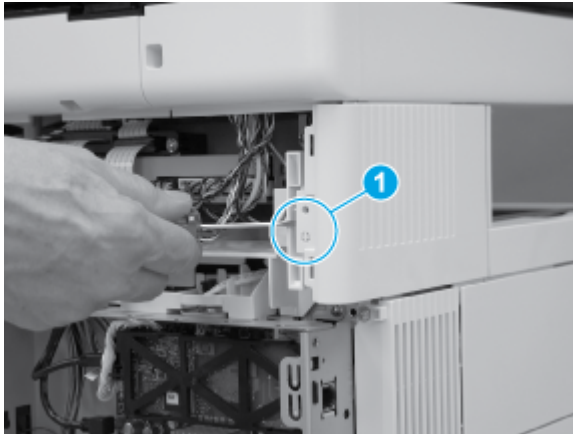
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-394 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-395 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-396 Remove the left upper cover



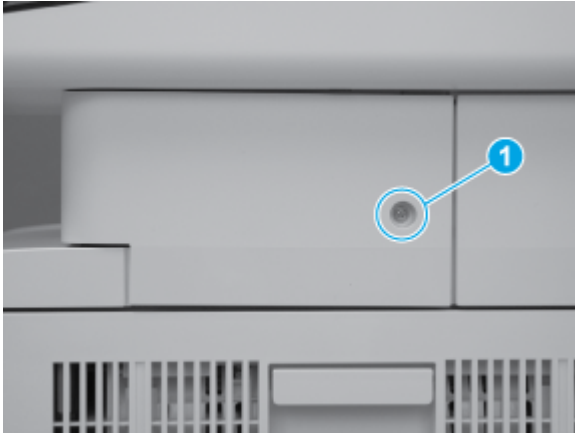
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-397 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-398 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-399 Rotate the cover



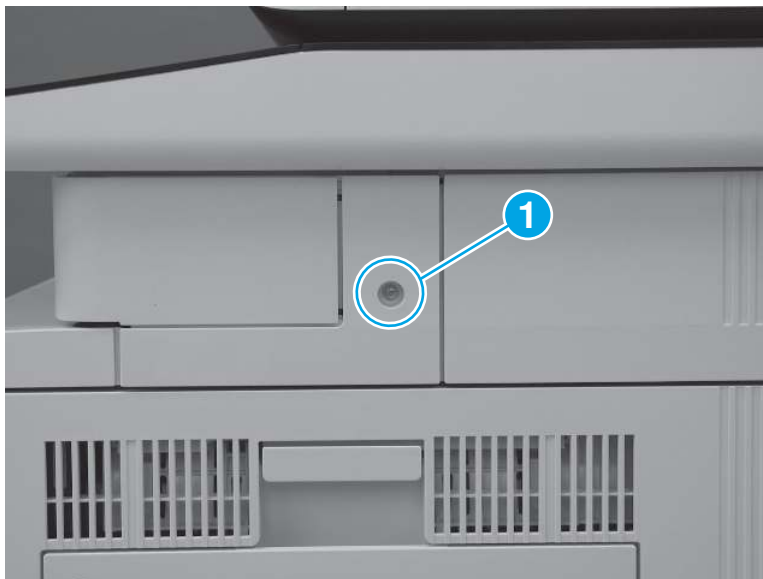
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-400 Remove one screw



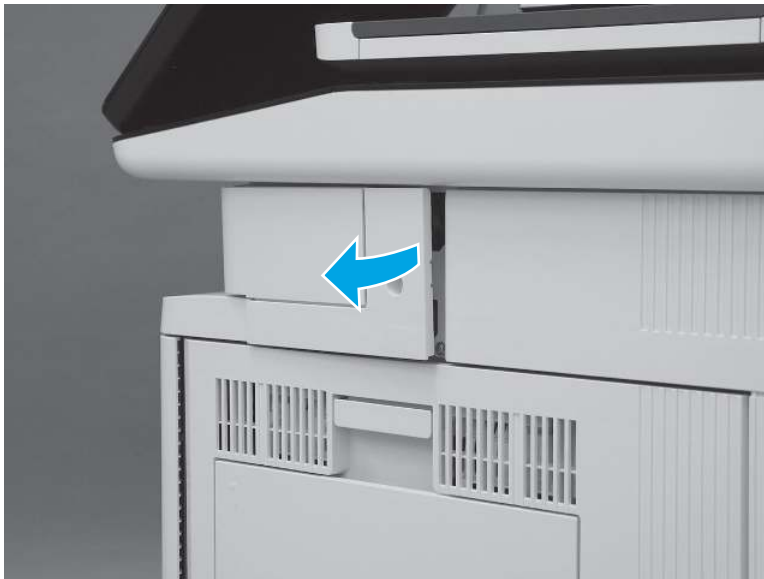
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-401 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-402 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-403 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

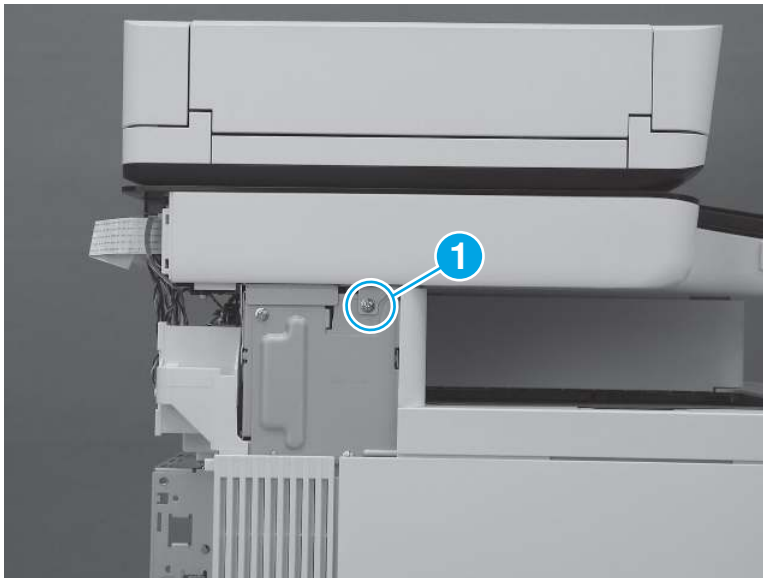
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

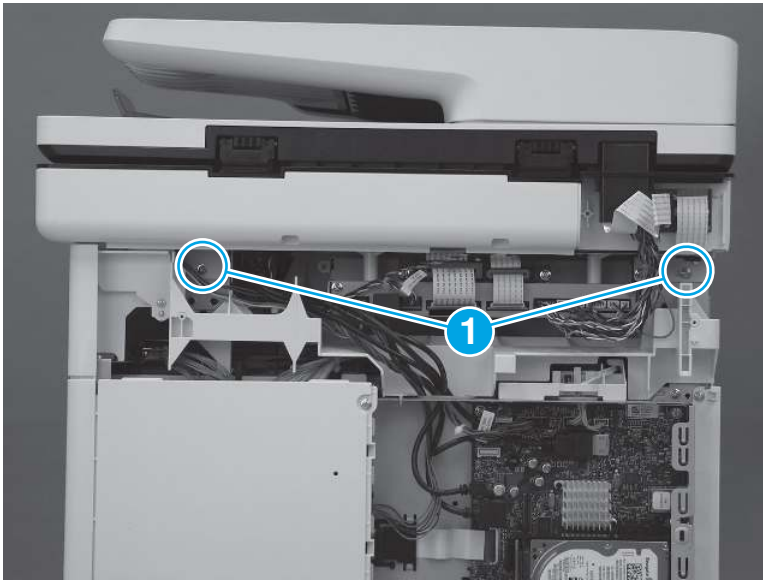
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-404 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

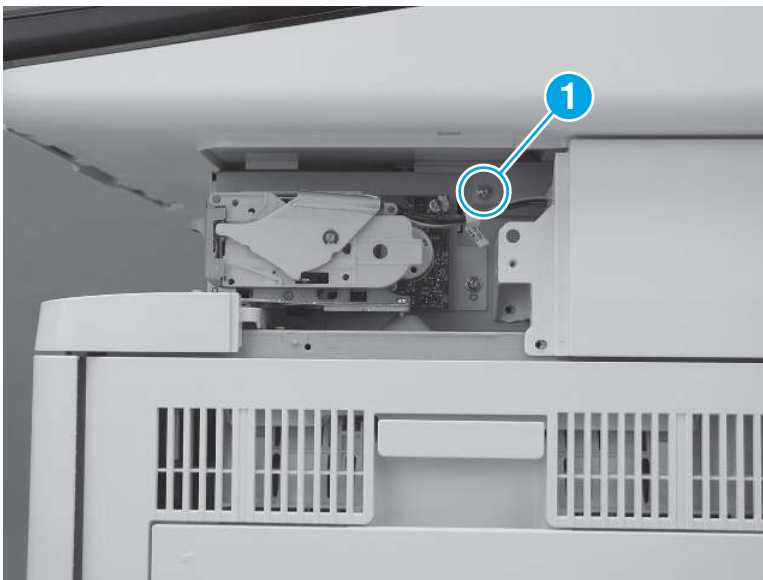
Figure 5-405 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

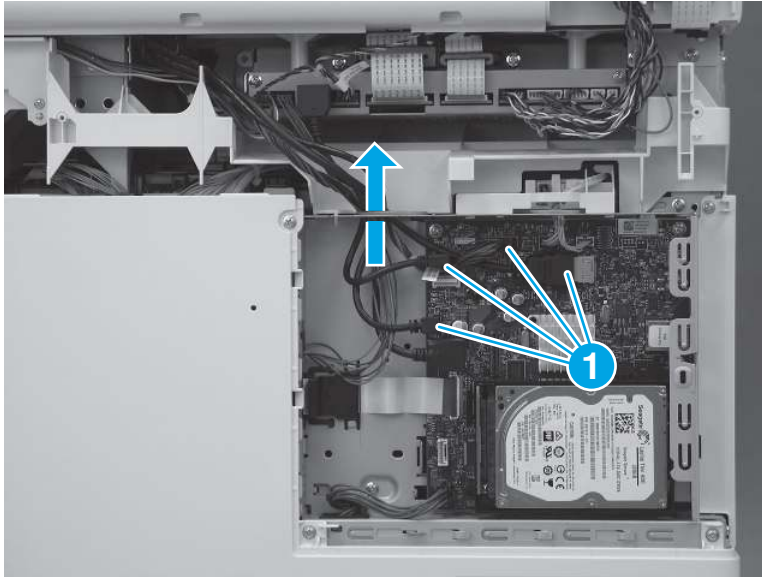
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-406 Remove one screw



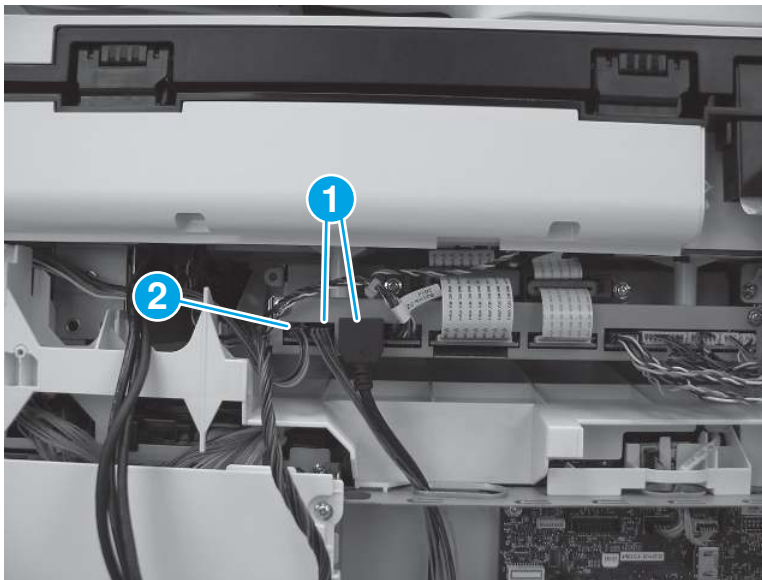
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-407 Disconnect cables and connectors



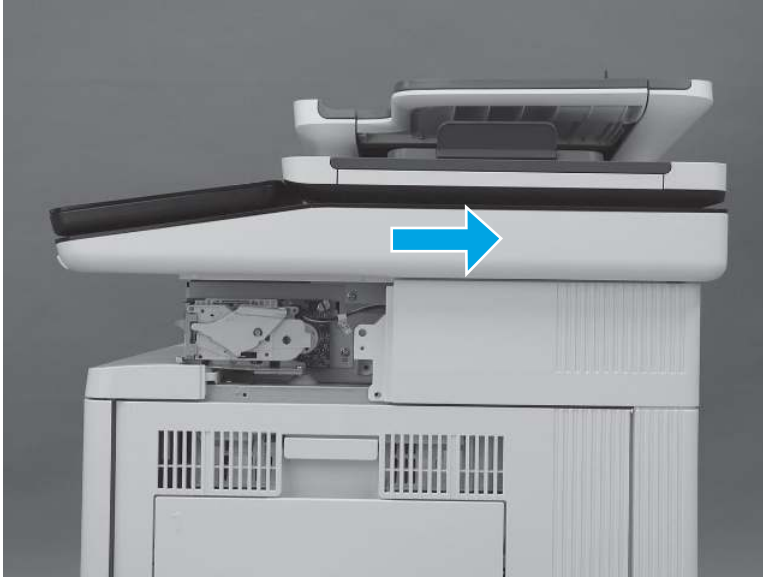
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-408 Disconnect connectors



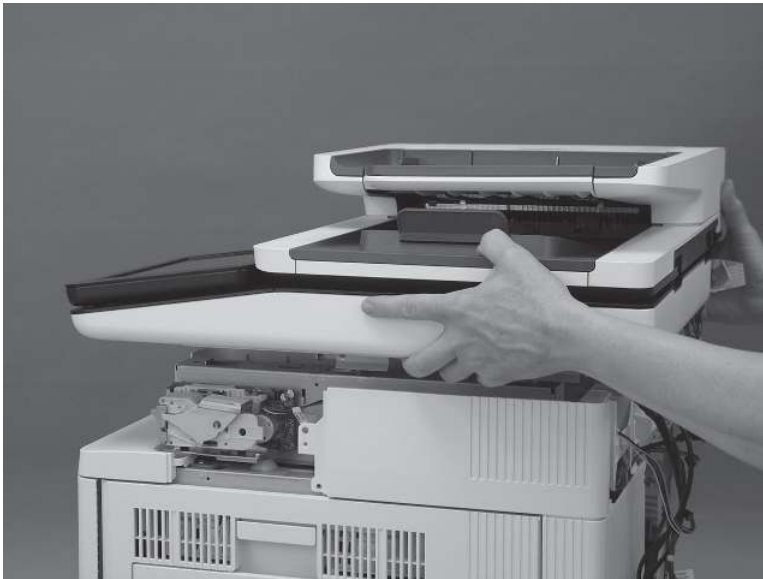
- Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-409 Release the image scanner




- Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-410 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

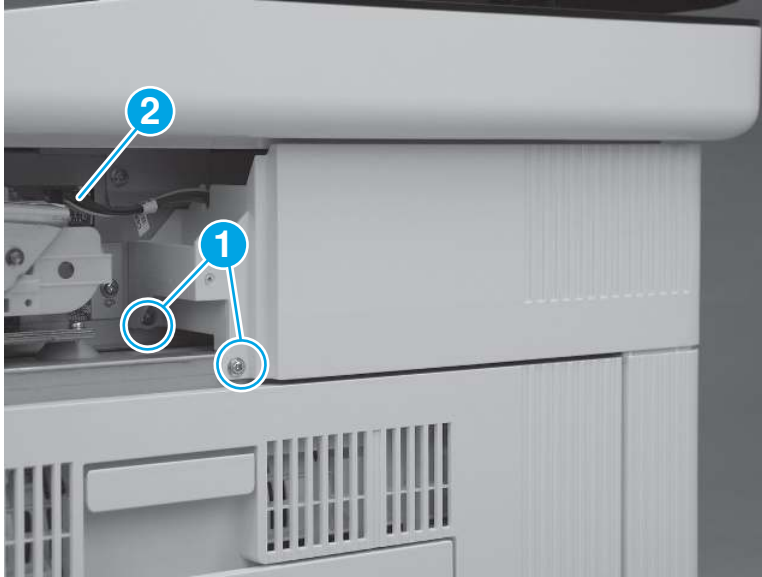
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

- At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-411 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


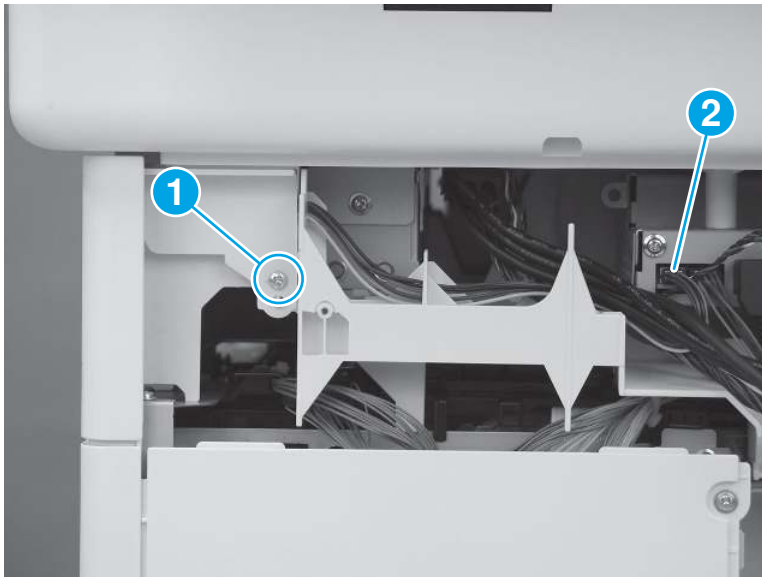
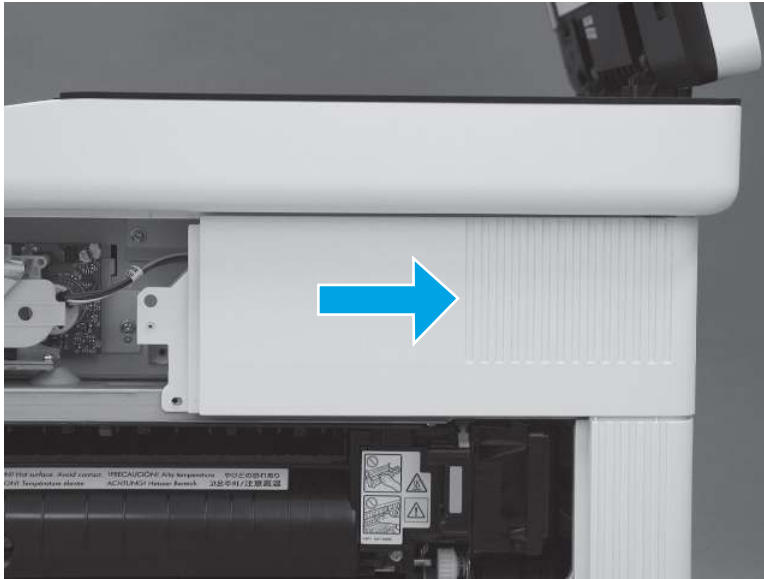
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-412 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

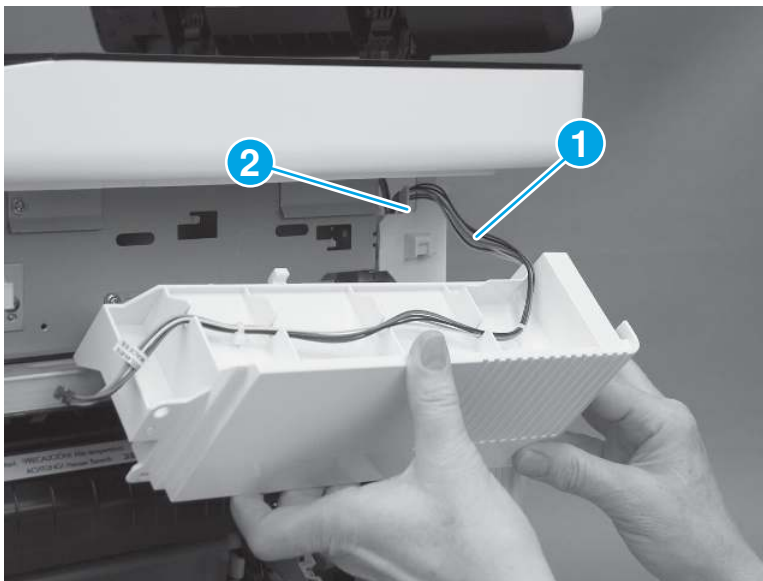
Figure 5-413 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-414 Remove the cover



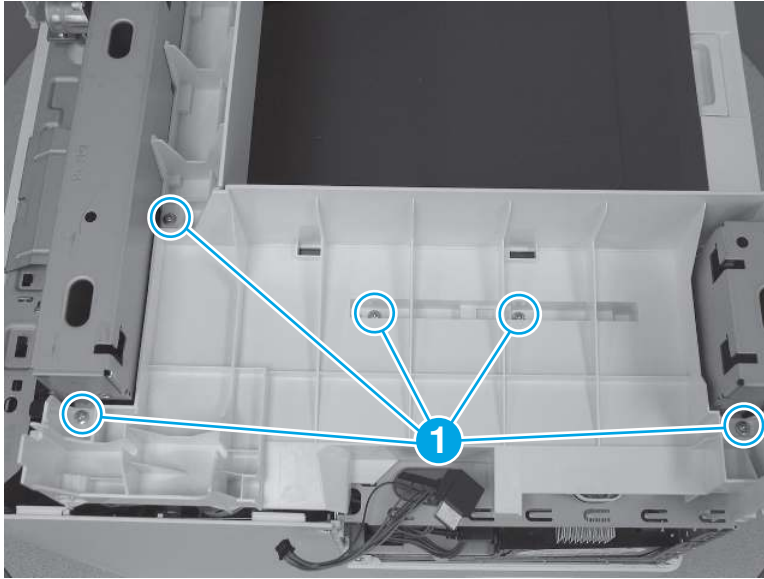
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

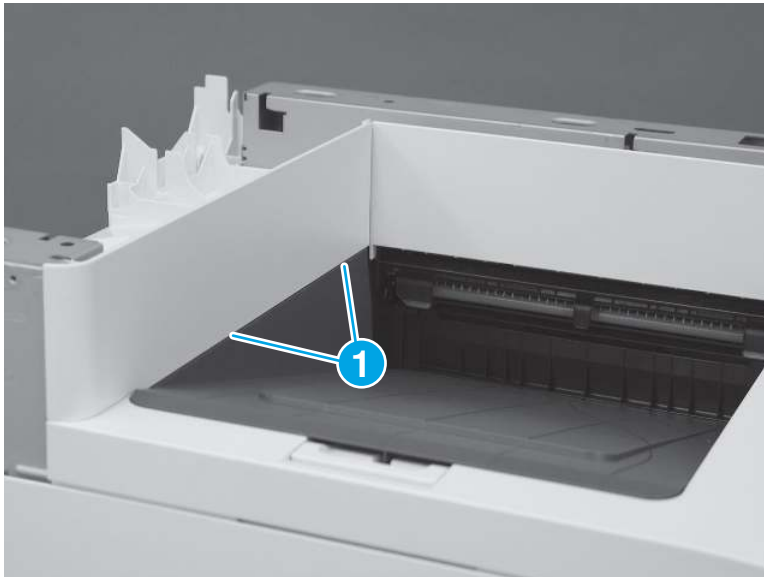
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-415 Remove five screws



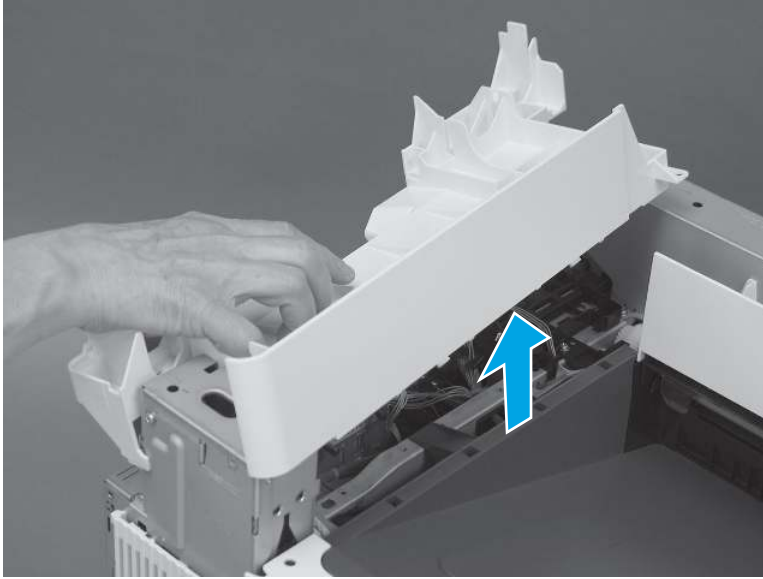
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-416 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-417 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper feed cover (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feed cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-38 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-3382-000CN	Paper feed cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

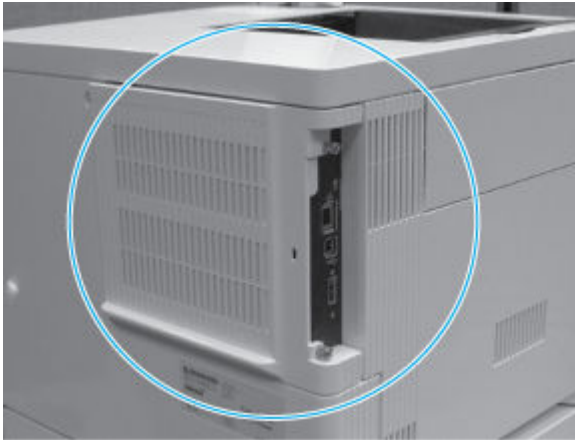
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

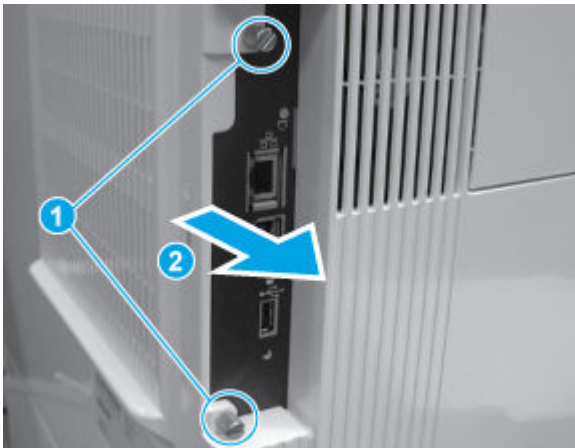
Figure 5-418 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-419 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).


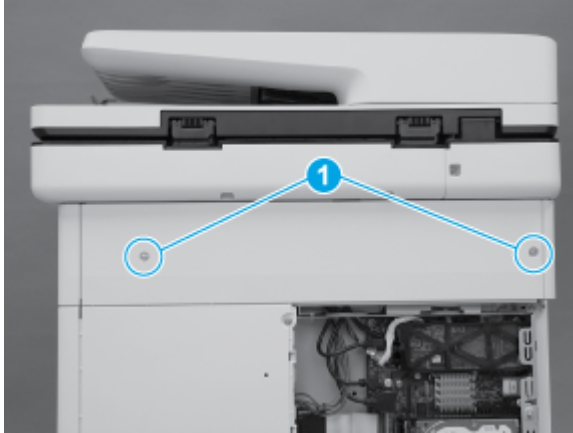
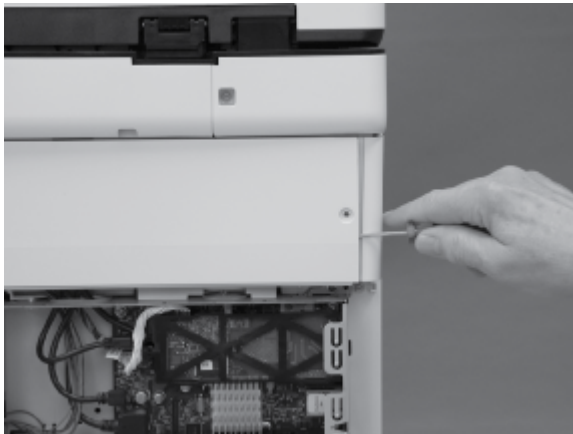
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-420 Remove two screws



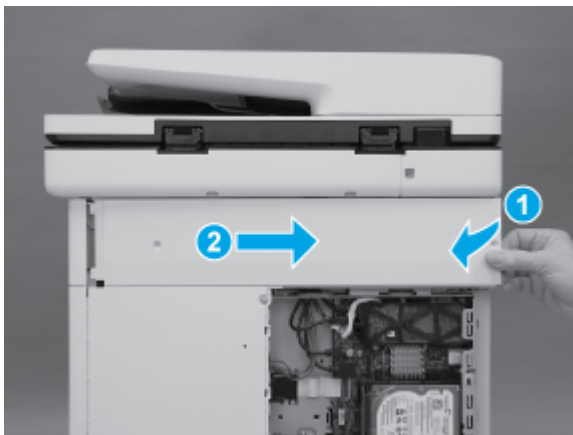
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-421 Release the right edge



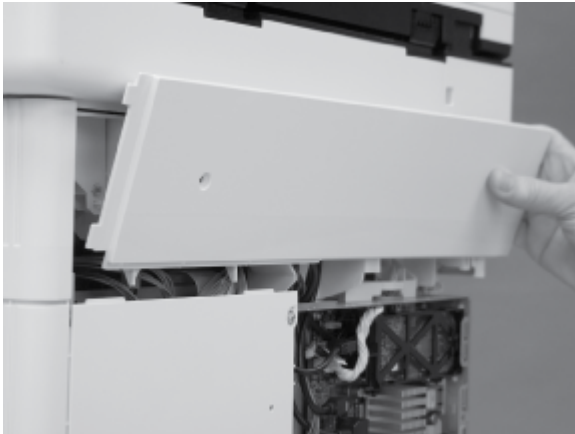
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-422 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-423 Remove the cover



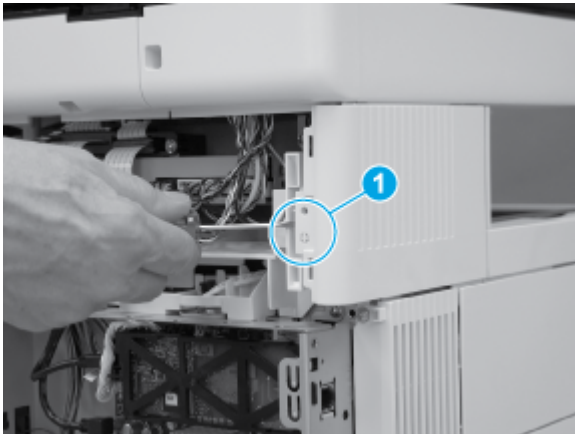
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-424 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-425 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-426 Remove the left upper cover



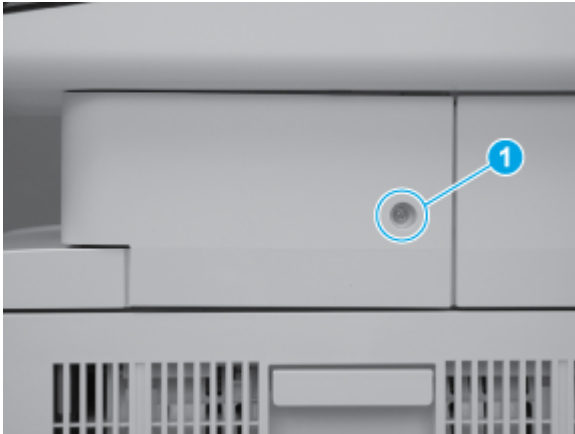
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-427 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-428 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-429 Rotate the cover



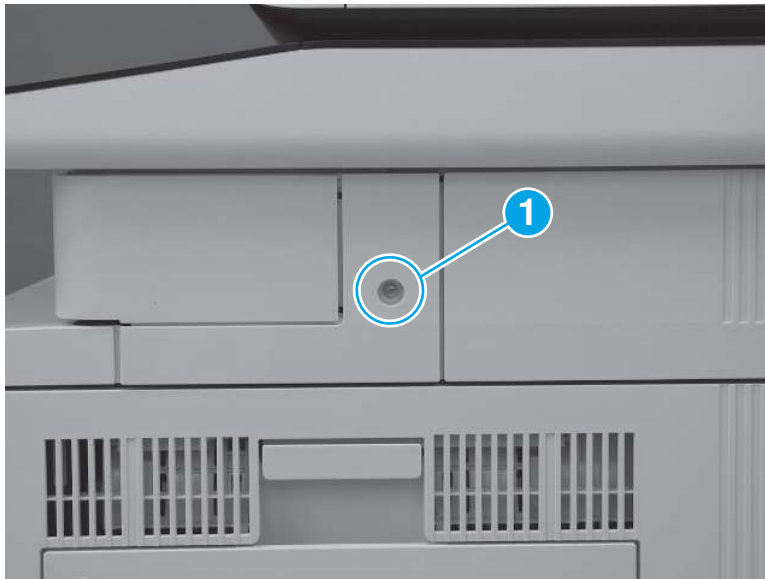
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-430 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-431 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-432 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-433 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

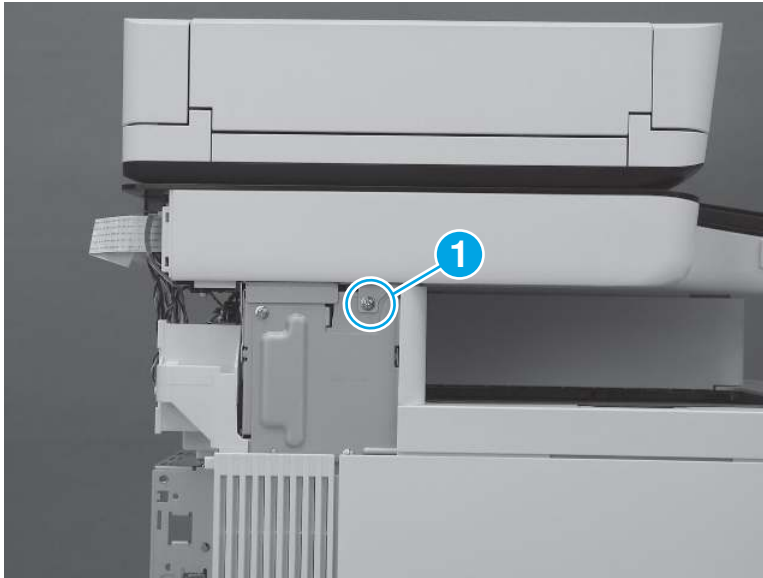
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

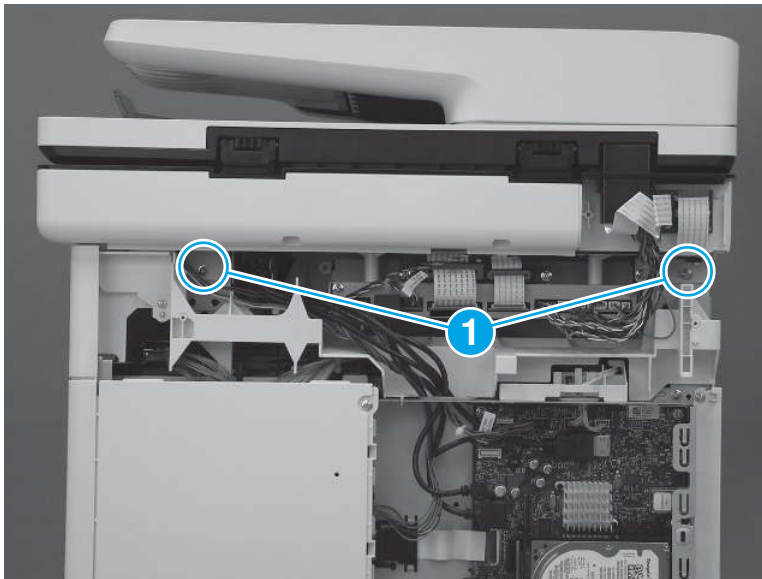
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-434 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

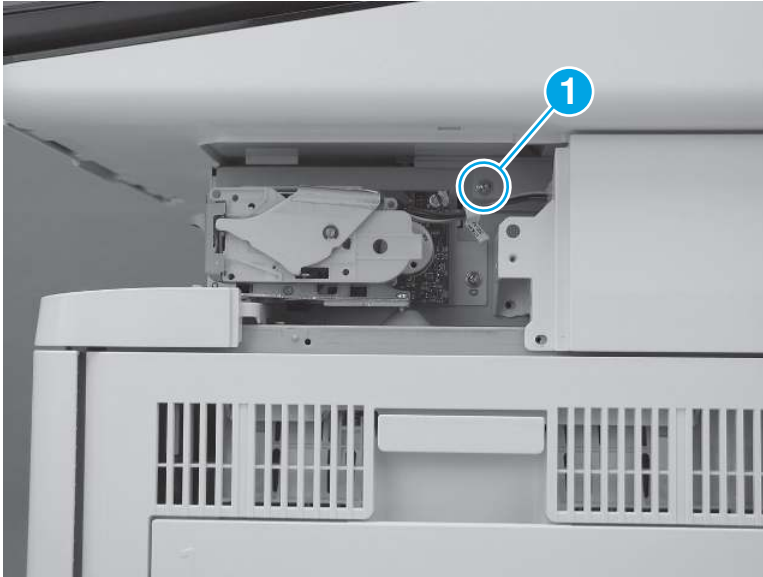
Figure 5-435 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

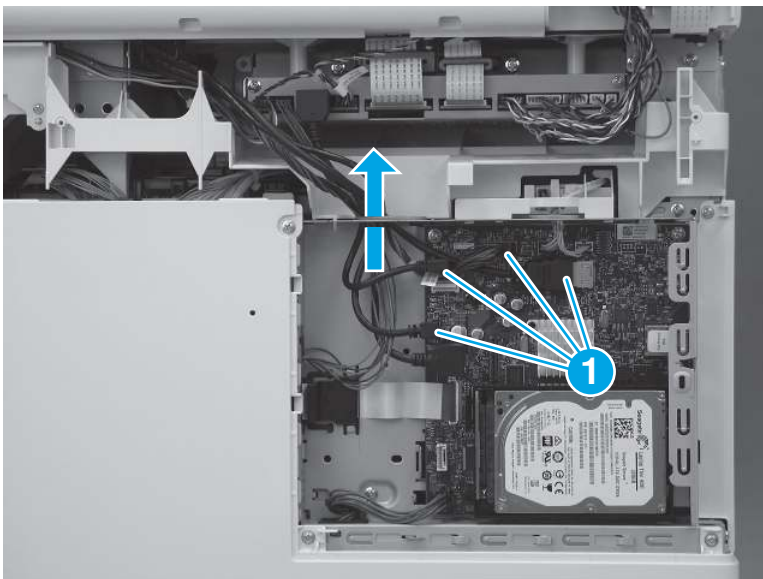
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-436 Remove one screw



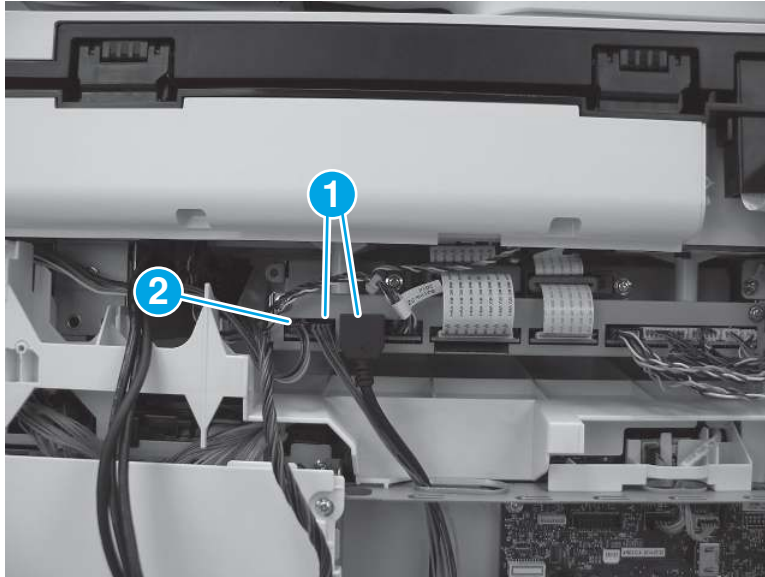
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-437 Disconnect cables and connectors



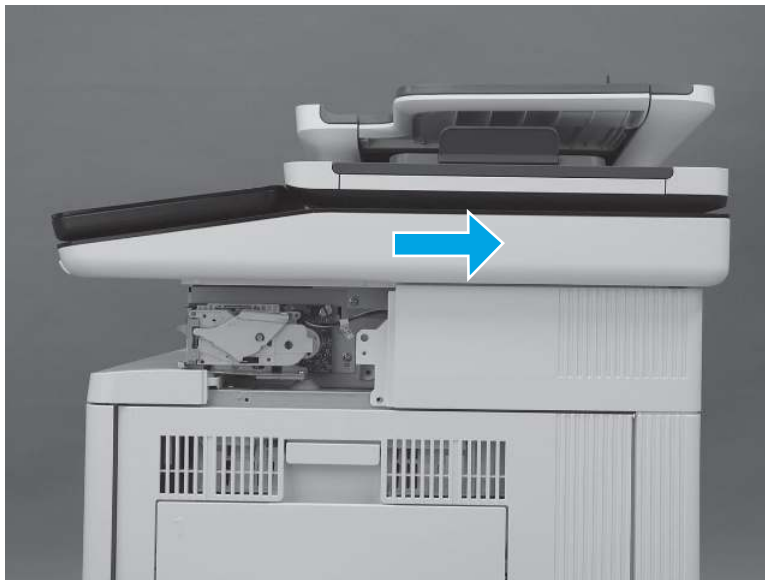
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-438 Disconnect connectors



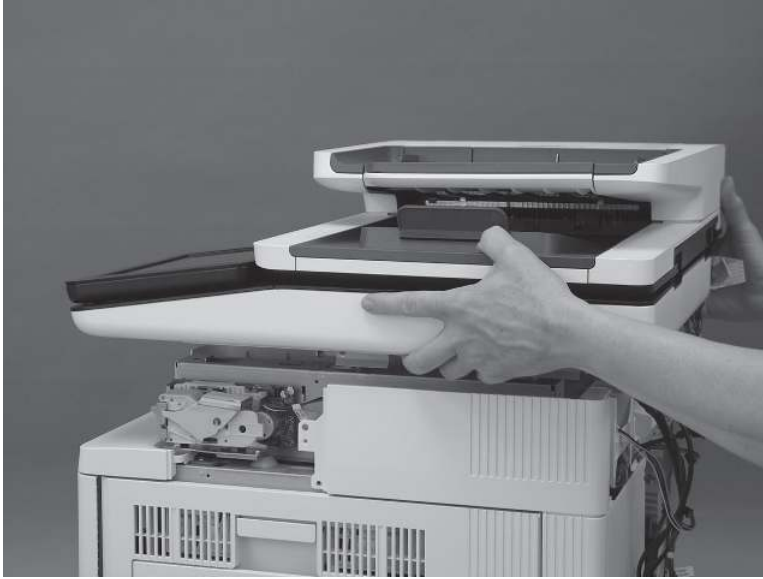
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-439 Release the image scanner



7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-440 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

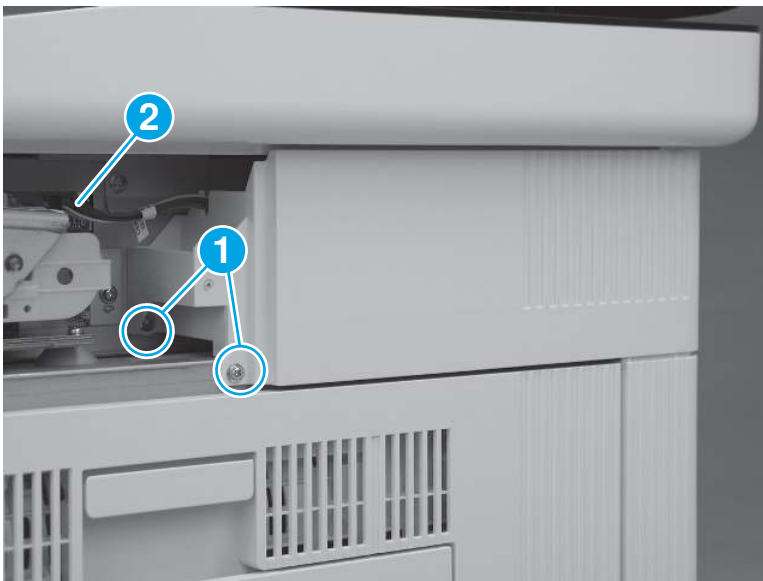
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-441 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


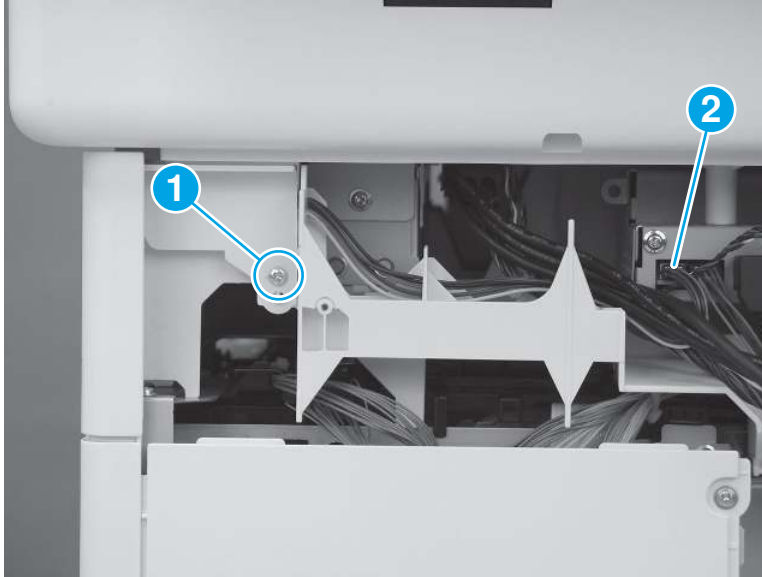
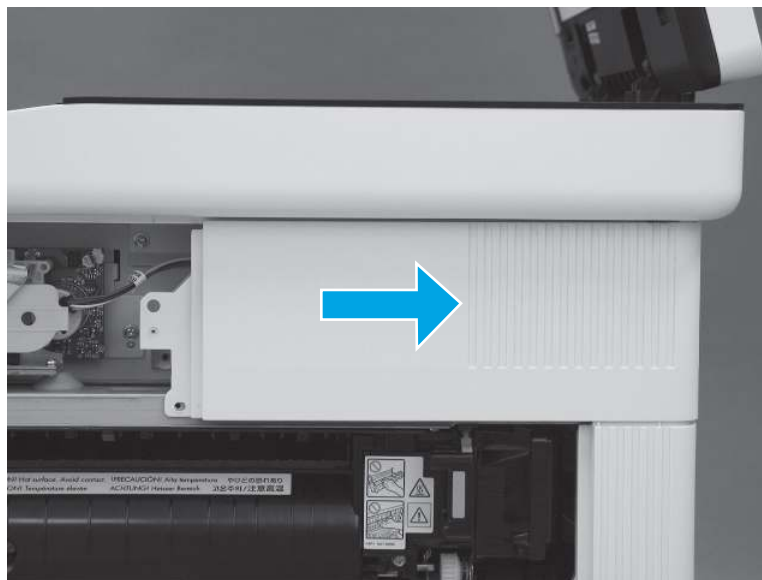
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-442 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

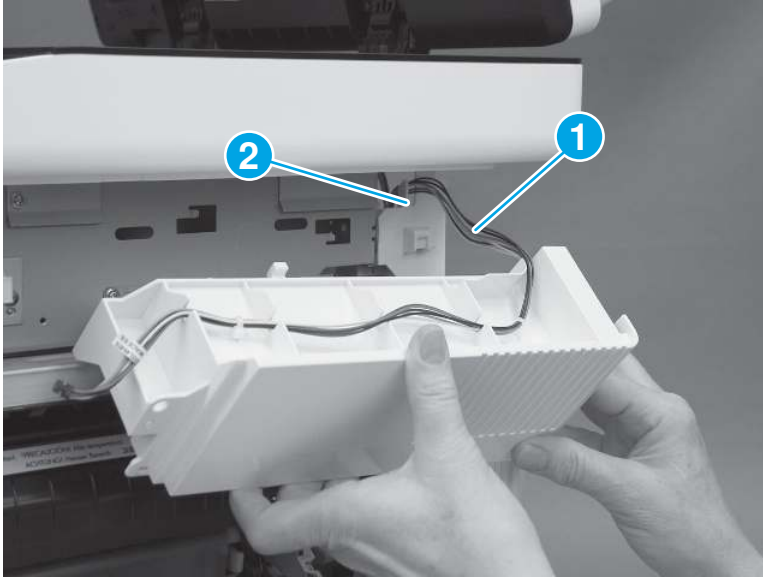
Figure 5-443 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-444 Remove the cover



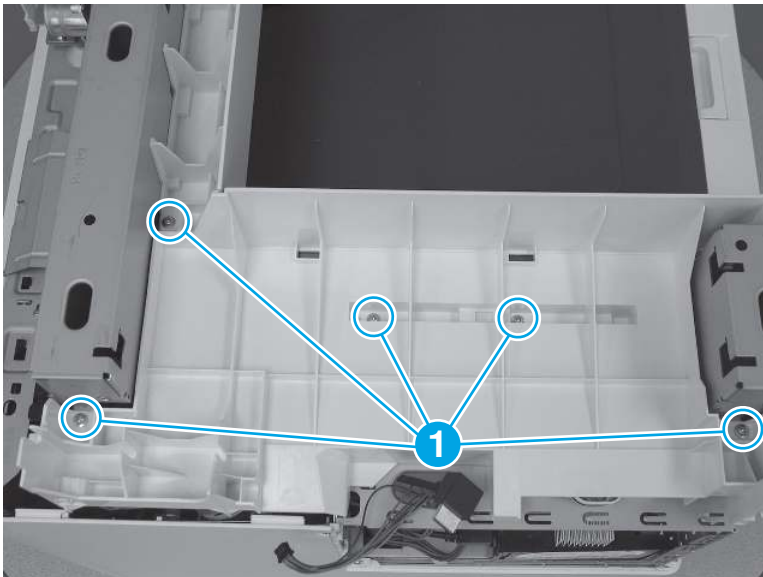
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

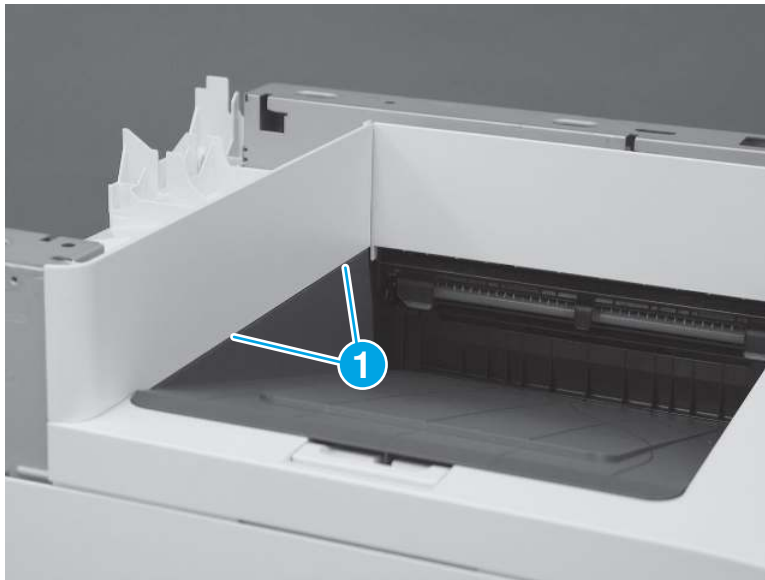
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-445 Remove five screws



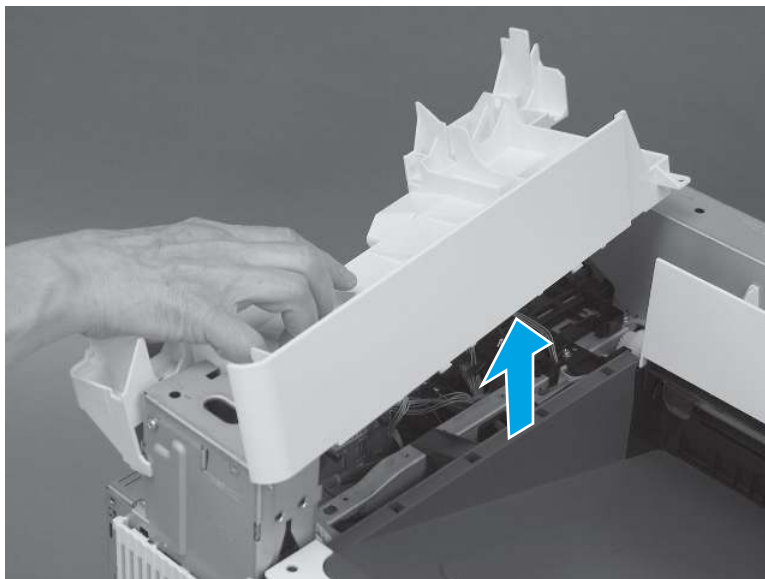
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-446 Release two tabs




3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-447 Remove the cover



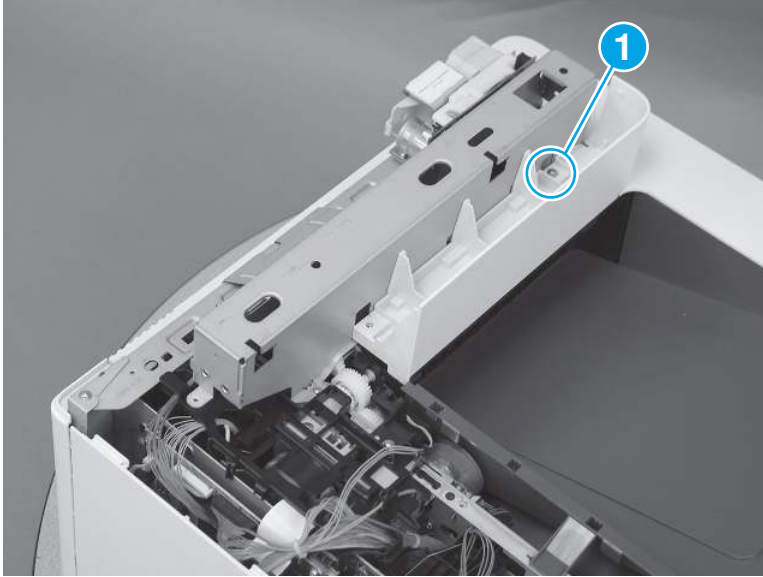
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

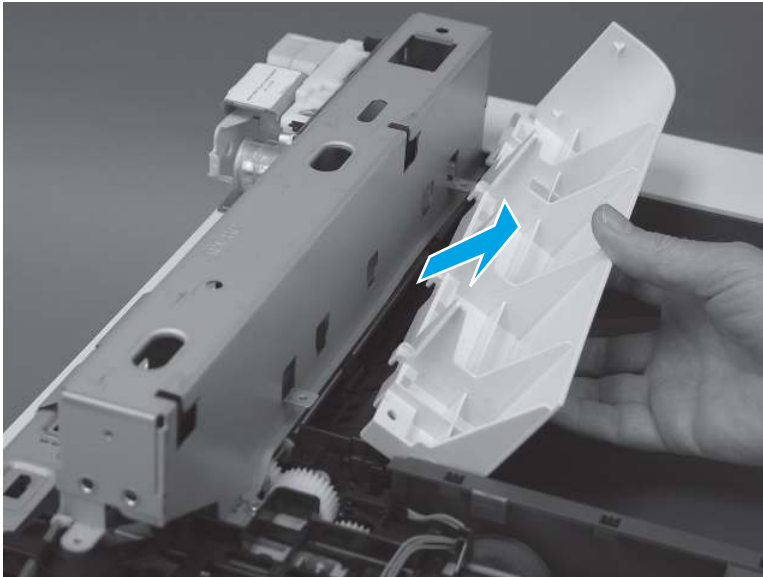
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-448 Remove one screw



2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-449 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Top cover (M577/M578/E57540)


Learn about removing and replacing the top cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-39 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-3381-000CN	Top cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

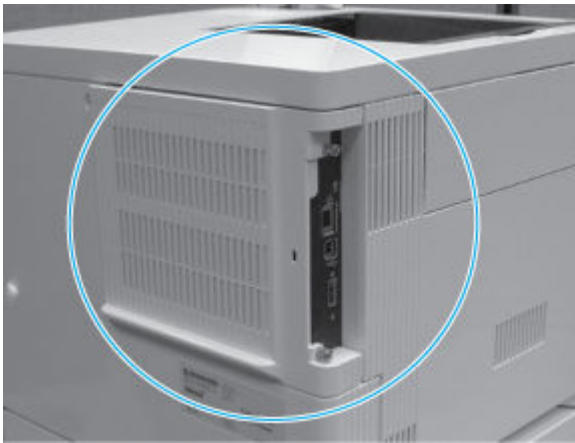
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

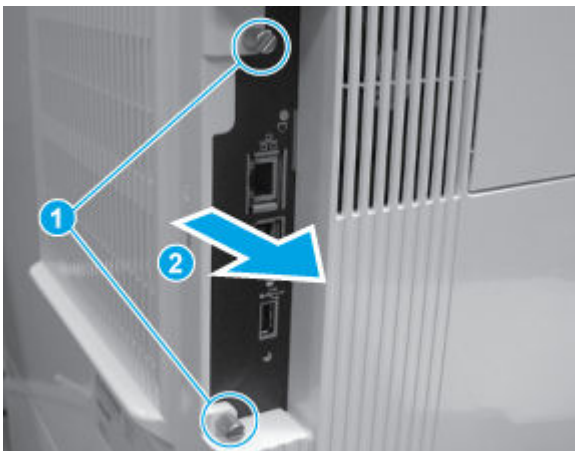
Figure 5-450 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-451 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

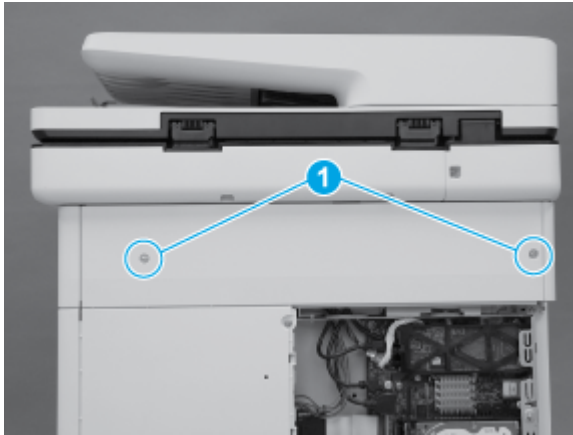
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

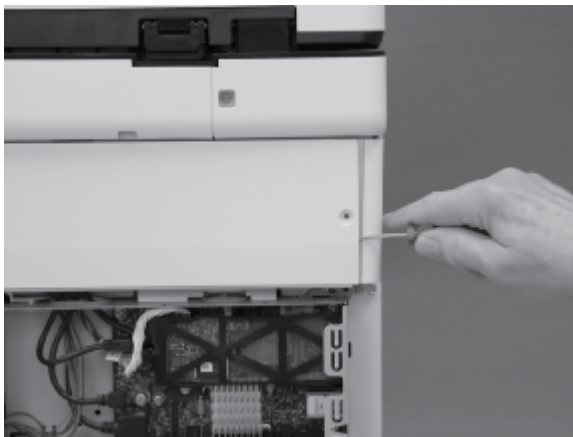
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-452 Remove two screws



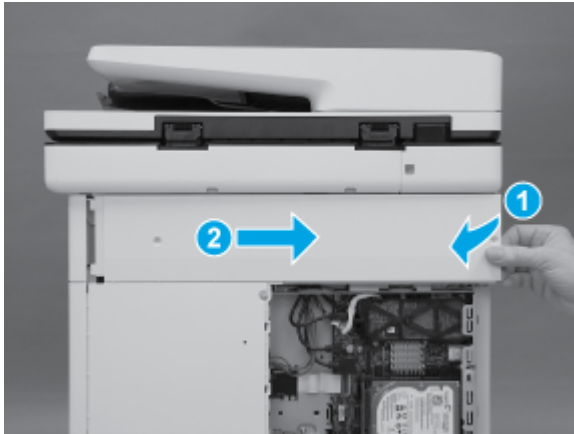
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-453 Release the right edge



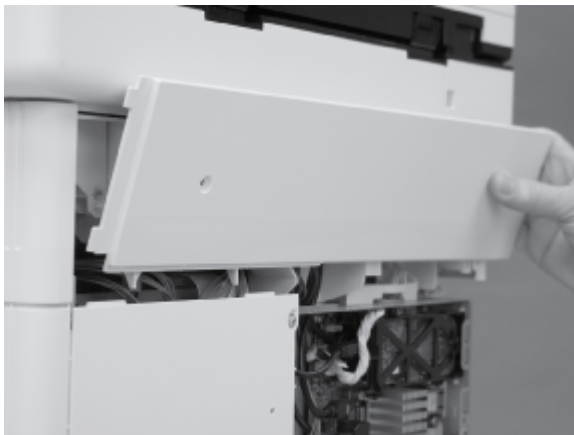
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-454 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-455 Remove the cover



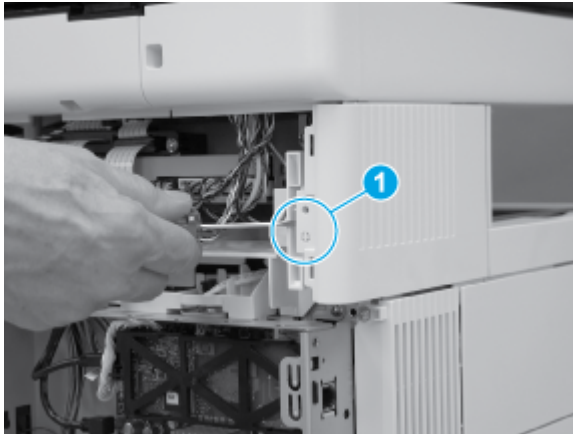
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-456 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-457 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-458 Remove the left upper cover



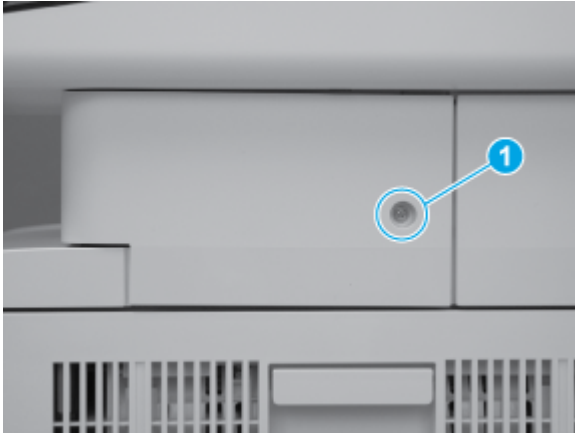
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-459 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-460 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-461 Rotate the cover



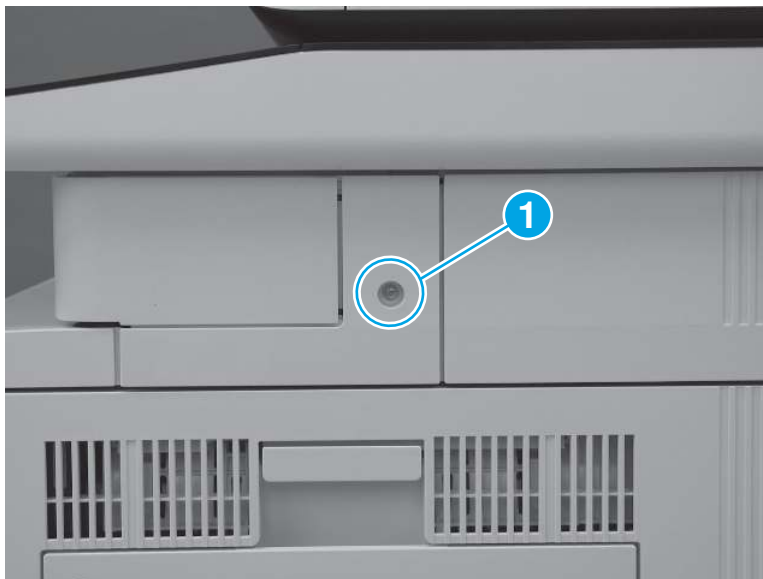
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-462 Remove one screw



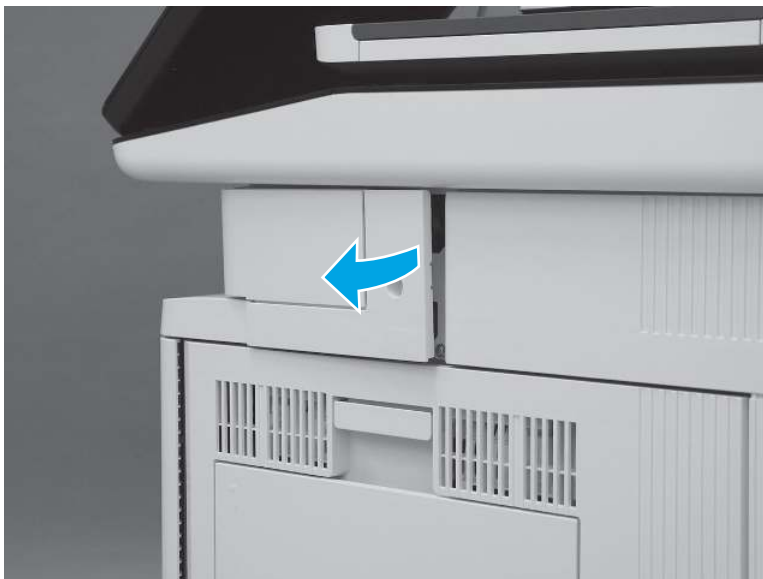
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-463 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-464 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-465 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

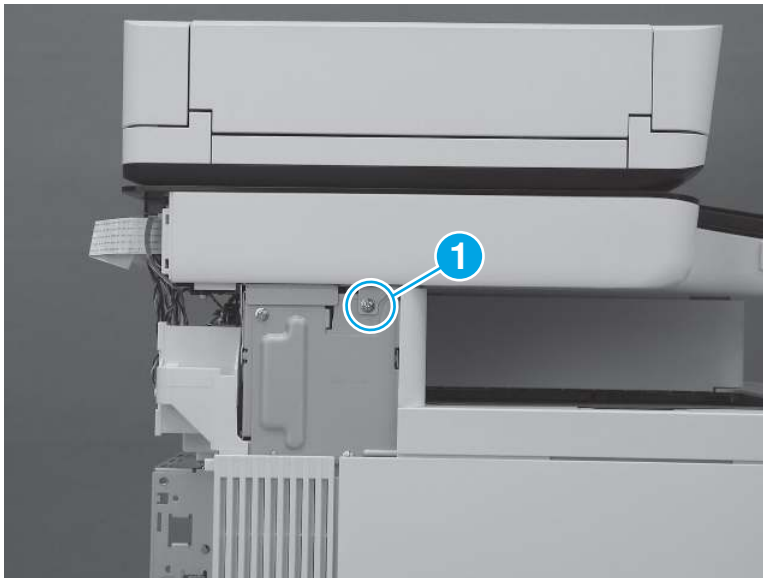
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

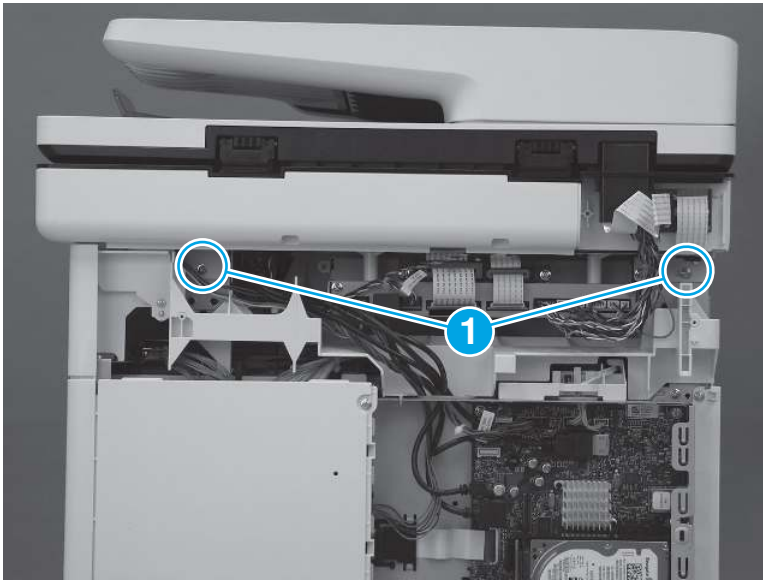
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-466 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

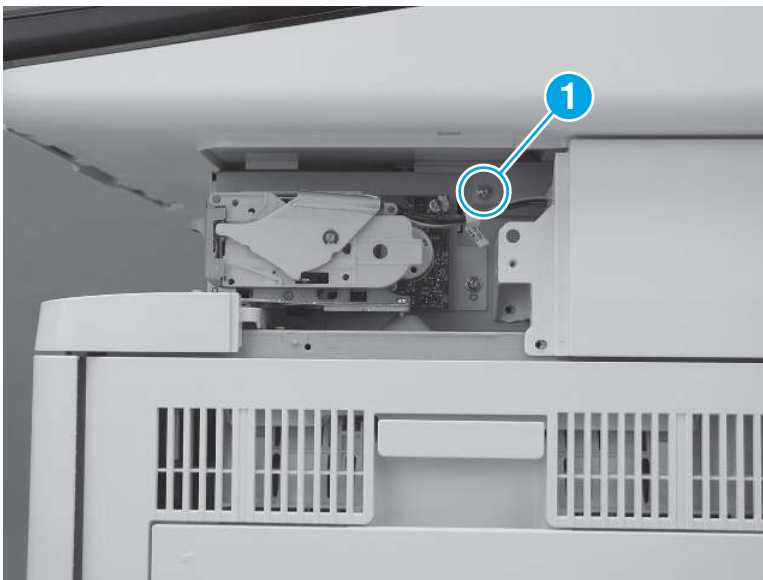
Figure 5-467 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

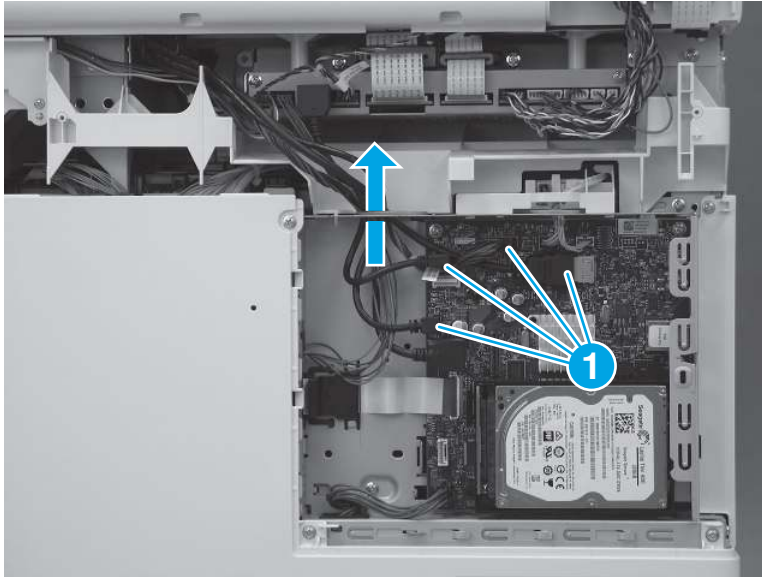
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-468 Remove one screw



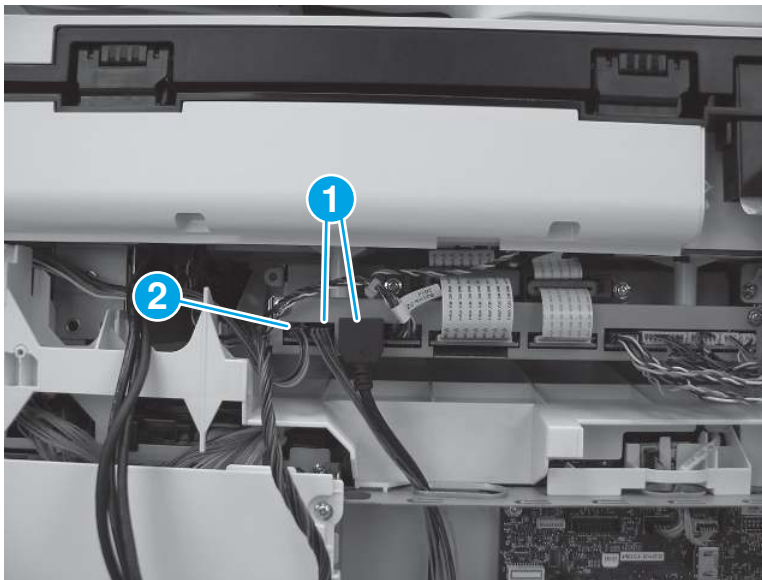
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-469 Disconnect cables and connectors



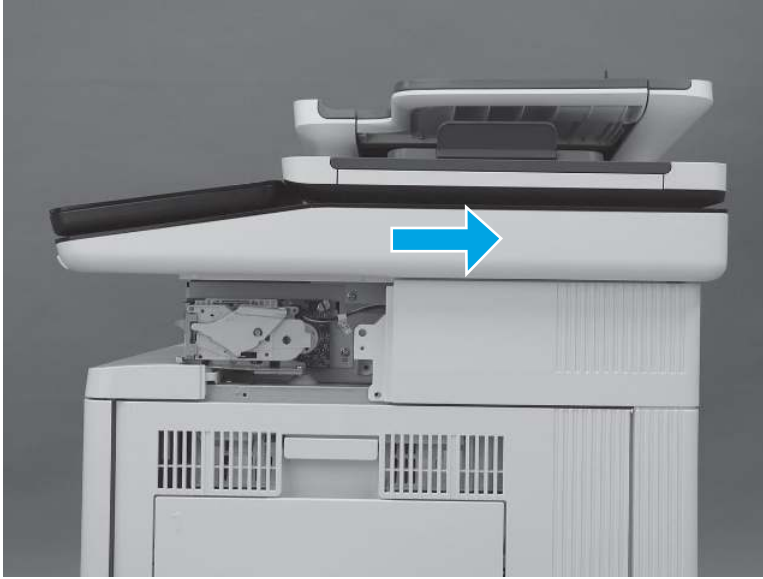
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-470 Disconnect connectors



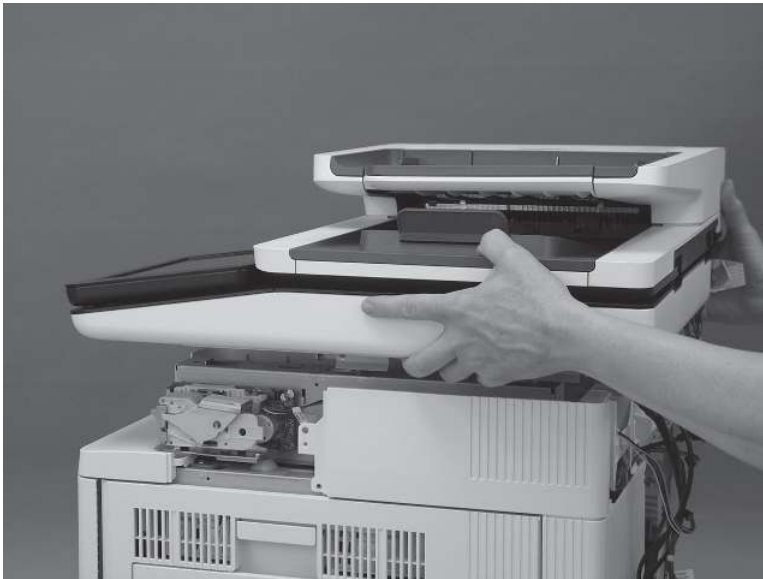
- Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-471 Release the image scanner




- Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-472 Remove the ISA



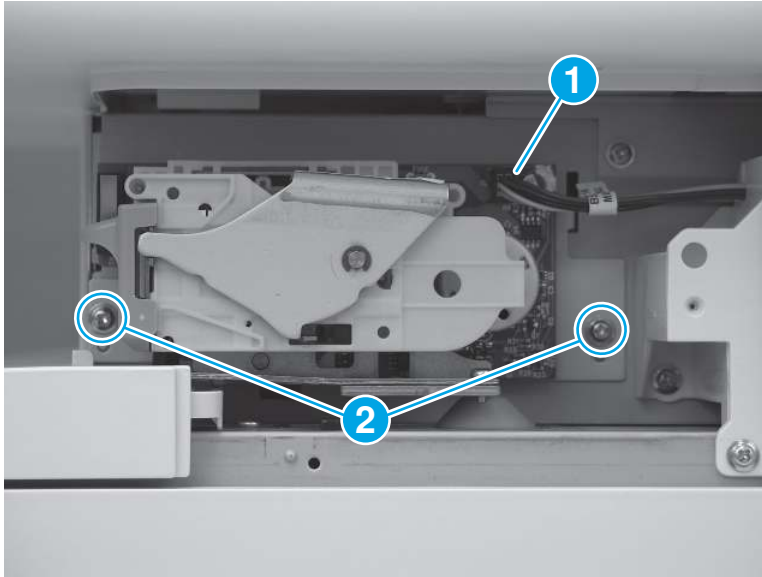
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

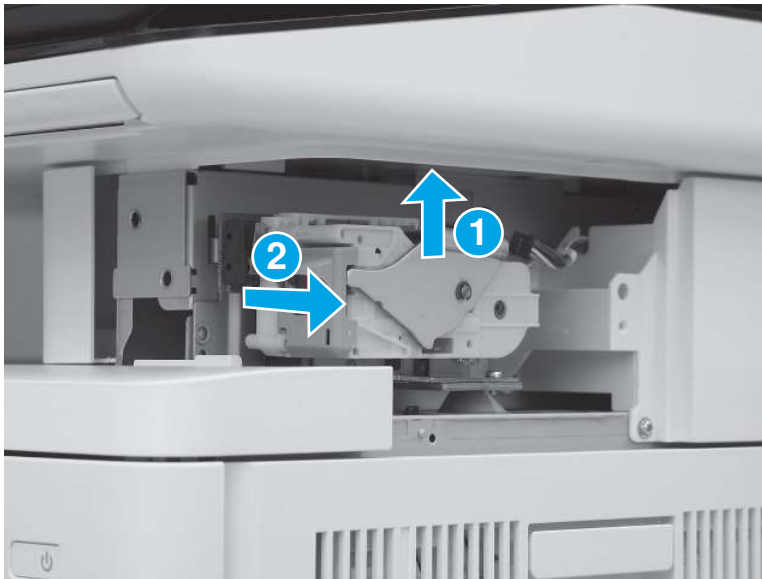
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-473 Disconnect connector and remove screws




2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-474 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

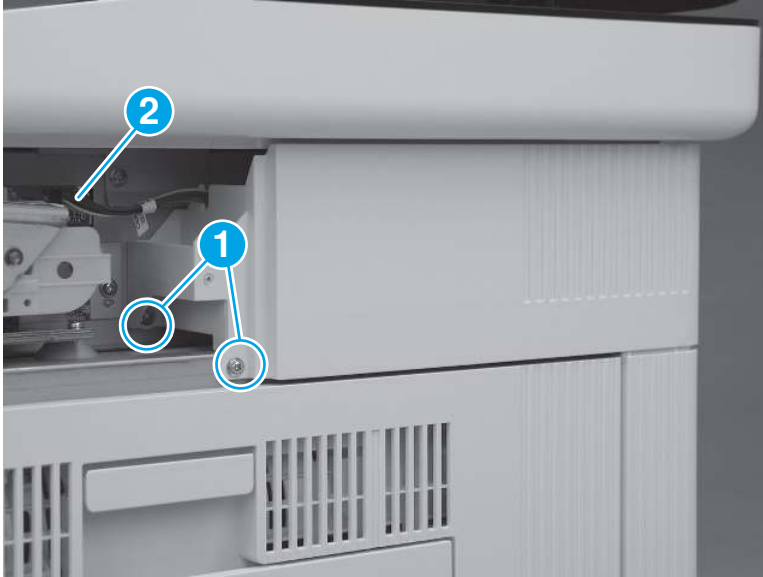
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-475 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


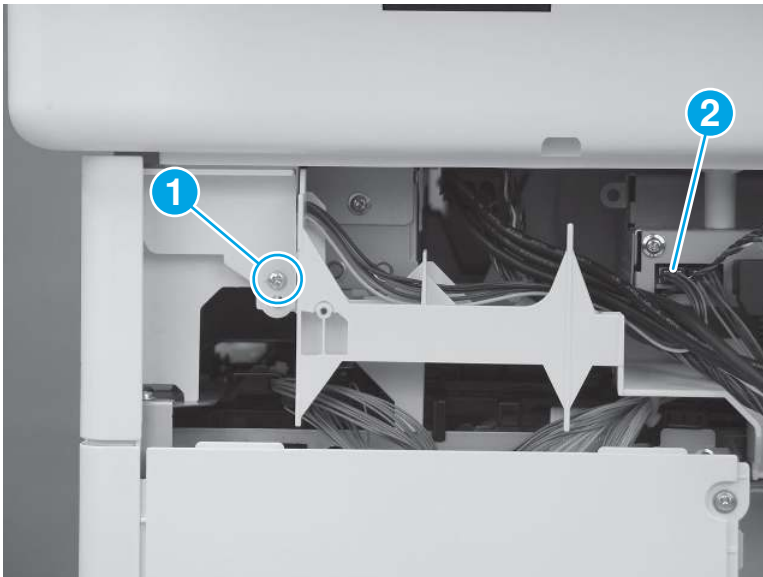
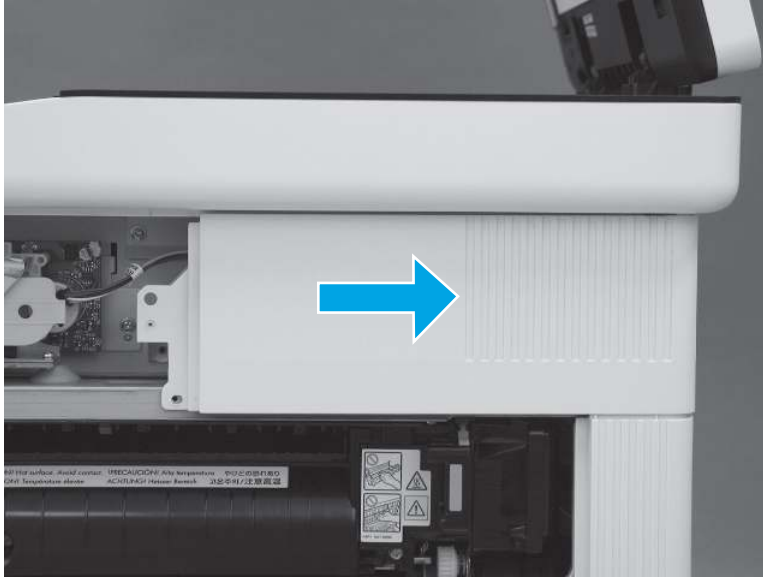
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-476 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

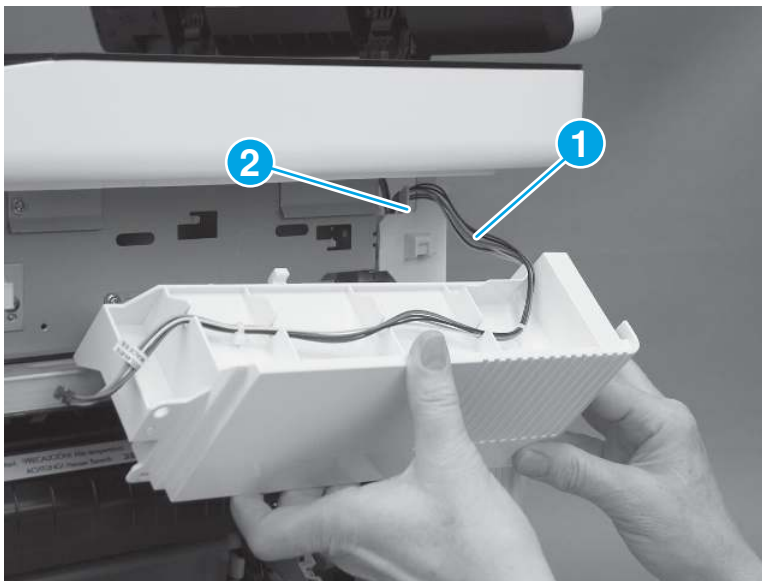
Figure 5-477 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-478 Remove the cover



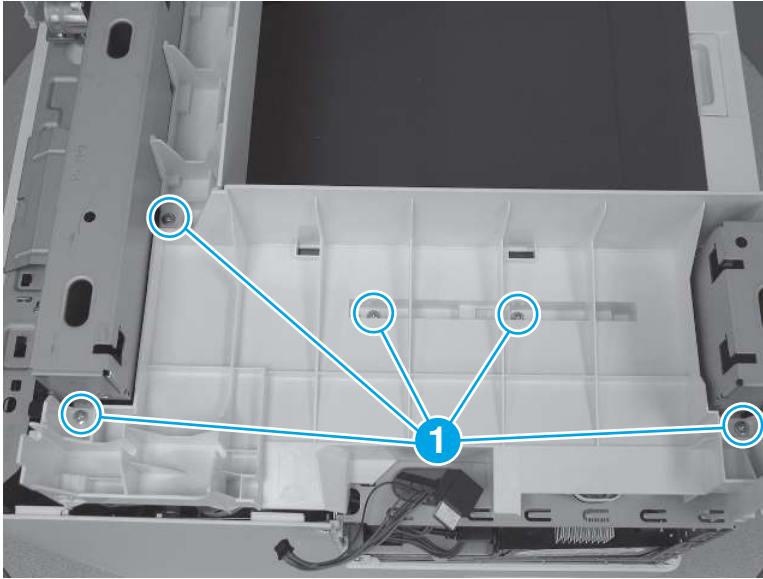
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

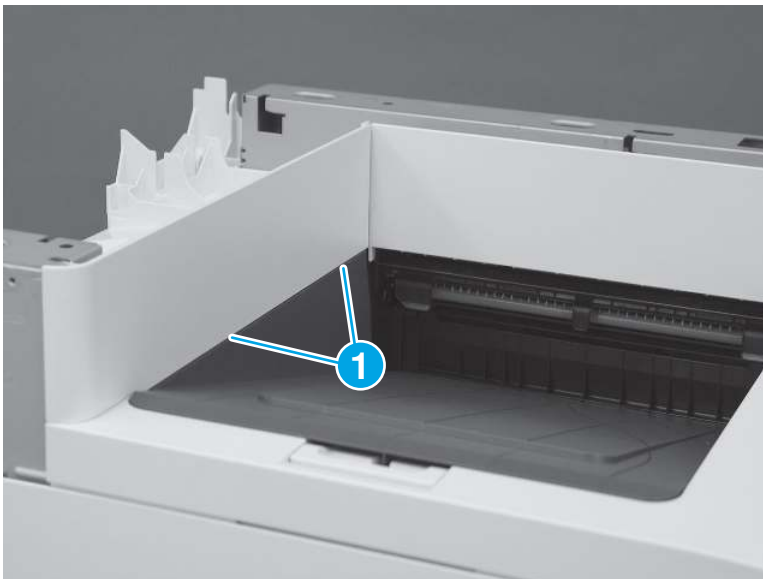
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-479 Remove five screws



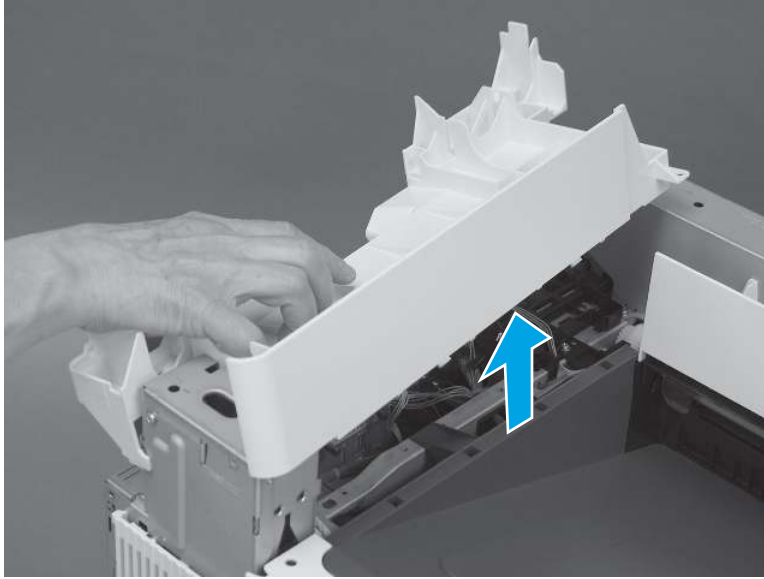
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-480 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-481 Remove the cover



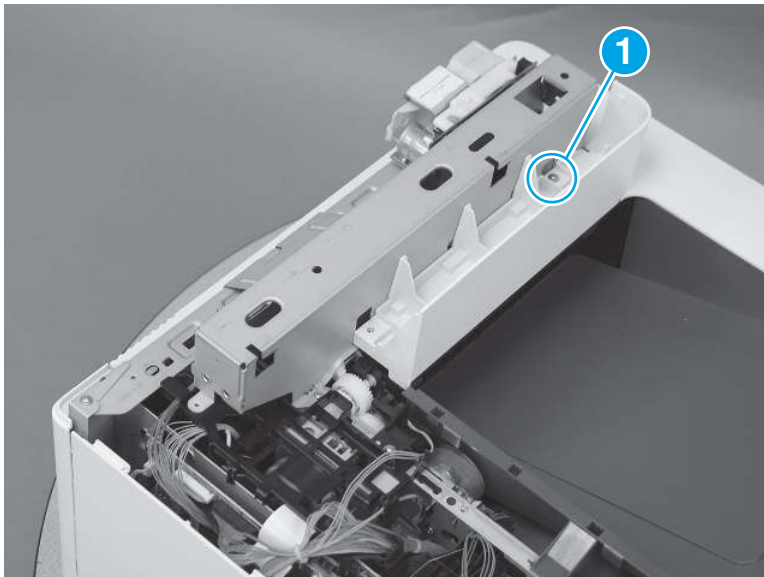
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

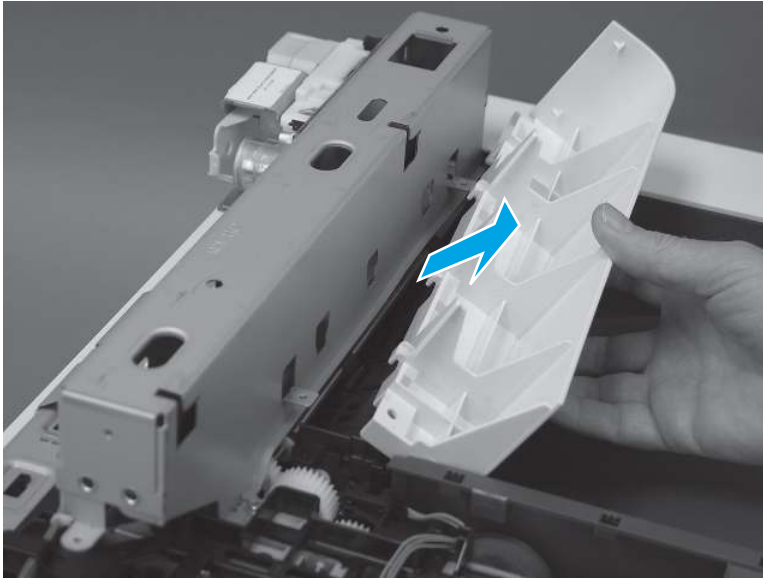
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-482 Remove one screw



2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-483 Remove the cover



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-484 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-485 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-486 Remove the TCU



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

📝 NOTE: This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


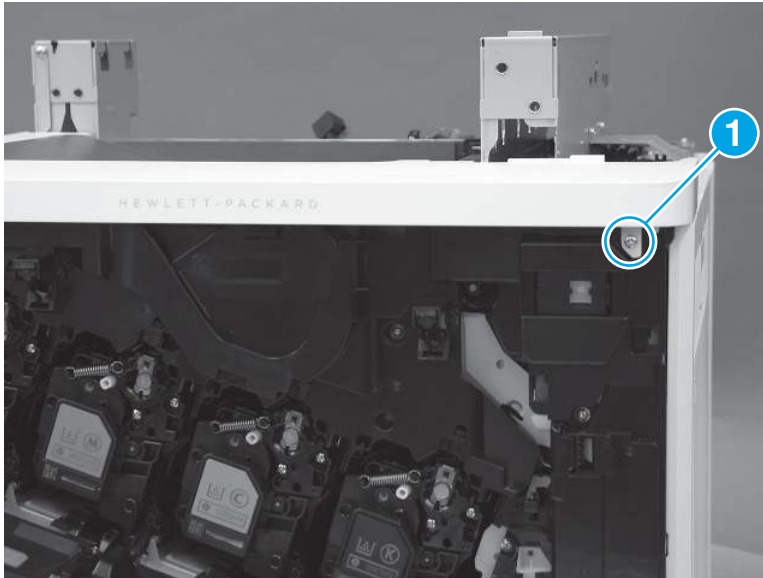
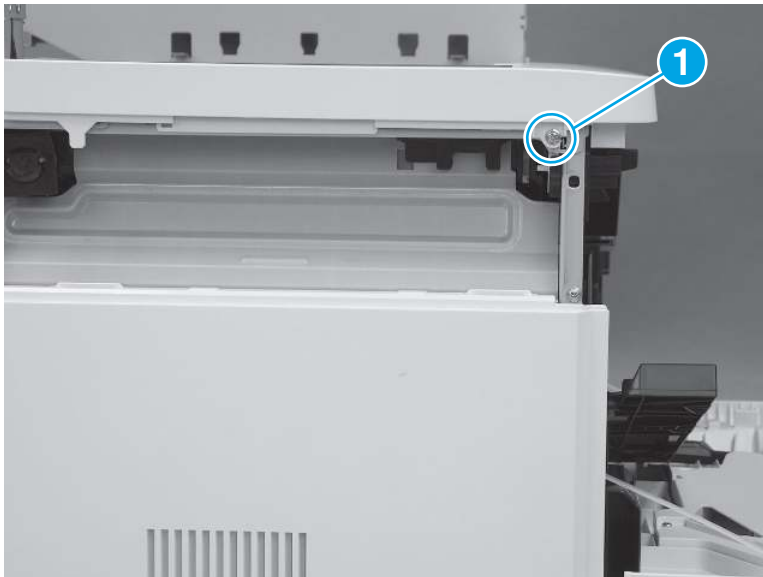
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-487 Remove one screw



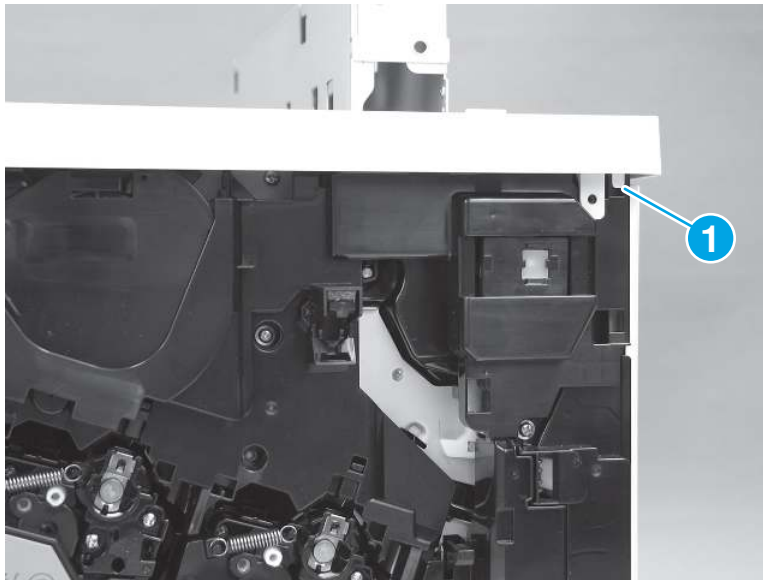
2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-488 Remove one screw



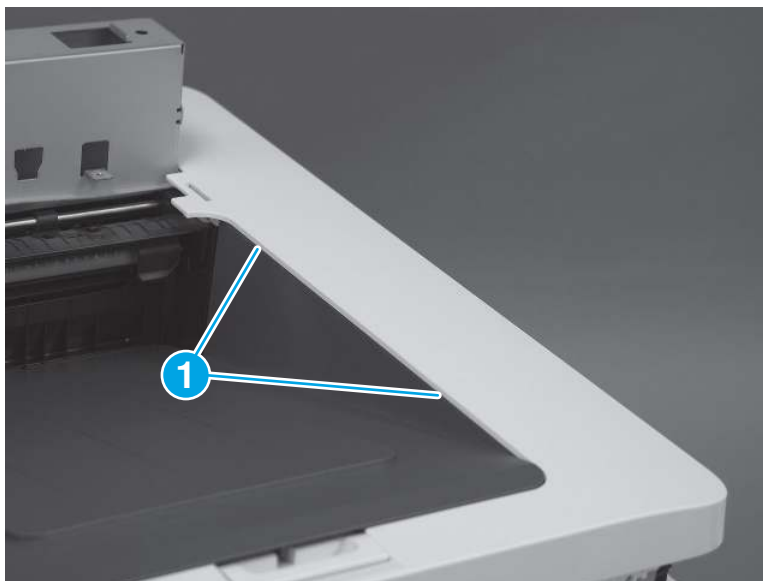
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-489 Release one tab



4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-490 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Right door


Learn about removing and replacing the right door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-40 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0019-010CN	Right door

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

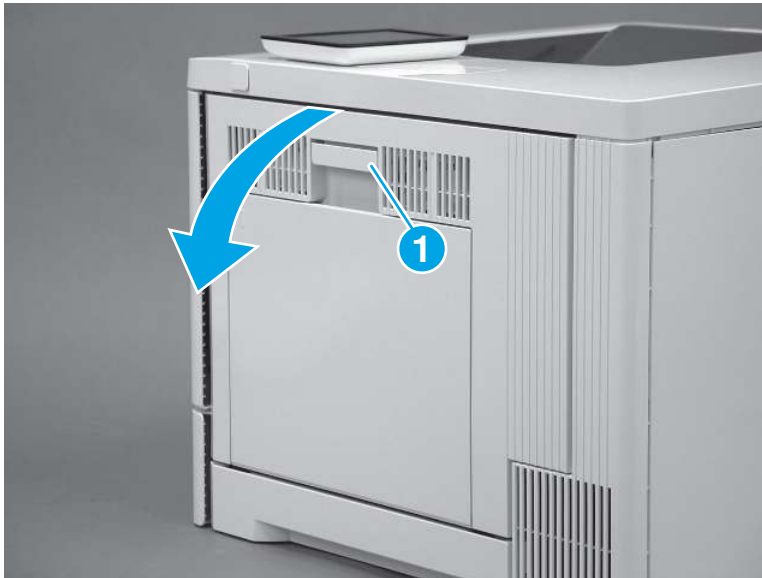
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the Right Door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

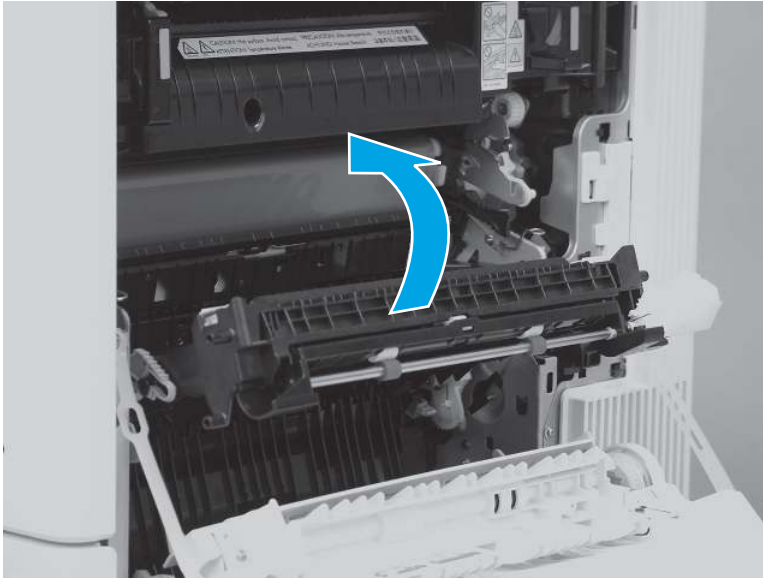
1. Use the handle (callout 1) to open the right door.

Figure 5-491 Open the right door



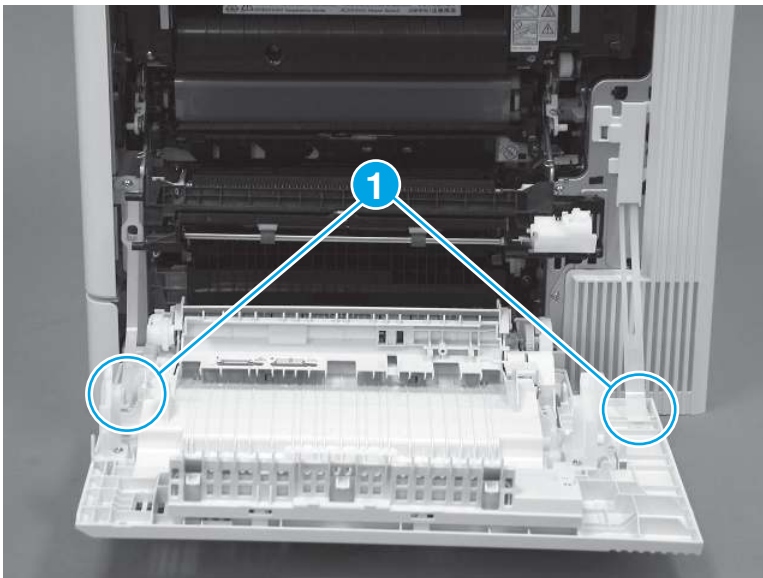
2. Rotate the secondary transfer assembly up and into the printer to move it out of the way.

Figure 5-492 Rotate the secondary transfer assembly up



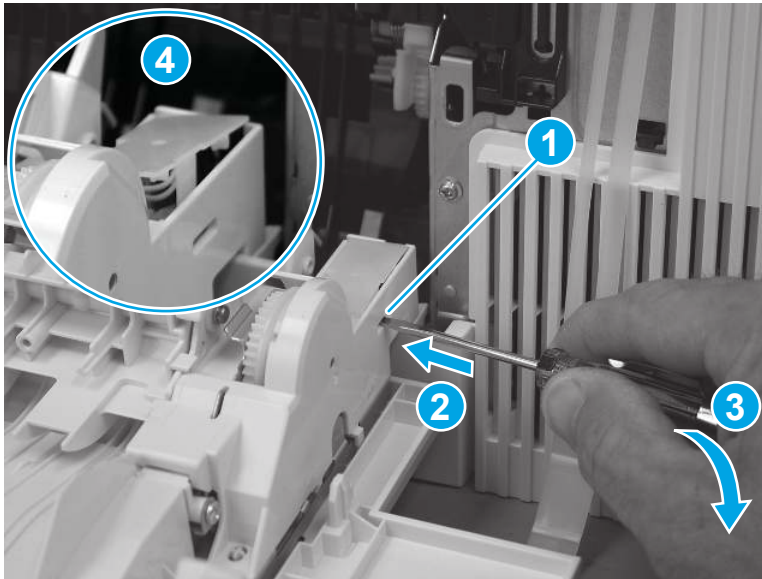
3. At the right- and left-side of the door, use a small flat blade screwdriver to release the door retainer straps (callout 1), and then pull them through the slot in the door.

Figure 5-493 Release the door retainer straps



4. Locate a slot (callout 1) near the gear side of the door, push the blade of a small screwdriver into the slot (callout 2) to release one tab, and then rotate the end of the screwdriver down (callout 3) release the connector cover (callout 4).

Figure 5-494 Release the connector cover



5. Remove the connector cover.

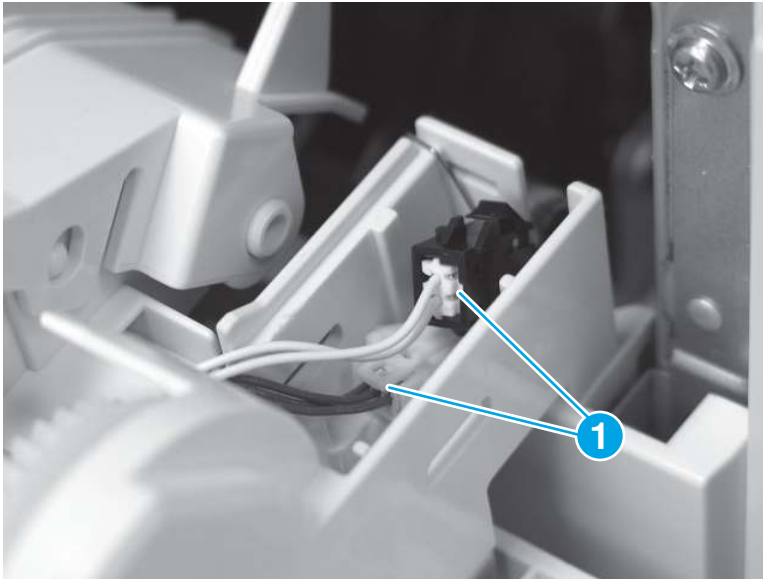
 **Reinstallation tip:** When the cover is correctly installed it is flat against the door. If the cover is incorrectly installed the right door might not properly close.

Figure 5-495 Remove the cover



6. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

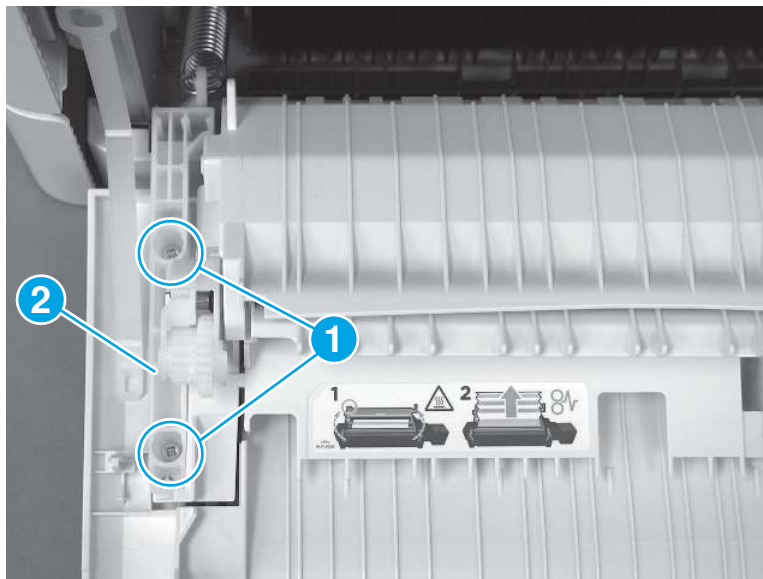
Figure 5-496 Disconnect two connectors



7. Remove two screws (callout 1) to release the door arm (callout 2).

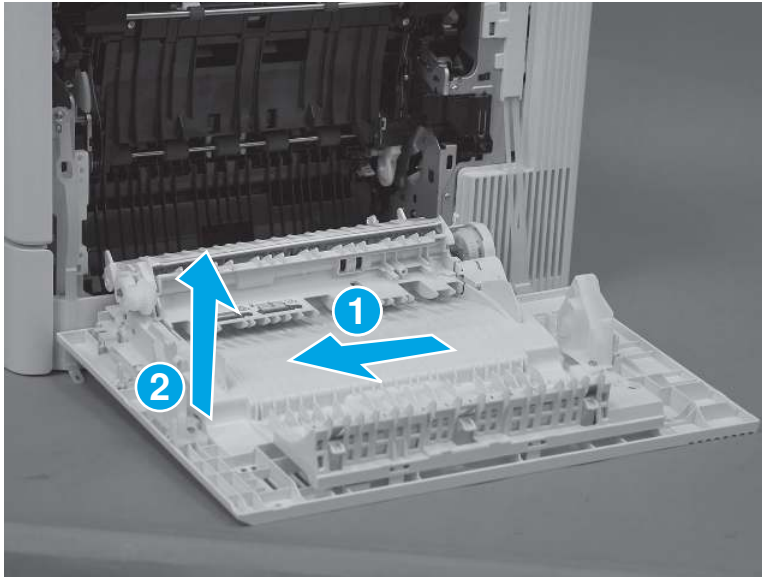
⚠ CAUTION: The door arm is spring loaded. Keep a firm grip on it while removing the screws, and then carefully move it up and into the printer.

Figure 5-497 Remove two screws



8. Slide the door toward the front of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then lift it up (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-498 Remove the door



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front door

Learn about removing and replacing the front door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-41 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L25-67901	Front door

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove Tray 2

Follow these steps to remove Tray 2.

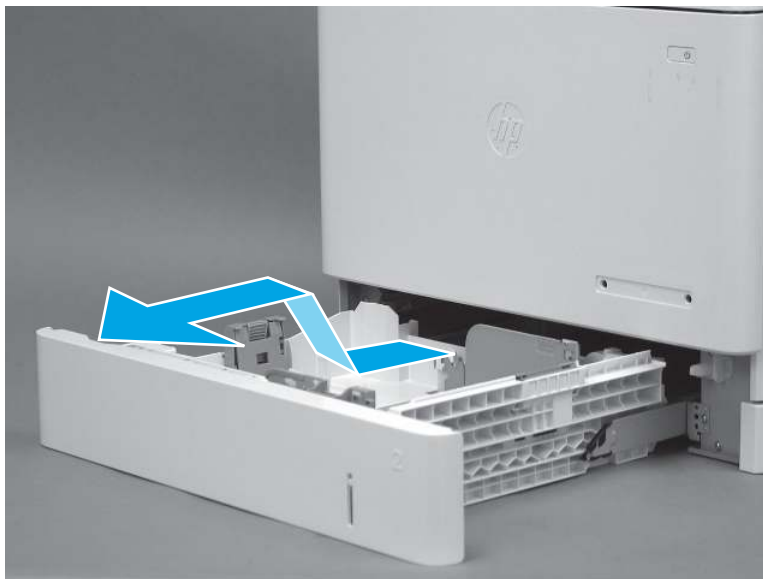
1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-499 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-500 Remove the tray



Remove the front door

Follow these steps to remove the front door.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-501 Open the front door



2. At the right- and left-side of the door, release two tabs (callout 1), and then release the door retainer straps (callout 2).


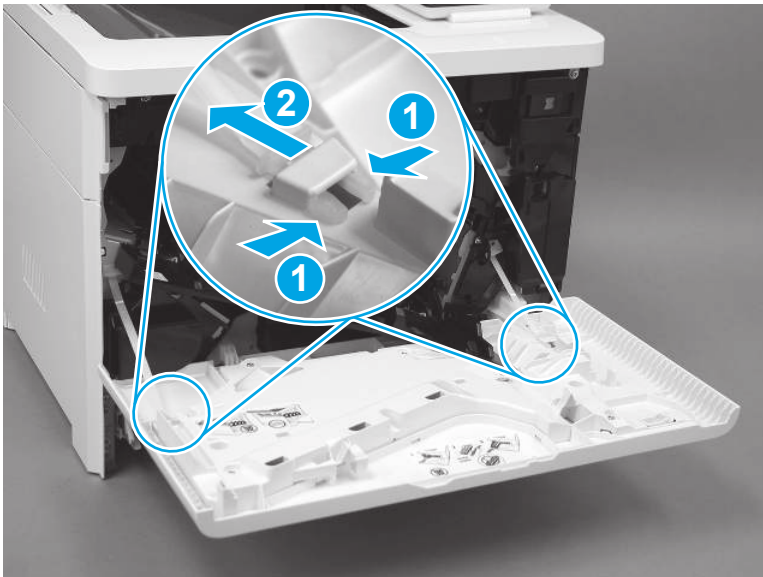
 **TIP:** Use a pair of needle nose pliers to easily release the tabs.

Figure 5-502 Release the door retainer straps



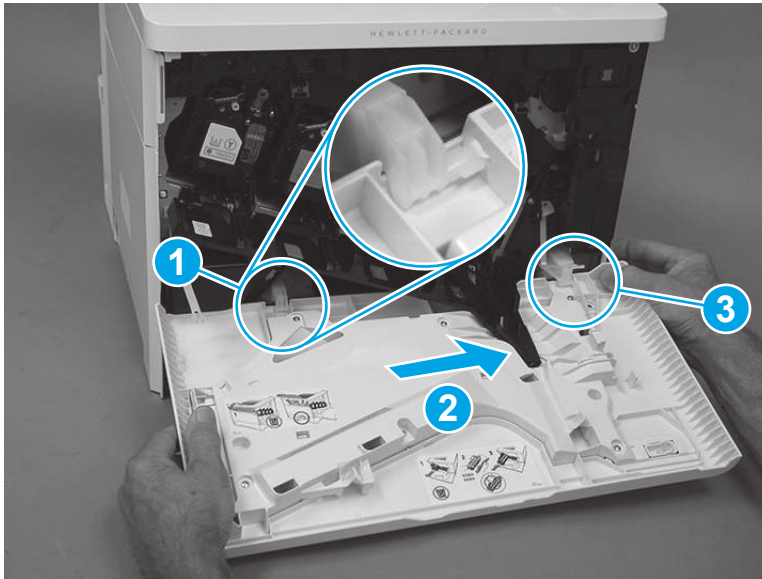
3. Carefully push down on the door to lower it until the keyed hinge pin (callout 1) is aligned with the slot in the flange, and then slide the door to the right (callout 2) to release the left and right hinge pins (callout 1 and callout 3).

 **CAUTION:** The keyed hinge pin (callout 1) is fragile, and can easily be broken off.

Make sure that it is correctly aligned with the slot in the flange before attempting to remove the front door from the printer.



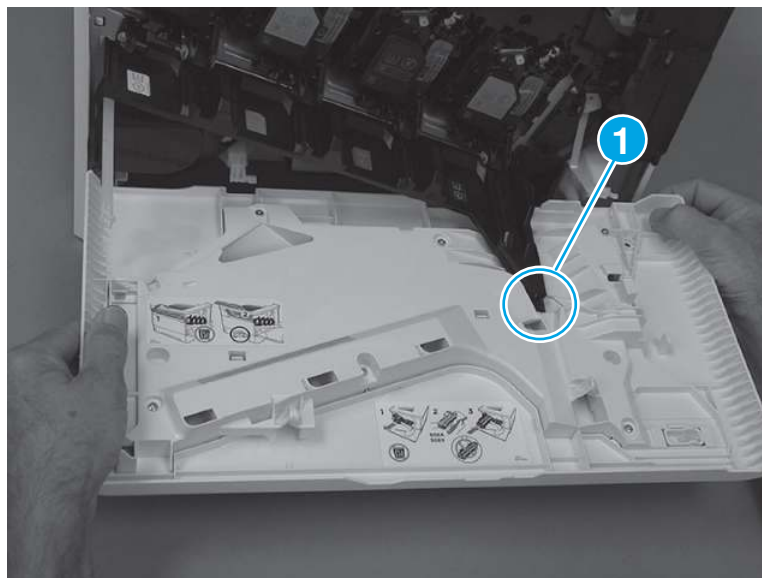
Figure 5-503 Slide the door to the right



4. Pull the door toward you to release the inner door (callout 1), and then remove the front door.

CAUTION: Hold the inner door (callout 1) in place before releasing it. The inner door is spring loaded will abruptly close and be damaged if it is not held down.

Figure 5-504 Remove the door



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter cover

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.



CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-42 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0084-000CN	Formatter cover

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

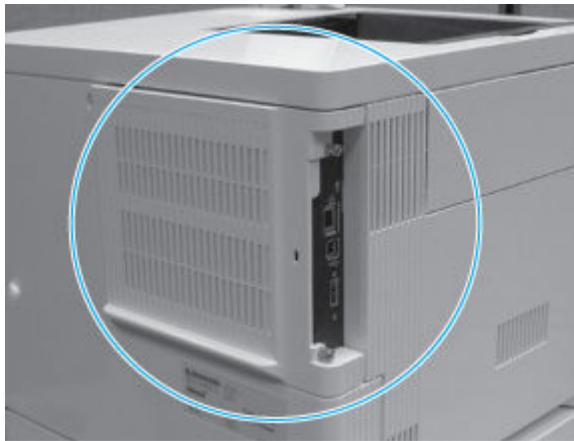
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

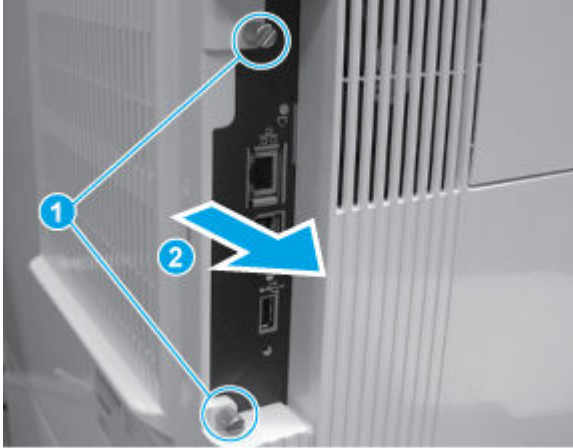
Figure 5-505 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-506 Loosen the thumbscrews



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-43 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0085-000CN	Rear cover

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

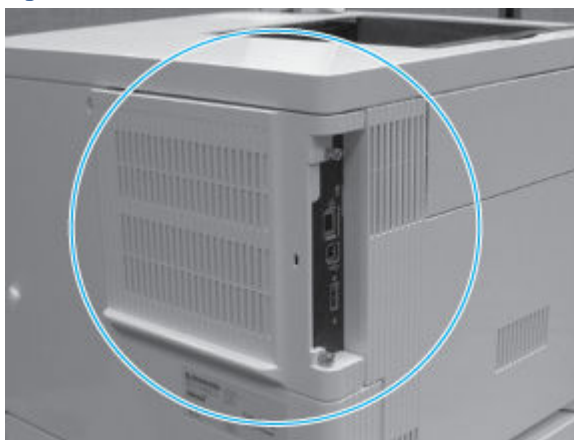
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-507 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-508 Loosen the thumbscrews



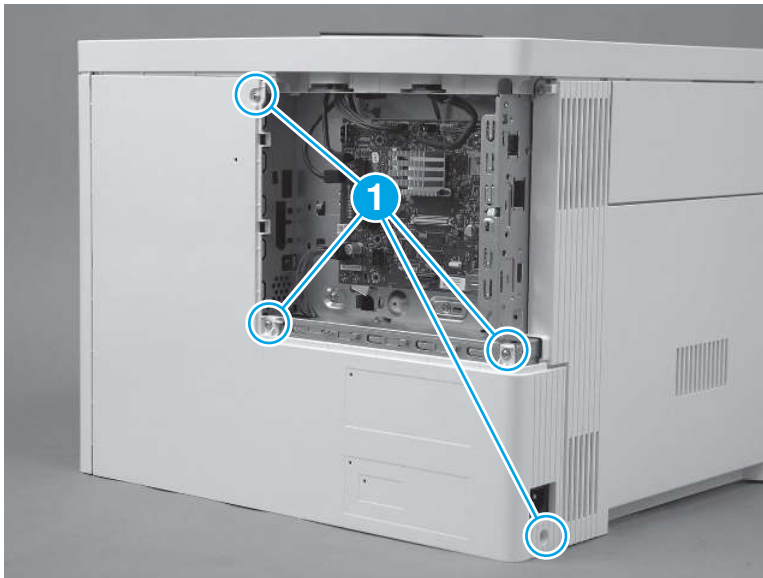
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

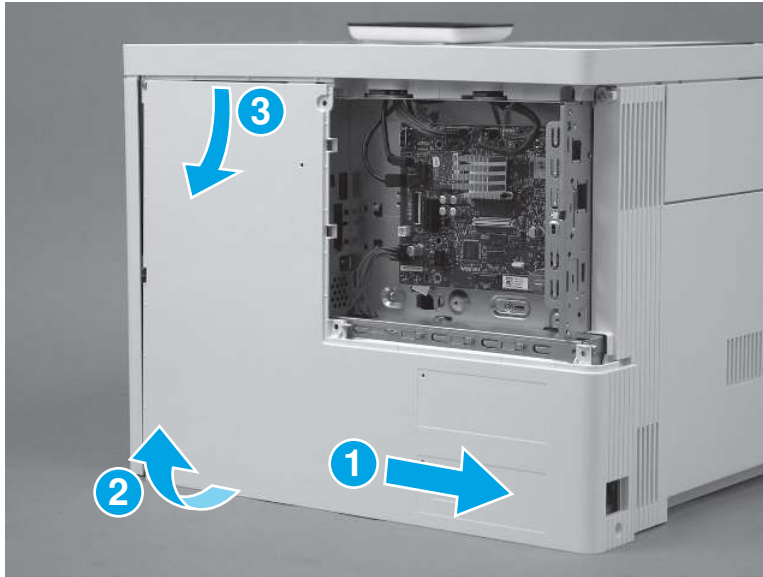
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-509 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-510 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-44 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0085-000CN	Rear cover

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

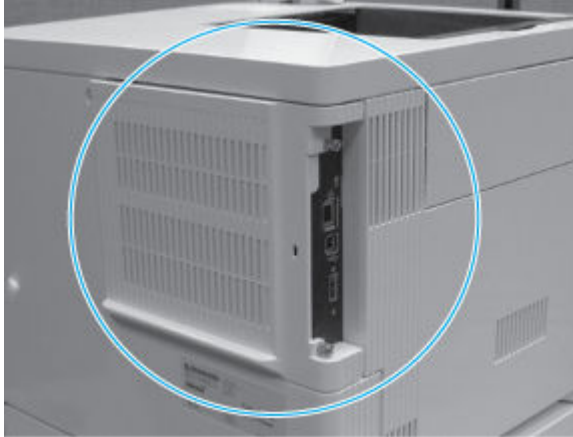
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-511 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


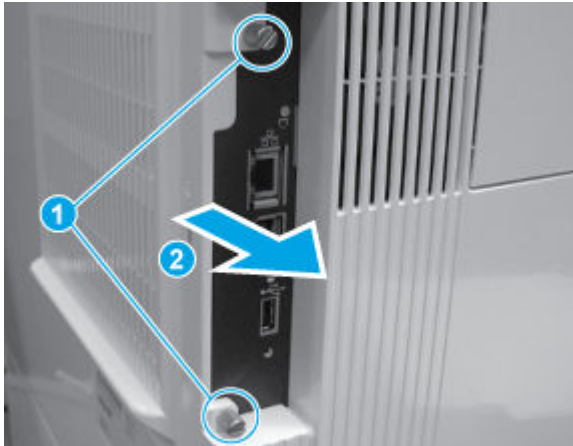
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-512 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

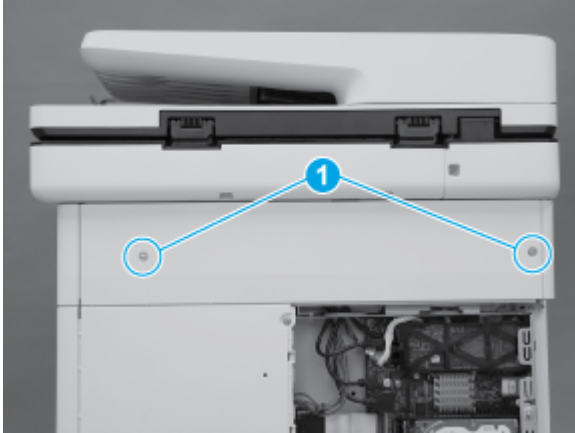
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

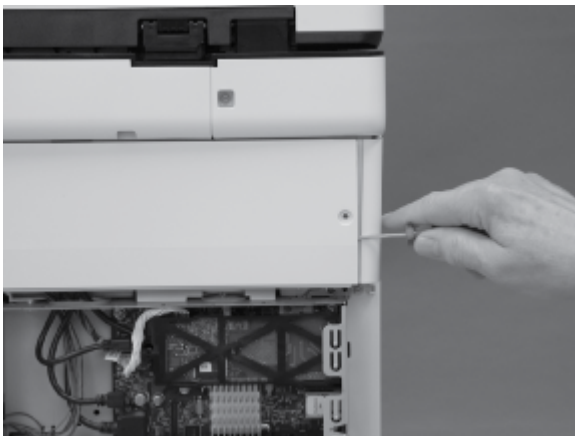
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-513 Remove two screws



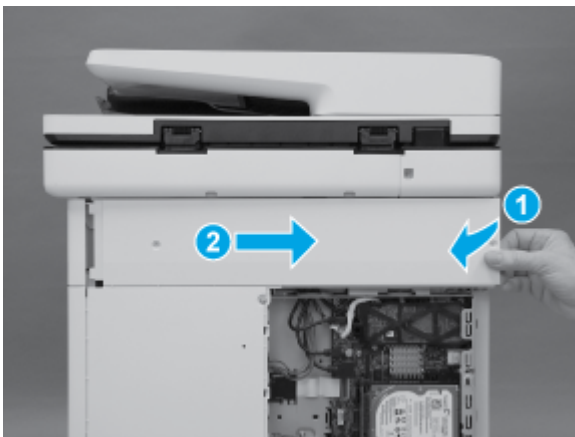
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-514 Release the right edge



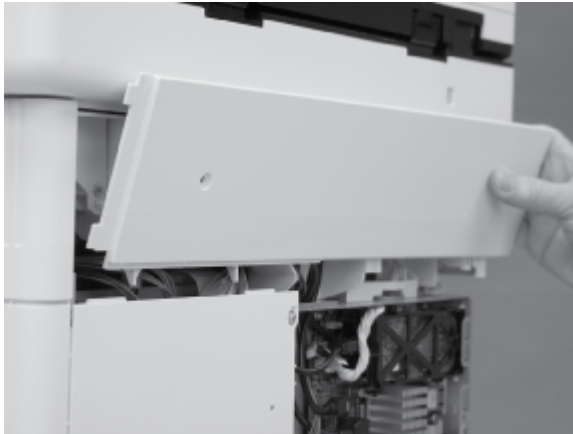
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-515 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-516 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-517 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-518 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-45 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-0179-000CN	Left cover

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

📝 NOTE: The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-519 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.


 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-520 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-521 Remove the TCU

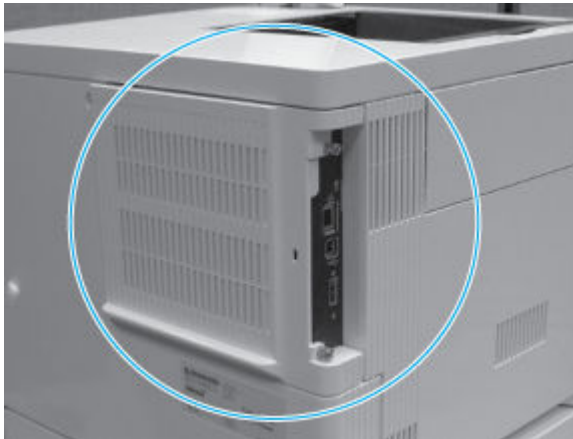


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

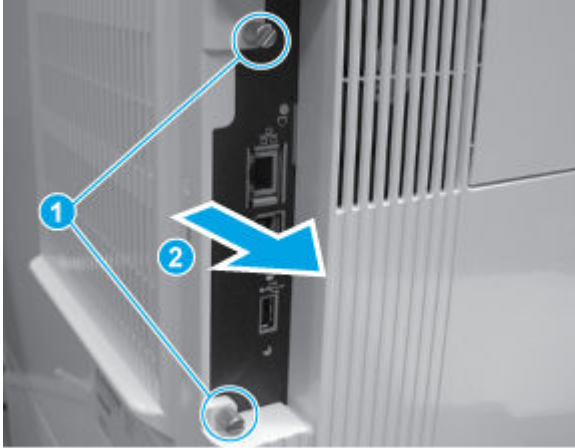
Figure 5-522 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-523 Loosen the thumbscrews



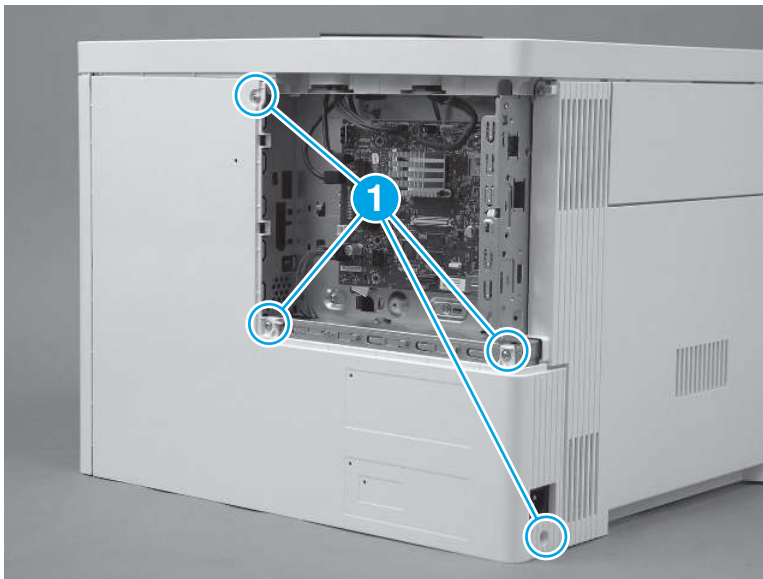
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

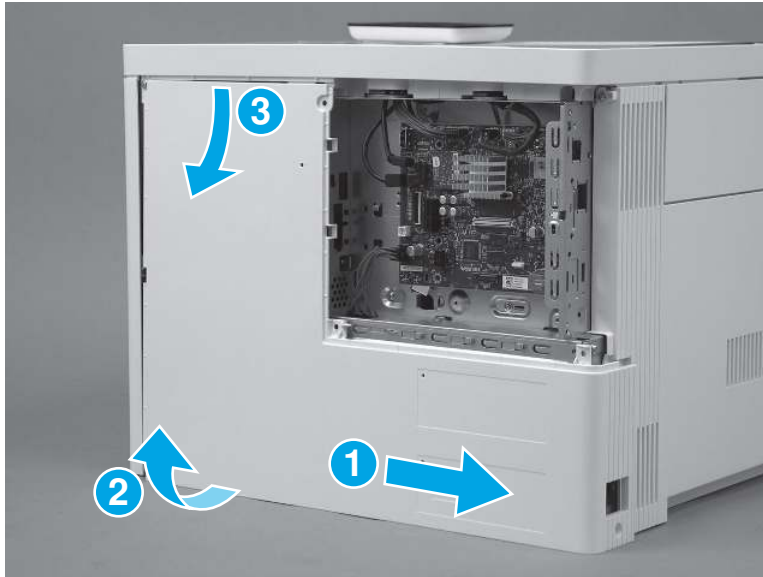
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-524 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-525 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).


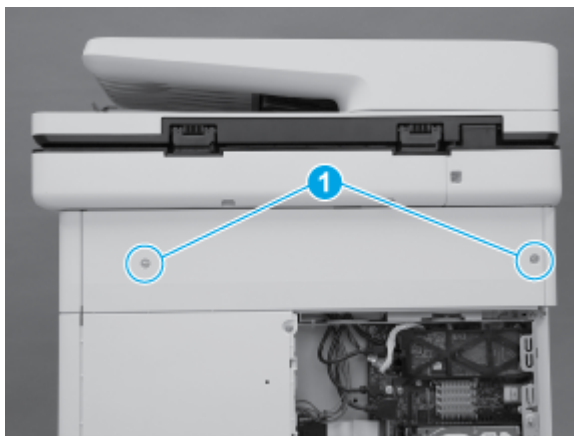
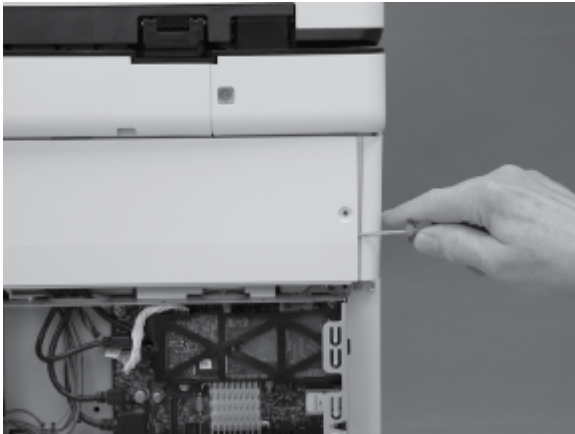
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-526 Remove two screws



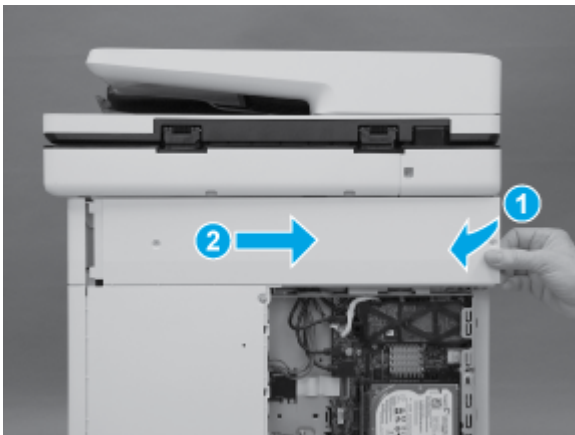
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-527 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-528 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-529 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-530 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-531 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

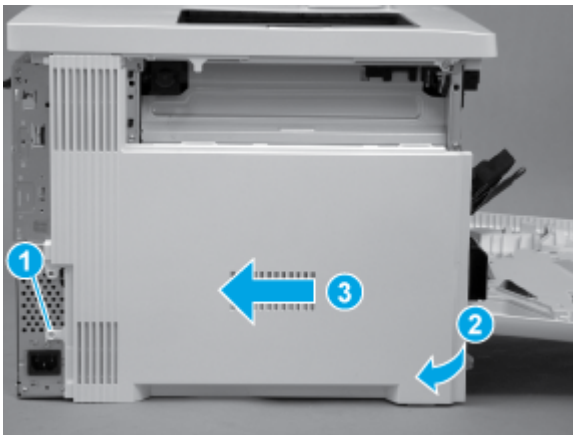
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-532 Remove one screw



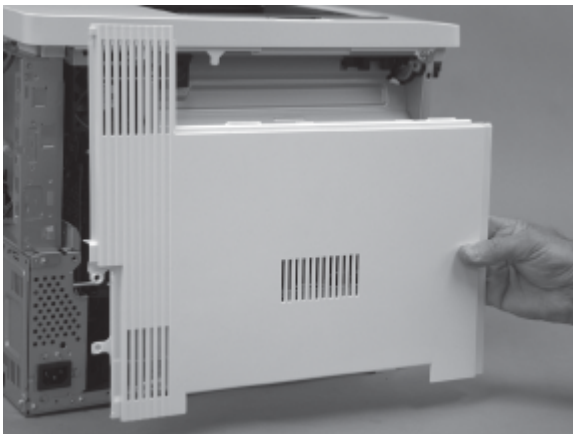
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-533 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-534 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Upper cover (M553/M555/E55040)


Learn about removing and replacing the upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-46 Part information

Part number	Part description
RL2-0097-000CN	Upper cover (M533x)

Table 5-46 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
RL2-0098-000CN	Upper cover (M533x and E55040dw)
RL2-0120-000CN	Upper cover (M555 and E55040dn)

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-535 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-536 Remove the cover



Remove the HIP cover

Follow these steps to remove the HIP cover.

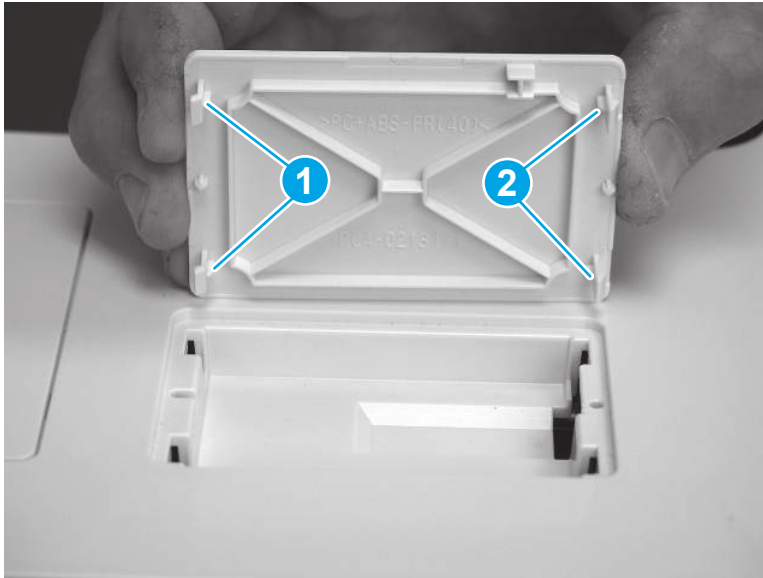
1. Locate the HIP cover.

Figure 5-537 Locate the HIP cover



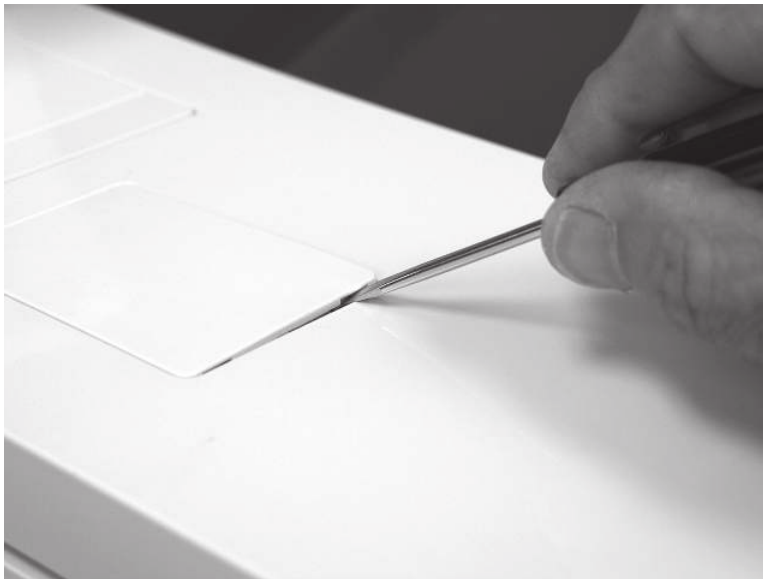
2. Before proceeding, take note of the mounting feet (callout 1) and tabs (callout 2) on the HIP cover.

Figure 5-538 Note the mounting feet and tabs



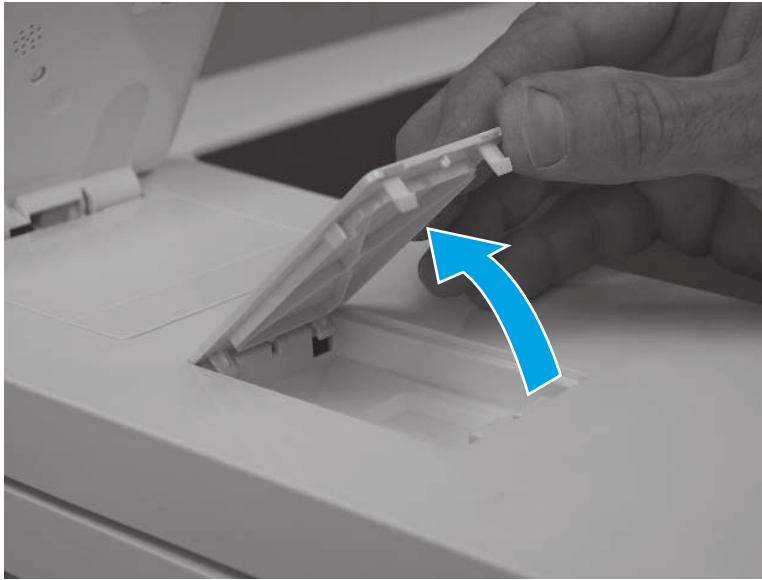
3. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release the tabs on the HIP cover.

Figure 5-539 Release the cover



4. Rotate the cover up and off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-540 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-541 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.


 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-542 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-543 Remove the cover

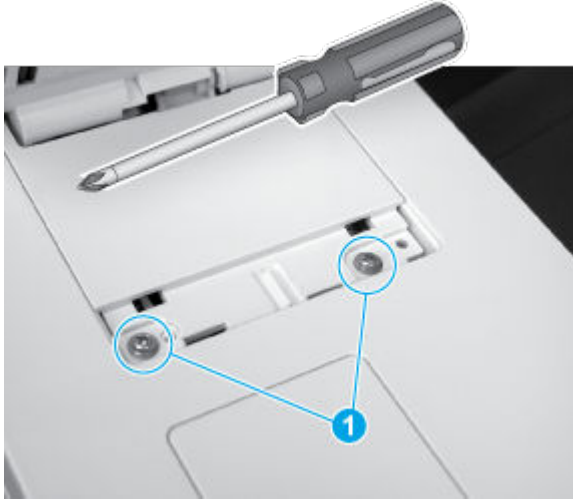


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-544 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-545 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-546 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


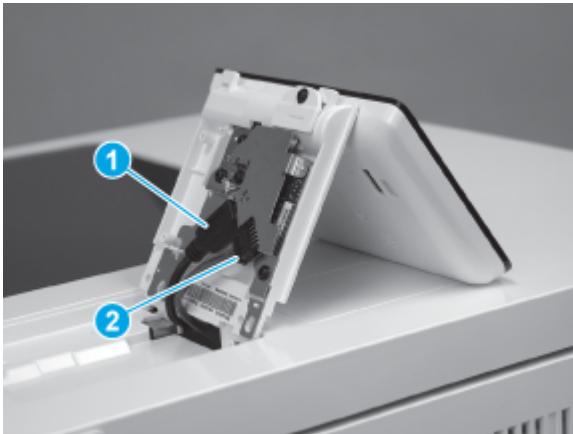
 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-547 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer. However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-548 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-549 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-550 Remove the TCU

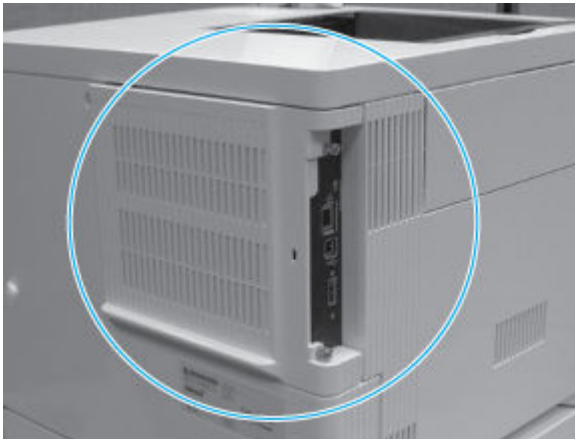


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-551 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-552 Loosen the thumbscrews



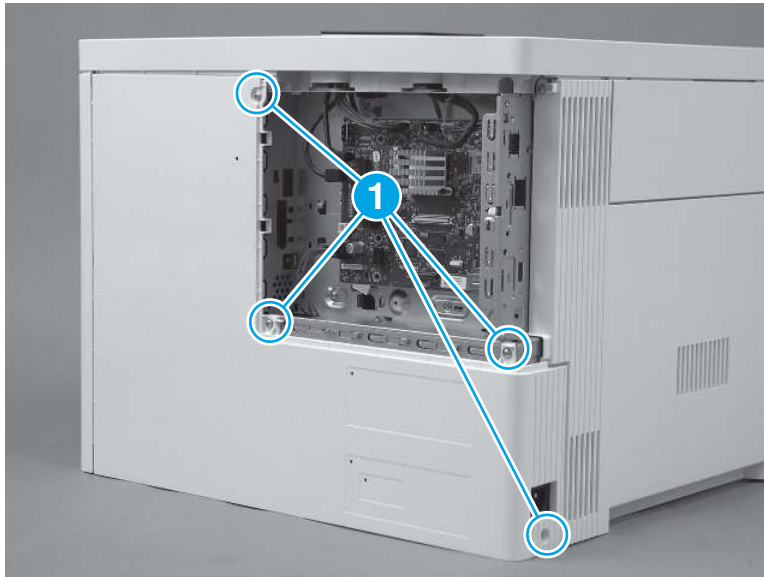
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

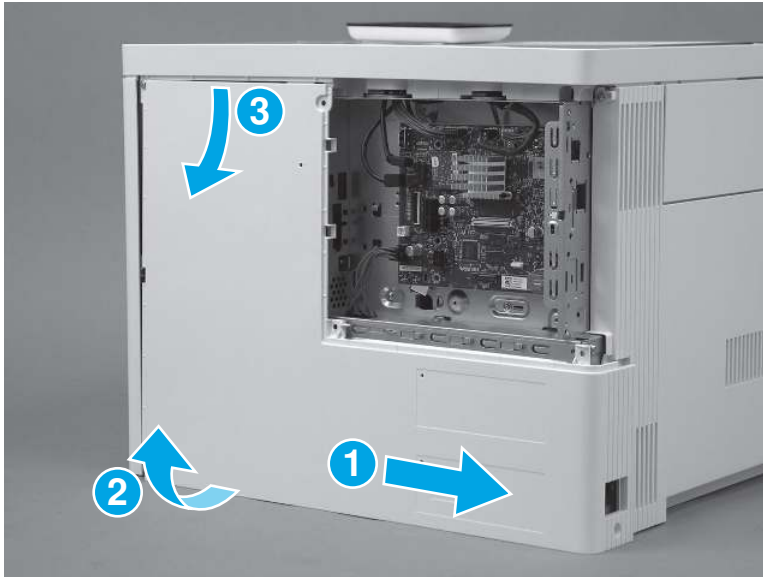
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-553 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-554 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

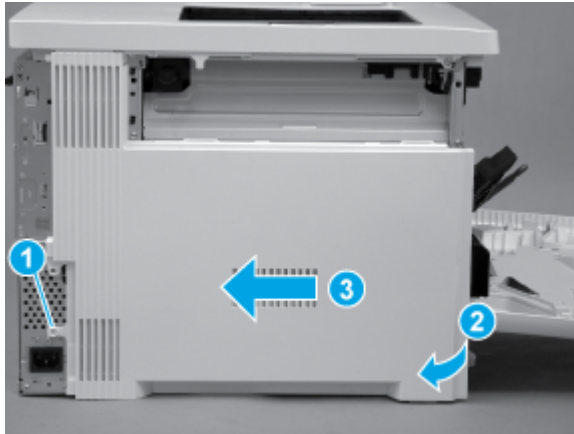
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-555 Remove one screw



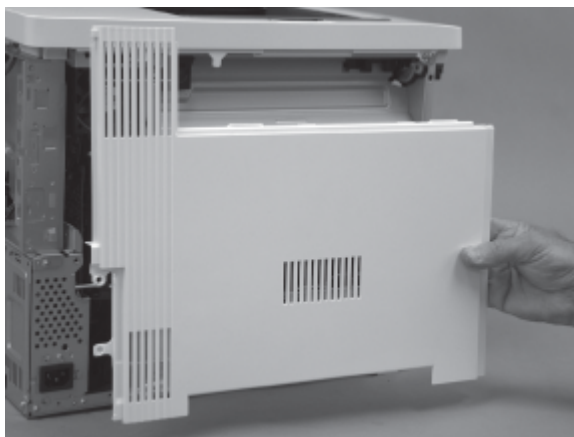
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-556 Release the cover




3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-557 Remove the cover



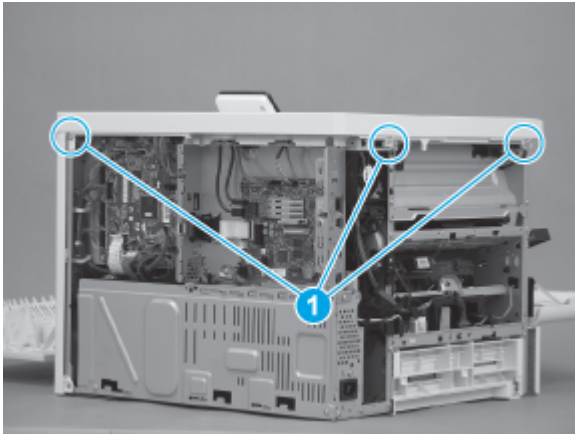
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-558 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-559 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


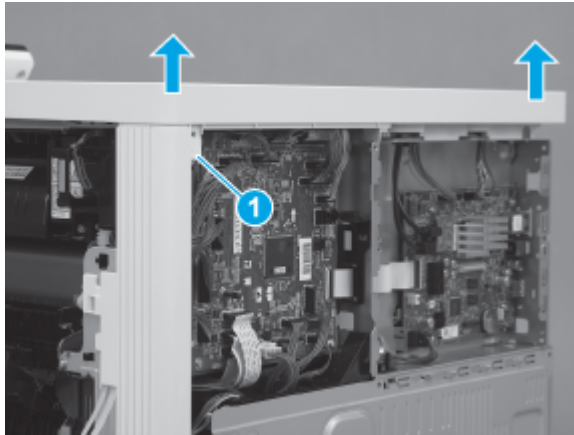
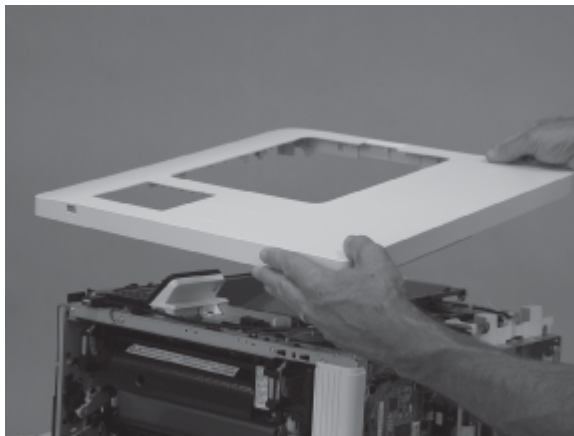
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-560 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-561 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Output bin


Learn about removing and replacing the output bin.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-47 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0044-000CN	Output bin

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

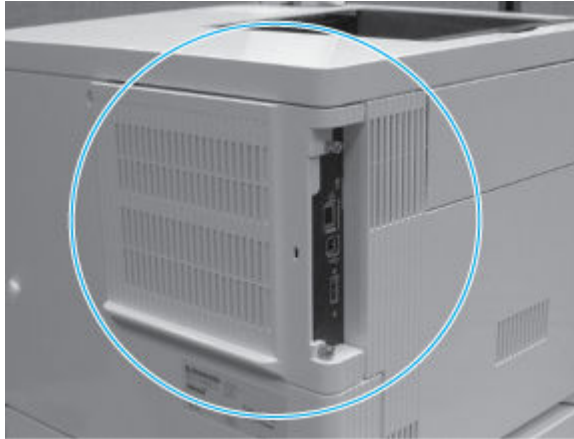
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

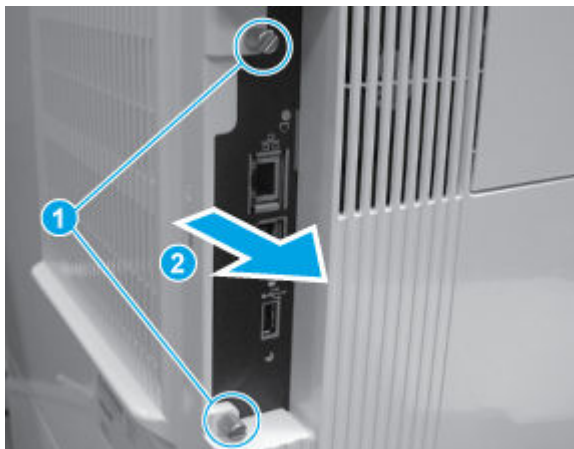
Figure 5-562 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-563 Loosen the thumbscrews

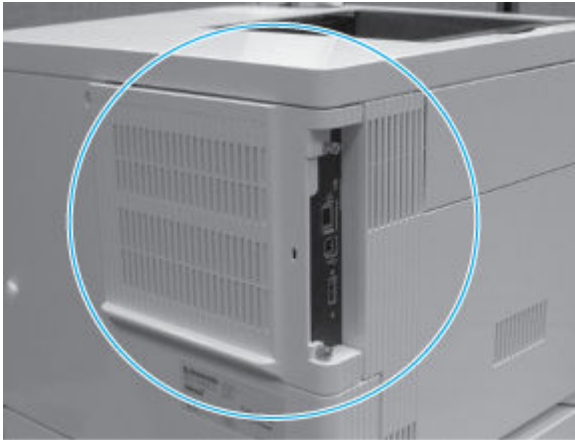


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

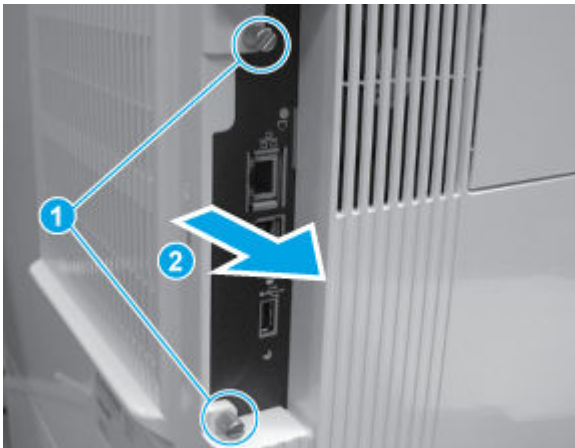
Figure 5-564 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-565 Loosen the thumbscrews



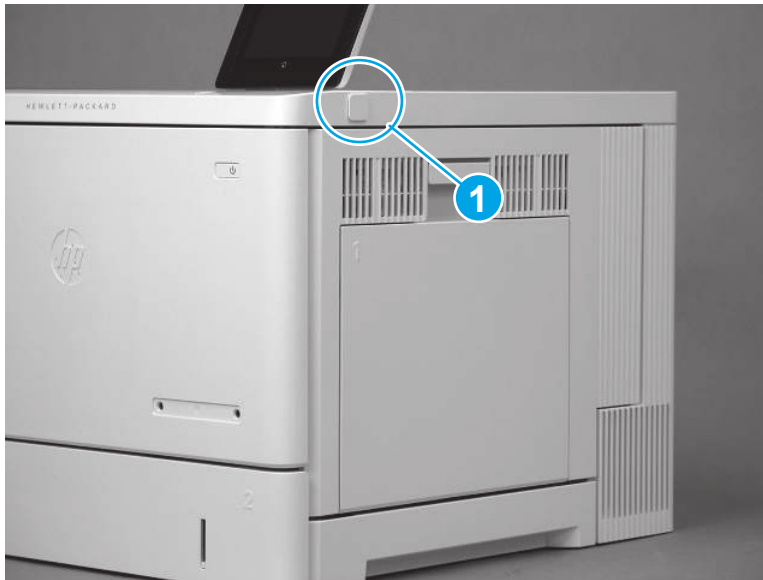
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-566 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-567 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-568 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-569 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-570 Remove the cover

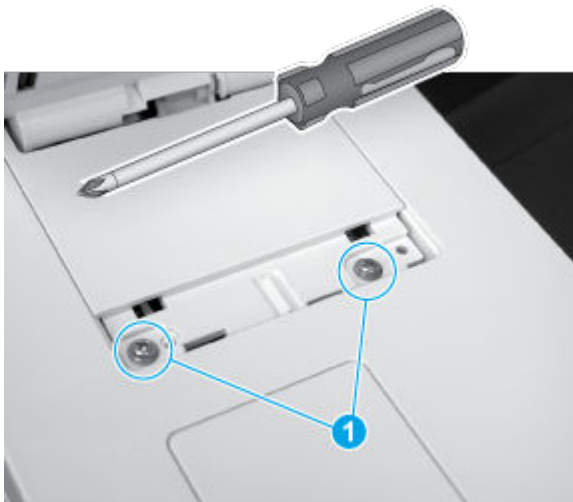


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-571 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

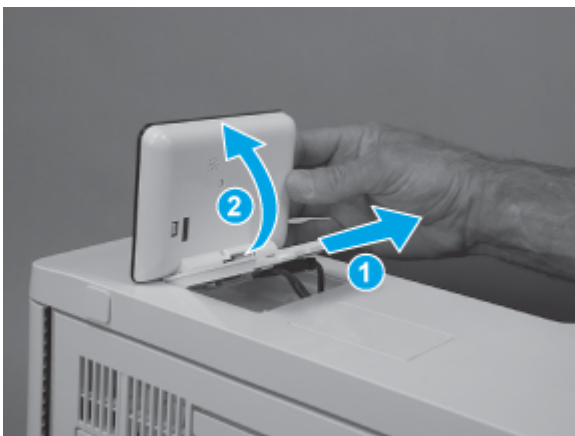
Figure 5-572 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

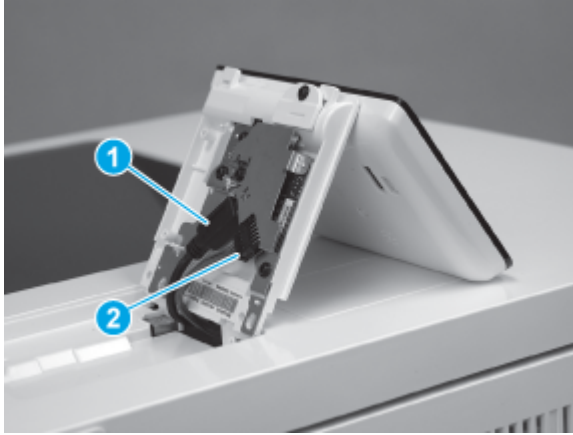
Figure 5-573 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.

📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-574 Disconnect two connectors



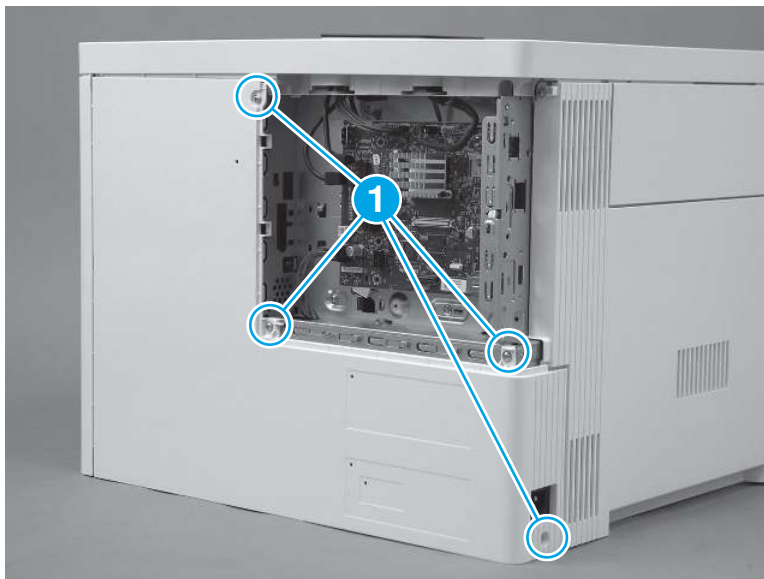
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

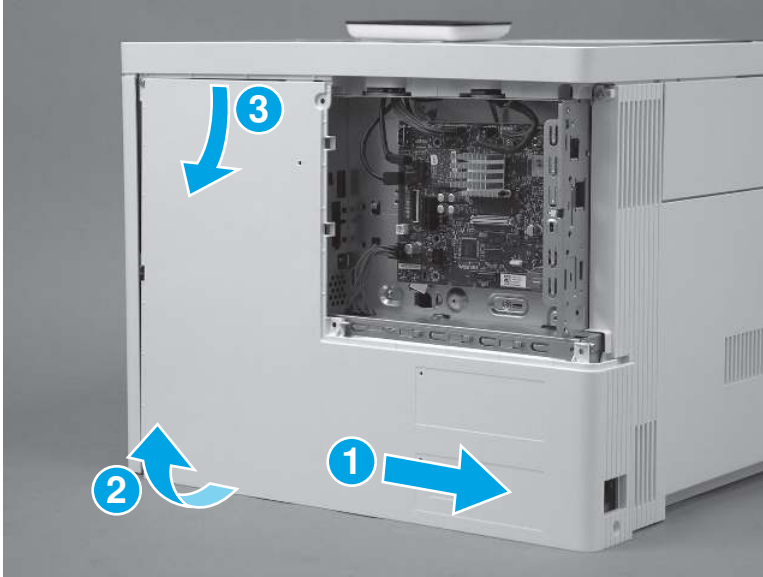
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-575 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-576 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

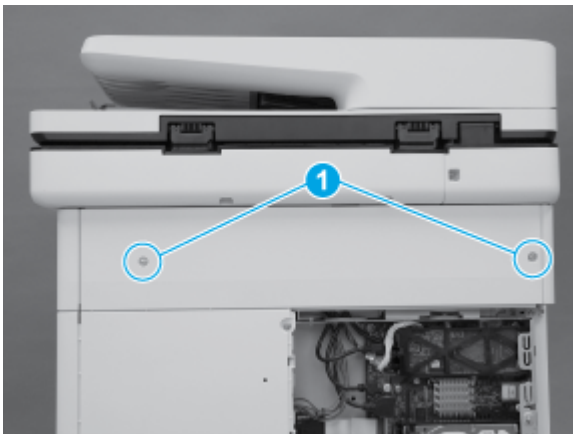
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

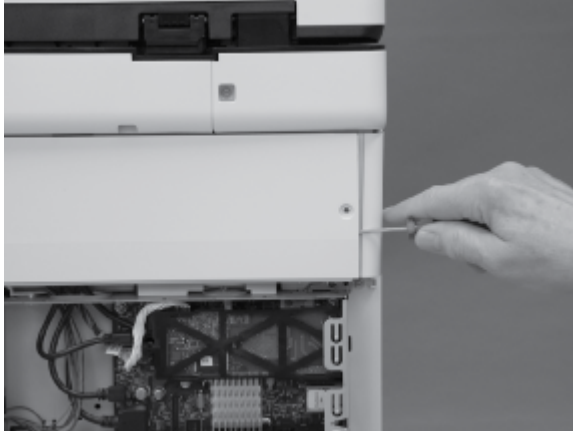
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-577 Remove two screws



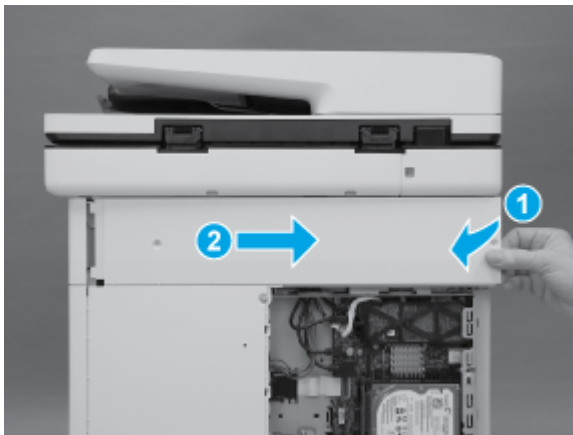
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-578 Release the right edge



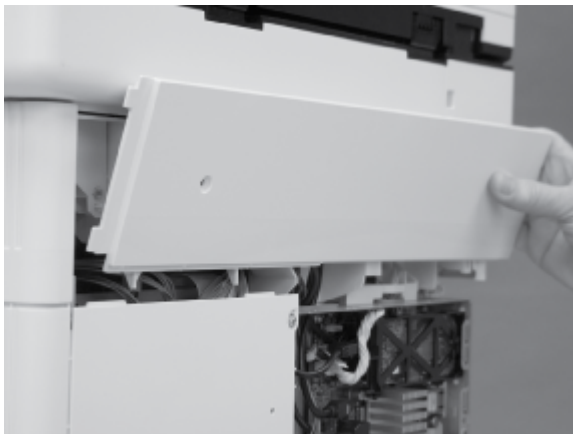
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-579 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-580 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-581 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-582 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

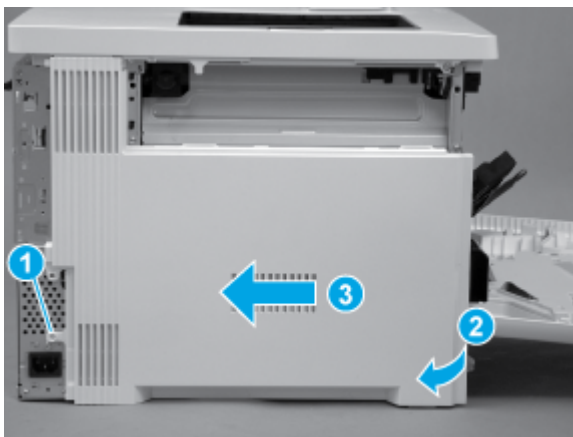
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-583 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-584 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-585 Remove the cover



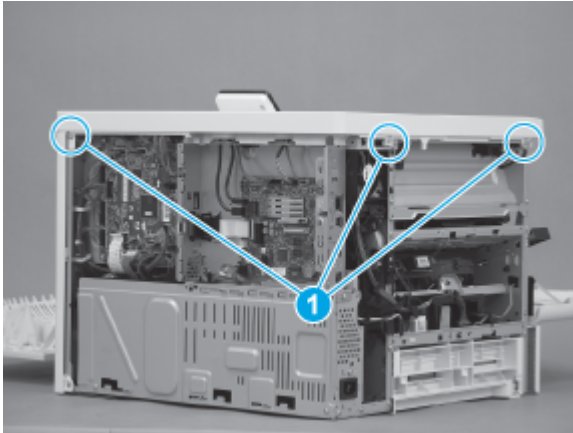
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-586 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-587 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


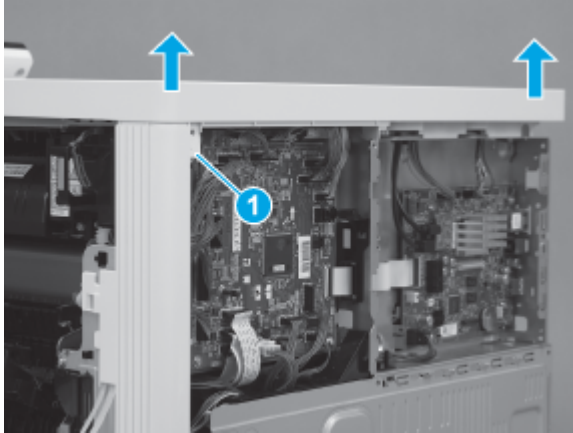
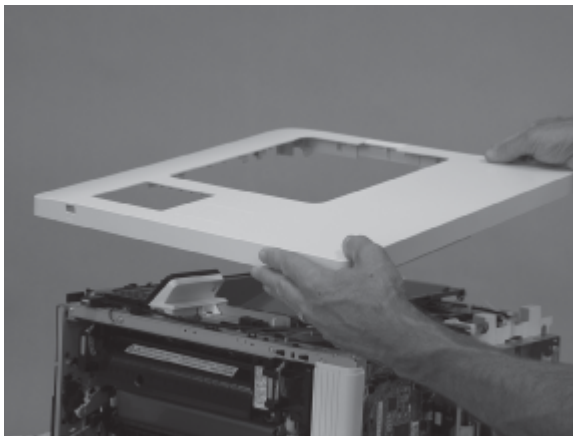
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for additional tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-588 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-589 Remove the cover



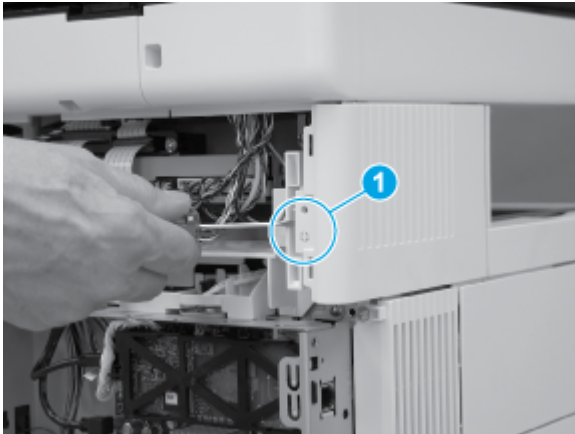
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-590 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-591 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-592 Remove the left upper cover



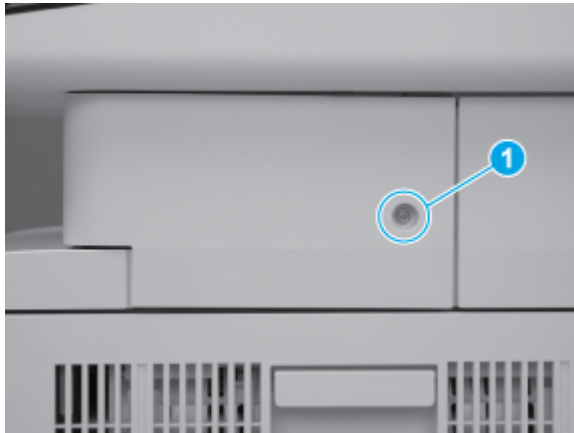
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-593 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-594 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-595 Rotate the cover



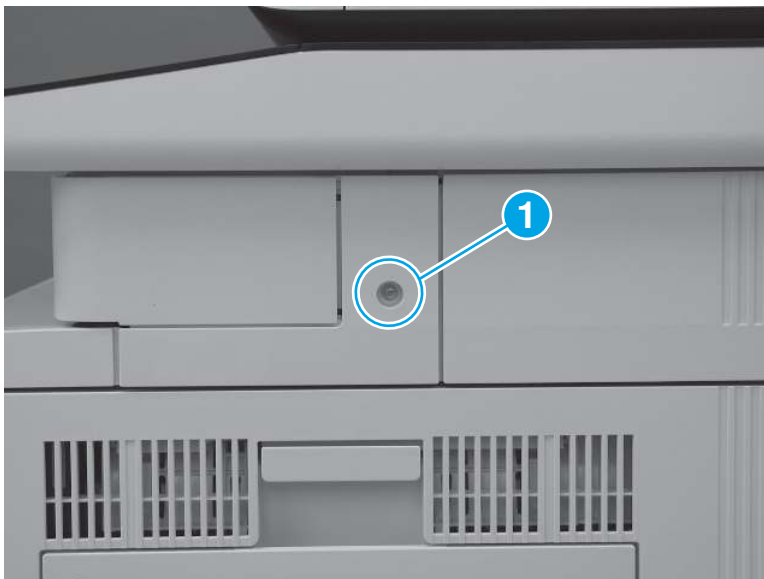
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-596 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-597 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-598 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-599 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

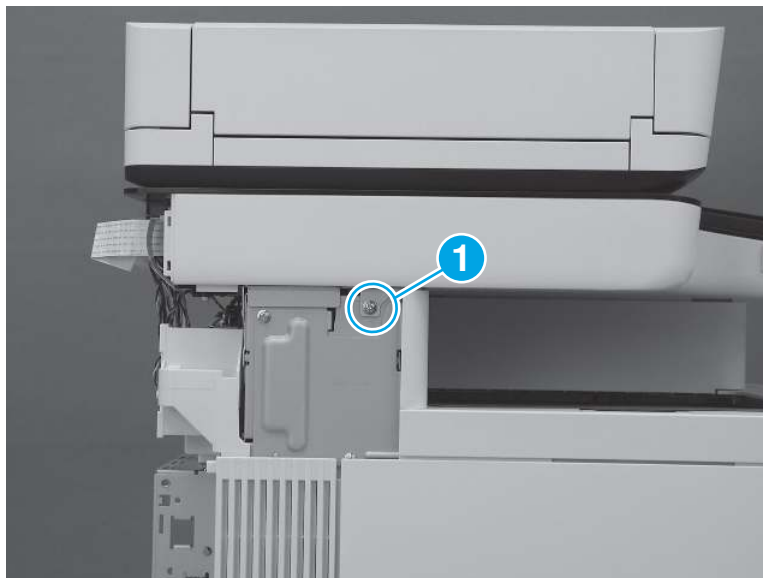
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

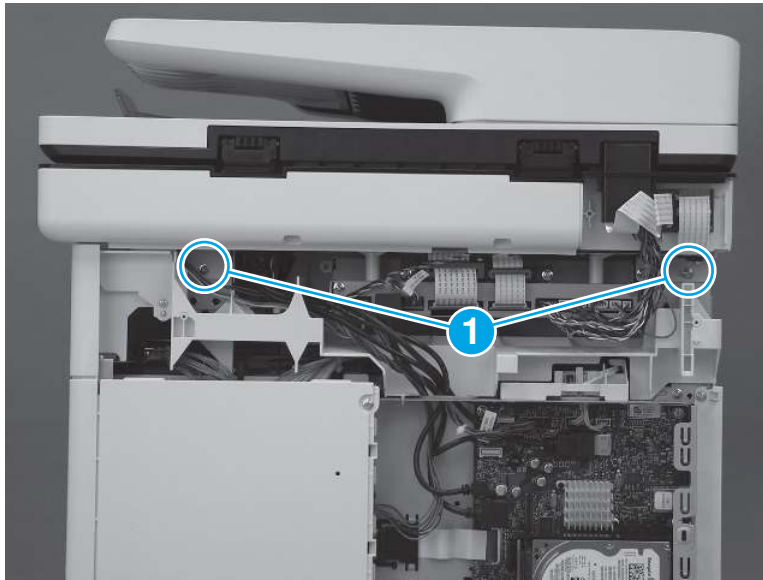
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-600 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

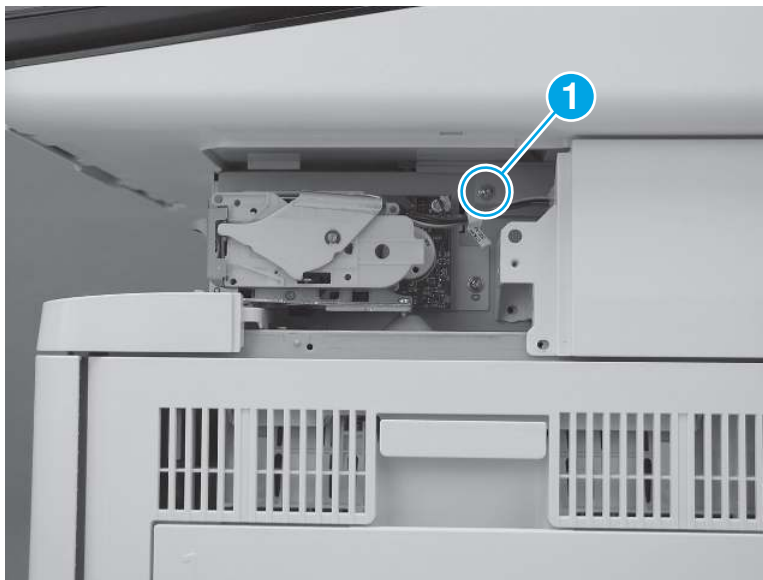
Figure 5-601 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

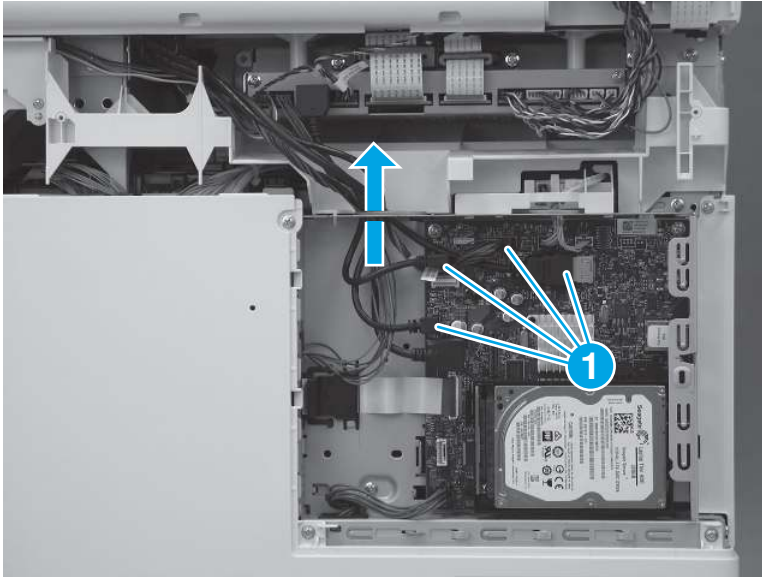
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-602 Remove one screw



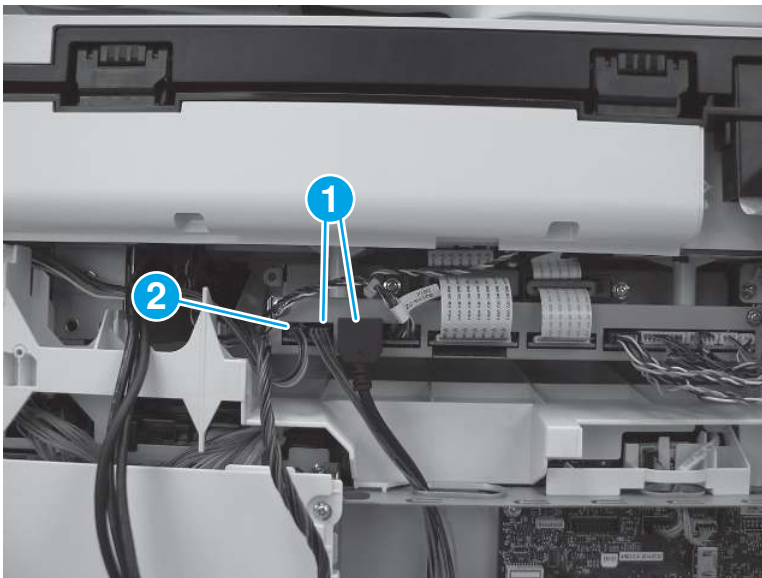
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-603 Disconnect cables and connectors



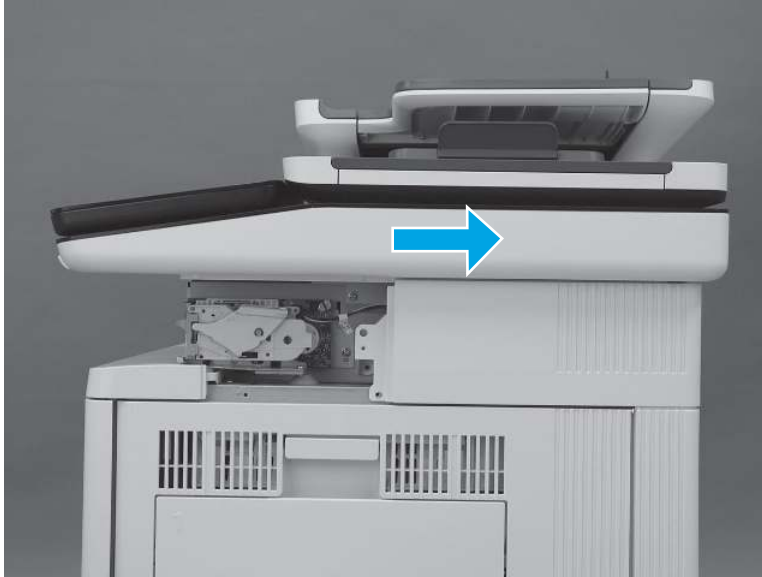
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-604 Disconnect connectors



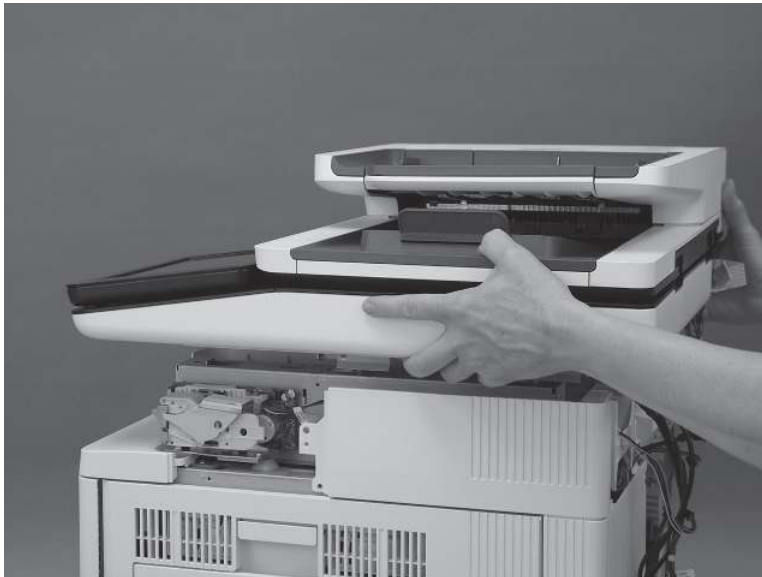
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-605 Release the image scanner




7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-606 Remove the ISA



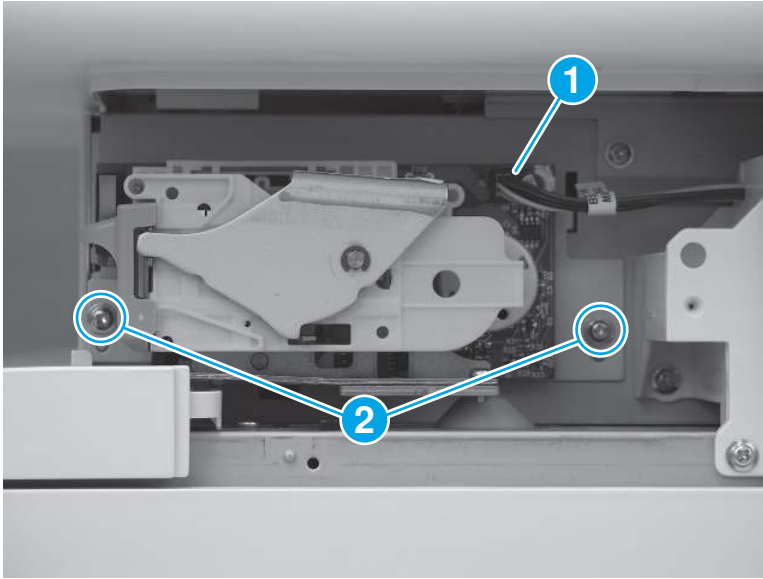
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

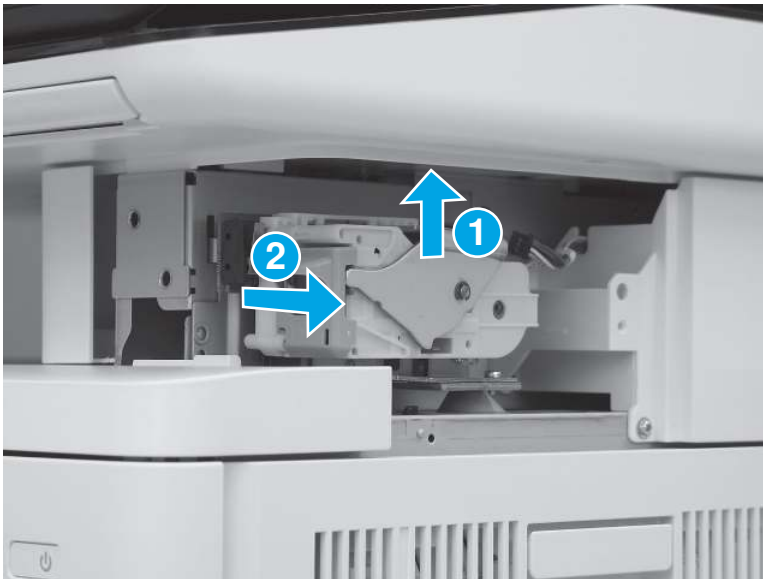
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-607 Disconnect connector and remove screws




2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-608 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

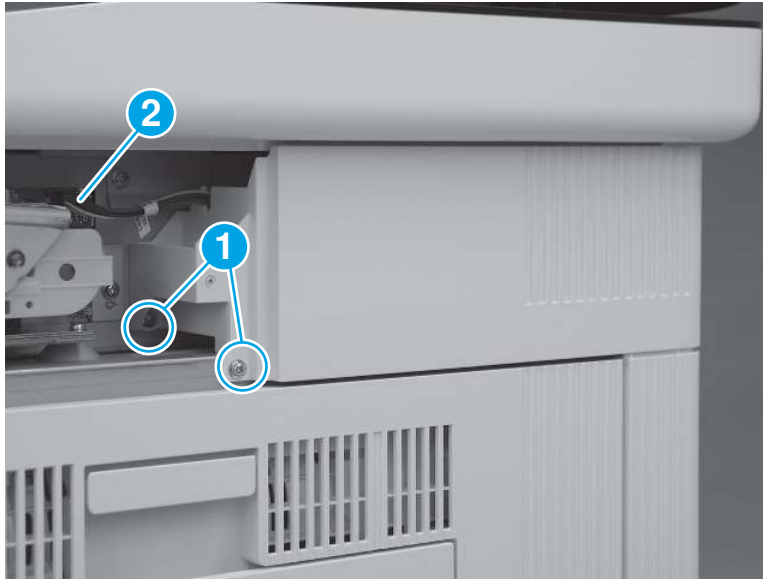
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-609 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


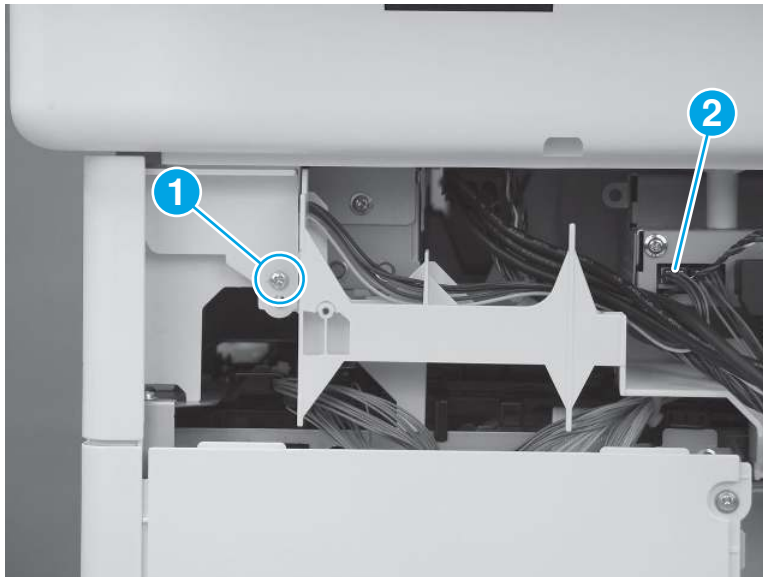
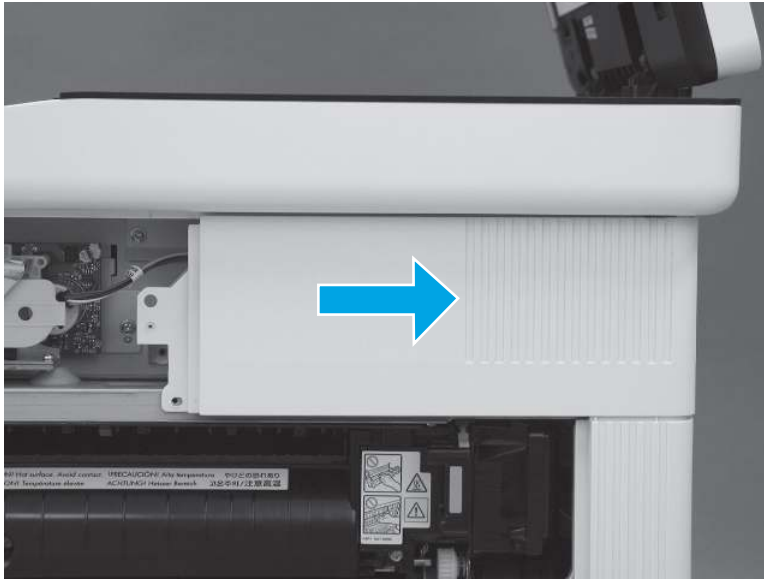
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-610 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

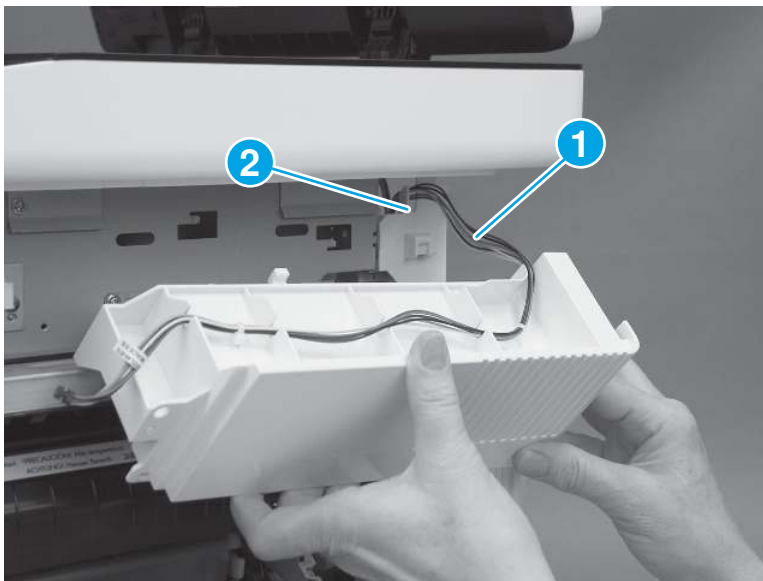
Figure 5-611 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-612 Remove the cover



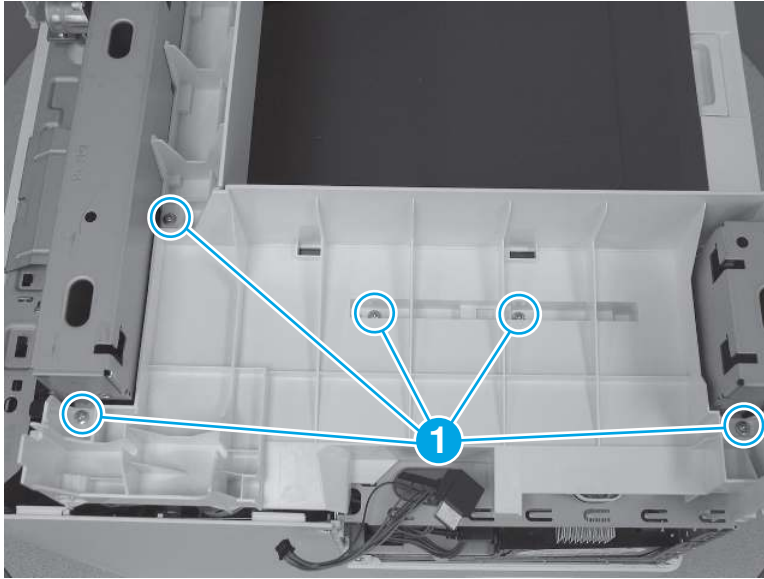
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

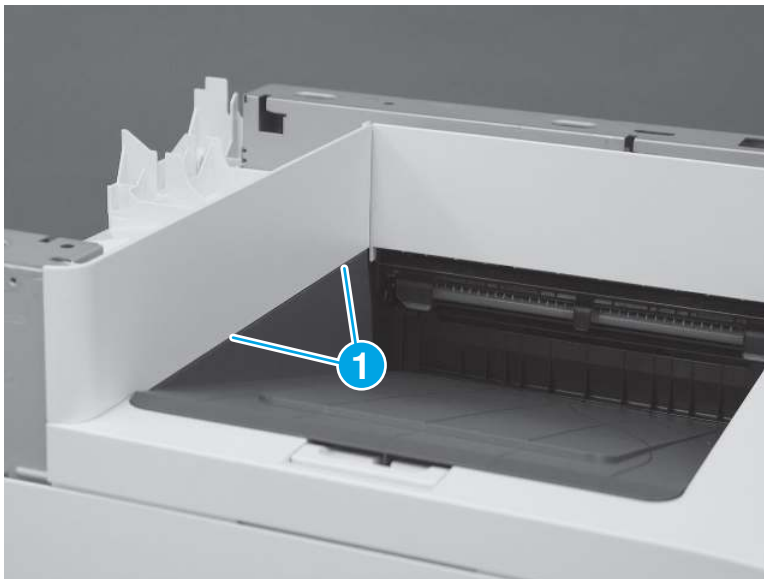
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-613 Remove five screws



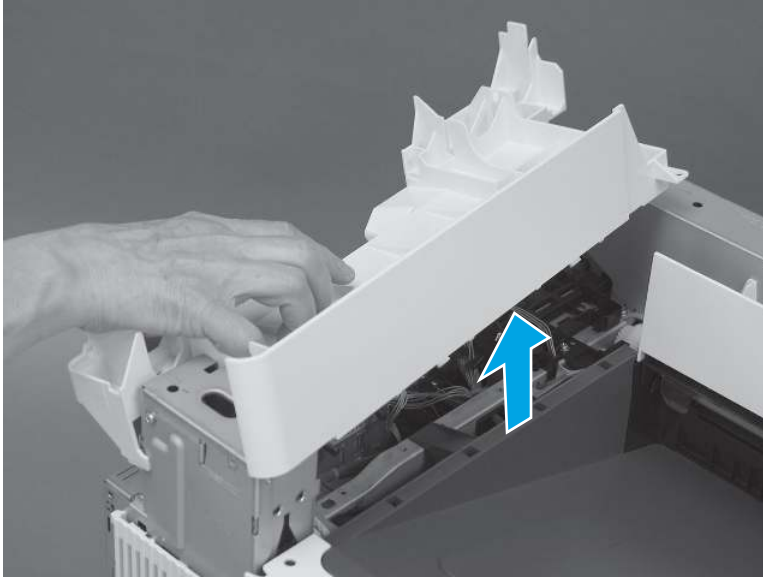
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-614 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-615 Remove the cover



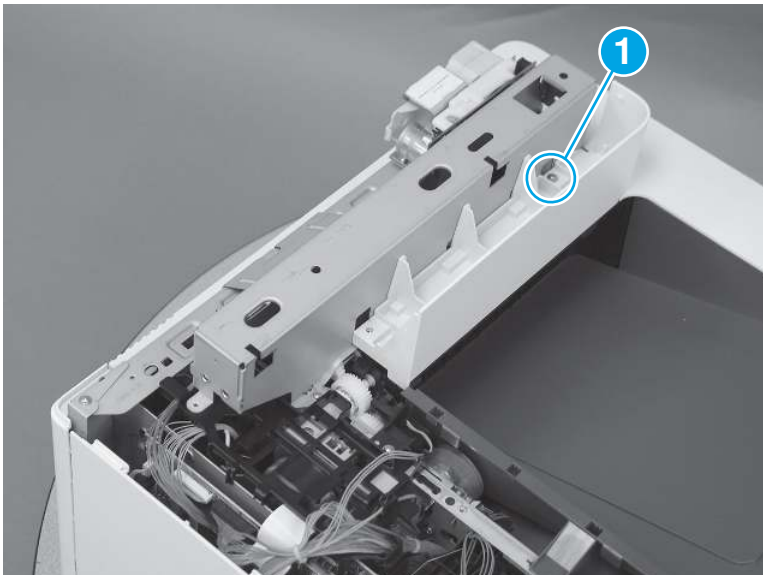
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

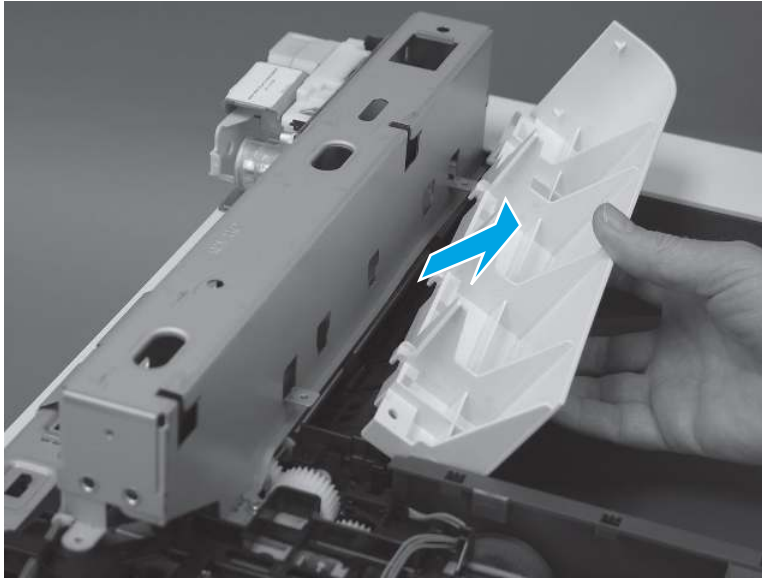
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-616 Remove one screw



2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-617 Remove the cover



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


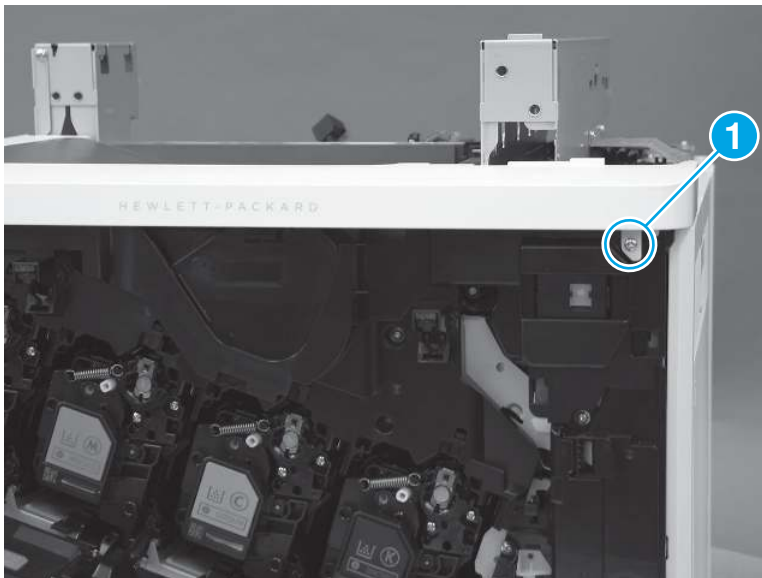
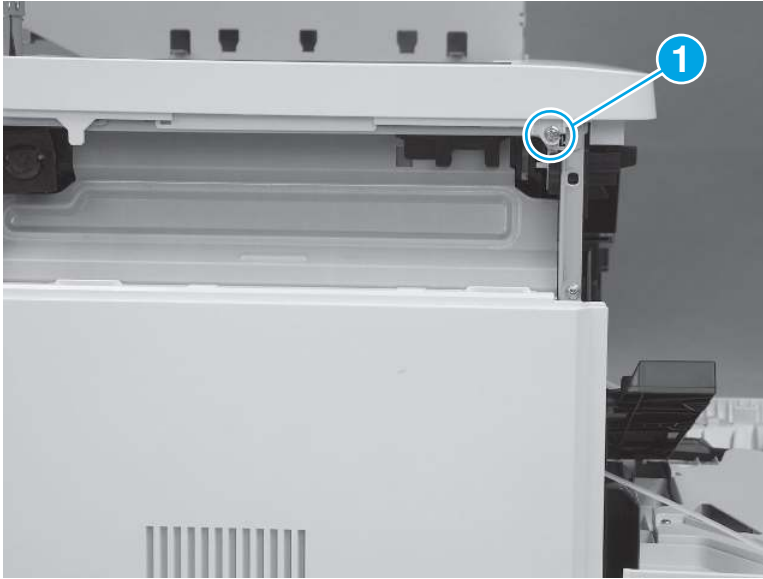
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-618 Remove one screw



2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-619 Remove one screw



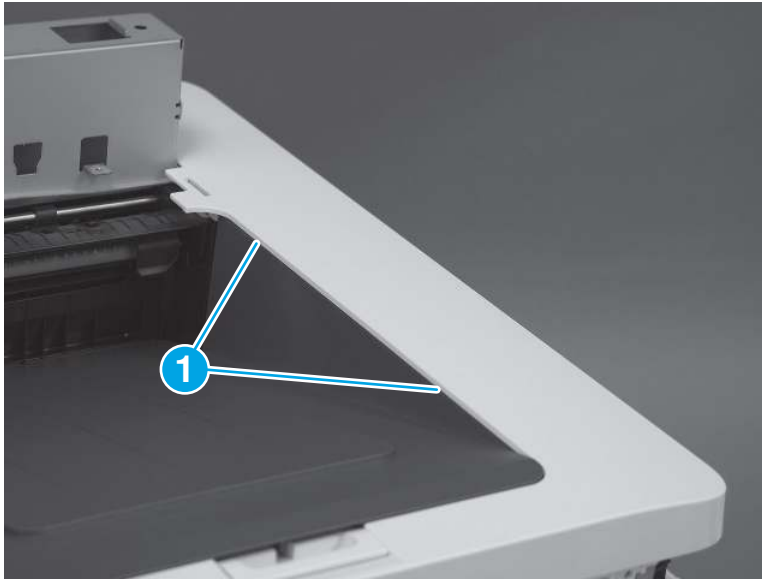
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-620 Release one tab



4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-621 Remove the cover

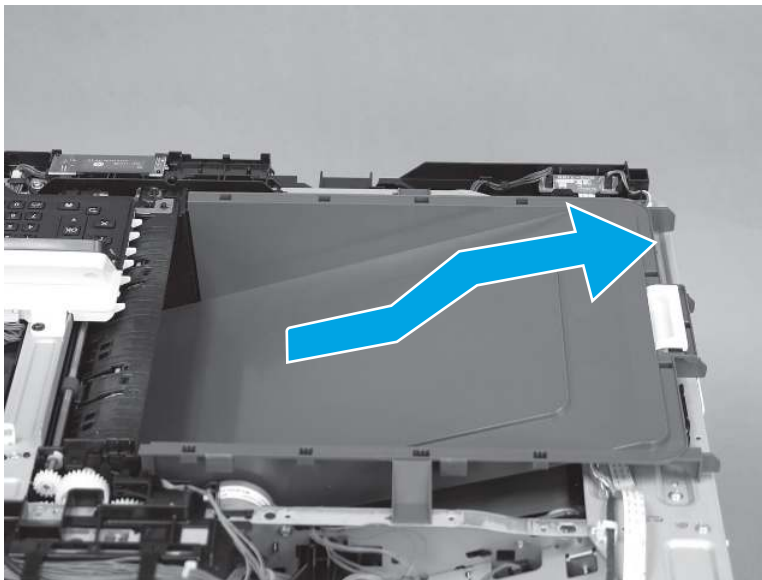


Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

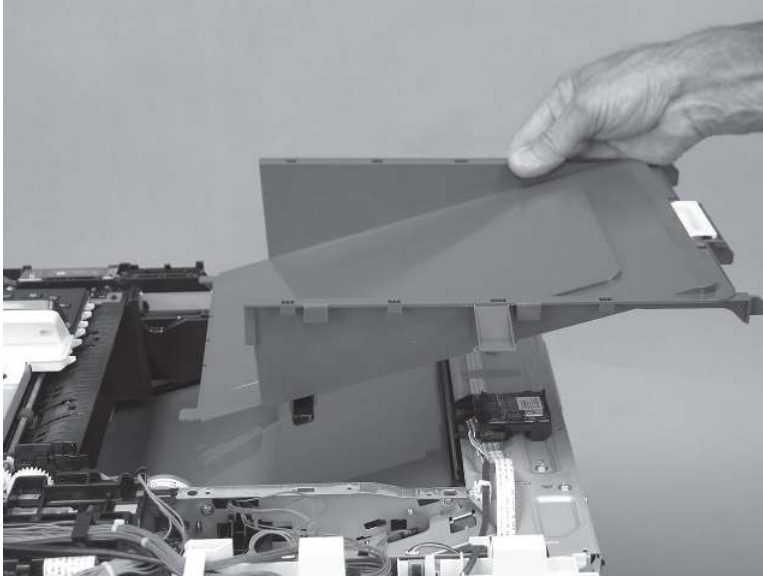
1. Slightly slide and lift the cover to release it.

Figure 5-622 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-623 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Right rear cover (M522/M553/M554/M555/E55040)


Learn about removing and replacing the right rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-48 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-0178-000CN	Right rear cover

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

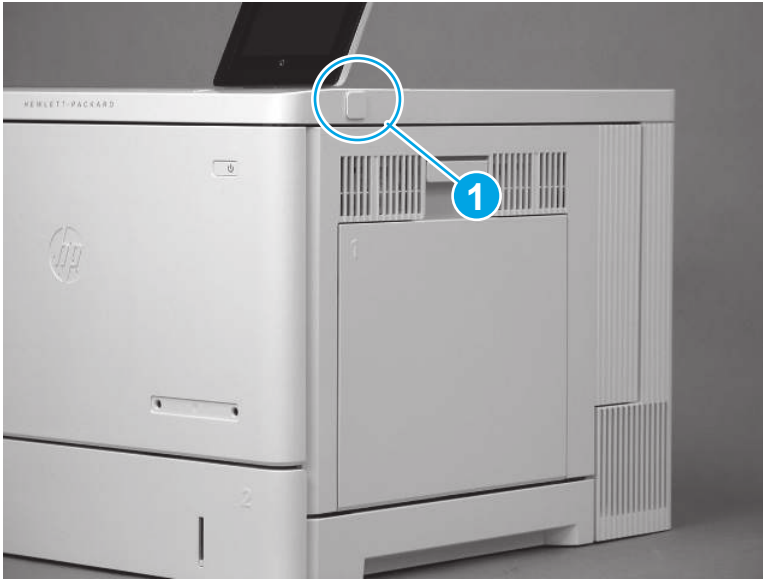
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-624 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-625 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-626 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-627 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-628 Remove the cover



4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.


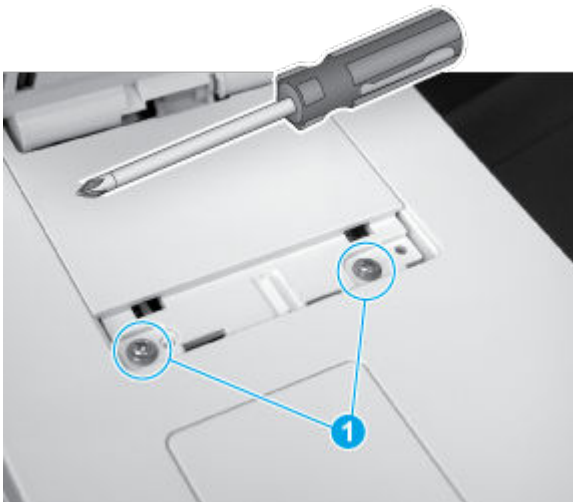
 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-629 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-630 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

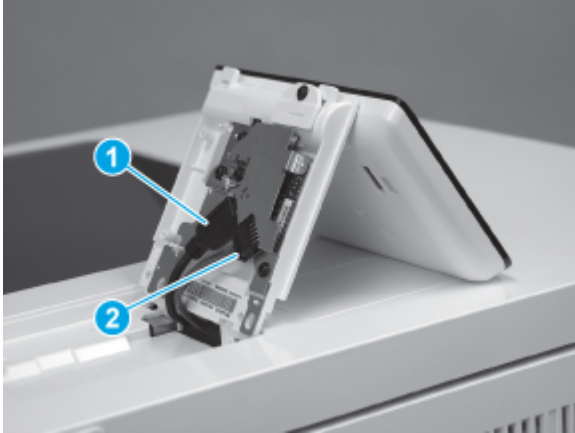
Figure 5-631 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.

📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-632 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-633 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-634 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-635 Remove the TCU

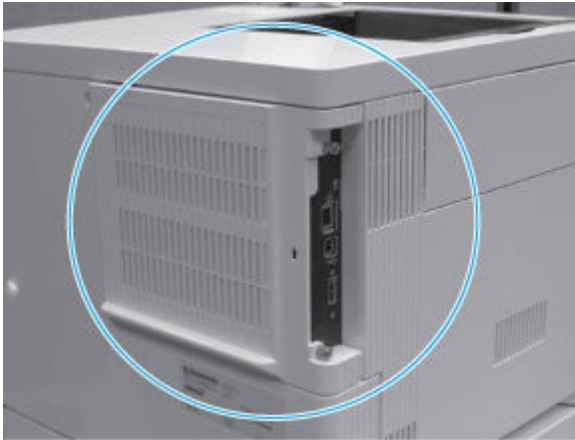


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

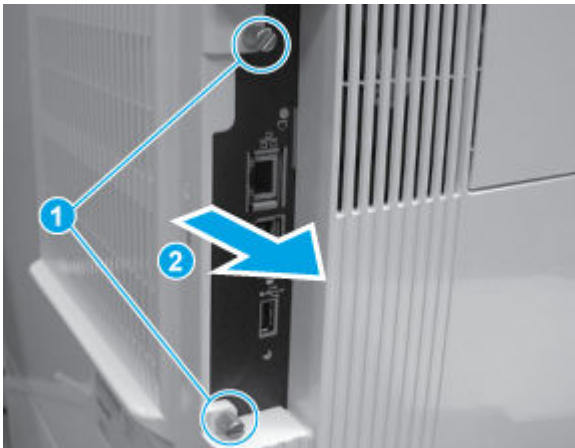
Figure 5-636 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-637 Loosen the thumbscrews



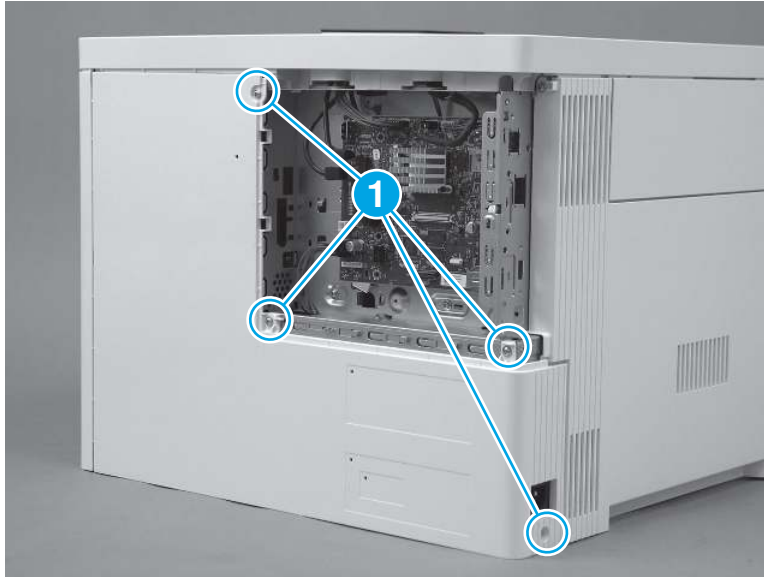
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

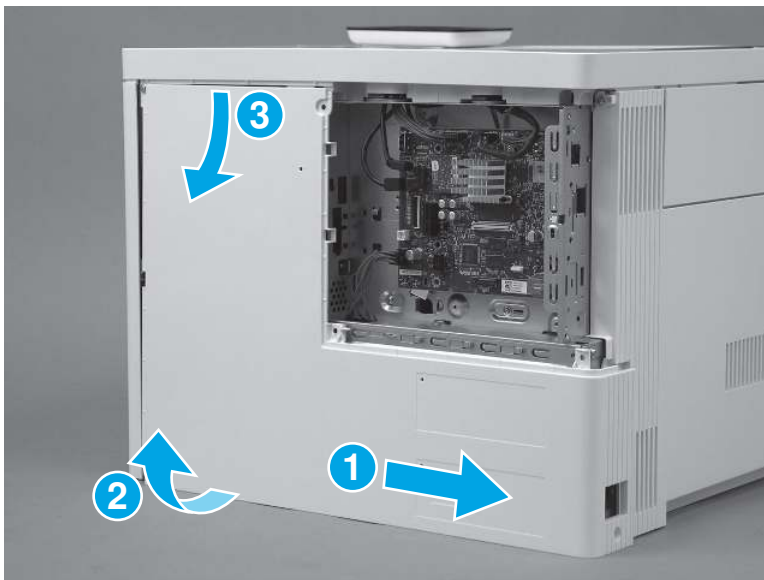
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-638 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-639 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

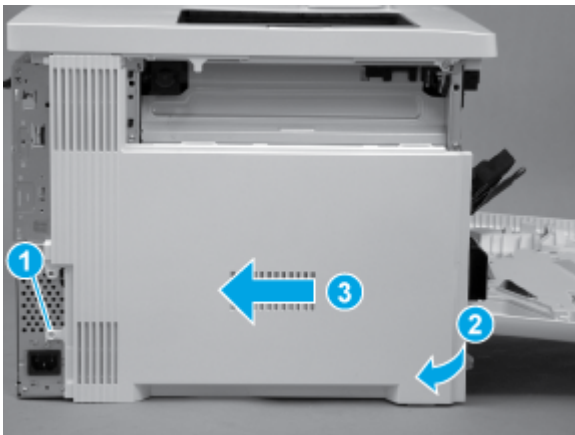
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-640 Remove one screw



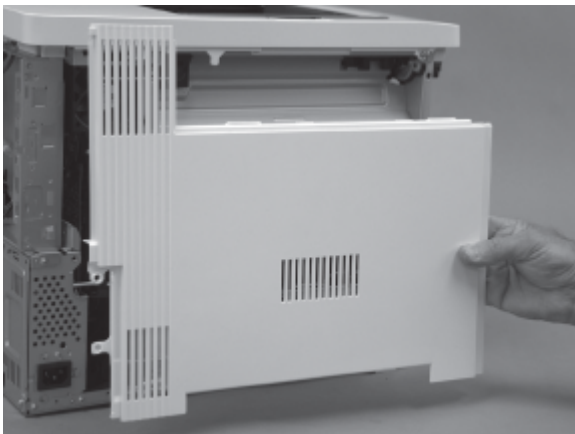
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-641 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-642 Remove the cover



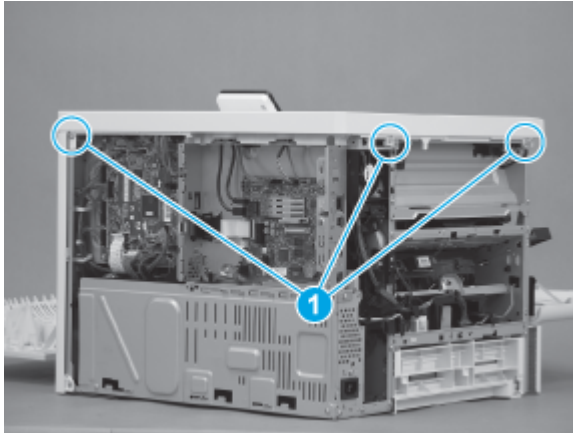
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-643 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-644 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


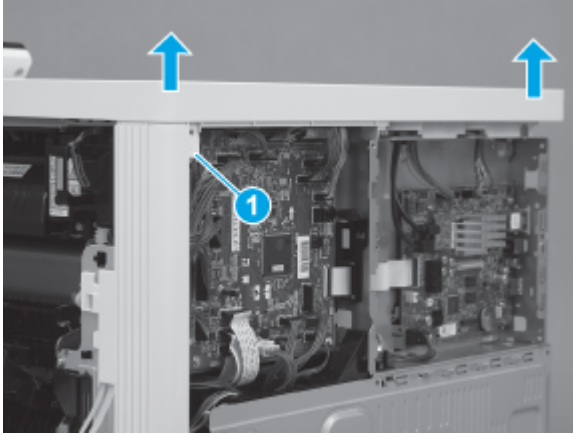
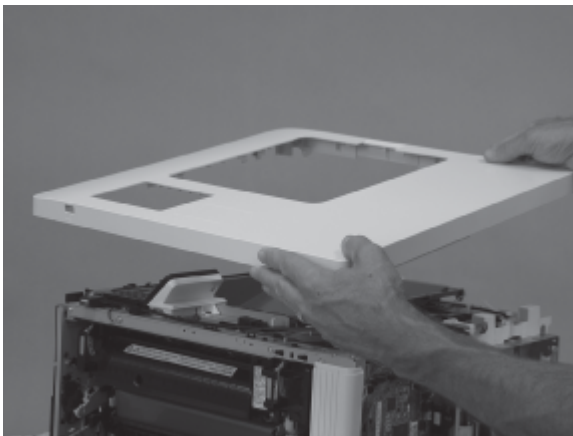
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-645 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-646 Remove the cover



Remove the right rear cover

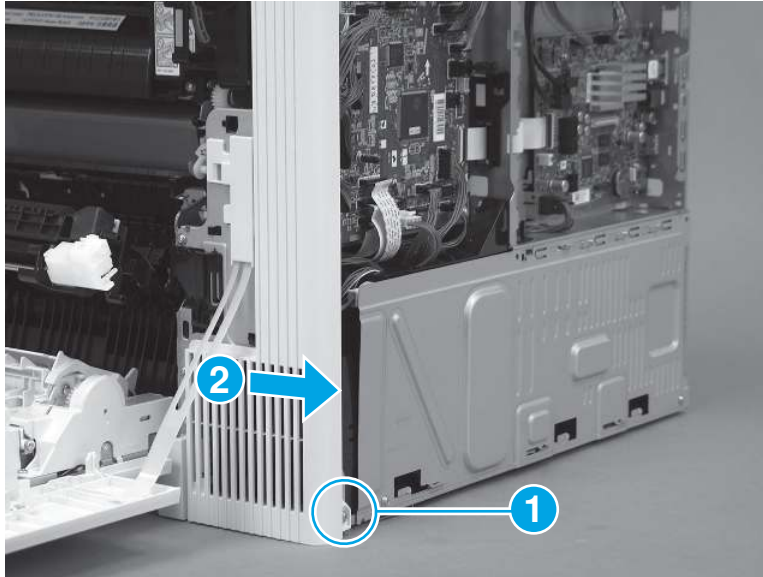
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

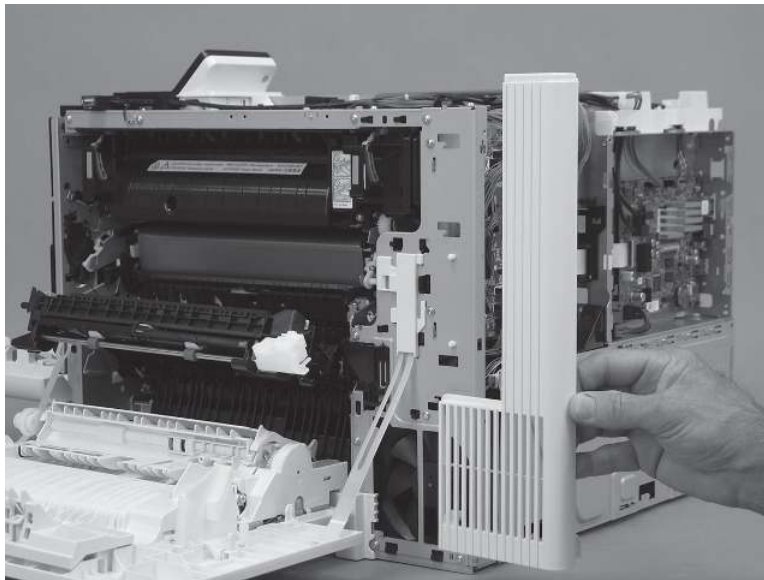
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-647 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-648 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


- Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Right rear cover (M577/M578/E57540)


Learn about removing and replacing the right rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING!  To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

CAUTION:  To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-49 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-0178-000CN	Right rear cover

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

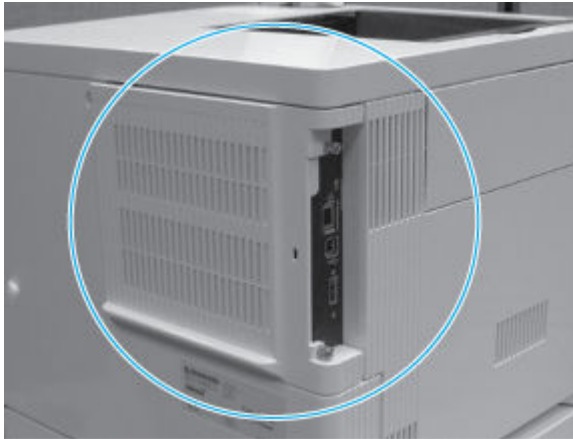
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-649 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


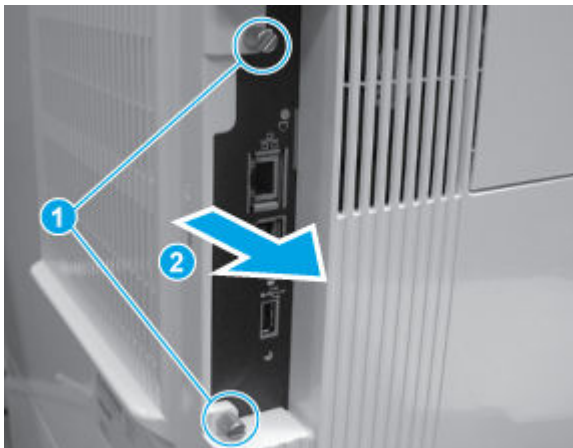
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-650 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

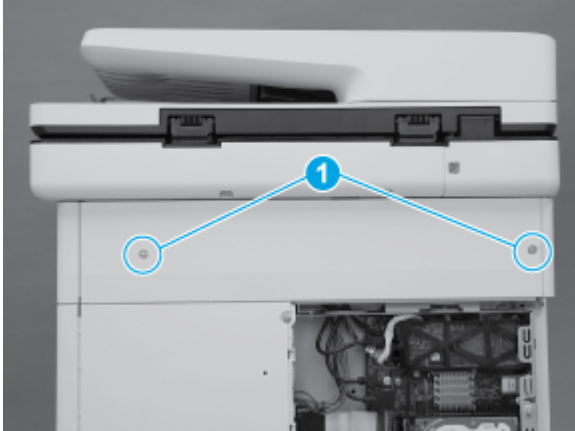
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

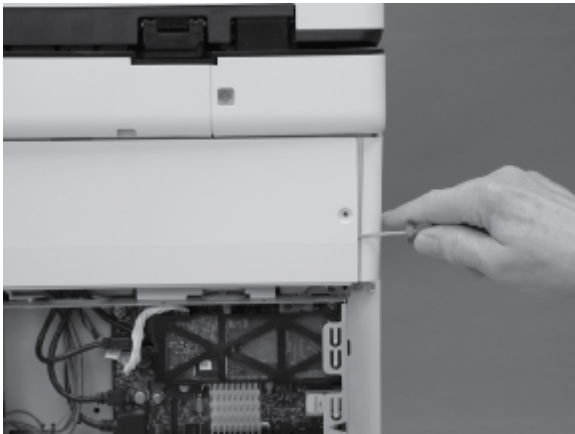
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-651 Remove two screws



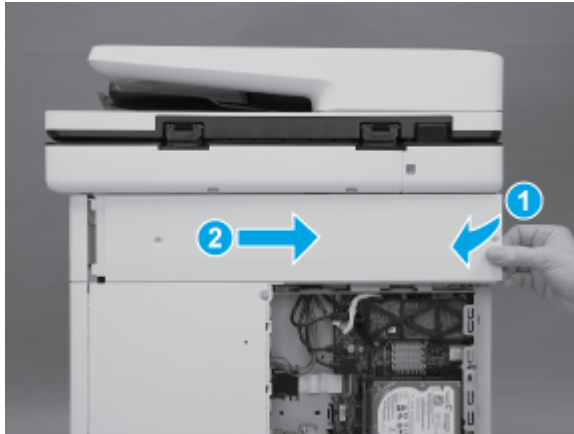
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-652 Release the right edge



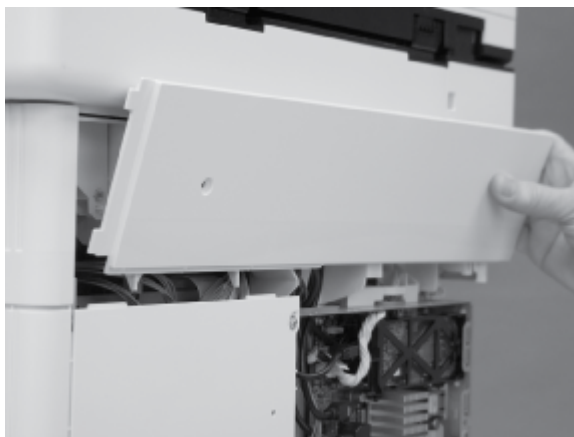
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-653 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-654 Remove the cover



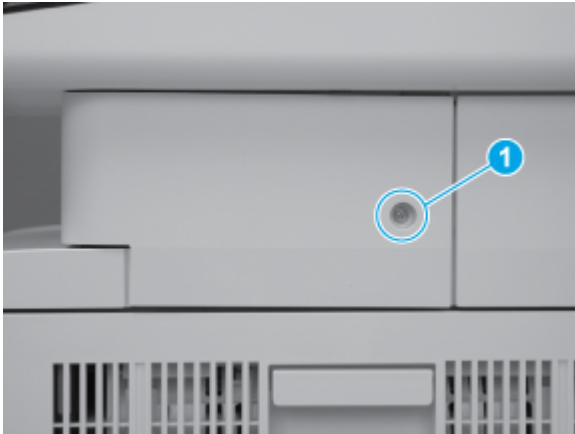
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-655 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-656 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-657 Rotate the cover



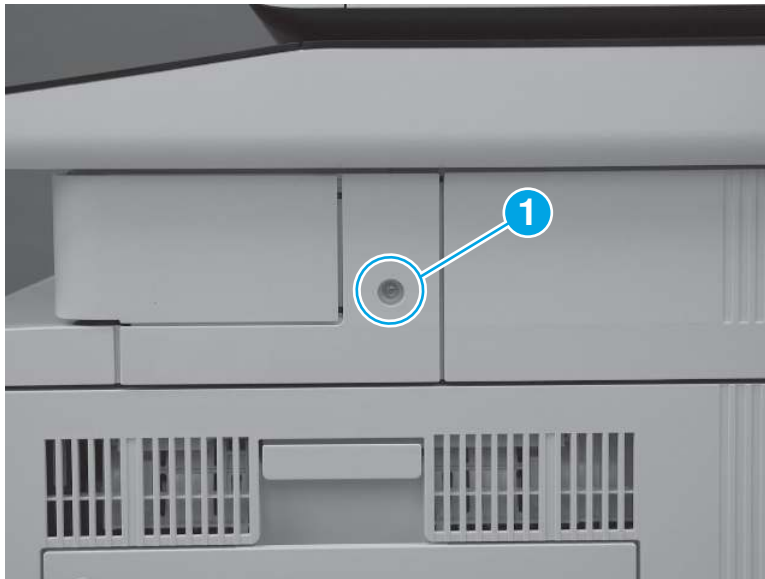
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-658 Remove one screw



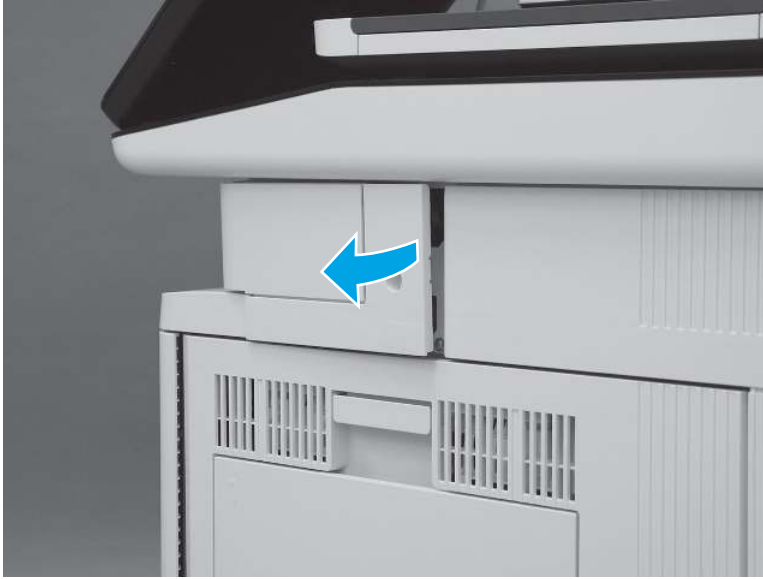
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-659 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-660 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-661 Remove the cover



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

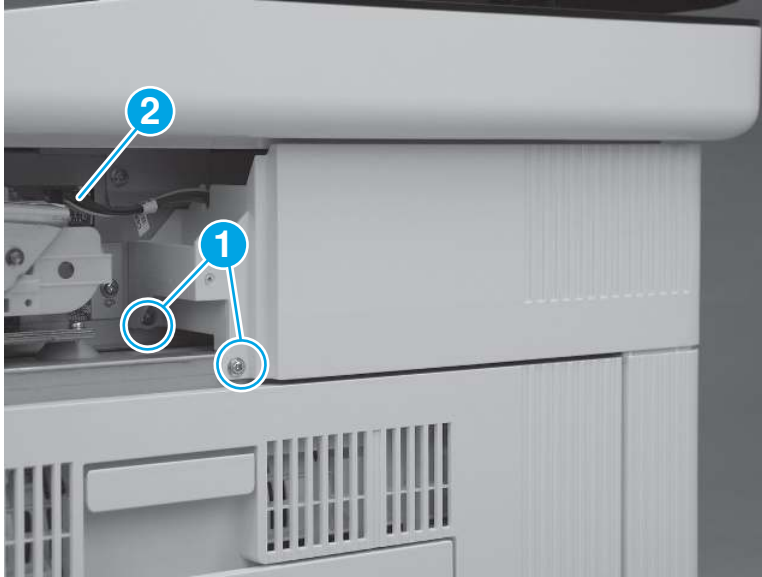
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-662 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


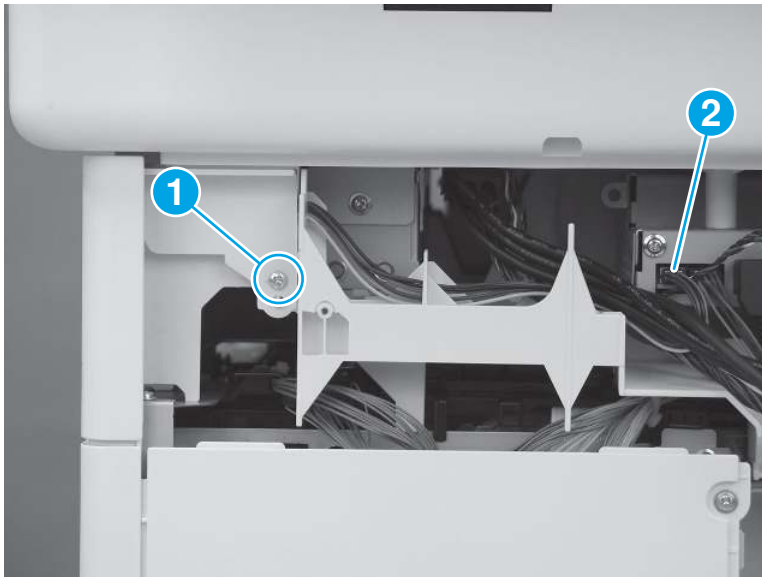
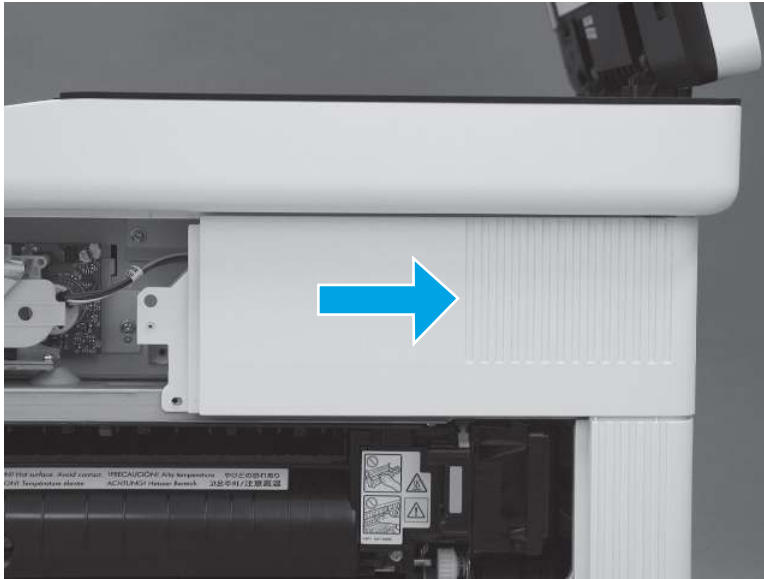
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-663 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

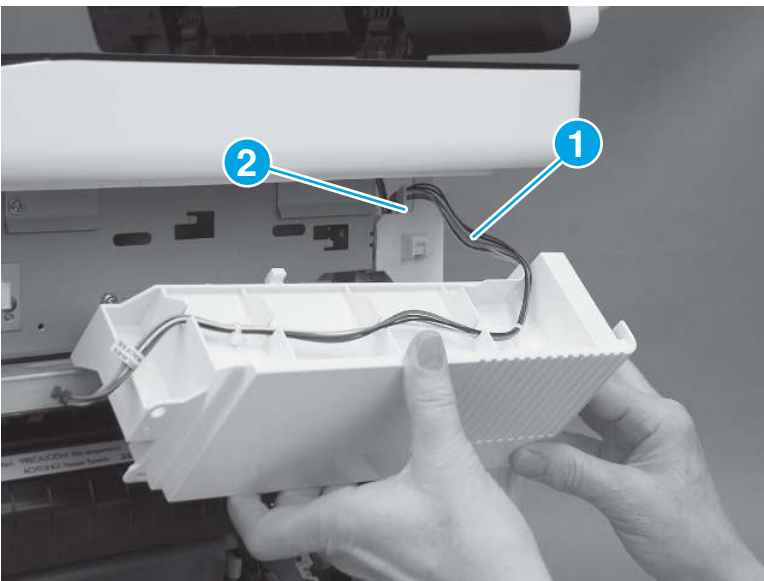
Figure 5-664 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

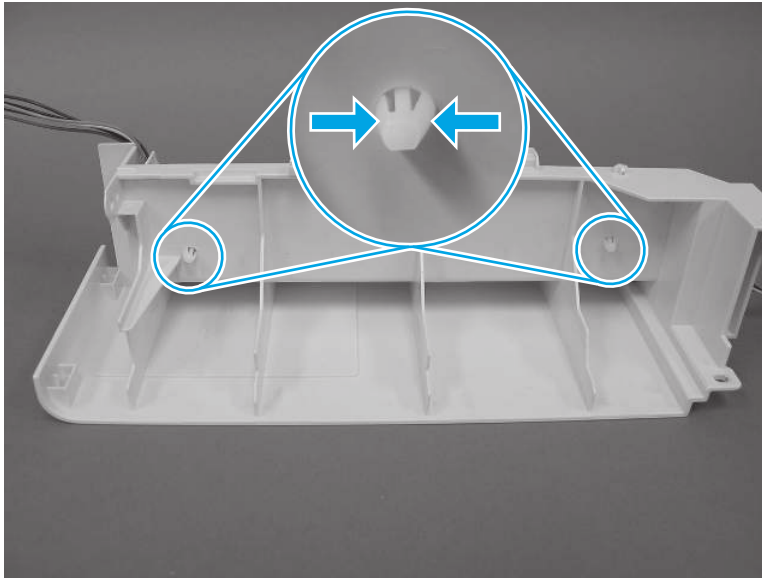
M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-665 Remove the cover



5. **M577/M578z:** Release two retainers on the bottom side of the cover.

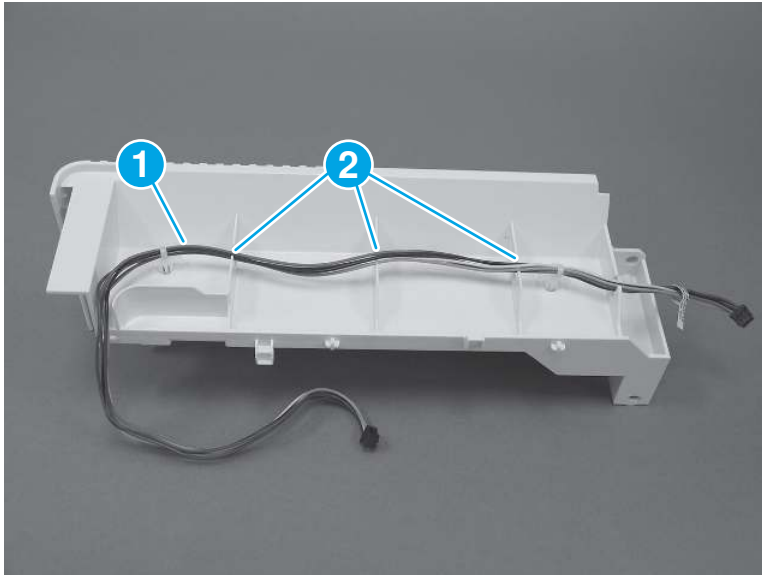
Figure 5-666 Release two retainers



6. **M577/M578z:** On the top of the cover, release the wires (callout 1) from the guides (callout 2) in the right upper cover.


 **NOTE:** Set the wire harness aside for installation on the replacement right upper cover.

Figure 5-667 Remove the wire harness



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-668 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-669 Remove the cover



Remove the right rear cover

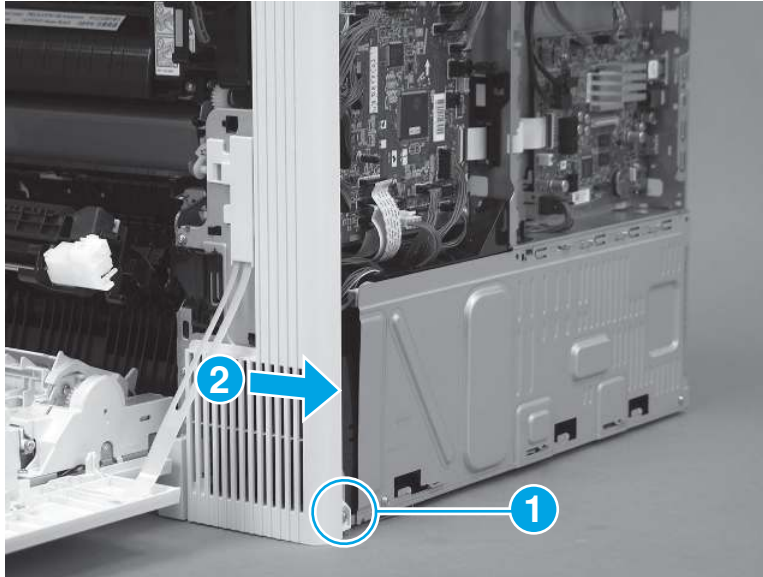
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

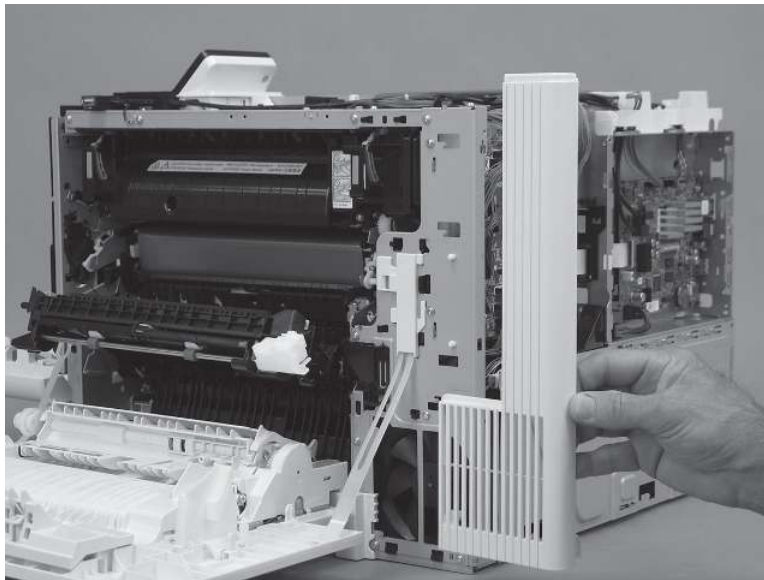
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-670 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-671 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Control panel (M552dn/M553n/dn/M554)


Learn about removing and replacing the control panel.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-50 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-7180-000CN	Control panel (M552dn and M553n/dn)
RM2-6582-000CN	Control panel (M554)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

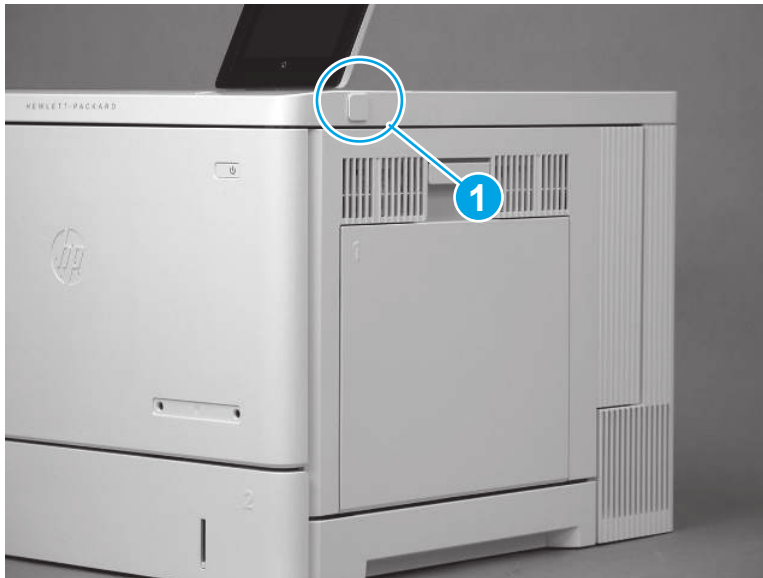
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-672 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-673 Remove the cover



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-674 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-675 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-676 Remove the TCU

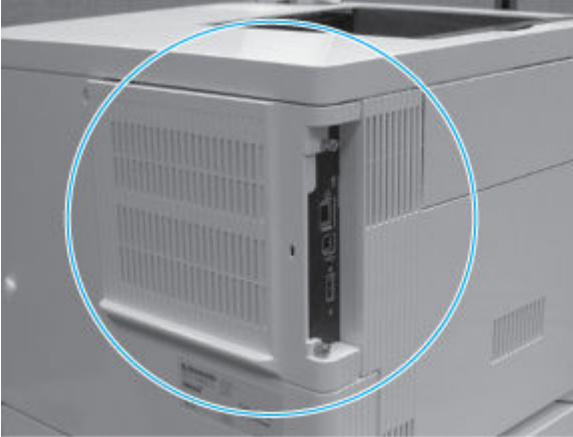


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-677 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


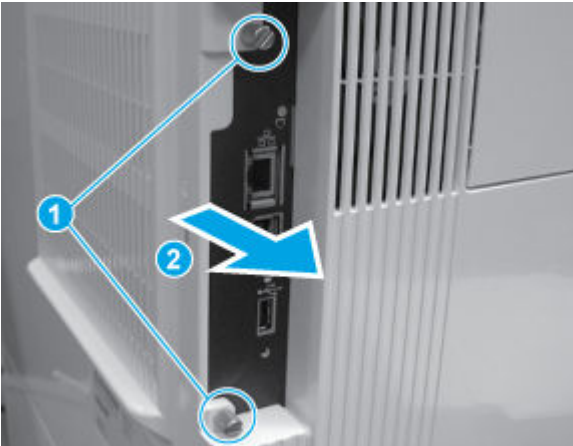

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-678 Loosen the thumbscrews



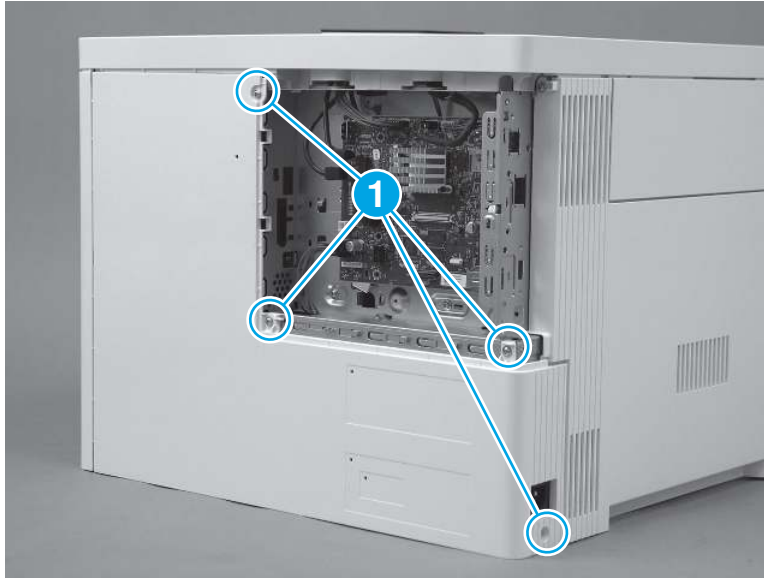
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

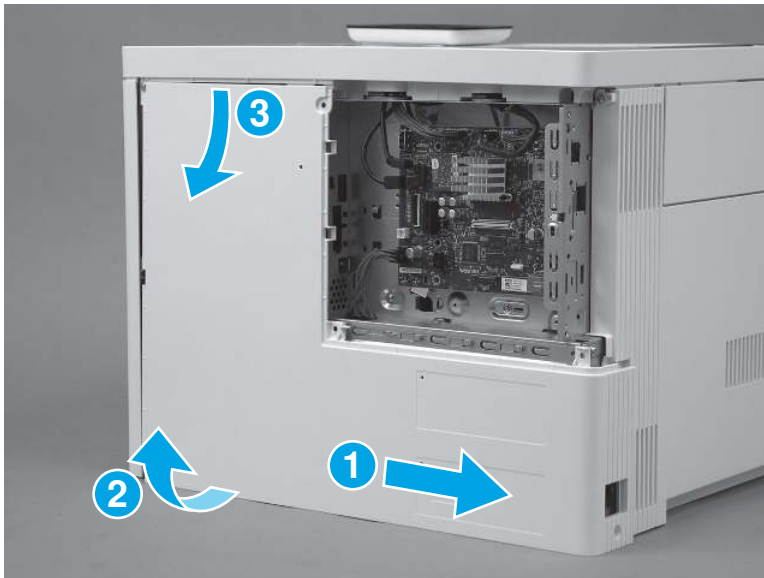
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-679 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-680 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

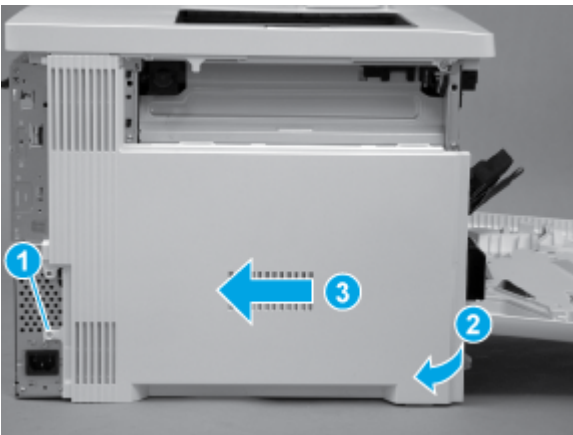
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-681 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-682 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-683 Remove the cover



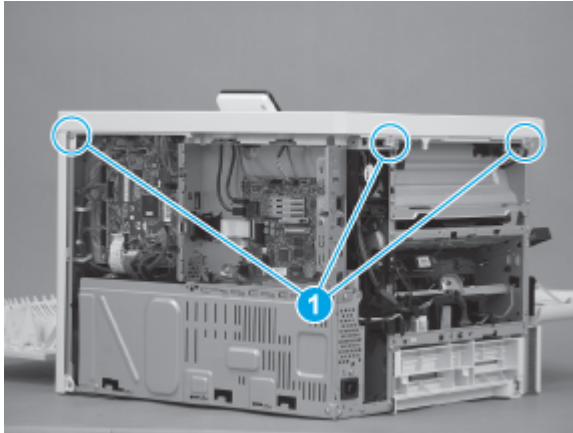
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-684 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-685 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


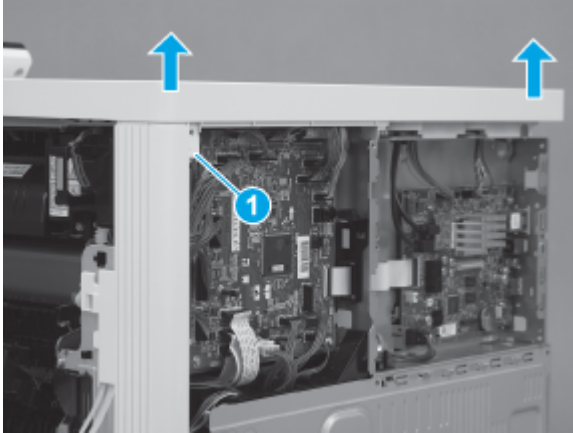
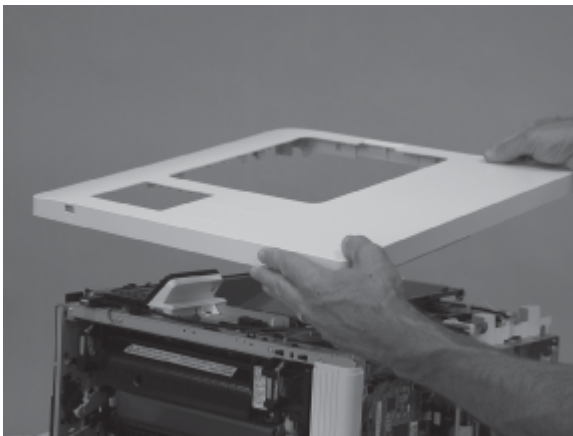
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for additional tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-686 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-687 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel

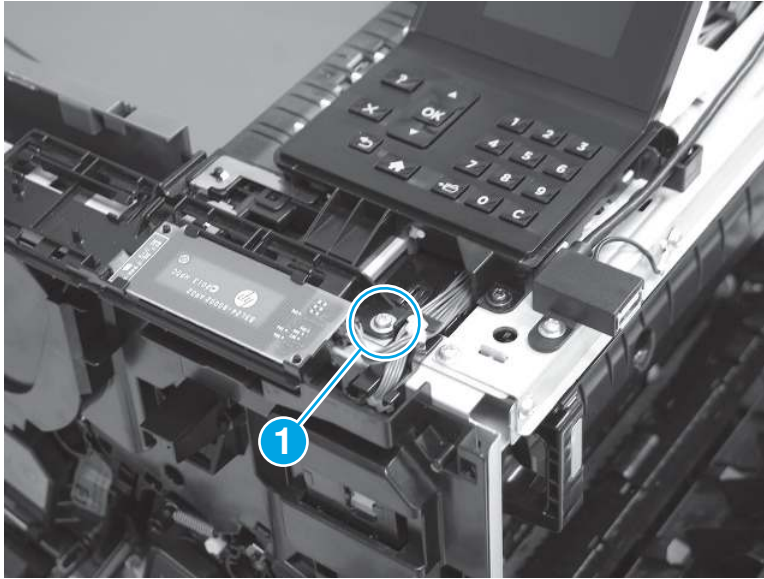
Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M552dn/M553n/dn/M554 printers only.

The figures in this procedure show the M552/M553 printer. The M554 control panel looks slightly different than shown below. However, removing the control panel is similar to the following procedure.

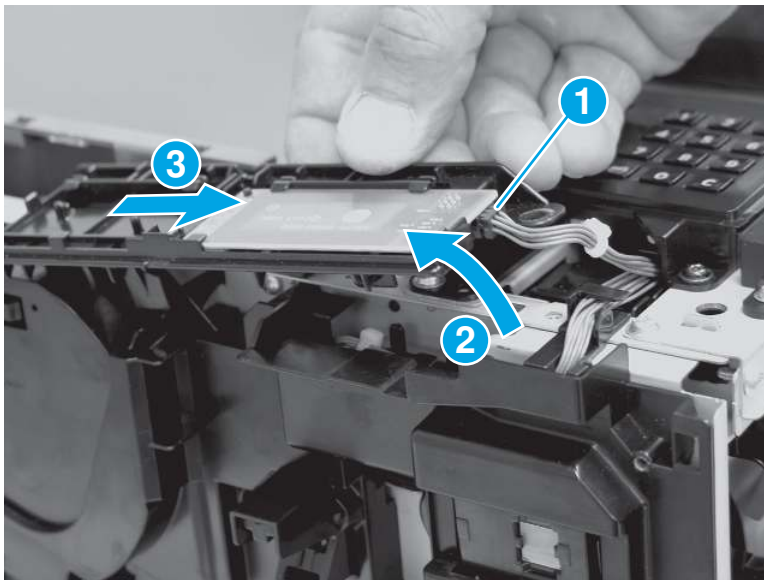
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-688 Remove one screw



2. **M552/M553:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1). Rotate the near field communication (NFC) PCA holder up (callout 2), and then slide it to the right (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 5-689 Remove the PCA holder



3. **M552/M553:** Remove one cable from the guide.

Figure 5-690 Remove one cable



4. **M552/M553:** Remove four screws (callout 1), and then turn the control panel over (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** **M554:** Remove any screws fastening the assembly to the printer chassis, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.


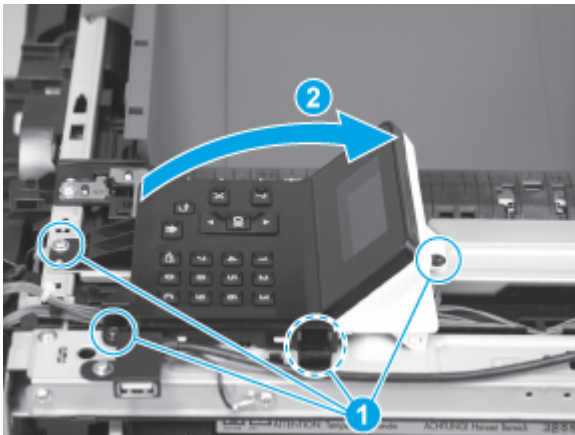
 **CAUTION:** The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

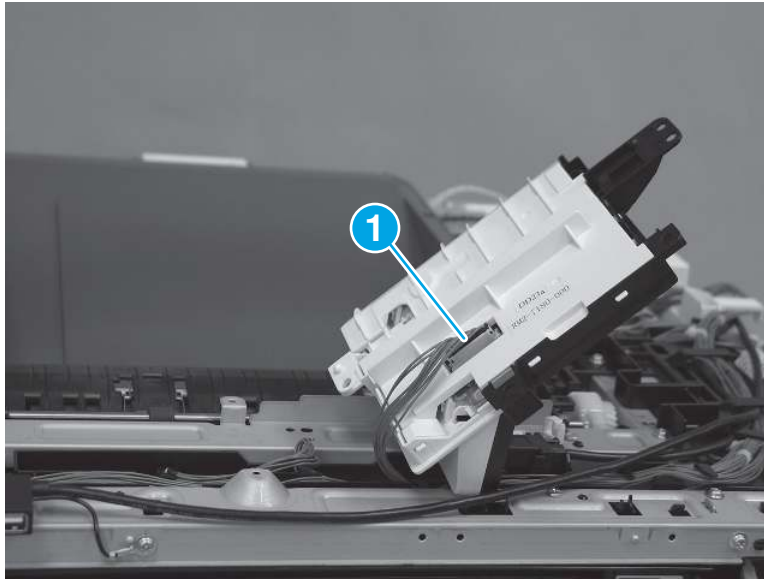
Figure 5-691 Remove four screws



5. **M552/M553:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** **M554:** Disconnect one flat cable, and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-692 Remove the control panel



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Internal parts and assemblies (base printer)

Learn how to remove and replace the base printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Tray 1 pickup and separation rollers

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 rollers.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-51 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L24-67905	Multipurpose/tray 1 pick-up roller and separation assembly

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the Tray 1 pickup roller

Follow these steps to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup roller.

- Remove the Tray 1 pickup roller.

- a. Open Tray 1.

Figure 5-693 Open Tray 1



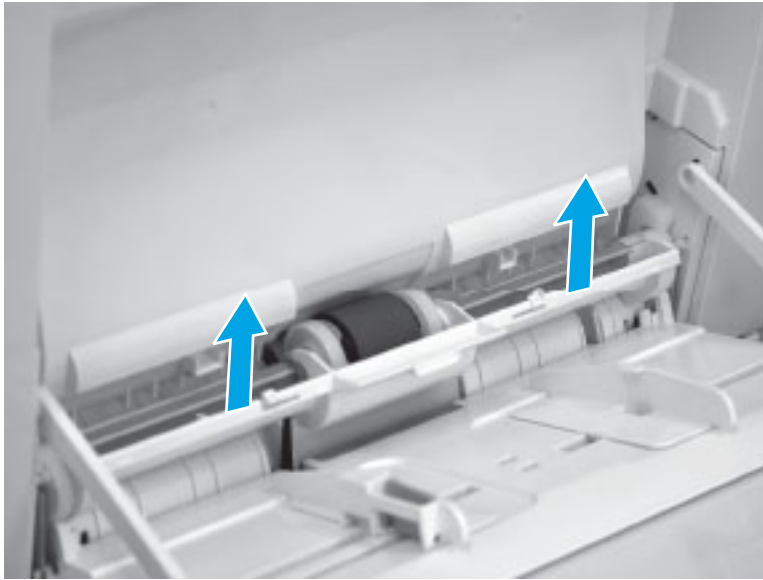
- b. Pull on the center of the cover to open it.

Figure 5-694 Open the roller cover



- c. Pull the cover straight off of the printer to remove it.

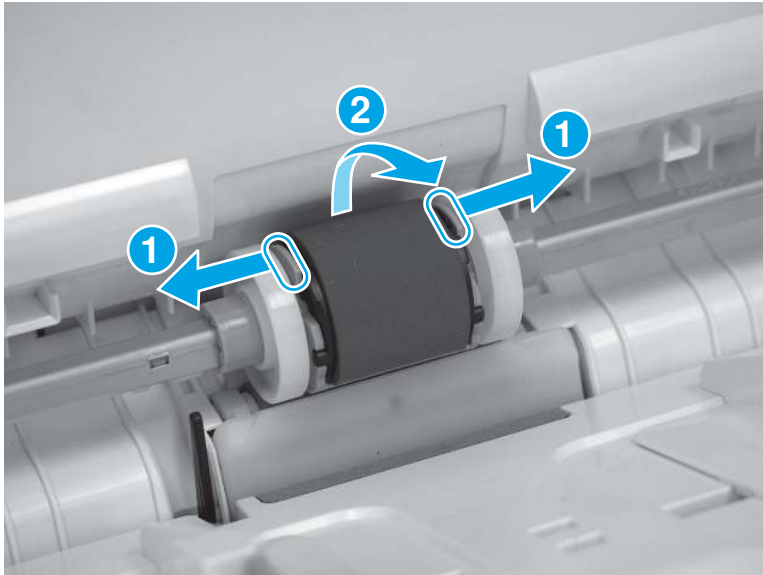
Figure 5-695 Remove the cover



- d. Release two tabs (callout 1) between the roller collar and roller, and then rotate the top of the roller (callout 2) out and away from the printer.

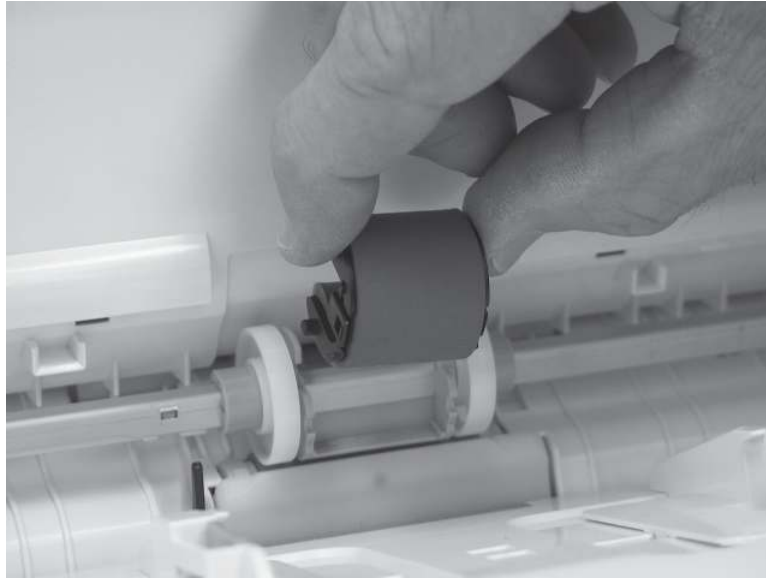
 **TIP:** Pushing down on the top of the roller might make it easier to release the tabs.

Figure 5-696 Release two tabs



- e. Remove the roller.

Figure 5-697 Remove the roller



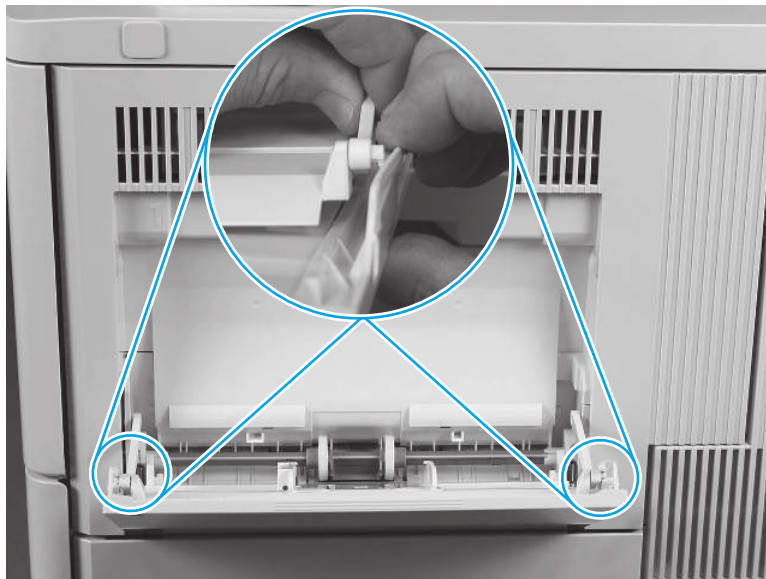
Remove the Tray 1 separation roller

Follow these steps to remove and replace the Tray 1 separation roller.

- Remove the Tray 1 separation roller.
 - a. Carefully flex the right- and left-side tray retainers to release them.

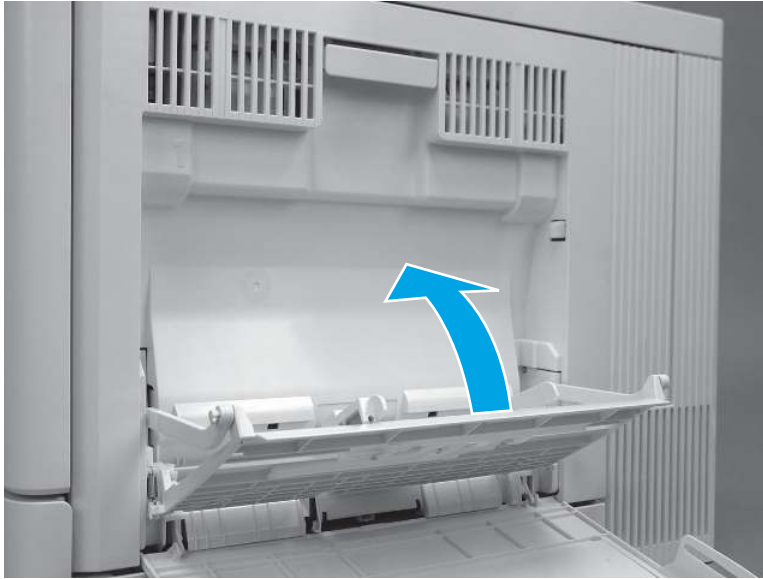
 **TIP:** Raise the tray to the halfway closed position to make it is easier to release the retainers.

Figure 5-698 Release the tray retainers



- b. Carefully raise Tray 1 up into the printer.

Figure 5-699 Raise Tray 1 up



- c. Firmly grasp the corners of the separation roller cover, and then rotate it down and away from the printer to remove it.

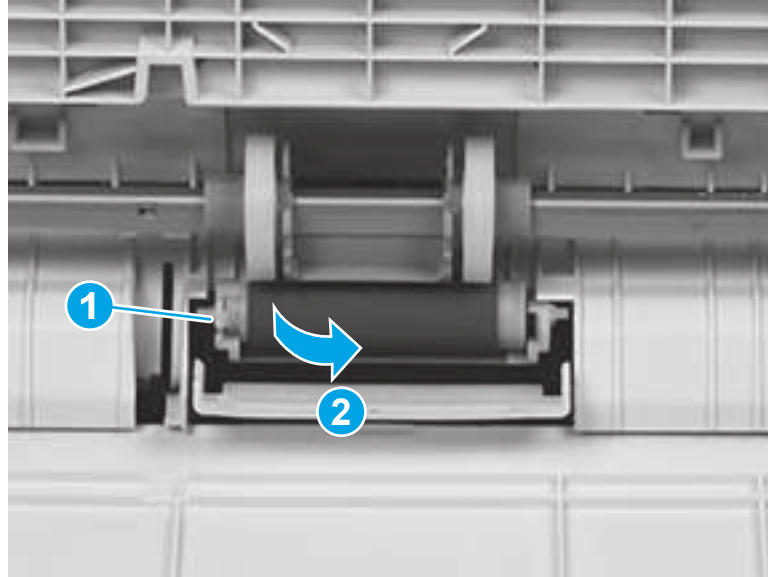
Figure 5-700 Open the roller cover



- d. Release one tab (callout 1), and then rotate the end of the roller out and away from the holder (callout 2).

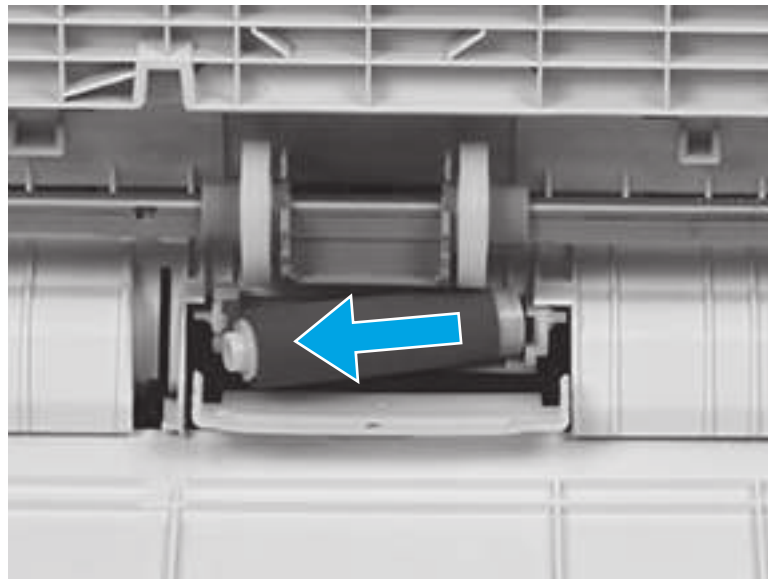
 **TIP:** It might be necessary to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to complete this step.

Figure 5-701 Release one tab



- e. Slide the roller out of the holder to remove it.

Figure 5-702 Remove the roller



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the secondary transfer roller.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-52 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0090-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (M553n)
RM2-0022-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (M552/M553dn/x/M554/M555?M577/M578/E55040/E57540)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-703 Open the right door



2. Release the blue arm, and then let the secondary transfer assembly rotate down to the half-way open position.


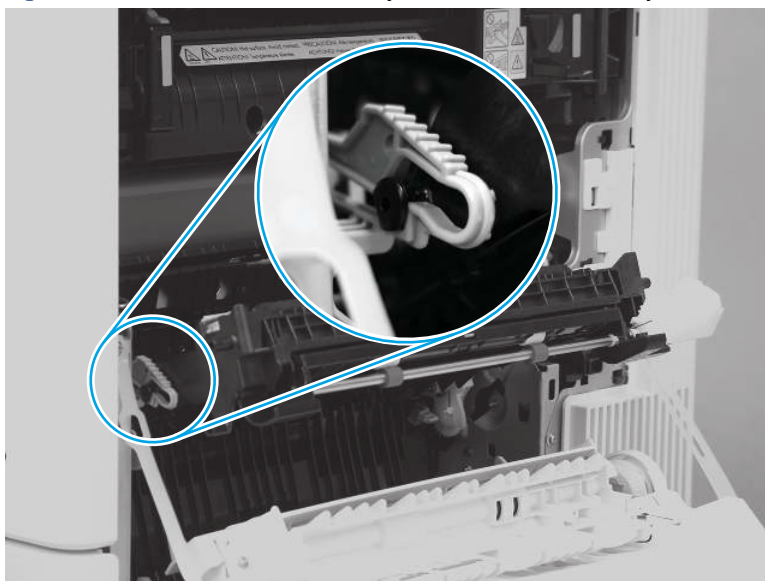
 **NOTE:** The assembly should stop at the halfway down point—the pin will stop at the notch in the slot in the blue arm.

Figure 5-704 Release the secondary transfer roller assembly



- Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm—as shown in the figure—to start to disengage it from the pin.

Figure 5-705 Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm



- Continue to flex the blue arm until it disengages from the pin.

Figure 5-706 Disengage the blue arm and pin



- Slide the assembly toward the front of the printer to release it (callout 1), and then rotate it down and away from the printer to remove it (callout 2).


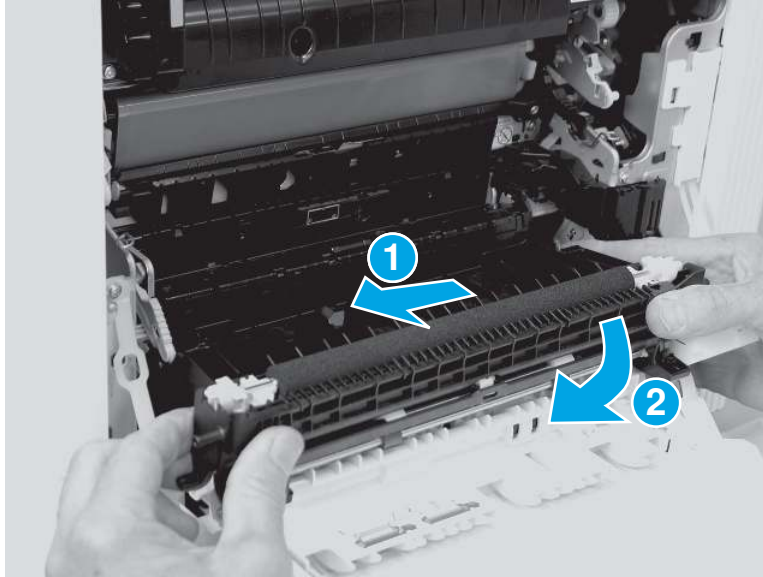
 **Reinstallation tip:** Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 5-707 Remove the secondary transfer roller assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Near field communication (NFC) PCA (M553x/E55040)

Learn about removing and replacing the secondary near field communication (NFC) PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-53 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L24-60002	NFC PCA

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

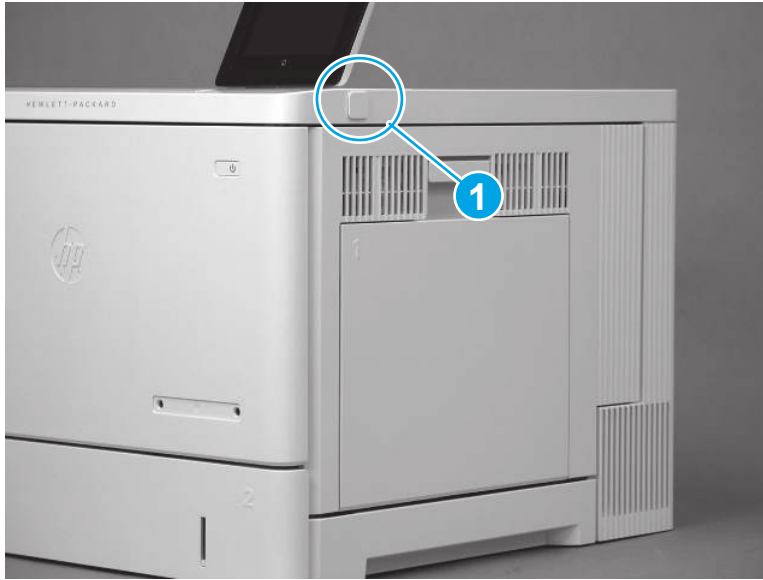
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-708 Locate the USB cover




2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-709 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/E55040 printers only.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-710 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-711 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-712 Remove the cover

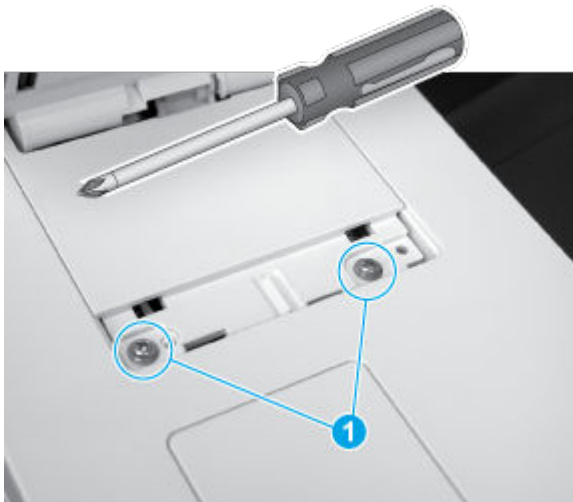


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-713 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

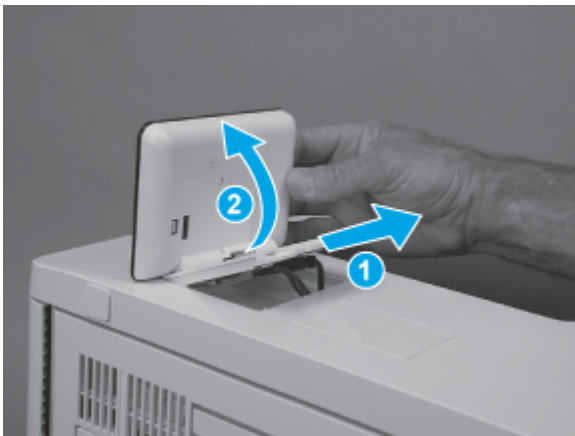
Figure 5-714 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

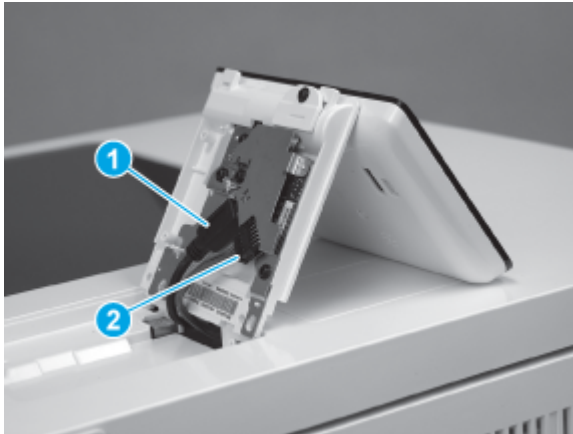
⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-715 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-716 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-717 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-718 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-719 Remove the TCU

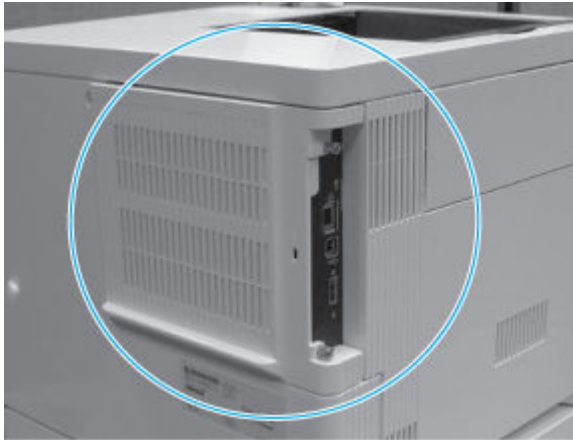


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

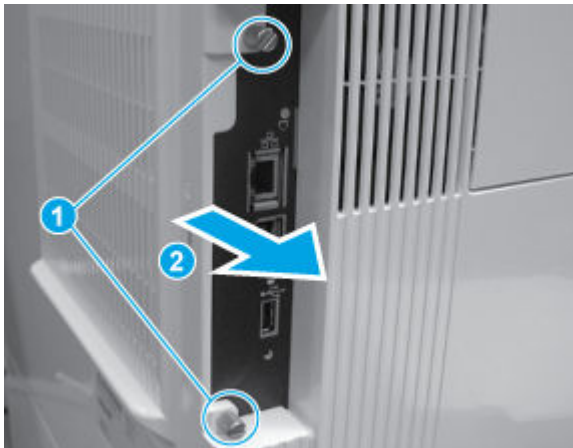
Figure 5-720 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-721 Loosen the thumbscrews



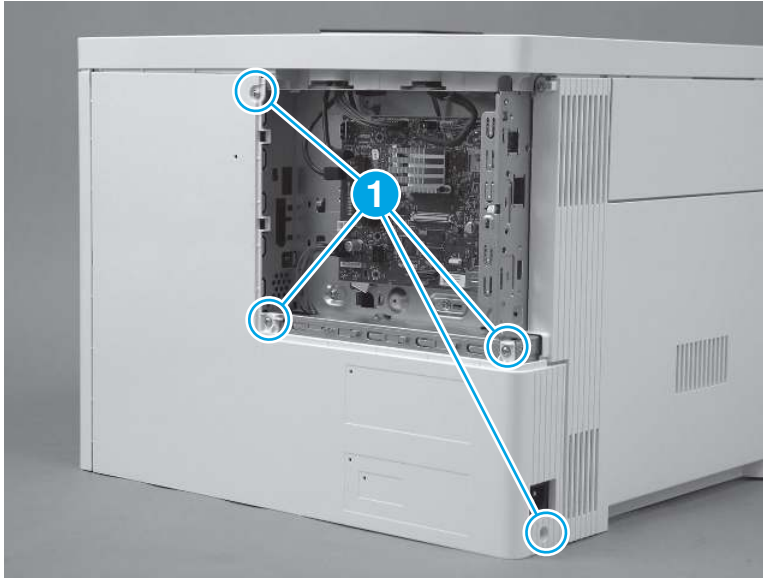
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

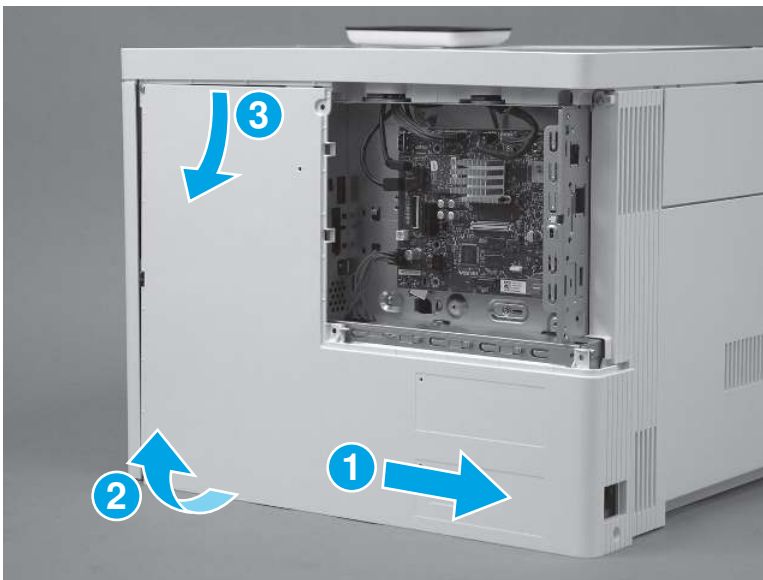
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-722 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-723 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

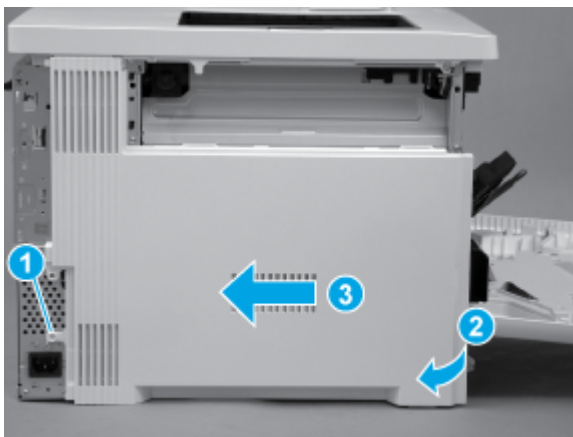
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-724 Remove one screw



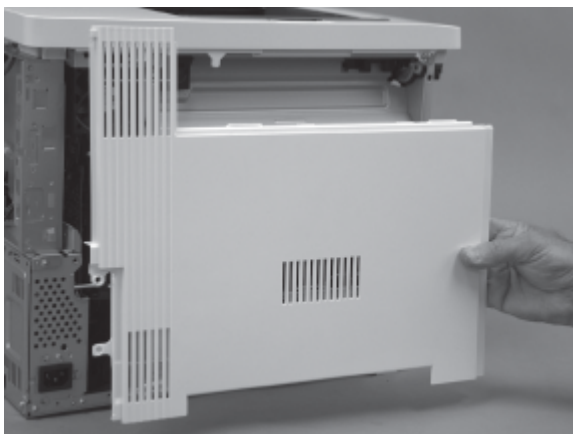
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-725 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-726 Remove the cover



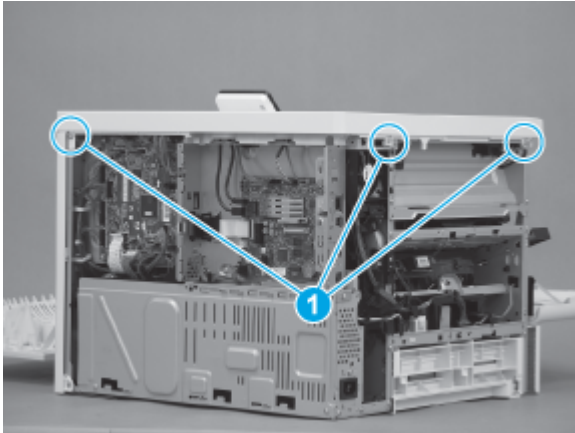
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-727 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.


 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-728 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.


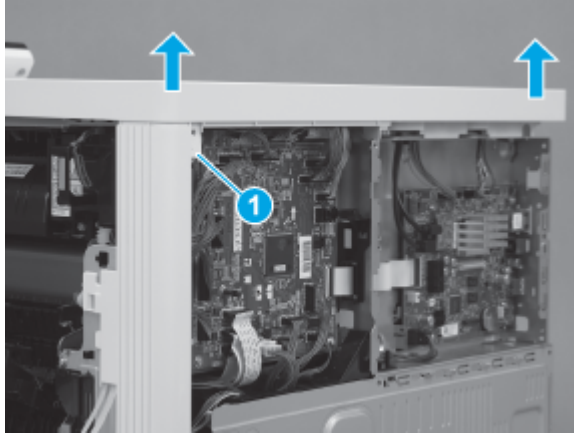
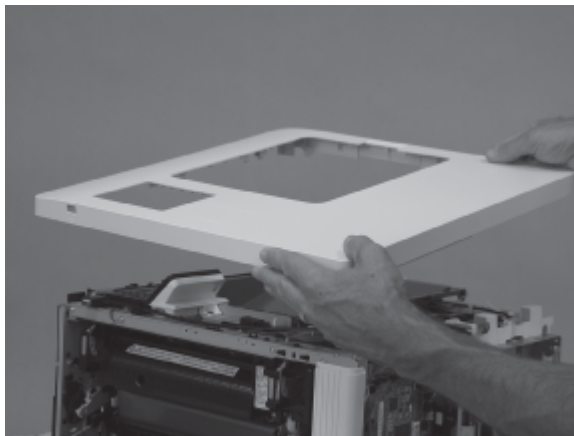
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-729 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-730 Remove the cover

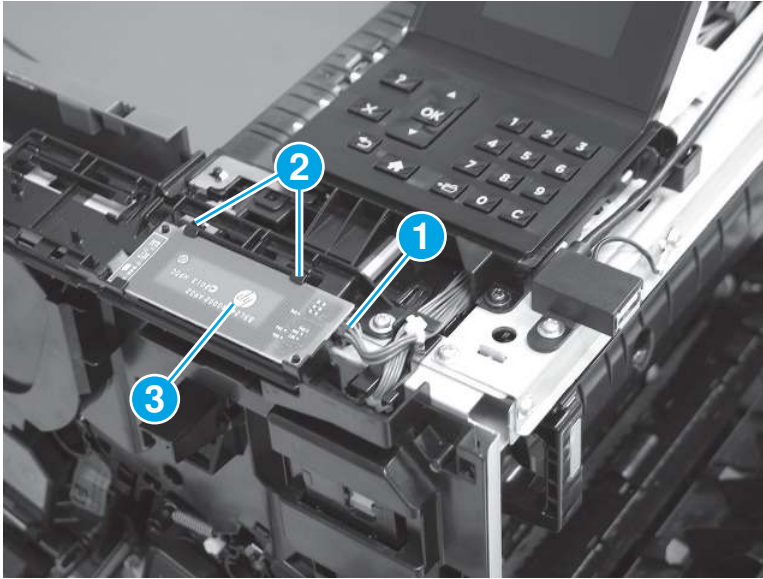


Remove the NFC PCA

Follow these steps to remove the NFC PCA.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the NFC PCA (callout 3).

Figure 5-731 Remove the NFC PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Near field communication (NFC) PCA (M577z)

Learn about removing and replacing the secondary near field communication (NFC) PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-54 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L24-60001	NFC PCA

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the NFC

Follow these steps to remove the NFC.

1. Open the document feeder (callout 1).

📝 NOTE: If the control panel is not fully tilted forward, tilt it forward now until it stops (callout 2).

Figure 5-732 Open the document feeder



2. Beginning at the right side of the control-panel cover, carefully release five tabs along the top edge of the cover.


 **NOTE:** The thin, black plastic cover will separate from the white plastic control-panel base.

Figure 5-733 Release five tabs



3. Continue to lift the top edge of the cover away from the printer, and then remove the cover.

Figure 5-734 Remove the cover



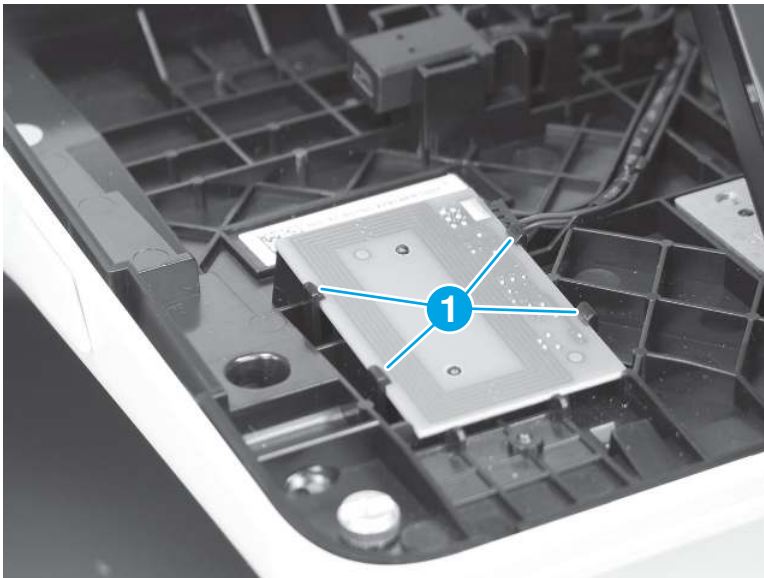
4. Locate the NFC.

Figure 5-735 Locate the NFC



5. Release four tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-736 Release four tabs



- Lift the NFC PCA up, and then disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-737 Disconnect one connector



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

- Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

- Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Wireless PCA (M553x/M555/M577z/M578/E55040dw)

Learn about removing and replacing the wireless PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-55 Part information

Part number	Part description
1150-7968	Wireless PCA (M553/M577)
0960-3659	Wireless PCA/BLE (M555/M578)

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

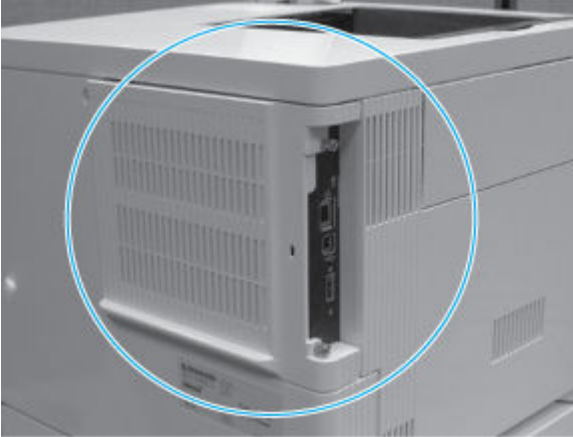
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

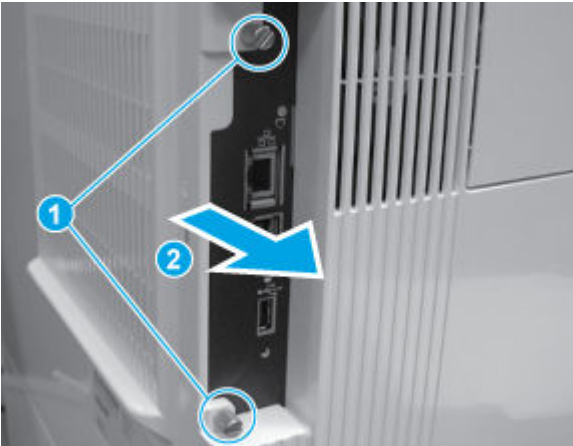
Figure 5-738 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-739 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-740 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-741 Open the TCU

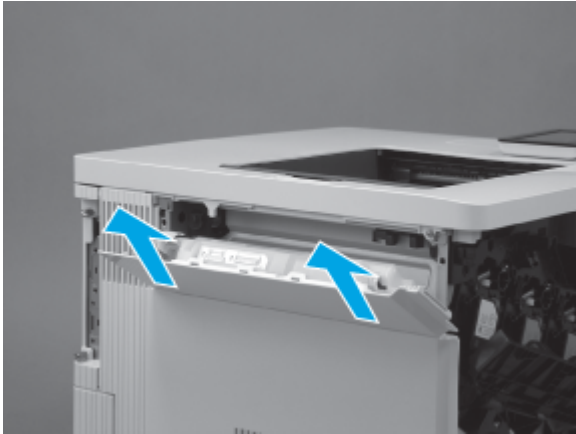


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-742 Remove the TCU



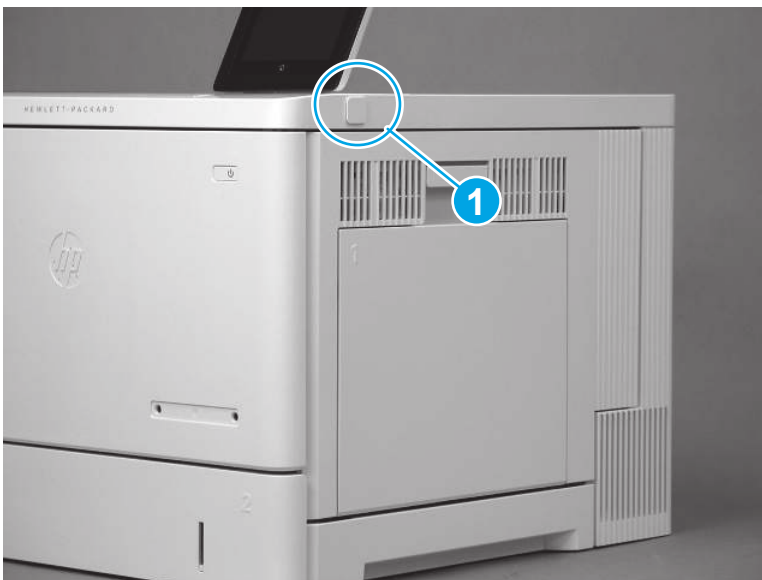
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-743 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-744 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-745 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-746 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-747 Remove the cover

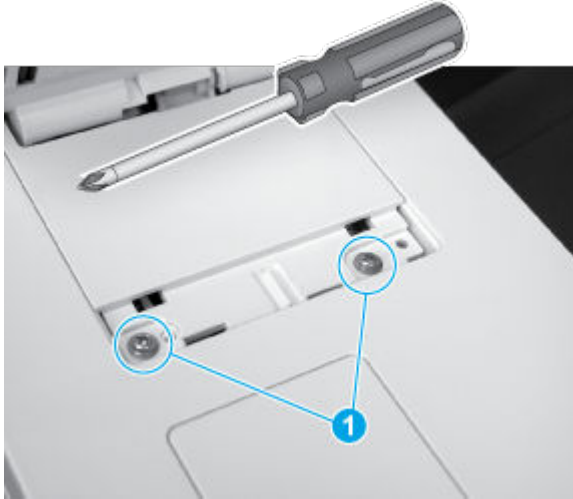


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-748 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-749 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-750 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


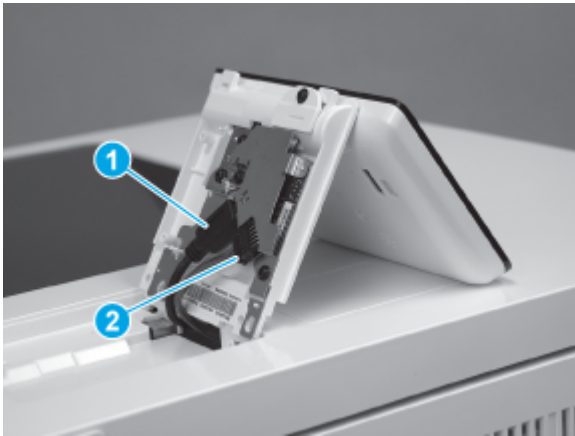
 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-751 Disconnect two connectors



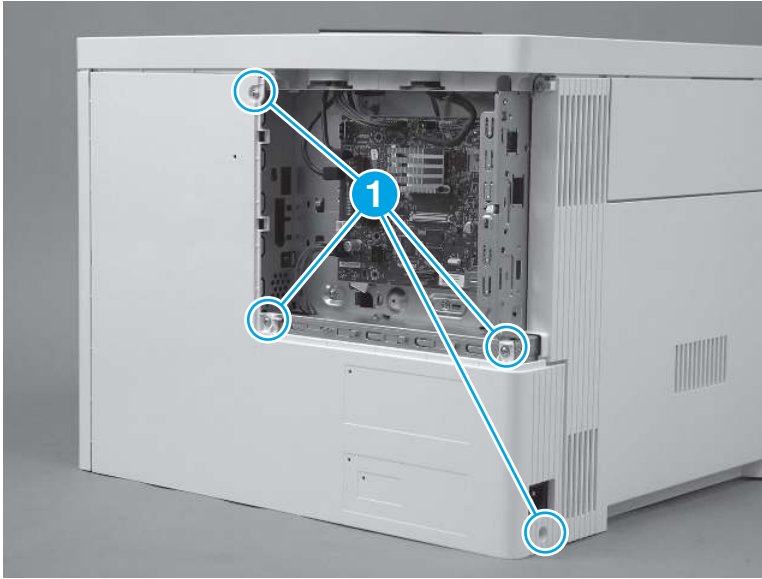
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

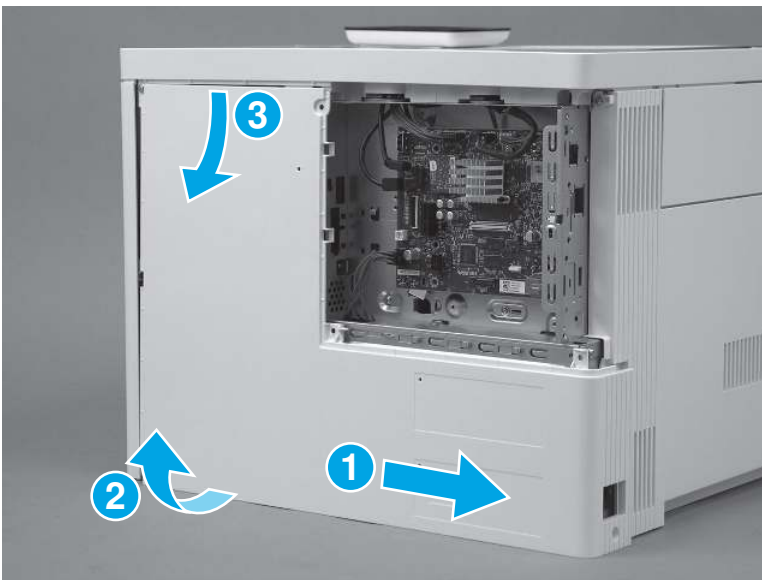
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-752 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-753 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

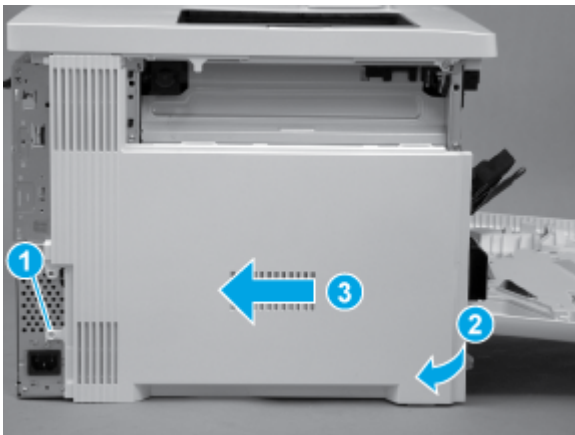
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-754 Remove one screw



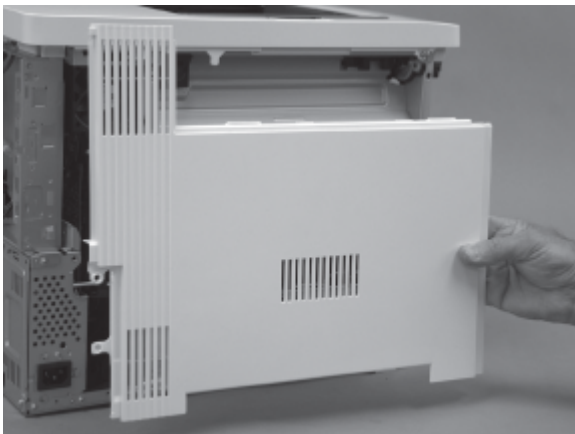
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-755 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-756 Remove the cover



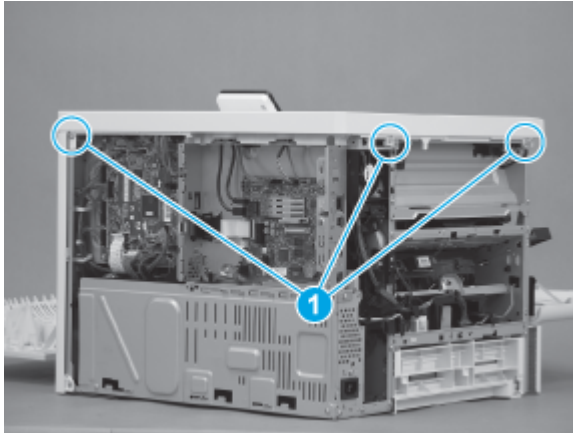
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-757 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-758 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.


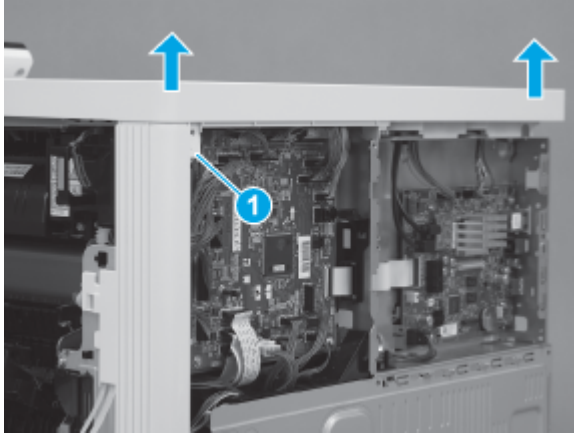
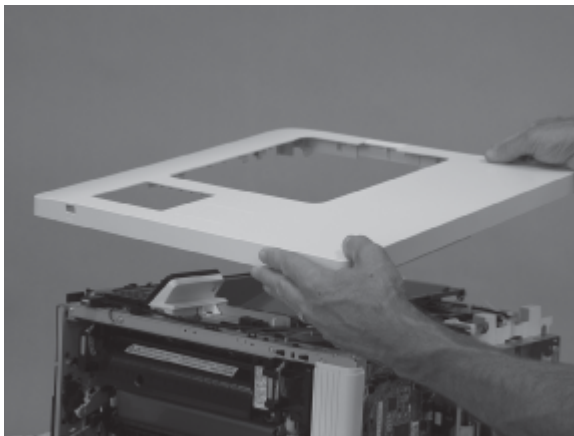
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for additional tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-759 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-760 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

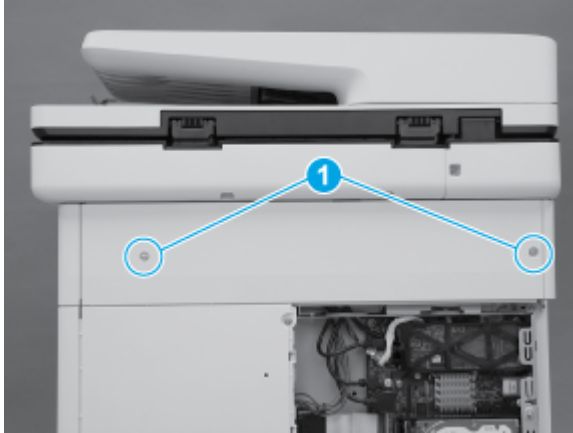
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

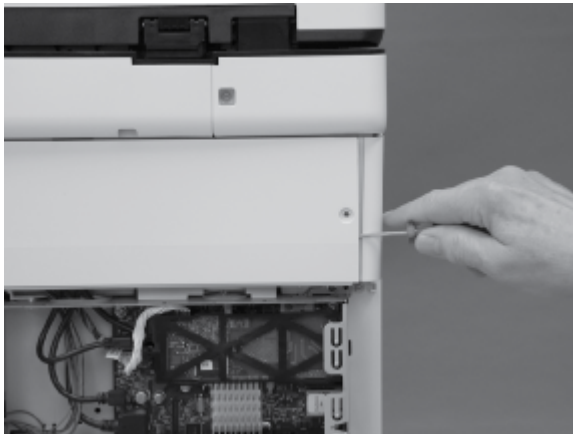
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-761 Remove two screws



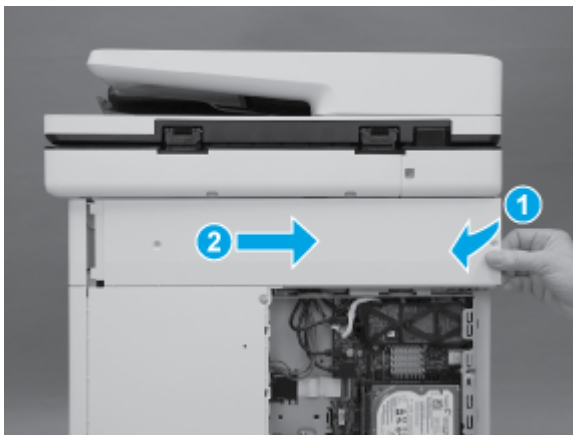
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-762 Release the right edge



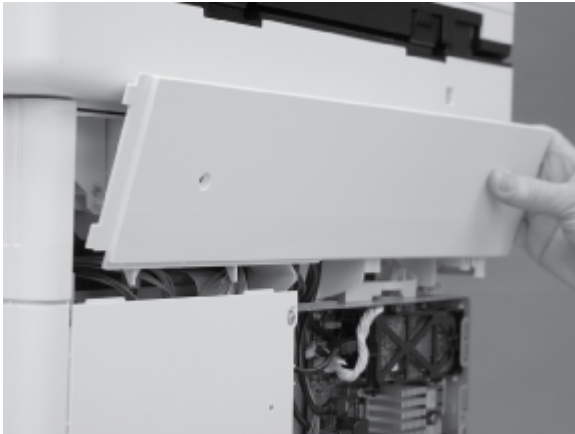
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-763 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-764 Remove the cover



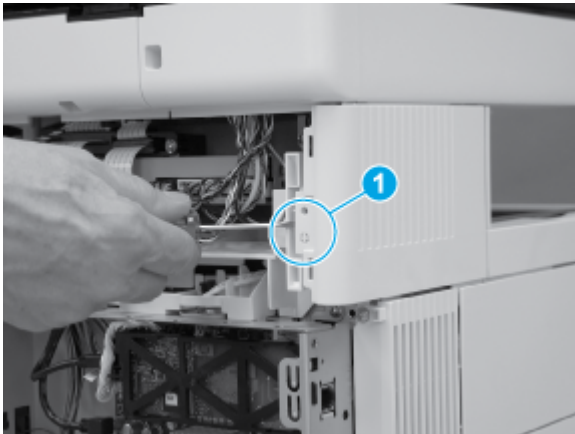
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-765 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-766 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-767 Remove the left upper cover



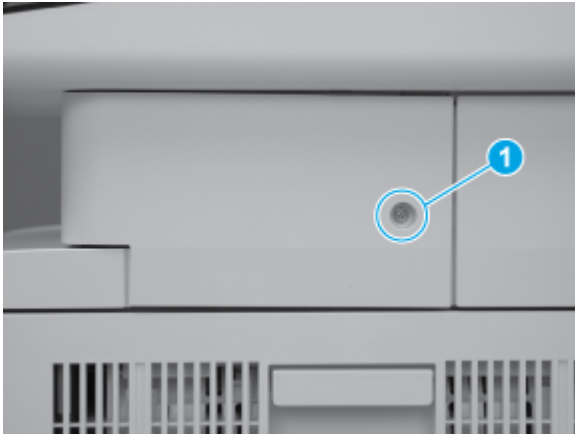
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-768 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-769 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-770 Rotate the cover



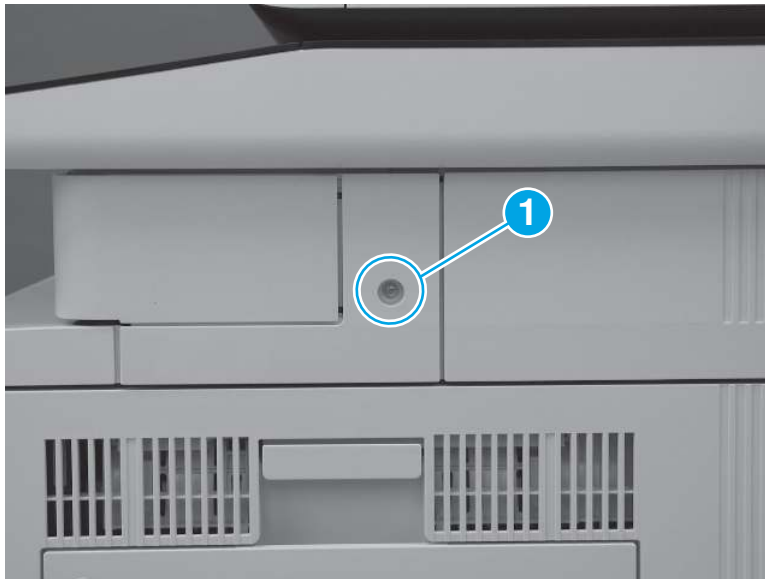
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-771 Remove one screw



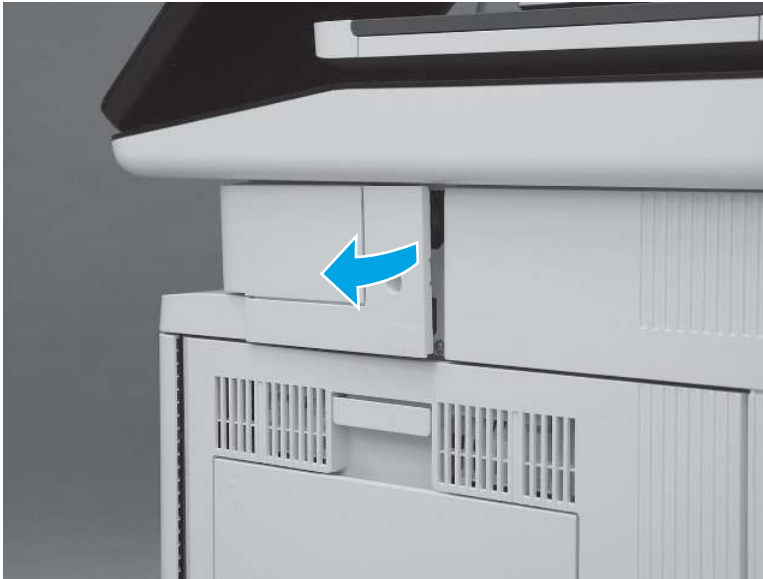
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-772 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-773 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-774 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

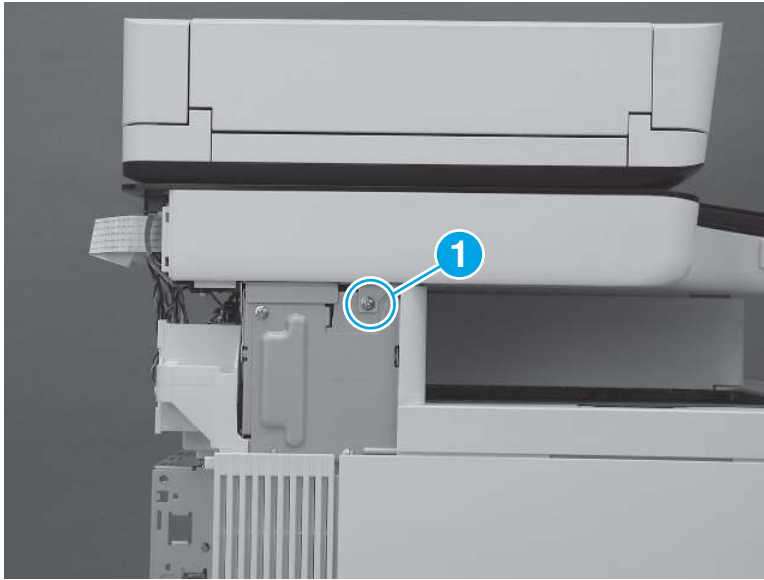
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

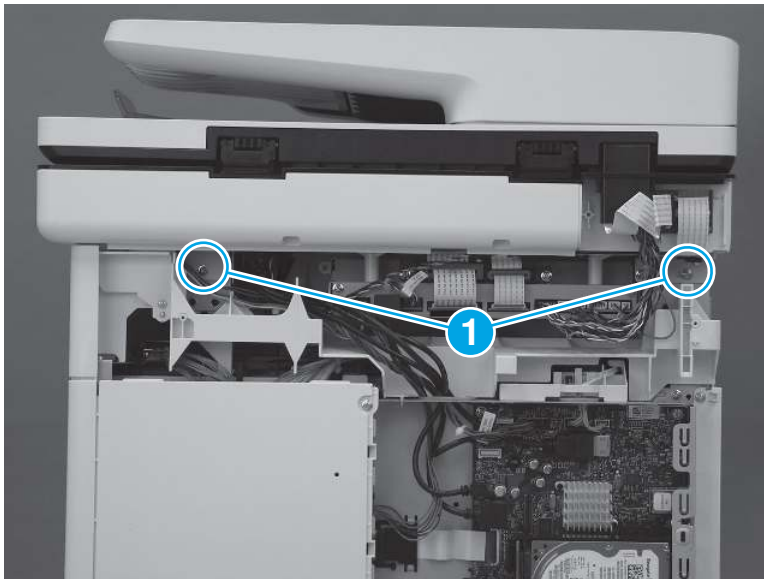
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-775 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

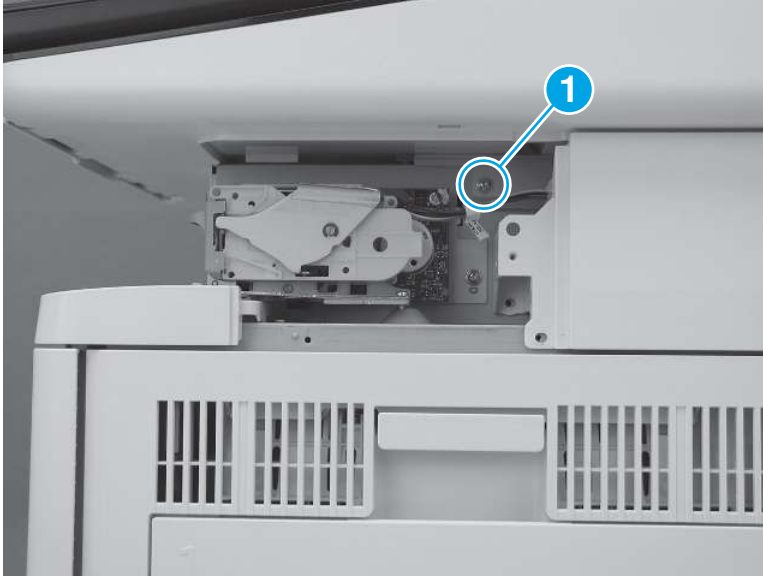
Figure 5-776 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

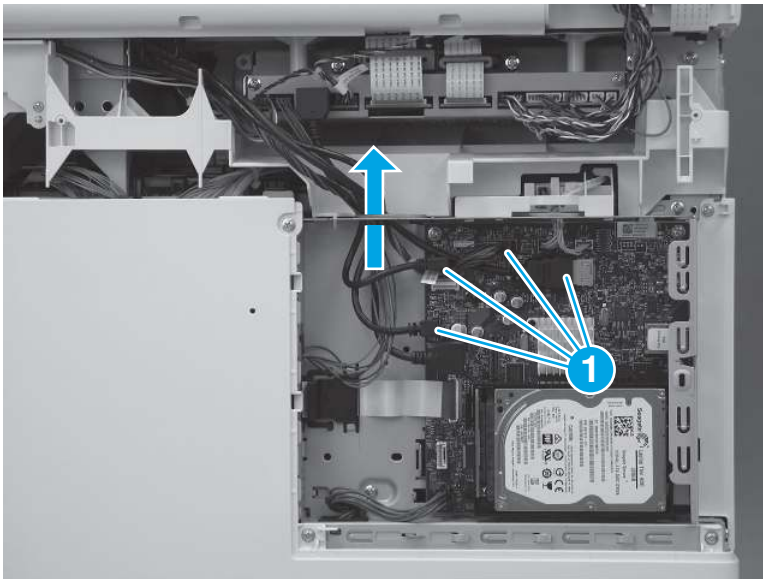
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-777 Remove one screw



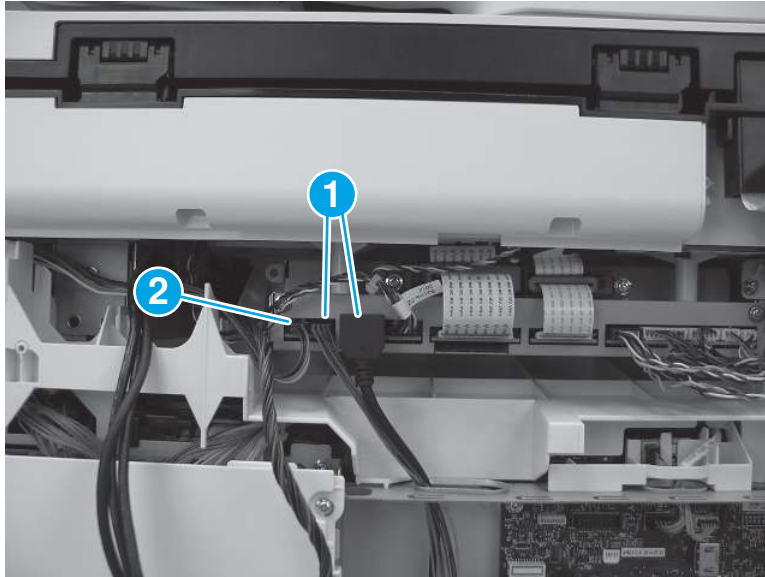
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-778 Disconnect cables and connectors



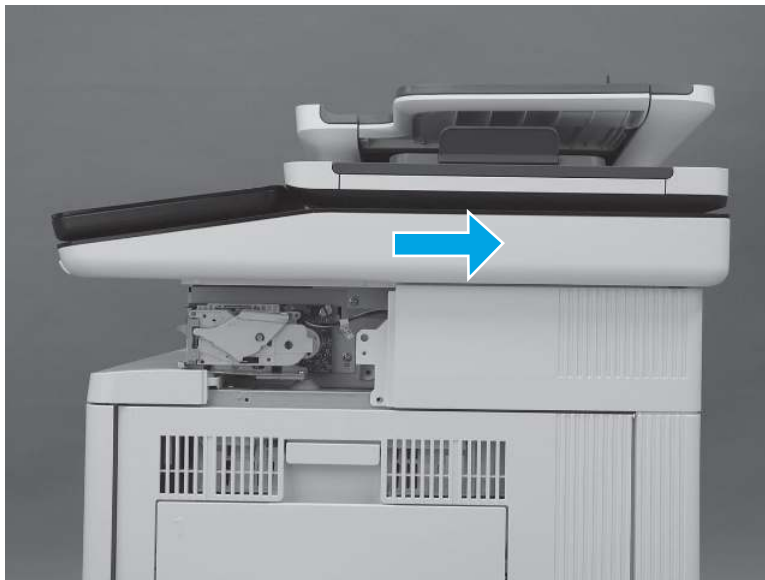
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-779 Disconnect connectors



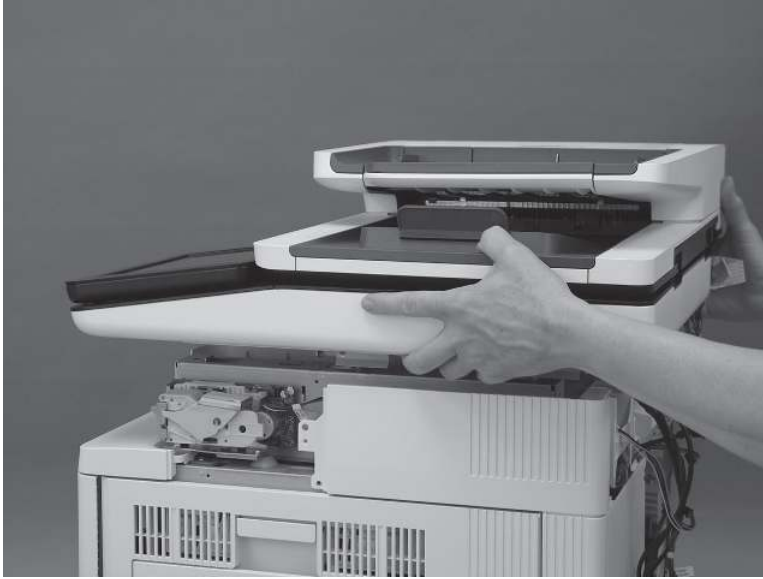
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-780 Release the image scanner




7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-781 Remove the ISA



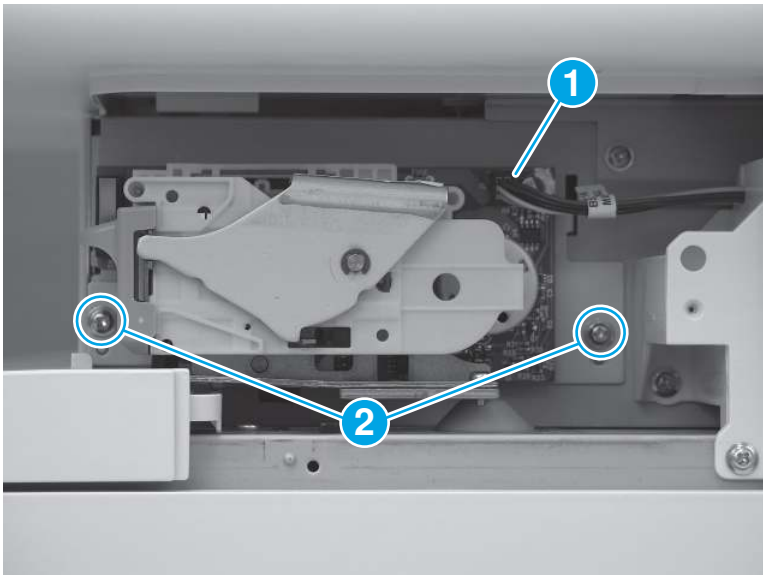
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

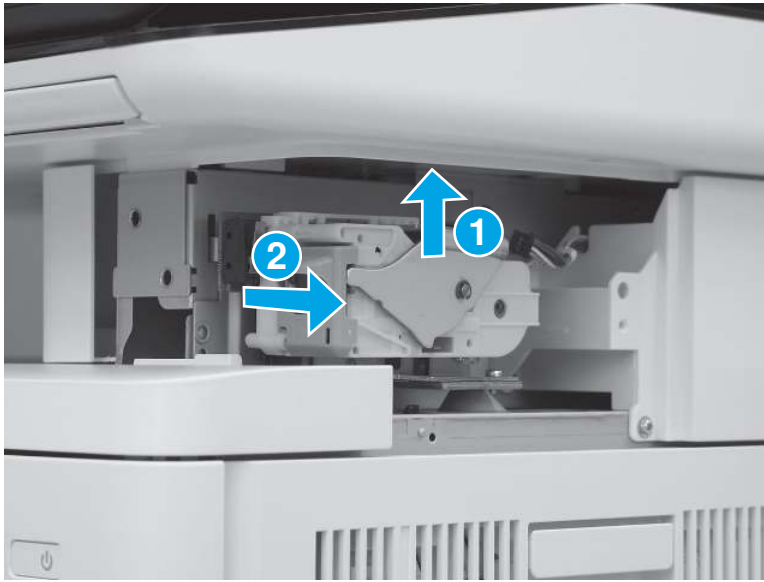
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-782 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-783 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

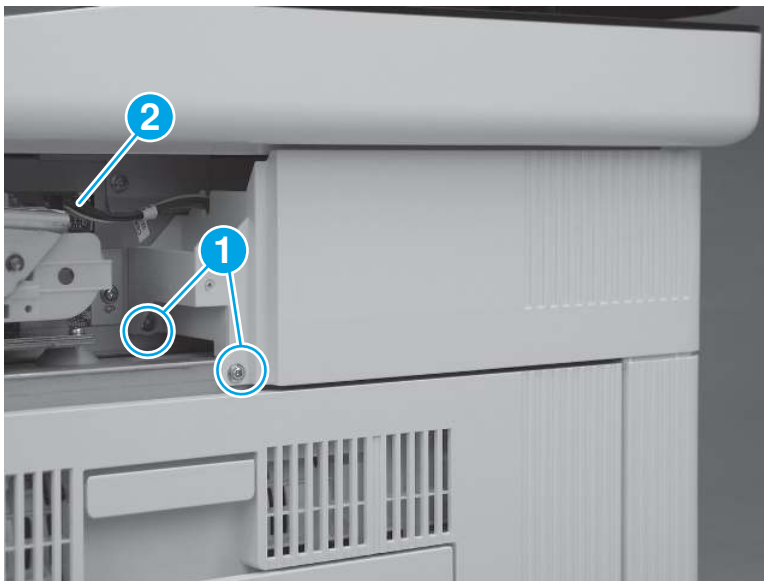
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-784 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


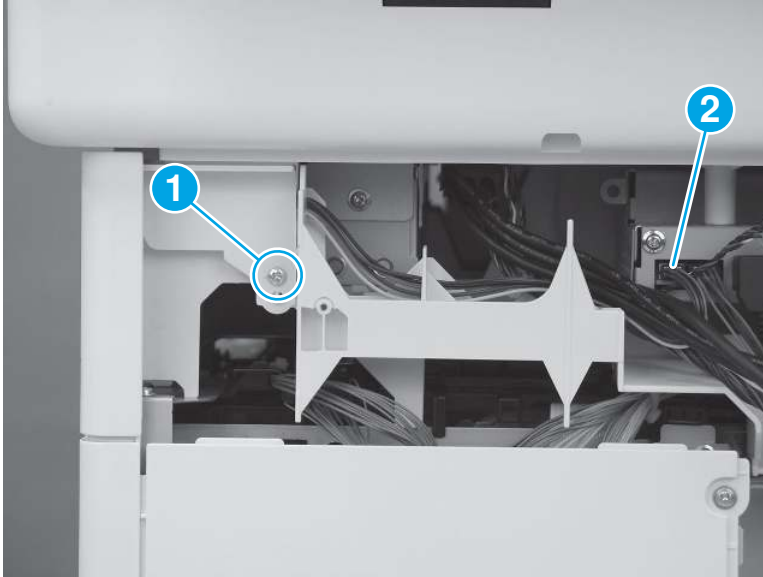
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-785 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

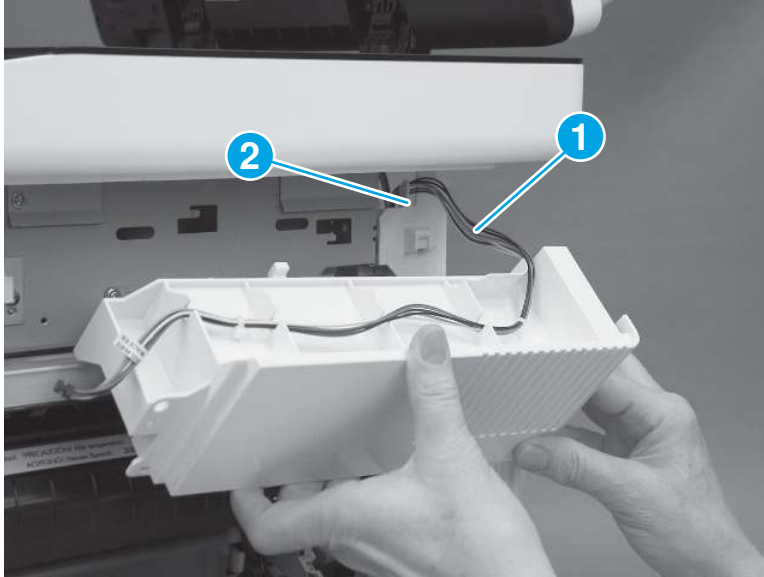
Figure 5-786 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-787 Remove the cover



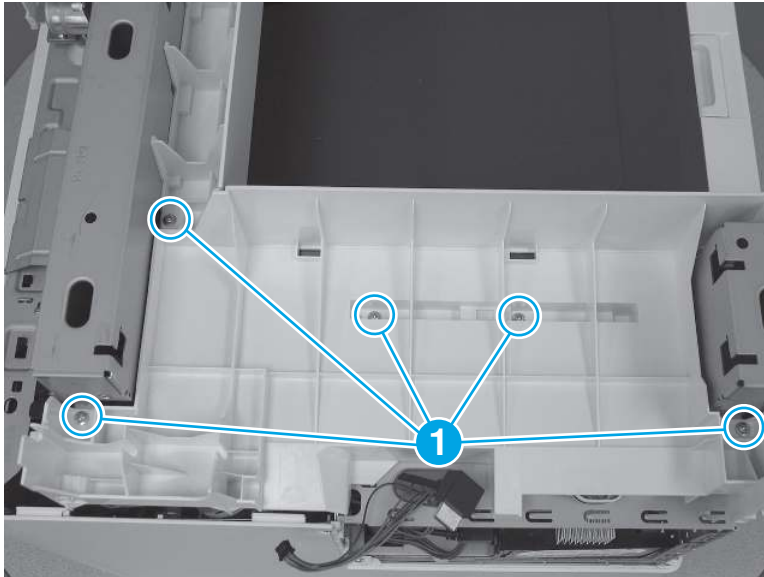
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

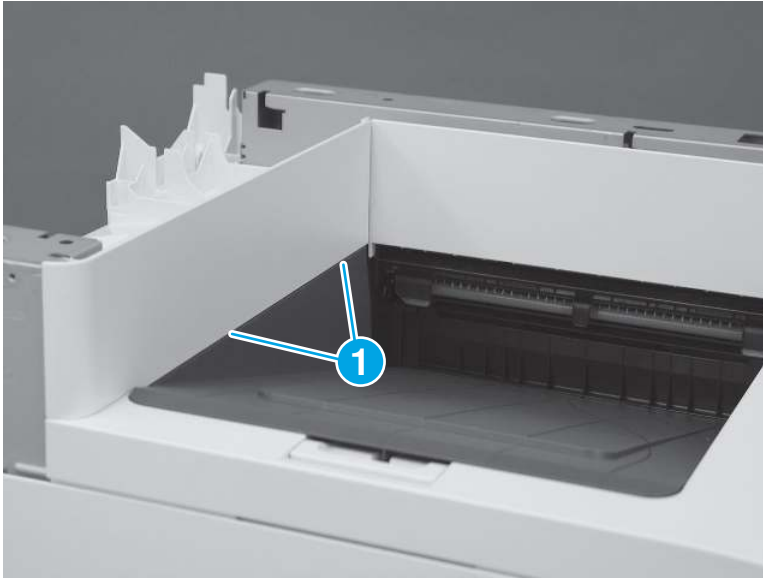
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-788 Remove five screws



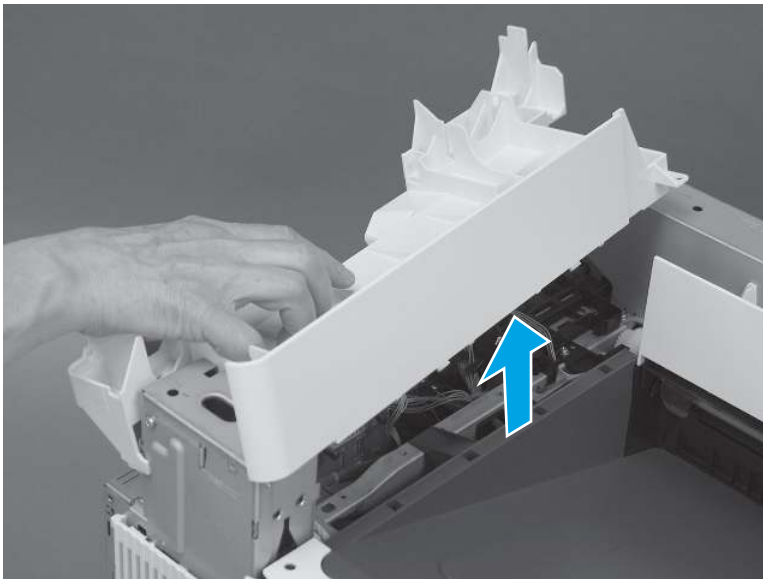
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-789 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-790 Remove the cover



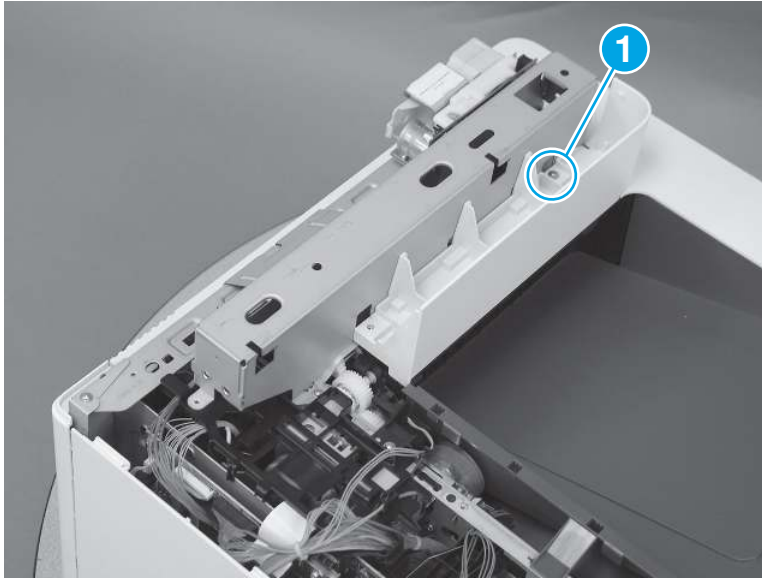
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

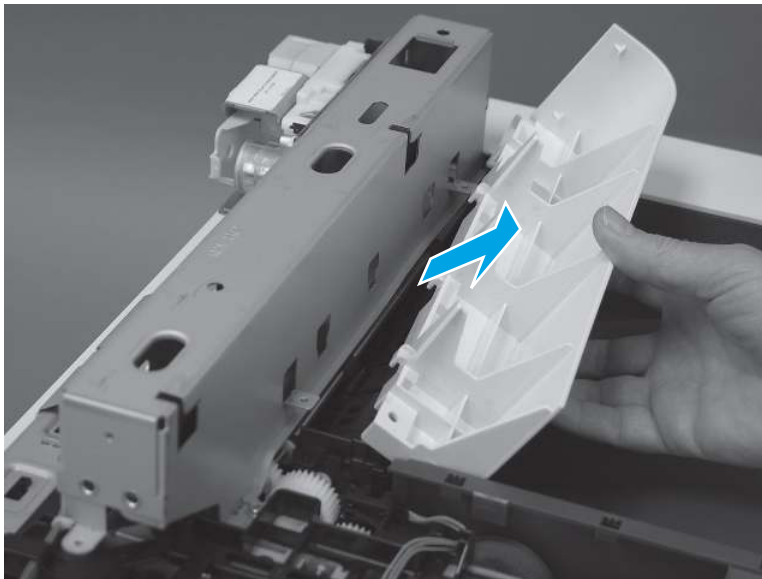
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-791 Remove one screw




2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-792 Remove the cover



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


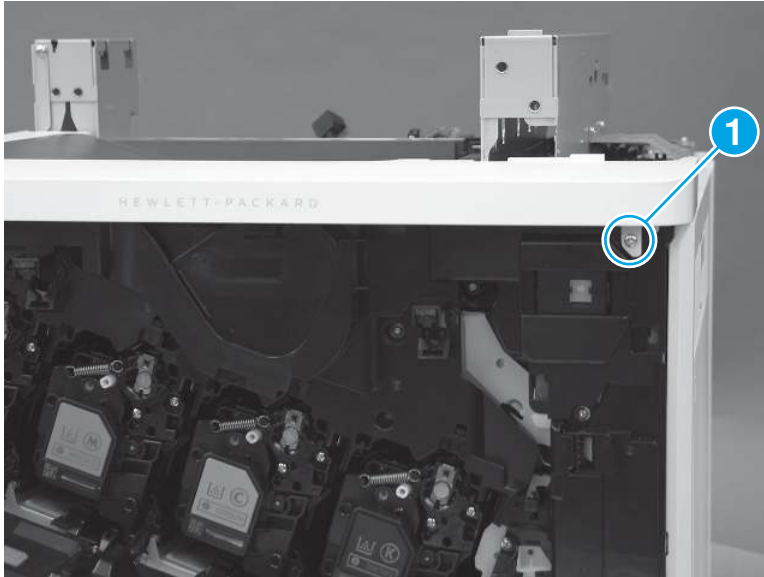
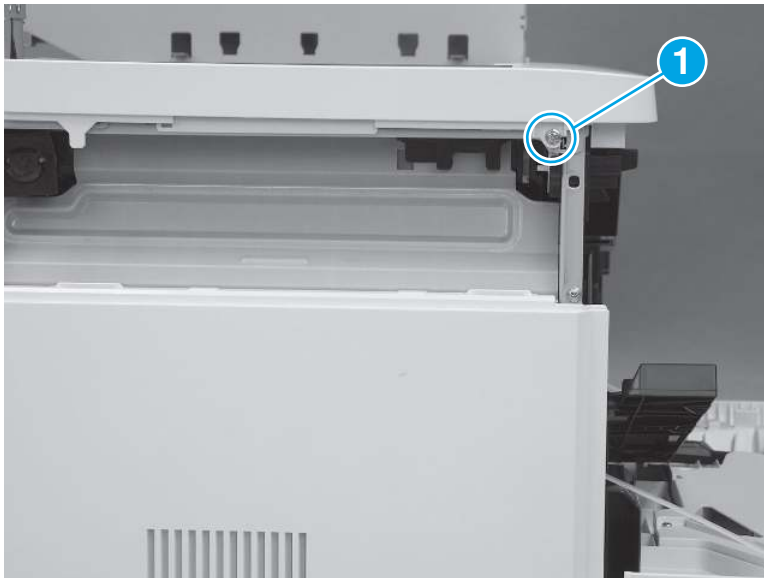
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-793 Remove one screw



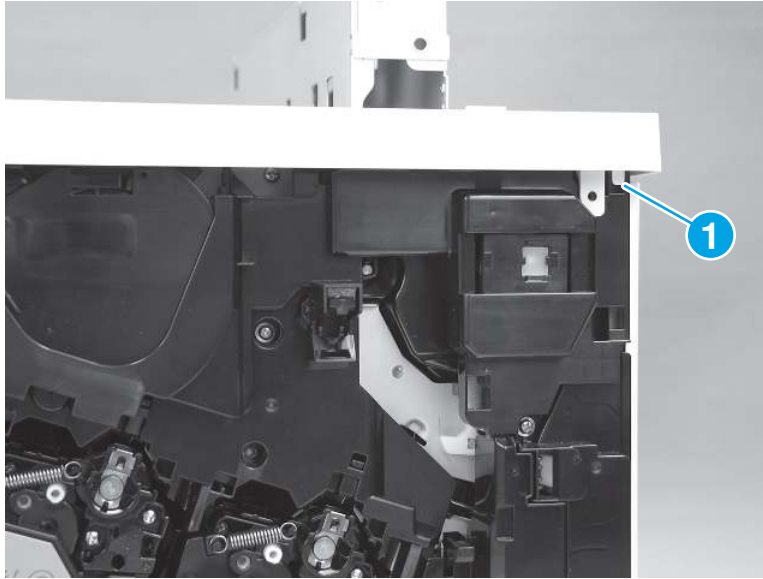
2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-794 Remove one screw



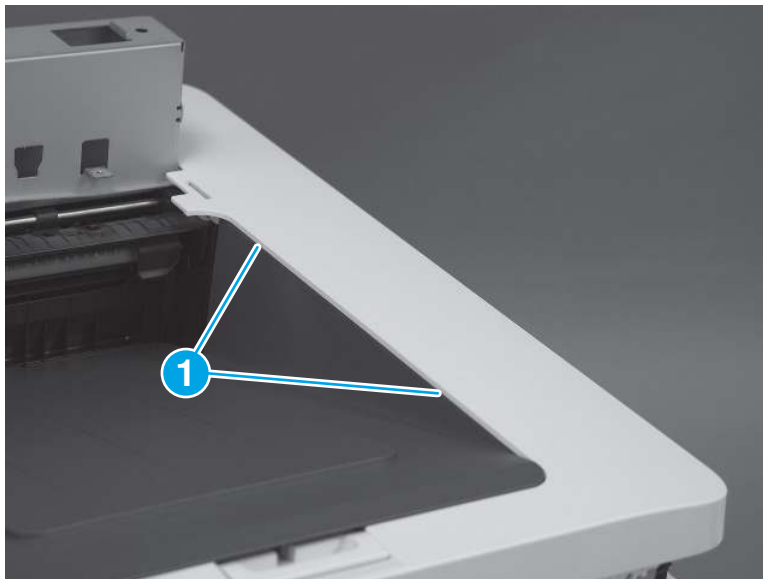
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-795 Release one tab



4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-796 Remove the cover

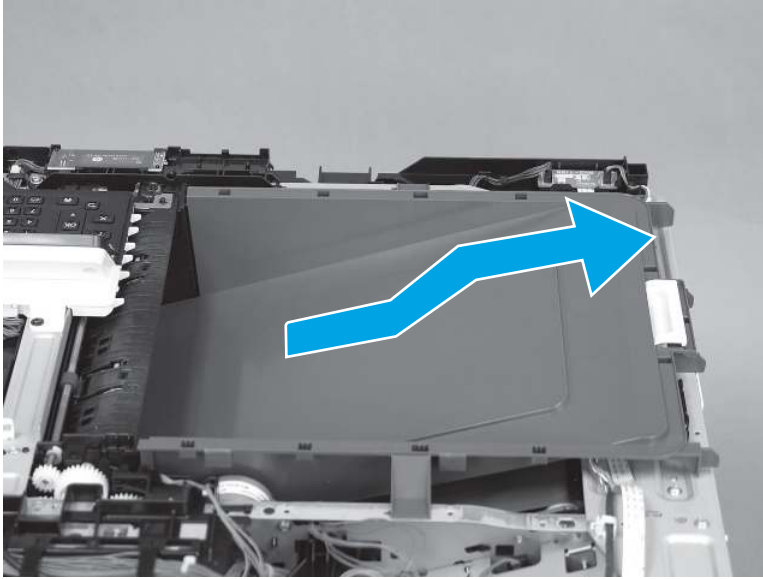


Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

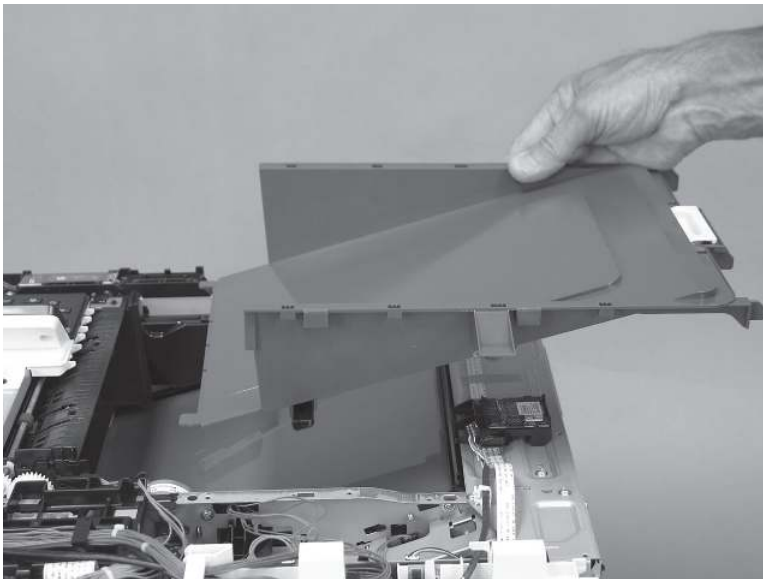
1. Slightly slide and lift the cover to release it.

Figure 5-797 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-798 Remove the cover

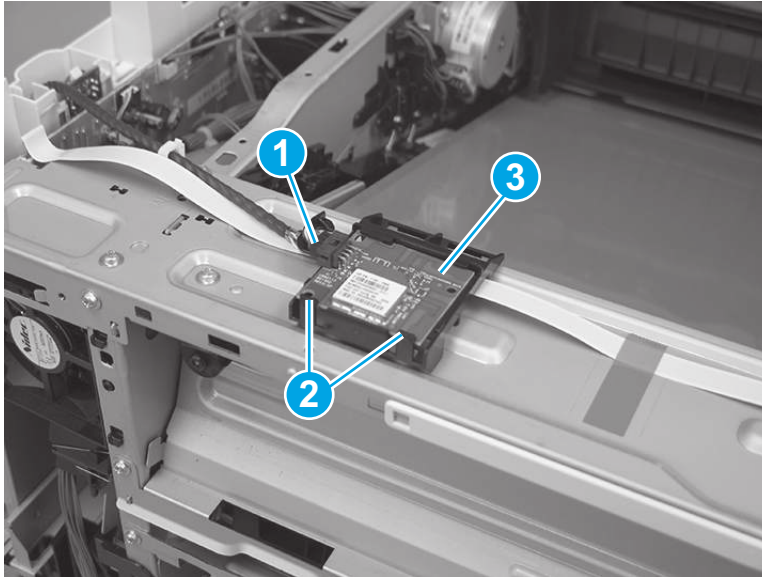


Remove the wireless PCA

Follow these steps to remove the wireless PCA.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the wireless PCA (callout 3).

Figure 5-799 Remove the wireless PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Switch (SW4) PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the switch (SW4) PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-56 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-7133-000CN	Switch (SW4) PCA Switch (SW4) PCA

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

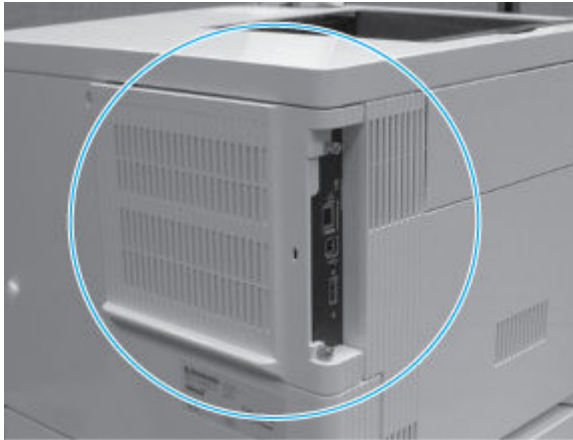
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

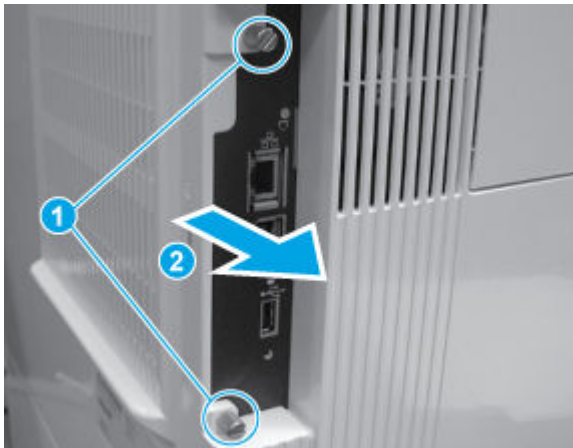
Figure 5-800 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-801 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer. However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-802 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-803 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-804 Remove the TCU



Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-805 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-806 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-807 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-808 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-809 Remove the cover

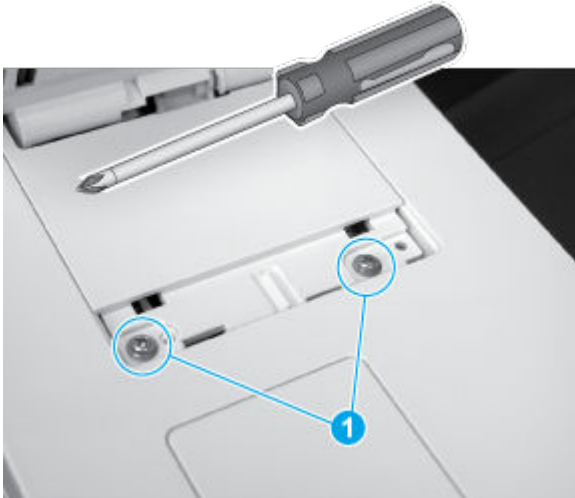


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-810 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-811 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-812 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


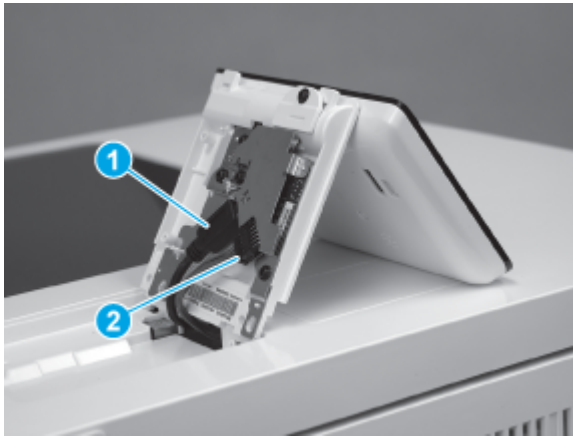
 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-813 Disconnect two connectors



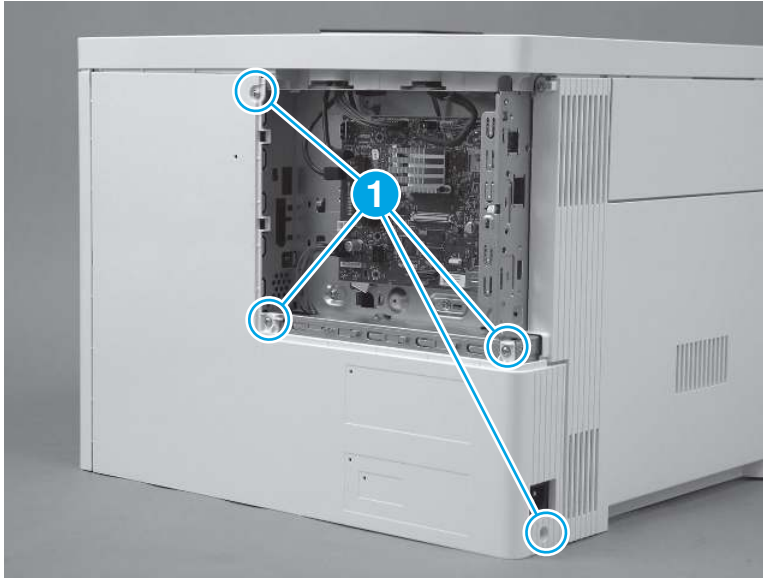
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

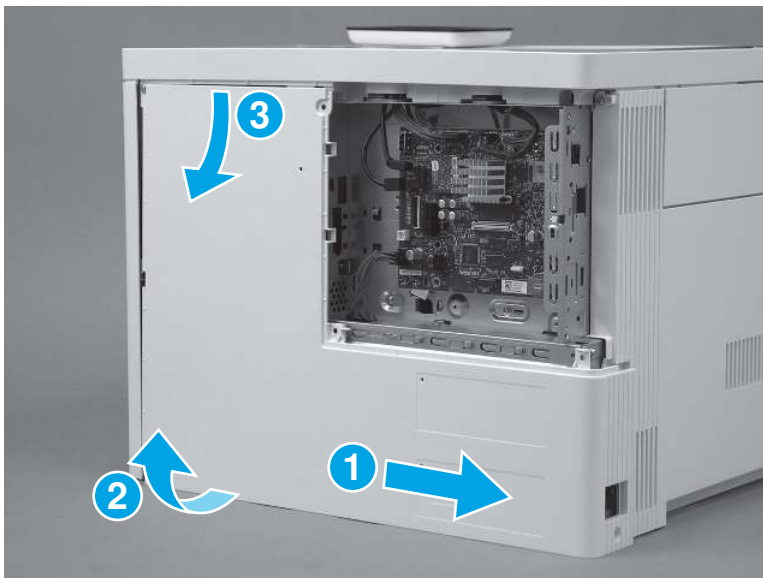
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-814 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-815 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

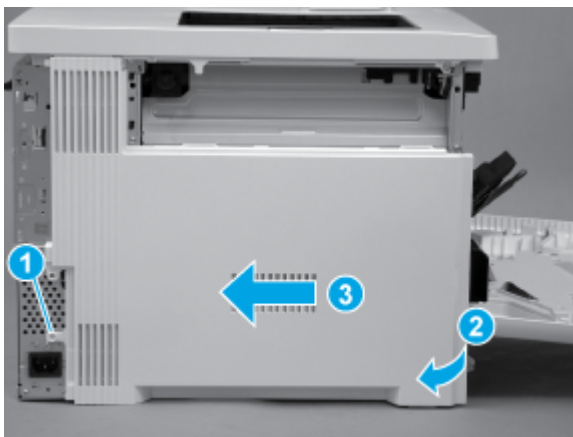
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-816 Remove one screw



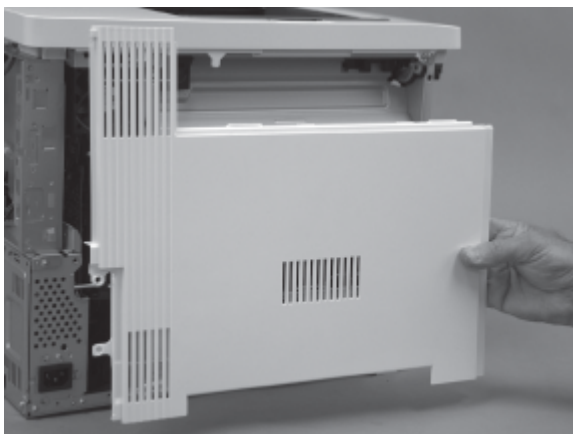
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-817 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-818 Remove the cover



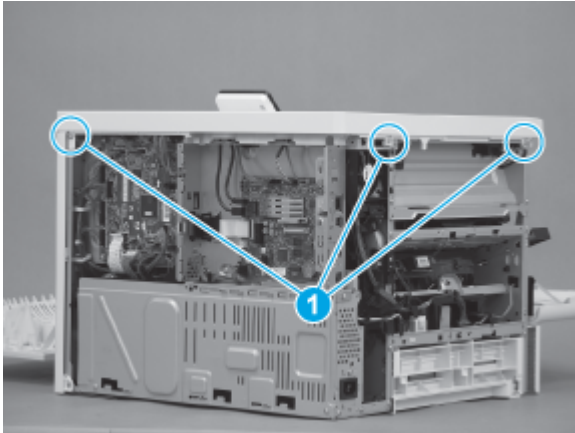
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-819 Remove three screws




2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-820 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


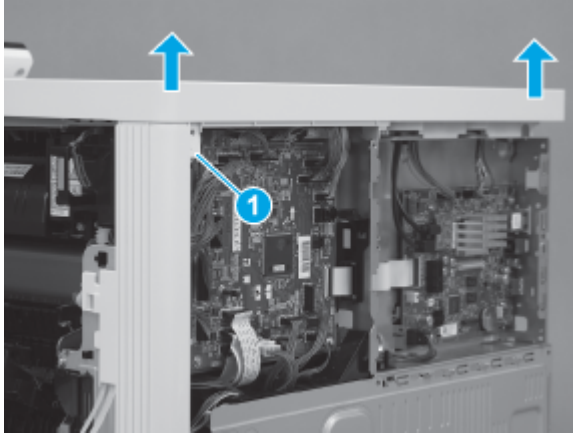
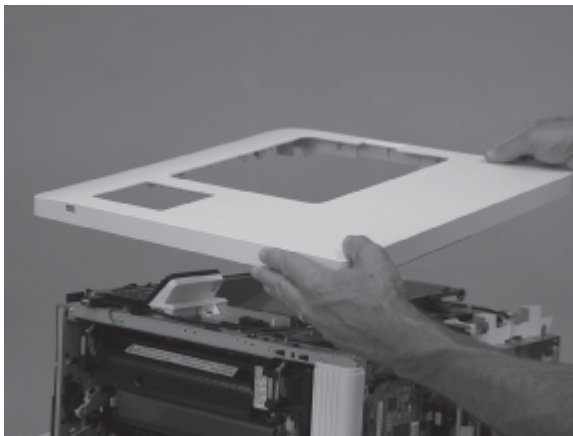
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for additional tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-821 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-822 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

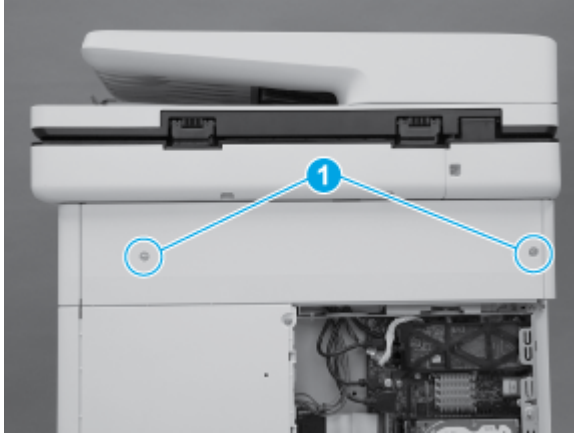
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

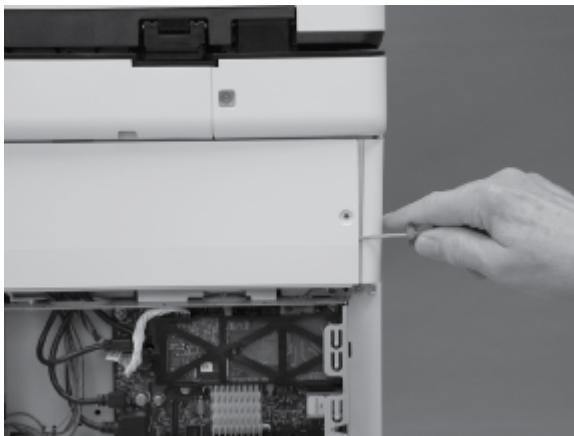
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-823 Remove two screws



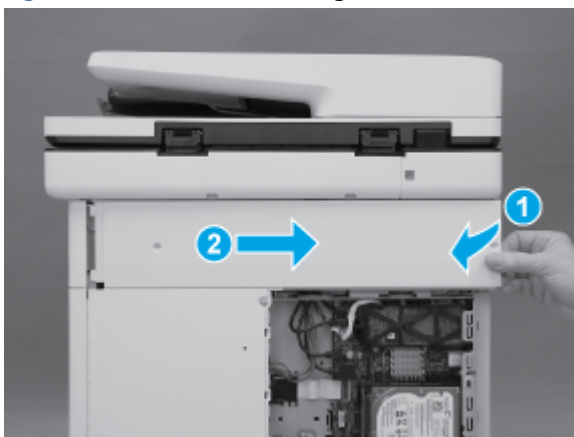
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-824 Release the right edge



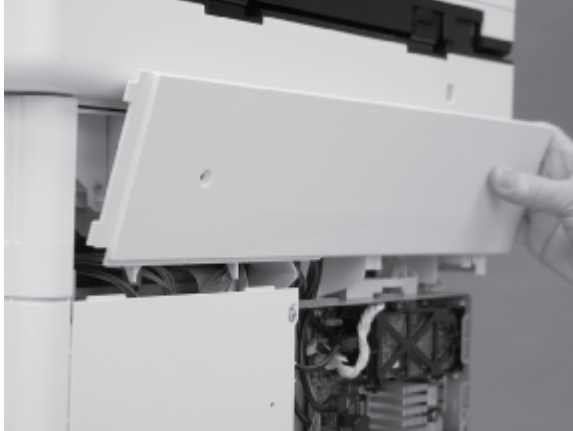
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-825 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-826 Remove the cover



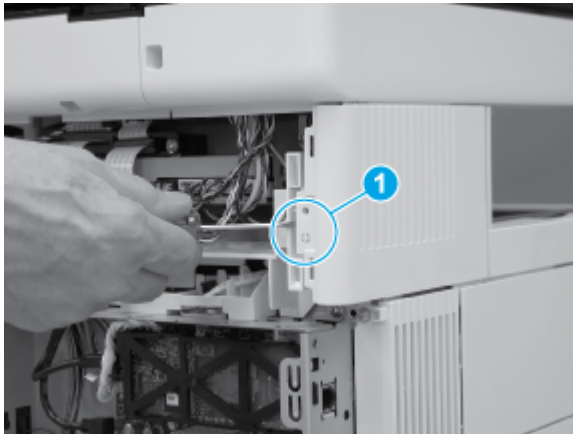
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-827 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-828 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-829 Remove the left upper cover



Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-830 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-831 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-832 Rotate the cover



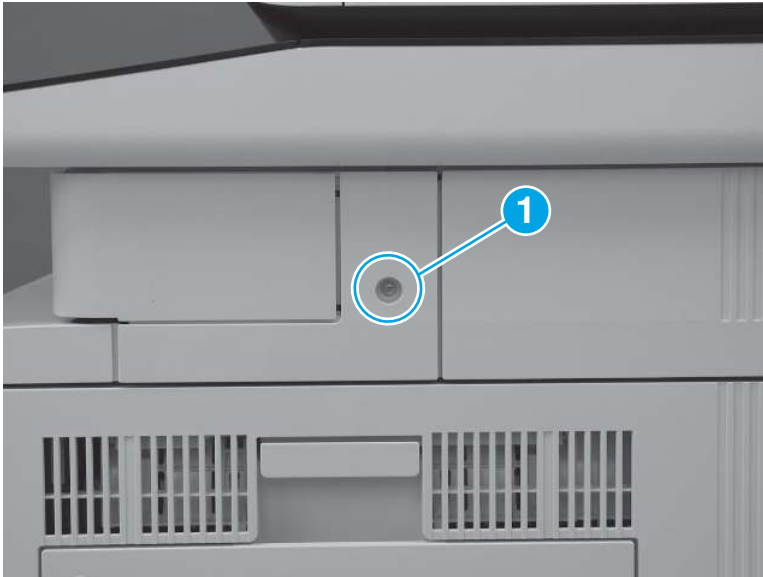
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-833 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-834 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-835 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-836 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

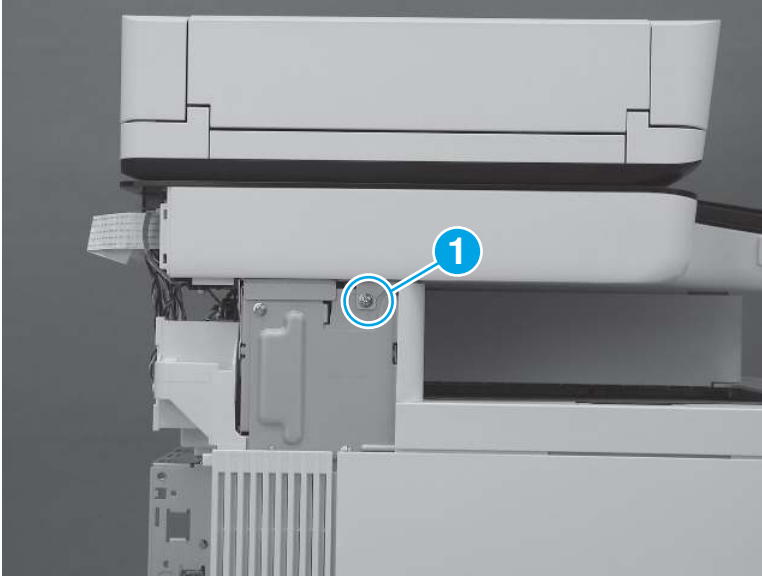
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

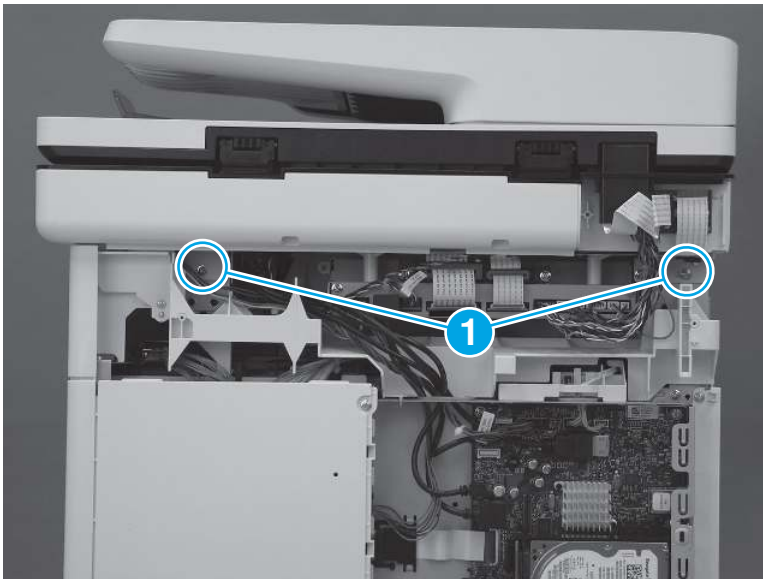
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-837 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

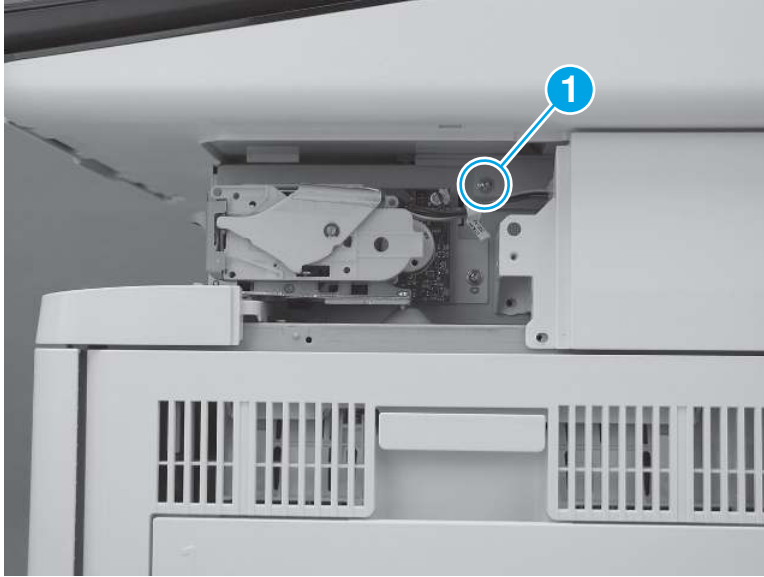
Figure 5-838 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

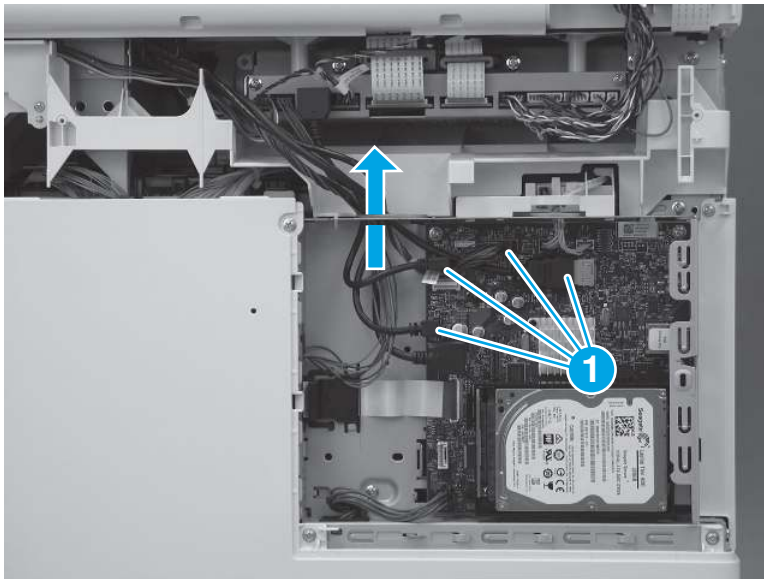
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-839 Remove one screw



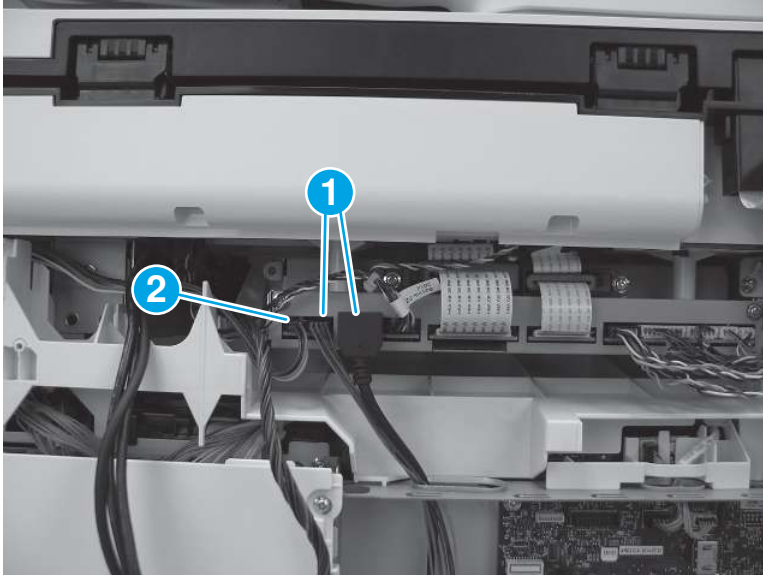
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-840 Disconnect cables and connectors



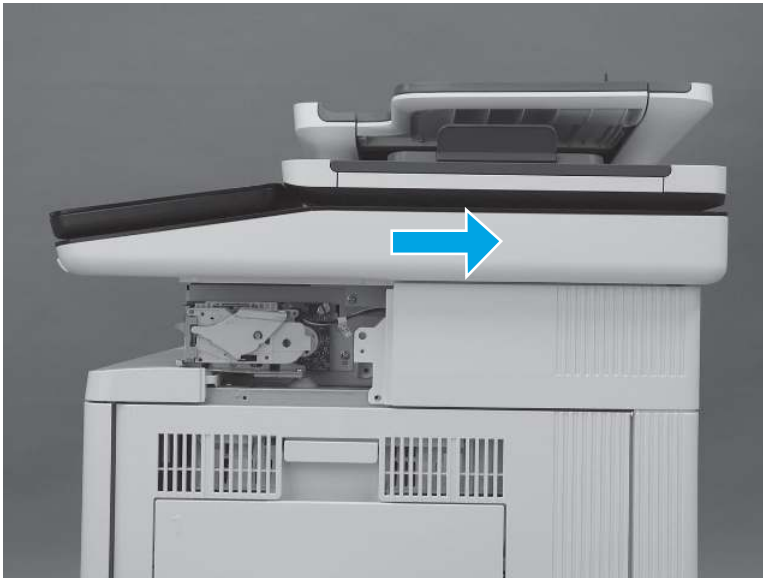
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-841 Disconnect connectors



6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-842 Release the image scanner




- Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-843 Remove the ISA



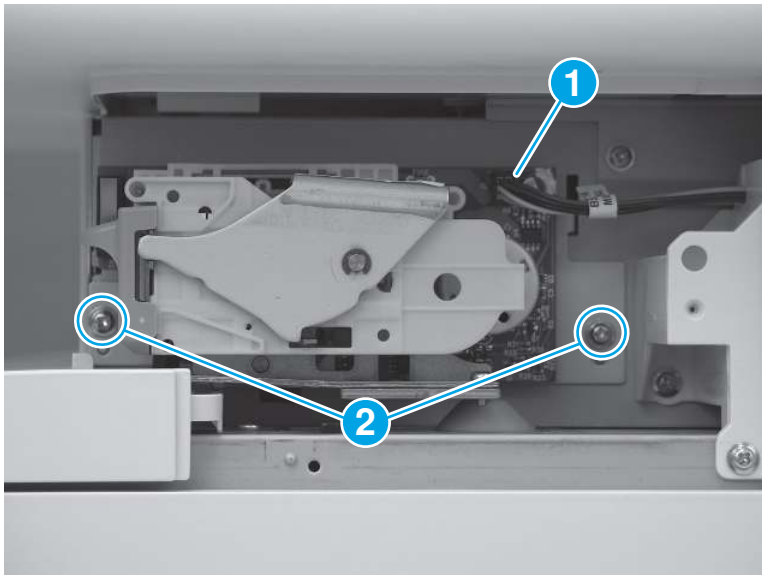
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

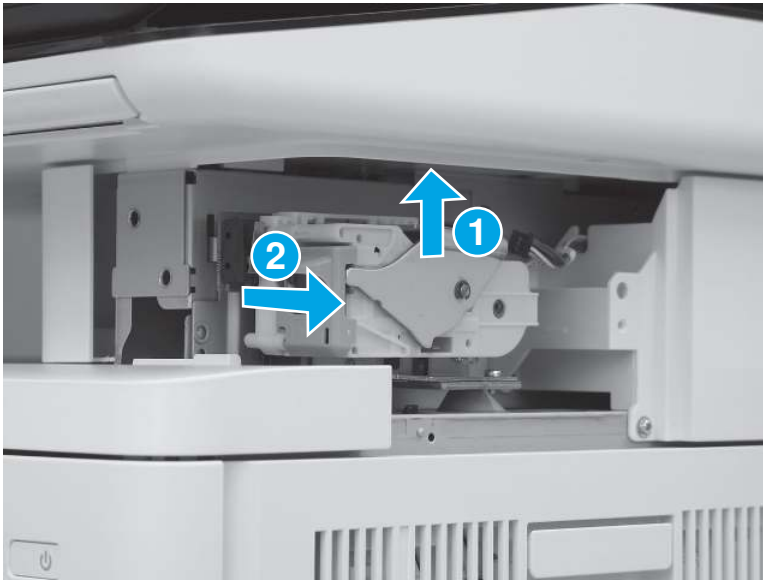
- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-844 Disconnect connector and remove screws



- Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-845 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

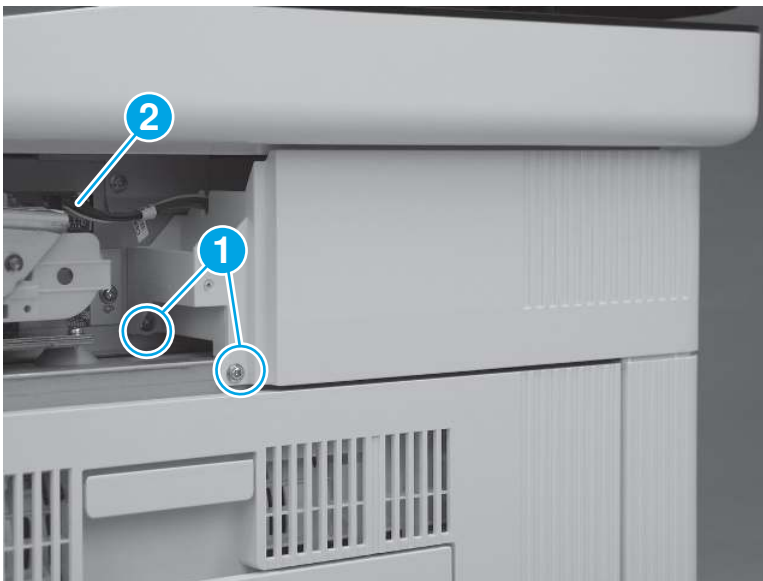
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

- At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-846 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


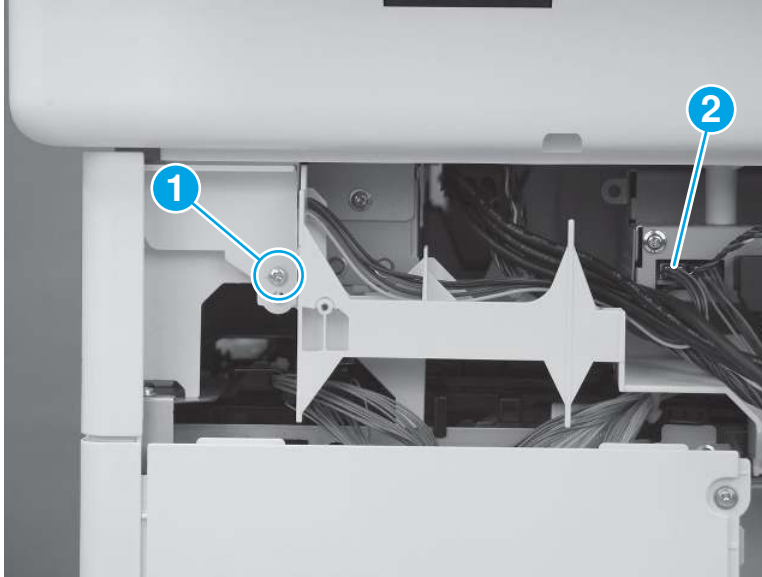
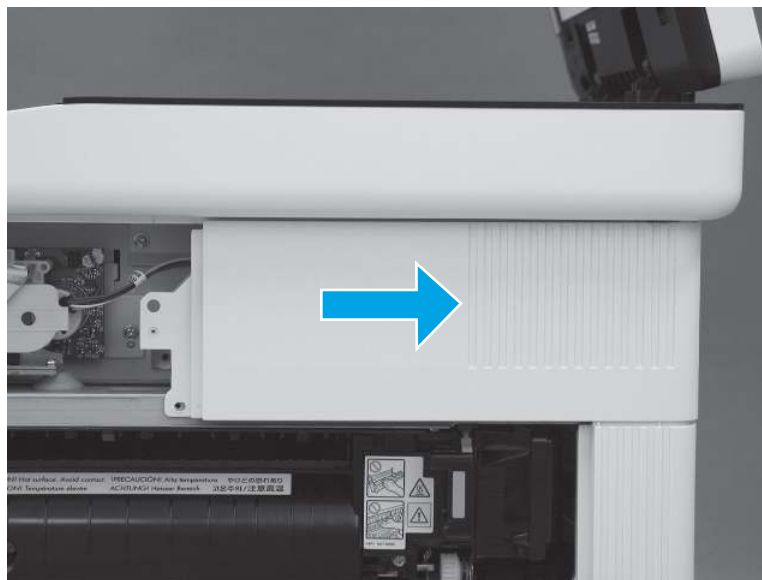
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-847 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

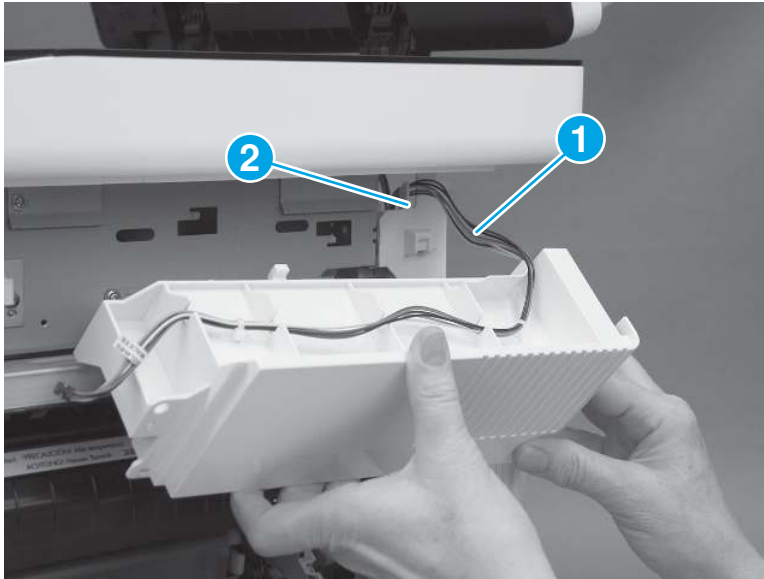
Figure 5-848 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-849 Remove the cover



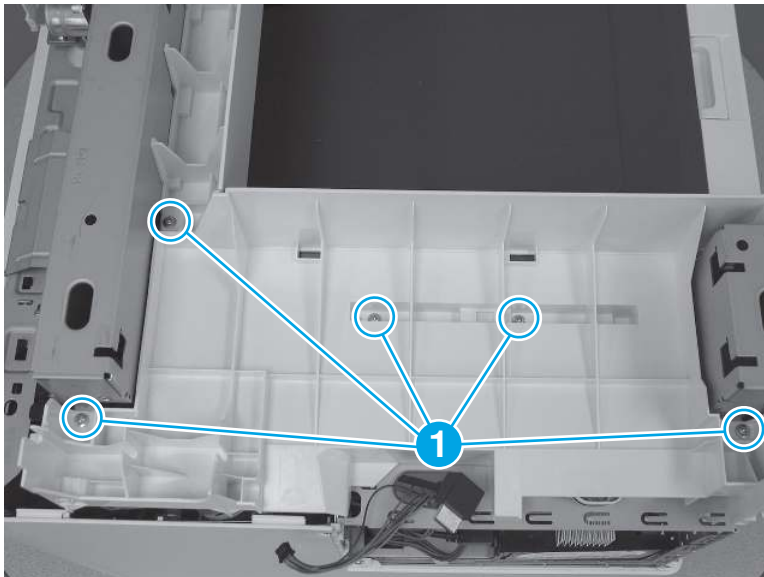
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

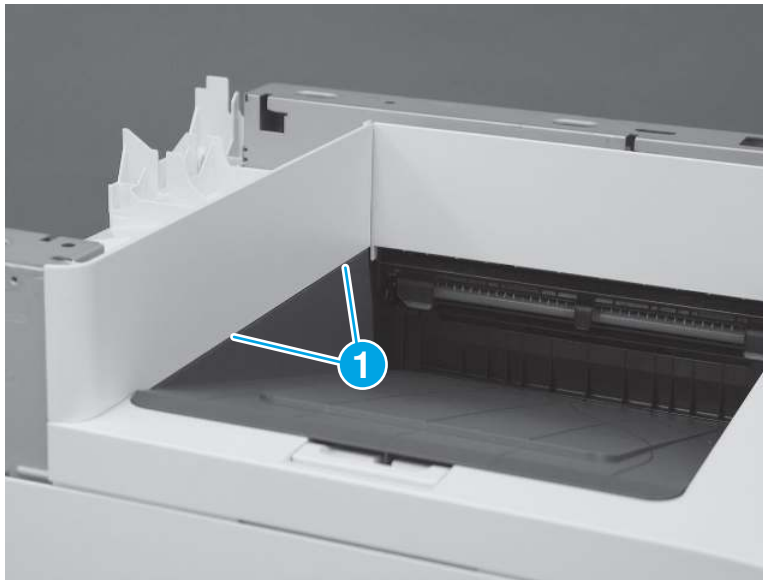
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-850 Remove five screws



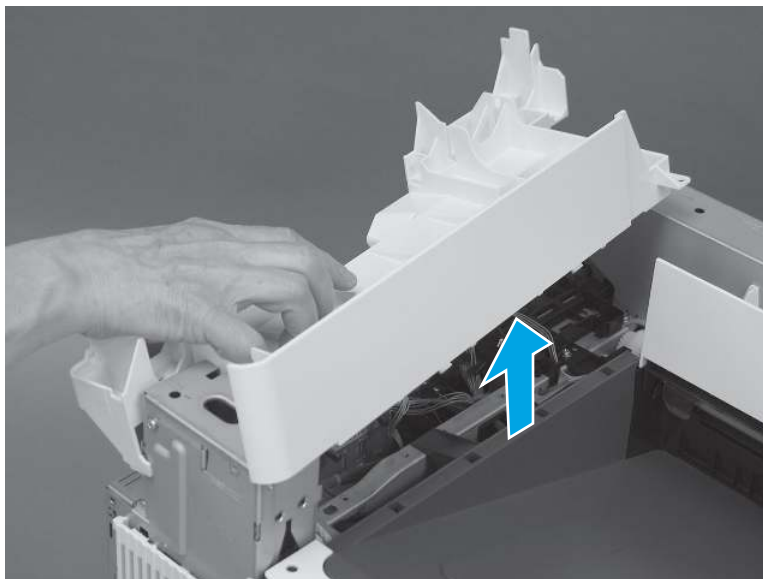
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-851 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-852 Remove the cover



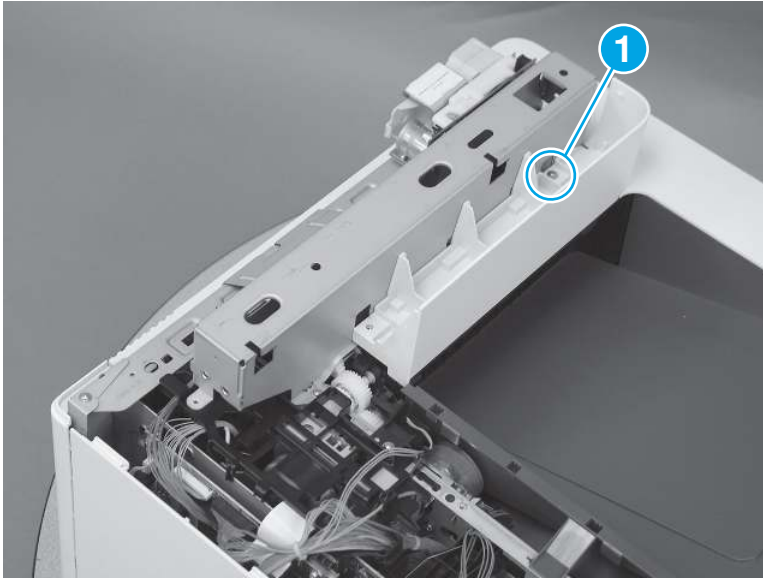
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

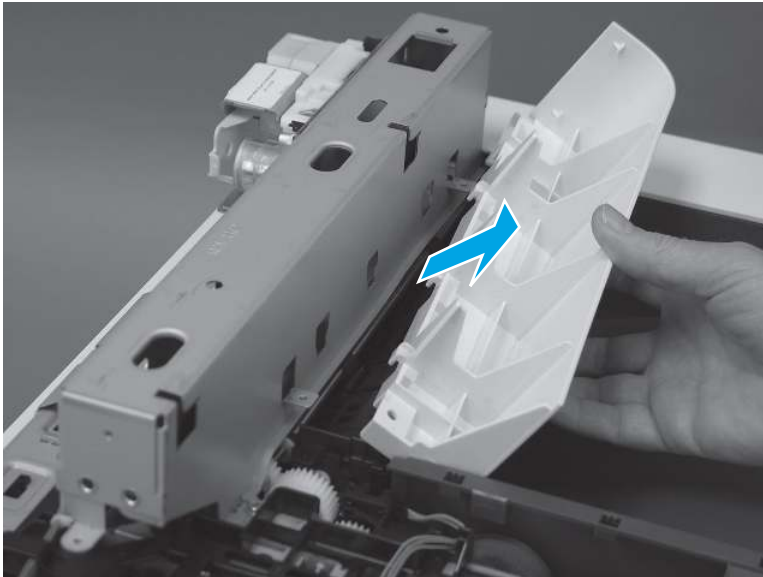
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-853 Remove one screw




2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-854 Remove the cover



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


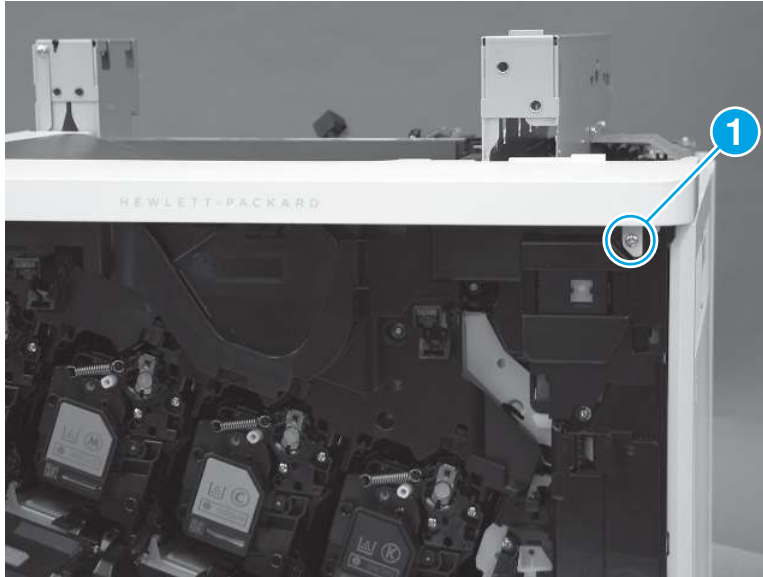
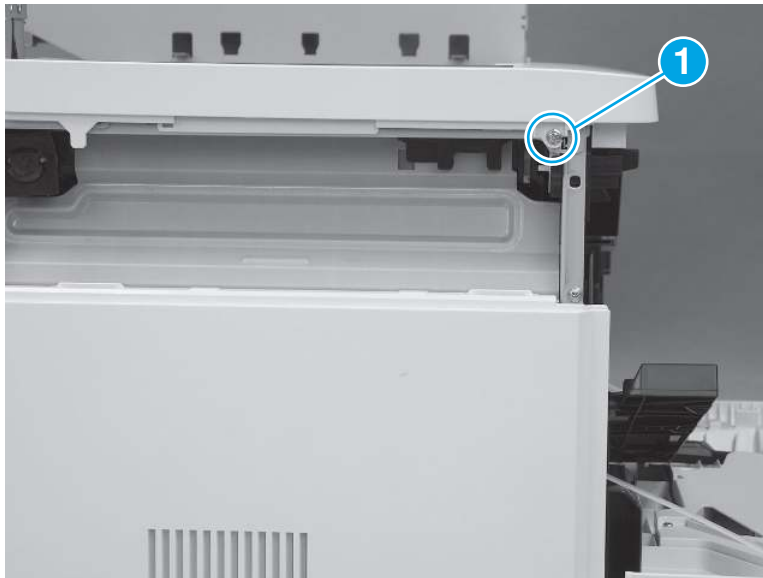
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-855 Remove one screw



2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-856 Remove one screw



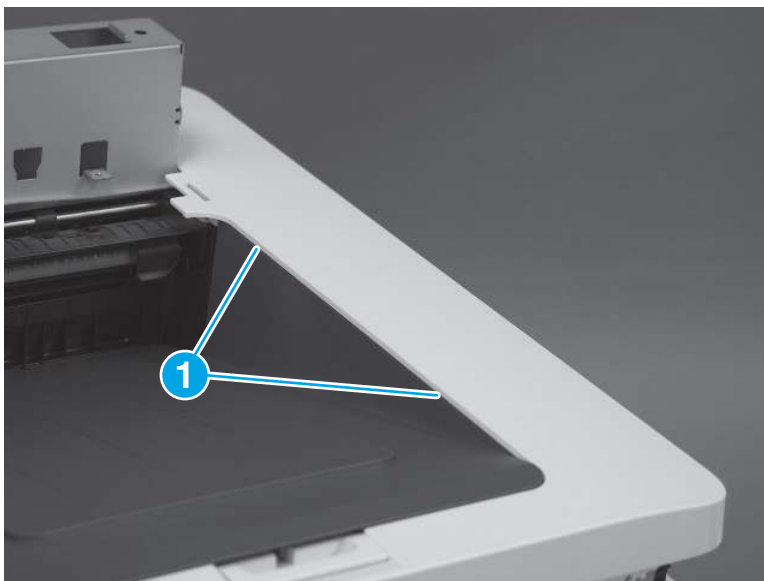
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-857 Release one tab



4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-858 Remove the cover



Remove the switch (SW4) PCA

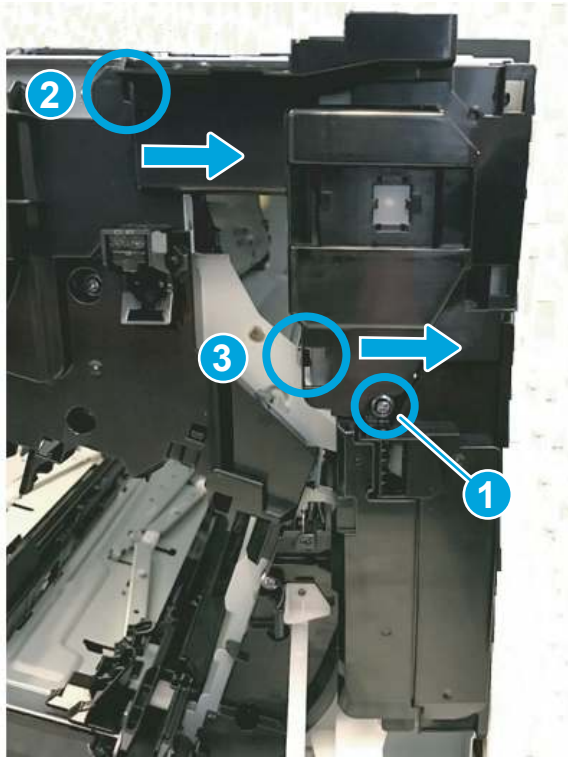
Follow these steps to remove the switch (SW4) PCA.

1. Do the following:
 - a. If the front and right doors are not already open, open them now.
 - b. Remove one screw (callout 1).
 - c. At the upper left corner (callout 2) of the upper cover, carefully pry the cover to the right to release it.

- d. At the lower left edge (callout 3) of the upper cover, carefully pry the cover to the right to remove it

 **NOTE:** Use a small flat blade screwdriver to release and remove the cover.

Figure 5-859 Remove the upper cover

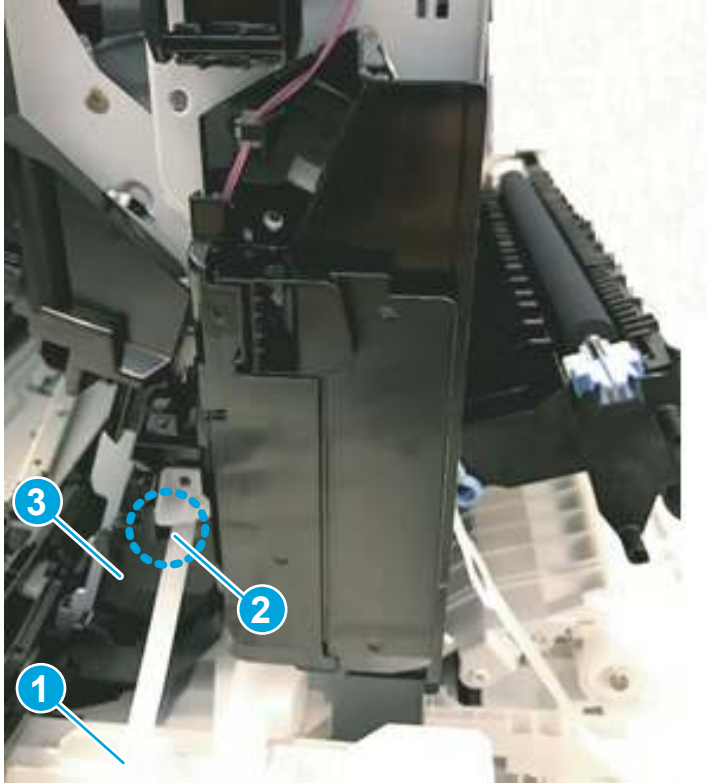


2. Do the following:

 **NOTE:** The switch (SW4) PCA cover consists of a left and right cover.

- a. Release the right-side door strap (callout 1; squeeze two tabs to release the strap from the holder on the door).
- b. Remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the left side of the cover (callout 3).

Figure 5-860 Remove the switch left-side cover



3. Do the following:

⚠ CAUTION: The door interlocks behind the switch right-side cover are not captive and can be easily dislodged when handling the cover.

- a. Carefully separate the switch right-side cover from the printer chassis.

📝 NOTE: The cover is still attached to the chassis by a strap. Do not attempt to completely remove the cover.

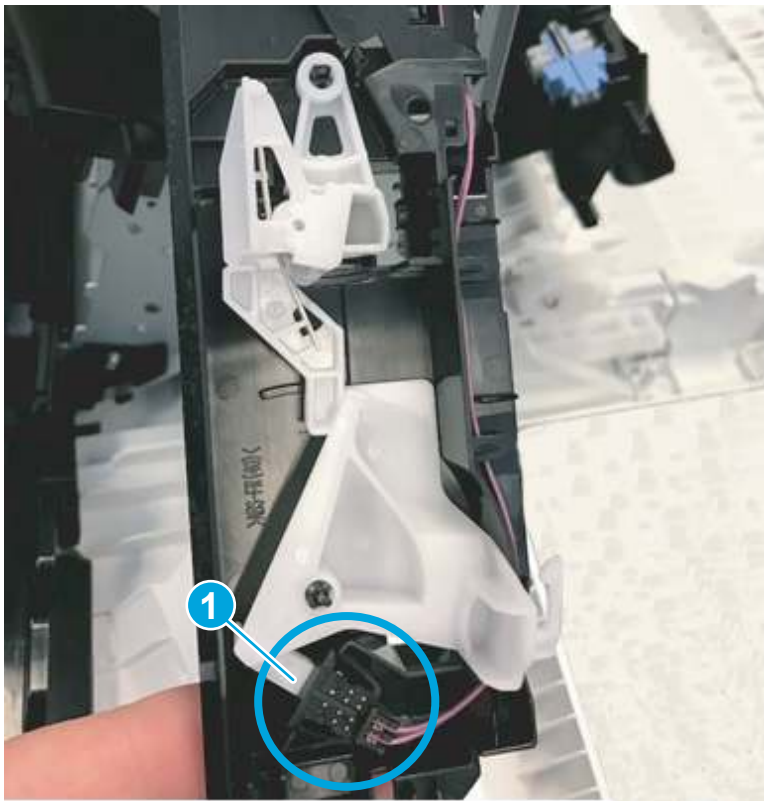
- b. Release the white strap (callout 1) from the lower door interlock (behind the switch right-side cover).

Figure 5-861 Release the white strap



4. Disconnect one connector, and then remove the switch (SW4) PC board assembly switch (callout 1).


Figure 5-862 Remove the switch



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Stapler unit (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)

Learn about removing and replacing the stapler unit.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-57 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L46-60102	Stapler unit

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the convenience stapler to staple two pages together.

Remove the staple cartridge

Follow these steps to remove the staple cartridge.

1. Open the stapler door.

Figure 5-863 Open the stapler door



2. Pull the staple cartridge straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-864 Remove the staple cartridge



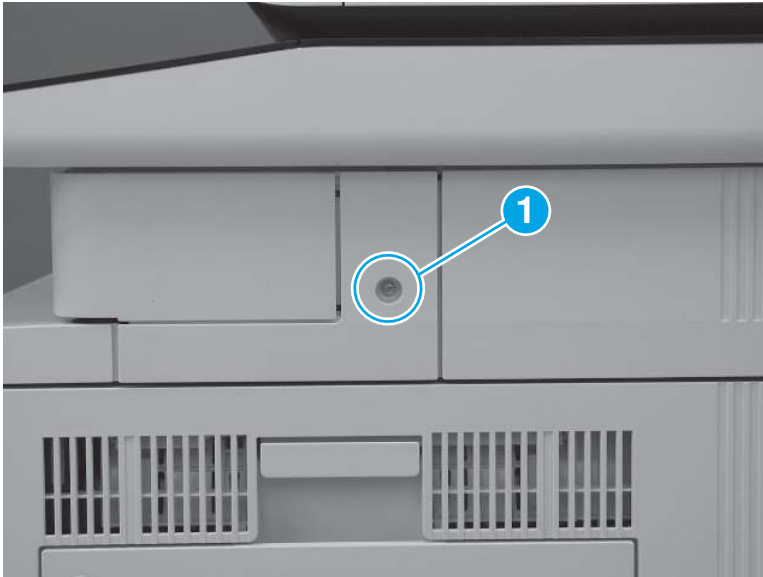
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-865 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-866 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-867 Release the back edge of the cover




4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-868 Remove the cover



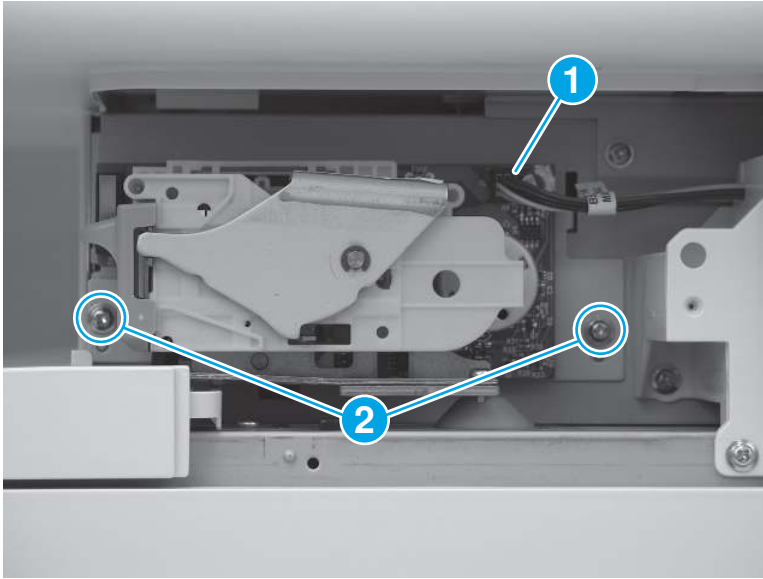
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

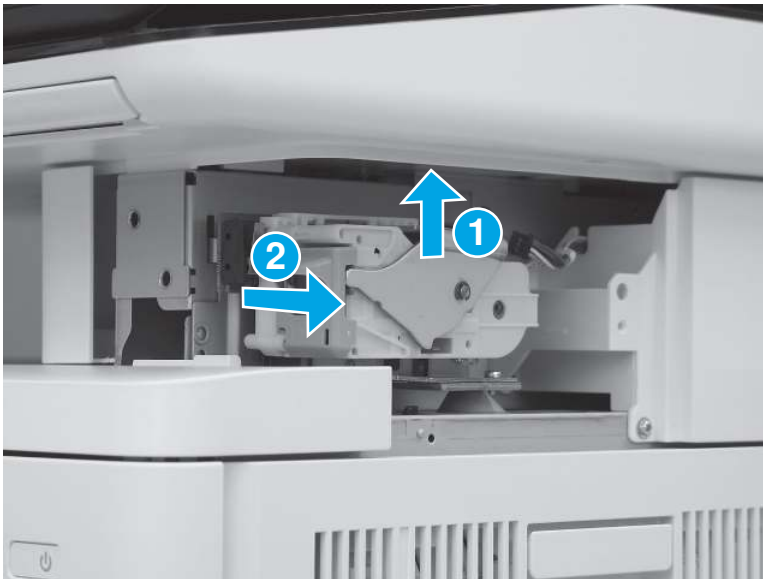
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-869 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-870 Remove the stapler unit



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DC controller (DCC)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller (DCC).



[View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the DC controller.](#)


Mean time to repair: 30 minutes


Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and eMMC PCA or hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-58 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7450-000CN	DC controller (M552, M553, E55040)
RM3-7451-000CN	DC controller (M577, E57540)
RM3-8465-000CN	DC controller (M554, M555)
RM3-8468-000CN	DC controller (M578)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the DC controller are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

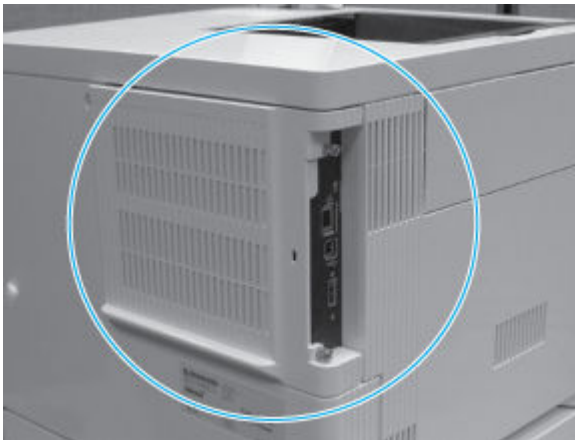
Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-871 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


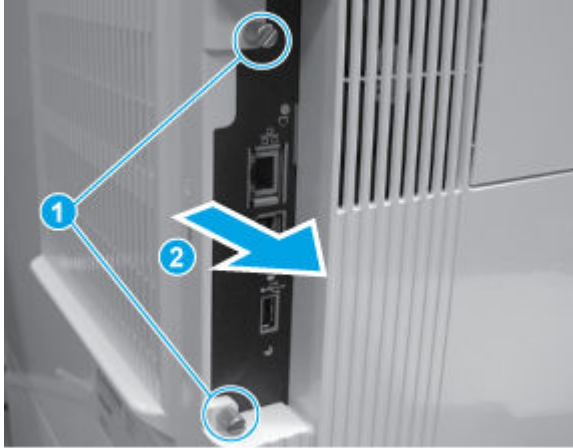
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-872 Loosen the thumbscrews



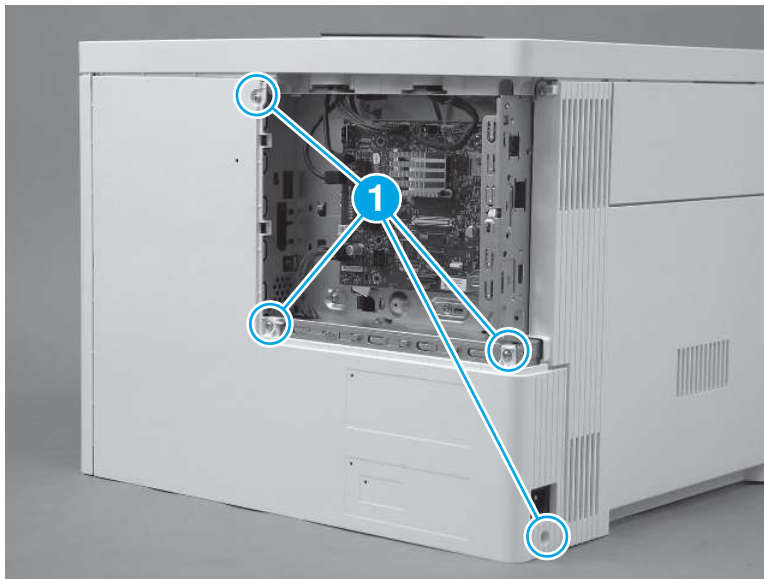
2. Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

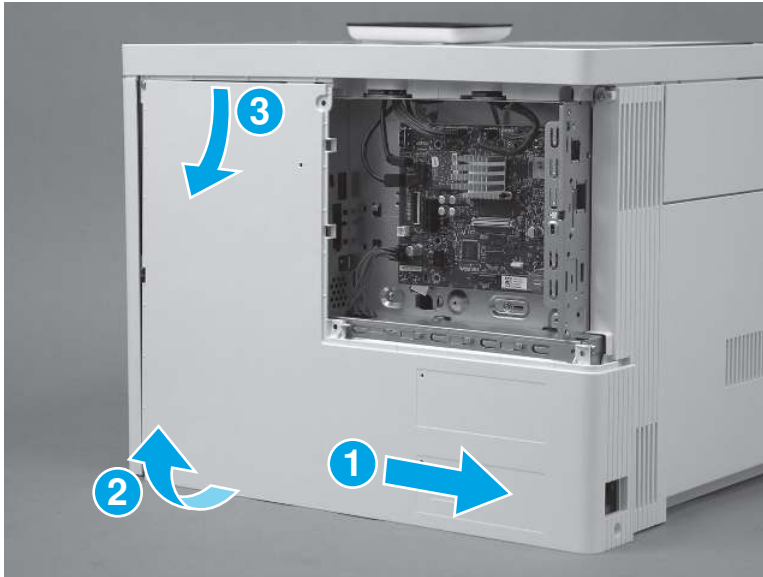
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-873 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-874 Remove the cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).


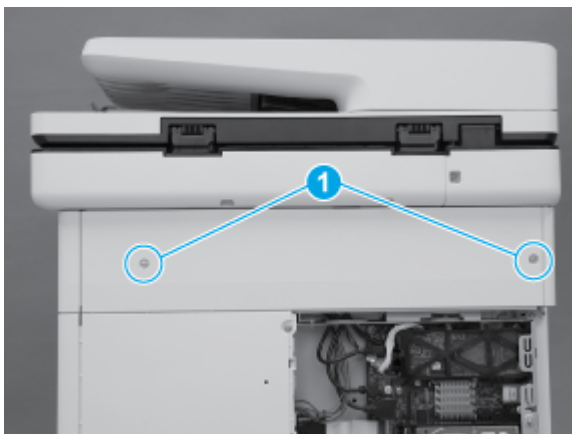
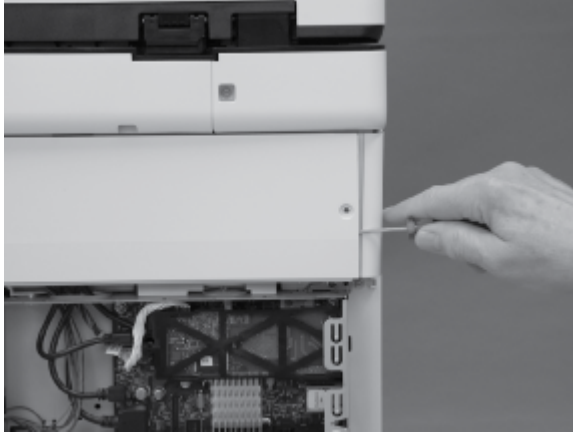
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-875 Remove two screws



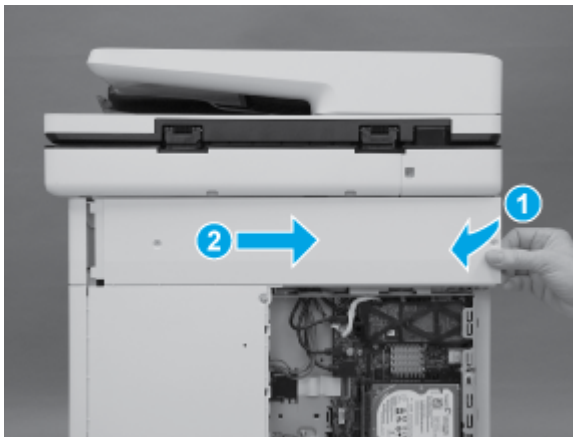
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-876 Release the right edge



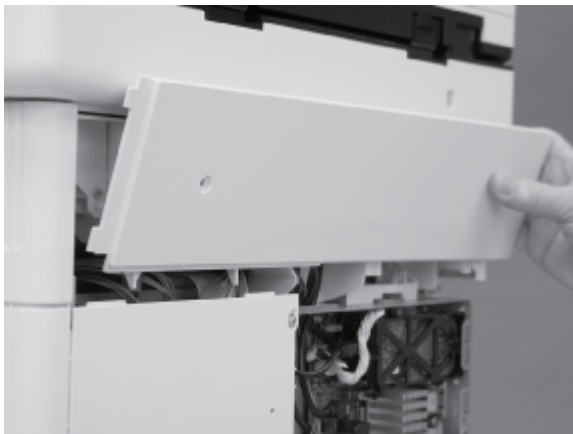
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-877 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-878 Remove the cover



4. Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-879 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-880 Remove the cover



5. Remove the DC controller

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller.

1. Disconnect 18 connectors on the DC controller. The flat cables will be disconnected in the next step.

The following connectors are empty:

- J140, J141, and J143


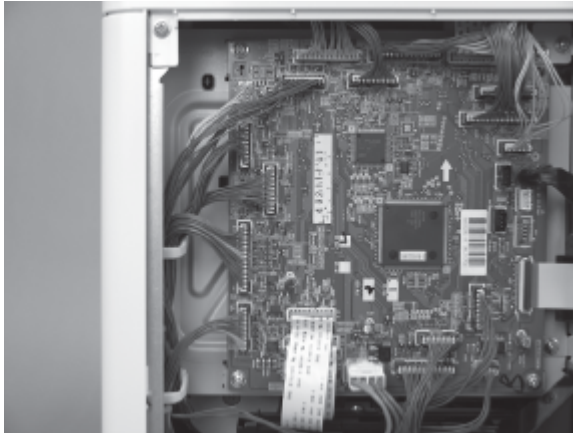
 **Reinstallation tip:** For DCC replacement installation: Refer to the installation guide included in the box with a replacement DC controller. Because of manufacturing changes, there is an additional connector that must be connected or terminated depending on printer model.

Figure 5-881 Disconnect 18 connectors



2. Disconnect five flat cables.


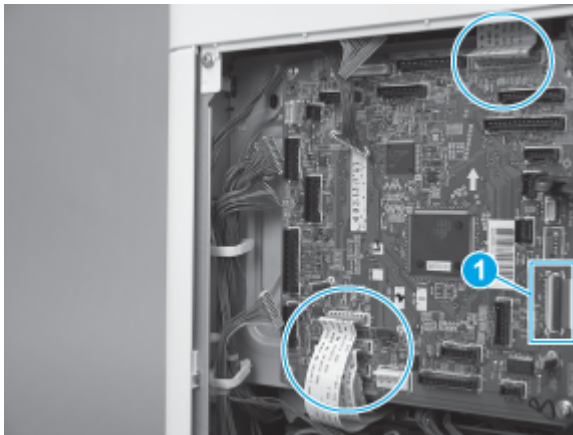
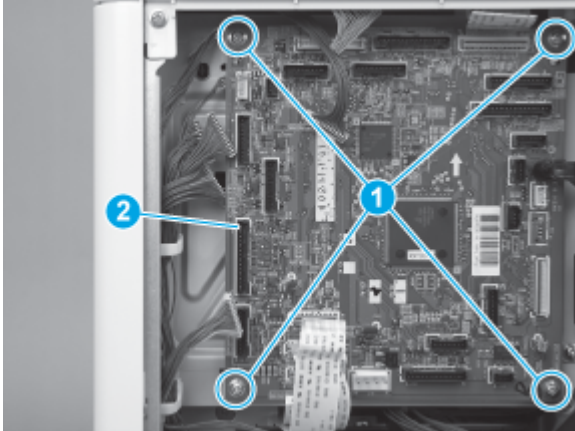
 **IMPORTANT:** One of the flat-cable connectors (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-882 Disconnect the flat cables



3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the DC controller (callout 2).

Figure 5-883 Remove the DC controller



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Delivery assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the delivery assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-59 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0092-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (M553n)
RM2-0016-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (M552dn, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040dw, E55040dn, M577, M578, E57540)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

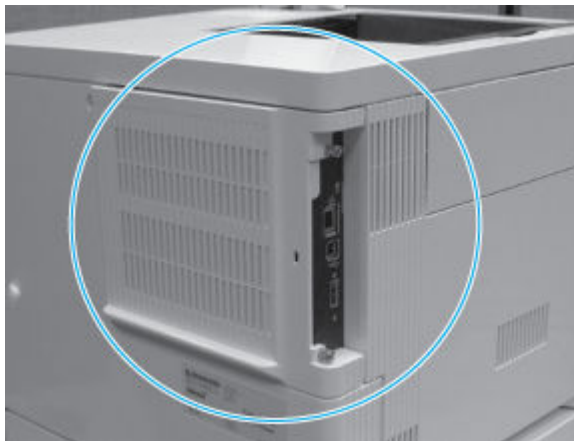
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

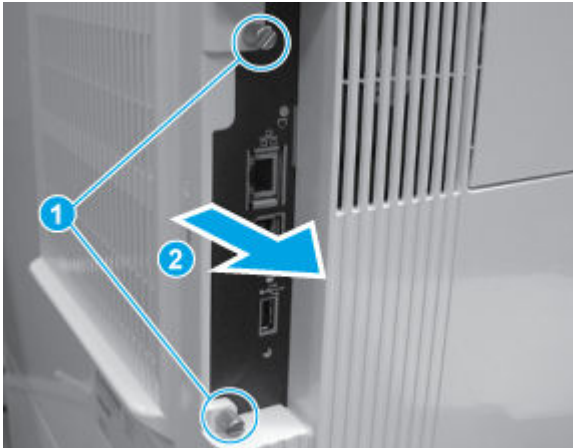
Figure 5-884 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-885 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-886 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-887 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-888 Remove the TCU



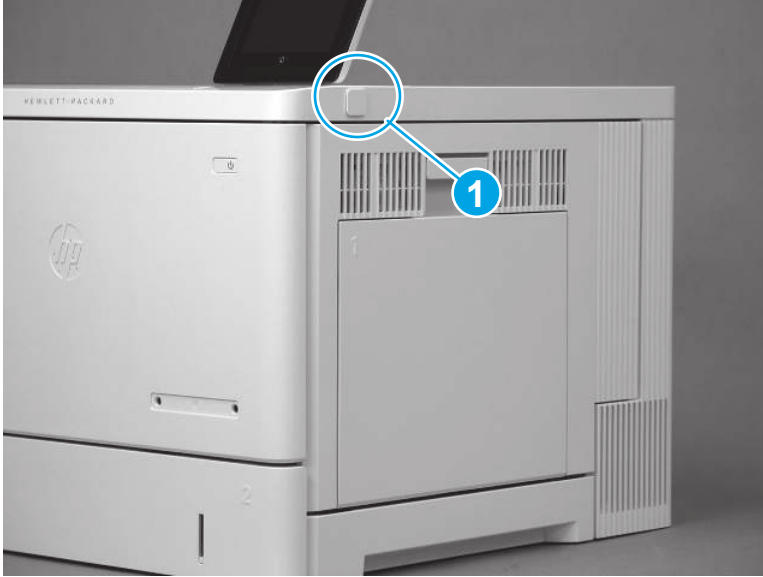
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

📝 NOTE: This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-889 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-890 Remove the cover



Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

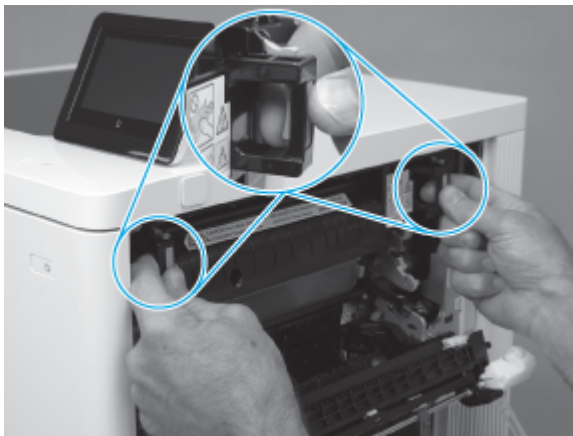
⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the printer power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

Figure 5-891 Open the right door



2. Grasp the two fuser handles, and then squeeze the two blue triggers on the handles to release the fuser.

Figure 5-892 Release the fuser



3. Slide the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-893 Remove the fuser

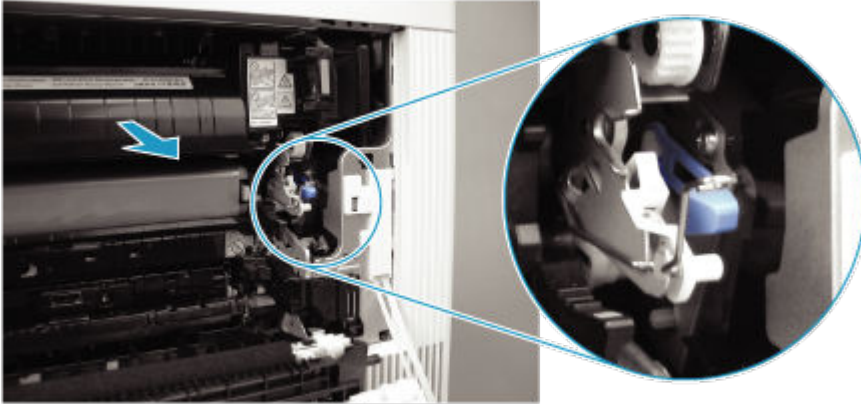


Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

1. Pull the blue lever to release the ITB drive coupling.

Figure 5-894 Release the ITB drive coupling



2. Push in on the blue arm to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then completely lower the assembly.


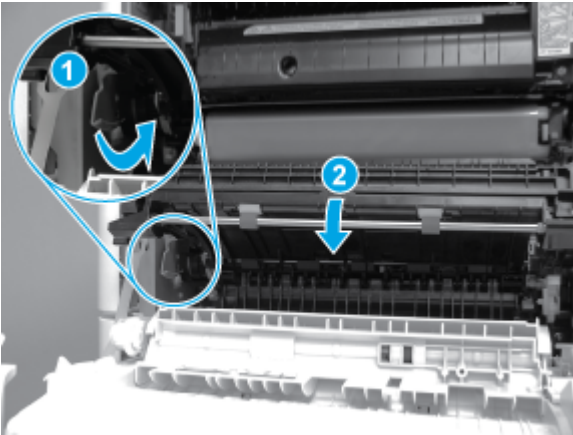
 **NOTE:** Press the blue arm on the secondary transfer roller assembly a second time to release the roller assembly when it stops at the halfway open position.

Figure 5-895 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



3. Release the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).


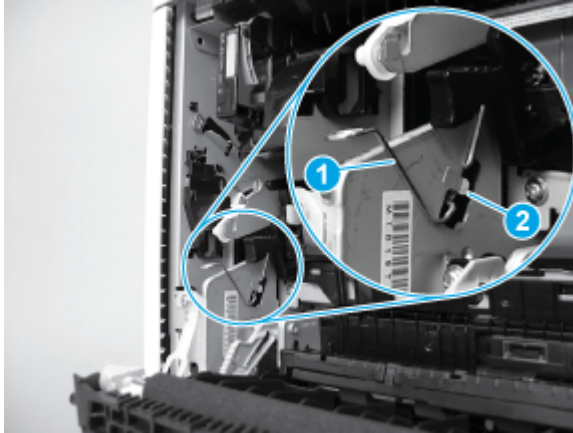

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-896 Release the front-side ITB spring

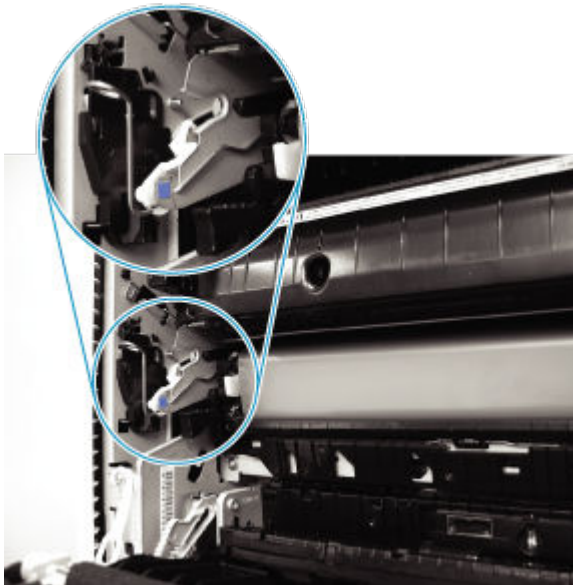


4. Place the left-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

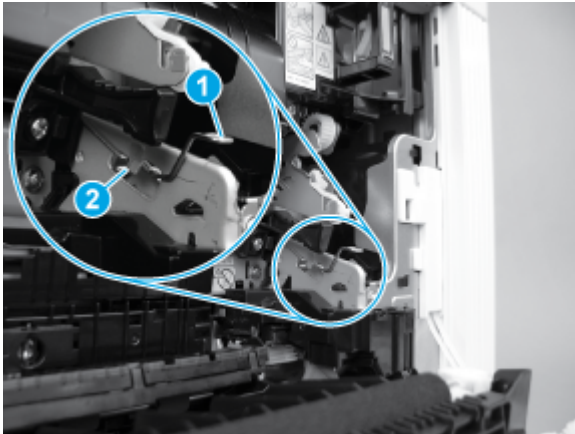
 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-897 Place the spring on the holder



5. Release the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).

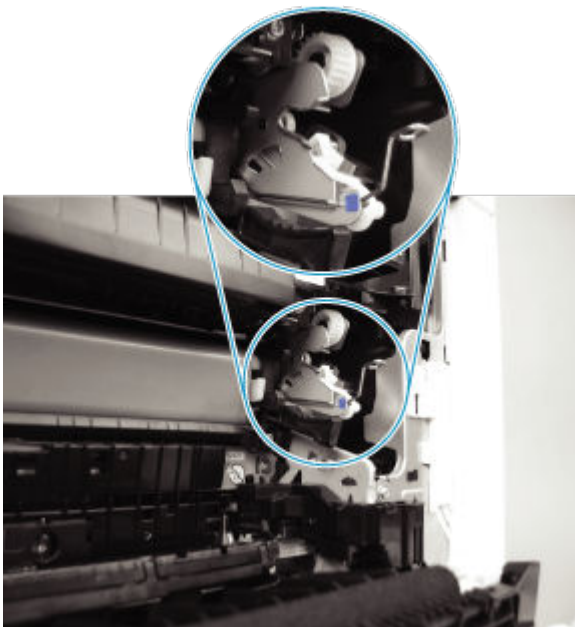
Figure 5-898 Release the rear-side ITB spring



6. Place the right-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-899 Place the spring on the holder



7. Grasp the two blue handles on the ITB.


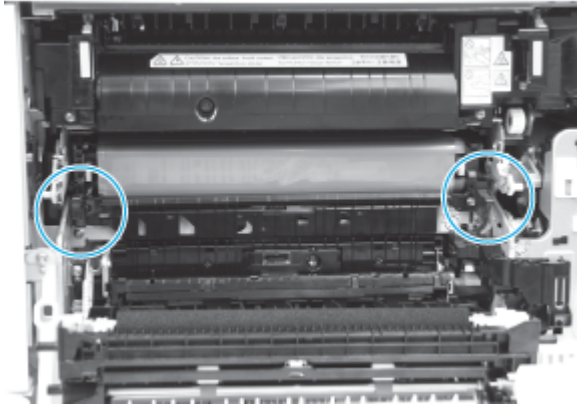
 **CAUTION:** If the ITB is removed to access other assemblies in the printer, use care. The ITB is a sensitive assembly. Be careful when handling the ITB so that it is not damaged. Always place the ITB in a safe and protected location.

Figure 5-900 Grasp the ITB handles



8. Pull the ITB out of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: Do not touch the grey-plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 5-901 Remove the ITB



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

NOTE: This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-902 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-903 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-904 Remove the cover

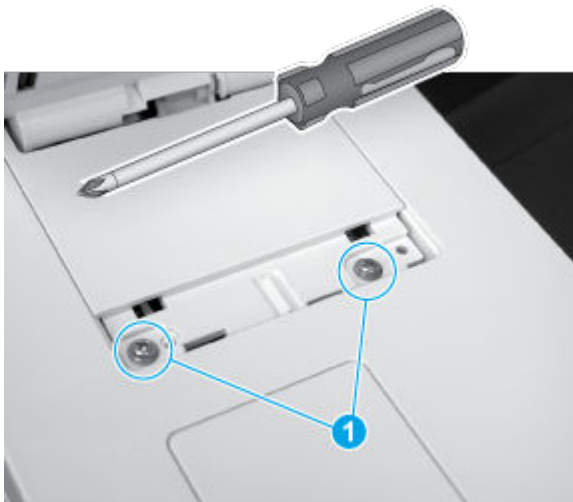


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-905 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

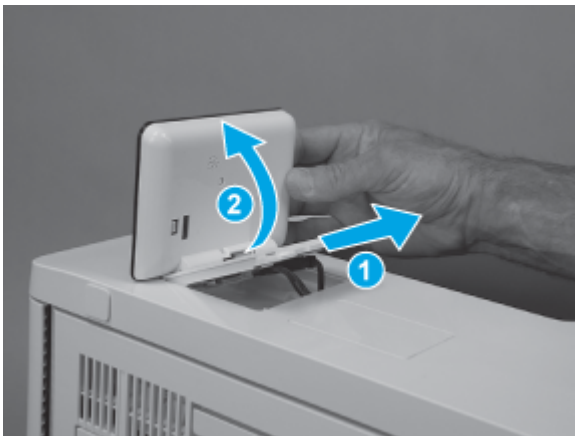
Figure 5-906 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

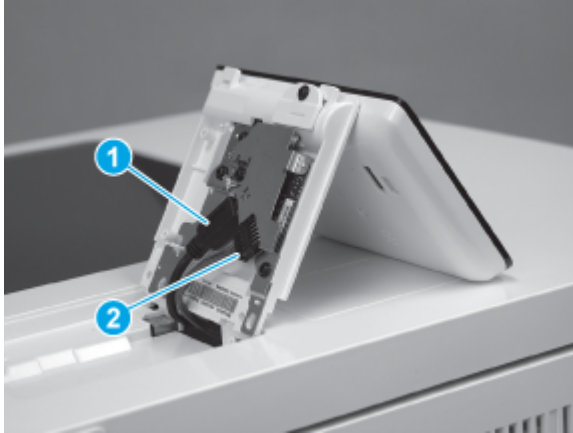
Figure 5-907 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.

📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-908 Disconnect two connectors



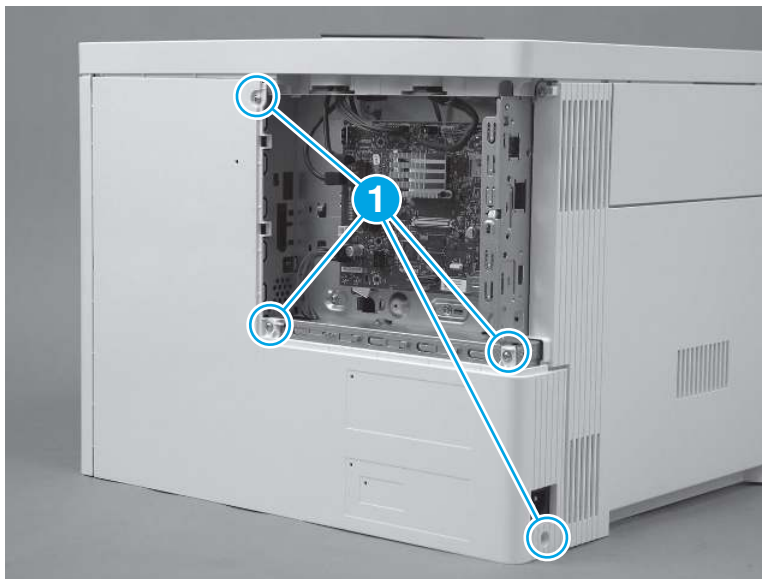
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

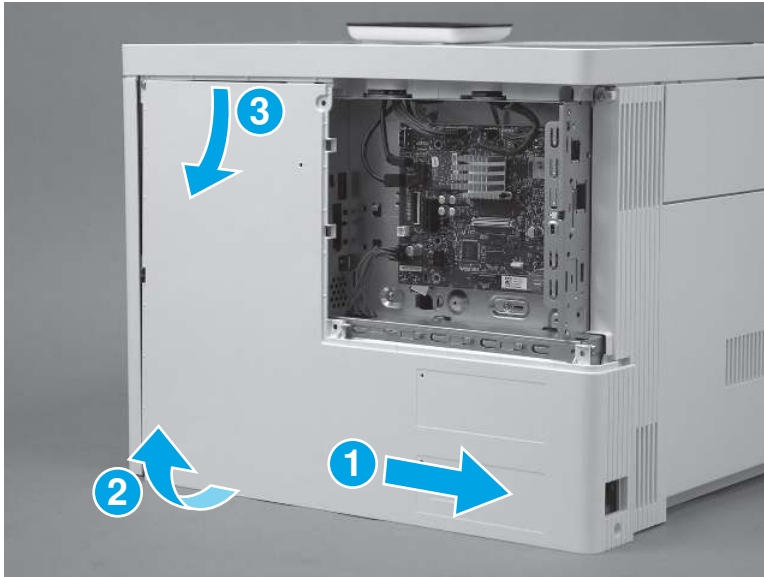
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-909 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-910 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

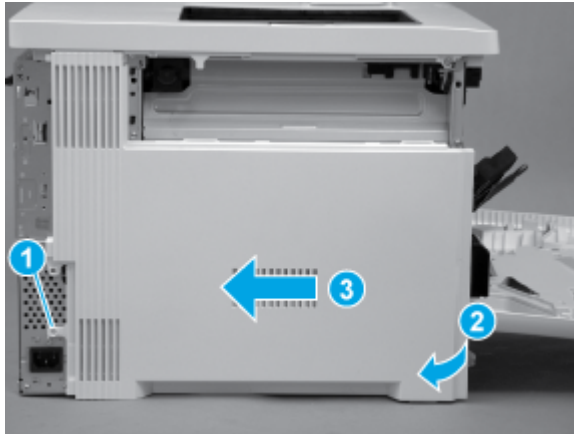
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-911 Remove one screw



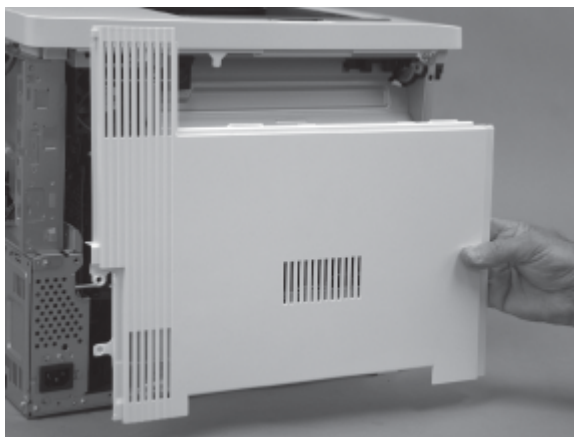
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-912 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-913 Remove the cover



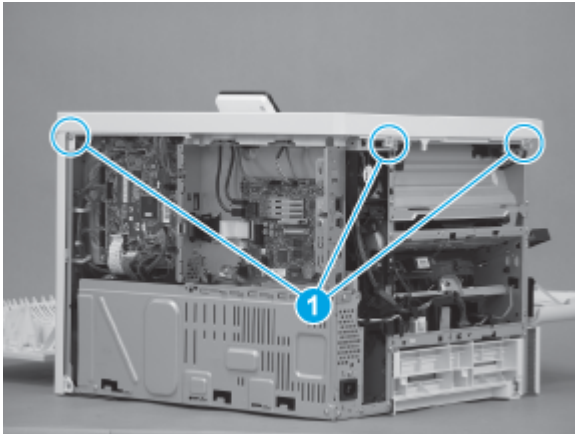
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-914 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.


 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-915 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


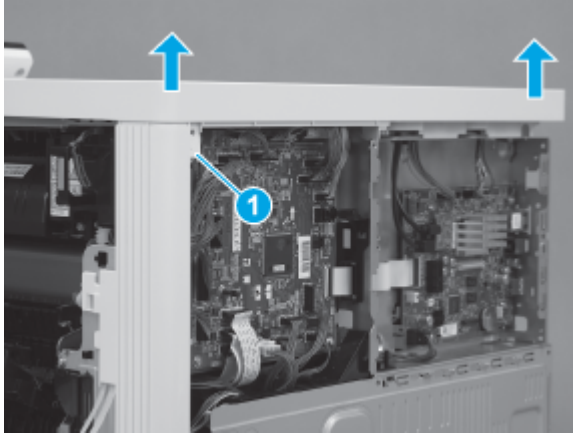
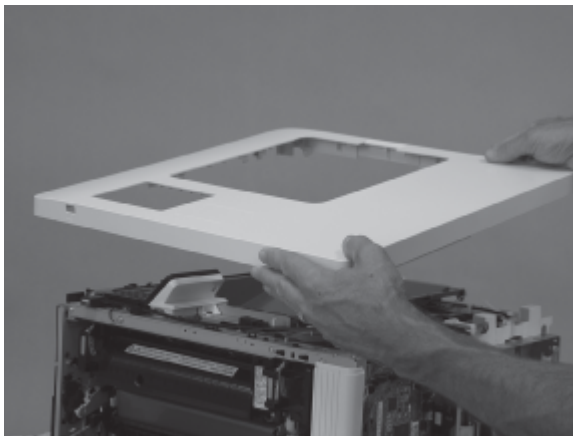
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-916 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-917 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel

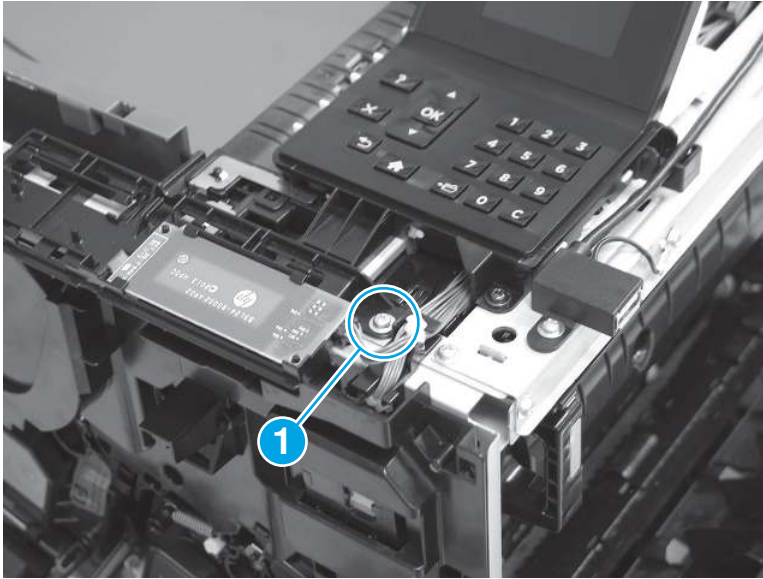
Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M552dn/M553n/dn/M554 printers only.

The figures in this procedure show the M552/M553 printer. The M554 control panel looks slightly different than shown below. However, removing the control panel is similar to the following procedure.

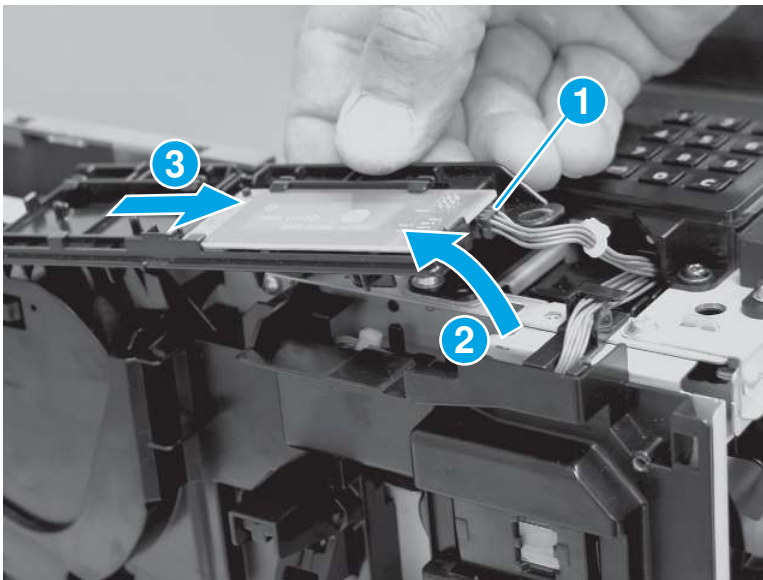
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-918 Remove one screw



2. **M552/M553:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1). Rotate the near field communication (NFC) PCA holder up (callout 2), and then slide it to the right (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 5-919 Remove the PCA holder



3. **M552/M553:** Remove one cable from the guide.

Figure 5-920 Remove one cable

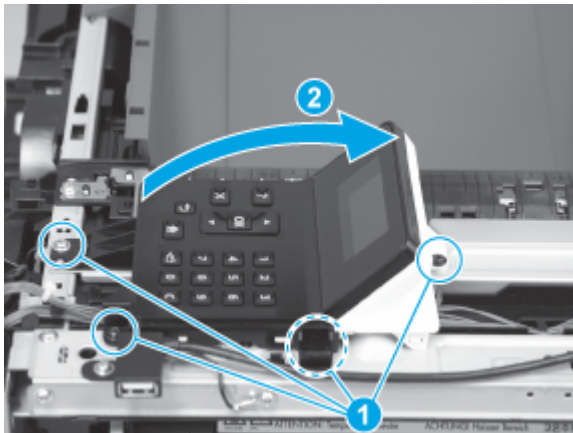


4. **M552/M553:** Remove four screws (callout 1), and then turn the control panel over (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** **M554:** Remove any screws fastening the assembly to the printer chassis, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

 **CAUTION:** The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-921 Remove four screws



5. **M552/M553:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the control panel.


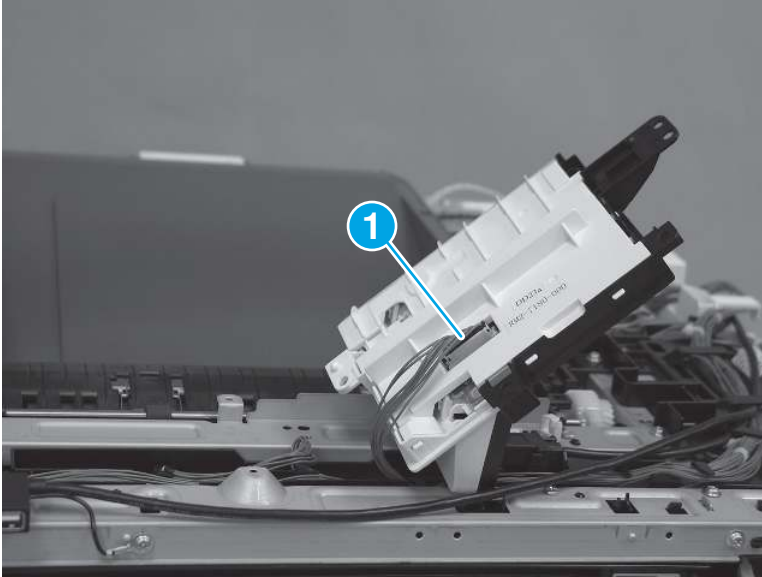
 **NOTE:** **M554:** Disconnect one flat cable, and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-922 Remove the control panel



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

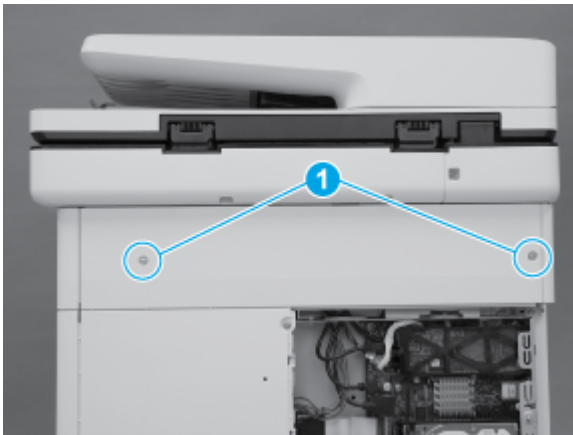
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

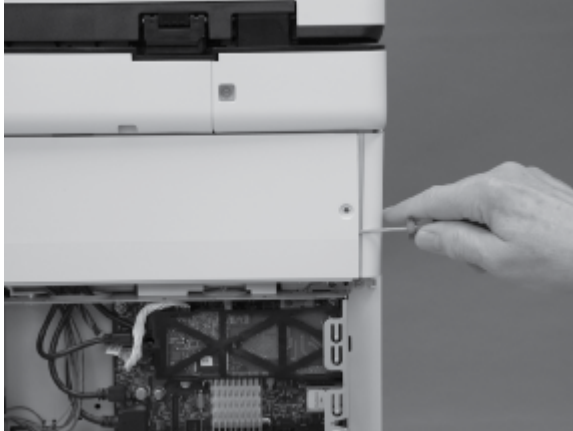
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-923 Remove two screws



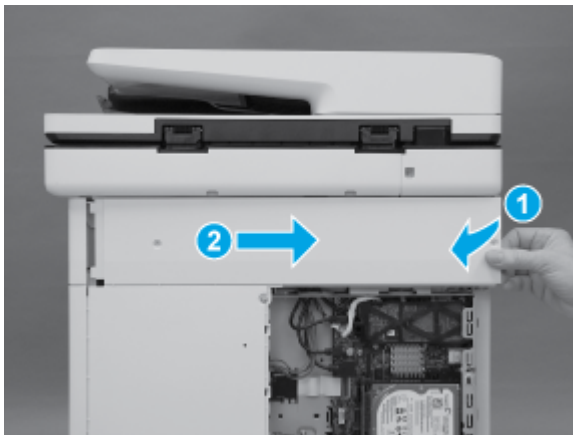
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-924 Release the right edge



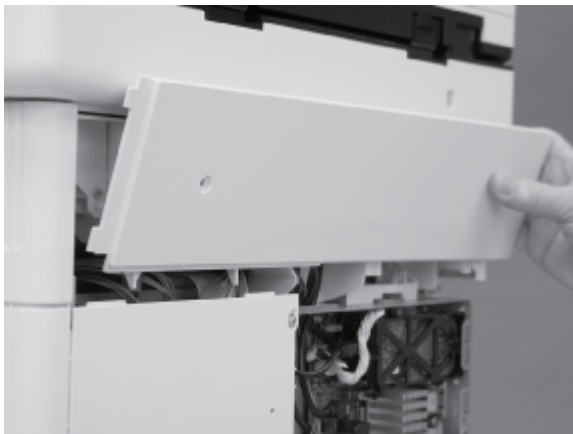
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-925 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-926 Remove the cover



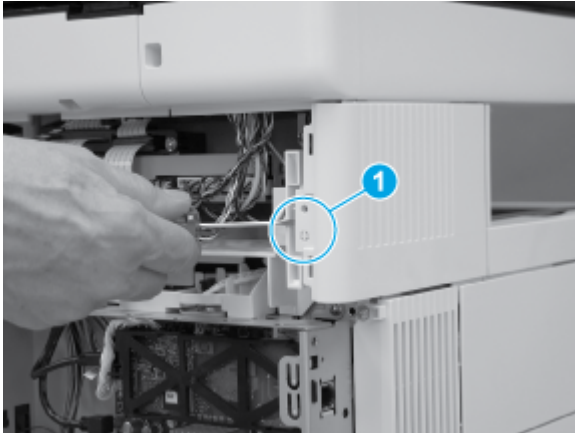
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-927 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-928 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-929 Remove the left upper cover



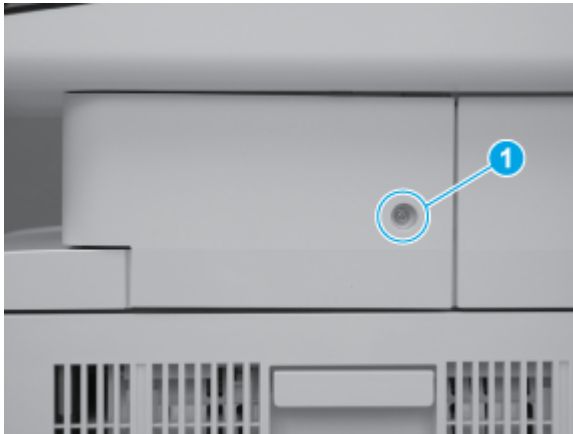
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-930 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-931 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-932 Rotate the cover



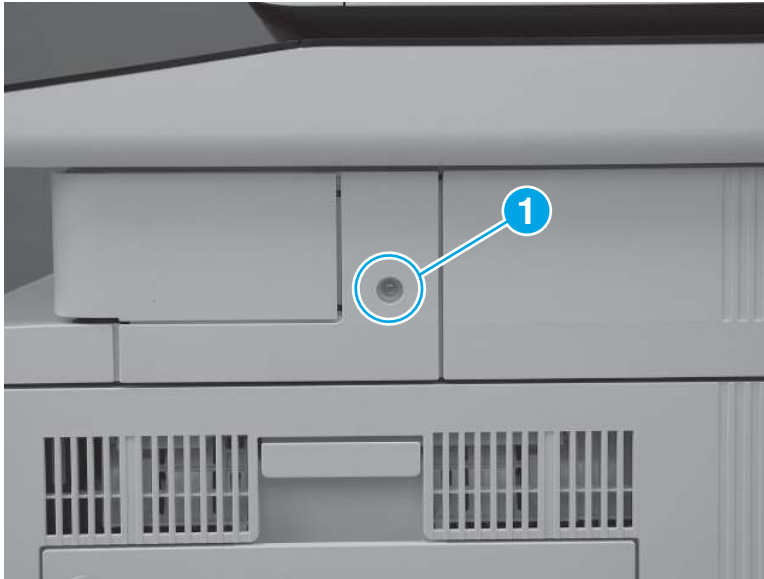
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-933 Remove one screw



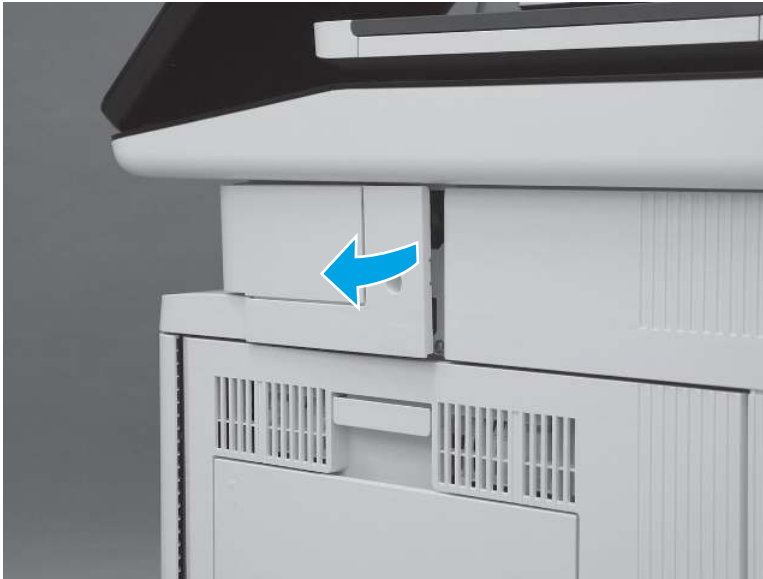
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-934 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-935 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-936 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

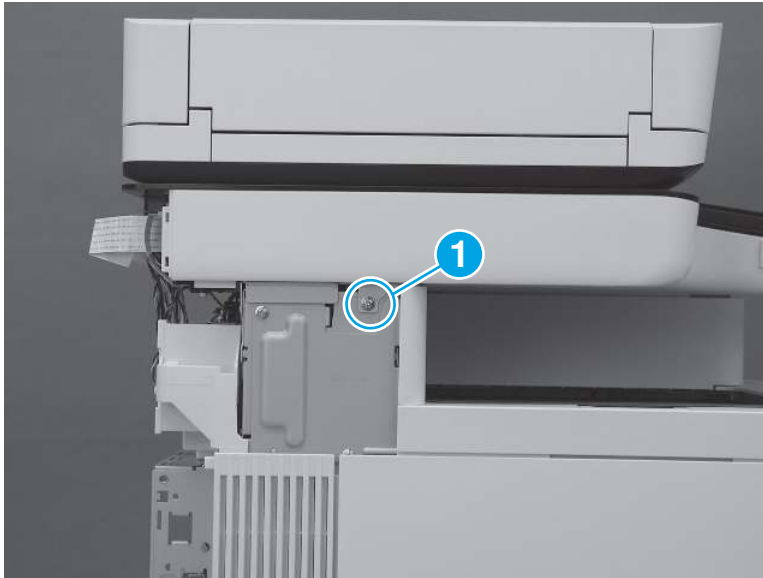
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

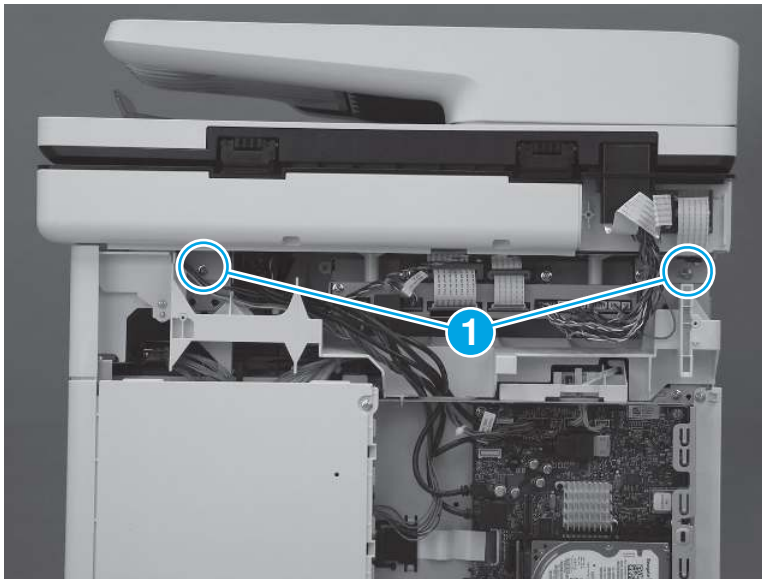
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-937 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

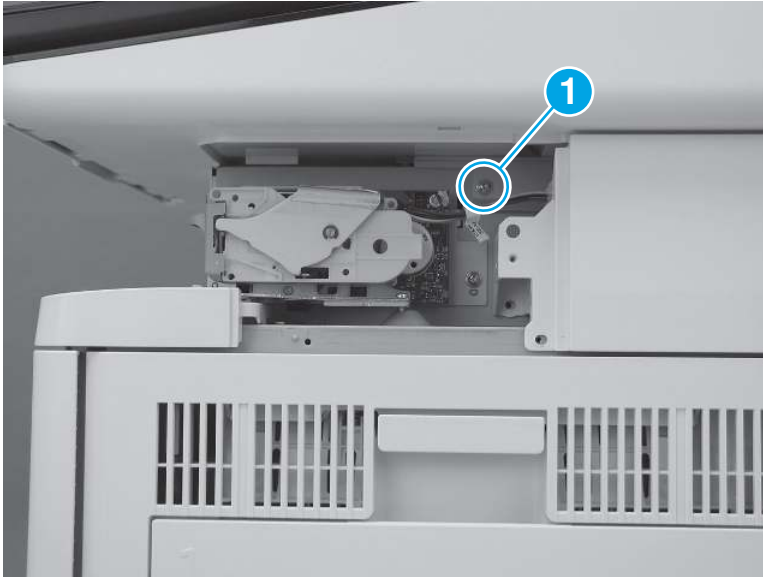
Figure 5-938 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

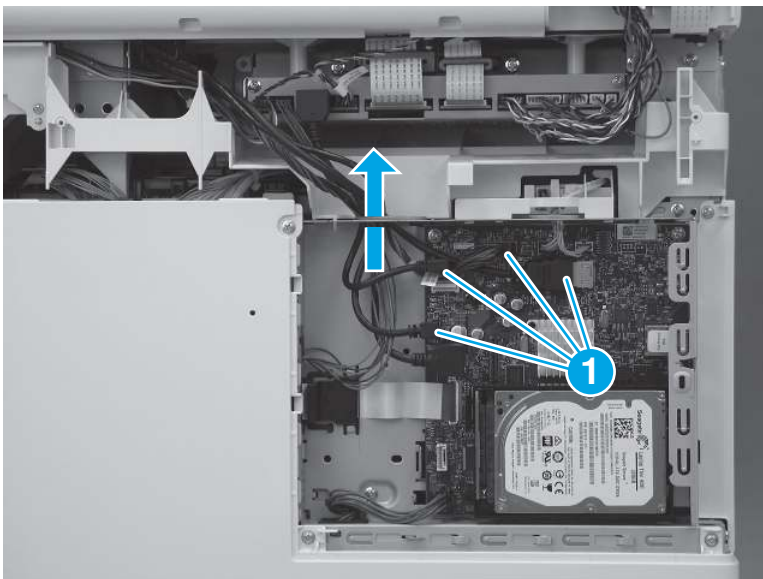
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-939 Remove one screw



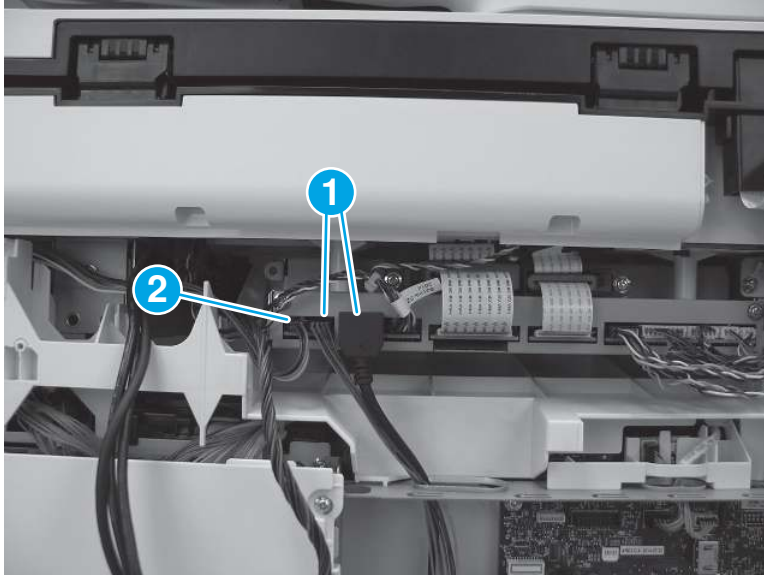
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-940 Disconnect cables and connectors



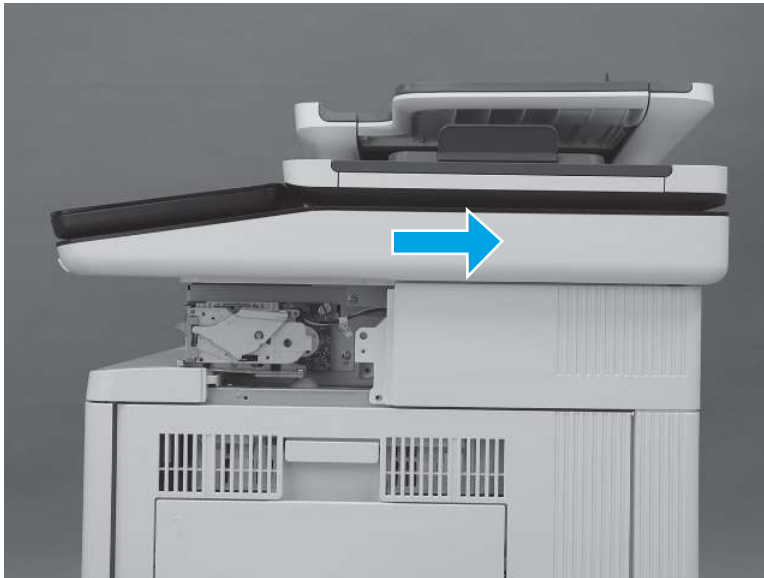
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-941 Disconnect connectors



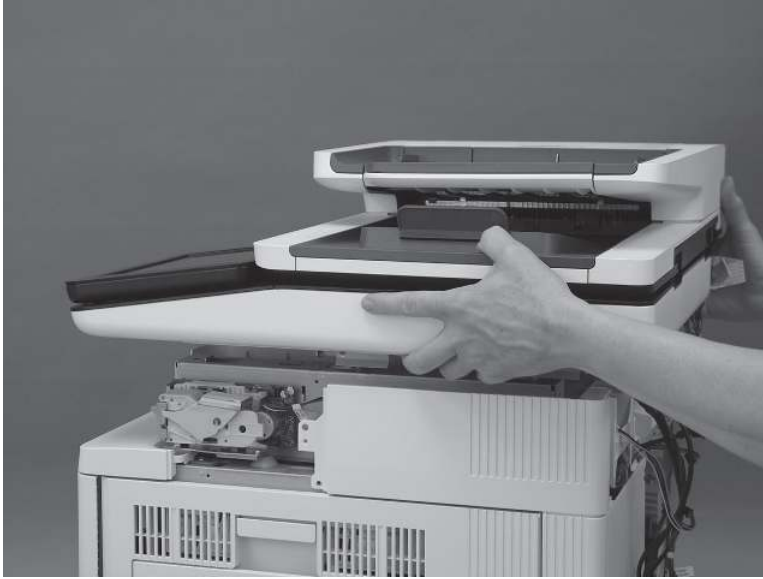
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-942 Release the image scanner




7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-943 Remove the ISA



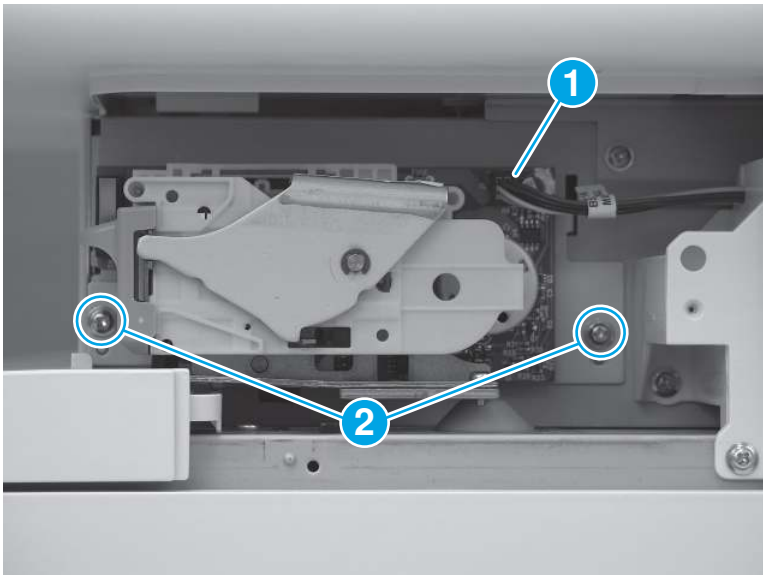
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

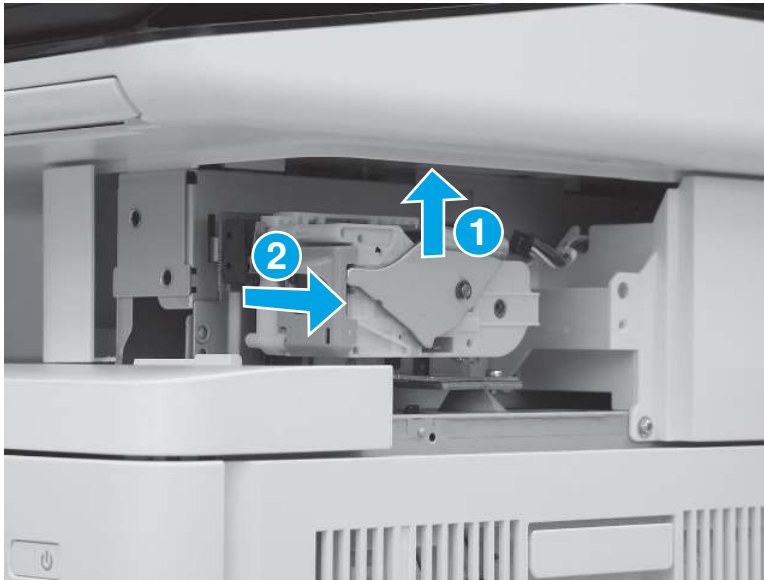
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-944 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-945 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

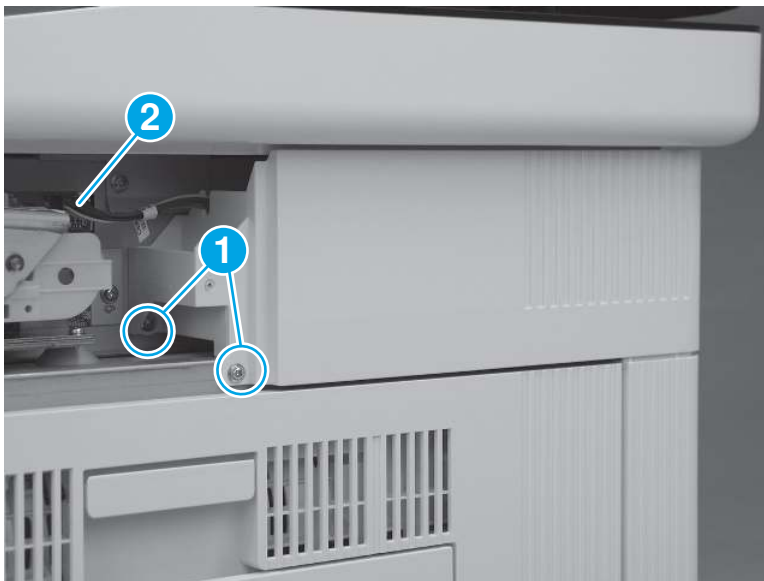
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-946 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


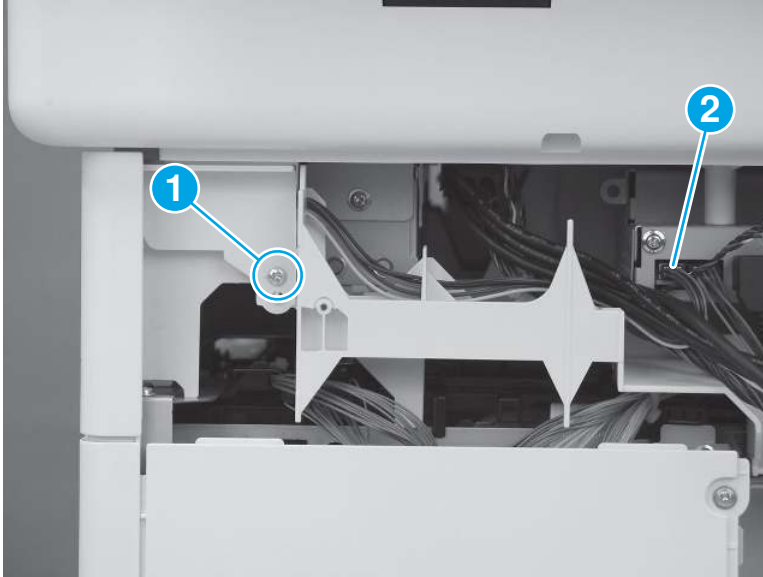
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-947 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

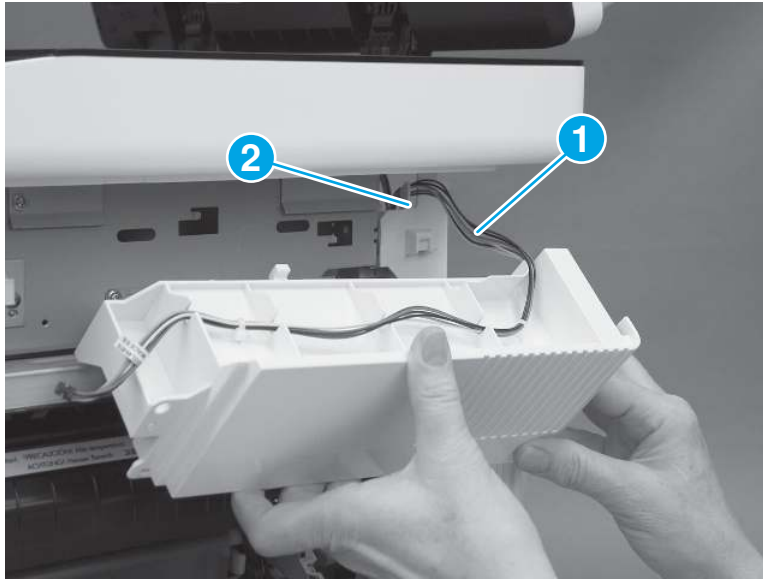
Figure 5-948 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-949 Remove the cover



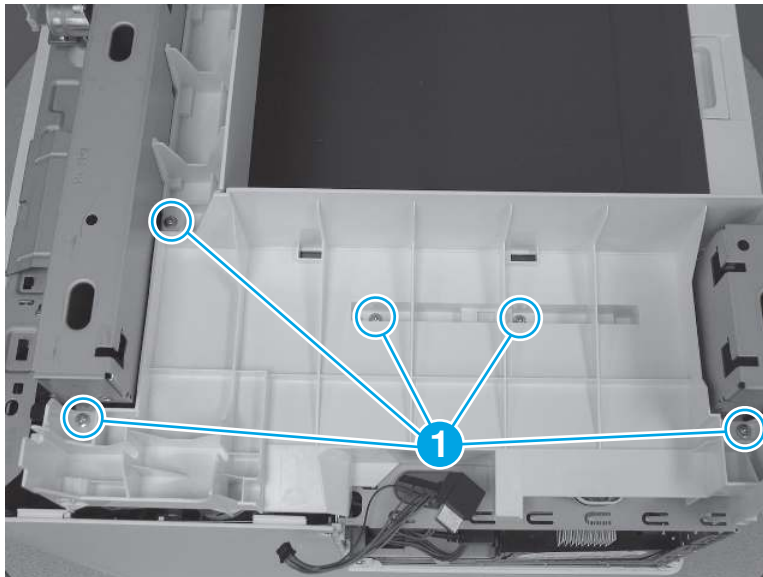
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

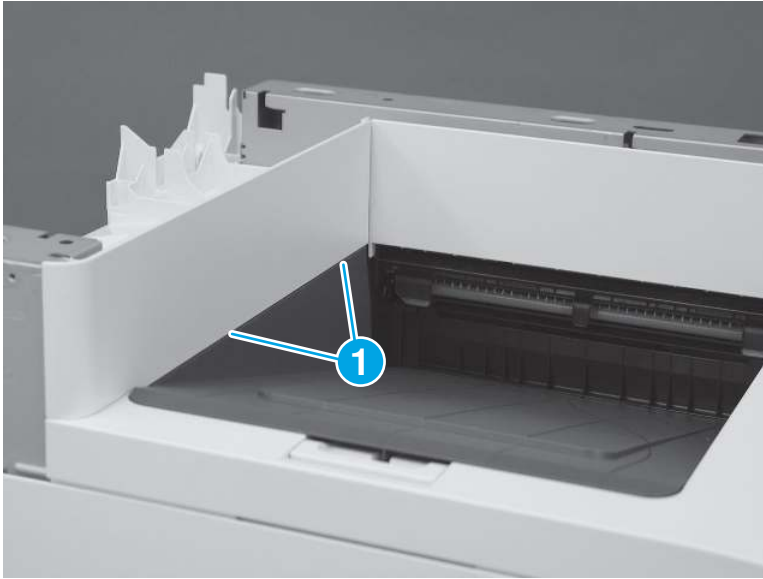
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-950 Remove five screws



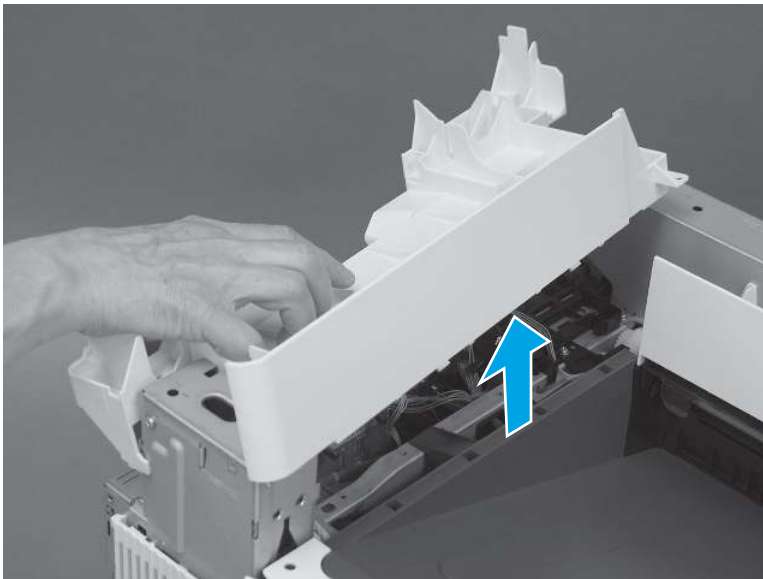
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-951 Release two tabs




3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-952 Remove the cover



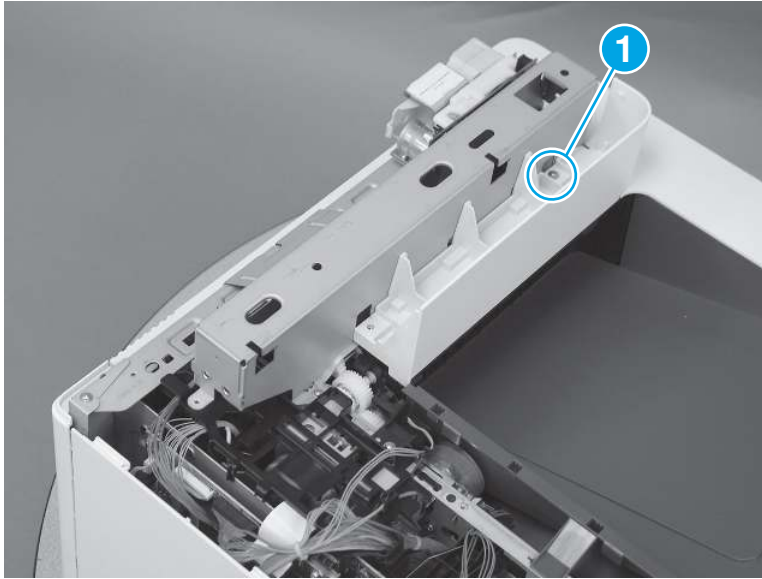
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

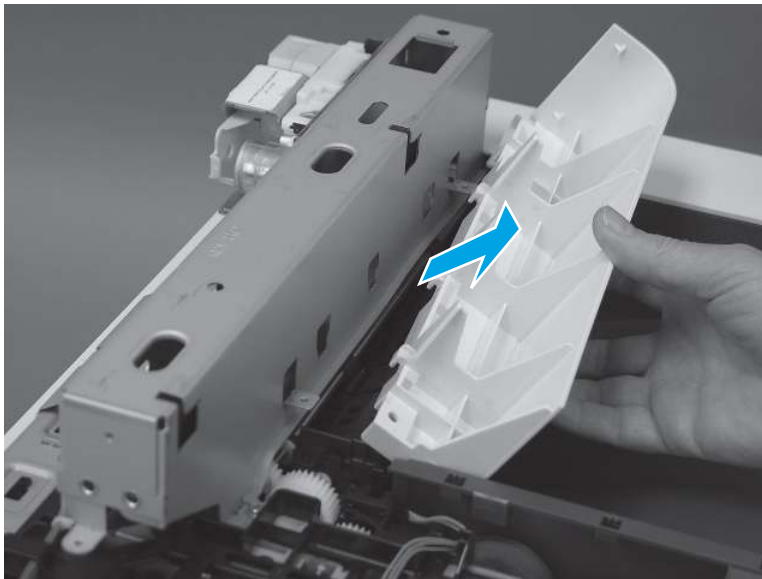
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-953 Remove one screw




2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-954 Remove the cover



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


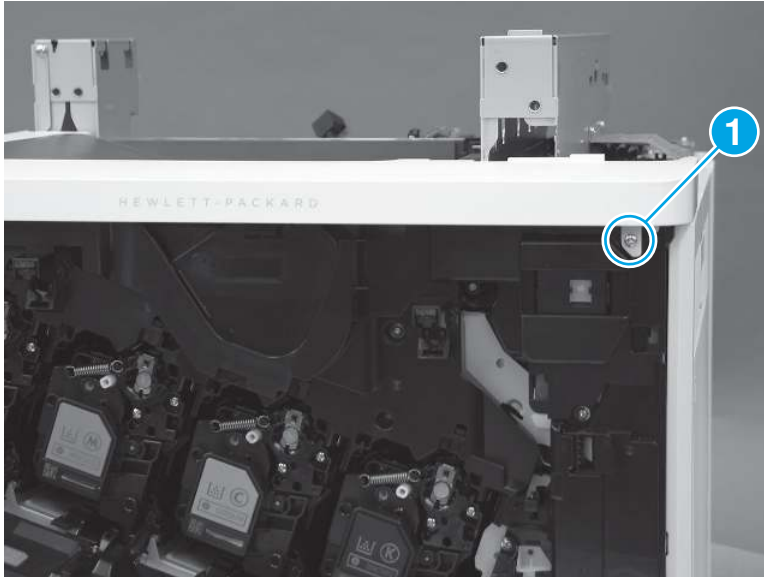
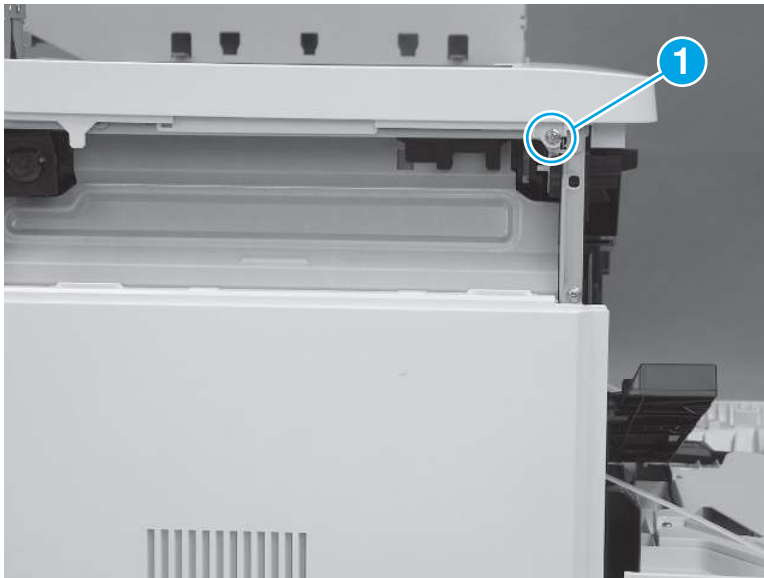
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-955 Remove one screw



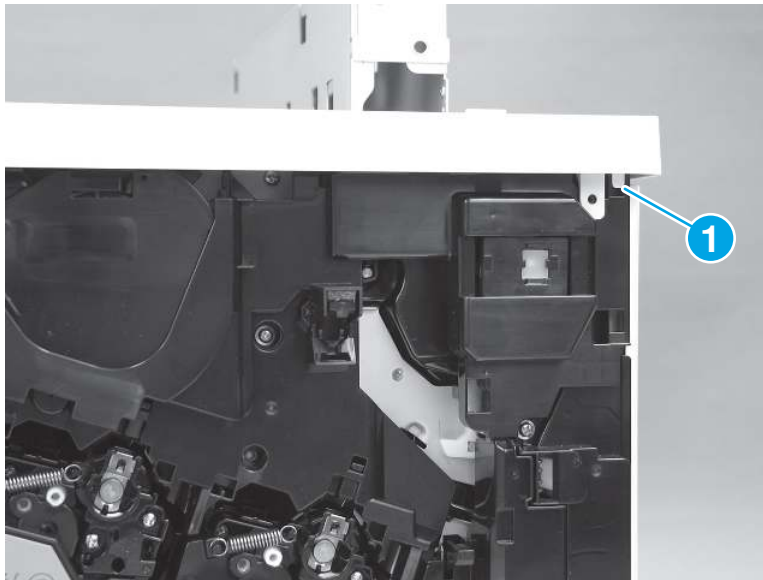
2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-956 Remove one screw



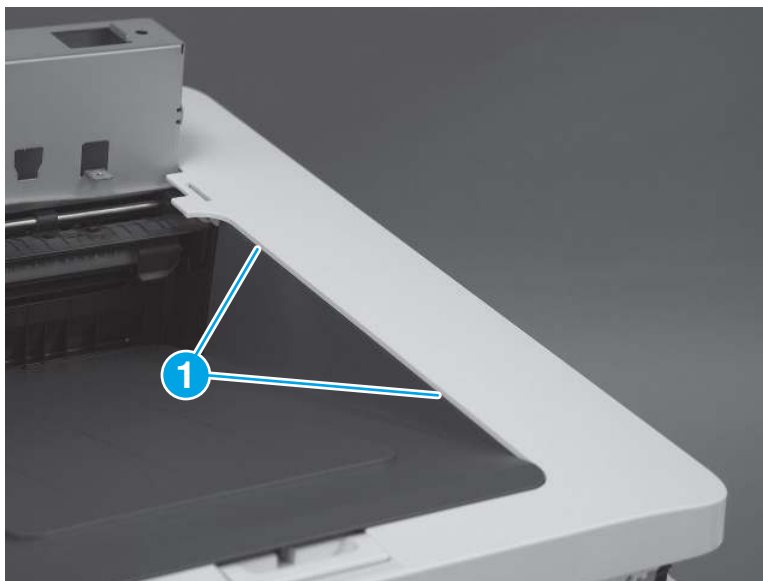
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-957 Release one tab




4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-958 Remove the cover



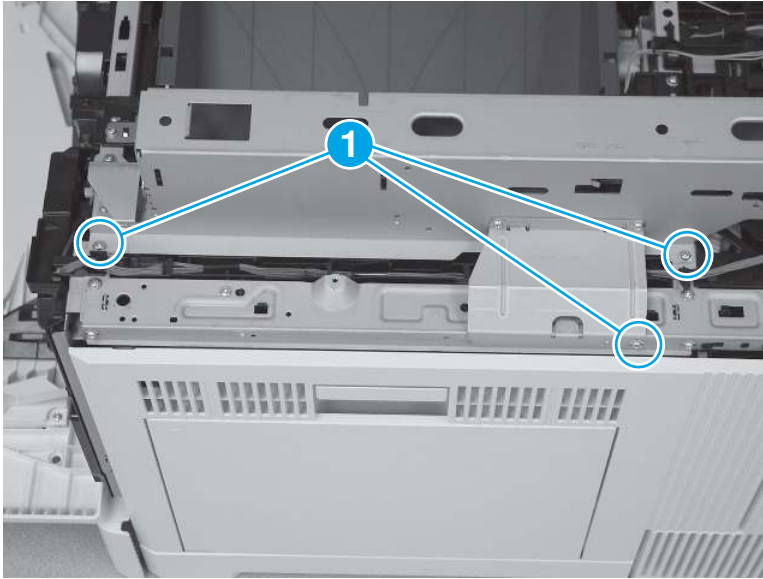
Remove the top bracket (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top bracket.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

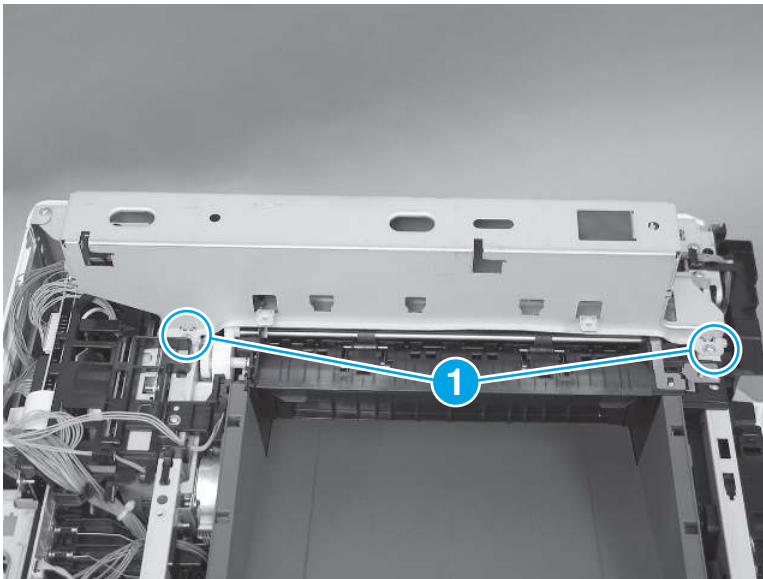
1. At the top of the printer, remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-959 Remove three screws



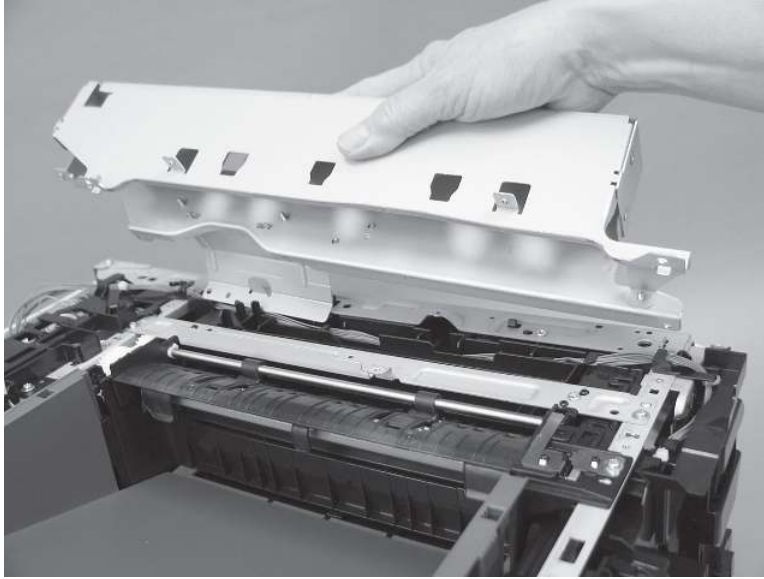
2. At the top of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-960 Remove two screws



3. Lift the top bracket up to remove it.

Figure 5-961 Remove the bracket

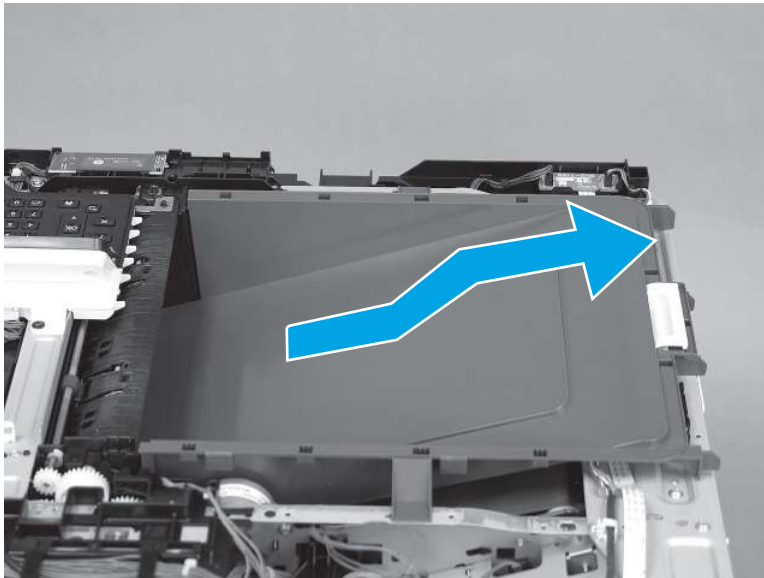


Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

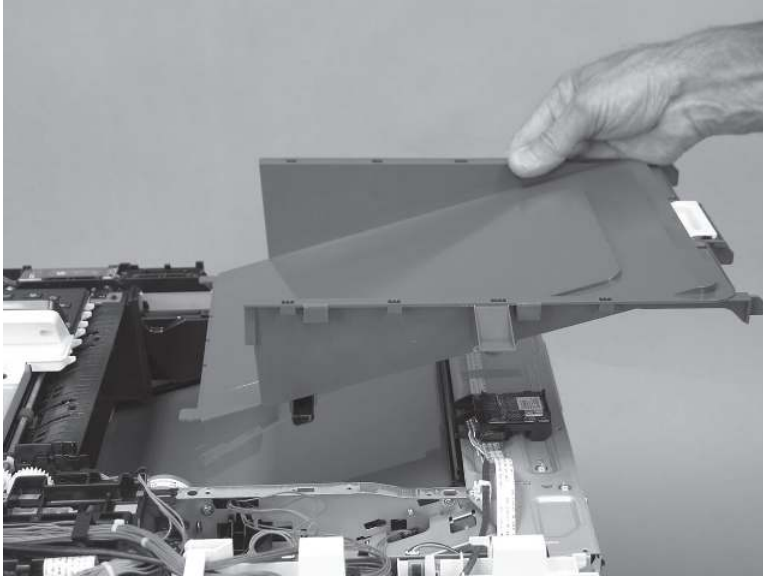
1. Slightly slide and lift the cover to release it.

Figure 5-962 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-963 Remove the cover



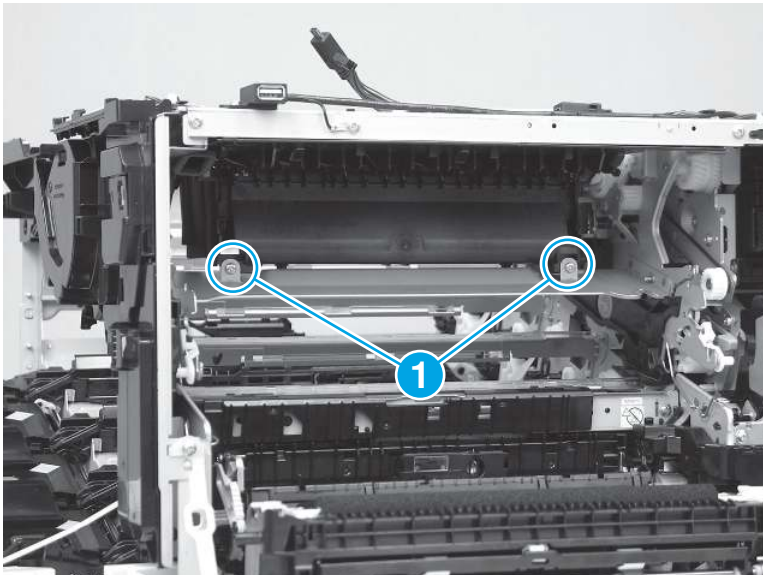
Remove the delivery assembly

Follow these steps to remove the delivery assembly.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

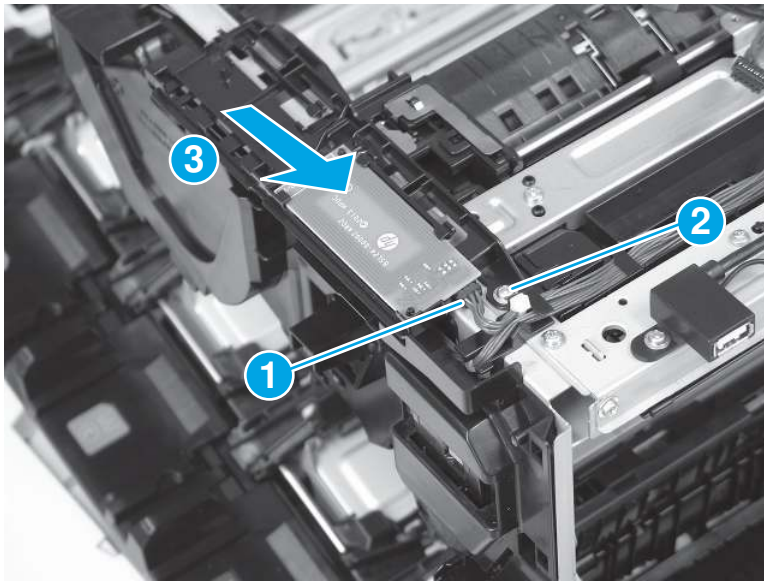
 **NOTE:** These two screws are the self-tapping type.

Figure 5-964 Remove two screws



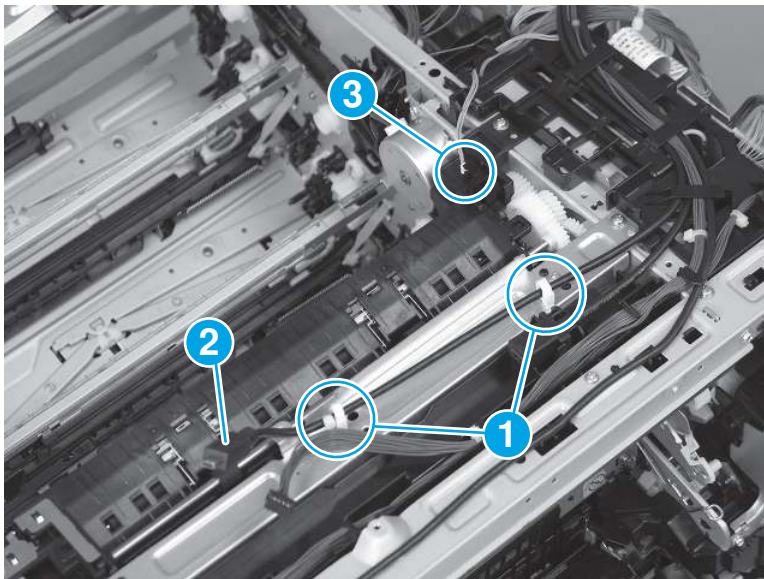
2. (M553x/M555/E55040): At the top-front-right corner of the printer, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the near field communication (NFC) PCA and holder by sliding them to the right (callout 3).

Figure 5-965 Remove the NFC



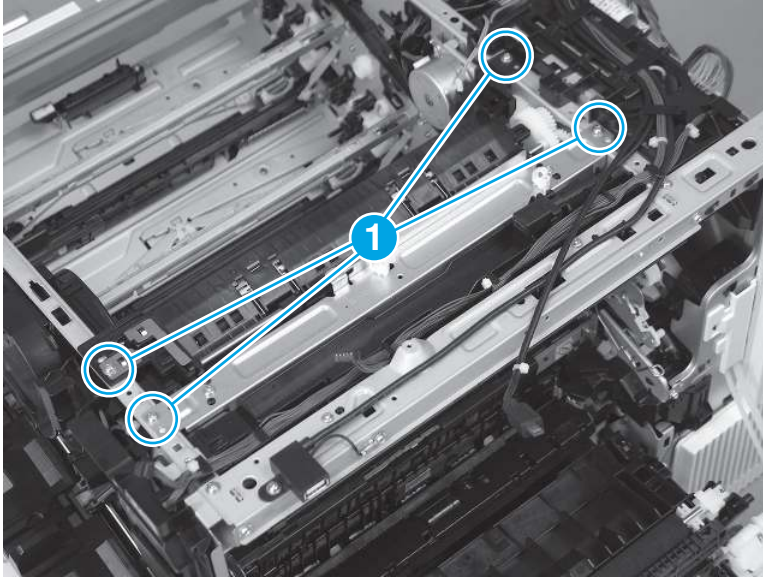
3. Release two retainers (callout 1), remove the USB cable (callout 2) from the retainers, and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

Figure 5-966 Release two retainers and disconnect one connector



4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-967 Remove four screws



5. Remove the delivery assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: The solenoid plunger and arm (callout 1) located on the right side of the assembly are not captive.

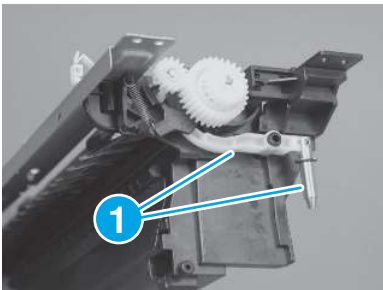
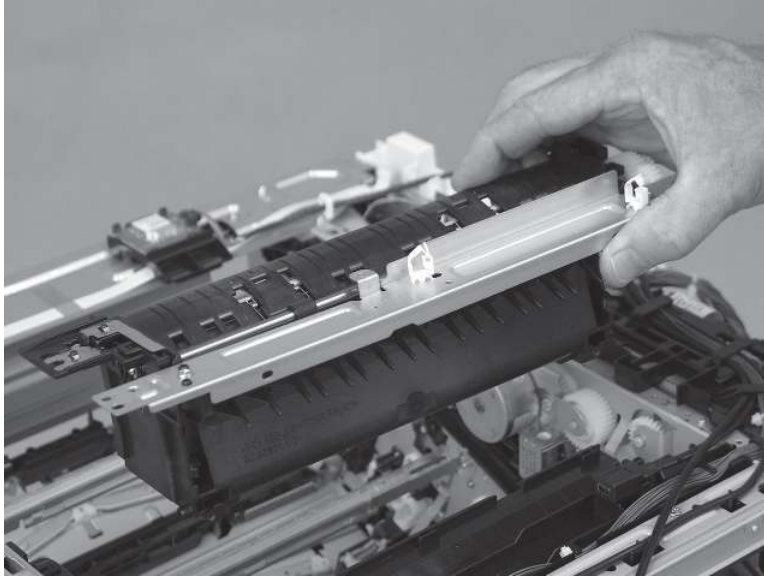


Figure 5-968 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the SFP formatter.



Mean time to repair: 15 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: Under **NO** circumstances should a formatter from a different printer be installed during the repair or troubleshooting processes. The formatter stores important data specific to the model of printer it is installed in and is not designed to be swapped or re-purposed in any way. Return a used formatter to HP.

Issues that can occur from swapping a formatter include:

- Serial number, product number, product name, page count, and supported cartridges information change and might make a product unusable.
- 33.02.01 Used board/Disk installed errors.

If a used formatter is installed and causes this issue, the partner must cover the costs of the repair in the form of a product replacement. **There is no method in the field to recover a printer where a used formatter is installed.**

For more information, see [HP LaserJet Enterprise](#), [HP LaserJet Managed](#), [HP PageWide Enterprise](#), [HP PageWide Managed - 33.02.01 error or printer name and/or product number changes after replacing the formatter](#).

📌 IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and eMMC PCA or hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-60 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L23-67903	Formatter assembly M552dn
B5L23-67904	Formatter assembly M552dn China/India
B5L24-67909	Formatter assembly M553n, M553dn, M553dh
B5L24-67908	Formatter assembly M553n, M553dn, M553dh China/India
B5L26-67901	Formatter assembly M553x/E55040
B5L26-67902	Formatter assembly M553x/E55040 China/India
7ZU81-67903	Formatter assembly M554dn
7ZU81-67904	Formatter assembly M554dn China/India
7ZU78-67903	Formatter assembly M555dn
7ZU78-67904	Formatter assembly M555dn China/India

Table 5-60 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
7ZU79-67903	Formatter assembly M555x
7ZU79-67904	Formatter assembly M555x China/India

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

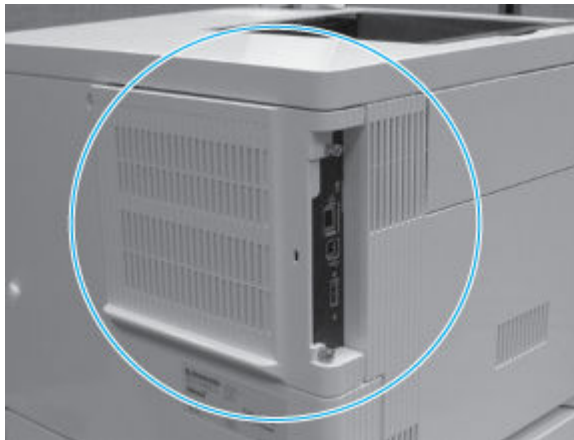
Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

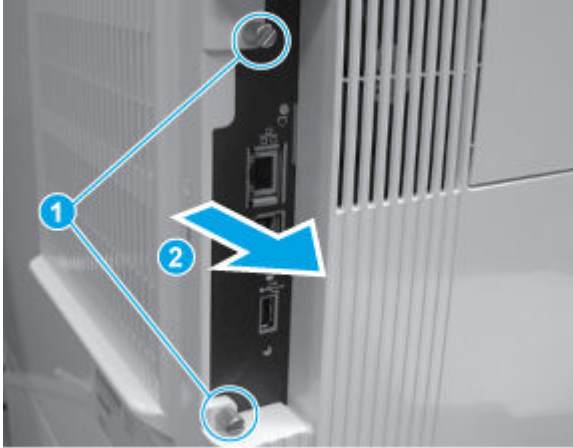
Figure 5-969 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-970 Loosen the thumbscrews



2. Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

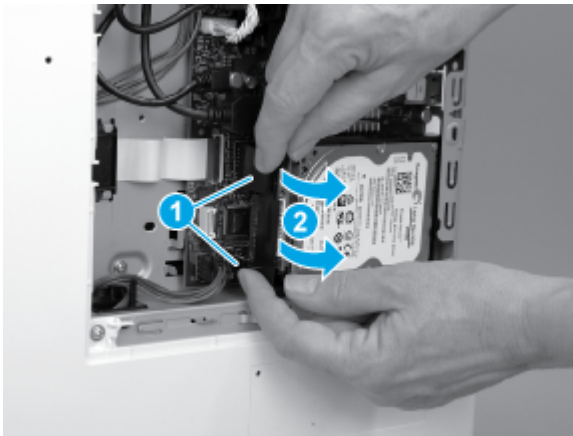
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-971 Release the HDD



- Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-972 Remove the HDD



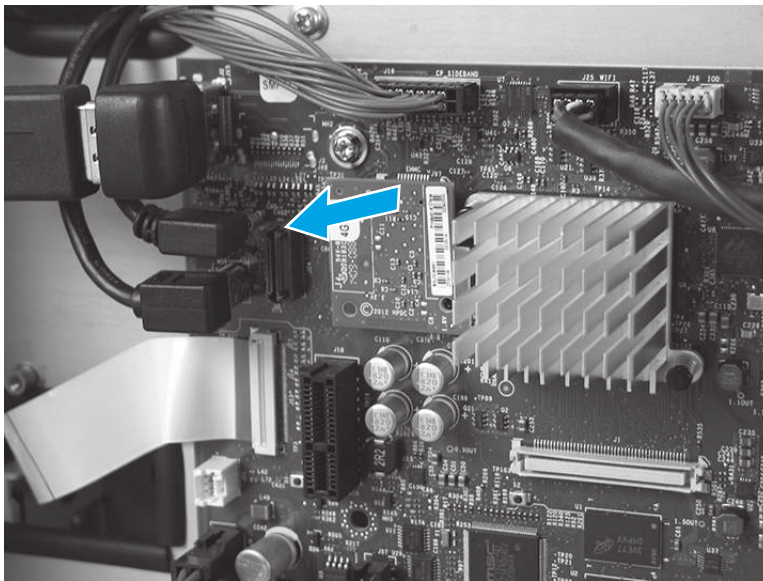
3. Remove the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC)

Follow these steps to remove the eMMC.

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

- Locate the eMMC component on the formatter, and then pull it straight off of the formatter to remove it.

Figure 5-973 Remove the eMMC



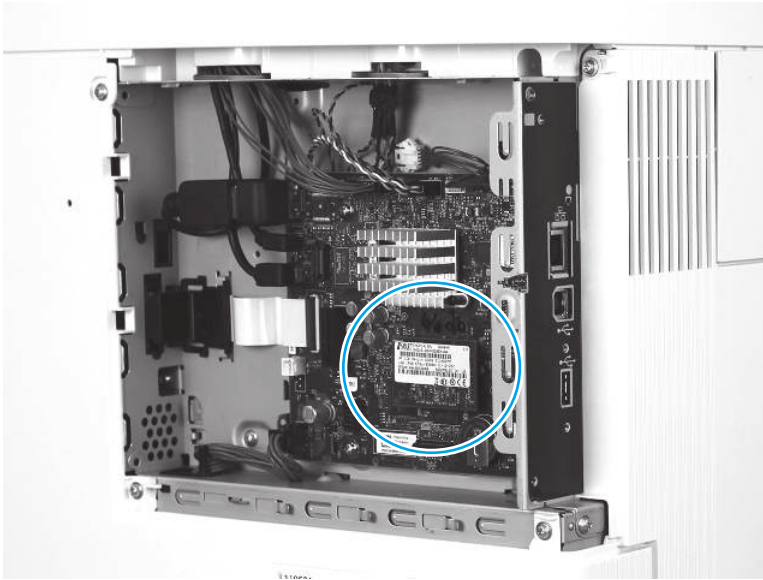
4. Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM)

Follow these steps to remove the DIMM.

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

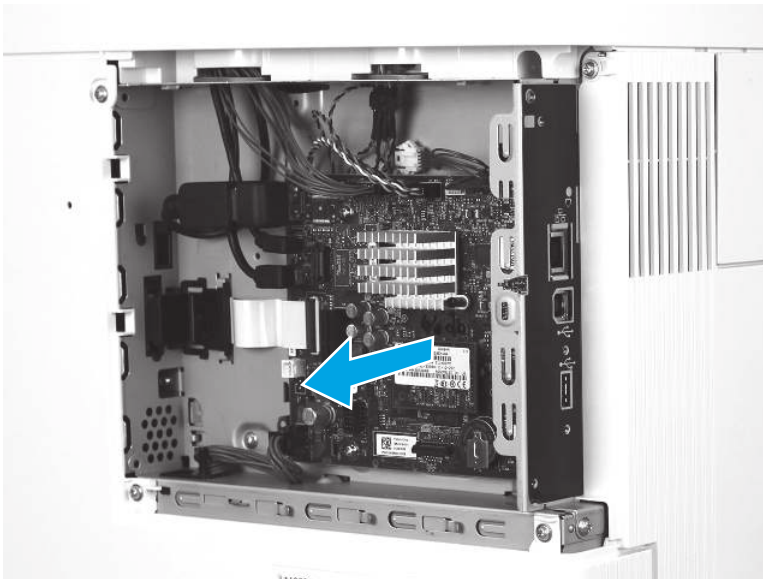
1. Locate the DIMM component on the formatter.

Figure 5-974 Locate the DIMM



2. Pull the DIMM straight off of the formatter to remove it.

Figure 5-975 Remove the DIMM



5. Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)

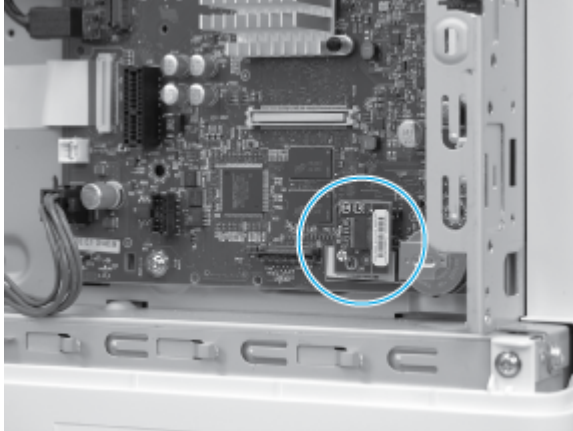
Follow these steps to remove the trusted platform module (TPM).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** Removing the TPM is only necessary for formatter or TPM accessory replacement.

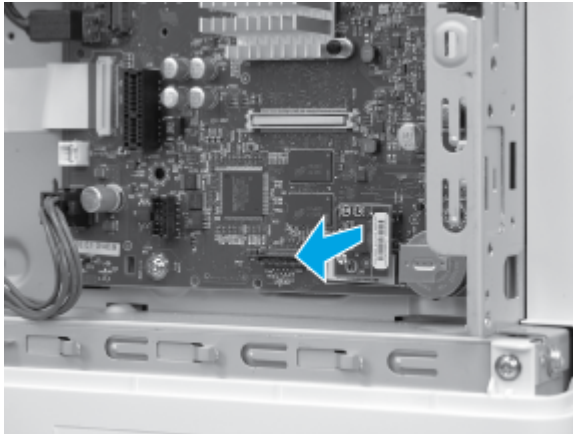
1. Locate the TPM component on the formatter.

Figure 5-976 Locate the TPM



2. Pull the TPM straight off of the formatter to remove it.

Figure 5-977 Remove the TPM



6. Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)

- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


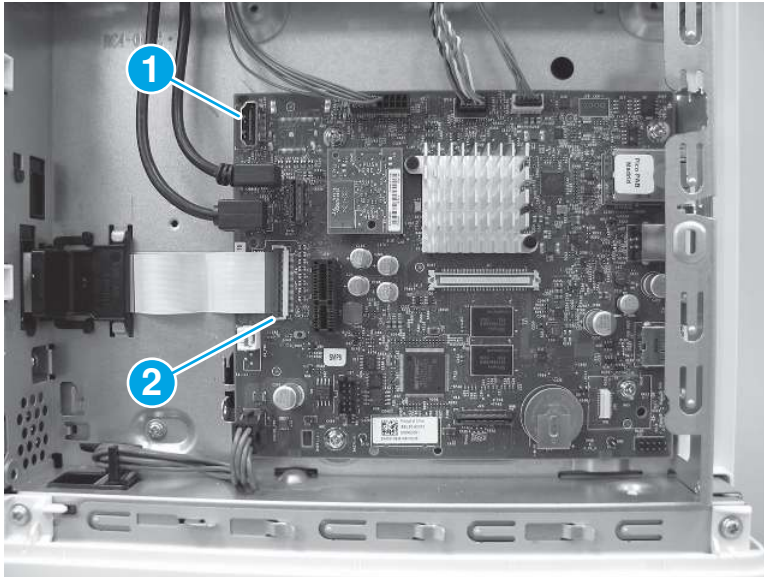
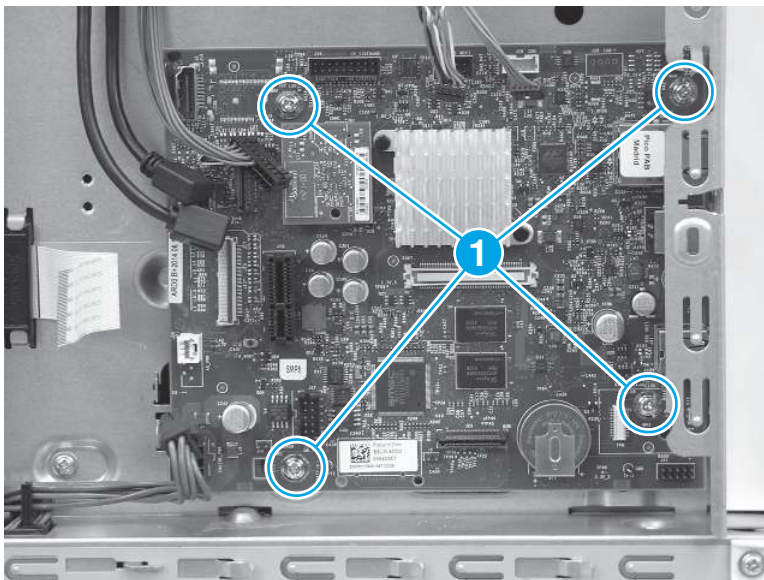
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-978 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..

Figure 5-979 Remove four screws



7. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter (M577/M578/E57540)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the MFP formatter.

 [View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the formatter.](#)


Mean time to repair: 10 minutes


Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.


 **CAUTION:** Under **NO** circumstances should a formatter from a different printer be installed during the repair or troubleshooting processes. The formatter stores important data specific to the model of printer it is installed in and is not designed to be swapped or re-purposed in any way. Return a used formatter to HP.

Issues that can occur from swapping a formatter include:

- Serial number, product number, product name, page count, and supported cartridges information change and might make a product unusable.
- 33.02.01 Used board/Disk installed errors.

If a used formatter is installed and causes this issue, the partner must cover the costs of the repair in the form of a product replacement. **There is no method in the field to recover a printer where a used formatter is installed.**

For more information, see [HP LaserJet Enterprise, HP LaserJet Managed, HP PageWide Enterprise, HP PageWide Managed - 33.02.01 error or printer name and/or product number changes after replacing the formatter](#).

 **IMPORTANT:** Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-61 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L46-67909	Formatter assembly M577, E57540
B5L46-67911	Formatter assembly M577, E57540 China/India
7ZU85-67903	Formatter assembly M578
7ZU85-67904	Formatter assembly M578 China/India

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

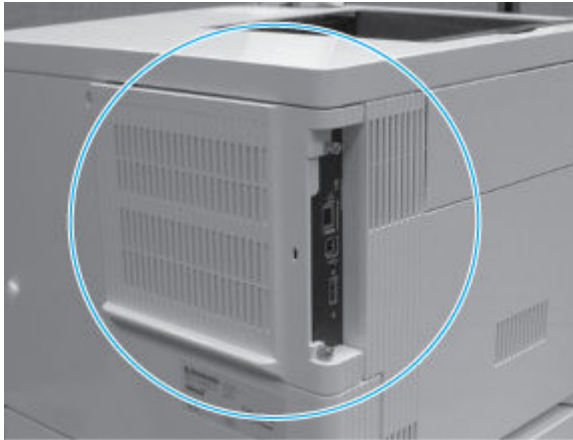
Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

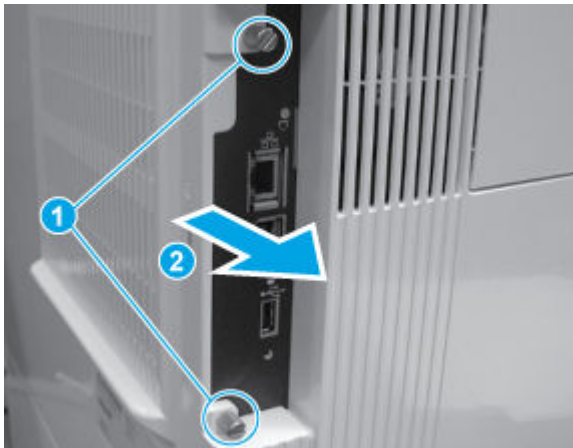
Figure 5-980 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-981 Loosen the thumbscrews



2. Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

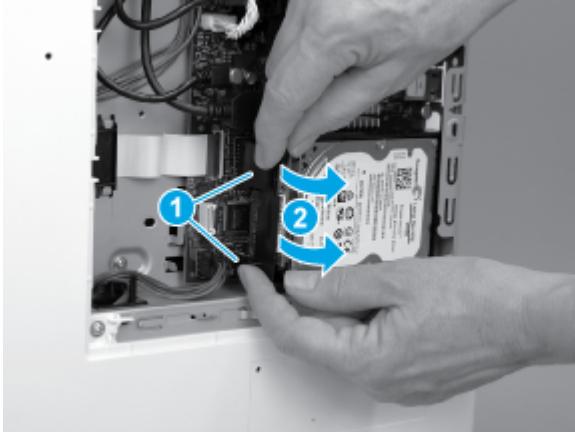
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-982 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-983 Remove the HDD



3. Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

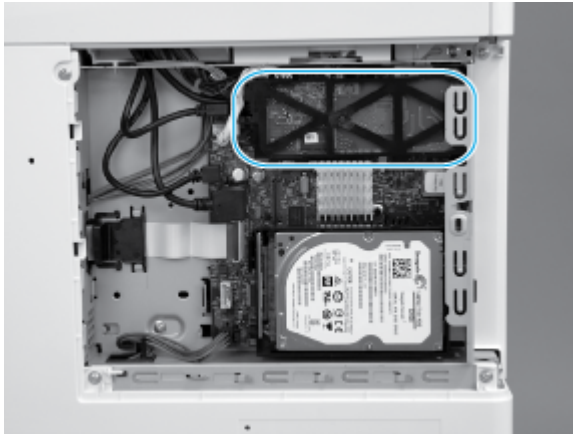
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

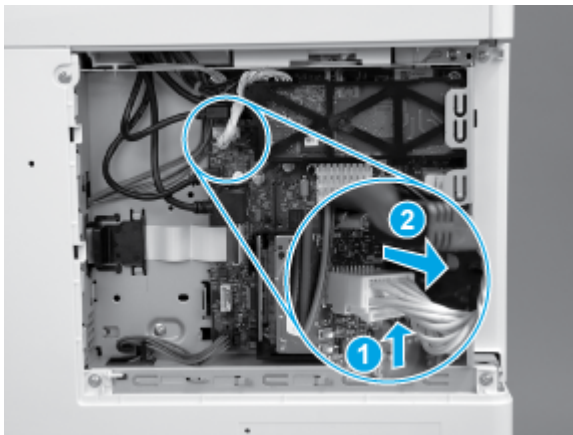
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-984 Locate the fax PCA



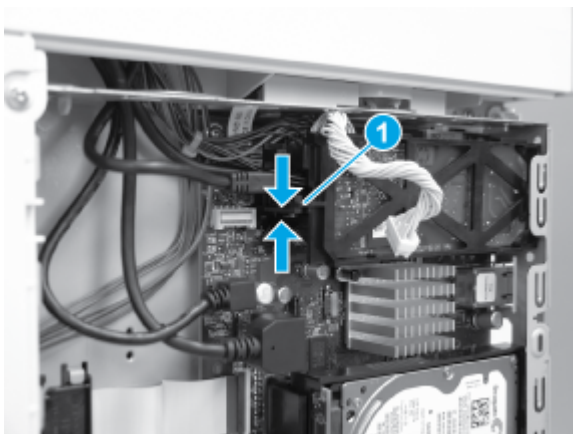
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-985 Disconnect one connector



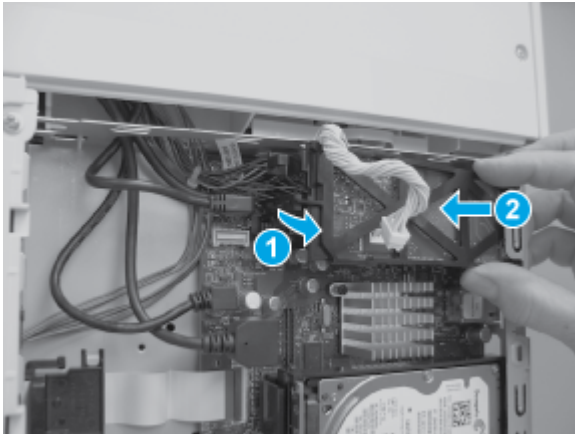
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-986 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-987 Remove the fax PCA



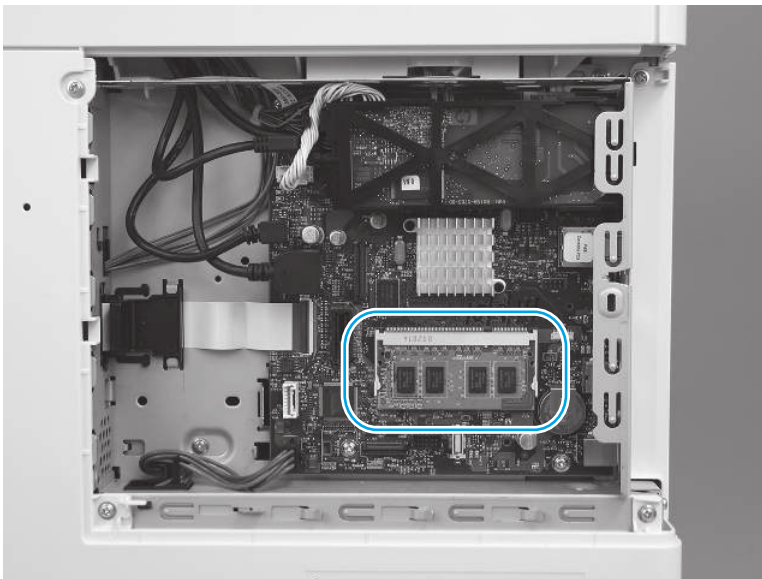
4. Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM)

Follow these steps to remove the DIMM.

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

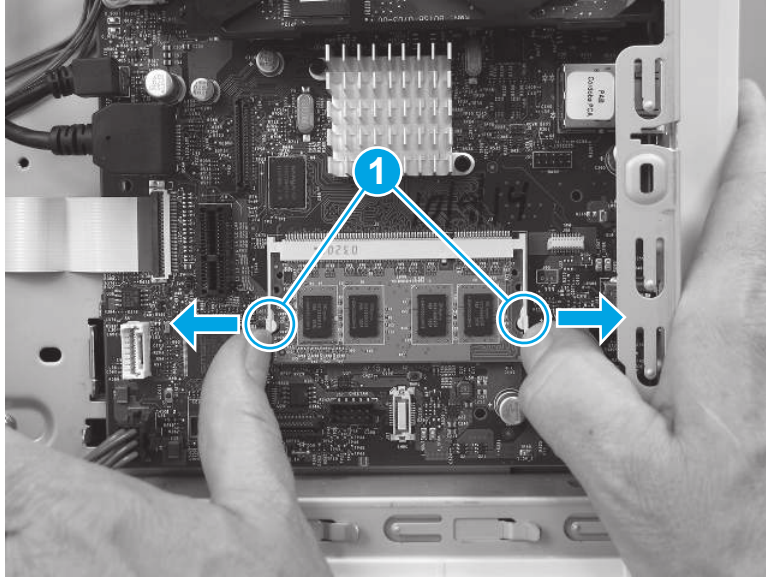
1. Locate the DIMM component on the formatter.

Figure 5-988 Locate the DIMM



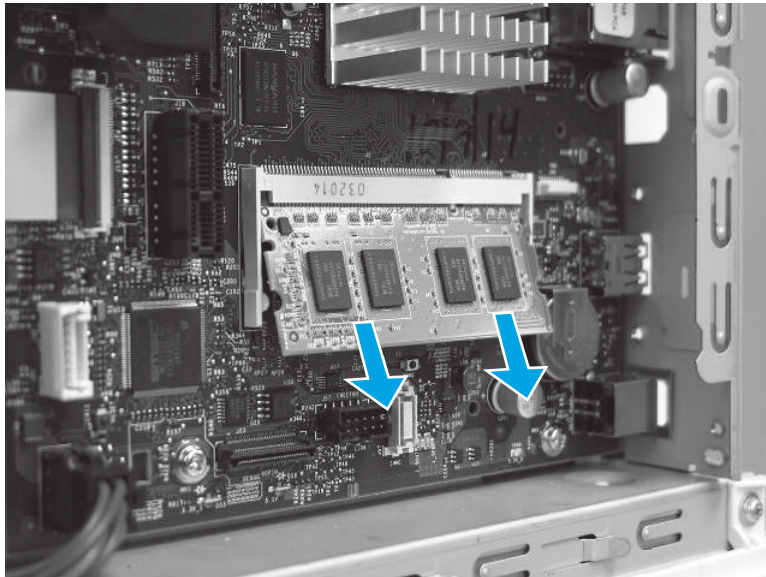
2. Do the following:
 - a. Release two locking arms (callout 1).

Figure 5-989 Release the DIMM



- b. Pull the DIMM down and away from the holder to remove it.

Figure 5-990 Remove the DIMM



5. Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3

- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


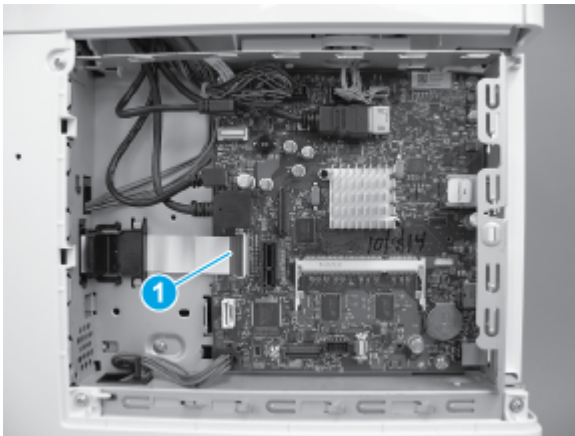
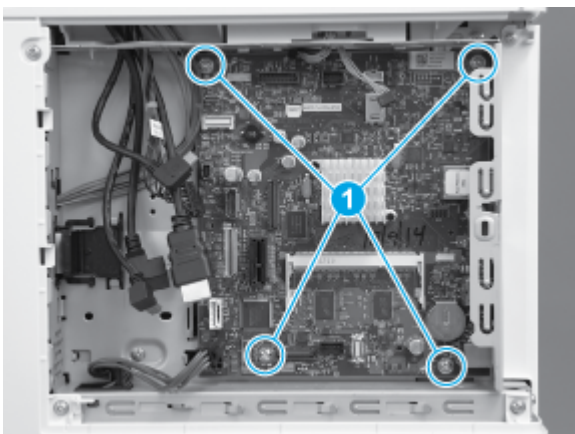
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-991 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-992 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.


Figure 5-993 Remove the formatter



6. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter case assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter case assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-62 Part information

Part number	Part description
Not orderable	Formatter case assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

📄 NOTE: The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-994 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-995 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-996 Remove the TCU

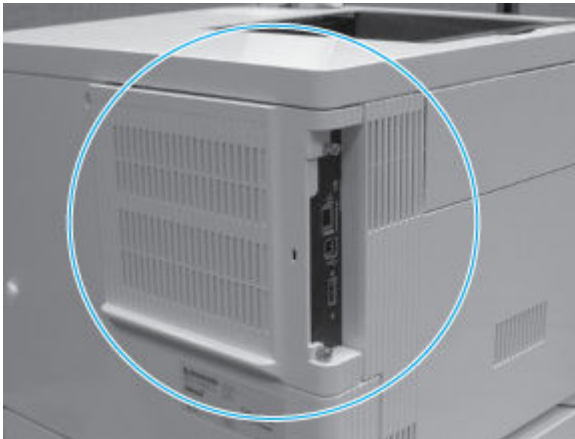


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

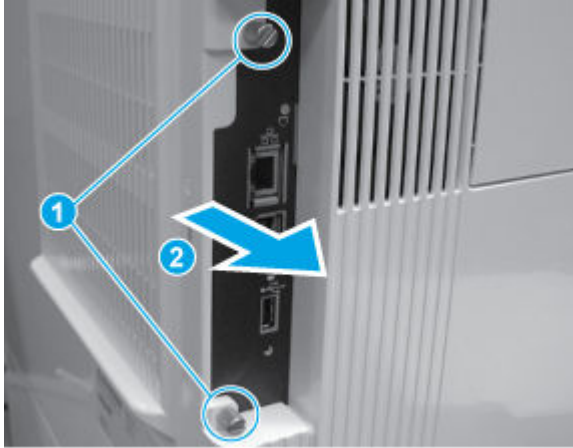
Figure 5-997 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-998 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


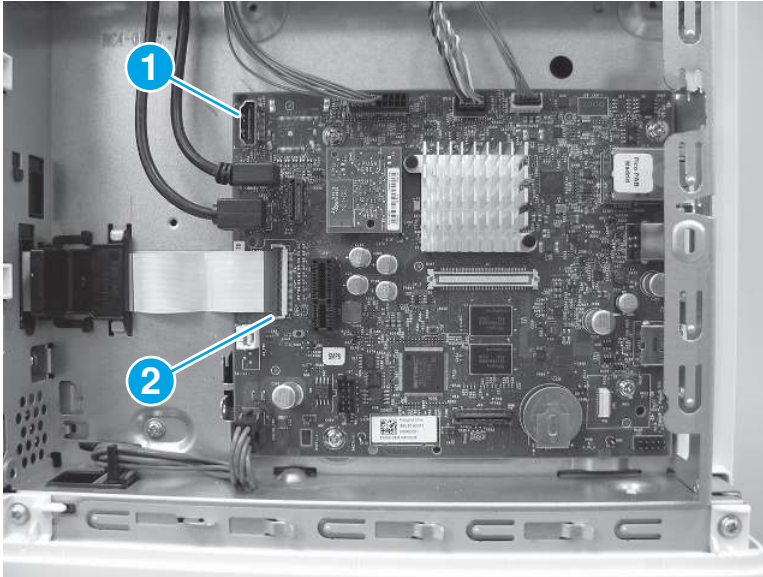
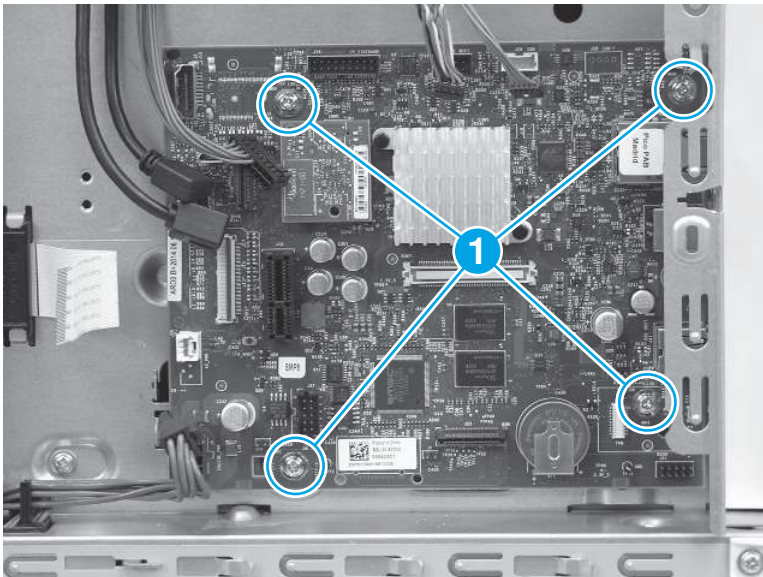
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-999 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1000 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

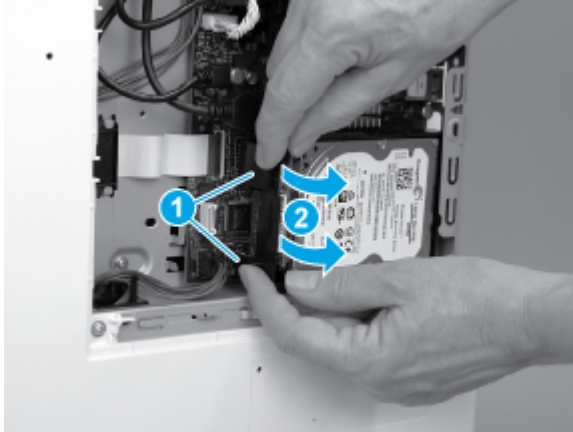
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1001 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1002 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

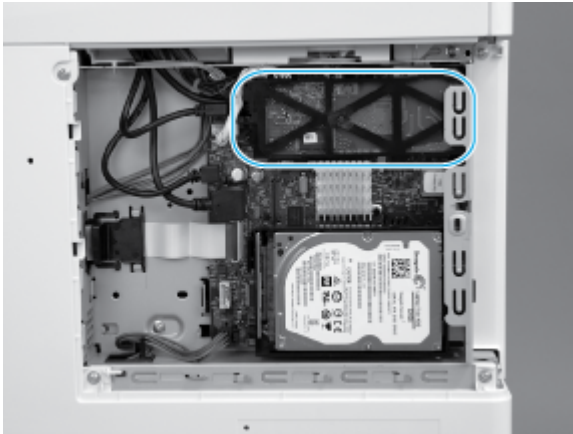
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

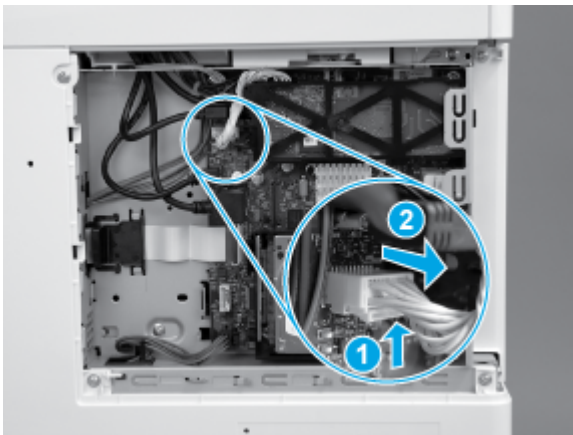
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1003 Locate the fax PCA



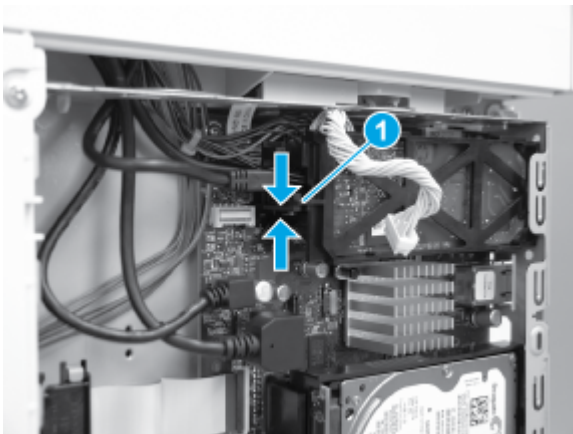
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1004 Disconnect one connector



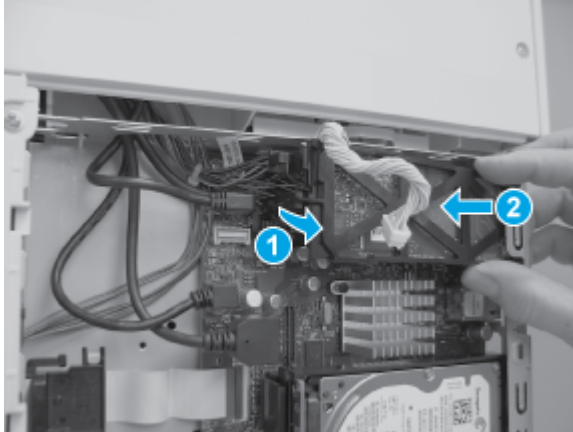
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1005 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1006 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


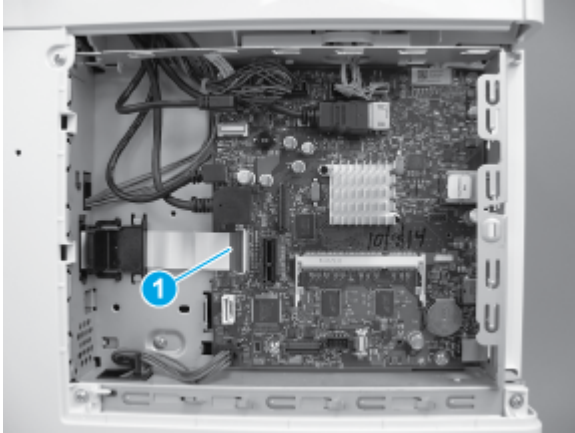
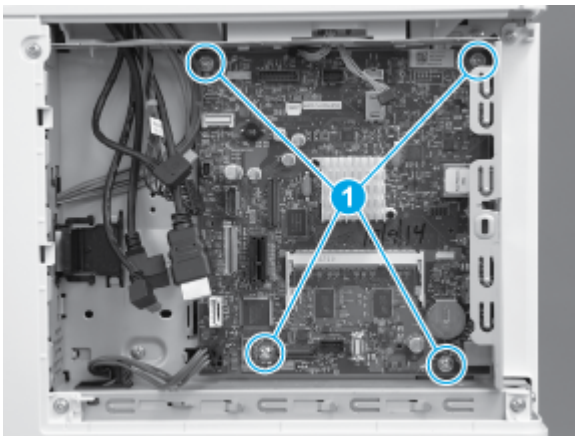
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1007 Disconnect all connectors



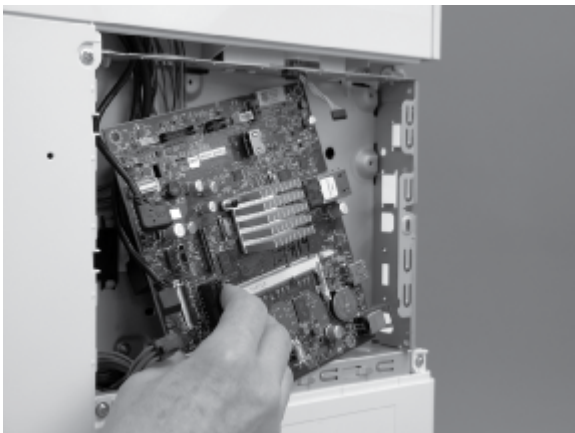
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1008 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1009 Remove the formatter



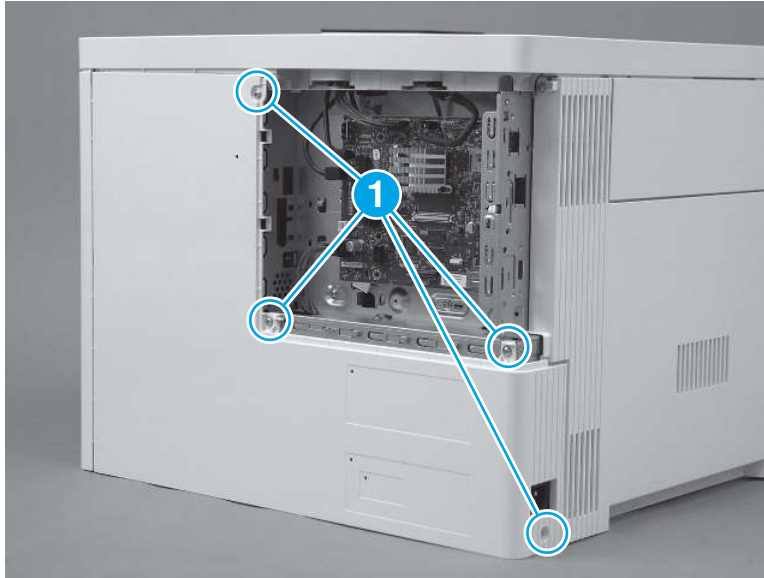
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

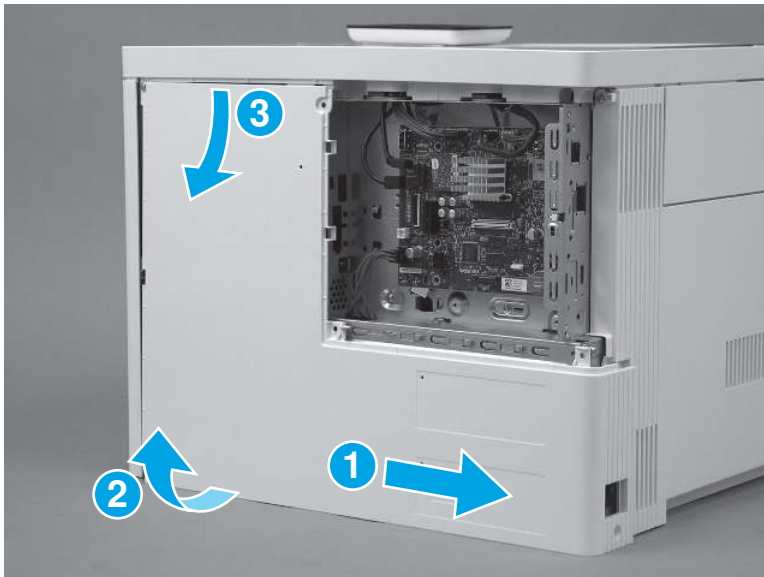
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1010 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1011 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

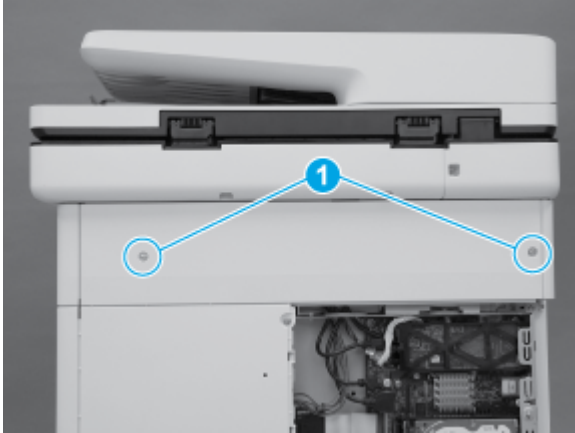
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

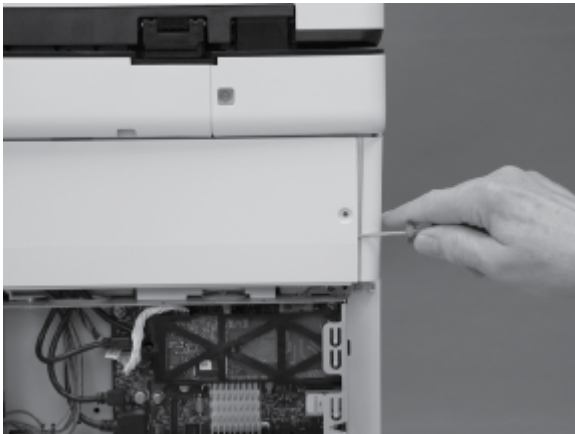
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1012 Remove two screws



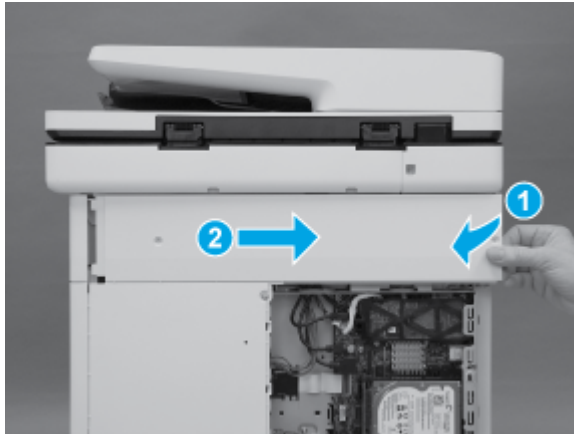
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1013 Release the right edge



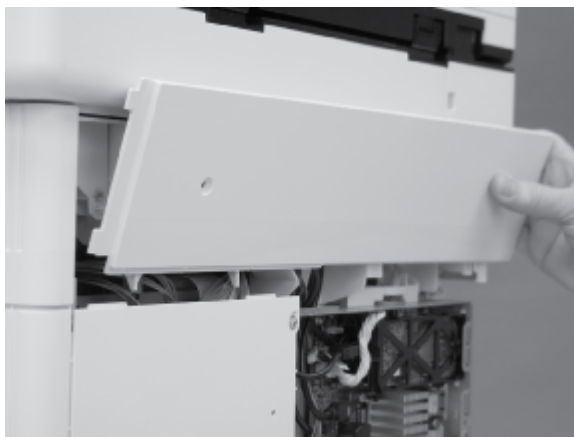
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1014 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1015 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1016 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1017 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

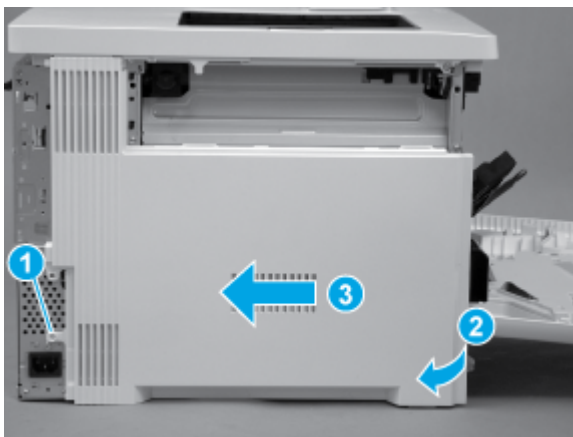
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1018 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1019 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1020 Remove the cover

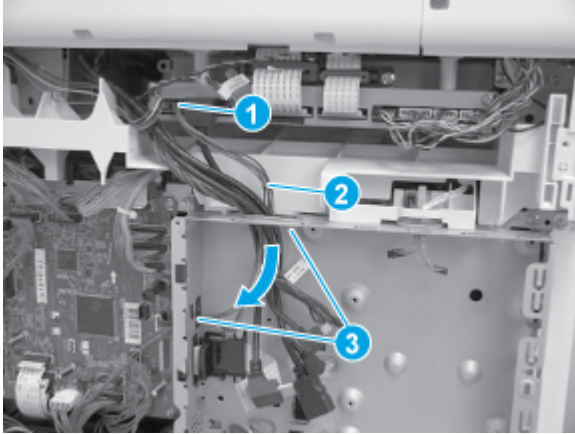


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

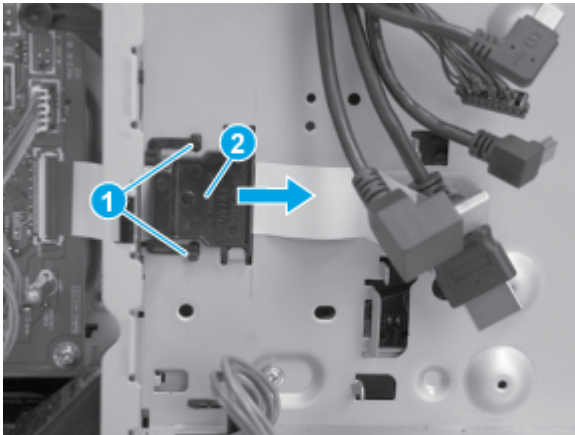
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1021 Disconnect one connector



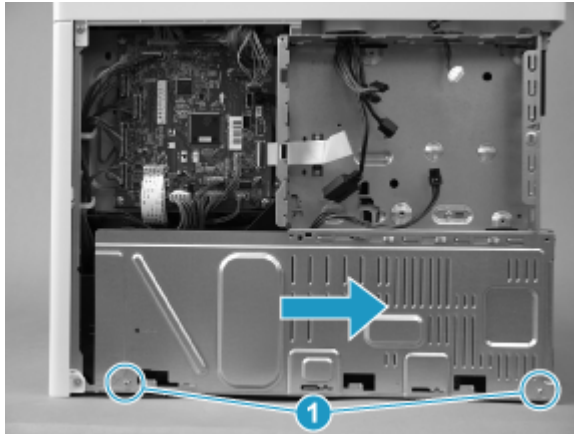
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1022 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

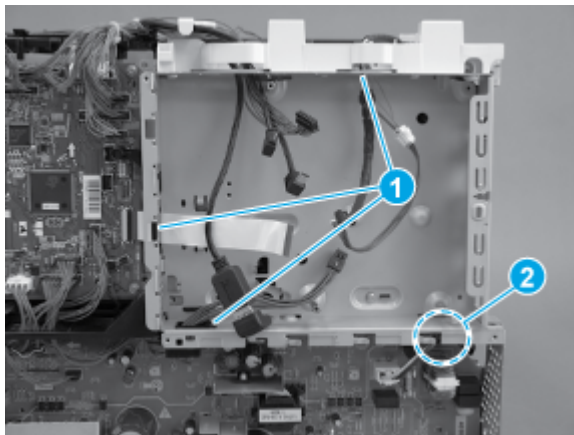
Figure 5-1023 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

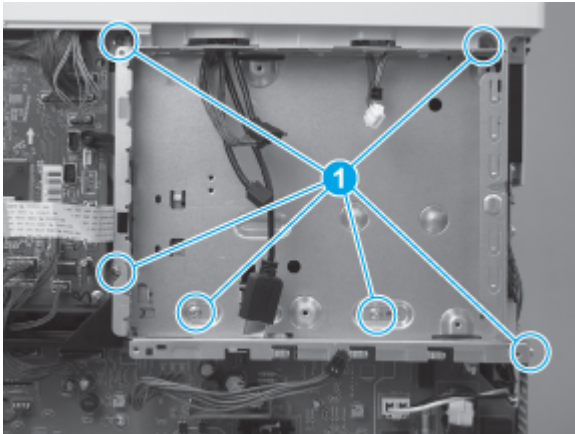
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1024 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



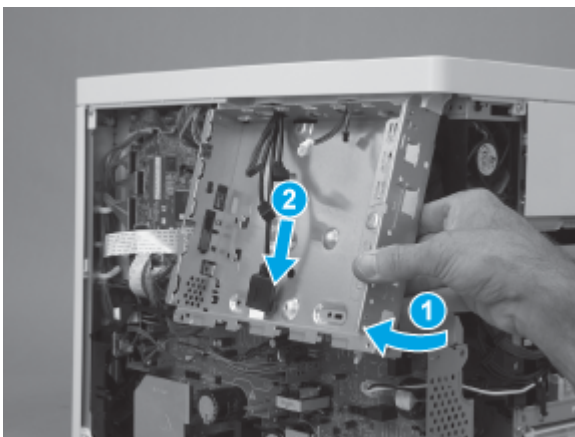
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1025 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1026 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


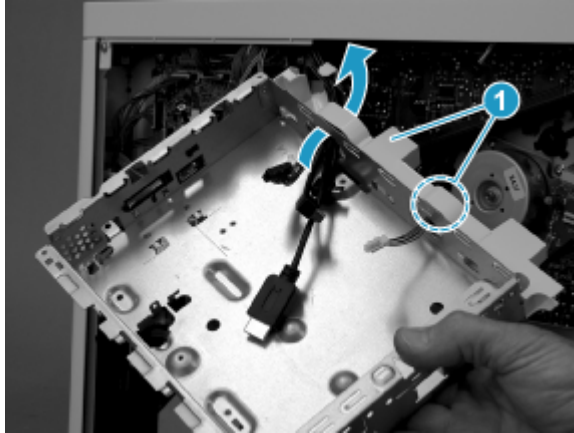
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1027 Remove the formatter case



Removal and replacement: Fuser power supply (FPS)

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser power supply.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-63 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7159-000CN	Fuser power supply (110V)
RM3-7160-000CN	Fuser power supply (220V)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1028 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1029 Open the TCU

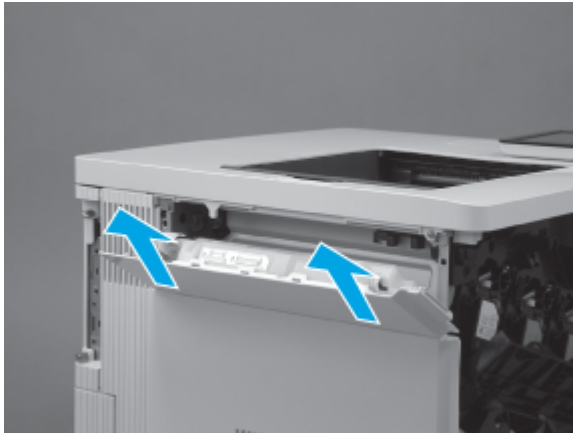


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1030 Remove the TCU

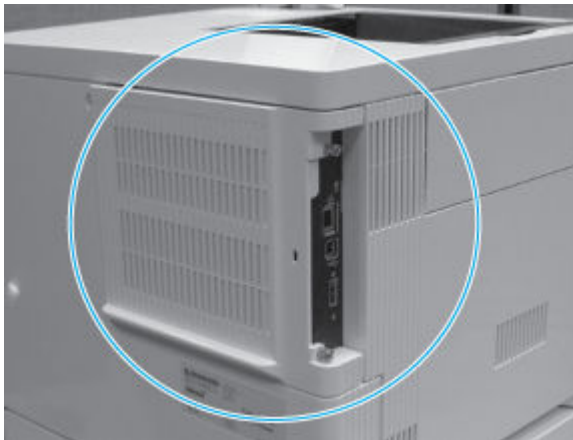


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

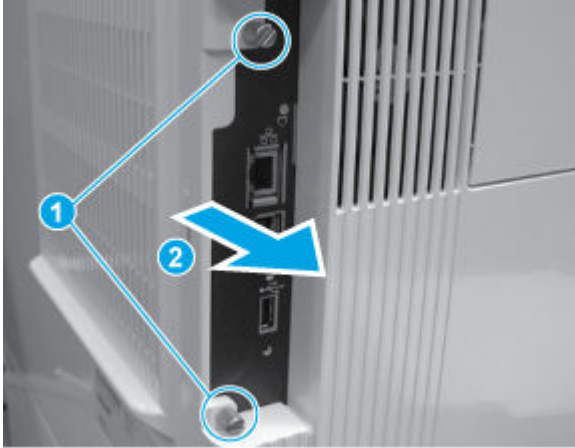
Figure 5-1031 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


💡 TIP: If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1032 Loosen the thumbscrews



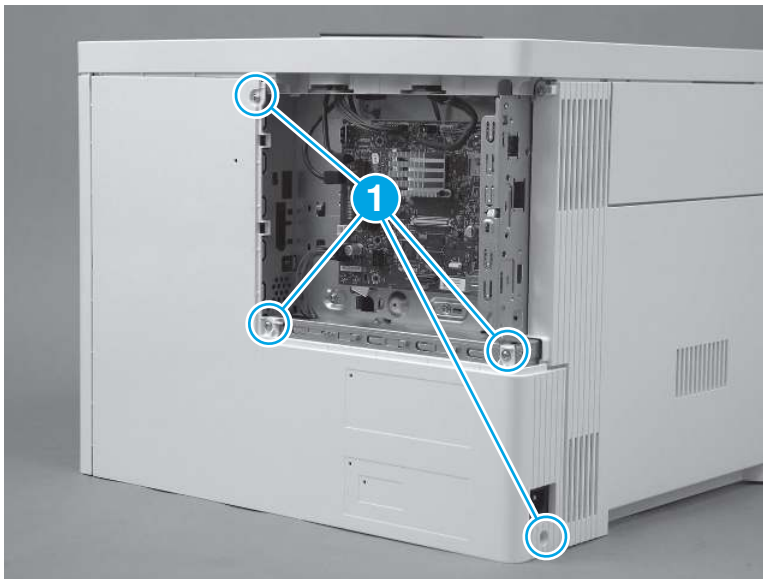
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

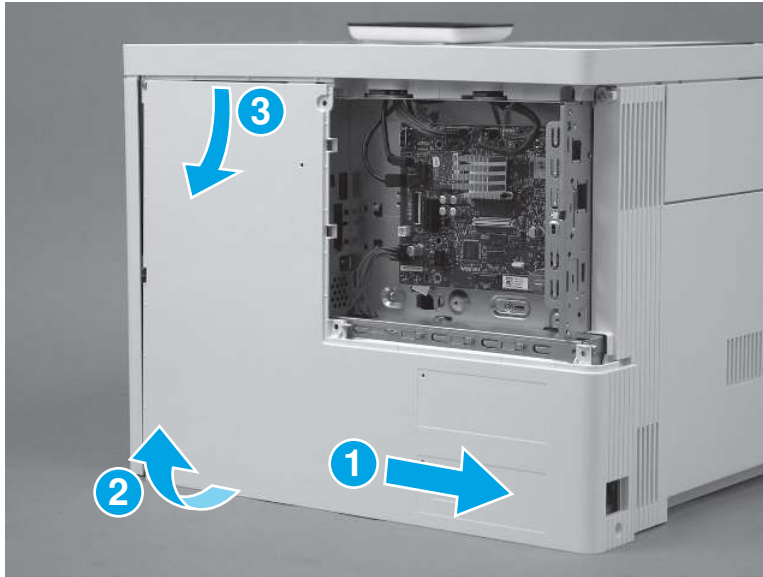
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1033 Remove four screws



2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1034 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

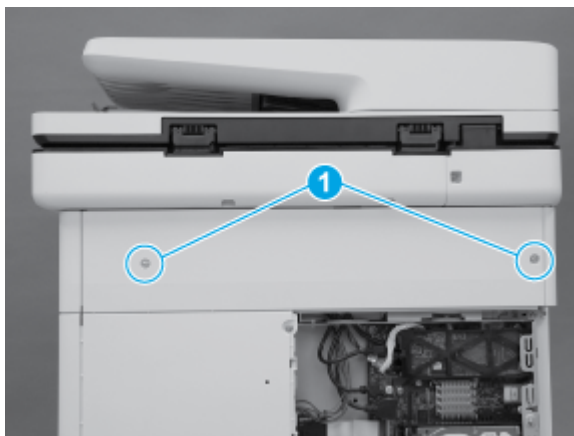
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1035 Remove two screws



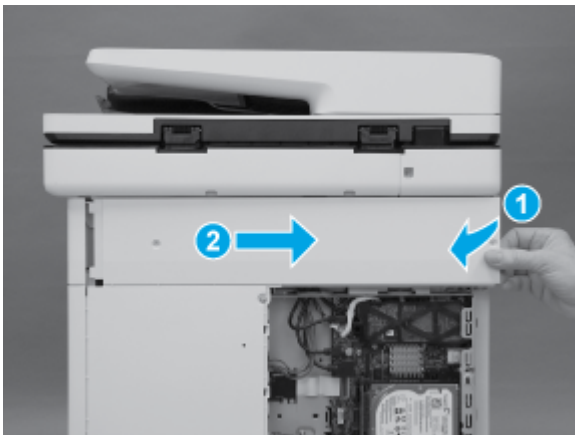
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1036 Release the right edge



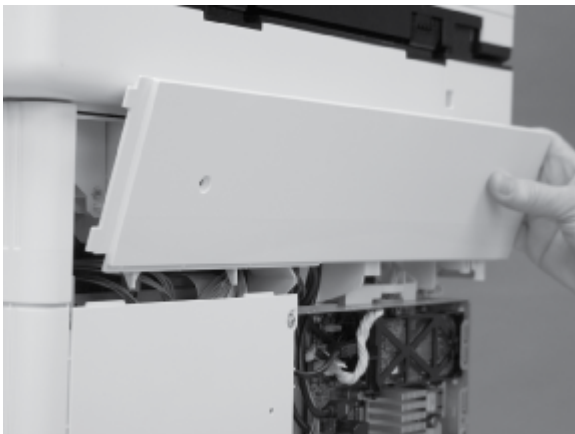
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1037 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1038 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1039 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1040 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

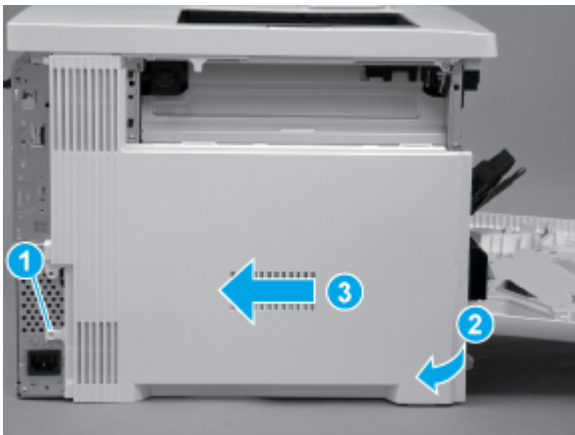
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1041 Remove one screw



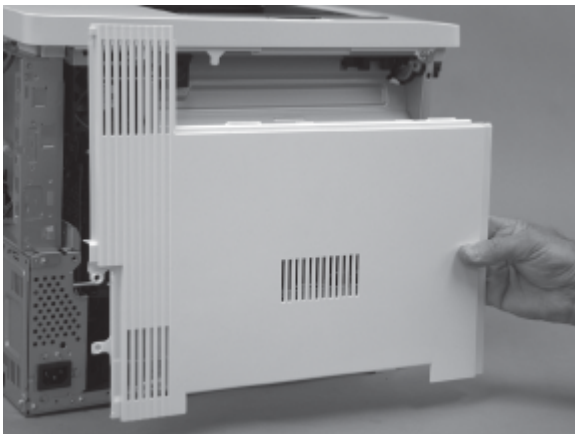
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1042 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1043 Remove the cover

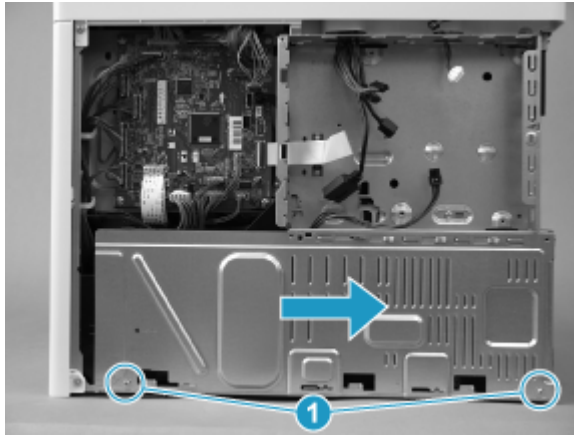


Remove the fuser power supply

Follow these steps to remove the fuser power supply.

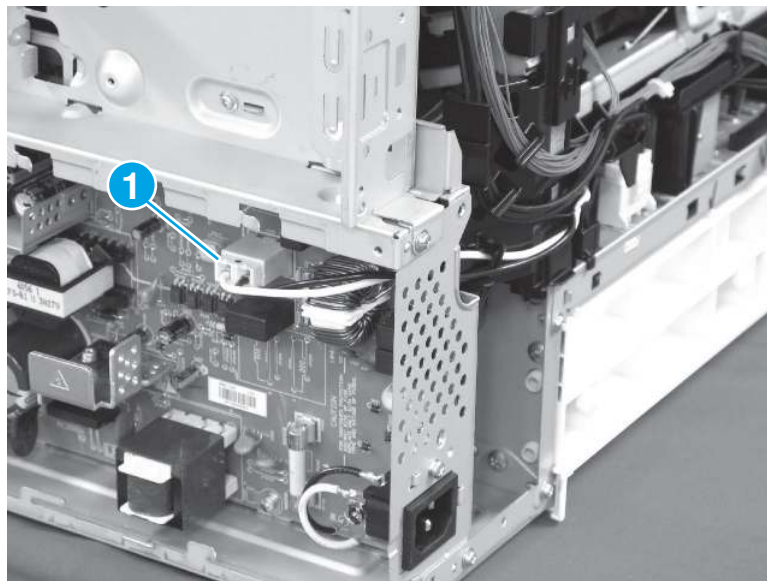
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1044 Remove the LVPS cover



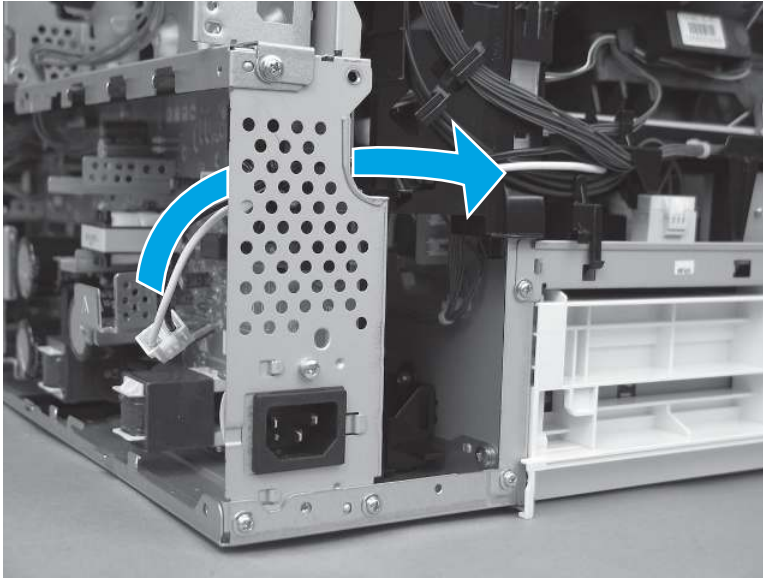
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1045 Disconnect one connector



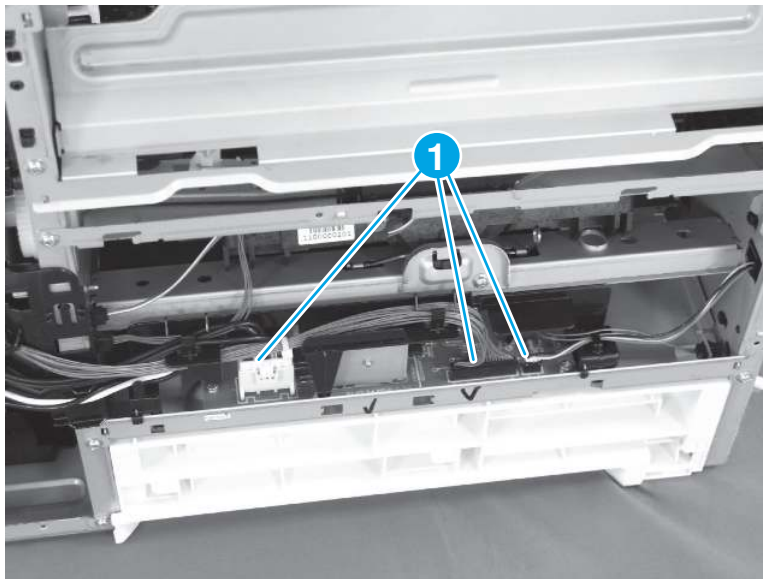
3. Pass the wire harness through the opening in the chassis.

Figure 5-1046 Pass the wire harness through the opening



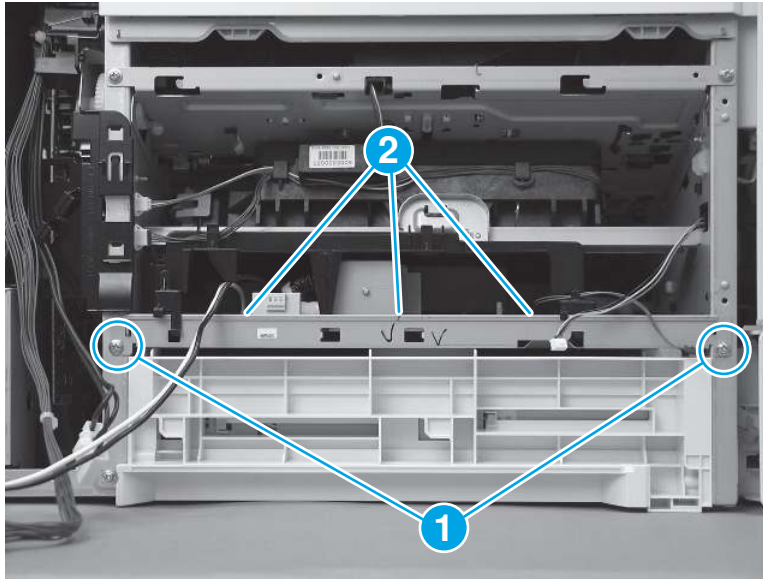
4. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-1047 Disconnect three connectors



5. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the fuser power supply (callout 2).

Figure 5-1048 Remove the fuser power supply



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

 [View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the Low-voltage power supply.](#)


Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-64 LVPS part numbers

Part number	Part description
RM3-7157-000CN	Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) (110V)
RM3-7158-000CN	Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) (220V)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the LVPS are fully seated.

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1049 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1050 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1051 Remove the TCU

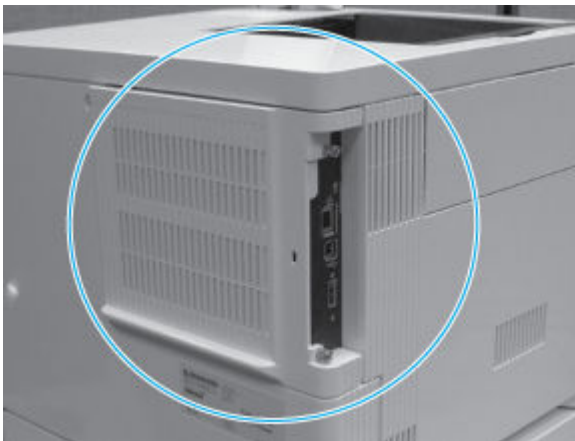


2. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

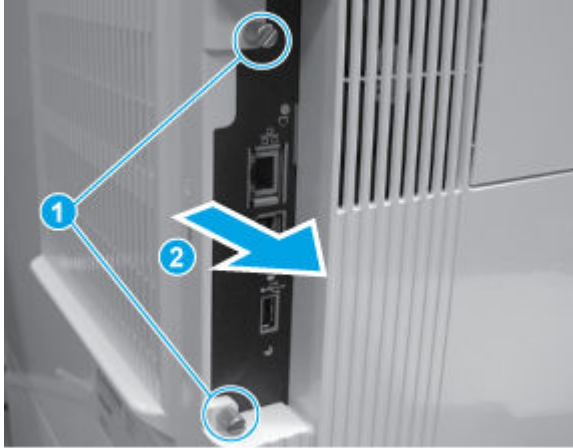
Figure 5-1052 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1053 Loosen the thumbscrews



3. Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


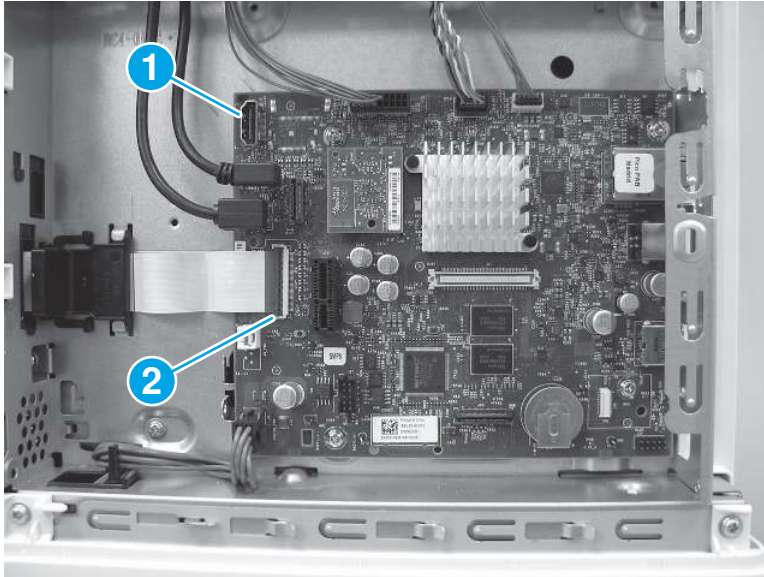
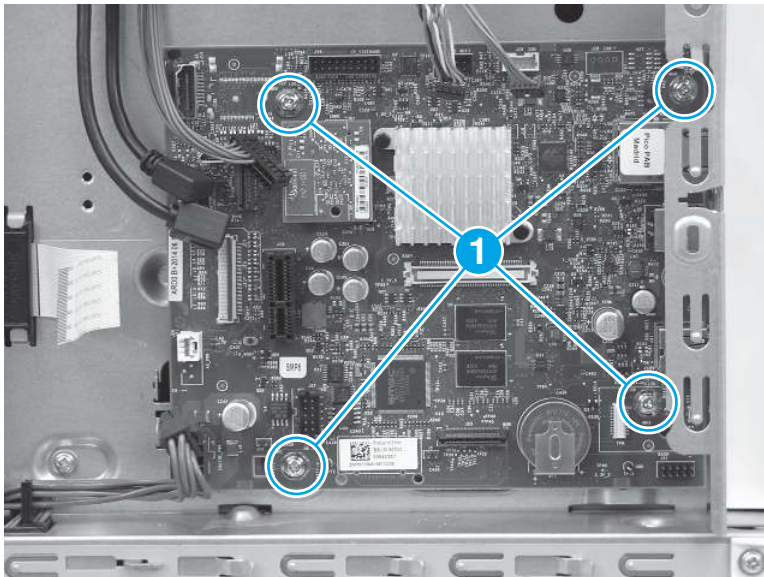
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1054 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..

Figure 5-1055 Remove four screws

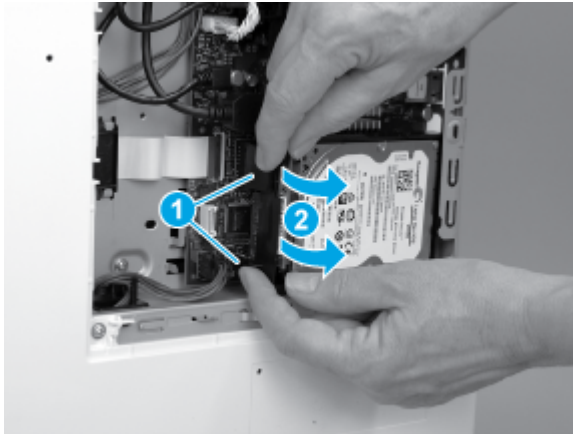


4. Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD) (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter.

Figure 5-1056 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1057 Remove the HDD



5. Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

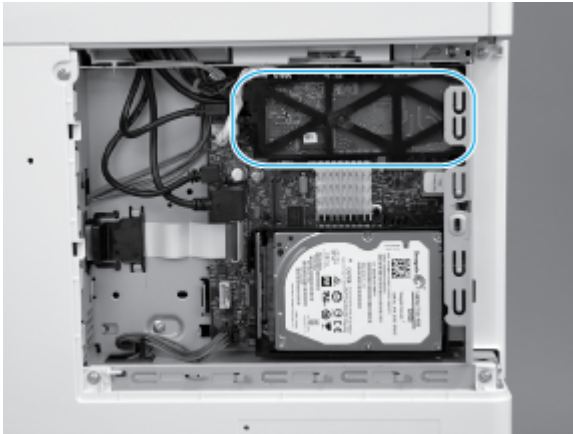
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

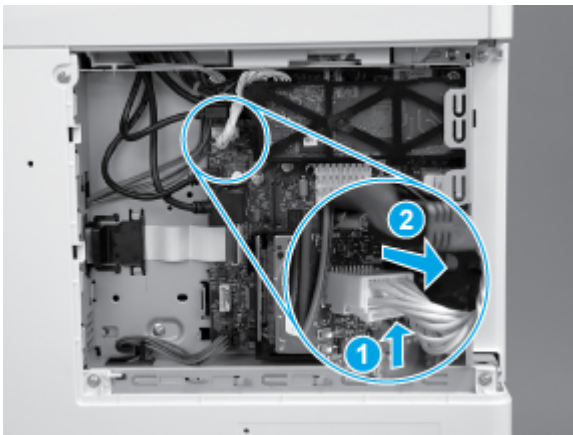
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1058 Locate the fax PCA



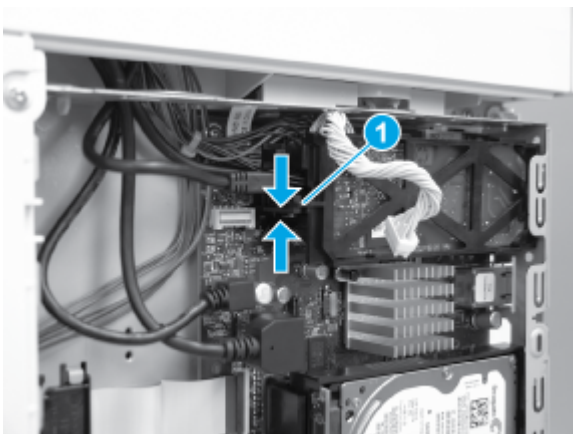
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1059 Disconnect one connector



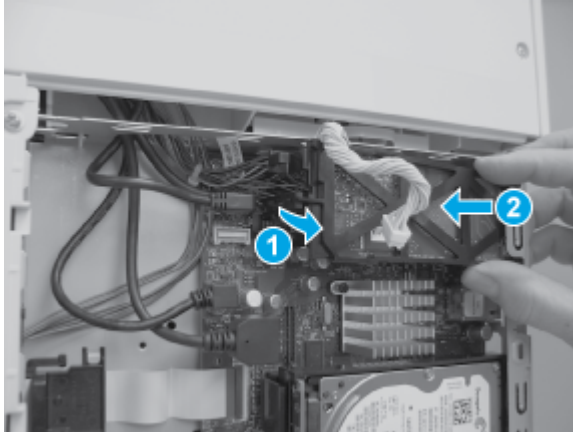
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1060 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1061 Remove the fax PCA



6. Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


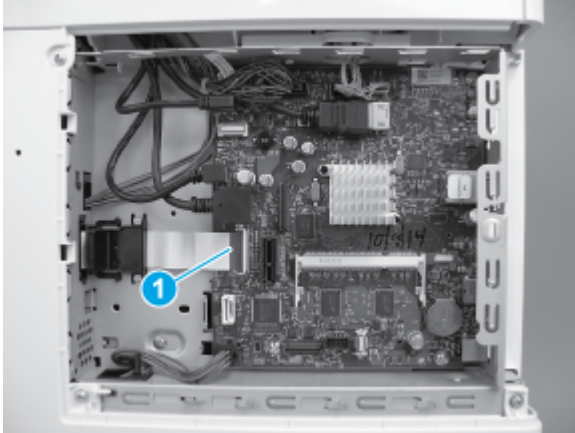
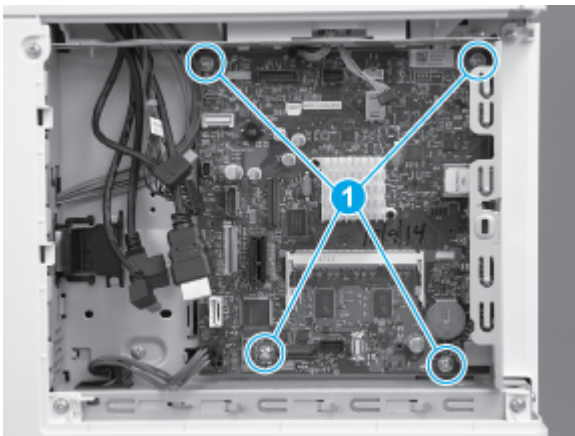
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1062 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1063 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1064 Remove the formatter



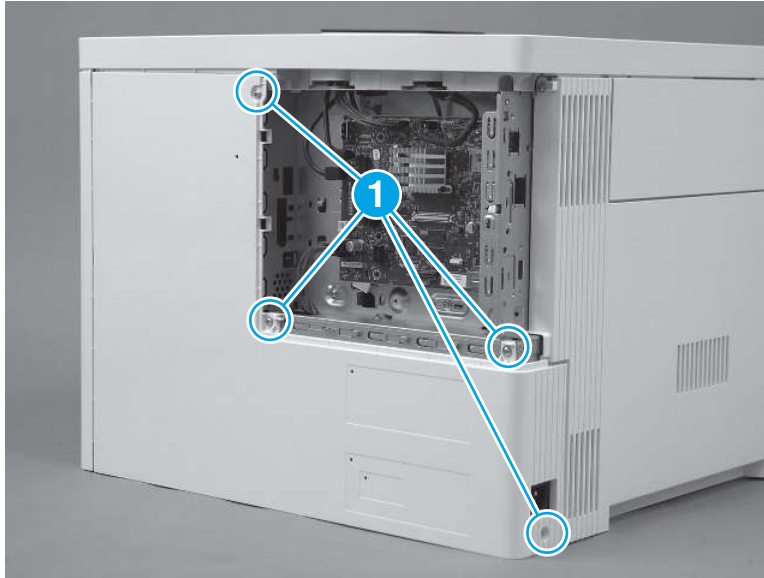
7. Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

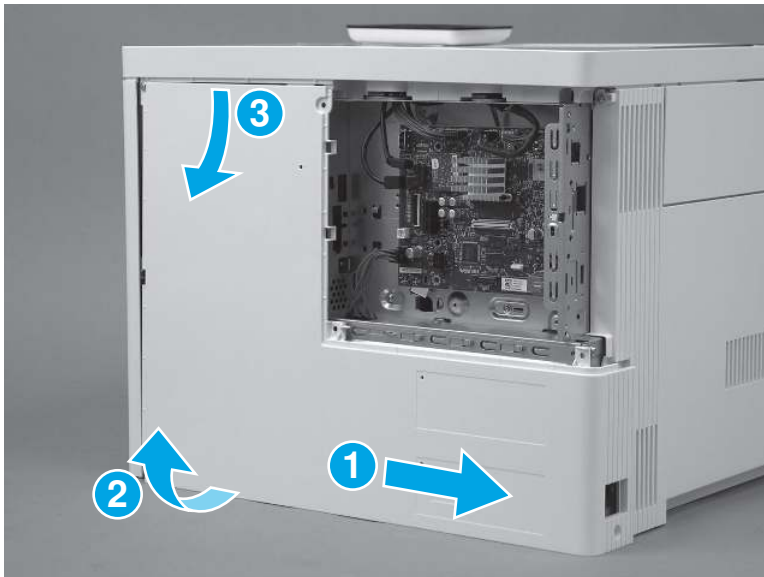
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1065 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1066 Remove the cover



8. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

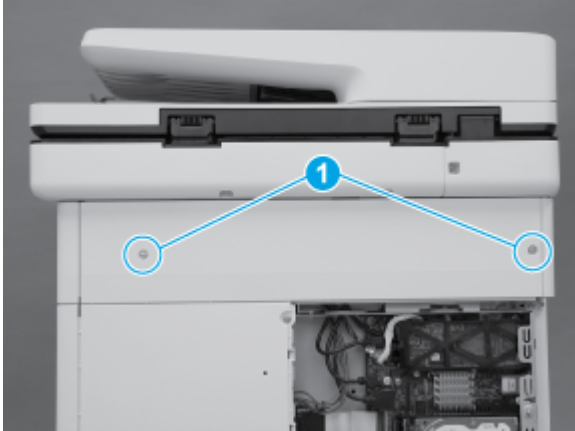
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

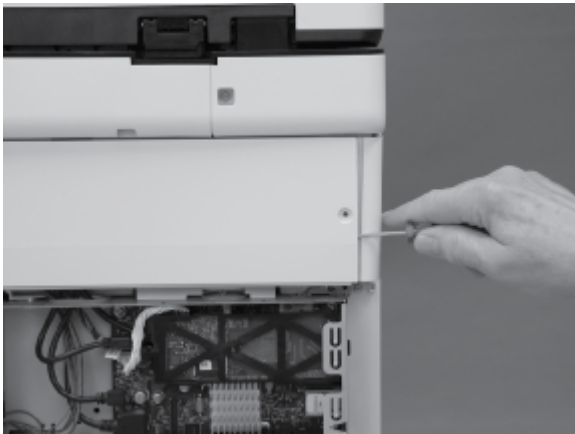
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1067 Remove two screws



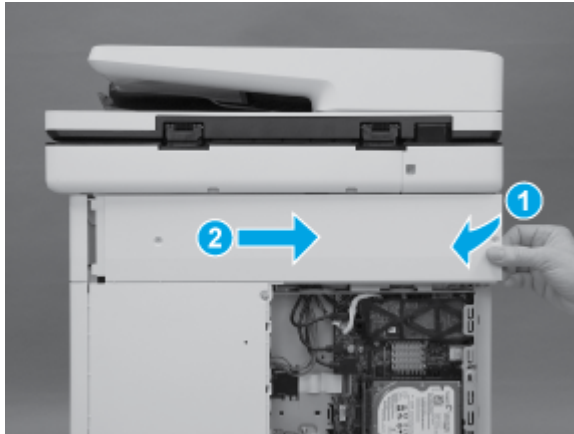
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1068 Release the right edge



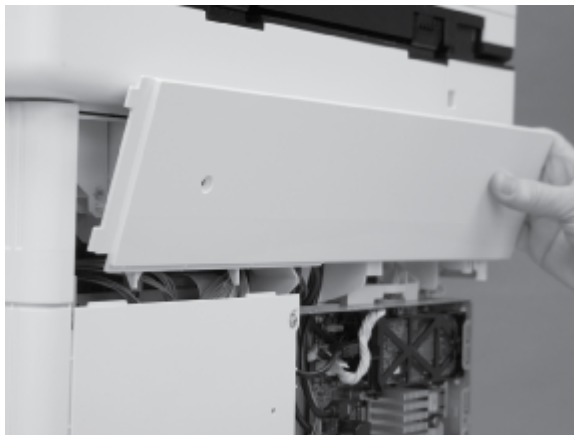
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1069 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1070 Remove the cover



9. Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1071 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1072 Remove the cover



10. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

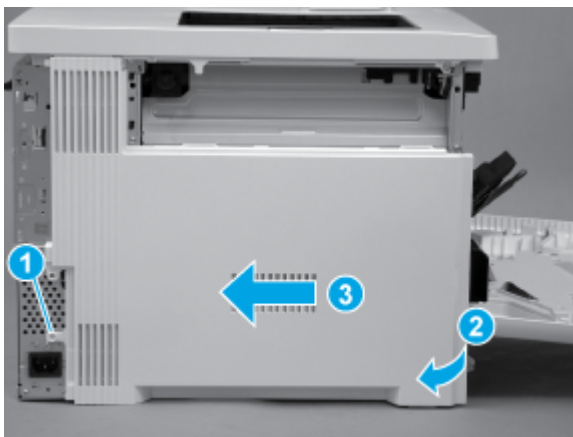
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1073 Remove one screw



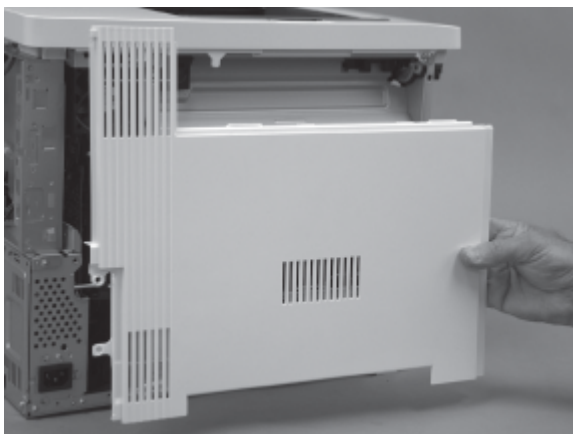
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1074 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1075 Remove the cover

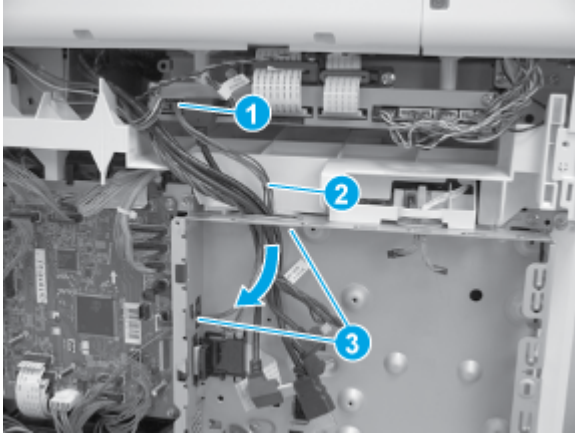


11. Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

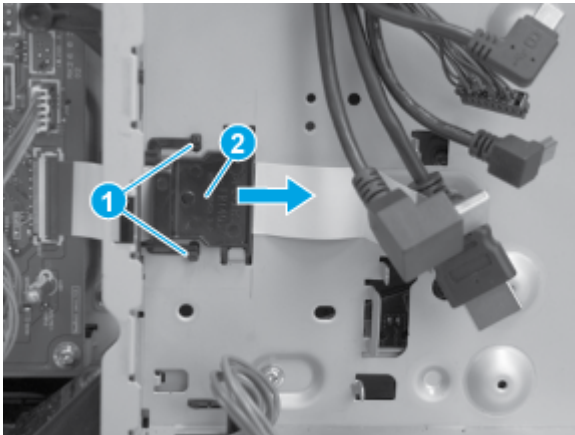
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1076 Disconnect one connector



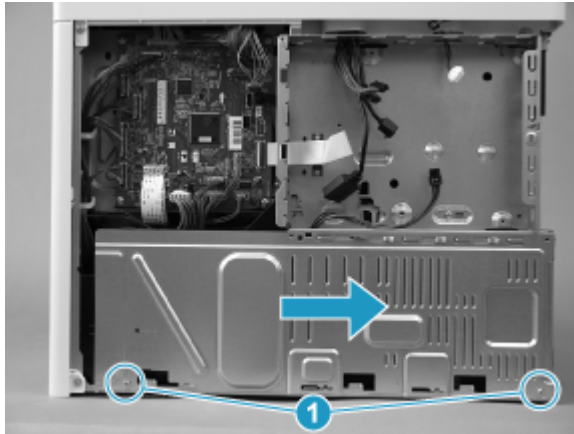
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1077 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

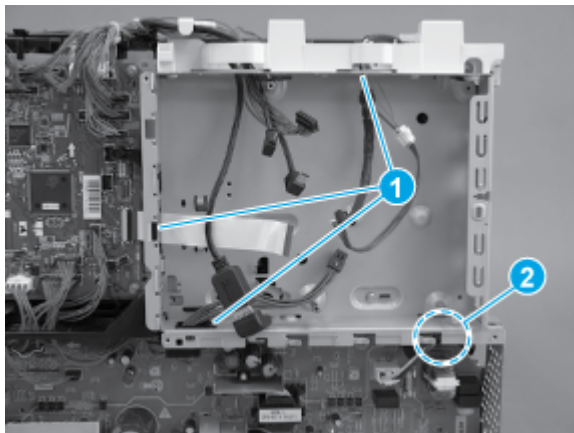
Figure 5-1078 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

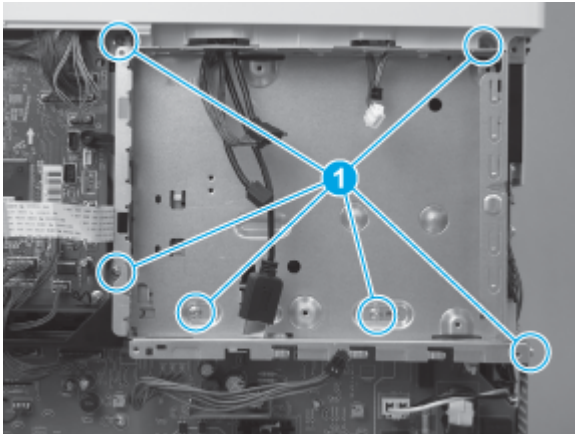
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1079 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



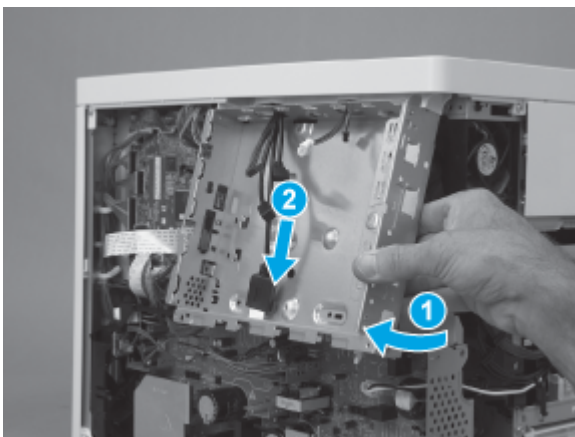
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1080 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

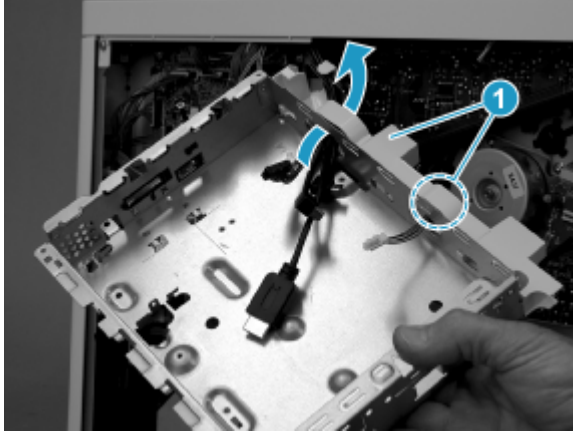
Figure 5-1081 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1082 Remove the formatter case

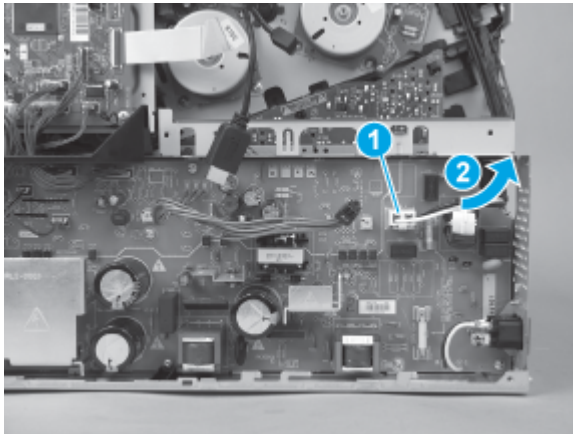


12. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

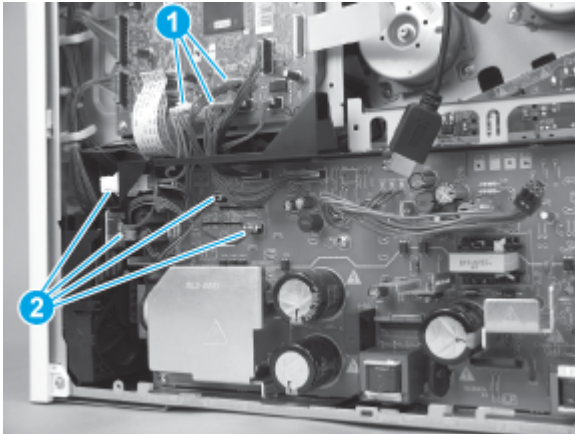
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-1083 Disconnect one wire harness



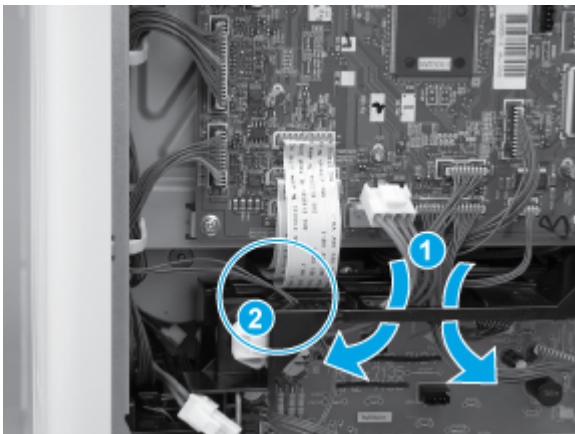
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-1084 Disconnect seven connectors



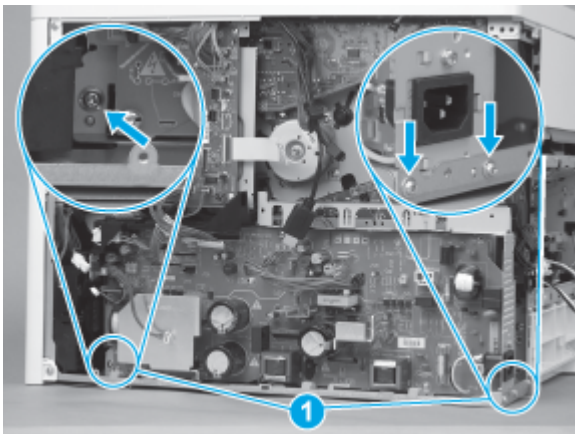
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-1085 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



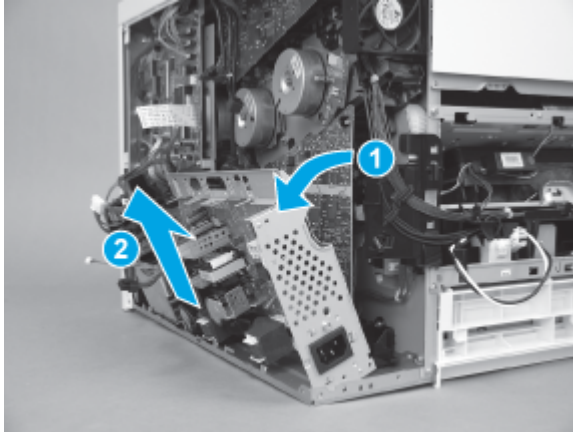
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1086 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1087 Remove the LVPS



13. Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Learn about removing and replacing the high-voltage power supply D.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-65 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-7122-000CN	High-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

📄 NOTE: The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1088 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1089 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1090 Remove the TCU

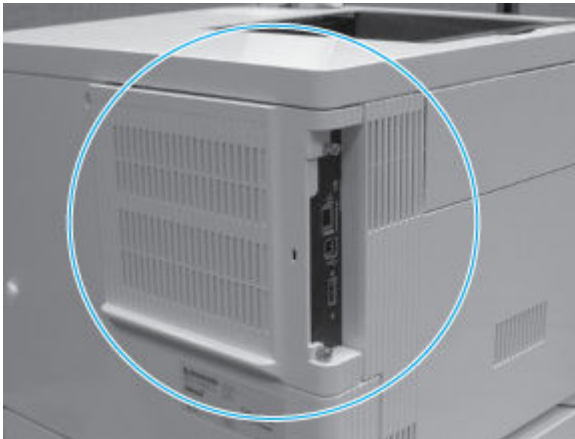


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

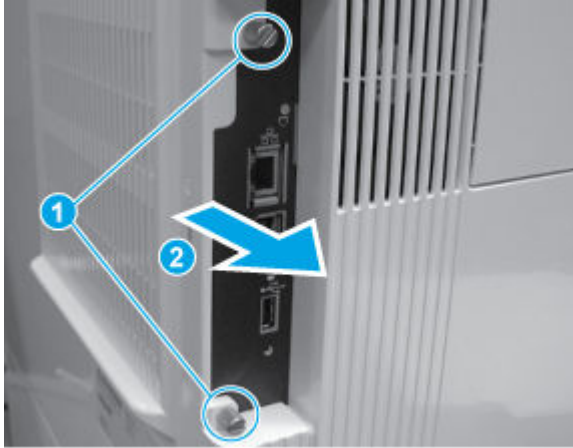
Figure 5-1091 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1092 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


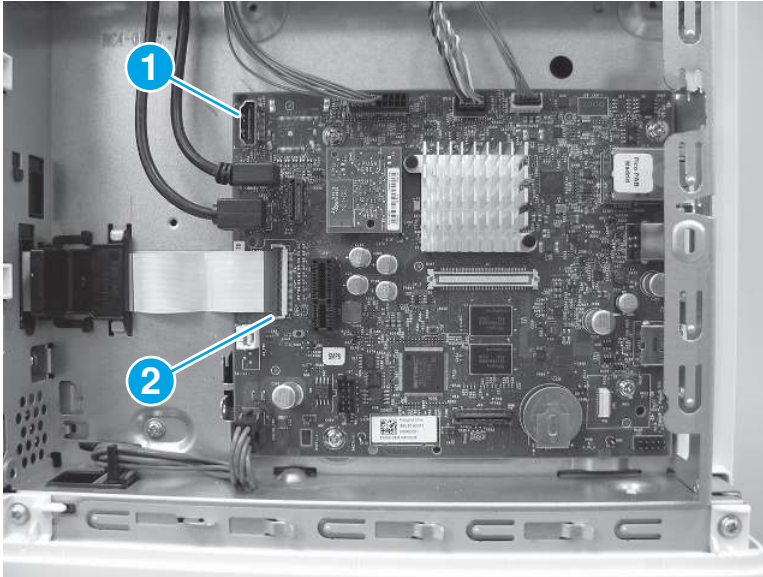
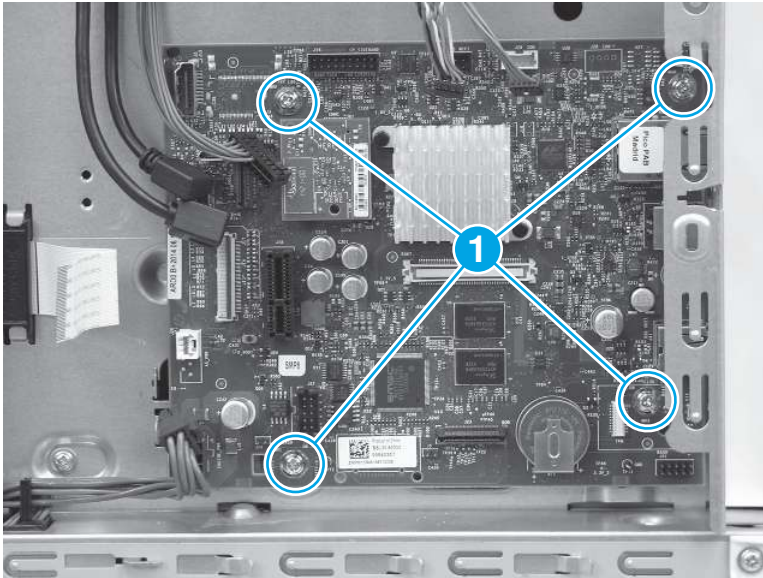
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1093 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1094 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

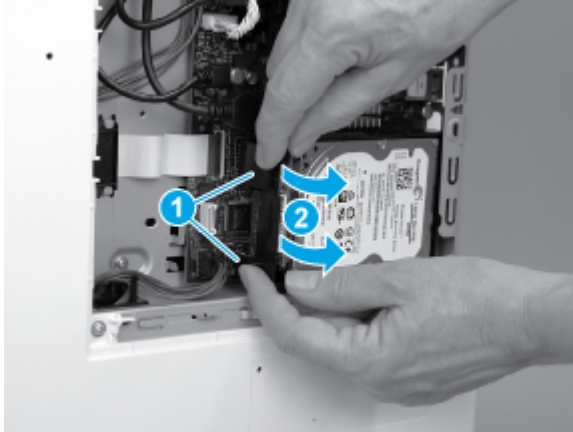
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1095 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1096 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

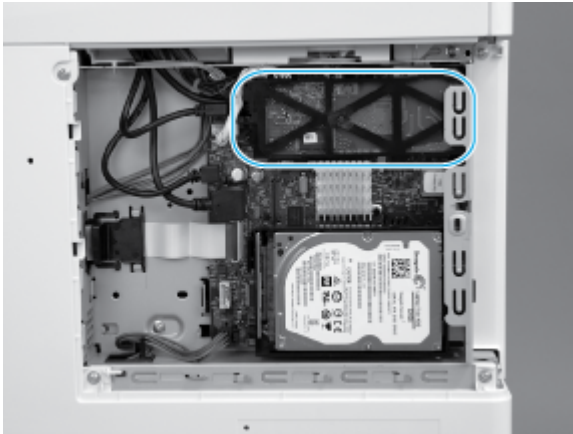
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

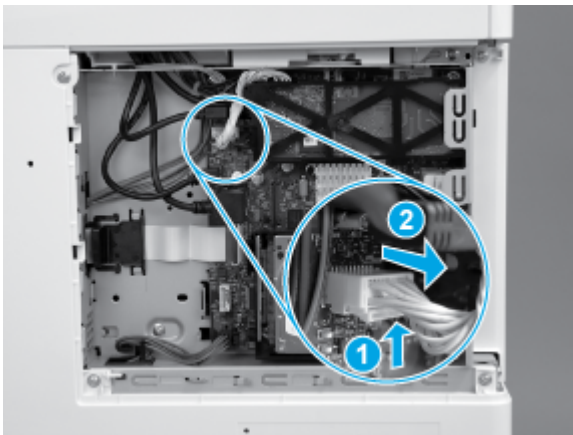
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1097 Locate the fax PCA



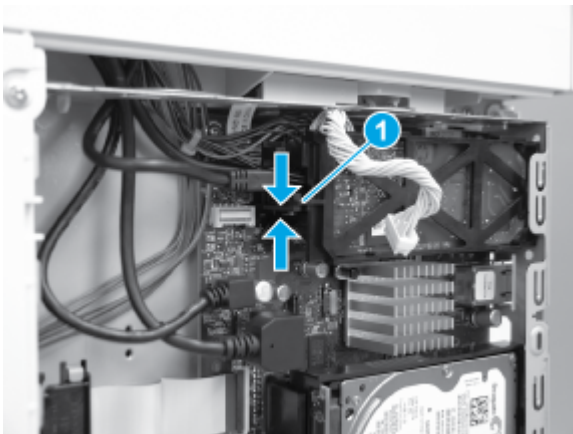
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1098 Disconnect one connector



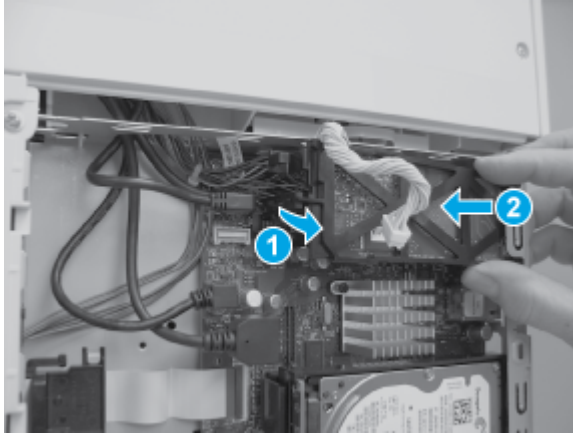
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1099 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1100 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


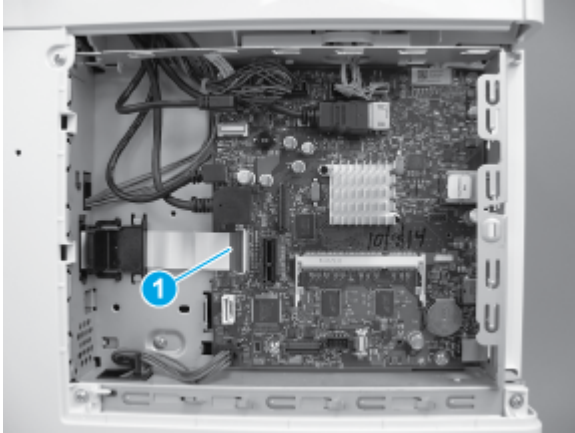
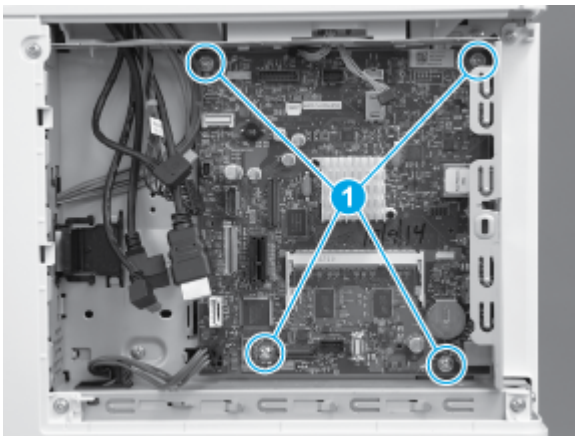
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1101 Disconnect all connectors



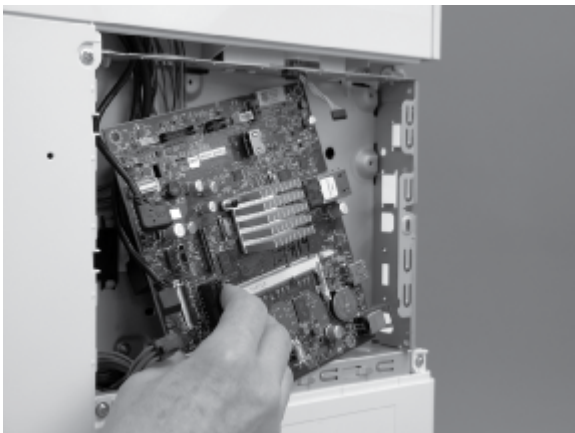
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1102 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1103 Remove the formatter



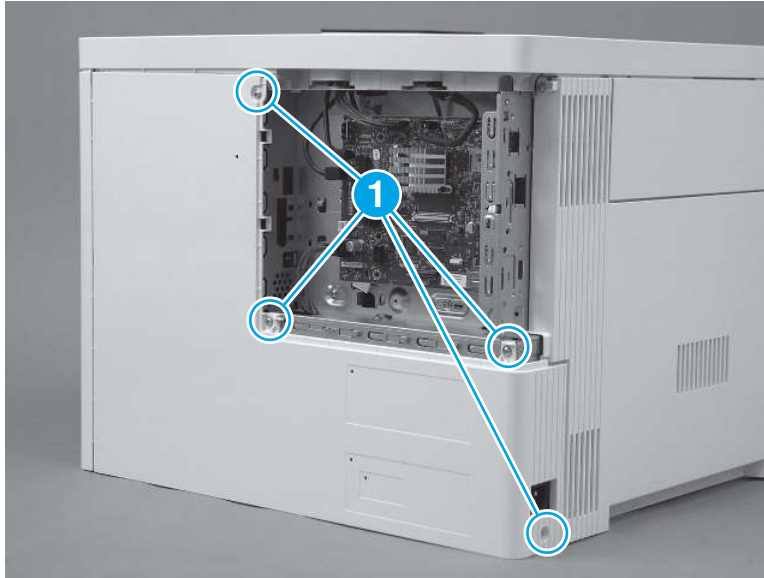
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

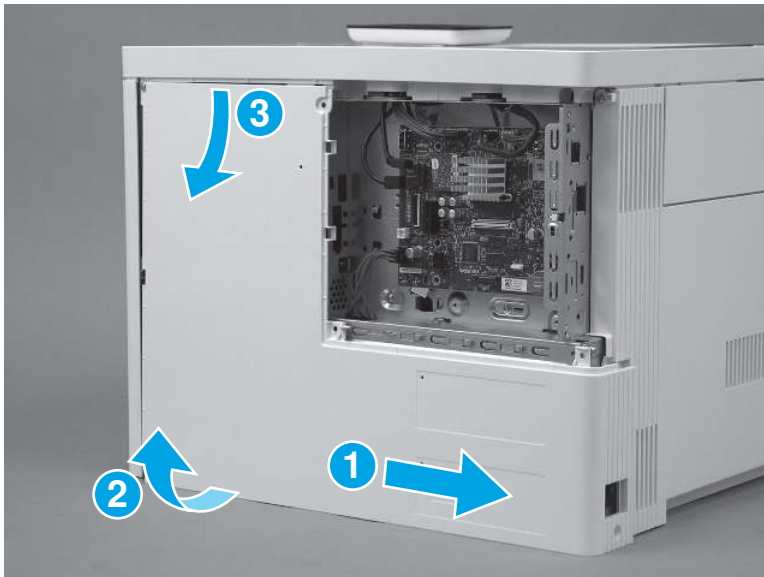
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1104 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1105 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

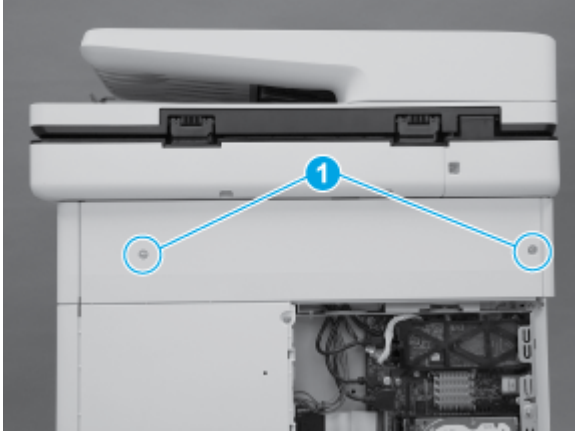
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

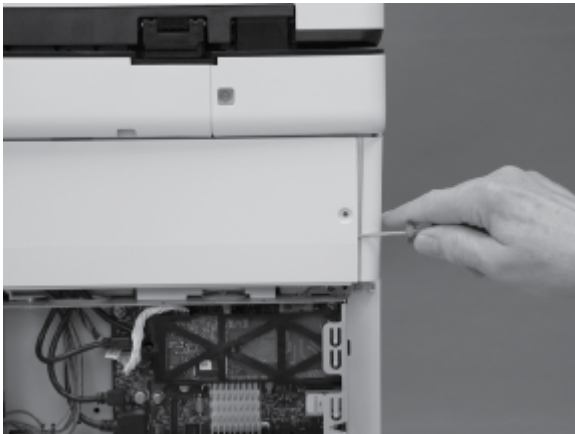
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1106 Remove two screws



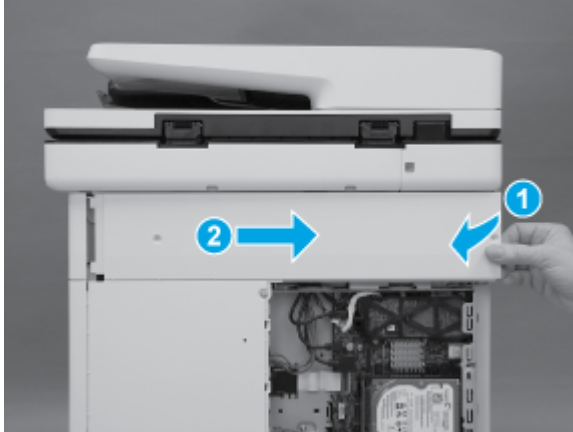
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1107 Release the right edge



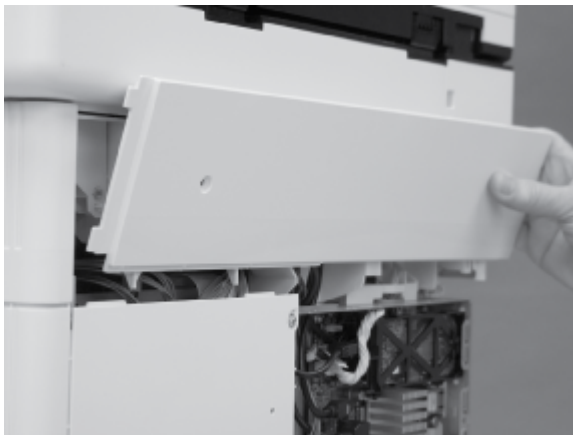
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1108 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1109 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1110 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1111 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

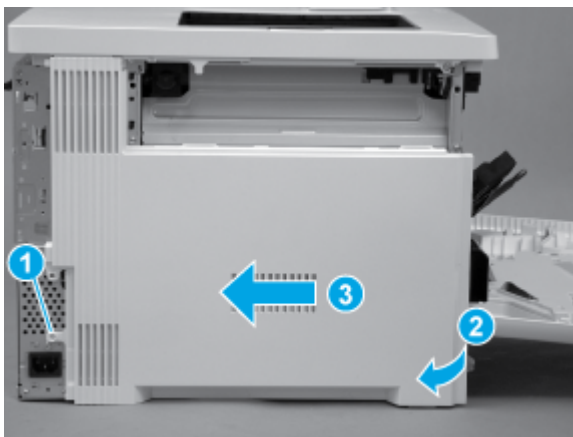
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1112 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1113 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1114 Remove the cover

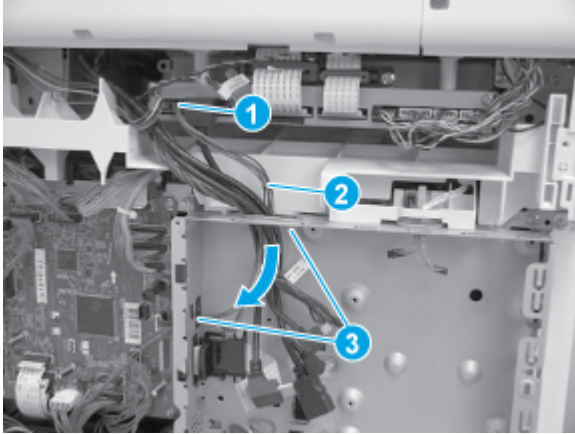


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

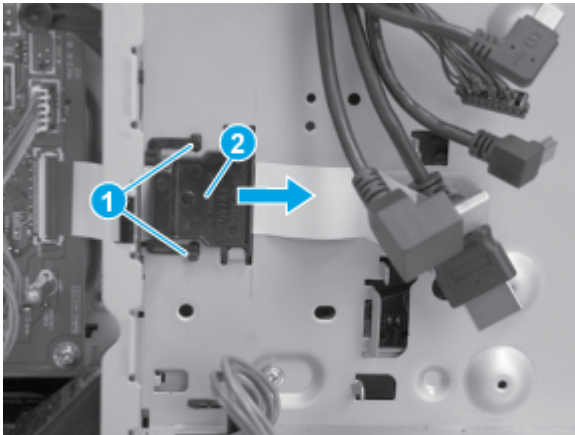
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1115 Disconnect one connector



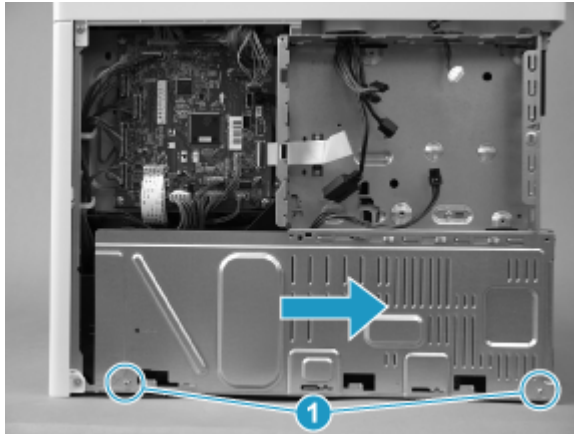
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1116 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

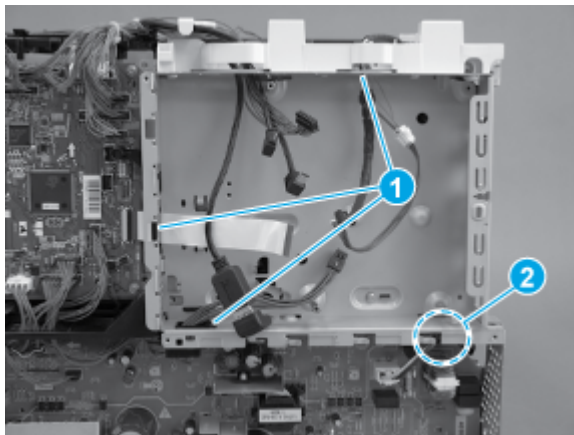
Figure 5-1117 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

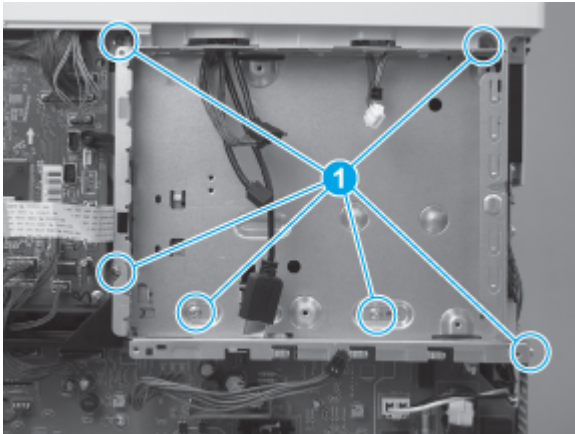
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1118 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



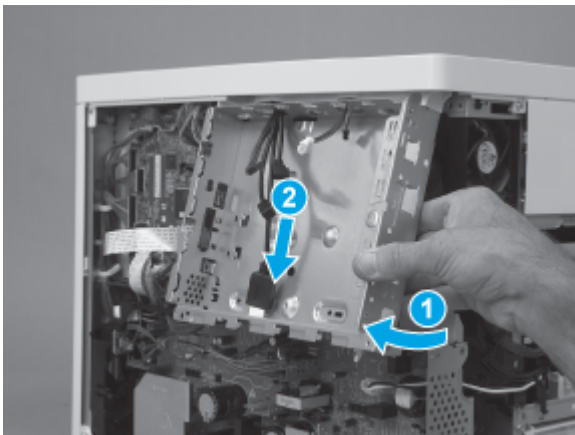
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1119 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

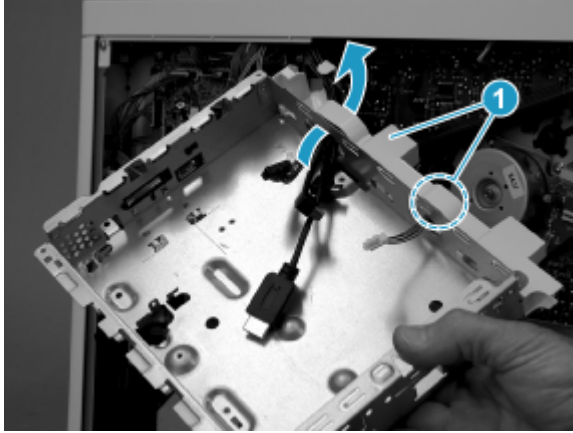
Figure 5-1120 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1121 Remove the formatter case

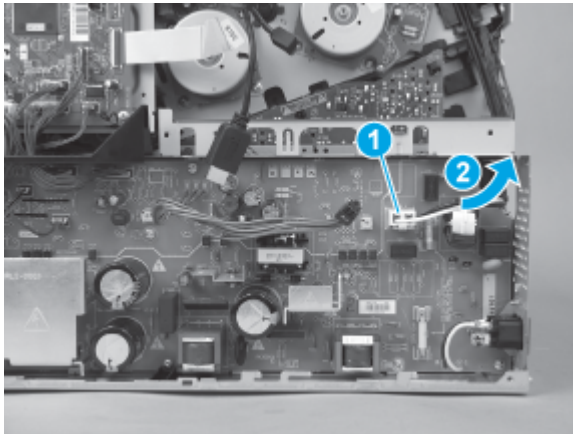


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

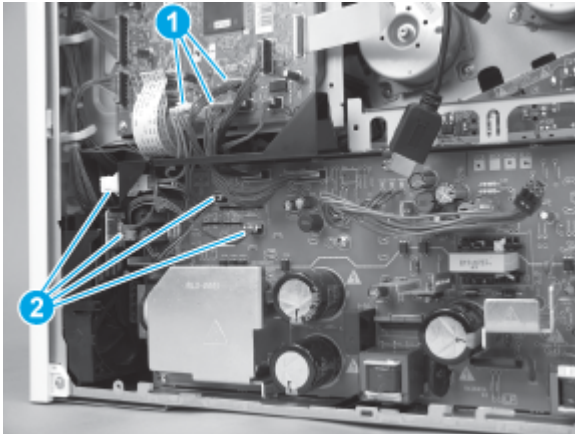
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-1122 Disconnect one wire harness



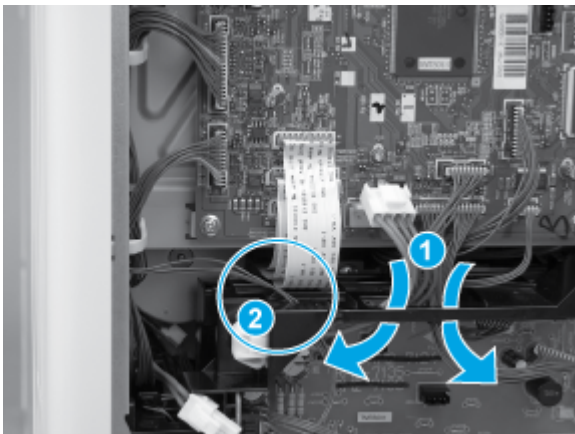
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-1123 Disconnect seven connectors



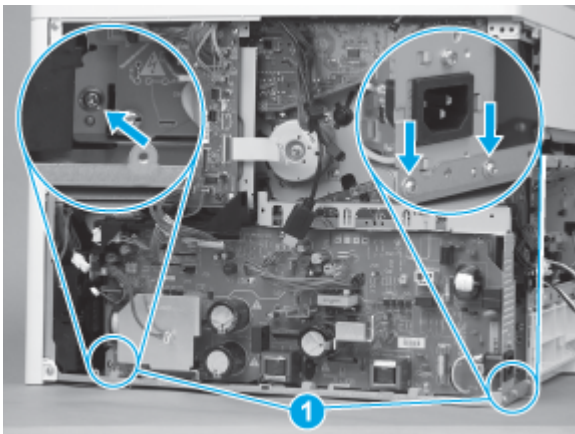
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-1124 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



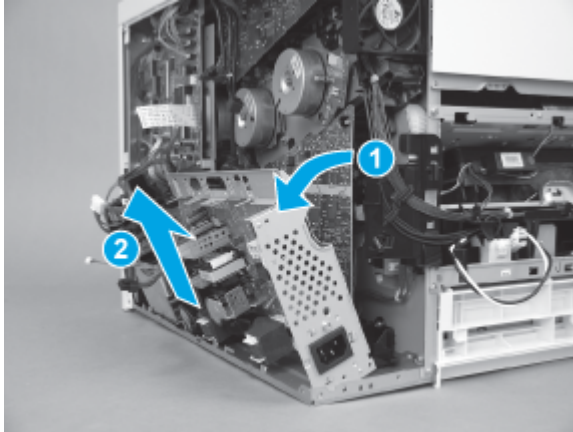
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1125 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1126 Remove the LVPS

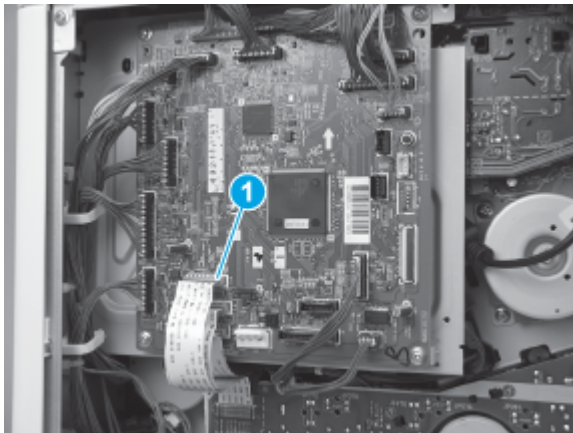


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

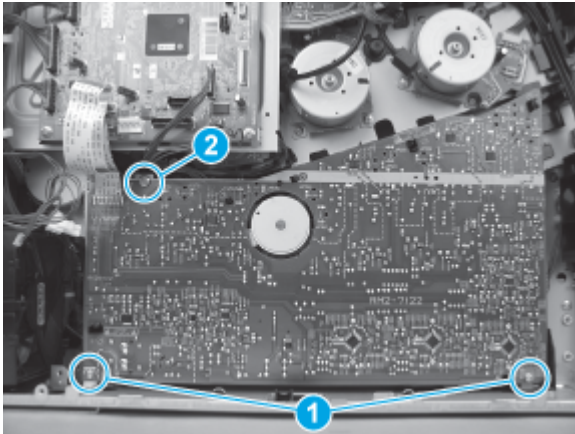
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-1127 Disconnect one flat cable



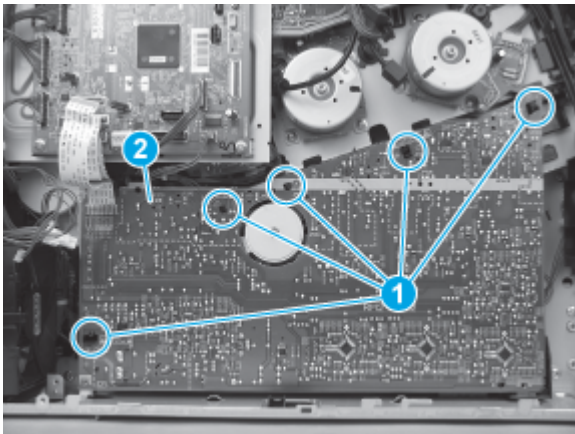
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-1128 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-1129 Remove the HVPSD



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Drum motor 1 (M1)

Learn about removing and replacing drum motor 1.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-66 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0078-000CN	Drum motor 1 (M1)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1130 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1131 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1132 Remove the TCU

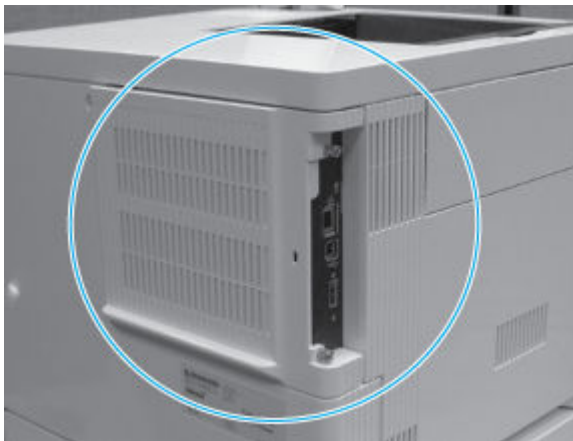


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-1133 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1134 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


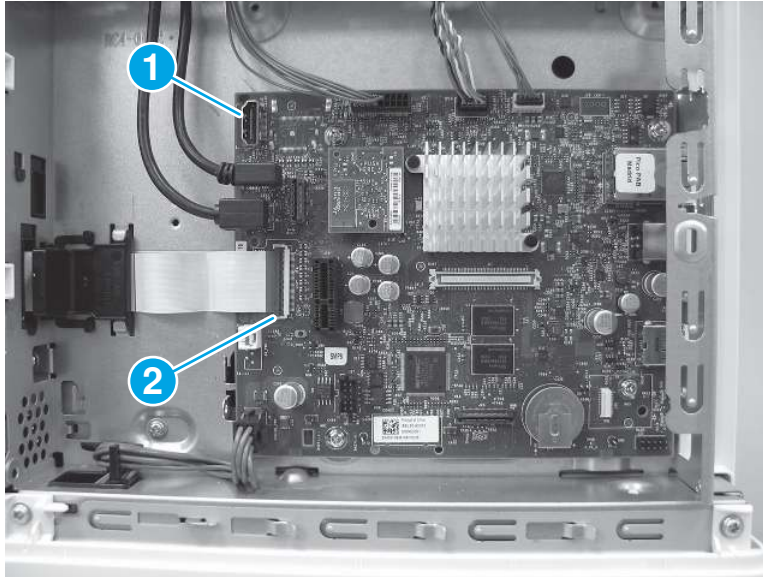
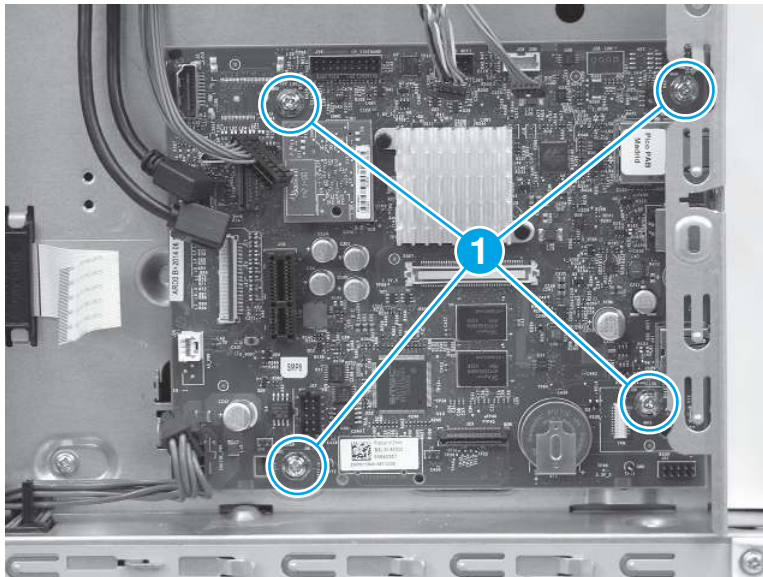
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1135 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1136 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

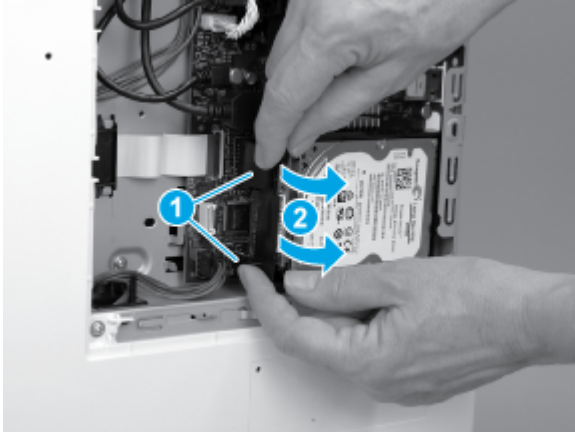
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1137 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1138 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

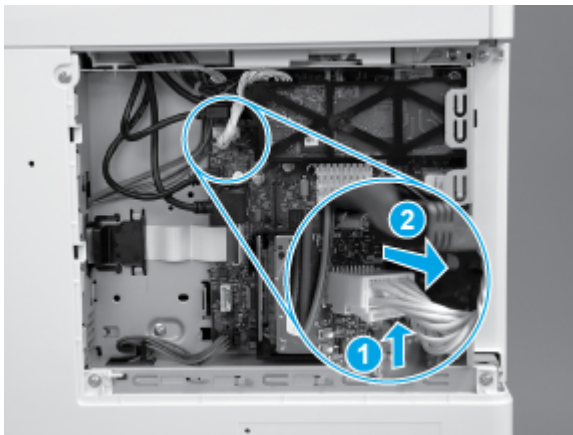
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1139 Locate the fax PCA



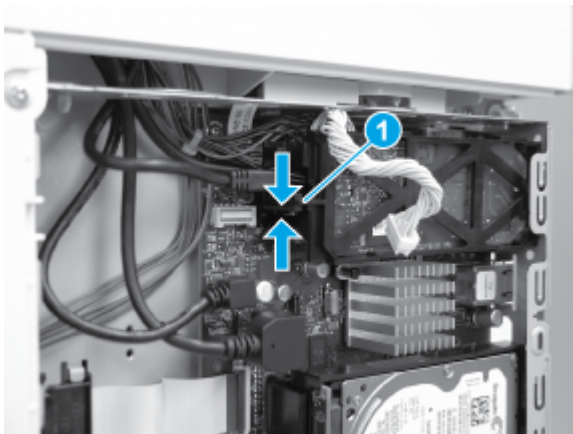
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1140 Disconnect one connector



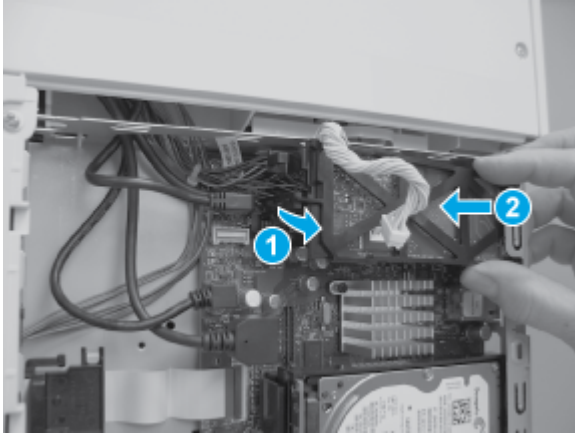
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1141 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1142 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


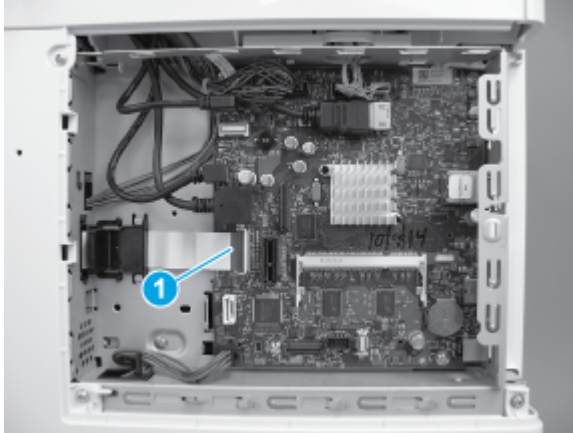
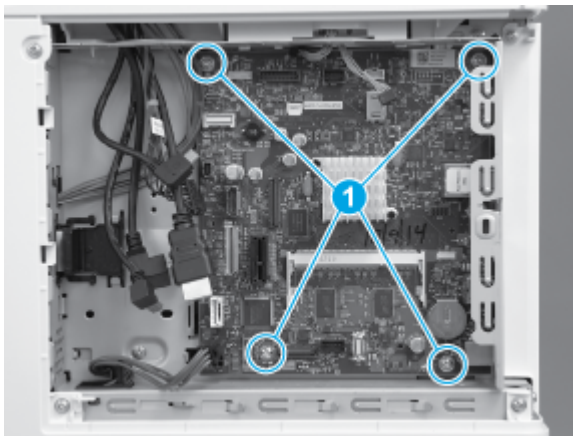
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1143 Disconnect all connectors



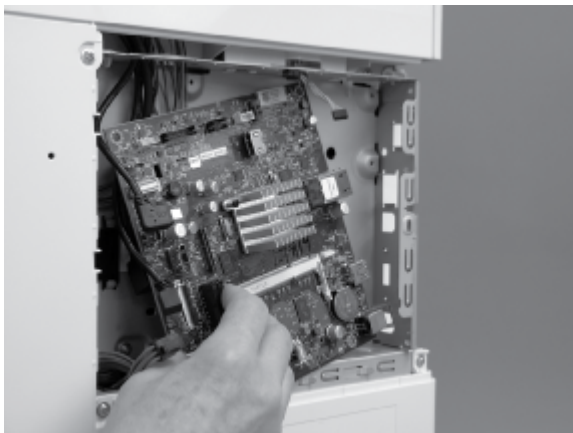
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1144 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1145 Remove the formatter



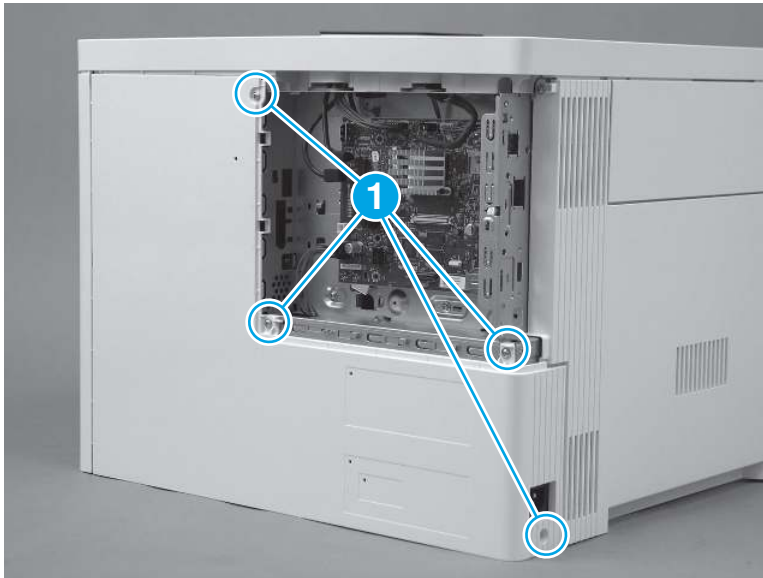
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

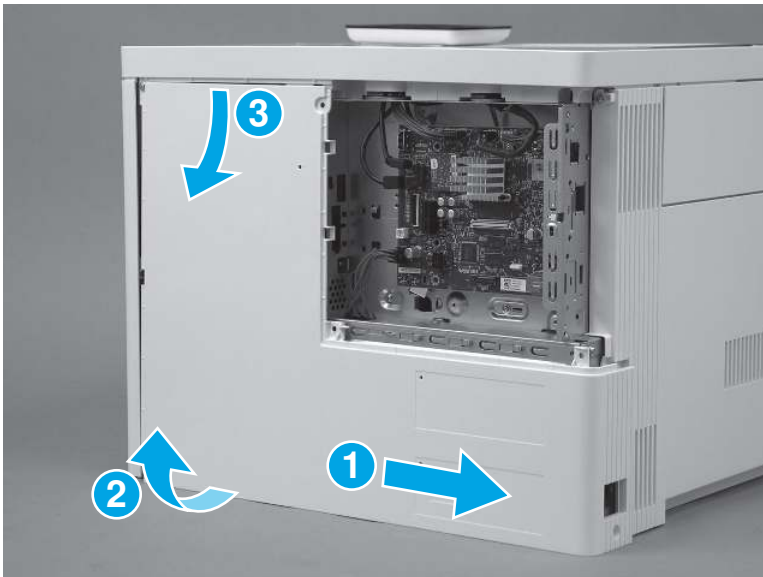
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1146 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1147 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

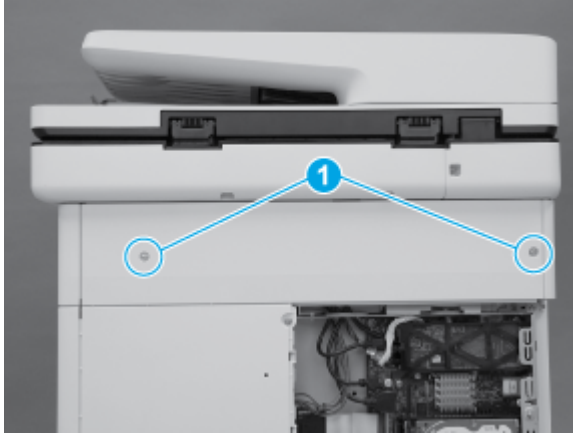
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

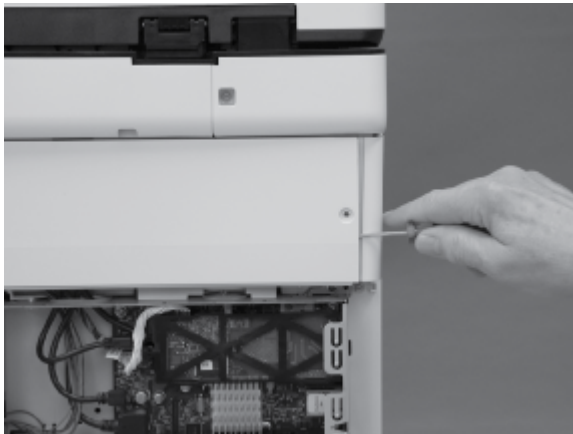
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1148 Remove two screws



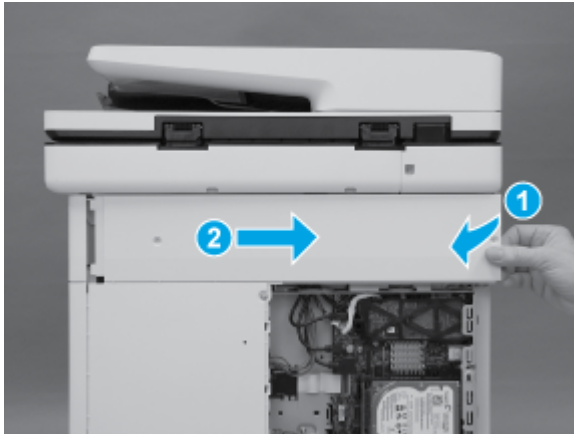
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1149 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1150 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1151 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1152 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1153 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

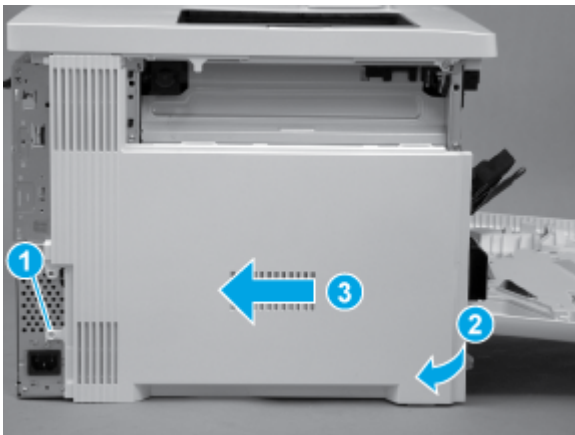
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1154 Remove one screw



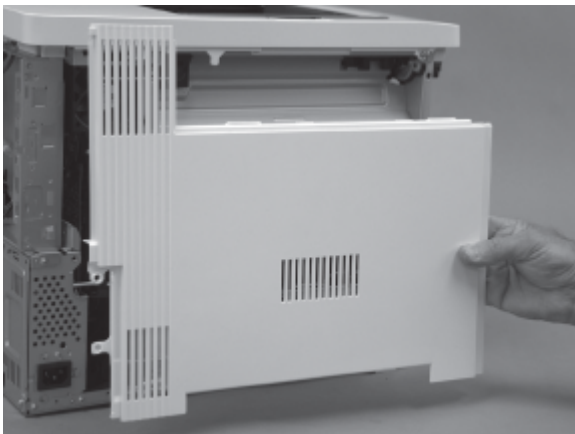
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1155 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1156 Remove the cover

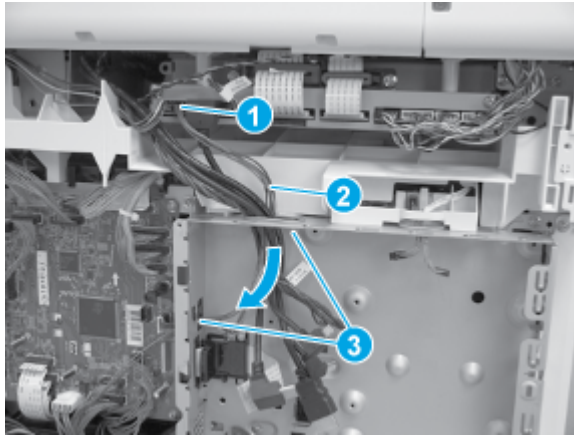


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

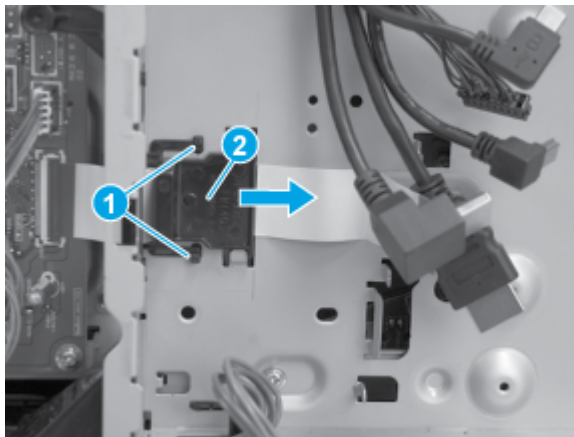
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1157 Disconnect one connector



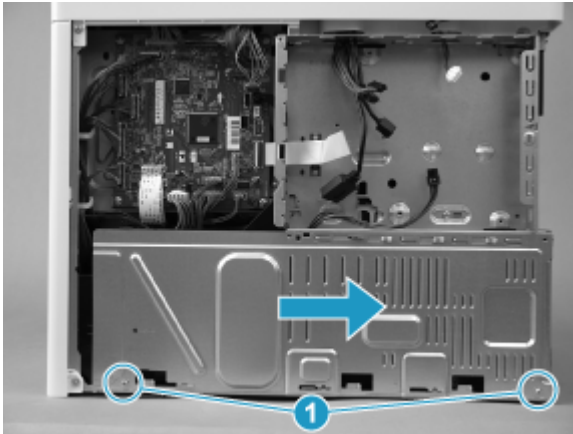
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1158 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

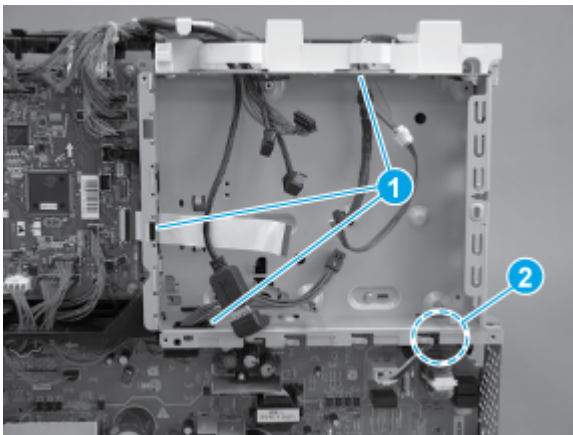
Figure 5-1159 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

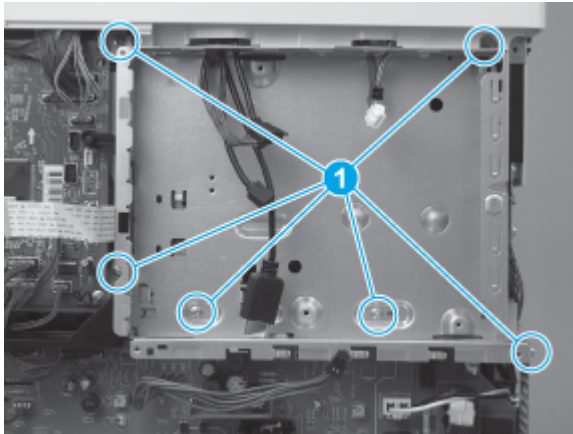
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1160 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



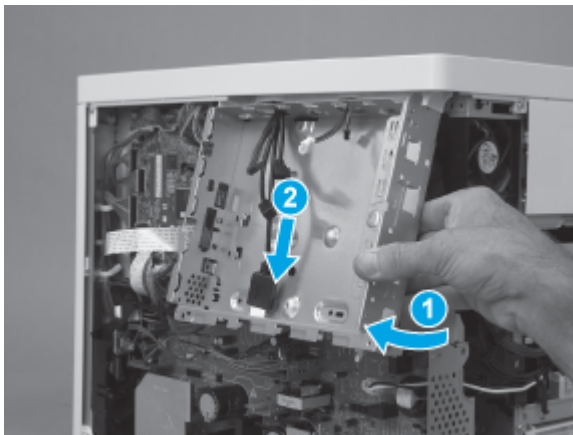
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1161 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1162 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


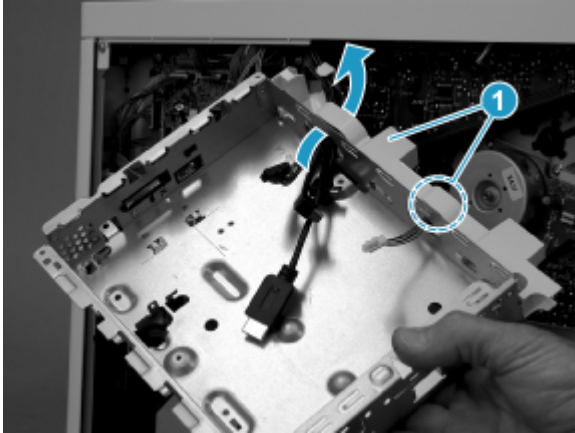
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1163 Remove the formatter case

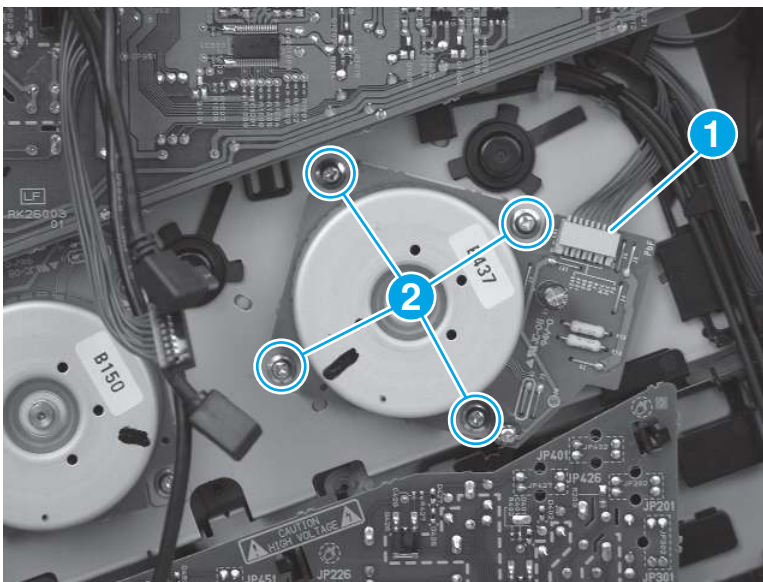


Remove drum motor 1 (M1)

Follow these steps to remove drum motor 1.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-1164 Remove the motor



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Power-supply fan (FM1)

Learn about removing and replacing power supply fan.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-67 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-2416-000CN	Power supply fan (FM1)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

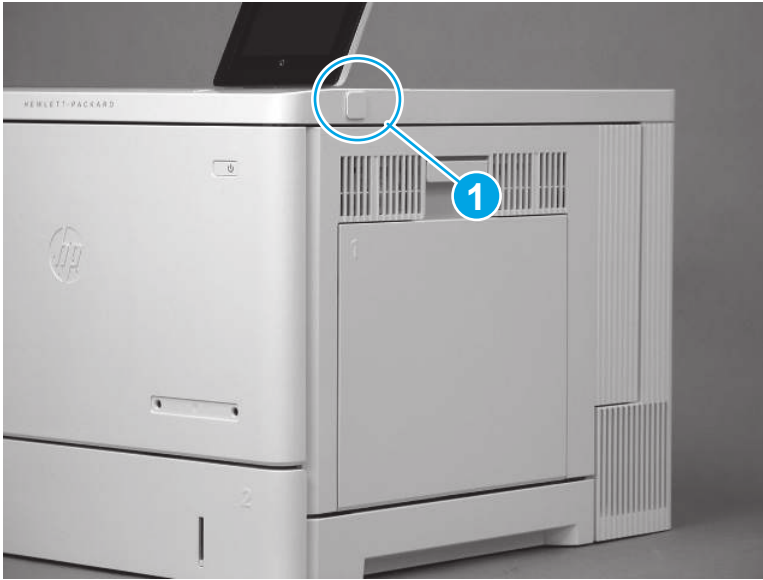
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1165 Locate the USB cover




2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1166 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1167 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1168 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1169 Remove the cover

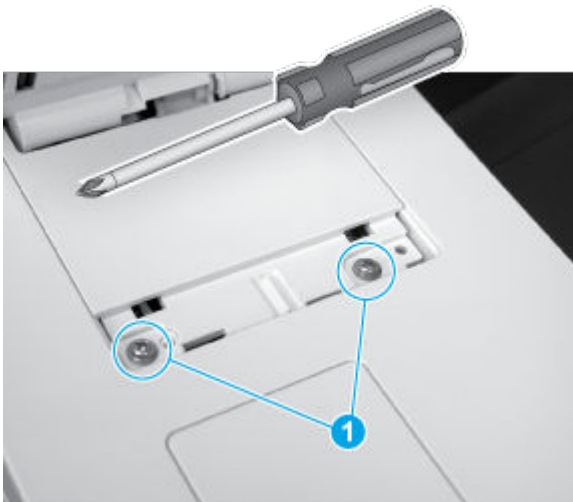


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1170 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1171 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

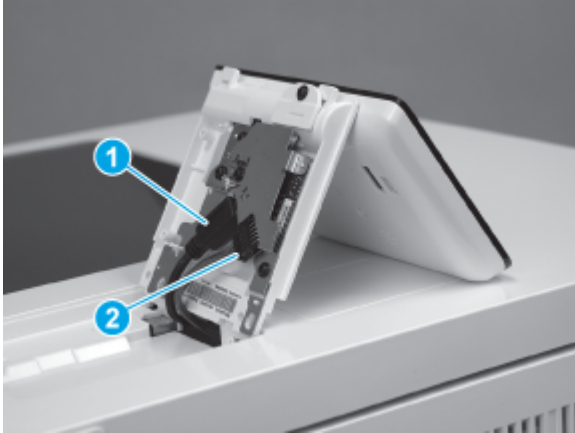
Figure 5-1172 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.

📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1173 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1174 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.


 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1175 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1176 Remove the TCU

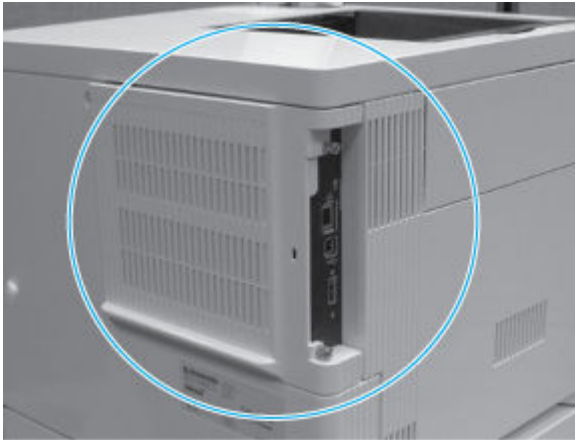


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

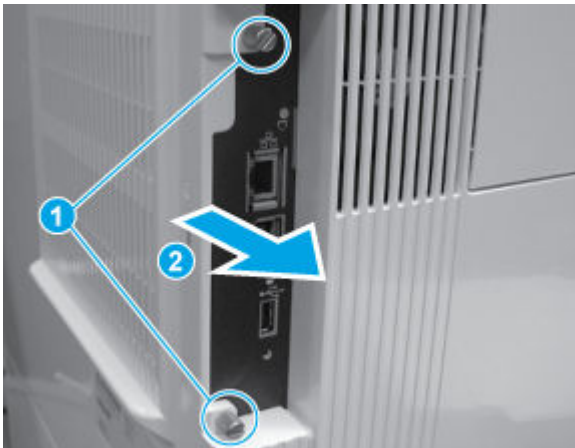
Figure 5-1177 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1178 Loosen the thumbscrews



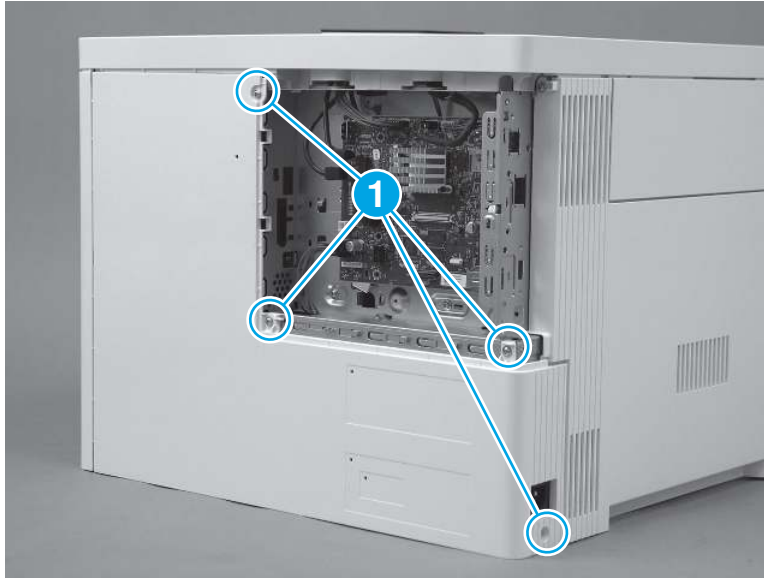
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

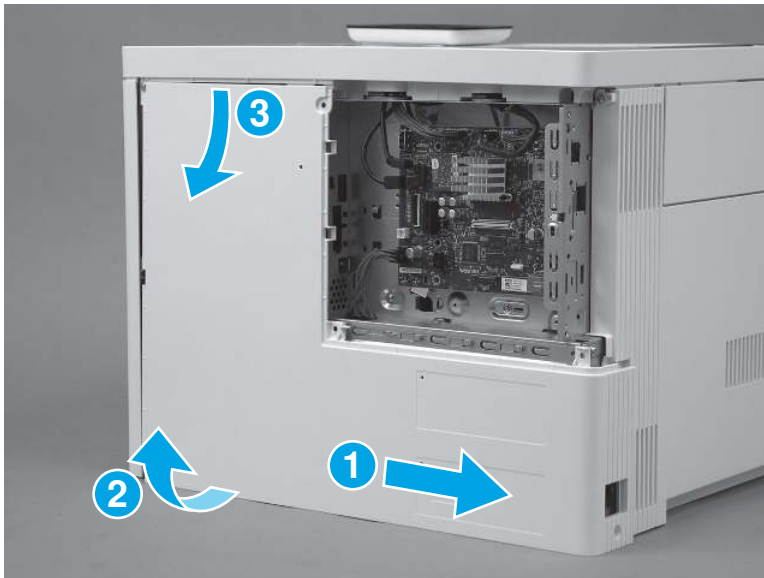
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1179 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1180 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

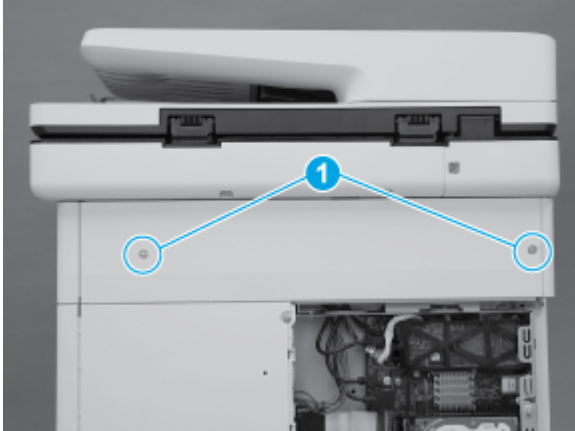
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

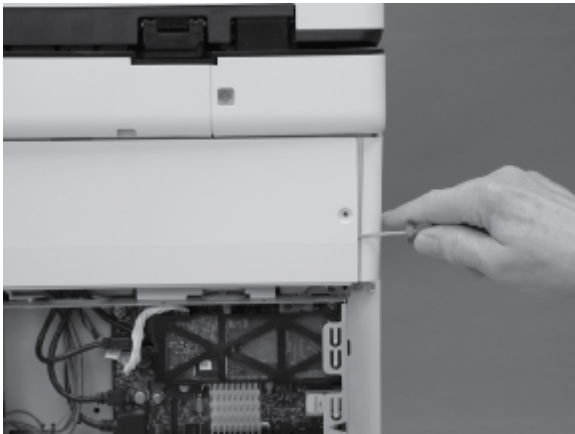
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1181 Remove two screws



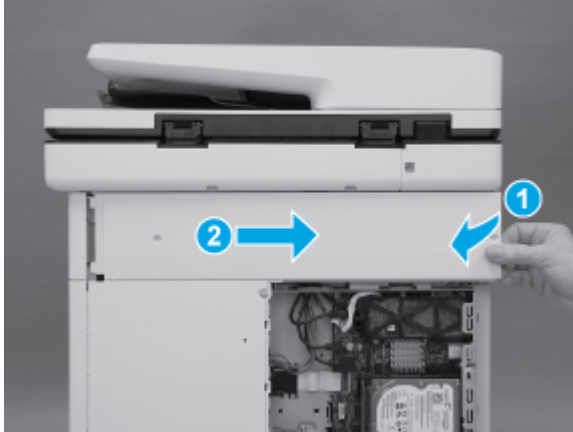
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1182 Release the right edge



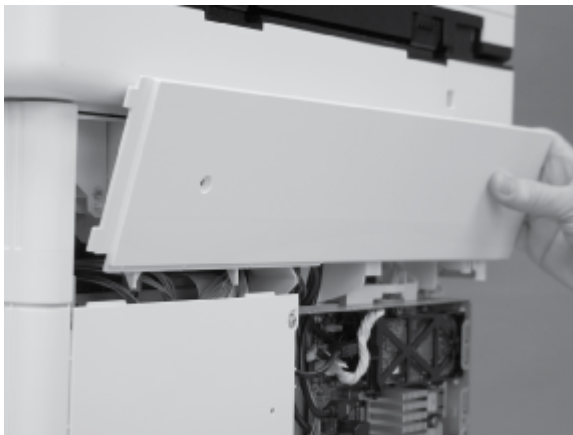
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1183 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1184 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1185 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1186 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

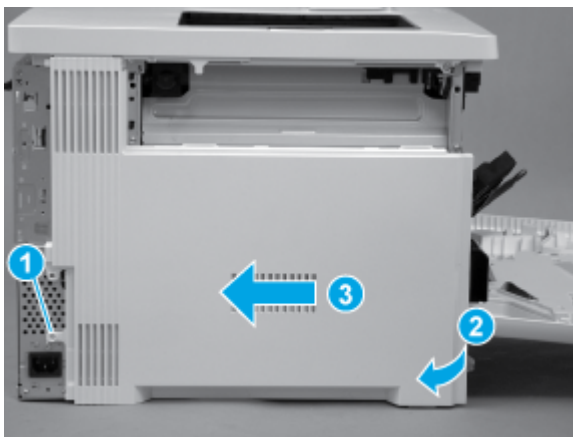
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1187 Remove one screw



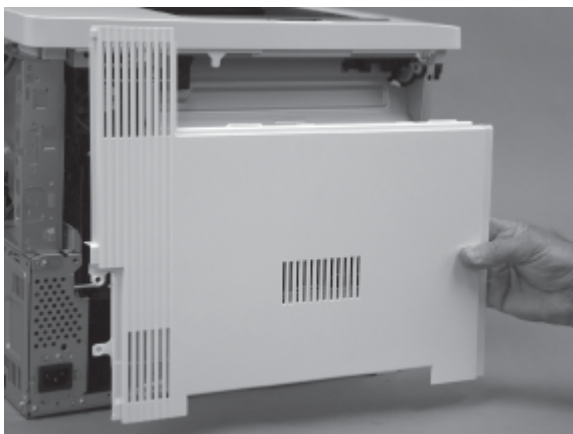
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1188 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1189 Remove the cover



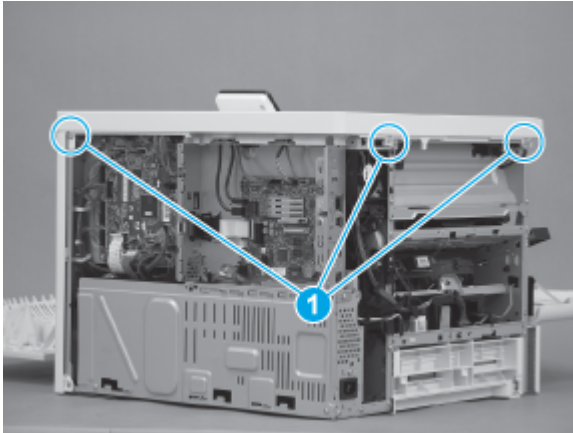
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1190 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1191 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


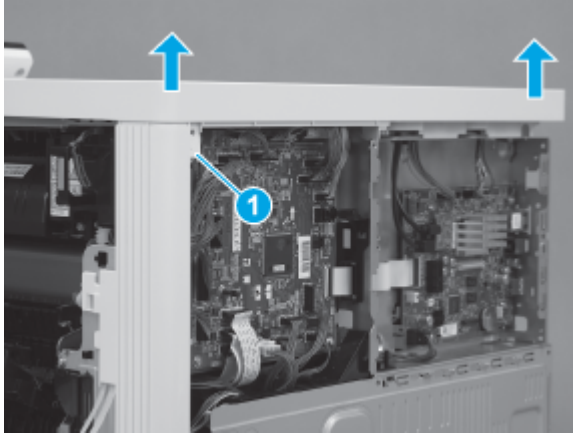
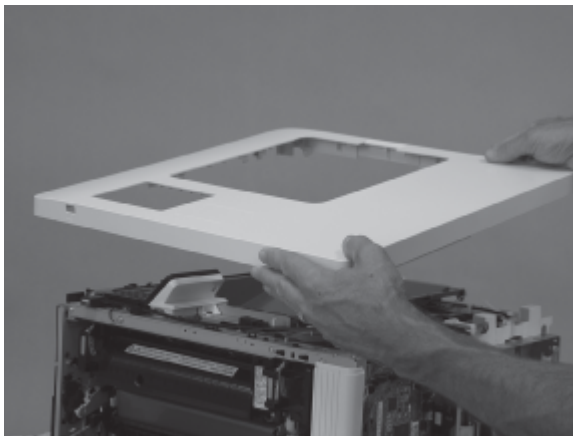
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-1192 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1193 Remove the cover



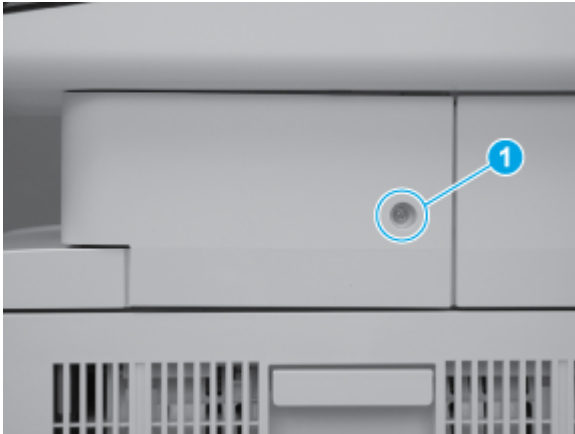
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1194 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1195 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1196 Rotate the cover



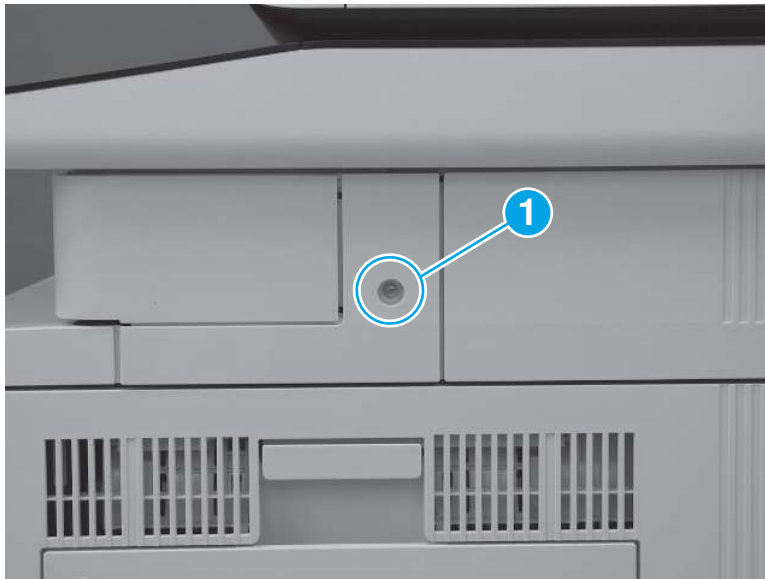
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1197 Remove one screw



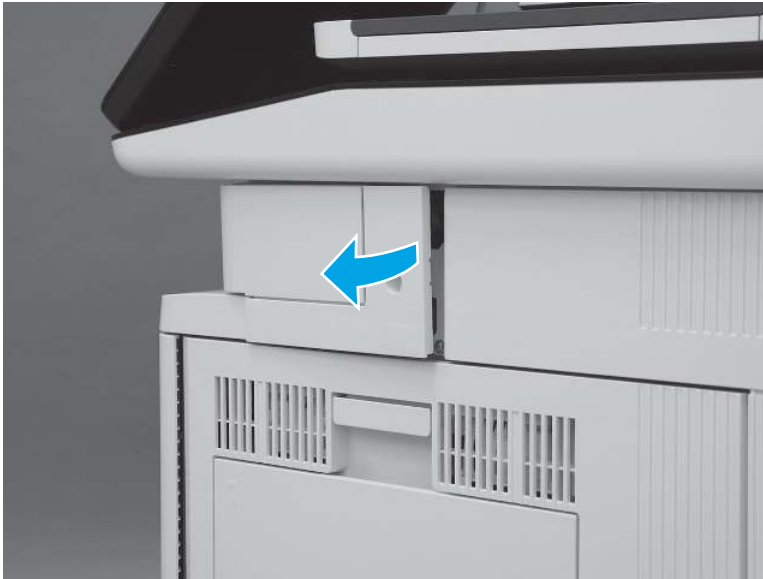
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1198 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1199 Release the back edge of the cover




4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1200 Remove the cover



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

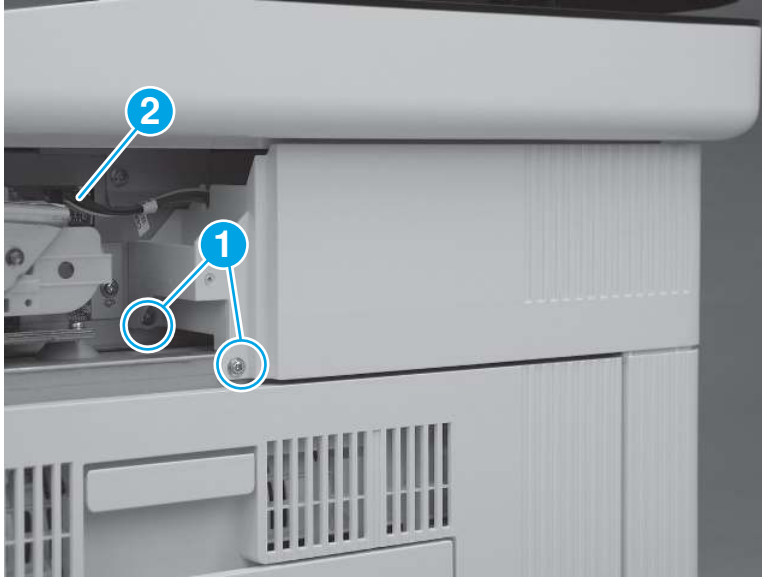
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1201 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


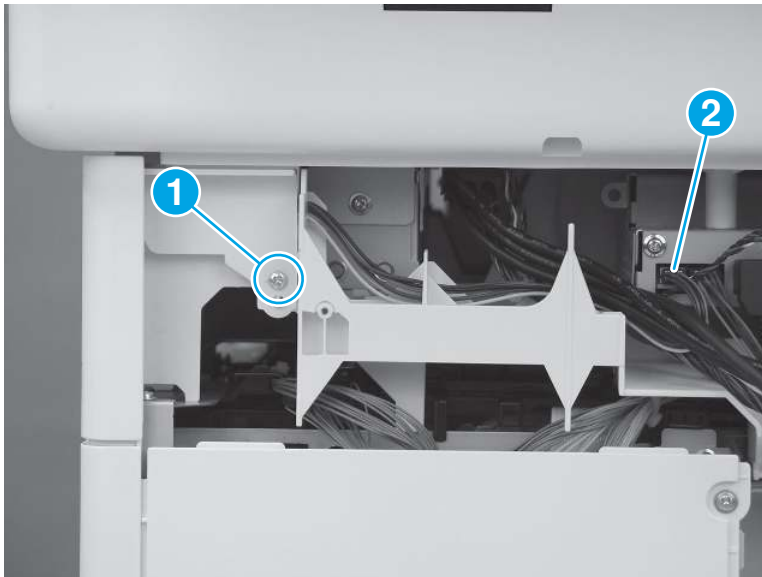
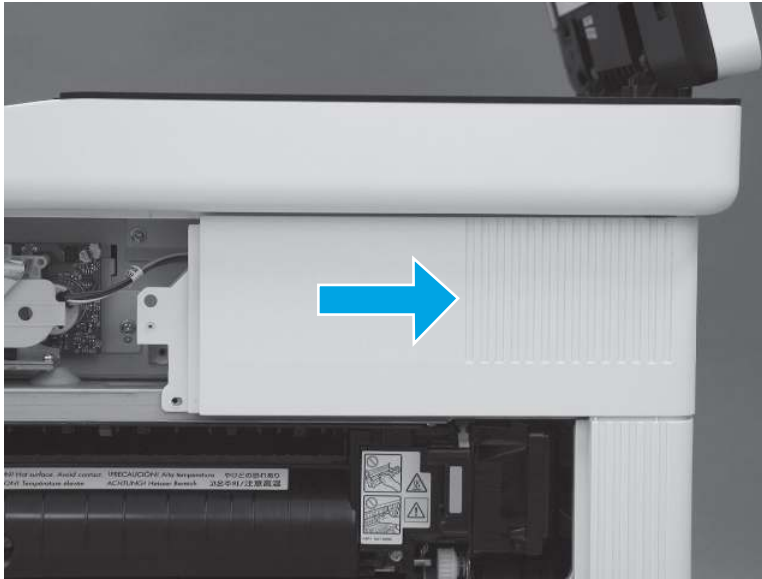
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1202 Remove one screw and connector



- Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

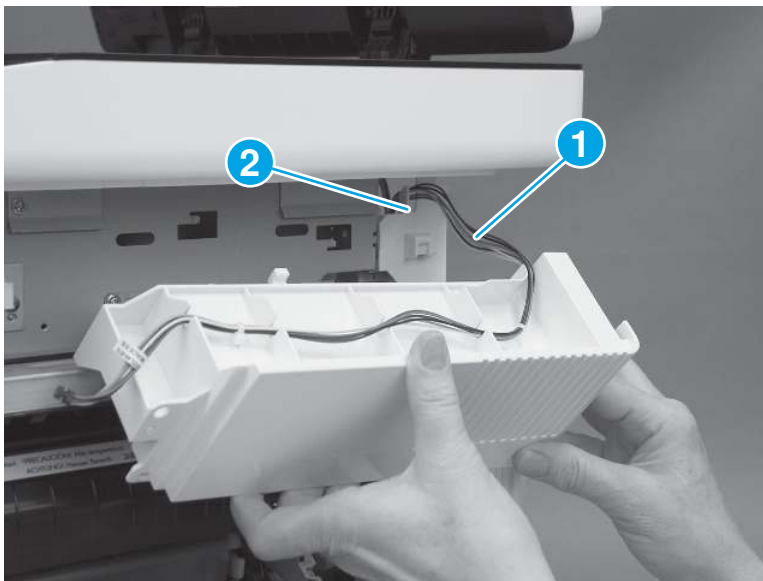
Figure 5-1203 Slide the cover



- Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-1204 Remove the cover



Remove the right rear cover

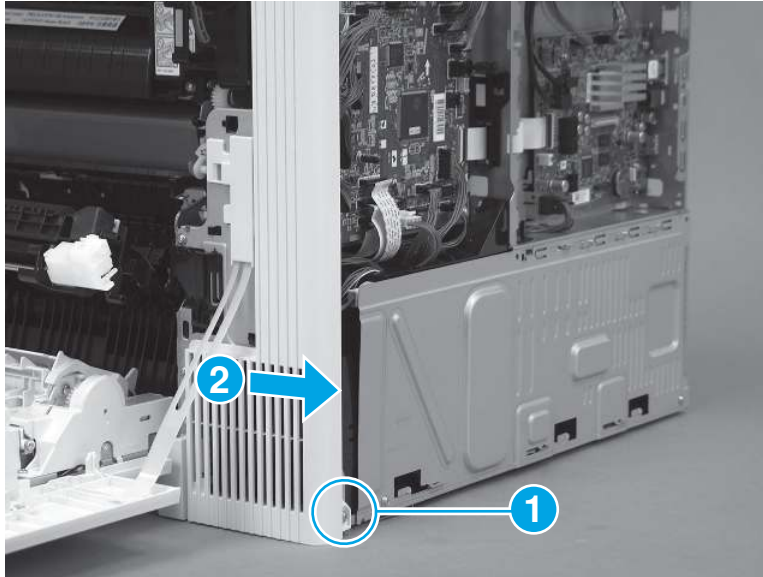
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

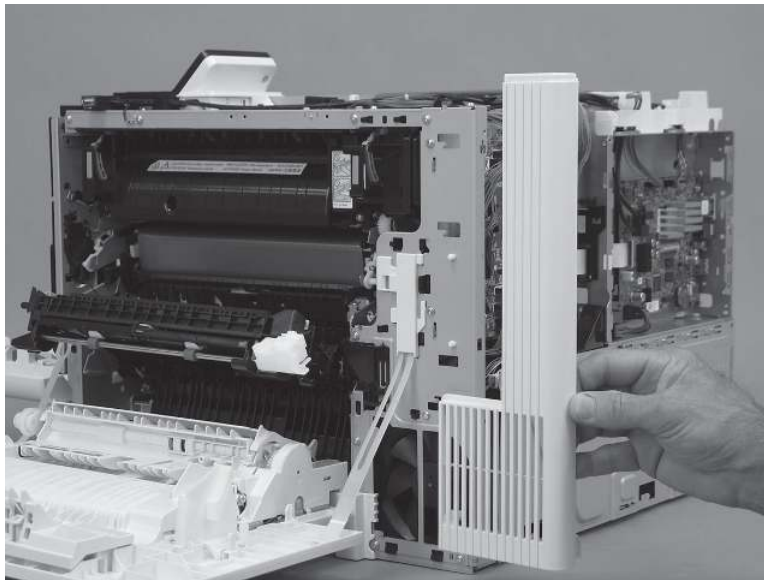
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-1205 Release the cover




2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1206 Remove the cover



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)

- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


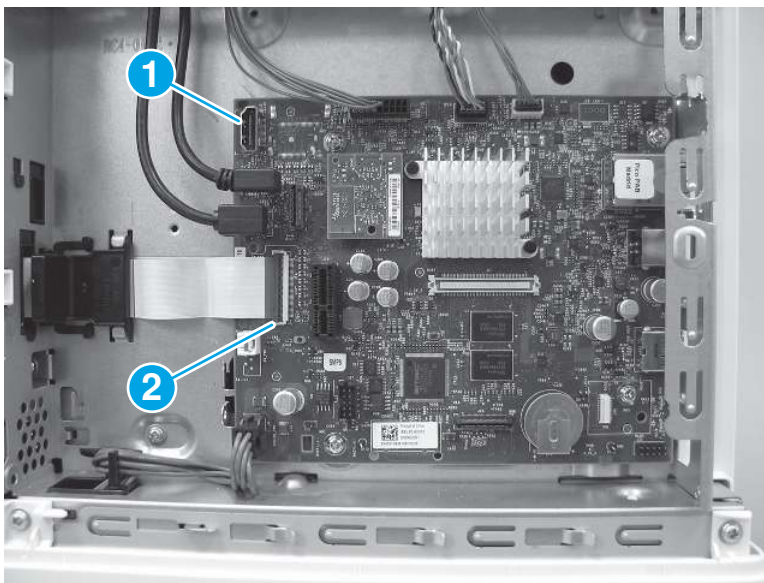
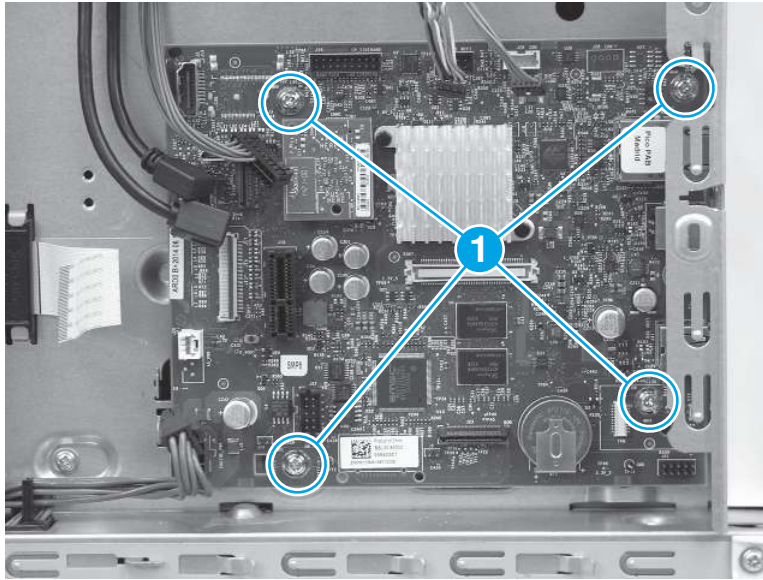
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1207 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1208 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

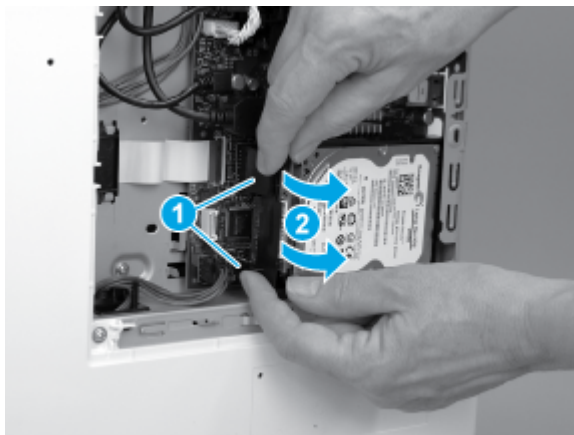
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1209 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1210 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

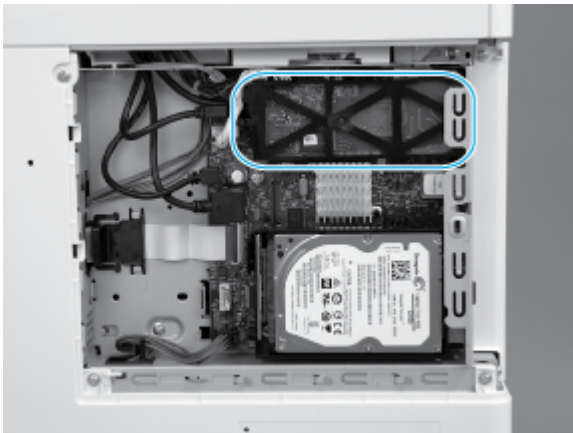
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

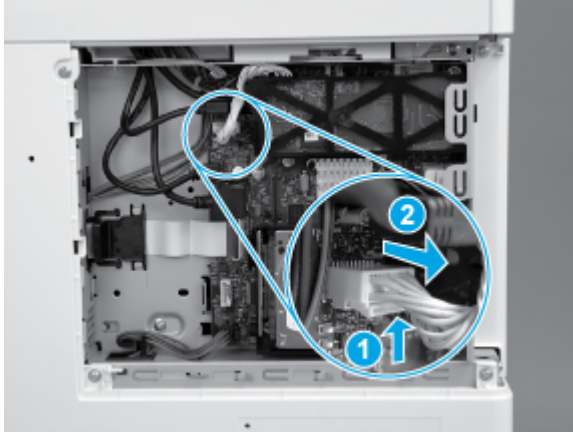
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1211 Locate the fax PCA



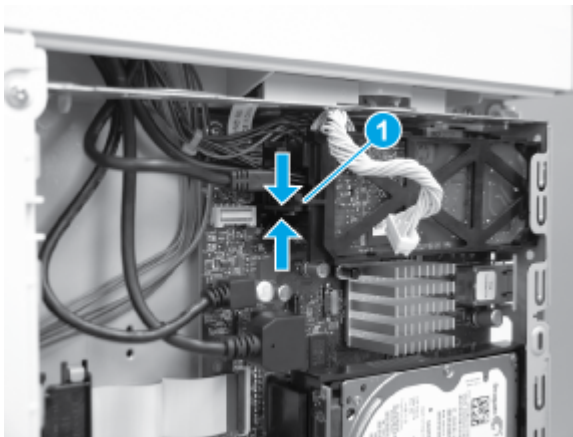
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1212 Disconnect one connector



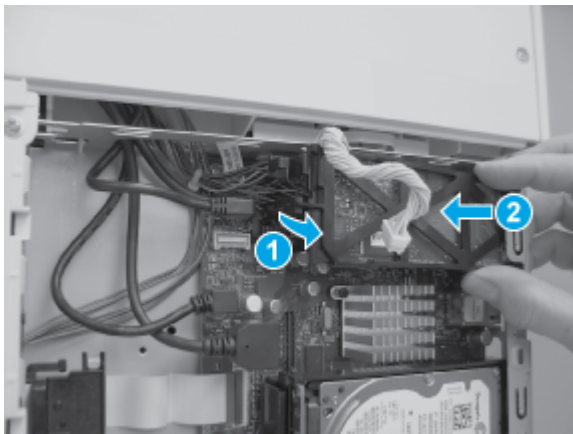
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1213 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1214 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


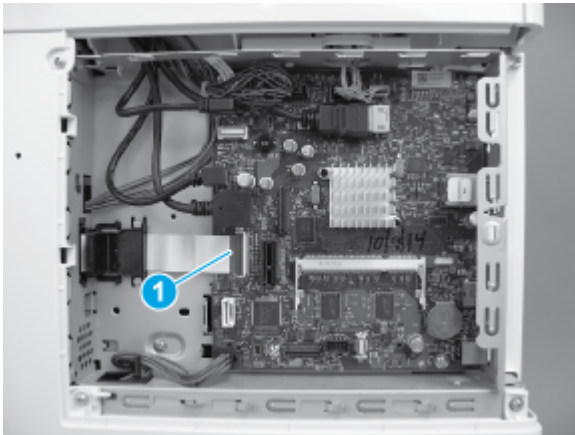
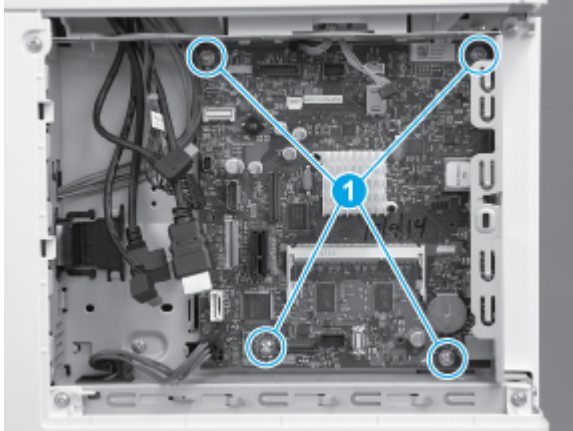
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1215 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1216 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1217 Remove the formatter

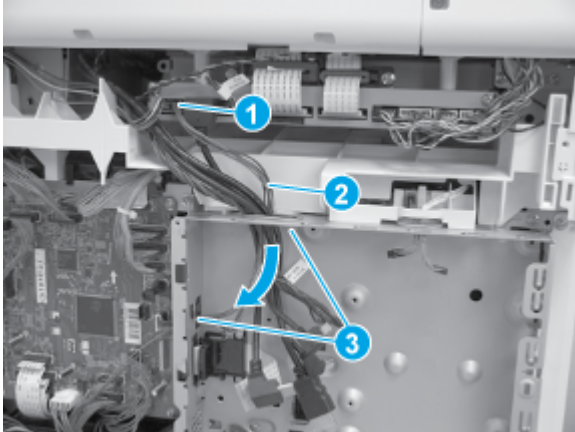


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

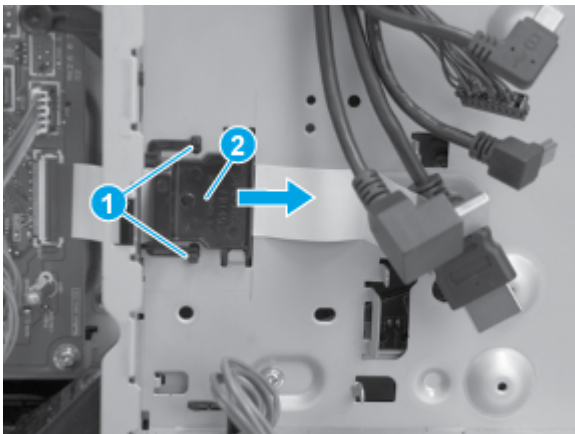
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1218 Disconnect one connector



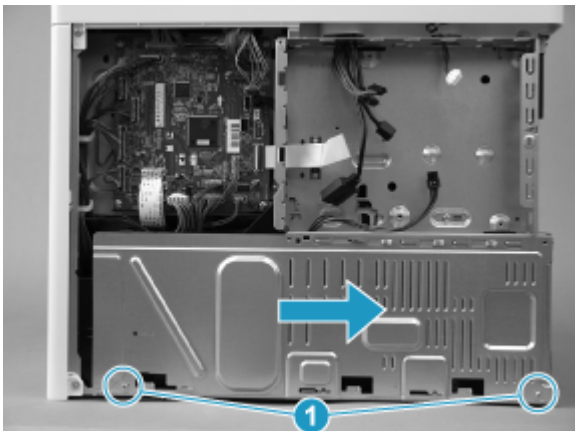
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1219 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

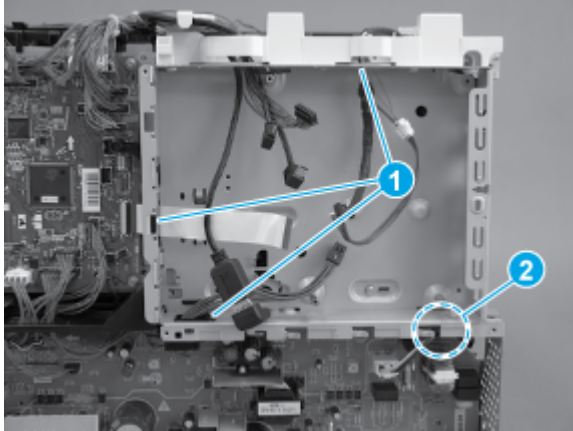
Figure 5-1220 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

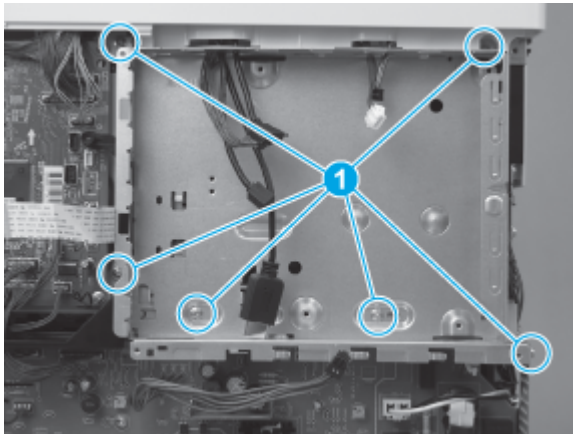
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1221 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



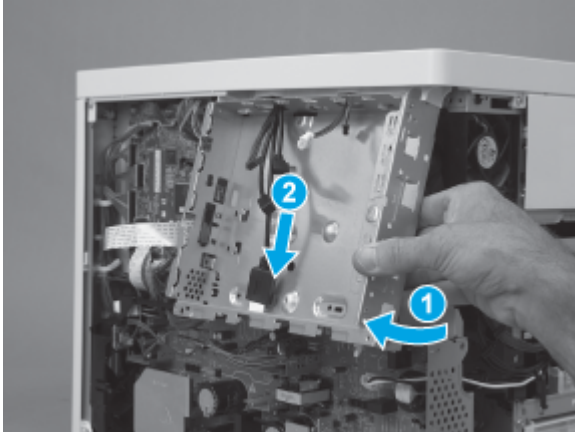
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1222 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1223 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


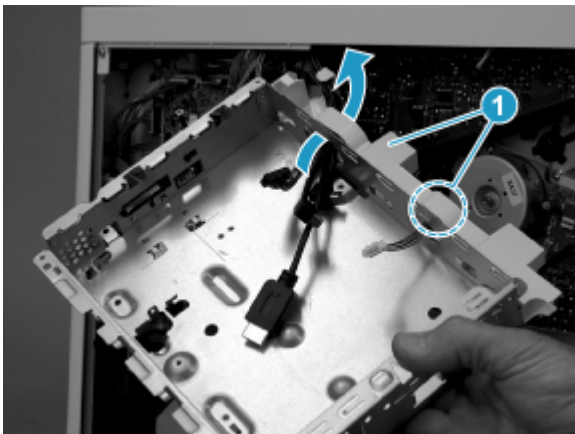
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1224 Remove the formatter case

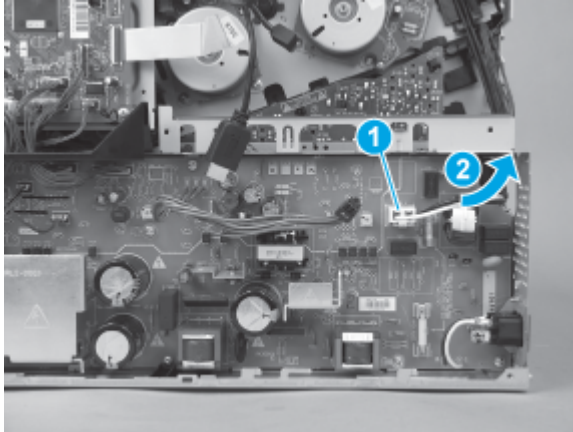


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

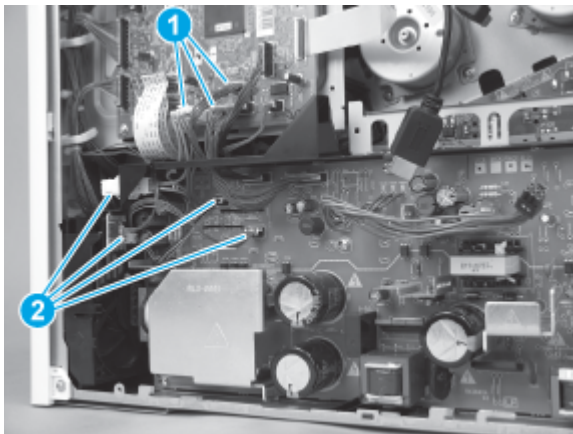
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-1225 Disconnect one wire harness



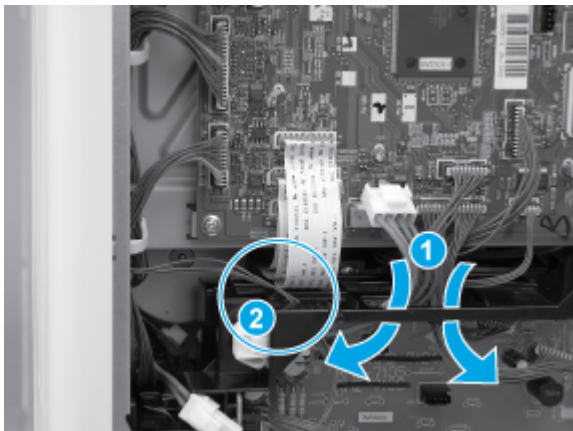
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-1226 Disconnect seven connectors



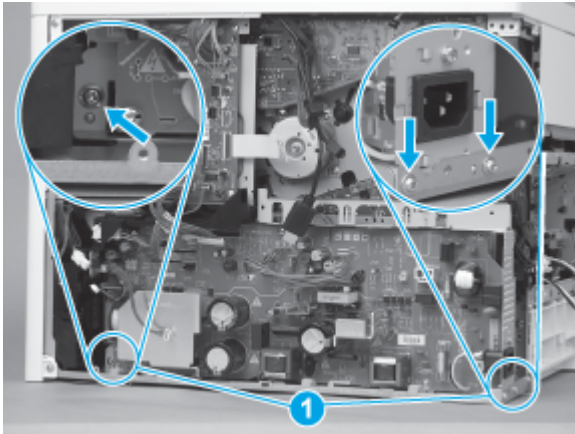
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-1227 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



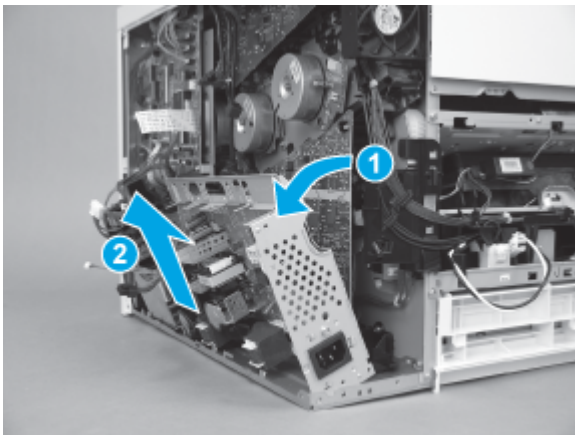
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1228 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1229 Remove the LVPS

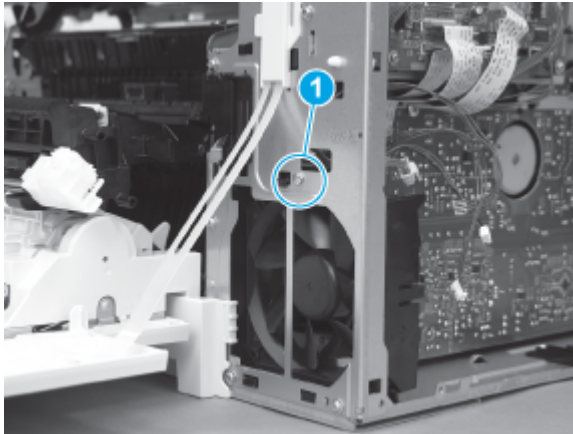


Remove the power supply fan (FM1)

Follow these steps to remove the power supply fan.

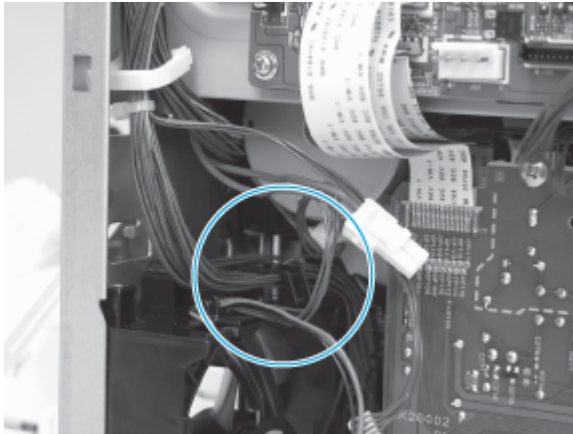
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1230 Remove one screw



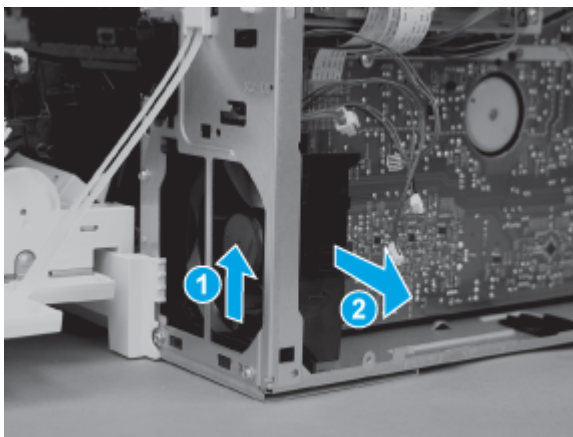
2. Release the wire harnesses from the retainer on the top of the fan bracket.

Figure 5-1231 Release the wire harnesses



3. Lift the fan up (callout 1), and then slide it out of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1232 Remove the fan



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developing disengagement motor (M6)

Learn about removing and replacing developing disengagement motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-68 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-6027-000CN	Developing disengagement motor (M6)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1233 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1234 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1235 Remove the TCU

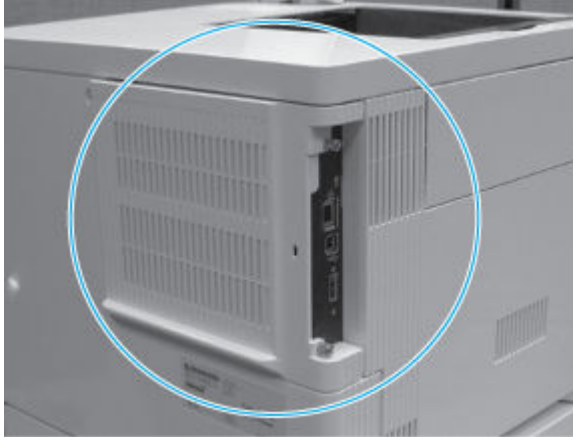


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

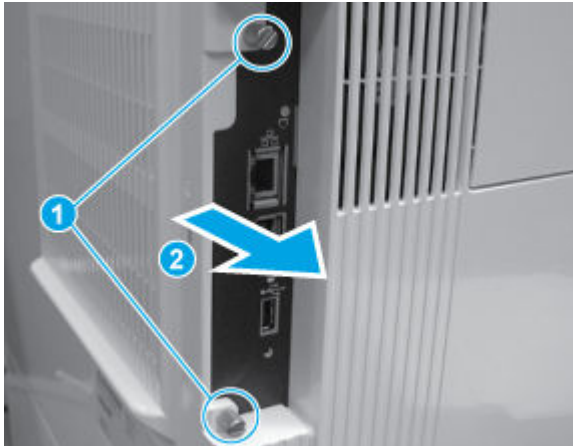
Figure 5-1236 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1237 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

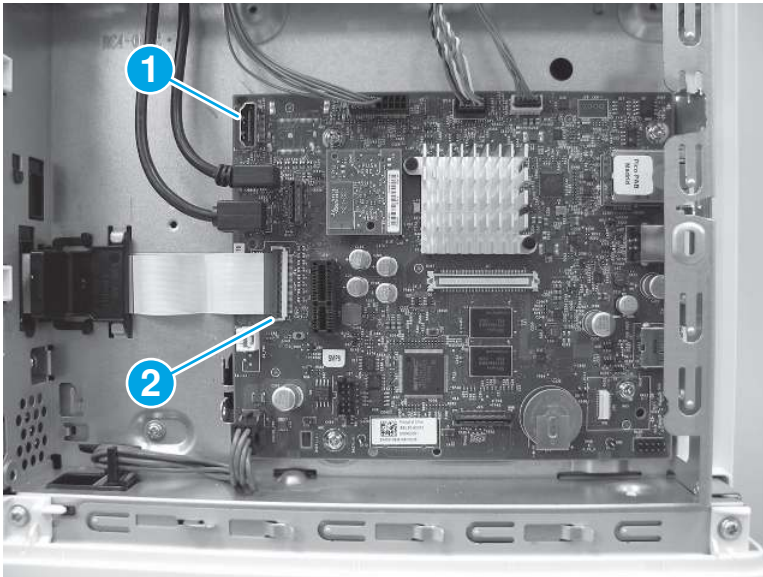
The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)

- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)

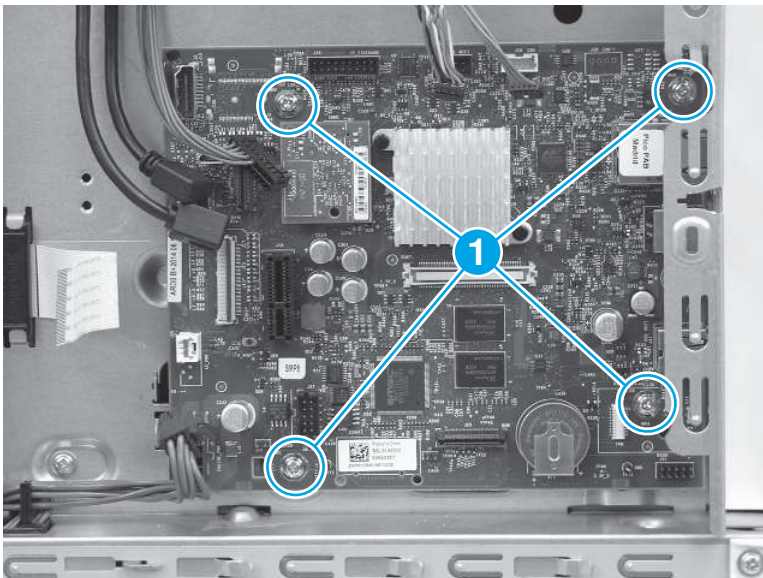
IMPORTANT: The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1238 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1239 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

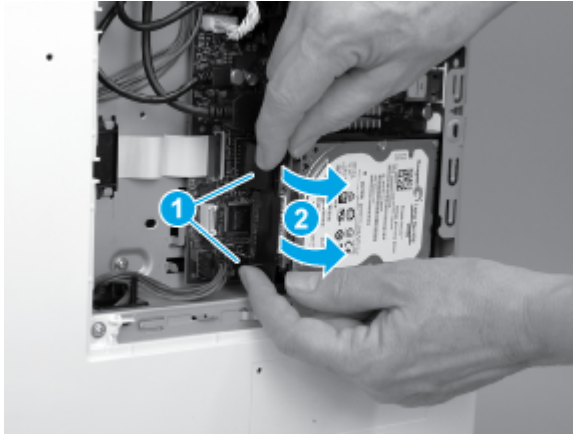
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1240 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1241 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

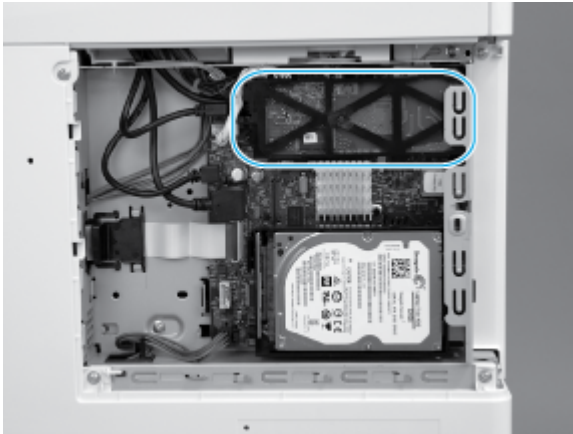
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

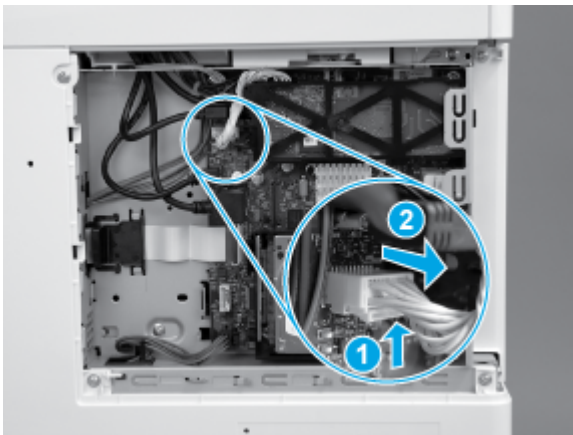
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1242 Locate the fax PCA



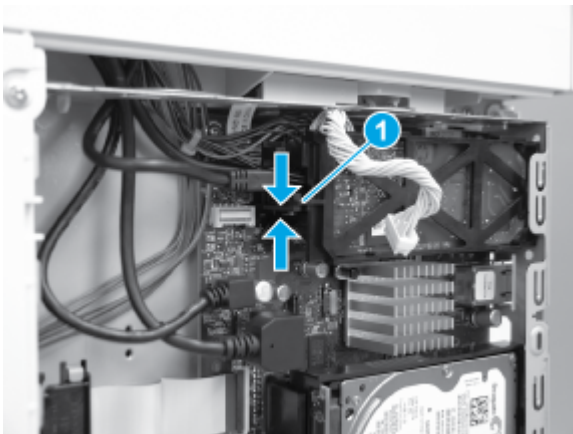
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1243 Disconnect one connector



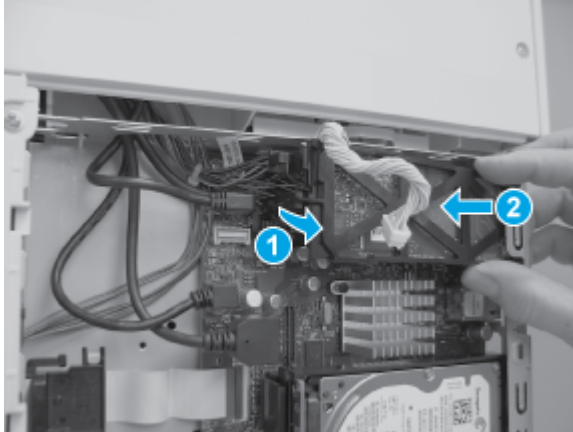
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1244 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1245 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


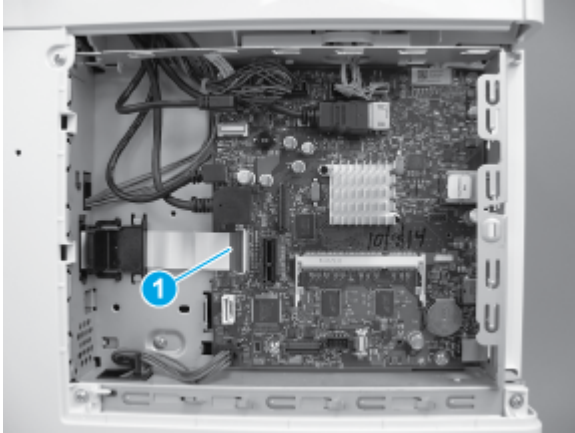
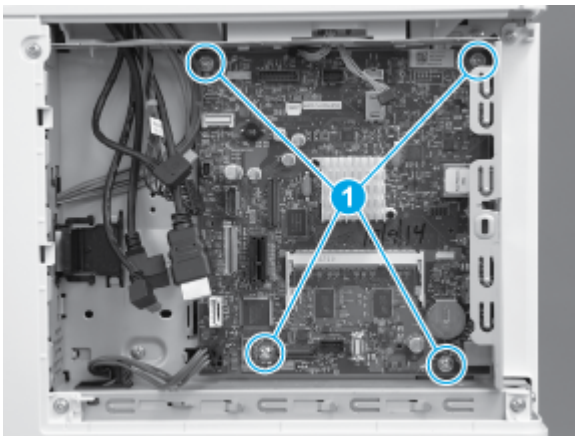
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1246 Disconnect all connectors



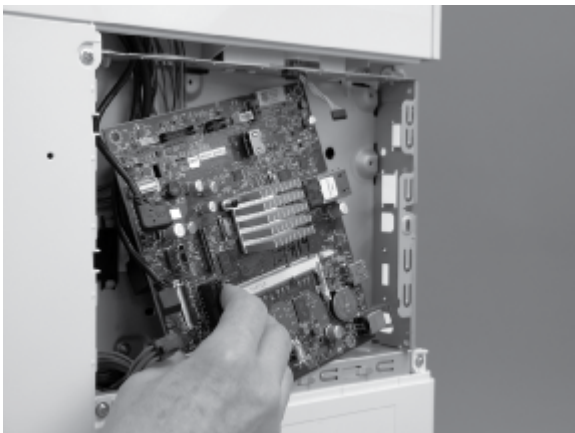
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1247 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1248 Remove the formatter



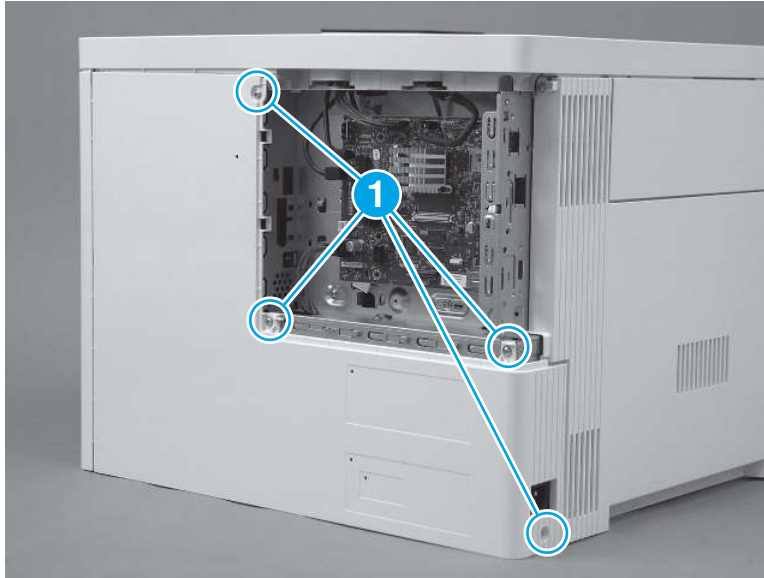
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

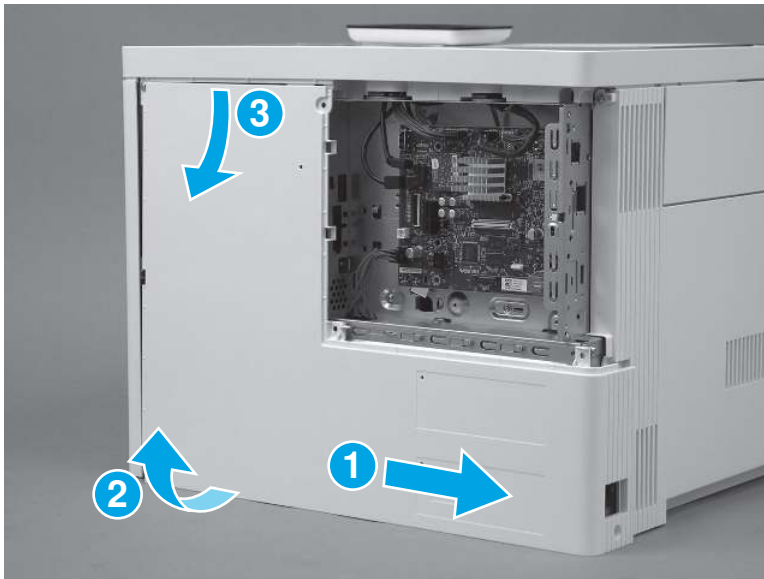
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1249 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1250 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

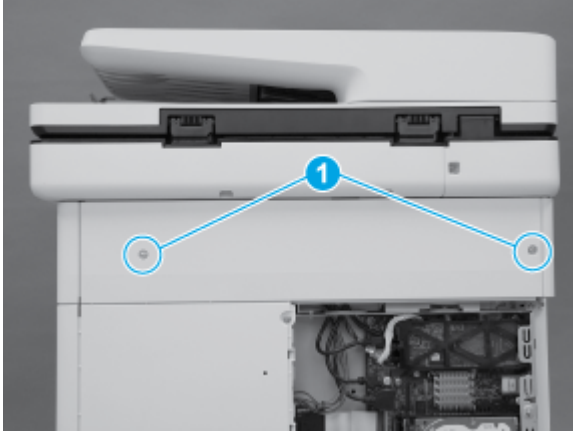
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

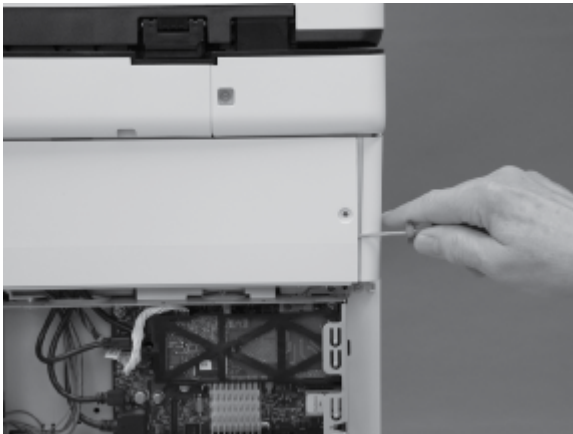
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1251 Remove two screws



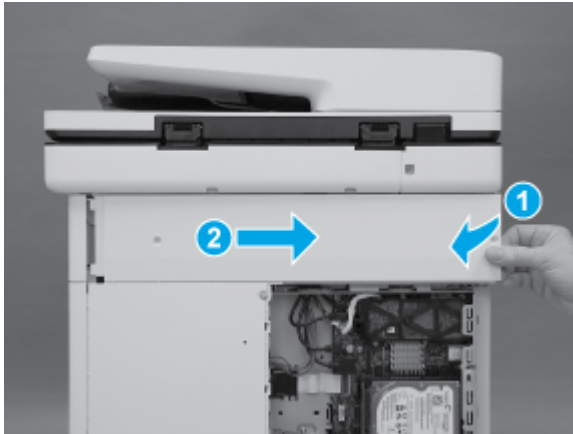
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1252 Release the right edge



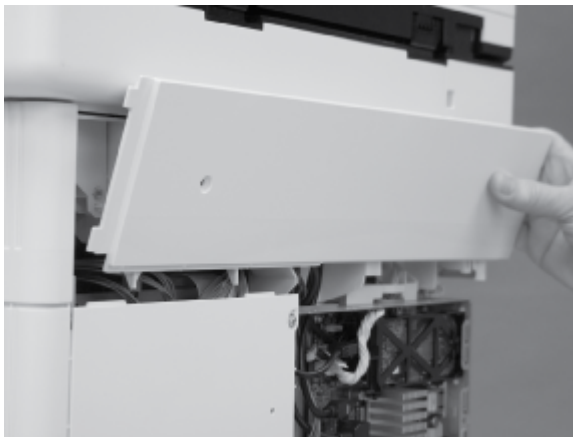
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1253 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1254 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1255 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1256 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

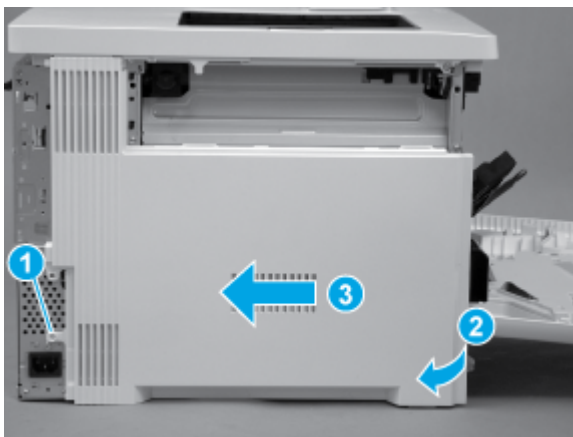
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1257 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1258 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1259 Remove the cover

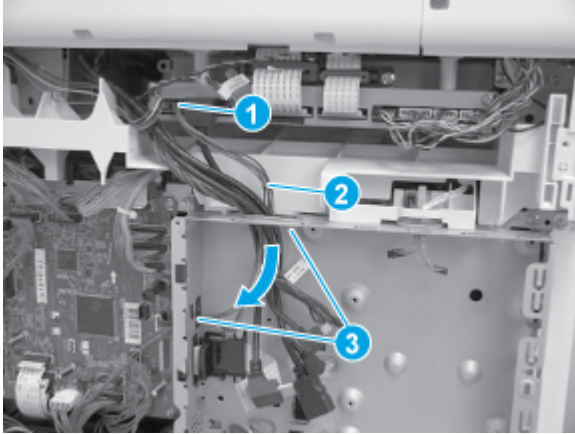


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

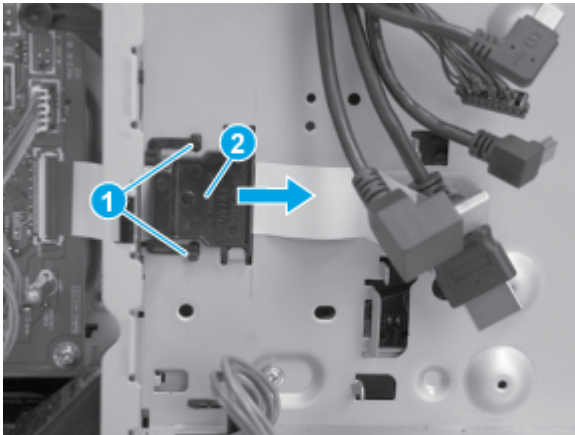
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1260 Disconnect one connector



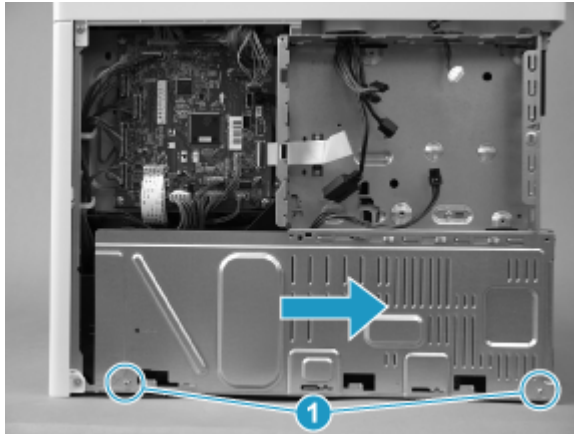
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1261 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

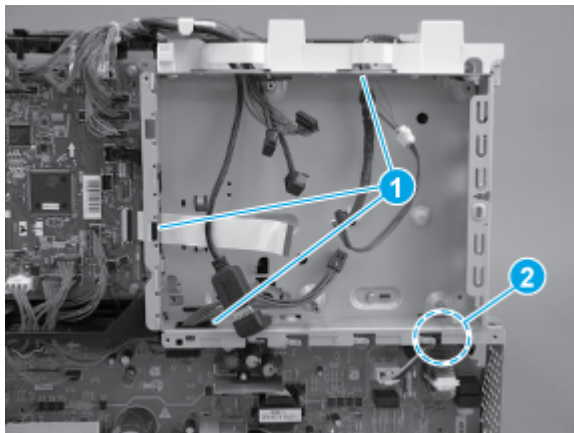
Figure 5-1262 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

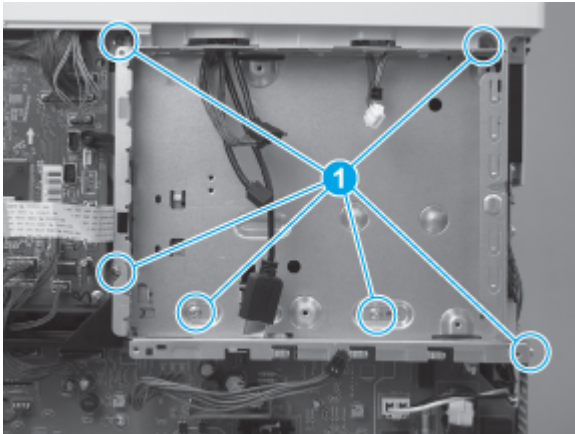
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1263 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



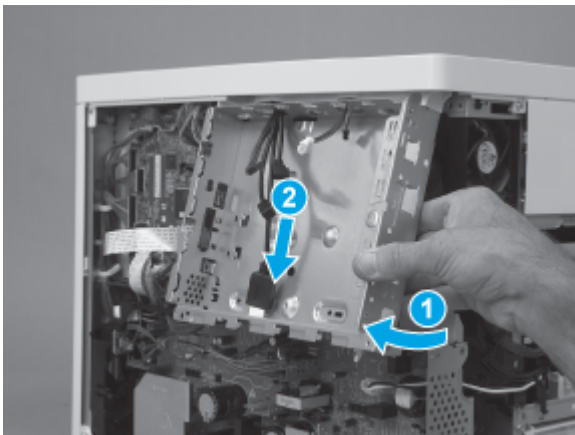
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1264 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1265 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


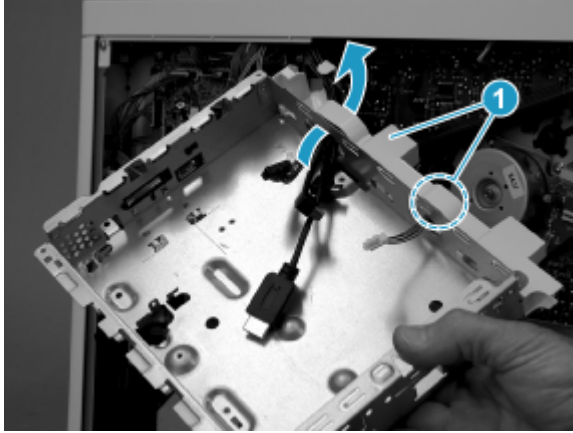
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1266 Remove the formatter case

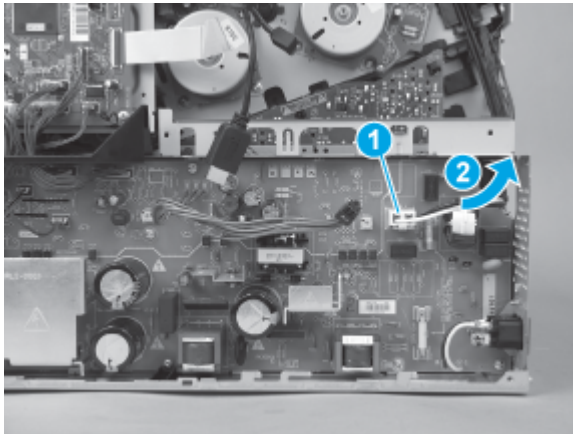


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

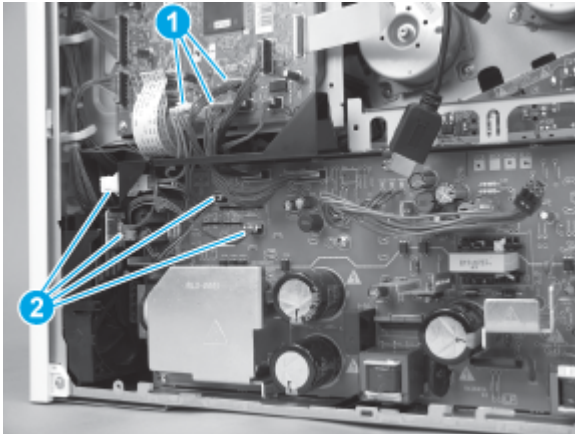
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-1267 Disconnect one wire harness



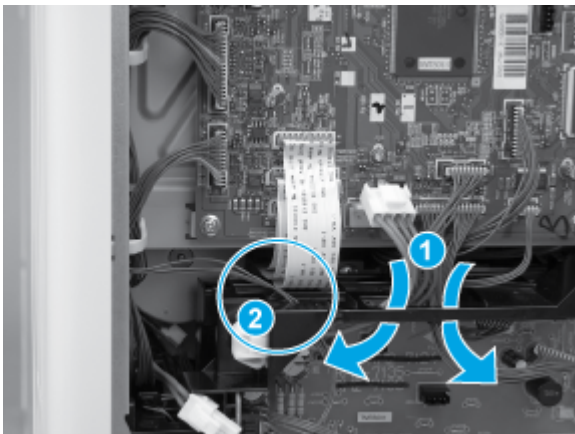
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-1268 Disconnect seven connectors



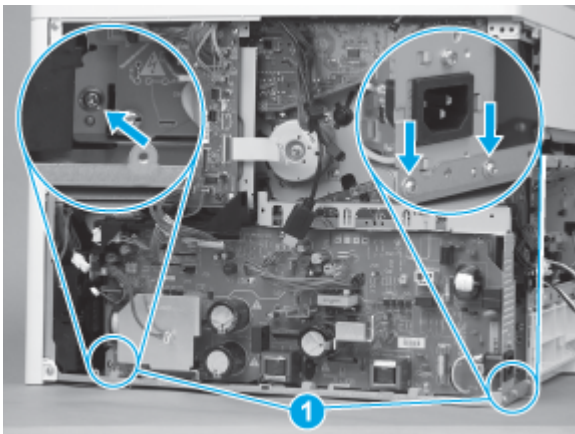
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-1269 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



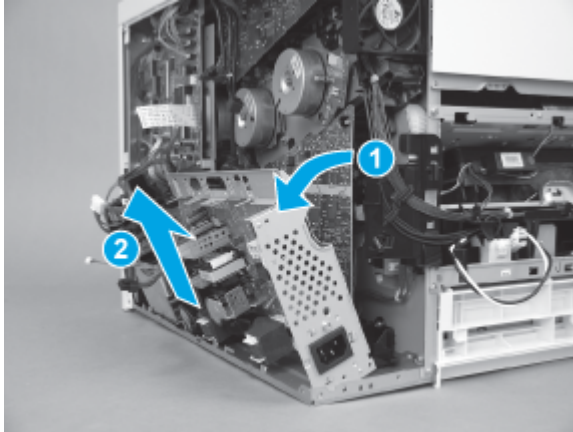
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1270 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1271 Remove the LVPS

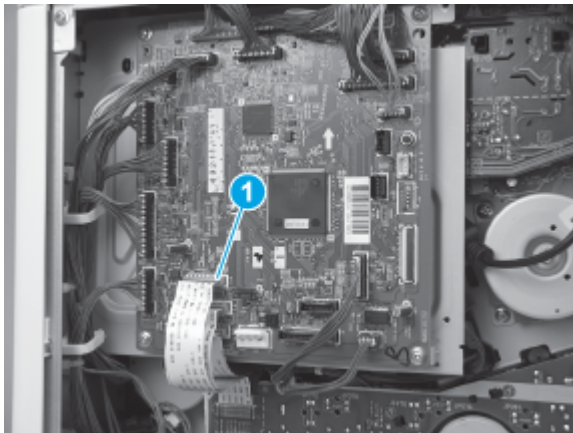


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

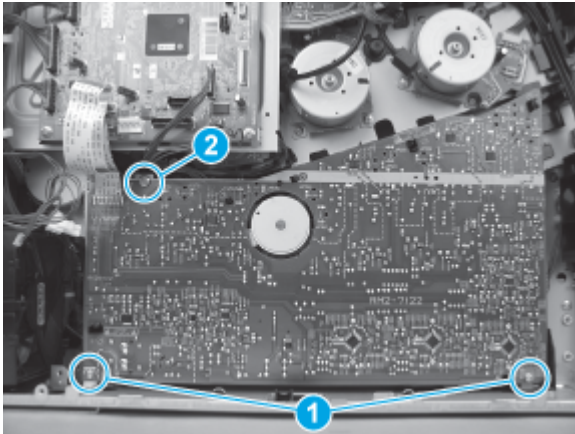
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-1272 Disconnect one flat cable



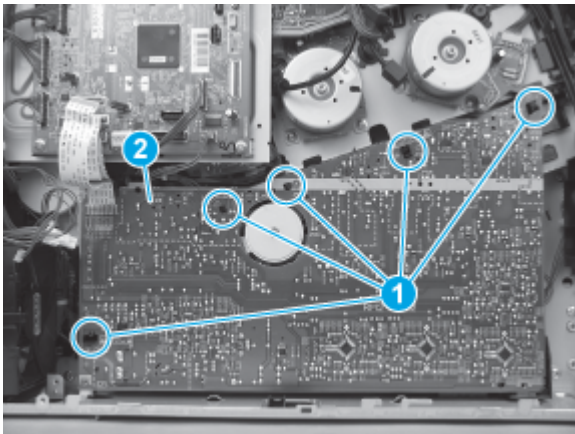
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-1273 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-1274 Remove the HVPSD

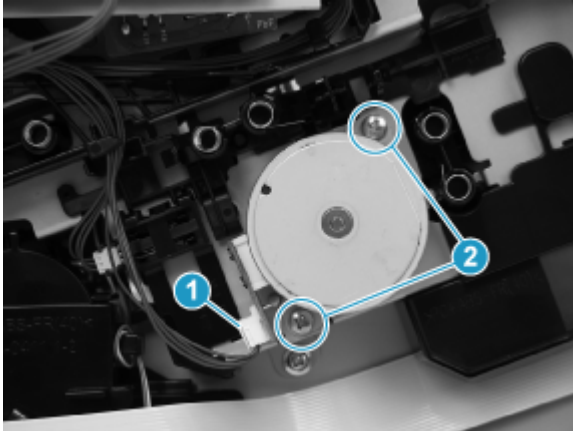


Remove the developing disengagement motor (M6)

Follow these steps to remove the developing disengagement motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-1275 Remove the motor



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the auto close assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-69 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5147-000CN	Auto close assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

📄 NOTE: The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1276 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1277 Open the TCU

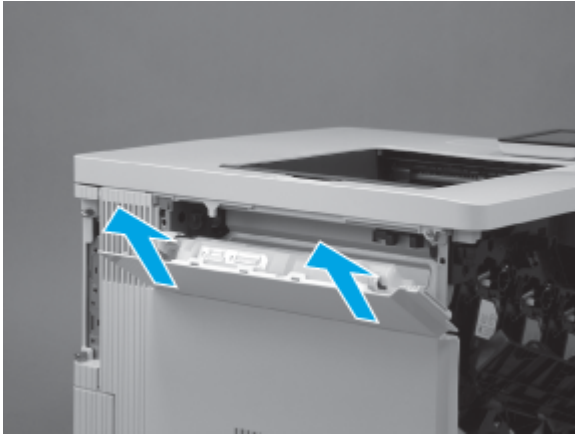


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1278 Remove the TCU

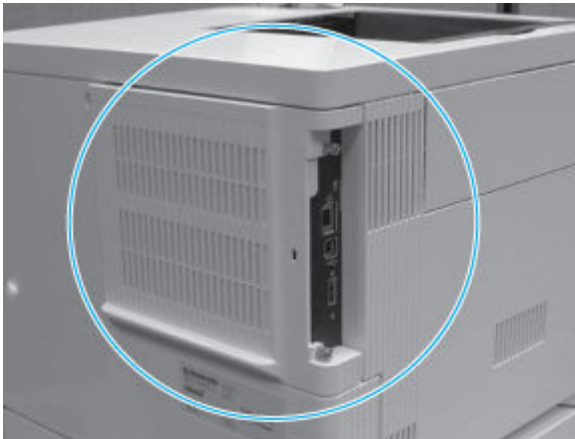


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

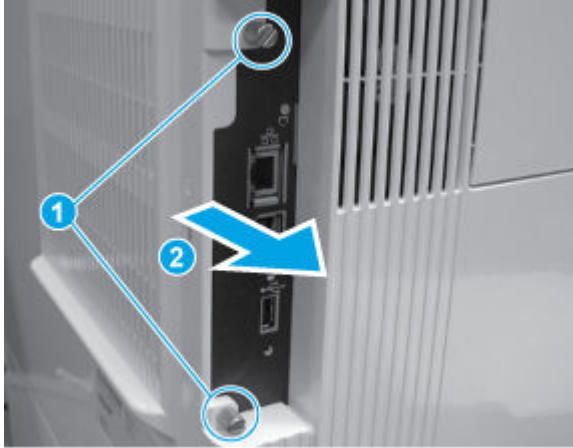
Figure 5-1279 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1280 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


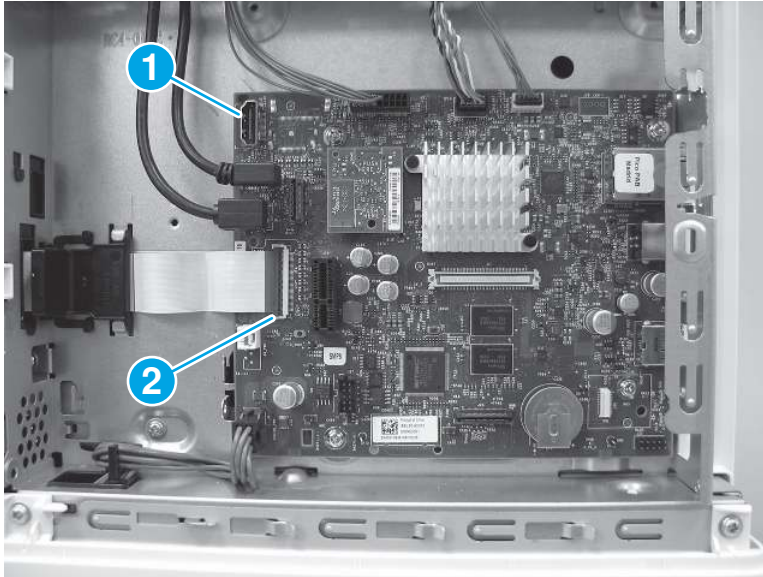
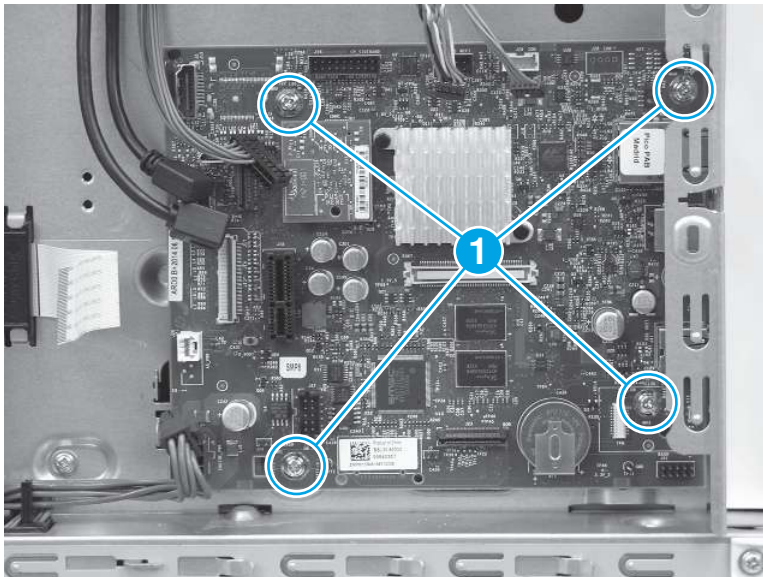
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1281 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1282 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

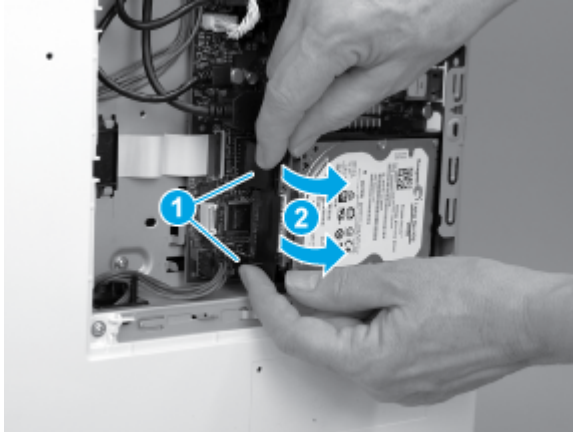
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1283 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1284 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

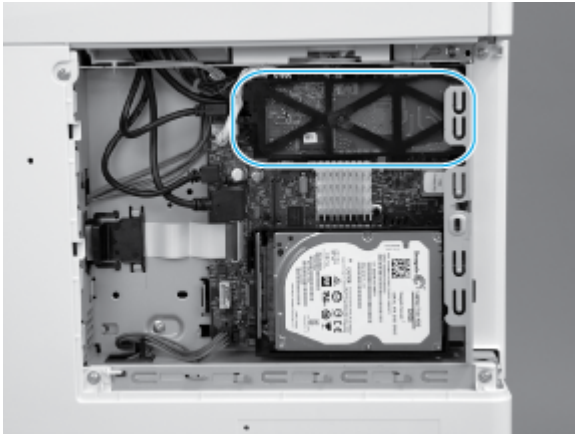
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

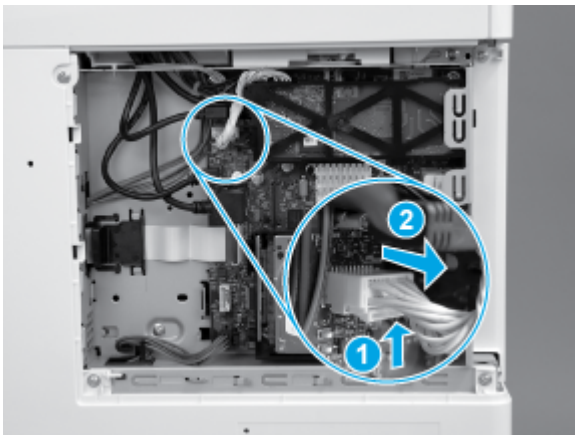
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1285 Locate the fax PCA



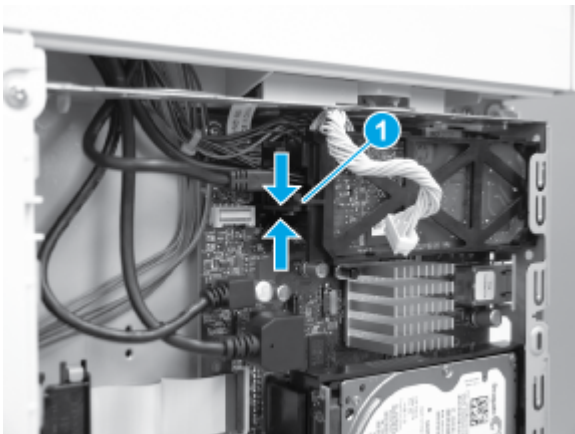
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1286 Disconnect one connector



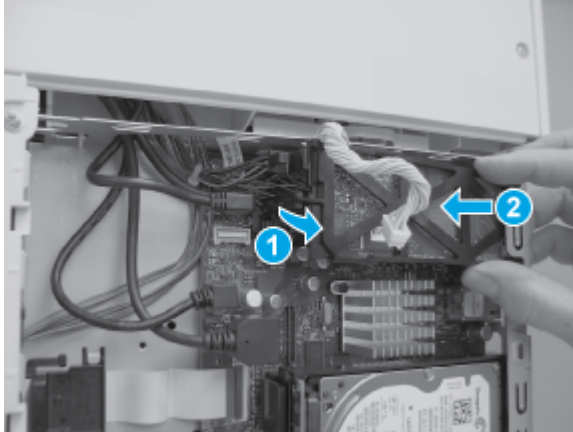
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1287 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1288 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


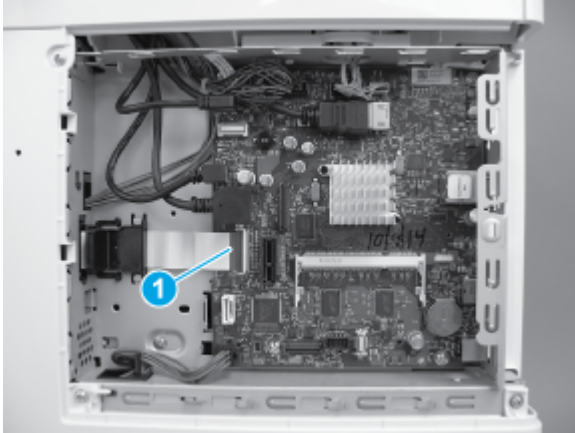
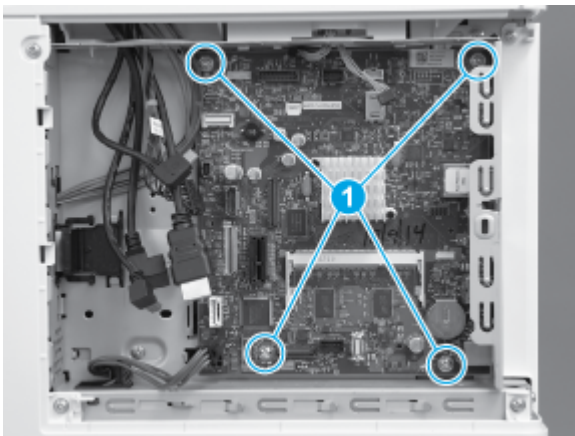
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1289 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1290 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1291 Remove the formatter



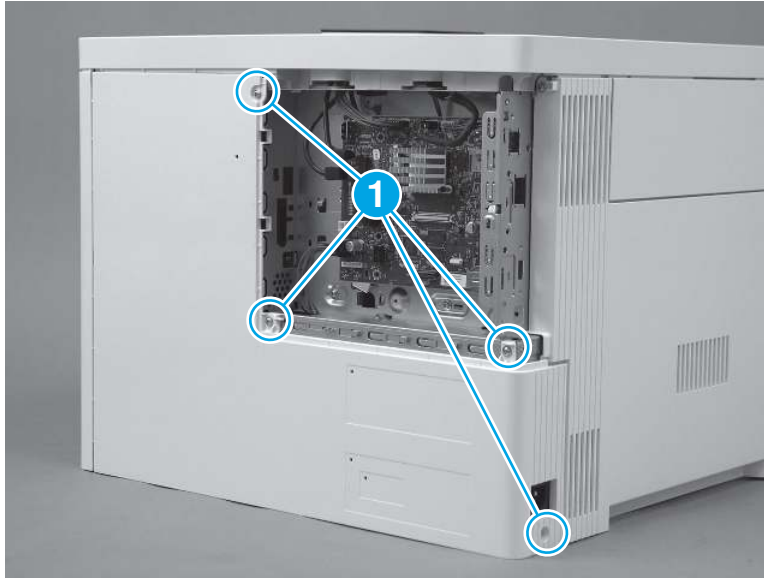
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

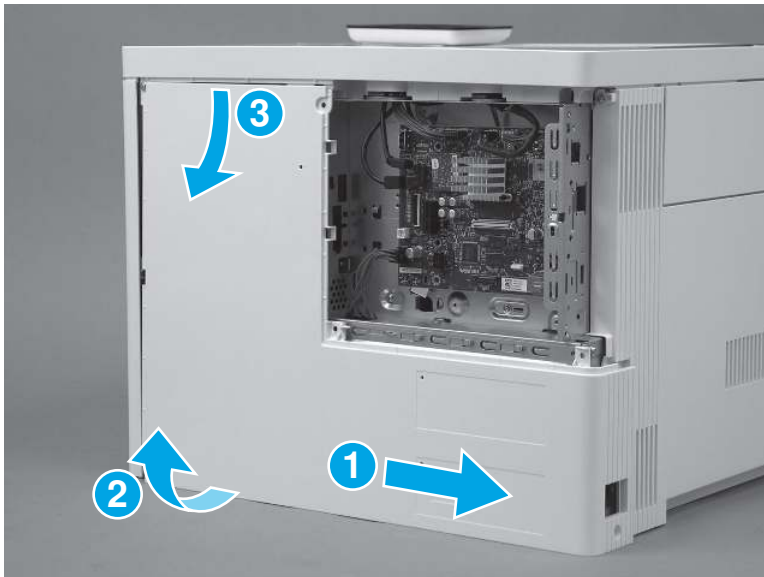
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1292 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1293 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

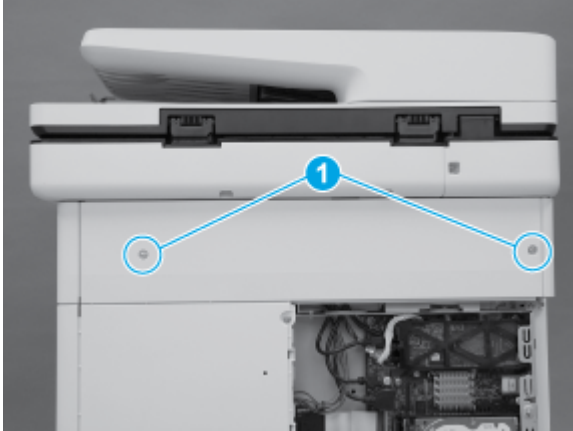
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

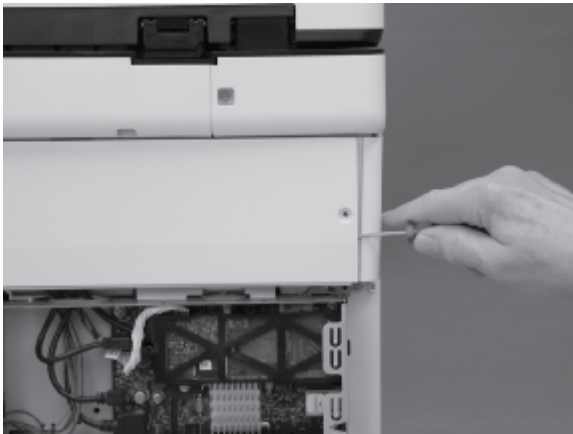
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1294 Remove two screws



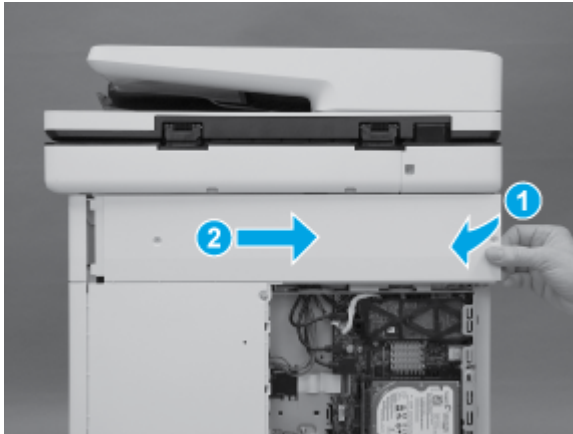
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1295 Release the right edge



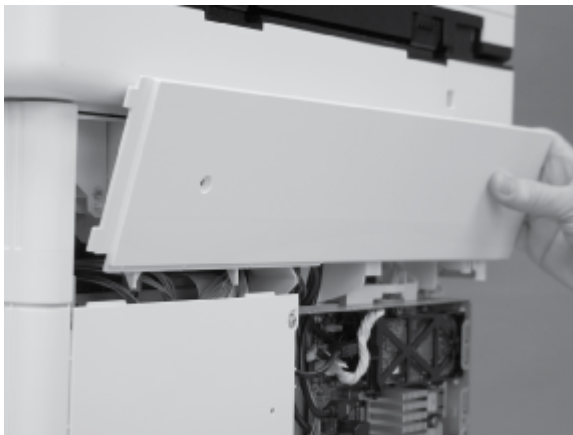
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1296 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1297 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1298 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1299 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

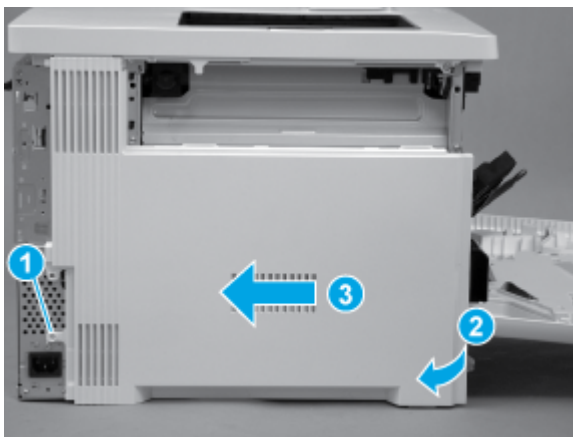
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1300 Remove one screw



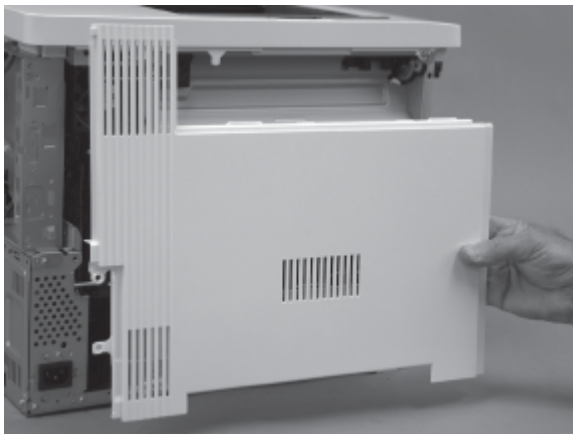
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1301 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1302 Remove the cover

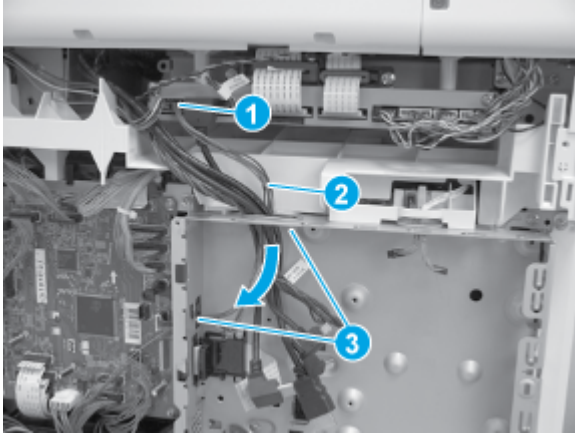


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

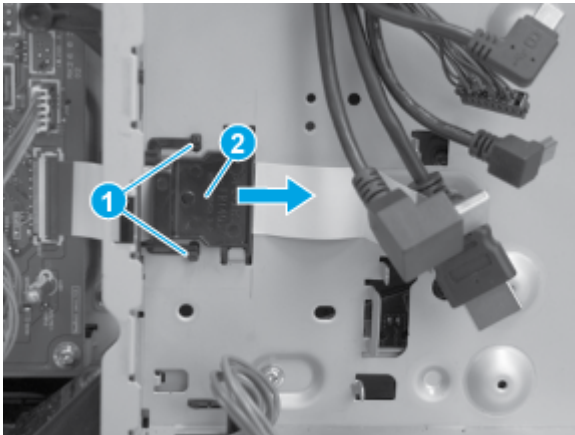
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1303 Disconnect one connector



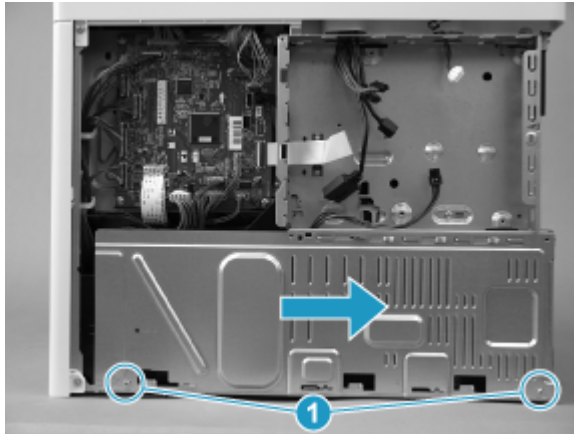
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1304 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

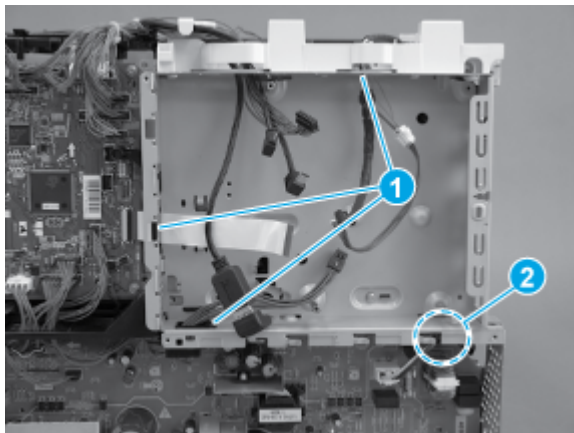
Figure 5-1305 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

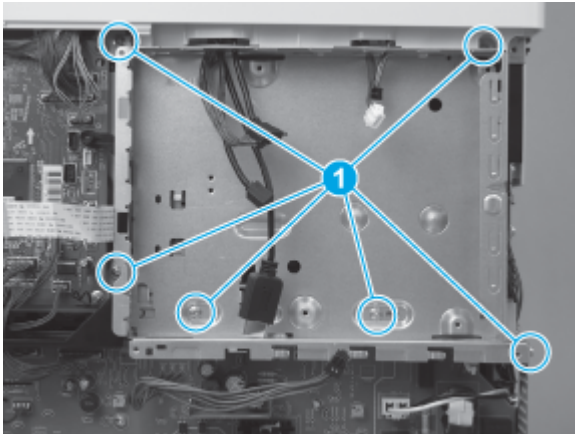
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1306 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



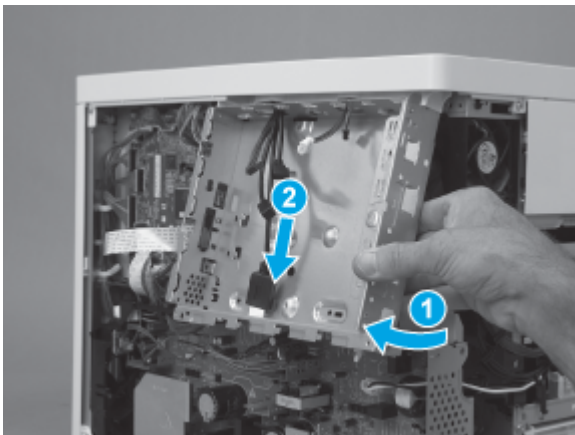
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1307 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

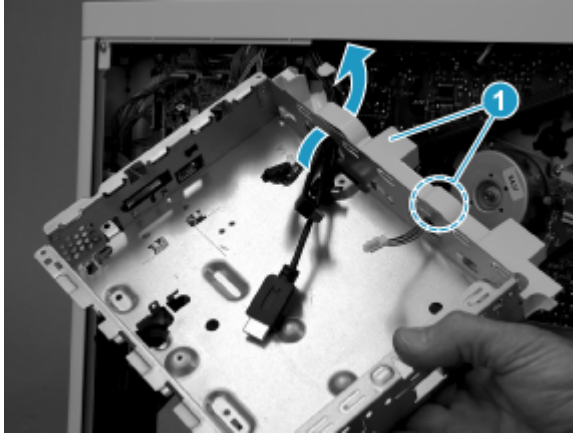
Figure 5-1308 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1309 Remove the formatter case

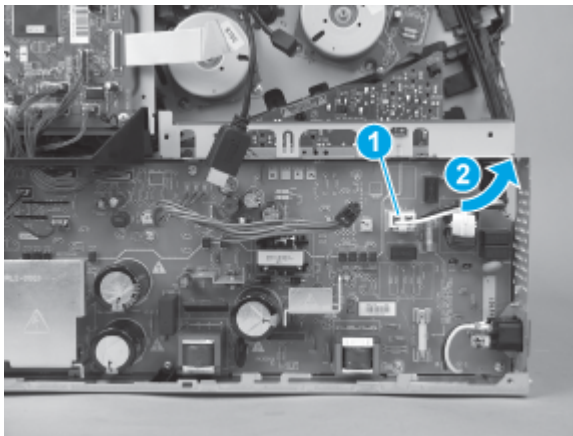


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

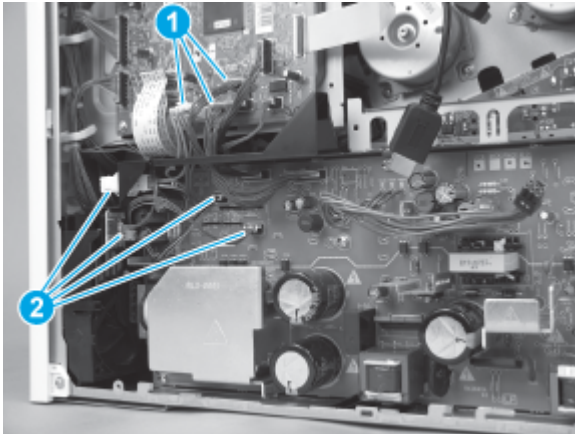
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-1310 Disconnect one wire harness



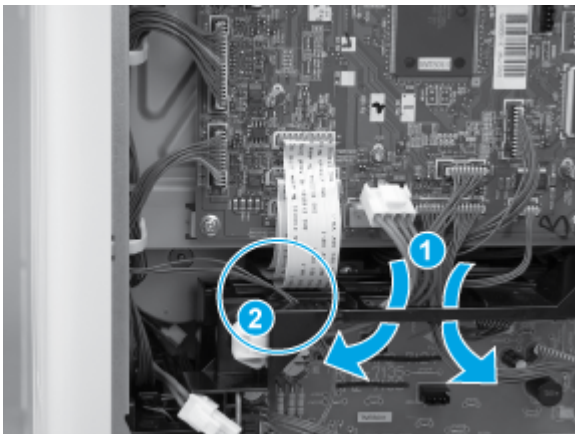
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-1311 Disconnect seven connectors



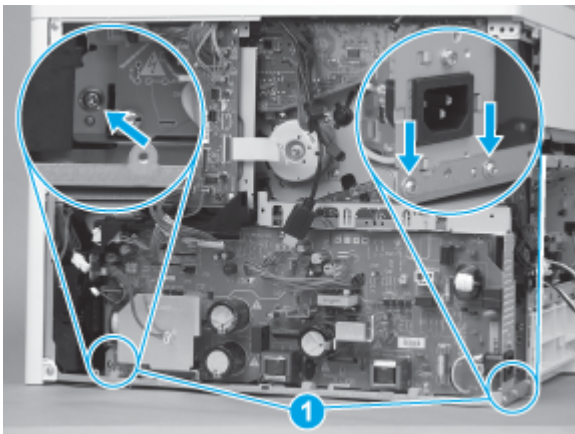
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-1312 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



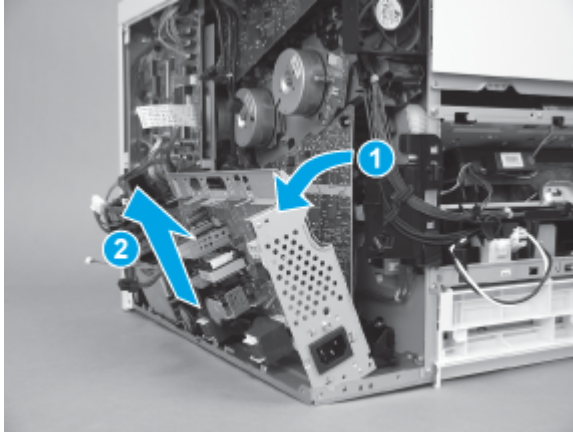
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1313 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1314 Remove the LVPS

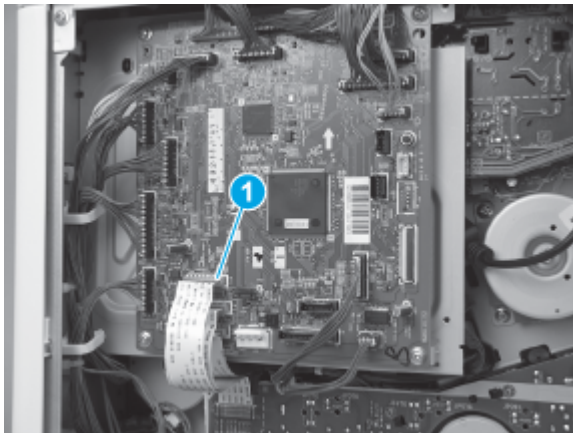


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

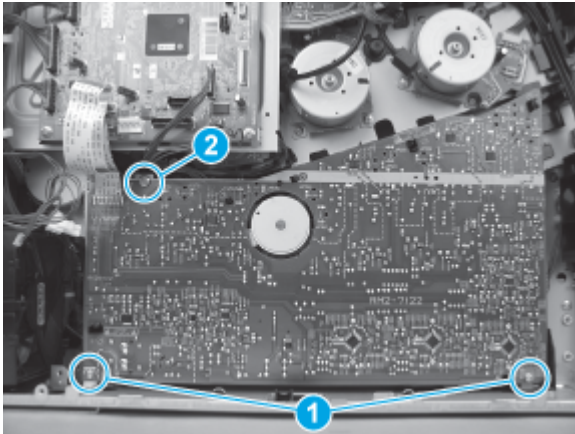
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-1315 Disconnect one flat cable



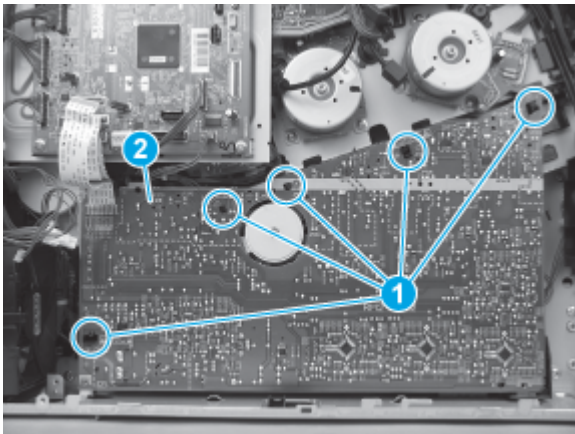
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-1316 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-1317 Remove the HVPSD

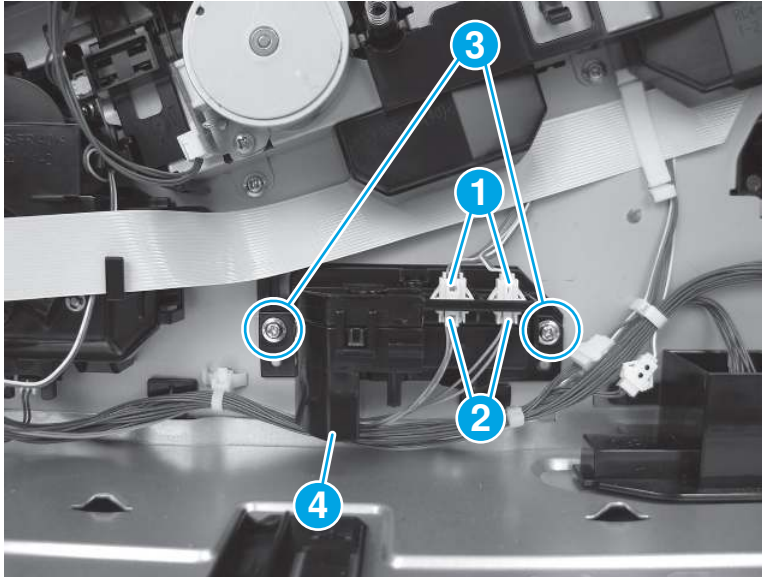


Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

- Disconnect four connectors (callout 1/2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the auto close assembly (callout 4).

Figure 5-1318 Remove the auto close assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the lifter drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-70 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0010-000CN	Lifter drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1319 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1320 Open the TCU

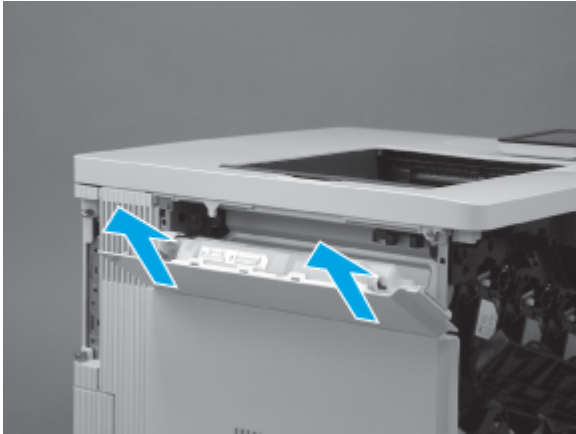


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1321 Remove the TCU

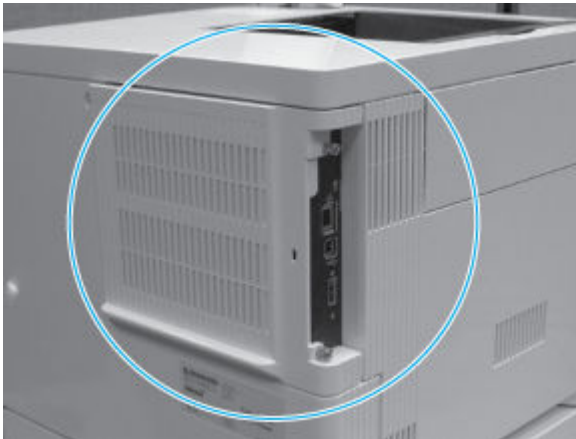


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-1322 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1323 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


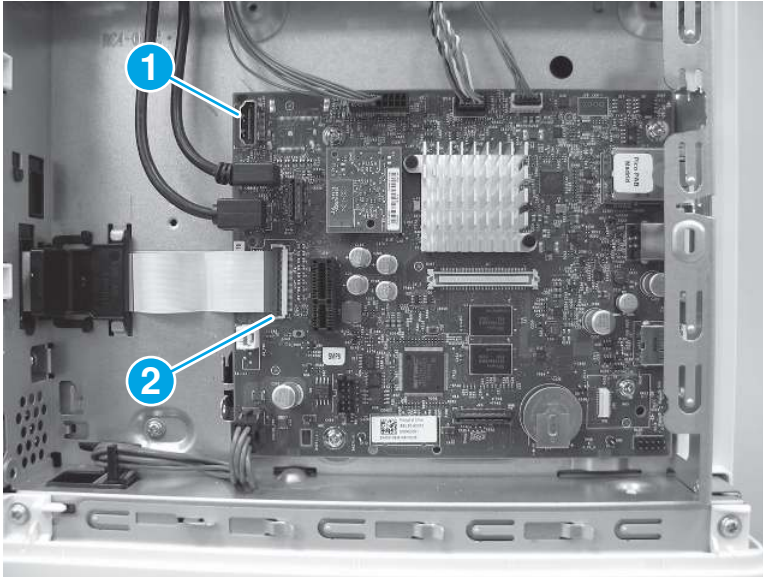
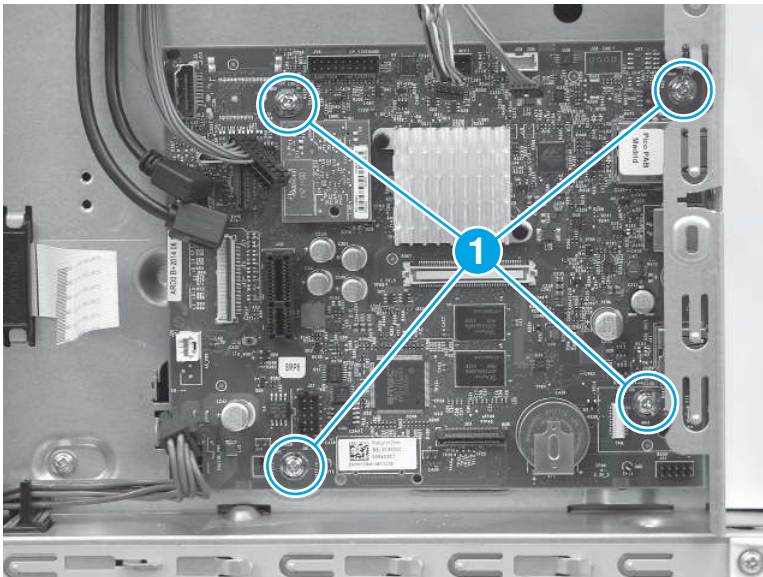
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1324 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1325 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

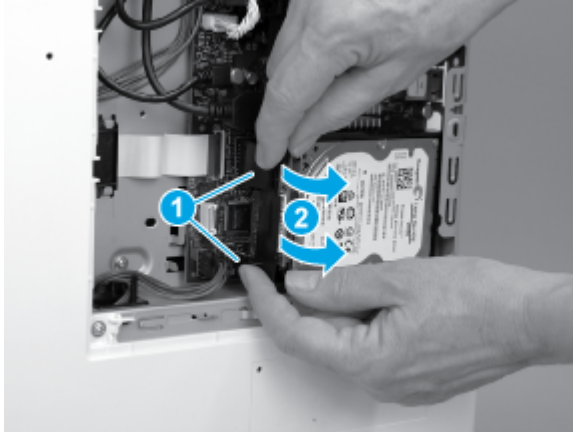
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1326 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1327 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

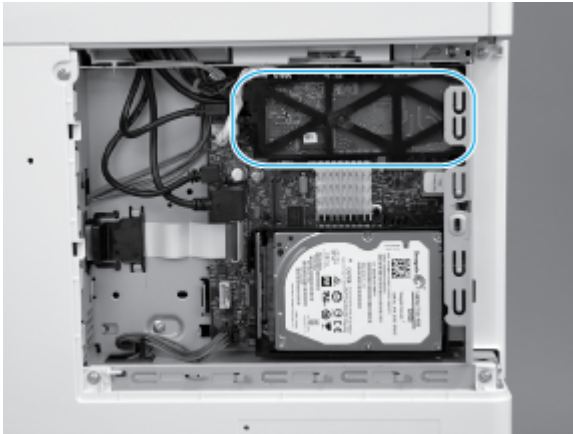
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

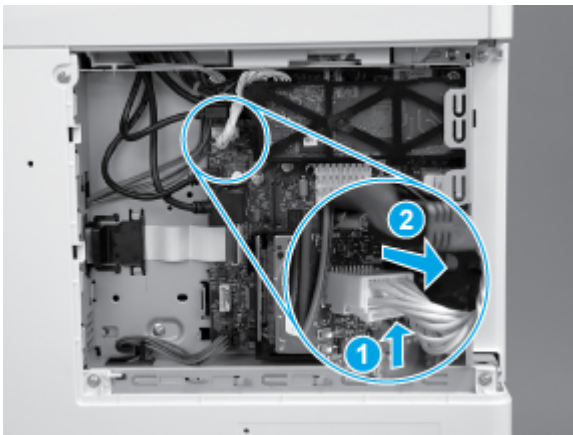
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1328 Locate the fax PCA



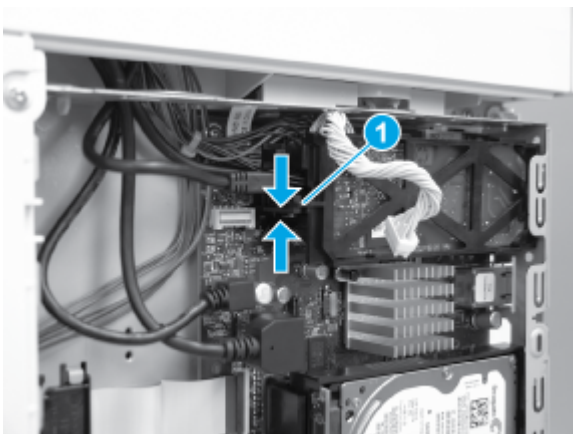
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1329 Disconnect one connector



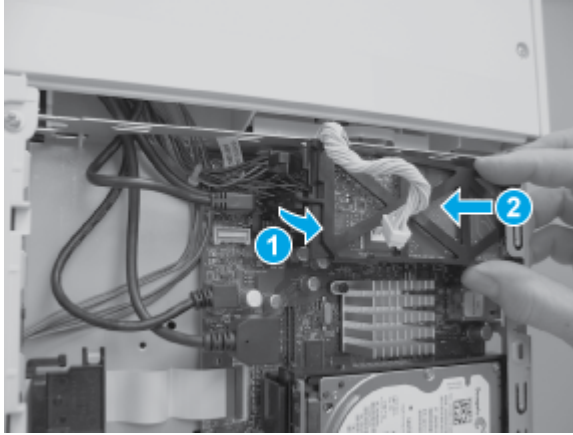
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1330 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1331 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


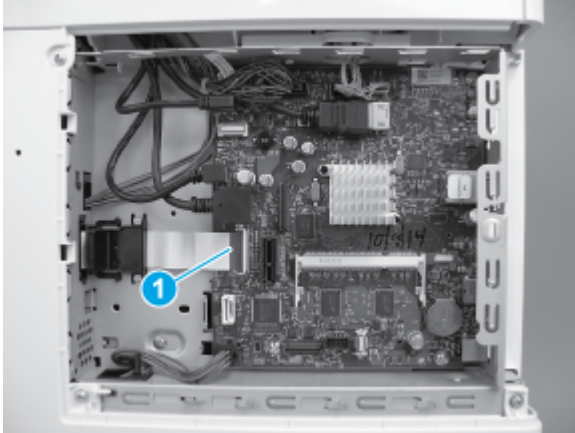
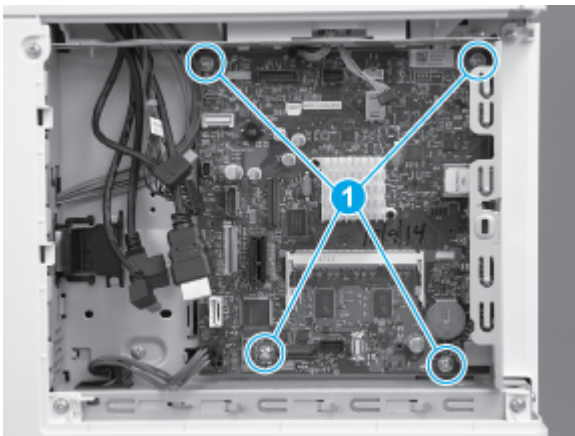
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1332 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1333 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1334 Remove the formatter



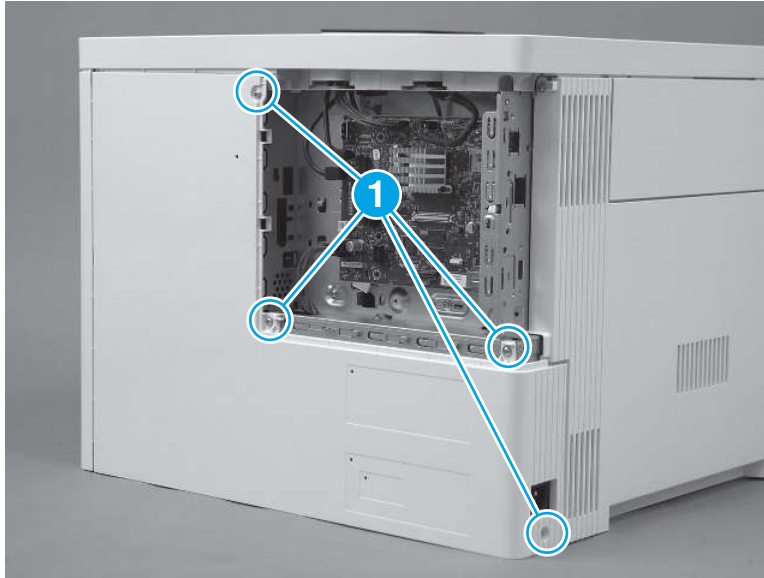
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

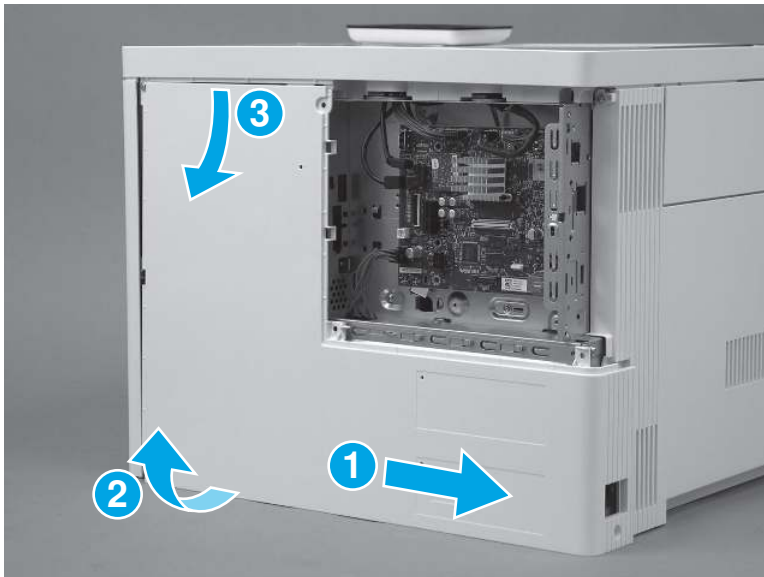
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1335 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1336 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

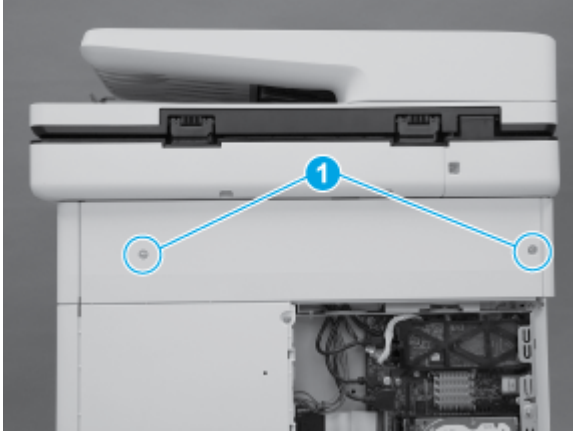
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

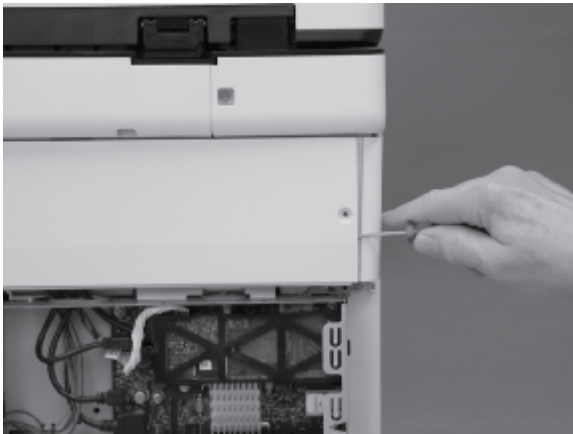
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1337 Remove two screws



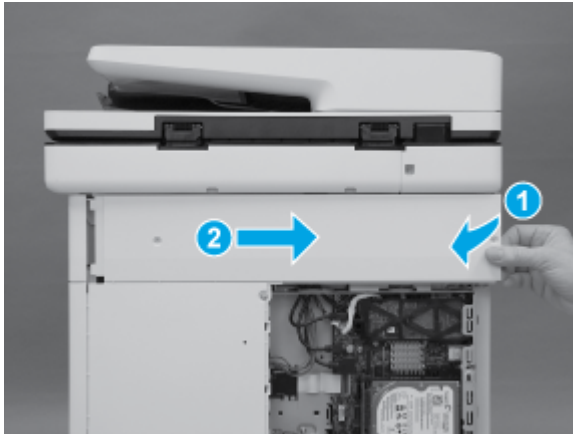
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1338 Release the right edge



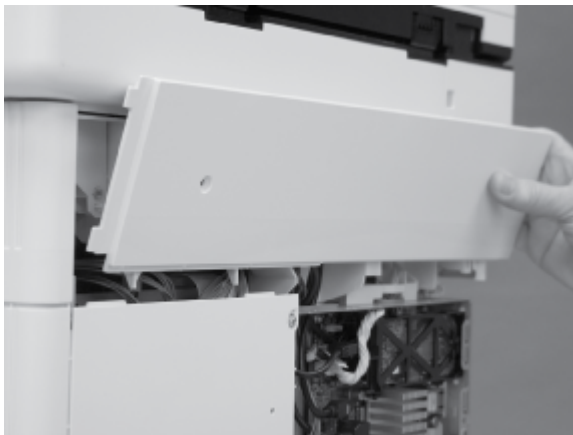
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1339 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1340 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1341 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1342 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

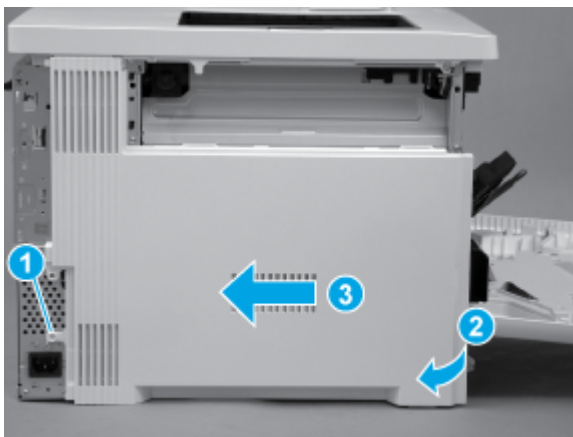
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1343 Remove one screw



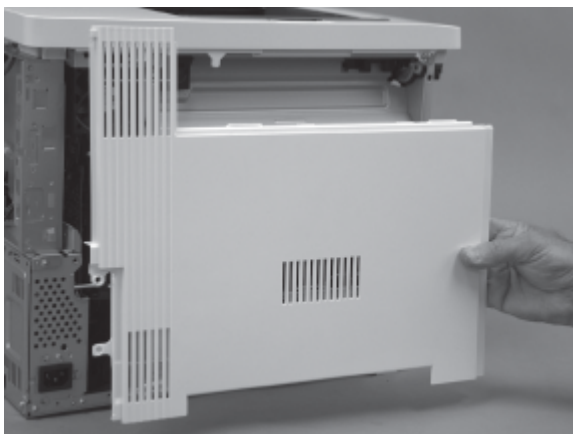
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1344 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1345 Remove the cover

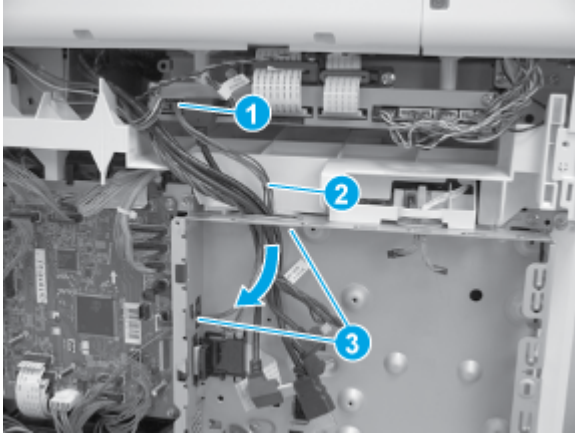


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

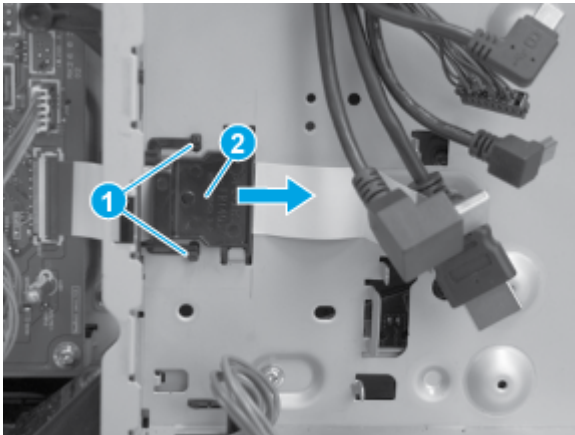
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1346 Disconnect one connector



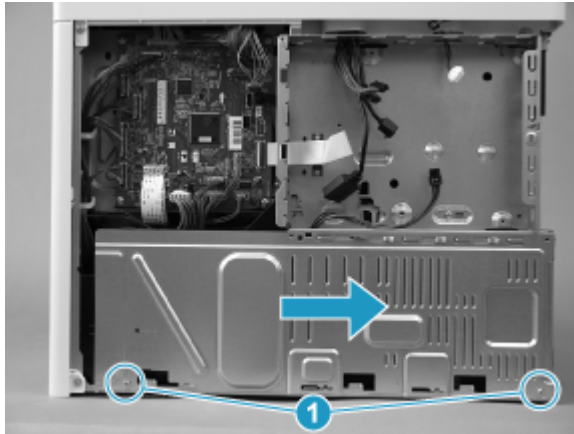
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1347 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

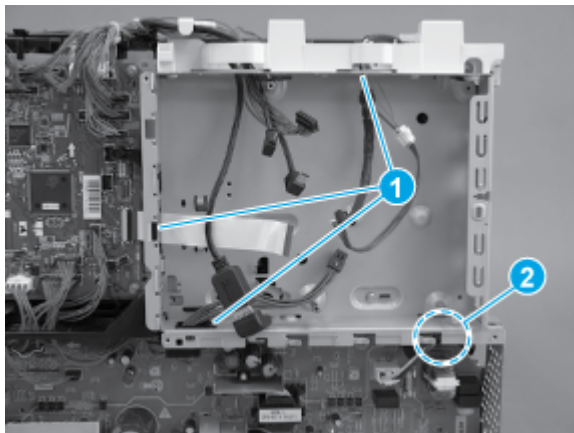
Figure 5-1348 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

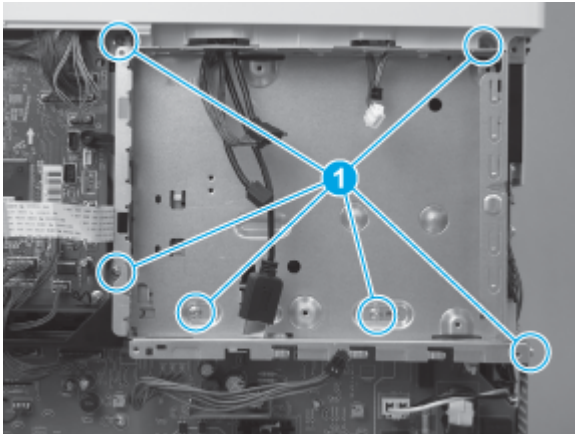
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1349 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



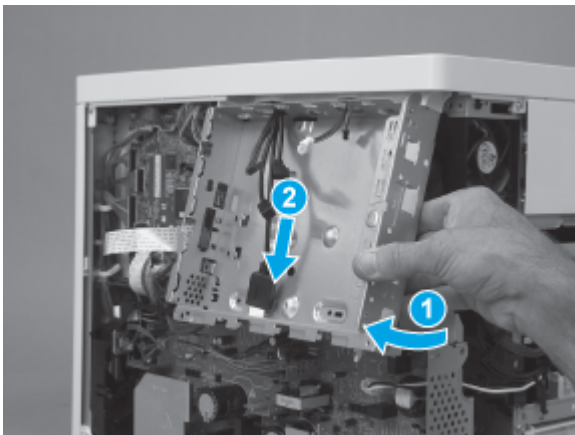
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1350 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1351 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


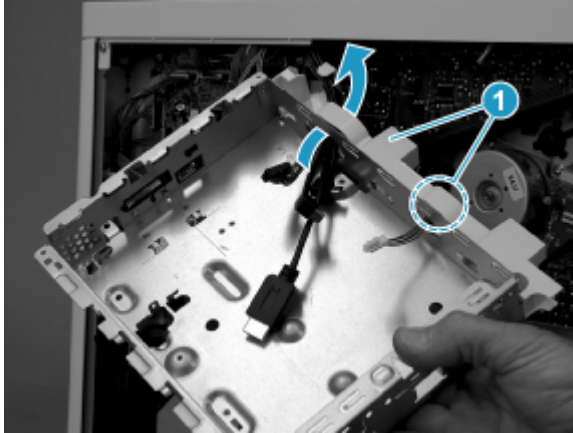
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1352 Remove the formatter case

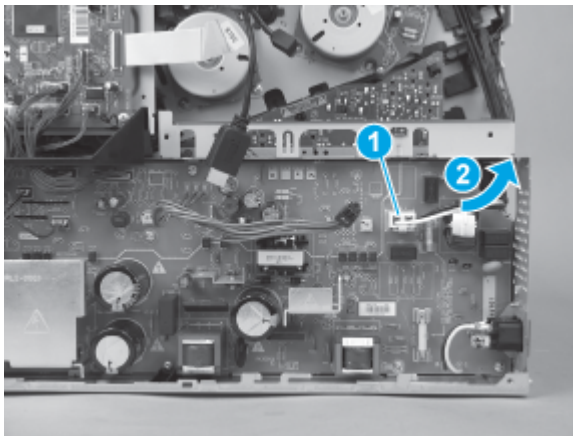


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

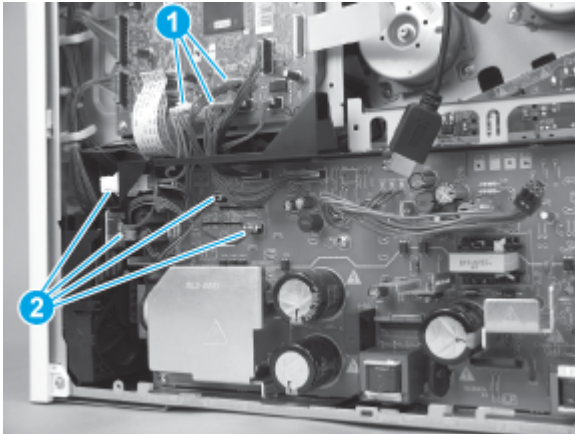
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-1353 Disconnect one wire harness



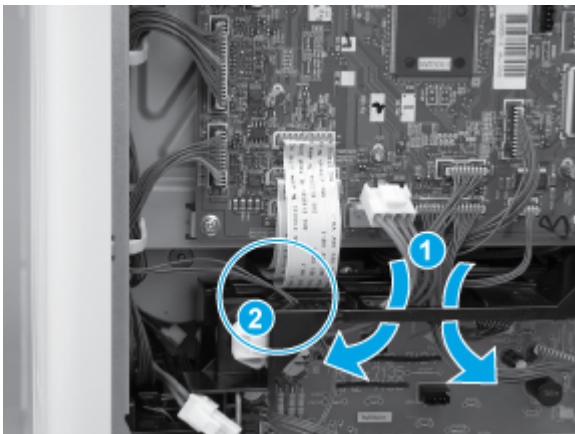
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-1354 Disconnect seven connectors



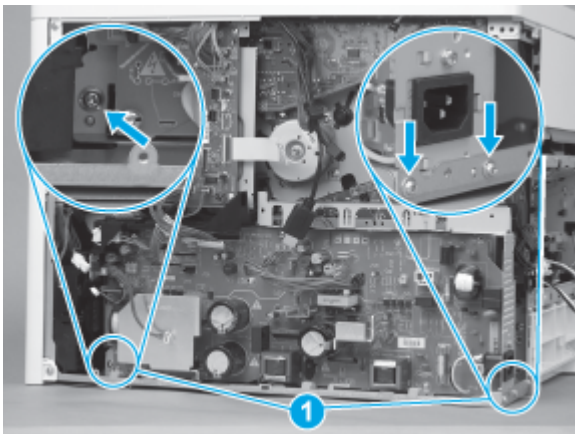
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-1355 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



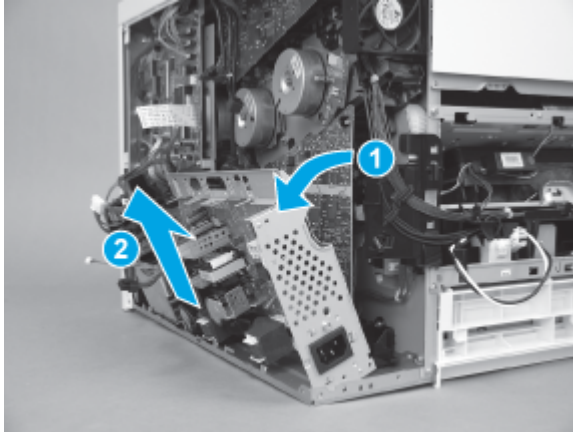
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1356 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1357 Remove the LVPS

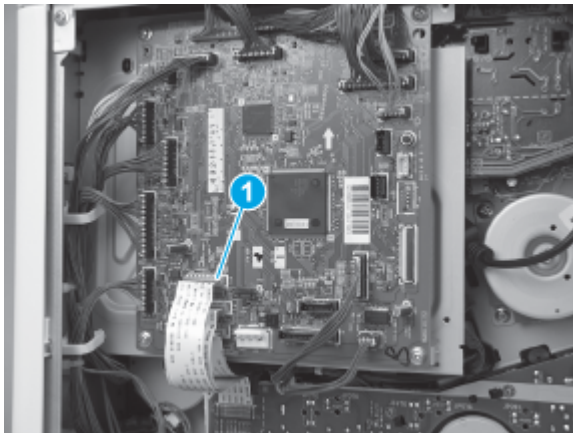


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

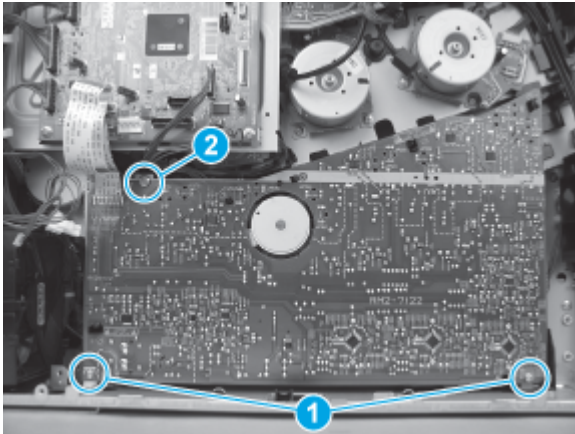
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-1358 Disconnect one flat cable



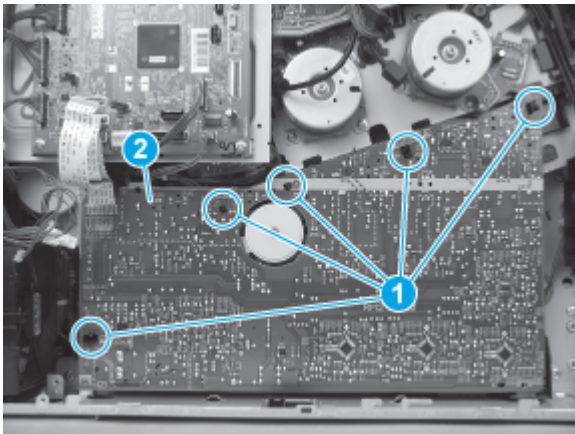
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-1359 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-1360 Remove the HVPSD

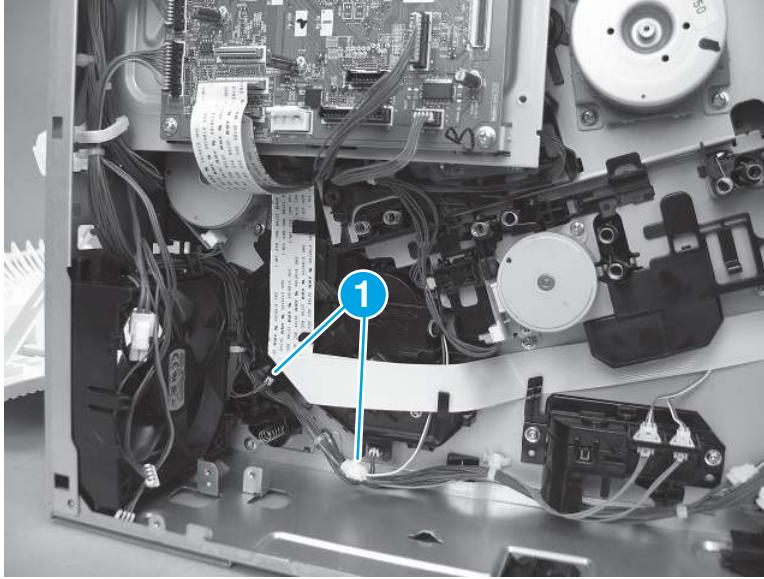


Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

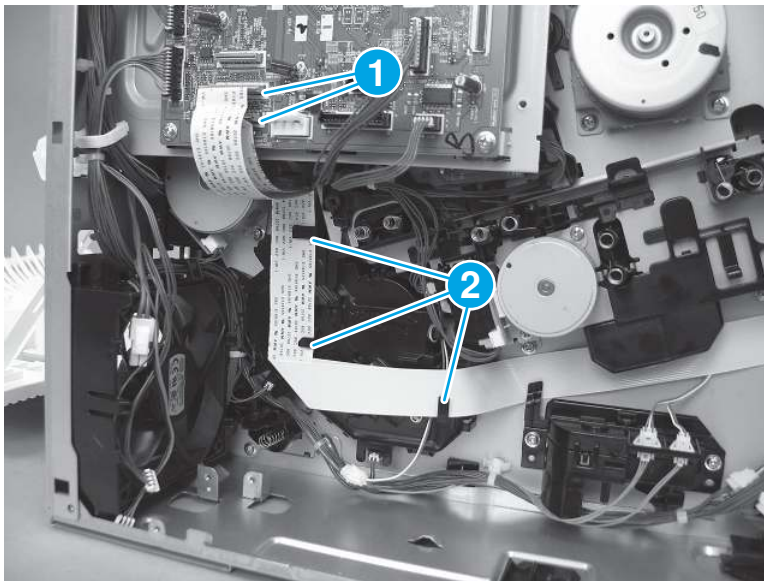
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-1361 Disconnect two connectors



2. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1), and then release them from the retainers (callout 2).

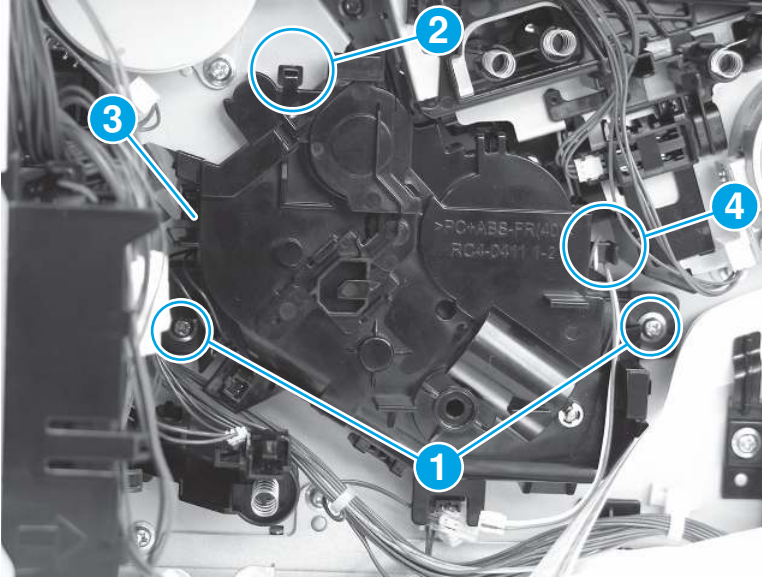
Figure 5-1362 Disconnect two flat cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 4) as the assembly is removed.

Figure 5-1363 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Laser/scanner assembly

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the laser/scanner assembly.



[View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the Laser/scanner assembly.](#)

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-71 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-6545-000CN	Laser/scanner assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the HVPSD are fully seated.

Make sure that all of the connectors on the LVPS are fully seated.

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).



NOTE: The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1364 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1365 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1366 Remove the TCU

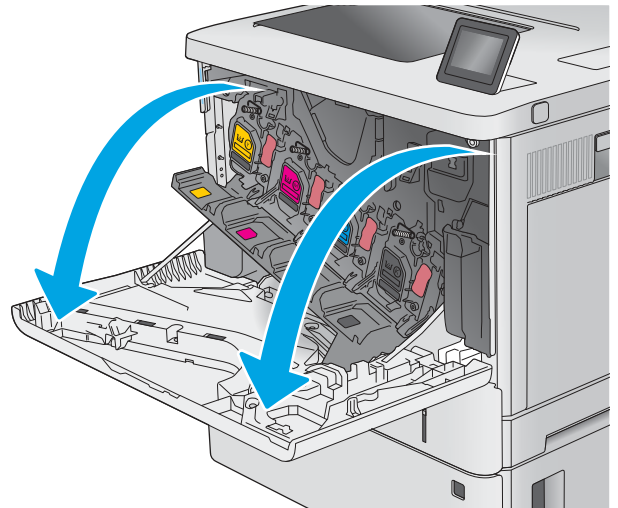


2. Remove the toner cartridges

Follow these steps to replace a toner cartridge.

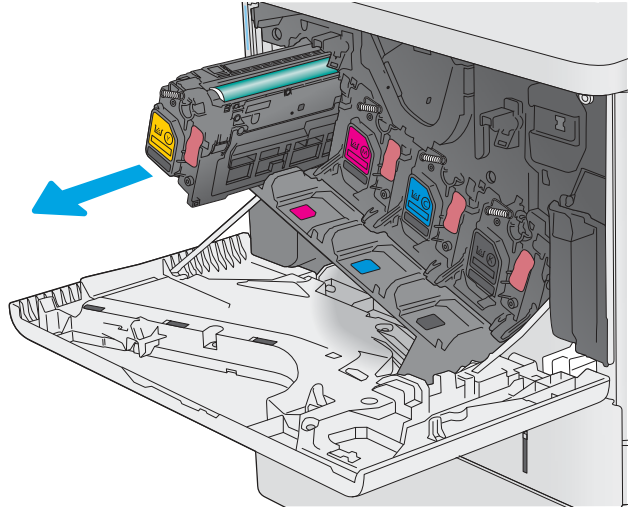
1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1367 Open the front door



2. Grasp the handle of the used toner cartridge and pull out to remove it.

Figure 5-1368 Remove the toner cartridge

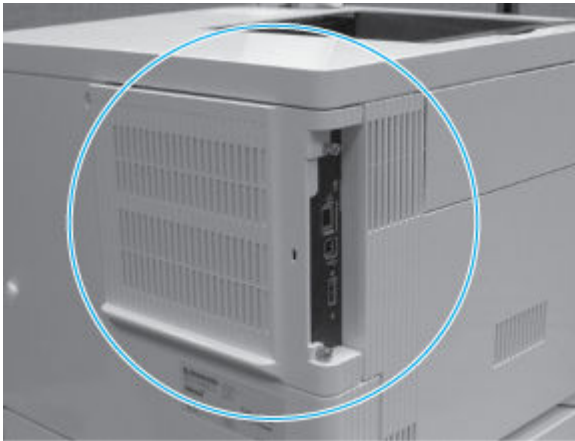


3. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

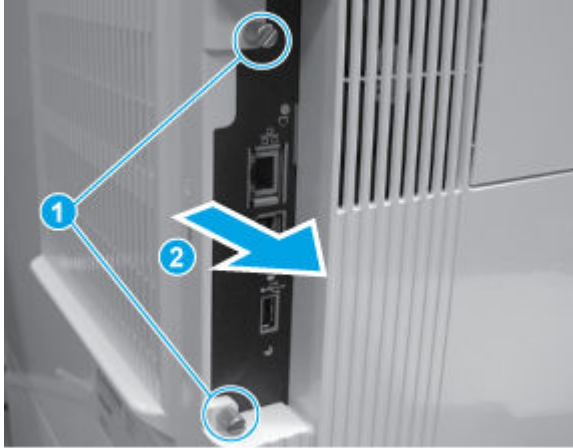
Figure 5-1369 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1370 Loosen the thumbscrews



4. Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


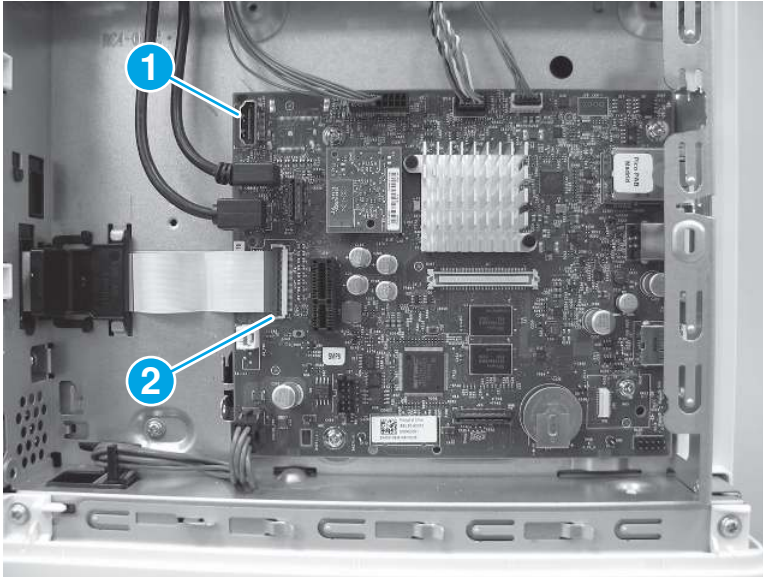
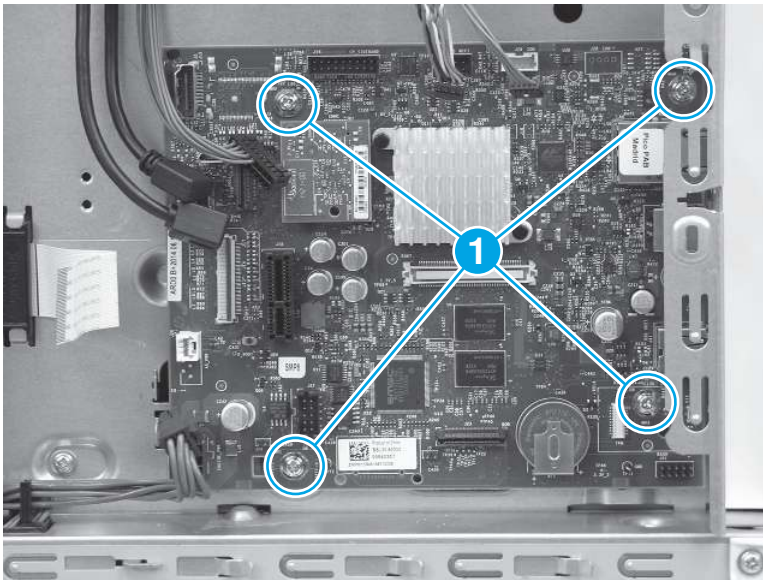
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1371 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1372 Remove four screws



5. Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

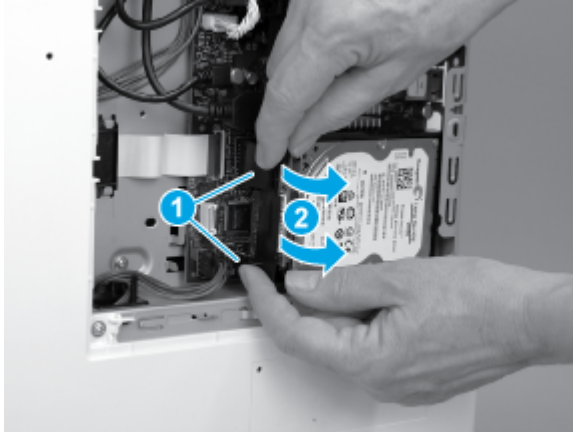
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1373 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1374 Remove the HDD



6. Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

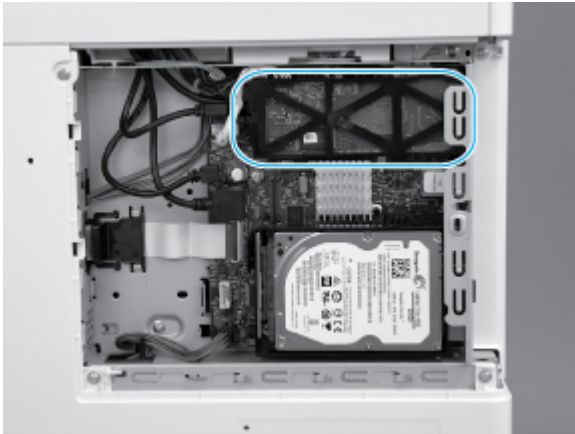
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

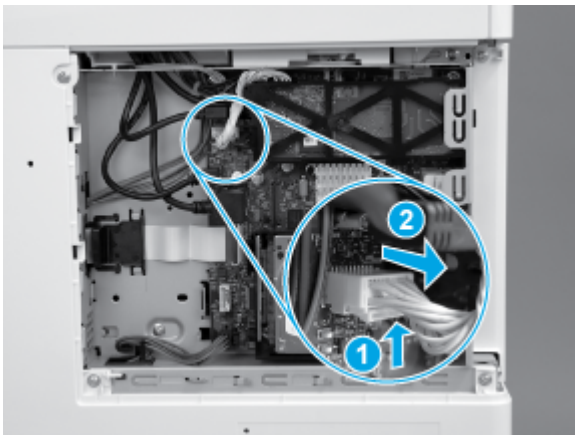
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1375 Locate the fax PCA



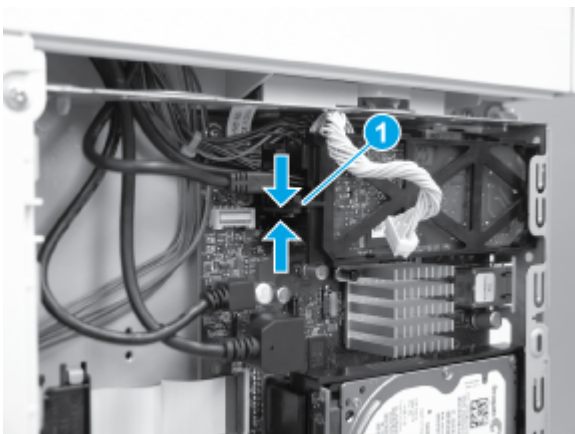
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1376 Disconnect one connector



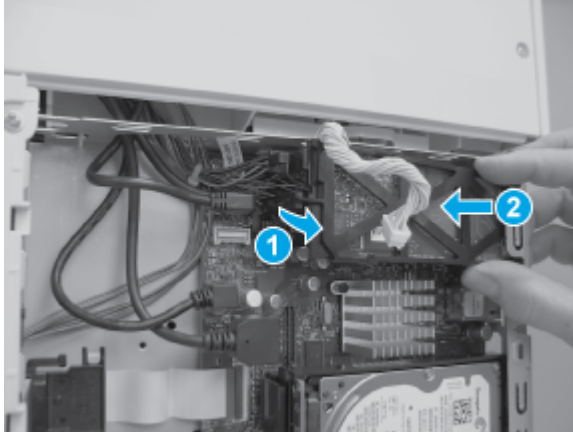
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1377 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1378 Remove the fax PCA



7. Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


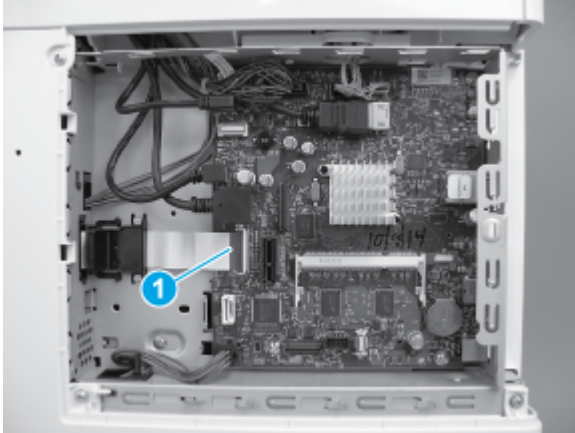
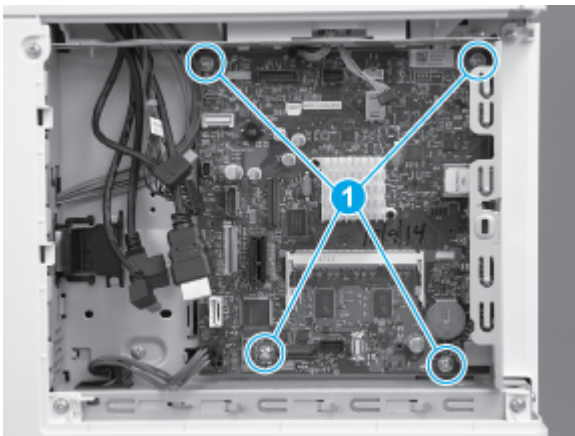
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1379 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1380 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1381 Remove the formatter



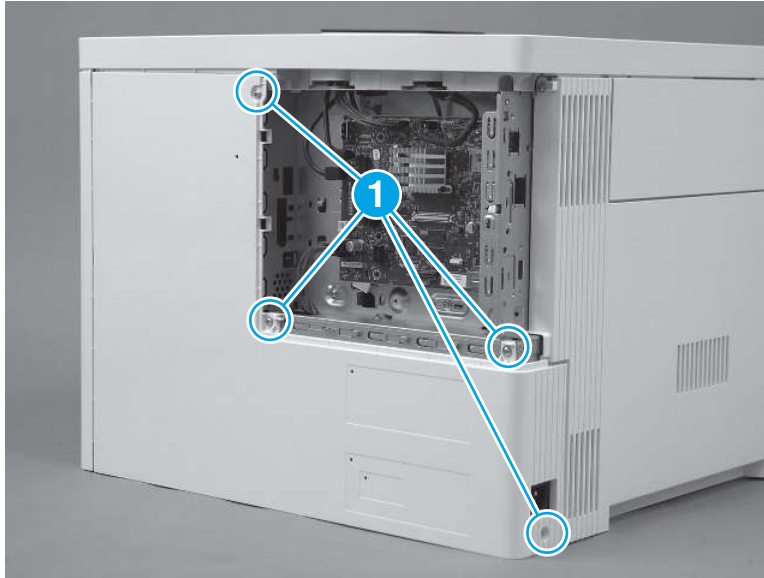
8. Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

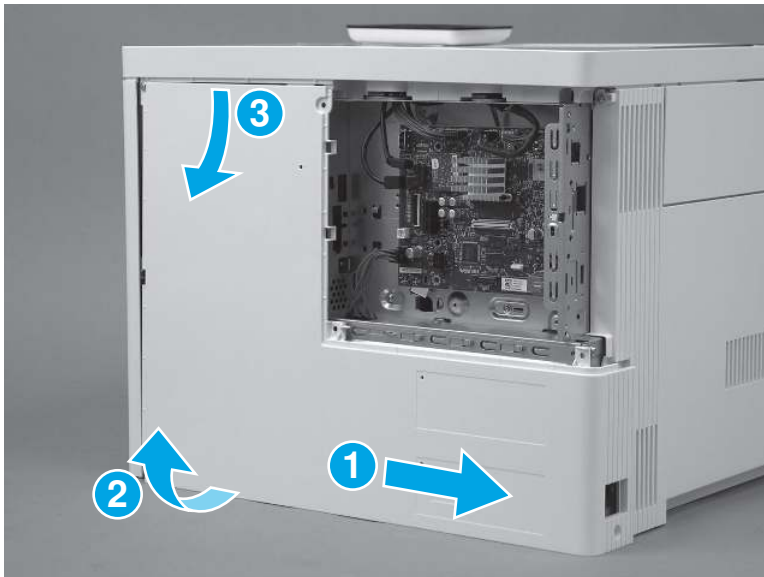
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1382 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1383 Remove the cover



9. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

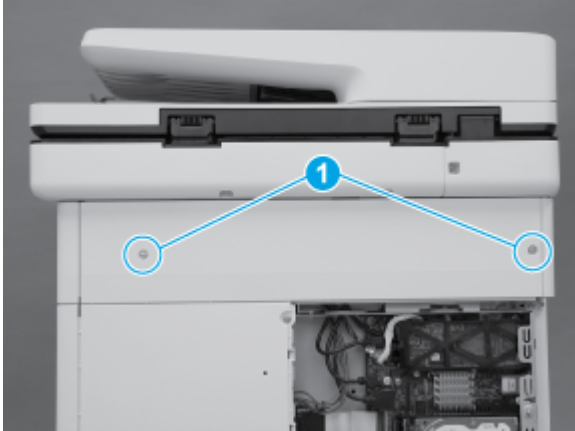
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

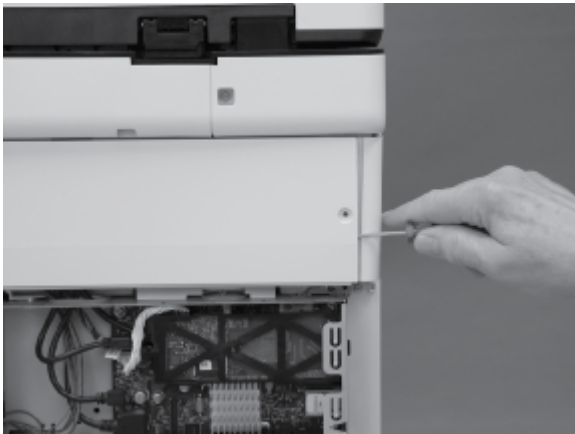
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1384 Remove two screws



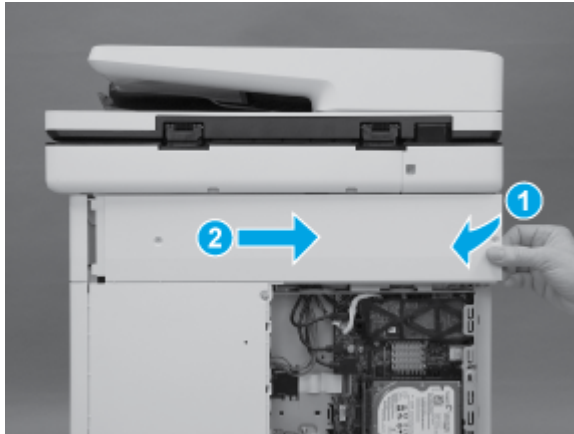
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1385 Release the right edge



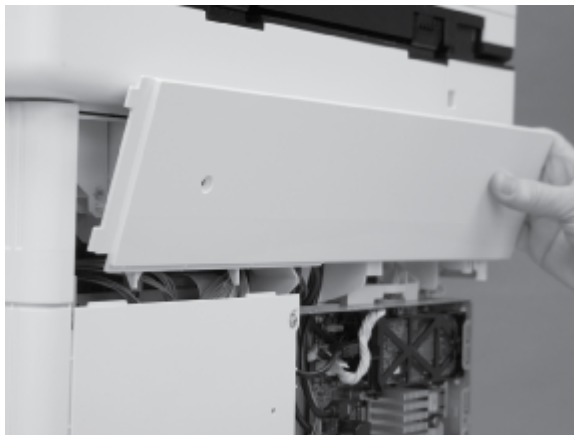
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1386 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1387 Remove the cover



10. Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1388 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1389 Remove the cover



11. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

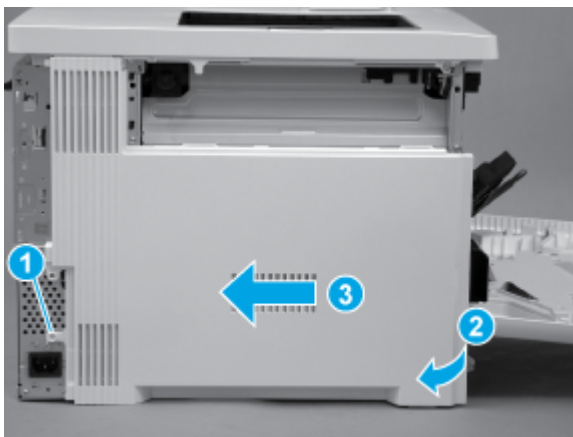
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1390 Remove one screw



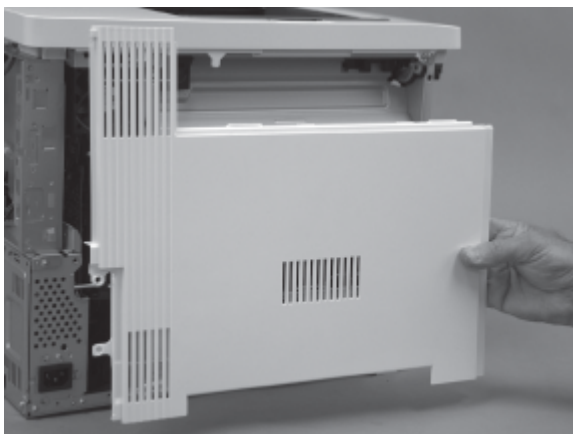
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1391 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1392 Remove the cover

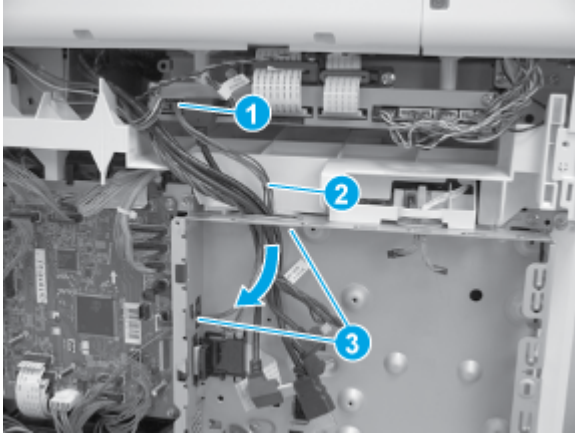


12. Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

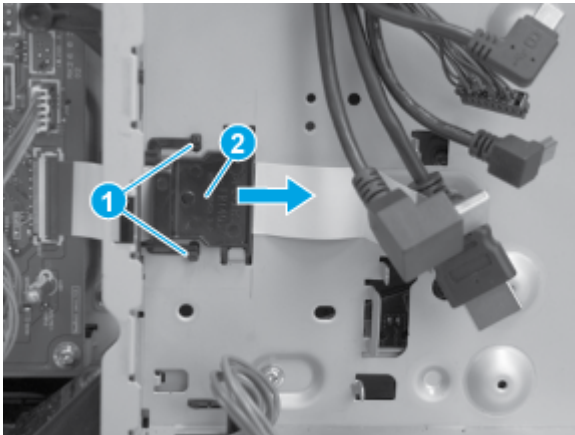
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1393 Disconnect one connector



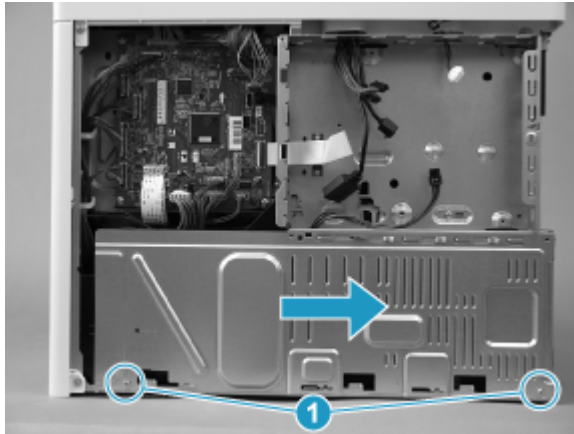
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1394 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

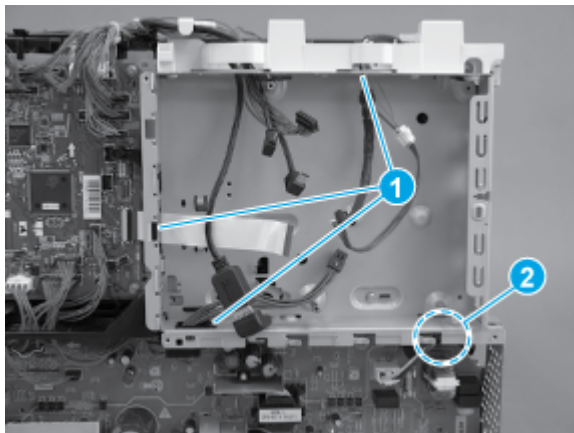
Figure 5-1395 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

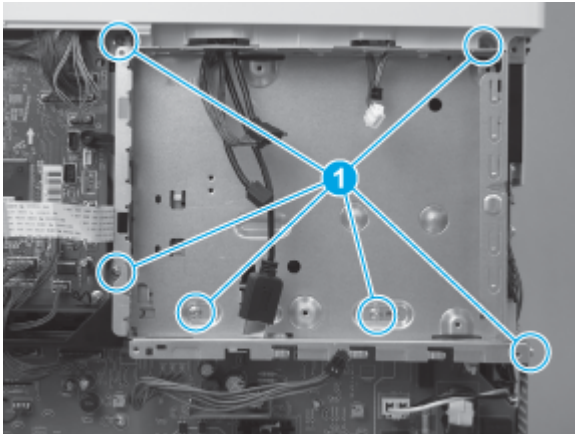
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1396 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



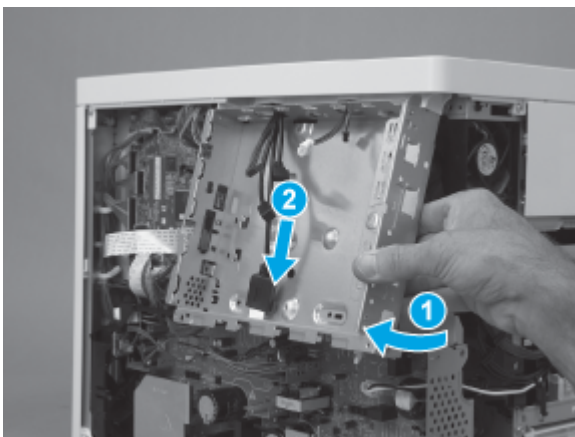
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1397 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1398 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


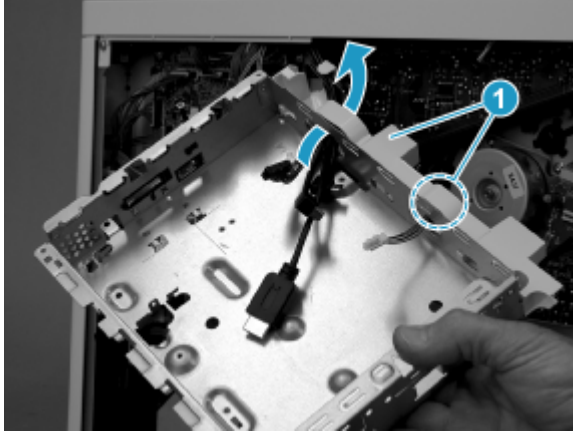
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1399 Remove the formatter case

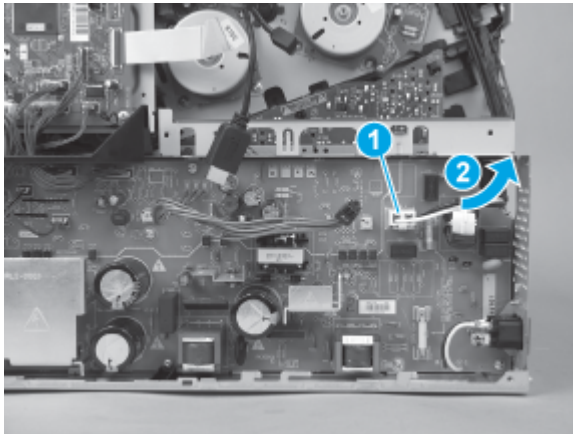


13. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

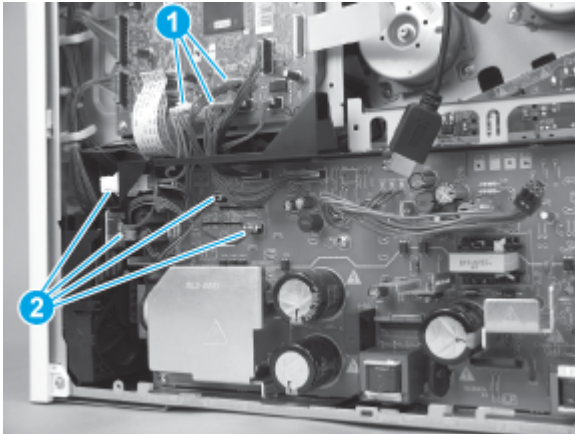
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-1400 Disconnect one wire harness



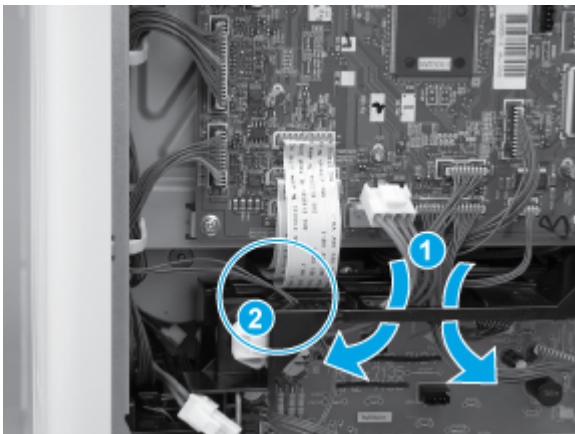
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-1401 Disconnect seven connectors



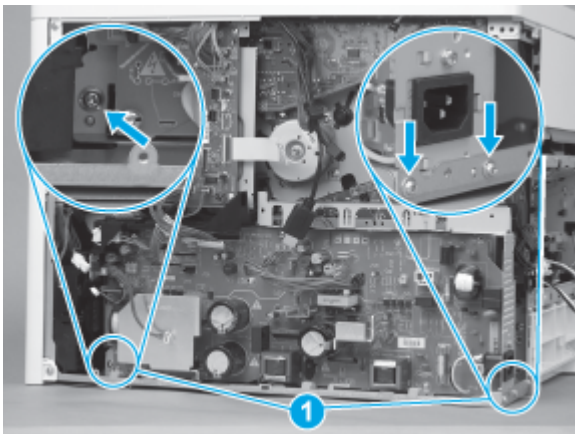
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-1402 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



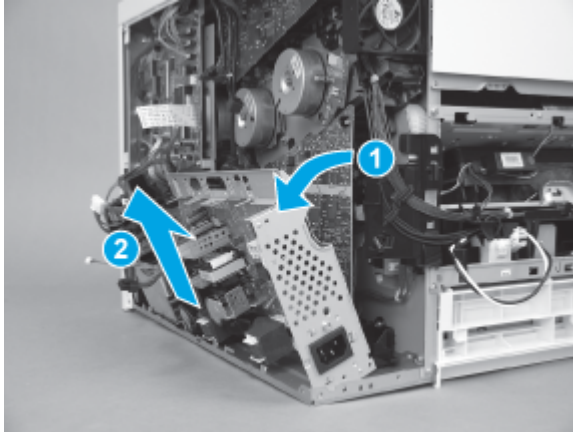
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1403 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1404 Remove the LVPS

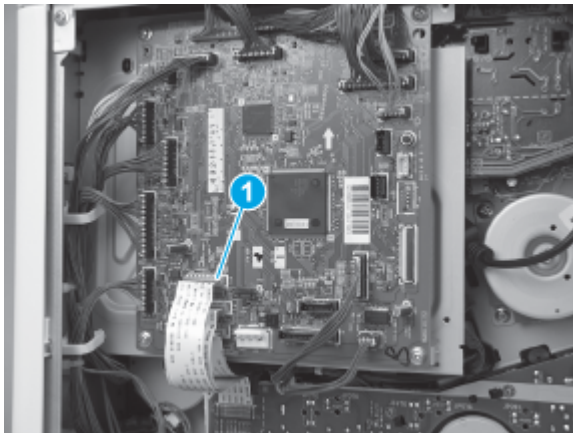


14. Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

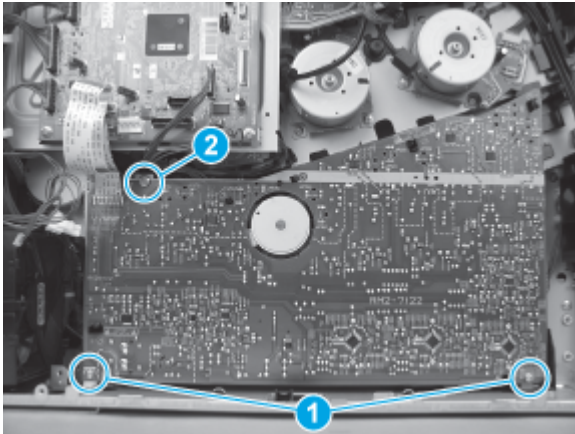
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-1405 Disconnect one flat cable



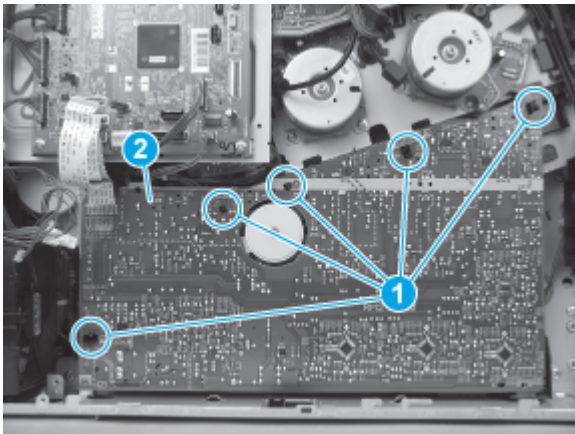
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-1406 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-1407 Remove the HVPSD

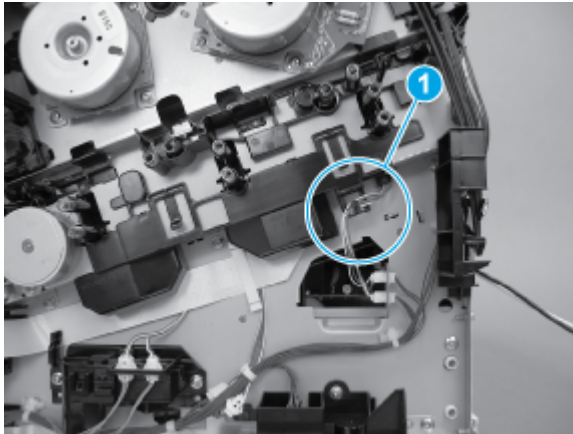


15. Remove the laser/scanner assembly

Follow these steps to remove the laser/scanner assembly.

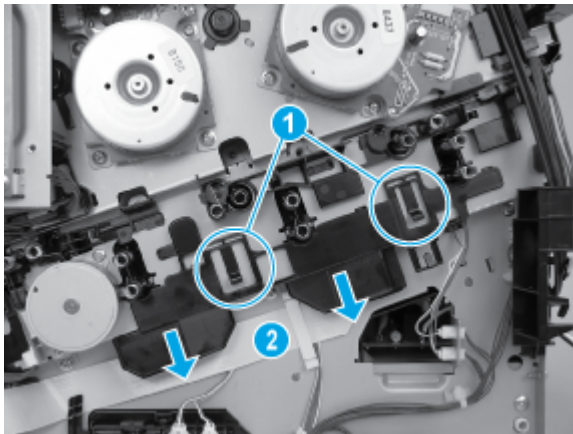
1. Release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 1).

Figure 5-1408 Release one wire harness



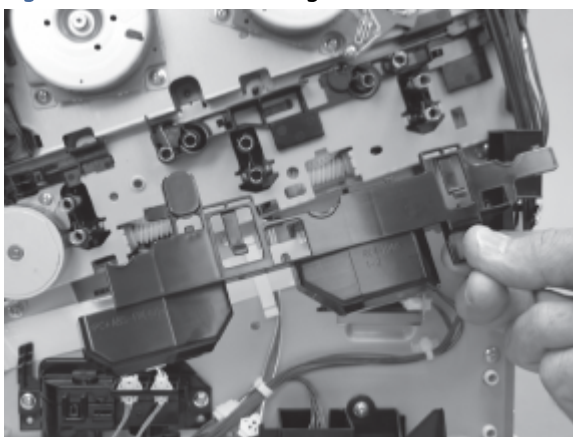
2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then pull down on the guide (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1409 Release two tabs



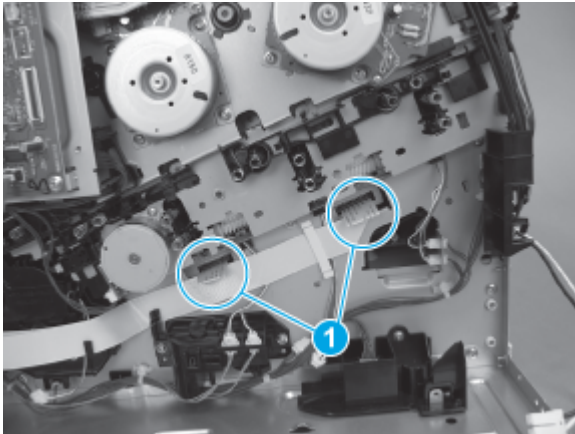
3. Remove the guide.

Figure 5-1410 Remove the guide



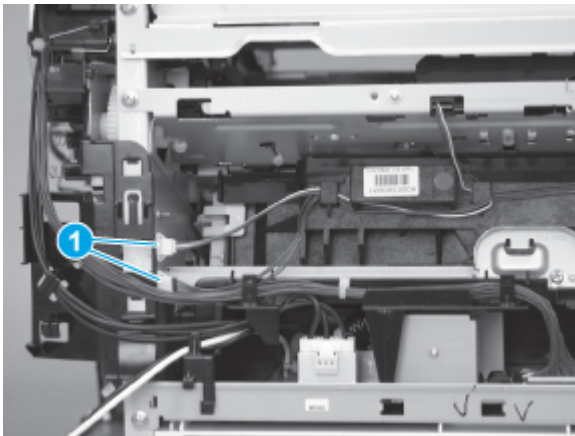
4. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1).

Figure 5-1411 Disconnect two flat cables



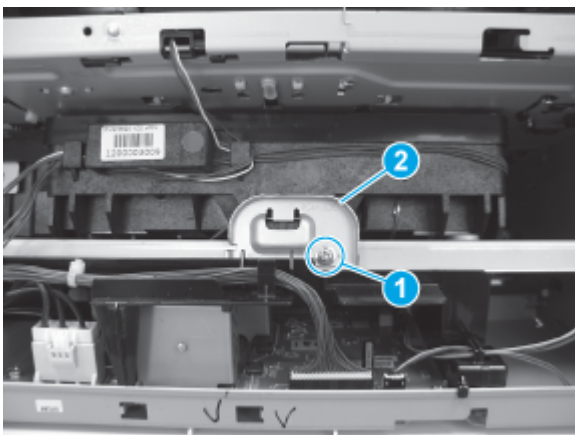
5. At the rear of the printer, disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-1412 Disconnect two connectors



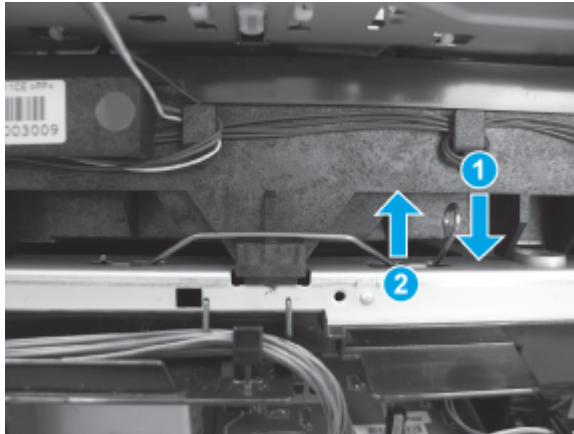
6. At the rear of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the sheet-metal plate (callout 2).

Figure 5-1413 Remove one screw and the plate



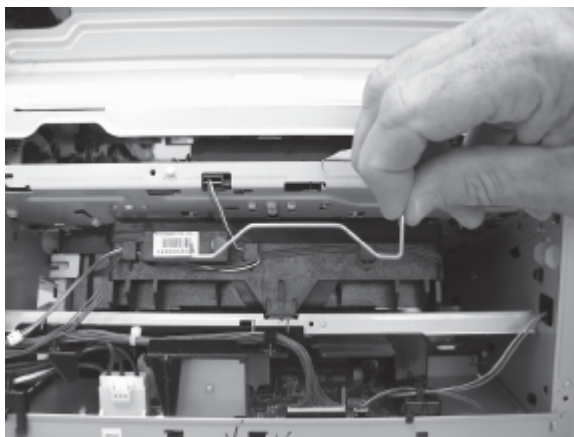
7. At the rear of the printer, push down on the spring (callout 1), and then lift it up (callout 2) to release it from the tab on the chassis.

Figure 5-1414 Release the spring



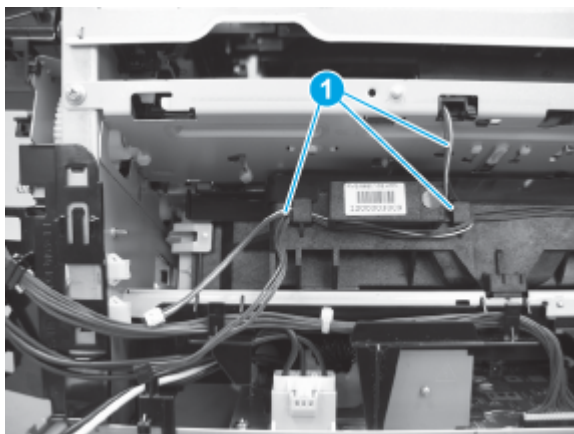
8. Remove the spring.

Figure 5-1415 Remove the spring



9. At the rear of the printer, release the wire harness from the retainers (callout 1).

Figure 5-1416 Release the wire harness

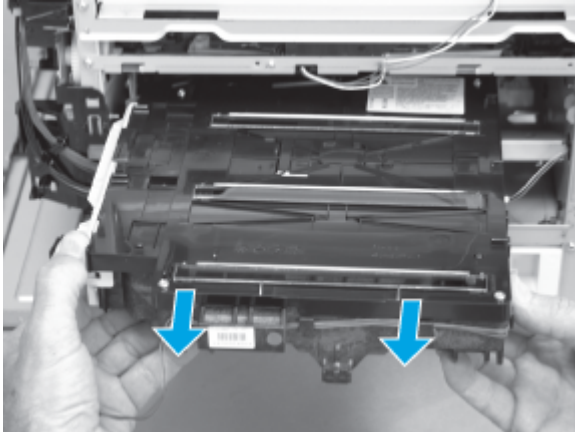


10. Grasp the assembly by the edges, and then pull the laser/scanner assembly straight out of the printer to remove it.

CAUTION: To avoid damaging the glass cleaners, make sure that the front door is open before removing the laser/scanner assembly.

Reinstallation tip: **Replacement LVPS installation:** Handle the replacement laser/scanner assembly by the edges. Do not touch the two glass windows. Skin oils on the windows can cause image quality problems.

Figure 5-1417 Remove the laser/scanner assembly



16. Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Delivery fan (FM3)

Learn about removing and replacing the delivery fan.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-72 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-2728-000CN	Delivery fan (FM3)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

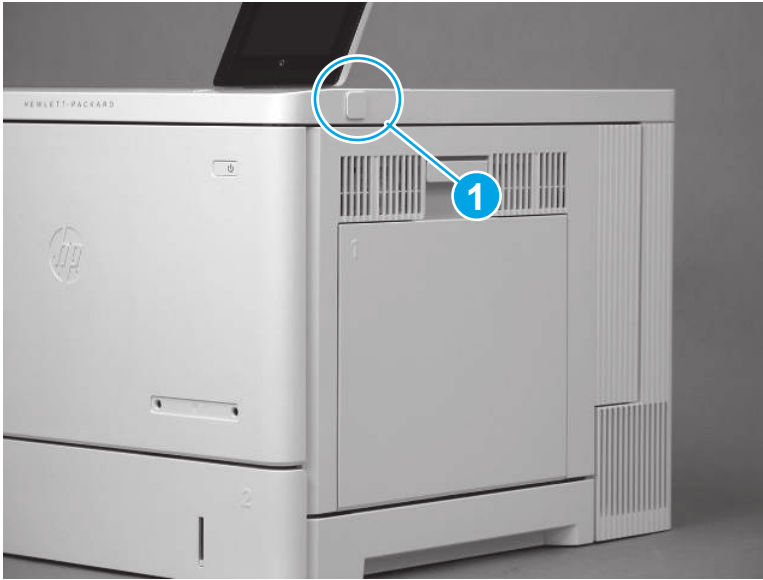
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1418 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1419 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1420 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1421 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1422 Remove the cover

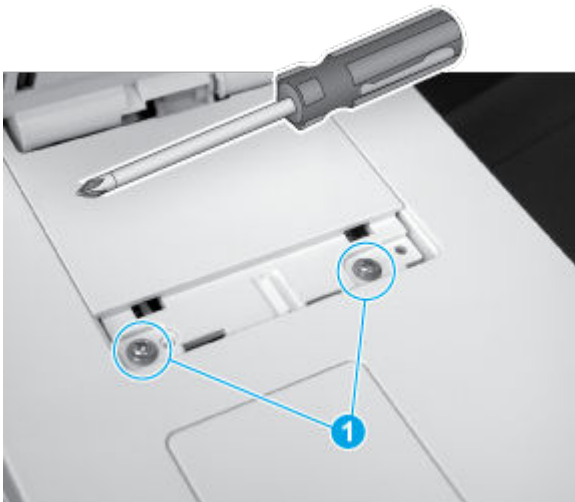


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1423 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1424 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

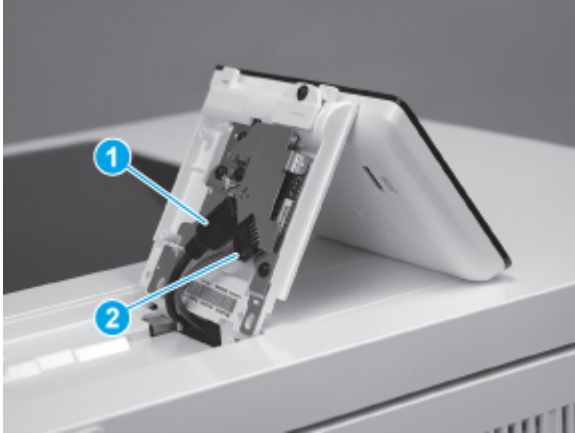
Figure 5-1425 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1426 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

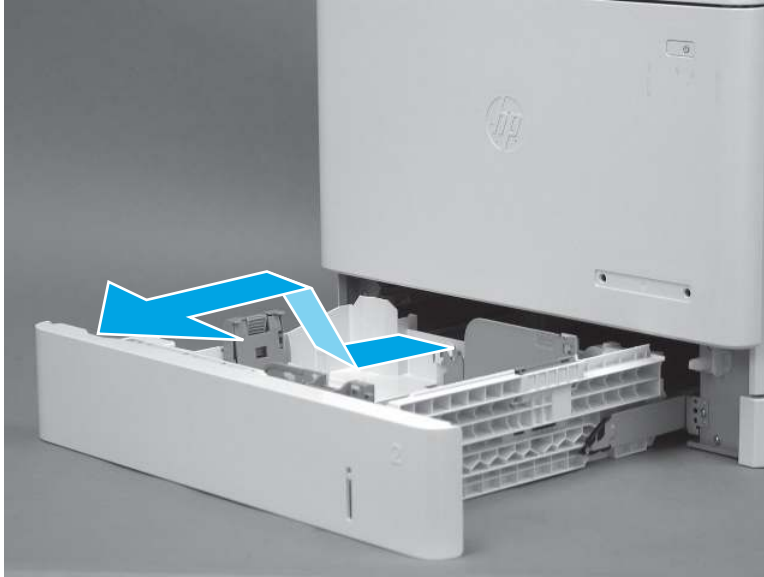
Figure 5-1427 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** **For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-1428 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1429 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1430 Open the TCU

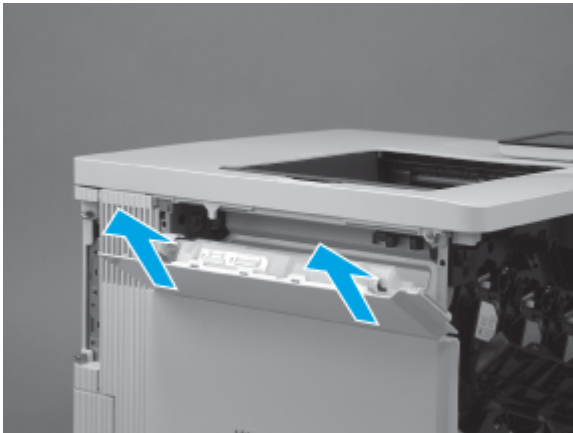


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1431 Remove the TCU

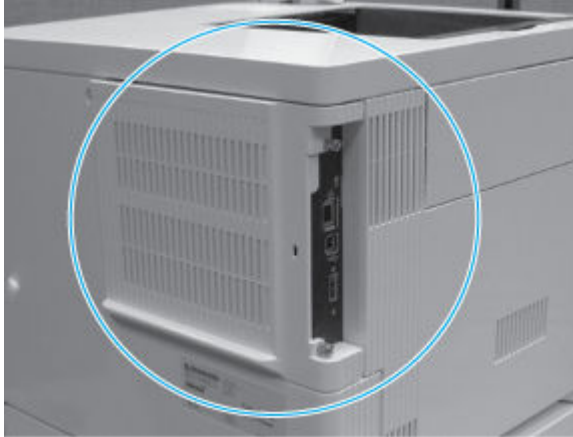


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

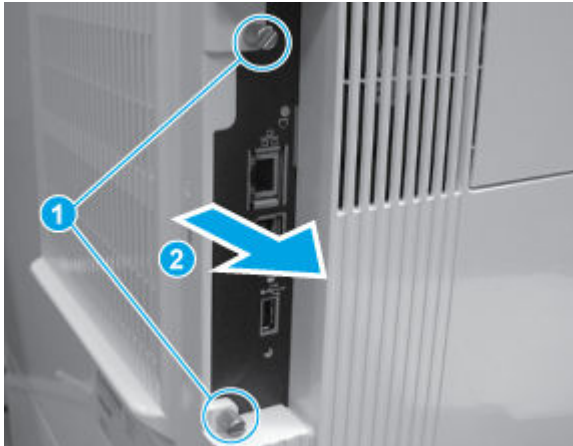
Figure 5-1432 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1433 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

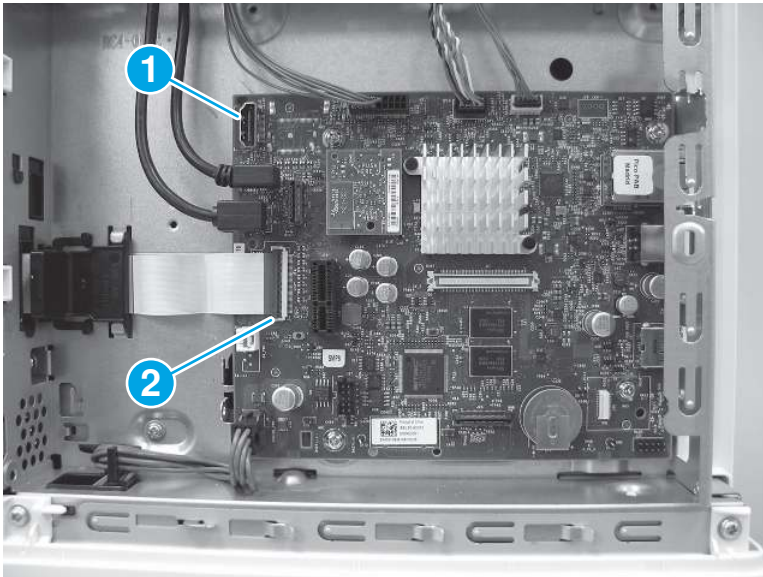
The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)

- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)

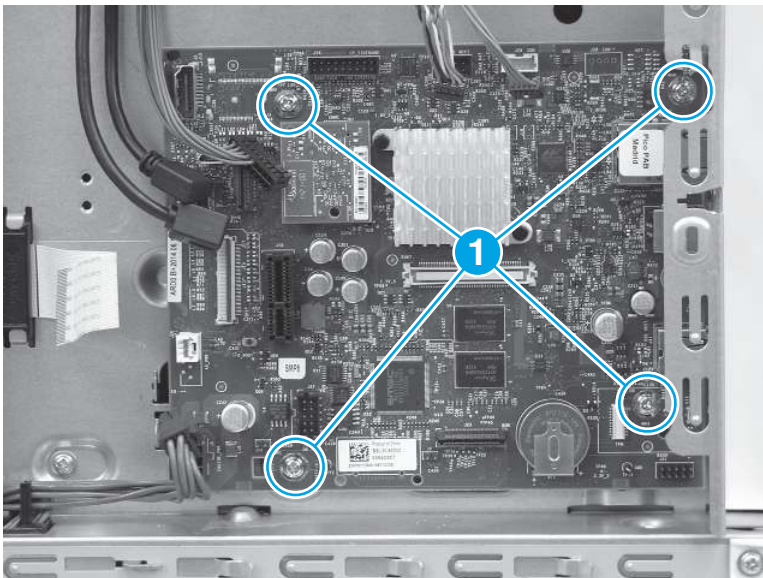
IMPORTANT: The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1434 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1435 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

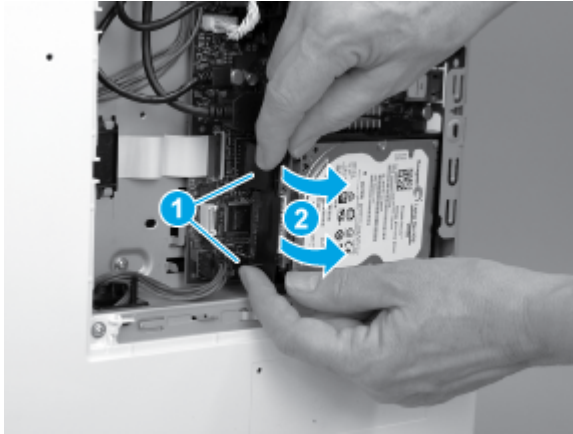
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1436 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1437 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

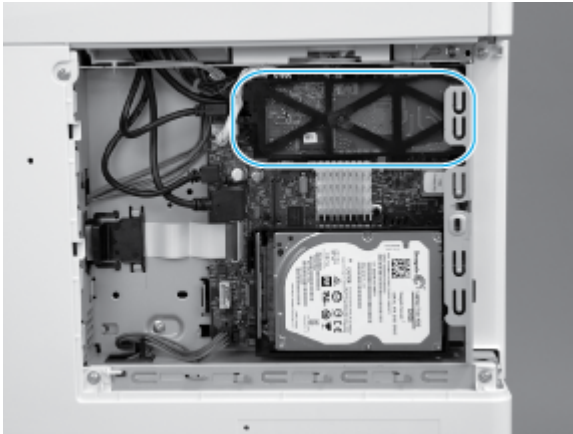
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

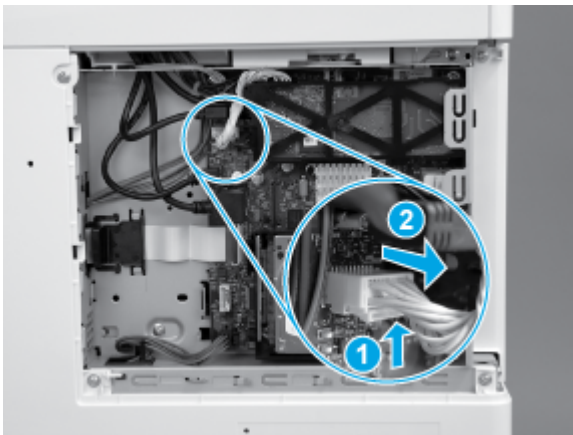
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1438 Locate the fax PCA



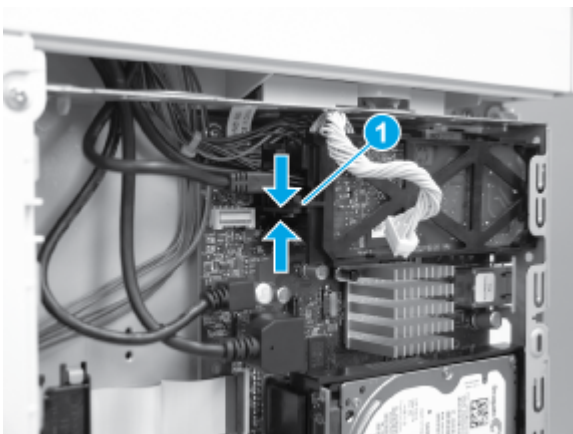
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1439 Disconnect one connector



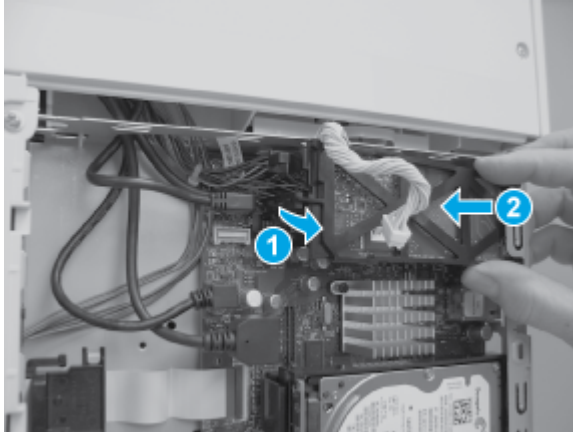
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1440 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1441 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


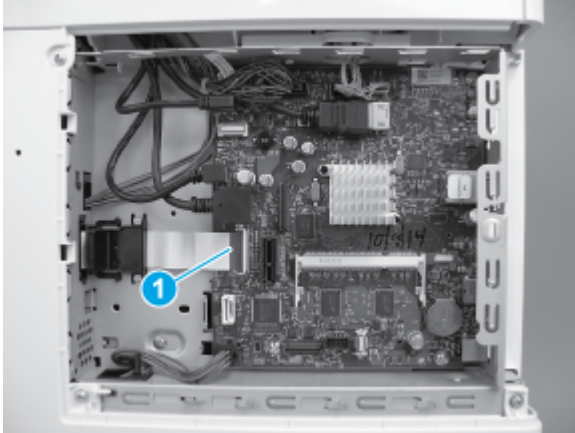
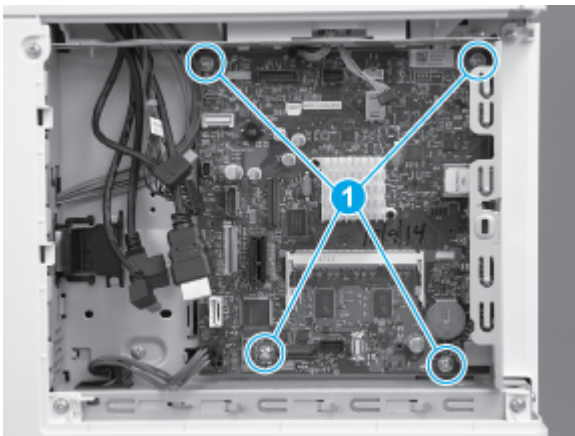
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1442 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1443 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1444 Remove the formatter



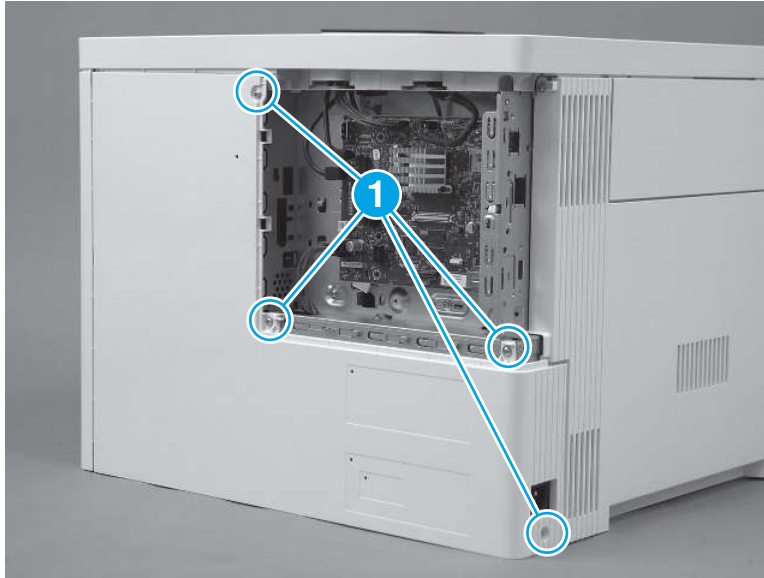
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

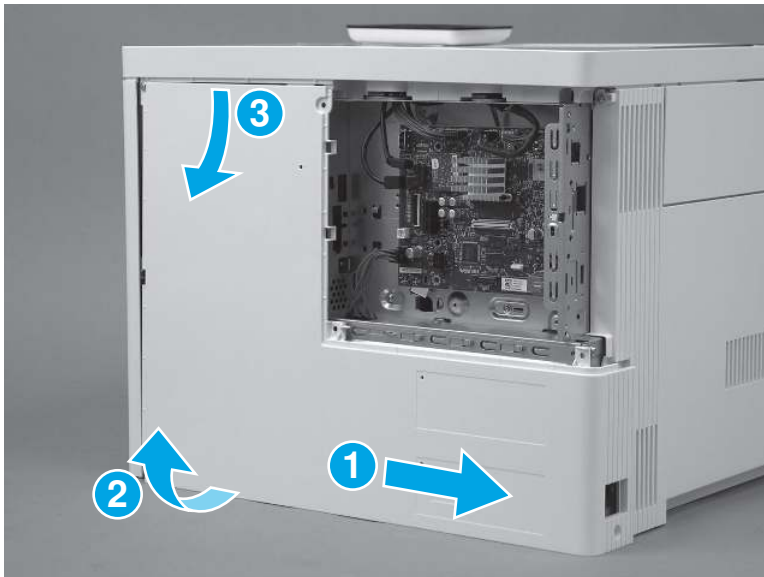
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1445 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1446 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

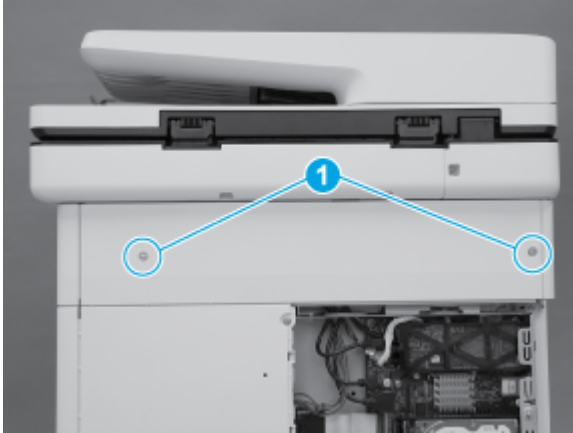
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

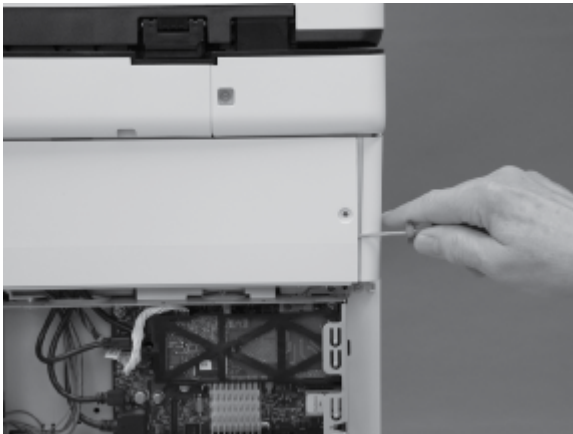
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1447 Remove two screws



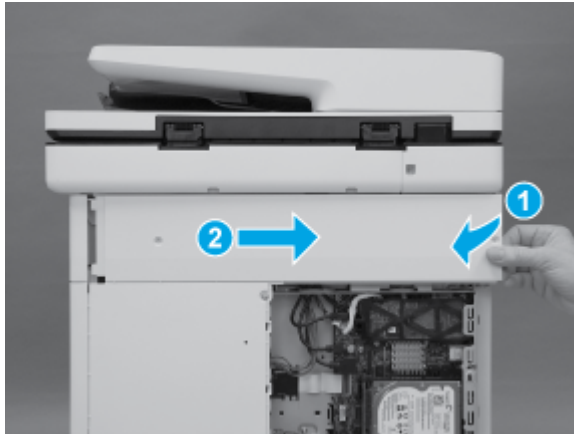
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1448 Release the right edge



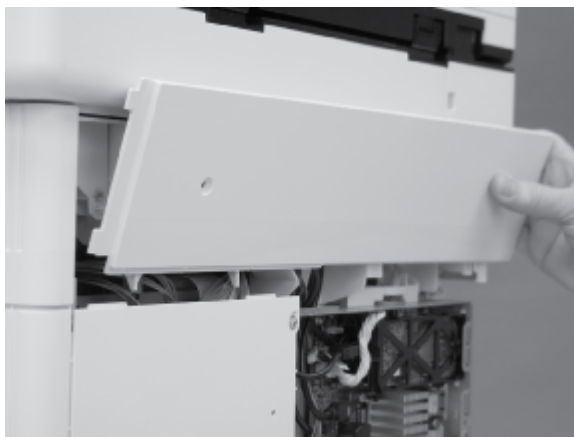
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1449 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1450 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1451 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1452 Remove the cover



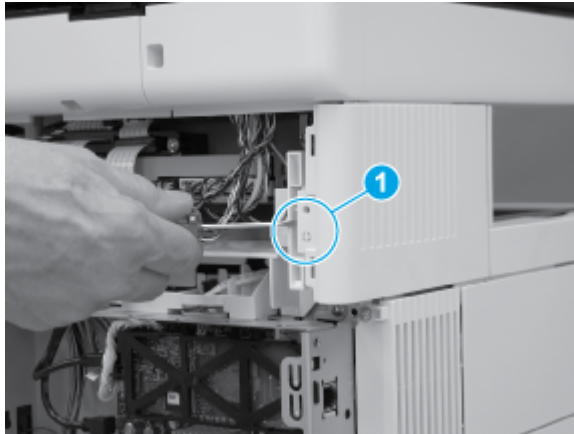
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1453 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-1454 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1455 Remove the left upper cover



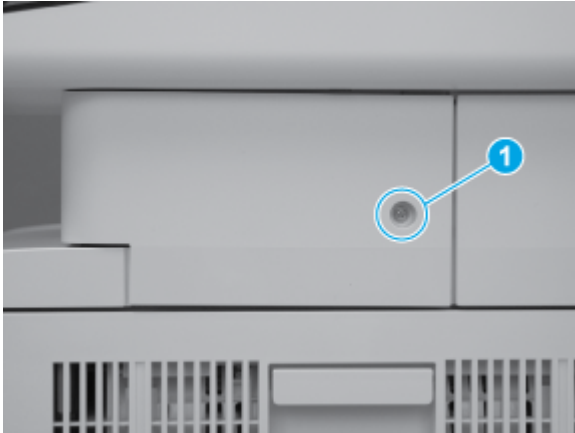
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1456 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1457 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1458 Rotate the cover



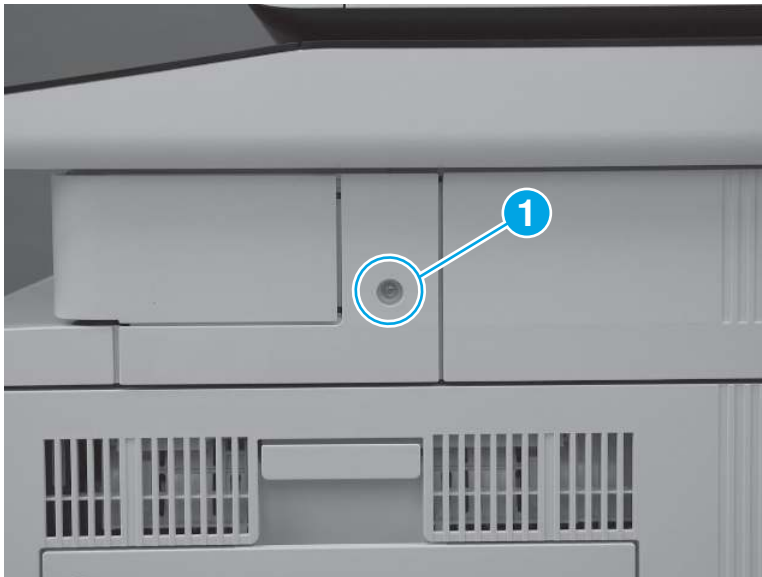
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1459 Remove one screw



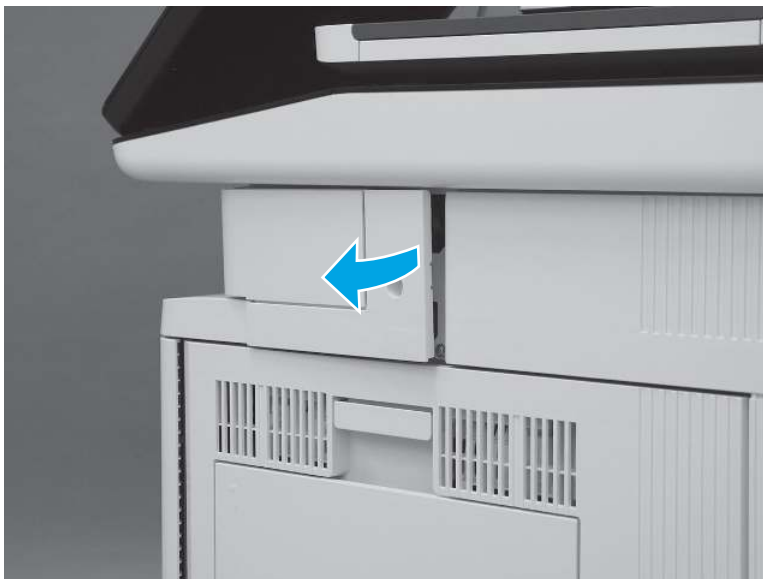
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1460 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1461 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1462 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

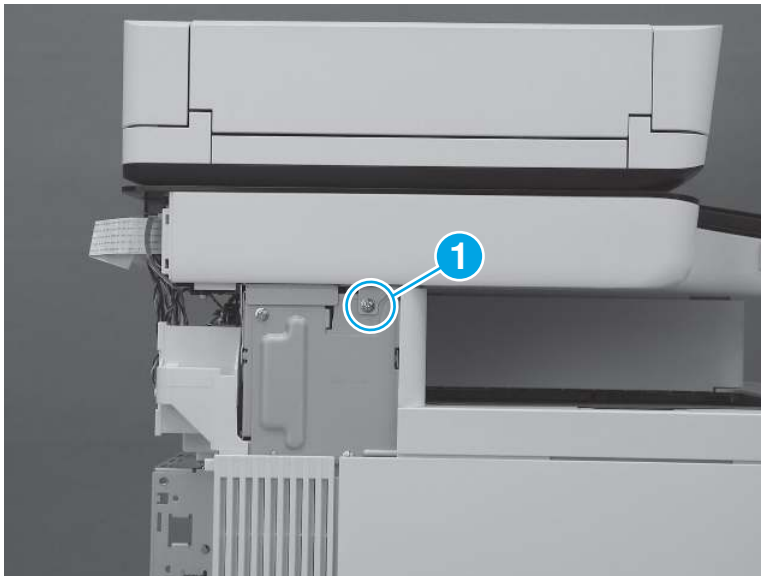
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

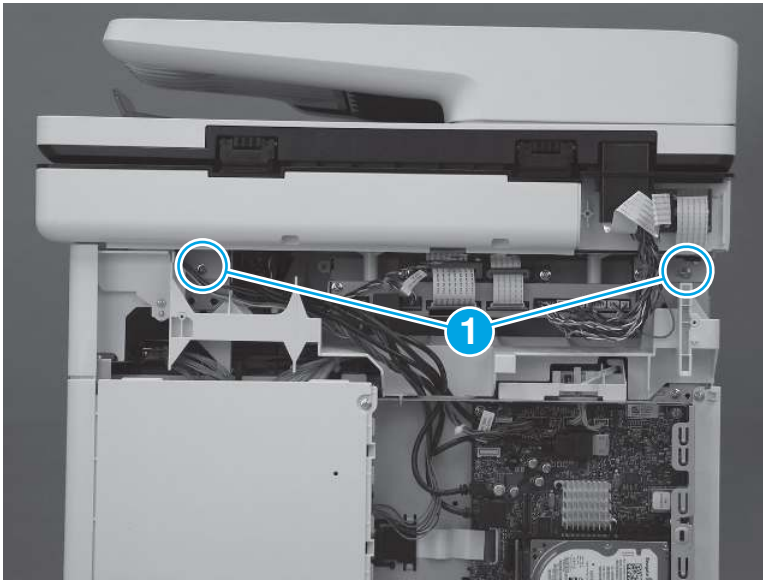
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1463 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

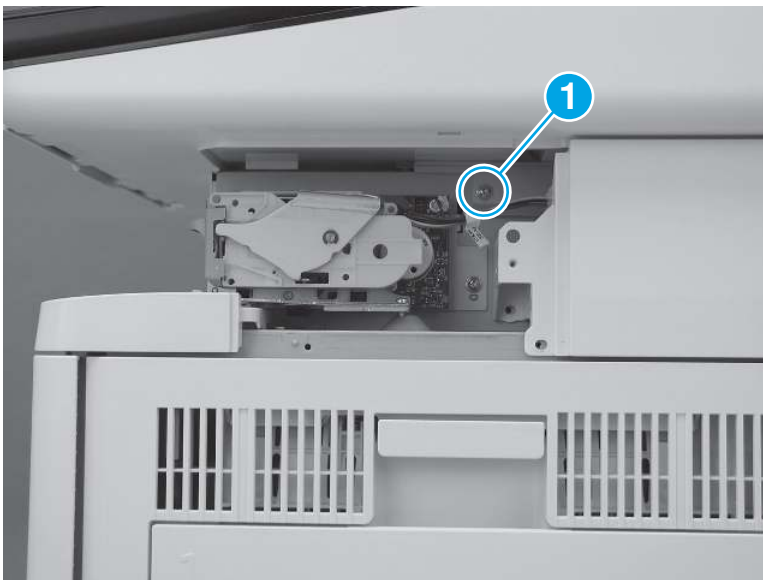
Figure 5-1464 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

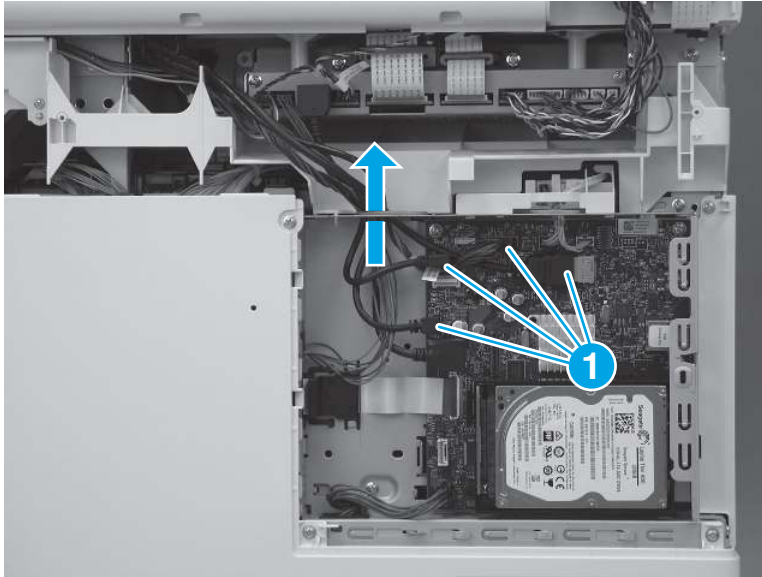
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-1465 Remove one screw



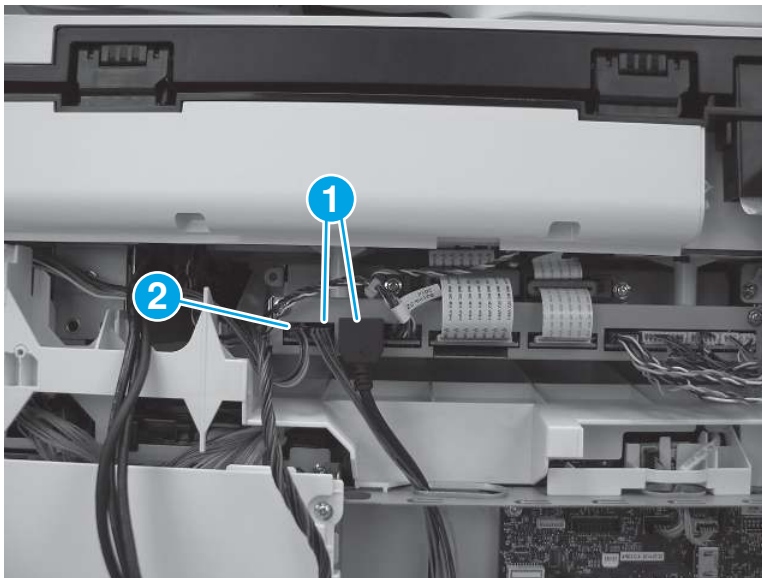
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-1466 Disconnect cables and connectors



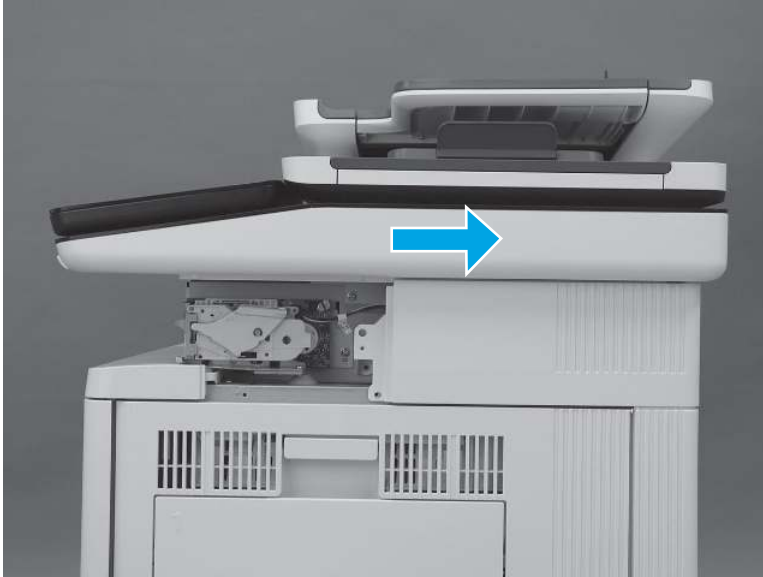
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-1467 Disconnect connectors



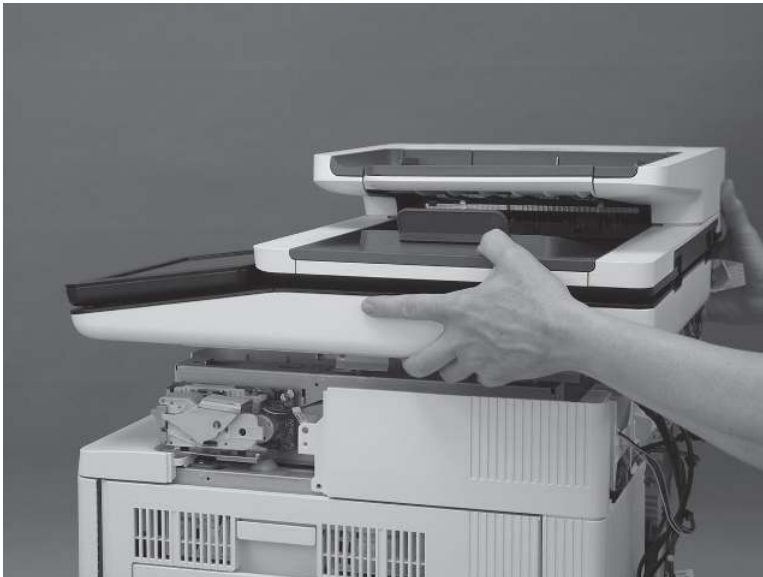
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1468 Release the image scanner



7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1469 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

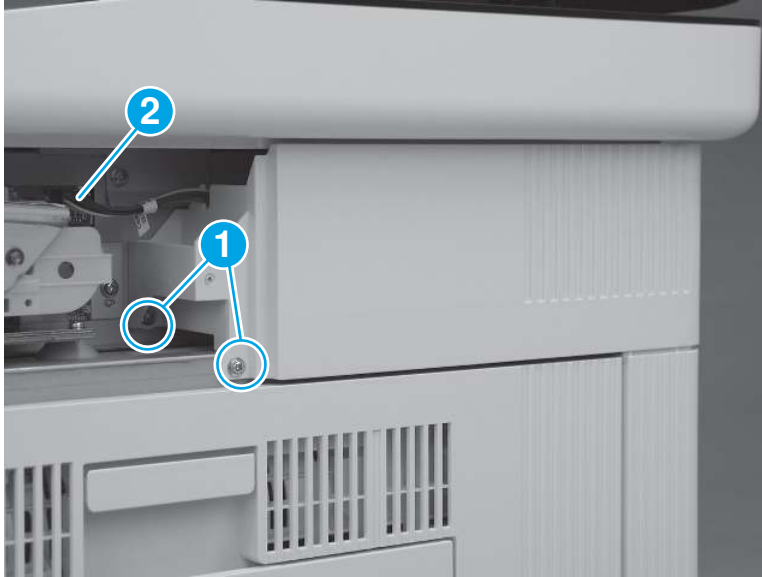
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1470 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


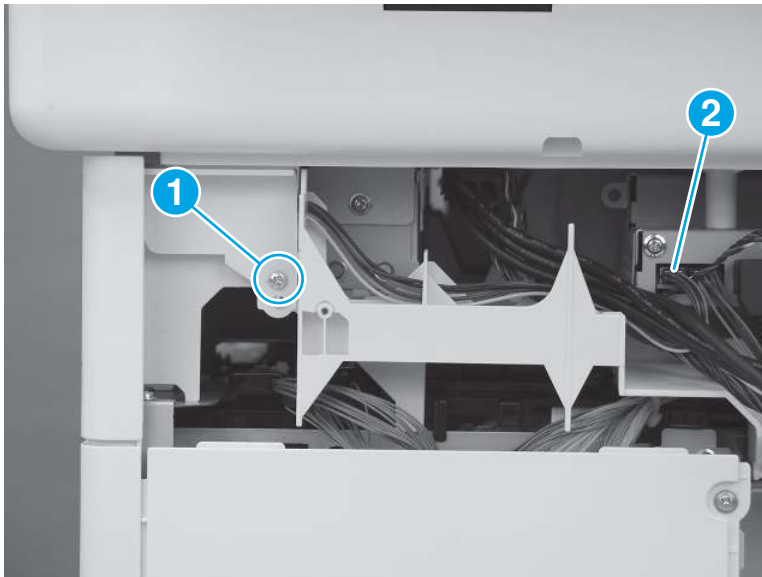
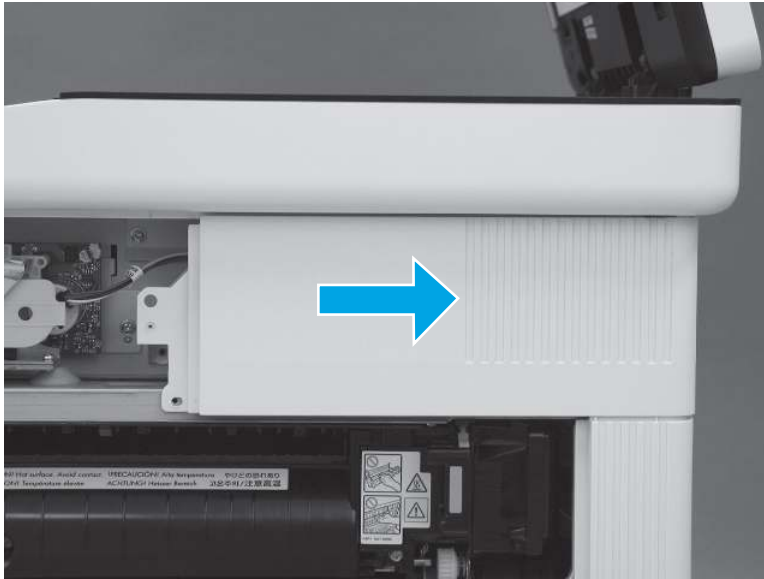
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1471 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

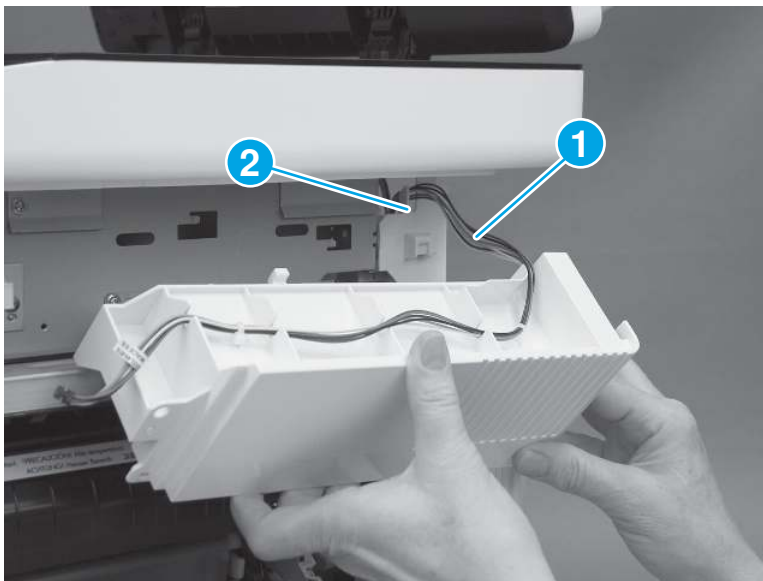
Figure 5-1472 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-1473 Remove the cover



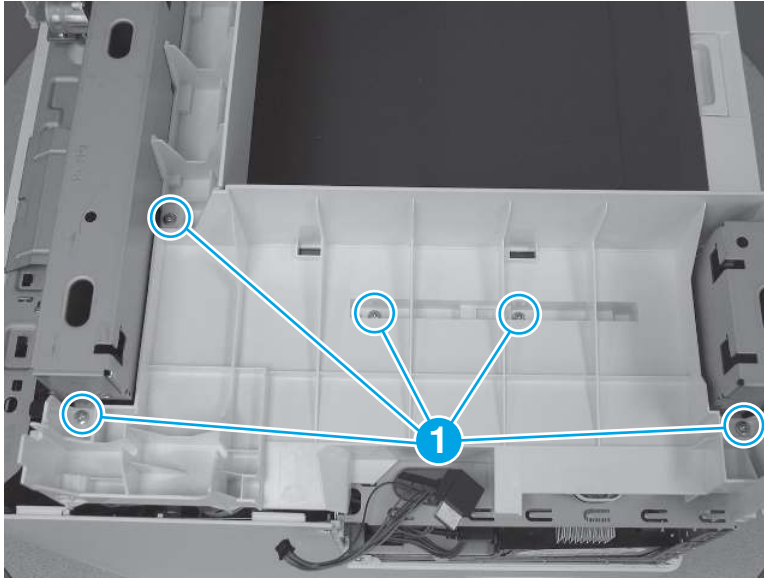
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

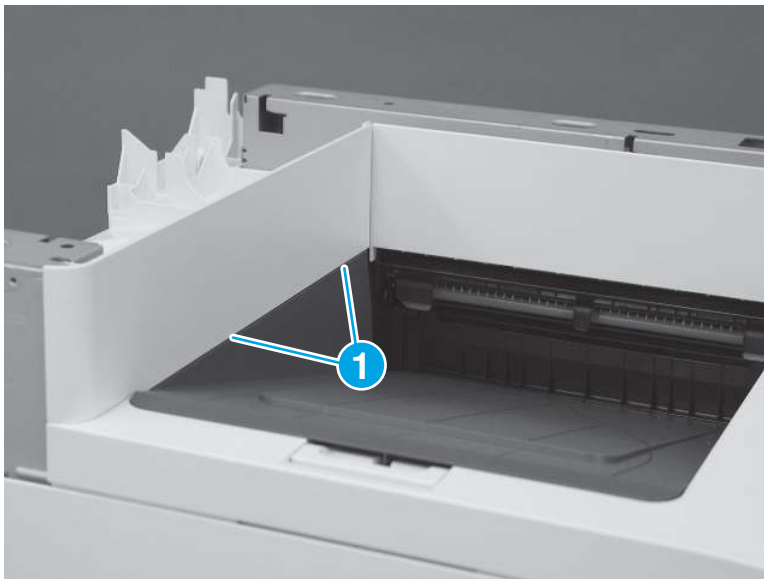
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1474 Remove five screws



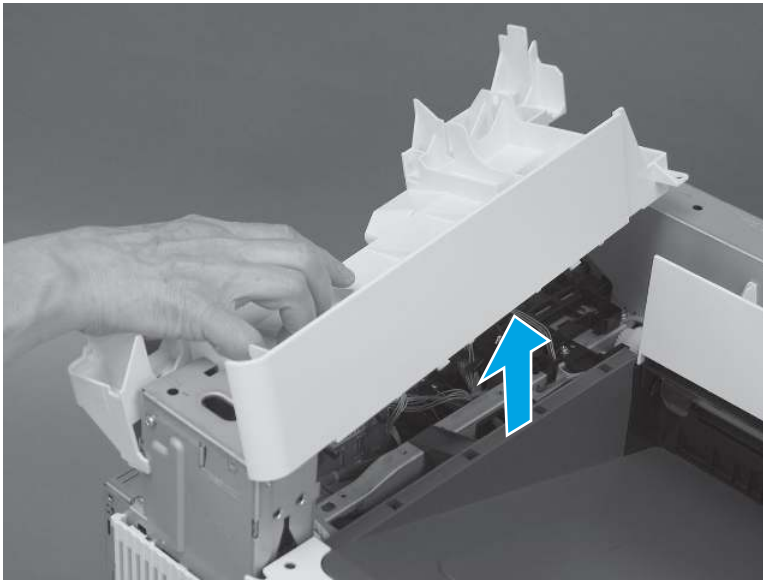
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1475 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-1476 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

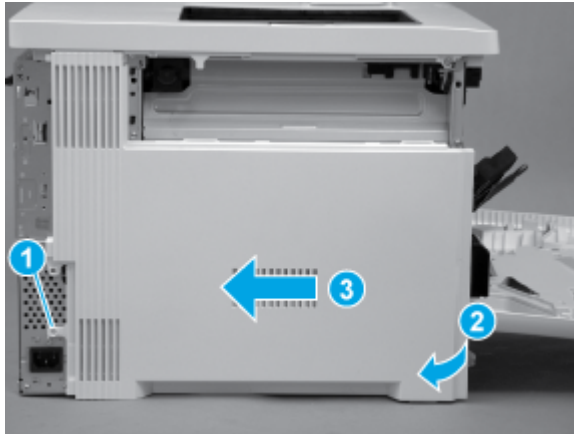
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1477 Remove one screw



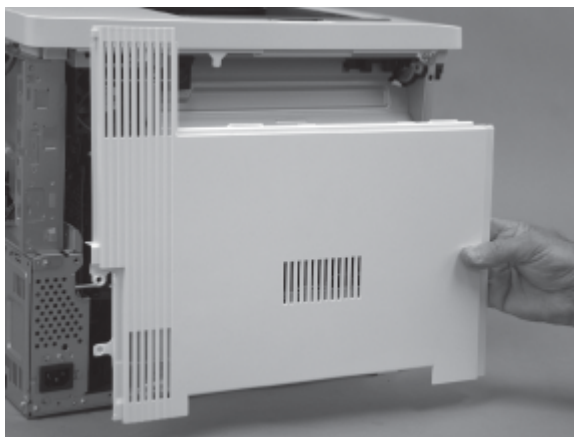
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1478 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1479 Remove the cover



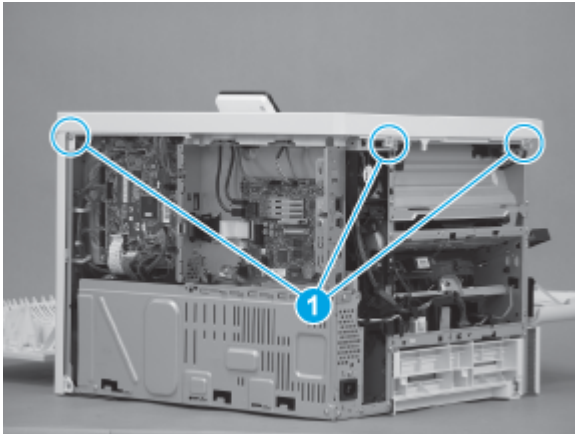
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1480 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1481 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


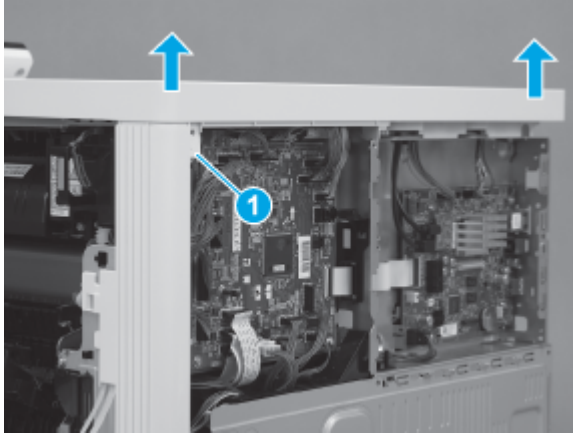
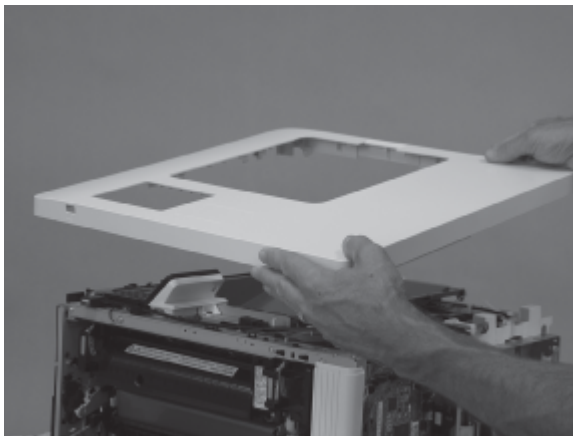
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-1482 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1483 Remove the cover

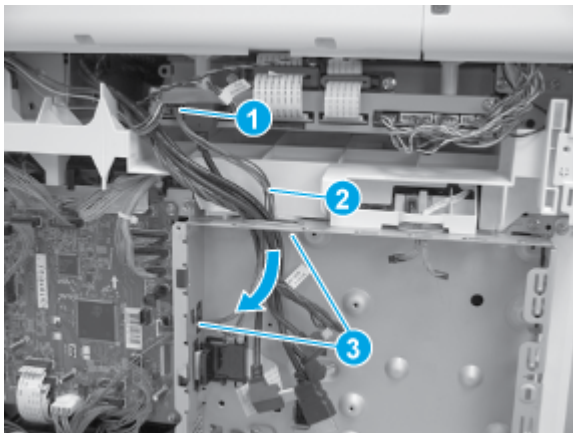


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

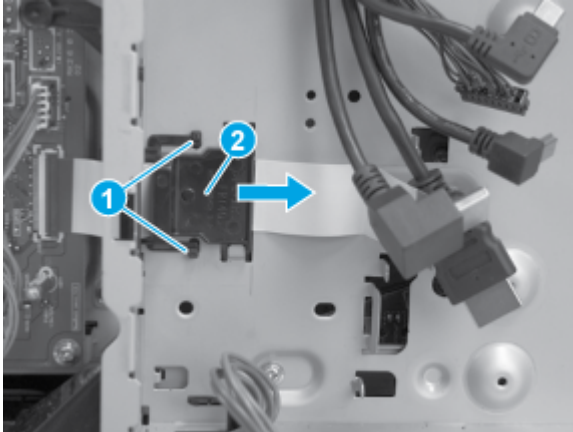
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1484 Disconnect one connector



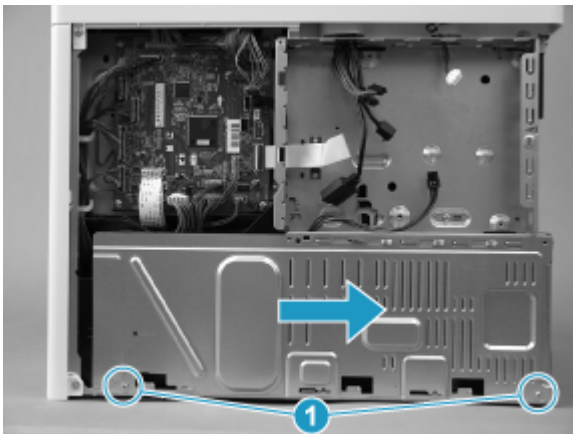
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1485 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

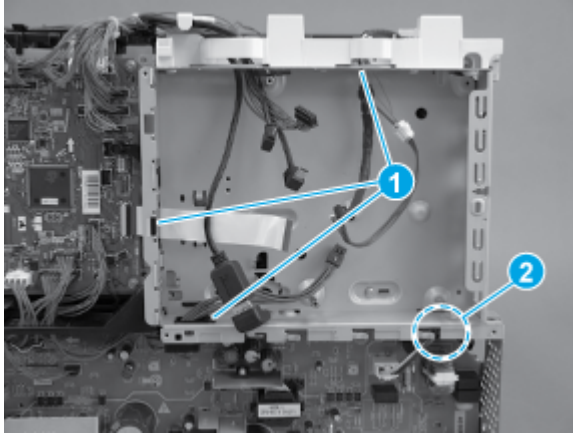
Figure 5-1486 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

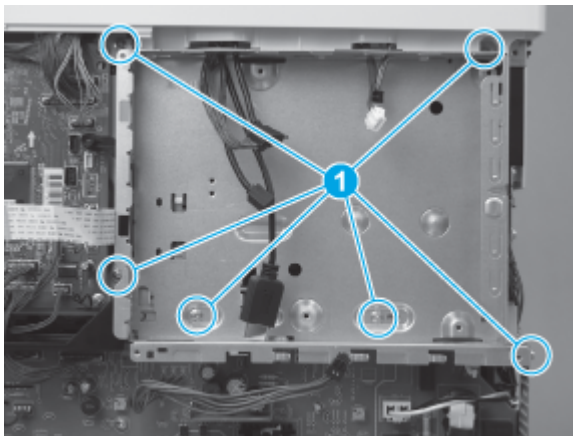
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1487 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



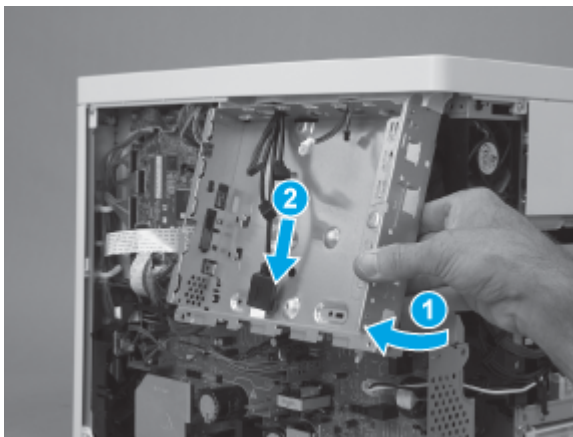
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1488 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1489 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


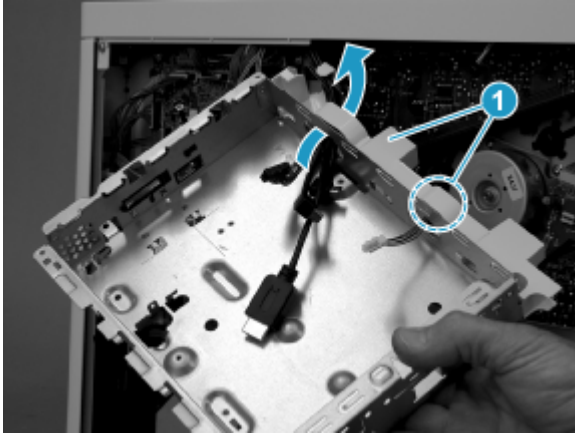
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1490 Remove the formatter case

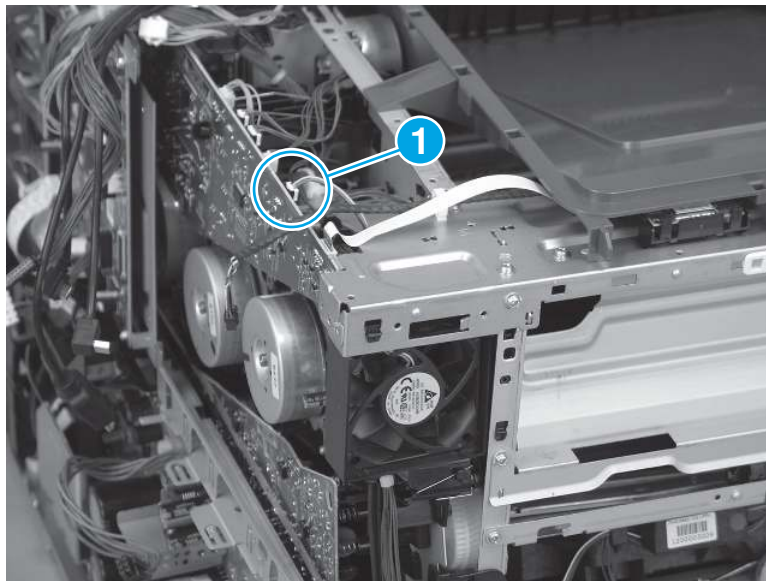


Remove the delivery fan (FM3)

Follow these steps to remove the delivery fan.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1491 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).


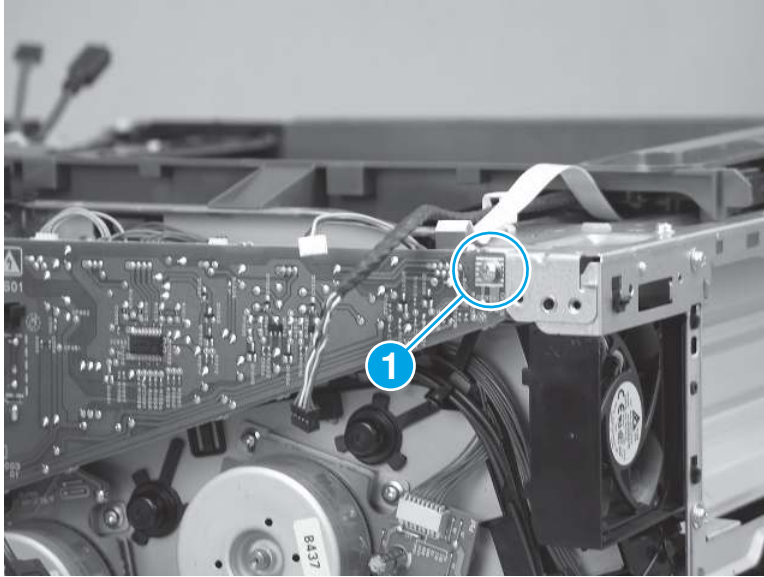
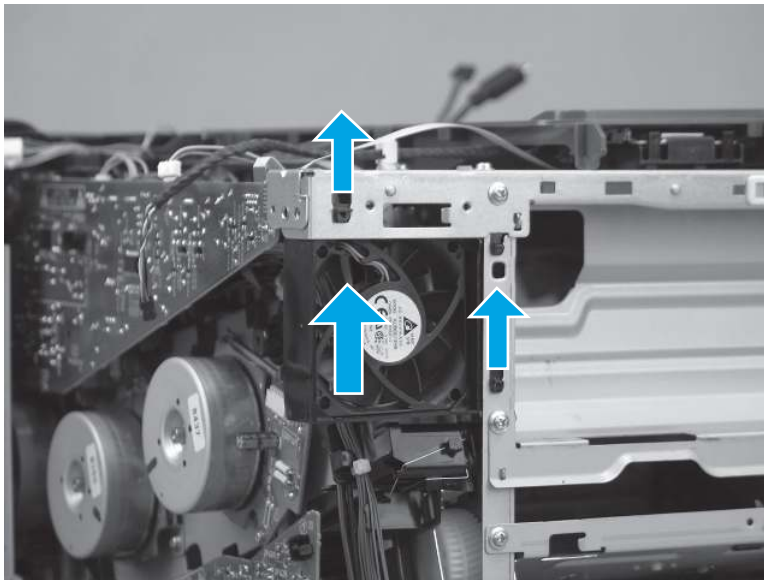
 **NOTE:** This screw does not secure the fan to the chassis. However it is necessary to remove it so that the corner of the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST) can be moved out of the way to remove the fan.

Figure 5-1492 Remove one screw



3. Slide the fan up to release it.

Figure 5-1493 Release the fan

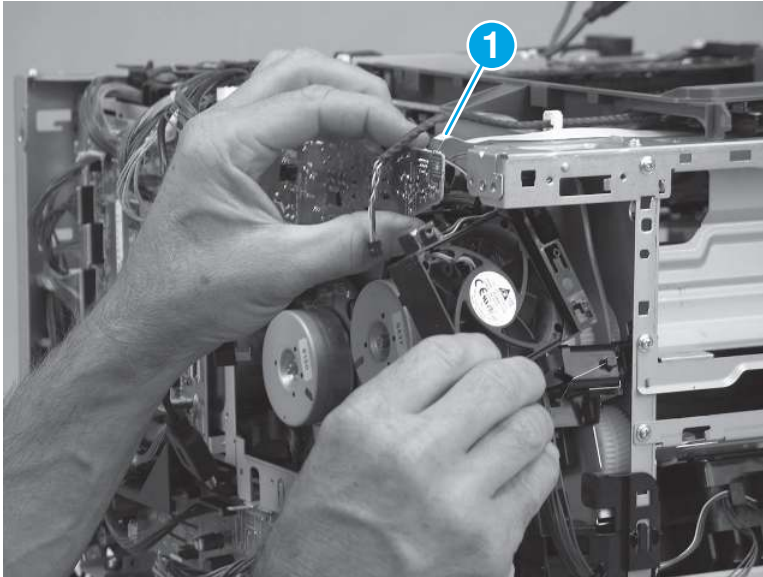


4. Slightly flex the corner of the HVPST out of the way (callout 1), and then remove the fan.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not over flex the HVPST and damage it.

💡 Reinstallation tip: Look at the arrows embossed on the fan or the holder. When a replacement fan is installed, make sure that the embossed arrows face the correct direction.

Figure 5-1494 Remove the fan



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

Learn about removing and replacing the high-voltage power supply T.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-73 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-7123-000CN	High-voltage power supply T (HVPST) M552, M553dn/x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)
RM2-7134-000CN	High-voltage power supply T (HVPST) (M553n)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

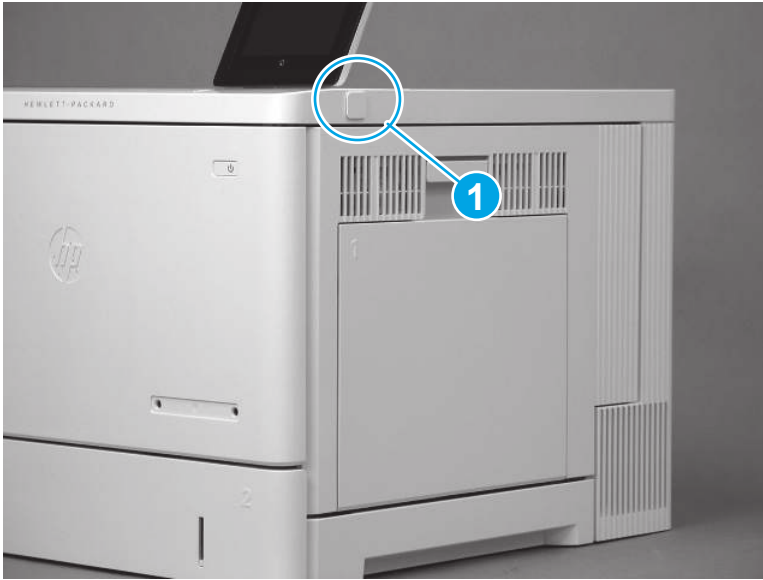
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1495 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1496 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1497 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1498 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1499 Remove the cover

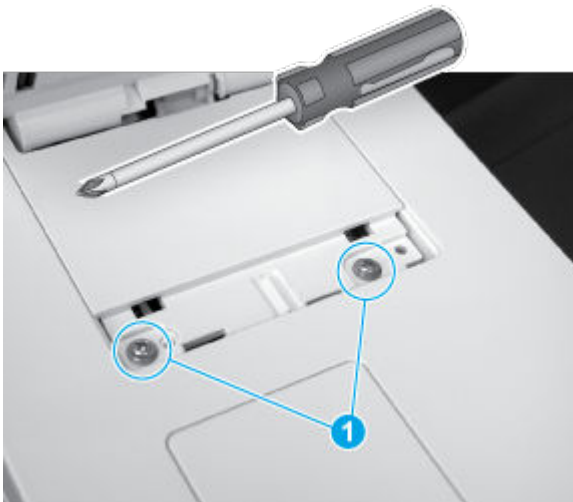


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1500 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1501 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

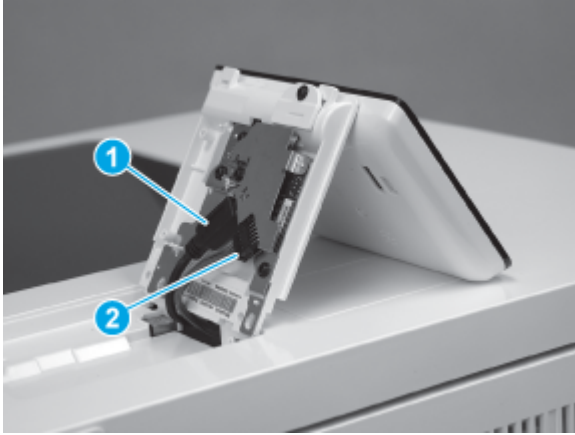
Figure 5-1502 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1503 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

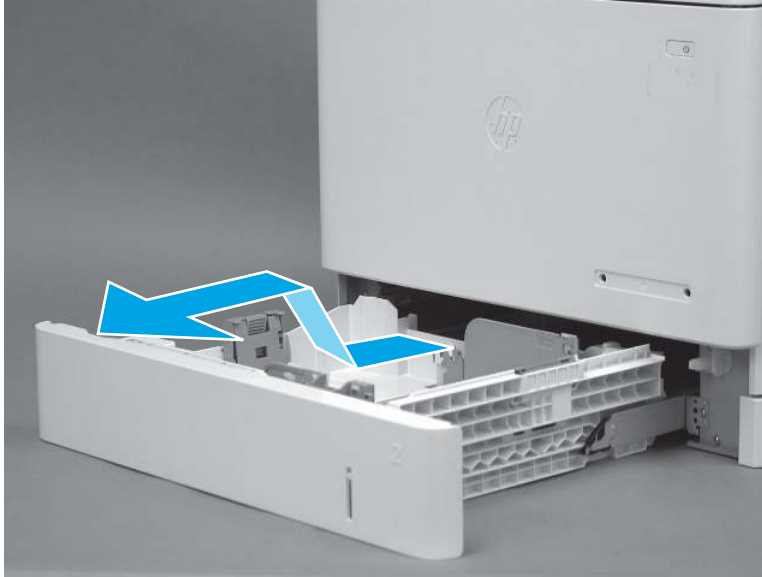
Figure 5-1504 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** **For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-1505 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1506 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.


 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1507 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1508 Remove the TCU

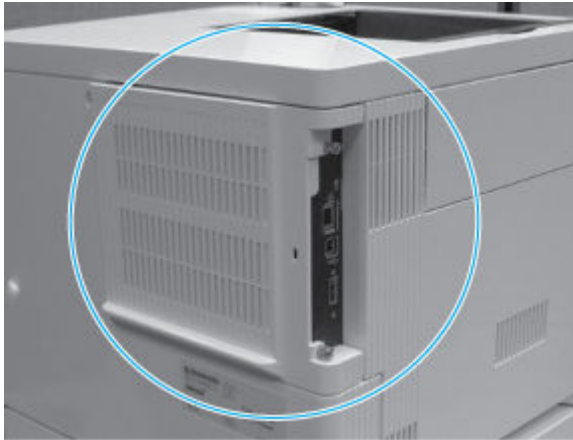


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

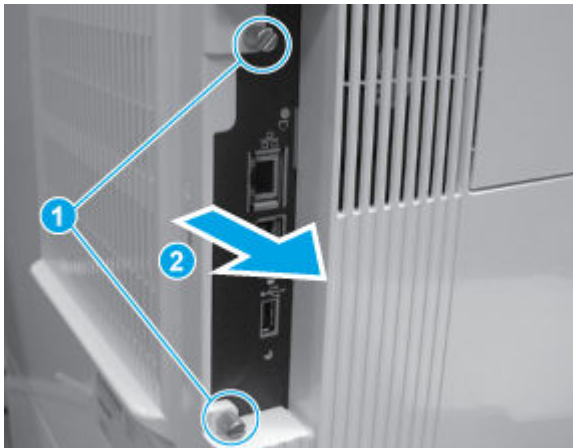
Figure 5-1509 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1510 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

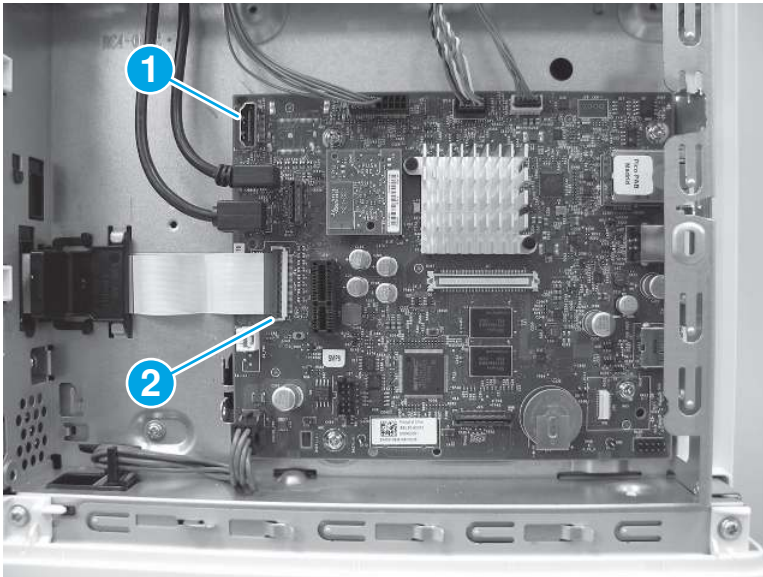
The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)

- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)

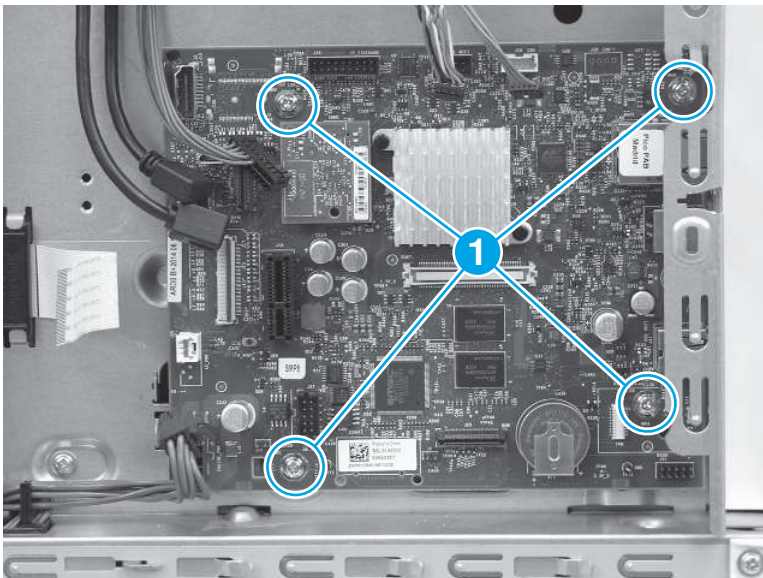
IMPORTANT: The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1511 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1512 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

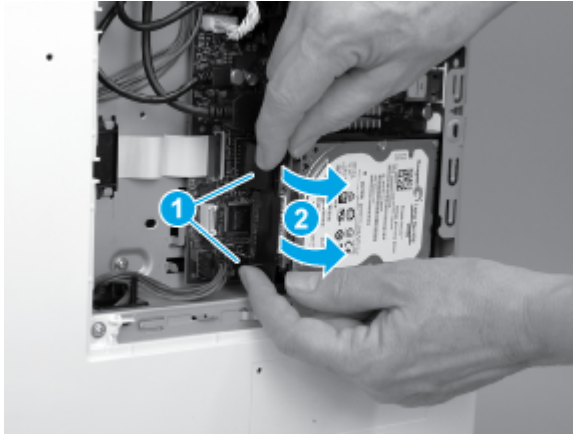
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1513 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1514 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

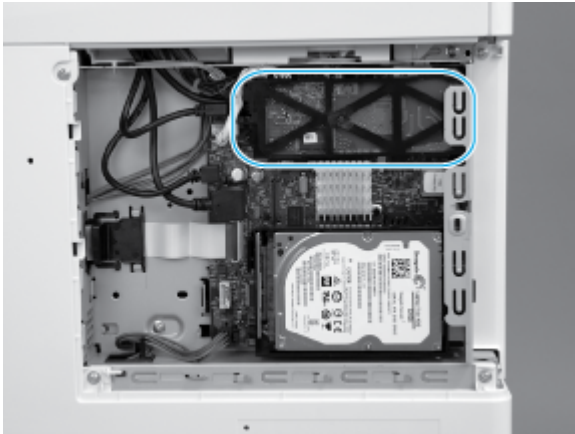
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

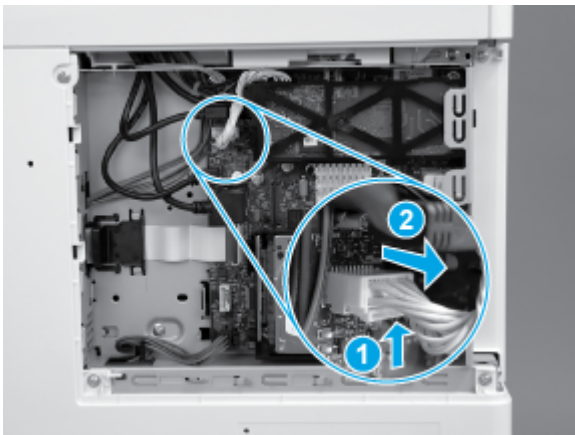
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1515 Locate the fax PCA



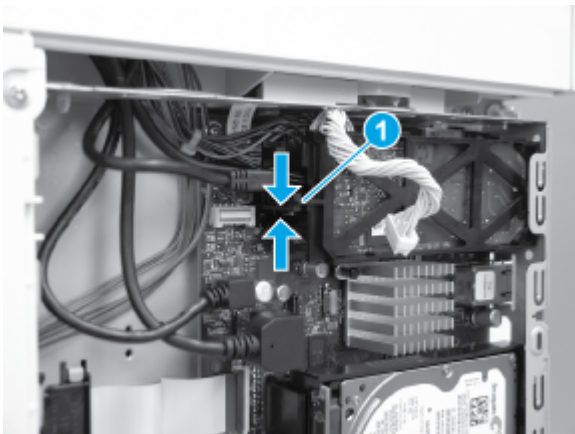
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1516 Disconnect one connector



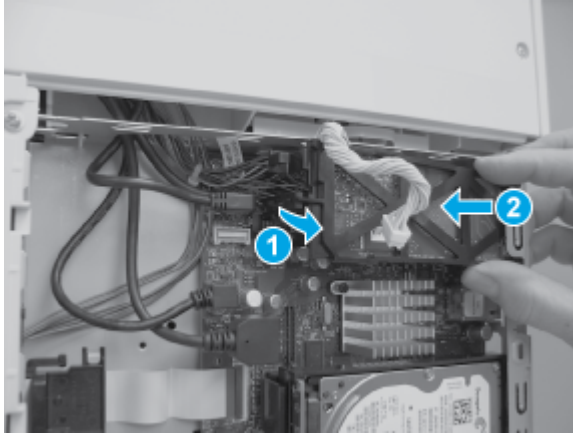
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1517 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1518 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


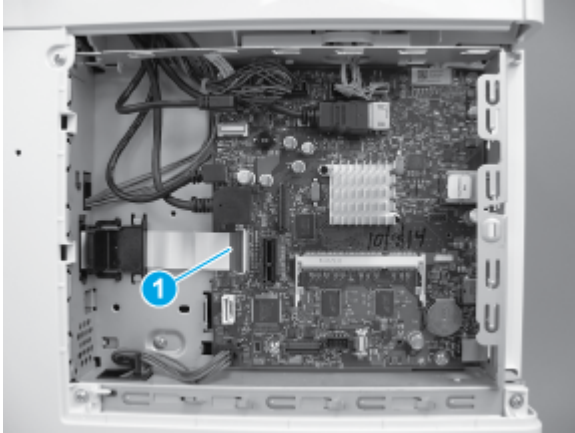
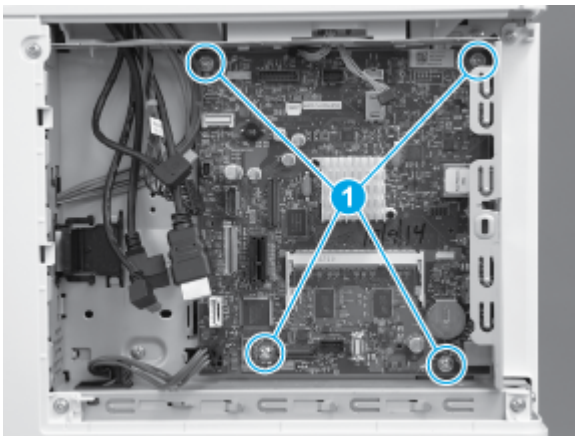
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1519 Disconnect all connectors



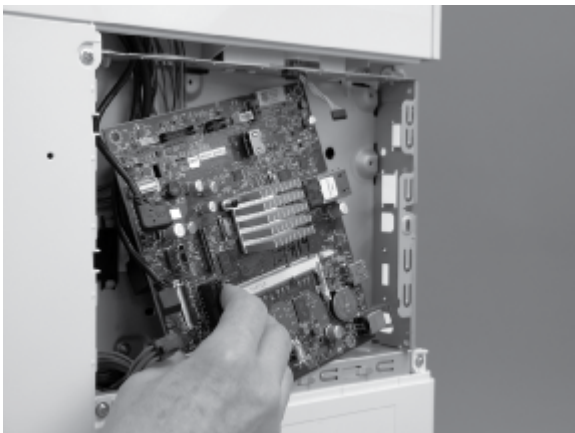
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1520 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1521 Remove the formatter



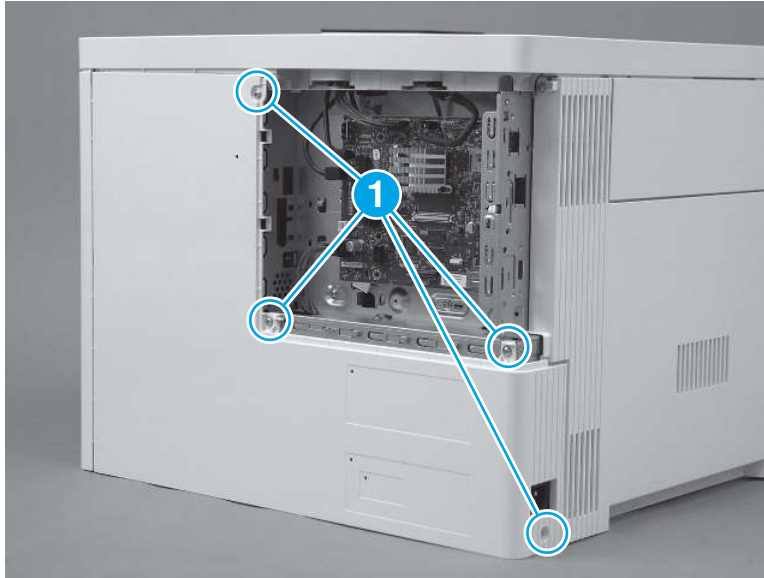
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

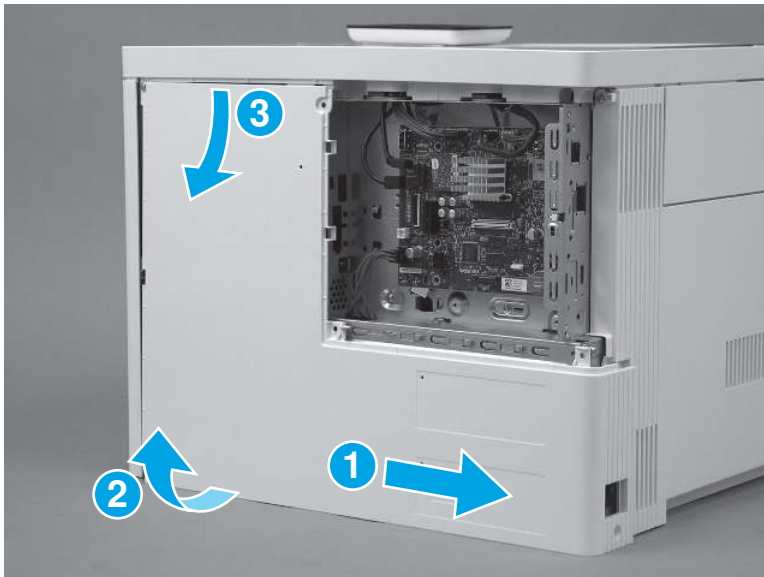
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1522 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1523 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

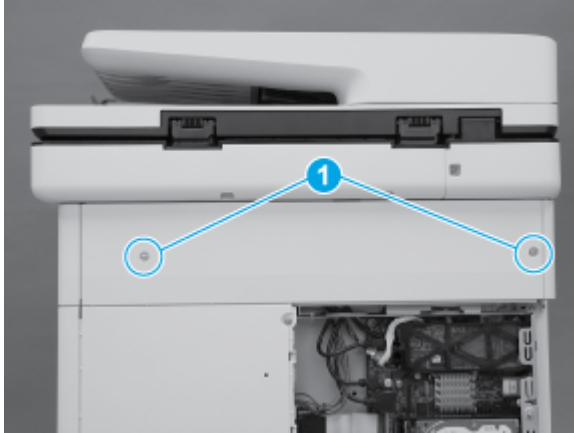
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

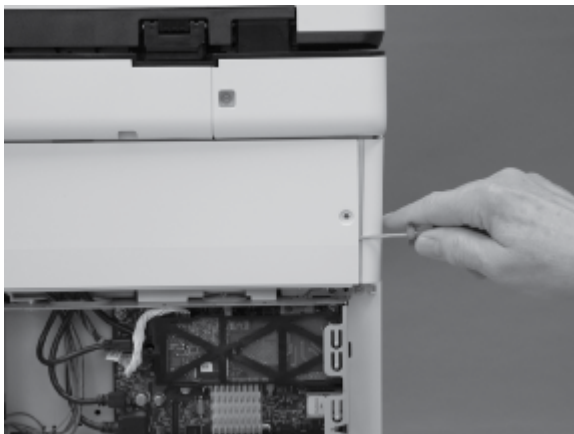
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1524 Remove two screws



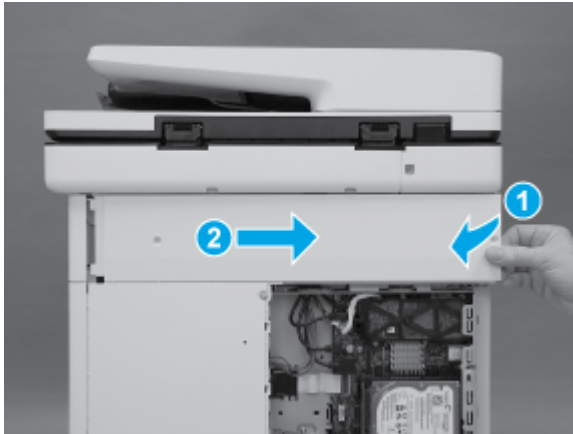
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1525 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1526 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1527 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1528 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1529 Remove the cover



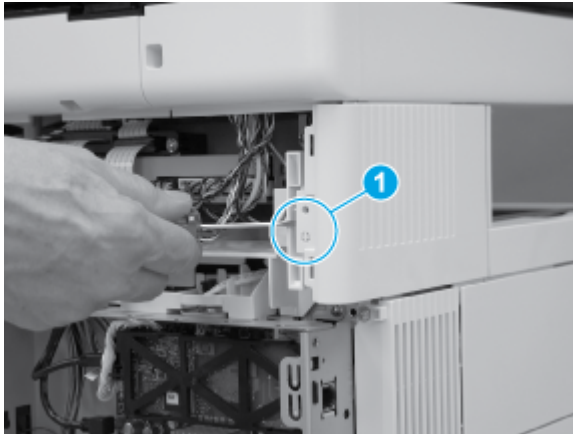
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1530 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-1531 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1532 Remove the left upper cover



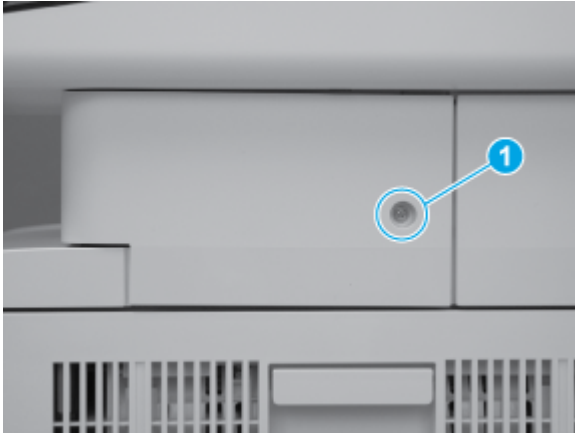
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1533 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1534 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1535 Rotate the cover



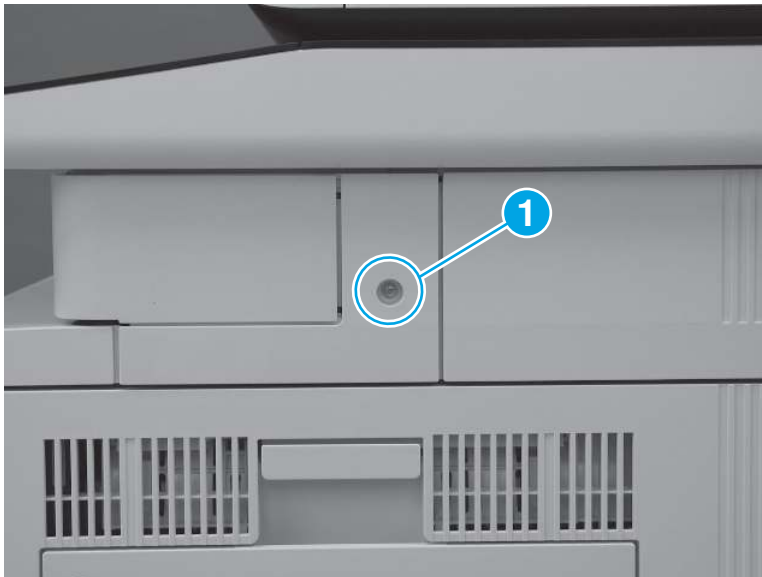
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1536 Remove one screw



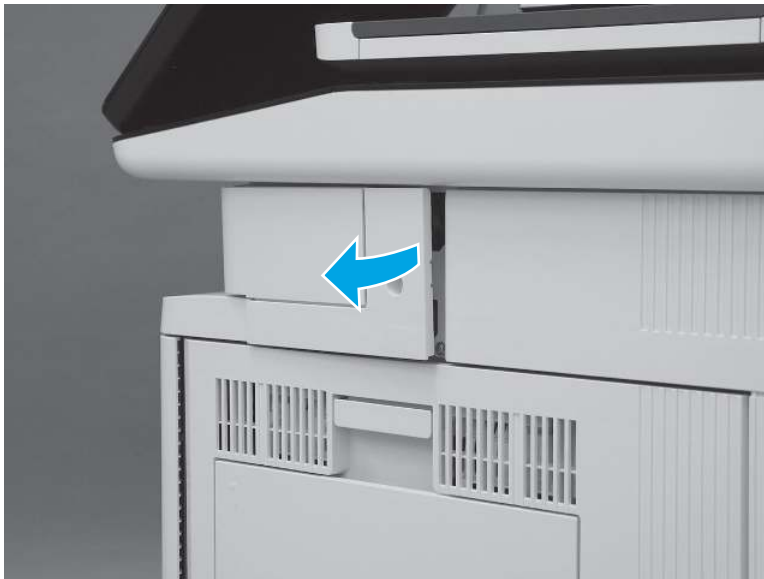
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1537 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1538 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1539 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

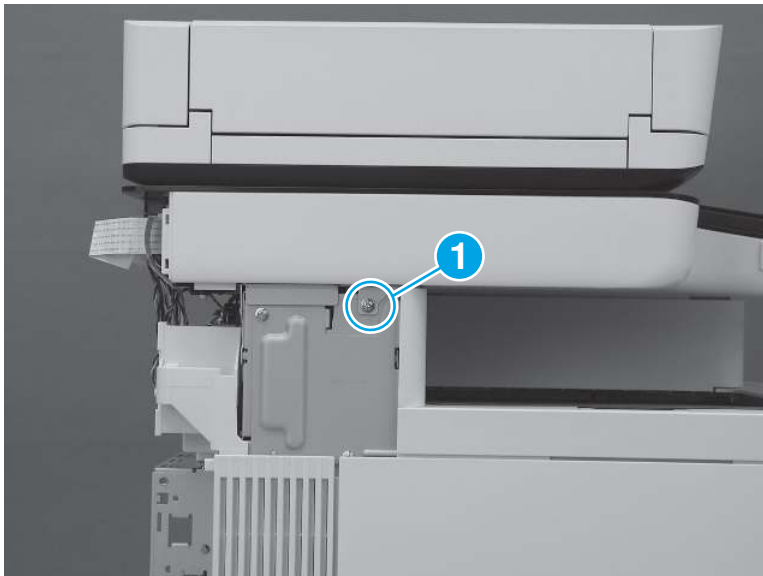
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

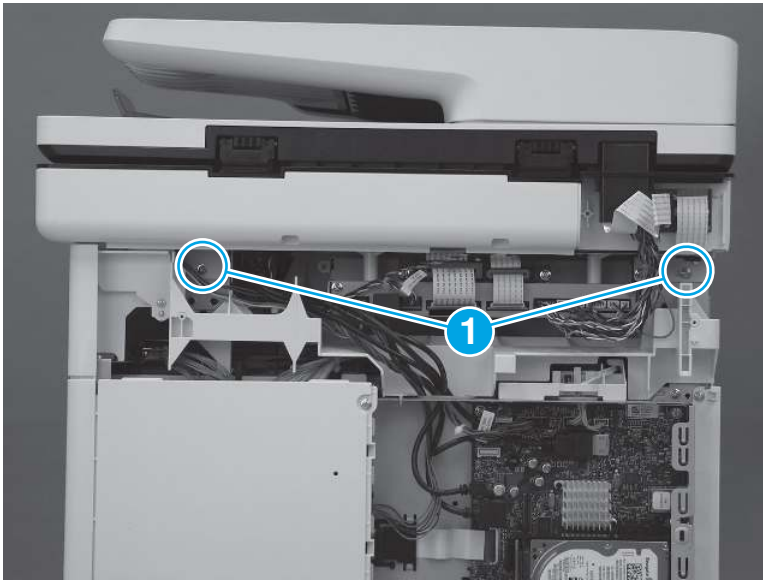
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1540 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

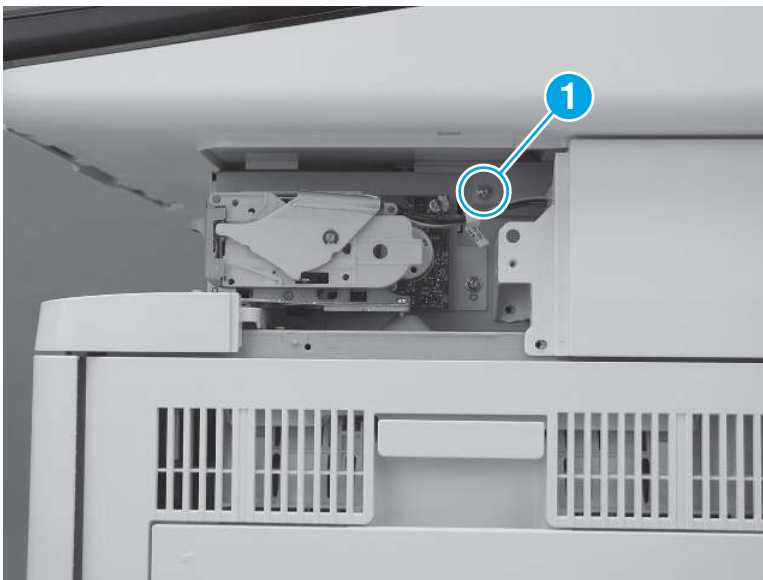
Figure 5-1541 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

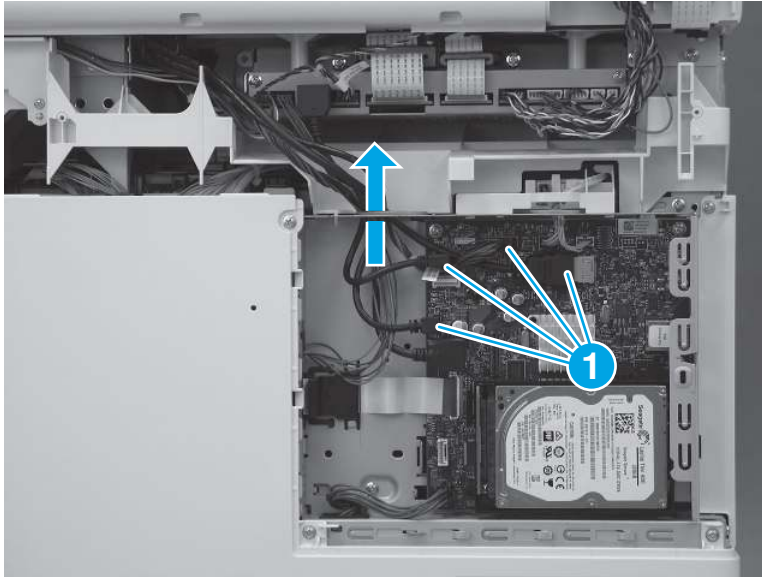
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-1542 Remove one screw



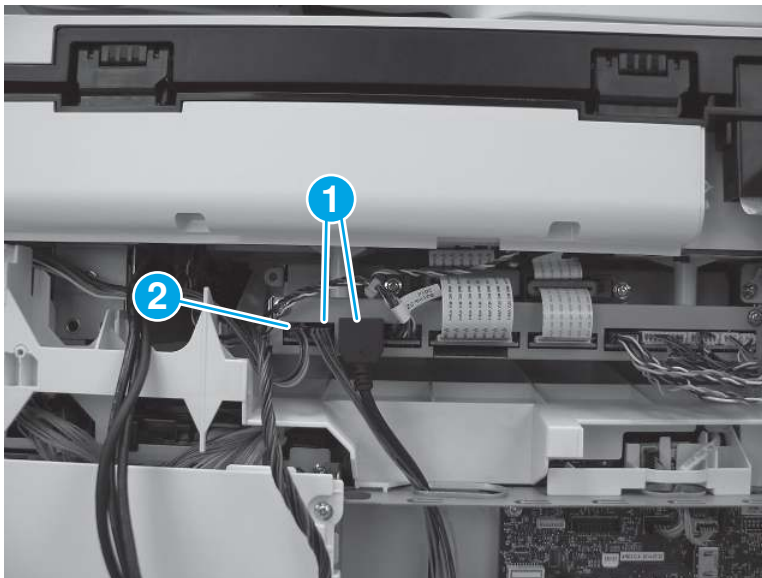
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-1543 Disconnect cables and connectors



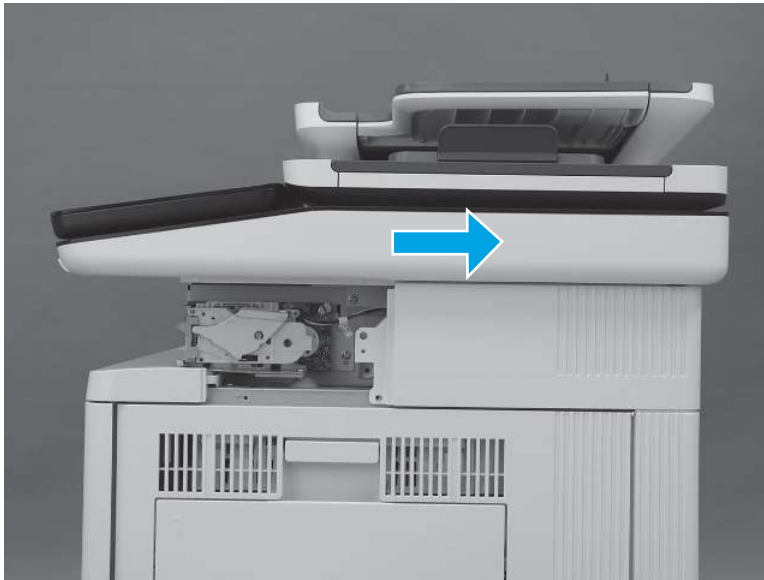
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-1544 Disconnect connectors



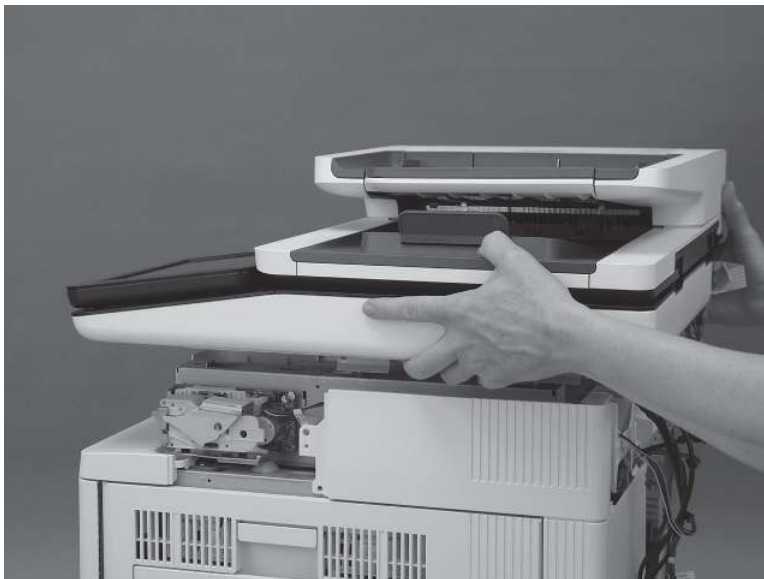
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1545 Release the image scanner



7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1546 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

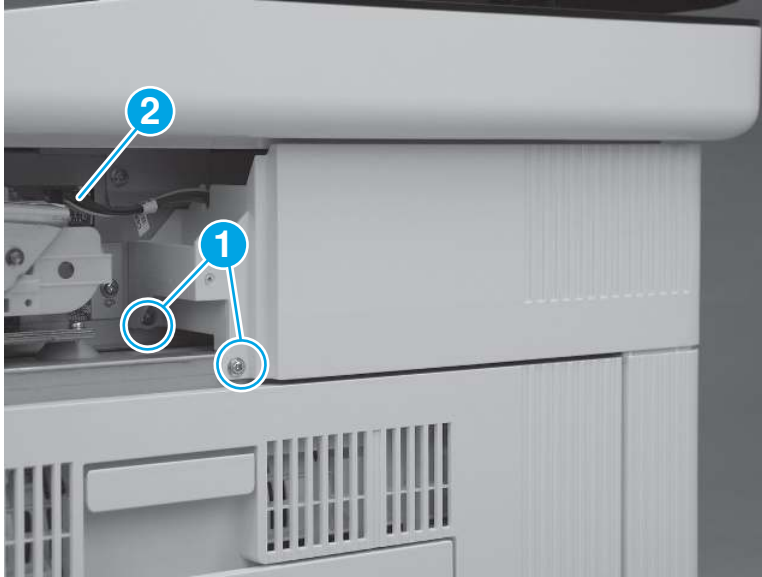
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1547 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


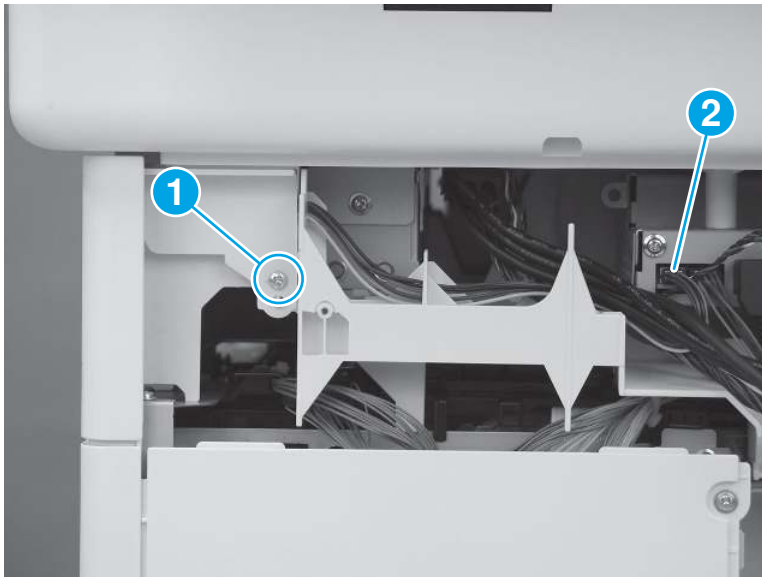
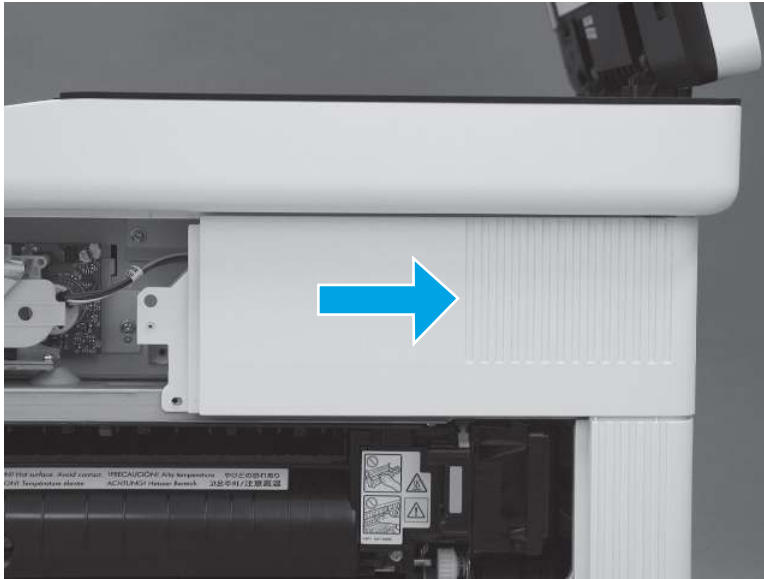
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1548 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

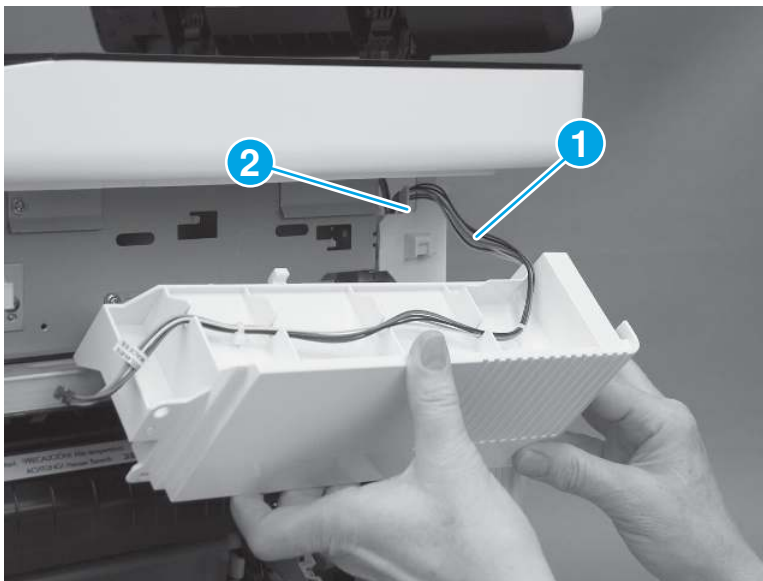
Figure 5-1549 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-1550 Remove the cover



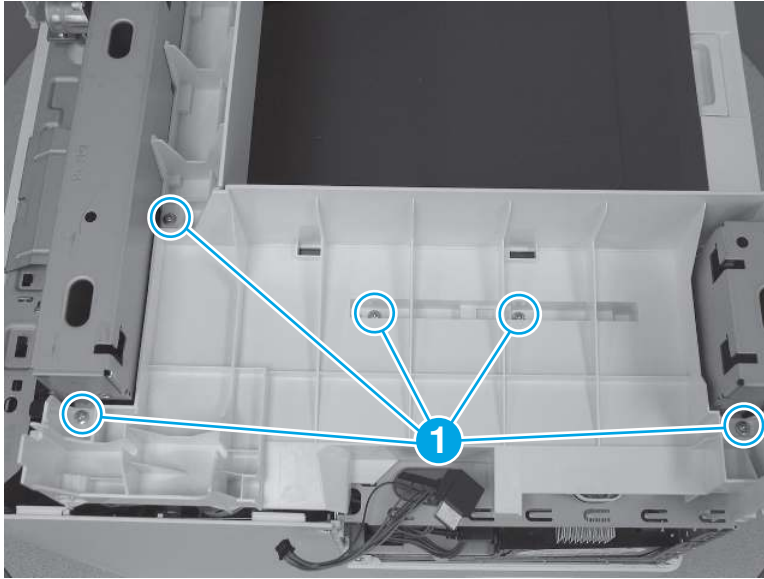
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

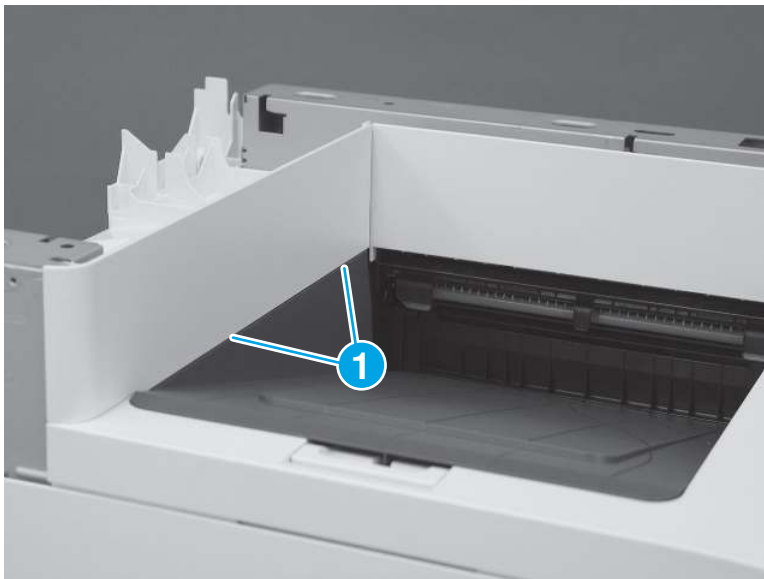
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1551 Remove five screws



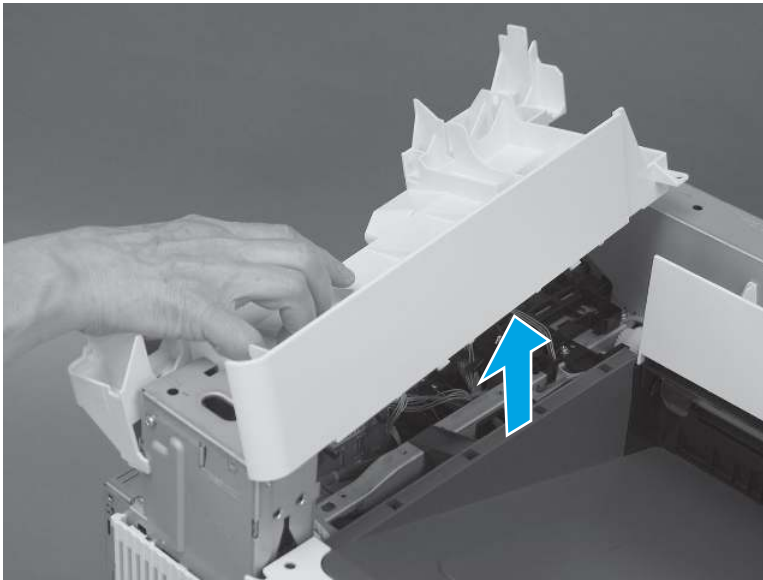
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1552 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-1553 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

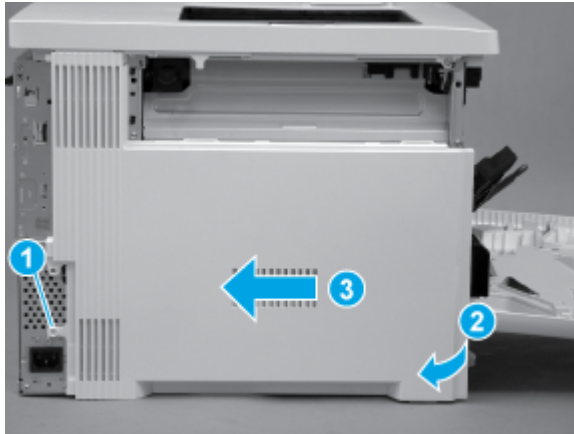
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1554 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1555 Release the cover




3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1556 Remove the cover



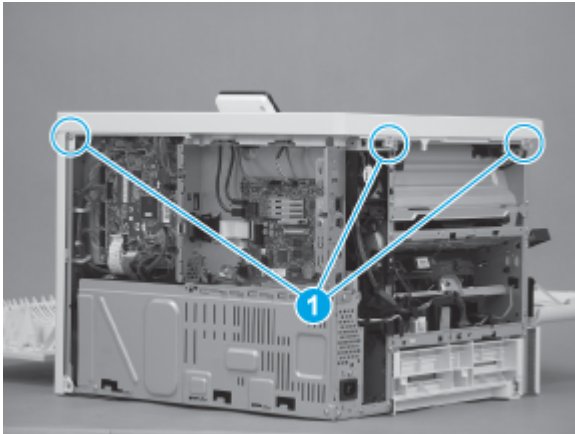
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1557 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.


 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1558 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


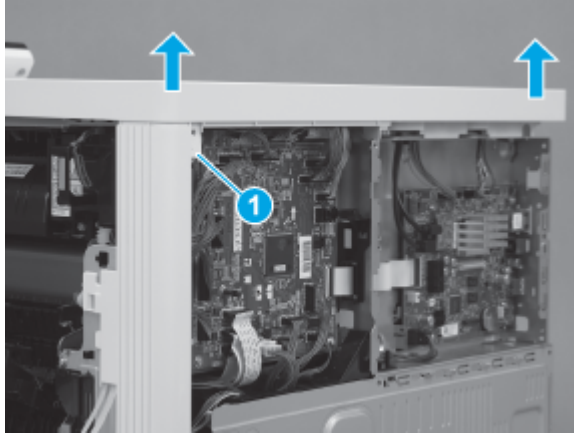
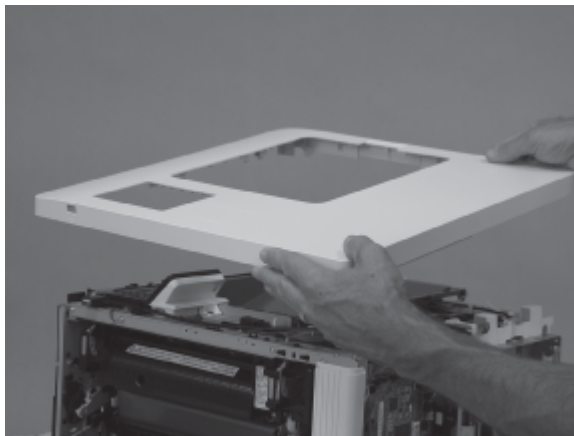
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-1559 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1560 Remove the cover

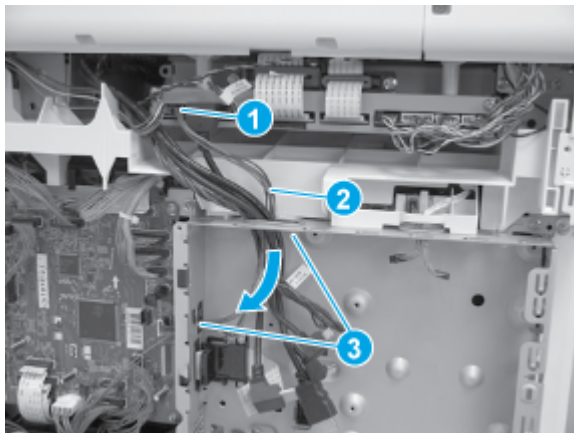


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

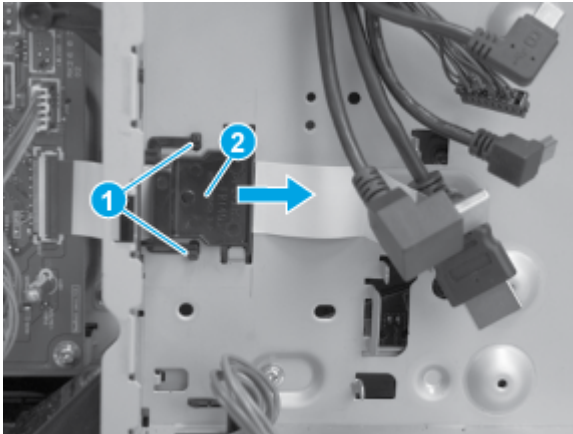
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1561 Disconnect one connector



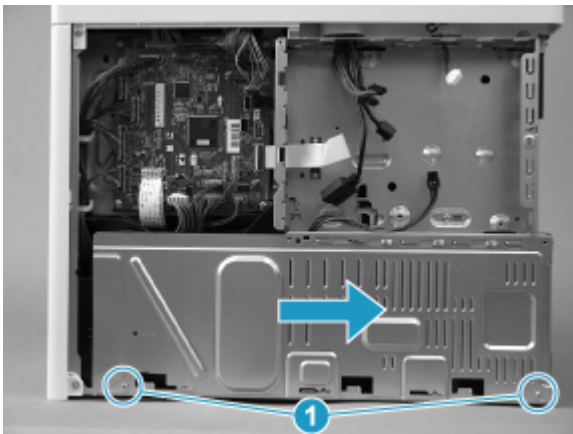
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1562 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

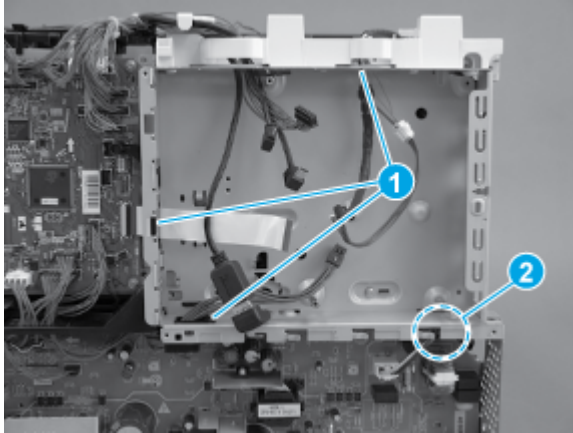
Figure 5-1563 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

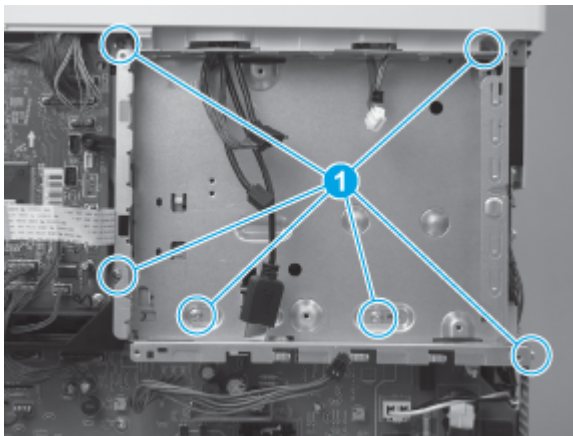
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1564 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



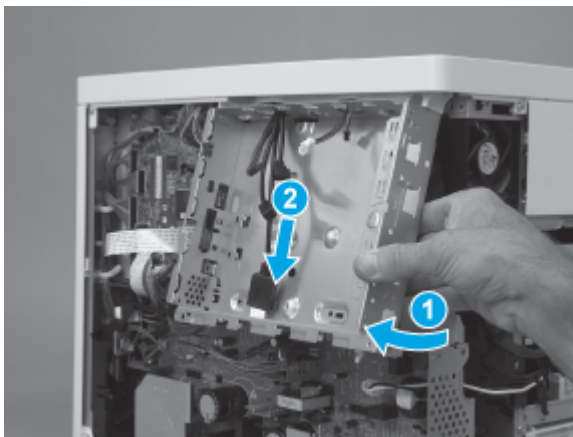
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1565 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1566 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


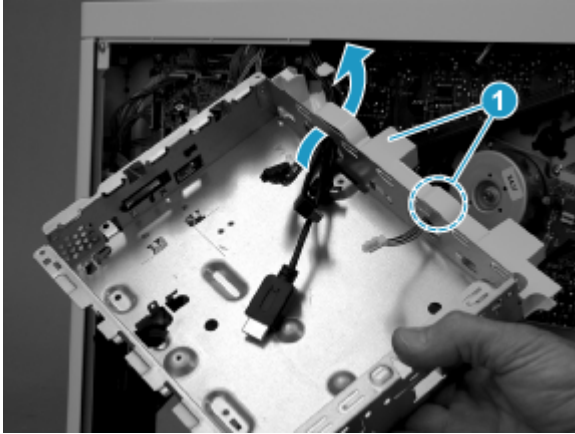

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1567 Remove the formatter case



Remove the right rear cover

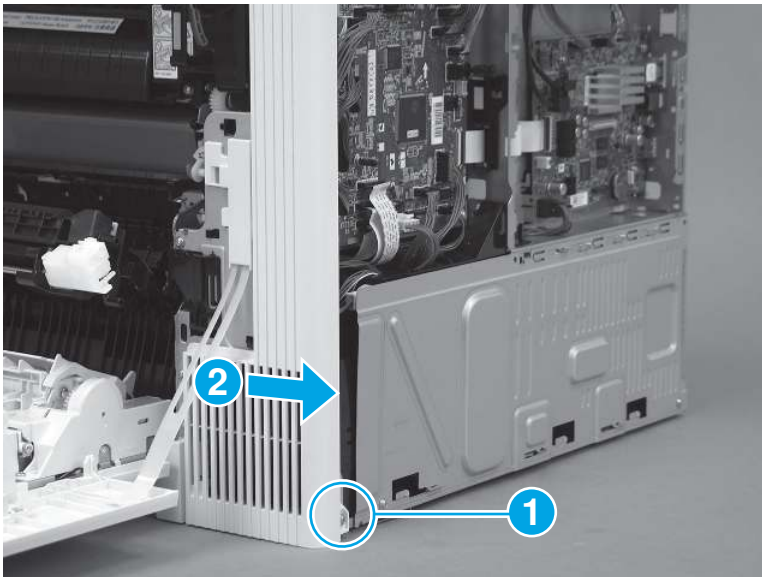
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

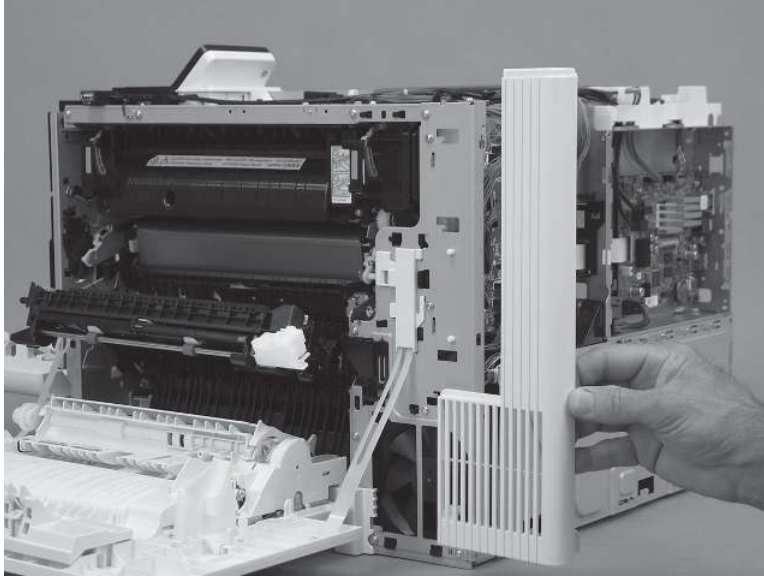
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-1568 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1569 Remove the cover



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.



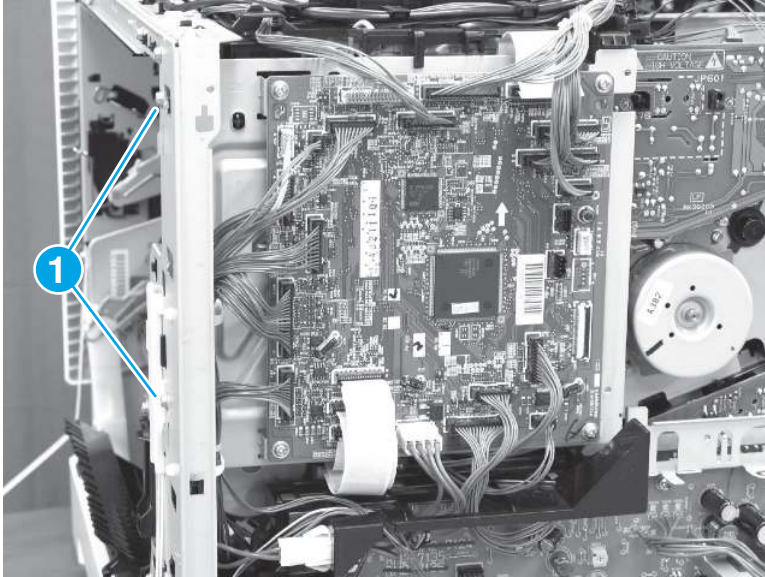
NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

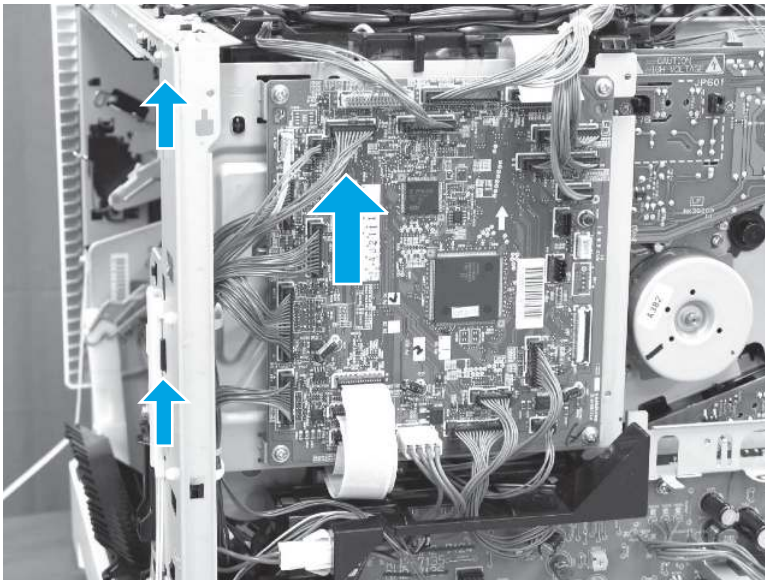
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-1570 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-1571 Remove the plate



Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

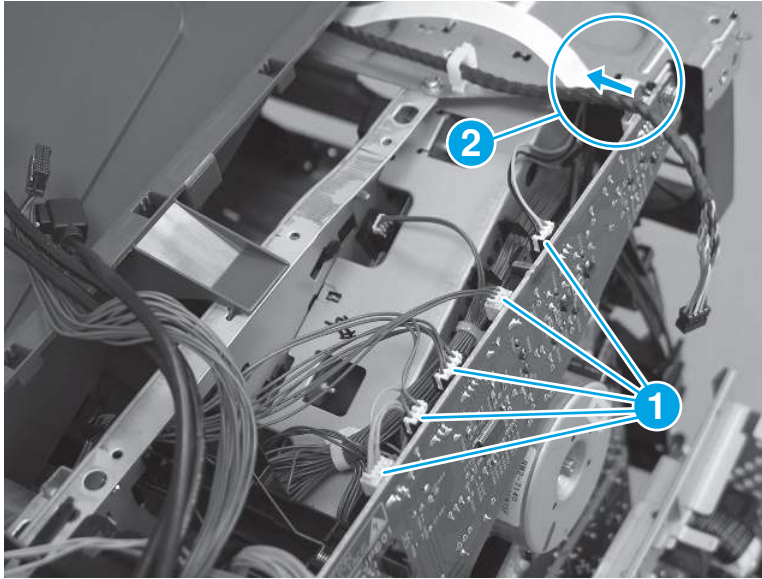
Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply T.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

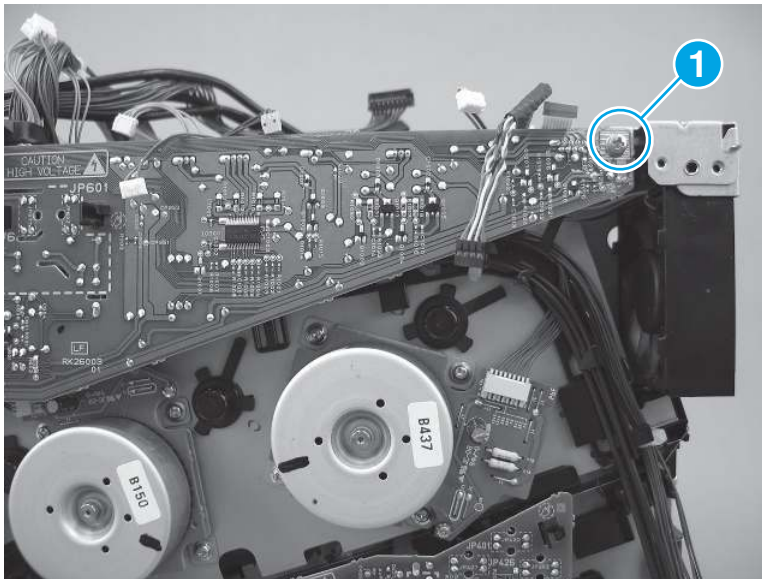
1. Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), and then disconnect one flat cable (callout 2).

Figure 5-1572 Disconnect five connectors and one flat cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

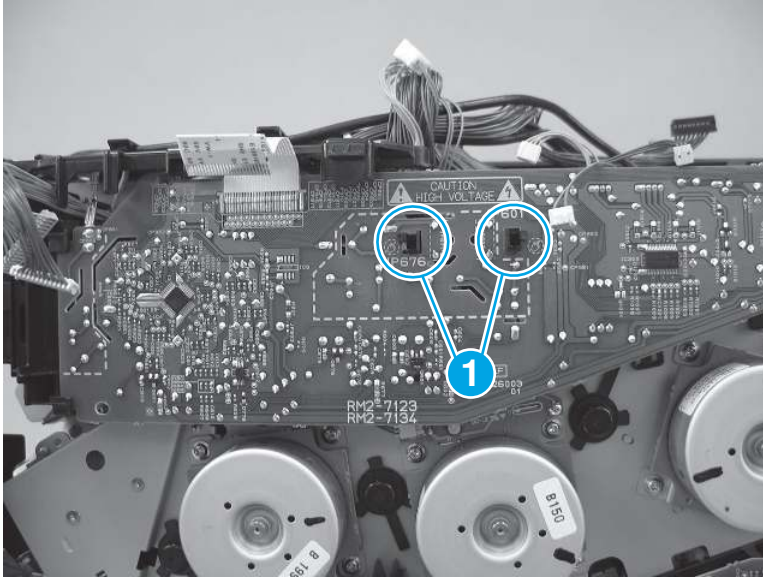
Figure 5-1573 Remove one screw



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then separate the HVPST from the printer.

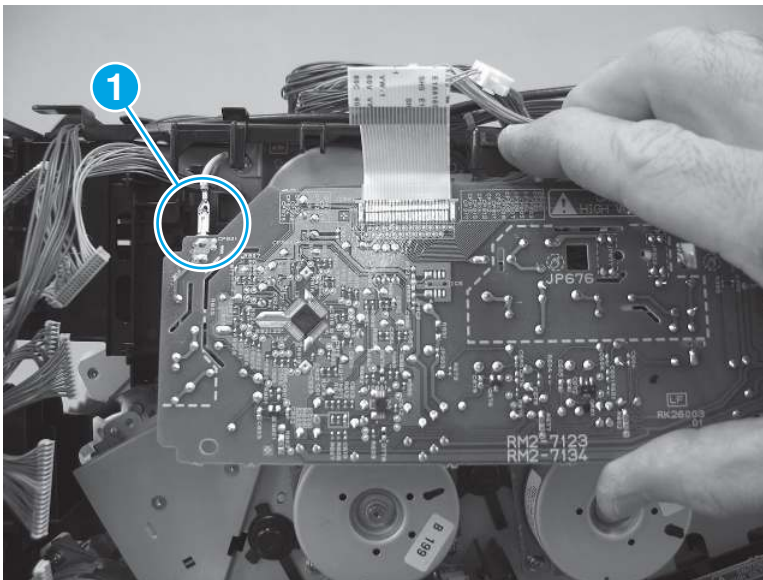
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the HVPST. It is still connected to the printer by ground wire harness.

Figure 5-1574 Release the HVPST



4. Release one ground wire connector (callout 1), and then remove the HVPST.

Figure 5-1575 Remove the HVPST



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Drum motor 2 (M2)

Learn about removing and replacing drum motor 2.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-74 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0078-000CN	Drum motor 2 (M2)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

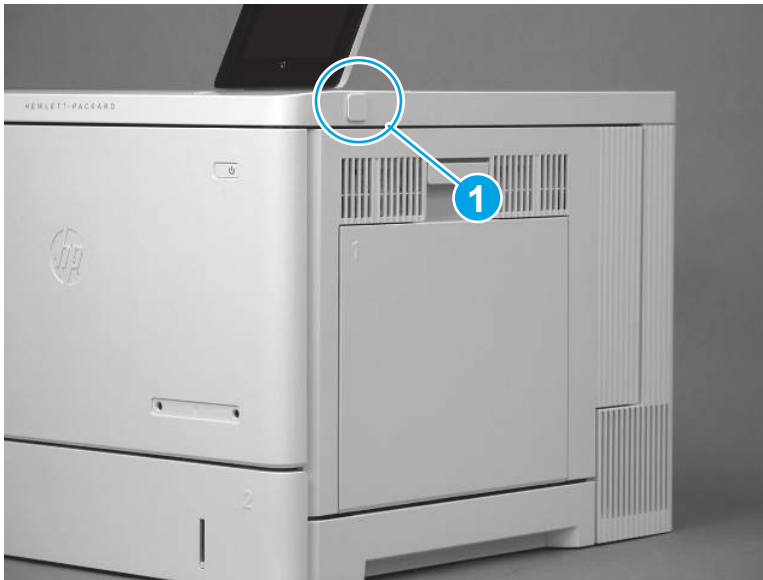
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1576 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1577 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1578 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1579 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1580 Remove the cover

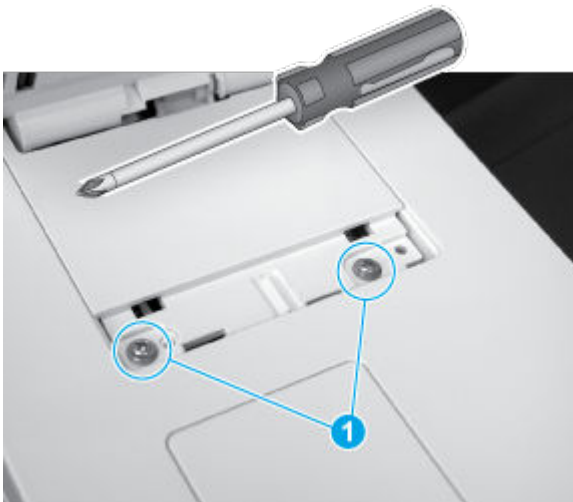


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1581 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1582 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

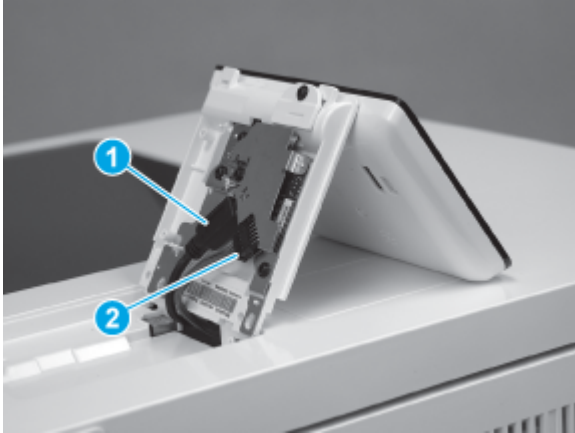
Figure 5-1583 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1584 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

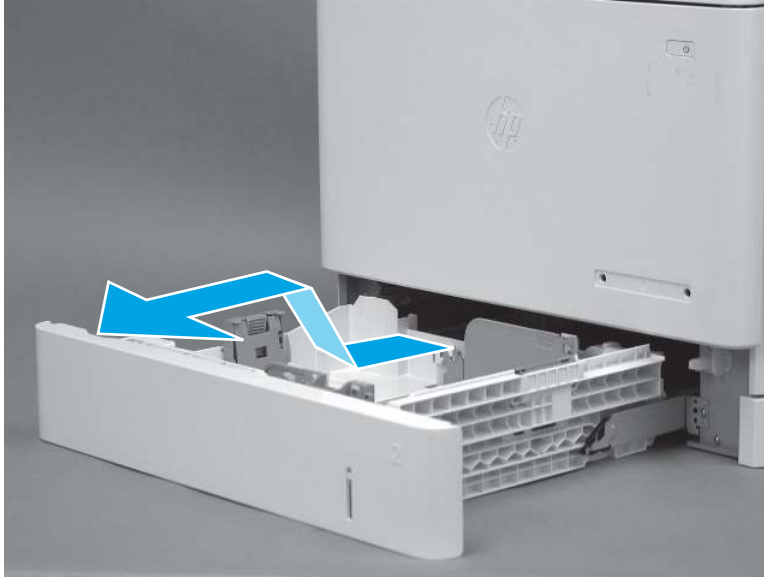
Figure 5-1585 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** **For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-1586 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1587 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.


 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1588 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1589 Remove the TCU

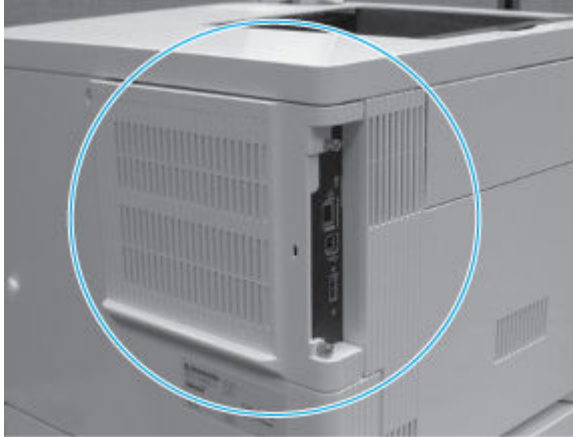


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

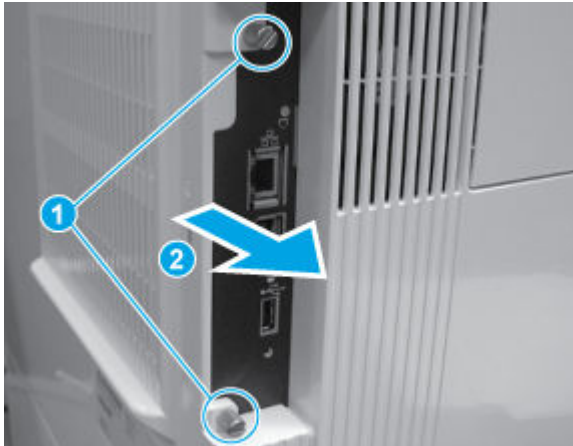
Figure 5-1590 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1591 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

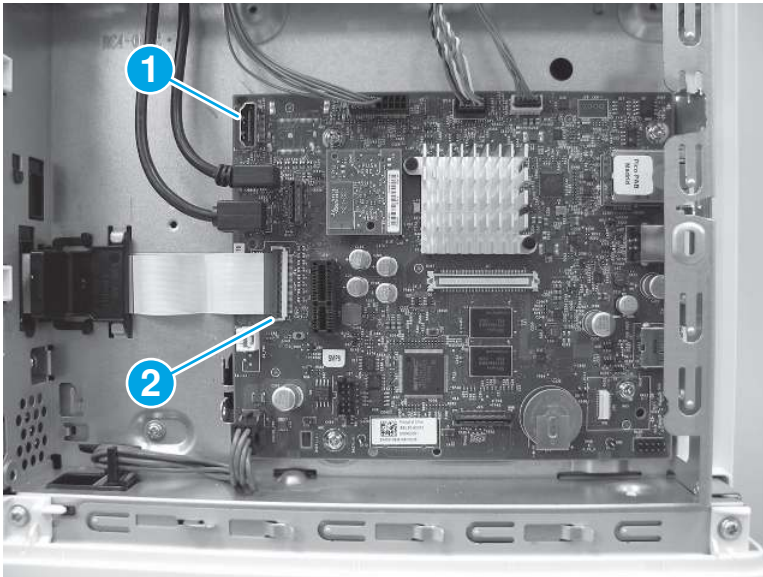
The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)

- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)

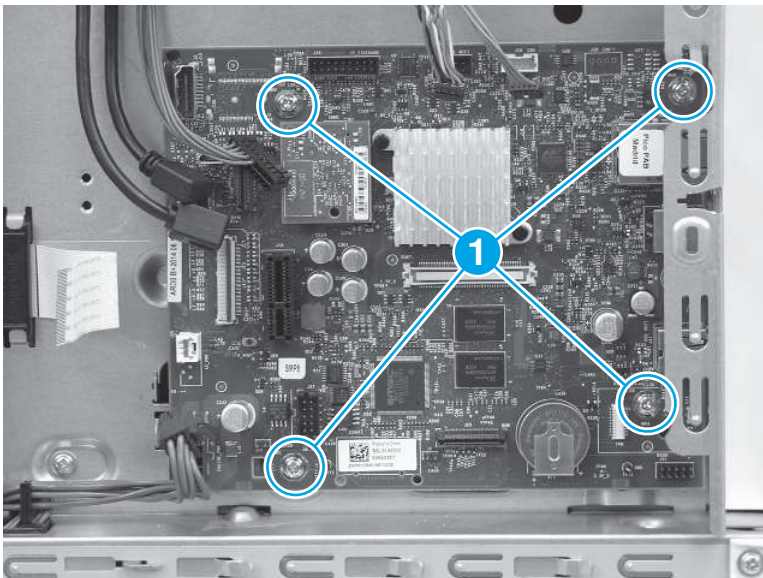
IMPORTANT: The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1592 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1593 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

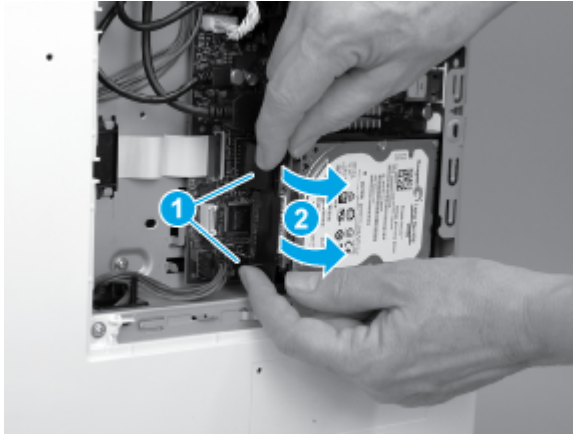
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1594 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1595 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

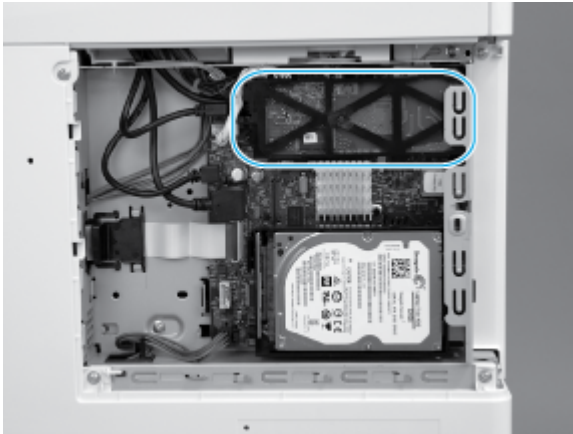
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

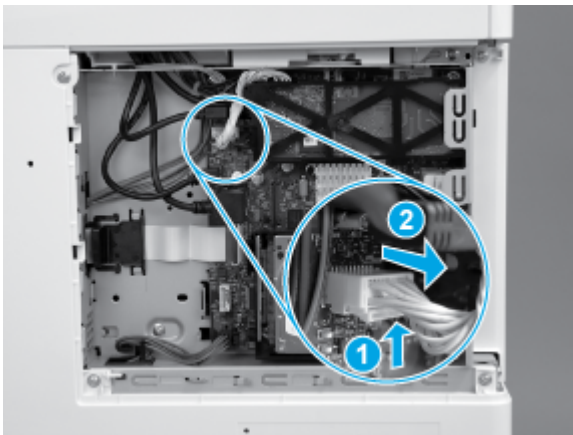
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1596 Locate the fax PCA



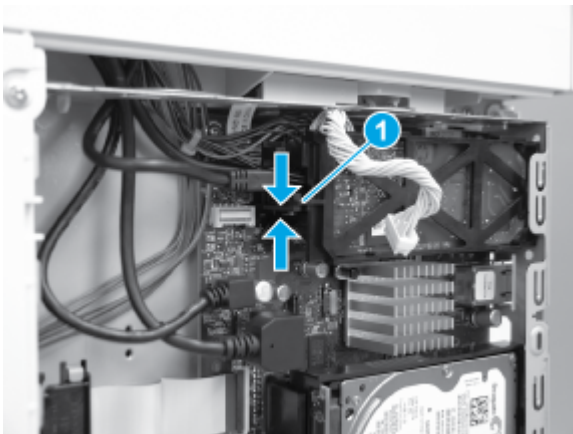
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1597 Disconnect one connector



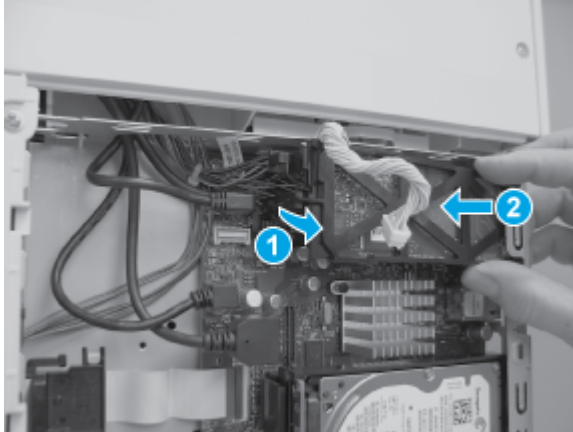
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1598 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1599 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


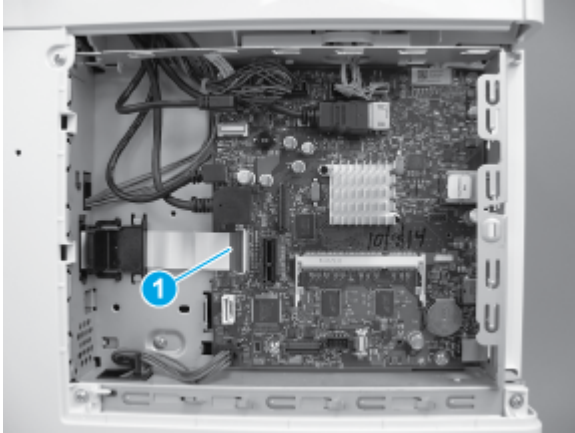
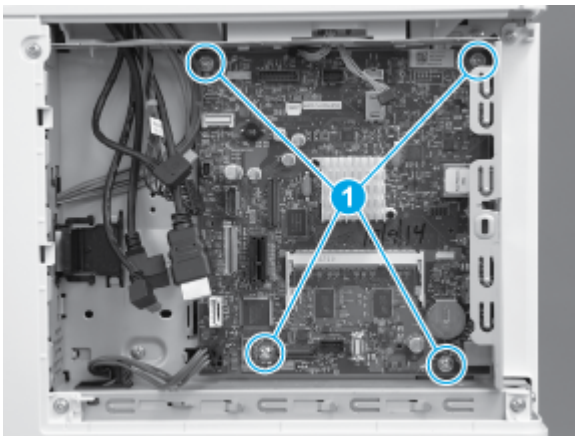
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1600 Disconnect all connectors



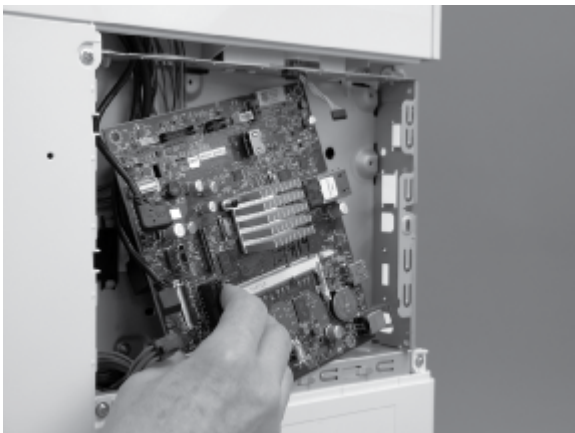
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1601 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1602 Remove the formatter



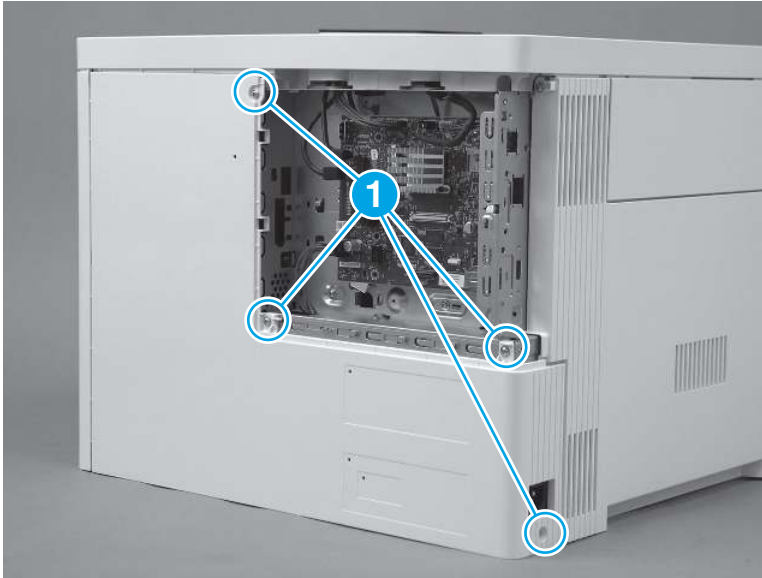
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

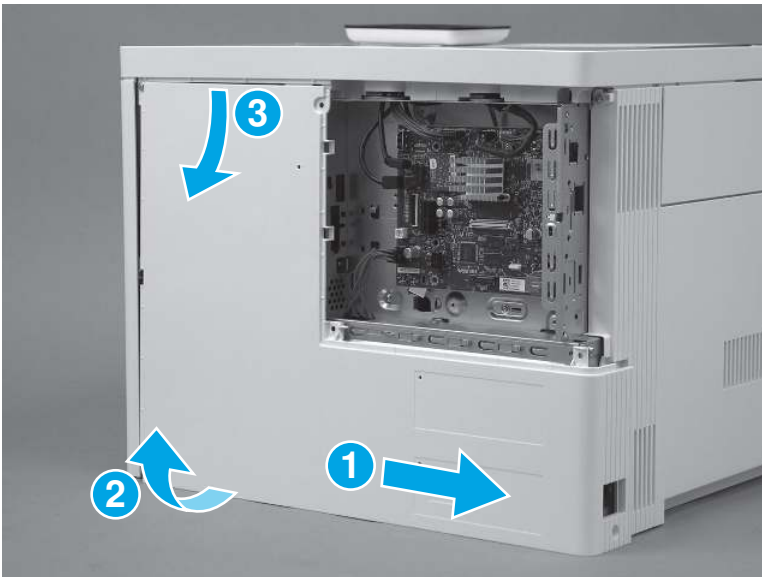
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1603 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1604 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

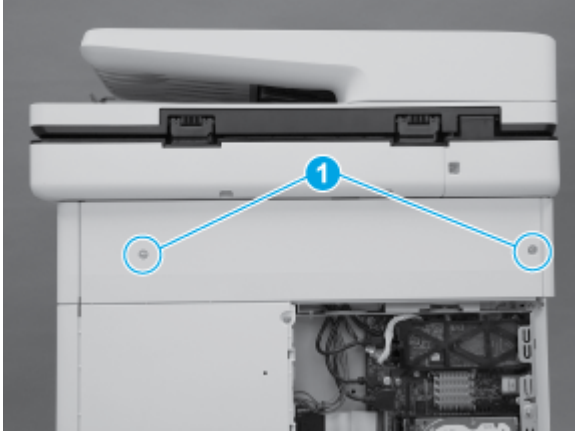
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

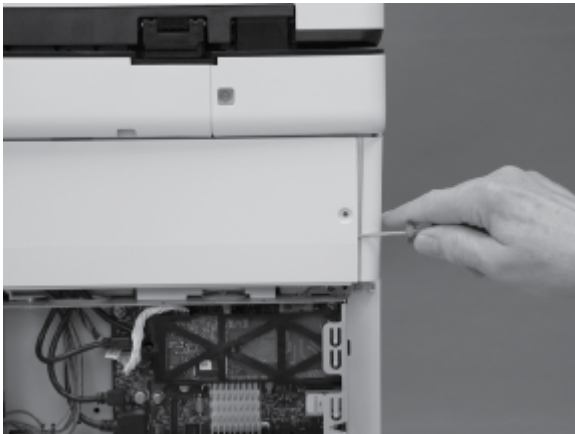
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1605 Remove two screws



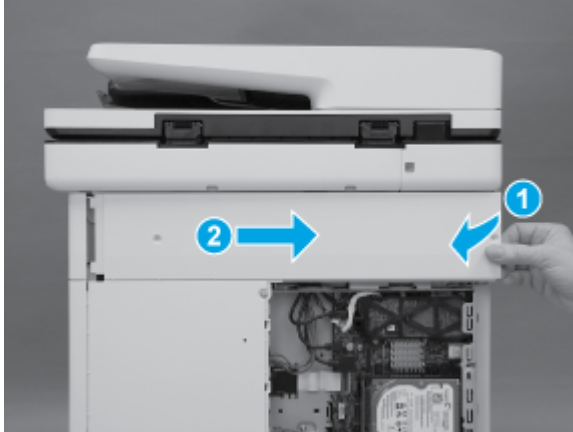
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1606 Release the right edge



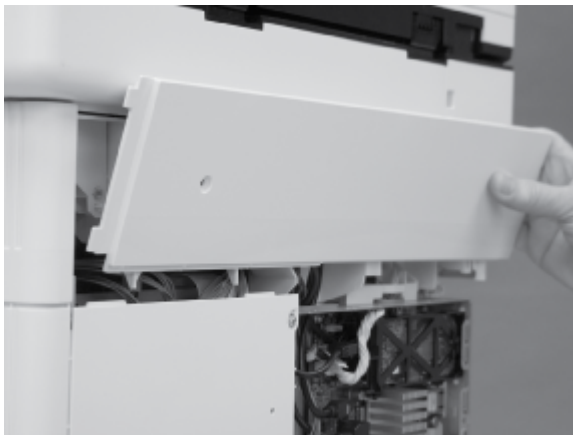
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1607 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1608 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1609 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1610 Remove the cover



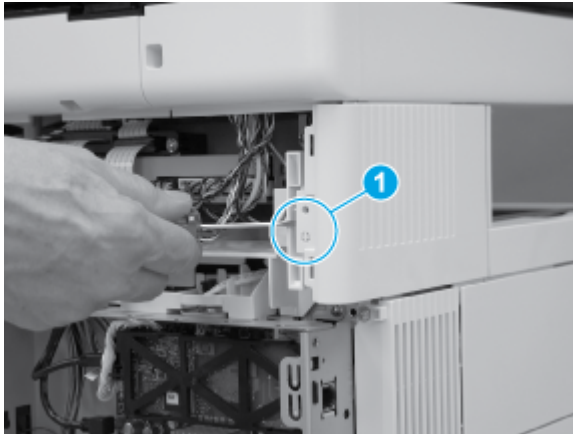
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1611 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-1612 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1613 Remove the left upper cover



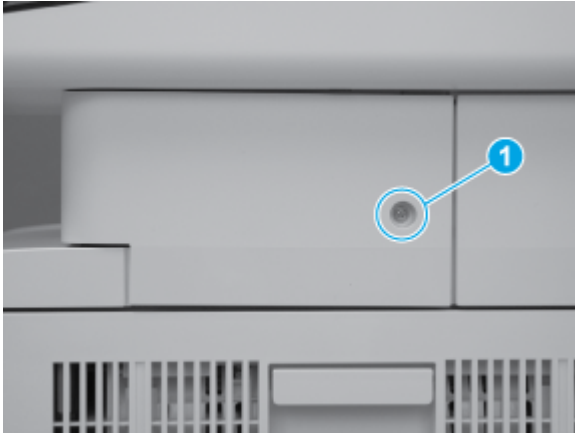
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1614 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1615 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1616 Rotate the cover



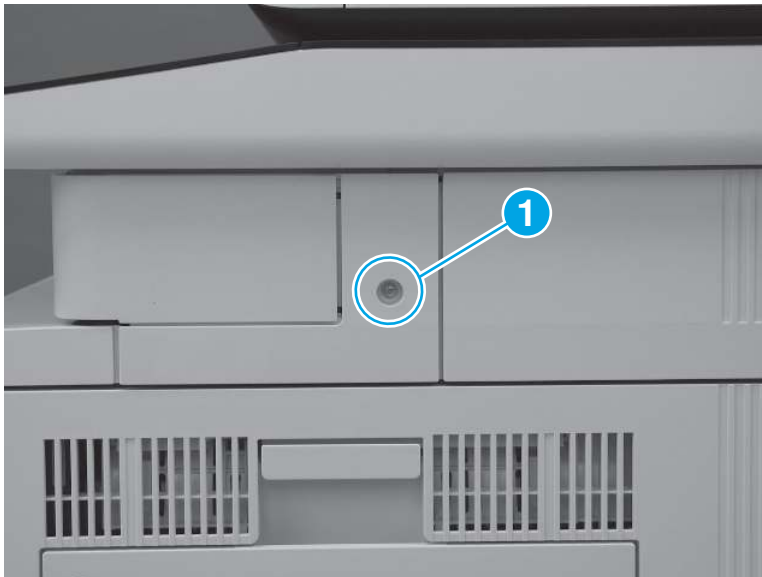
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1617 Remove one screw



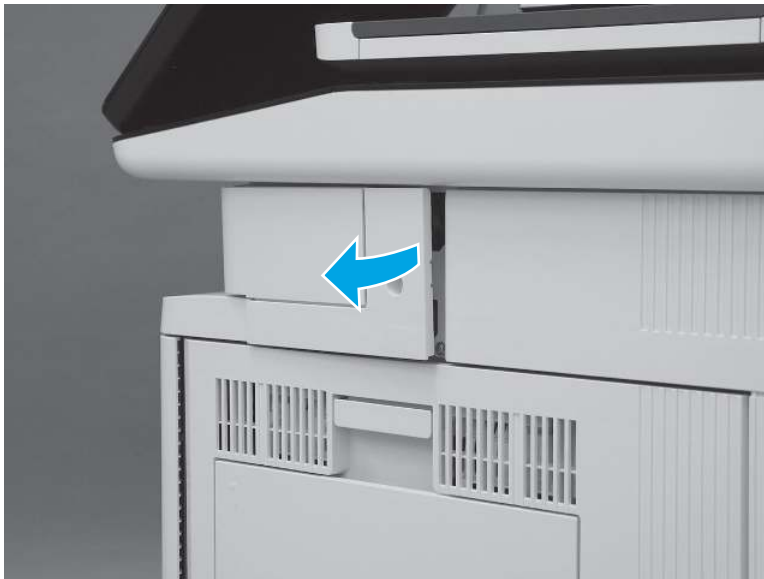
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1618 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1619 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1620 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

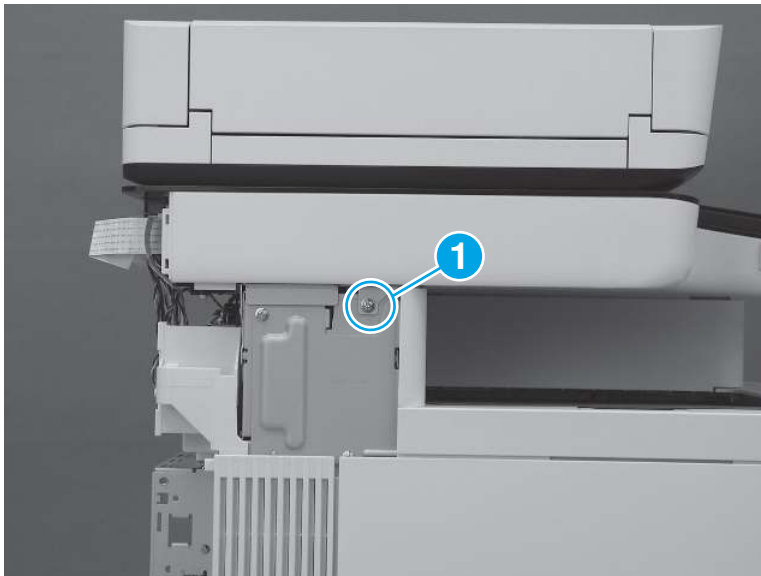
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

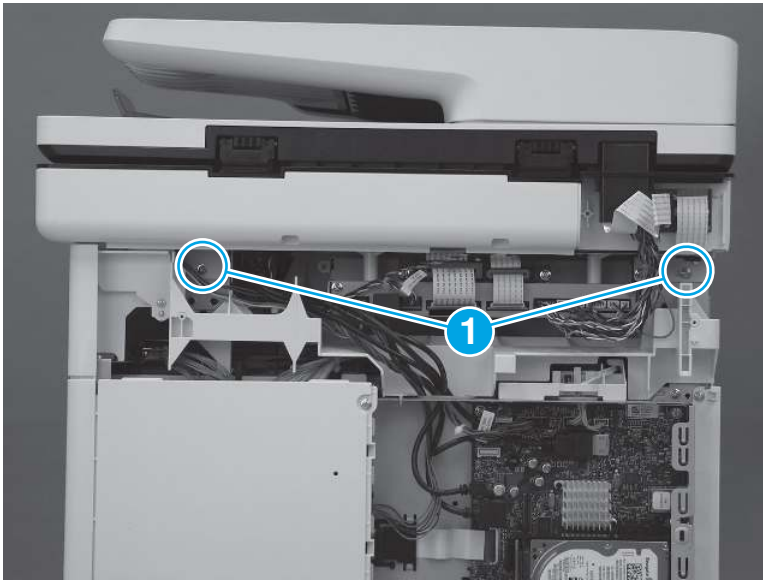
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1621 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

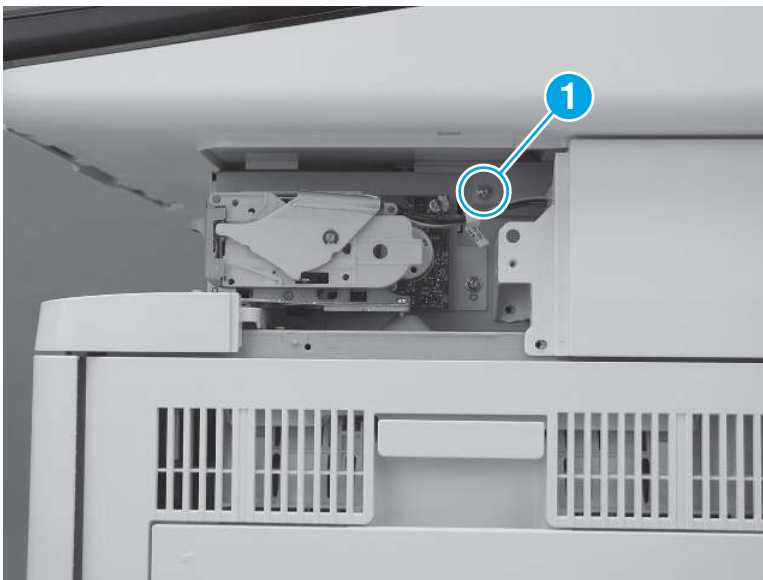
Figure 5-1622 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

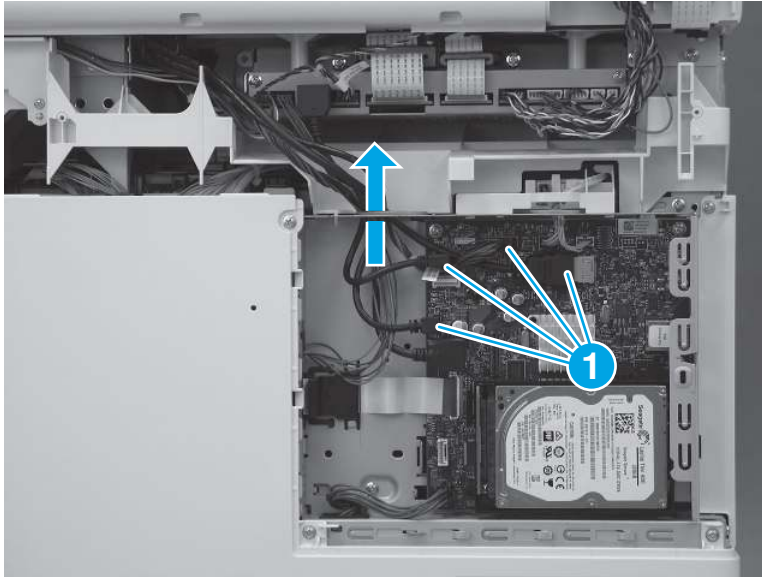
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-1623 Remove one screw



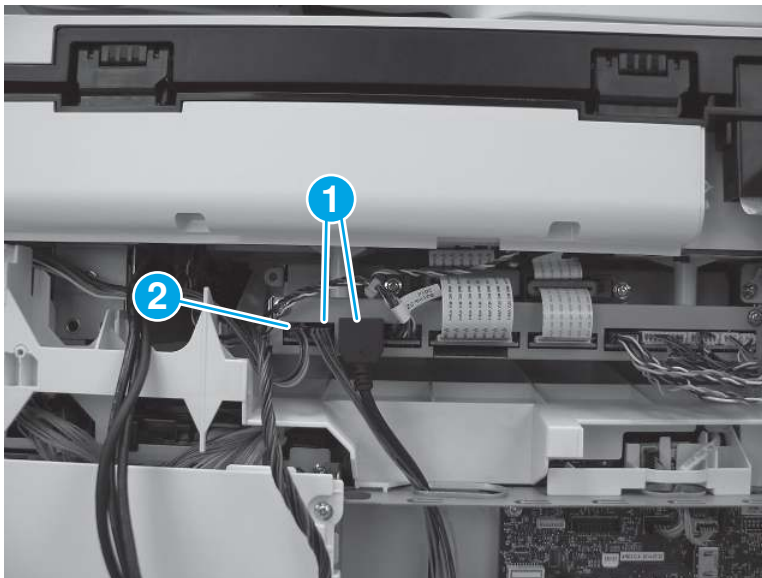
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-1624 Disconnect cables and connectors



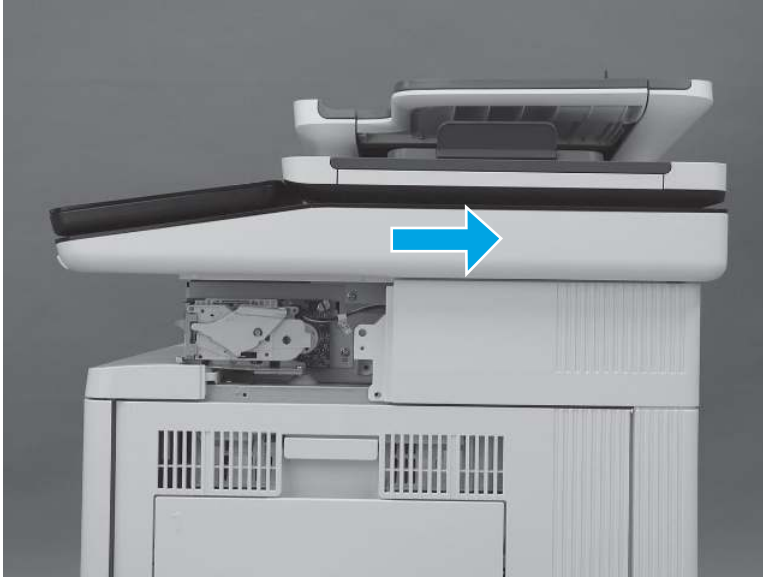
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-1625 Disconnect connectors



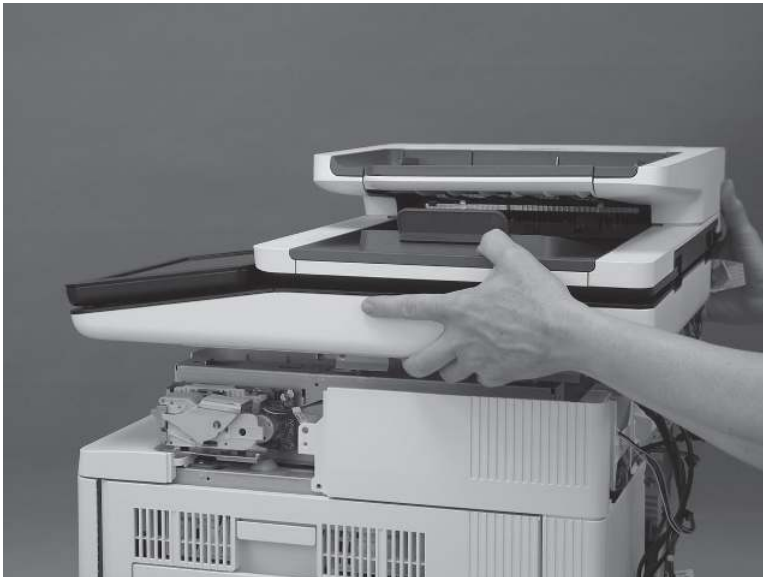
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1626 Release the image scanner



7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1627 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

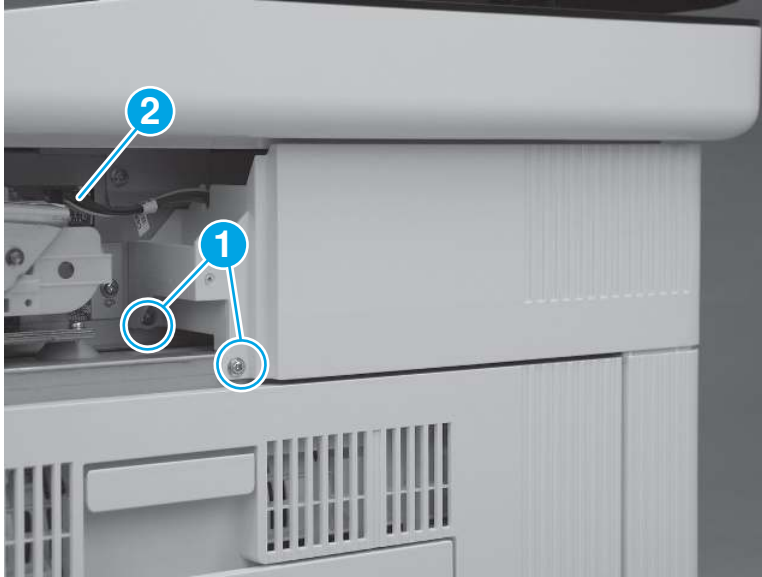
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1628 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


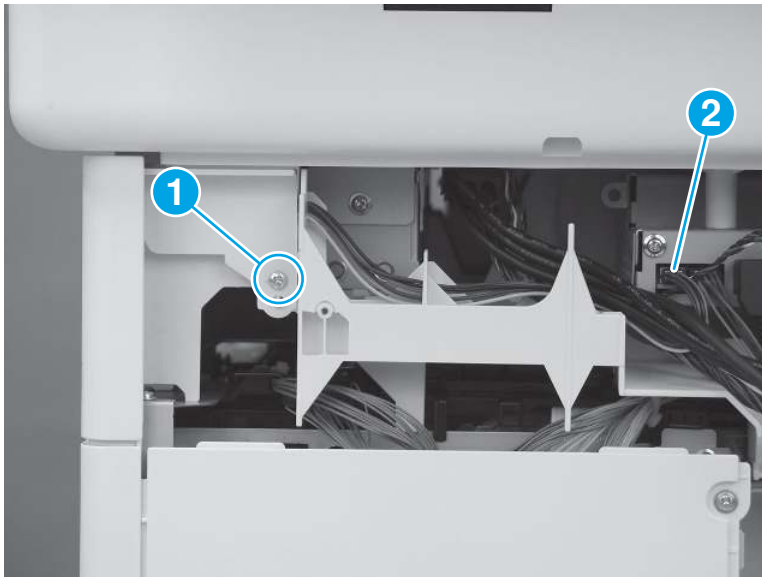
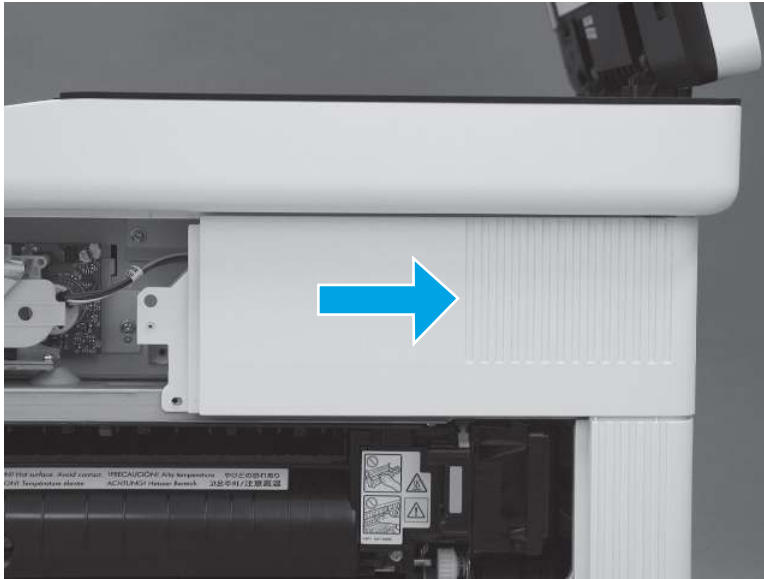
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1629 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

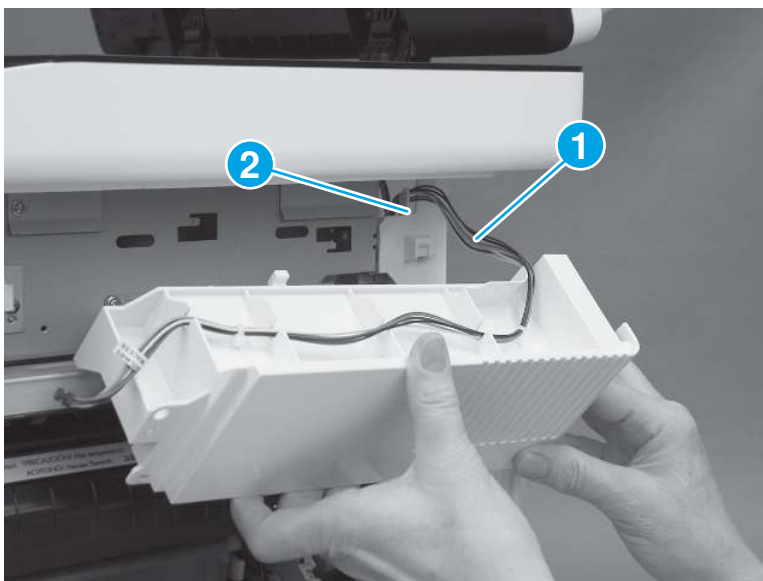
Figure 5-1630 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-1631 Remove the cover



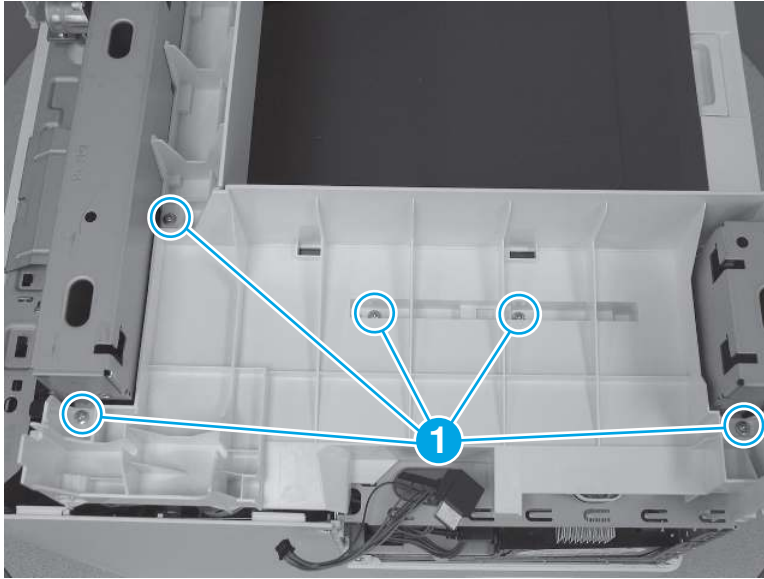
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

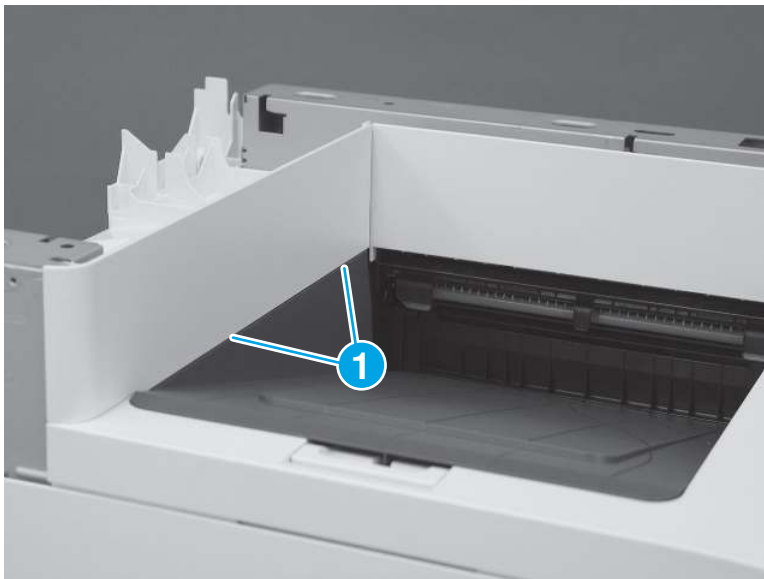
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1632 Remove five screws



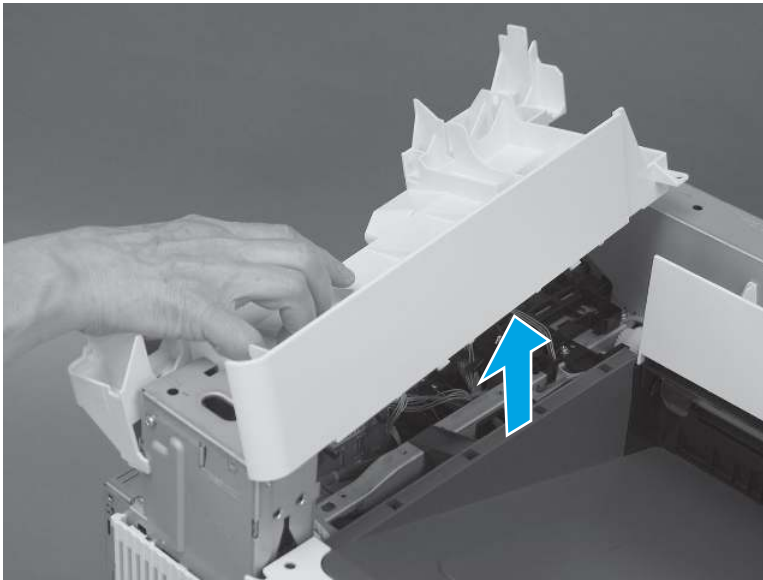
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1633 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-1634 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

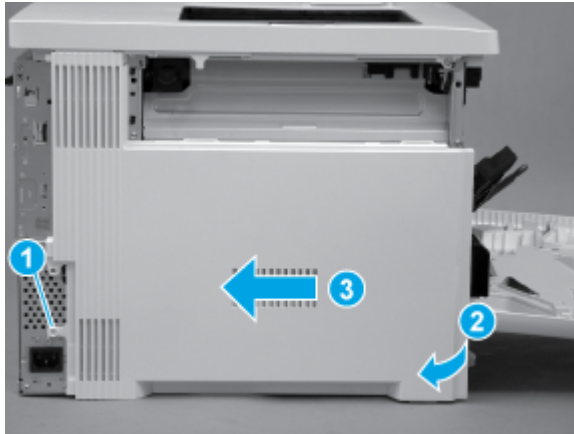
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1635 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1636 Release the cover




3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1637 Remove the cover



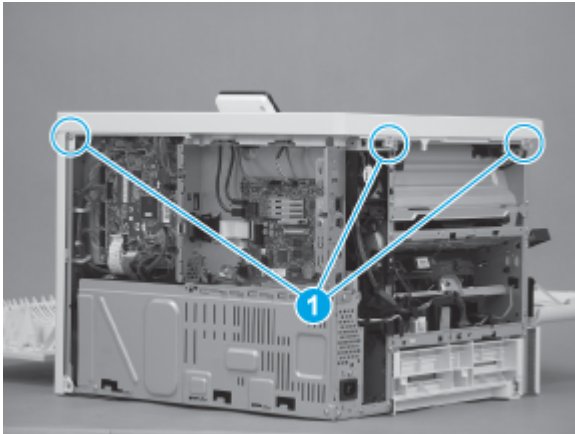
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1638 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1639 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


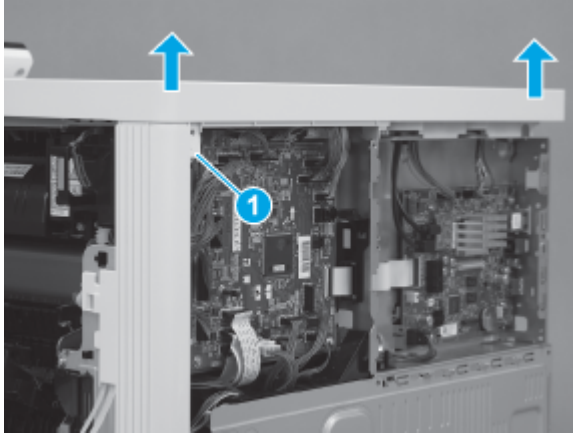
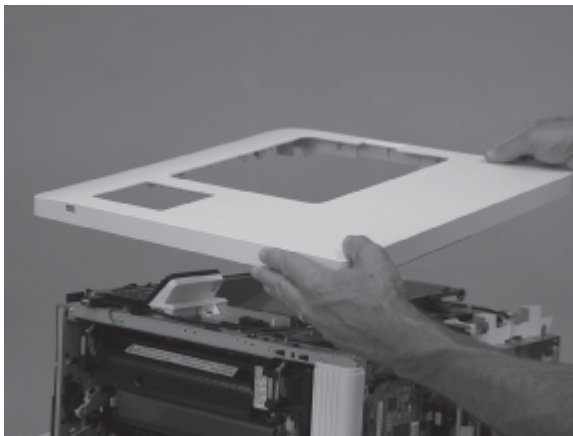
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-1640 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1641 Remove the cover

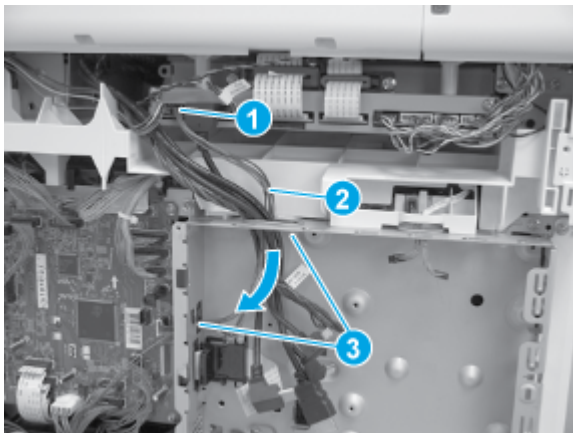


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

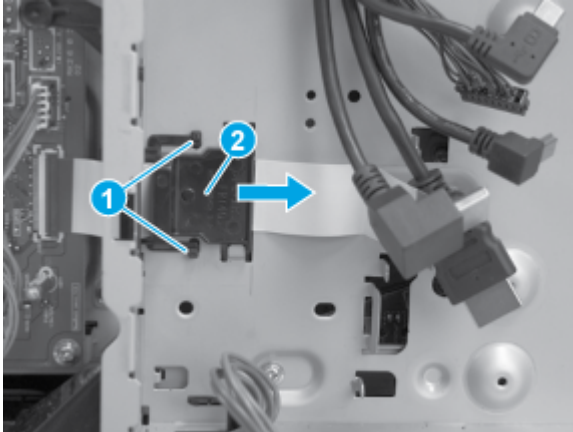
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1642 Disconnect one connector



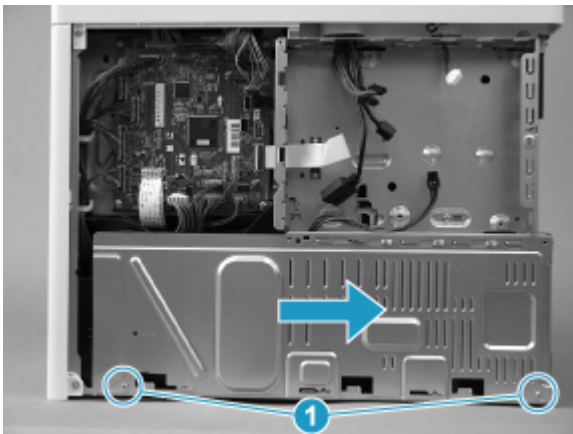
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1643 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

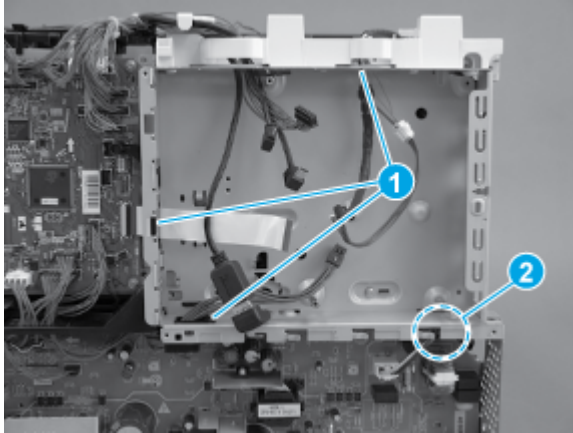
Figure 5-1644 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

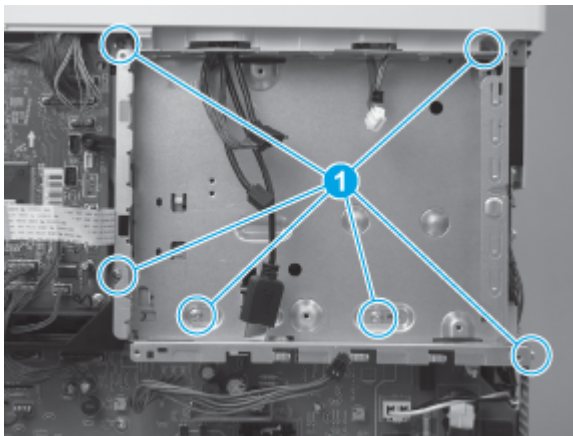
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1645 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



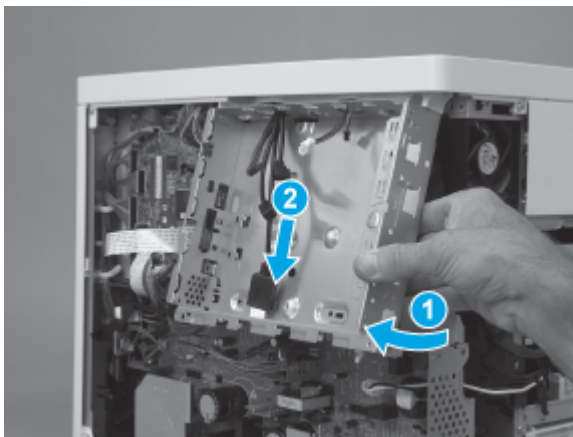
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1646 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1647 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


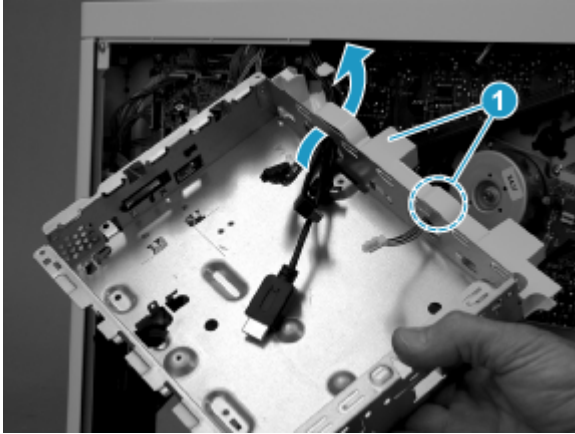

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1648 Remove the formatter case



Remove the right rear cover

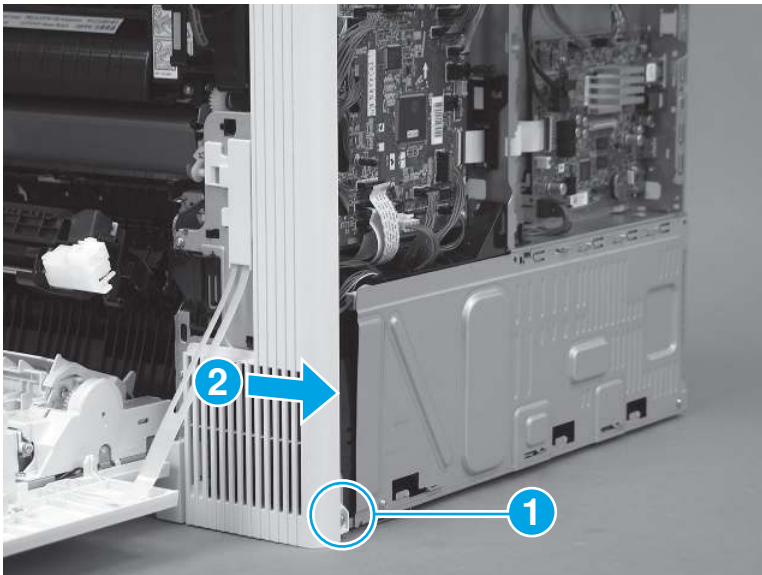
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

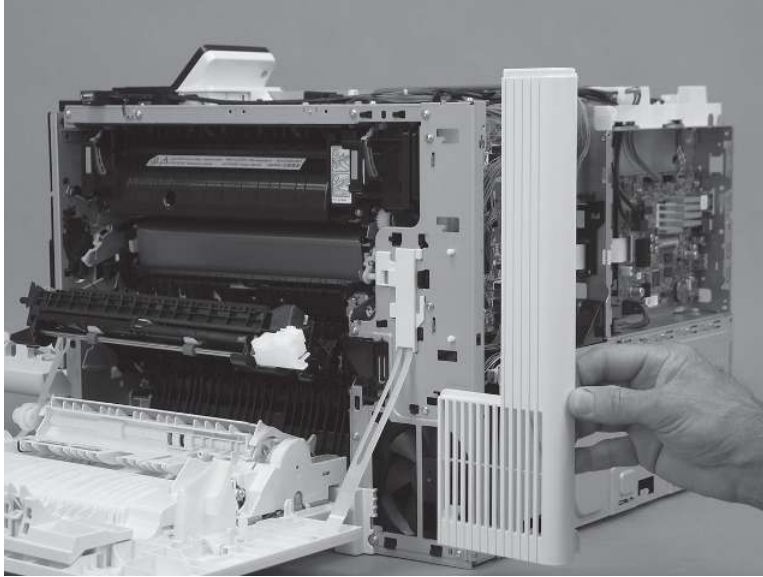
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-1649 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1650 Remove the cover



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.



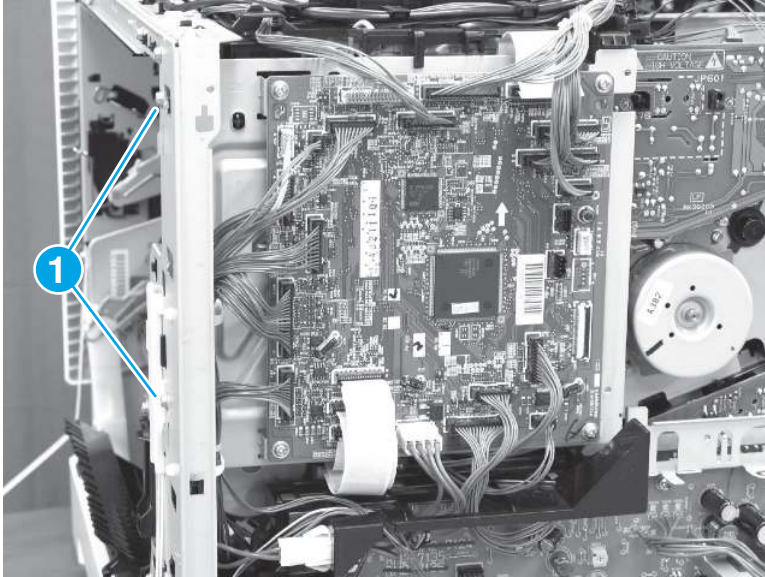
NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

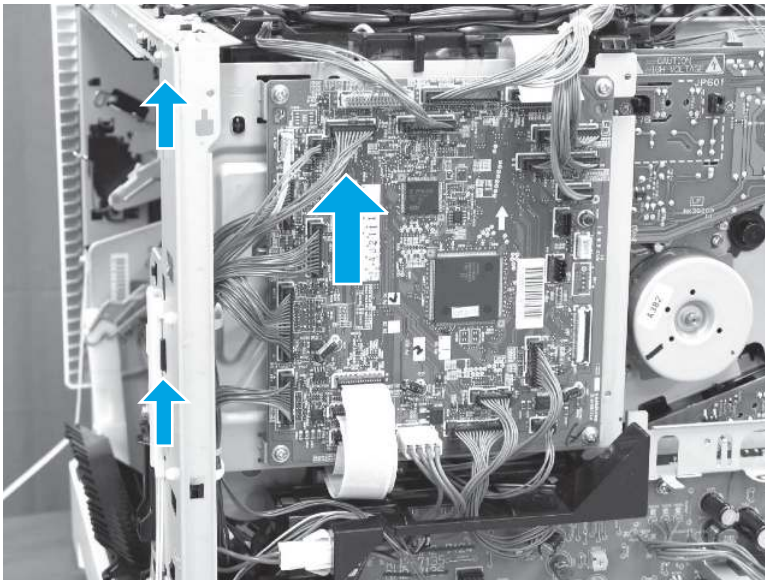
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-1651 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-1652 Remove the plate



Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

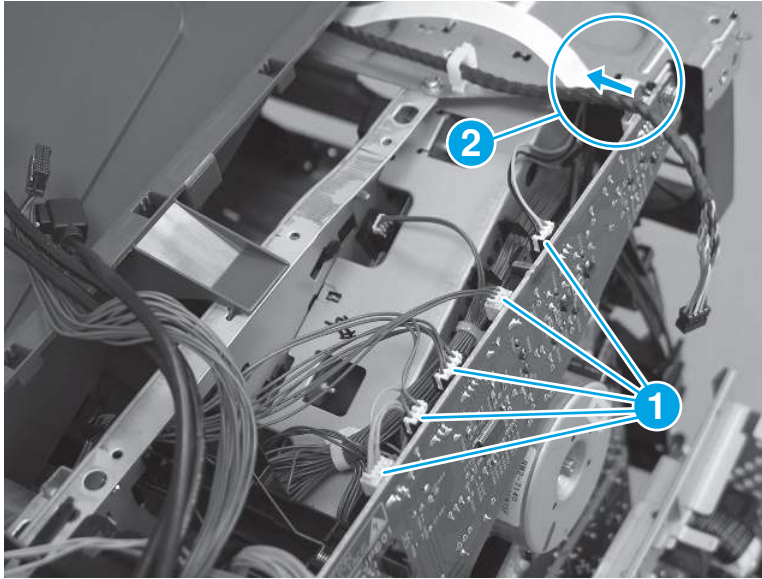
Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply T.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

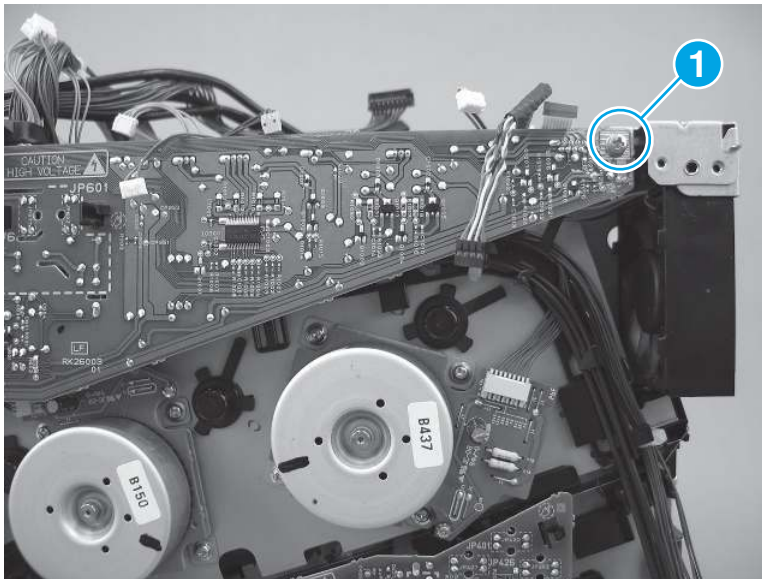
1. Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), and then disconnect one flat cable (callout 2).

Figure 5-1653 Disconnect five connectors and one flat cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

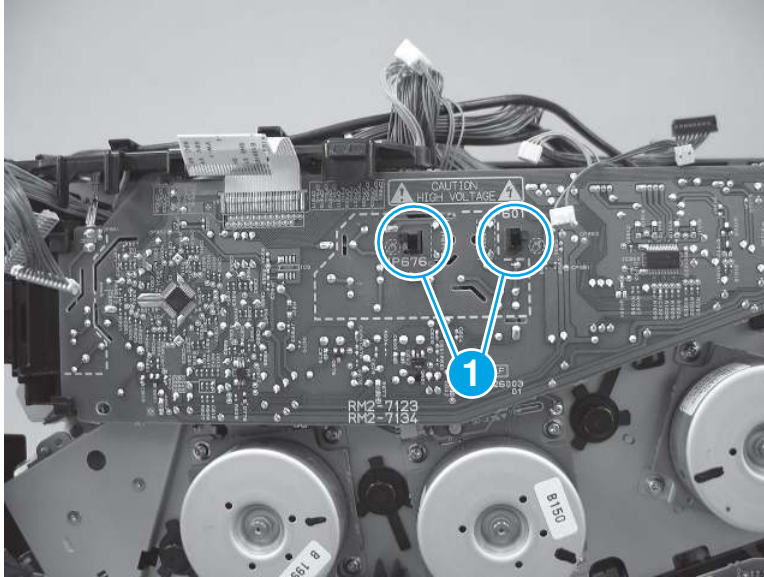
Figure 5-1654 Remove one screw



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then separate the HVPST from the printer.

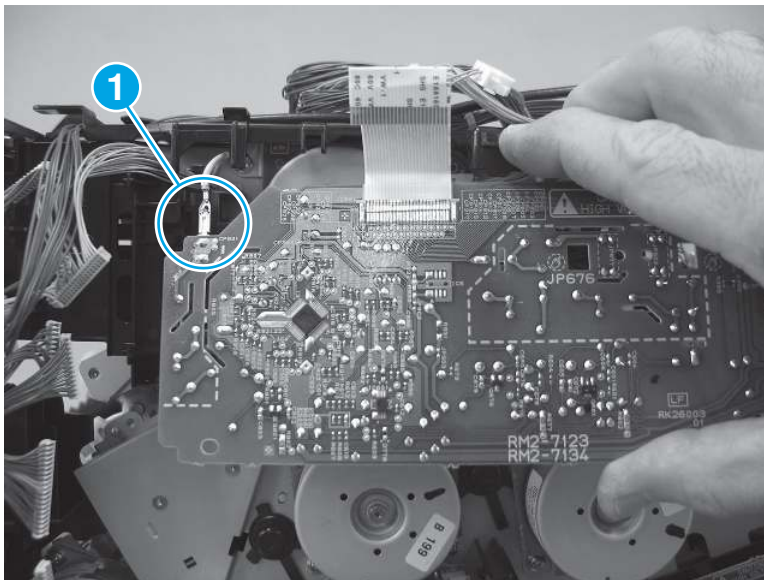
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the HVPST. It is still connected to the printer by ground wire harness.

Figure 5-1655 Release the HVPST



4. Release one ground wire connector (callout 1), and then remove the HVPST.

Figure 5-1656 Remove the HVPST

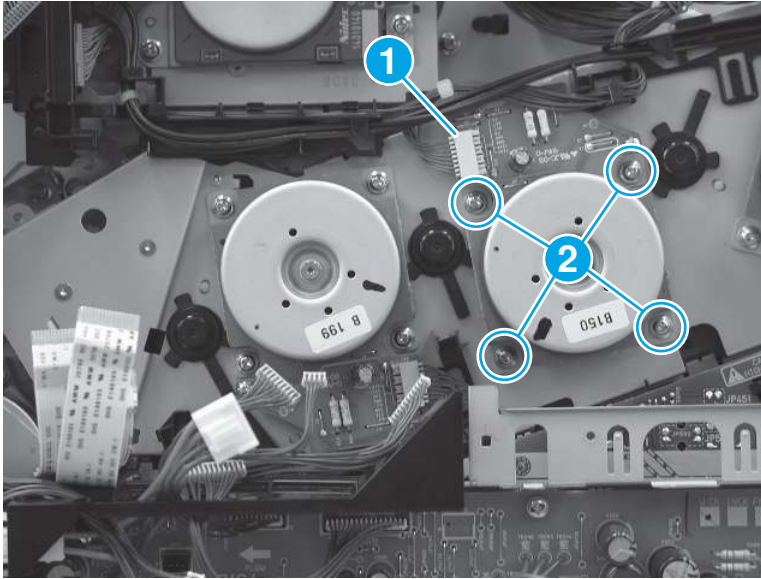


Remove drum motor 2 (M2)

Follow these steps to remove drum motor 2.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-1657 Remove the motor



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Drum motor 3 (M3)

Learn about removing and replacing drum motor 3.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-75 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0078-000CN	Drum motor 3 (M3)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

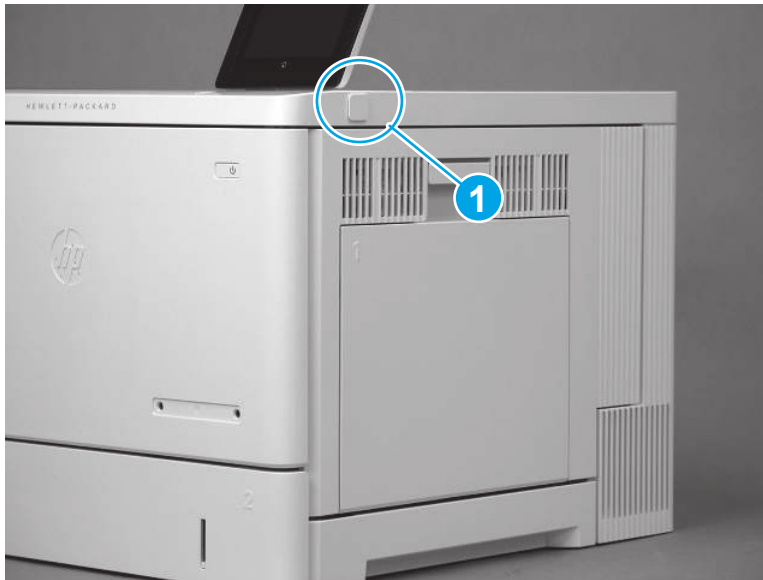
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1658 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1659 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1660 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1661 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1662 Remove the cover

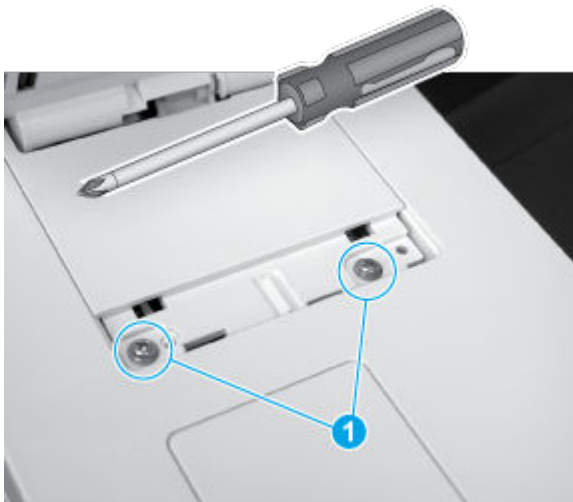


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1663 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1664 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

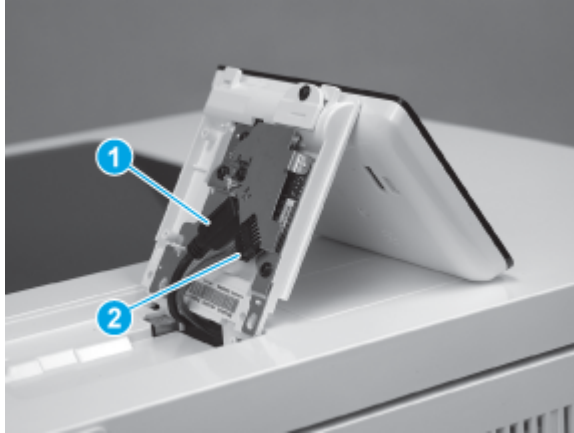
Figure 5-1665 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1666 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

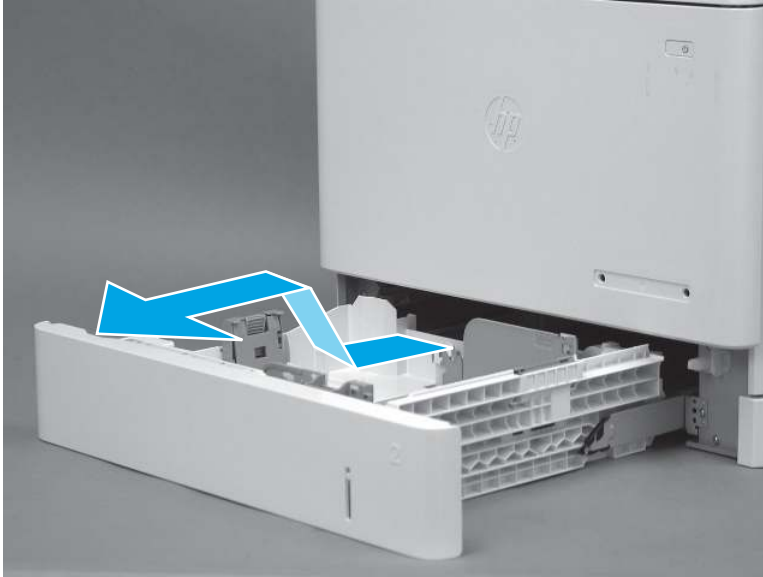
Figure 5-1667 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-1668 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1669 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1670 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1671 Remove the TCU

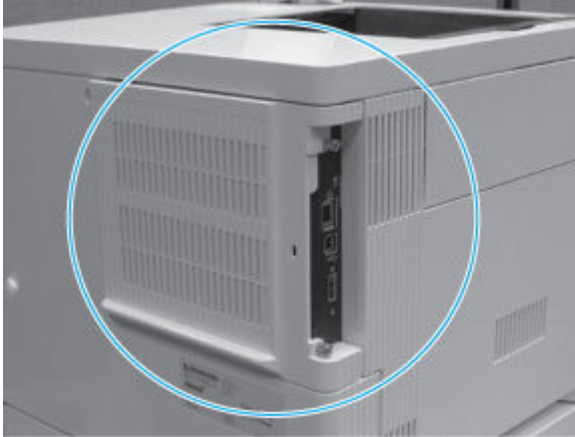


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-1672 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


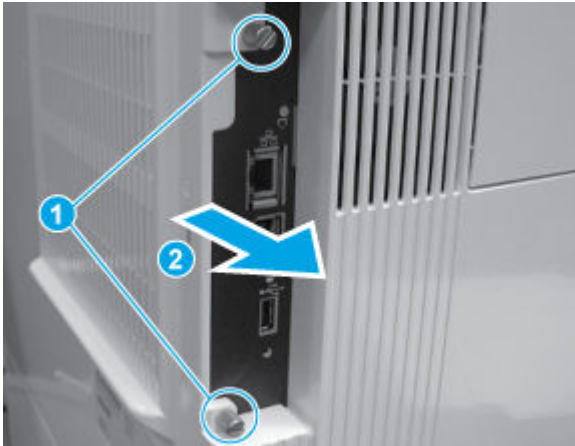

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1673 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

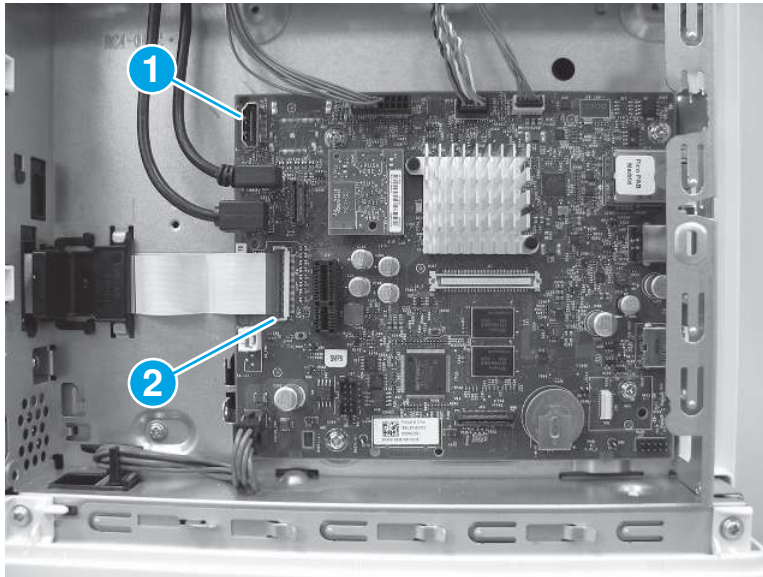
The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)

- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)

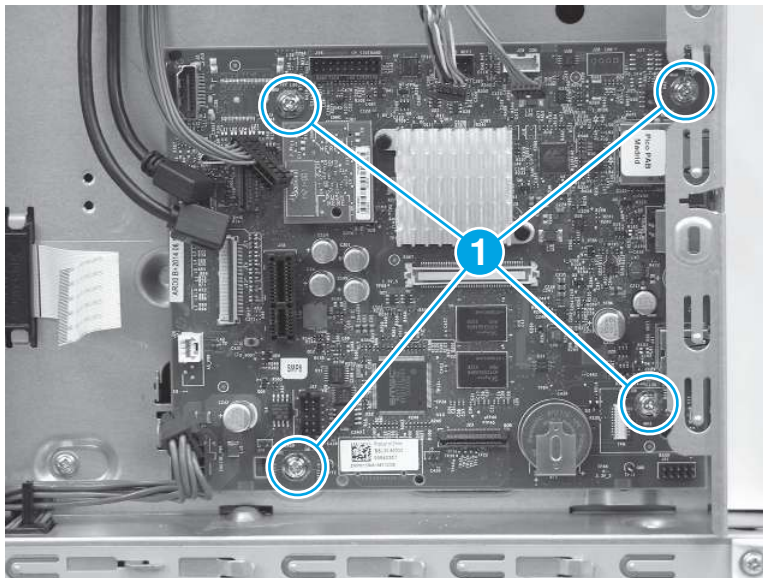
IMPORTANT: The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1674 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1675 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

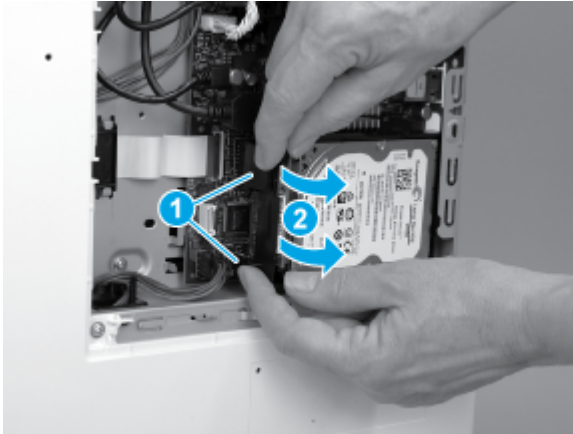
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1676 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1677 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

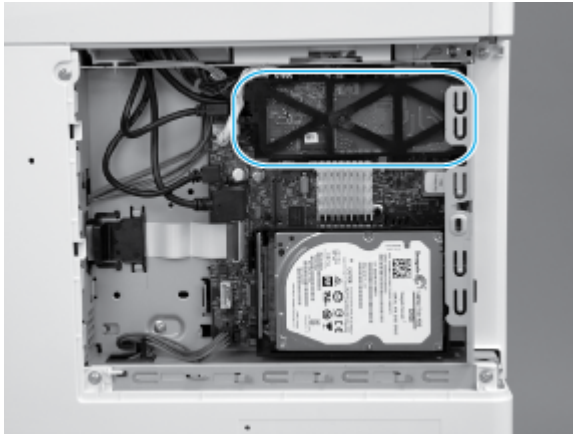
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

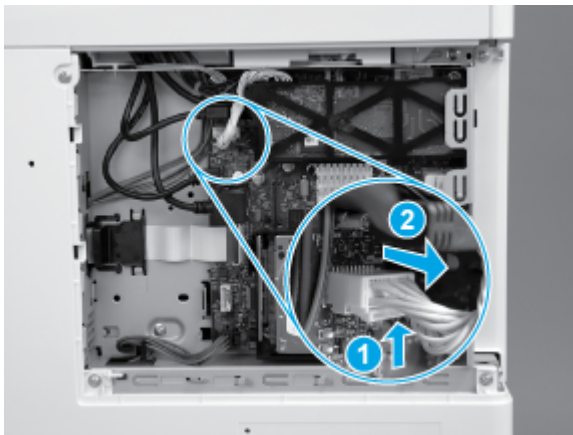
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1678 Locate the fax PCA



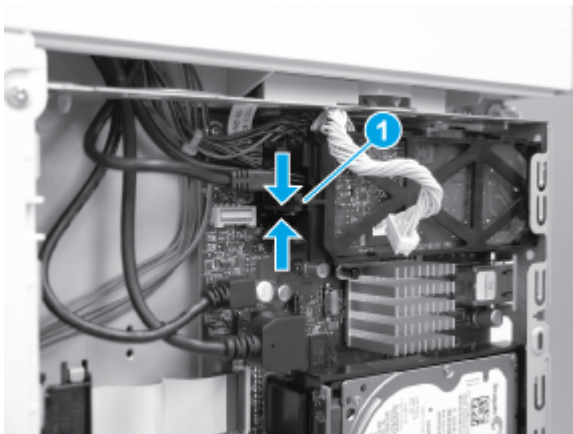
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1679 Disconnect one connector



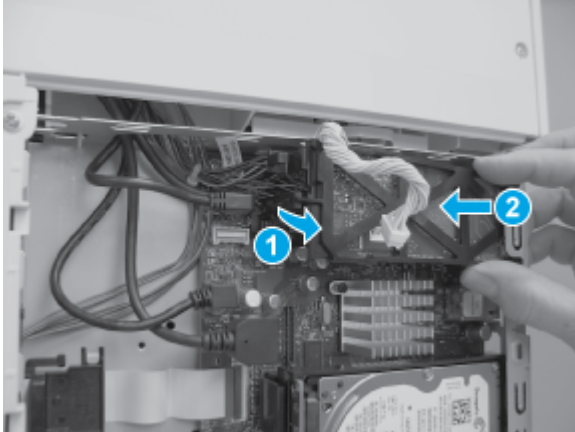
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1680 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1681 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


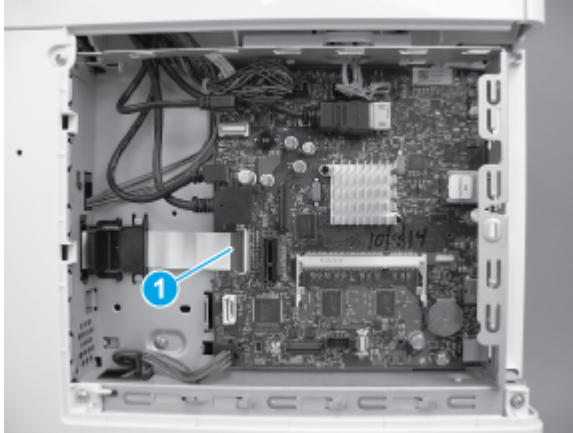
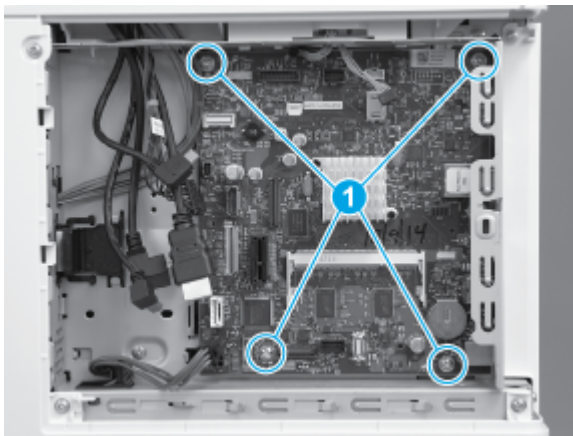
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1682 Disconnect all connectors



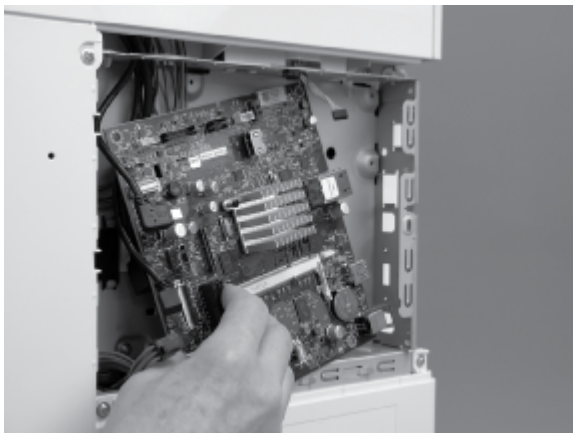
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1683 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1684 Remove the formatter



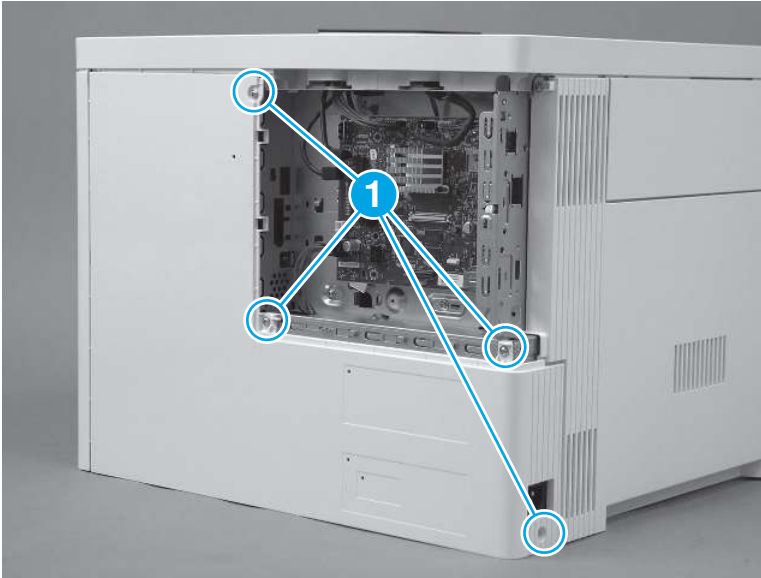
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

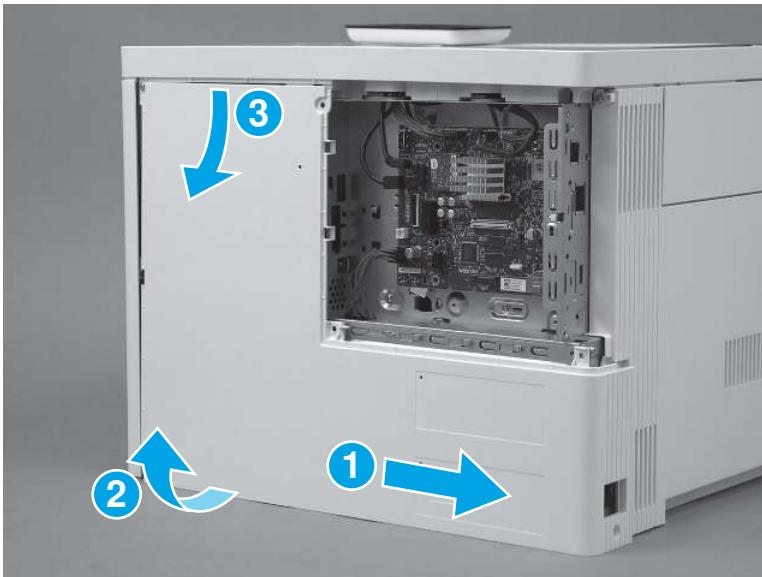
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1685 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1686 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

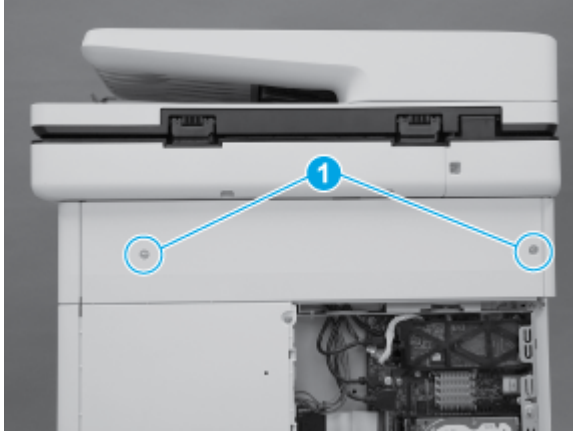
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

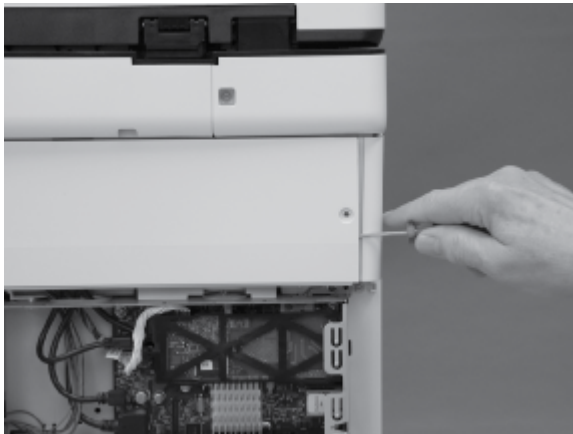
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1687 Remove two screws



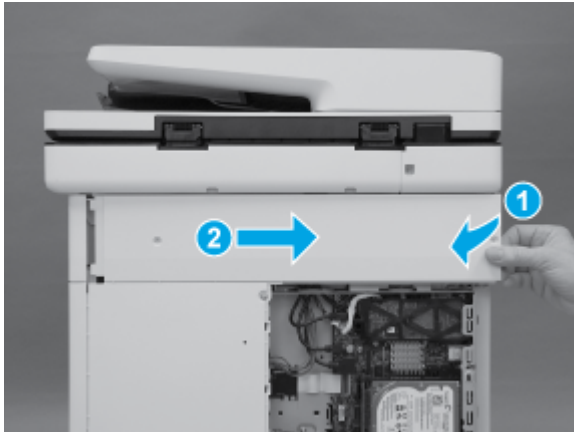
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1688 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1689 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1690 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1691 Remove four screws




2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1692 Remove the cover



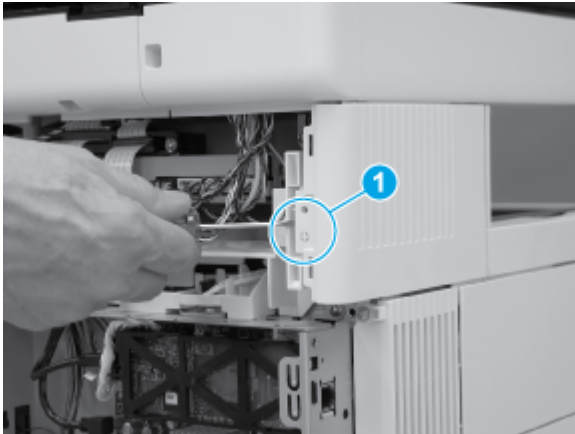
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1693 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-1694 Slide the cover back



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1695 Remove the left upper cover



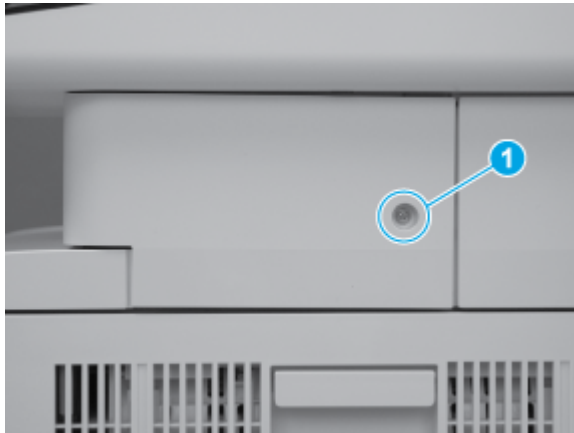
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1696 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1697 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1698 Rotate the cover



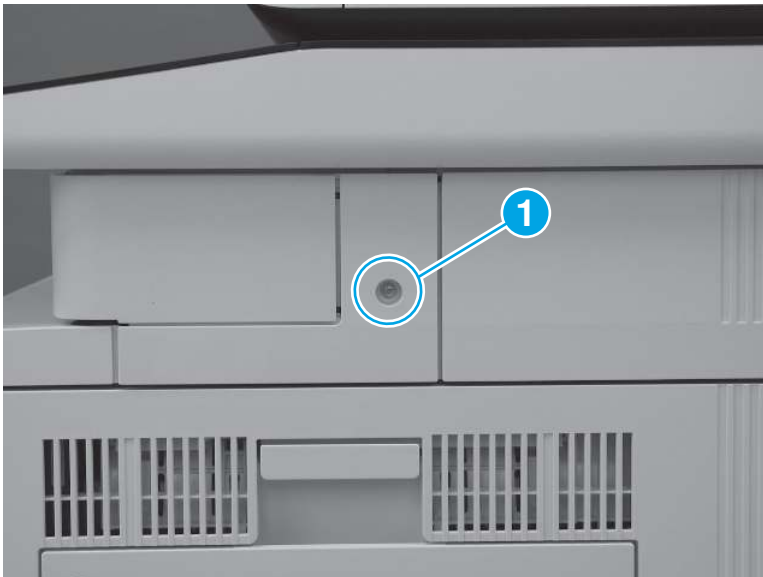
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1699 Remove one screw



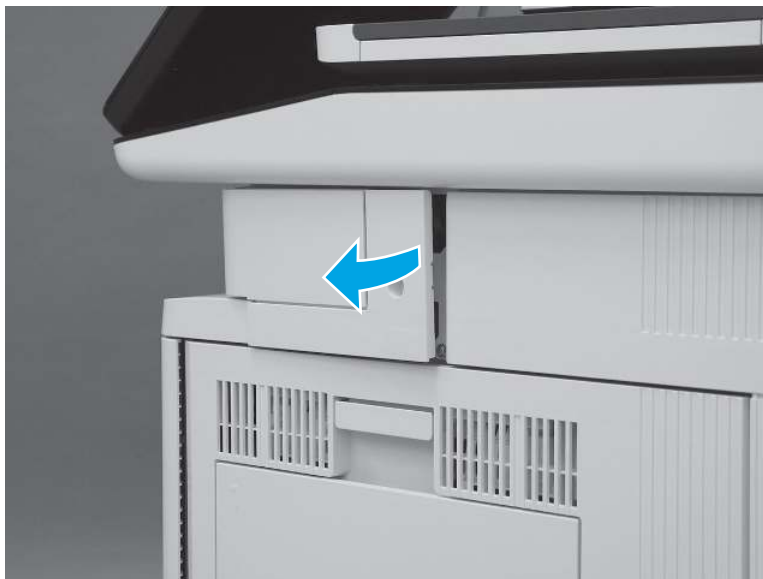
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1700 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1701 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1702 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

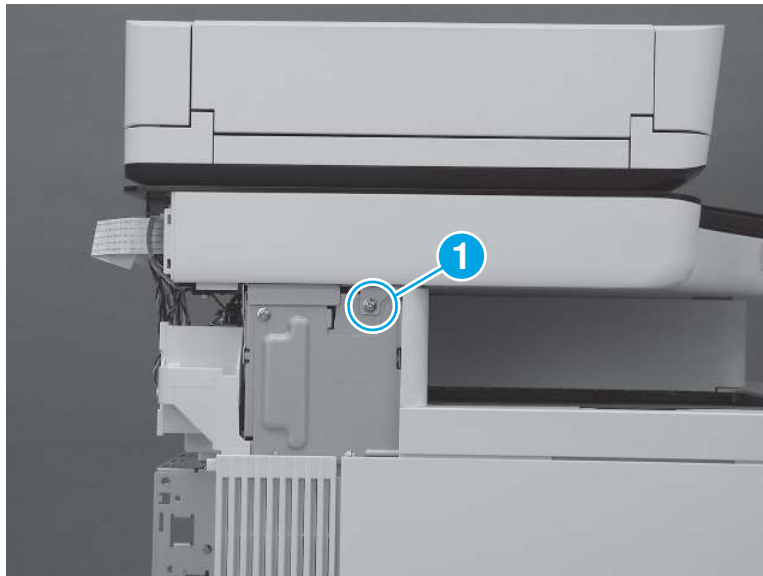
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

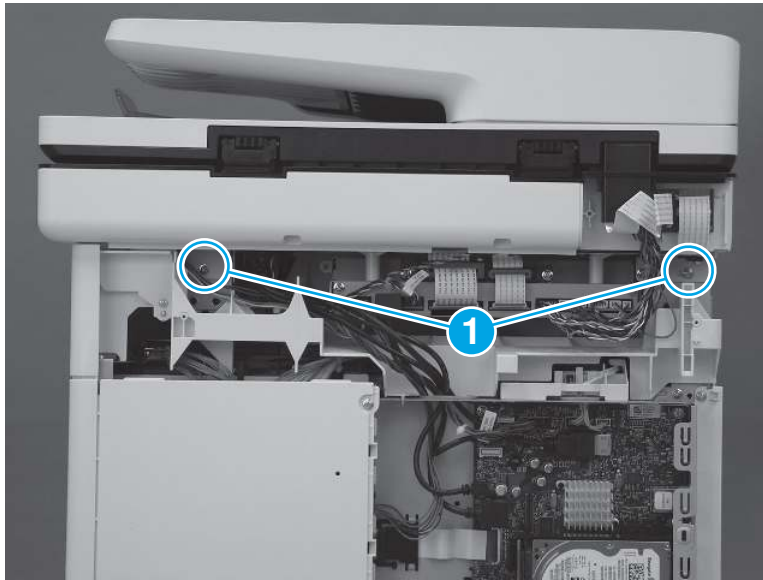
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1703 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

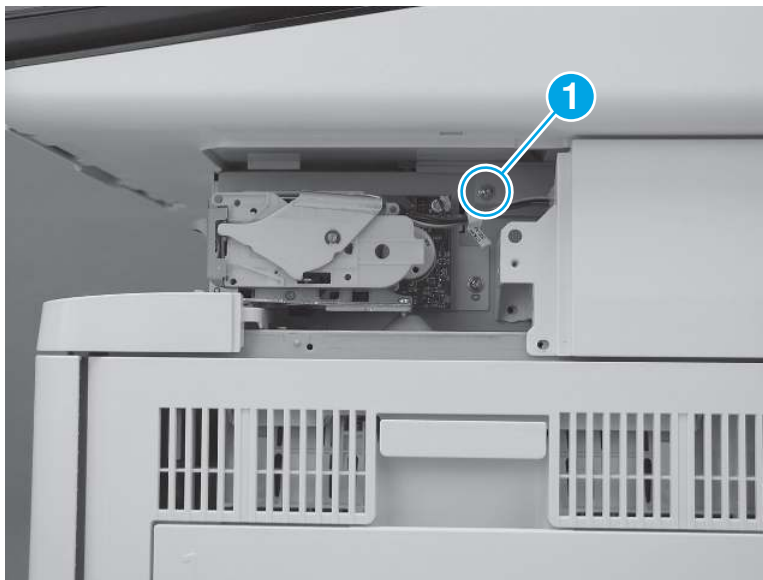
Figure 5-1704 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

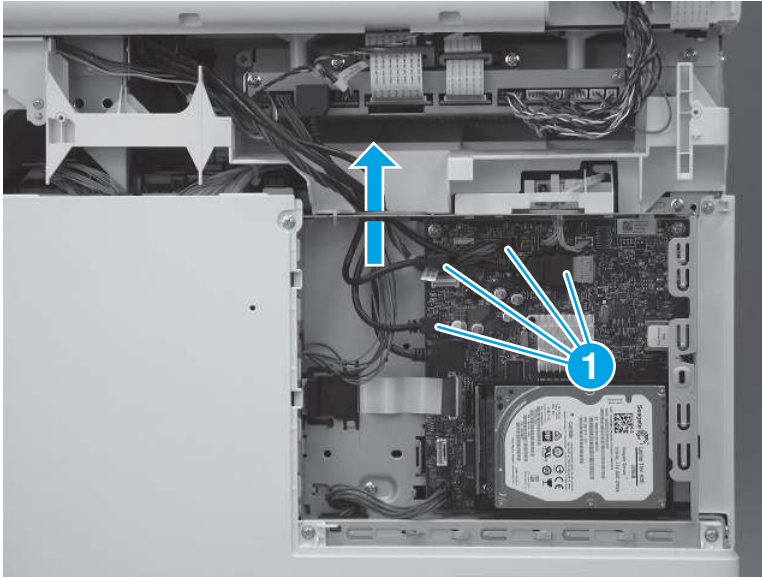
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-1705 Remove one screw



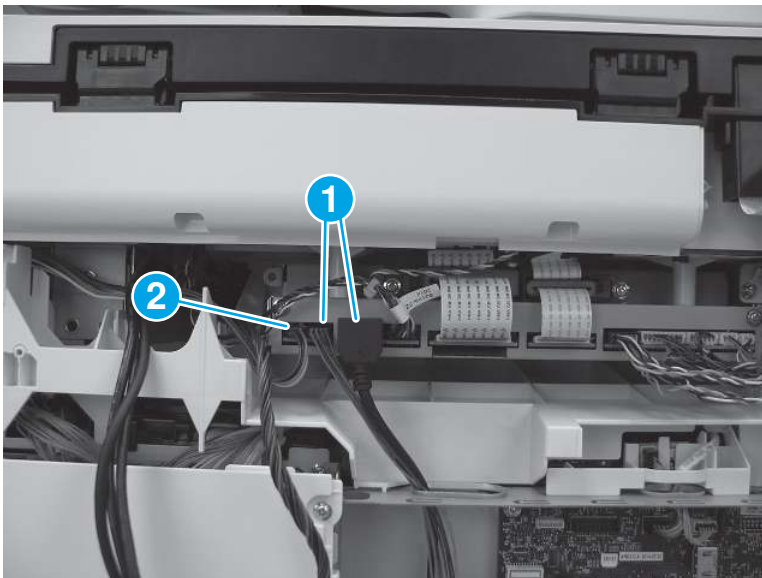
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-1706 Disconnect cables and connectors



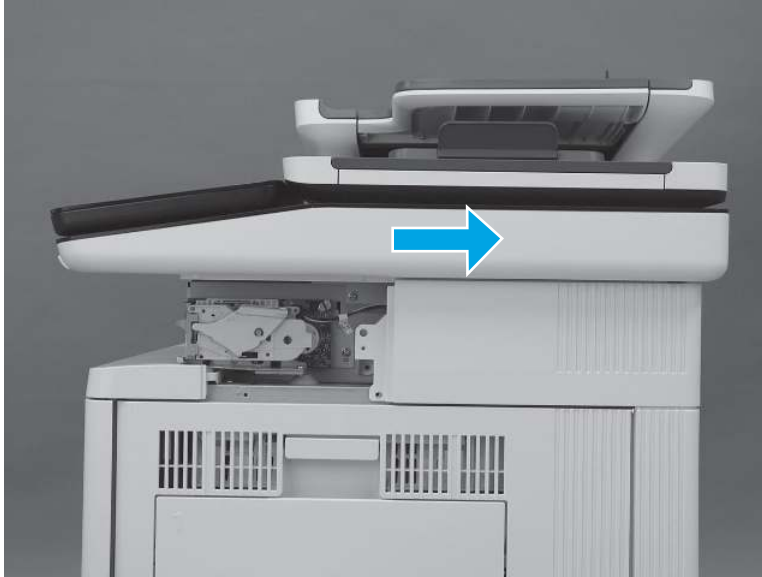
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-1707 Disconnect connectors



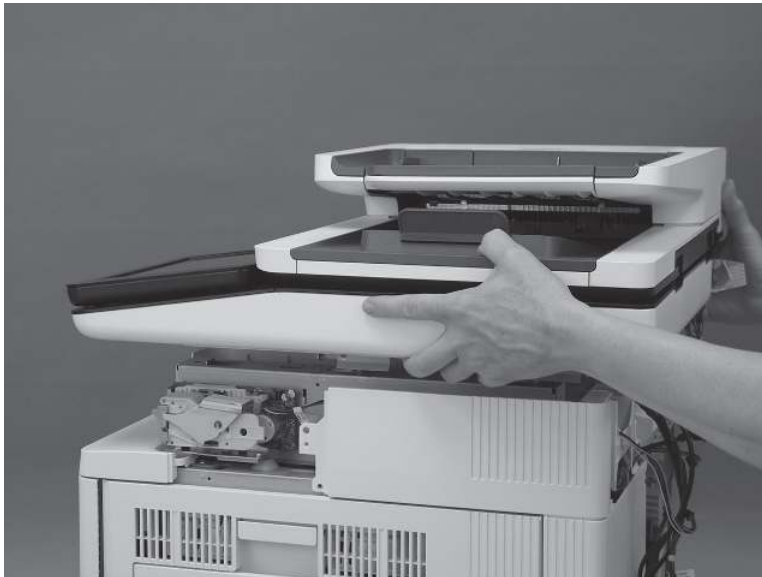
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1708 Release the image scanner



7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1709 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

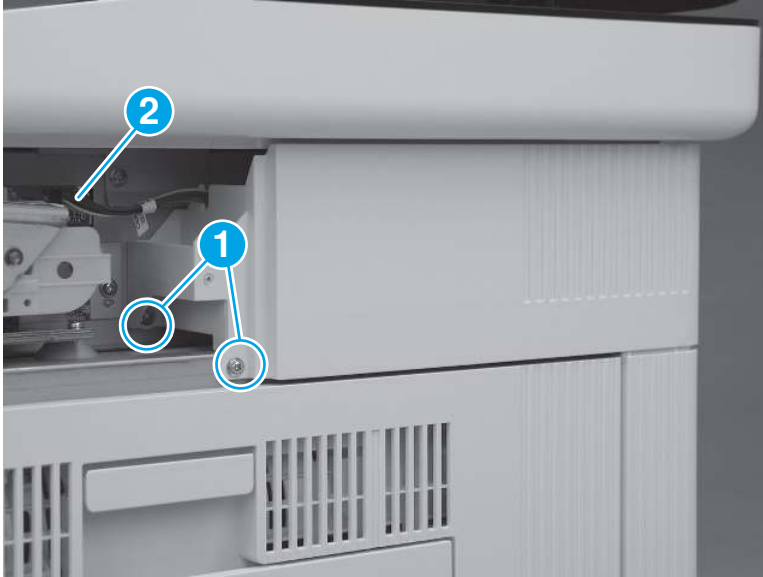
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1710 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


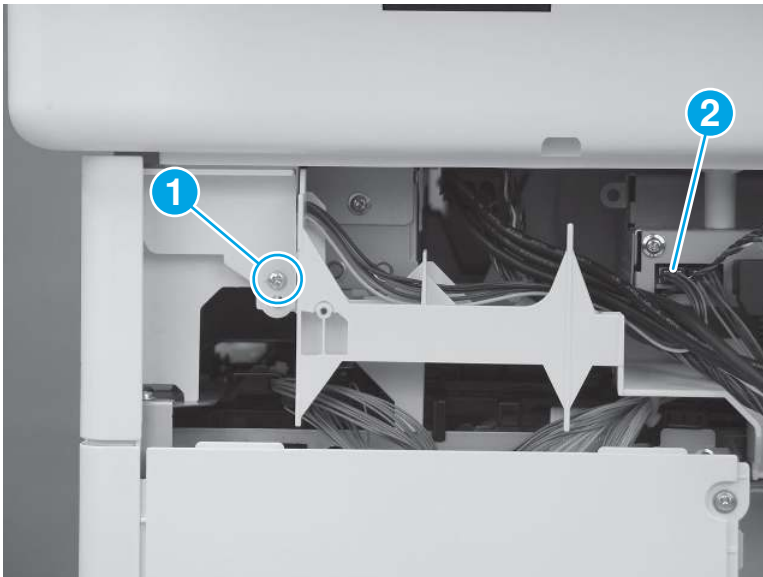
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1711 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

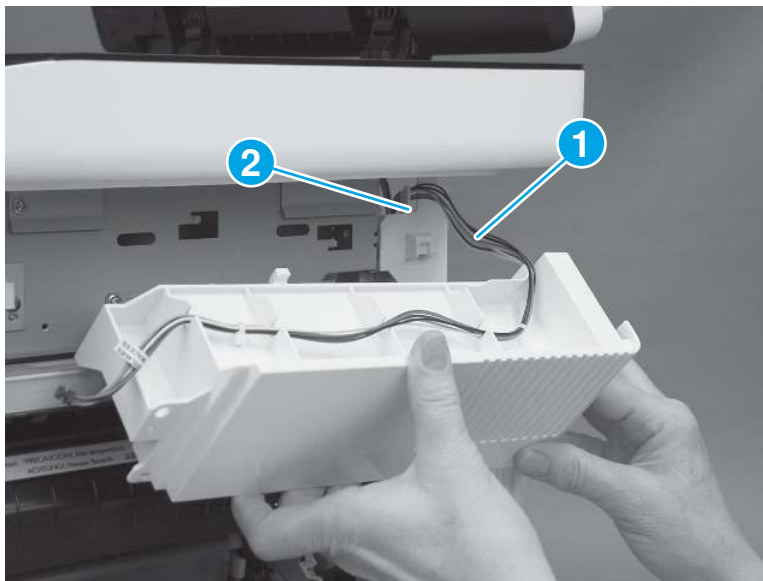
Figure 5-1712 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-1713 Remove the cover



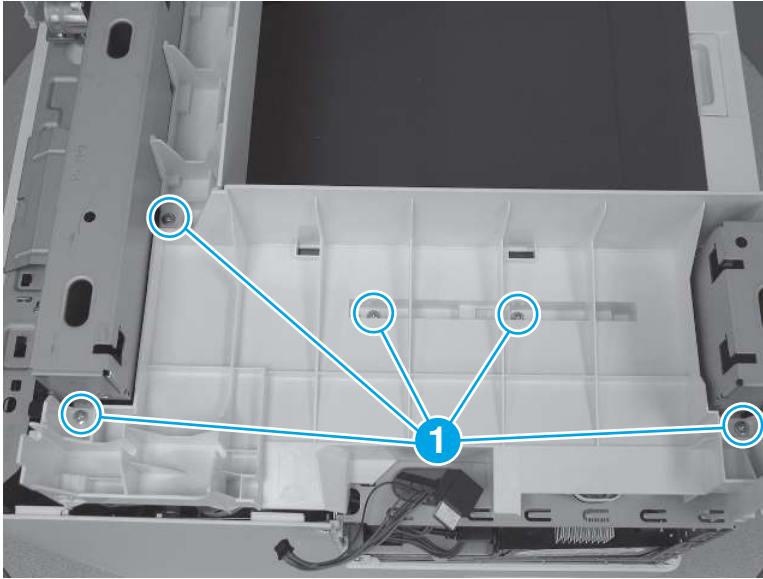
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

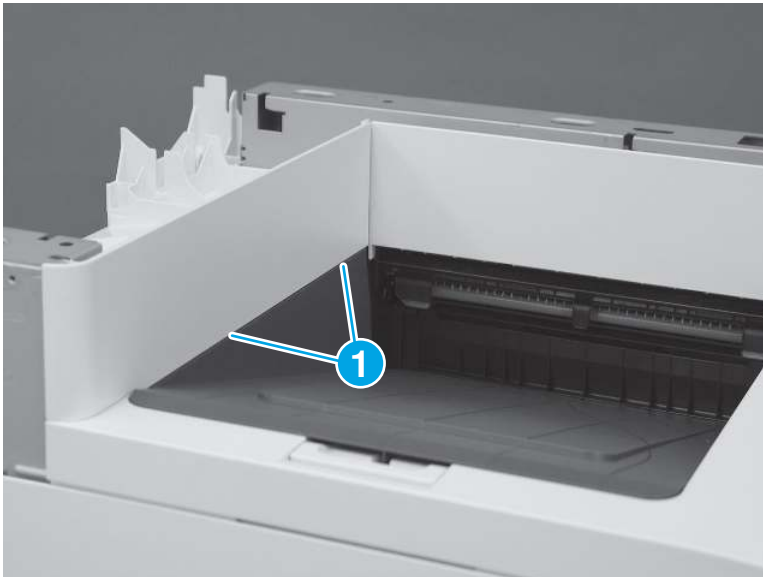
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1714 Remove five screws



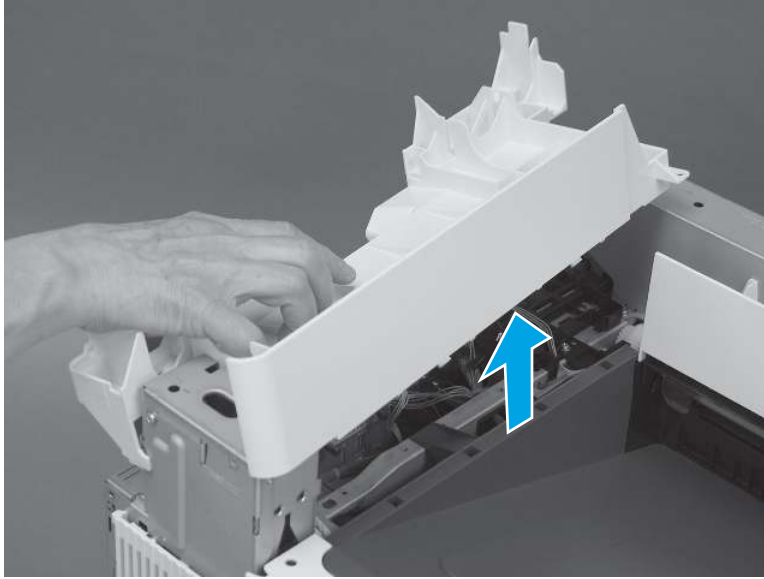
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1715 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-1716 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

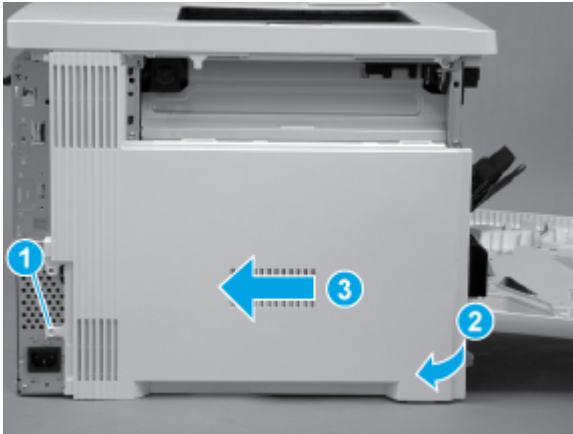
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1717 Remove one screw



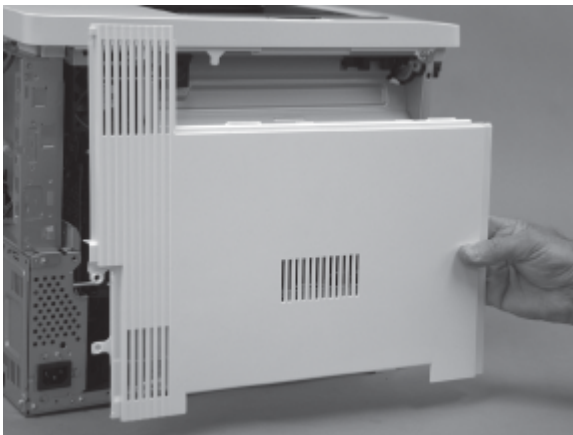
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1718 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1719 Remove the cover



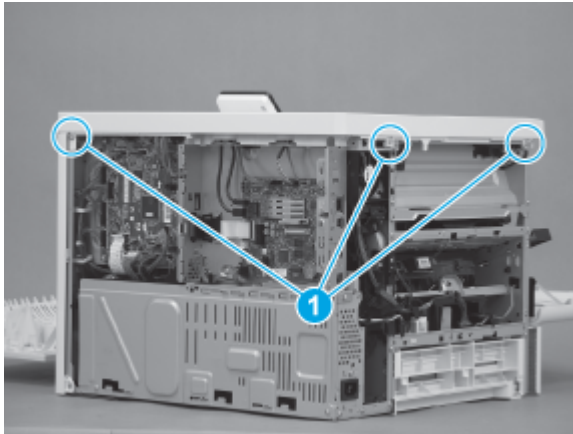
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1720 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1721 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


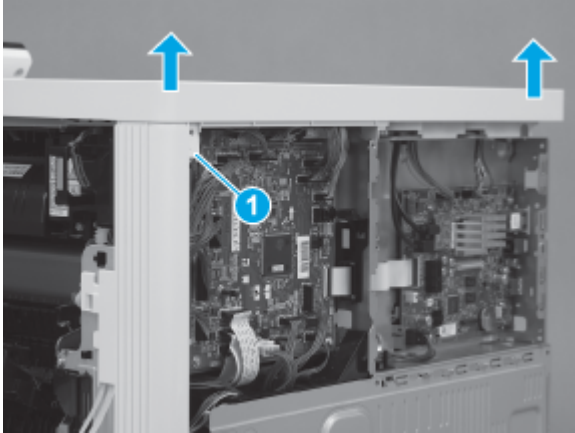
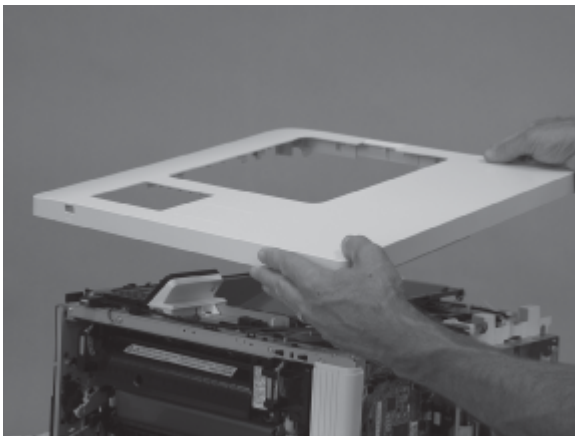
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-1722 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1723 Remove the cover

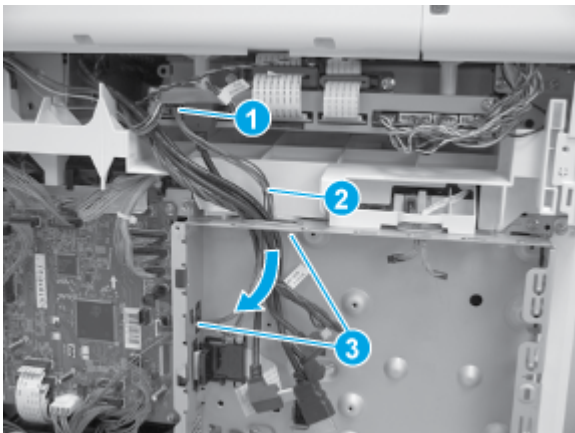


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

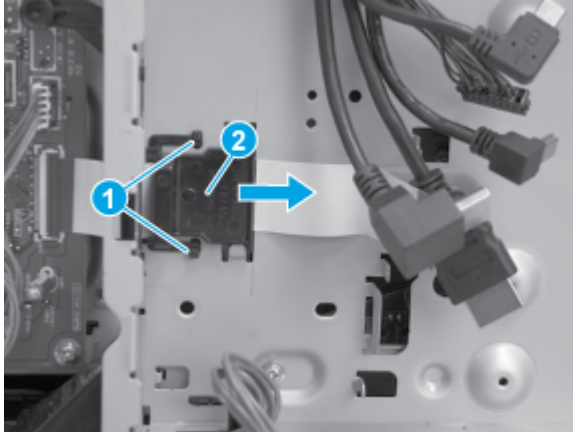
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1724 Disconnect one connector



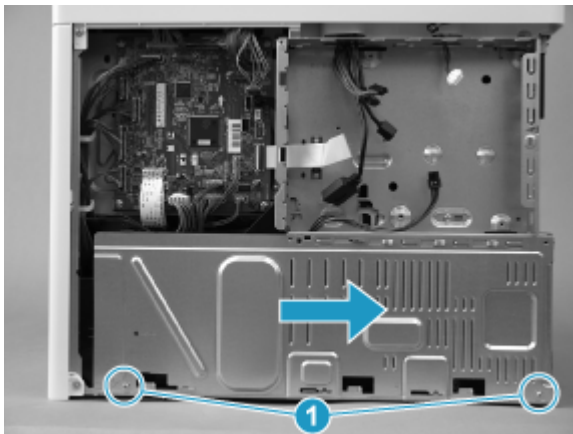
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1725 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

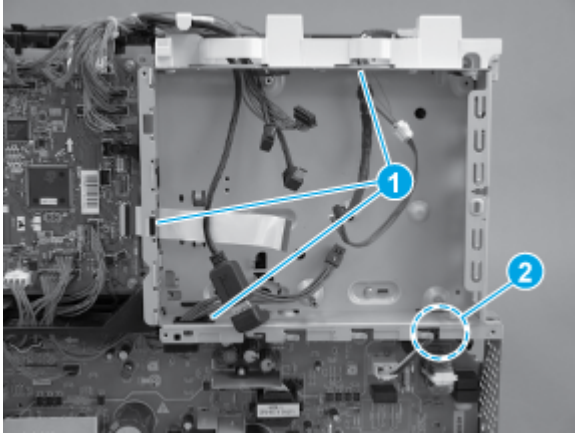
Figure 5-1726 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

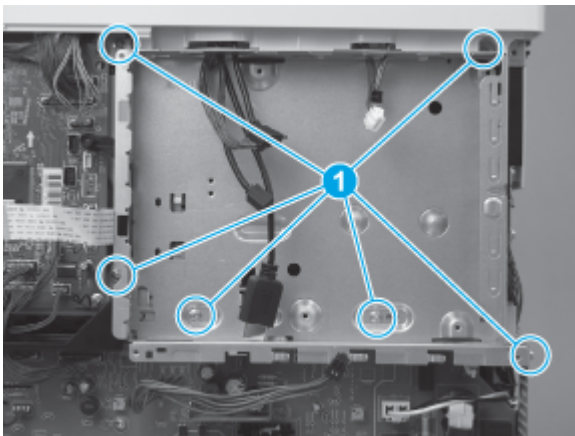
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1727 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



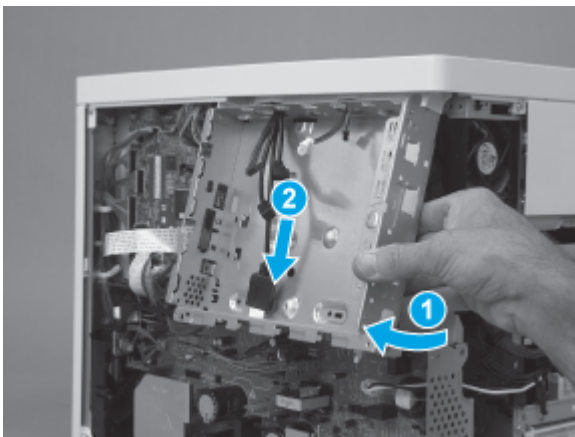
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1728 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1729 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


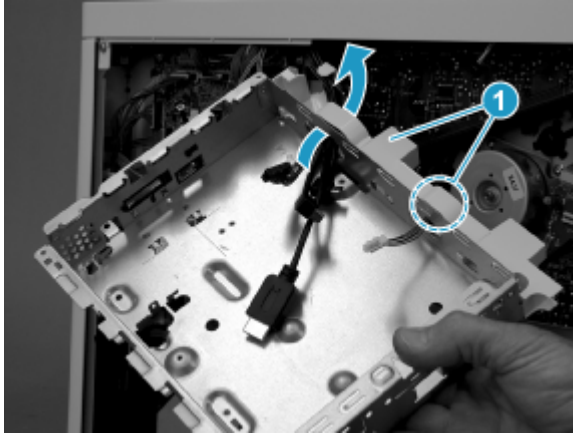

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1730 Remove the formatter case



Remove the right rear cover

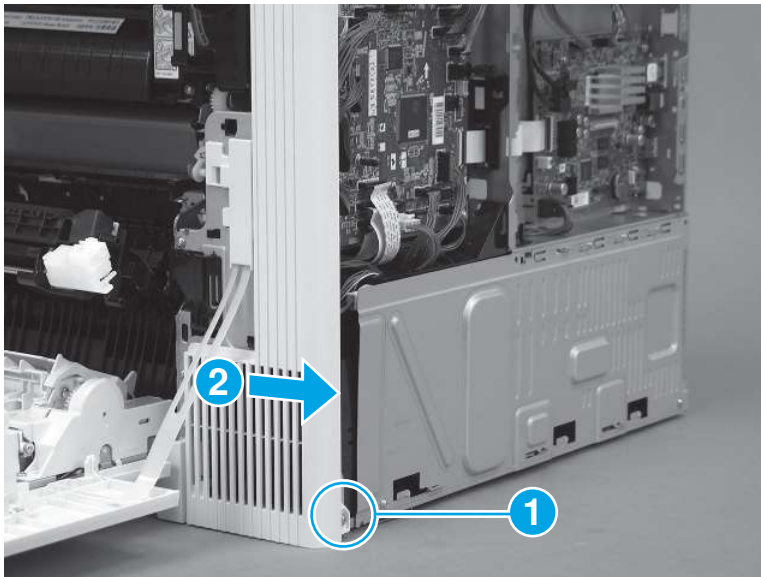
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

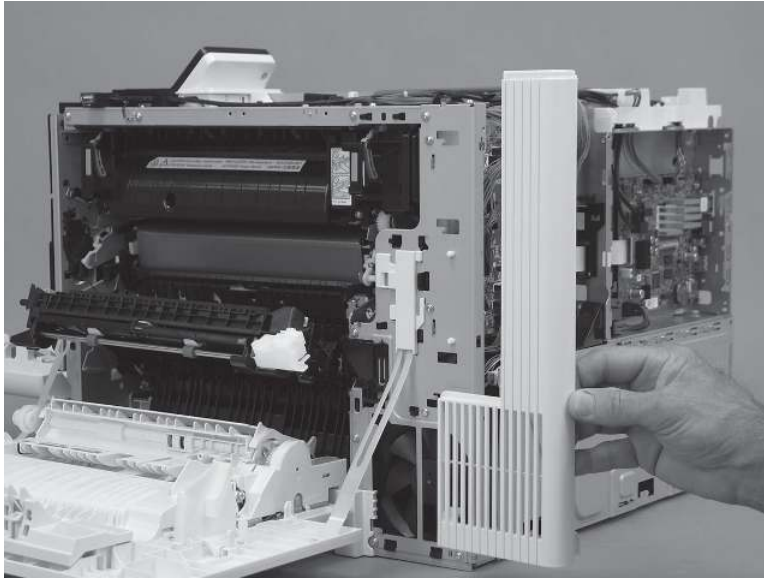
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-1731 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1732 Remove the cover



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.



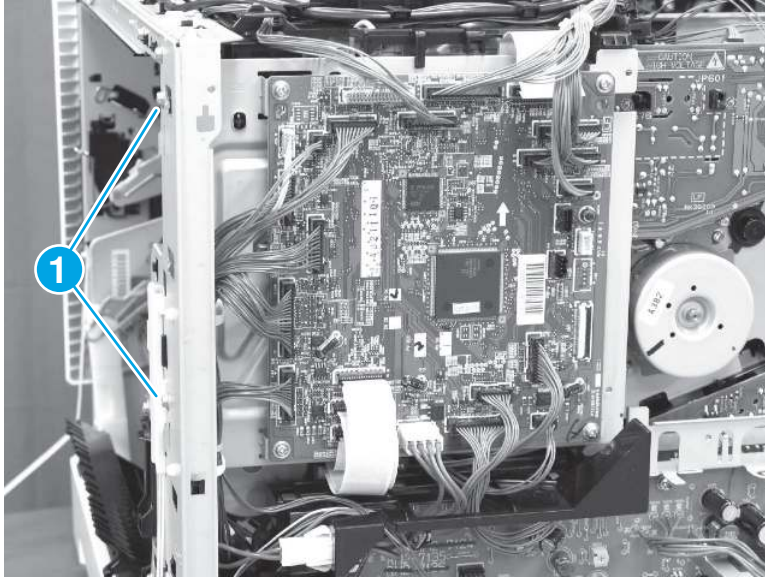
NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

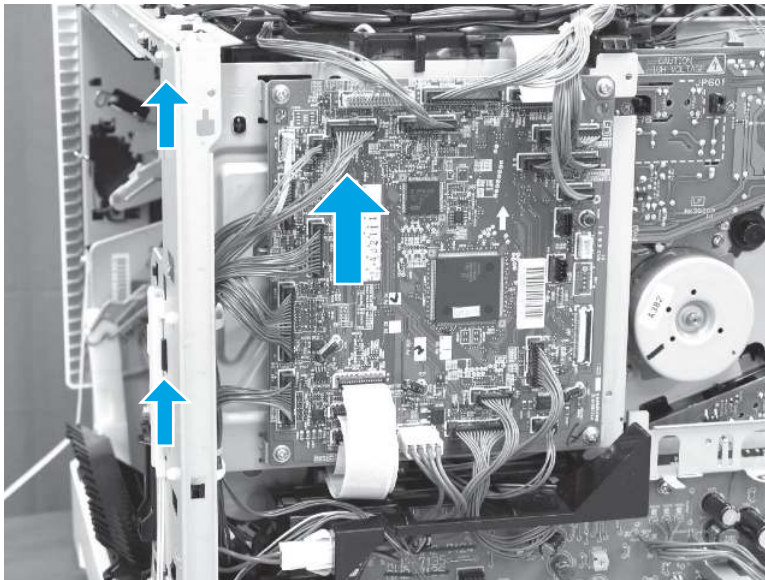
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-1733 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-1734 Remove the plate



Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

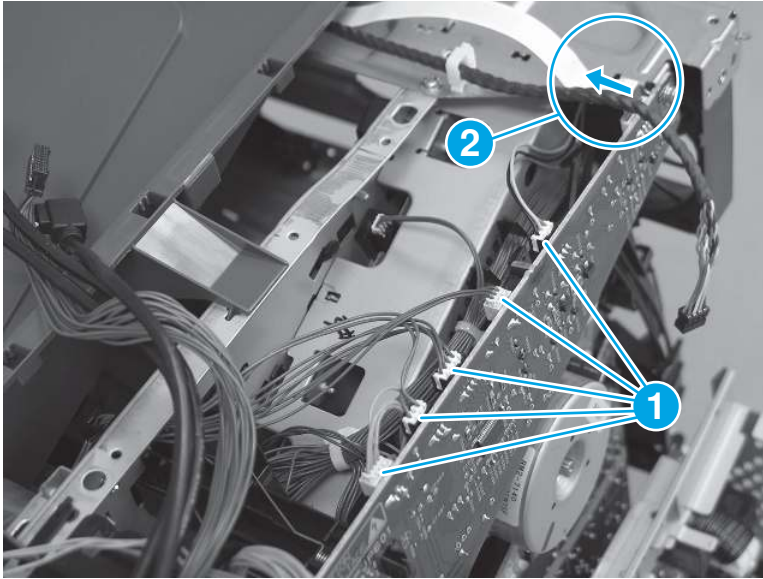
Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply T.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

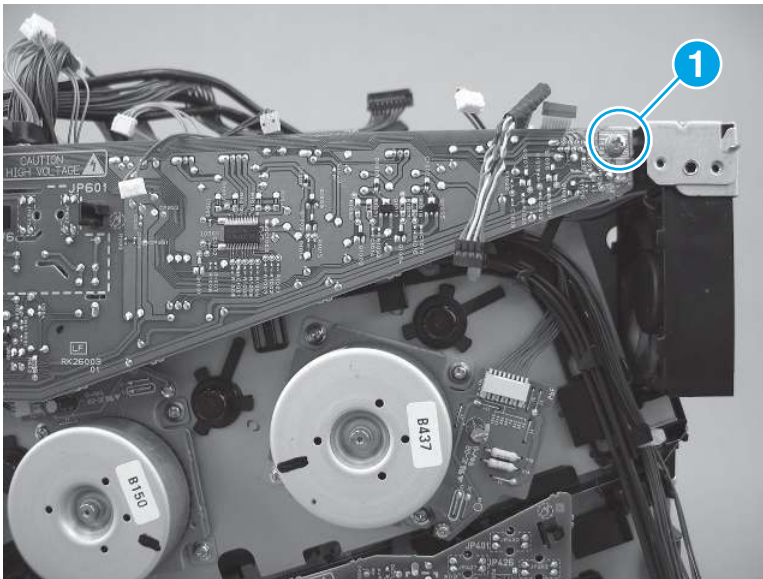
1. Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), and then disconnect one flat cable (callout 2).

Figure 5-1735 Disconnect five connectors and one flat cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

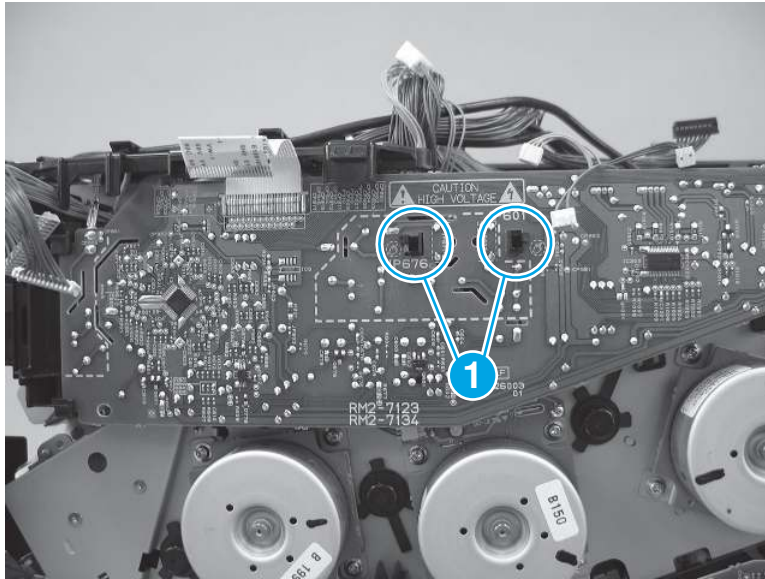
Figure 5-1736 Remove one screw



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then separate the HVPST from the printer.

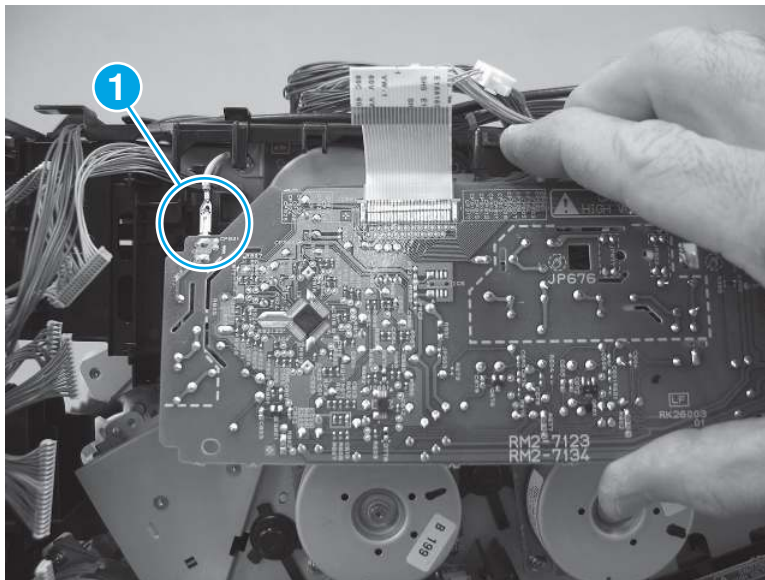
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the HVPST. It is still connected to the printer by ground wire harness.

Figure 5-1737 Release the HVPST



4. Release one ground wire connector (callout 1), and then remove the HVPST.

Figure 5-1738 Remove the HVPST

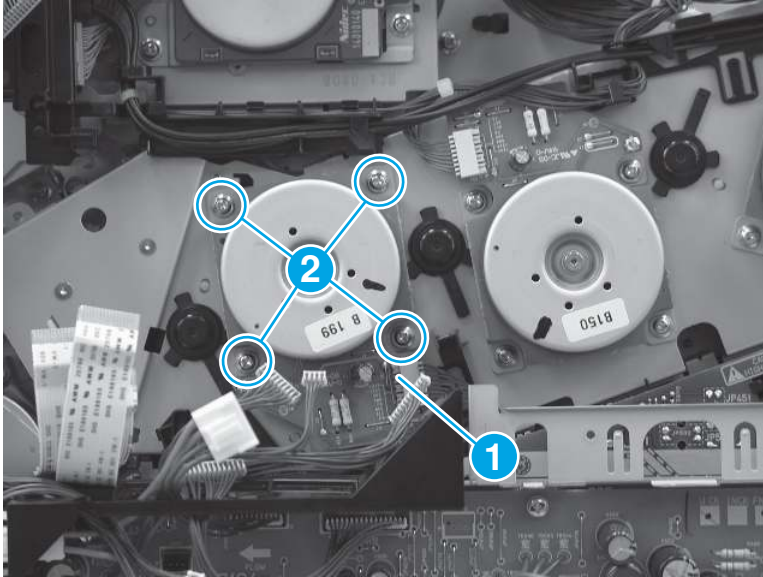


Remove drum motor 3 (M3)

Follow these steps to remove drum motor 3.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-1739 Remove the motor



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Fuser motor 3 (M4)

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-76 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0077-000CN	Fuser motor 3 (M4)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on


- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

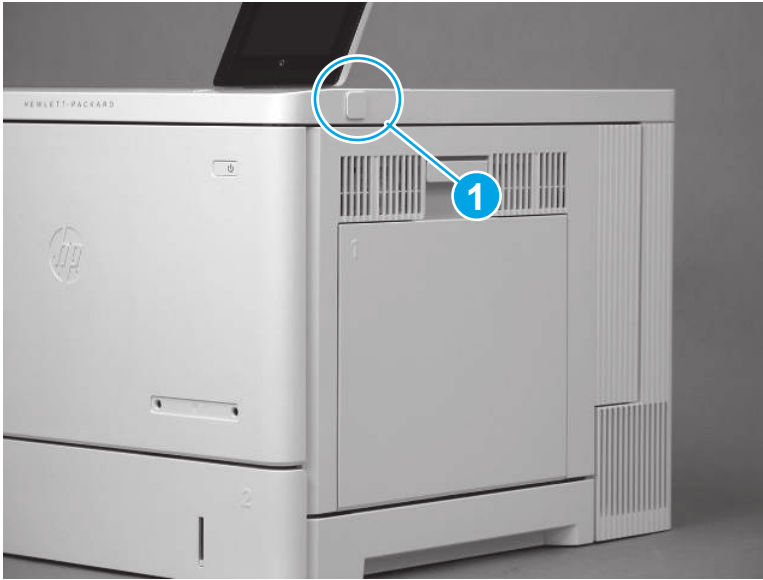
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1740 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1741 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1742 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1743 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1744 Remove the cover

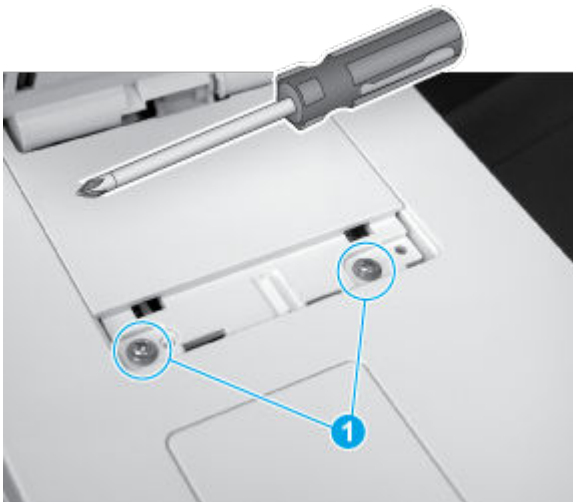


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1745 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1746 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

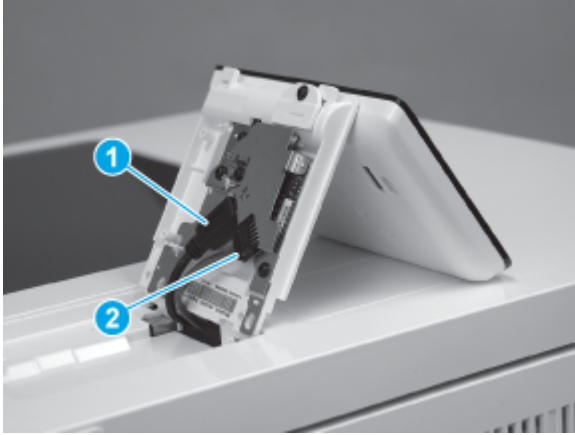
Figure 5-1747 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1748 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

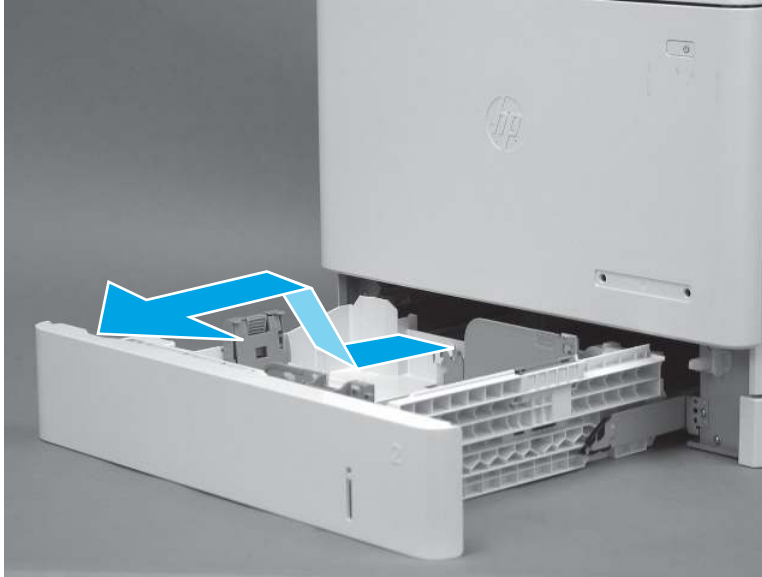
Figure 5-1749 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** **For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-1750 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1751 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1752 Open the TCU

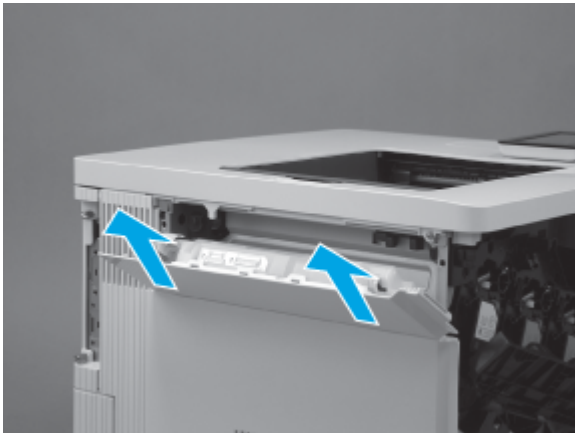


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1753 Remove the TCU

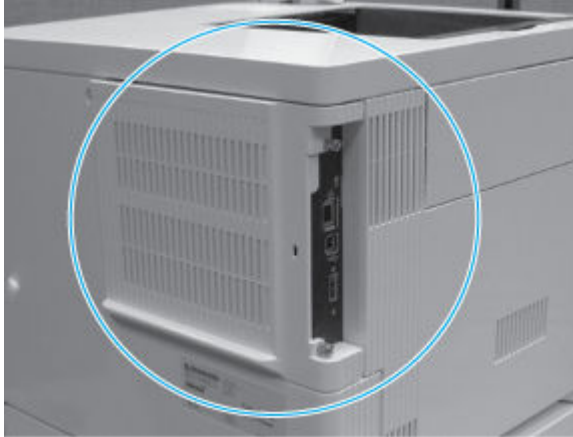


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-1754 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


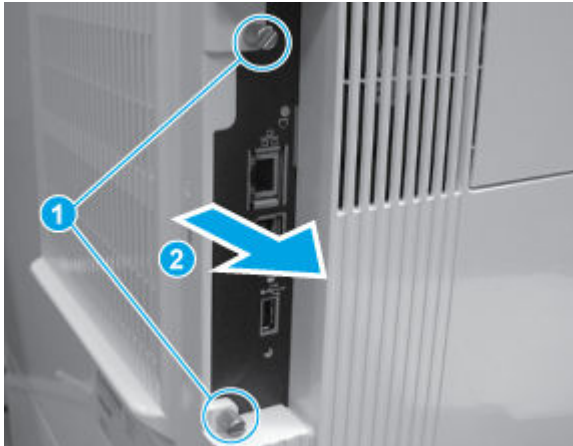

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1755 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)

- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


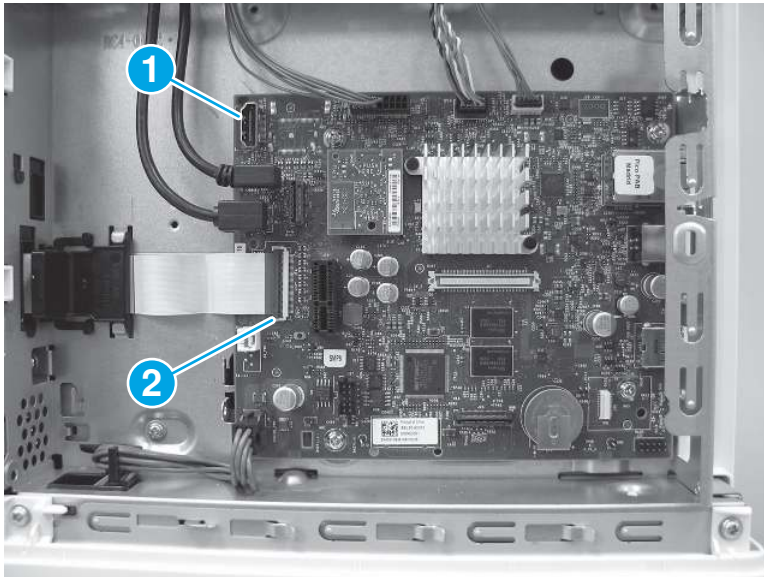
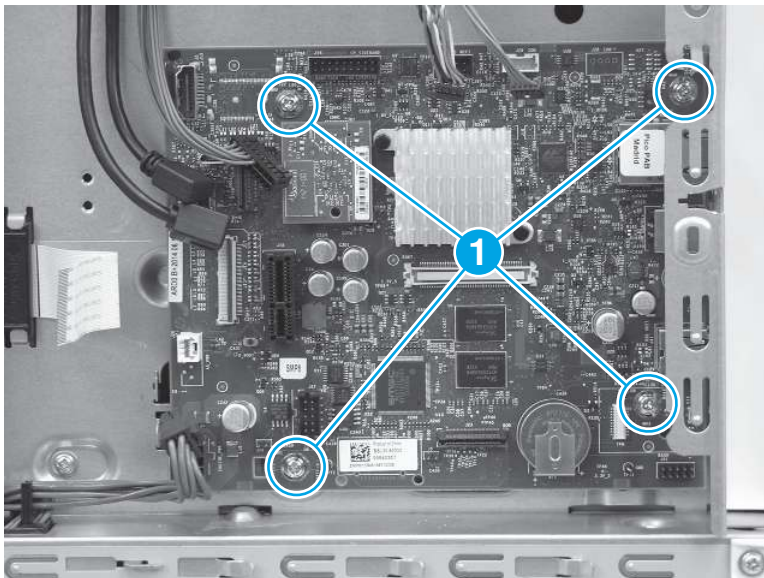
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1756 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1757 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

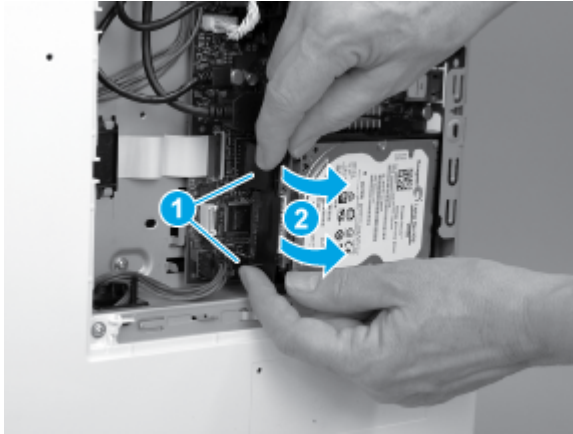
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1758 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1759 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

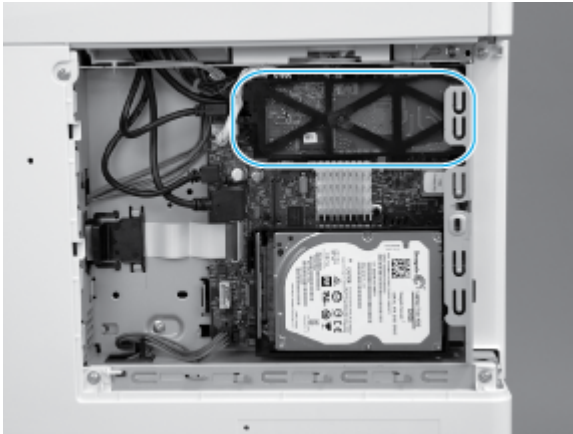
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

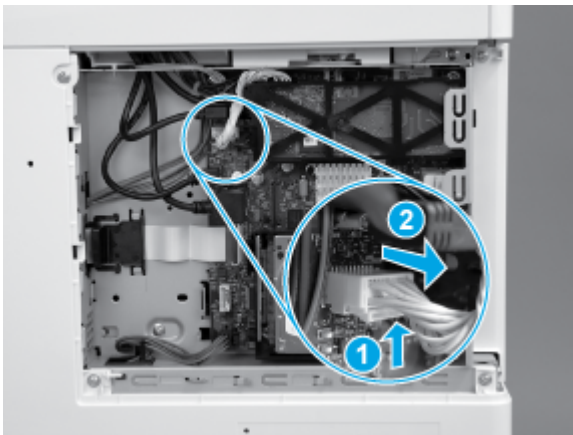
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1760 Locate the fax PCA



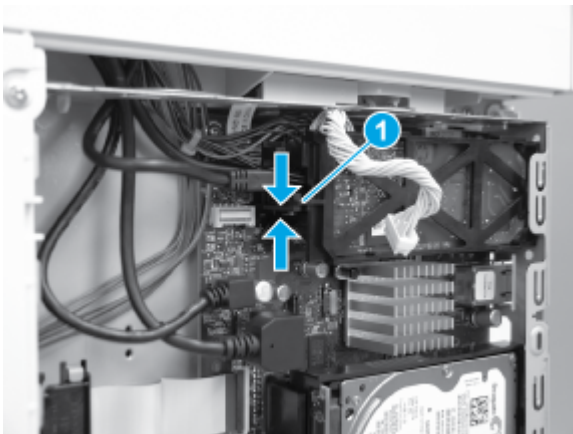
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1761 Disconnect one connector



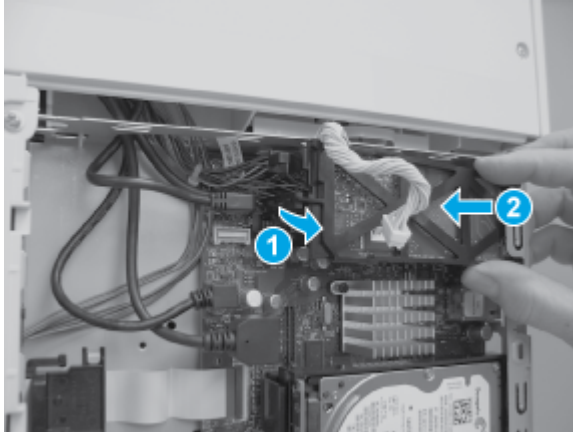
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1762 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1763 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


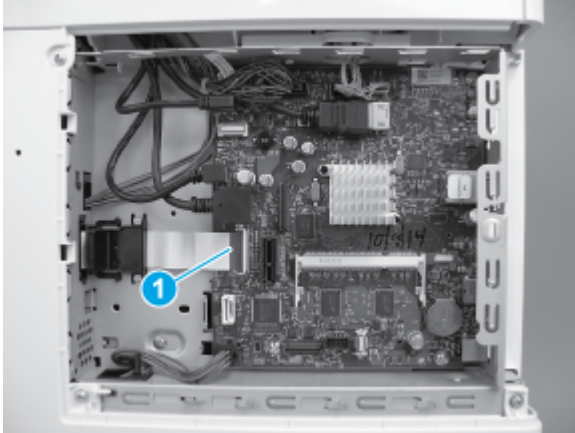
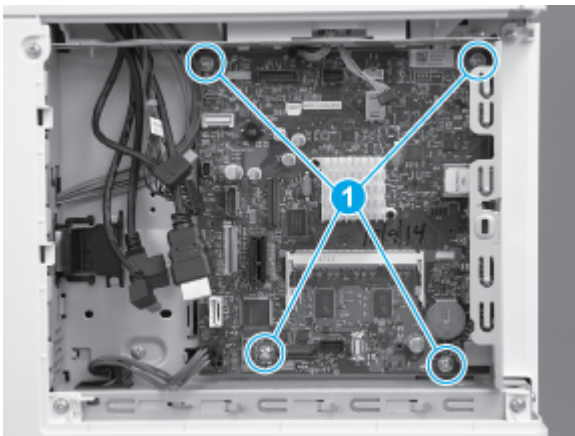
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1764 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1765 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1766 Remove the formatter



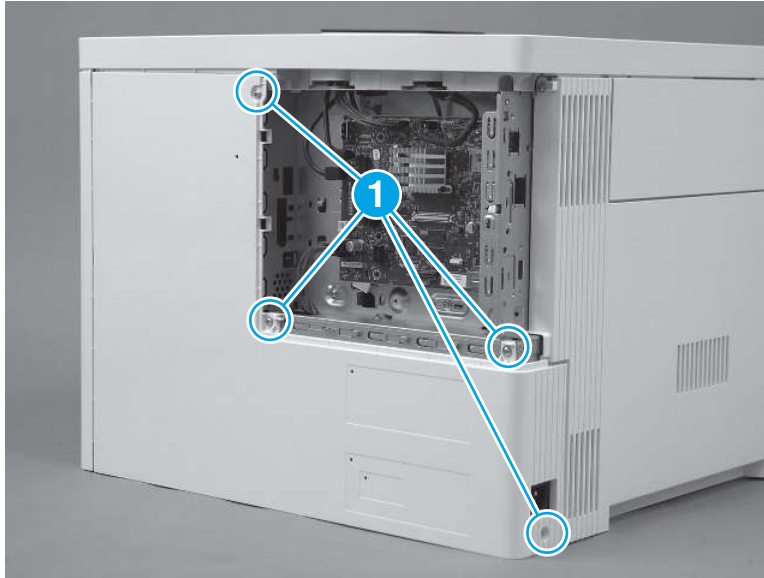
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

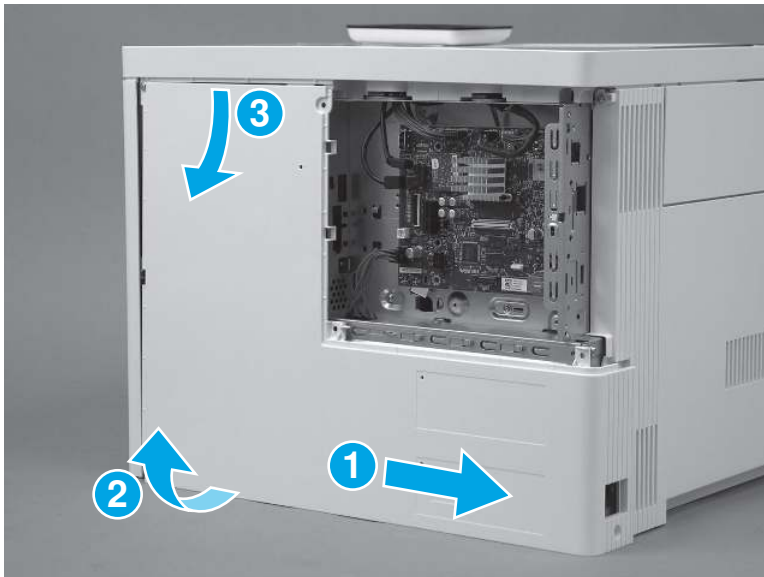
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1767 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1768 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

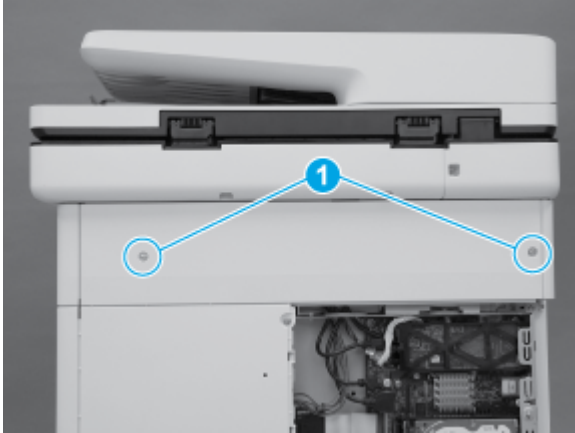
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

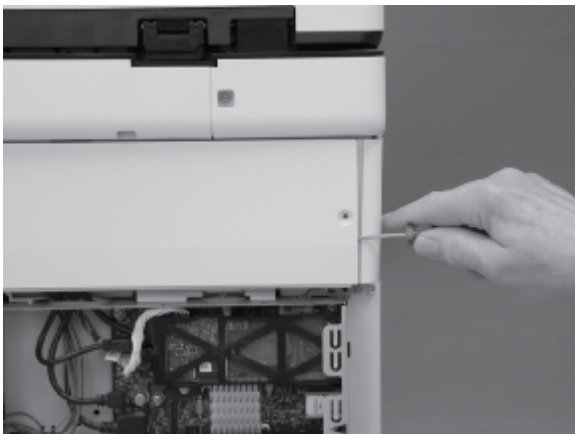
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1769 Remove two screws



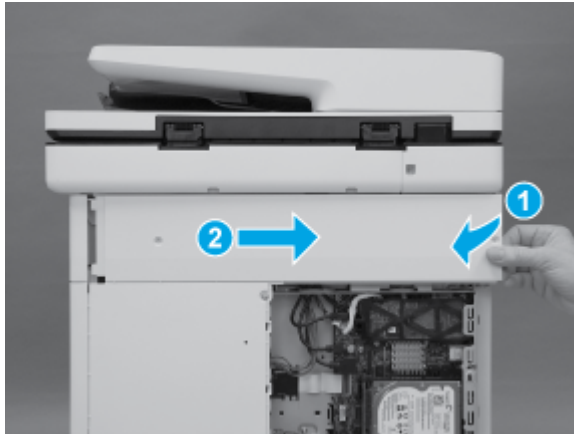
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1770 Release the right edge



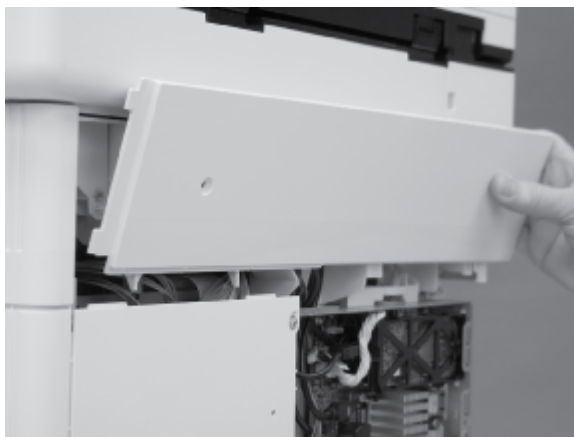
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1771 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1772 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1773 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1774 Remove the cover



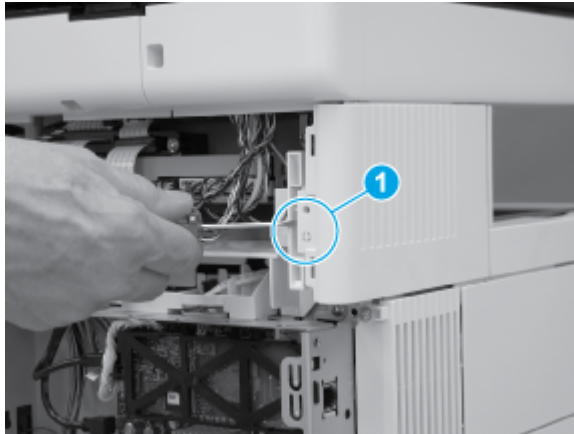
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1775 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-1776 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1777 Remove the left upper cover



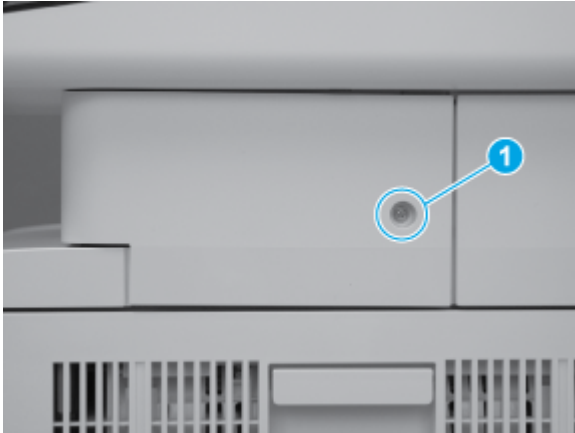
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1778 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1779 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1780 Rotate the cover



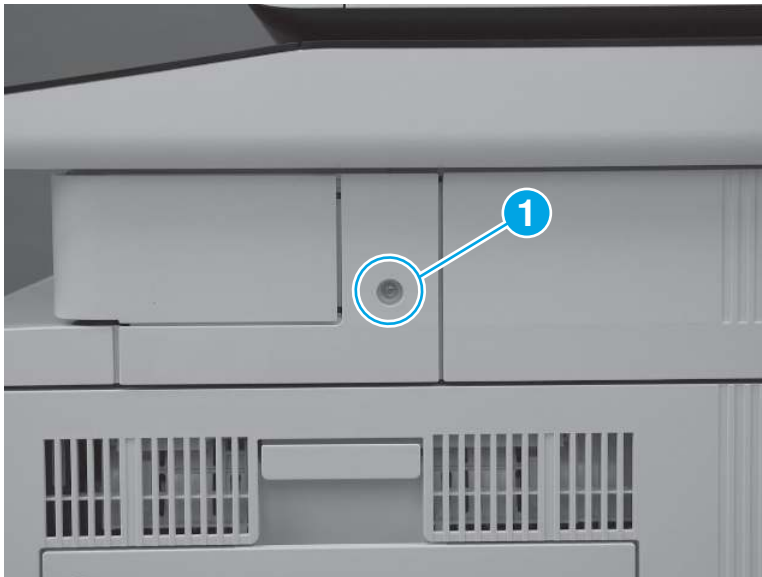
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1781 Remove one screw



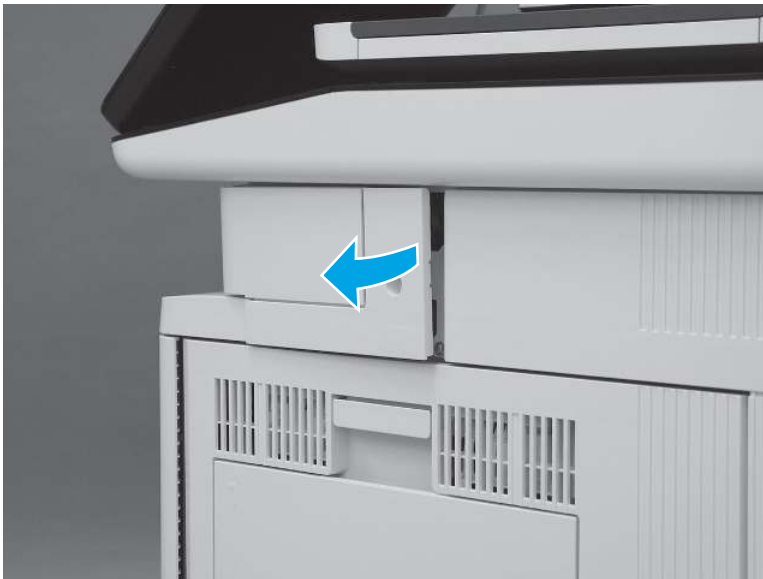
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1782 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1783 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1784 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

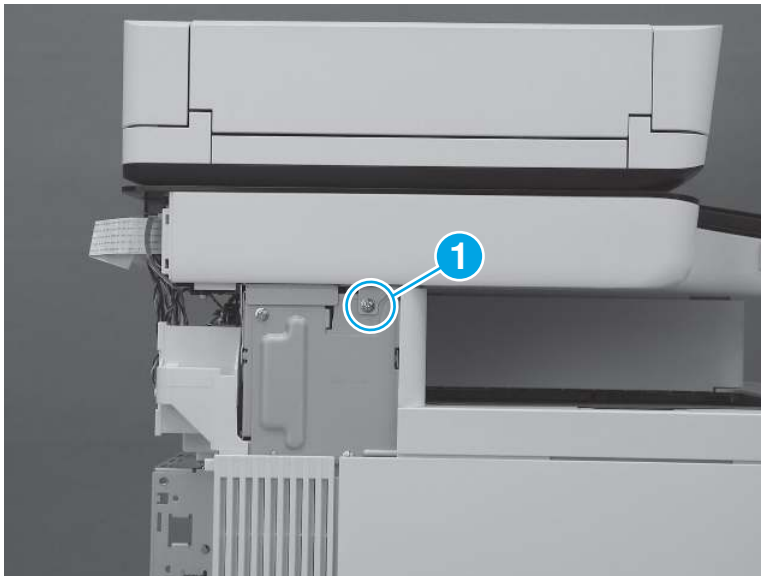
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

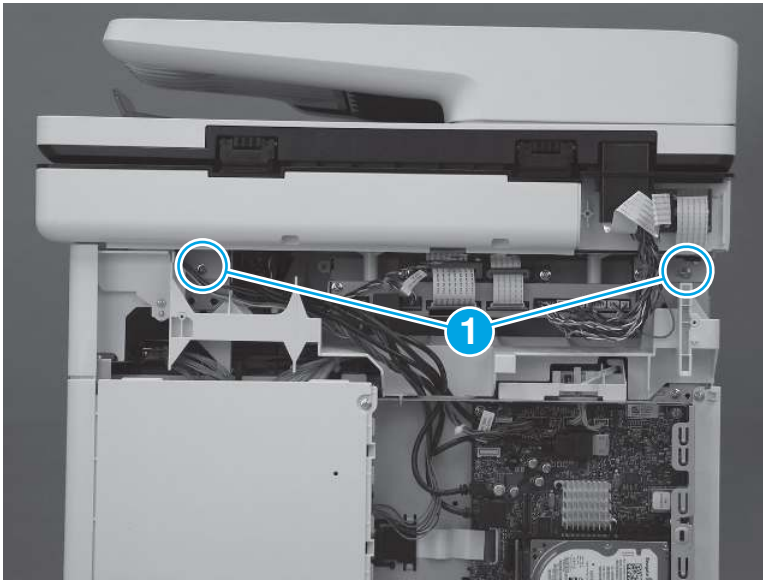
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1785 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

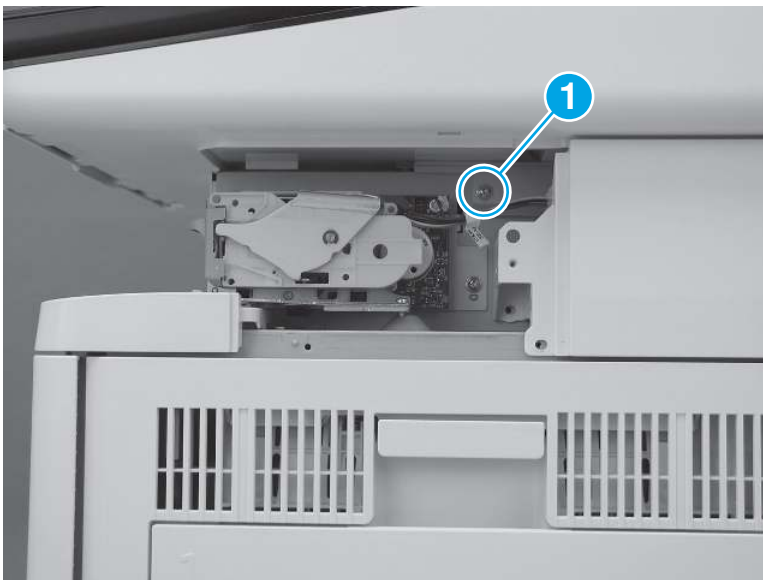
Figure 5-1786 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

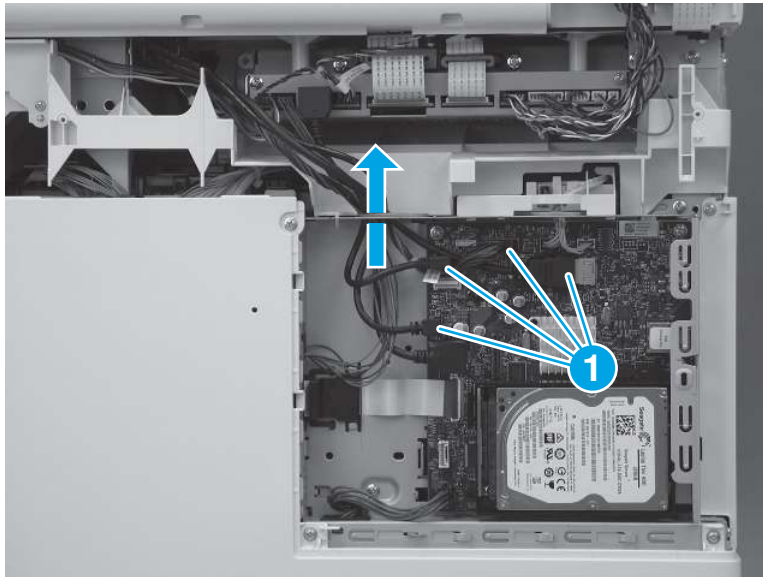
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-1787 Remove one screw



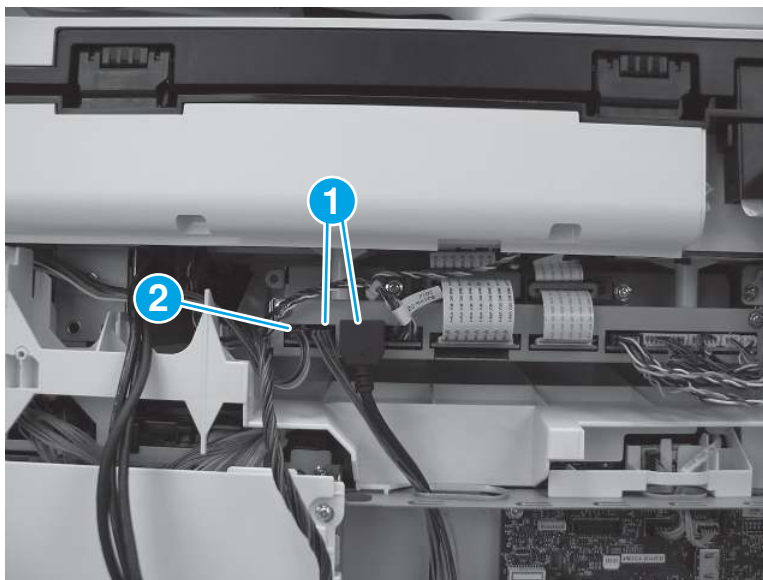
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-1788 Disconnect cables and connectors



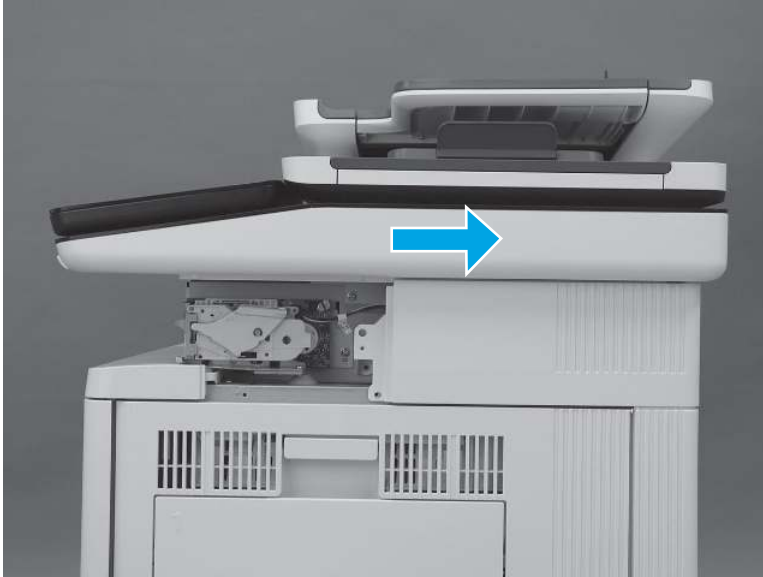
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-1789 Disconnect connectors



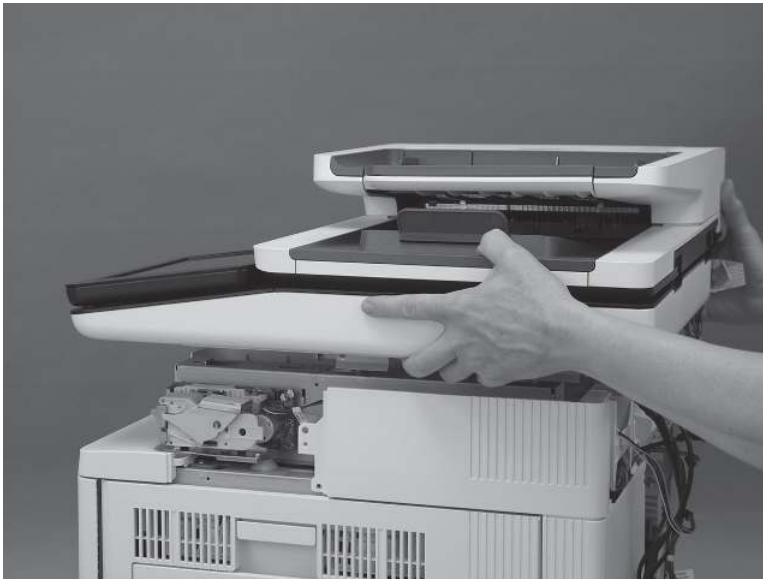
- Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1790 Release the image scanner




- Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1791 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

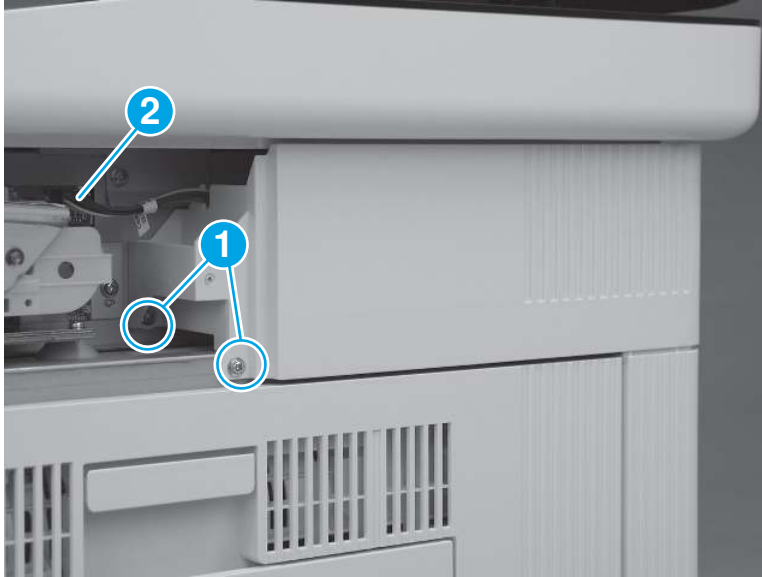
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

- At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1792 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


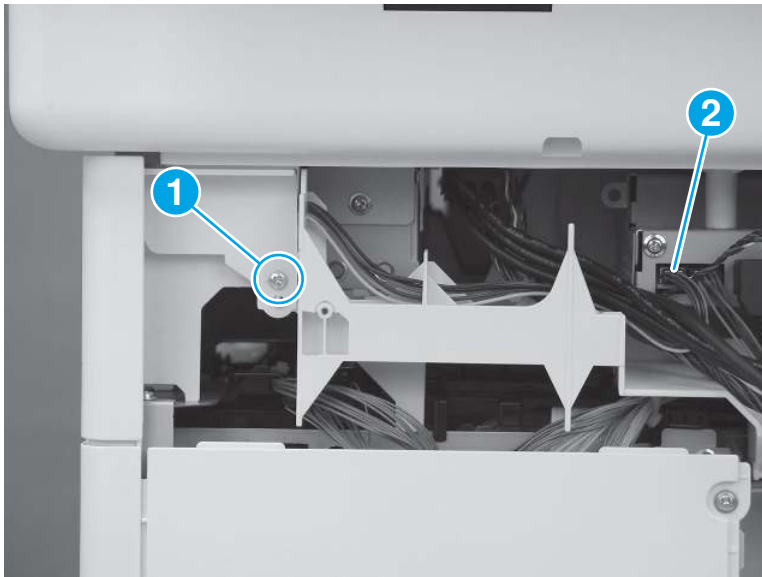
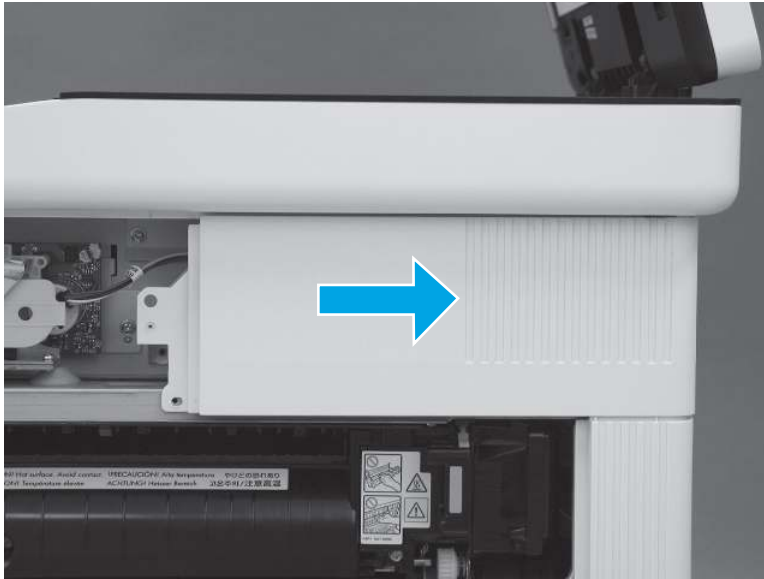
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1793 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

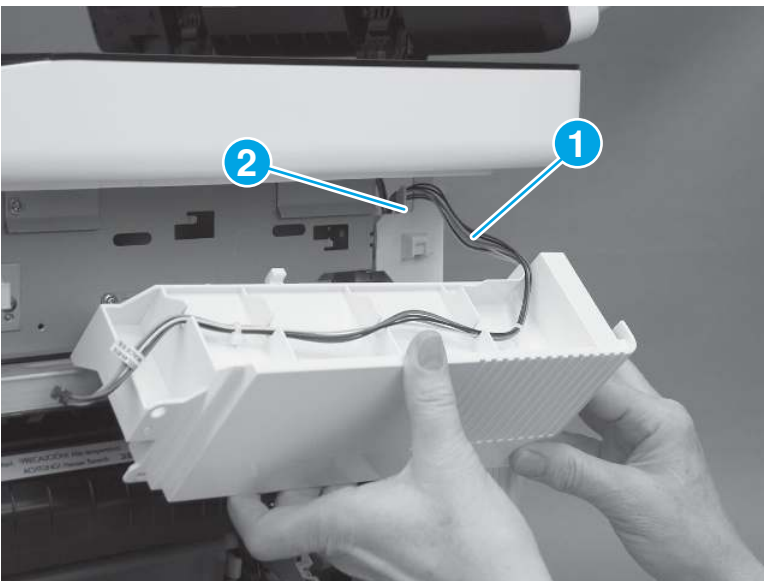
Figure 5-1794 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-1795 Remove the cover



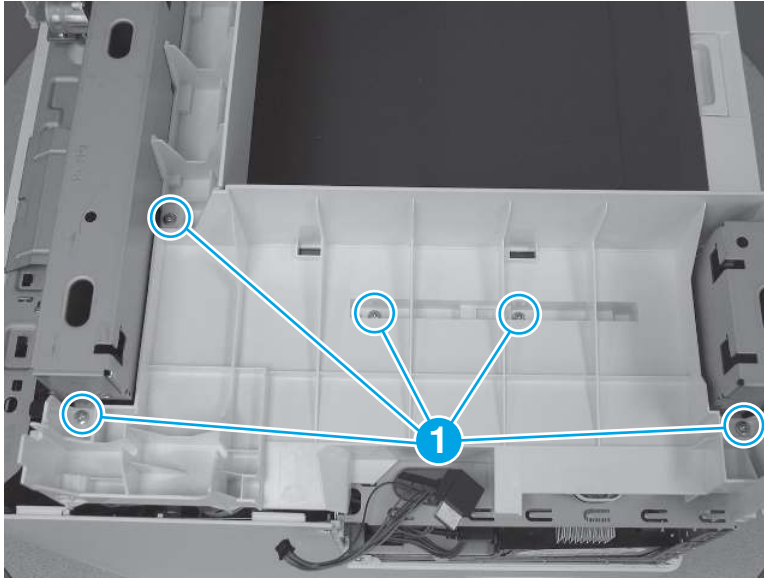
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

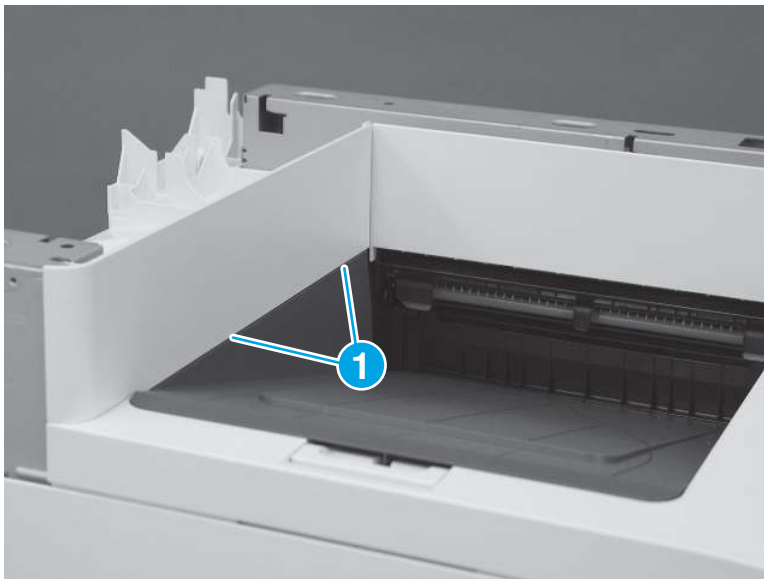
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1796 Remove five screws



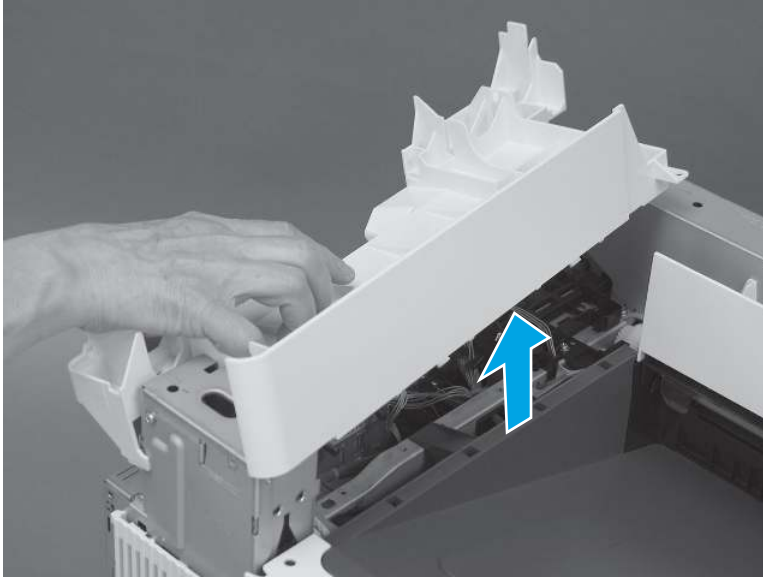
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1797 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-1798 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

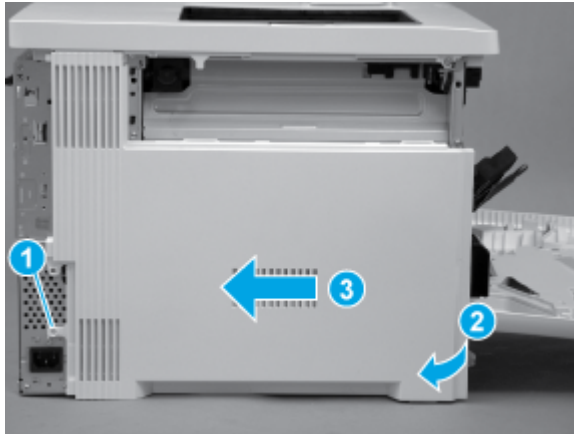
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1799 Remove one screw



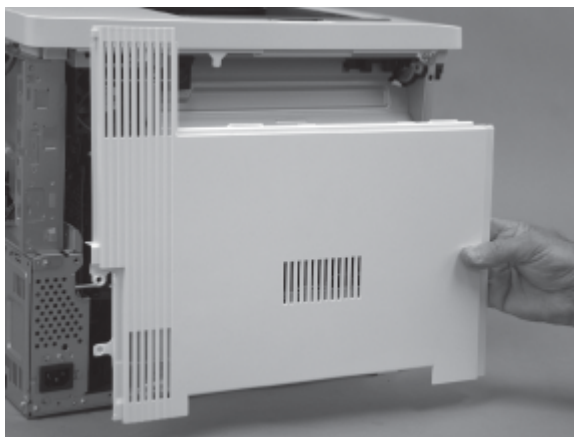
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1800 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1801 Remove the cover



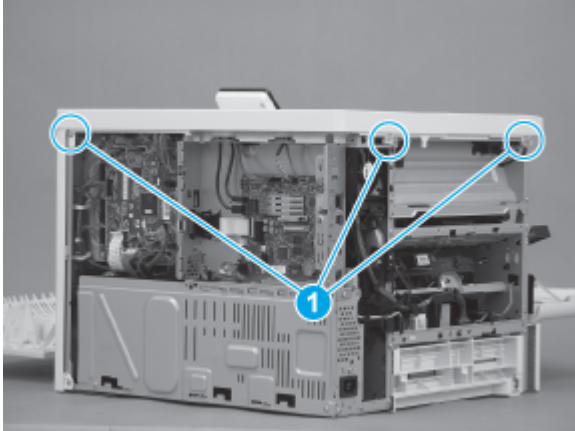
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1802 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1803 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


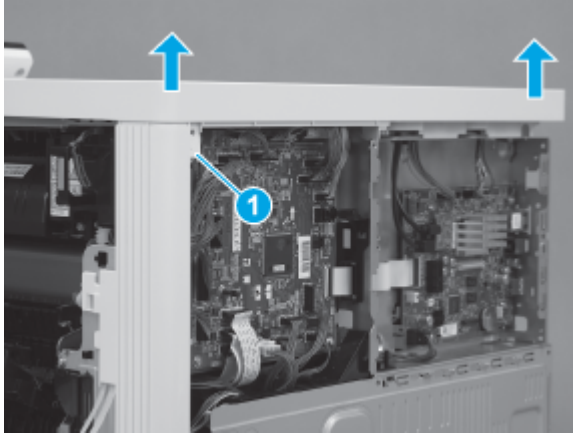
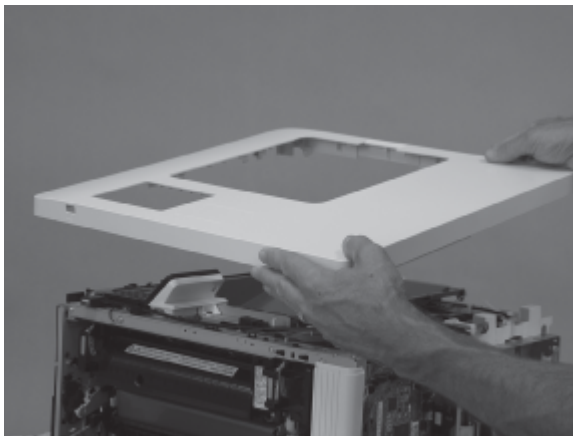
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-1804 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1805 Remove the cover

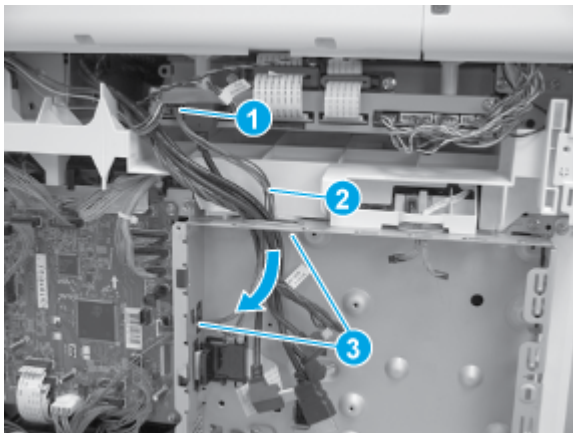


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

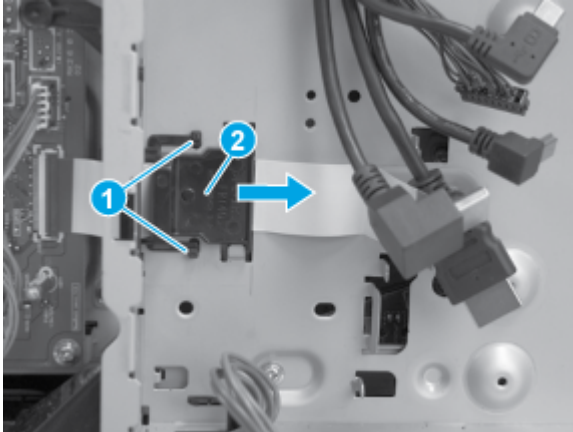
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1806 Disconnect one connector



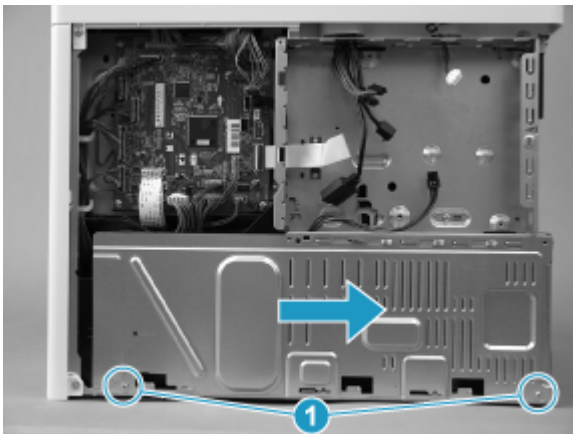
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1807 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

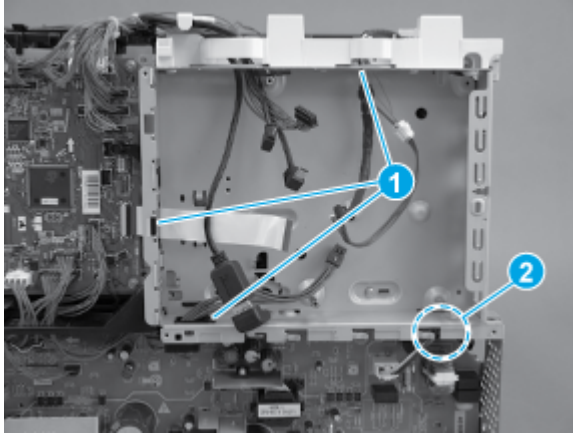
Figure 5-1808 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

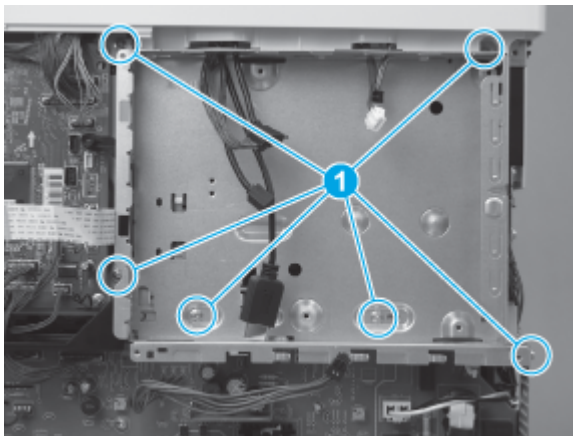
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1809 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



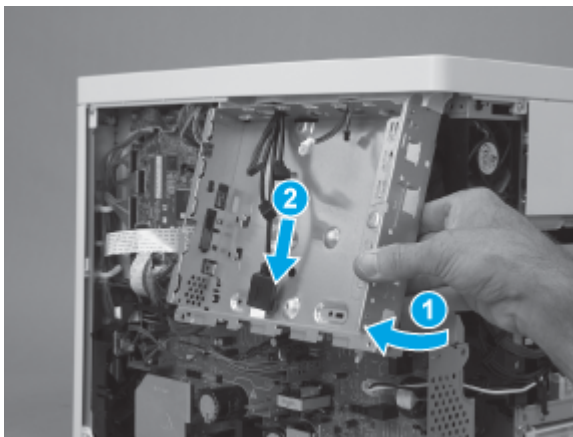
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1810 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1811 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


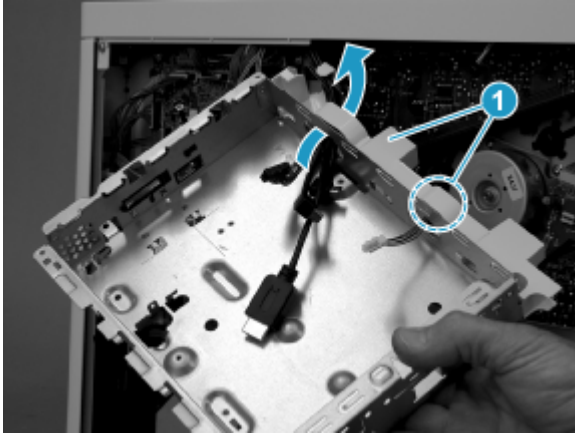

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1812 Remove the formatter case



Remove the right rear cover

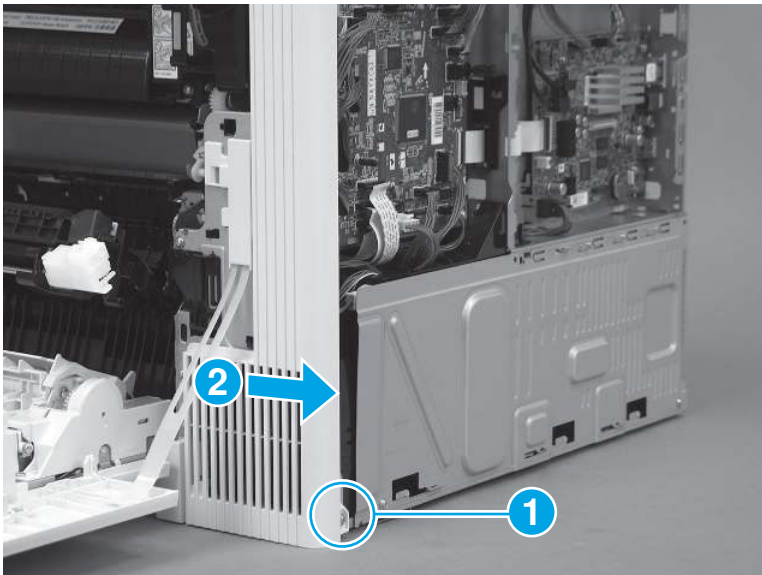
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

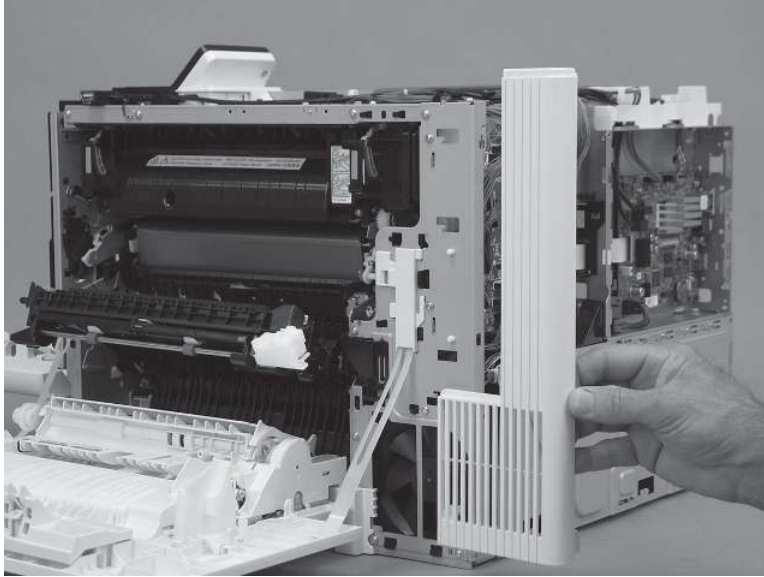
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-1813 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1814 Remove the cover



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.



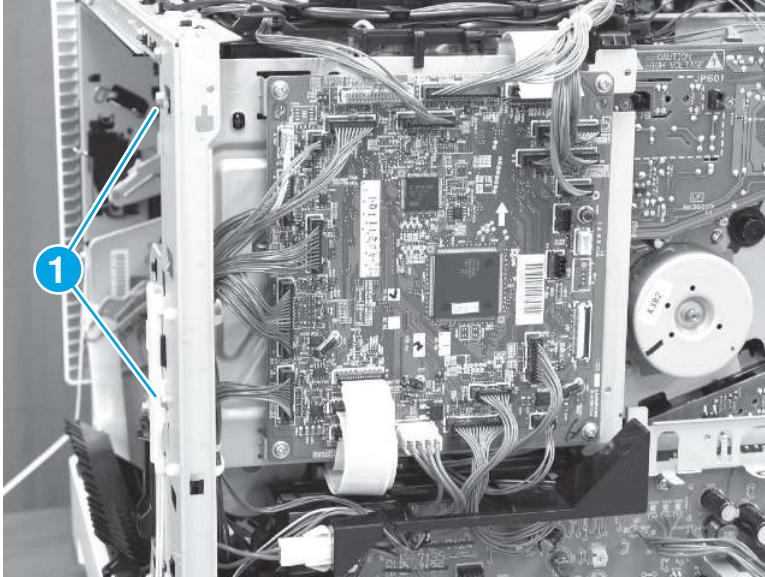
NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

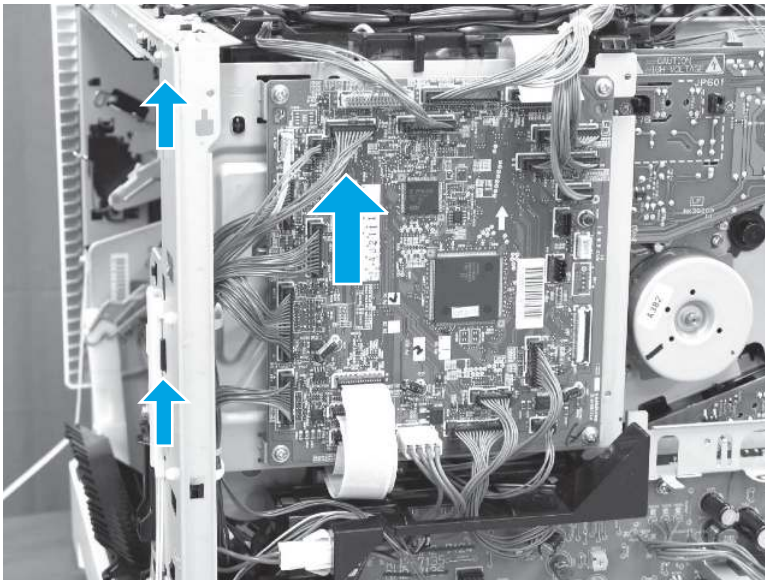
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-1815 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-1816 Remove the plate



Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

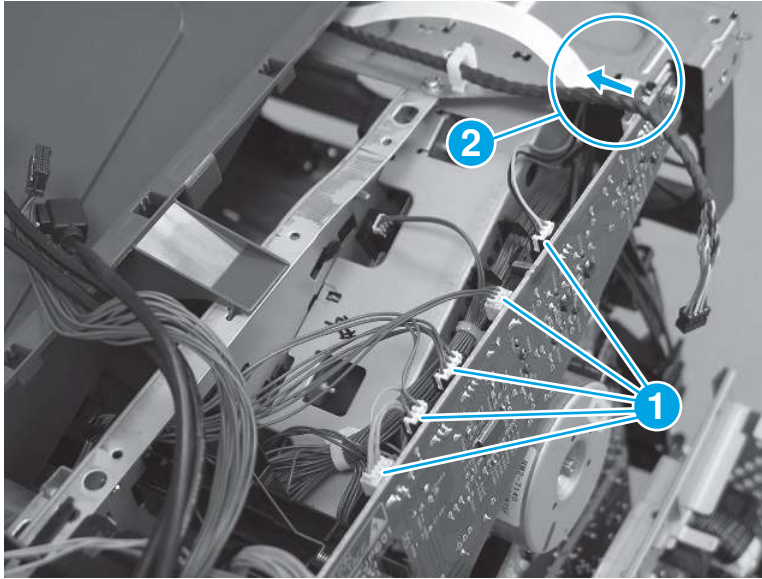
Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply T.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

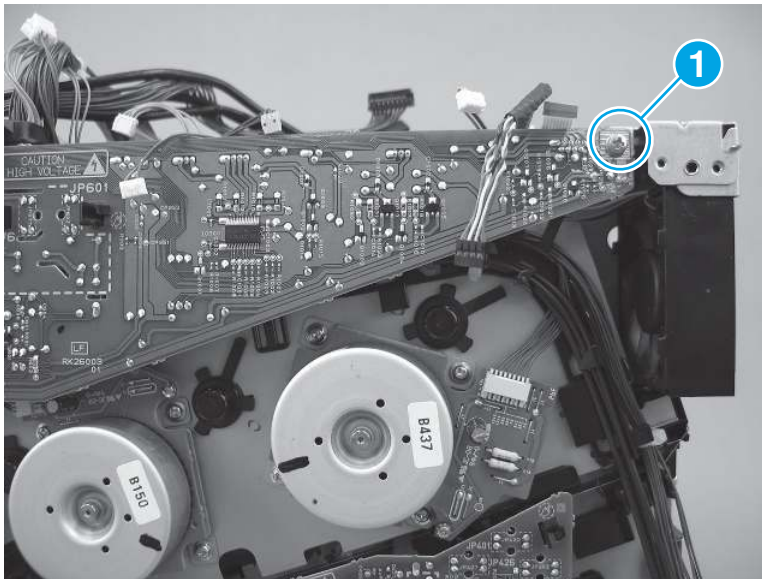
1. Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), and then disconnect one flat cable (callout 2).

Figure 5-1817 Disconnect five connectors and one flat cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

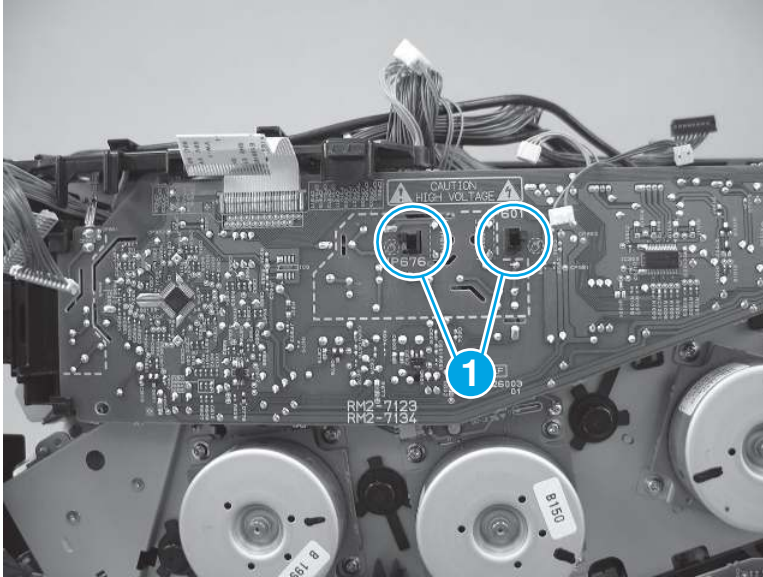
Figure 5-1818 Remove one screw



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then separate the HVPST from the printer.

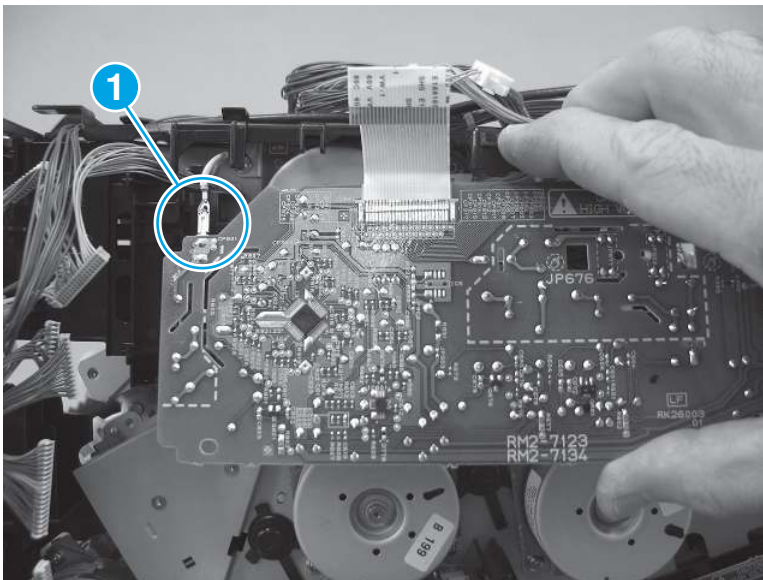
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the HVPST. It is still connected to the printer by ground wire harness.

Figure 5-1819 Release the HVPST



4. Release one ground wire connector (callout 1), and then remove the HVPST.

Figure 5-1820 Remove the HVPST

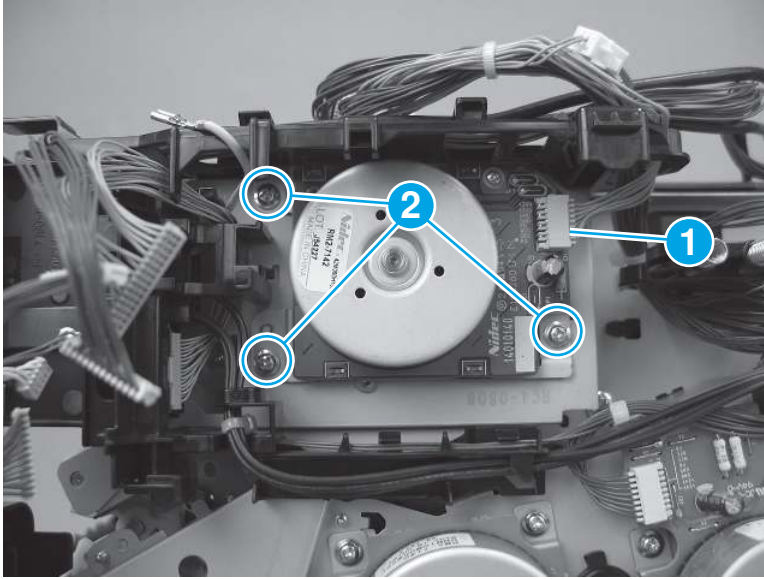


Remove fuser motor (M4)

Follow these steps to remove the fuser motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor.

Figure 5-1821 Remove the motor



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Environmental sensor printed circuit assembly (PCA)

Learn about removing and replacing the environmental sensor PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-77 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-7154-000CN	Environmental sensor PCA

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

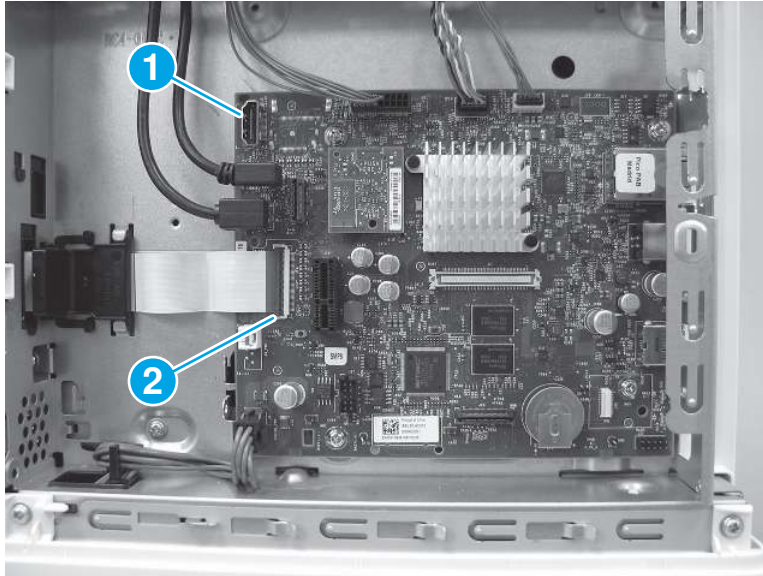
The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57

- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)

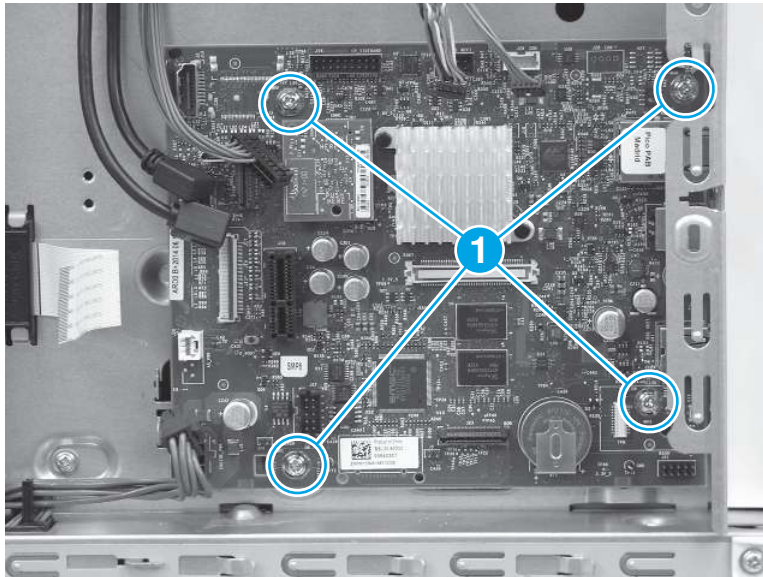
IMPORTANT: The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1822 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..

Figure 5-1823 Remove four screws



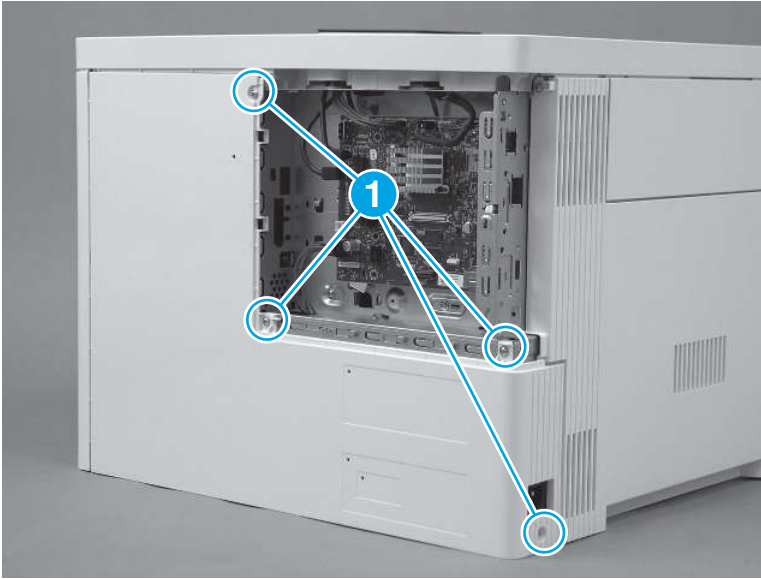
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: This procedure is for SFP models only.

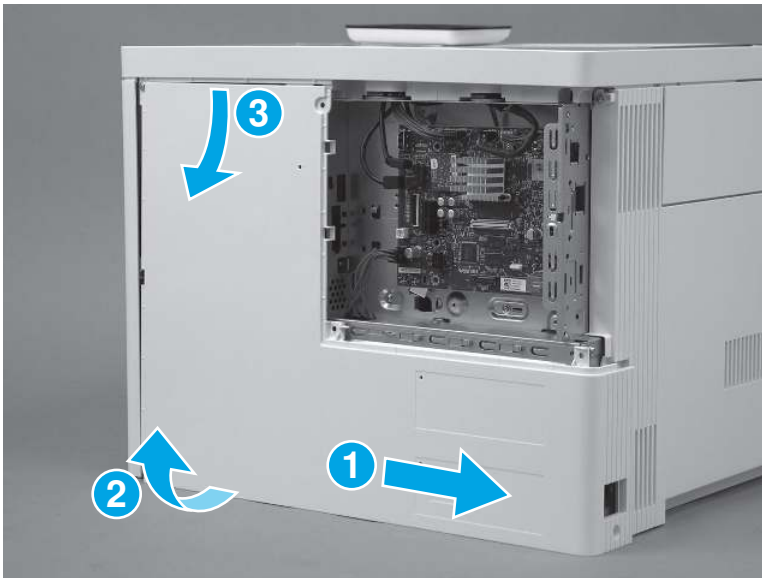
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1824 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1825 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

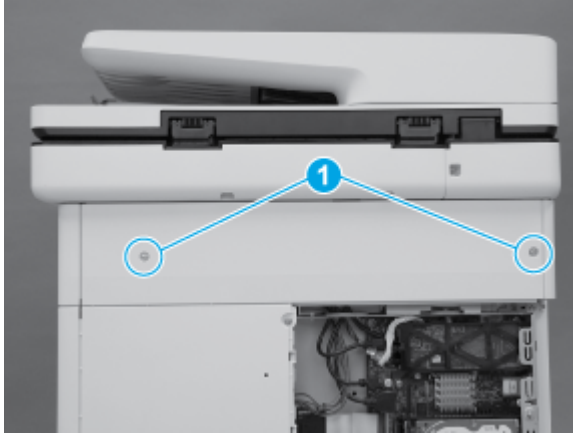
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

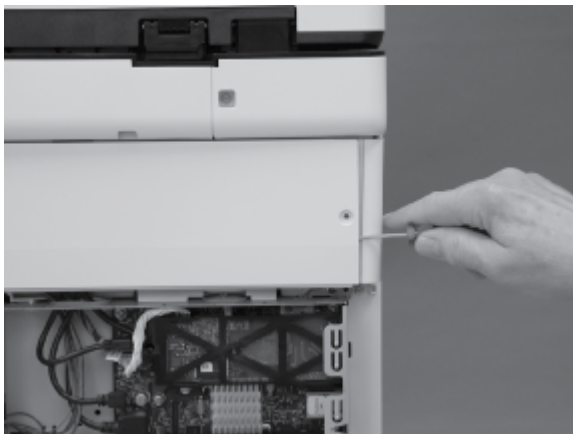
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1826 Remove two screws



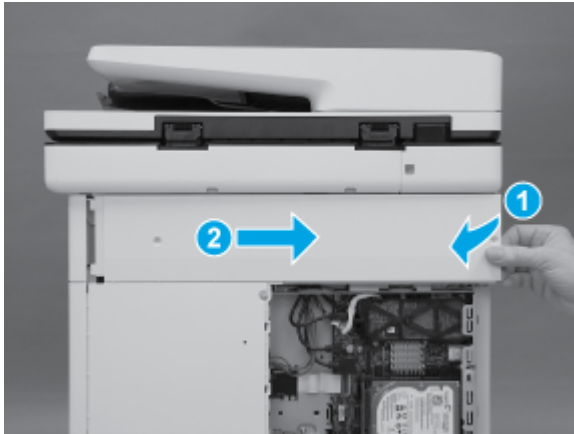
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1827 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1828 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1829 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1830 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1831 Remove the cover



Remove the environmental sensor PCA

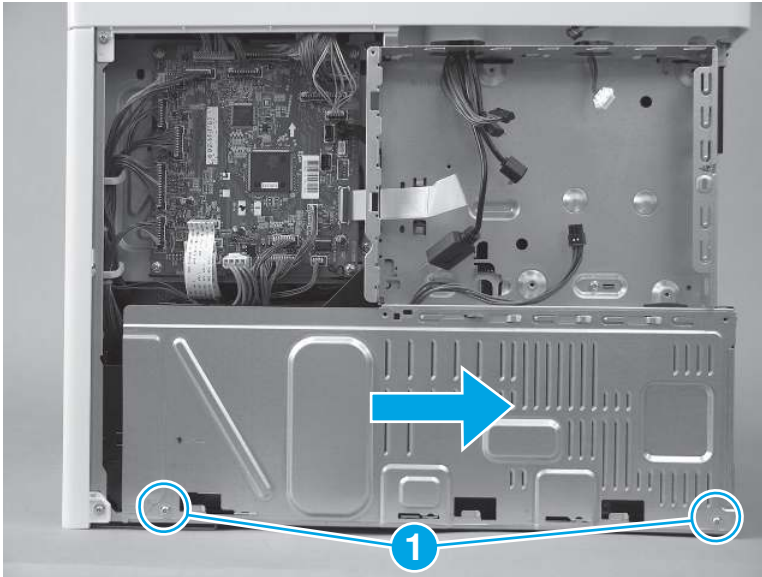
Follow these steps to remove the environmental sensor PCA.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

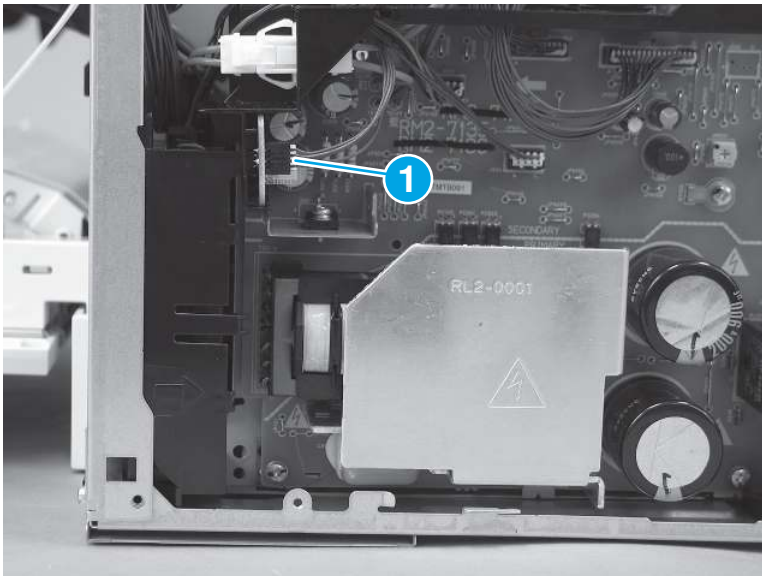
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1832 Remove the LVPS cover



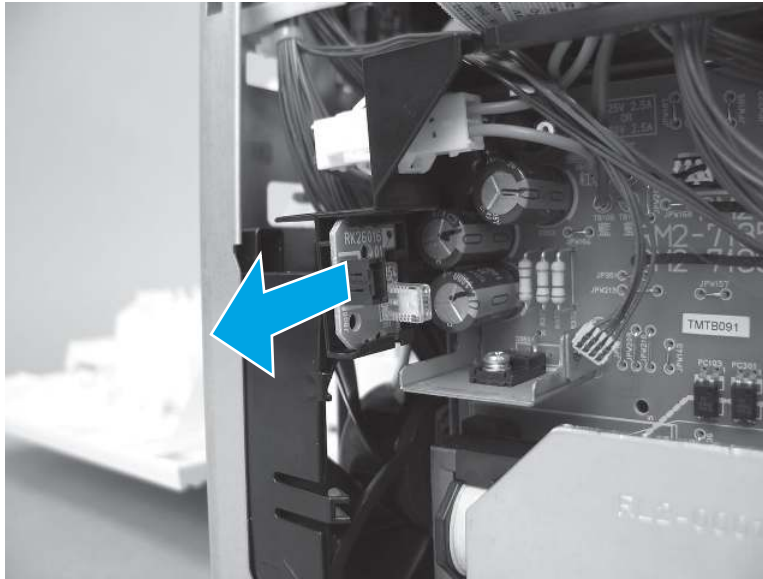
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1833 Disconnect one connector



3. Slide the environmental sensor PCA out of the holder to remove it.

Figure 5-1834 Remove the sensor



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Fuser drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-78 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0091-010CN	Fuser drive assembly (M553n)
RM2-0009-000CN	Fuser drive assembly (M552, M553dn/x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E 55040, E57540)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

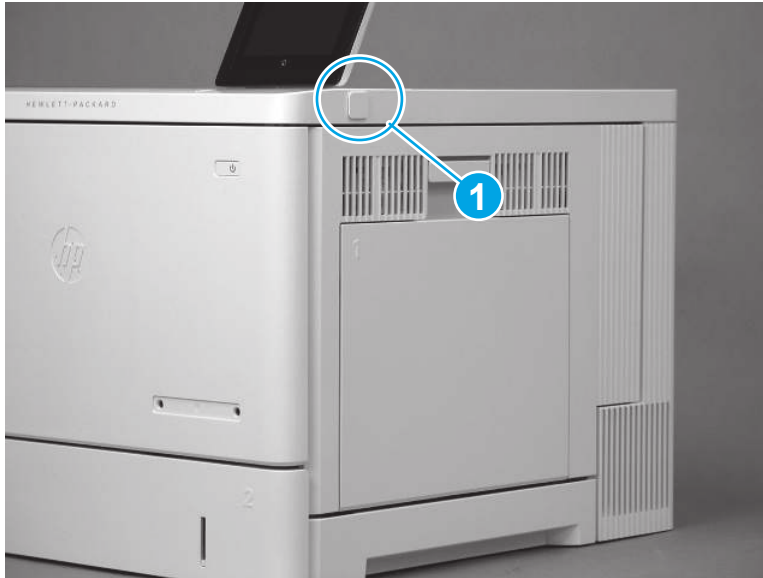
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1835 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1836 Remove the cover



Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

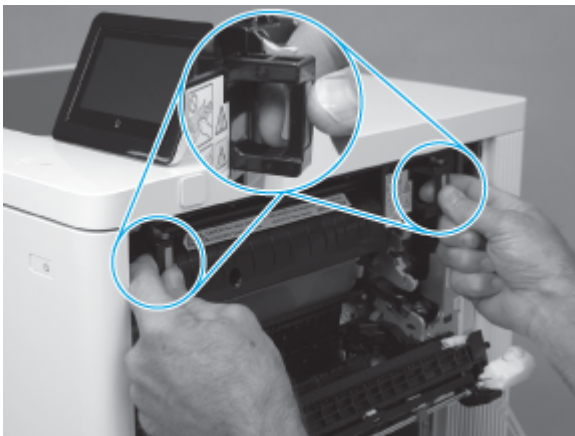
⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the printer power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

Figure 5-1837 Open the right door



2. Grasp the two fuser handles, and then squeeze the two blue triggers on the handles to release the fuser.

Figure 5-1838 Release the fuser




3. Slide the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1839 Remove the fuser



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1840 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1841 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1842 Remove the cover

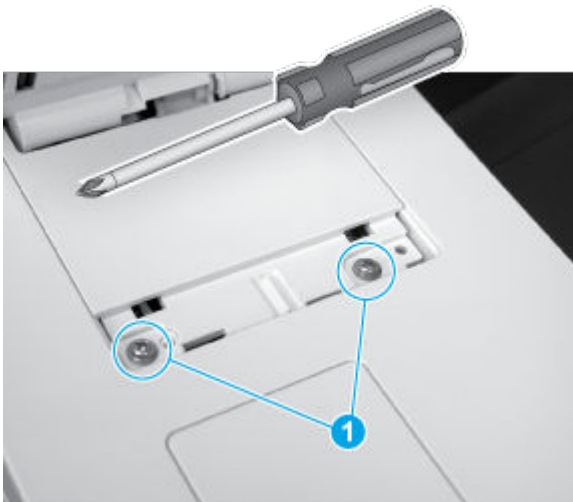


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1843 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1844 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

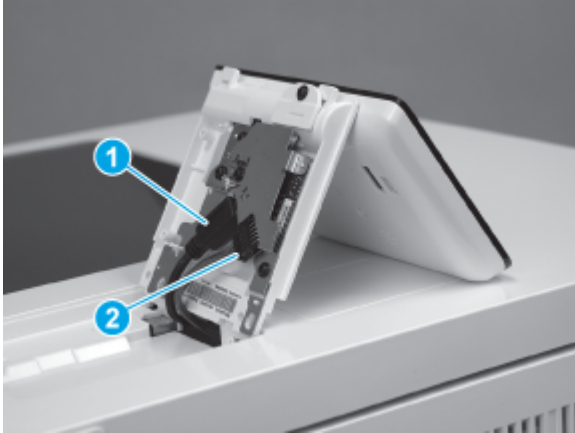
Figure 5-1845 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1846 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

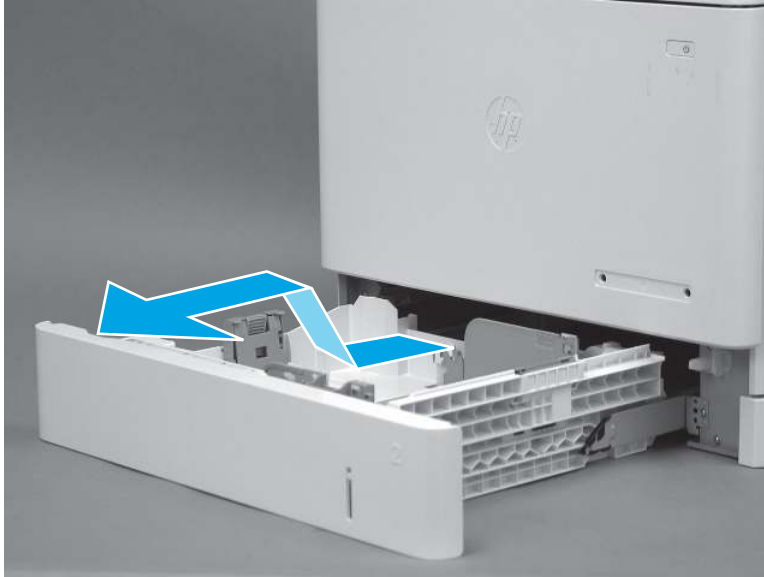
Figure 5-1847 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** **For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-1848 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1849 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1850 Open the TCU

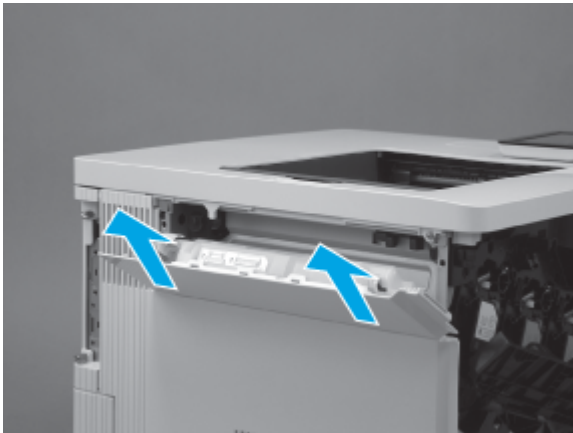


3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1851 Remove the TCU

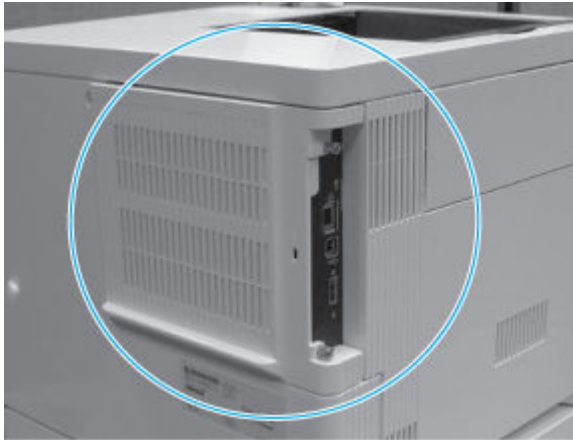


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

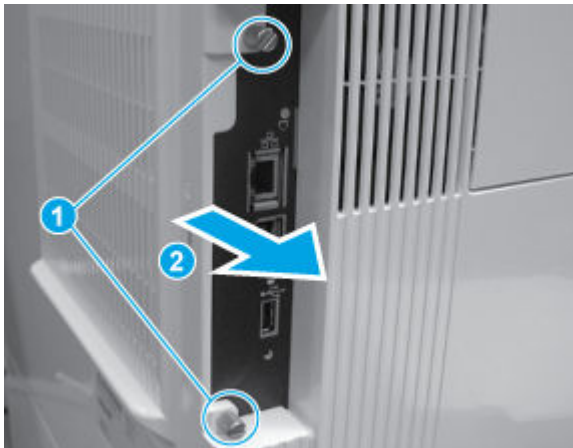
Figure 5-1852 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1853 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

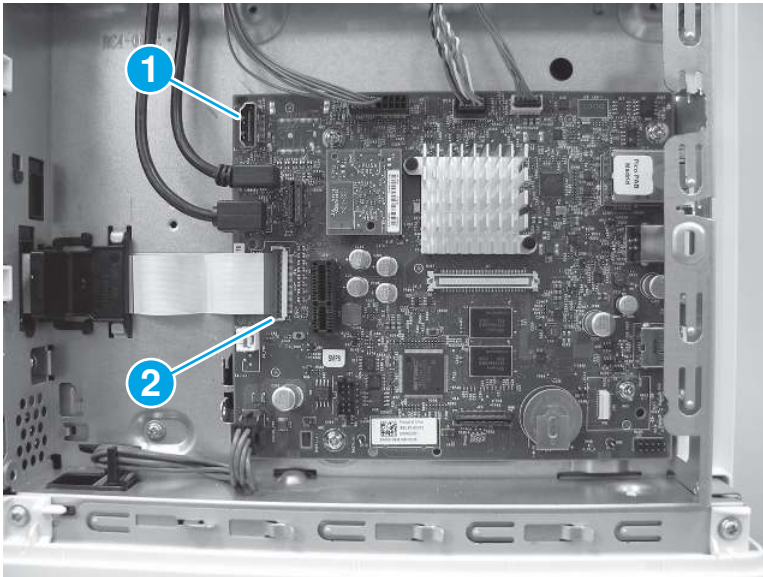
The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)

- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)

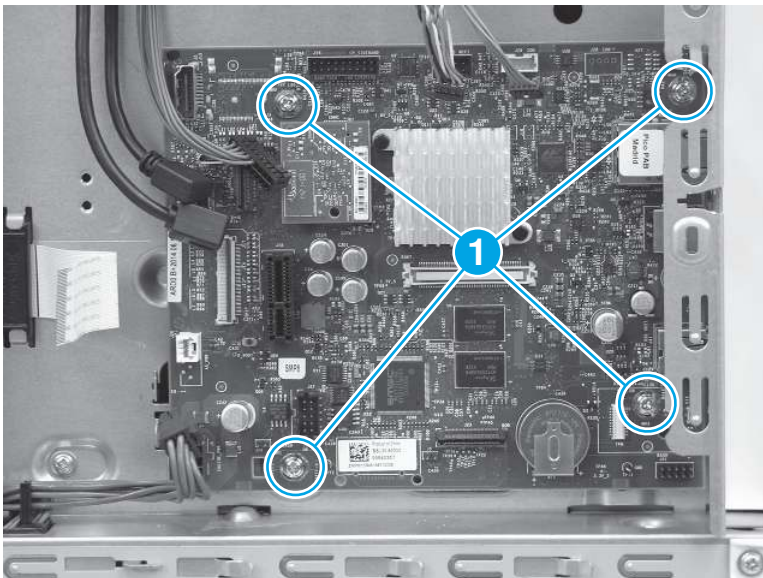
IMPORTANT: The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1854 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1855 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

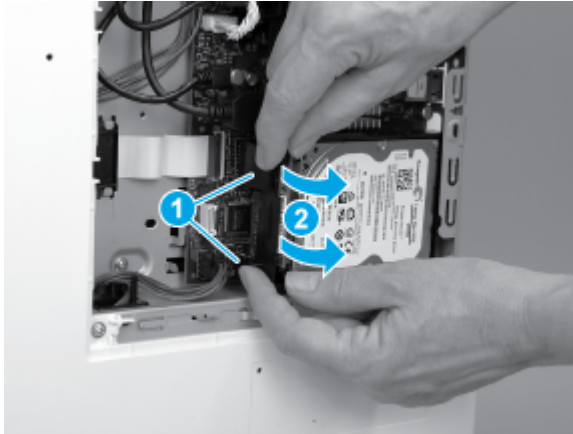
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1856 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1857 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

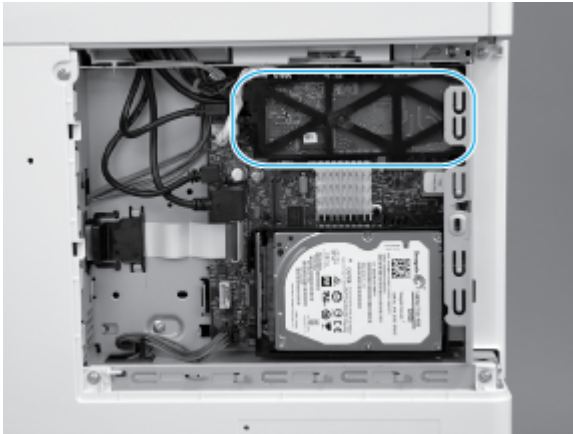
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

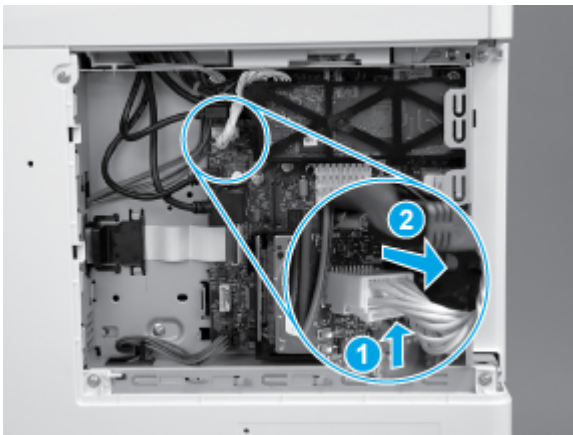
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1858 Locate the fax PCA



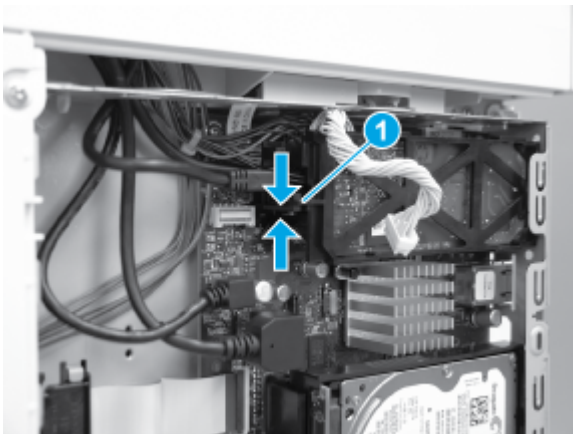
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1859 Disconnect one connector



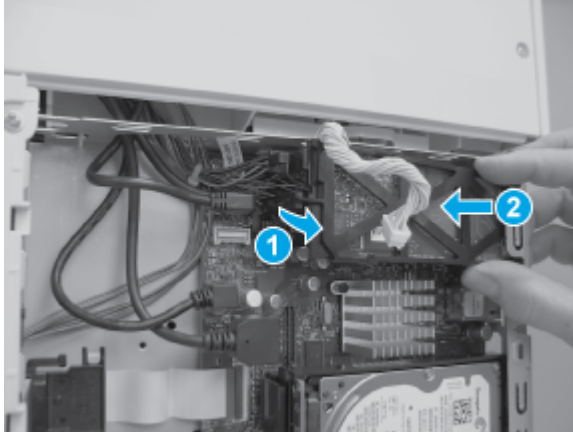
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1860 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1861 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


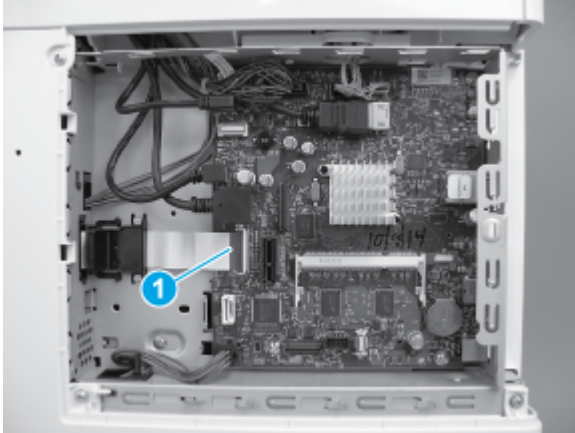
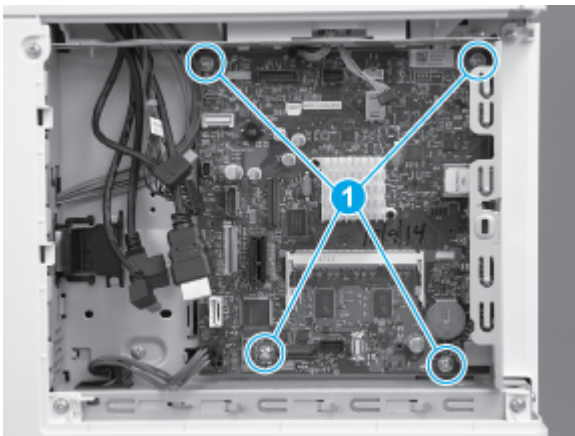
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1862 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1863 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1864 Remove the formatter



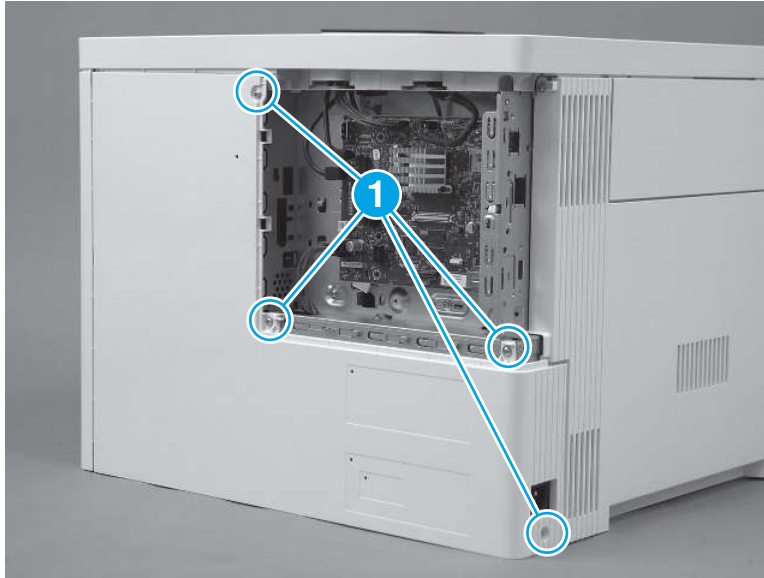
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

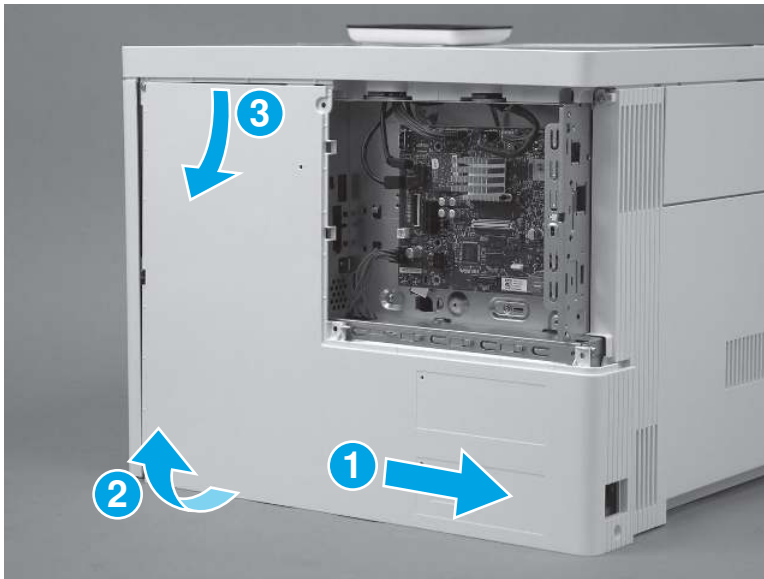
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1865 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1866 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

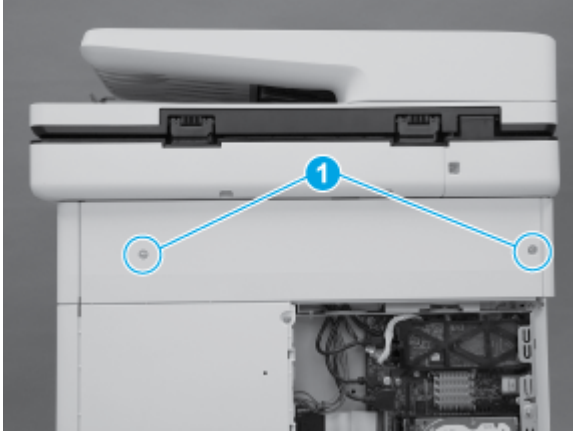
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

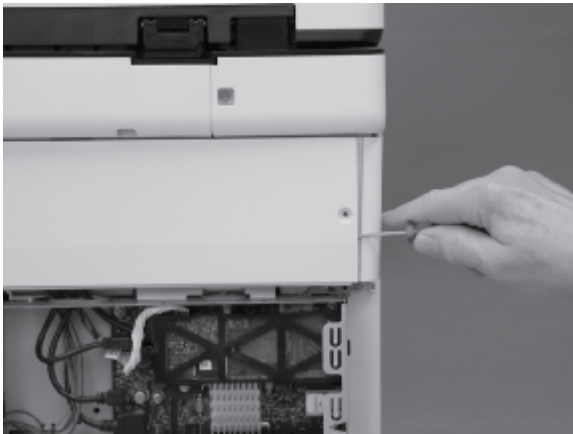
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1867 Remove two screws



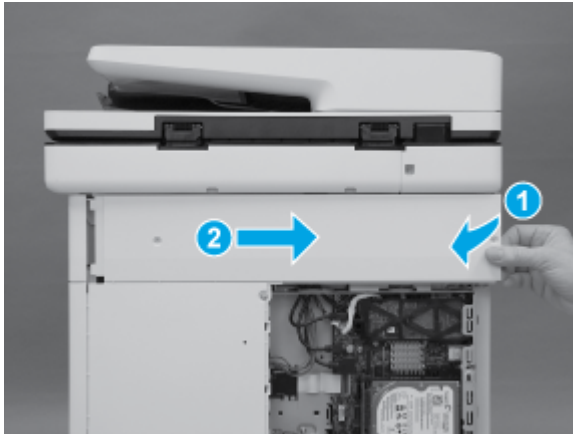
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1868 Release the right edge



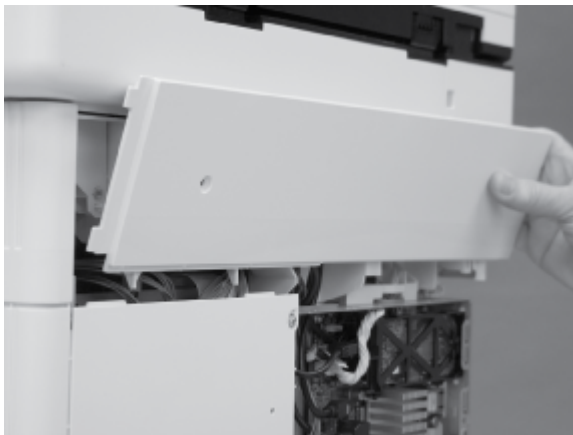
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1869 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1870 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1871 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1872 Remove the cover



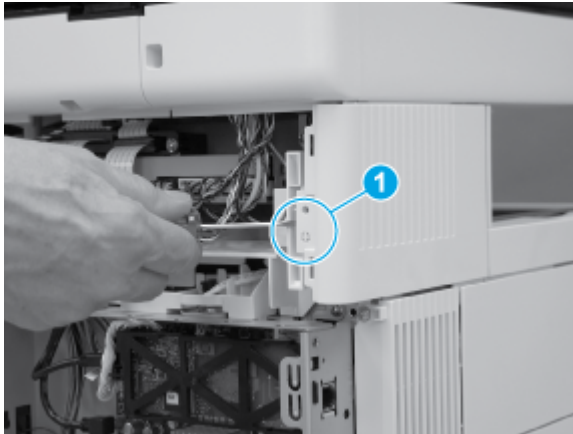
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1873 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-1874 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1875 Remove the left upper cover



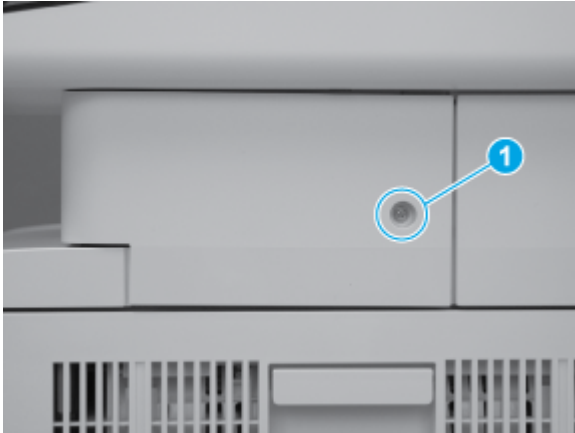
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1876 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1877 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1878 Rotate the cover



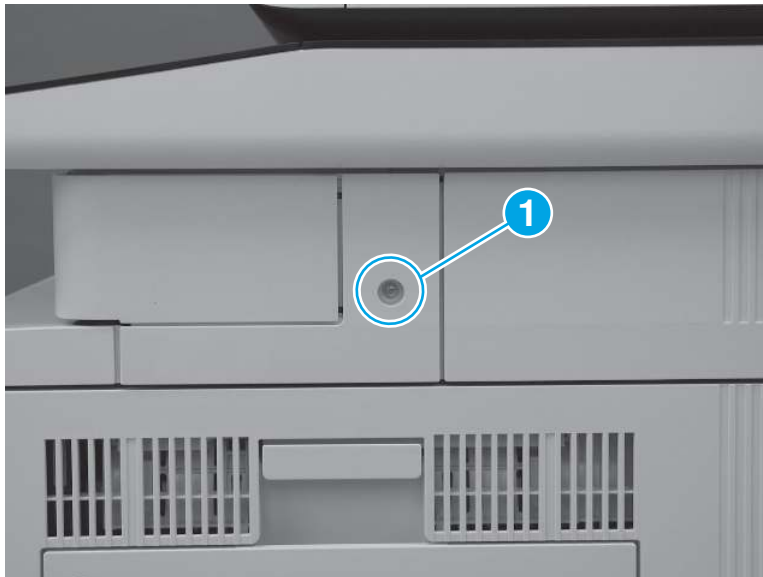
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1879 Remove one screw



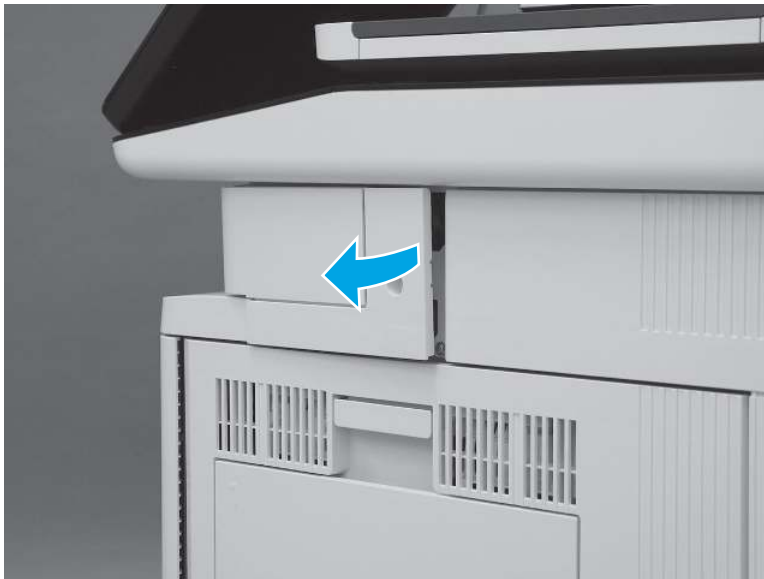
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1880 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1881 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1882 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

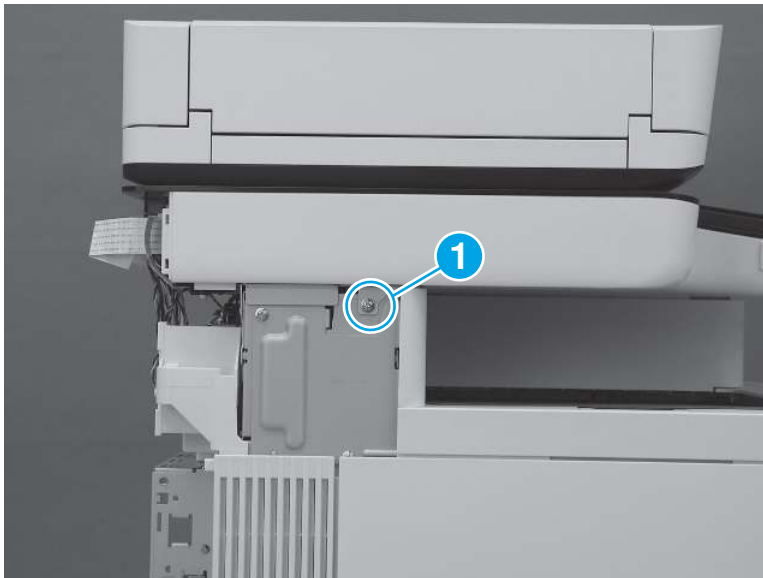
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

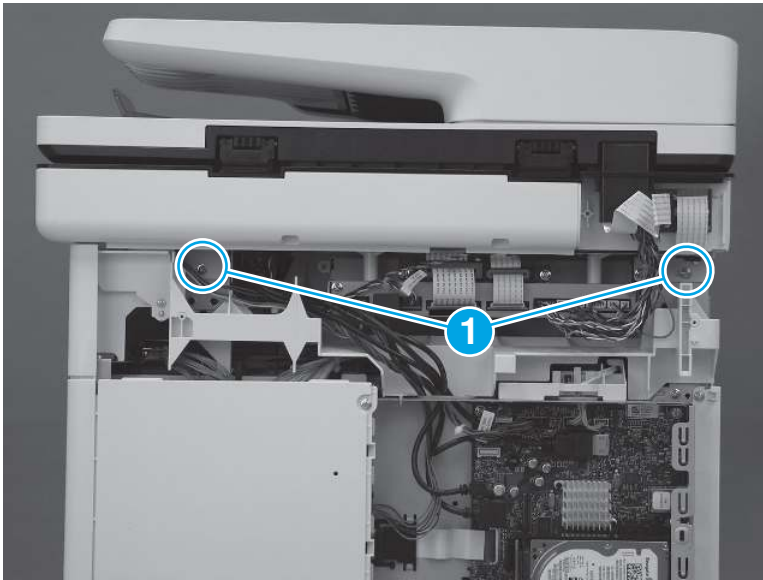
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1883 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

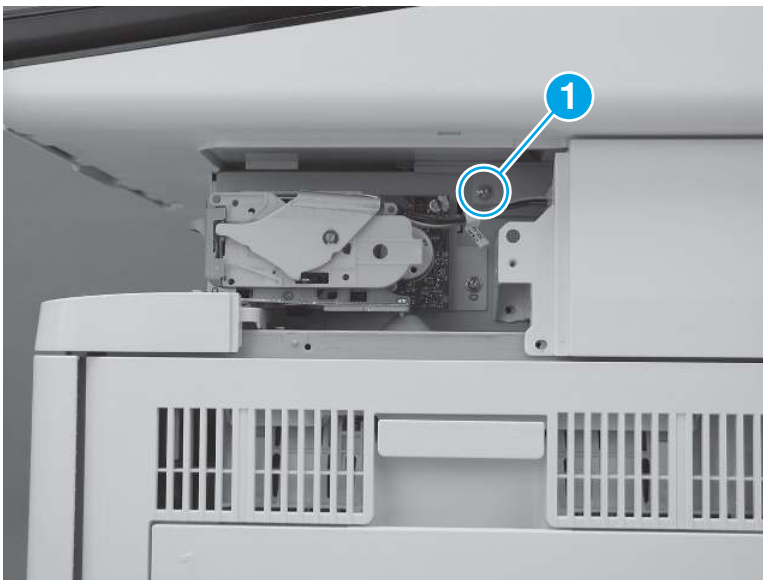
Figure 5-1884 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

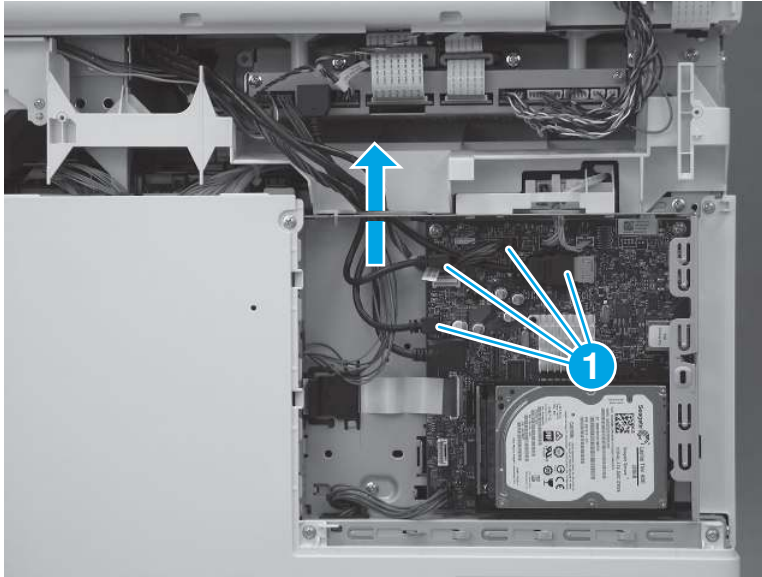
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-1885 Remove one screw



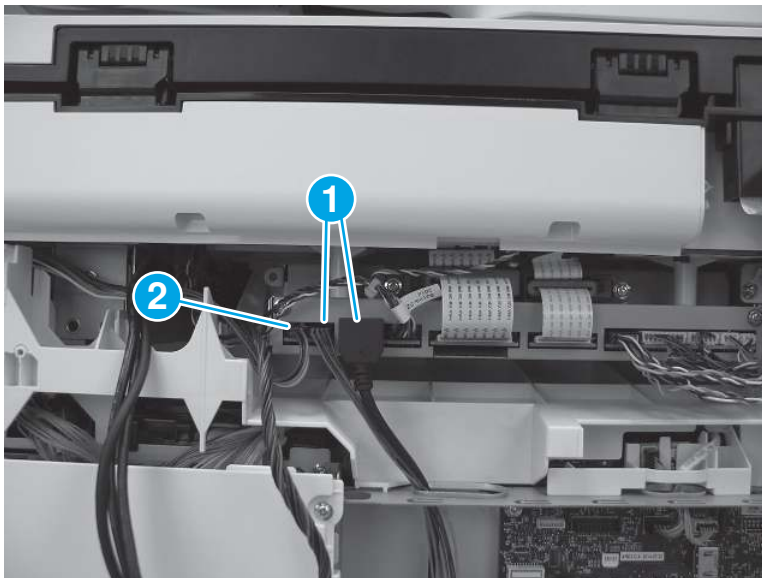
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-1886 Disconnect cables and connectors



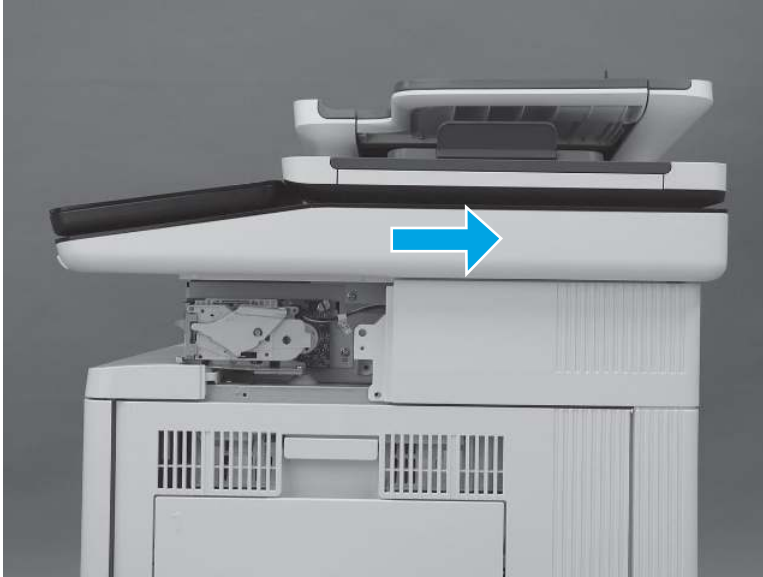
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-1887 Disconnect connectors



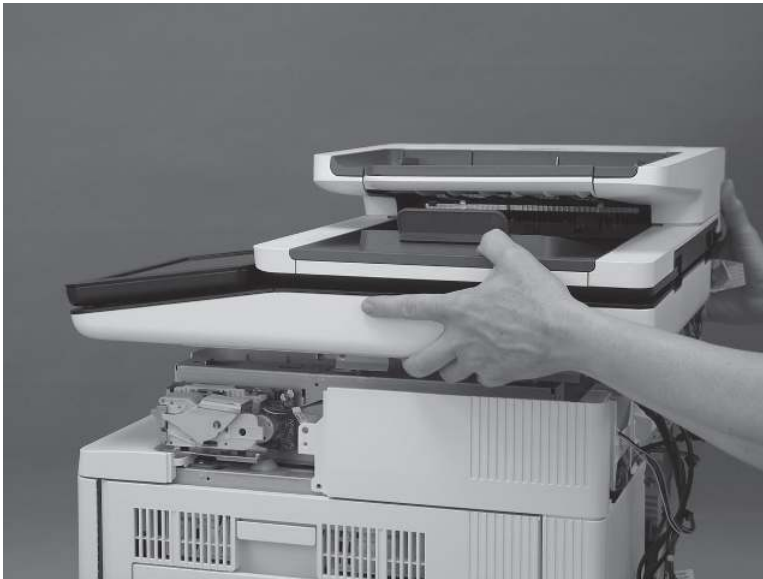
- Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1888 Release the image scanner




- Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-1889 Remove the ISA



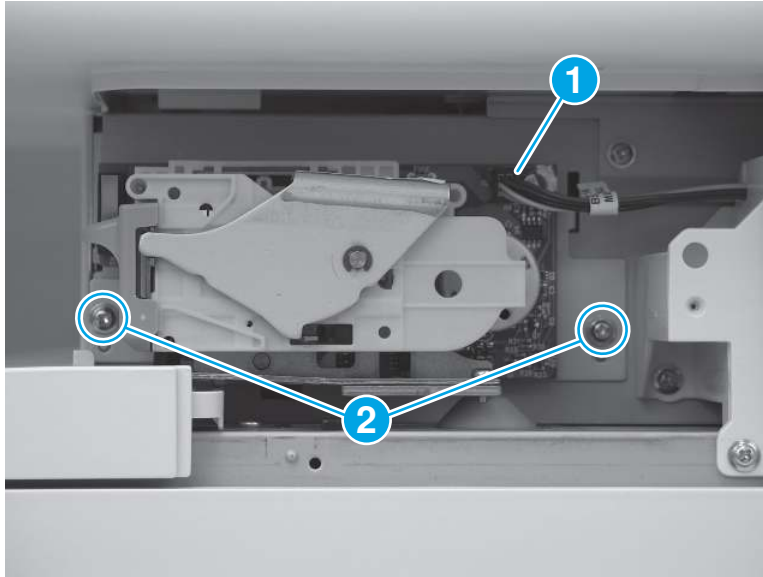
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

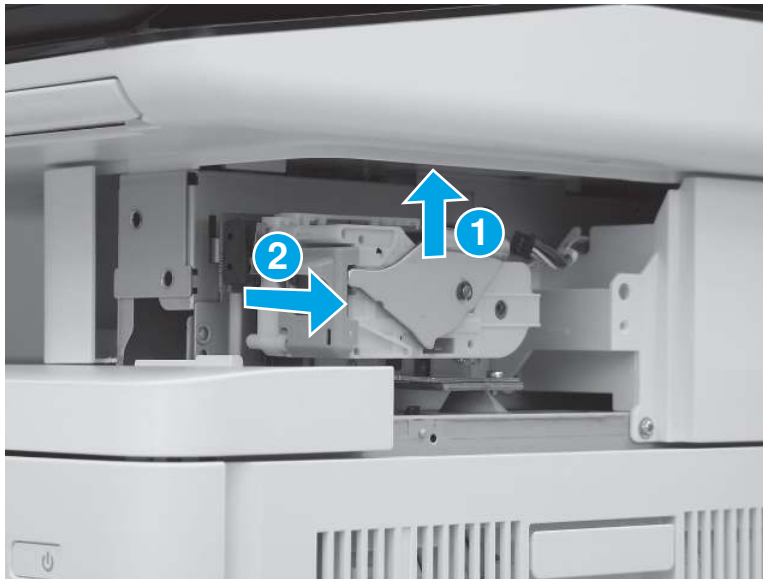
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-1890 Disconnect connector and remove screws




2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1891 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

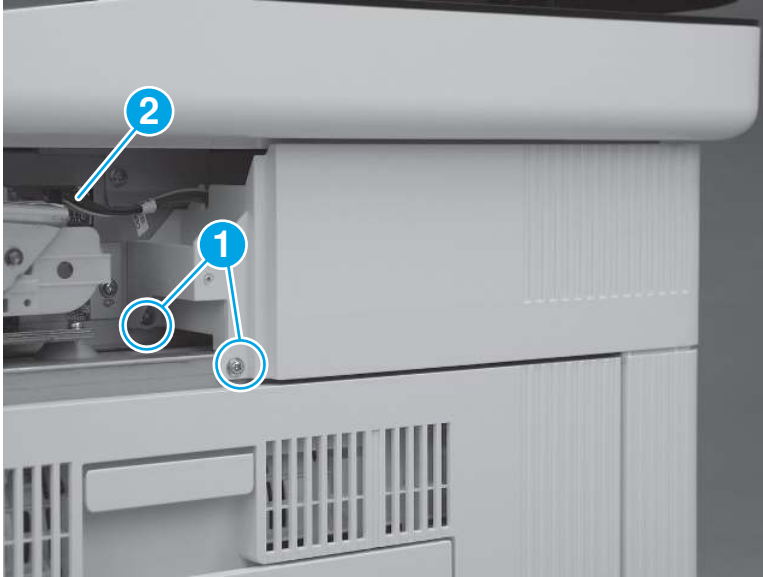
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-1892 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


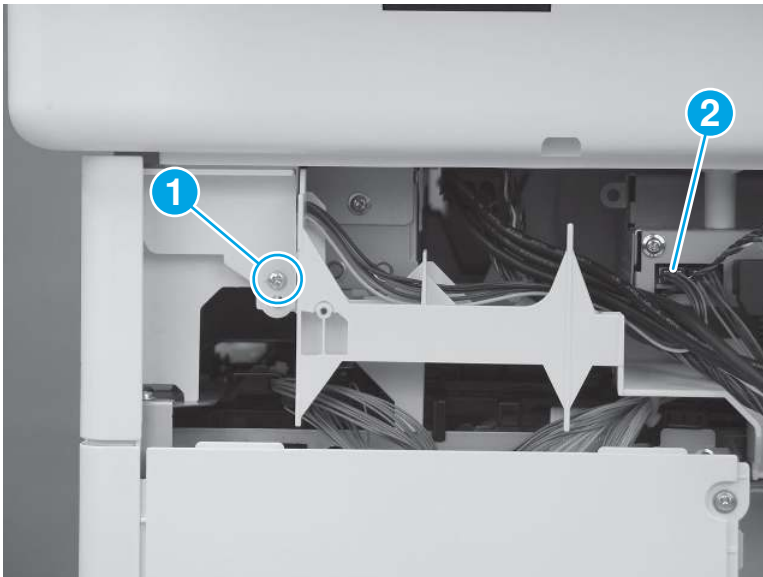
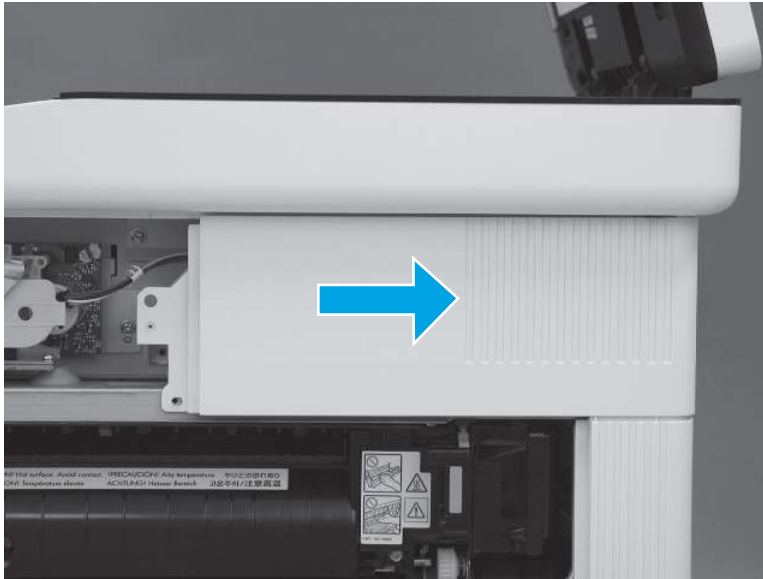
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1893 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

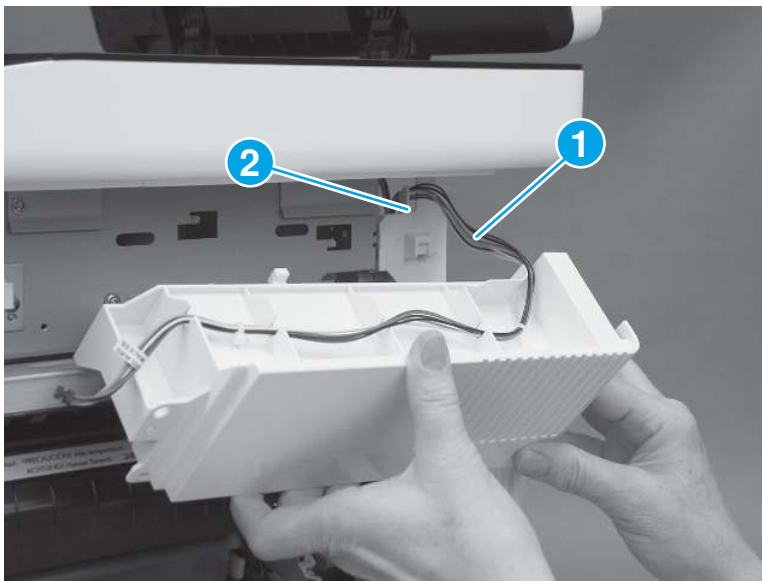
Figure 5-1894 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-1895 Remove the cover



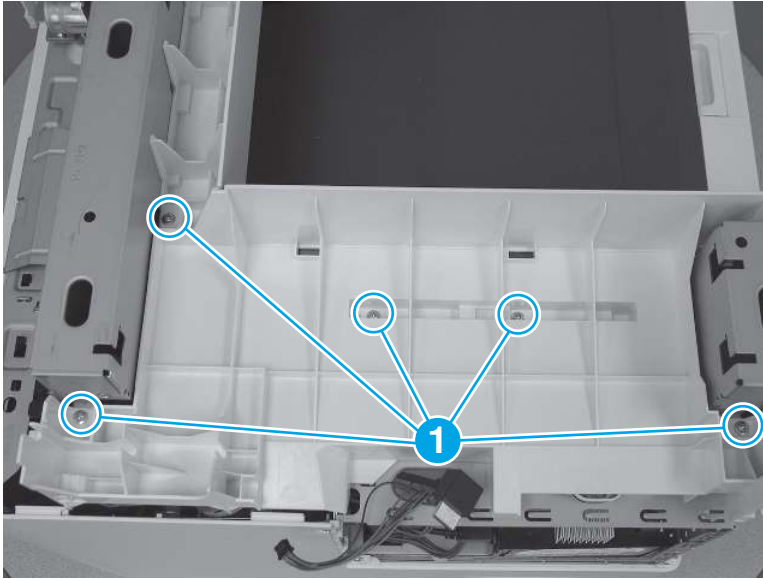
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

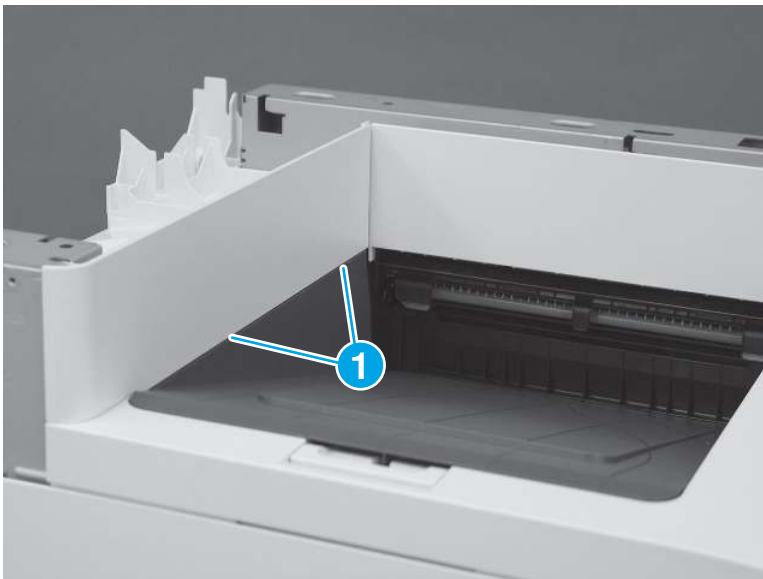
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1896 Remove five screws



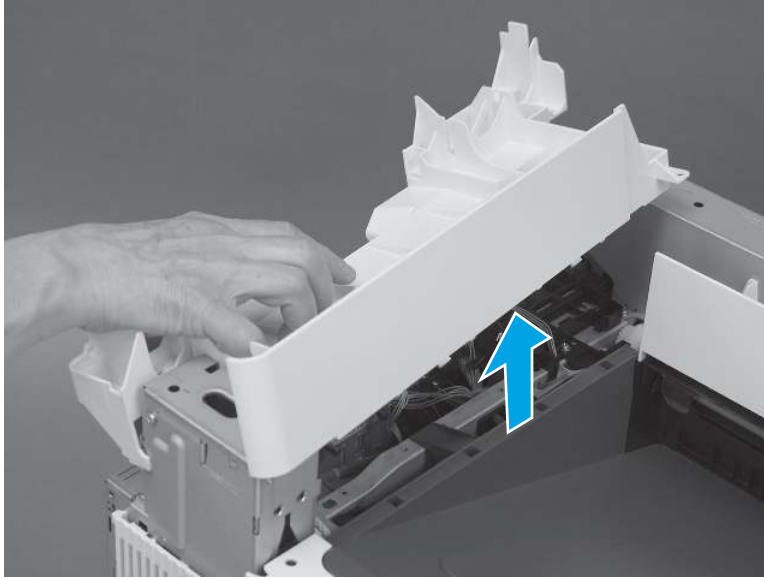
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1897 Release two tabs




3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-1898 Remove the cover



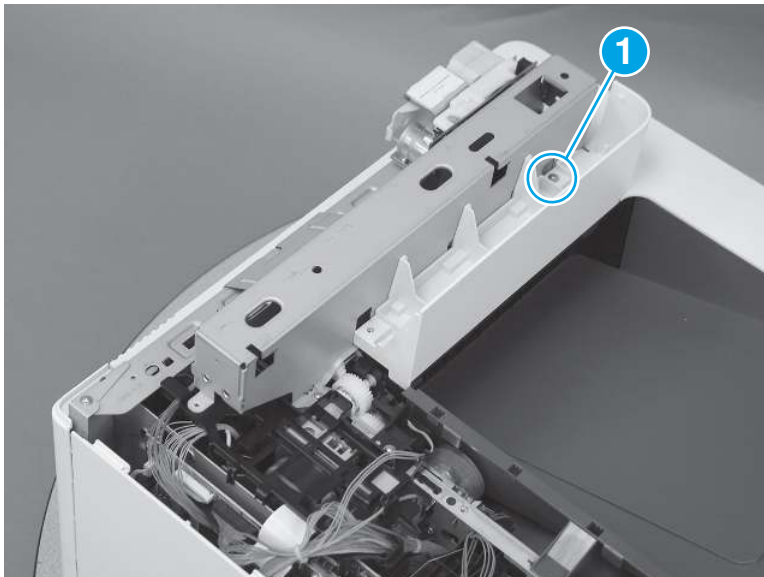
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

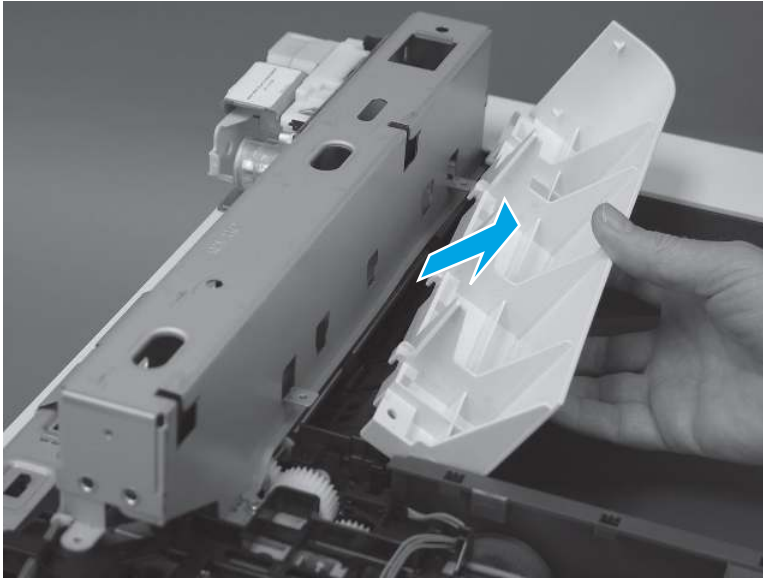
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1899 Remove one screw




2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1900 Remove the cover



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


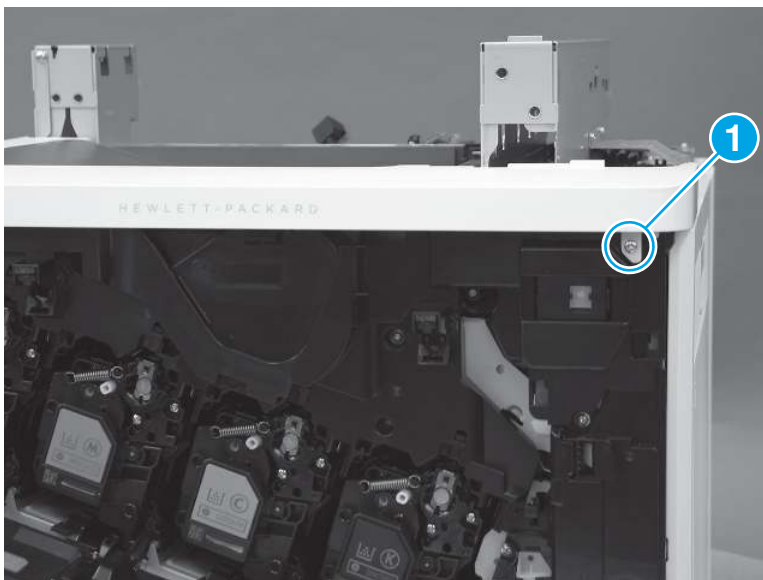
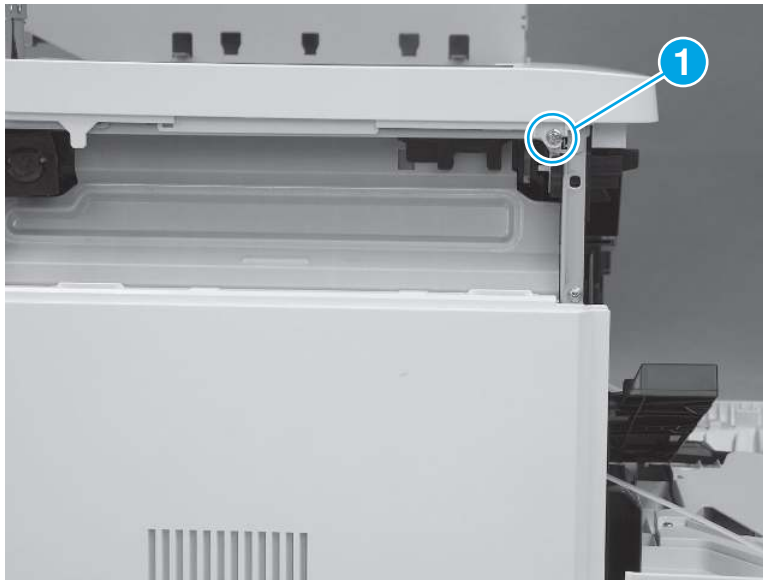
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-1901 Remove one screw



2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1902 Remove one screw



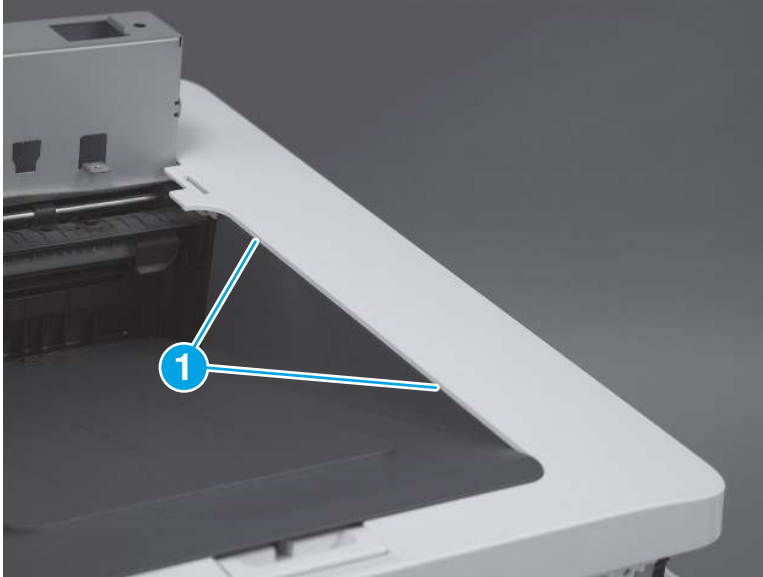
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1903 Release one tab



4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-1904 Remove the cover



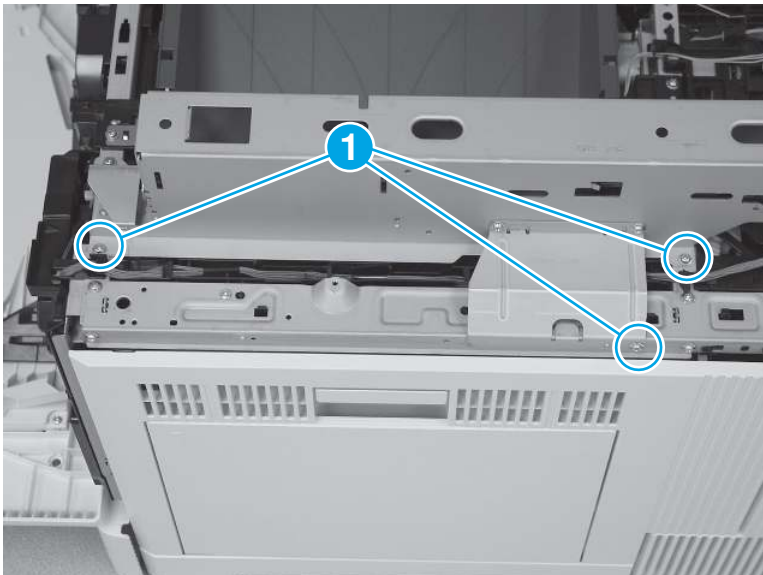
Remove the top bracket (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top bracket.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

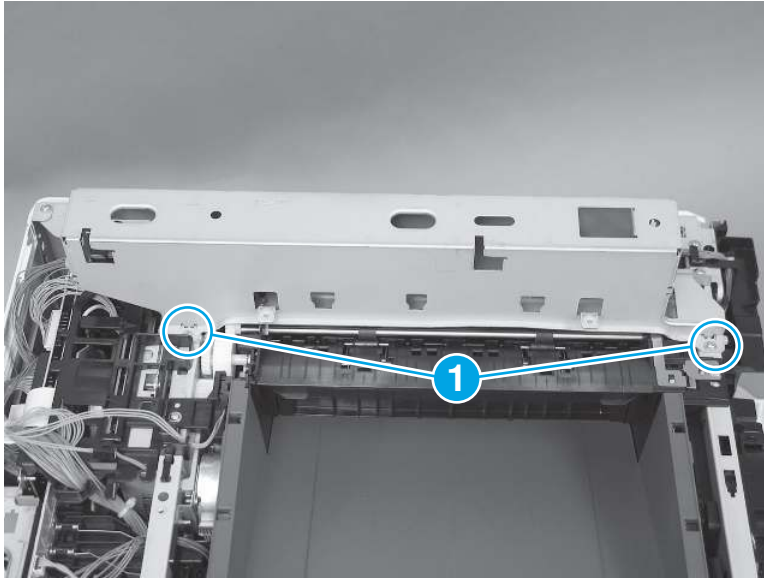
1. At the top of the printer, remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1905 Remove three screws



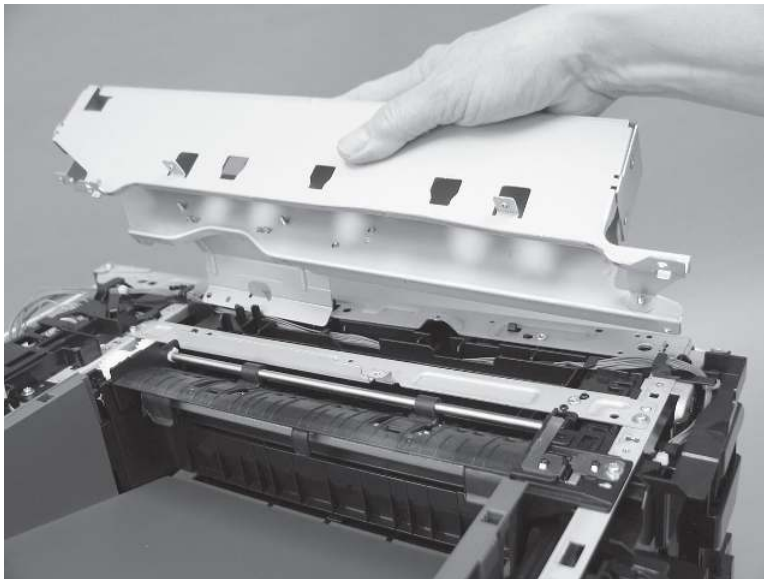
2. At the top of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1906 Remove two screws



3. Lift the top bracket up to remove it.

Figure 5-1907 Remove the bracket



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

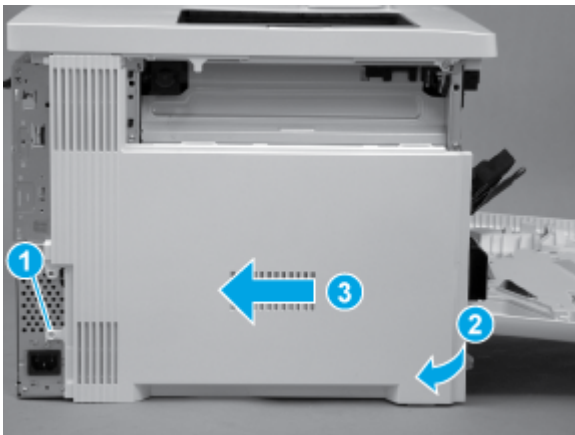
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1908 Remove one screw



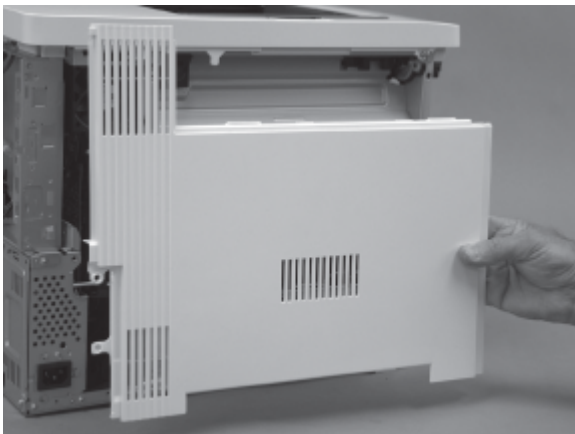
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1909 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1910 Remove the cover



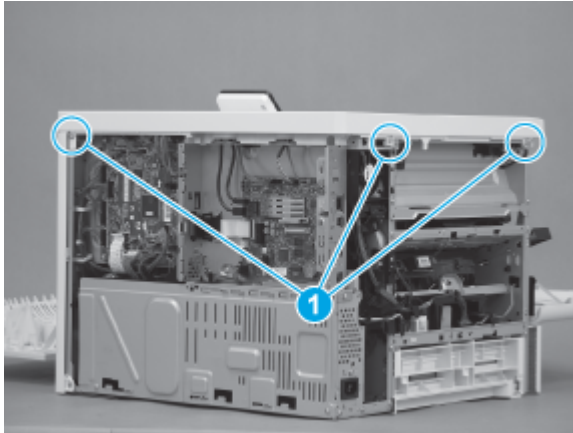
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1911 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-1912 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


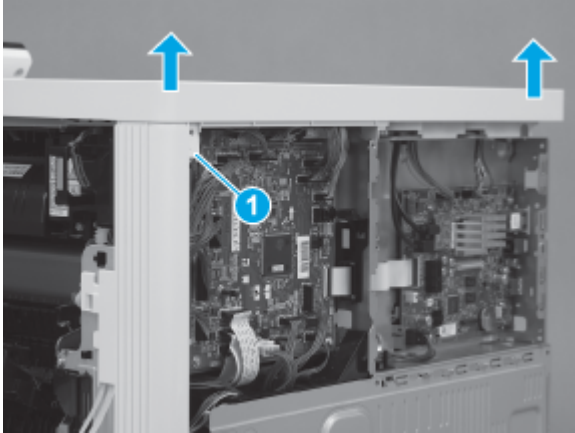
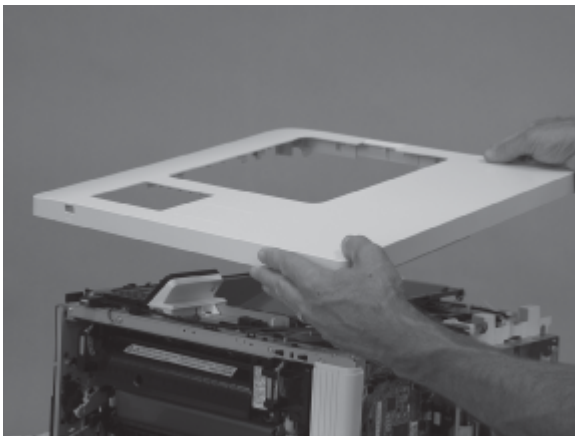
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-1913 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1914 Remove the cover

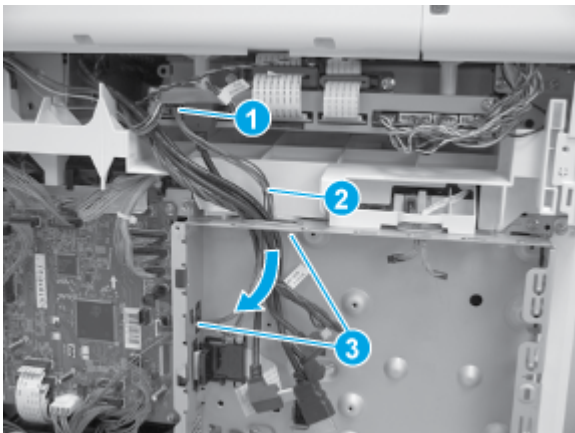


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

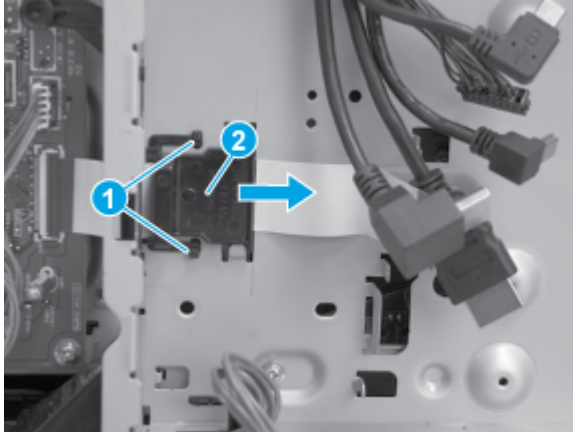
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-1915 Disconnect one connector



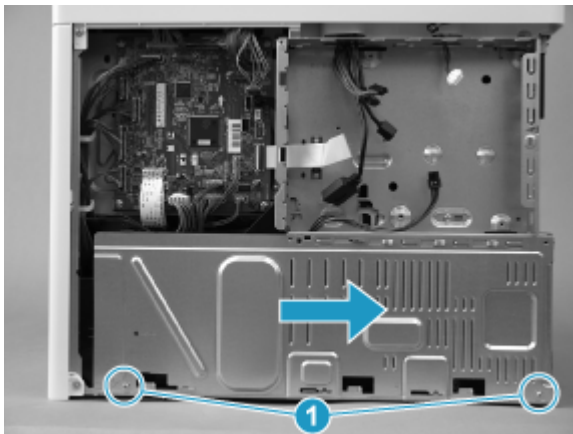
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-1916 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

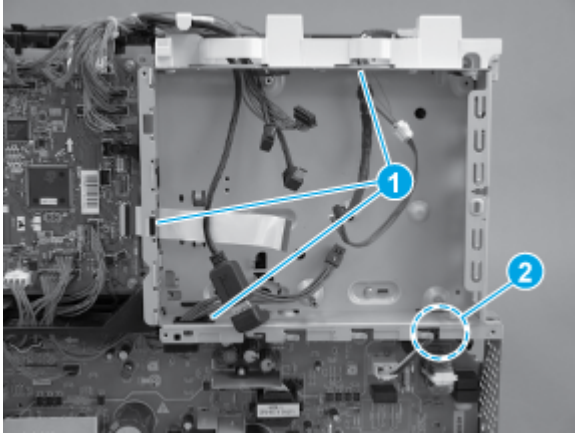
Figure 5-1917 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

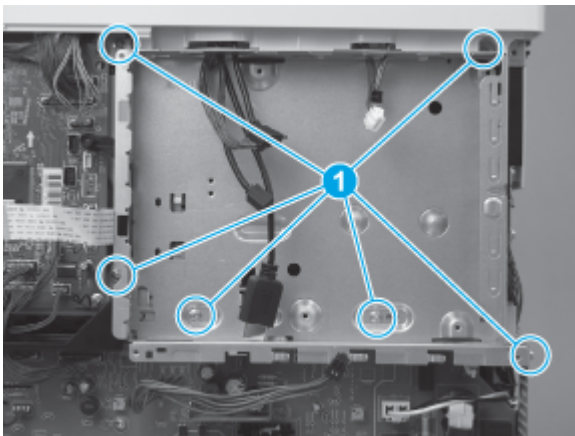
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-1918 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



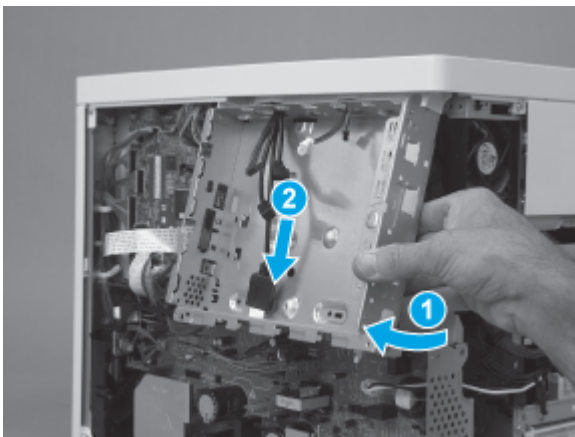
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1919 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-1920 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


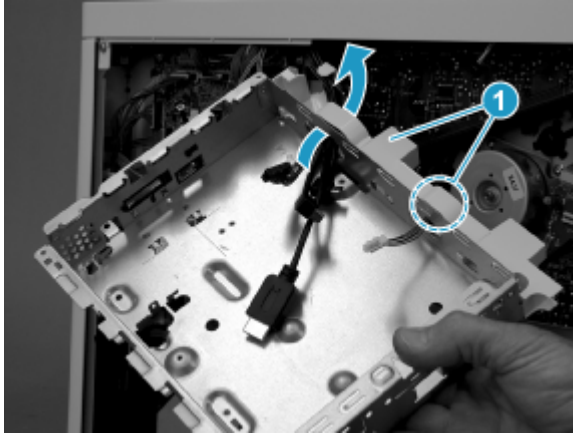

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-1921 Remove the formatter case



Remove the right rear cover

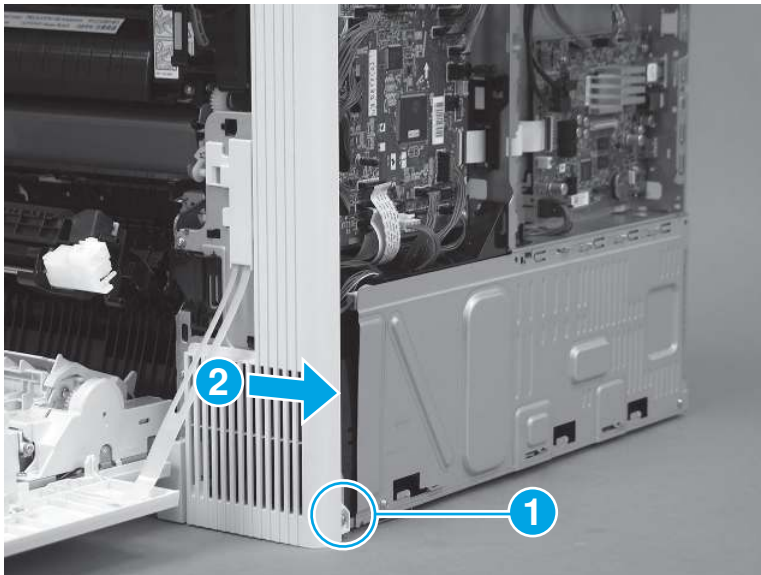
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

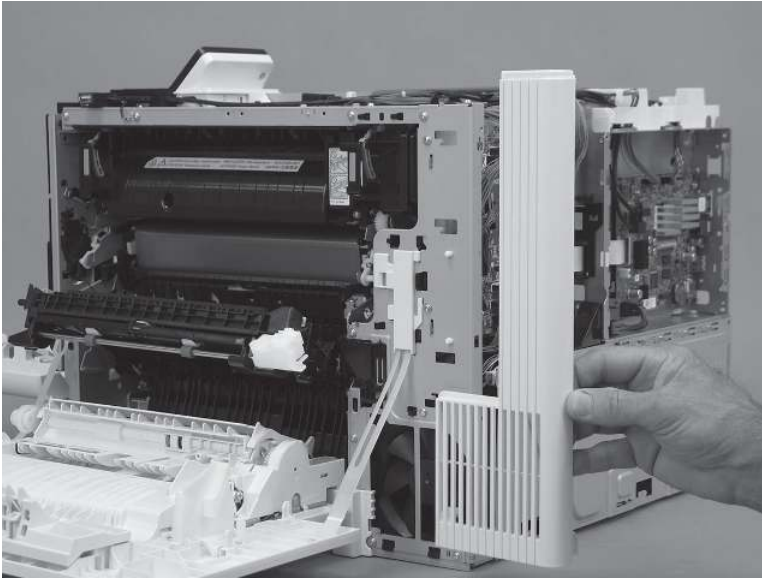
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-1922 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1923 Remove the cover



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.



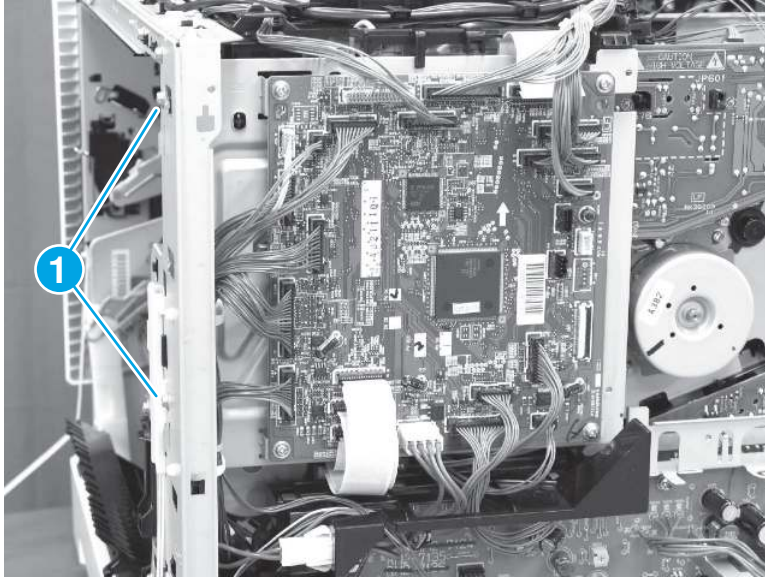
NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

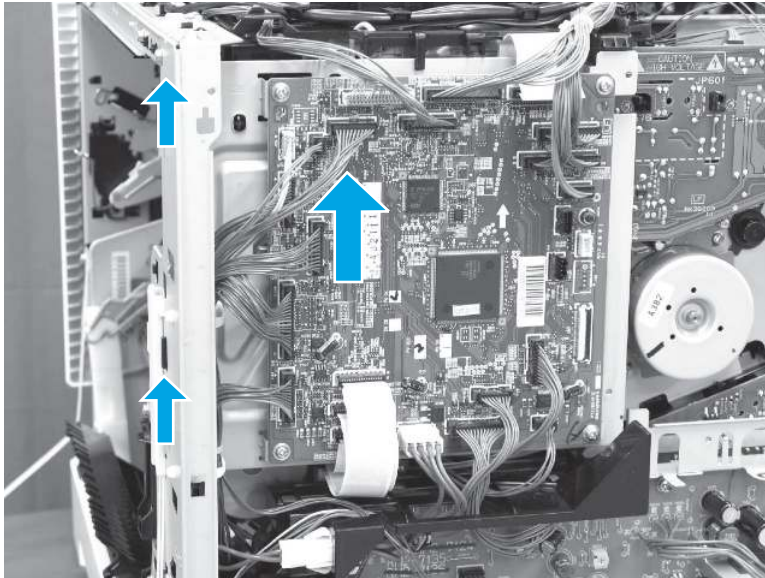
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-1924 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-1925 Remove the plate



Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

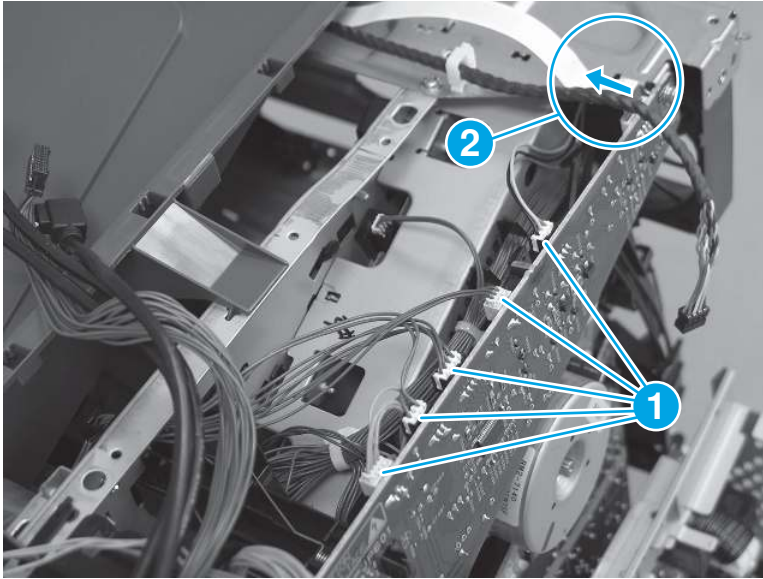
Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply T.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

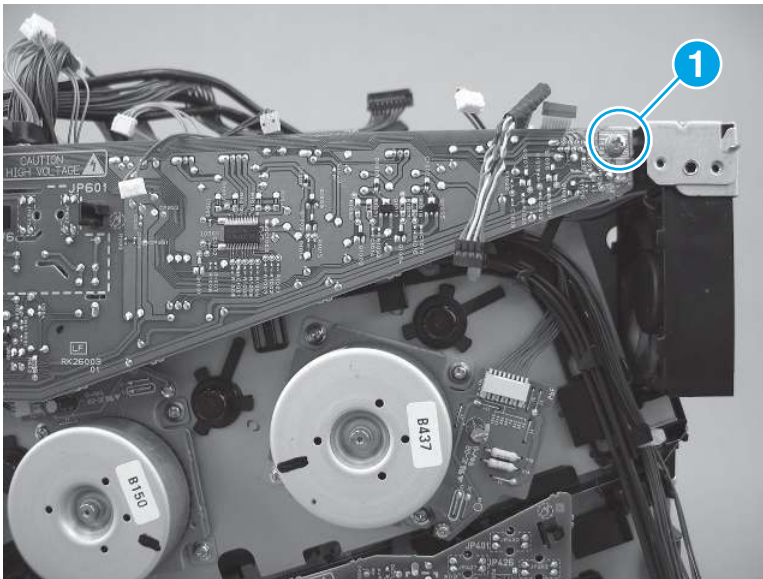
1. Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), and then disconnect one flat cable (callout 2).

Figure 5-1926 Disconnect five connectors and one flat cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

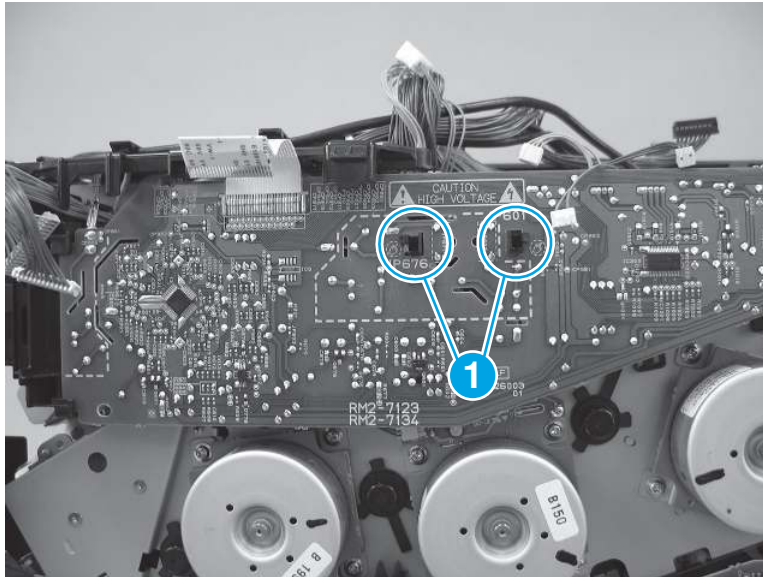
Figure 5-1927 Remove one screw



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then separate the HVPST from the printer.

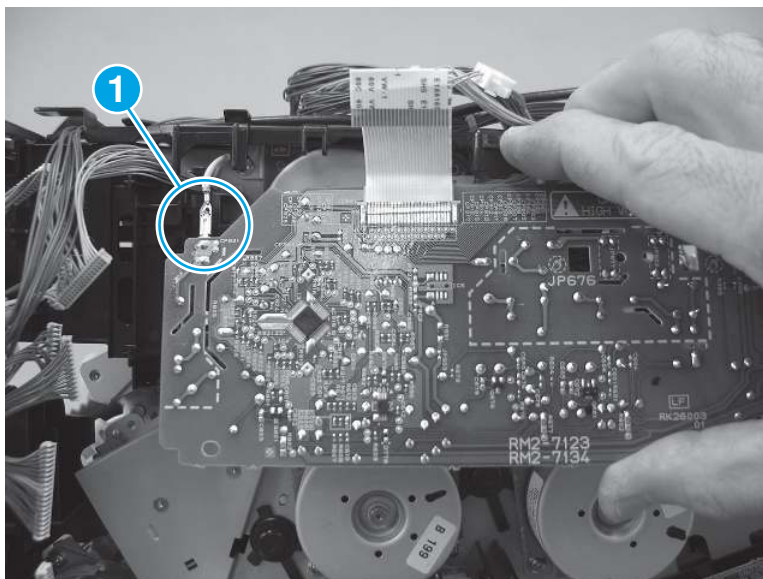
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the HVPST. It is still connected to the printer by ground wire harness.

Figure 5-1928 Release the HVPST



4. Release one ground wire connector (callout 1), and then remove the HVPST.

Figure 5-1929 Remove the HVPST



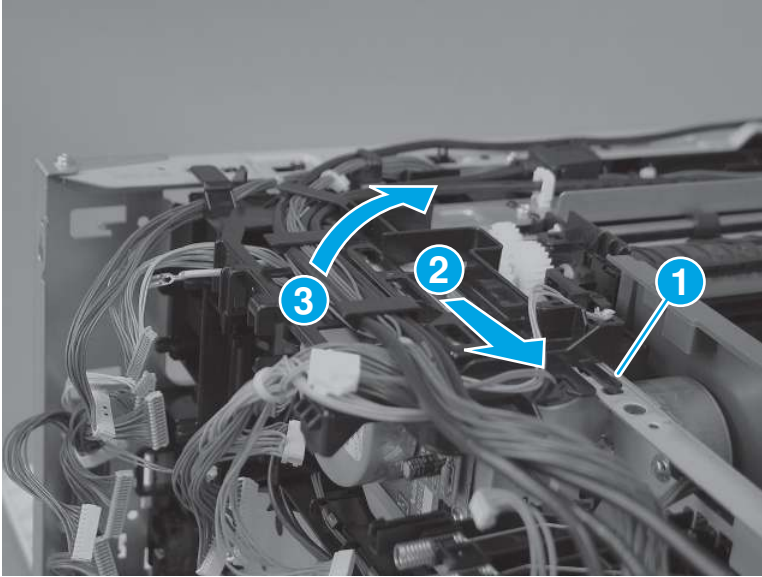
Remove the fuser drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive assembly.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the guide to release it (callout 2), and then rotate the guide up and away from the chassis to move it out of the way (callout 3).

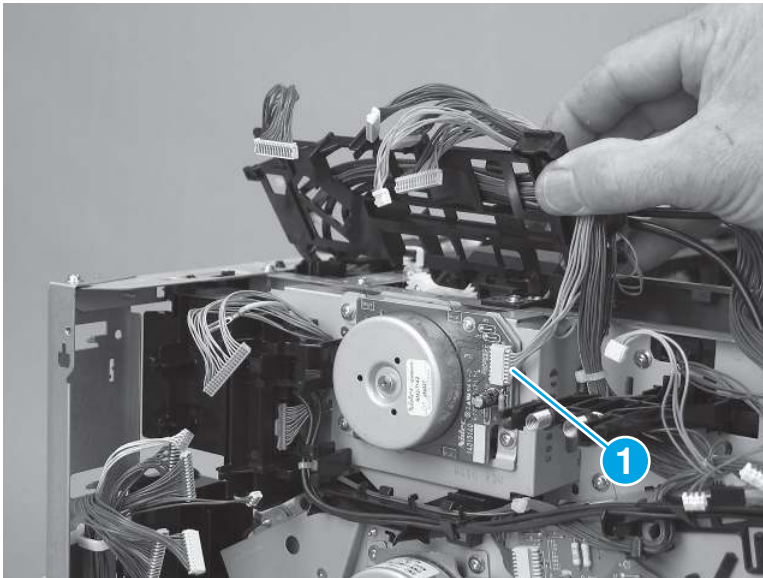
⚠ CAUTION: One wire harnesses in the guide is still attached to the fuser motor. Do not attempt to completely remove the guide.

Figure 5-1930 Move the guide out of the way



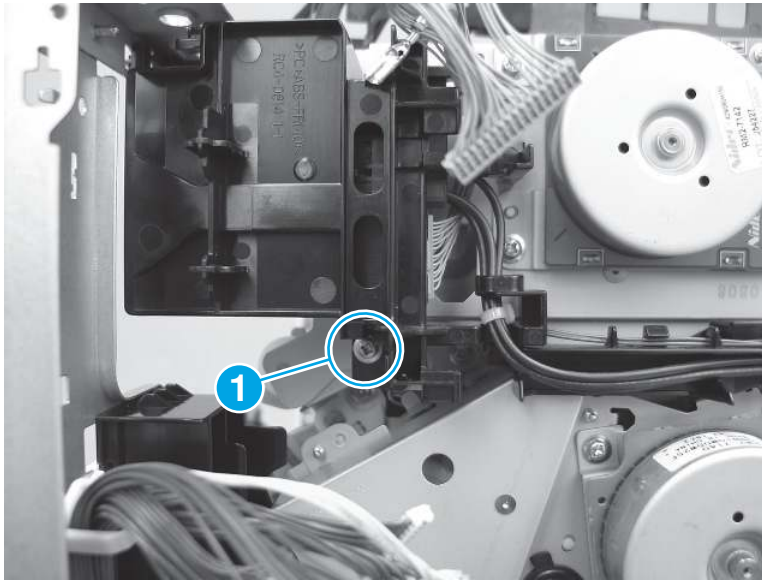
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-1931 Disconnect one connector



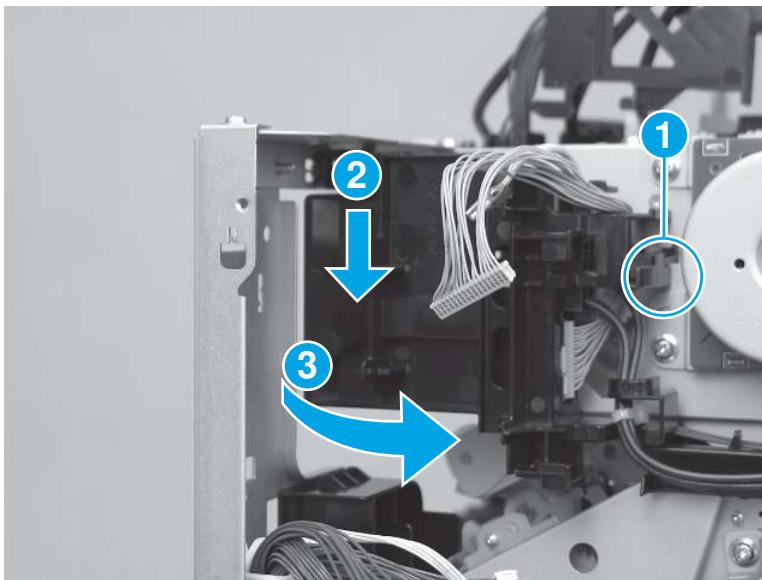
3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1932 Remove one screw



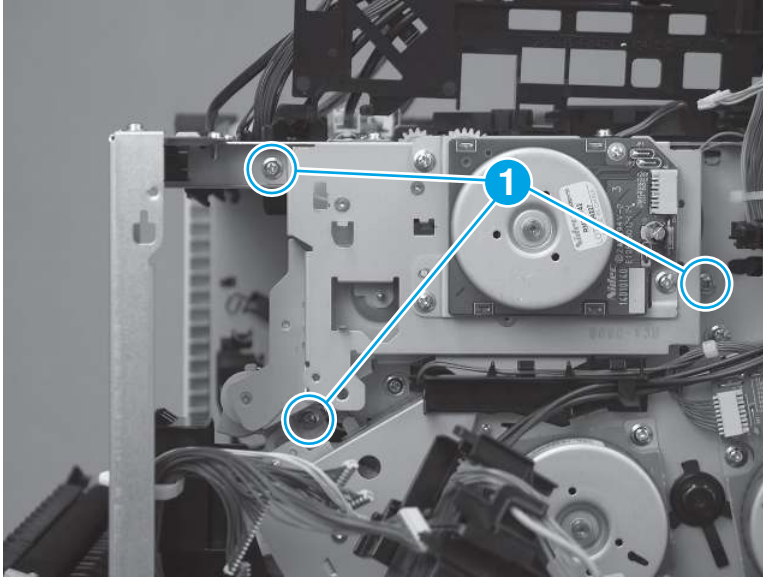
4. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the guide down to release it (callout 2), and then rotate the guide away from the chassis to remove it (callout 3).

Figure 5-1933 Remove the guide



5. Remove three screws (callout 1).

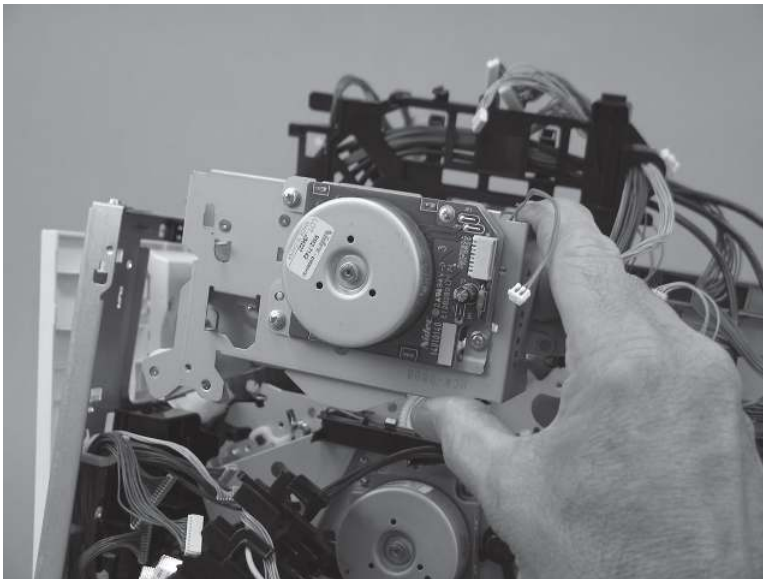
Figure 5-1934 Remove three screws



6. Remove the assembly.

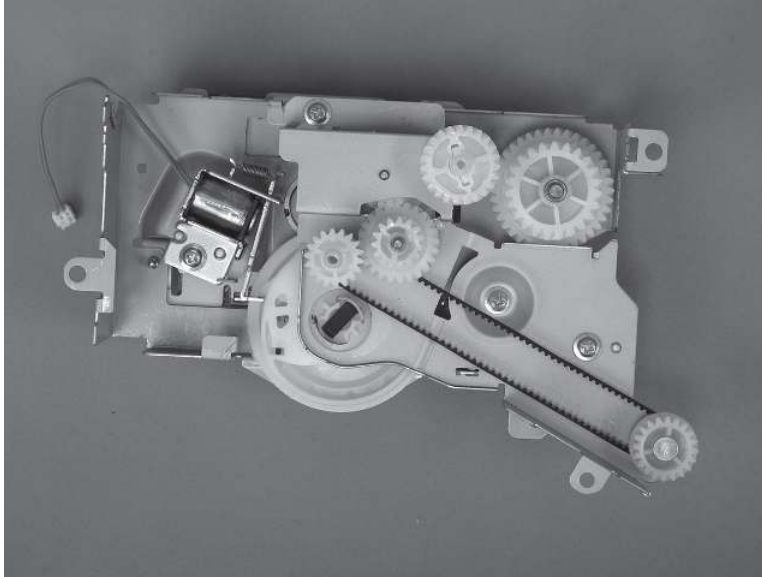
⚠ CAUTION: Two gears on the back side of the assembly are not captive. Handle the assembly carefully.

Figure 5-1935 Remove the assembly



7. **Optional step:** Two gears (callout 1) on the back side of the assembly are not captive. If the gears are dislodged, install them as shown.

Figure 5-1936 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex drive assembly and motor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-79 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0006-000CN	Duplex drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

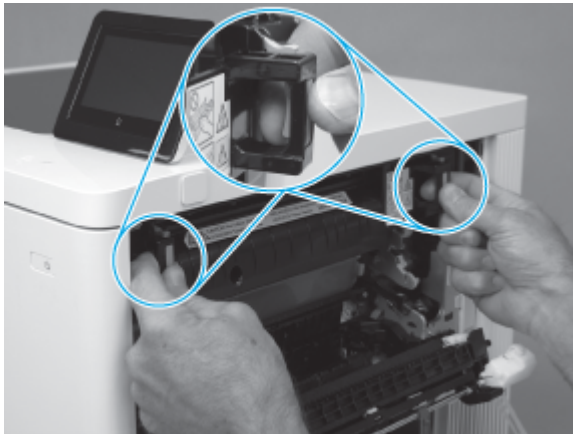
⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the printer power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

Figure 5-1937 Open the right door



2. Grasp the two fuser handles, and then squeeze the two blue triggers on the handles to release the fuser.

Figure 5-1938 Release the fuser



3. Slide the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1939 Remove the fuser



Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

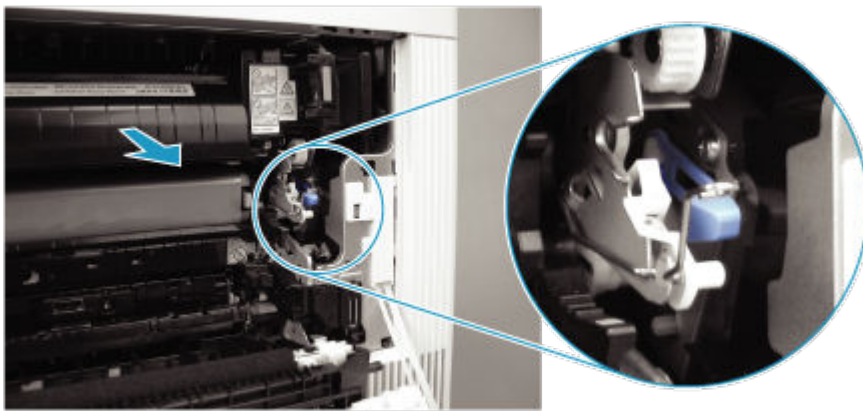
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-1940 Open the right door



2. Pull the blue lever to release the ITB drive coupling.

Figure 5-1941 Release the ITB drive coupling



3. Push in on the blue arm to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then completely lower the assembly.


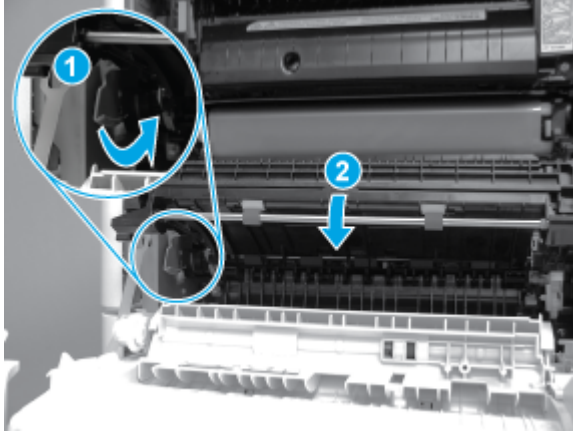
 **NOTE:** Press the blue arm on the secondary transfer roller assembly a second time to release the roller assembly when it stops at the halfway open position.

Figure 5-1942 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



4. Release the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).


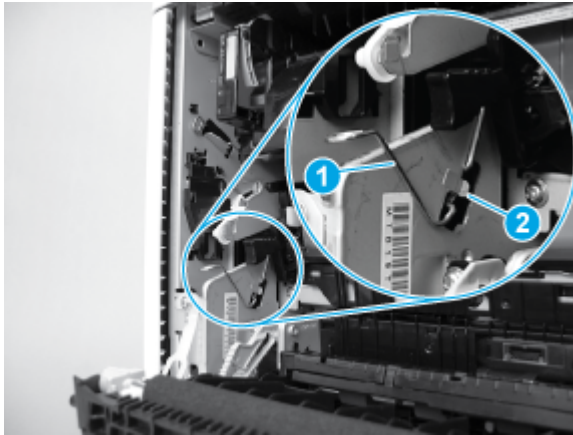

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-1943 Release the front-side ITB spring

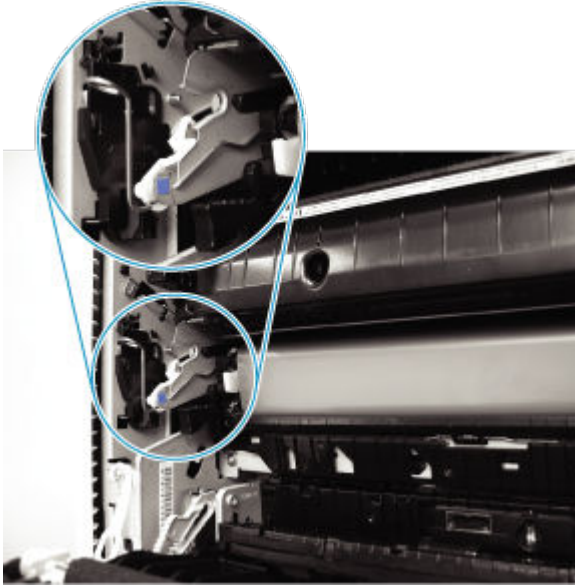


5. Place the left-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

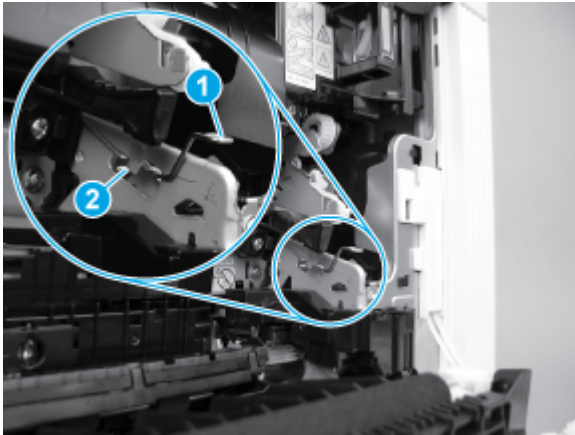
 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-1944 Place the spring on the holder



6. Release the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).

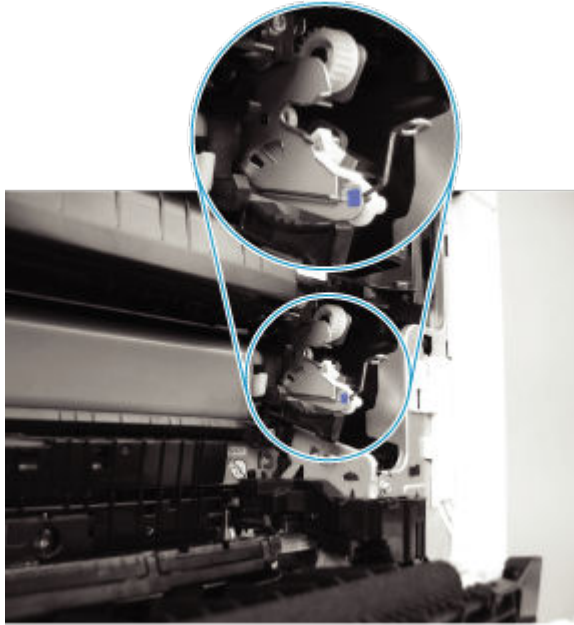
Figure 5-1945 Release the rear-side ITB spring



7. Place the right-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

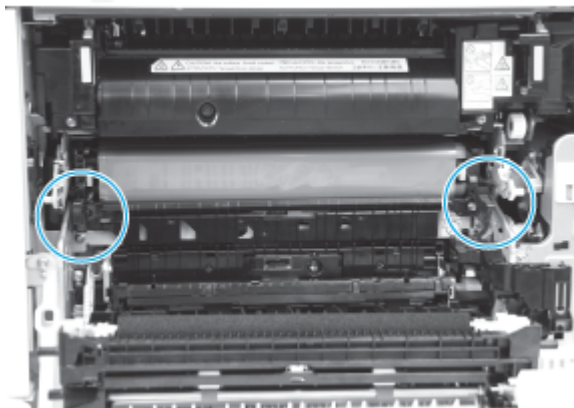
Figure 5-1946 Place the spring on the holder



8. Grasp the two blue handles on the ITB.

⚠ CAUTION: If the ITB is removed to access other assemblies in the printer, use care. The ITB is a sensitive assembly. Be careful when handling the ITB so that it is not damaged. Always place the ITB in a safe and protected location.

Figure 5-1947 Grasp the ITB handles



9. Pull the ITB out of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 5-1948 Remove the ITB



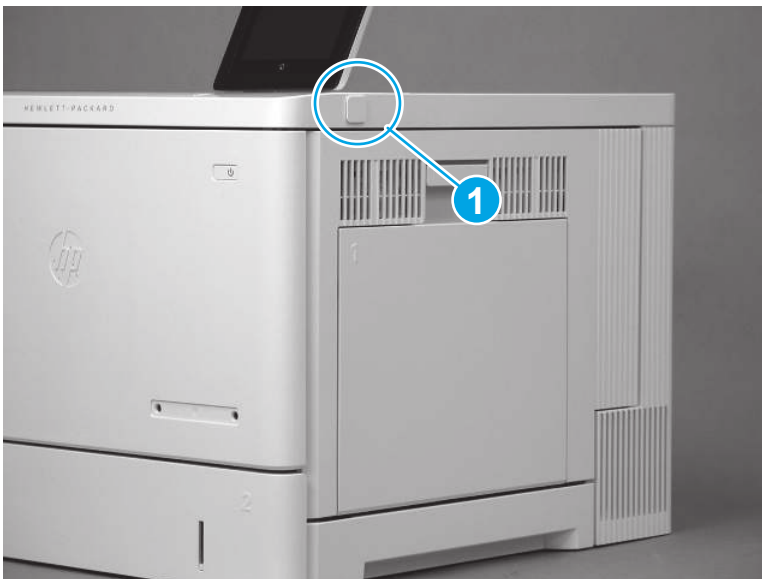
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1949 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-1950 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-1951 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1952 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1953 Remove the cover

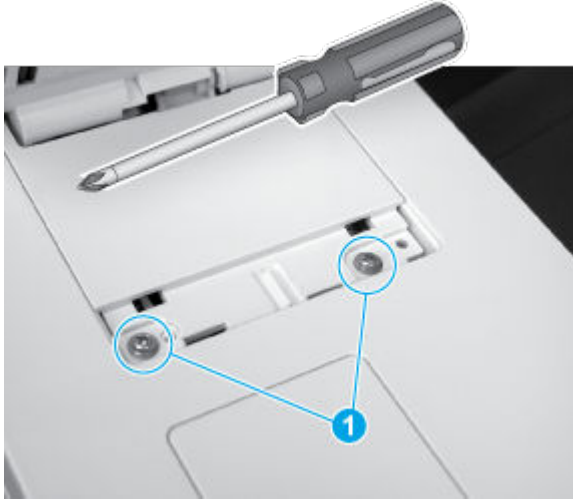


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-1954 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-1955 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1956 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


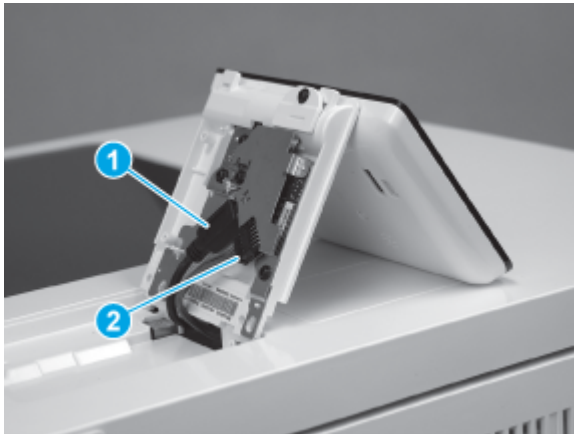

 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-1957 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

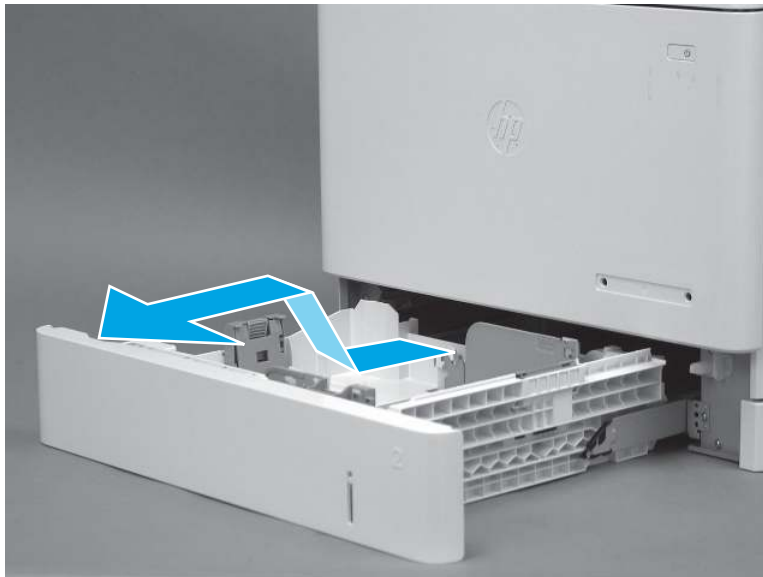
Figure 5-1958 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** For a replacement tray: If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-1959 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-1960 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-1961 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-1962 Remove the TCU

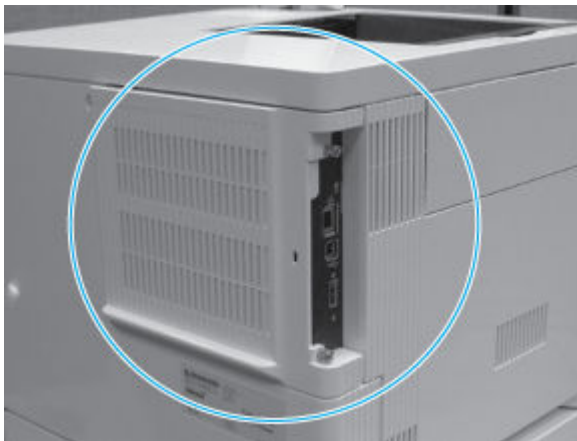


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

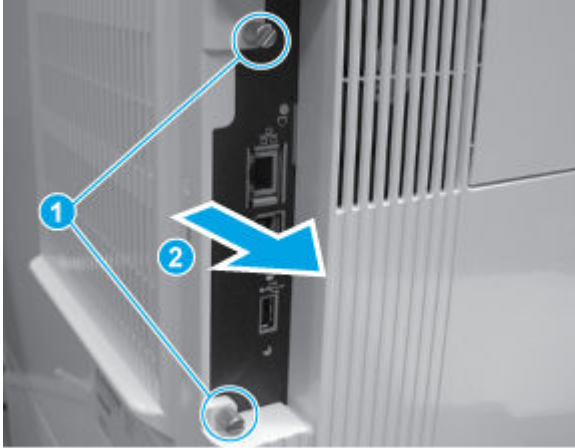
Figure 5-1963 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-1964 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


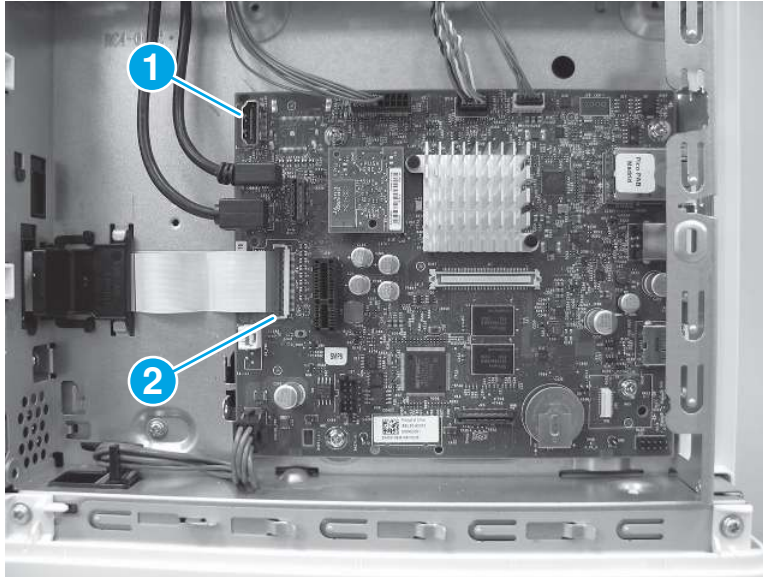
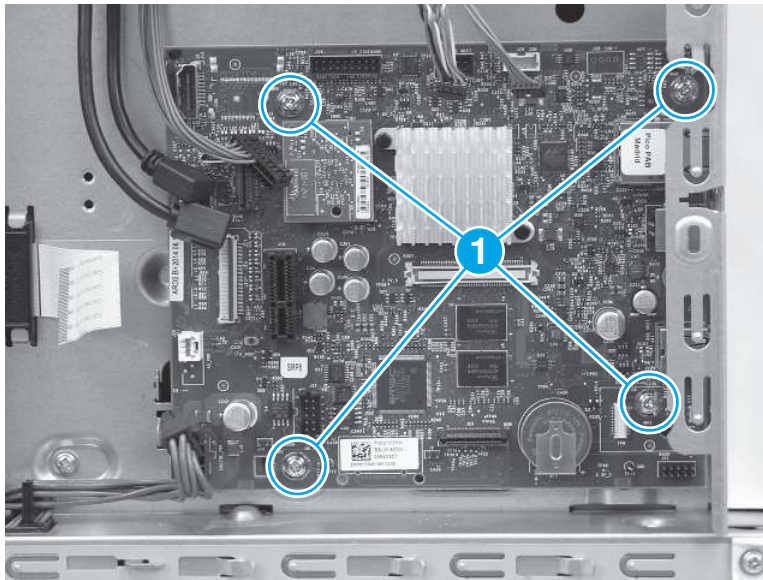
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1965 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-1966 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

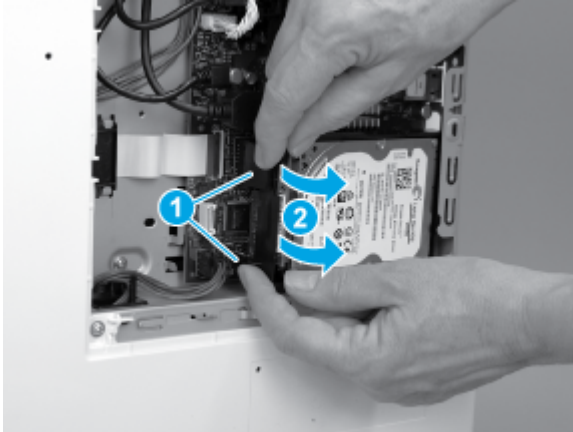
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-1967 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1968 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

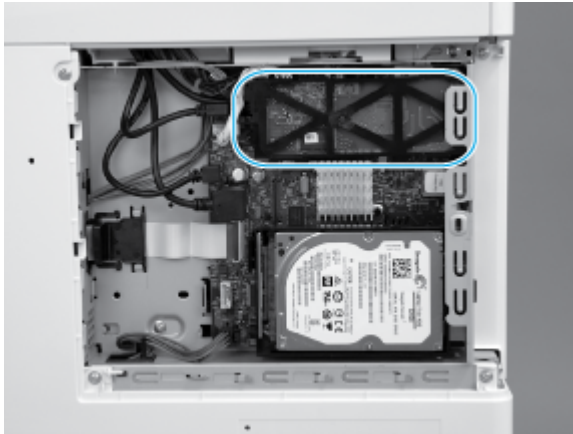
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

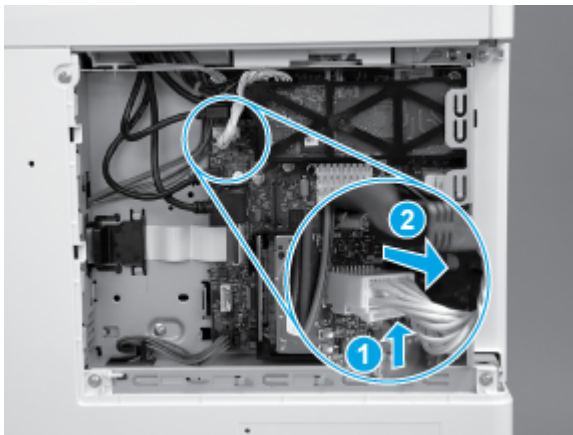
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-1969 Locate the fax PCA



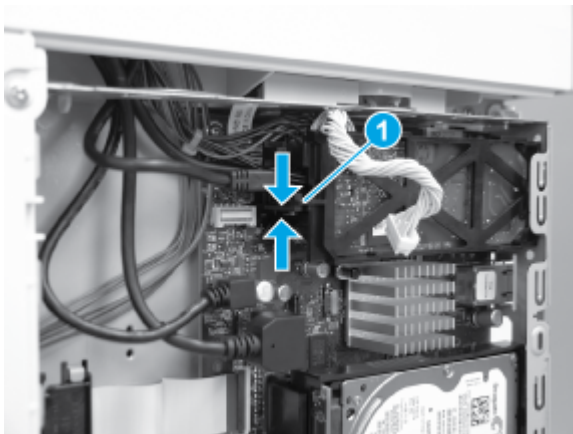
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-1970 Disconnect one connector



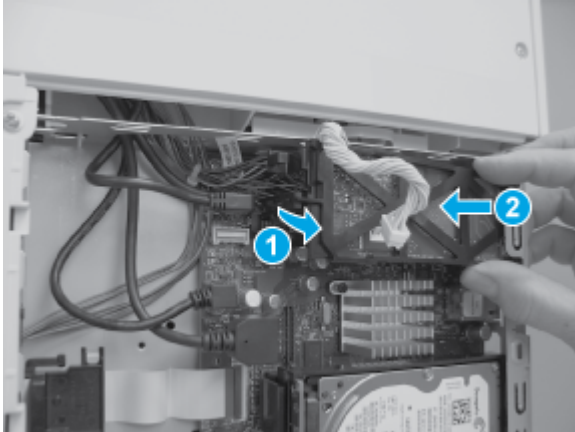
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-1971 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-1972 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


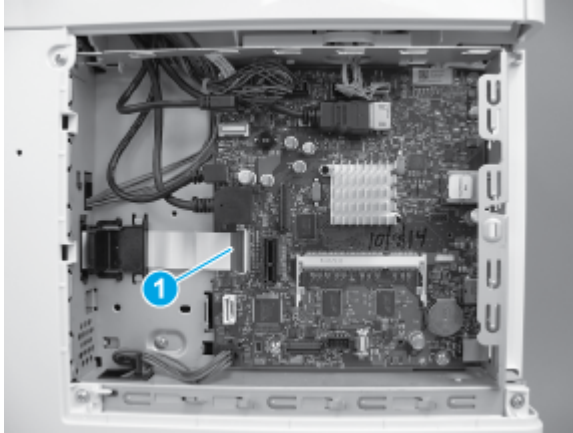
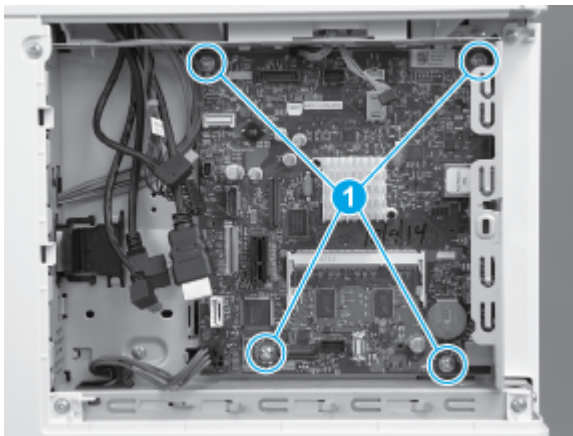
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-1973 Disconnect all connectors



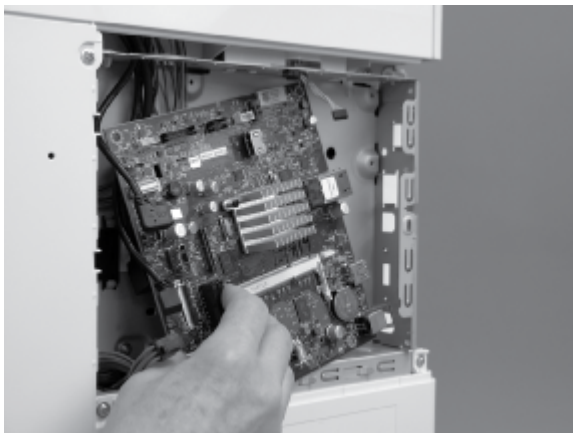
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1974 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-1975 Remove the formatter



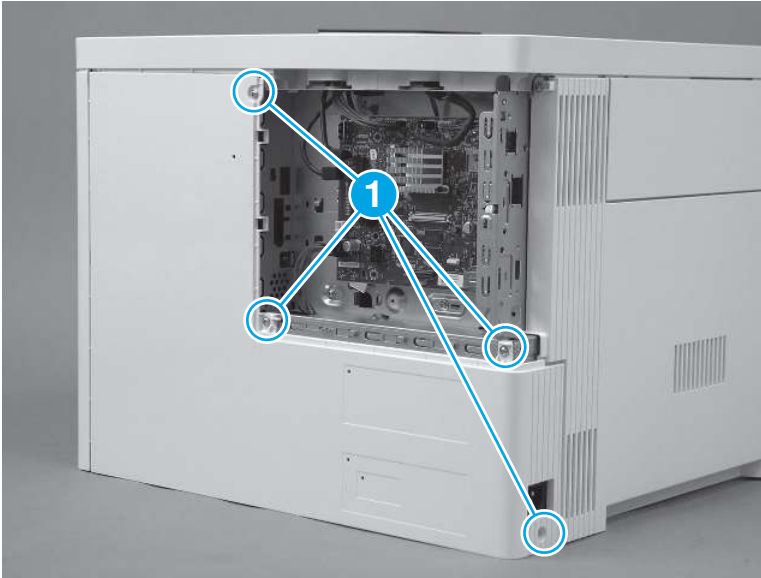
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

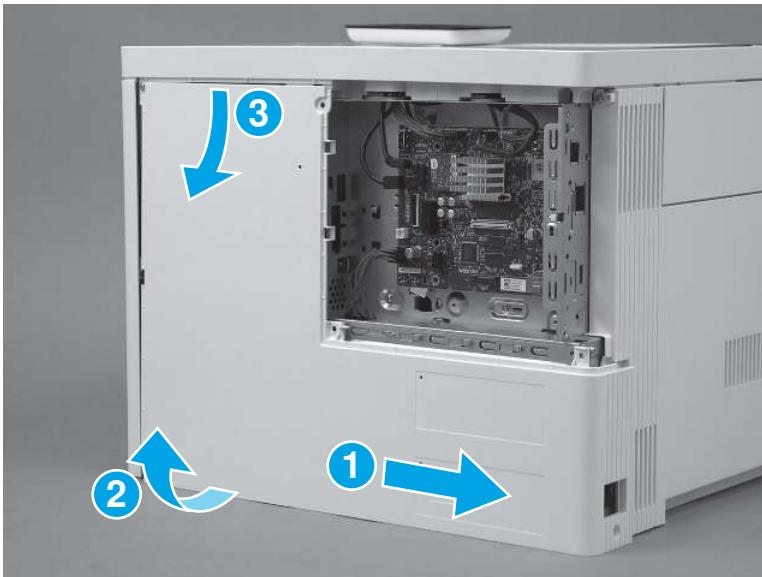
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1976 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-1977 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

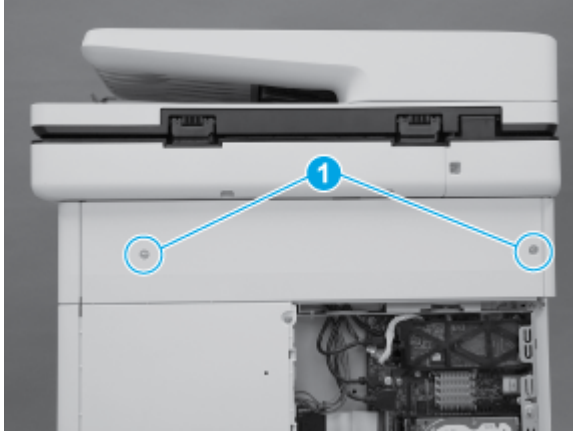
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

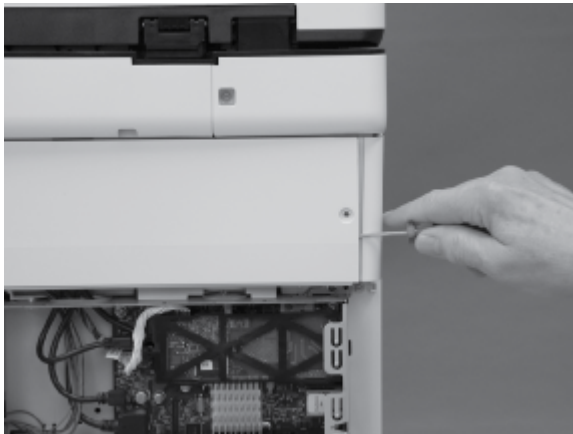
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-1978 Remove two screws



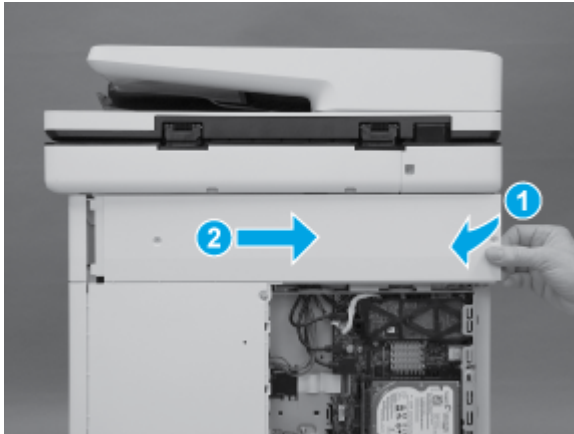
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1979 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-1980 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-1981 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-1982 Remove four screws




2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1983 Remove the cover



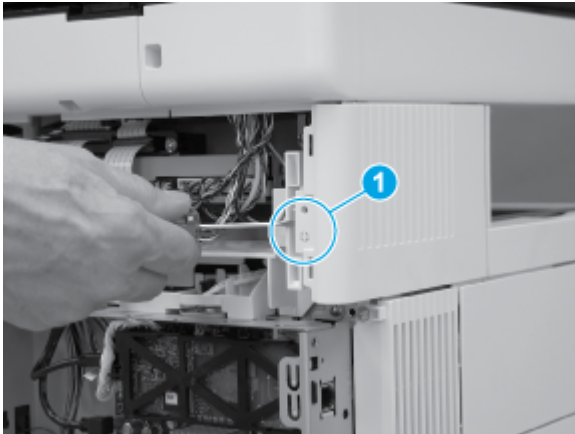
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-1984 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-1985 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-1986 Remove the left upper cover



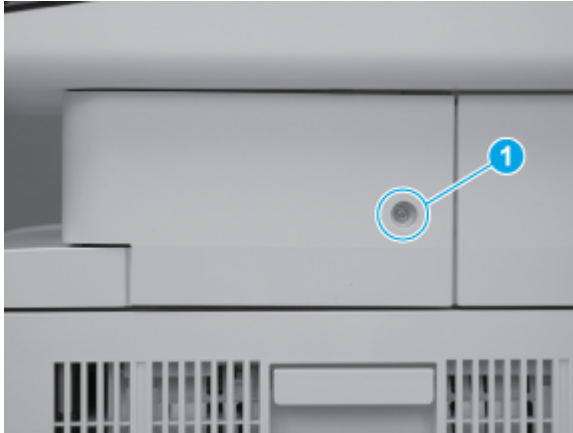
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1987 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1988 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-1989 Rotate the cover



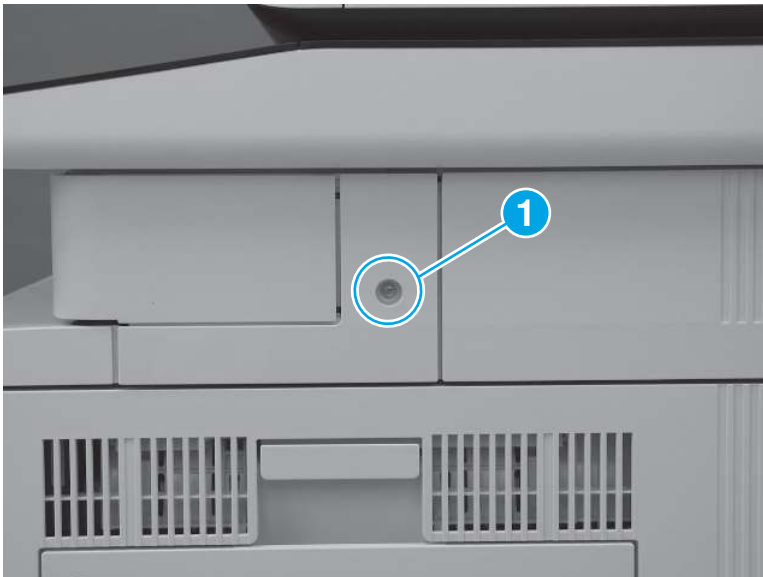
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1990 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-1991 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-1992 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-1993 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

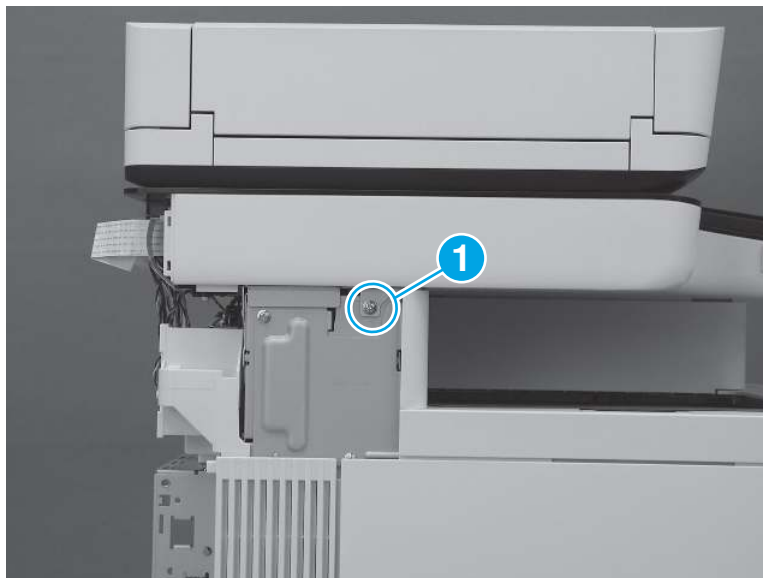
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

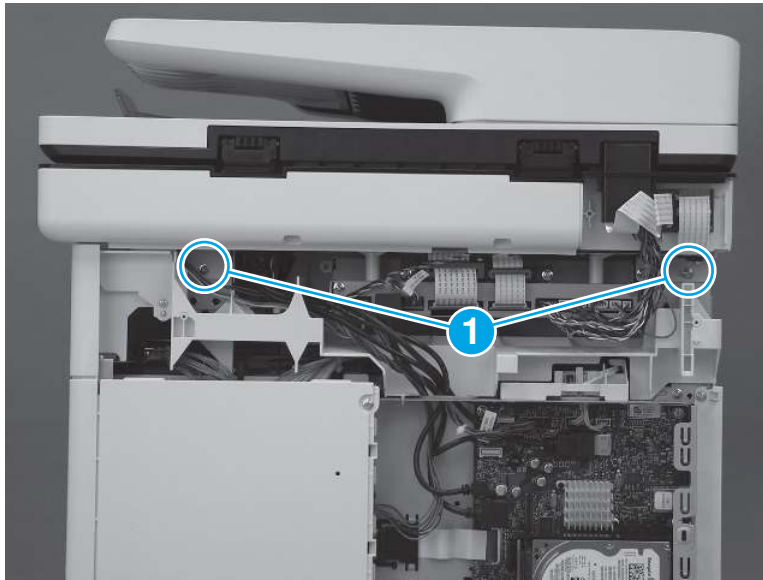
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-1994 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

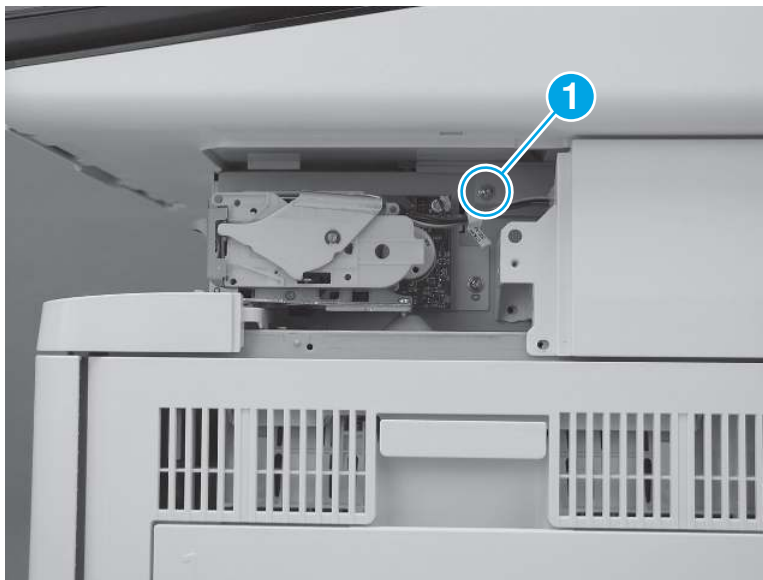
Figure 5-1995 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

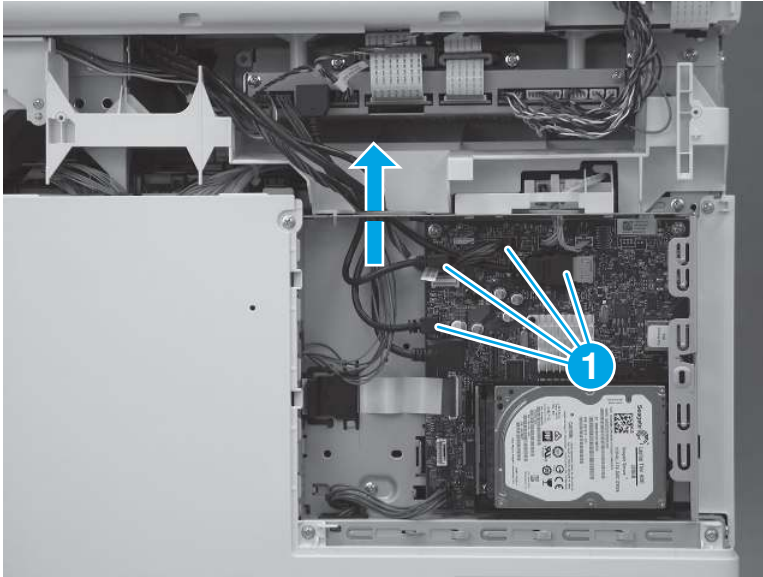
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-1996 Remove one screw



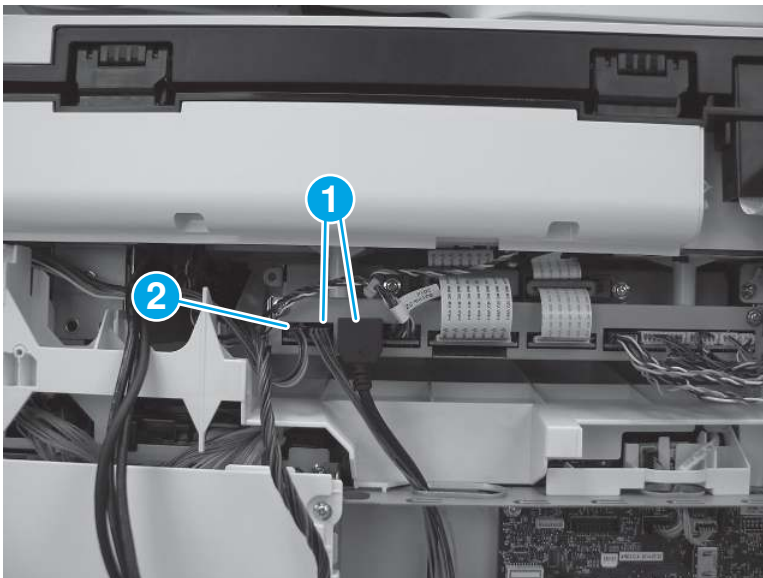
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-1997 Disconnect cables and connectors



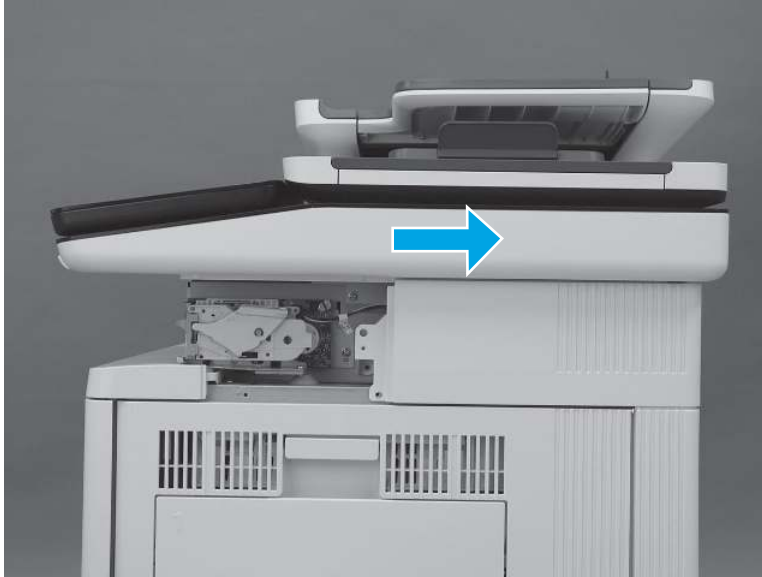
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-1998 Disconnect connectors



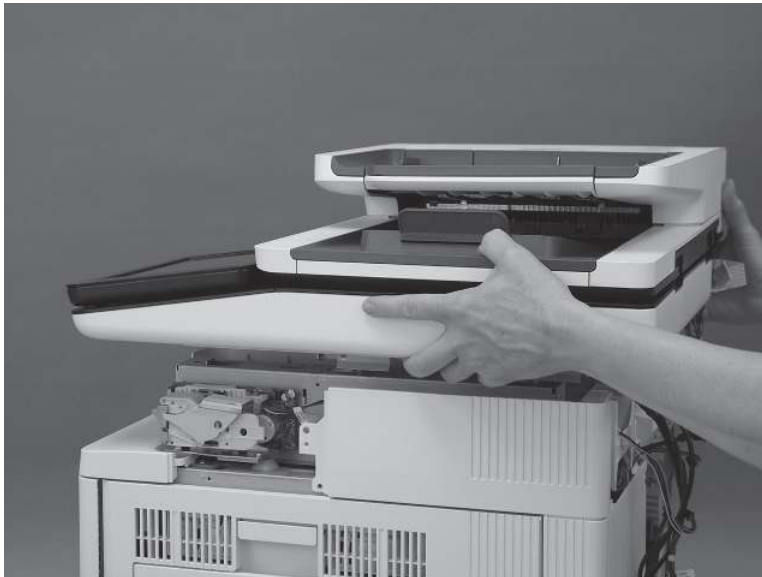
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-1999 Release the image scanner




7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-2000 Remove the ISA



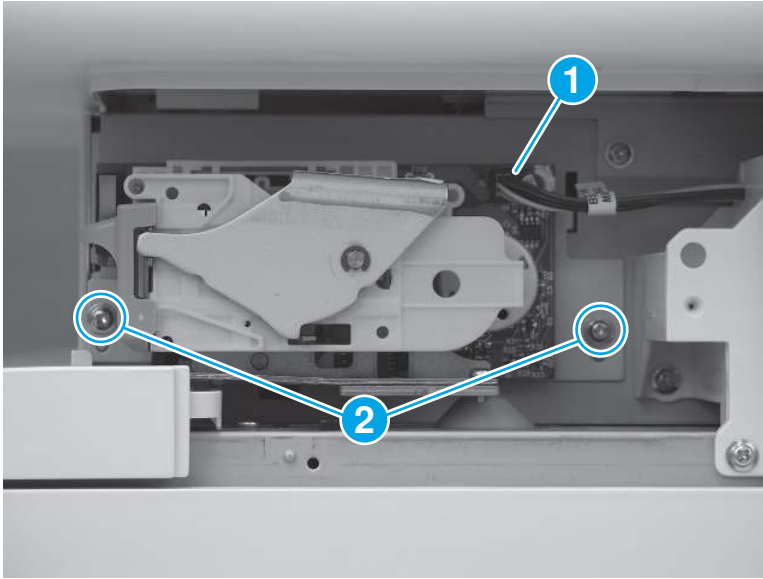
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

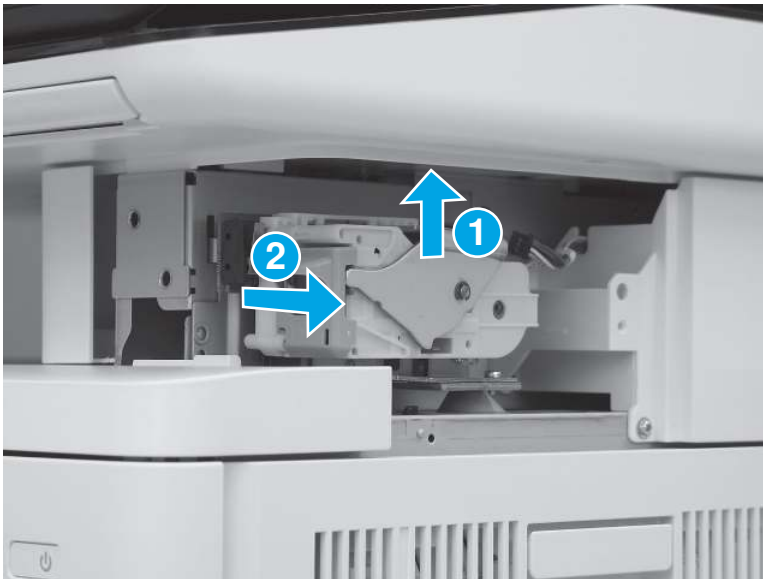
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-2001 Disconnect connector and remove screws




2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2002 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

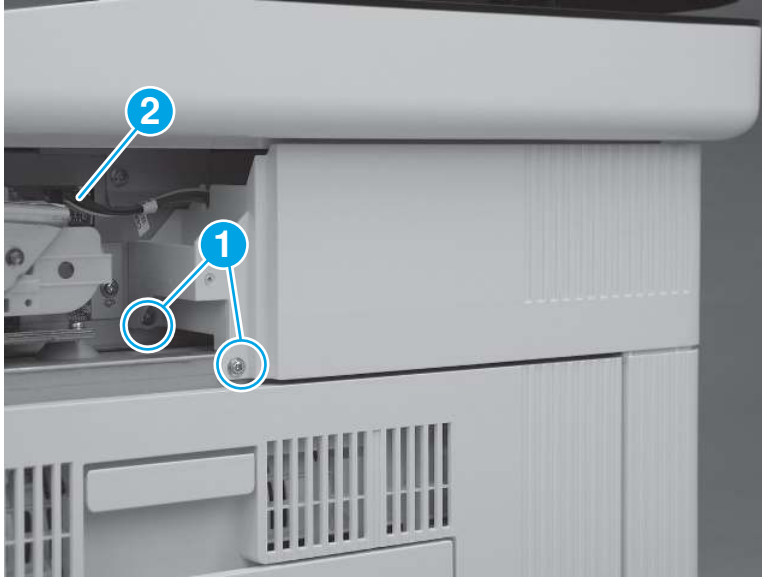
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-2003 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


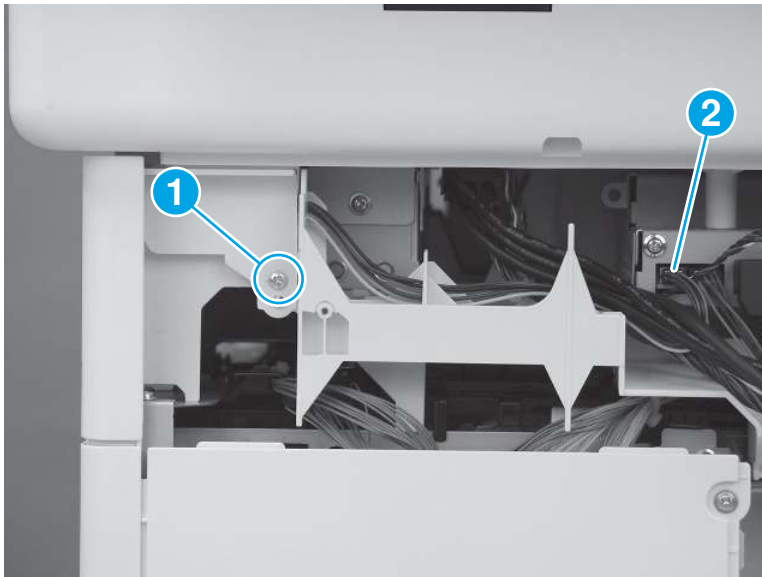
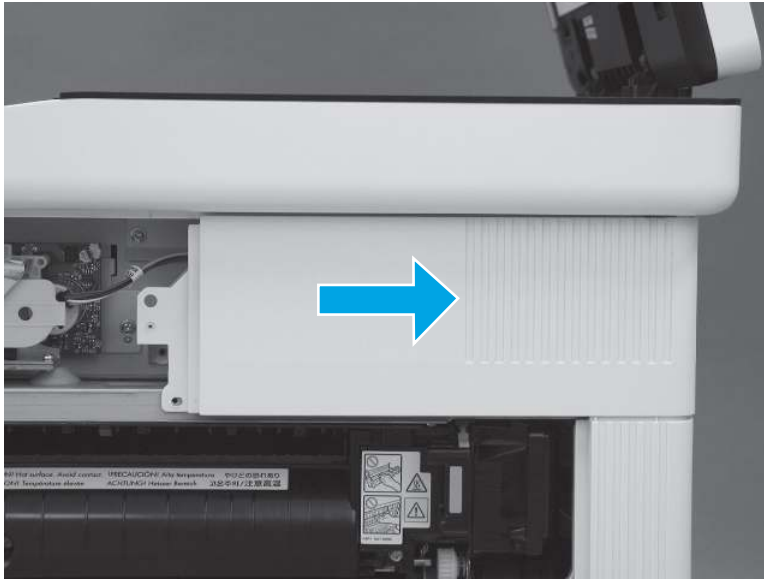
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2004 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

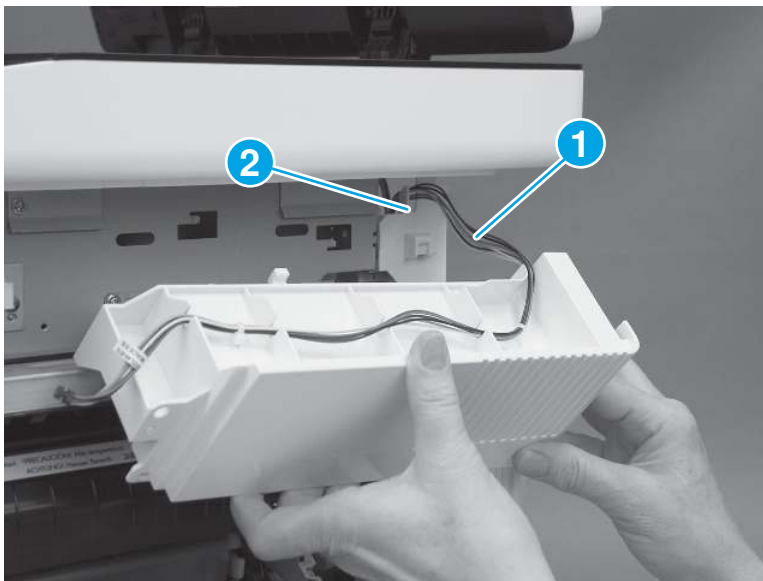
Figure 5-2005 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-2006 Remove the cover



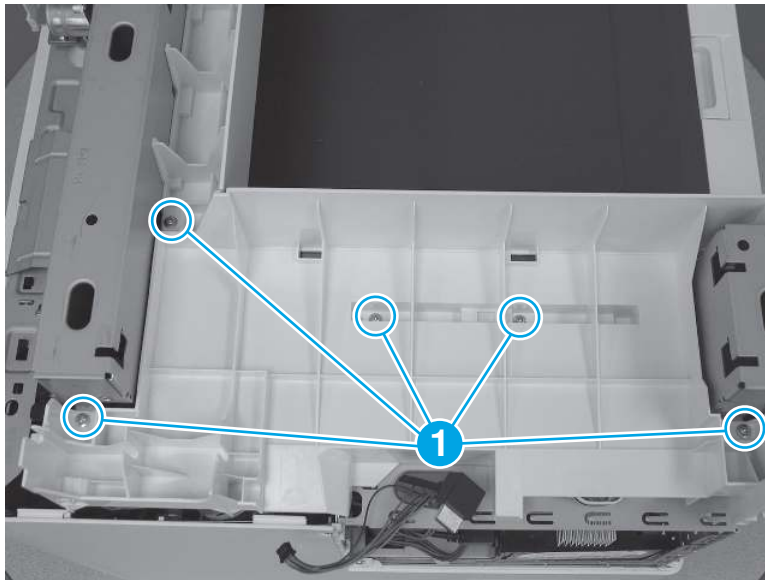
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

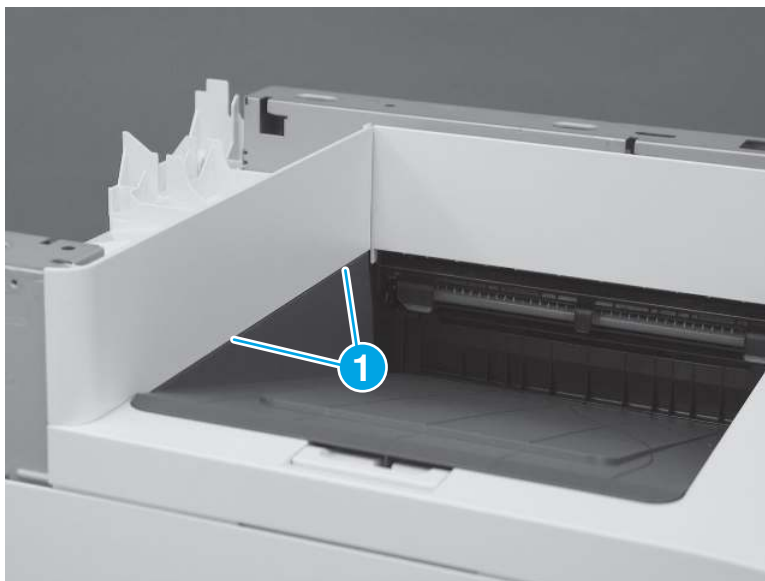
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2007 Remove five screws



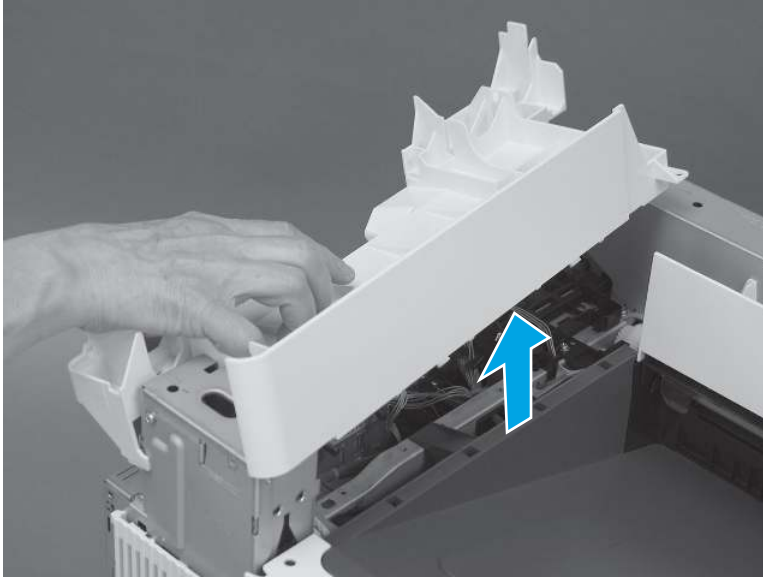
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2008 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-2009 Remove the cover



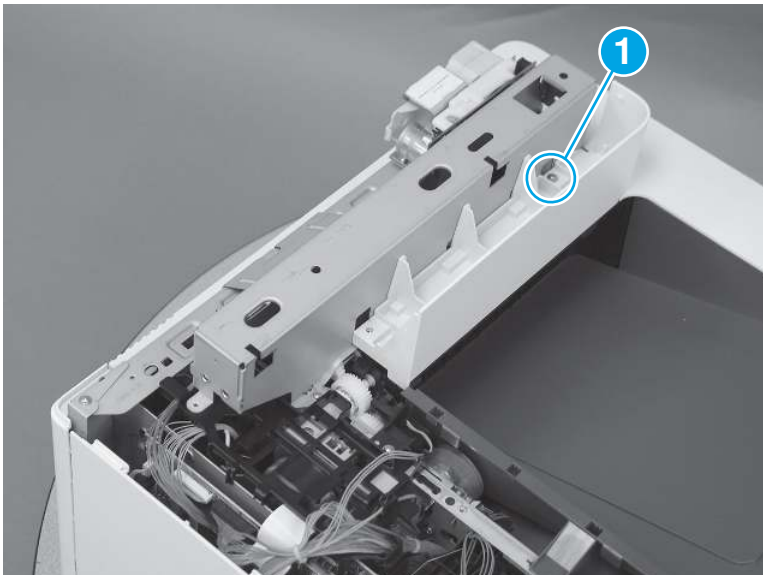
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

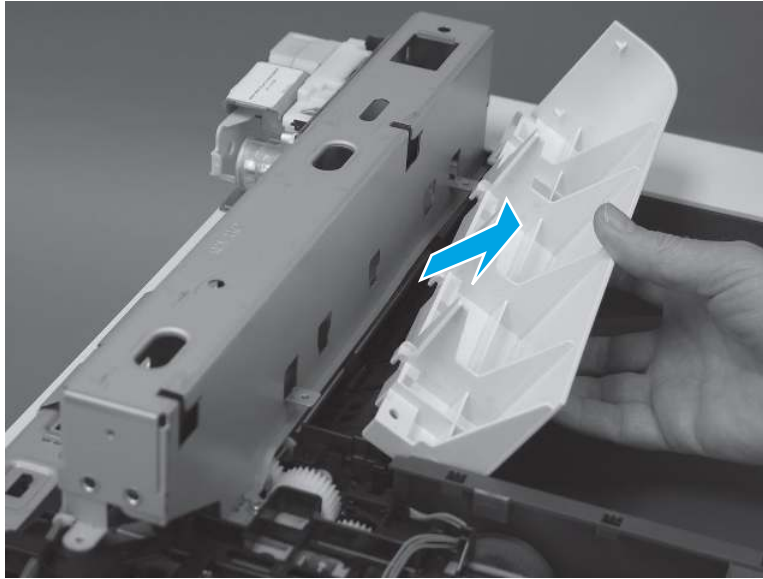
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2010 Remove one screw



2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2011 Remove the cover



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


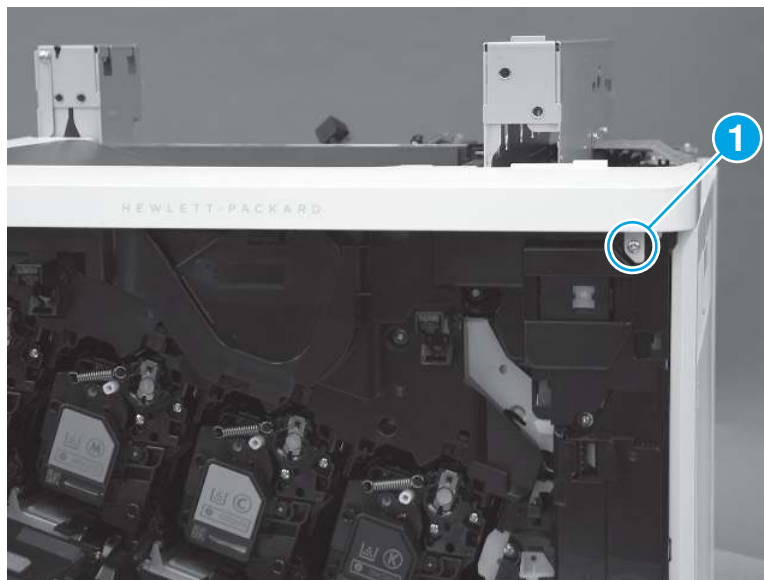
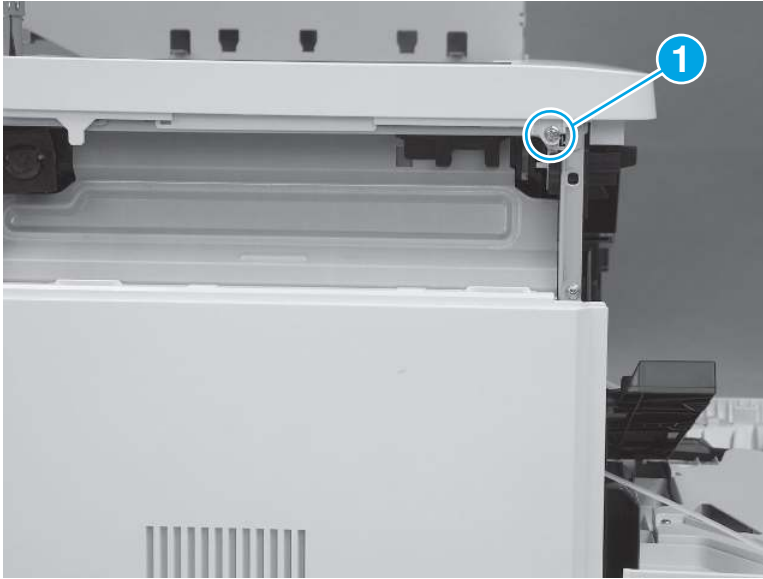
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2012 Remove one screw



2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2013 Remove one screw



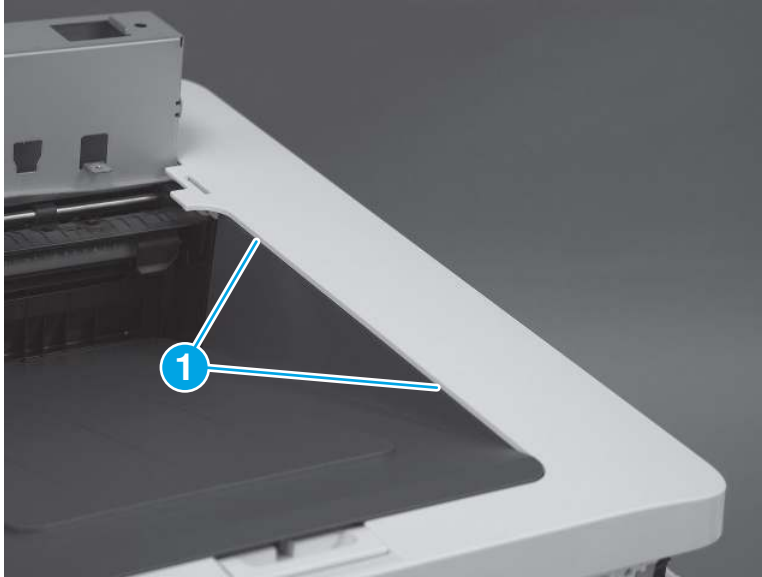
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2014 Release one tab



4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-2015 Remove the cover



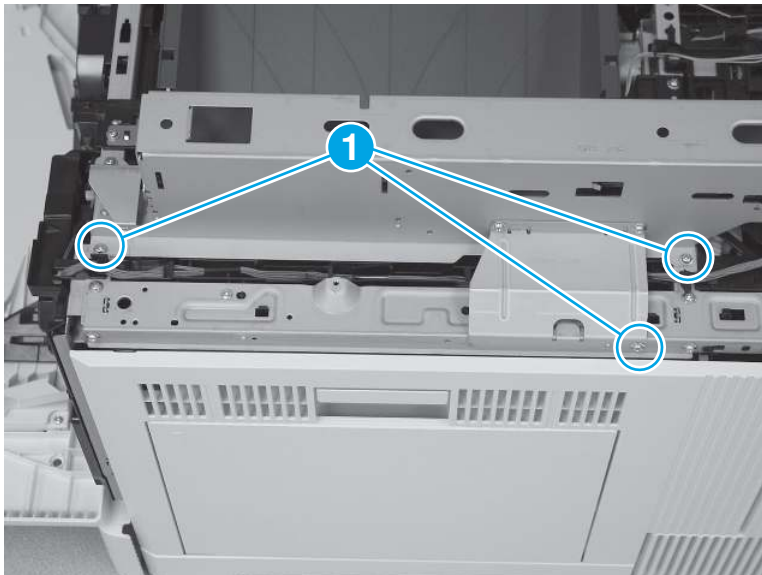
Remove the top bracket (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top bracket.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

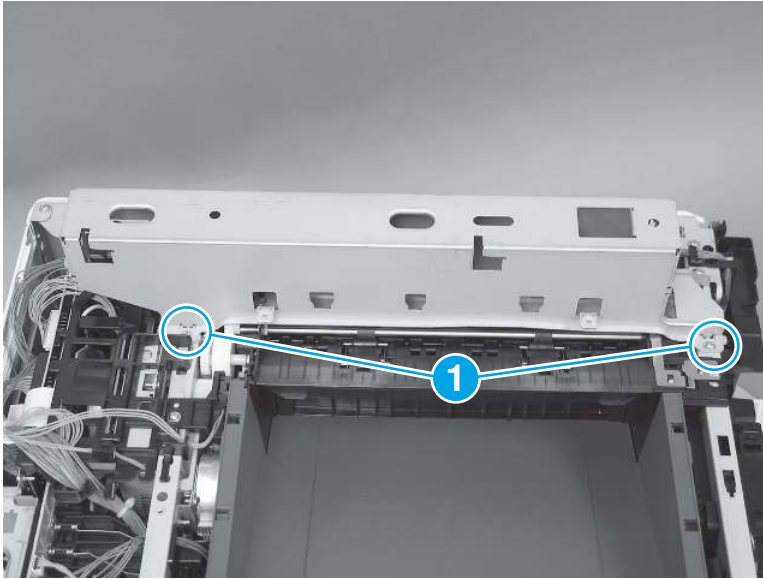
1. At the top of the printer, remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2016 Remove three screws



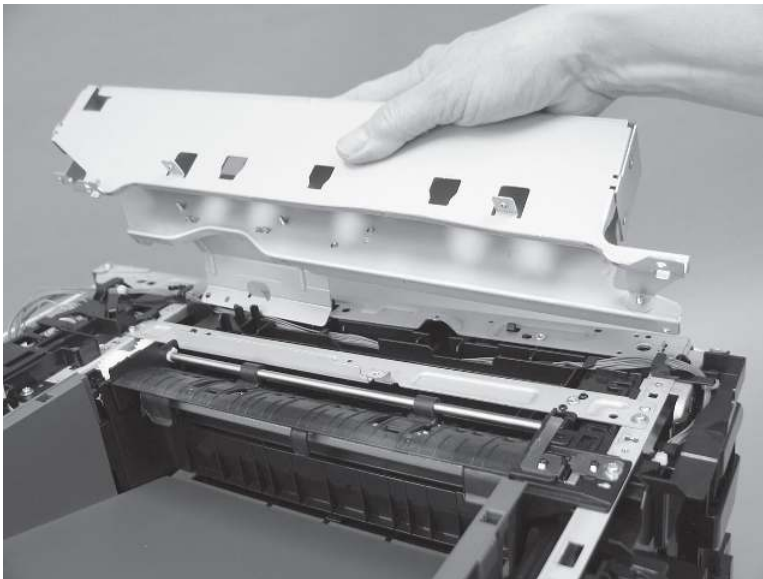
2. At the top of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2017 Remove two screws



3. Lift the top bracket up to remove it.

Figure 5-2018 Remove the bracket



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

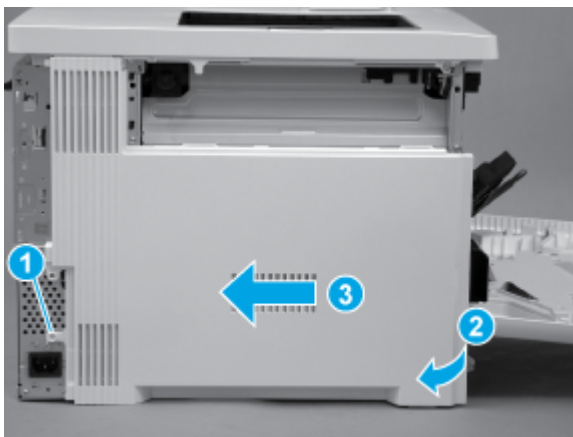
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2019 Remove one screw



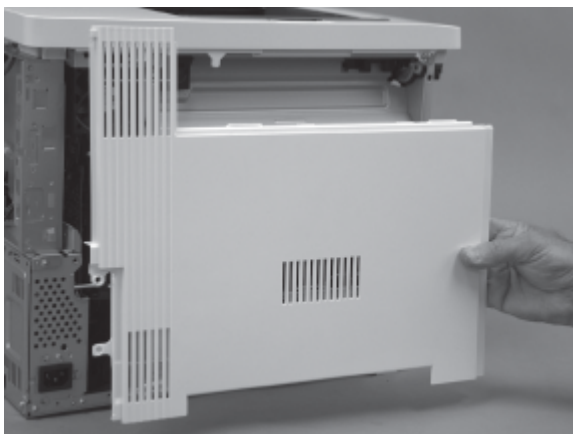
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2020 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2021 Remove the cover



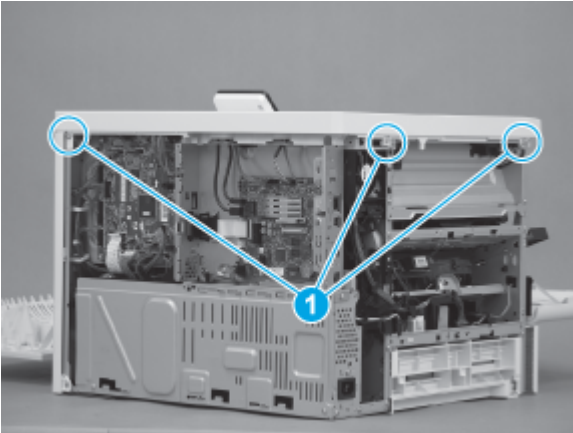
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2022 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-2023 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


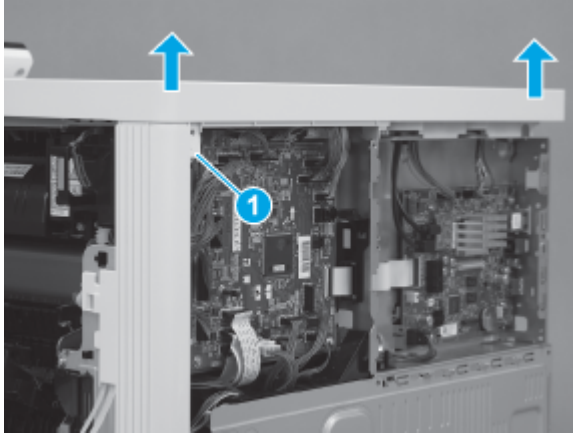
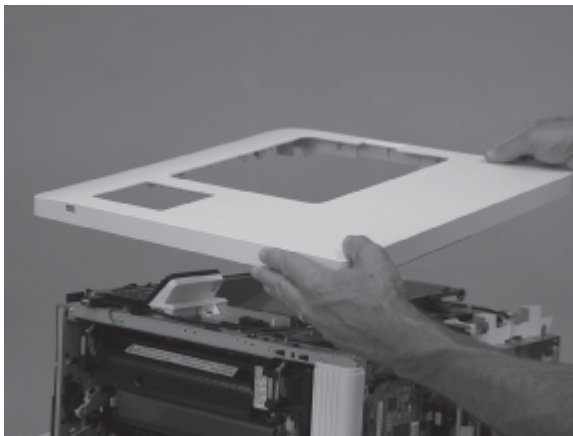
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-2024 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2025 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel

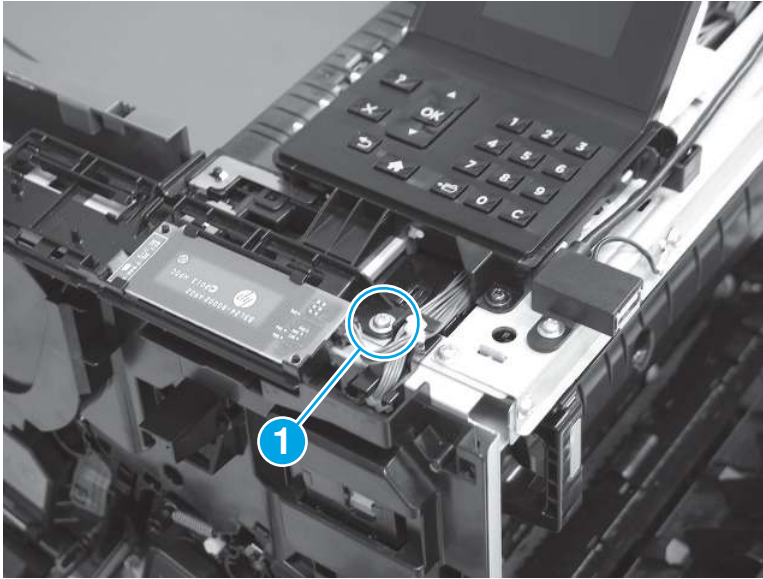
Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M552dn/M553n/dn/M554 printers only.

The figures in this procedure show the M552/M553 printer. The M554 control panel looks slightly different than shown below. However, removing the control panel is similar to the following procedure.

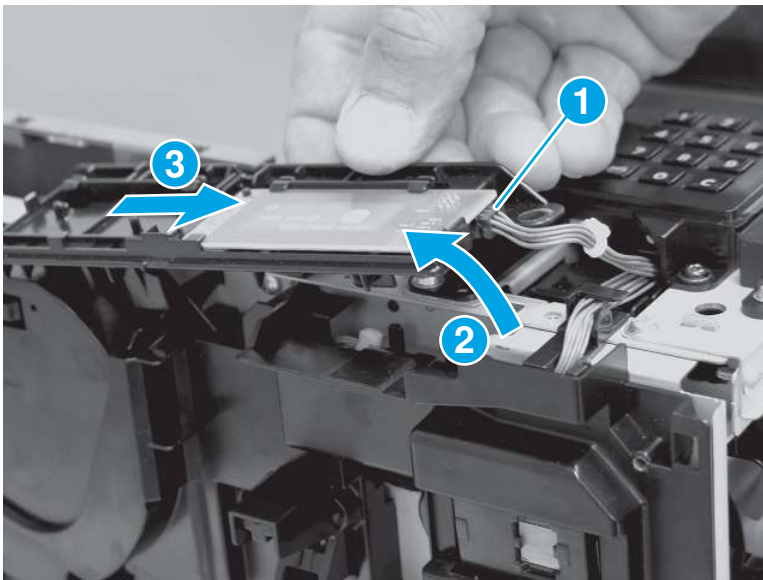
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2026 Remove one screw



2. **M552/M553:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1). Rotate the near field communication (NFC) PCA holder up (callout 2), and then slide it to the right (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 5-2027 Remove the PCA holder




3. **M552/M553:** Remove one cable from the guide.

Figure 5-2028 Remove one cable

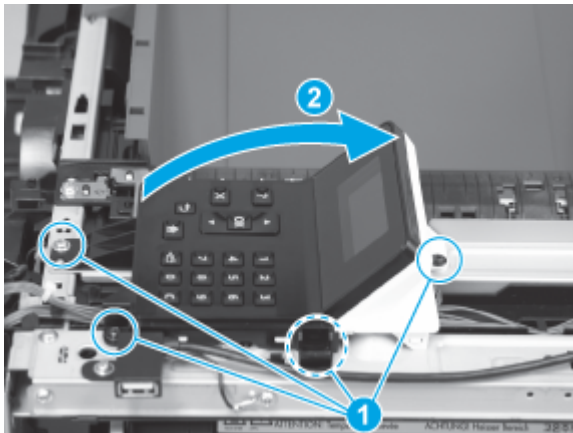


4. **M552/M553:** Remove four screws (callout 1), and then turn the control panel over (callout 2).

 **NOTE:** **M554:** Remove any screws fastening the assembly to the printer chassis, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

 **CAUTION:** The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

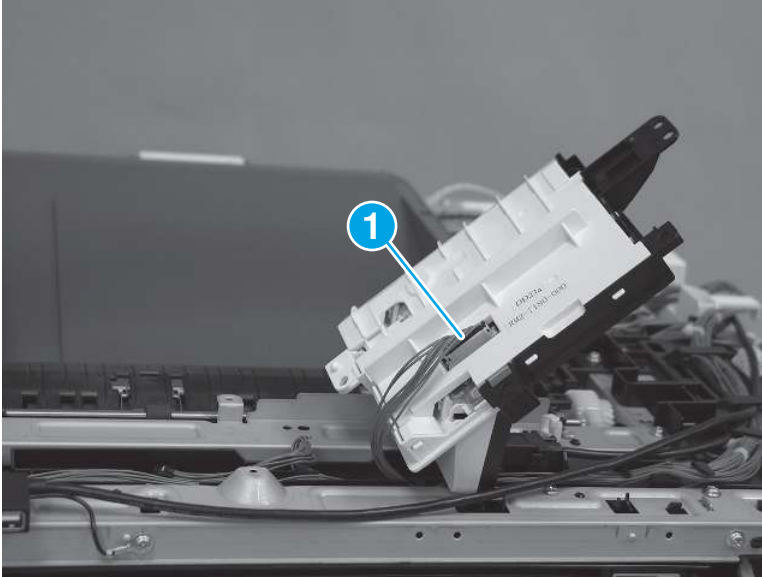
Figure 5-2029 Remove four screws



5. **M552/M553:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** **M554:** Disconnect one flat cable, and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2030 Remove the control panel

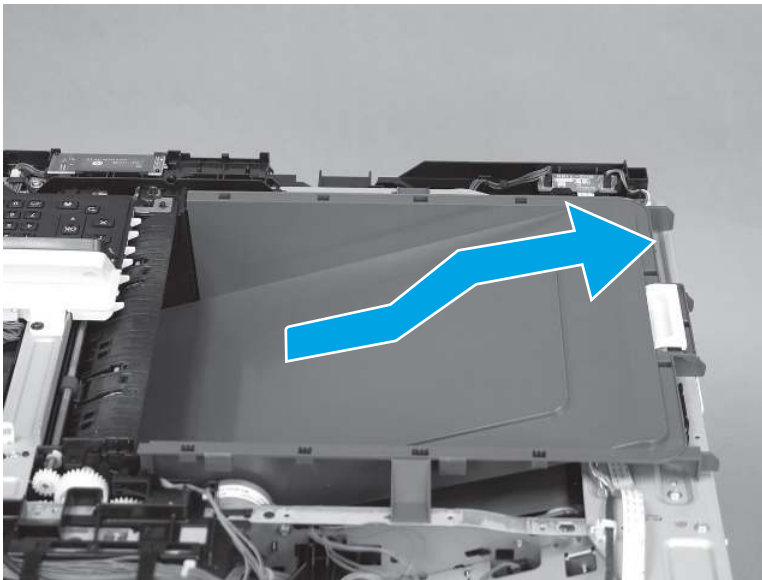


Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

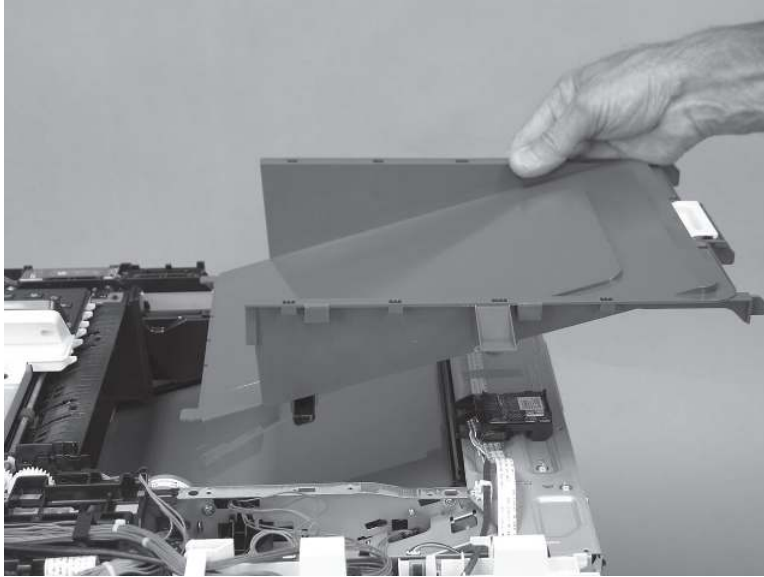
1. Slightly slide and lift the cover to release it.

Figure 5-2031 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2032 Remove the cover

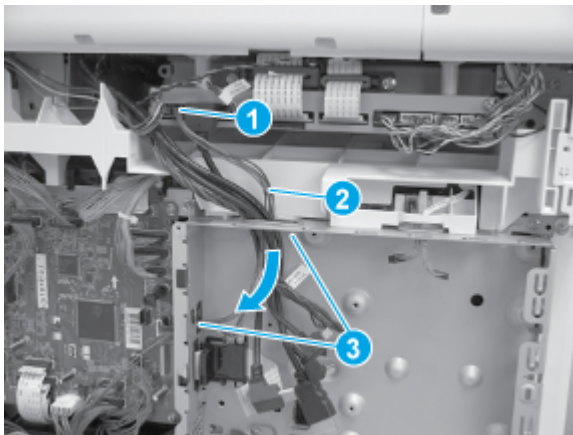


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

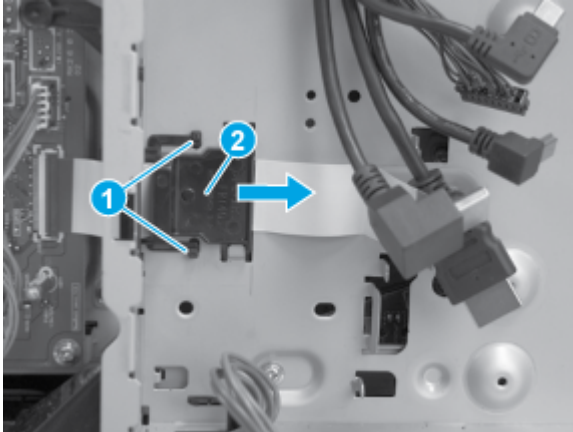
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-2033 Disconnect one connector



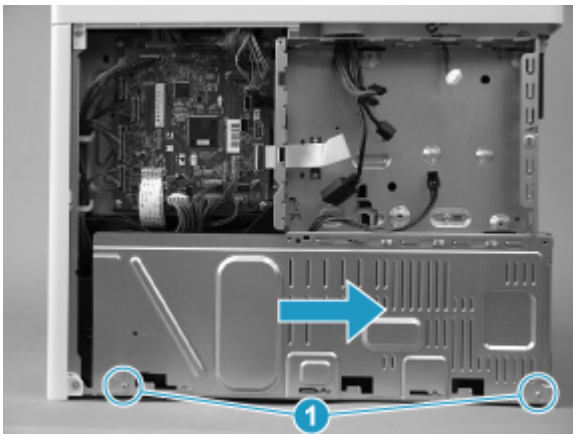
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-2034 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

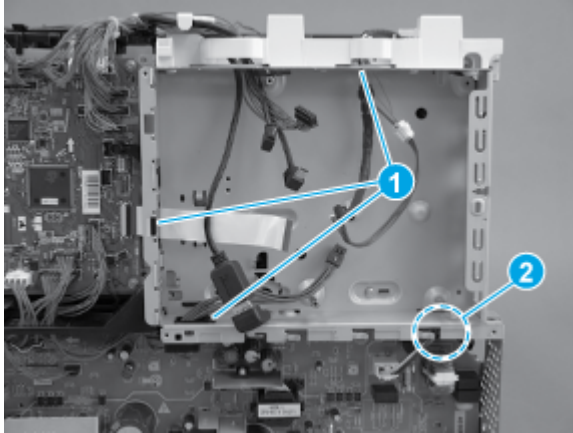
Figure 5-2035 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

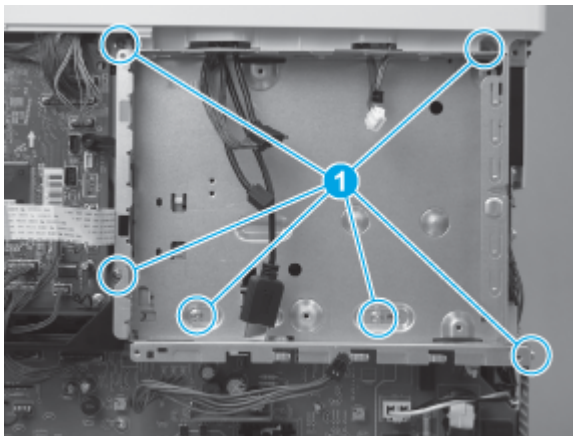
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-2036 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



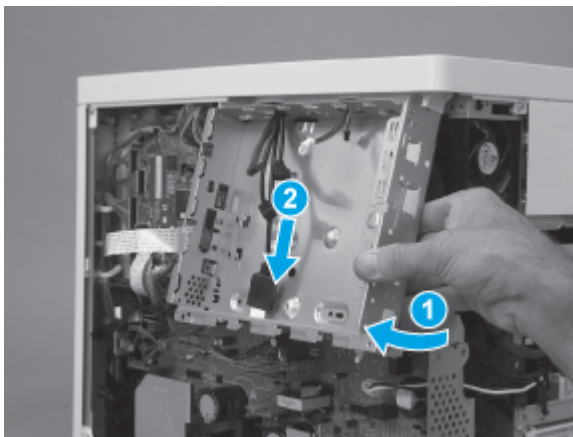
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2037 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2038 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


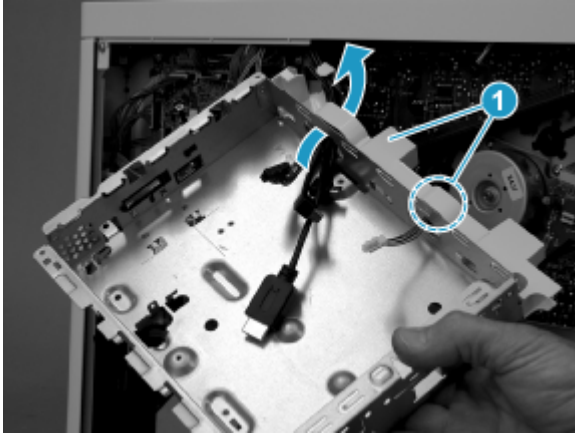

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-2039 Remove the formatter case



Remove the right rear cover

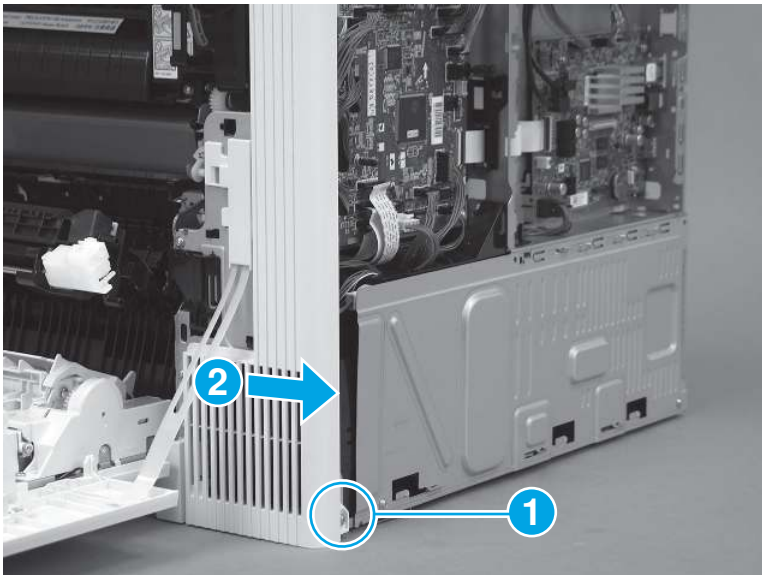
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

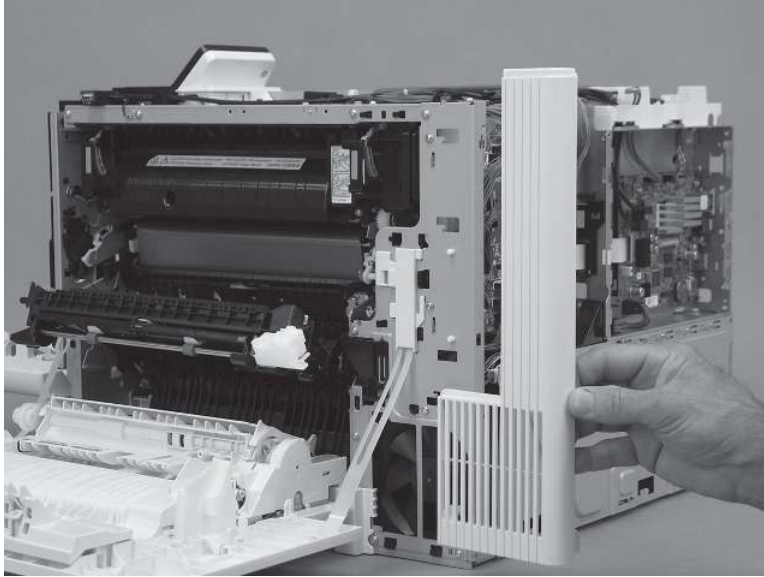
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-2040 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2041 Remove the cover



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.



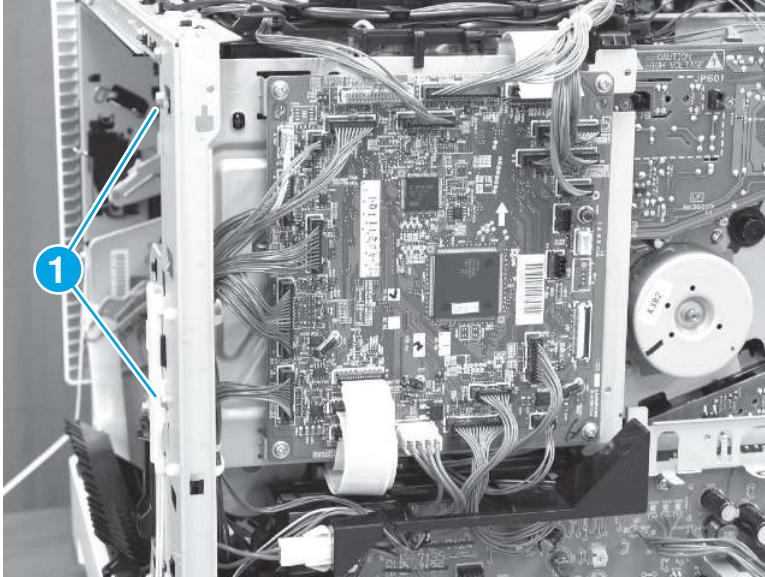
NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

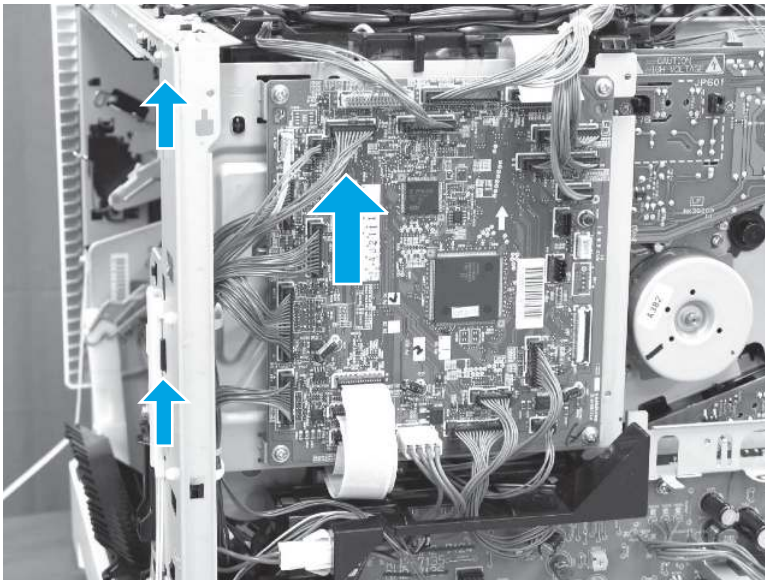
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-2042 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-2043 Remove the plate



Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

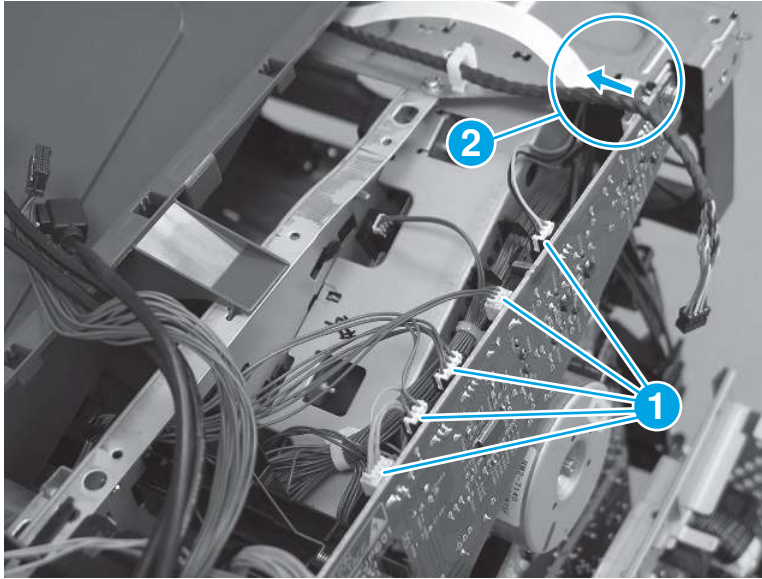
Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply T.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

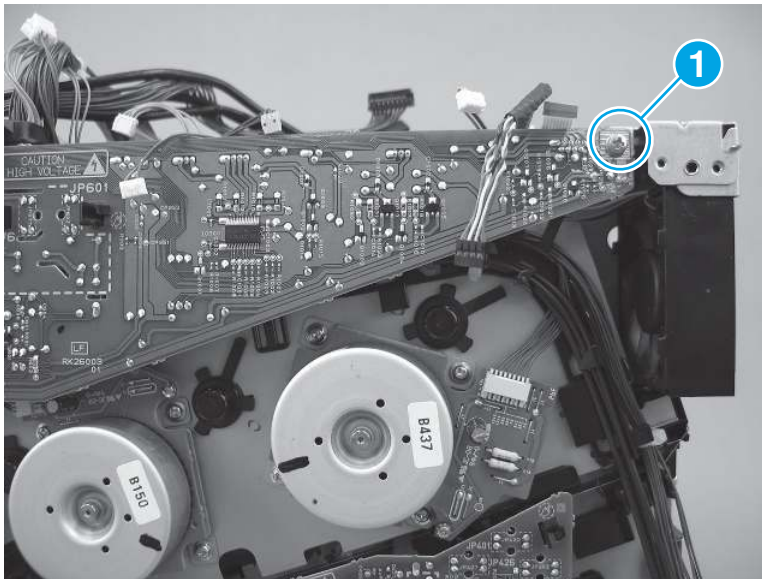
1. Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), and then disconnect one flat cable (callout 2).

Figure 5-2044 Disconnect five connectors and one flat cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

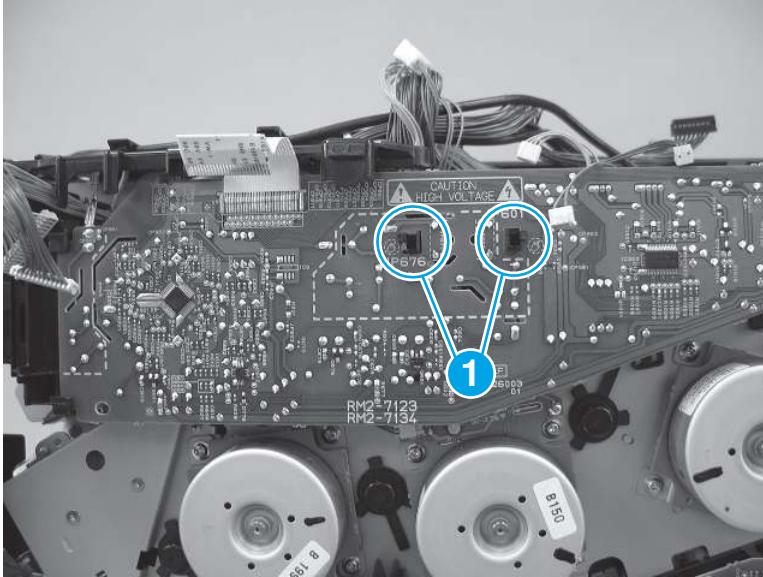
Figure 5-2045 Remove one screw



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then separate the HVPST from the printer.

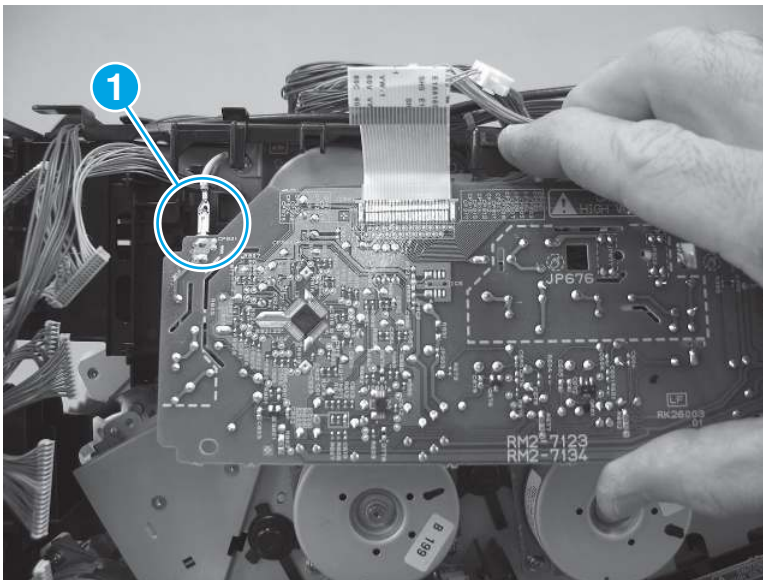
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the HVPST. It is still connected to the printer by ground wire harness.

Figure 5-2046 Release the HVPST



4. Release one ground wire connector (callout 1), and then remove the HVPST.

Figure 5-2047 Remove the HVPST



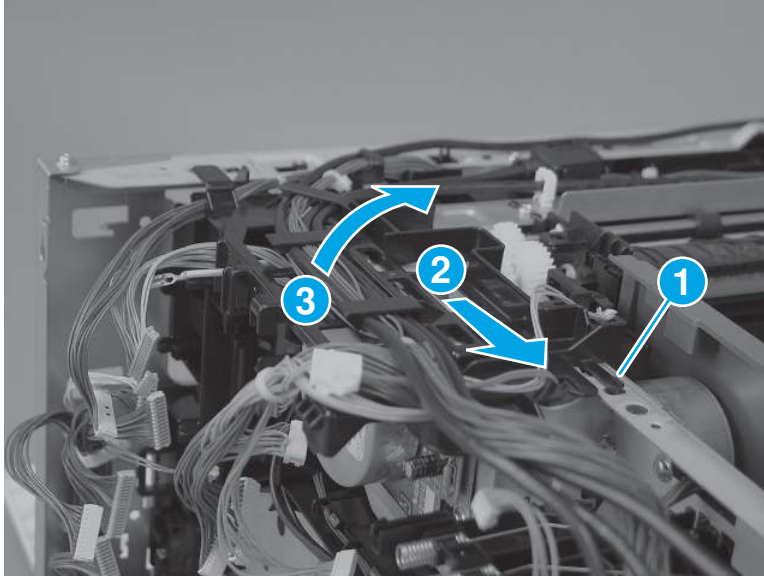
Remove the fuser drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive assembly.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the guide to release it (callout 2), and then rotate the guide up and away from the chassis to move it out of the way (callout 3).

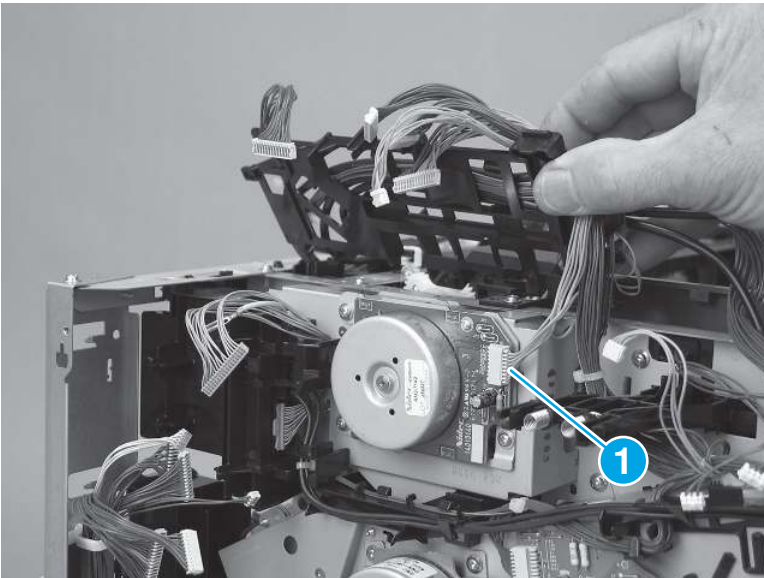
⚠ CAUTION: One wire harnesses in the guide is still attached to the fuser motor. Do not attempt to completely remove the guide.

Figure 5-2048 Move the guide out of the way



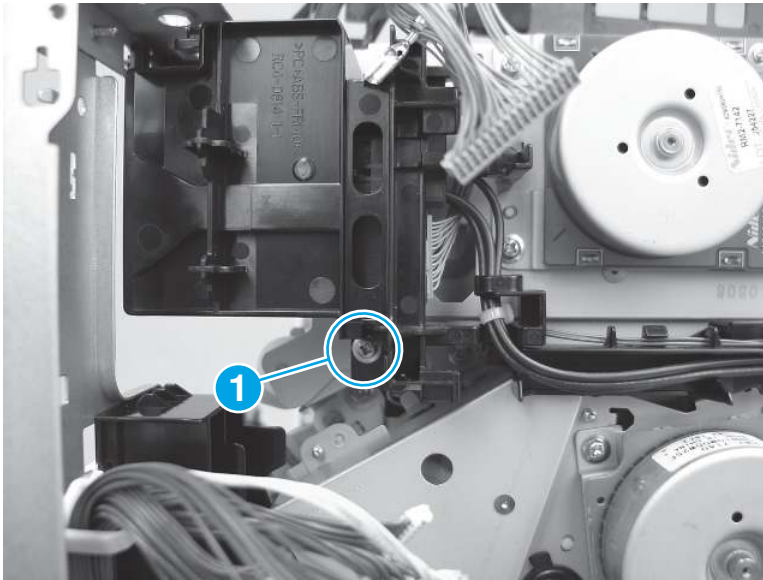
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2049 Disconnect one connector



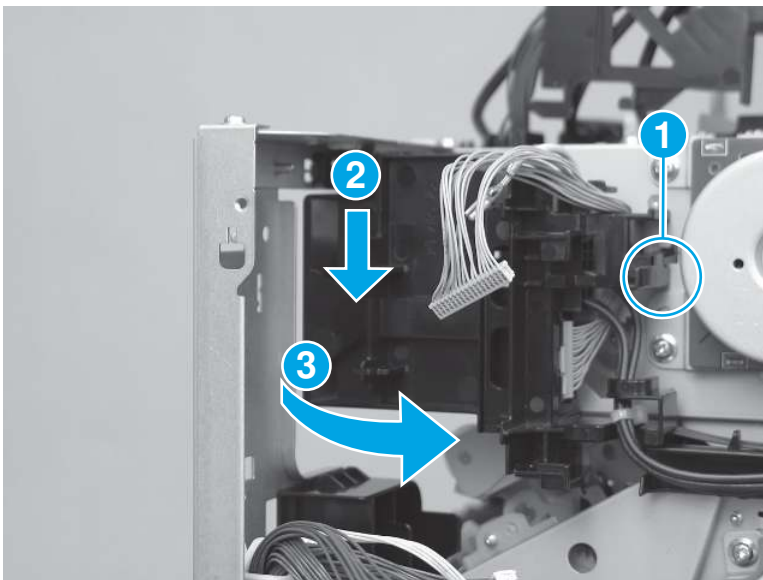
3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2050 Remove one screw



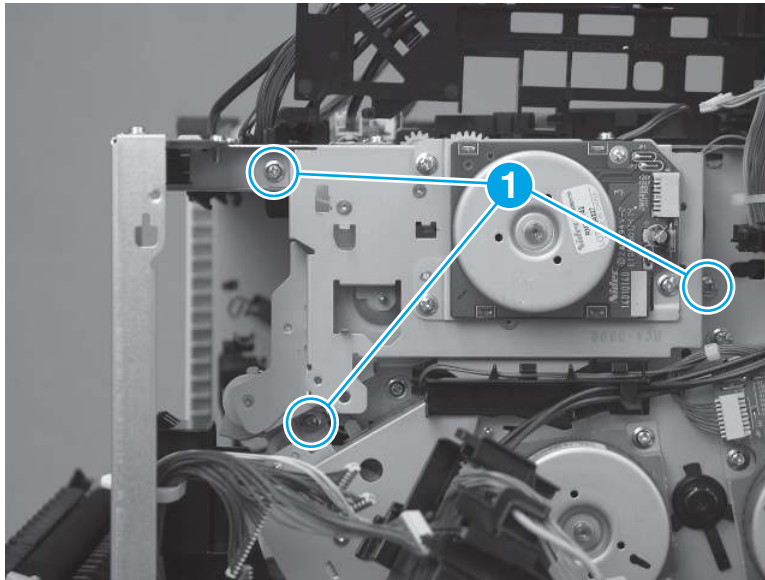
4. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the guide down to release it (callout 2), and then rotate the guide away from the chassis to remove it (callout 3).

Figure 5-2051 Remove the guide



5. Remove three screws (callout 1).

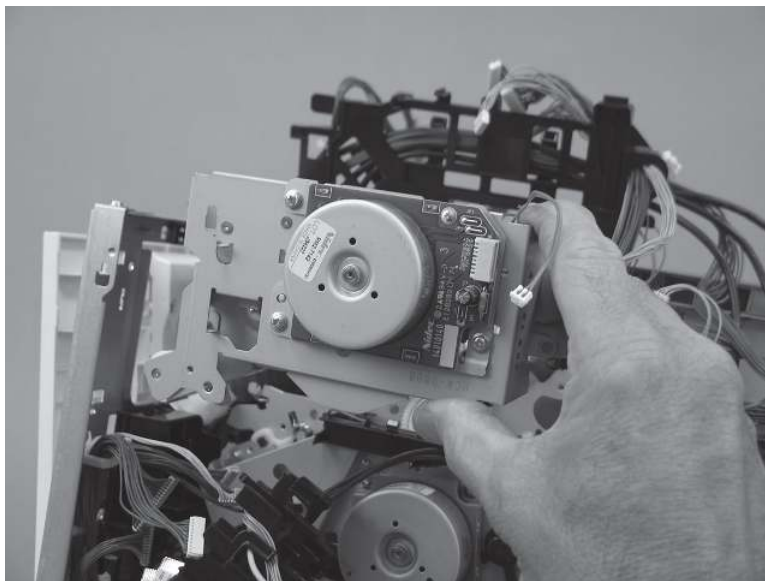
Figure 5-2052 Remove three screws



6. Remove the assembly.

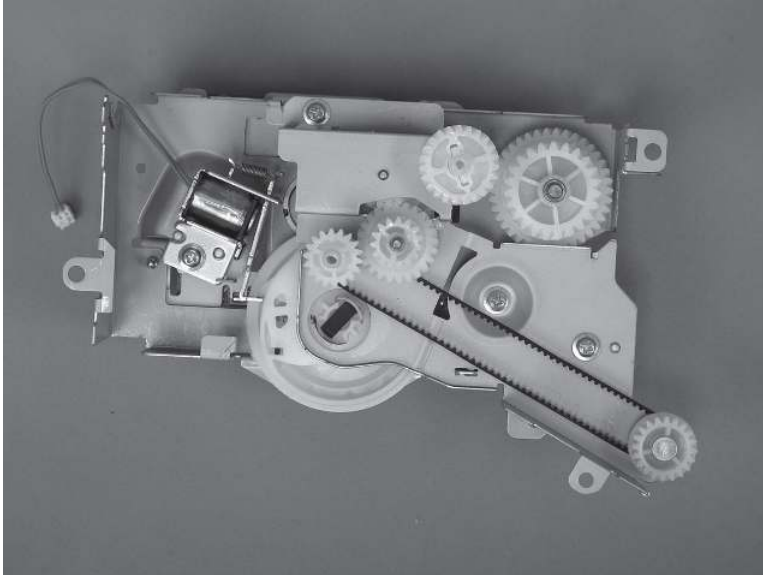
⚠ CAUTION: Two gears on the back side of the assembly are not captive. Handle the assembly carefully.

Figure 5-2053 Remove the assembly



7. **Optional step:** Two gears (callout 1) on the back side of the assembly are not captive. If the gears are dislodged, install them as shown.

Figure 5-2054 Remove the assembly



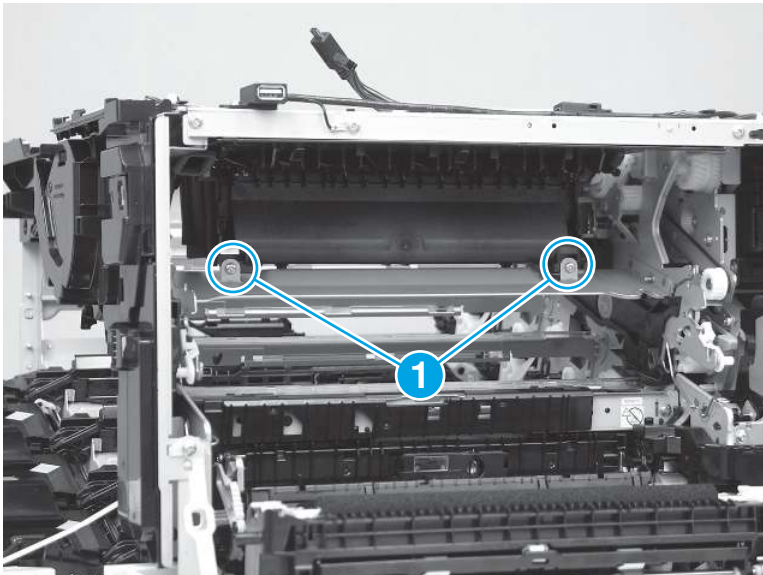
Remove the delivery assembly

Follow these steps to remove the delivery assembly.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

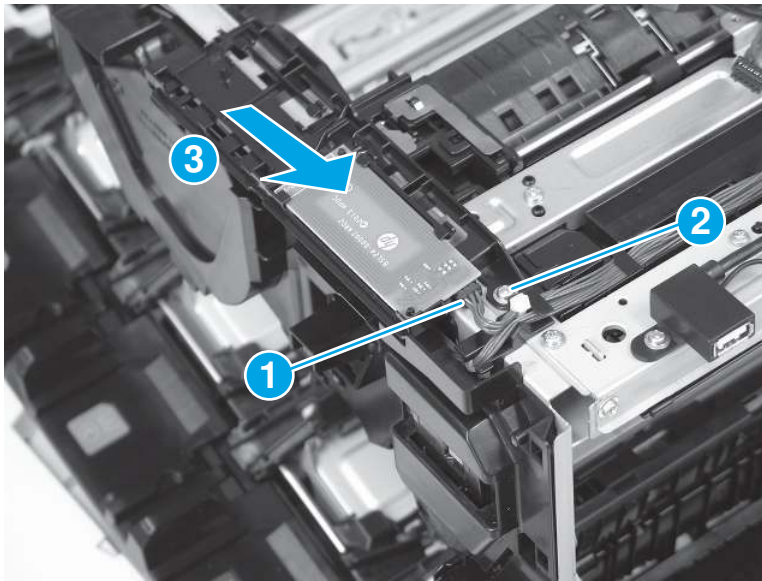
 **NOTE:** These two screws are the self-tapping type.

Figure 5-2055 Remove two screws



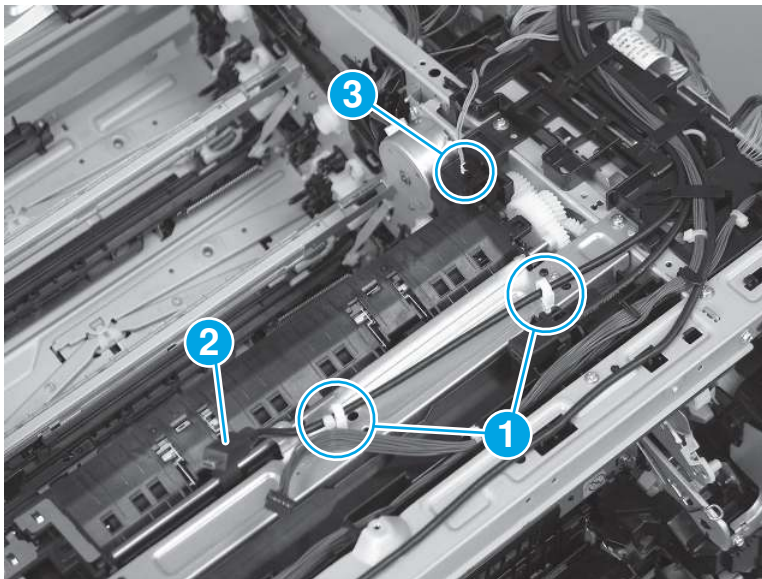
2. (M553x/M555/E55040): At the top-front-right corner of the printer, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the near field communication (NFC) PCA and holder by sliding them to the right (callout 3).

Figure 5-2056 Remove the NFC



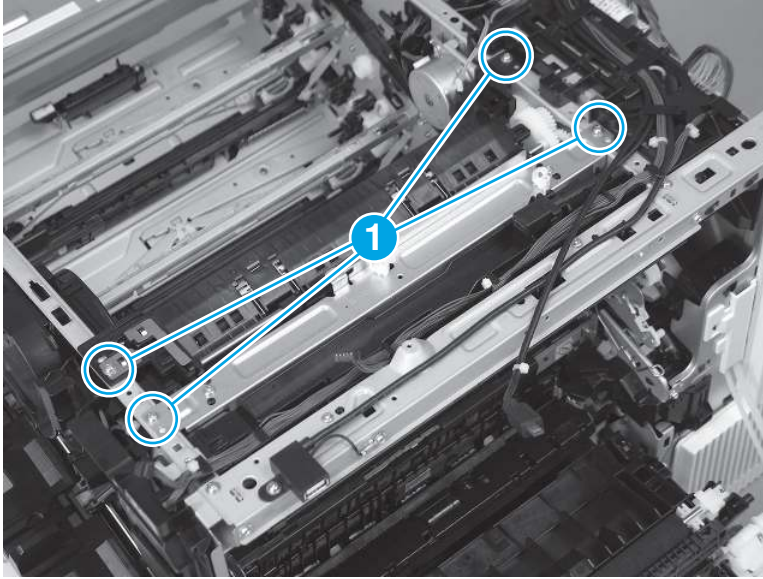
3. Release two retainers (callout 1), remove the USB cable (callout 2) from the retainers, and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

Figure 5-2057 Release two retainers and disconnect one connector



4. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2058 Remove four screws



5. Remove the delivery assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: The solenoid plunger and arm (callout 1) located on the right side of the assembly are not captive.

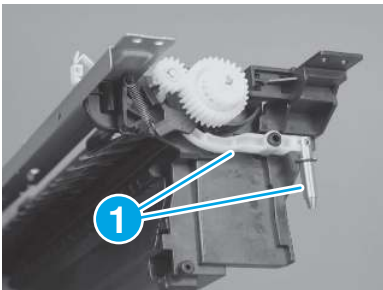
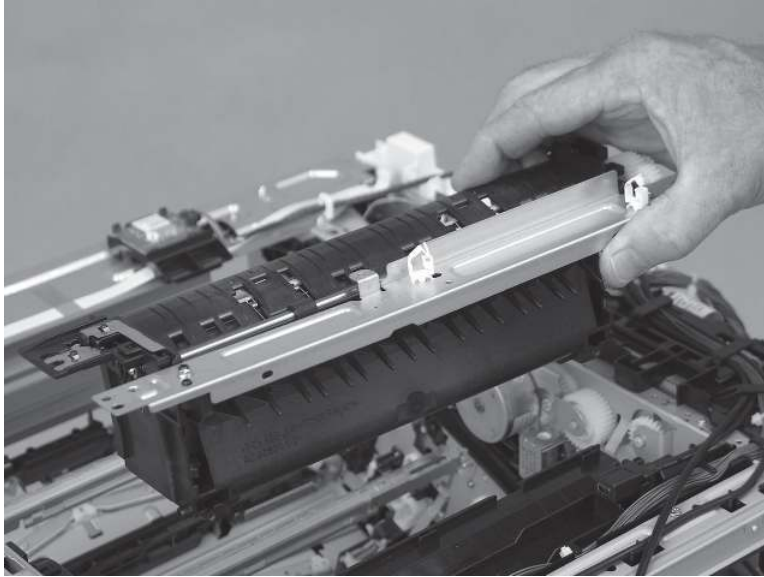


Figure 5-2059 Remove the assembly

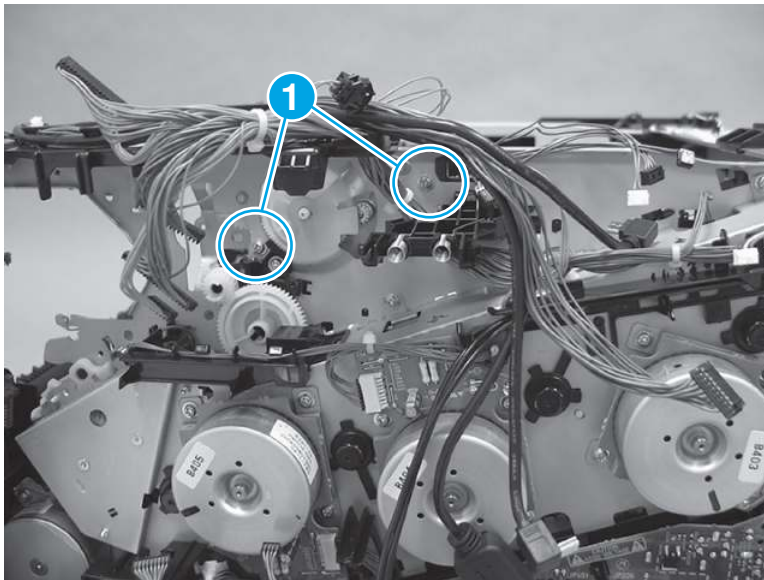


Remove duplex drive assembly and motor

Follow these steps to remove the duplex drive assembly and motor.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2060 Remove two screws



2. Remove the duplex drive assembly.


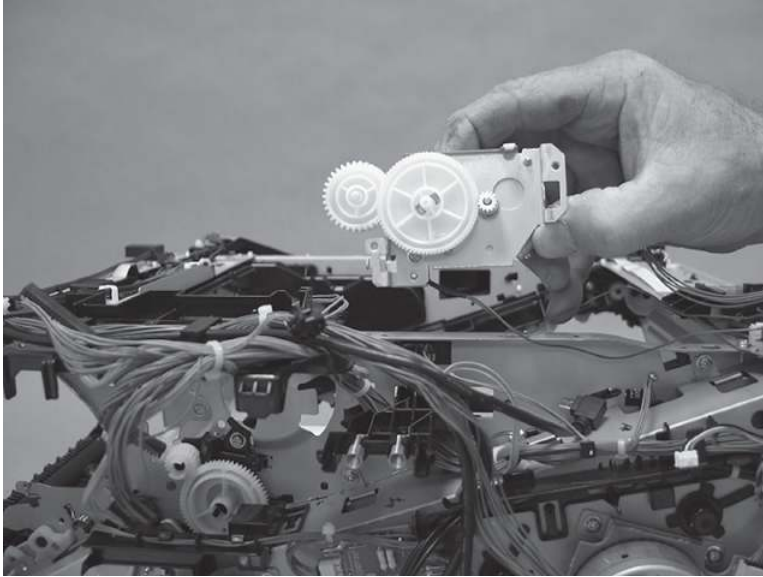
 **NOTE:** Feed two wire harnesses through the opening in the chassis as the assembly is removed.

Figure 5-2061 Remove the duplex drive assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly and motor (M5)

Learn about removing and replacing the pickup drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-80 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0008-000CN	Pickup drive assembly and motor (M5)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-2062 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-2063 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-2064 Remove the TCU

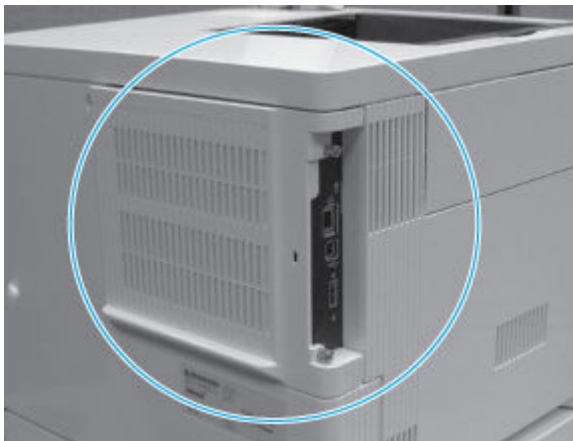


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

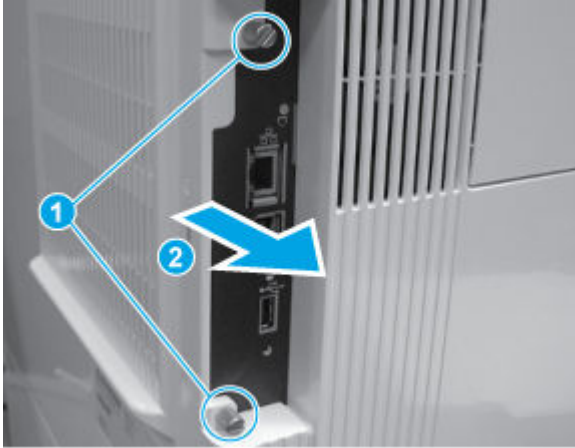
Figure 5-2065 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2066 Loosen the thumbscrews



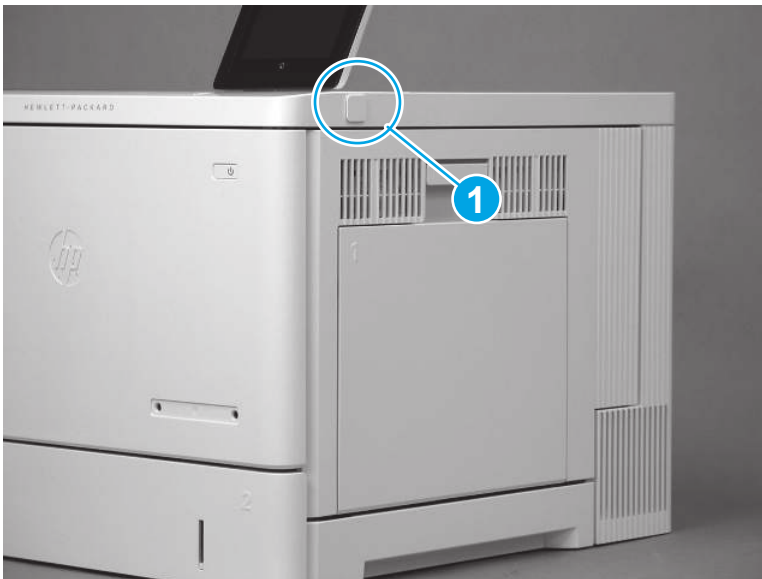
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2067 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2068 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-2069 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2070 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2071 Remove the cover

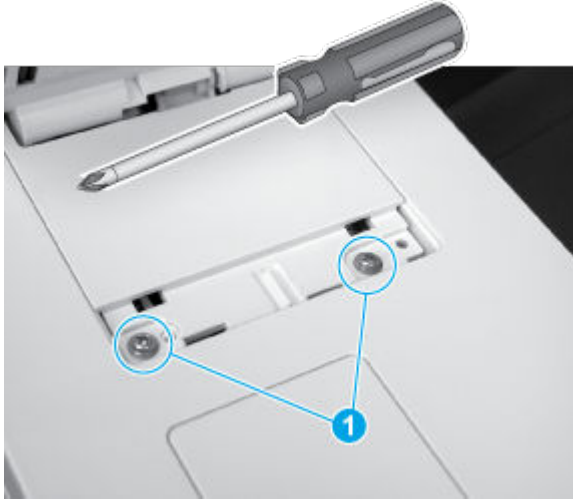


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2072 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

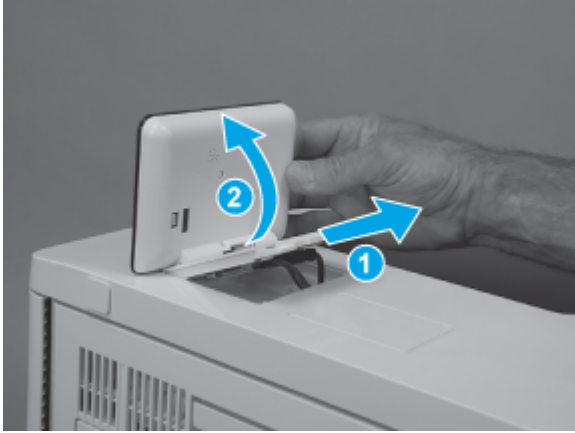
Figure 5-2073 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2074 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


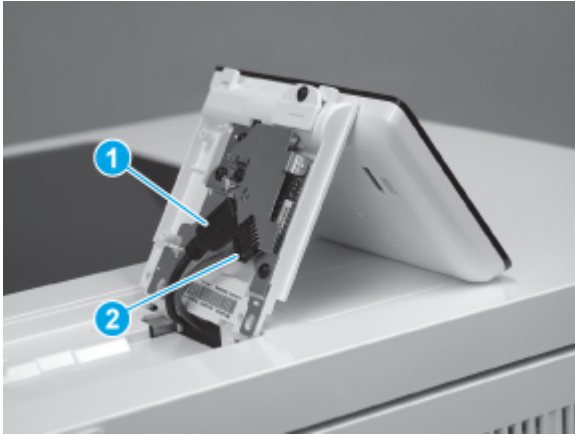
 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2075 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)

- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


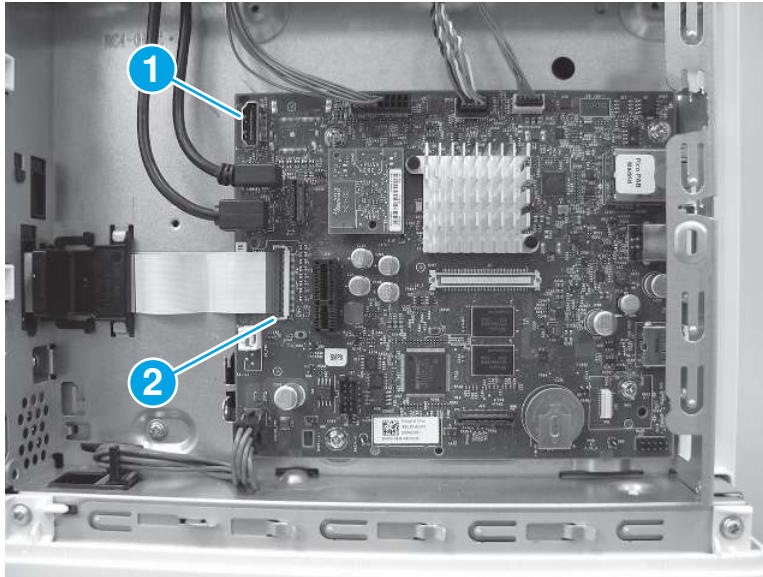
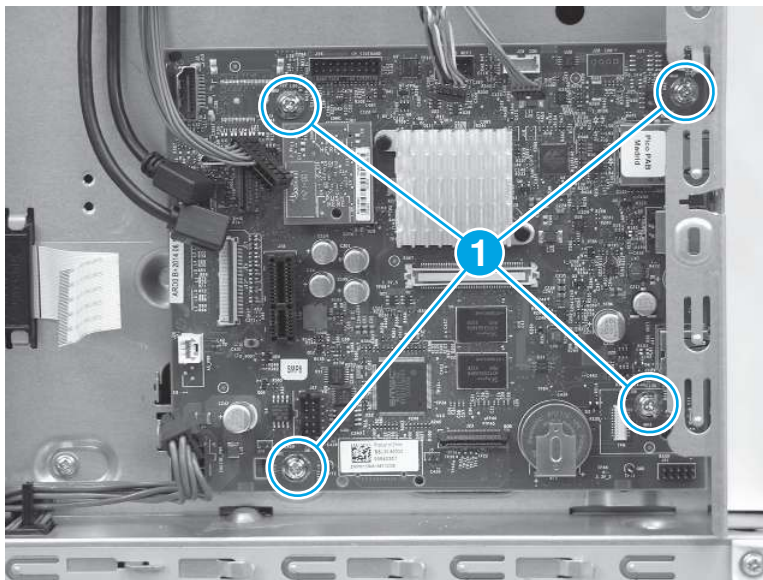
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2076 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..

Figure 5-2077 Remove four screws




Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

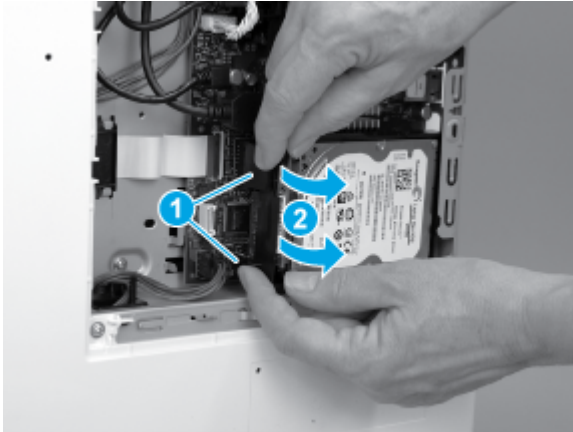
 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only.

An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-2078 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2079 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

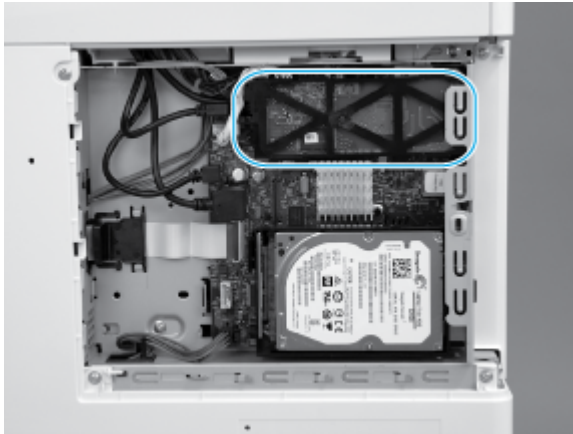
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

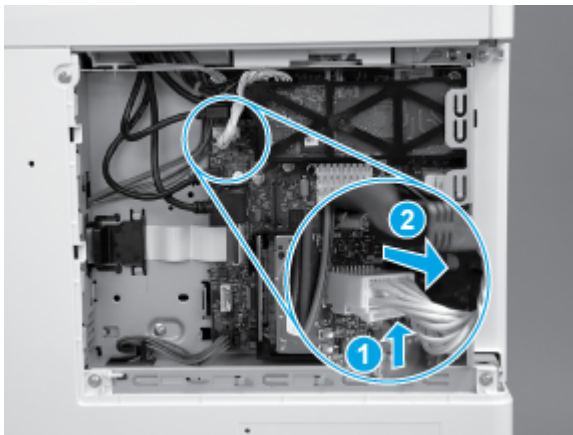
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2080 Locate the fax PCA



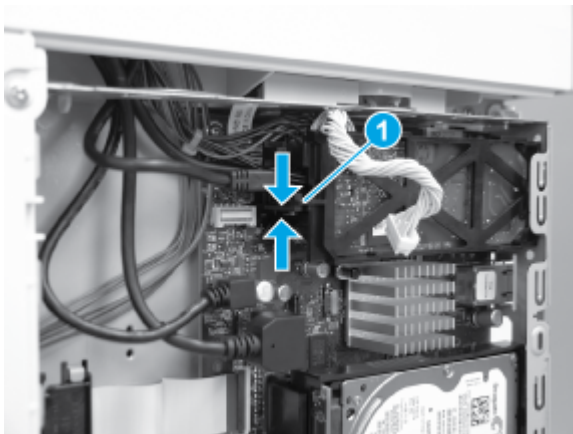
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-2081 Disconnect one connector



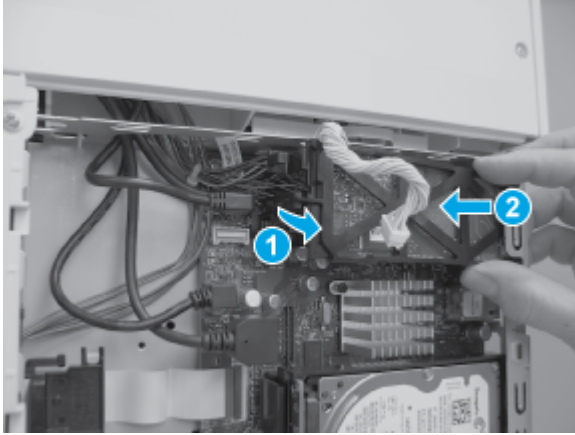
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-2082 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2083 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


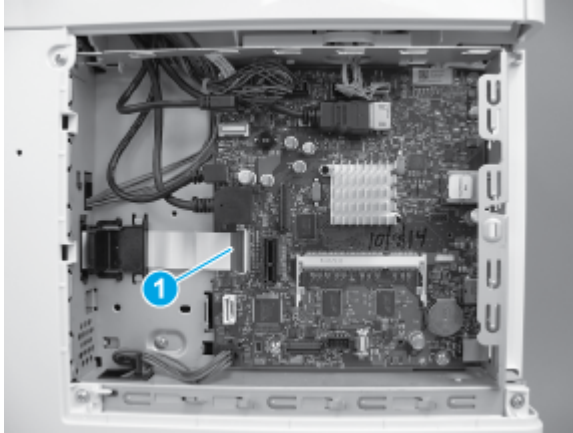
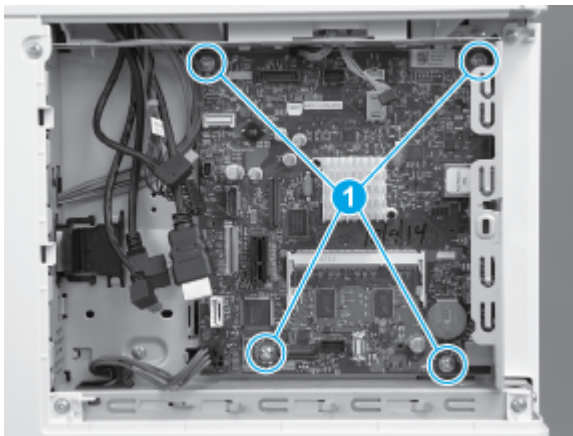
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2084 Disconnect all connectors



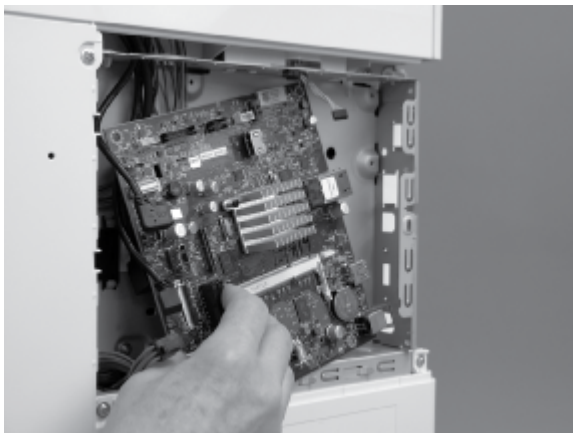
2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2085 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-2086 Remove the formatter



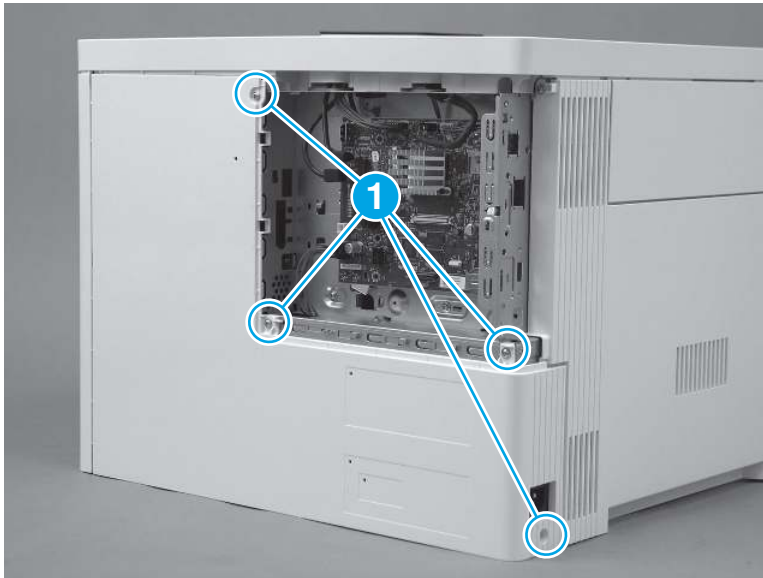
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

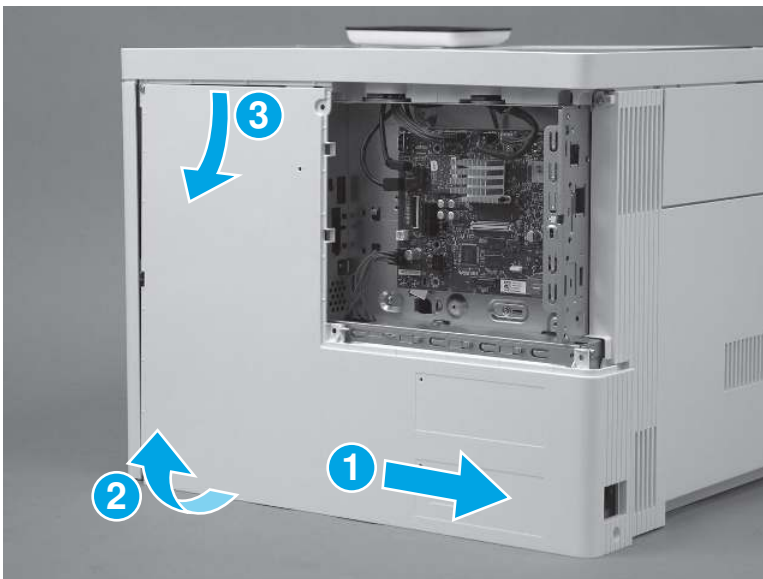
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2087 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-2088 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

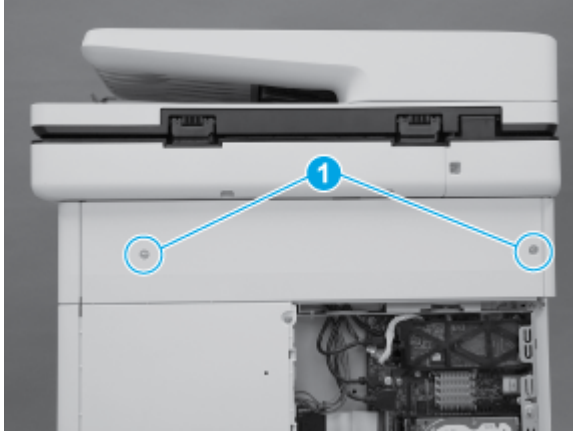
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

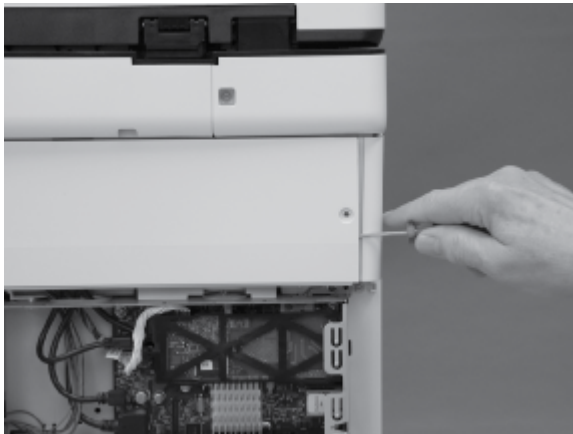
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-2089 Remove two screws



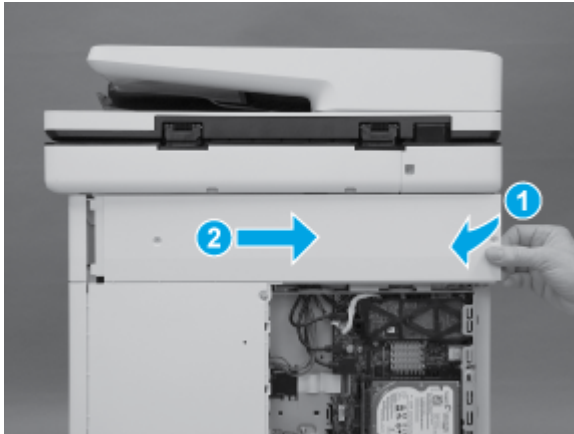
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2090 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-2091 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2092 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2093 Remove four screws




2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2094 Remove the cover



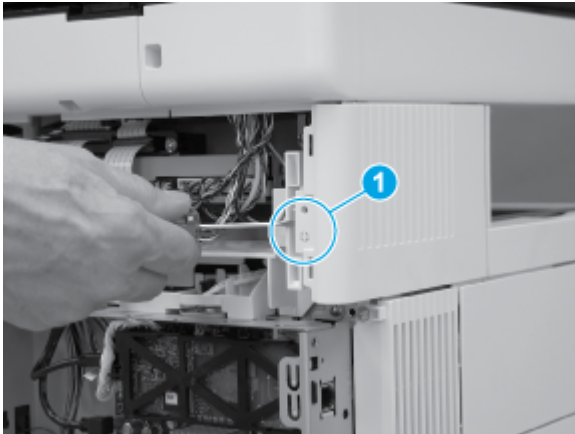
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2095 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-2096 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2097 Remove the left upper cover



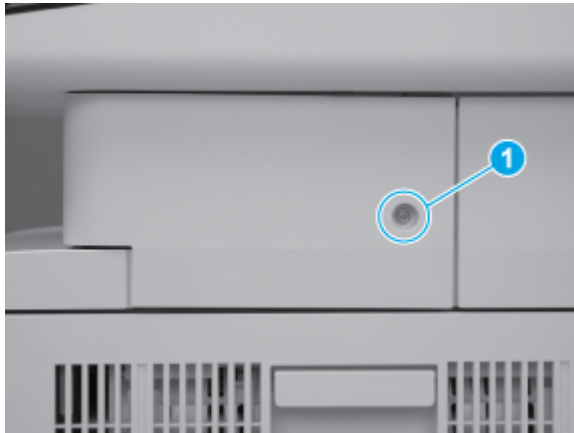
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2098 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2099 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2100 Rotate the cover



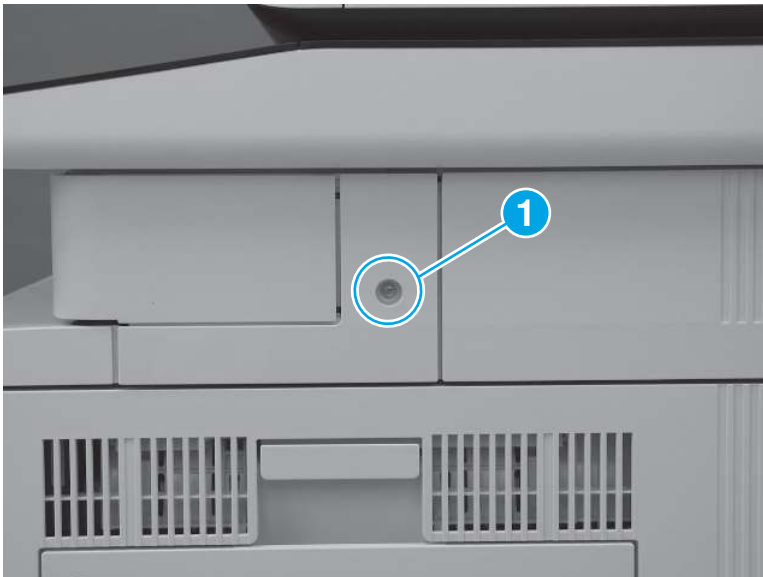
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2101 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2102 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2103 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2104 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

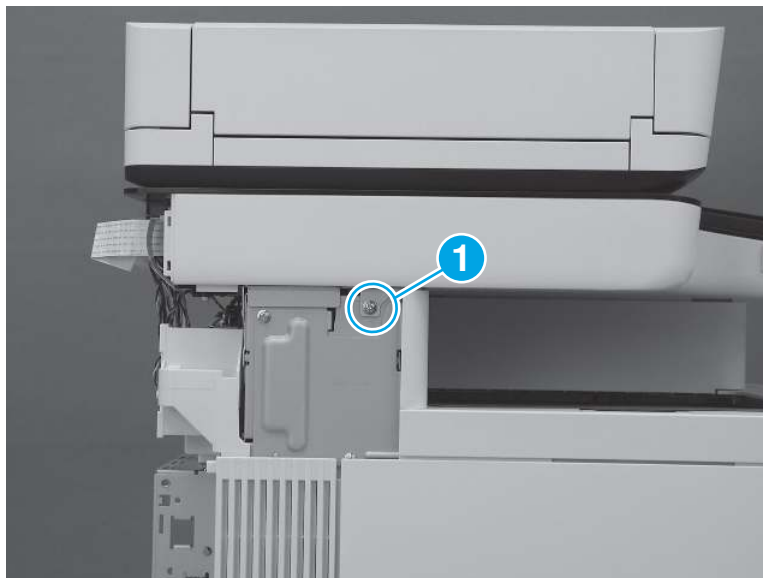
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

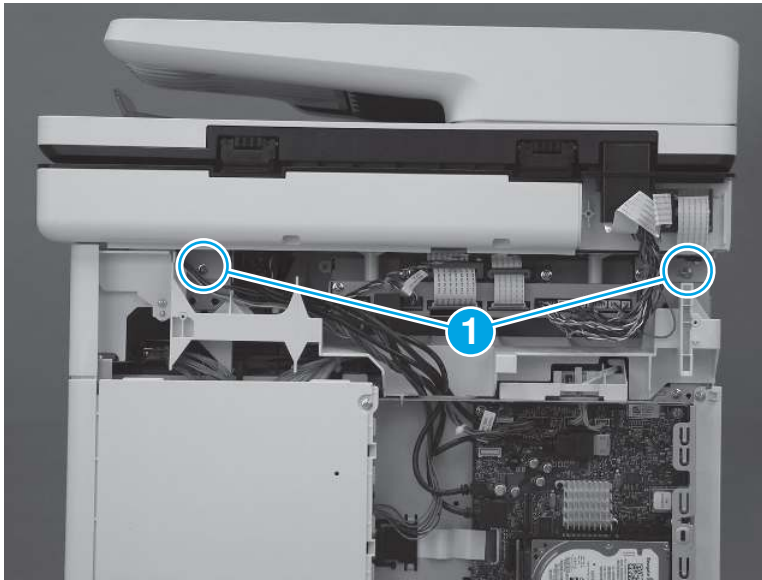
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2105 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

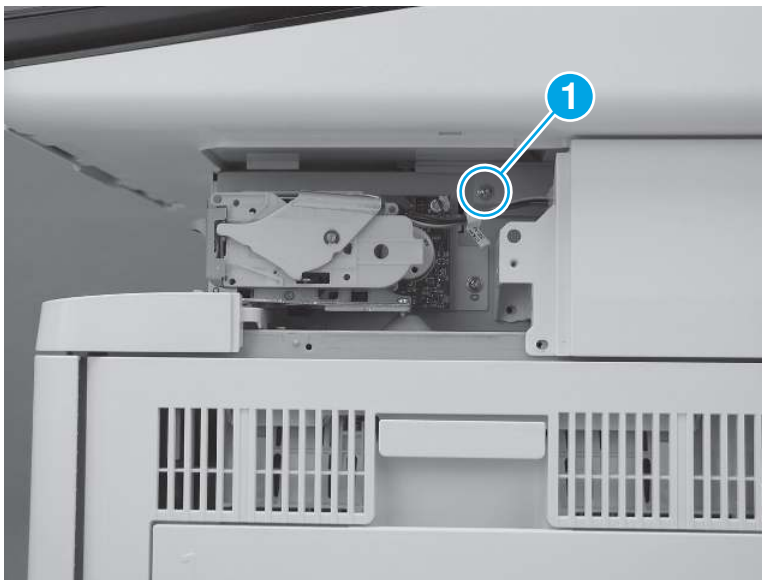
Figure 5-2106 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

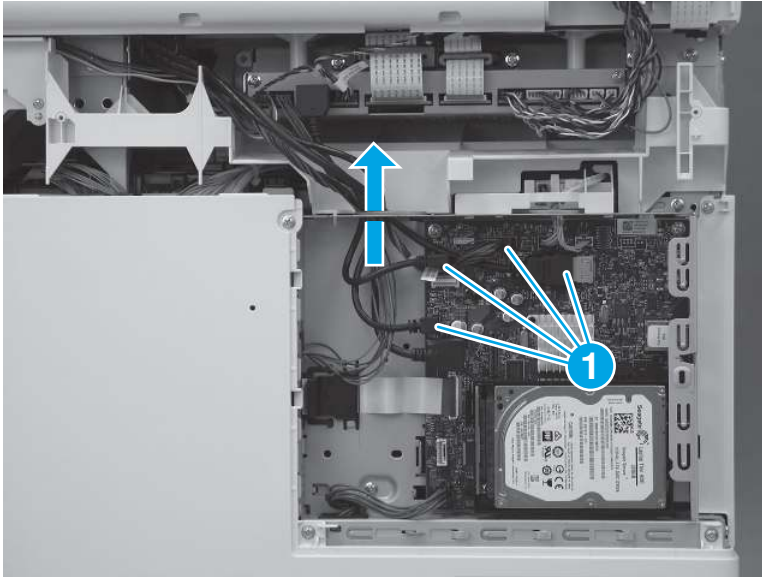
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-2107 Remove one screw



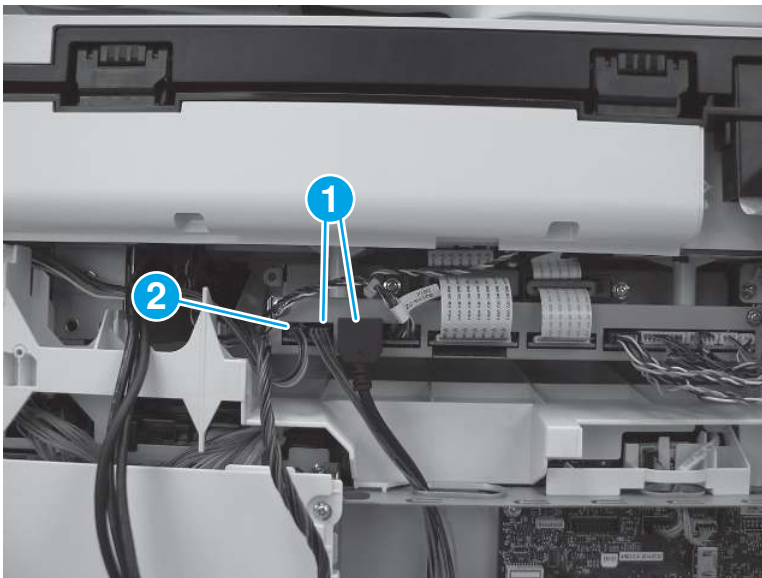
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-2108 Disconnect cables and connectors



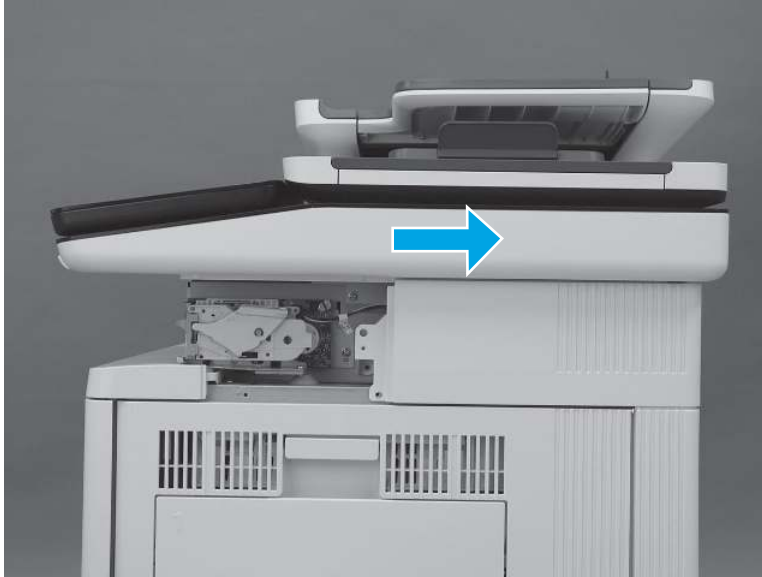
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-2109 Disconnect connectors



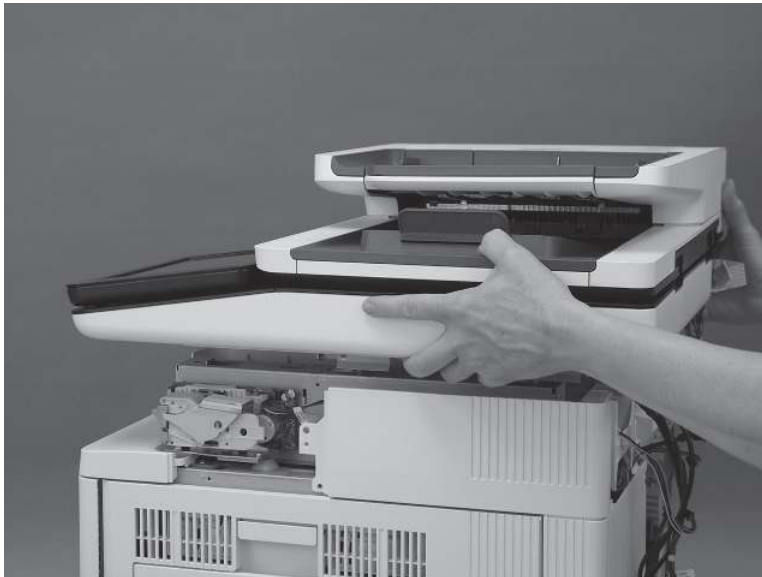
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2110 Release the image scanner




7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-2111 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

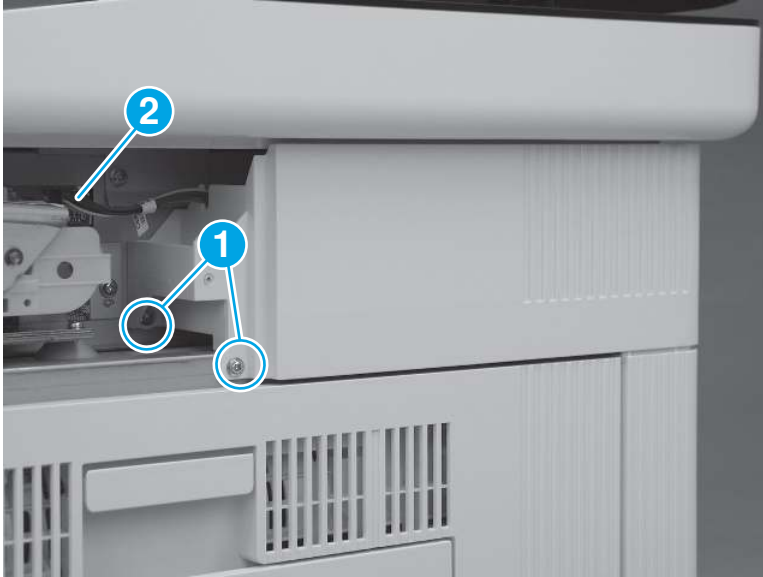
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-2112 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


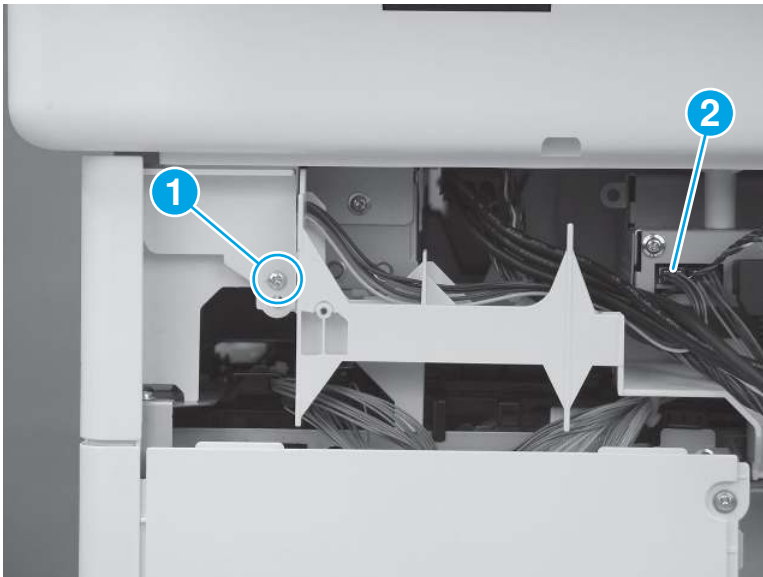
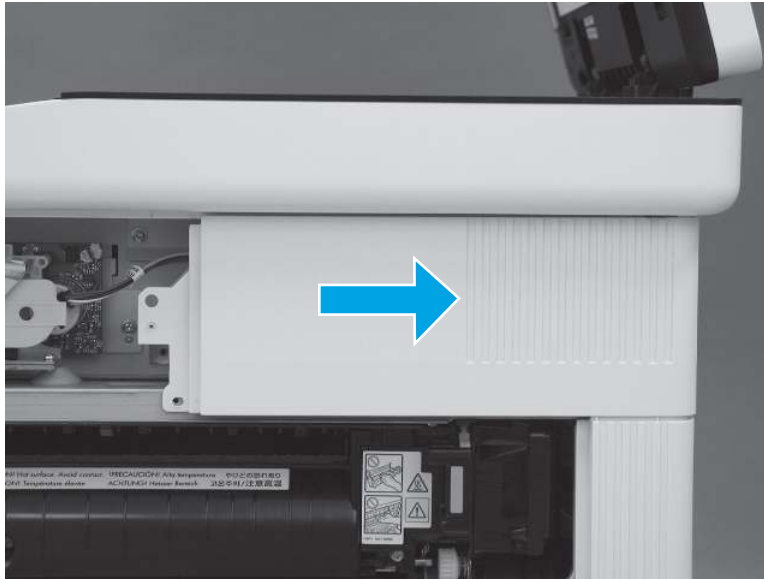
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2113 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

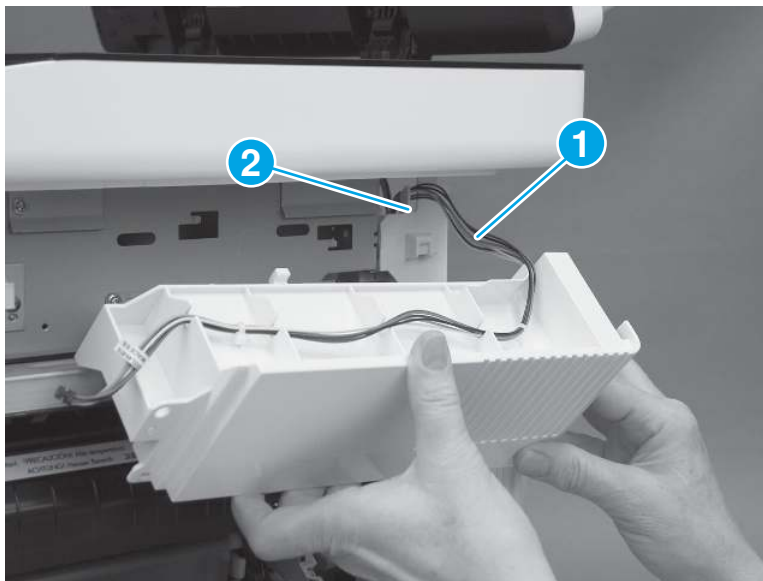
Figure 5-2114 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-2115 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

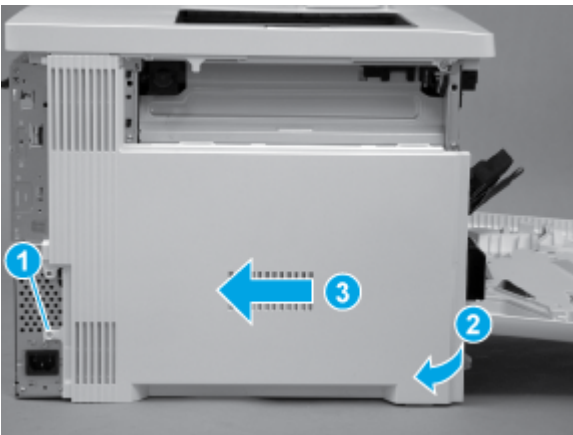
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2116 Remove one screw



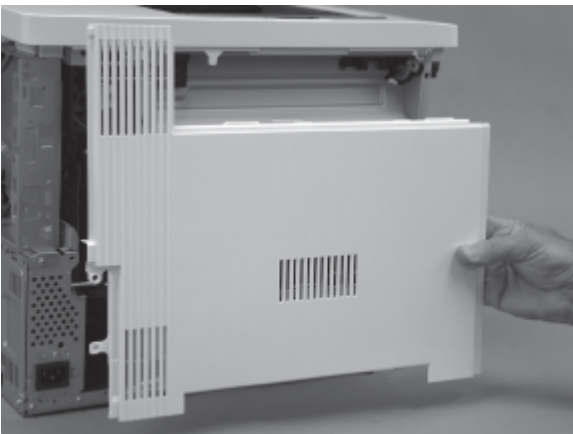
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2117 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2118 Remove the cover



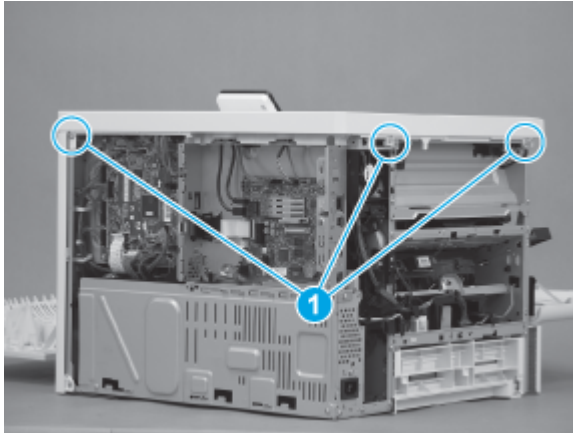
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2119 Remove three screws




2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.

 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-2120 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


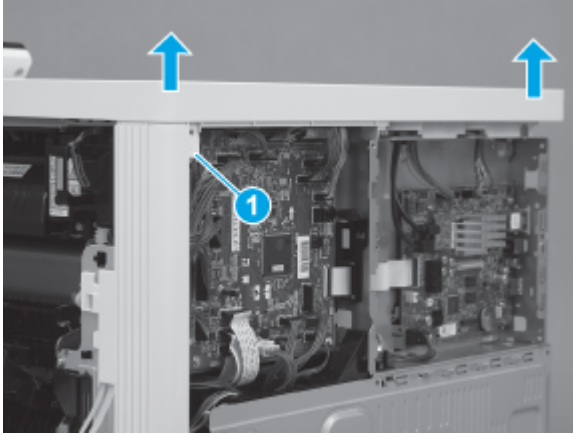
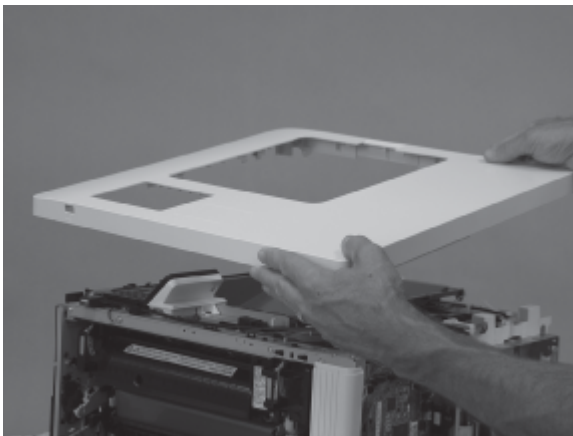
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for additional tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-2121 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2122 Remove the cover



Remove the right rear cover

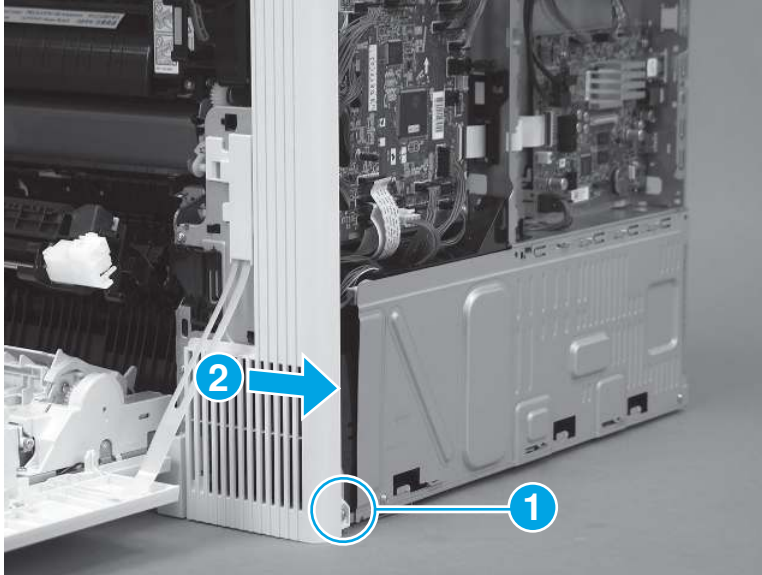
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

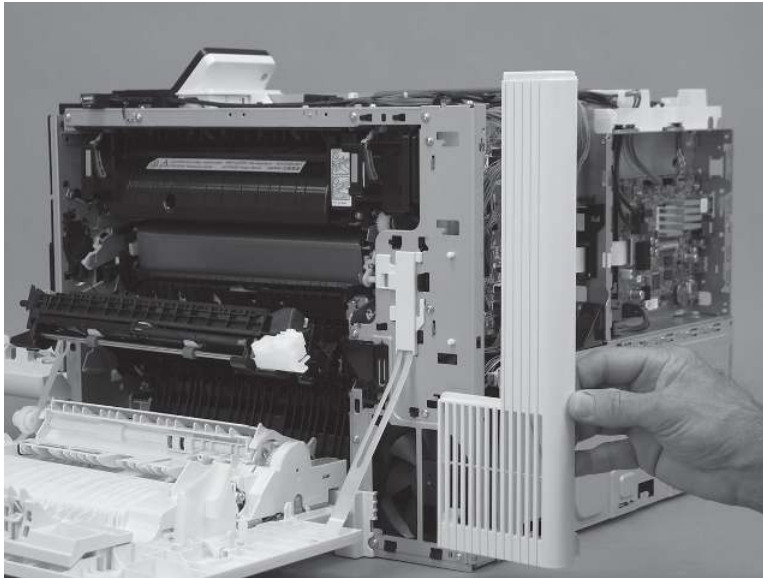
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-2123 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2124 Remove the cover

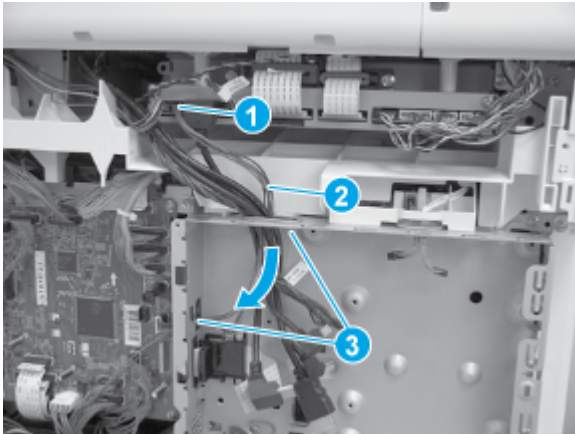


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

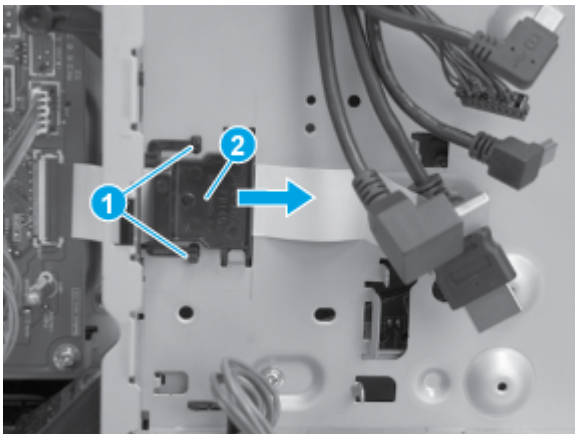
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-2125 Disconnect one connector



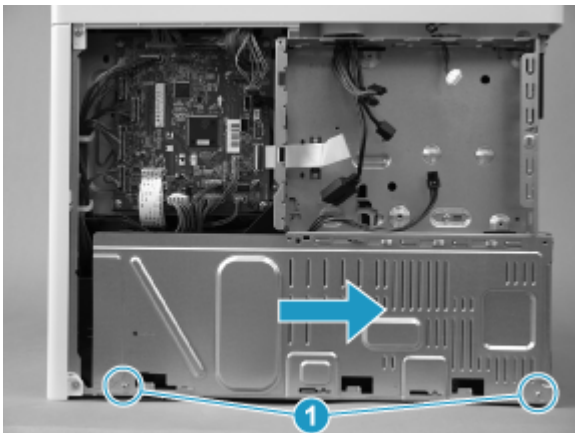
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-2126 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

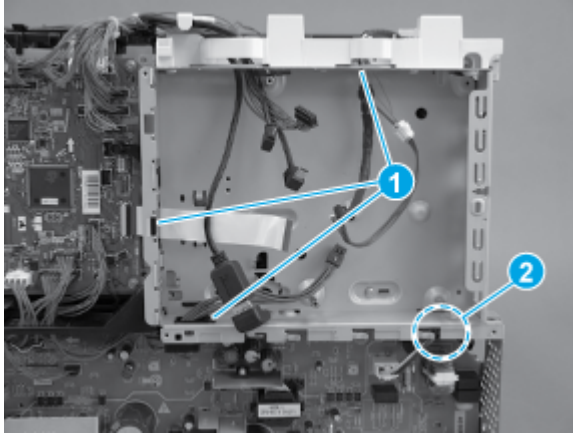
Figure 5-2127 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

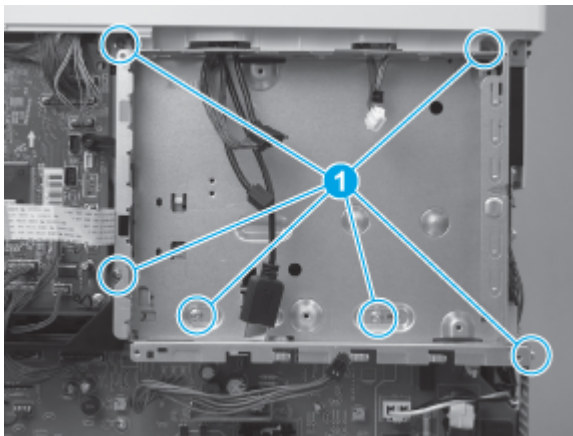
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-2128 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



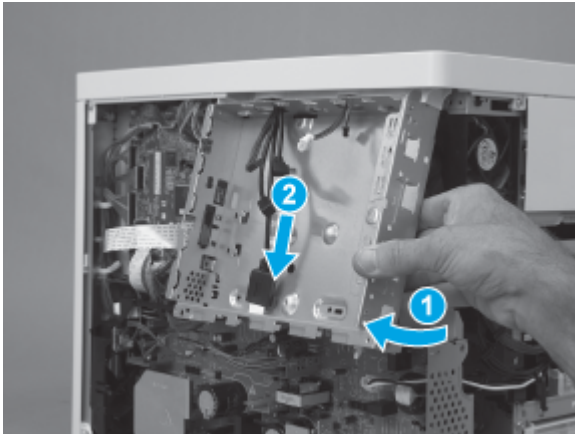
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2129 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2130 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


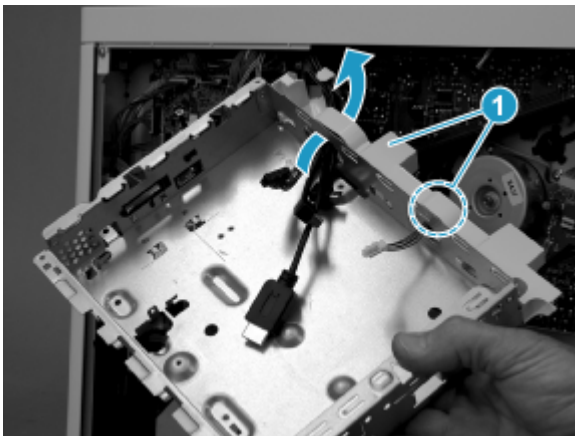
 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-2131 Remove the formatter case

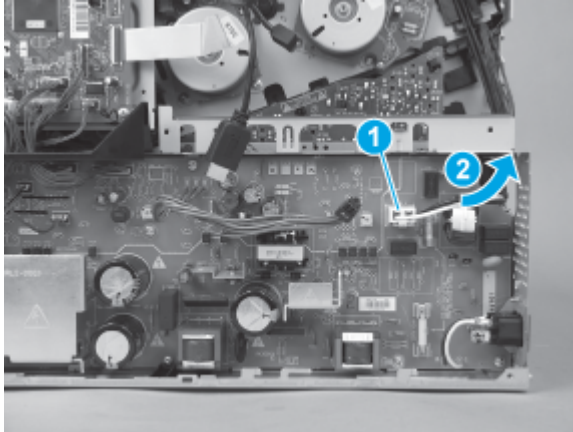


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

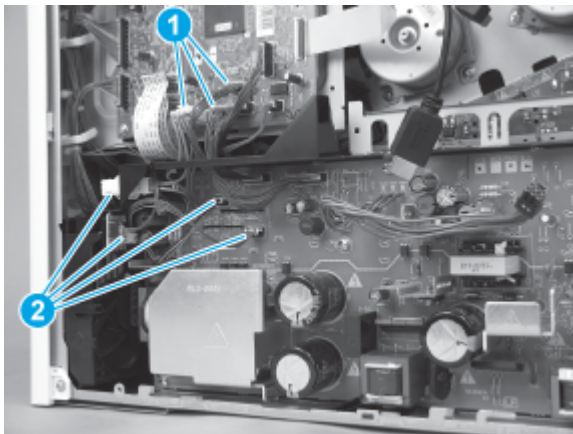
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-2132 Disconnect one wire harness



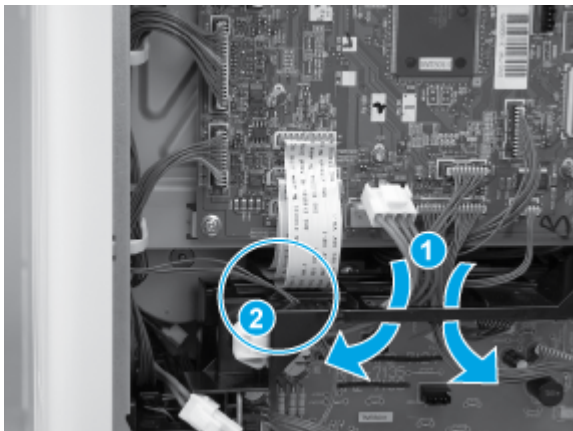
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-2133 Disconnect seven connectors



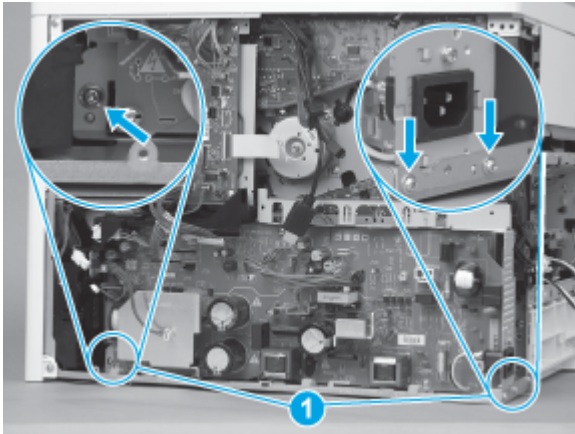
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-2134 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



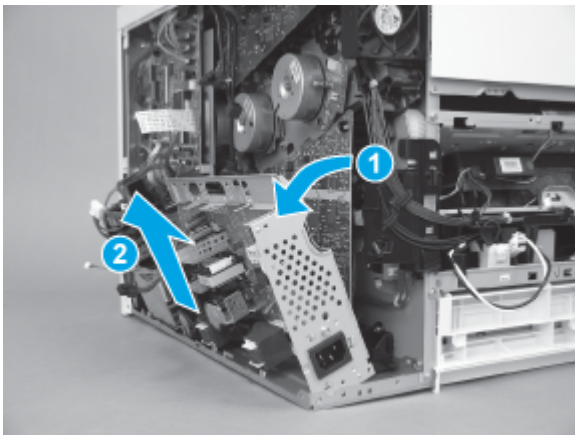
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2135 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2136 Remove the LVPS

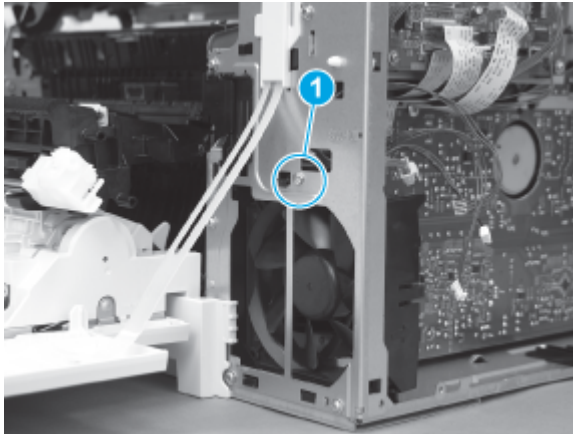


Remove the power supply fan (FM1)

Follow these steps to remove the power supply fan.

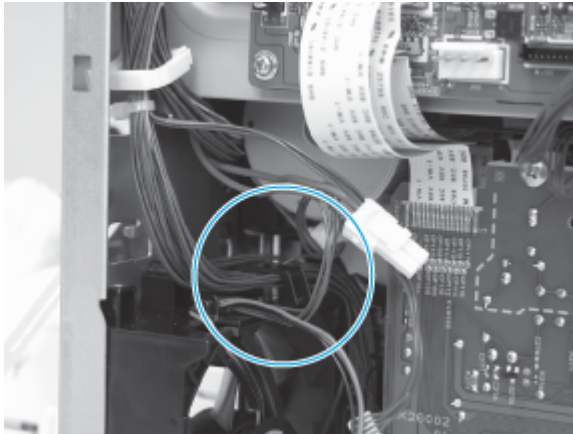
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2137 Remove one screw



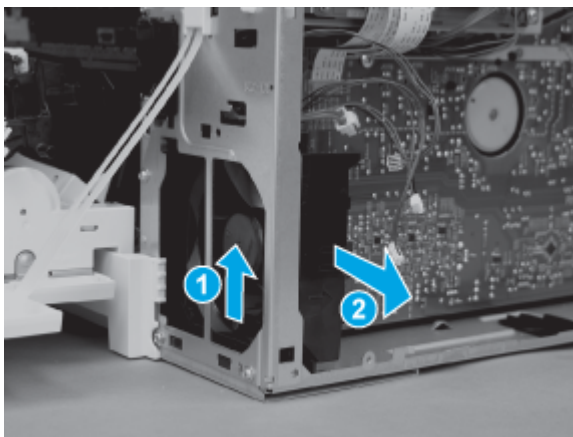
2. Release the wire harnesses from the retainer on the top of the fan bracket.

Figure 5-2138 Release the wire harnesses



3. Lift the fan up (callout 1), and then slide it out of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2139 Remove the fan

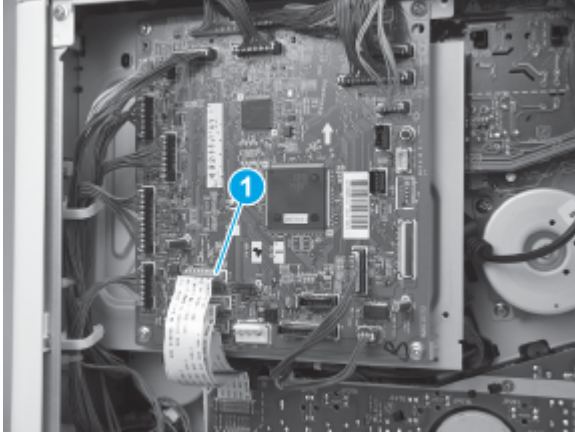


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

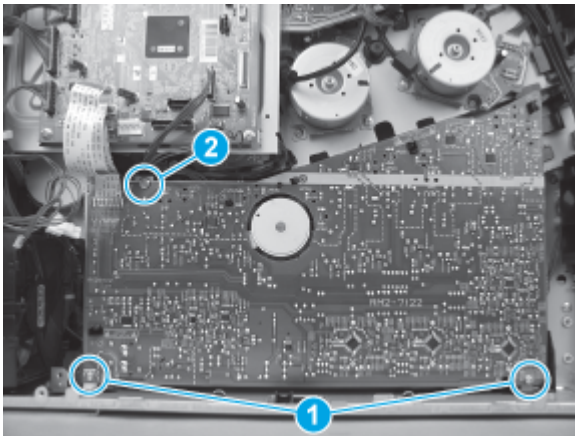
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-2140 Disconnect one flat cable



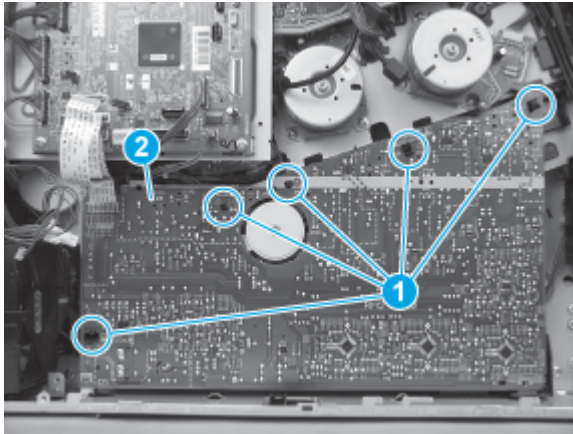
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-2141 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-2142 Remove the HVPSD

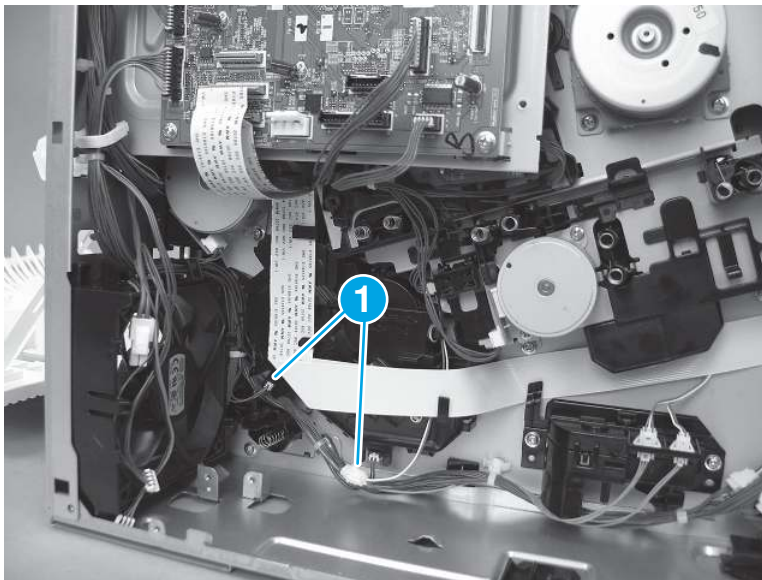


Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

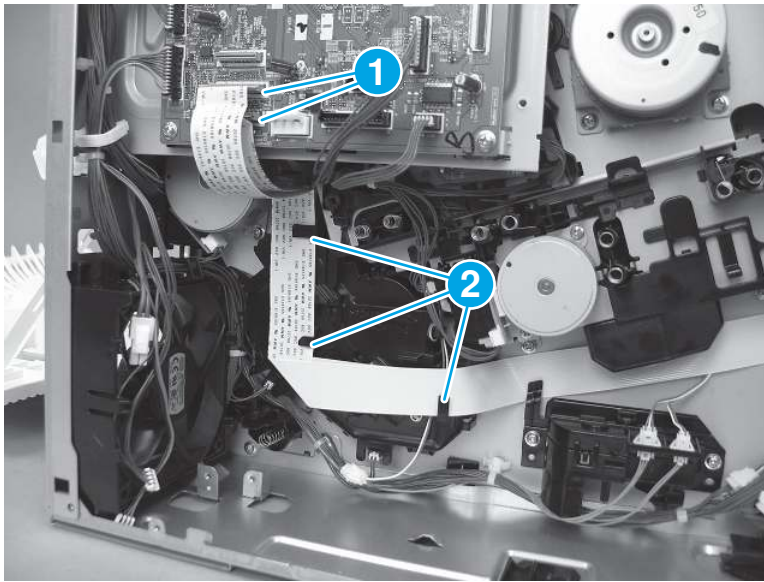
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-2143 Disconnect two connectors



2. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1), and then release them from the retainers (callout 2).

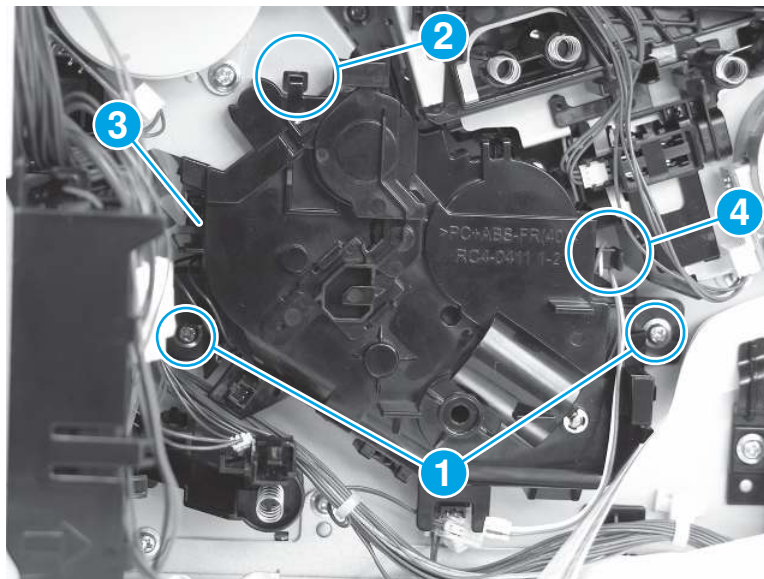
Figure 5-2144 Disconnect two flat cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 4) as the assembly is removed.

Figure 5-2145 Remove the assembly



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.

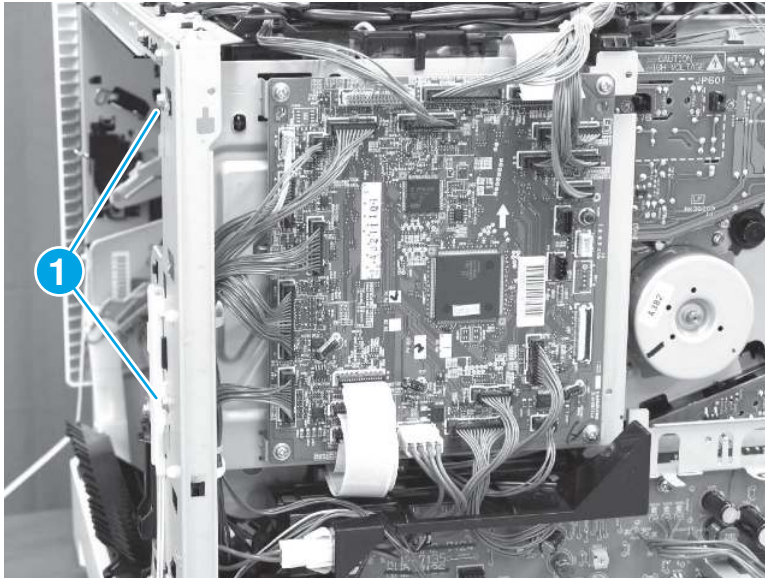
 **NOTE:**  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

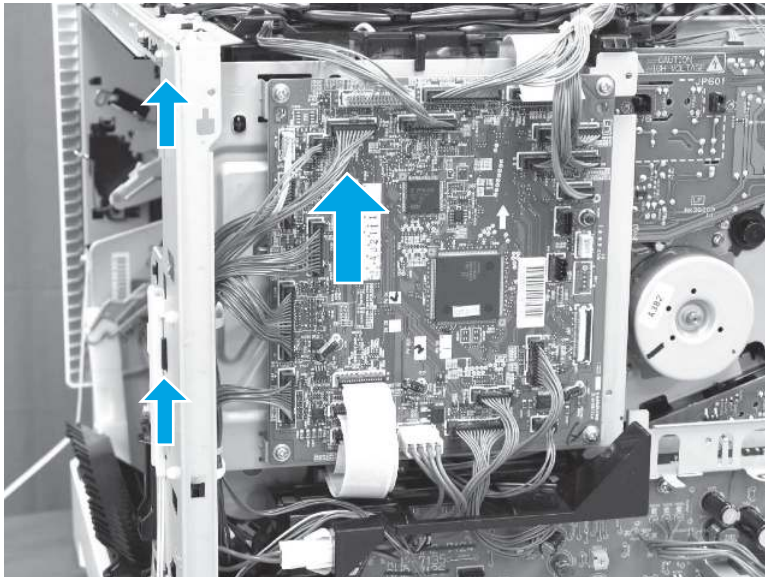
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-2146 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-2147 Remove the plate

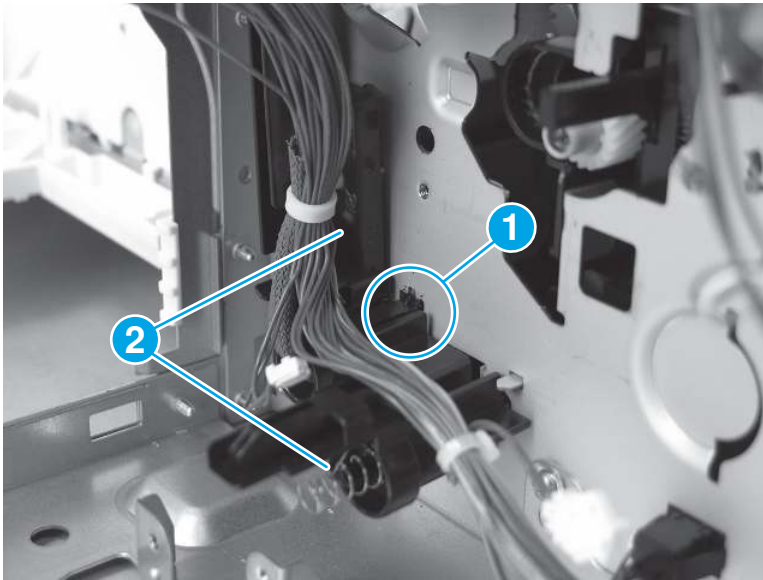


Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5)

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive assembly and motor.

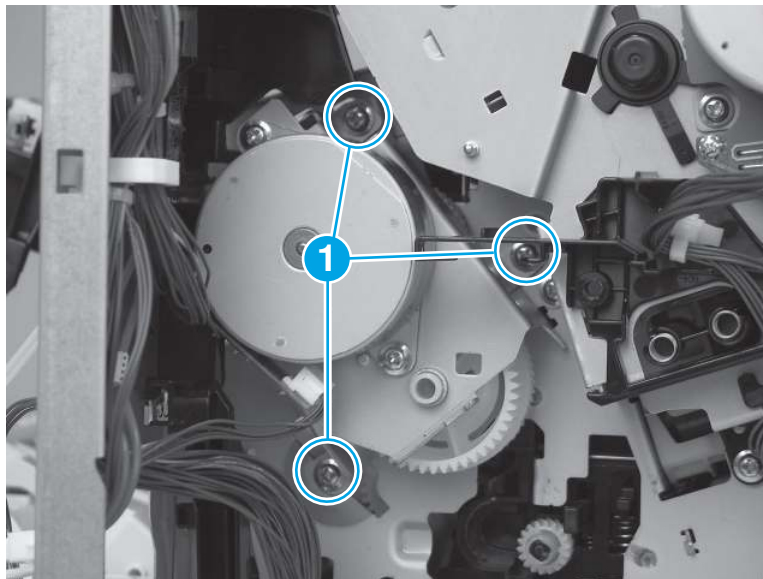
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then move the guide (callout 2) out of the way.

Figure 5-2148 Move the guide out of the way



2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

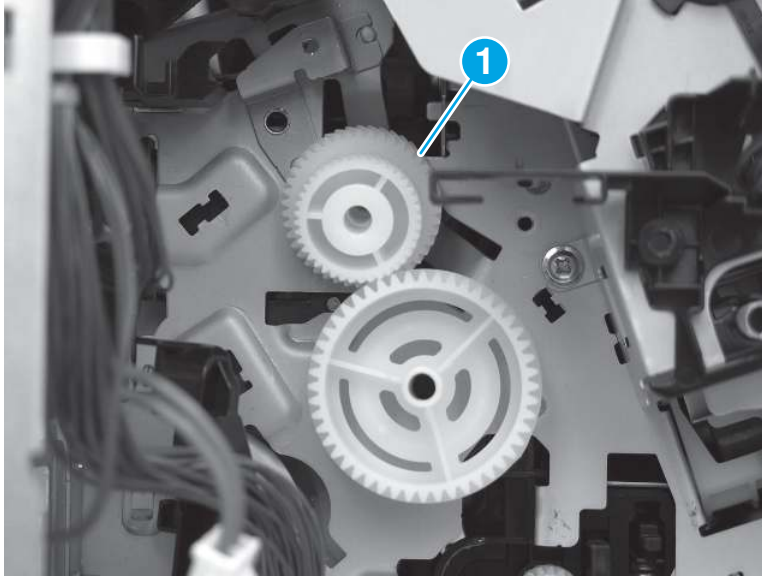
Figure 5-2149 Remove three screws



3. Remove the assembly.

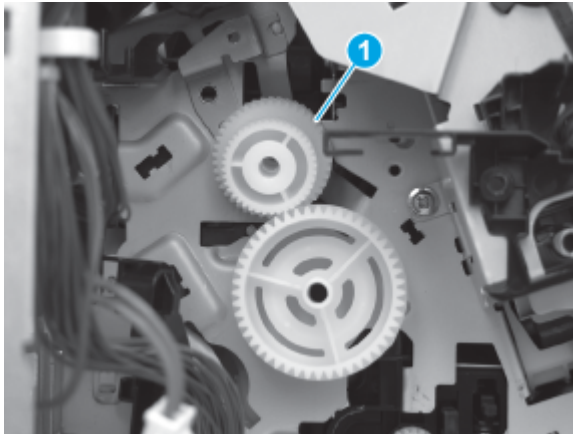
⚠ CAUTION: One gear on the back side of the assembly is not captive. Handle the assembly carefully.

Figure 5-2150 Remove the assembly



4. If the gear (callout 1) was not removed with the assembly in the previous step, remove it now.

Figure 5-2151 Remove the gear if installed



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Registration assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the registration assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-81 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0093-000CN	Registration assembly (M553n)
RM2-0018-000CN	Registration assembly (M552, M553dn/x, M554, M555, M577, M578, E55040, E57540)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-2152 Open the right door



2. Release the blue arm, and then let the secondary transfer assembly rotate down to the half-way open position.


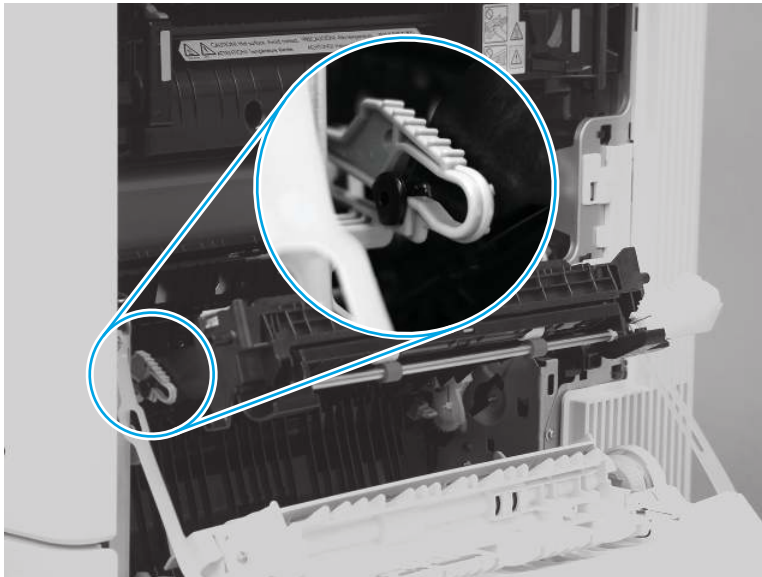
 **NOTE:** The assembly should stop at the halfway down point—the pin will stop at the notch in the slot in the blue arm.

Figure 5-2153 Release the secondary transfer roller assembly



3. Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm—as shown in the figure—to start to disengage it from the pin.

Figure 5-2154 Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm



4. Continue to flex the blue arm until it disengages from the pin.

Figure 5-2155 Disengage the blue arm and pin



5. Slide the assembly toward the front of the printer to release it (callout 1), and then rotate it down and away from the printer to remove it (callout 2).


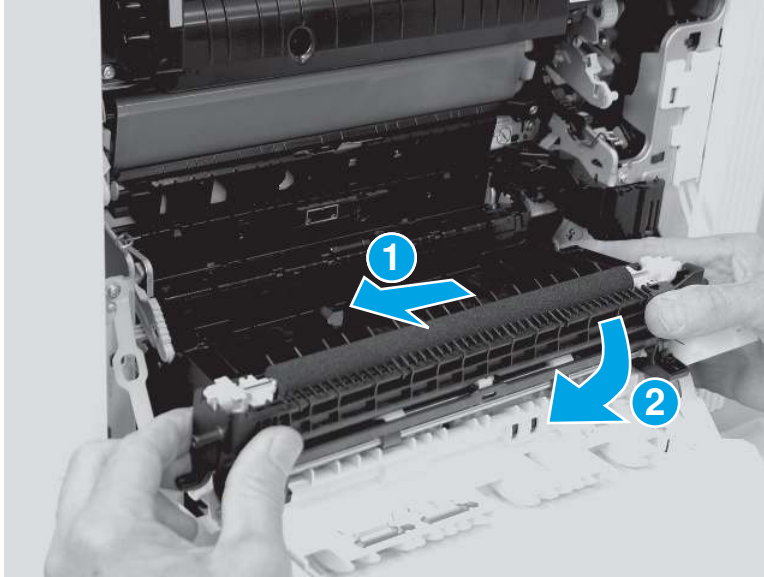
 **Reinstallation tip:** Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 5-2156 Remove the secondary transfer roller assembly



Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

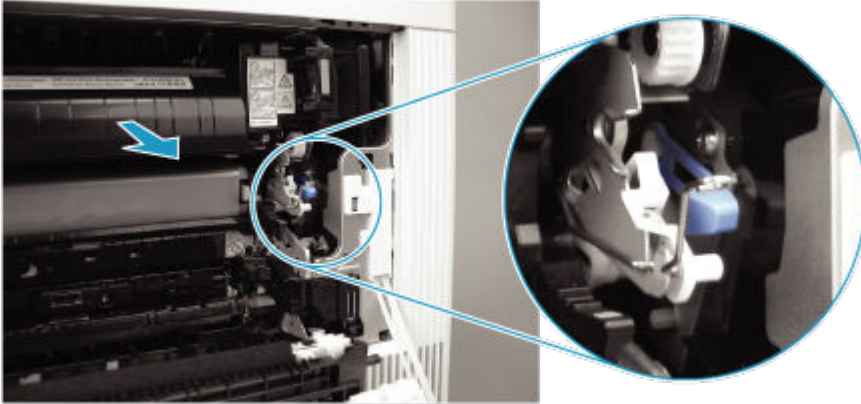
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-2157 Open the right door



2. Pull the blue lever to release the ITB drive coupling.

Figure 5-2158 Release the ITB drive coupling



3. Push in on the blue arm to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then completely lower the assembly.


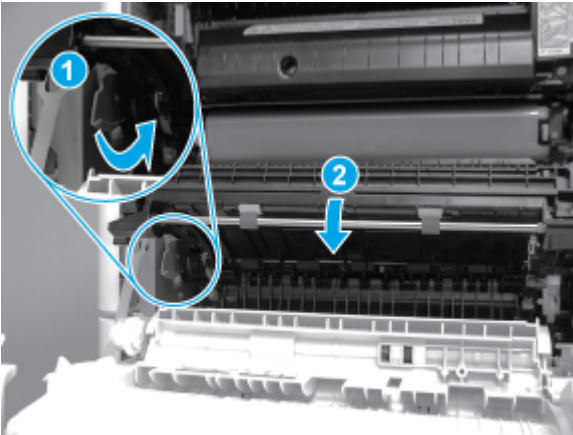
 **NOTE:** Press the blue arm on the secondary transfer roller assembly a second time to release the roller assembly when it stops at the halfway open position.

Figure 5-2159 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



4. Release the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).


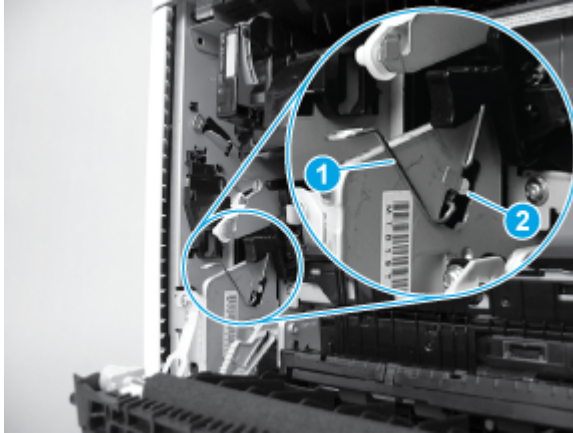

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-2160 Release the front-side ITB spring

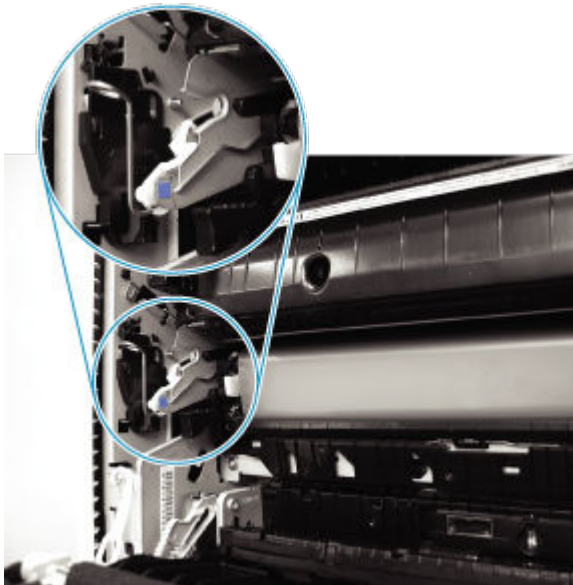


5. Place the left-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

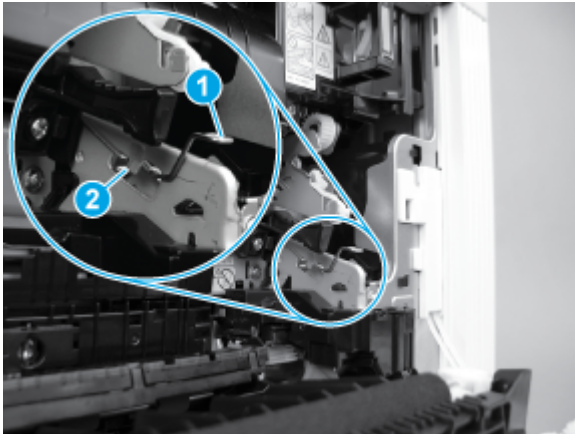
 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-2161 Place the spring on the holder



6. Release the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).

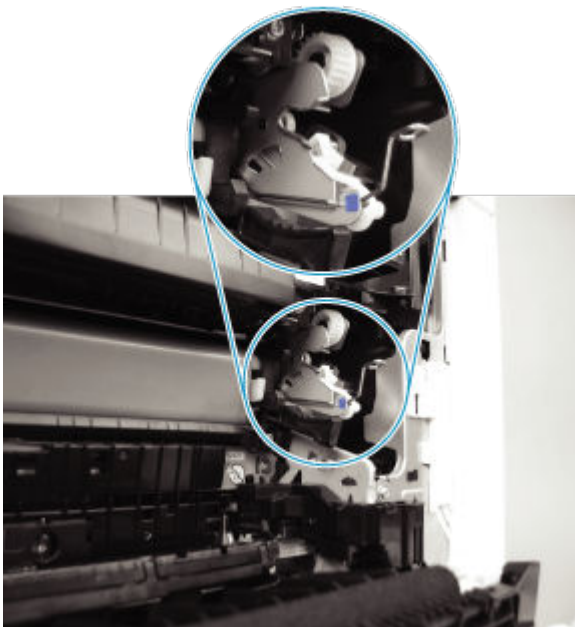
Figure 5-2162 Release the rear-side ITB spring



7. Place the right-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-2163 Place the spring on the holder



8. Grasp the two blue handles on the ITB.


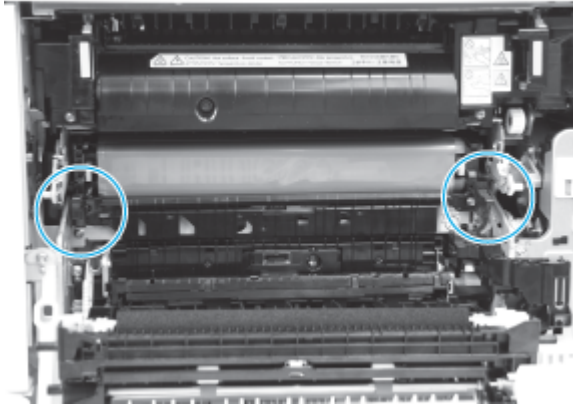
 **CAUTION:** If the ITB is removed to access other assemblies in the printer, use care. The ITB is a sensitive assembly. Be careful when handling the ITB so that it is not damaged. Always place the ITB in a safe and protected location.

Figure 5-2164 Grasp the ITB handles



9. Pull the ITB out of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 5-2165 Remove the ITB



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

📝 NOTE: A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

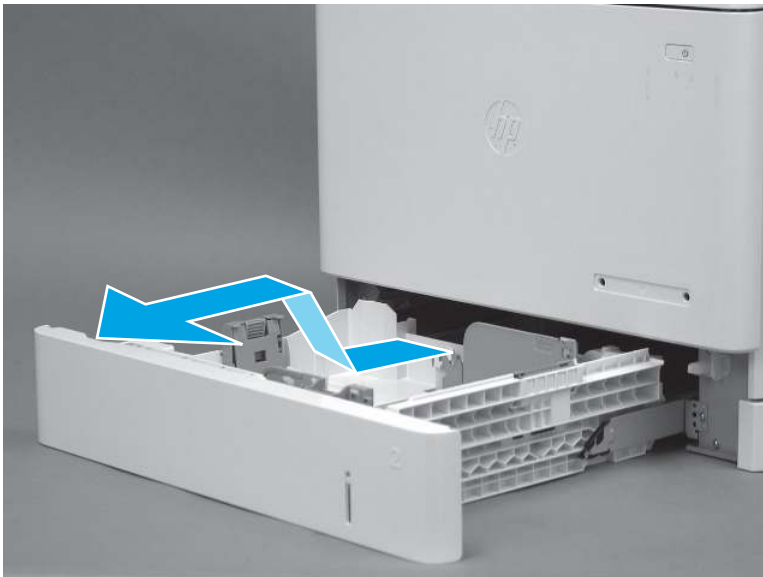
Figure 5-2166 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** For a replacement tray: If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2167 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-2168 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-2169 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-2170 Remove the TCU

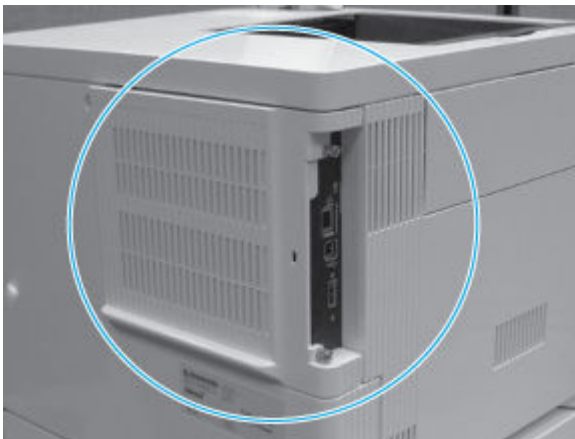


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2171 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2172 Loosen the thumbscrews



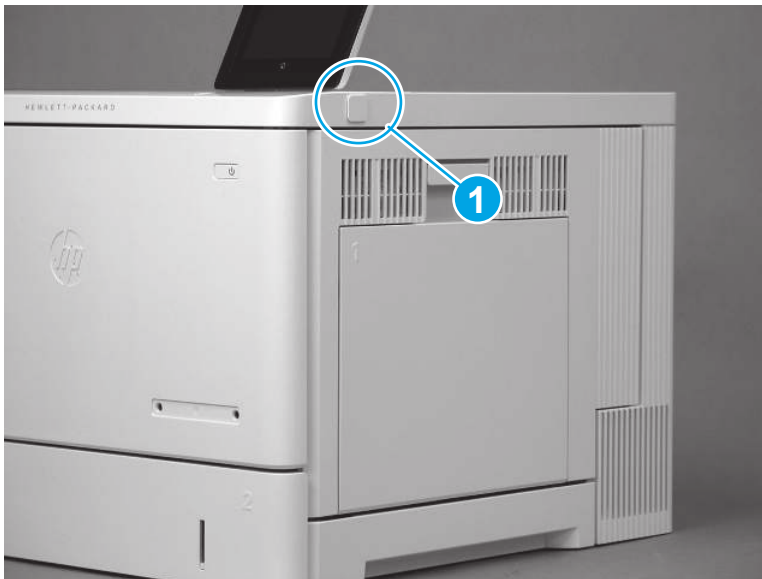
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2173 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2174 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-2175 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2176 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2177 Remove the cover

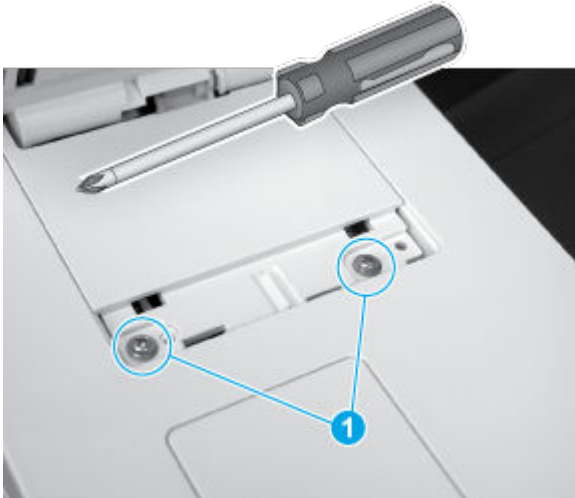


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2178 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-2179 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2180 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


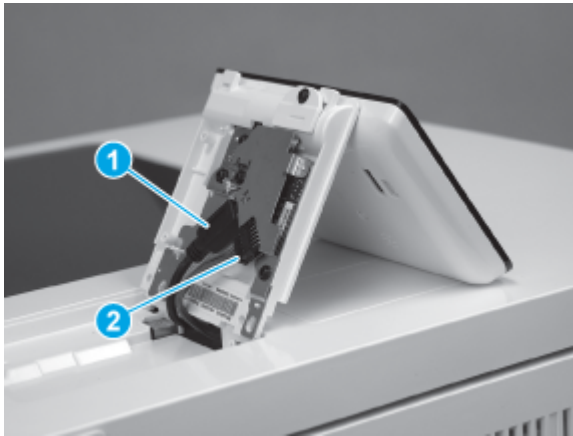
 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2181 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)

- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


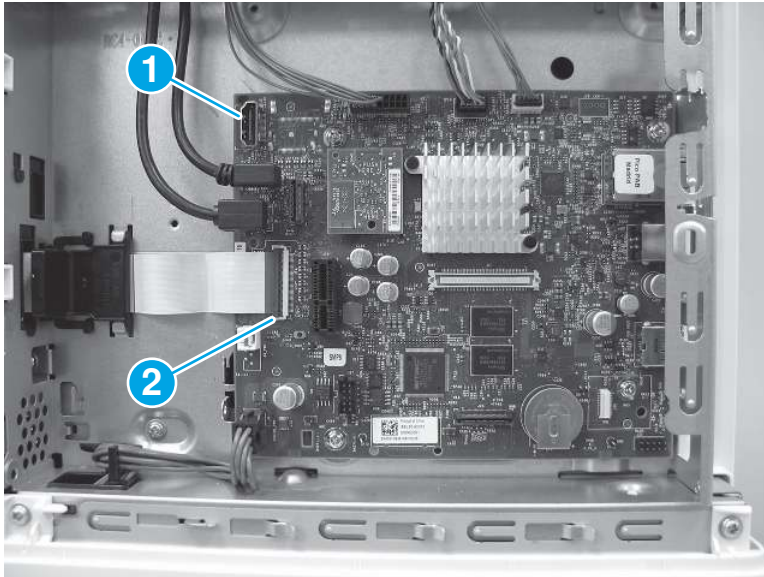
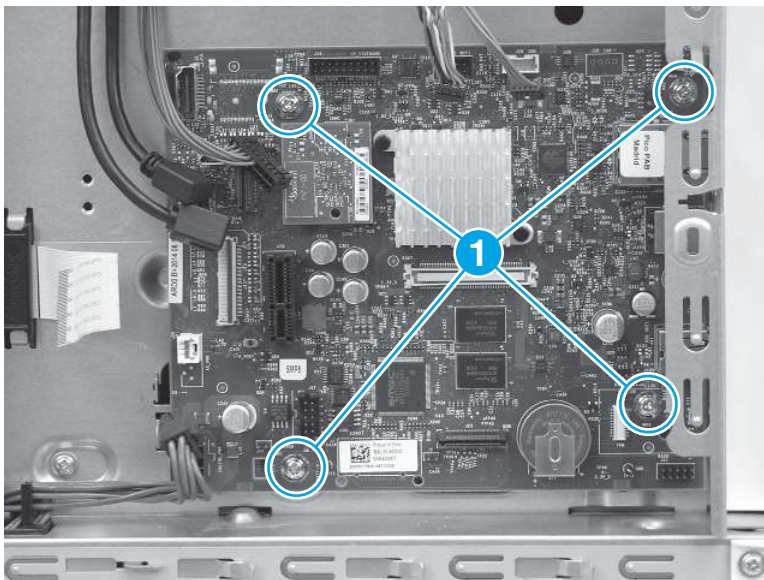
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2182 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..

Figure 5-2183 Remove four screws




Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

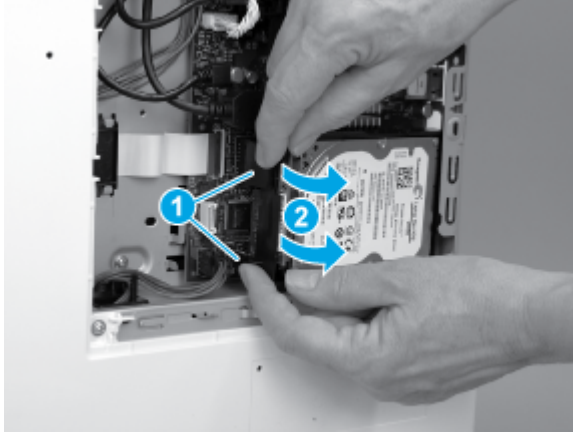
 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only.

An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-2184 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2185 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

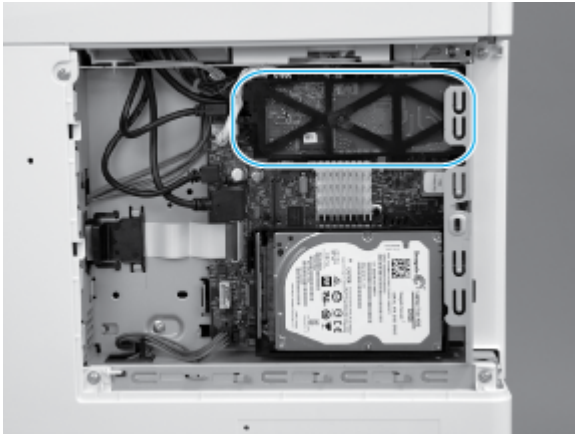
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

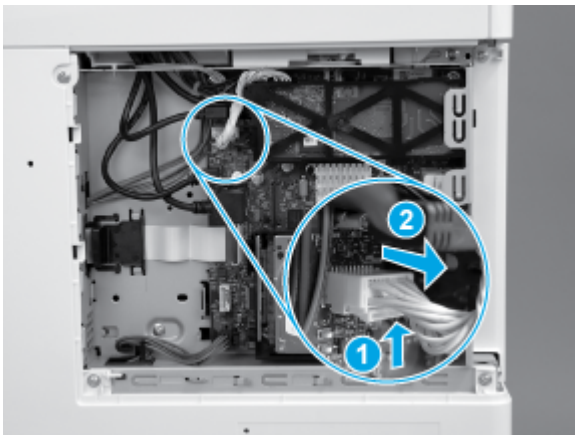
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2186 Locate the fax PCA



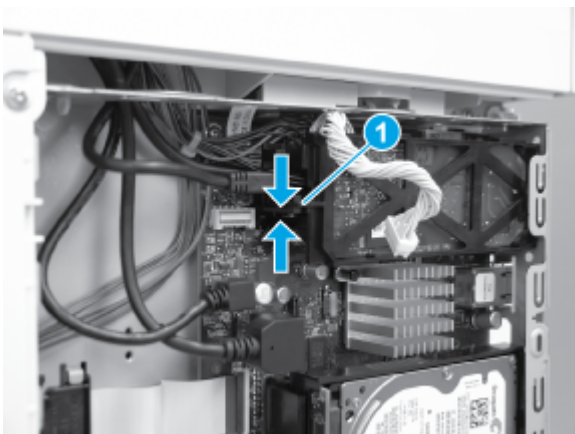
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-2187 Disconnect one connector



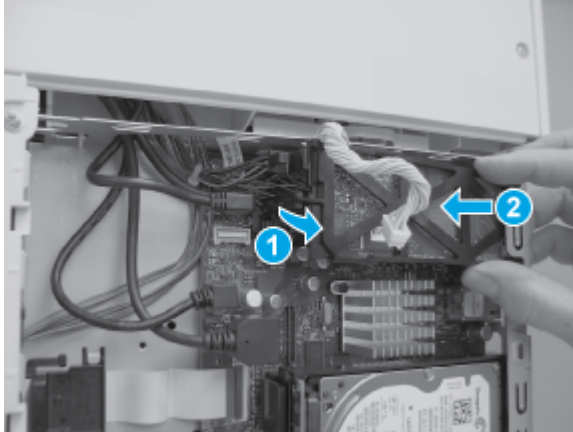
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-2188 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2189 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


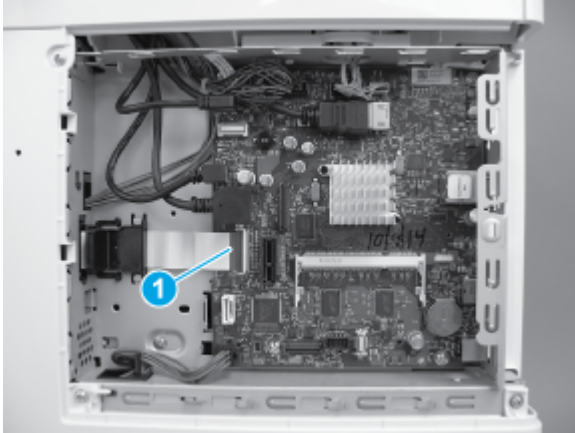
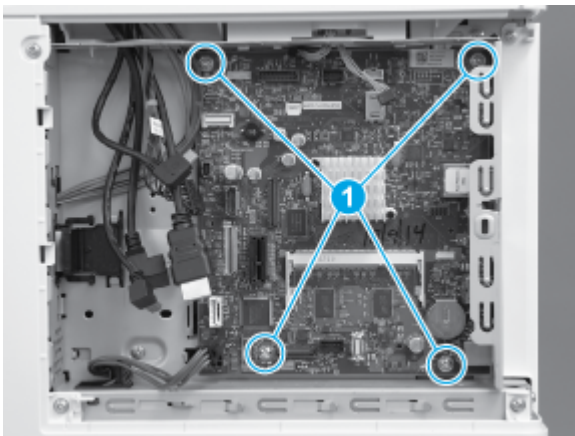
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2190 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2191 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-2192 Remove the formatter



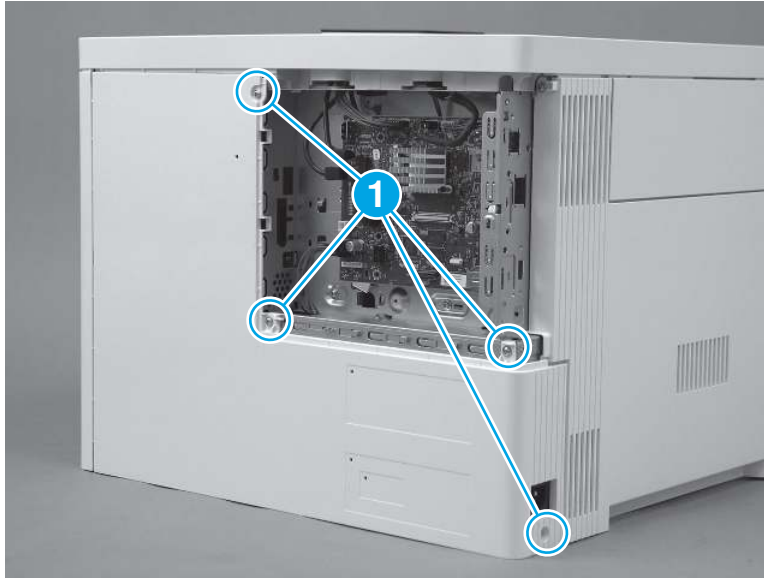
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

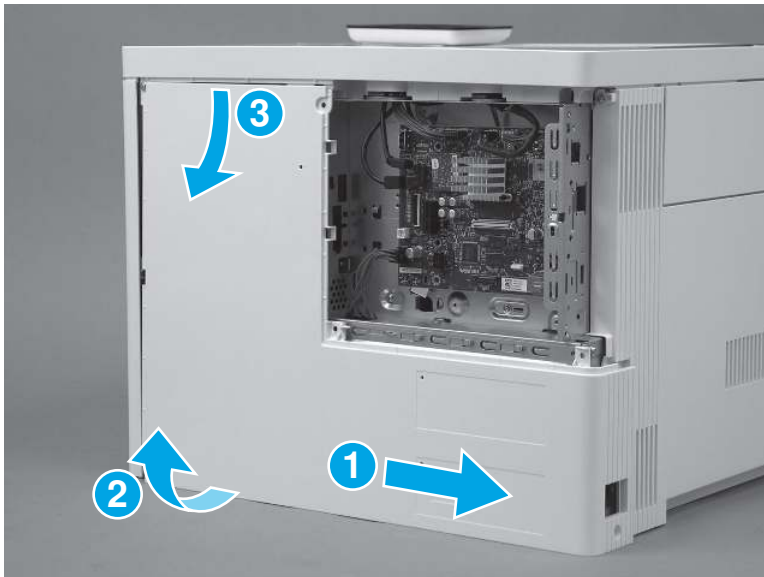
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2193 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-2194 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

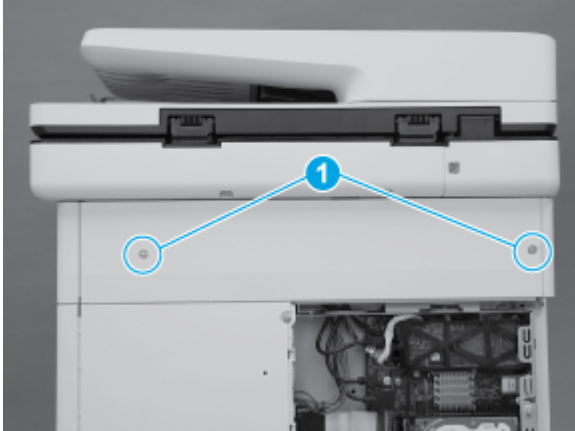
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

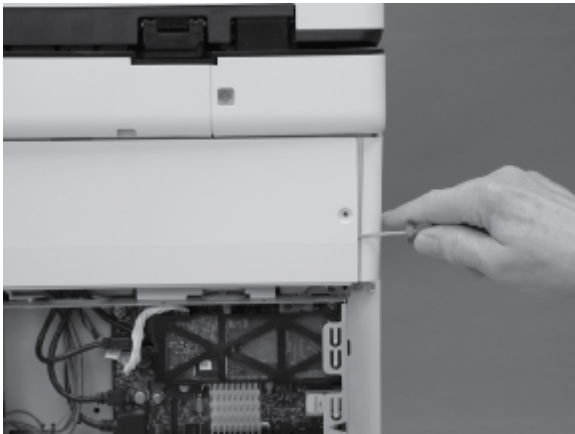
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-2195 Remove two screws



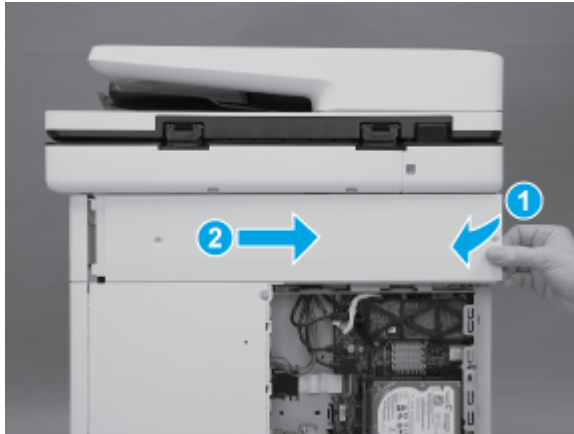
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2196 Release the right edge



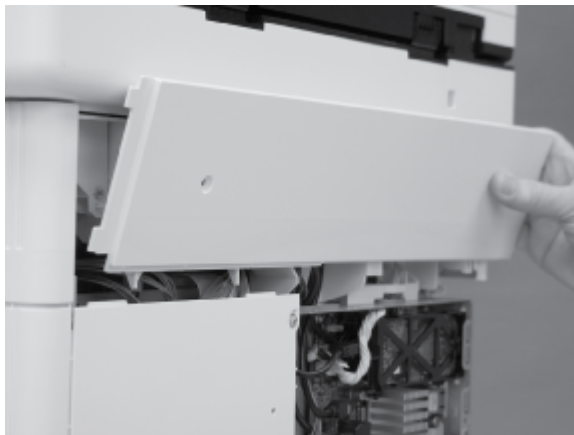
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-2197 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2198 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2199 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2200 Remove the cover



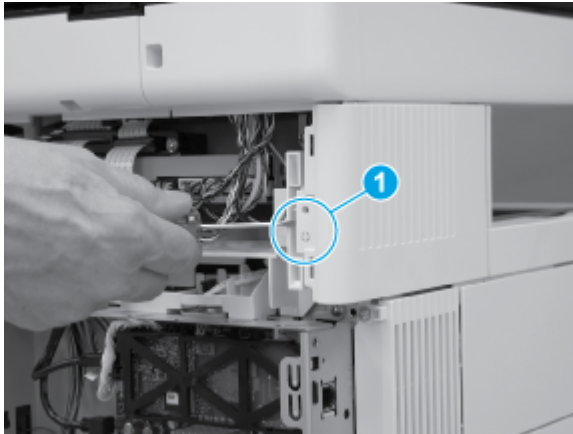
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2201 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-2202 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2203 Remove the left upper cover



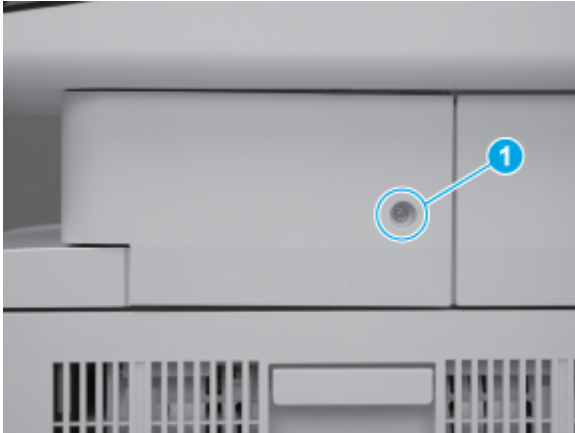
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2204 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2205 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2206 Rotate the cover



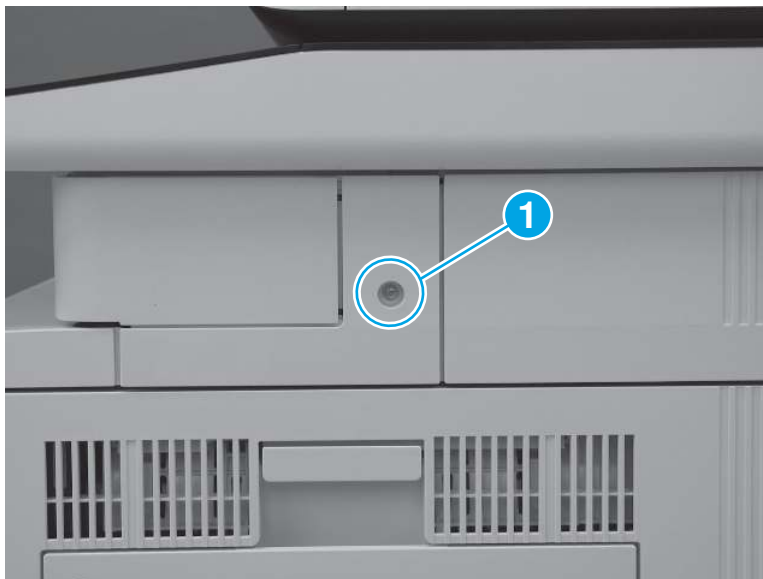
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2207 Remove one screw



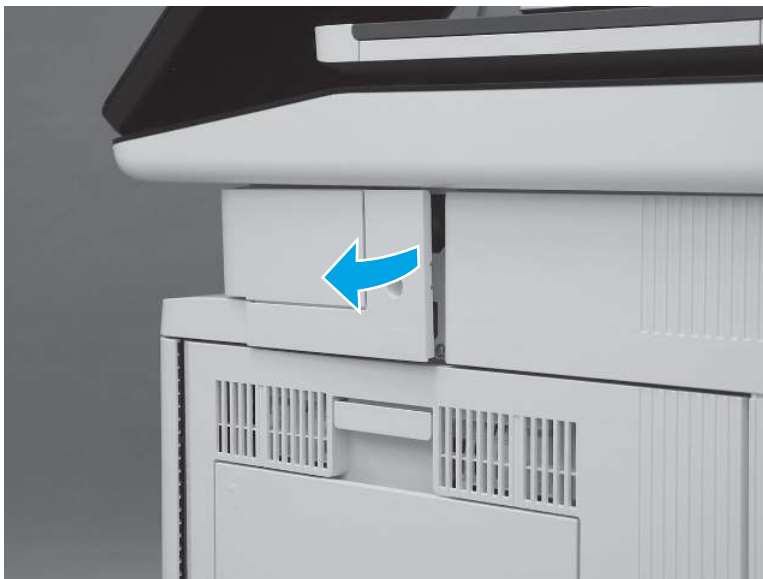
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2208 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2209 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2210 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

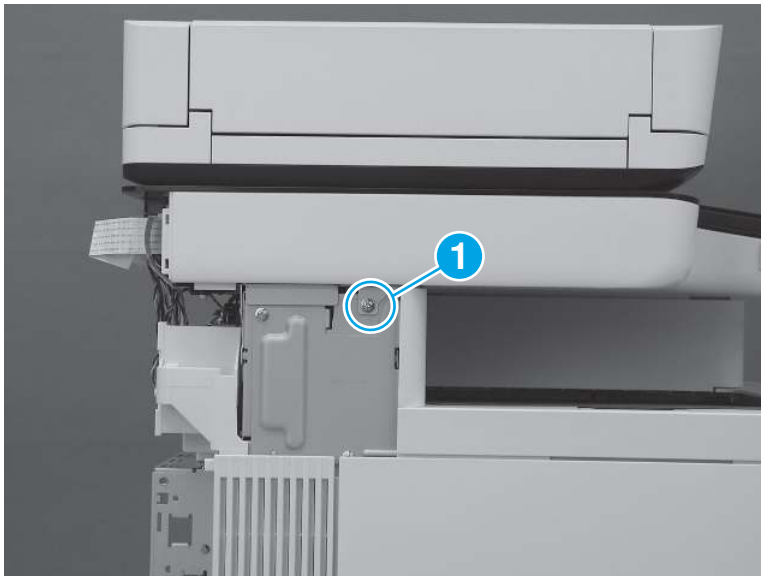
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

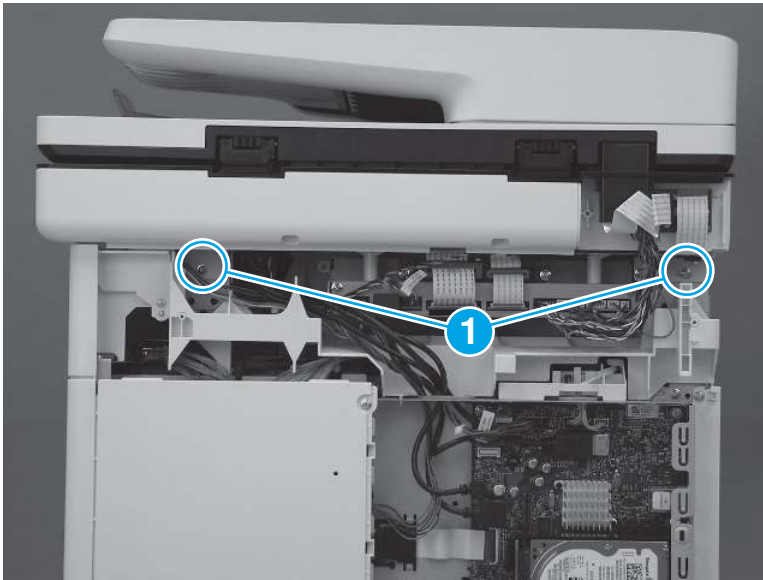
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2211 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

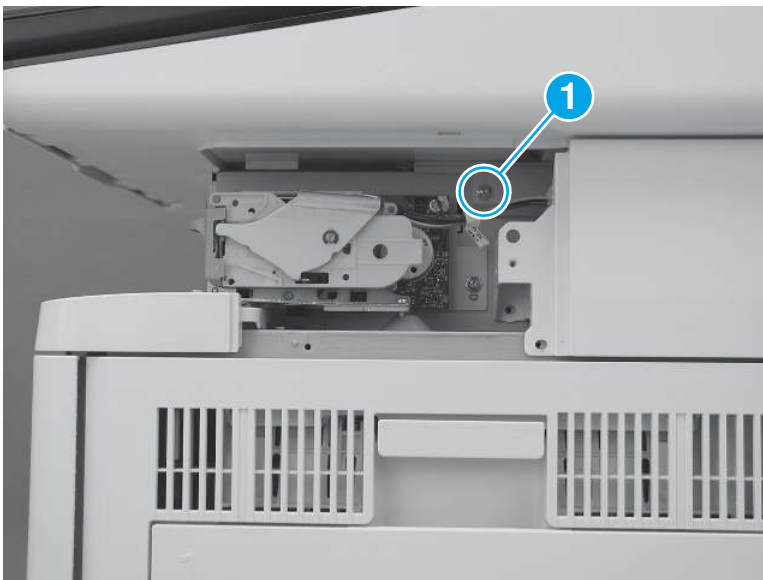
Figure 5-2212 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

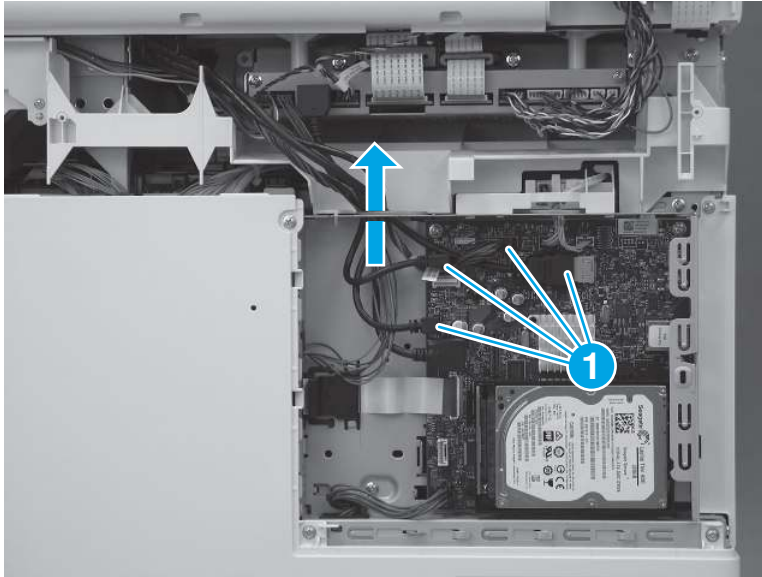
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-2213 Remove one screw



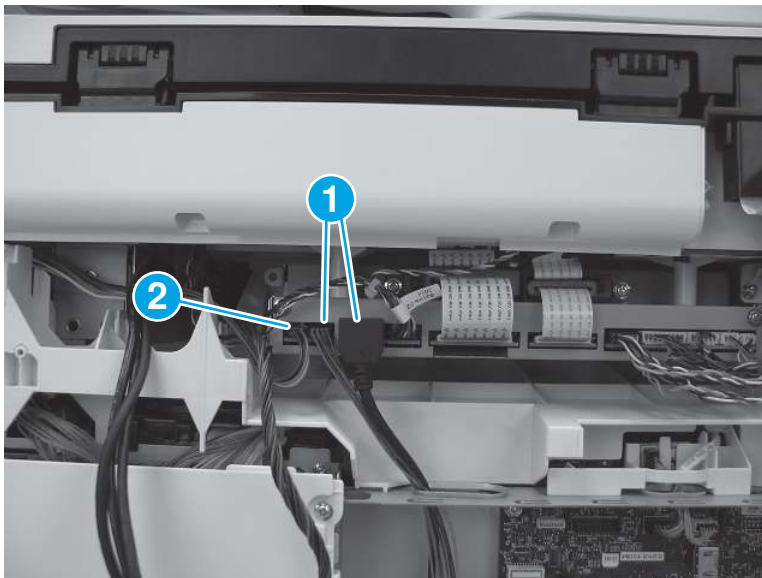
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-2214 Disconnect cables and connectors



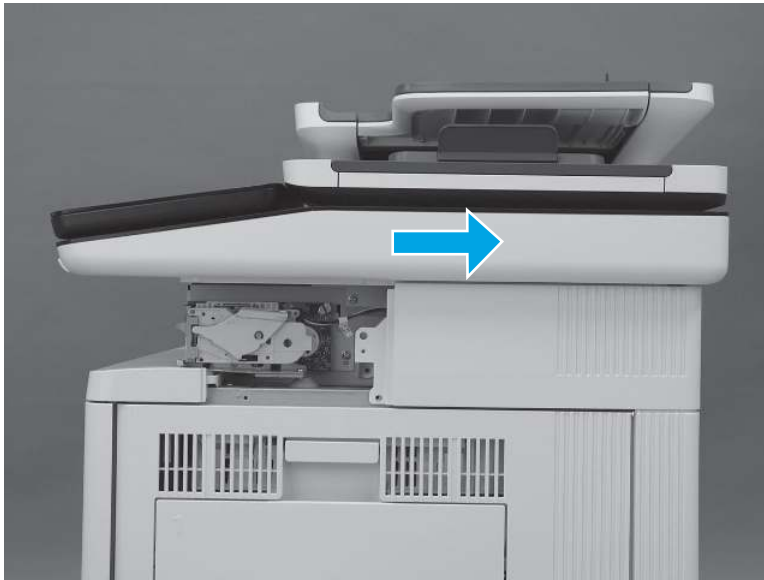
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-2215 Disconnect connectors



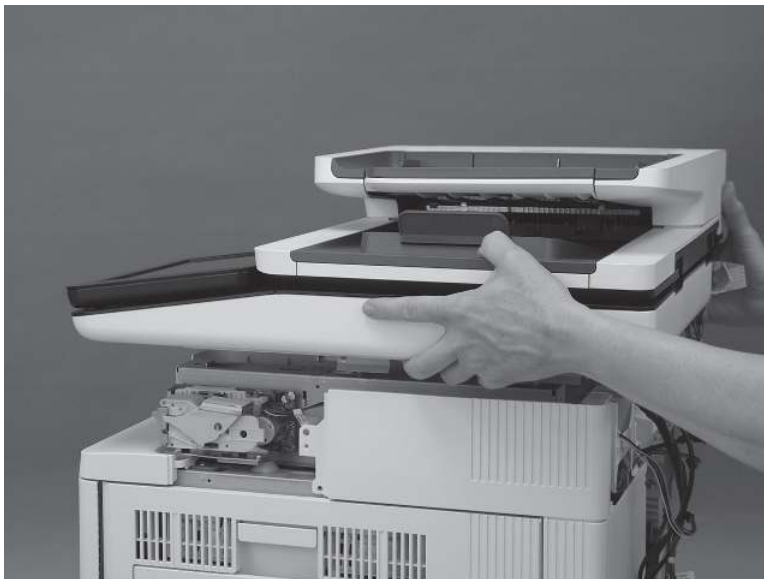
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2216 Release the image scanner



7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-2217 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

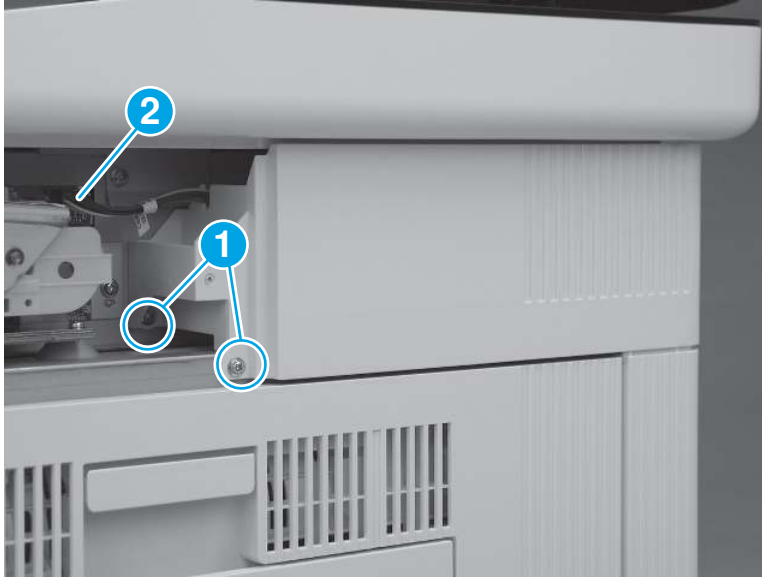
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-2218 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


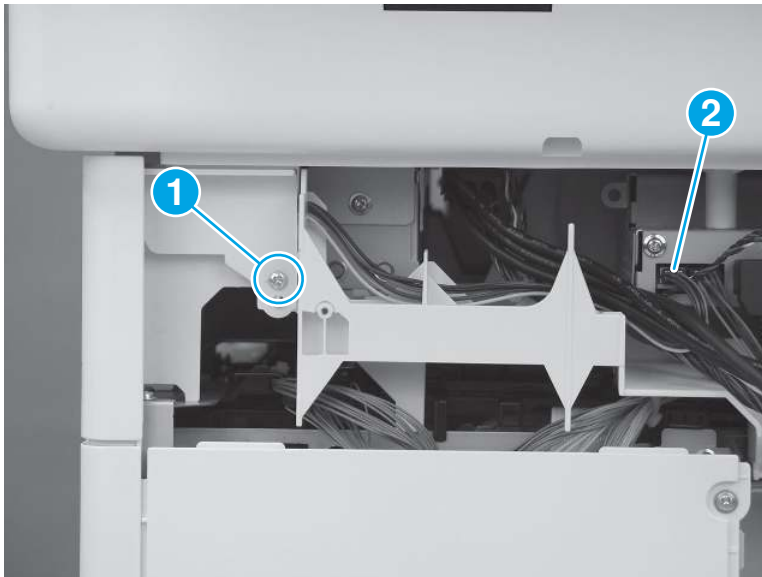
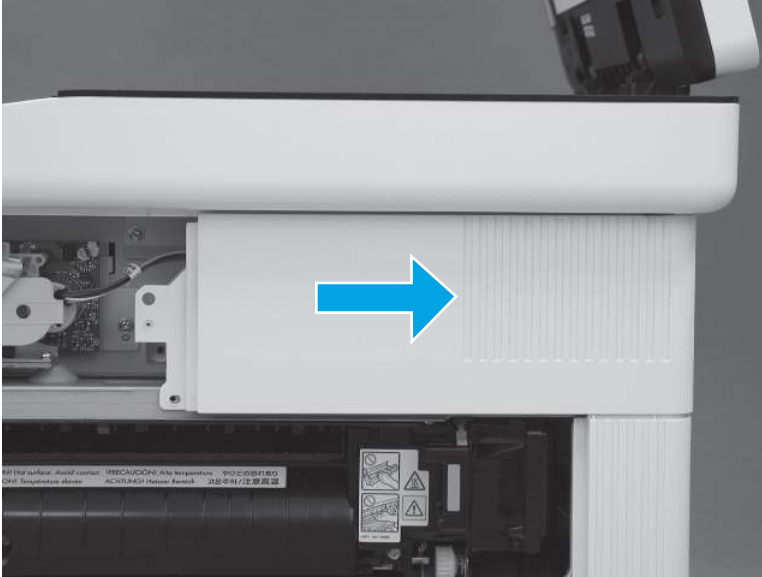
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2219 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

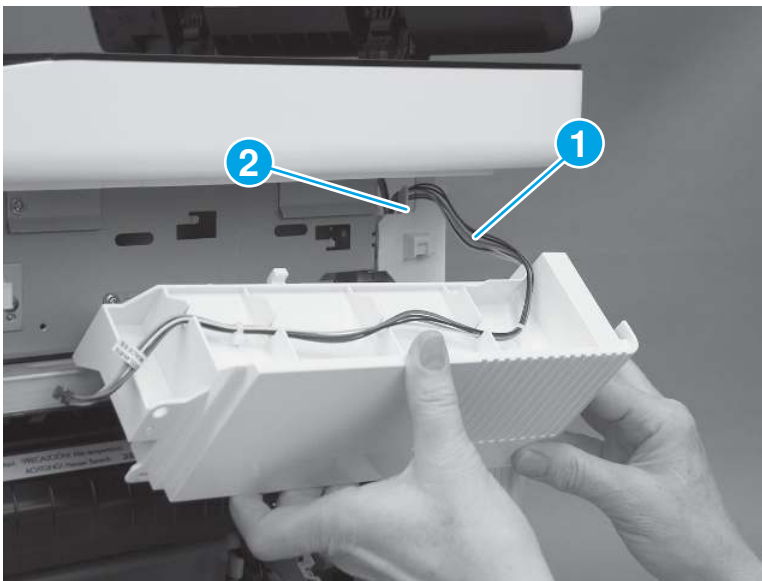
Figure 5-2220 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-2221 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

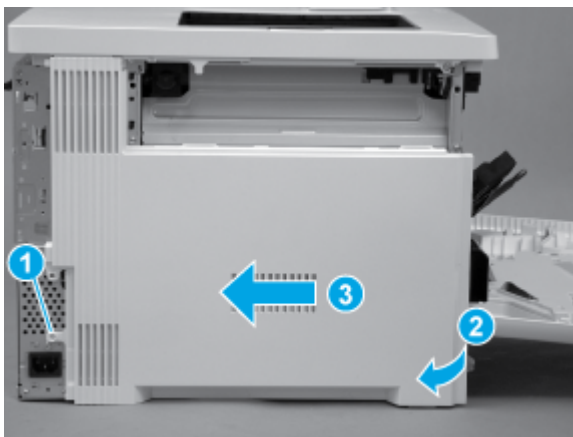
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2222 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2223 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2224 Remove the cover



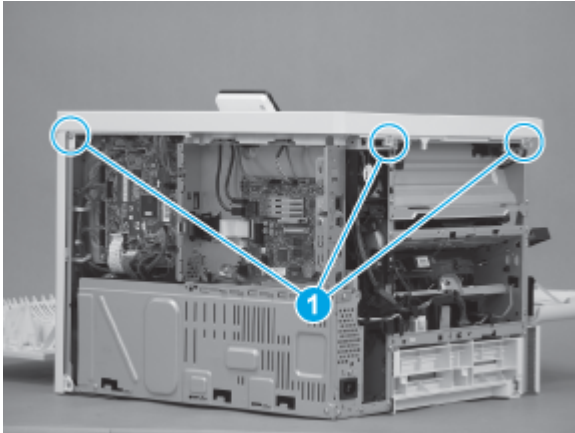
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2225 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-2226 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


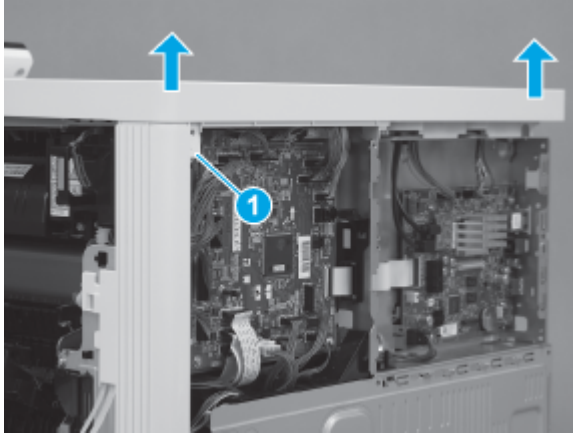
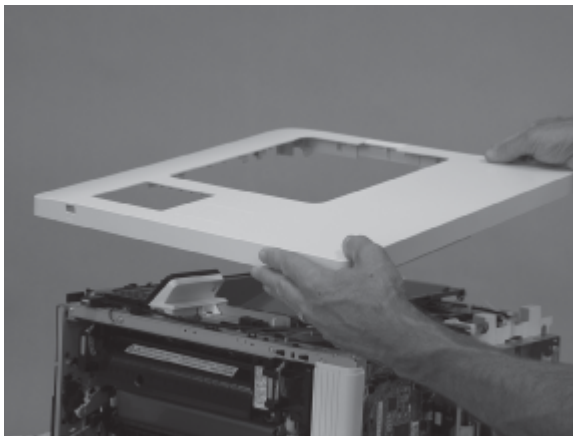
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-2227 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2228 Remove the cover



Remove the right rear cover

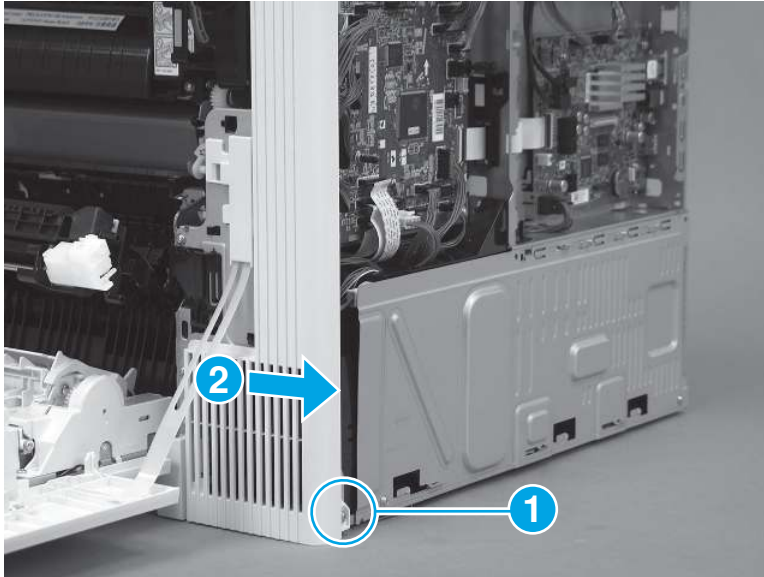
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

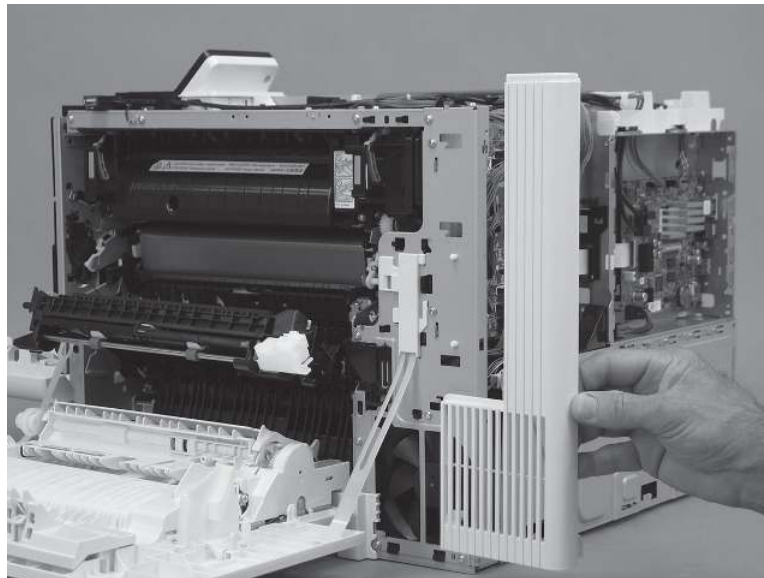
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-2229 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2230 Remove the cover

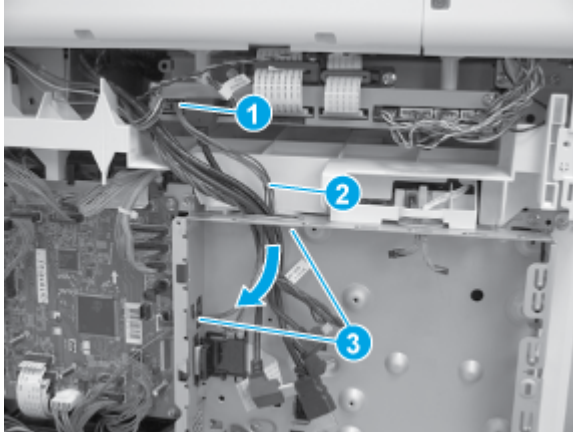


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

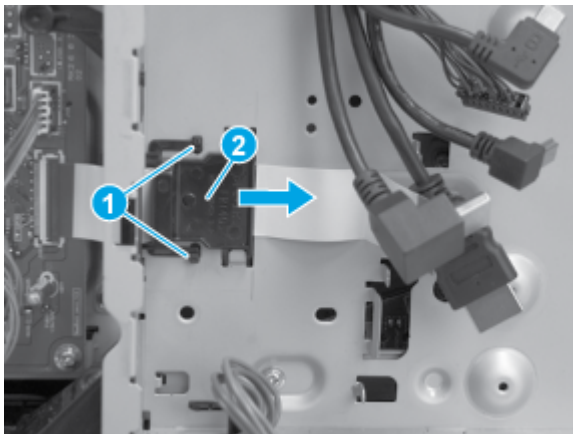
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-2231 Disconnect one connector



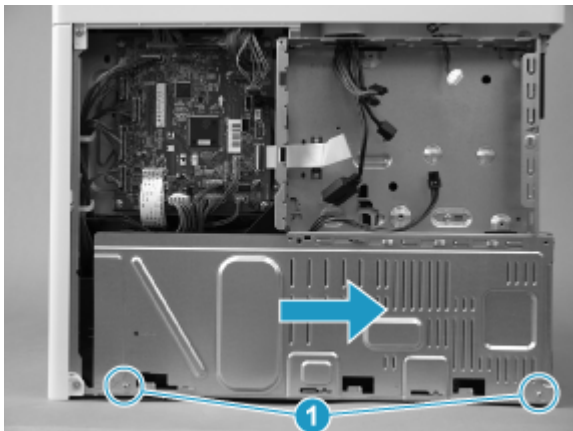
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-2232 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

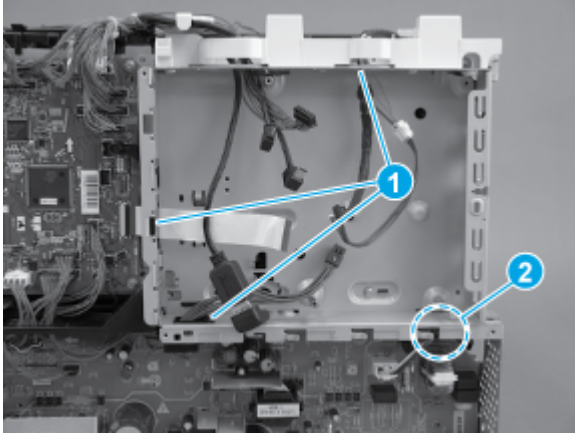
Figure 5-2233 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

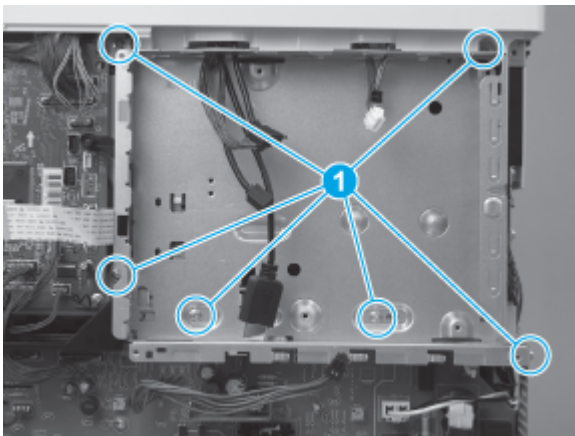
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-2234 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



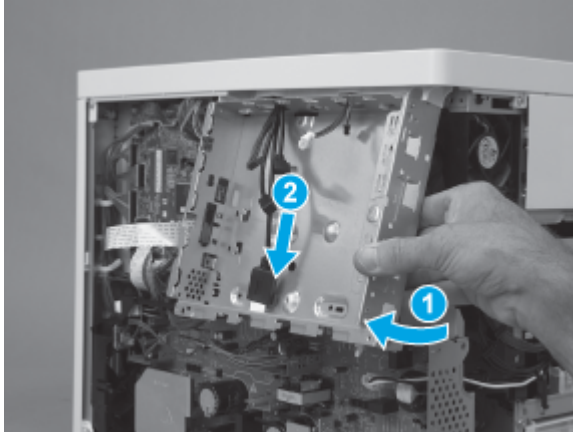
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2235 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

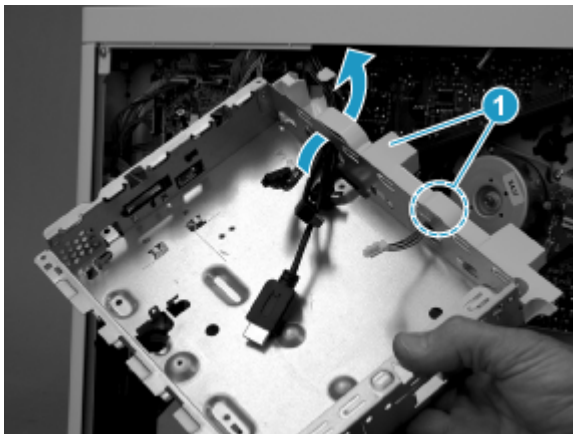
Figure 5-2236 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-2237 Remove the formatter case

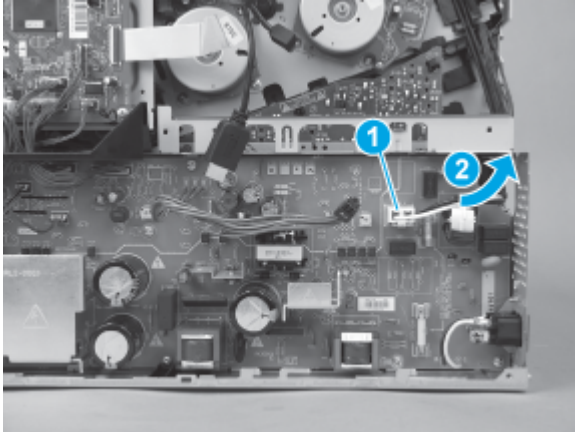


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

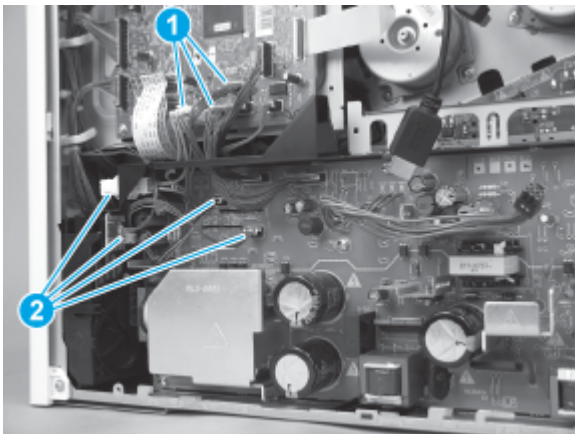
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-2238 Disconnect one wire harness



2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-2239 Disconnect seven connectors



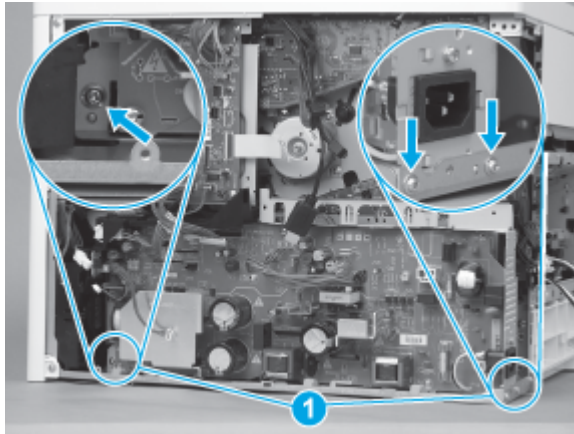
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-2240 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



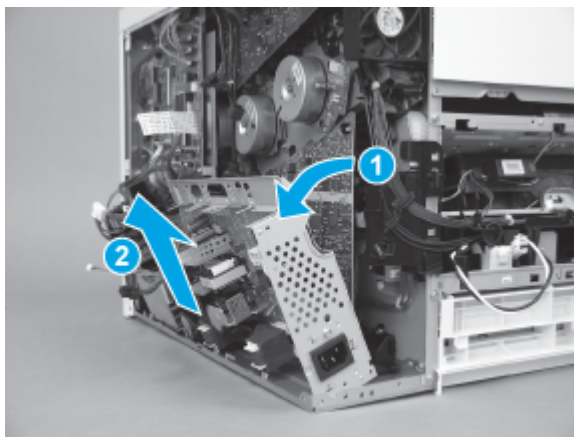
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2241 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2242 Remove the LVPS

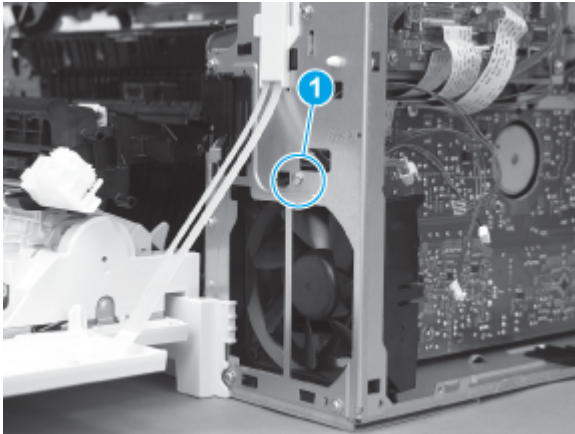


Remove the power supply fan (FM1)

Follow these steps to remove the power supply fan.

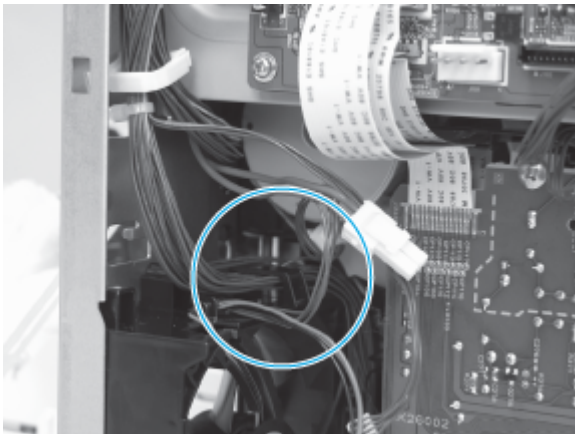
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2243 Remove one screw



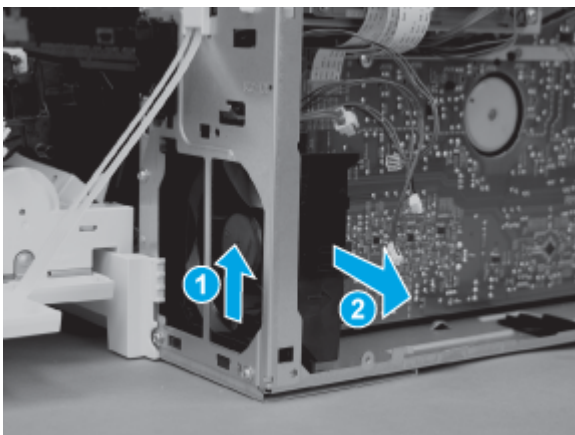
2. Release the wire harnesses from the retainer on the top of the fan bracket.

Figure 5-2244 Release the wire harnesses



3. Lift the fan up (callout 1), and then slide it out of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2245 Remove the fan

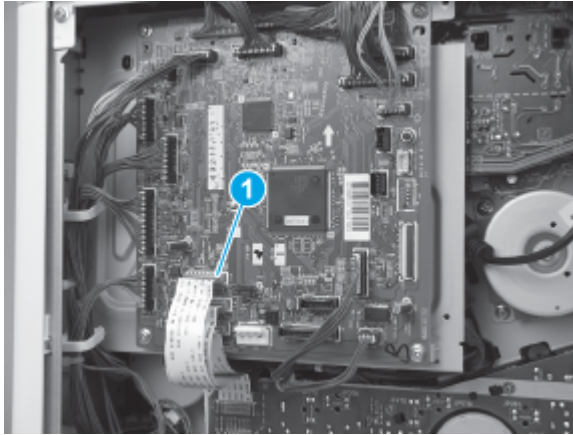


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

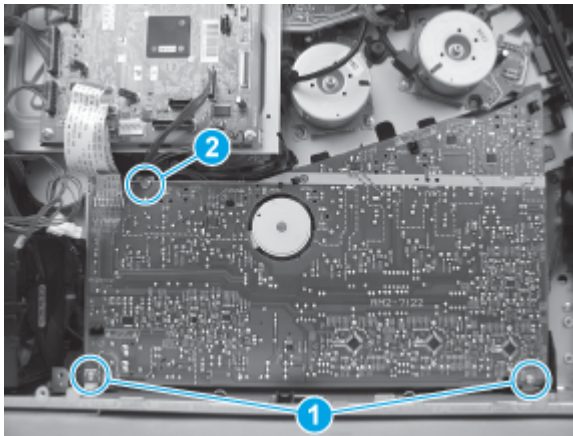
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-2246 Disconnect one flat cable



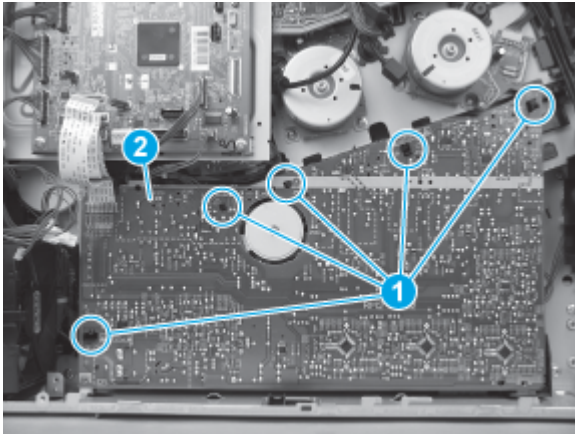
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-2247 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-2248 Remove the HVPSD

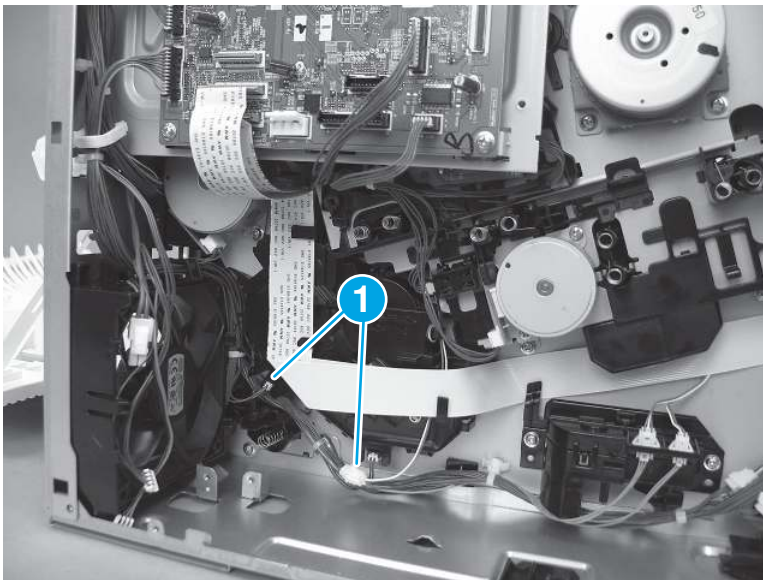


Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

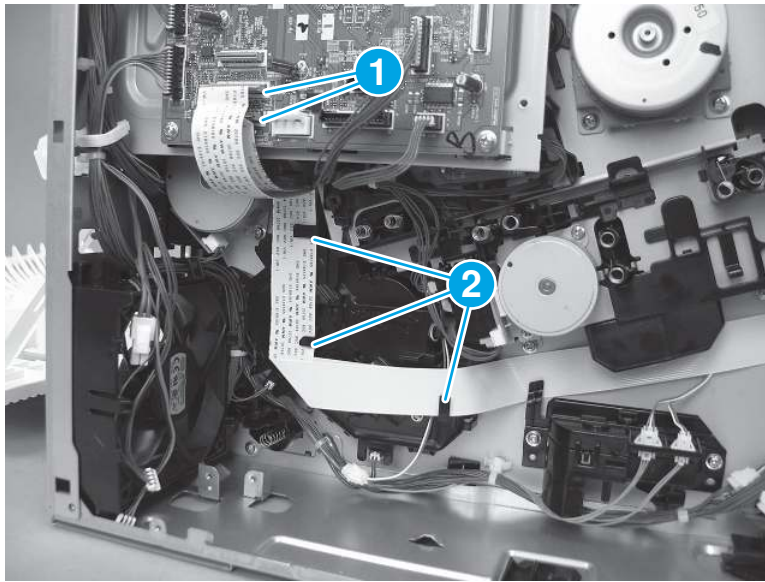
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-2249 Disconnect two connectors



2. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1), and then release them from the retainers (callout 2).

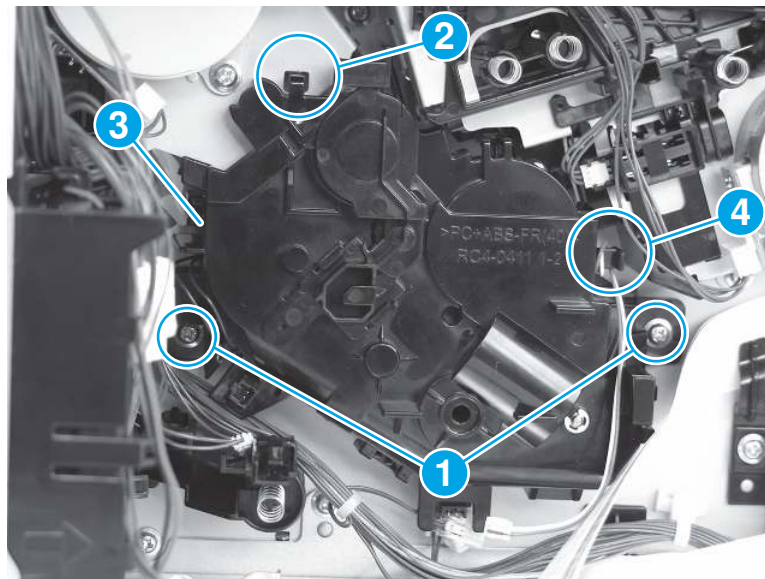
Figure 5-2250 Disconnect two flat cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 4) as the assembly is removed.

Figure 5-2251 Remove the assembly



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.

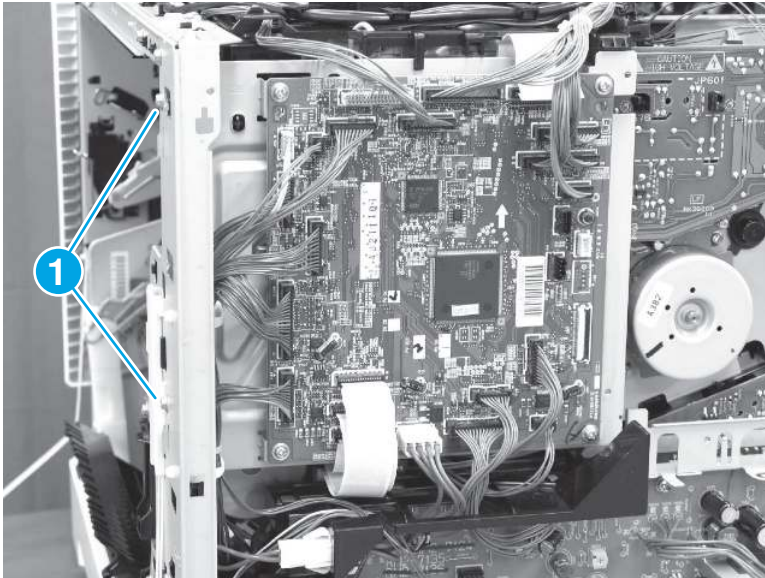
 **NOTE:**  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

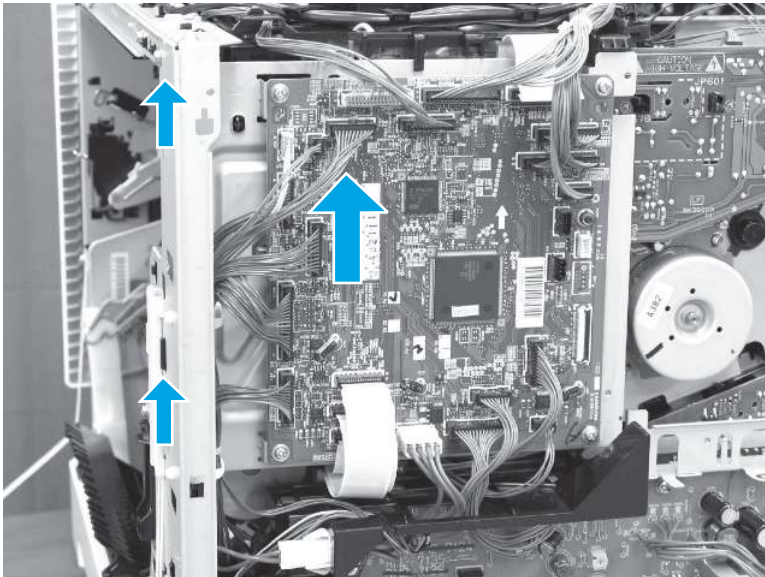
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-2252 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-2253 Remove the plate

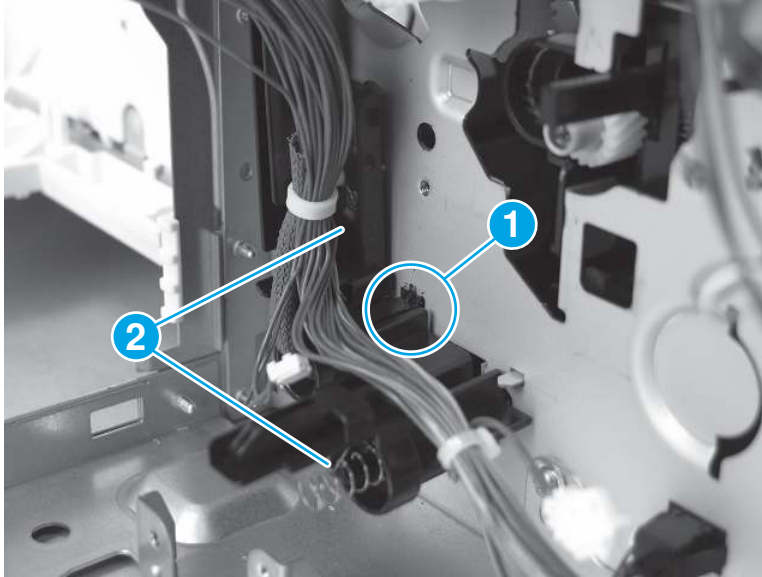


Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5)

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive assembly and motor.

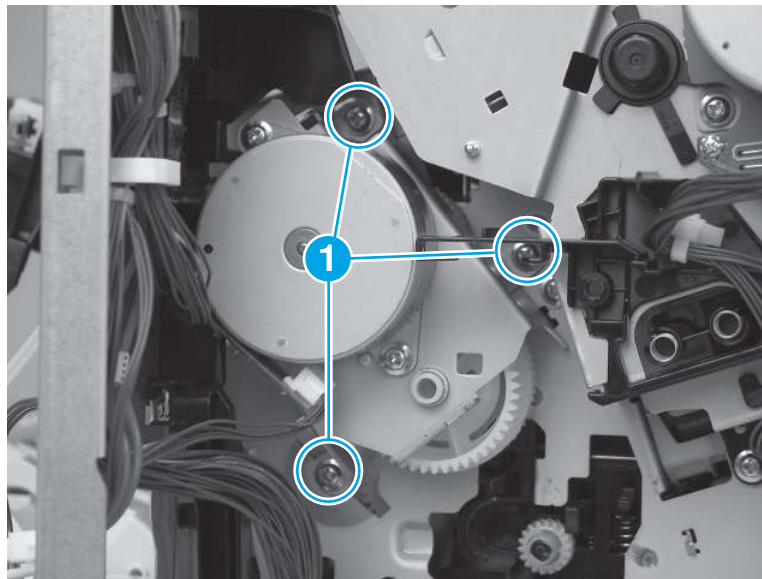
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then move the guide (callout 2) out of the way.

Figure 5-2254 Move the guide out of the way



2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

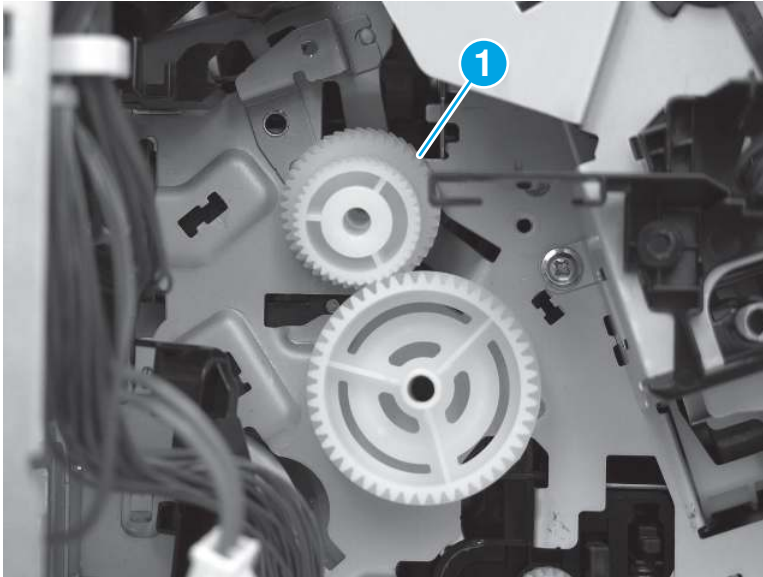
Figure 5-2255 Remove three screws



3. Remove the assembly.

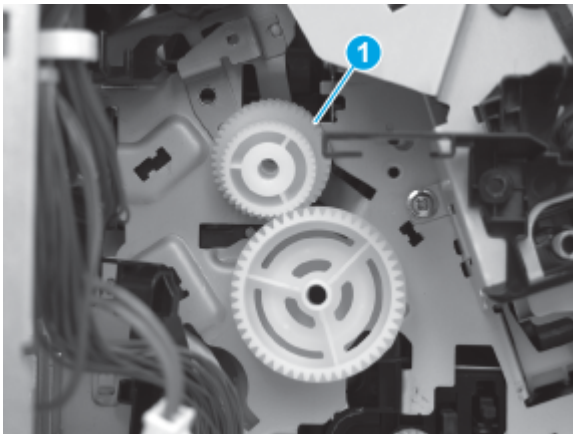
⚠ CAUTION: One gear on the back side of the assembly is not captive. Handle the assembly carefully.

Figure 5-2256 Remove the assembly



4. If the gear (callout 1) was not removed with the assembly in the previous step, remove it now.

Figure 5-2257 Remove the gear if installed

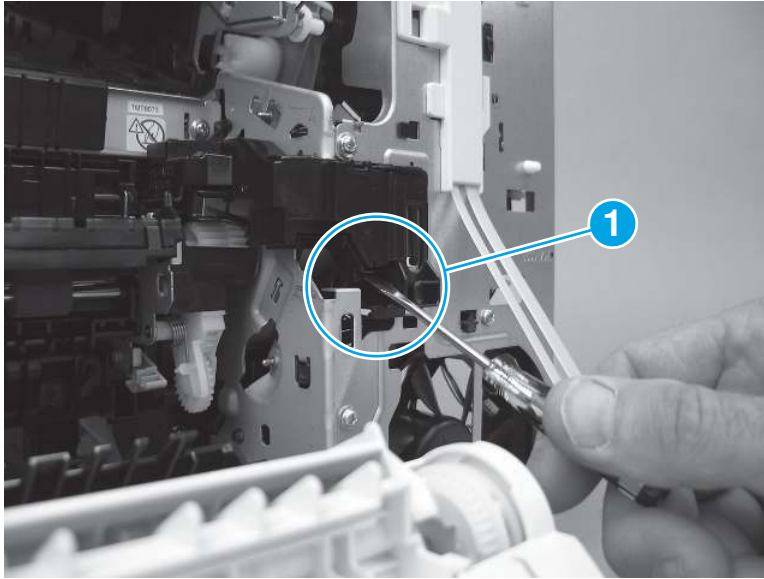


Remove the registration assembly

Follow these steps to remove the registration assembly.

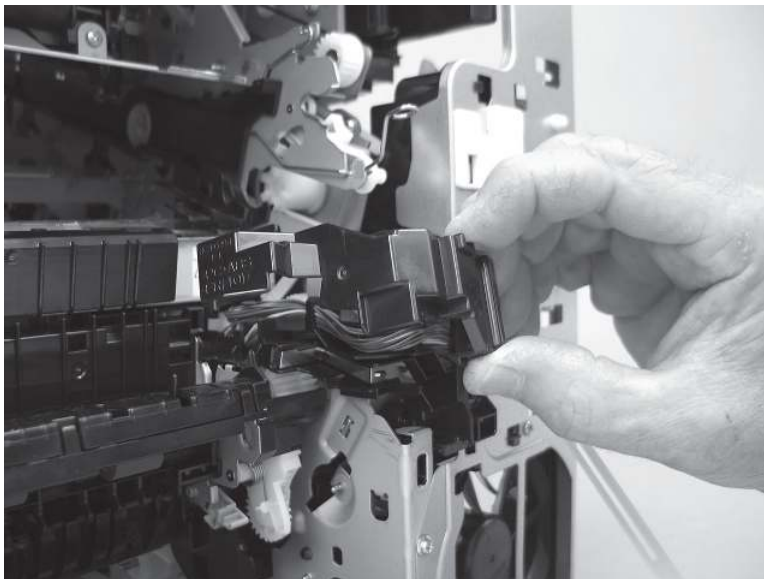
1. At the right side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2258 Release one tab



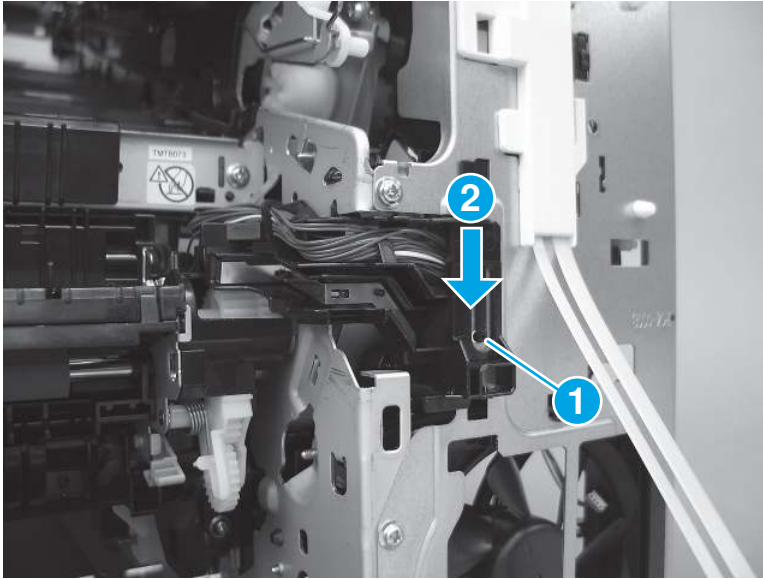
2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2259 Remove the cover



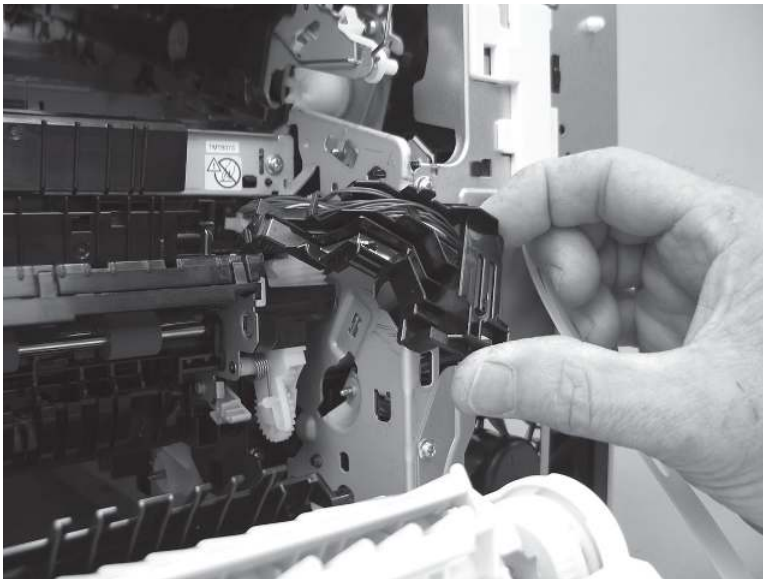
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then push down on the guide (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2260 Release the guide



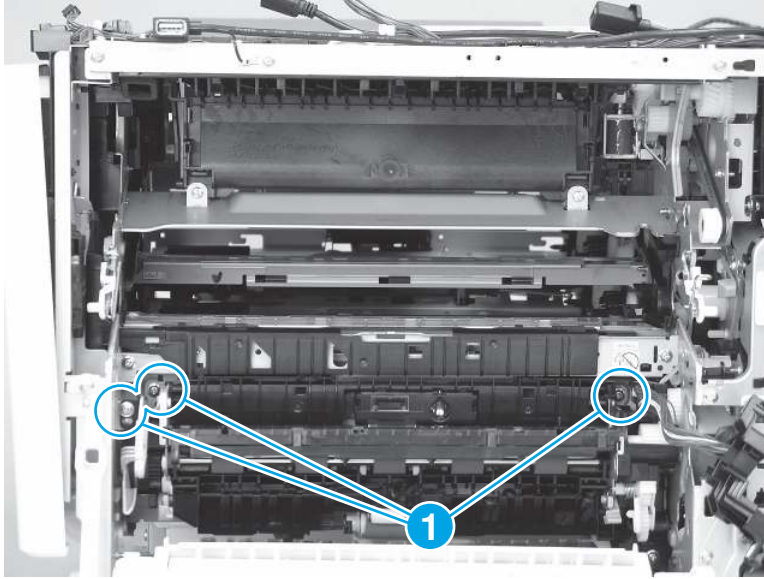
4. Move the guide out of the way.

Figure 5-2261 Move the guide out of the way



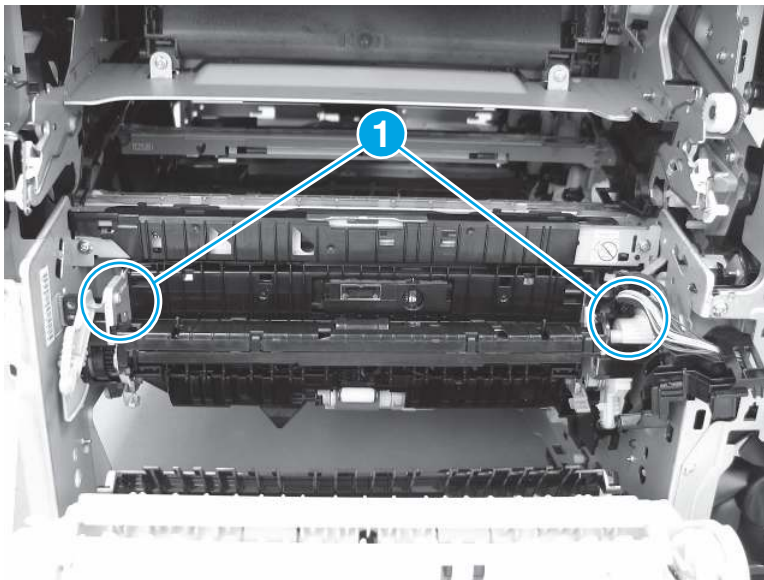
5. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2262 Remove three screws



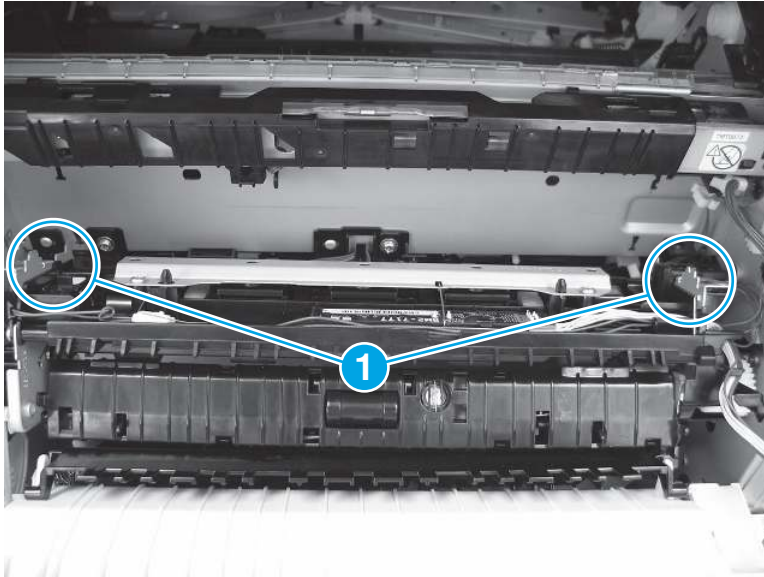
6. Before proceeding, locate the sheet metal portion (callout 1) of the assembly. When handling the assembly, use the sheet metal as handles.

Figure 5-2263 Locate the sheet metal portion of the assembly



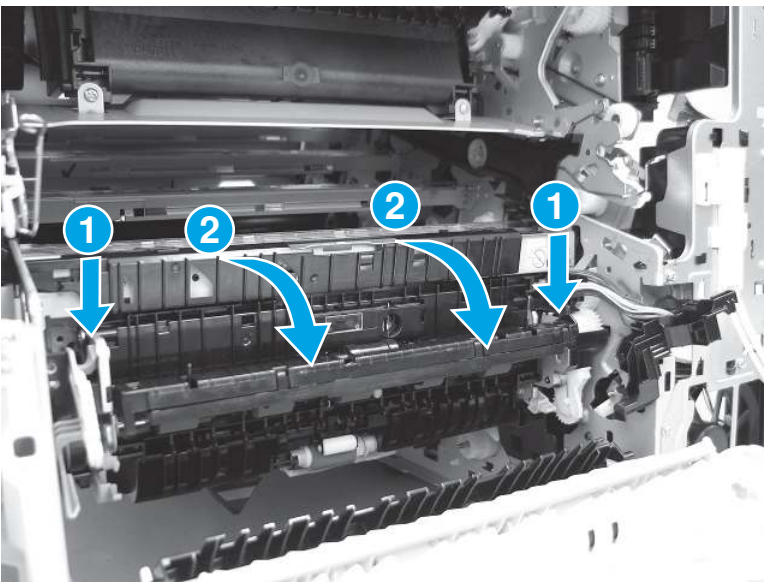
7. Before proceeding, take note of the sheet-metal tabs (callout 1) on the back of the assembly that fasten it to the chassis (the figure shows the assembly removed so the tabs can be viewed).

Figure 5-2264 Locate the sheet metal portion of the assembly



8. Grasp the sheet-metal handles (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the assembly away from the chassis (callout 2) to release the top tabs.

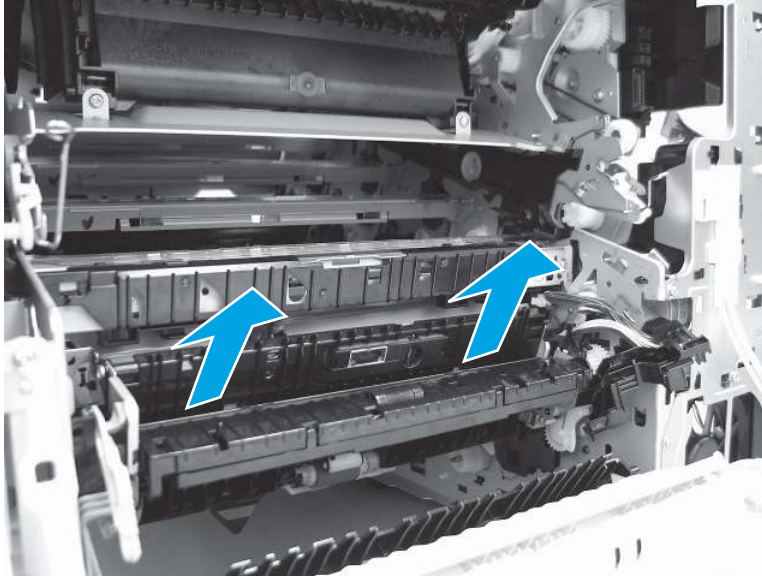
Figure 5-2265 Rotate the top of the assembly away from the chassis



9. Pull up on the assembly to release the bottom tabs.

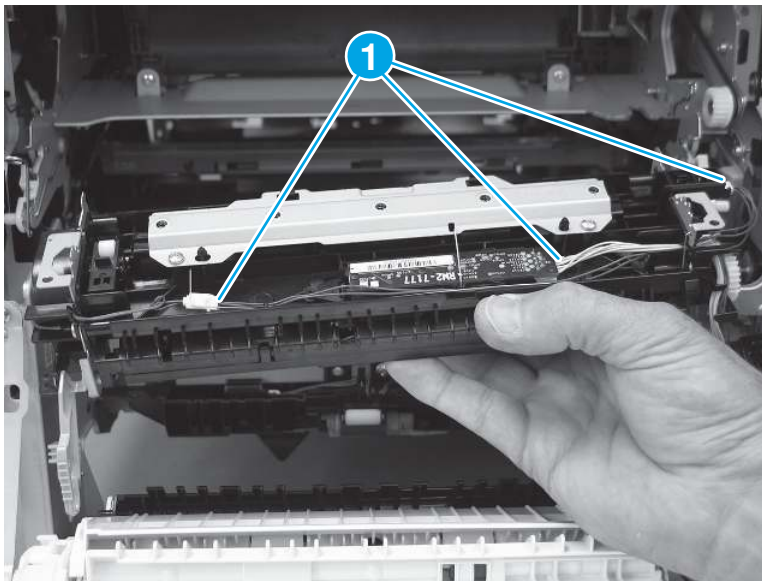
⚠ CAUTION: The assembly is still attached to the printer by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly.

Figure 5-2266 Release the bottom tabs



10. Turn the registration assembly over to access the back side, disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove the assembly.

Figure 5-2267 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the paper pickup assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-82 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-6556-000CN	Paper pickup assembly (includes the Tray 2 paper pickup roller assembly)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

1. Open the right door.

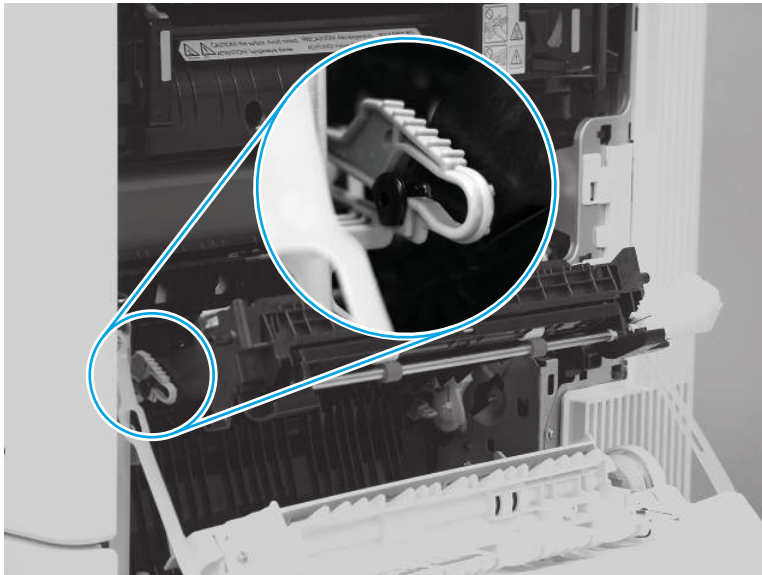
Figure 5-2268 Open the right door



2. Release the blue arm, and then let the secondary transfer assembly rotate down to the half-way open position.

 **NOTE:** The assembly should stop at the halfway down point—the pin will stop at the notch in the slot in the blue arm.

Figure 5-2269 Release the secondary transfer roller assembly



- Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm—as shown in the figure—to start to disengage it from the pin.

Figure 5-2270 Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm



- Continue to flex the blue arm until it disengages from the pin.

Figure 5-2271 Disengage the blue arm and pin



- Slide the assembly toward the front of the printer to release it (callout 1), and then rotate it down and away from the printer to remove it (callout 2).


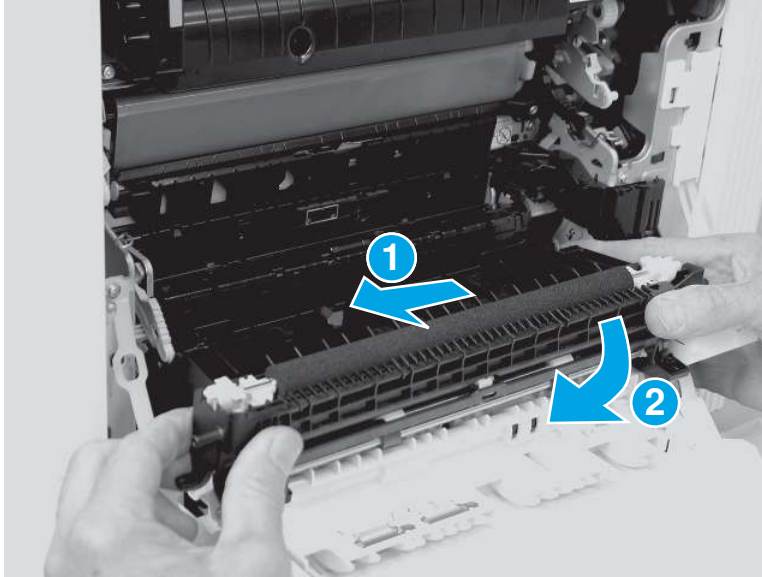
 **Reinstallation tip:** Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 5-2272 Remove the secondary transfer roller assembly



Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

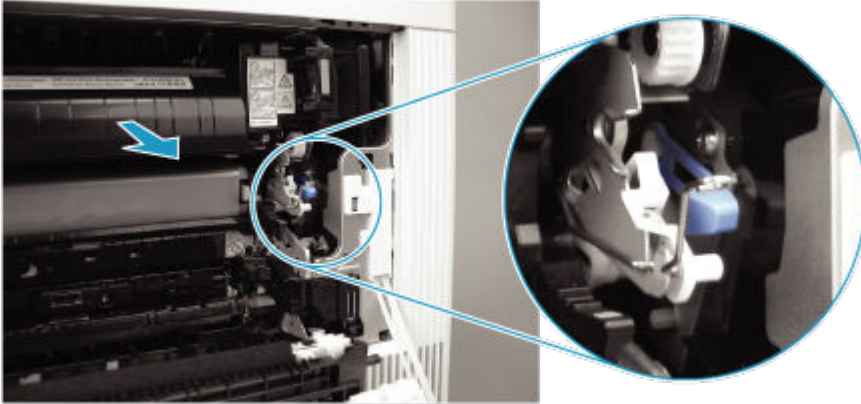
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-2273 Open the right door



2. Pull the blue lever to release the ITB drive coupling.

Figure 5-2274 Release the ITB drive coupling



3. Push in on the blue arm to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then completely lower the assembly.


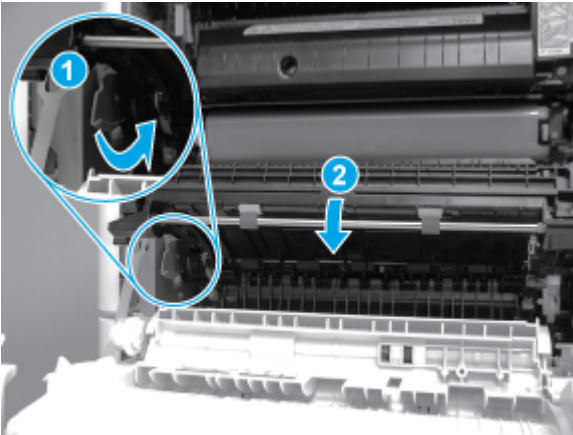
 **NOTE:** Press the blue arm on the secondary transfer roller assembly a second time to release the roller assembly when it stops at the halfway open position.

Figure 5-2275 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



4. Release the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).


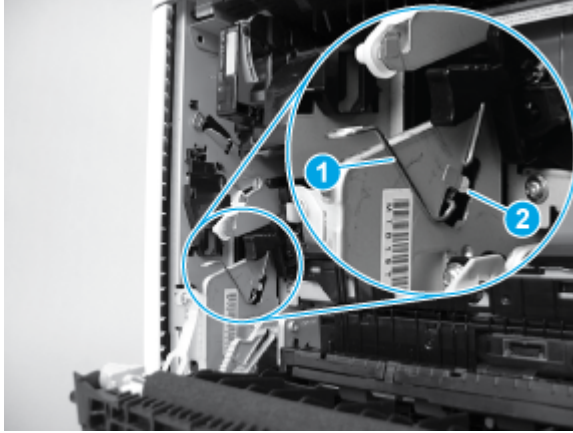

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-2276 Release the front-side ITB spring

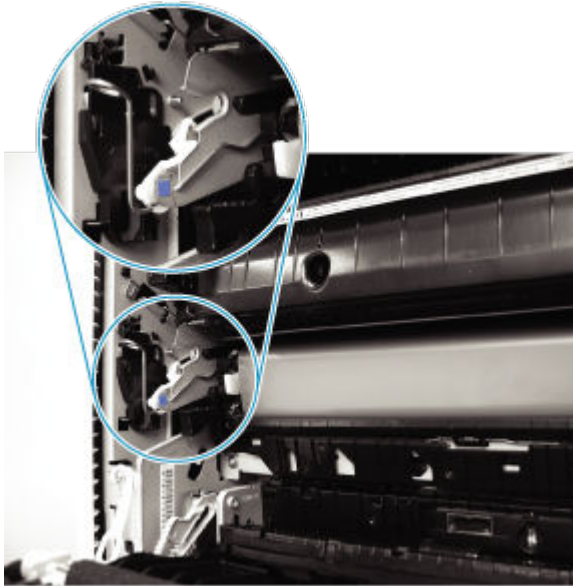


5. Place the left-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

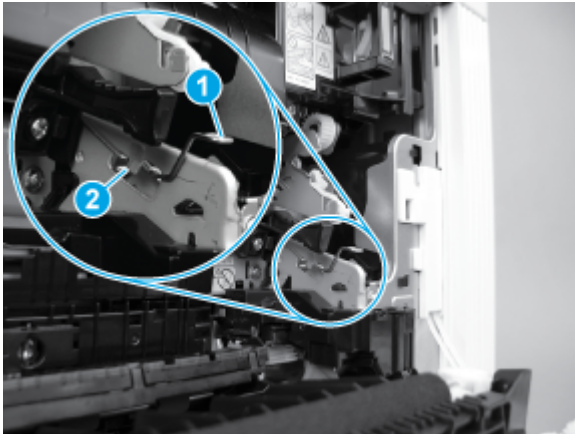
 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-2277 Place the spring on the holder



6. Release the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).

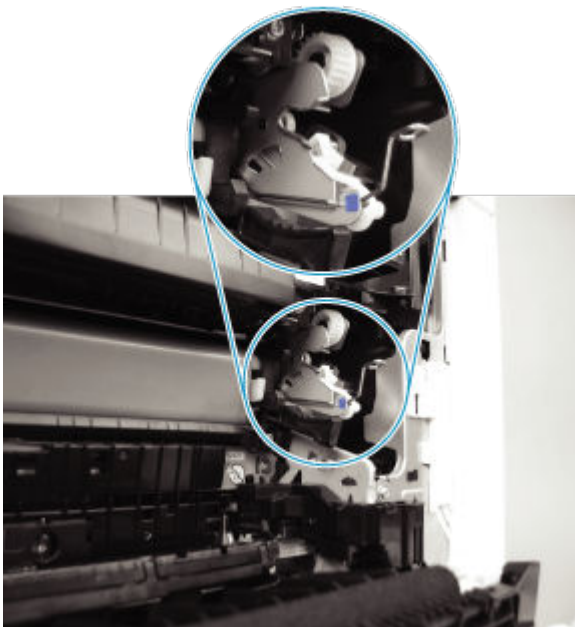
Figure 5-2278 Release the rear-side ITB spring



7. Place the right-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-2279 Place the spring on the holder



8. Grasp the two blue handles on the ITB.


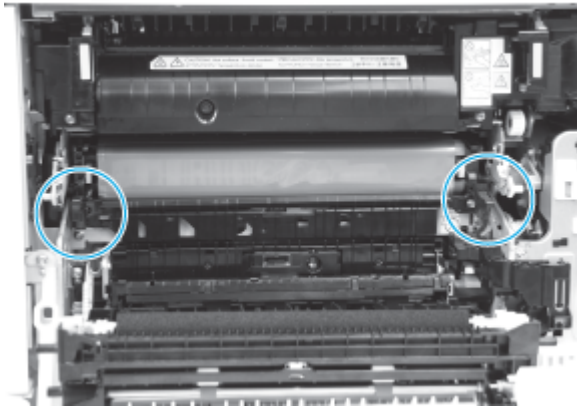
 **CAUTION:** If the ITB is removed to access other assemblies in the printer, use care. The ITB is a sensitive assembly. Be careful when handling the ITB so that it is not damaged. Always place the ITB in a safe and protected location.

Figure 5-2280 Grasp the ITB handles



9. Pull the ITB out of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 5-2281 Remove the ITB



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

📝 NOTE: A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

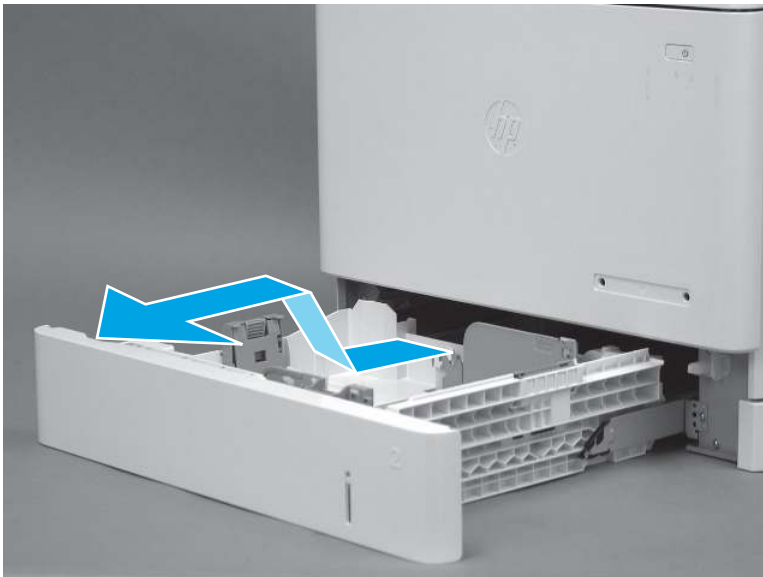
Figure 5-2282 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** For a replacement tray: If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2283 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-2284 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-2285 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-2286 Remove the TCU

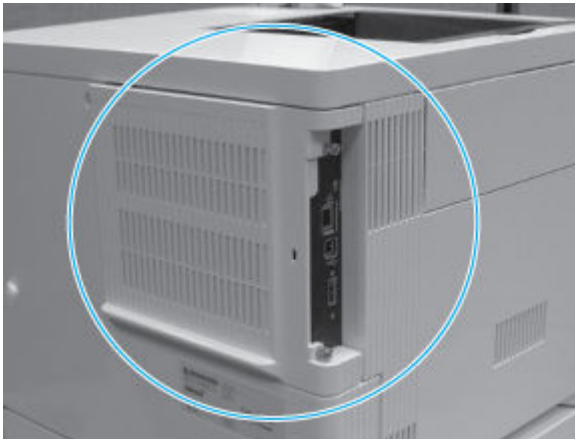


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2287 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2288 Loosen the thumbscrews



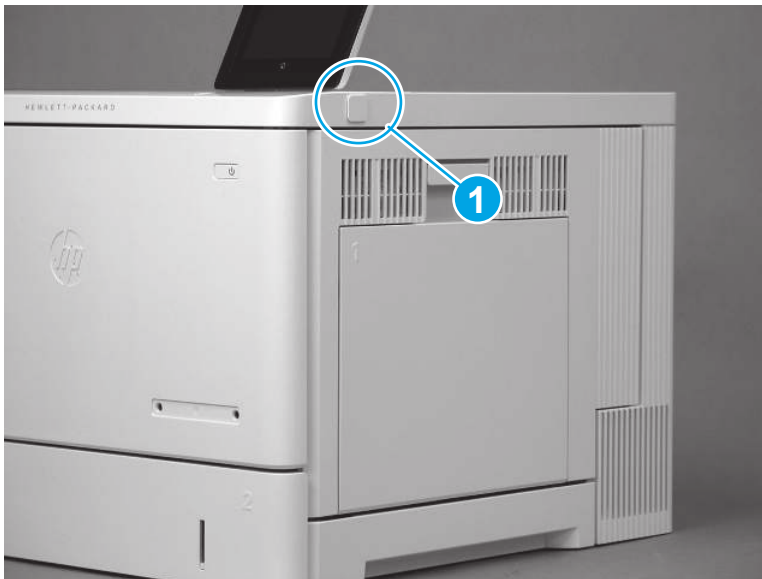
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2289 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2290 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-2291 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2292 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2293 Remove the cover

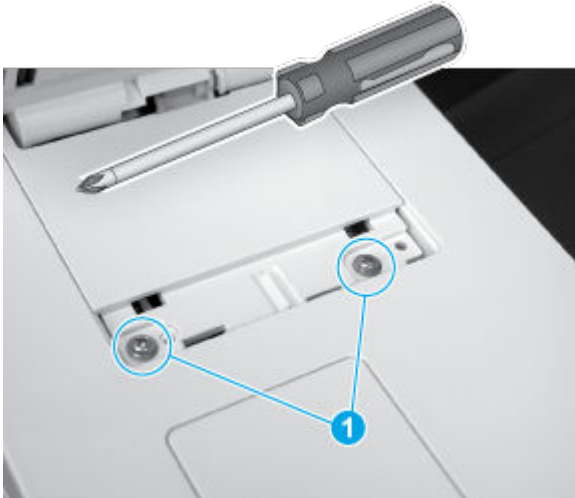


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2294 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-2295 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2296 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


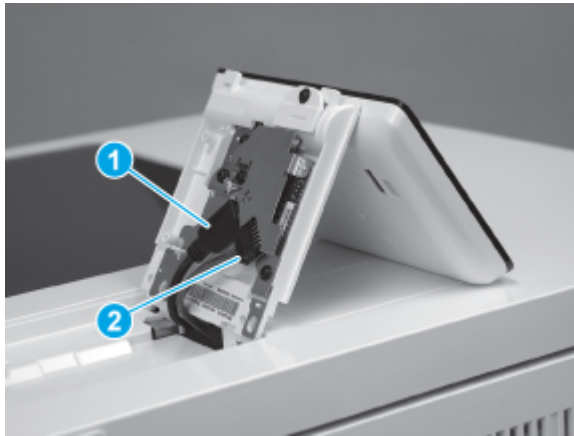
 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2297 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)

- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


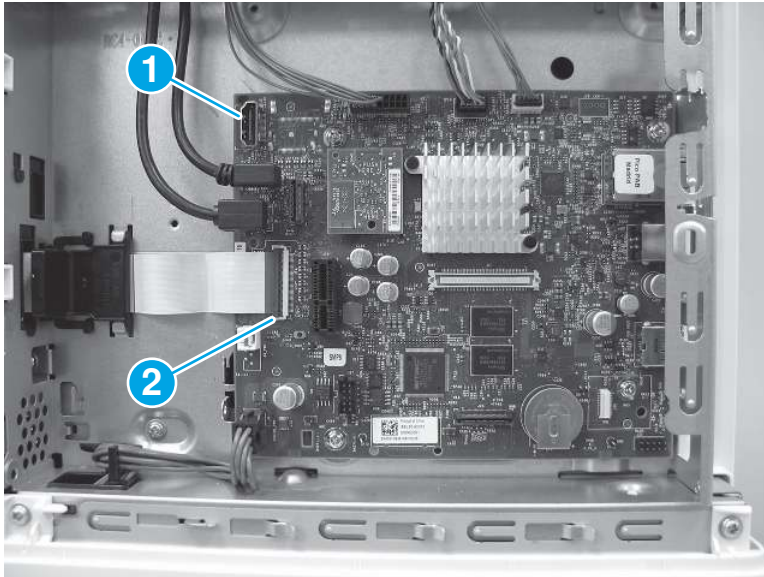
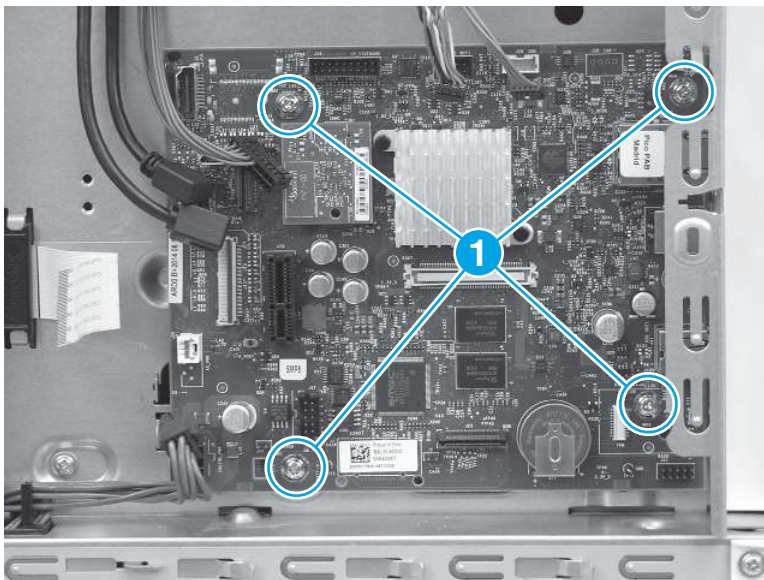
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2298 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..

Figure 5-2299 Remove four screws




Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

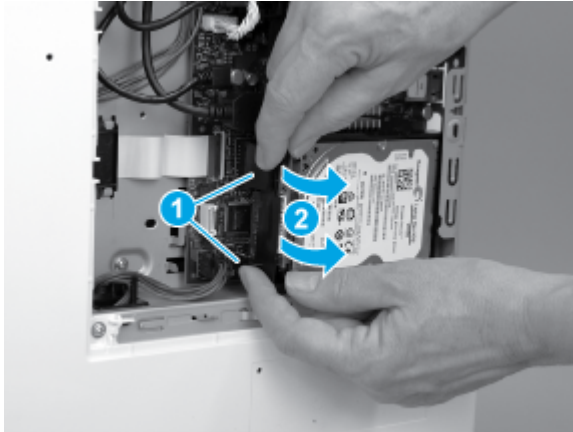
 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only.

An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-2300 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2301 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

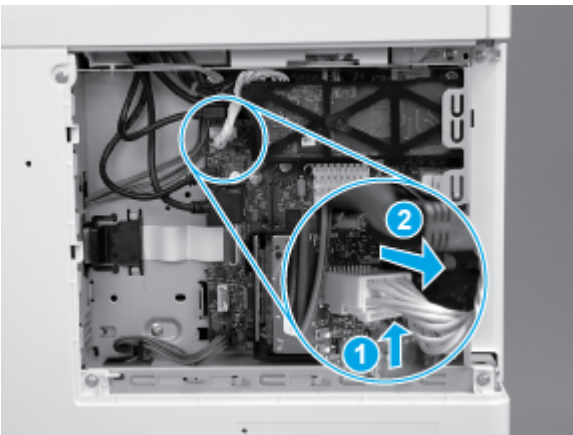
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2302 Locate the fax PCA



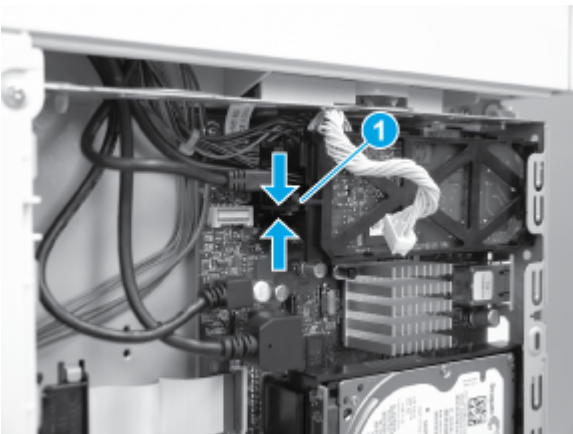
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-2303 Disconnect one connector



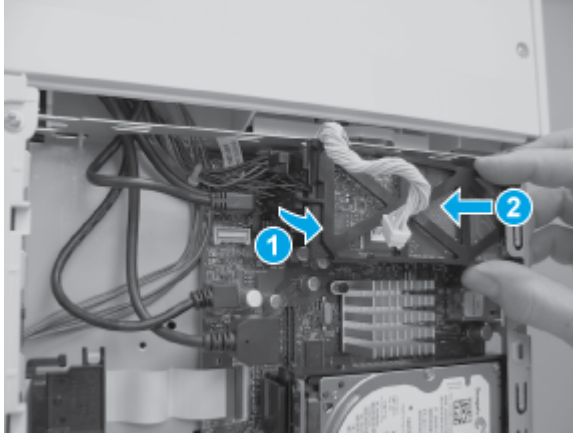
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-2304 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2305 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


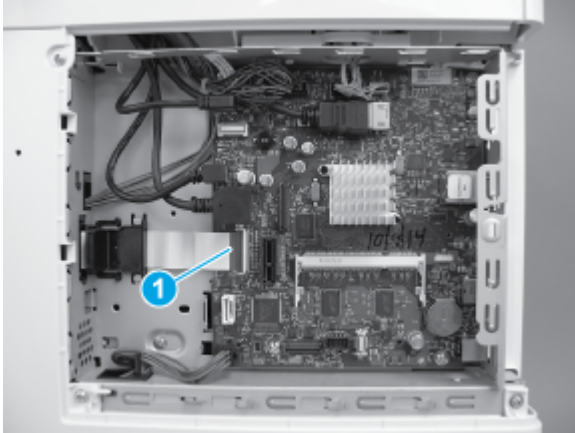
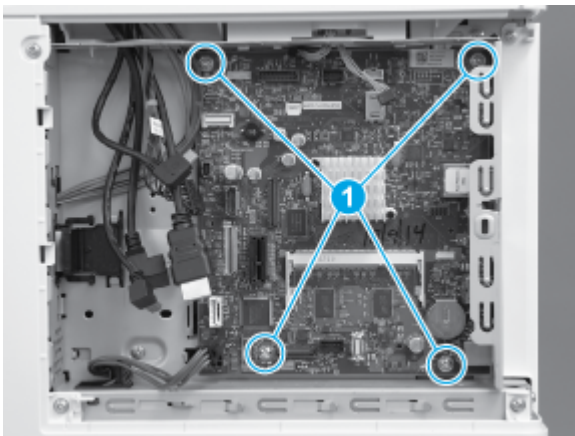
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2306 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2307 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-2308 Remove the formatter



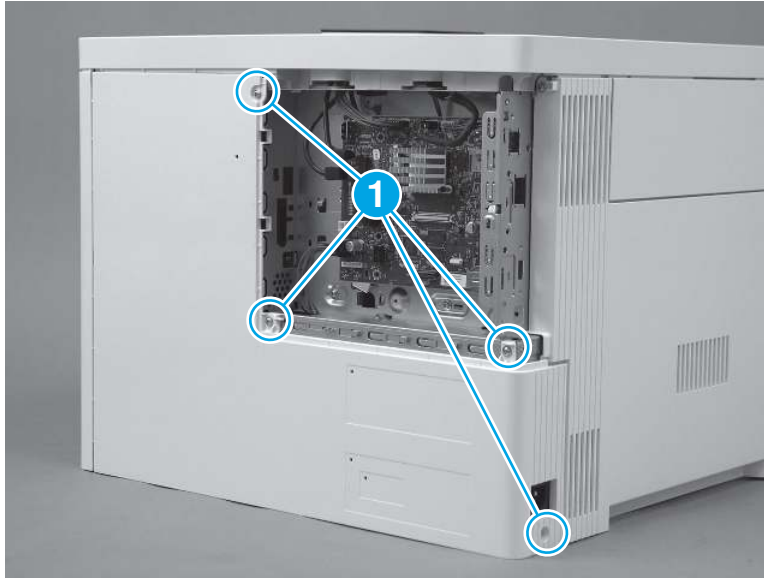
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

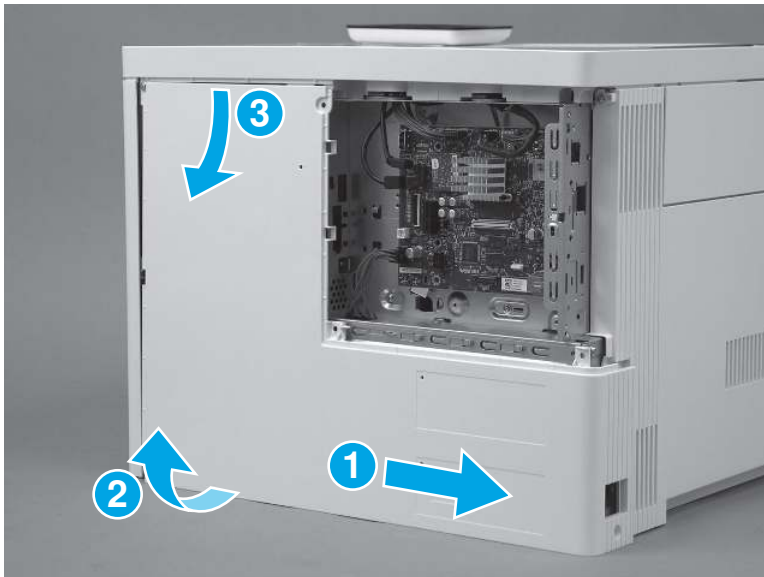
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2309 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-2310 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

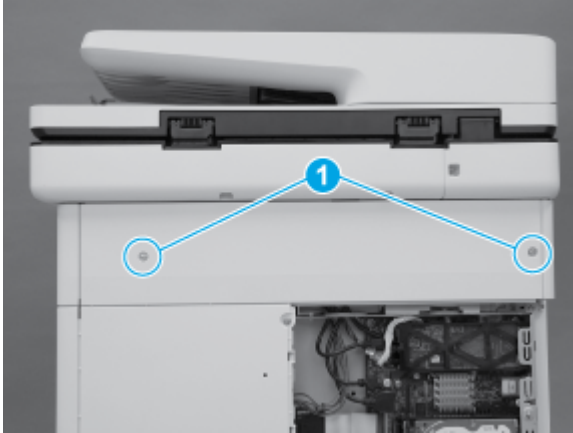
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

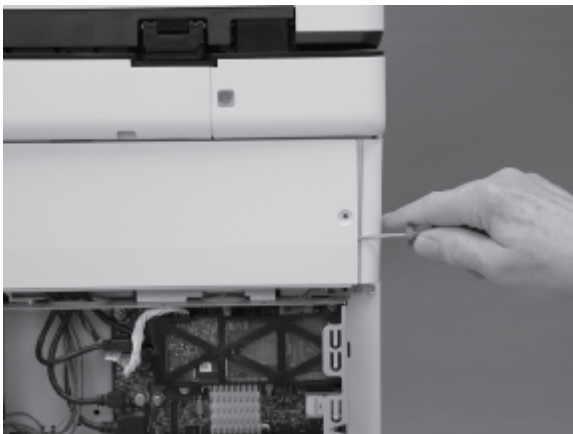
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-2311 Remove two screws



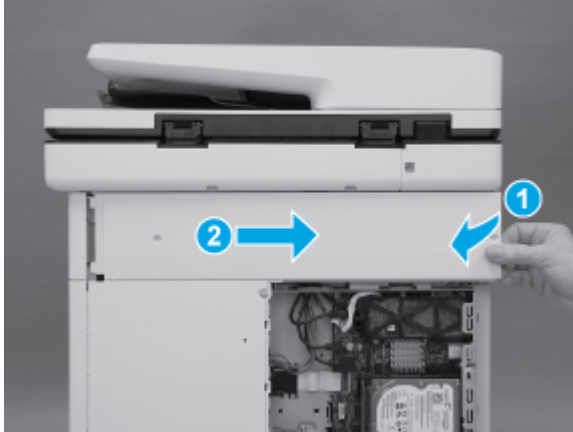
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2312 Release the right edge



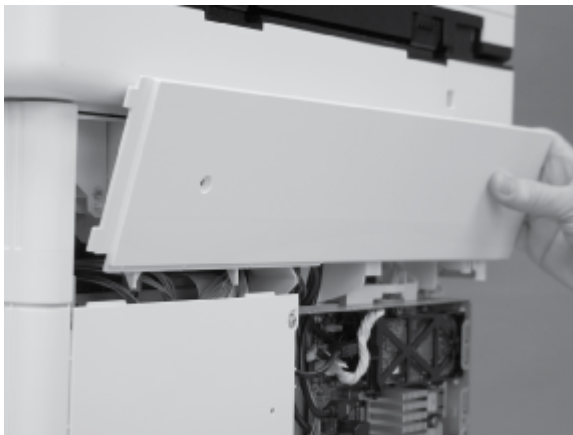
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-2313 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2314 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2315 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2316 Remove the cover



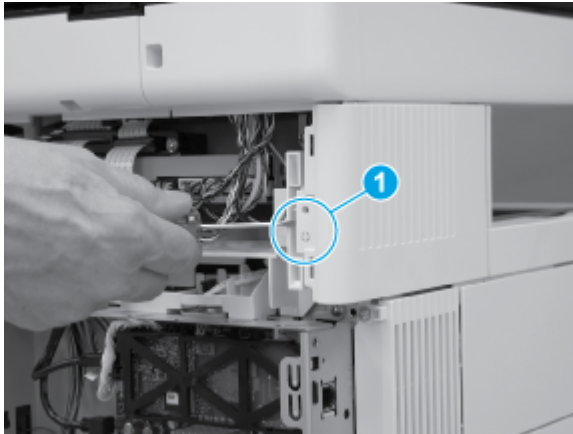
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2317 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-2318 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2319 Remove the left upper cover



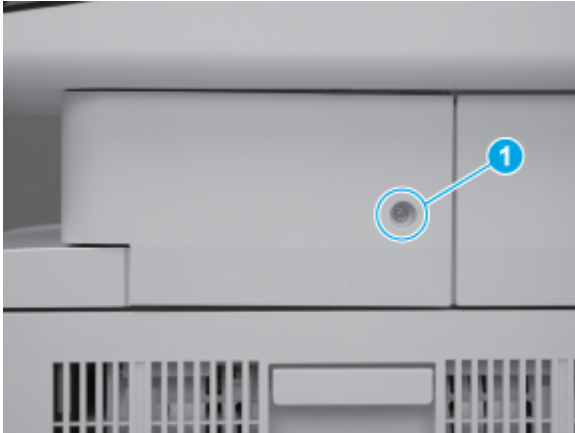
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2320 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2321 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2322 Rotate the cover



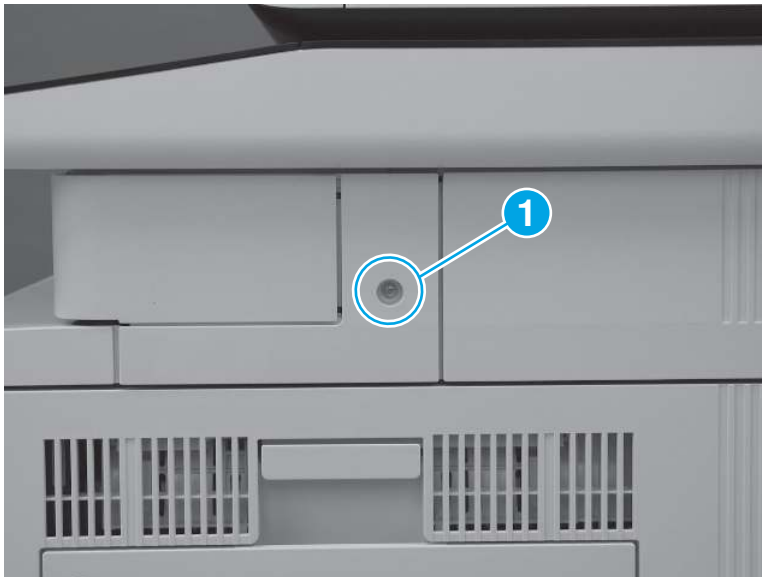
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2323 Remove one screw



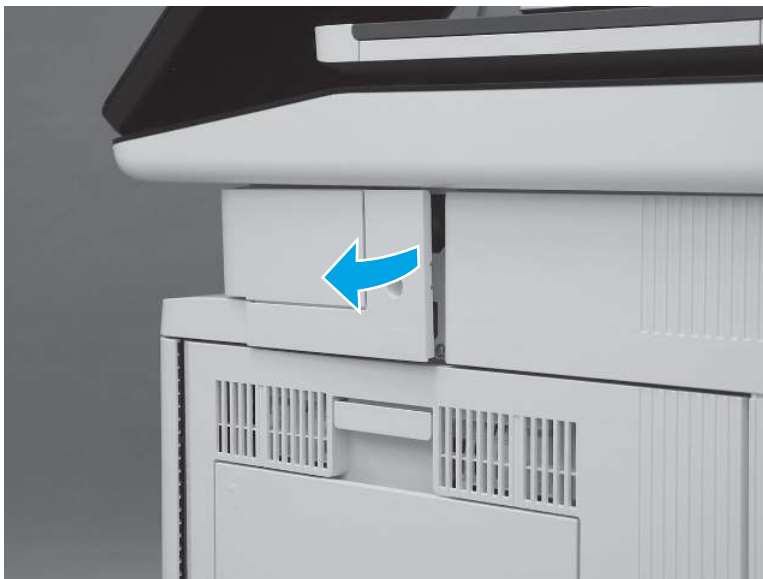
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2324 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2325 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2326 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

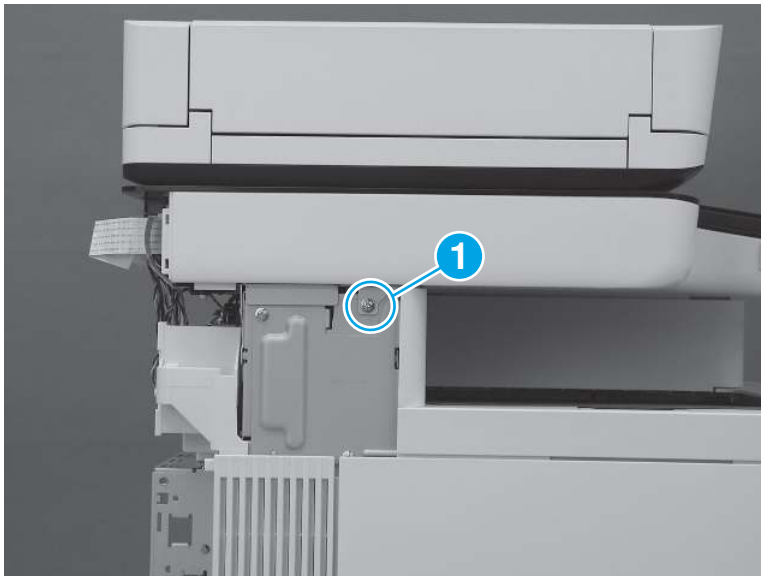
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

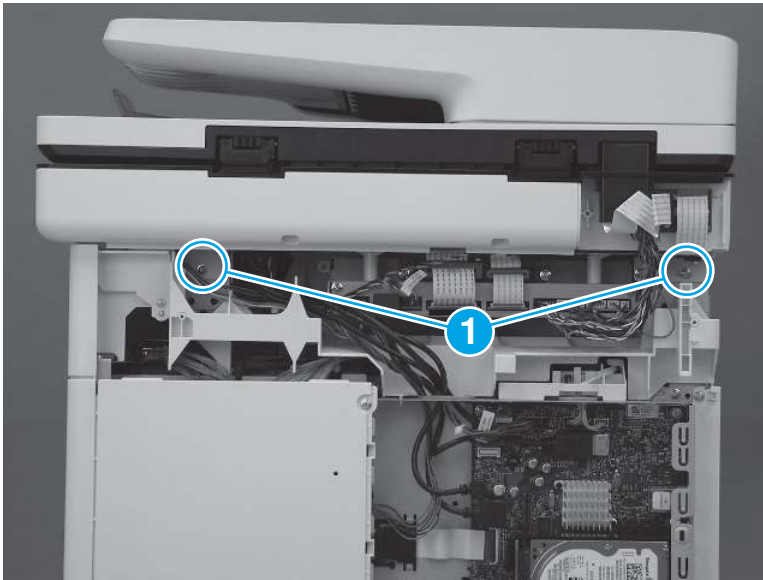
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2327 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

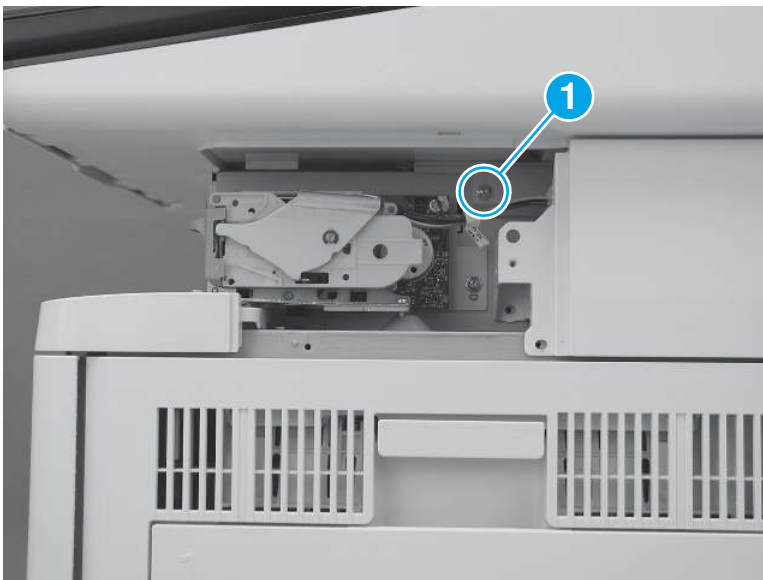
Figure 5-2328 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

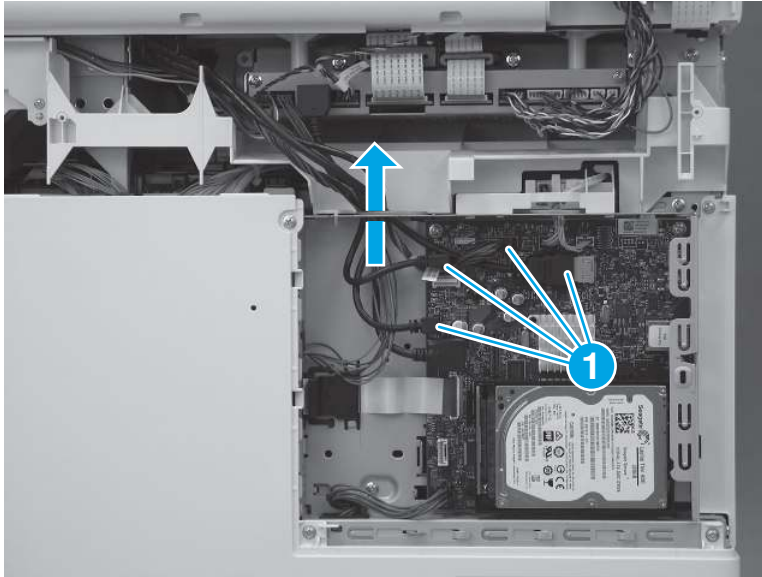
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-2329 Remove one screw



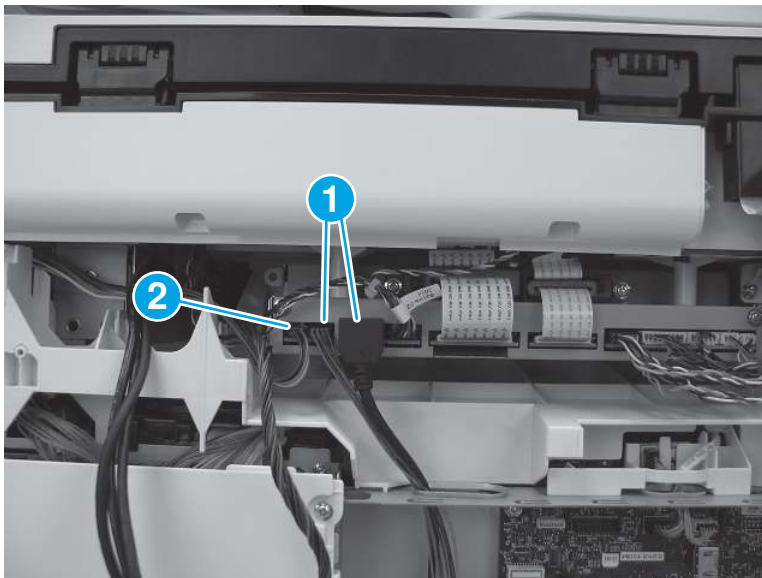
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-2330 Disconnect cables and connectors



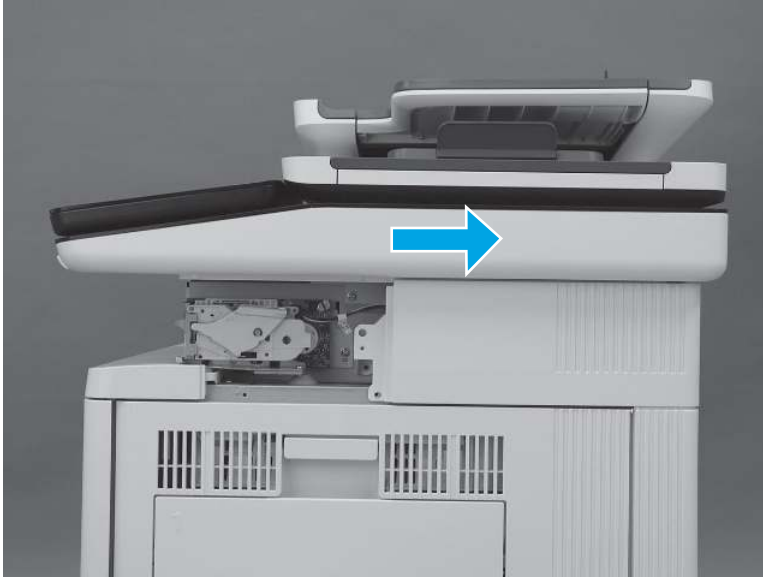
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-2331 Disconnect connectors



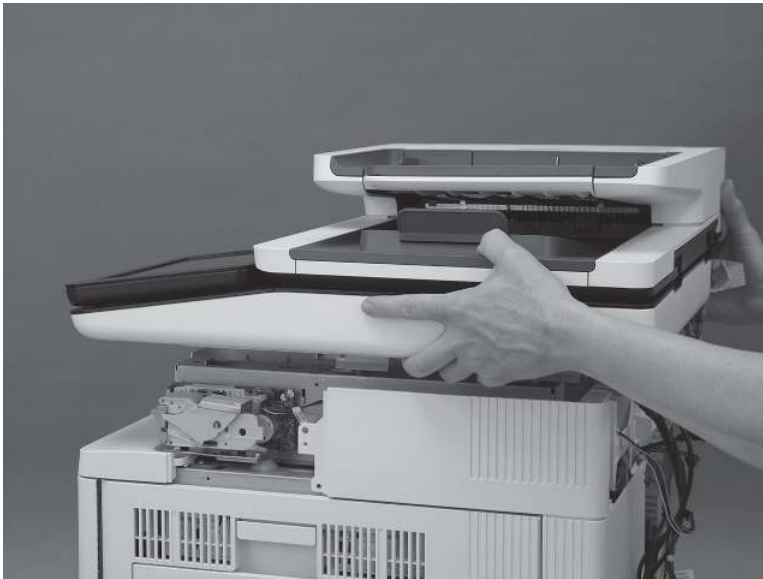
- Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2332 Release the image scanner




- Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-2333 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

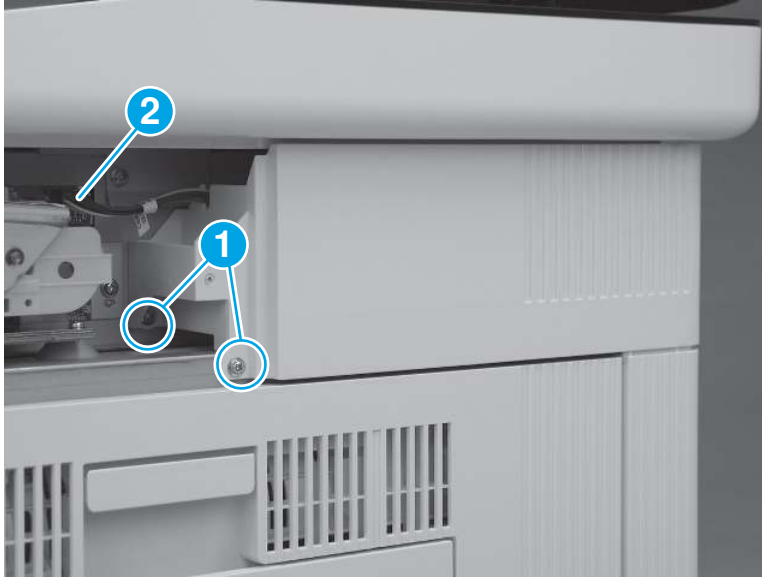
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

- At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-2334 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


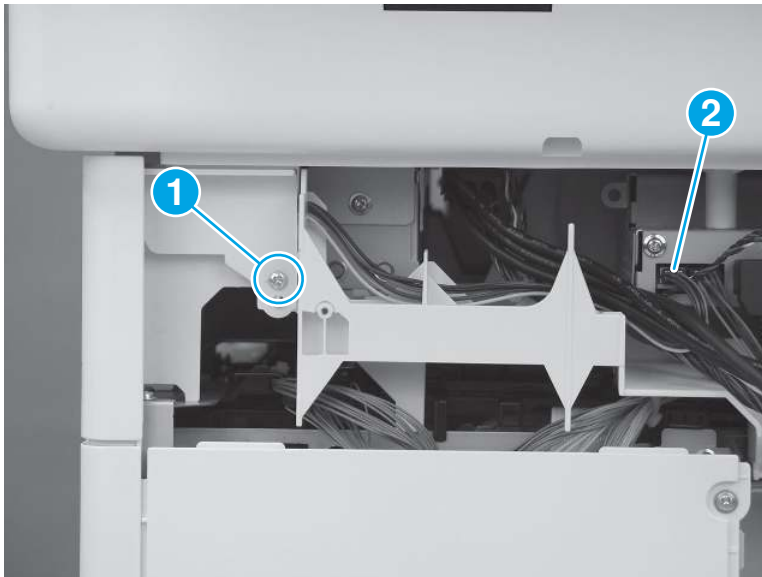
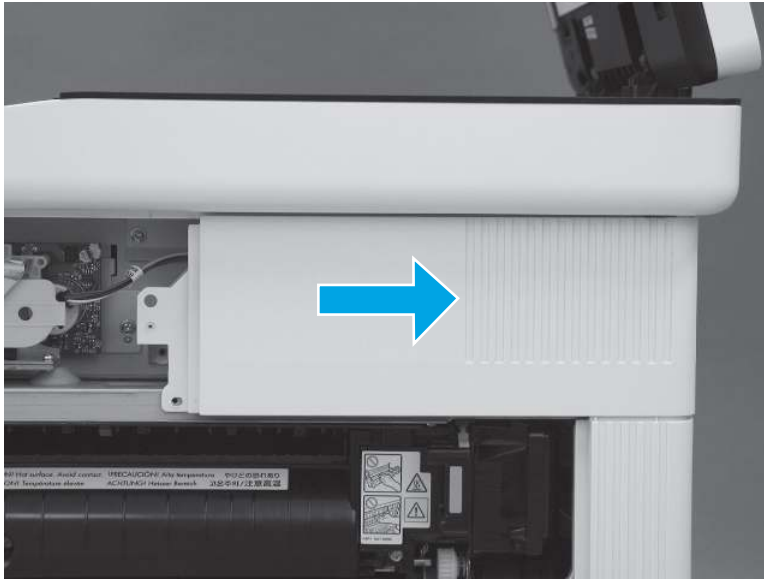
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2335 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

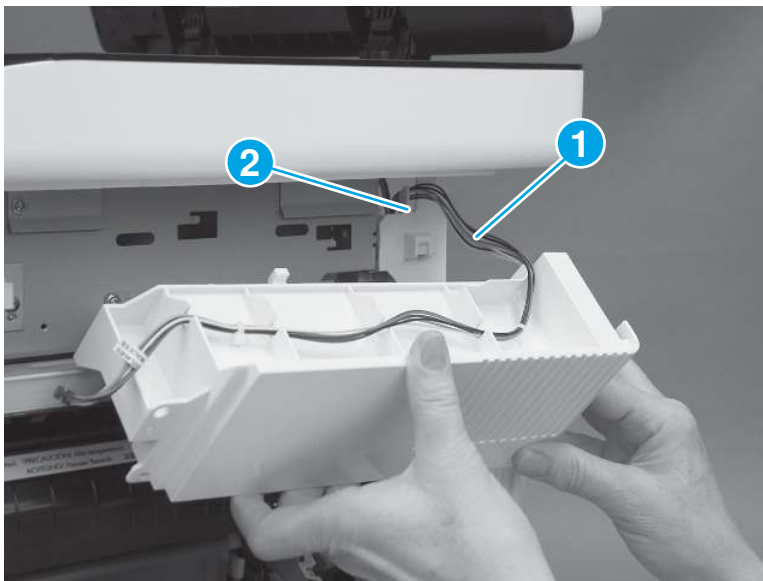
Figure 5-2336 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-2337 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

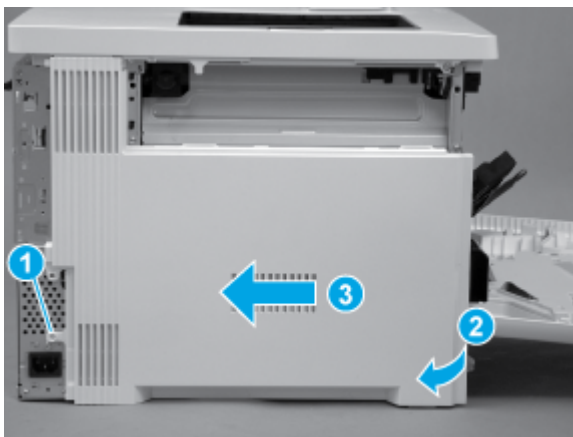
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2338 Remove one screw



2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2339 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2340 Remove the cover



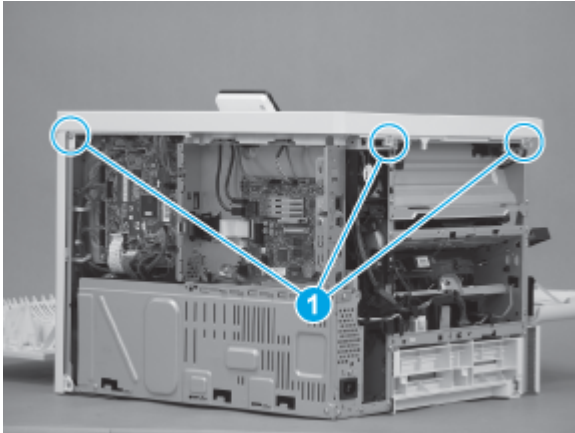
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2341 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-2342 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


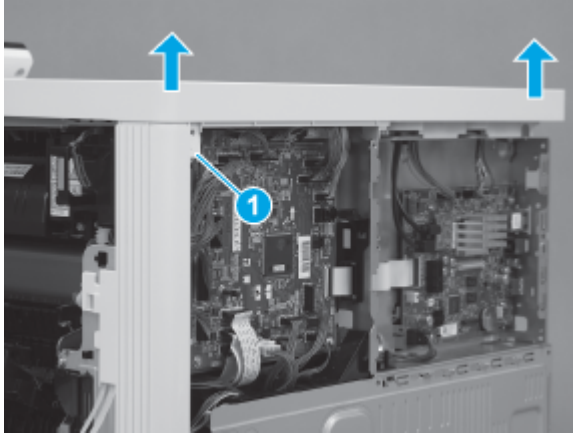
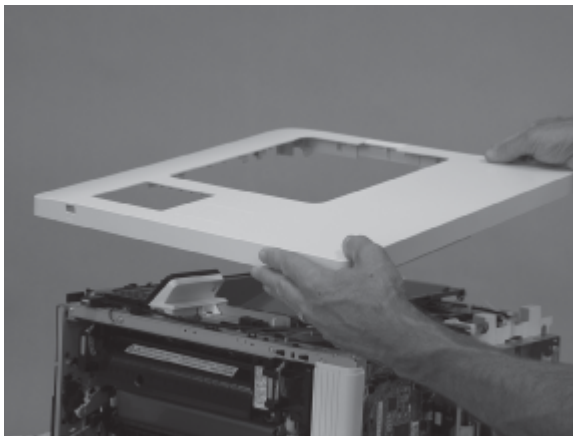
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for addition tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-2343 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2344 Remove the cover



Remove the right rear cover

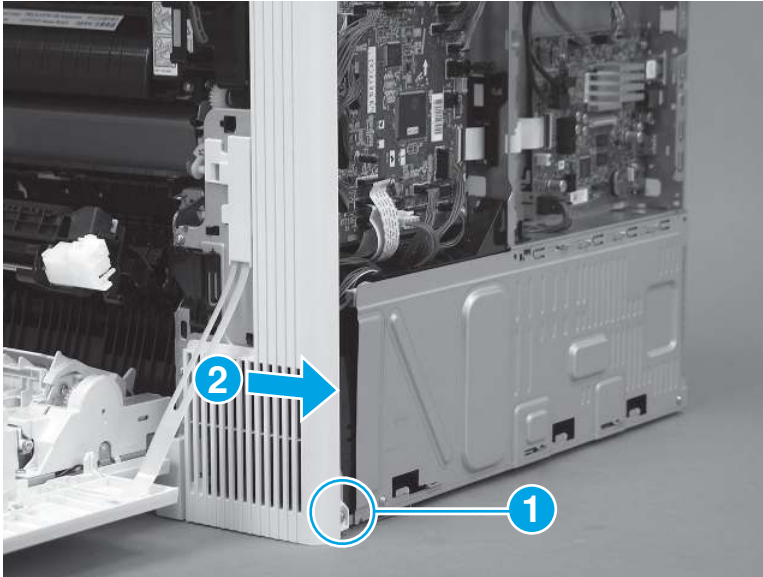
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

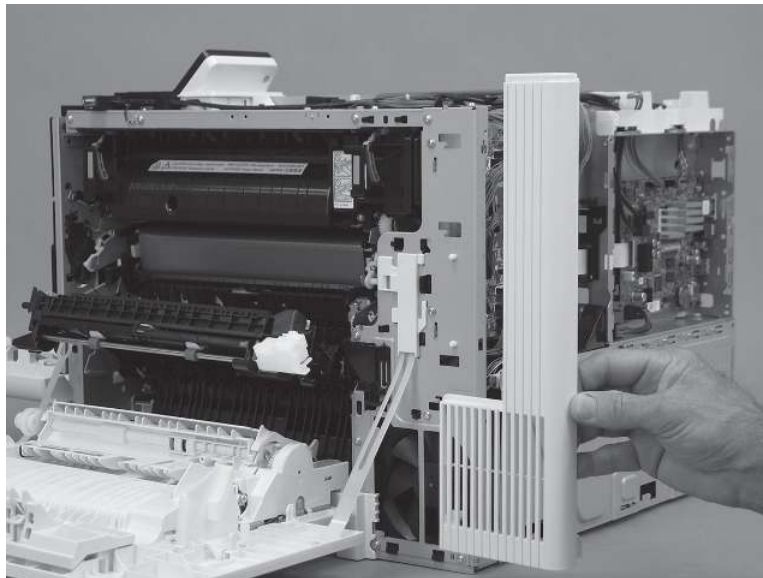
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-2345 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2346 Remove the cover

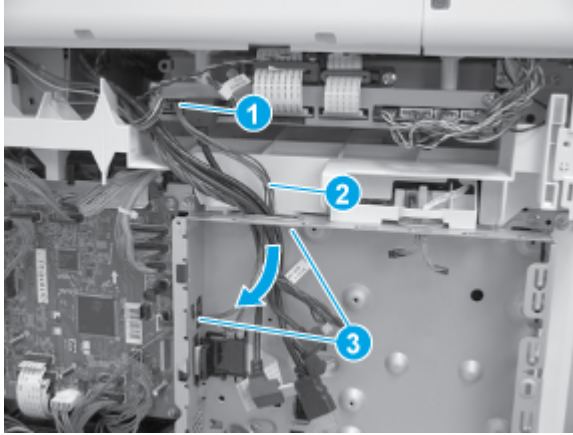


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

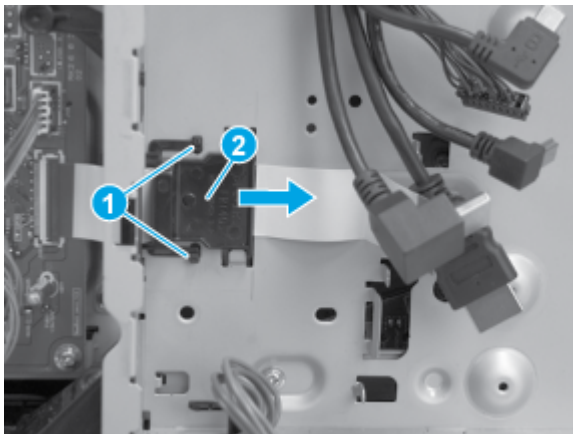
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-2347 Disconnect one connector



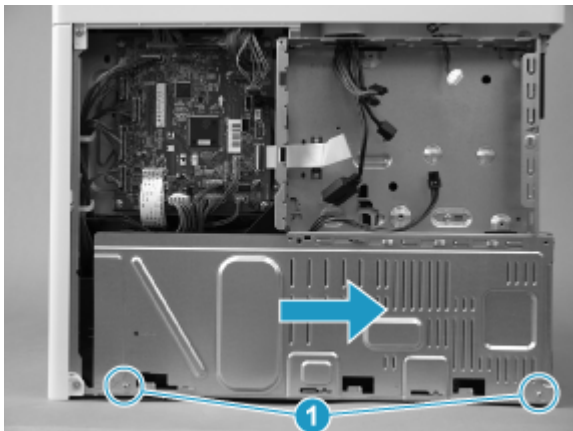
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-2348 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

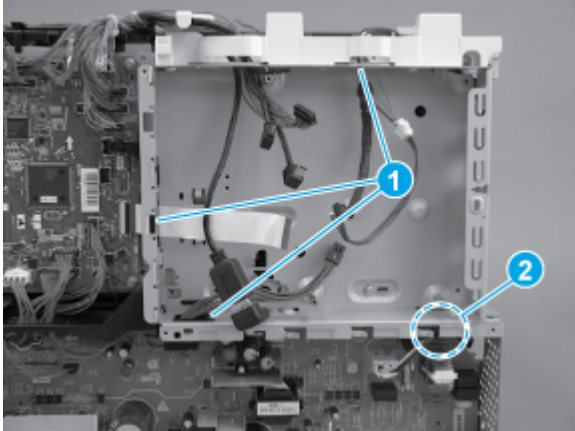
Figure 5-2349 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

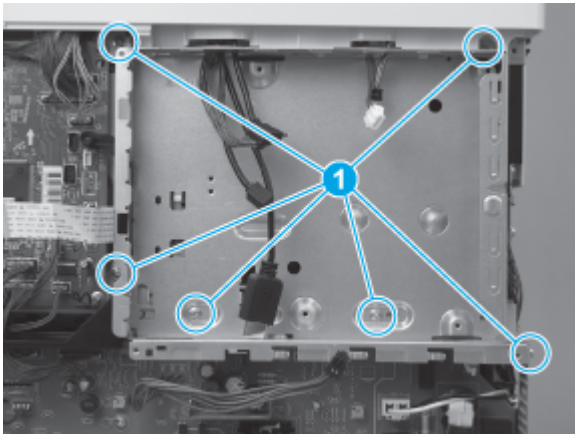
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-2350 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



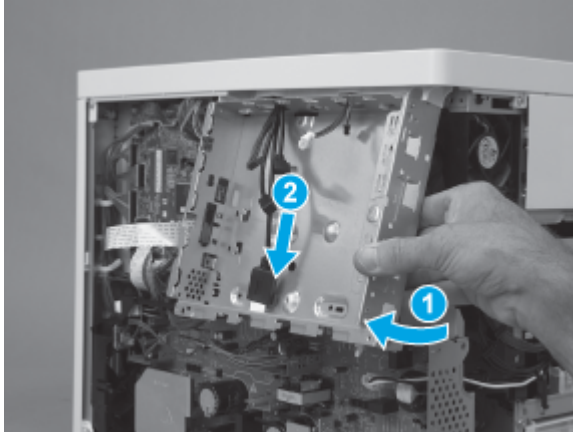
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2351 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

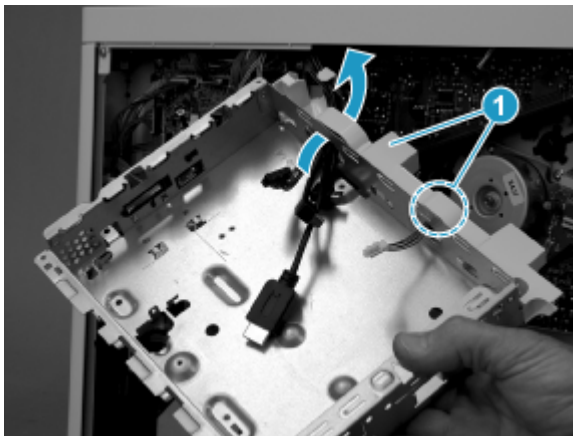
Figure 5-2352 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-2353 Remove the formatter case

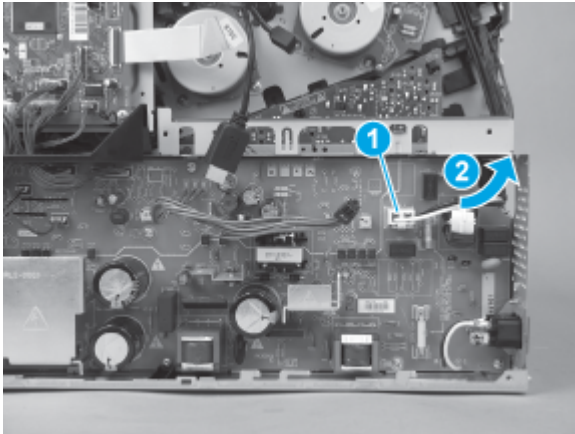


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

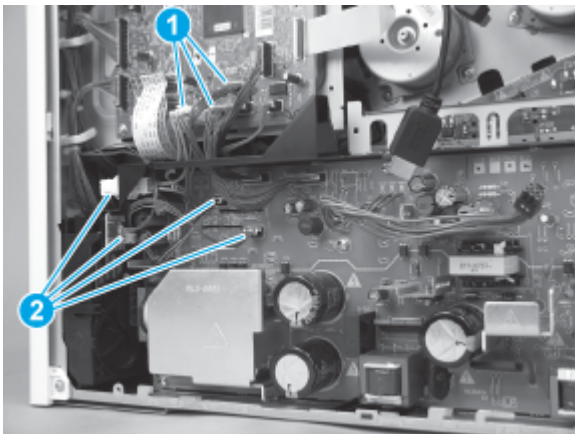
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-2354 Disconnect one wire harness



2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-2355 Disconnect seven connectors



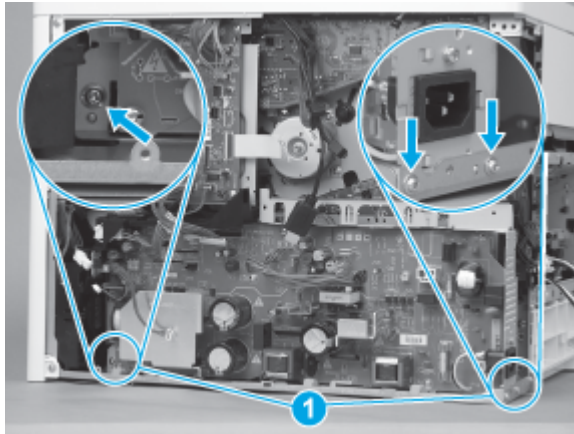
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-2356 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



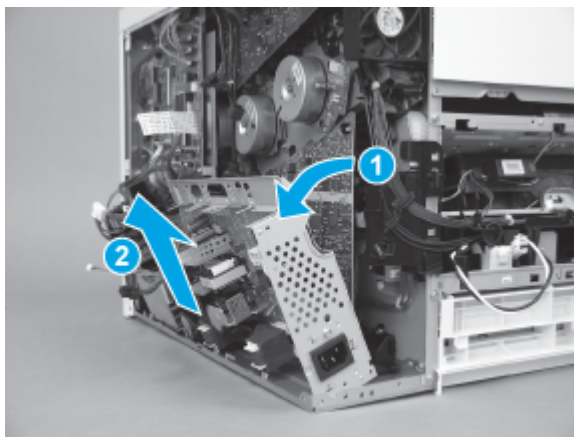
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2357 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2358 Remove the LVPS

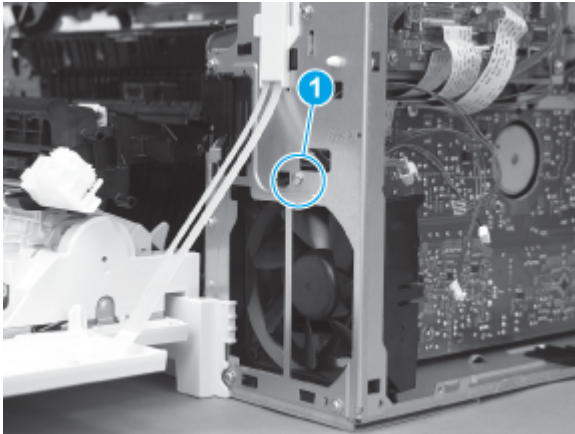


Remove the power supply fan (FM1)

Follow these steps to remove the power supply fan.

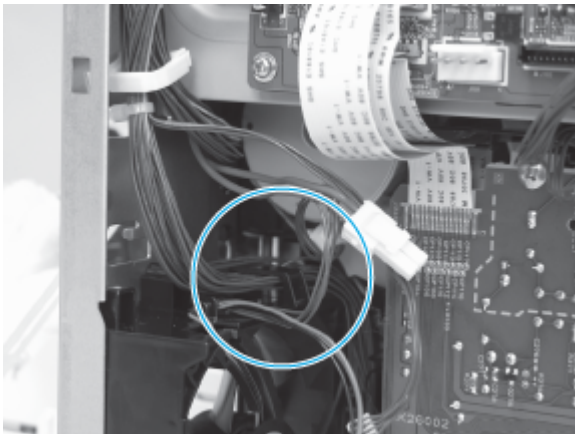
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2359 Remove one screw



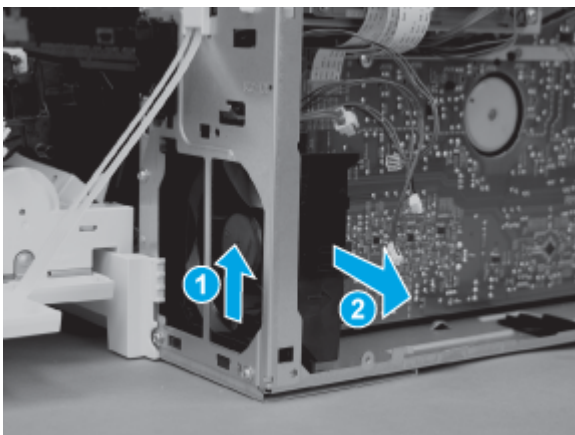
2. Release the wire harnesses from the retainer on the top of the fan bracket.

Figure 5-2360 Release the wire harnesses



3. Lift the fan up (callout 1), and then slide it out of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2361 Remove the fan

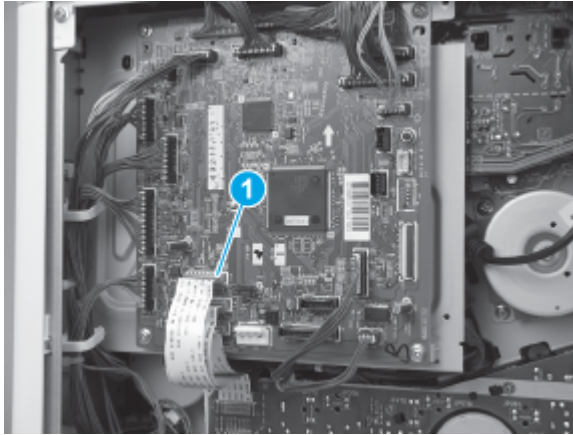


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

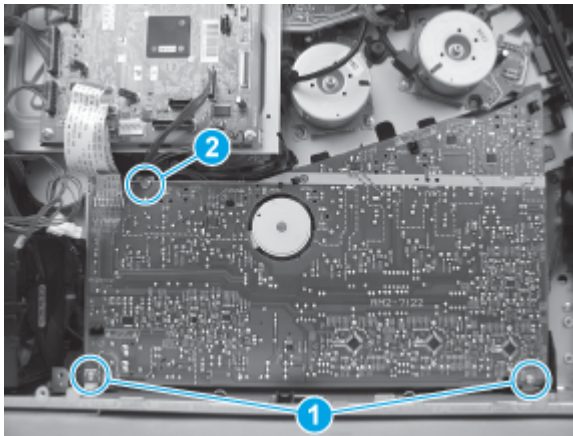
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-2362 Disconnect one flat cable



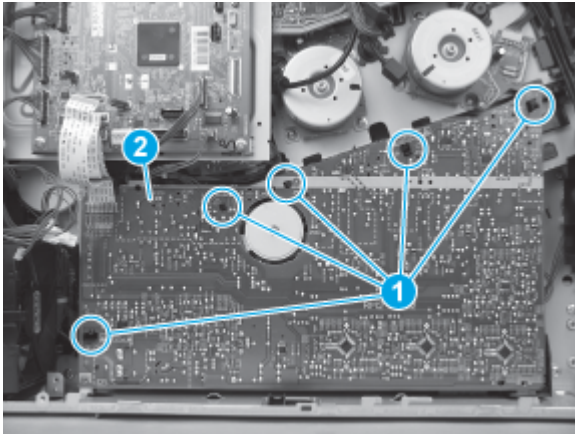
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-2363 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-2364 Remove the HVPSD

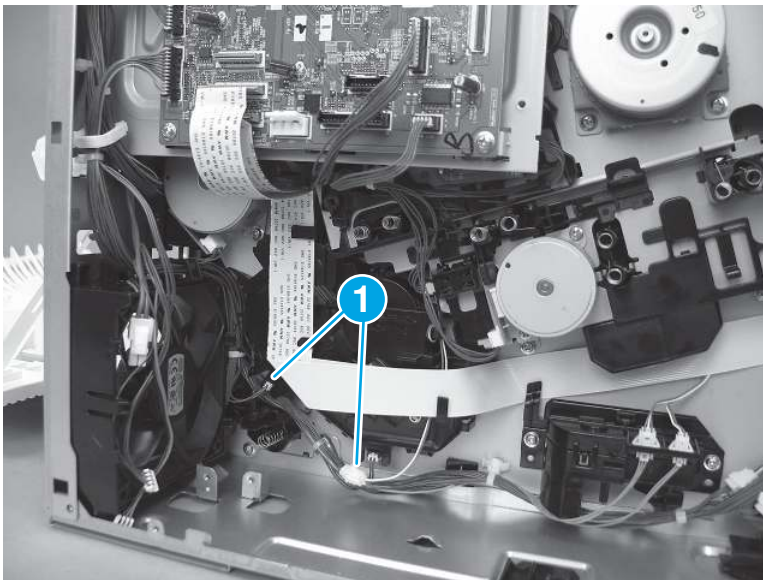


Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

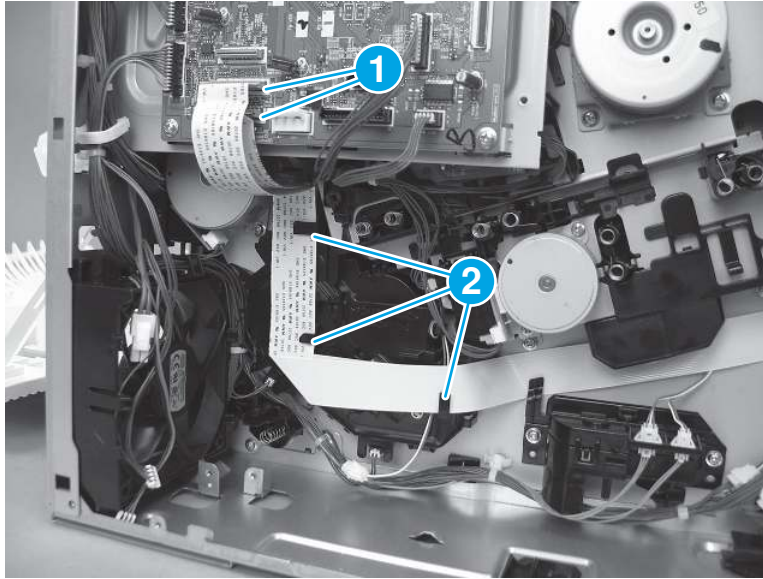
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-2365 Disconnect two connectors



2. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1), and then release them from the retainers (callout 2).

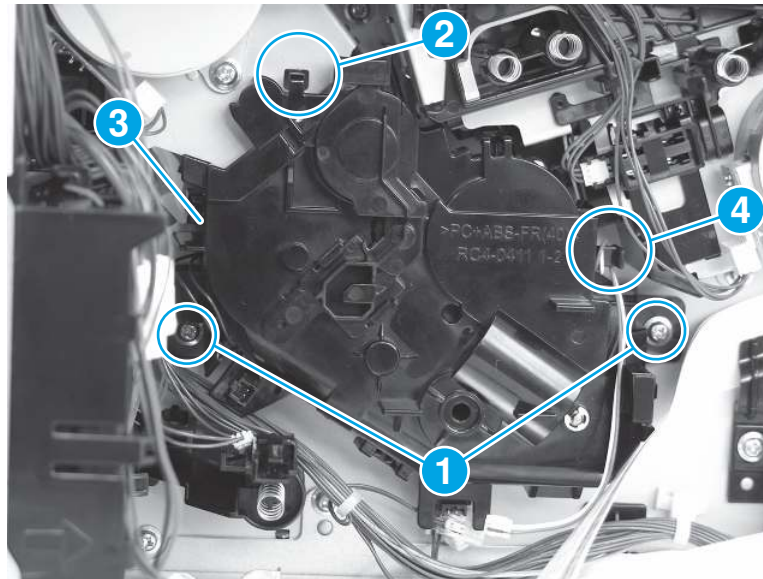
Figure 5-2366 Disconnect two flat cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 4) as the assembly is removed.

Figure 5-2367 Remove the assembly



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.

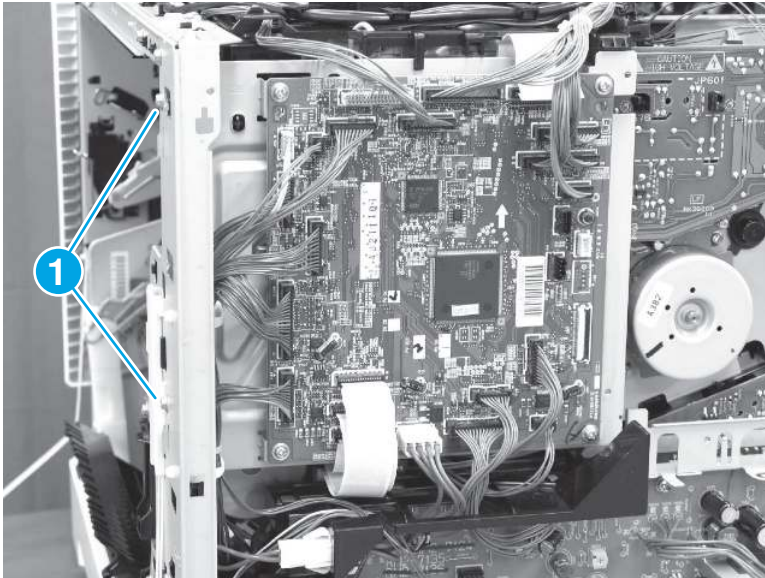
 **NOTE:**  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

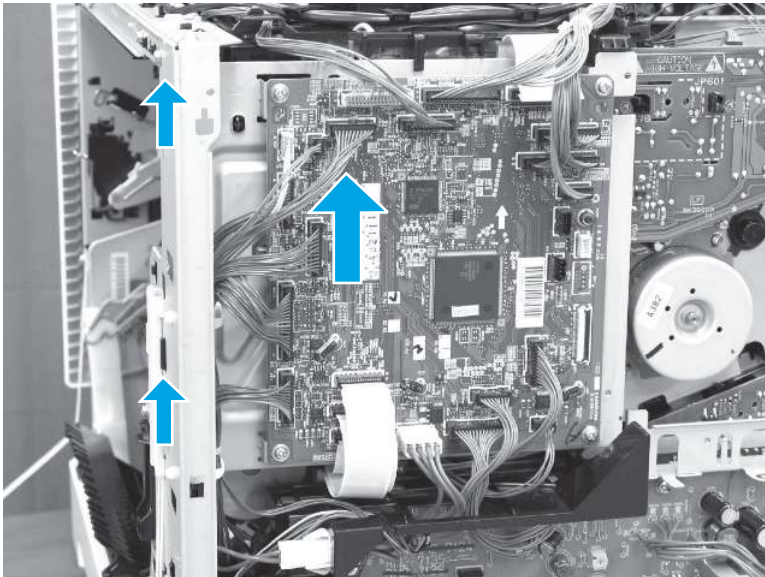
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-2368 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-2369 Remove the plate

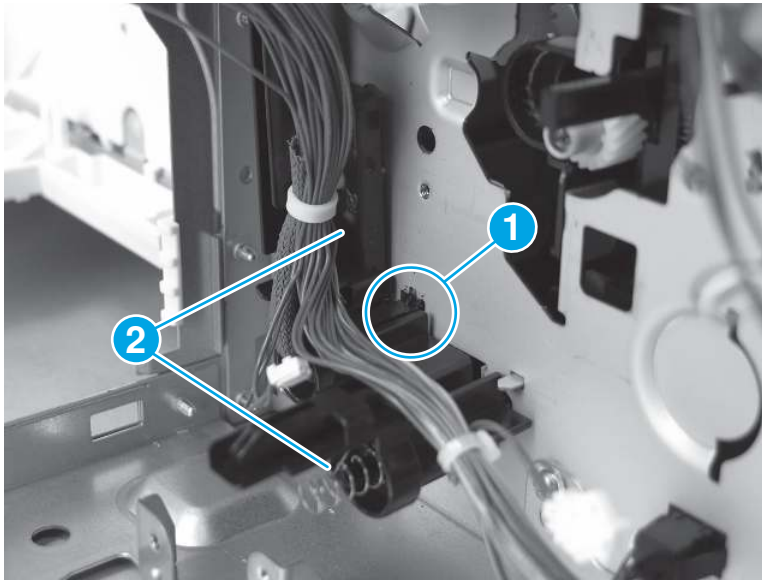


Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5)

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive assembly and motor.

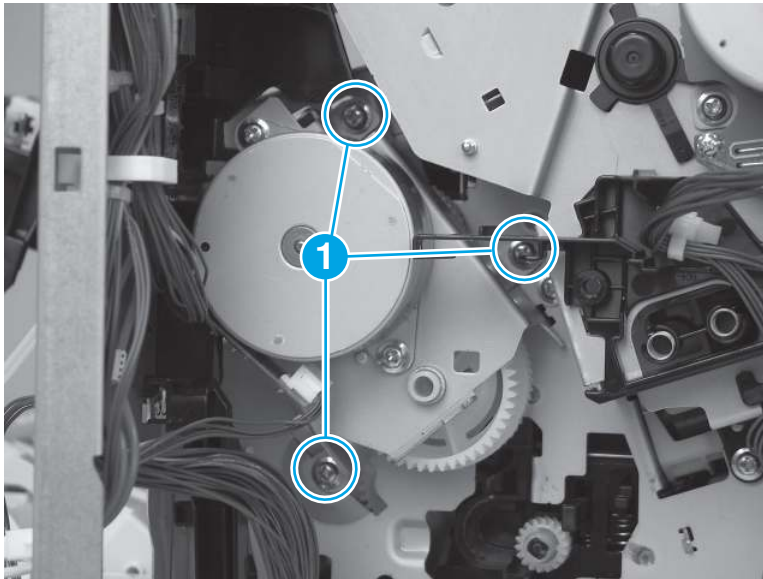
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then move the guide (callout 2) out of the way.

Figure 5-2370 Move the guide out of the way



2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

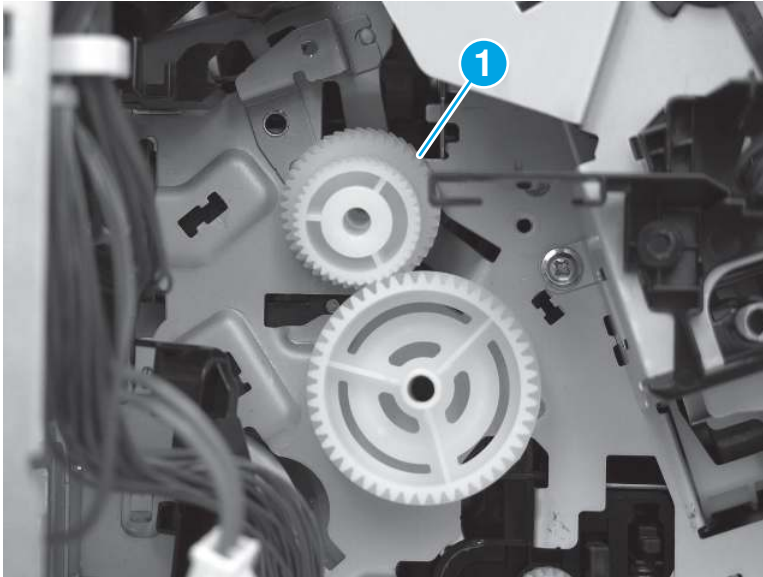
Figure 5-2371 Remove three screws



3. Remove the assembly.

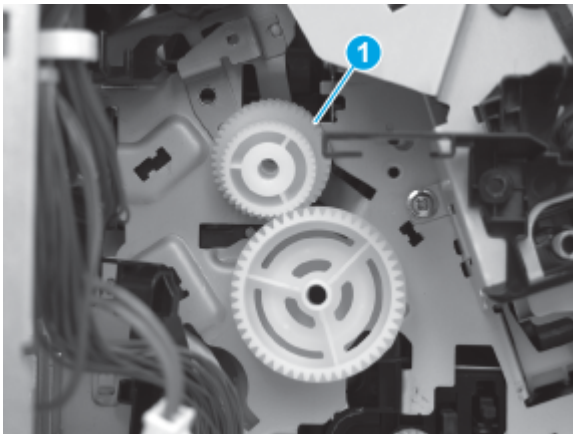
⚠ CAUTION: One gear on the back side of the assembly is not captive. Handle the assembly carefully.

Figure 5-2372 Remove the assembly



4. If the gear (callout 1) was not removed with the assembly in the previous step, remove it now.

Figure 5-2373 Remove the gear if installed

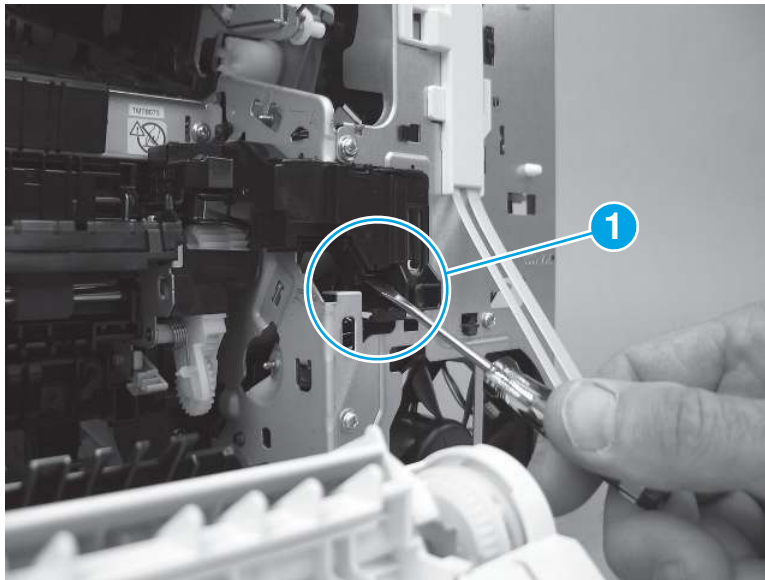


Remove the registration assembly

Follow these steps to remove the registration assembly.

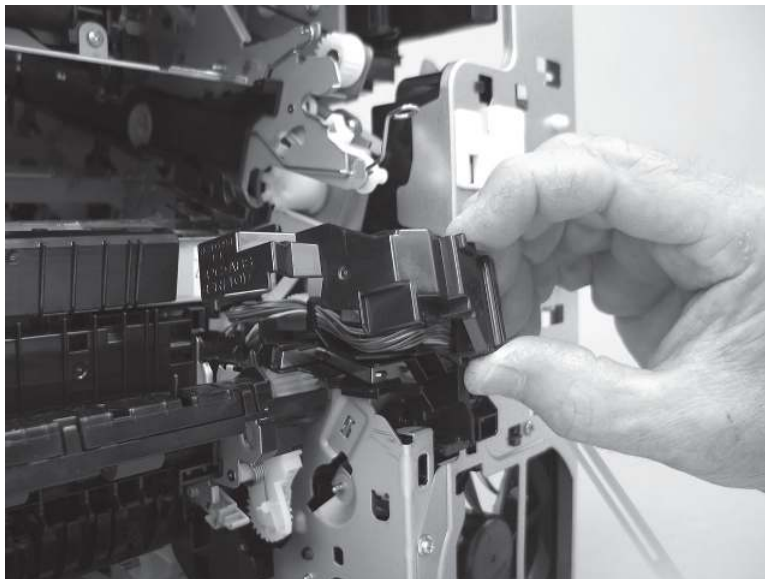
1. At the right side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2374 Release one tab



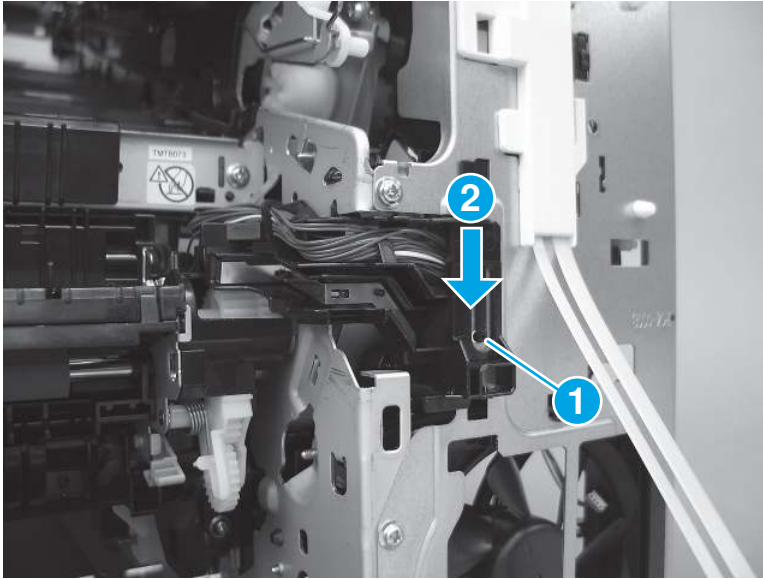
2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2375 Remove the cover



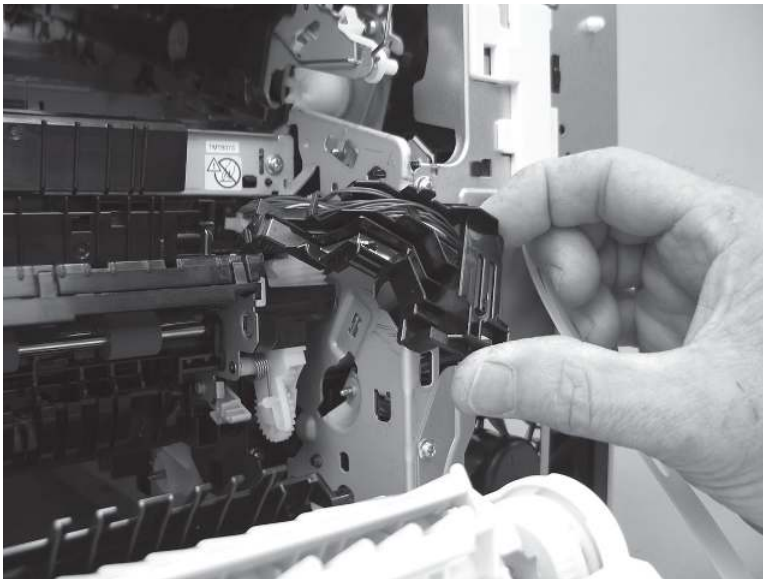
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then push down on the guide (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2376 Release the guide



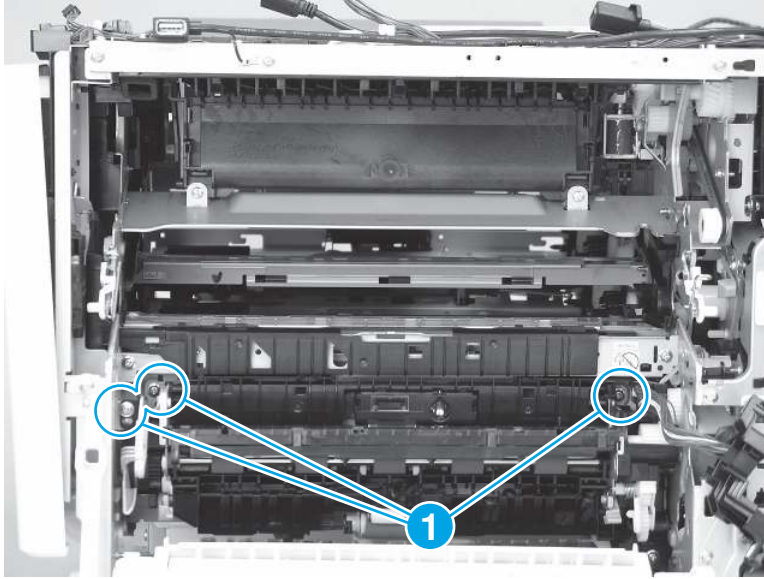
4. Move the guide out of the way.

Figure 5-2377 Move the guide out of the way



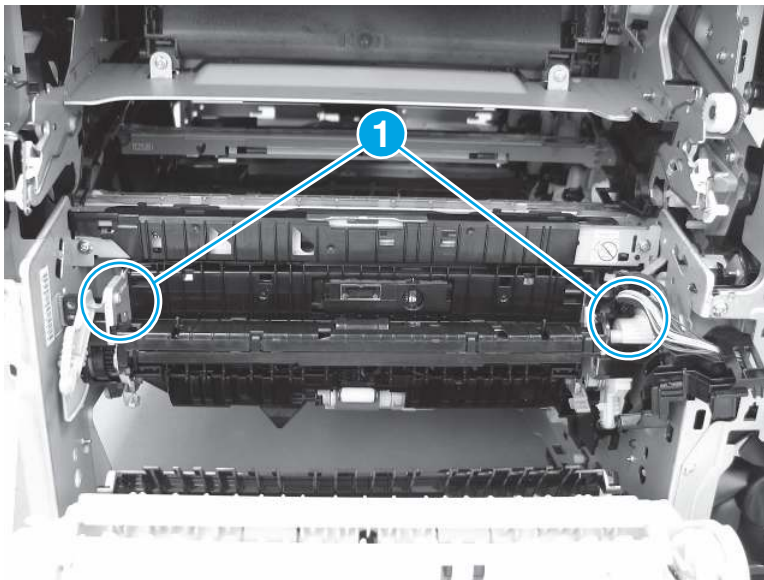
5. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2378 Remove three screws



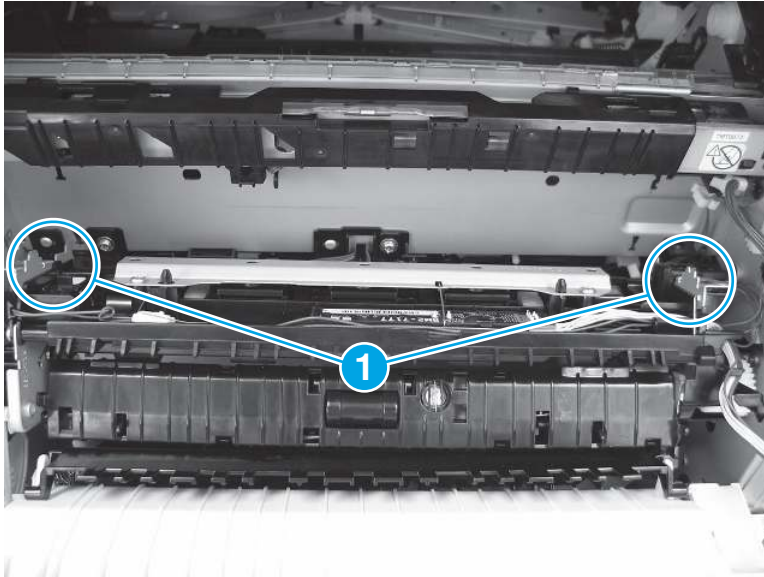
6. Before proceeding, locate the sheet metal portion (callout 1) of the assembly. When handling the assembly, use the sheet metal as handles.

Figure 5-2379 Locate the sheet metal portion of the assembly



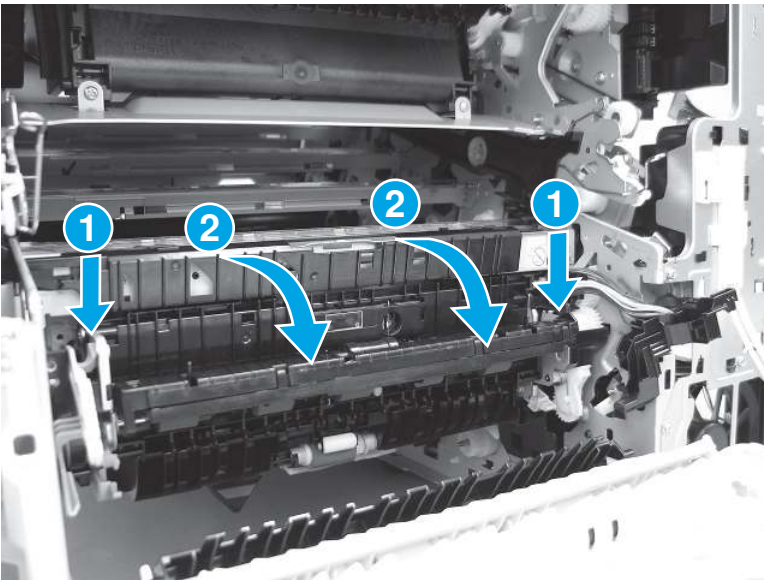
7. Before proceeding, take note of the sheet-metal tabs (callout 1) on the back of the assembly that fasten it to the chassis (the figure shows the assembly removed so the tabs can be viewed).

Figure 5-2380 Locate the sheet metal portion of the assembly



8. Grasp the sheet-metal handles (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the assembly away from the chassis (callout 2) to release the top tabs.

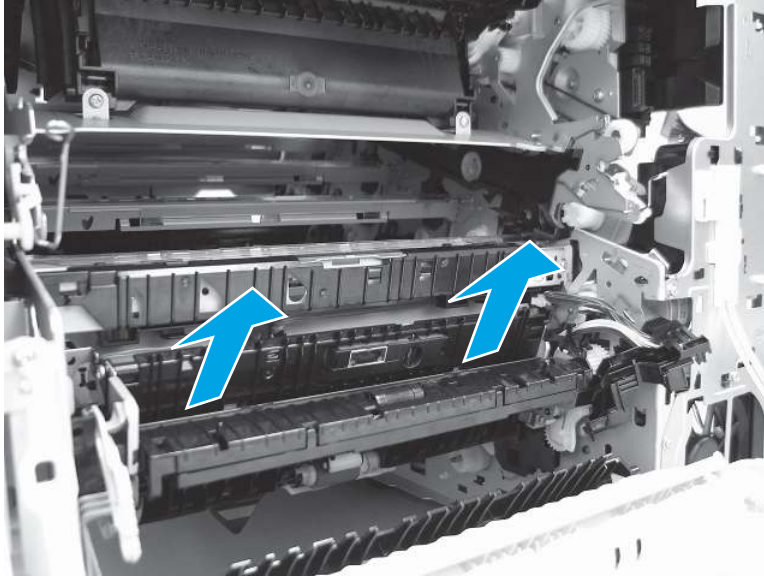
Figure 5-2381 Rotate the top of the assembly away from the chassis



9. Pull up on the assembly to release the bottom tabs.

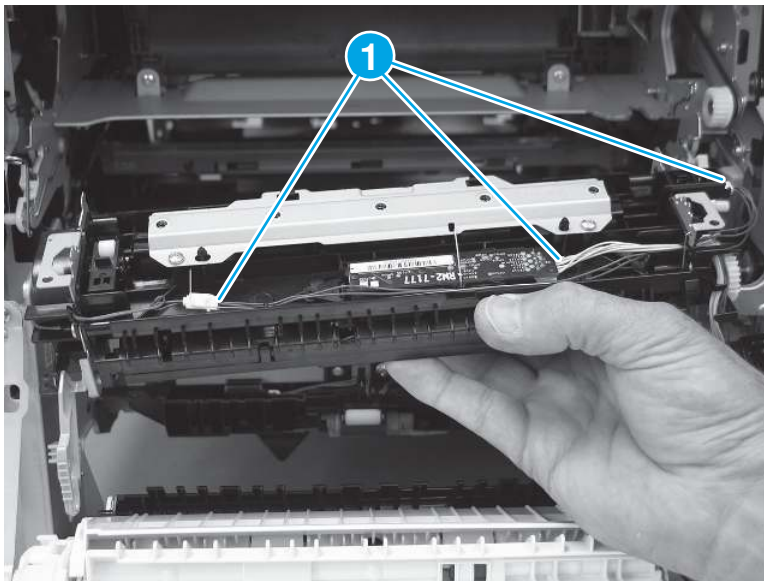
⚠ CAUTION: The assembly is still attached to the printer by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly.

Figure 5-2382 Release the bottom tabs



10. Turn the registration assembly over to access the back side, disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove the assembly.

Figure 5-2383 Remove the assembly

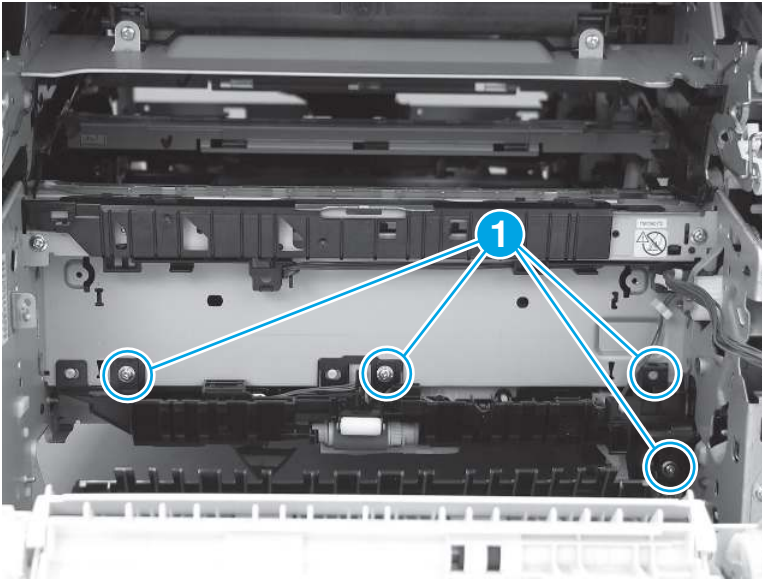


Remove the paper pickup assembly

Follow these steps to remove the paper pickup assembly.

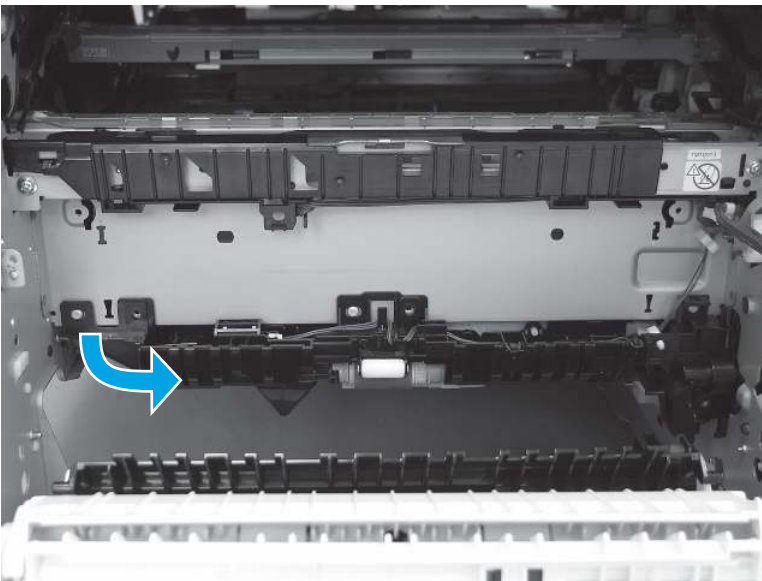
1. At the right side of the printer, remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2384 Remove four screws



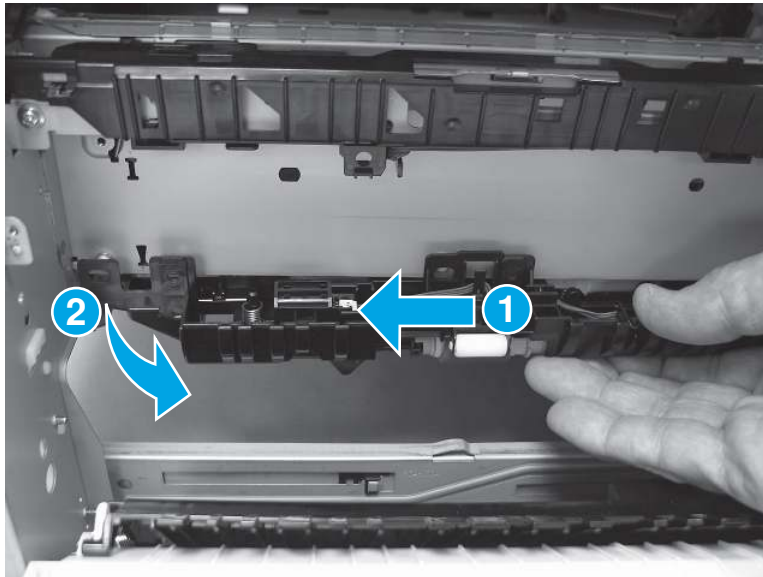
2. Slightly separate the left end of the assembly from the chassis to release it.

Figure 5-2385 Release the left end of the assembly



3. Slide the assembly to the left (callout 1), and then continue to rotate the left end of it out and away from the chassis (callout 2).

Figure 5-2386 Slide the assembly to the left



4. Remove the assembly.

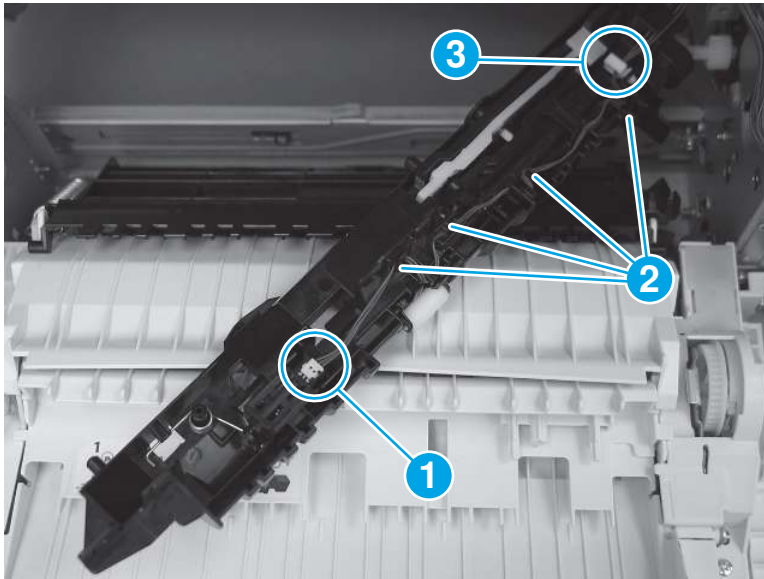
⚠ CAUTION: The assembly is still attached to the printer by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly.

Figure 5-2387 Remove the assembly



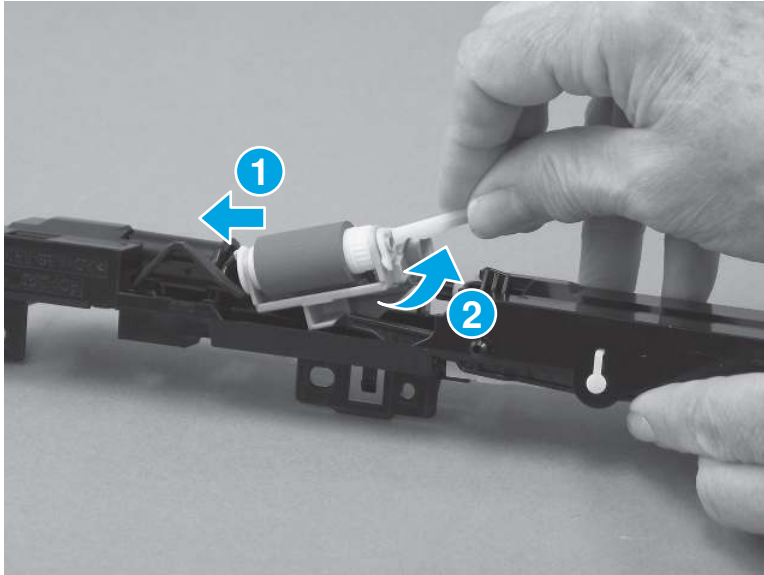
5. Turn the paper pickup assembly over to access the back side, release one connector (callout 1), release the wire harness from the guide (callout 2), and then release it from the retainer (callout 3).

Figure 5-2388 Disconnect one connector



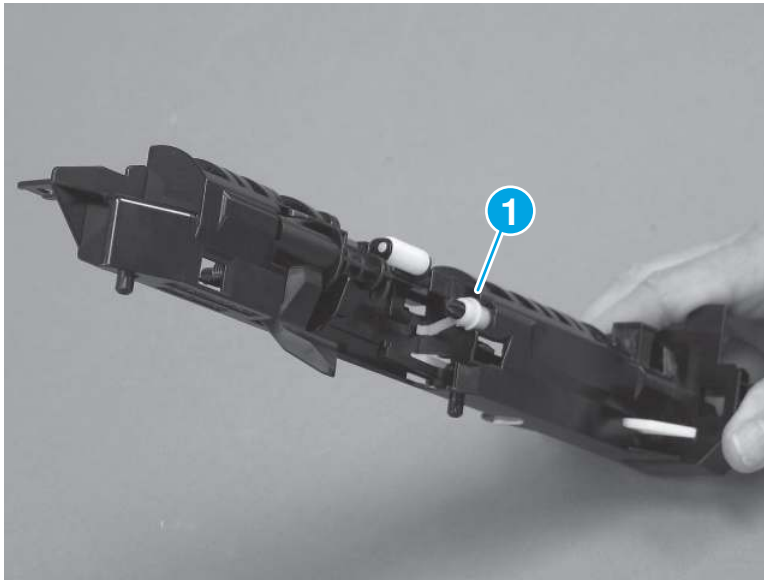
6. On the paper pickup assembly, slide the tray pickup roller assembly to the left to compress the spring loaded shaft (callout 1), and then rotate the right end of the roller assembly up and away from the pickup assembly (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2389 Remove the tray pickup roller assembly



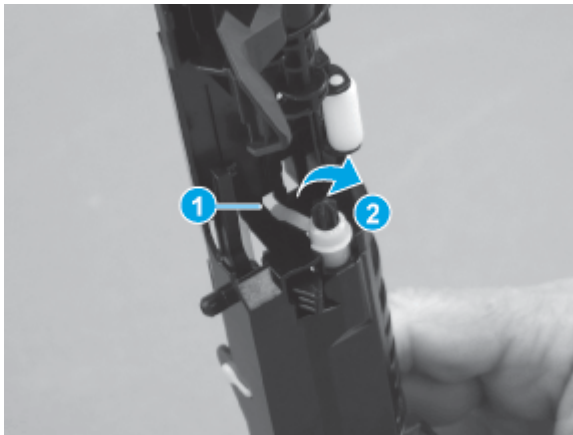
7. Locate the feed bushing (callout 1).

Figure 5-2390 Locate the feed bushing



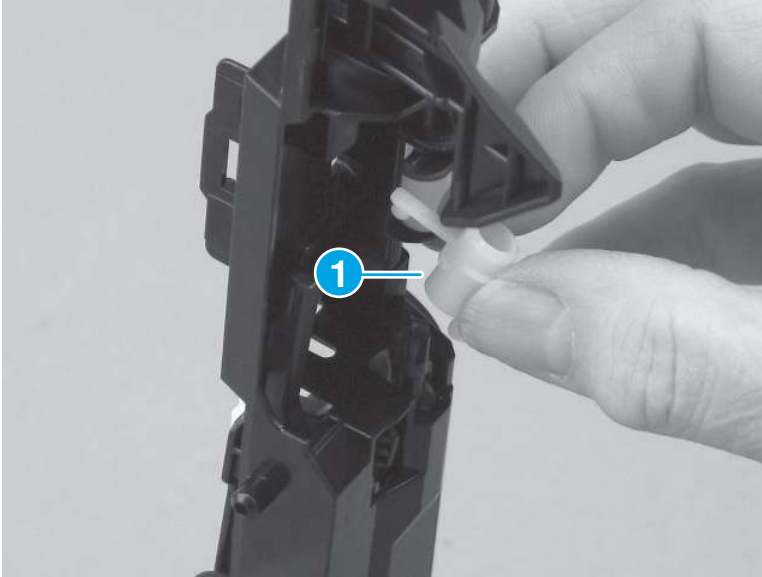
8. Use a small, flat-blade screwdriver to release one tab on the bushing (callout 1), and then rotate the bushing clockwise (callout 2).

Figure 5-2391 Release one tab and rotate the bushing



9. Lift the bushing (callout 1) off of the shaft.

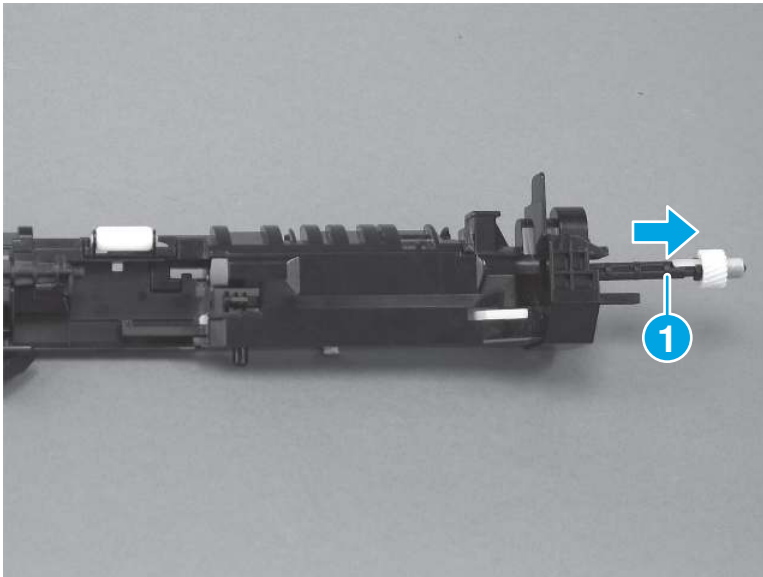
Figure 5-2392 Remove the bushing



10. At the end of the paper pickup assembly, slide the shaft with the gear on the end (callout 1) slightly out of the assembly.

 **NOTE:** Try not to remove the grease from the gear when handling the shaft and gear.

Figure 5-2393 Slide the shaft out



11. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the gear (callout 2) off of the shaft.

 **NOTE:** Try not to remove the grease from the gear when handling the shaft and gear.


 **TIP:** Set the gear aside for installation on the replacement paper pickup assembly.

Figure 5-2394 Remove the gear



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Density-detect assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the density-detect assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-83 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-7160-000CN	Density-detect assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

1. Open the right door.

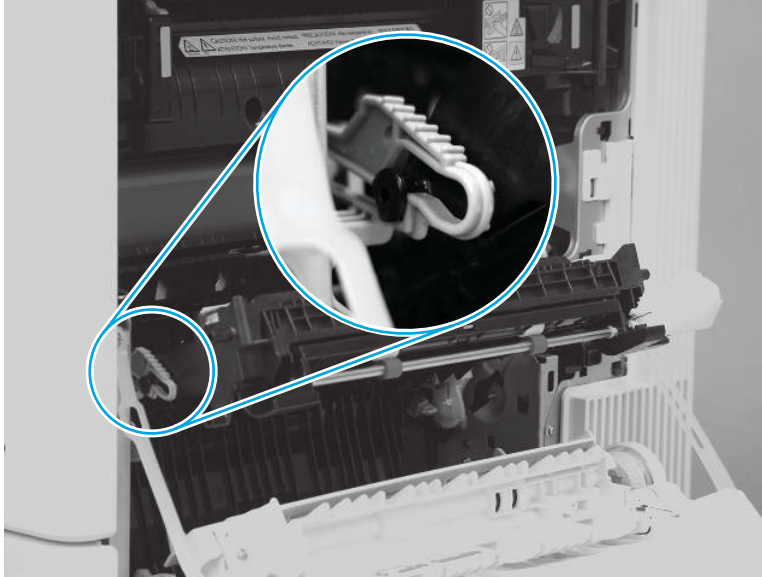
Figure 5-2395 Open the right door



2. Release the blue arm, and then let the secondary transfer assembly rotate down to the half-way open position.

 **NOTE:** The assembly should stop at the halfway down point—the pin will stop at the notch in the slot in the blue arm.

Figure 5-2396 Release the secondary transfer roller assembly



3. Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm—as shown in the figure—to start to disengage it from the pin.

Figure 5-2397 Carefully flex the top portion of the blue arm



4. Continue to flex the blue arm until it disengages from the pin.

Figure 5-2398 Disengage the blue arm and pin



5. Slide the assembly toward the front of the printer to release it (callout 1), and then rotate it down and away from the printer to remove it (callout 2).


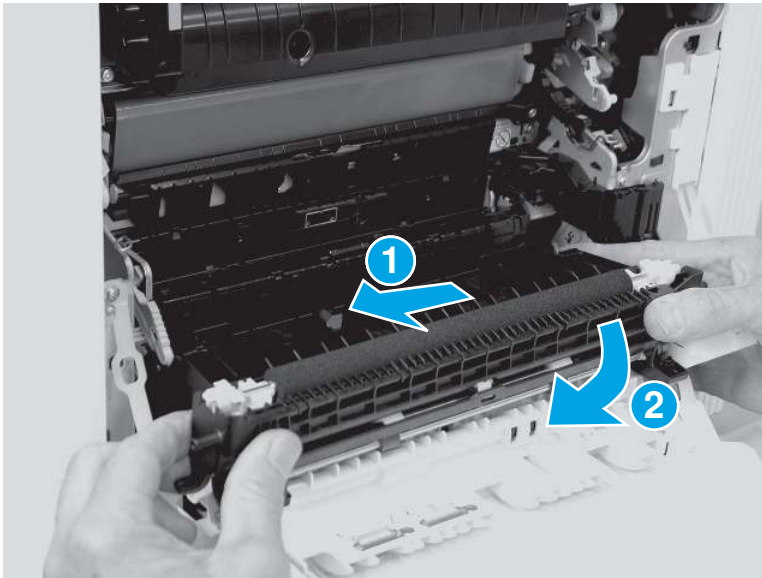
 **Reinstallation tip:** Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 5-2399 Remove the secondary transfer roller assembly



Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

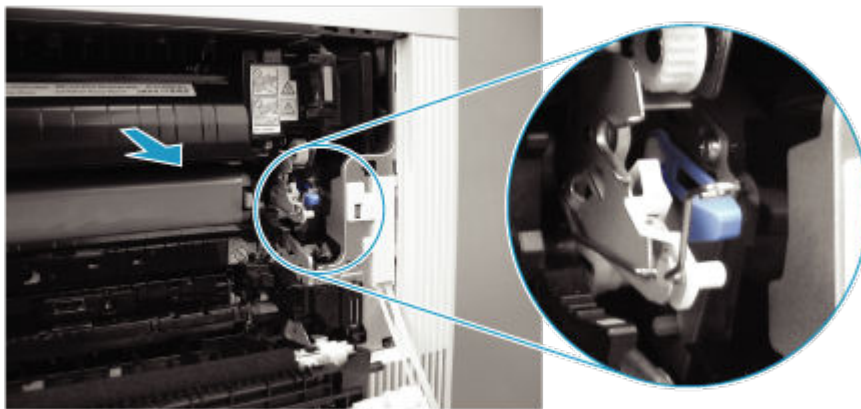
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-2400 Open the right door



2. Pull the blue lever to release the ITB drive coupling.

Figure 5-2401 Release the ITB drive coupling



3. Push in on the blue arm to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then completely lower the assembly.


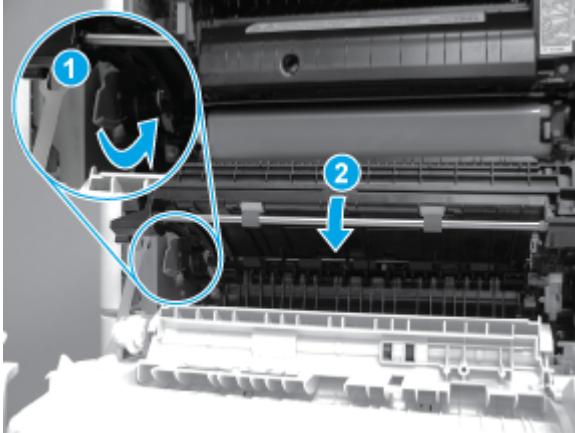
 **NOTE:** Press the blue arm on the secondary transfer roller assembly a second time to release the roller assembly when it stops at the halfway open position.

Figure 5-2402 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



4. Release the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).


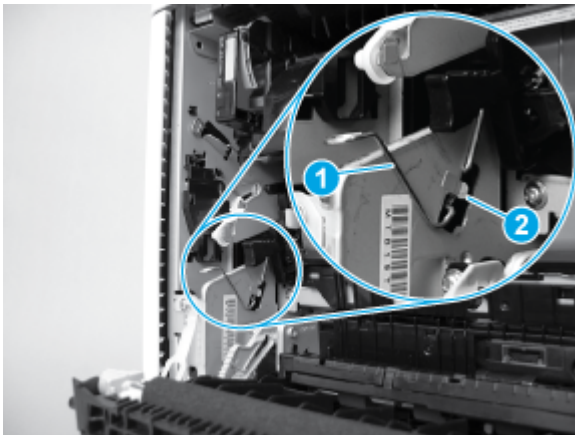

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-2403 Release the front-side ITB spring

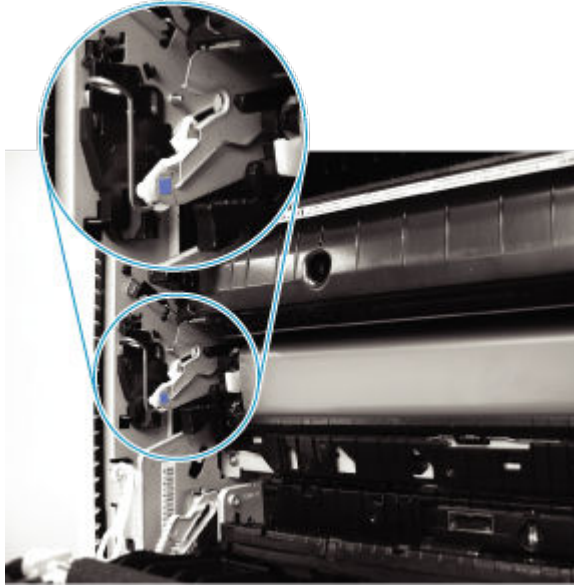


5. Place the left-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

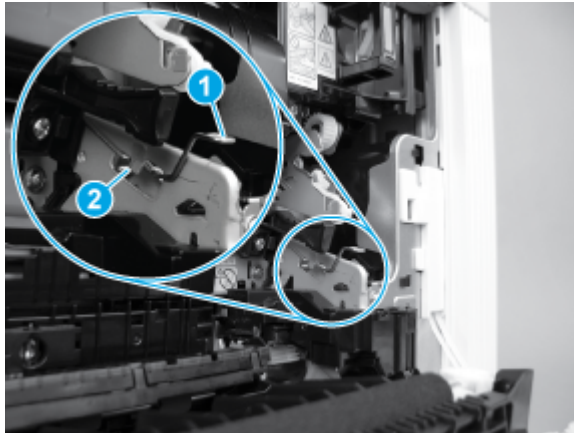
 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-2404 Place the spring on the holder



6. Release the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).

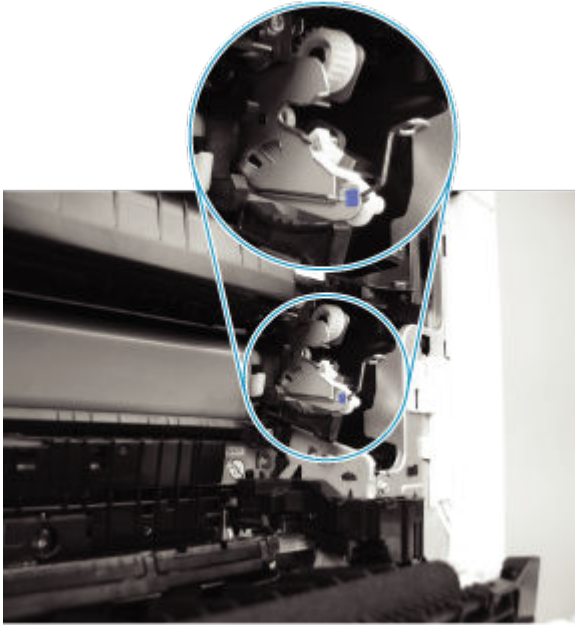
Figure 5-2405 Release the rear-side ITB spring



7. Place the right-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

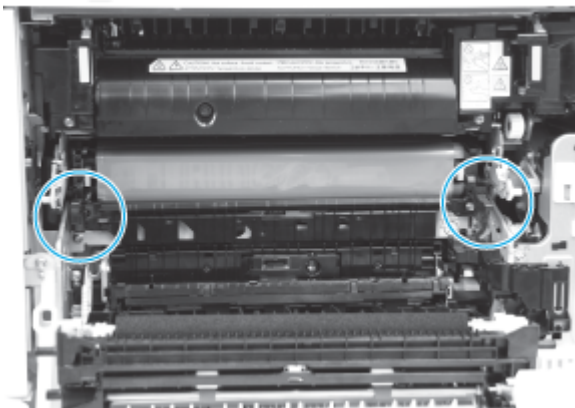
Figure 5-2406 Place the spring on the holder



8. Grasp the two blue handles on the ITB.

⚠ CAUTION: If the ITB is removed to access other assemblies in the printer, use care. The ITB is a sensitive assembly. Be careful when handling the ITB so that it is not damaged. Always place the ITB in a safe and protected location.

Figure 5-2407 Grasp the ITB handles



9. Pull the ITB out of the printer to remove it.


⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 5-2408 Remove the ITB



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-2409 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.


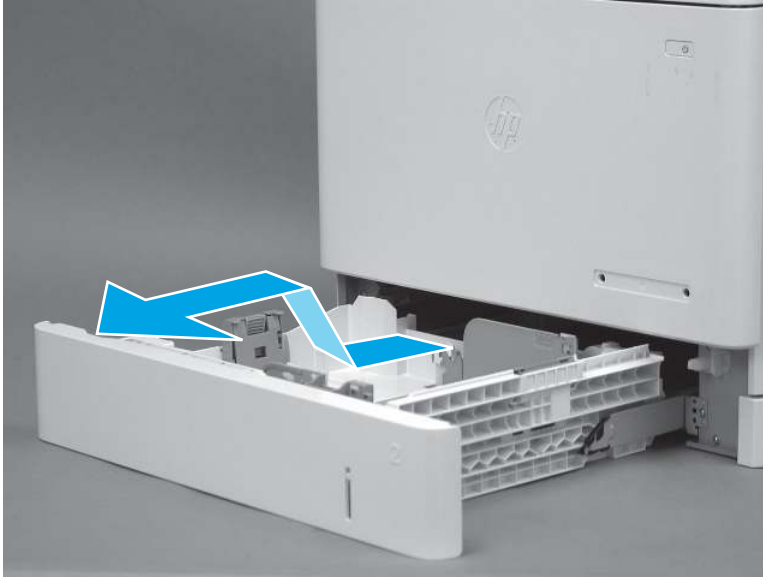
 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2410 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer. However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-2411 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-2412 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-2413 Remove the TCU

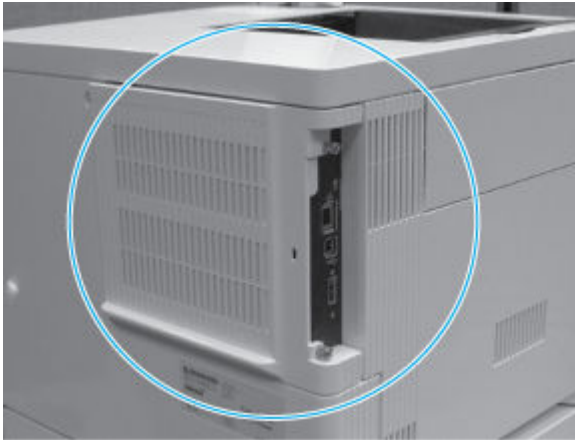


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

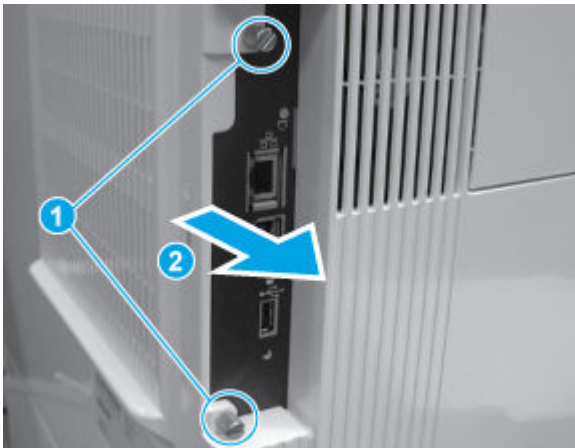
Figure 5-2414 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2415 Loosen the thumbscrews



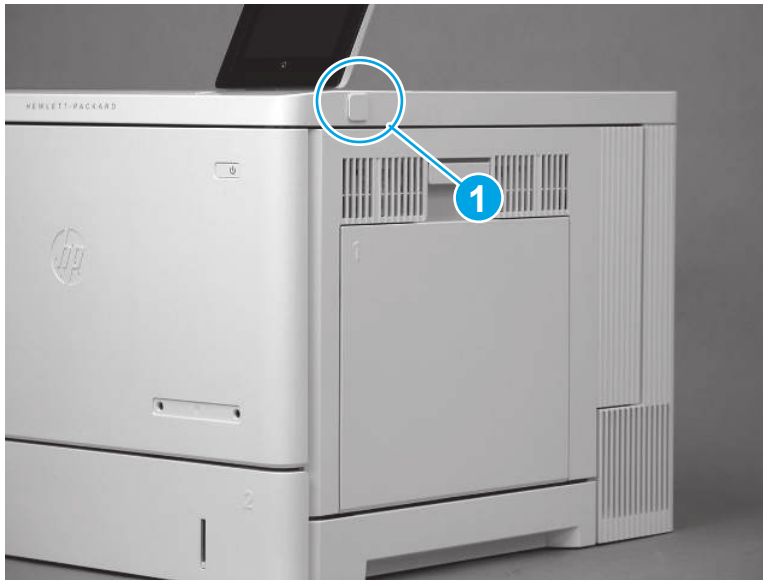
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2416 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2417 Remove the cover



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-2418 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2419 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2420 Remove the cover

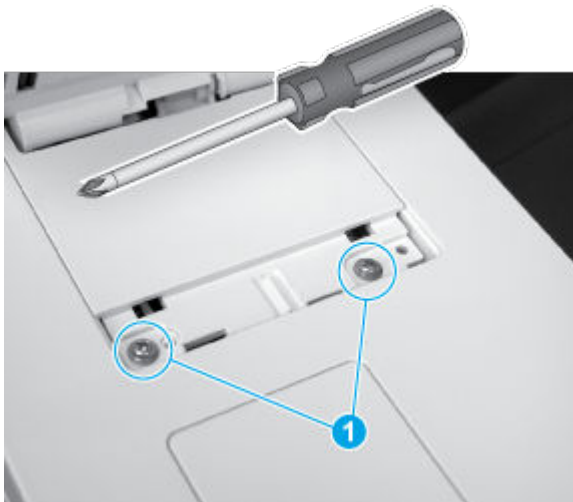


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2421 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

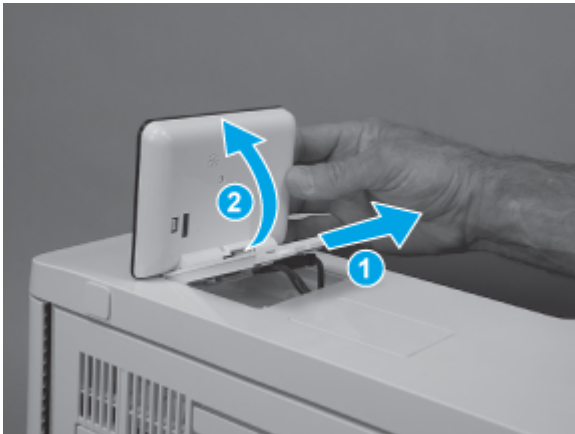
Figure 5-2422 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

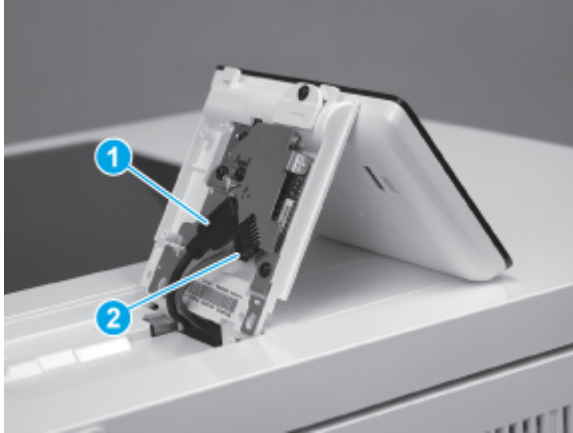
Figure 5-2423 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


📝 NOTE: **M555 only:** Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2424 Disconnect two connectors



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


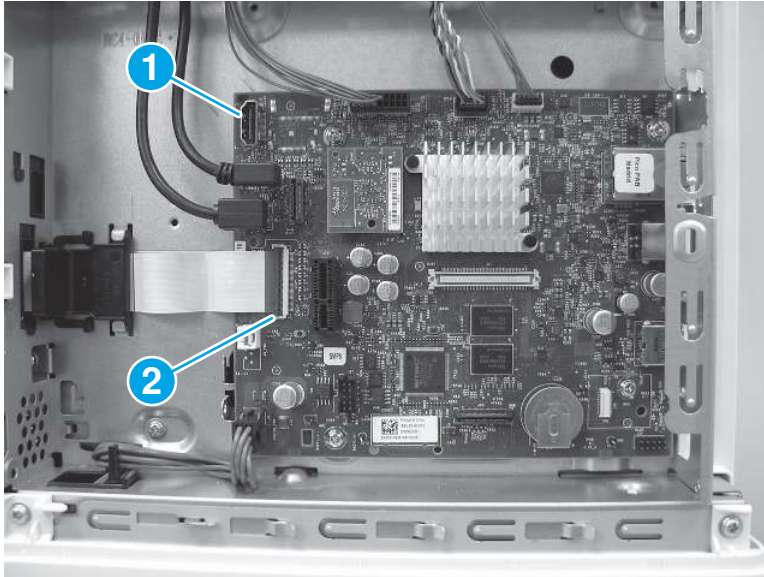
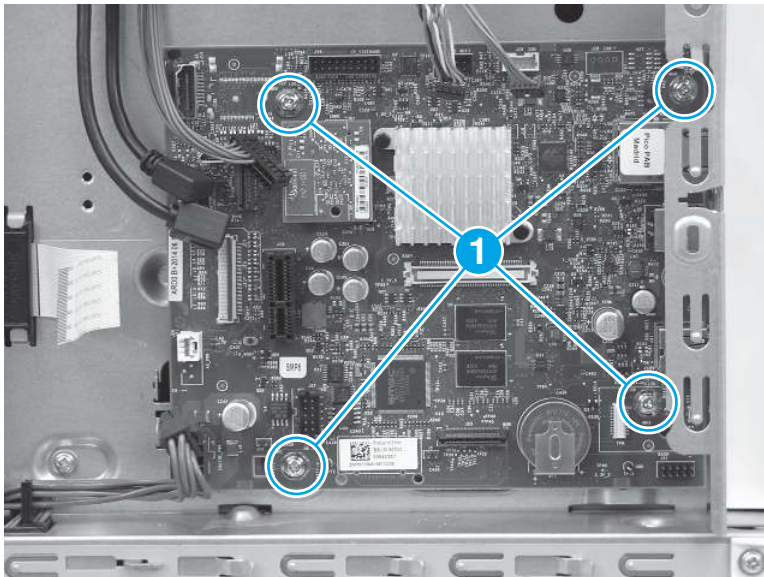
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2425 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-2426 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

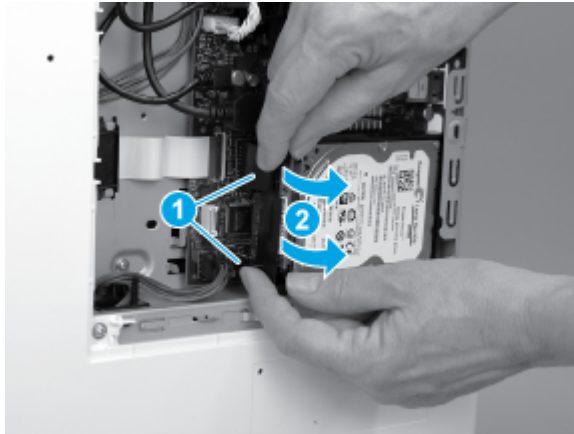
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-2427 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2428 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

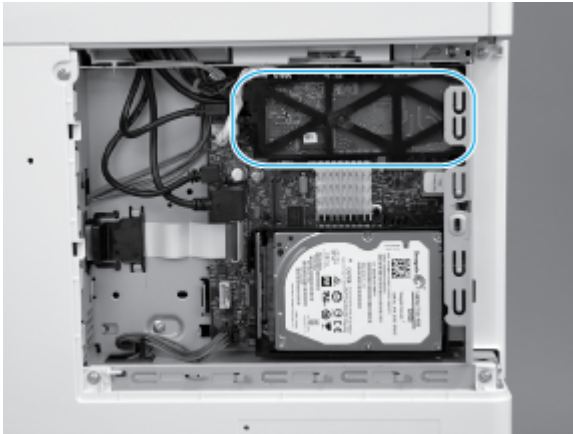
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

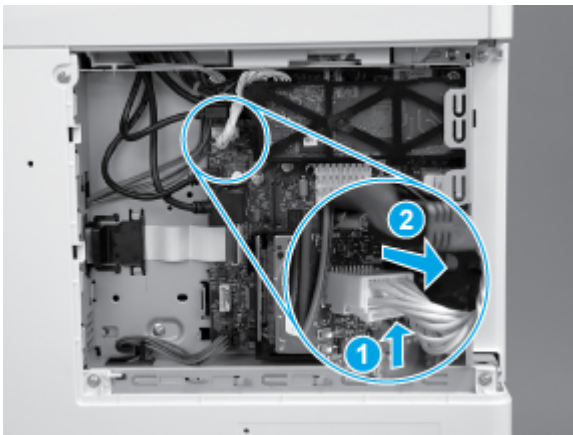
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2429 Locate the fax PCA



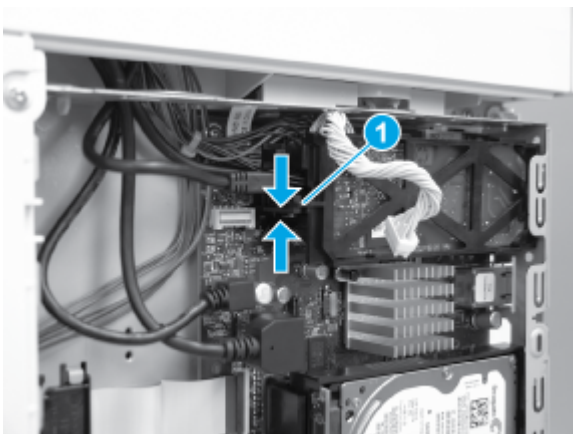
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-2430 Disconnect one connector



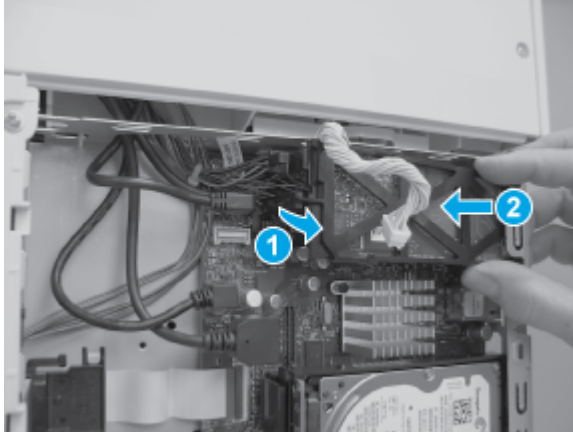
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-2431 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2432 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


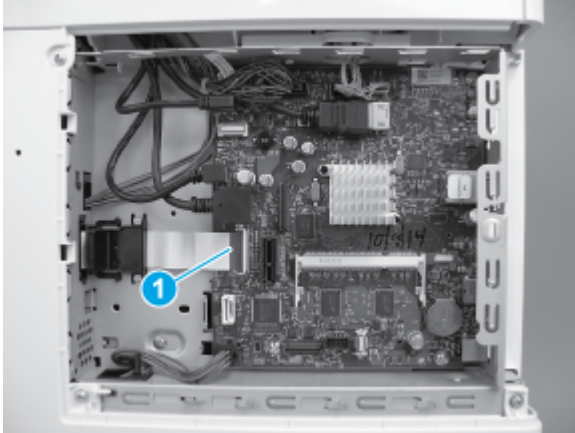
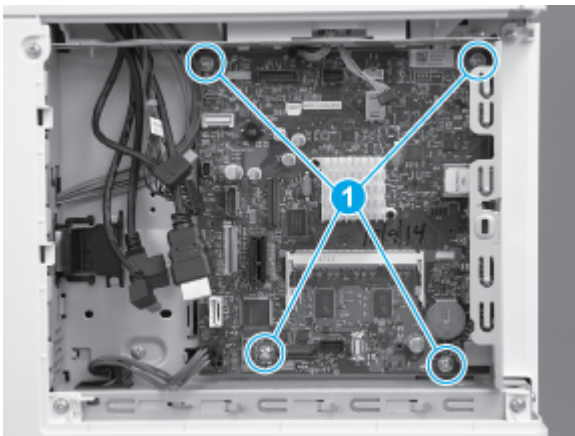
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2433 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2434 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-2435 Remove the formatter



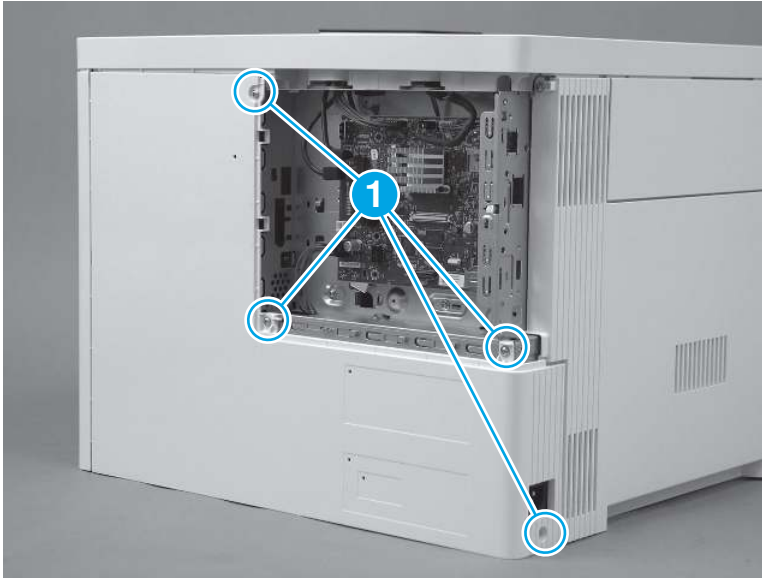
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

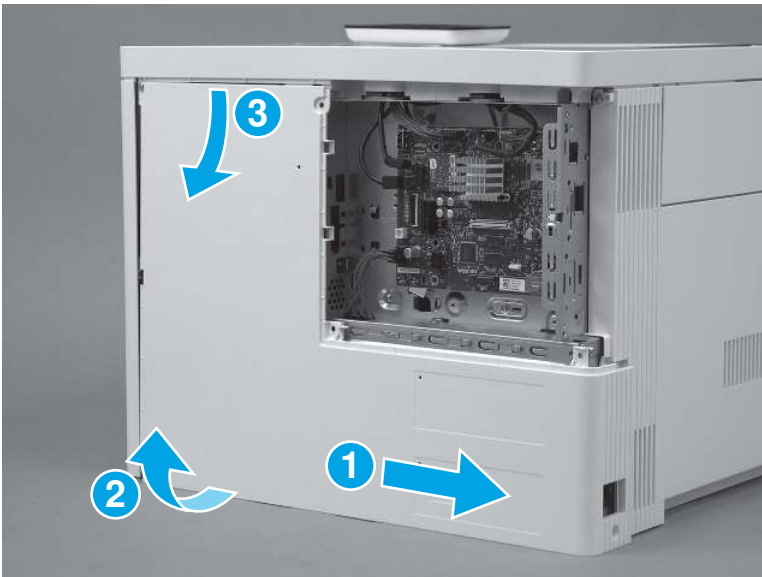
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2436 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-2437 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

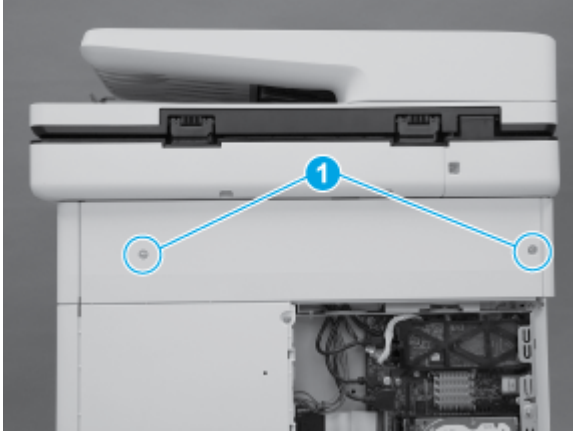
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

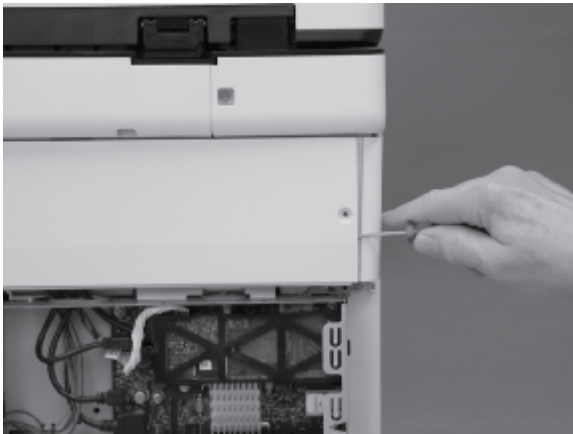
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-2438 Remove two screws



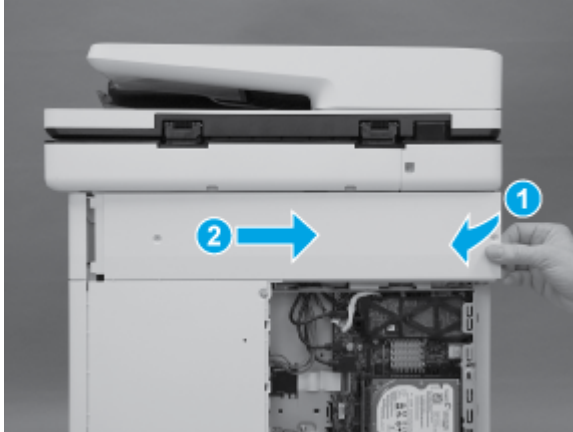
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2439 Release the right edge



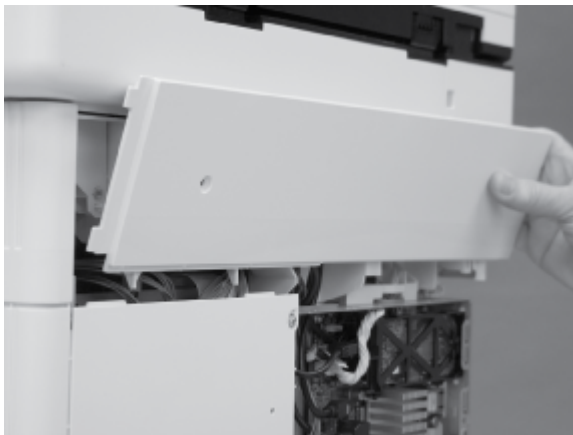
3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-2440 Slide the cover right



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2441 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2442 Remove four screws



2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2443 Remove the cover



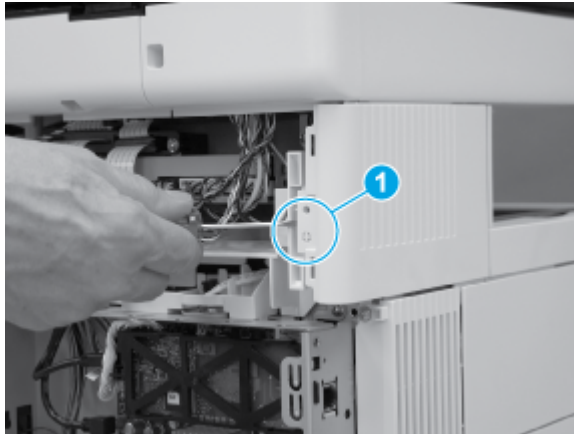
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2444 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-2445 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2446 Remove the left upper cover



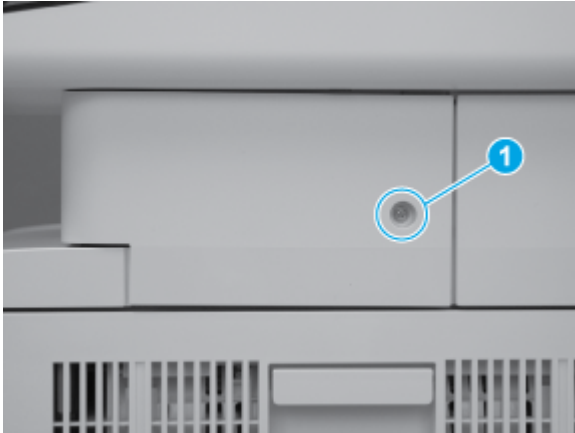
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2447 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2448 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2449 Rotate the cover



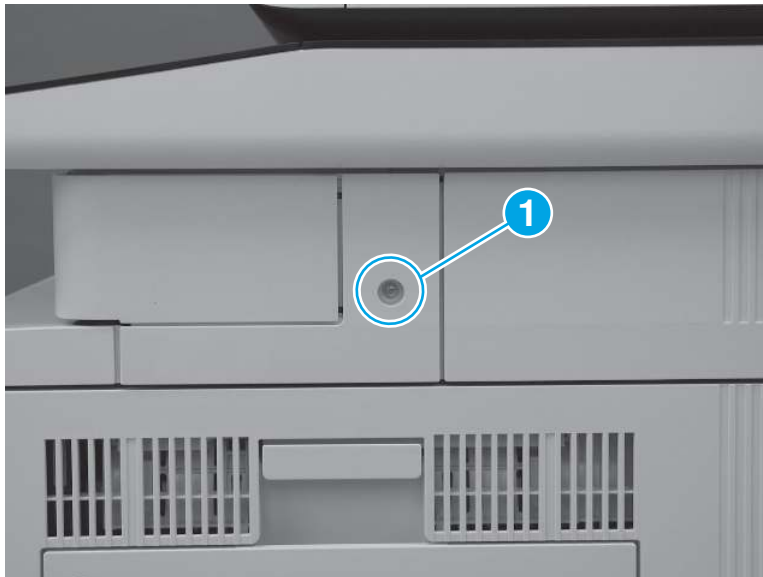
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2450 Remove one screw



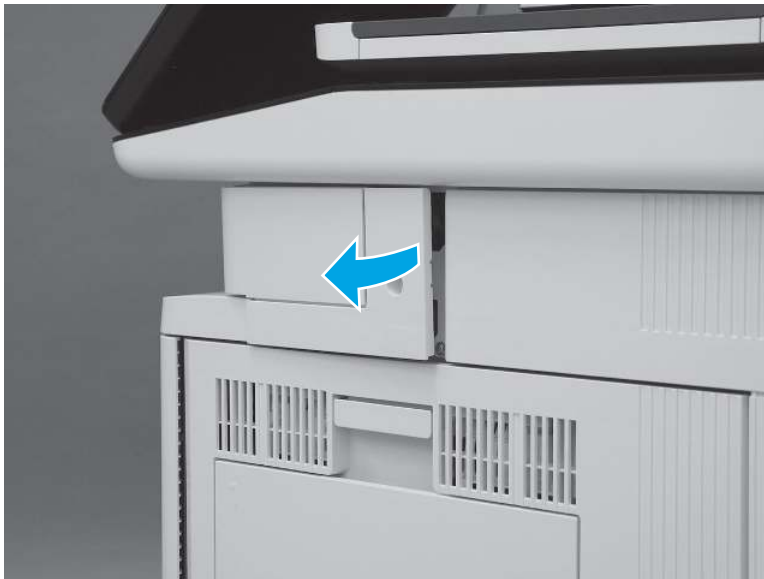
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2451 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2452 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2453 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

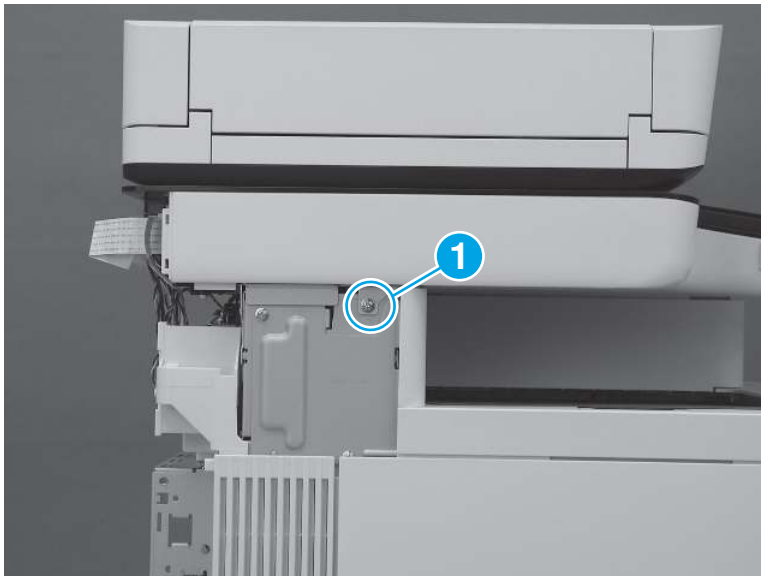
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

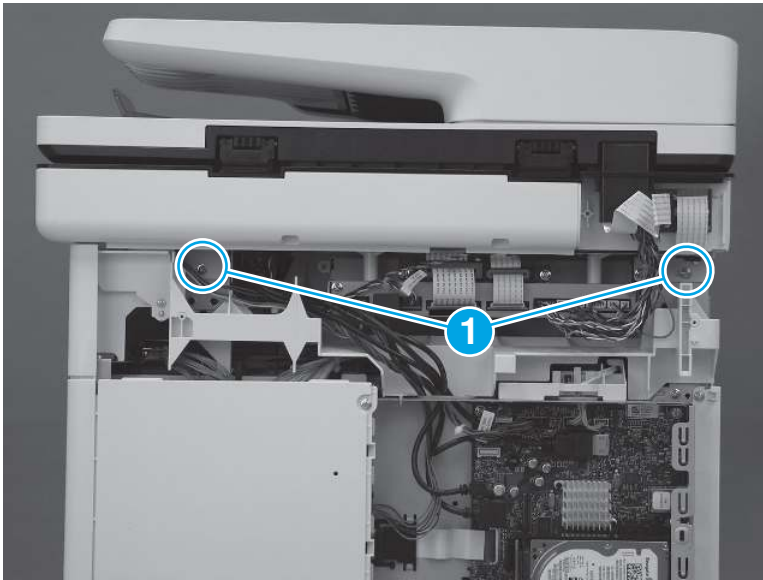
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2454 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

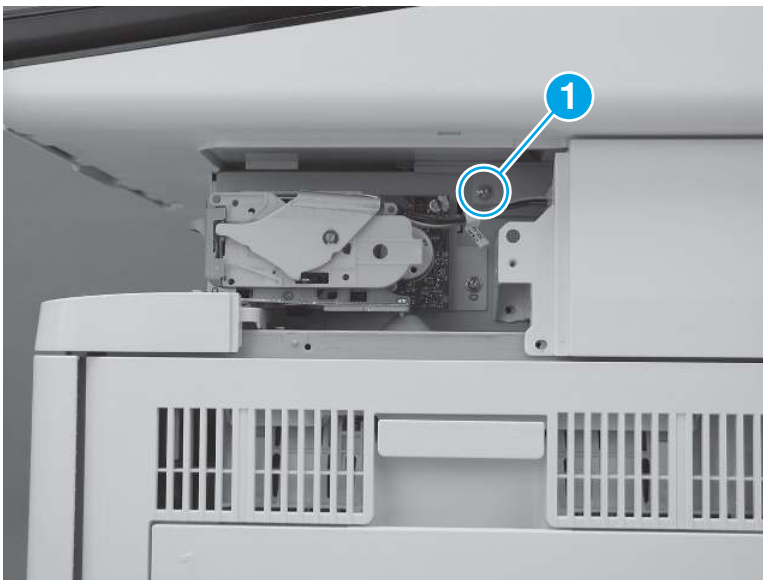
Figure 5-2455 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

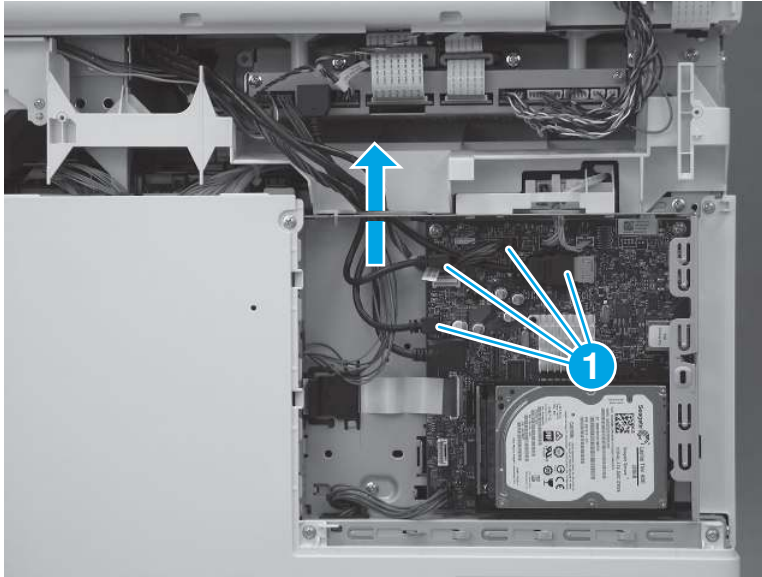
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-2456 Remove one screw



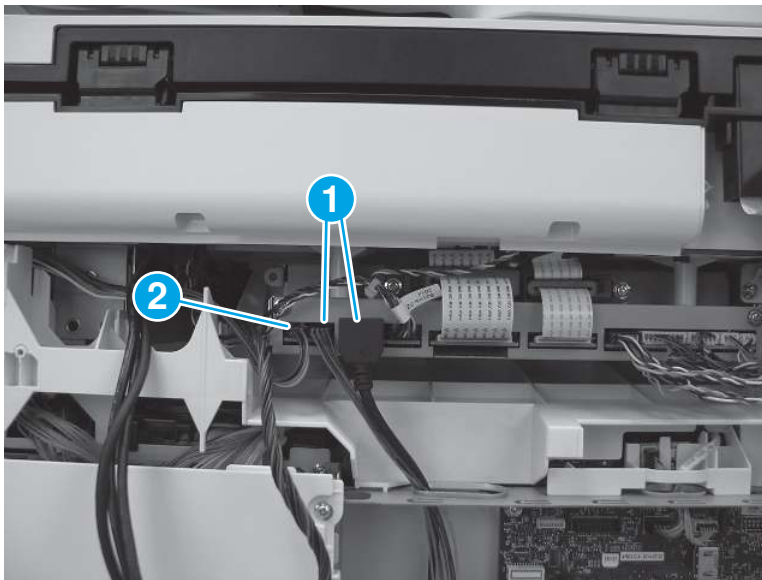
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-2457 Disconnect cables and connectors



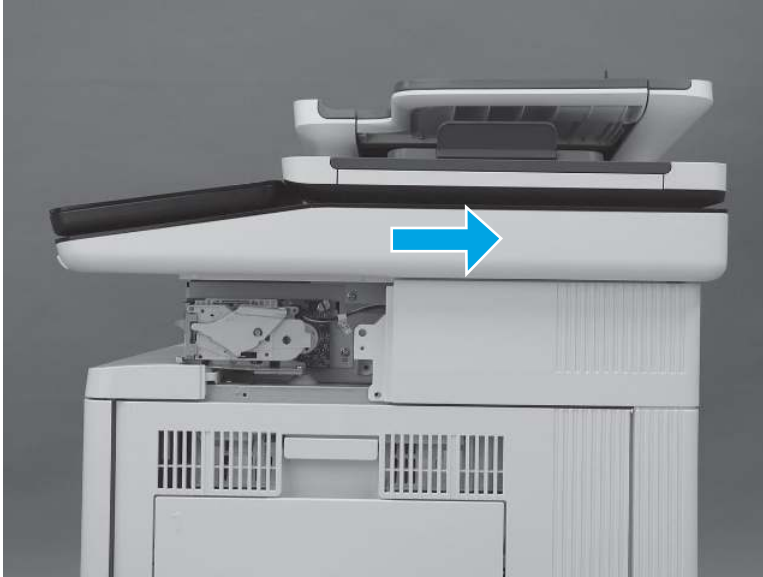
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-2458 Disconnect connectors



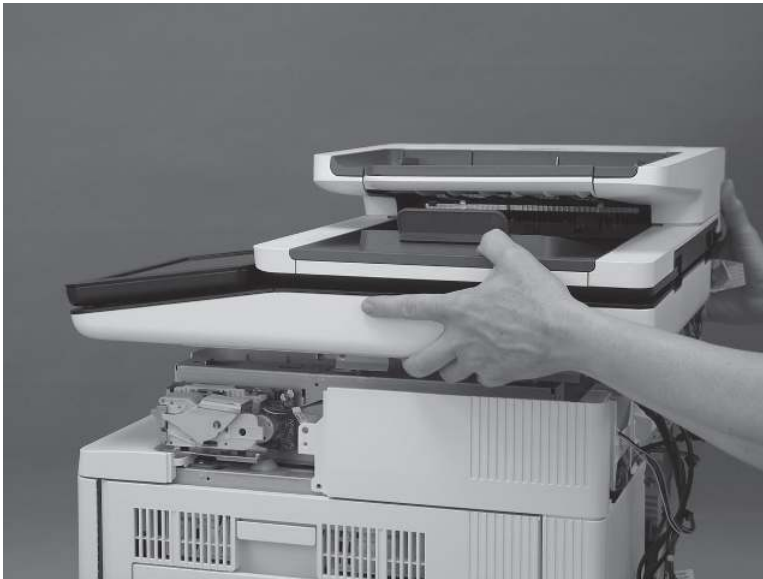
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2459 Release the image scanner




7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-2460 Remove the ISA



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

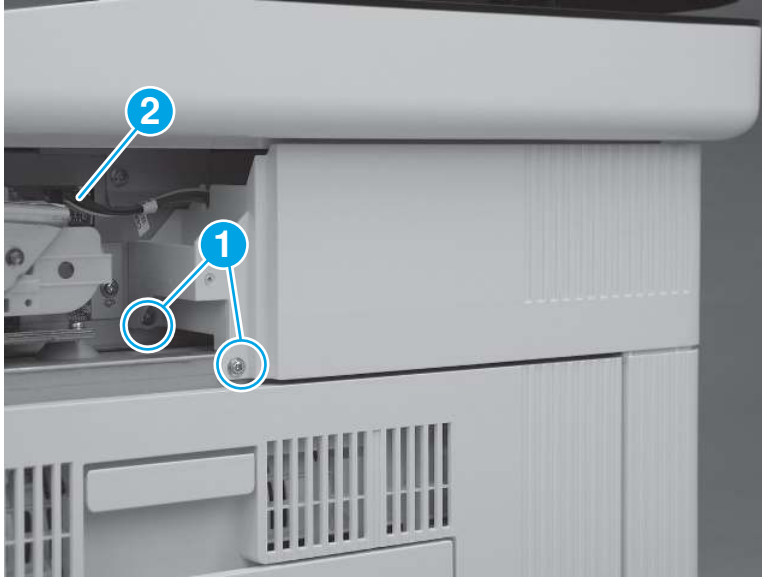
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-2461 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).
M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


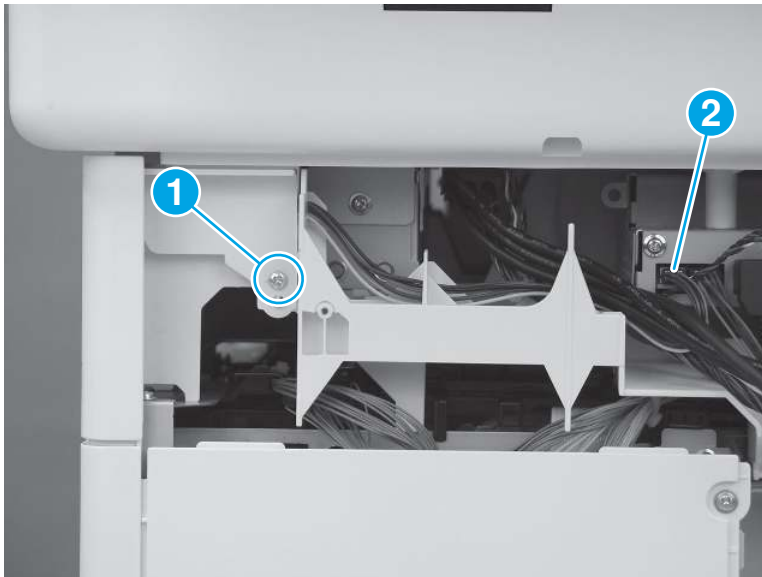
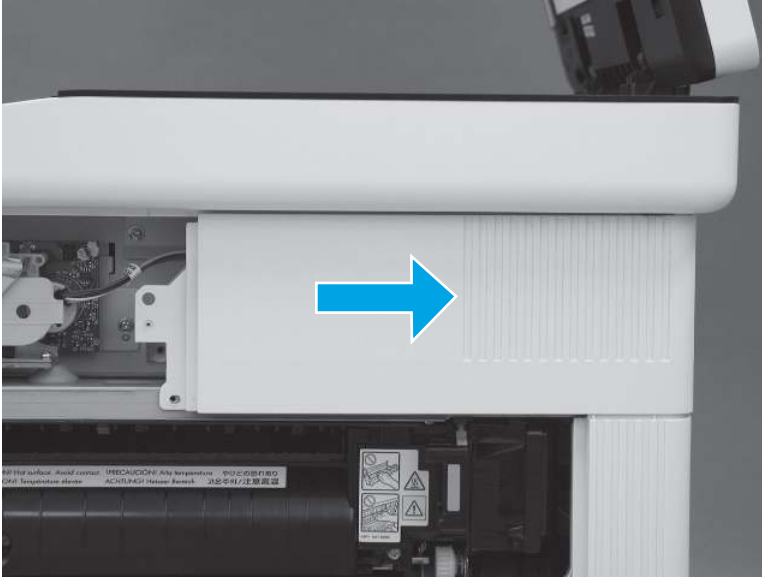
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2462 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

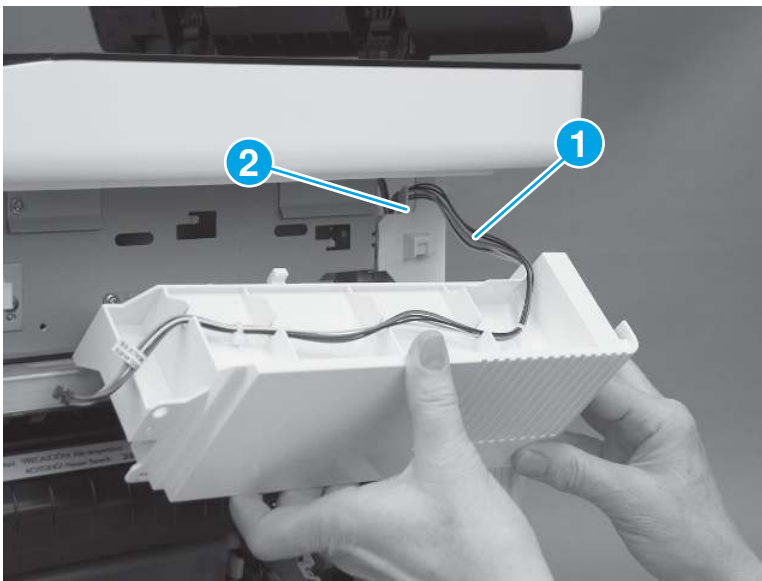
Figure 5-2463 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.

M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-2464 Remove the cover



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

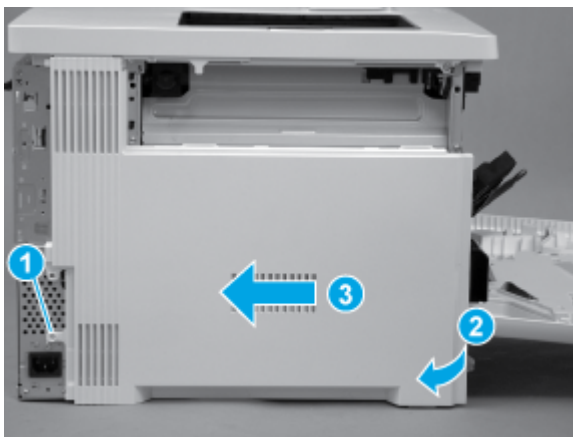
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2465 Remove one screw



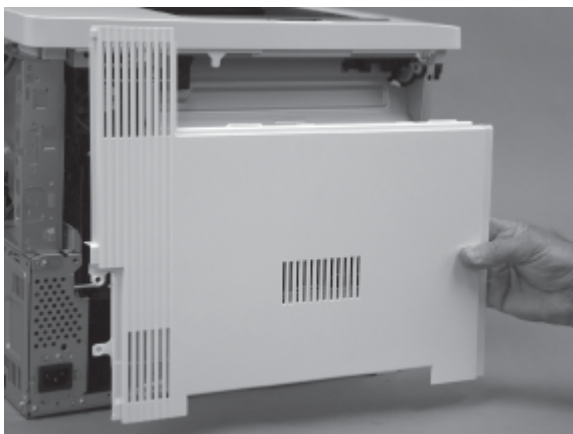
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2466 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2467 Remove the cover



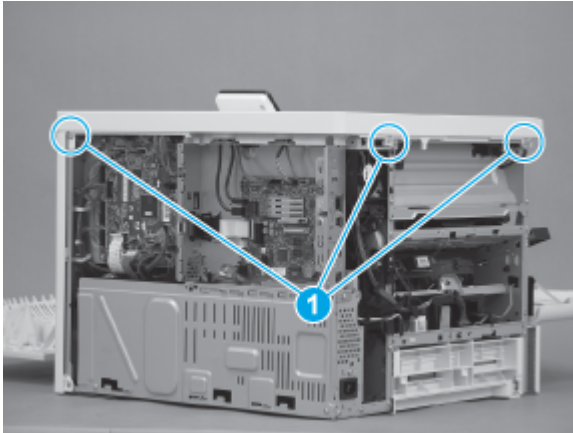
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2468 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-2469 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


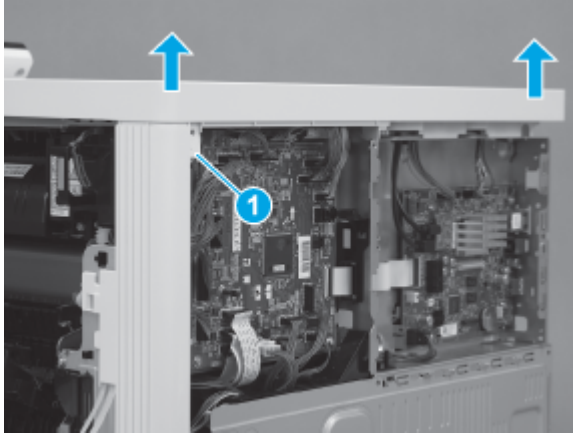
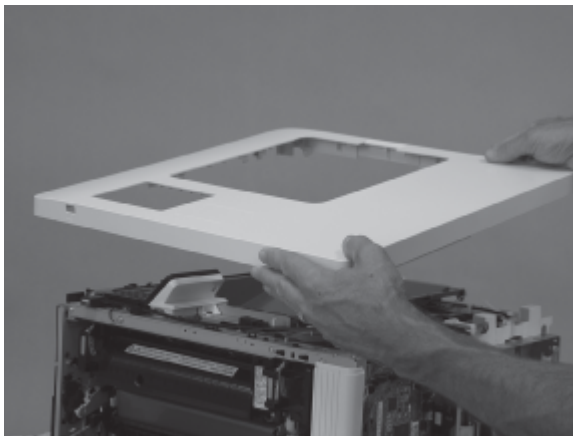
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for additional tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-2470 Release the cover




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2471 Remove the cover



Remove the right rear cover

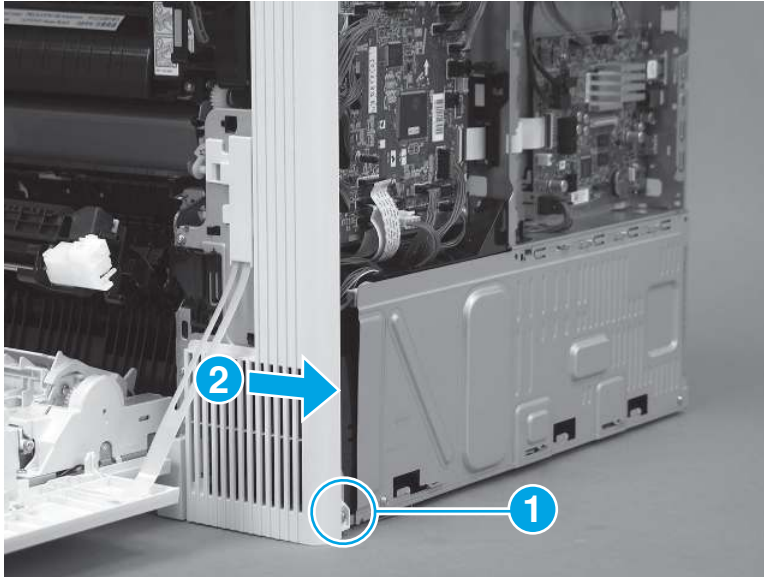
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

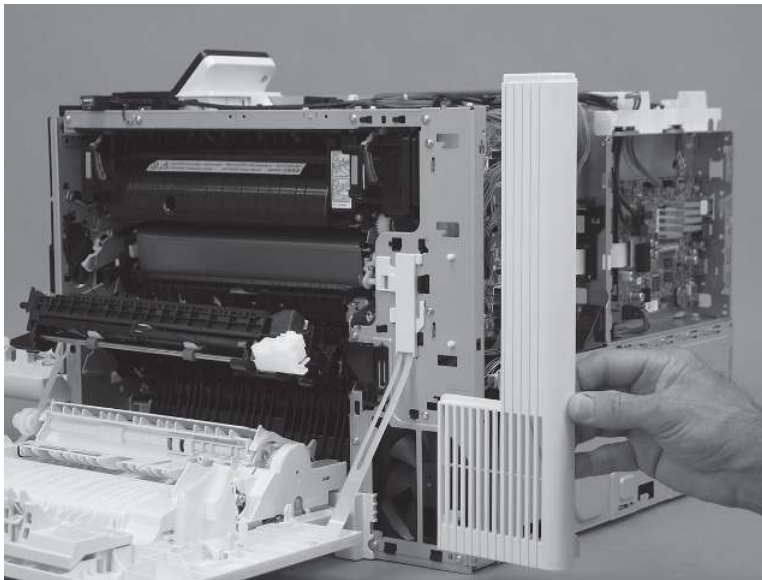
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-2472 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2473 Remove the cover

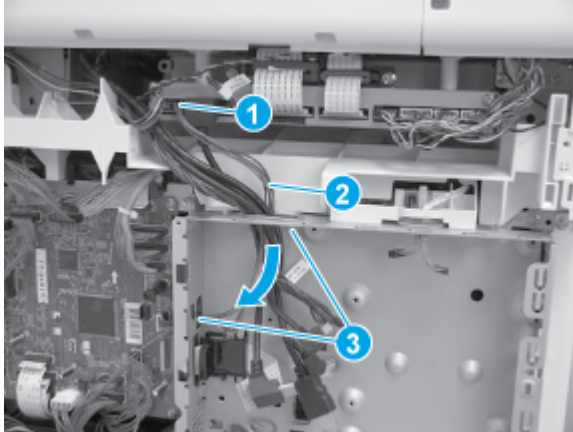


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

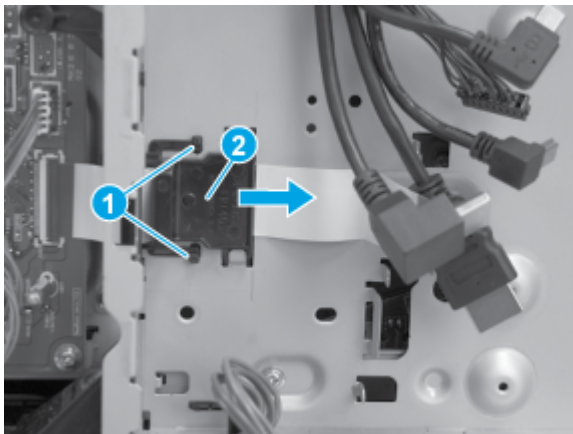
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-2474 Disconnect one connector



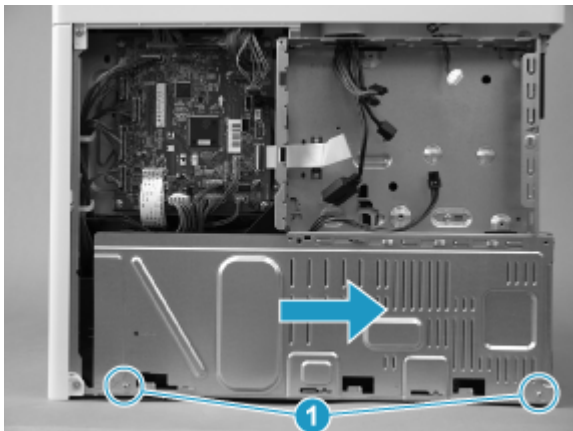
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-2475 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

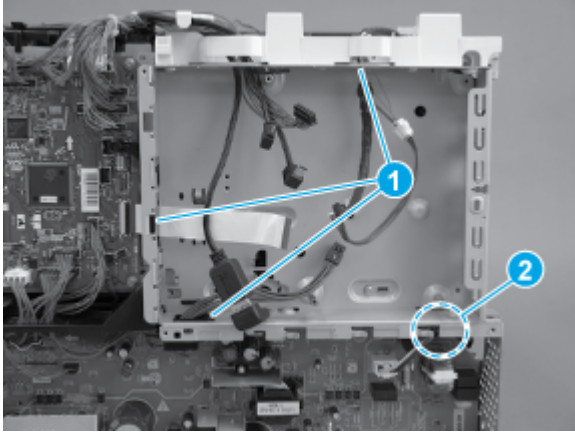
Figure 5-2476 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

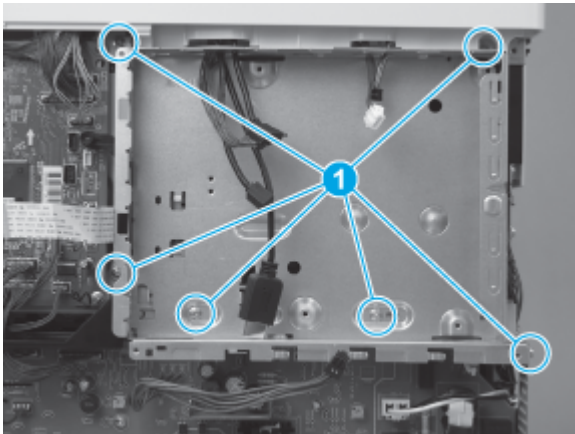
CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-2477 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



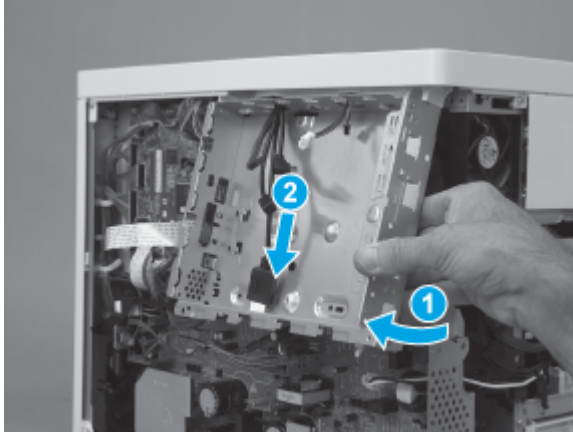
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2478 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

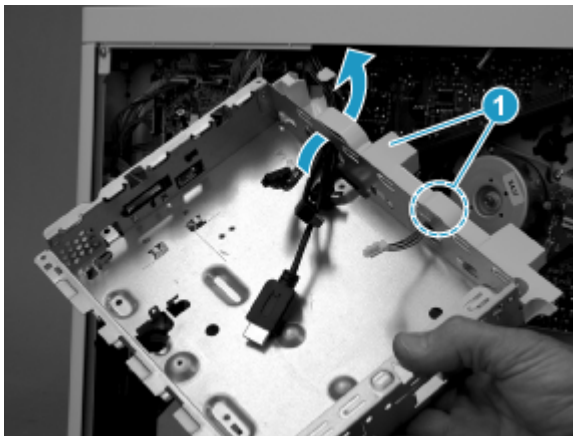
Figure 5-2479 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-2480 Remove the formatter case

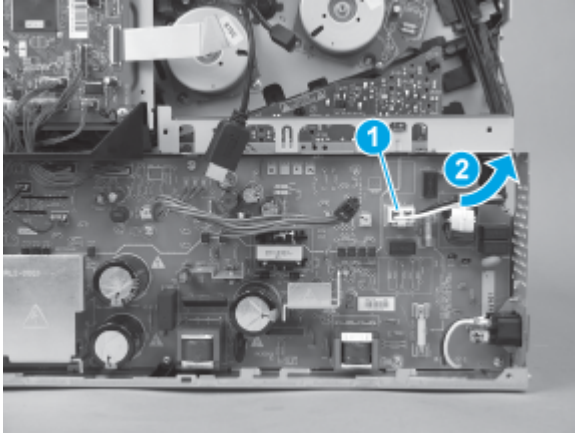


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

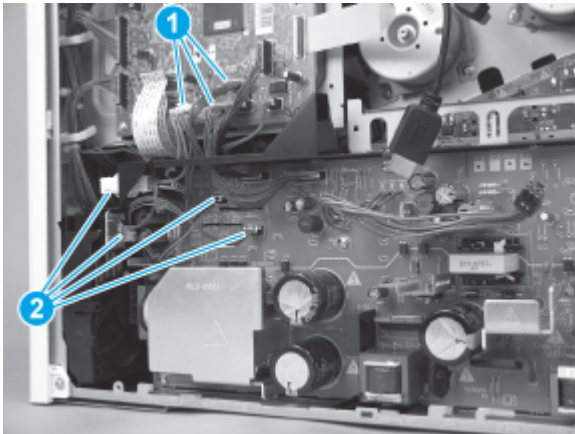
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-2481 Disconnect one wire harness



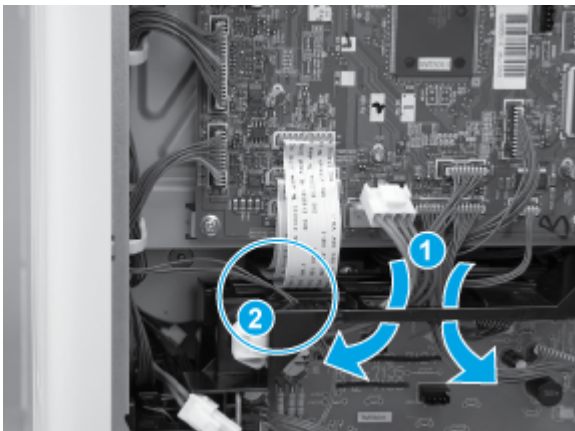
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-2482 Disconnect seven connectors



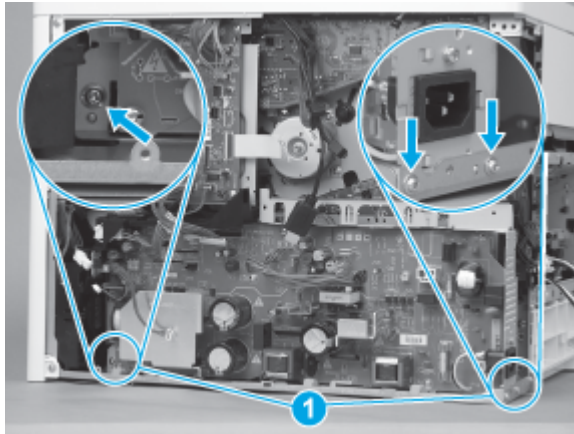
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-2483 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



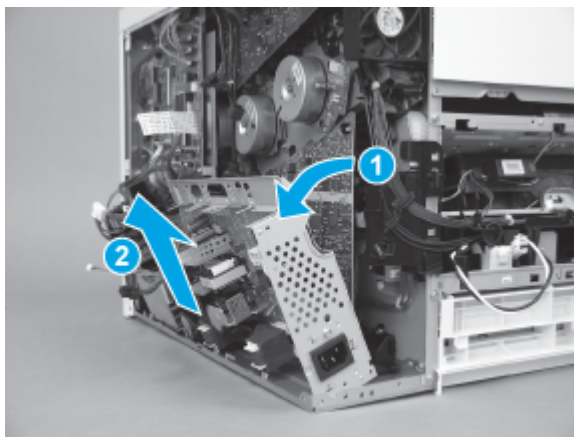
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2484 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2485 Remove the LVPS

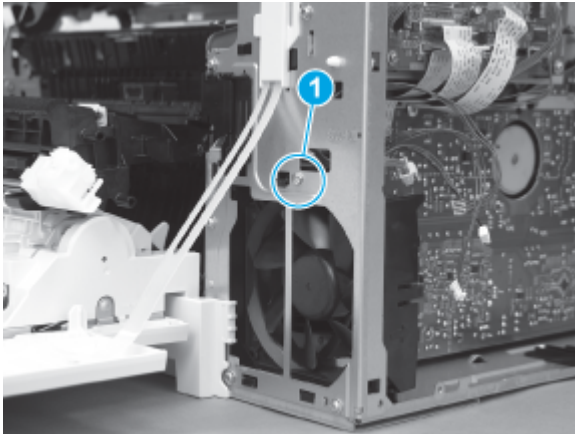


Remove the power supply fan (FM1)

Follow these steps to remove the power supply fan.

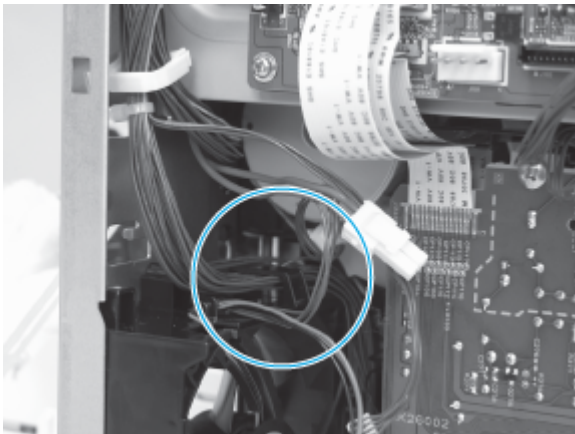
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2486 Remove one screw



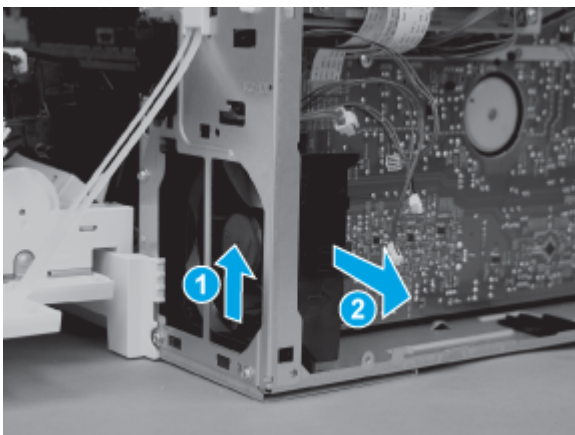
2. Release the wire harnesses from the retainer on the top of the fan bracket.

Figure 5-2487 Release the wire harnesses



3. Lift the fan up (callout 1), and then slide it out of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2488 Remove the fan

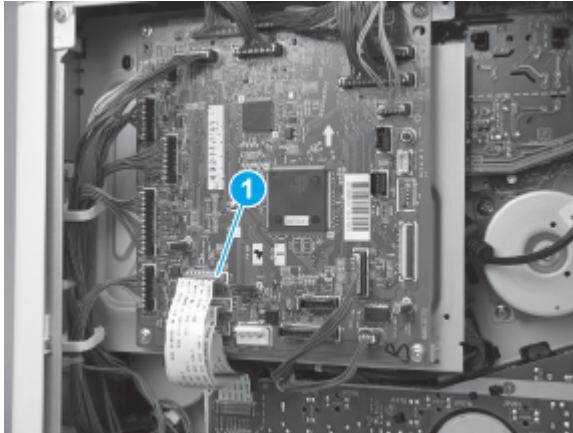


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

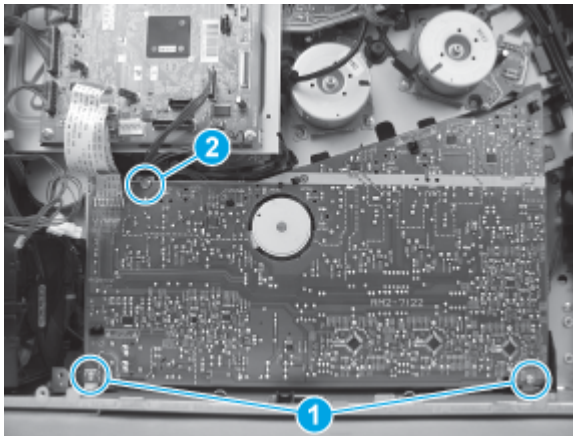
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-2489 Disconnect one flat cable



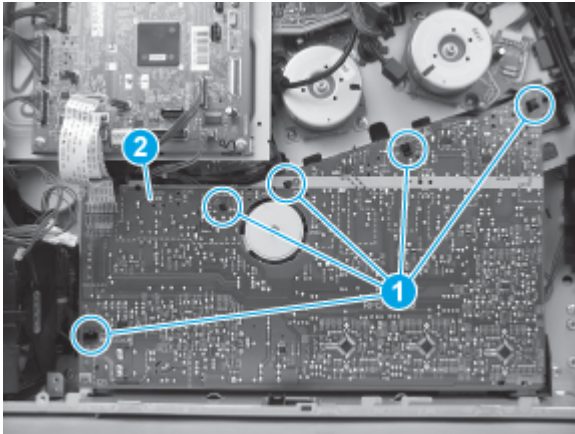
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-2490 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-2491 Remove the HVPSD

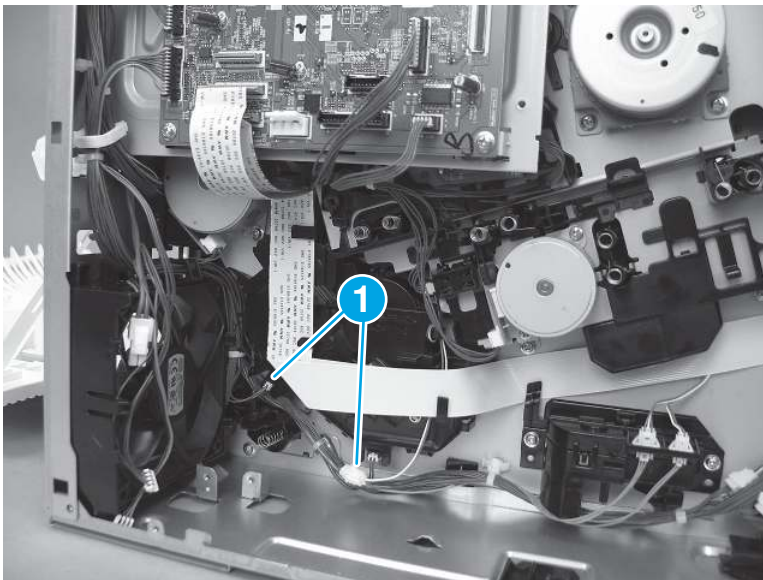


Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

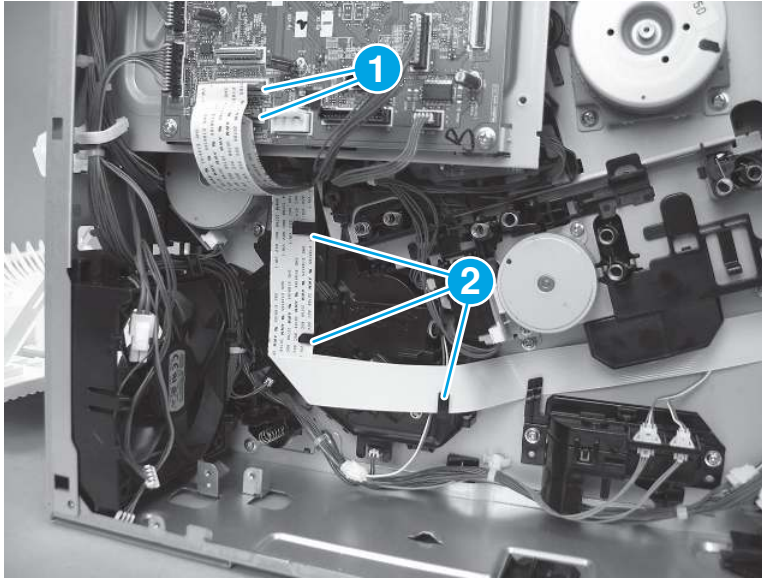
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-2492 Disconnect two connectors



2. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1), and then release them from the retainers (callout 2).

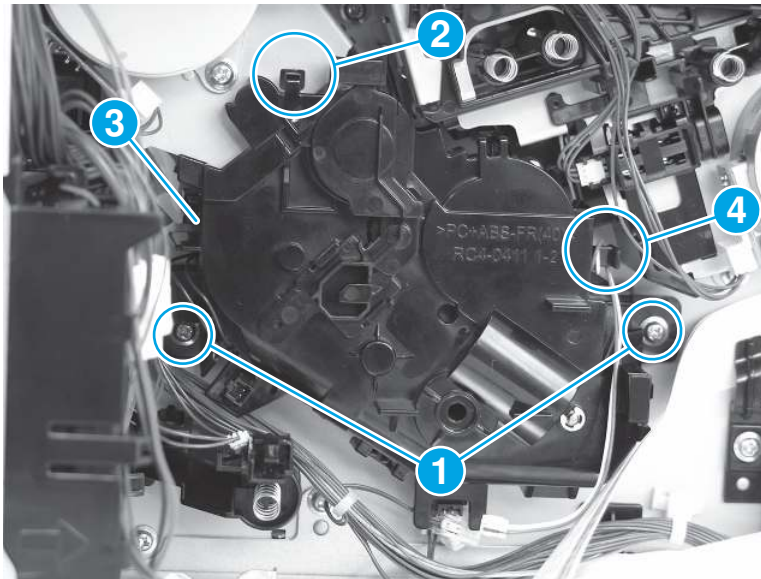
Figure 5-2493 Disconnect two flat cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 4) as the assembly is removed.

Figure 5-2494 Remove the assembly



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.

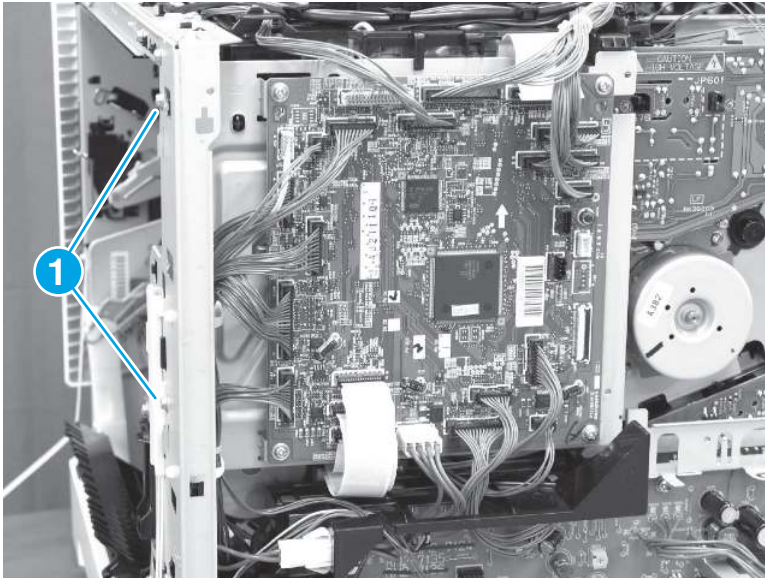
 **NOTE:**  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

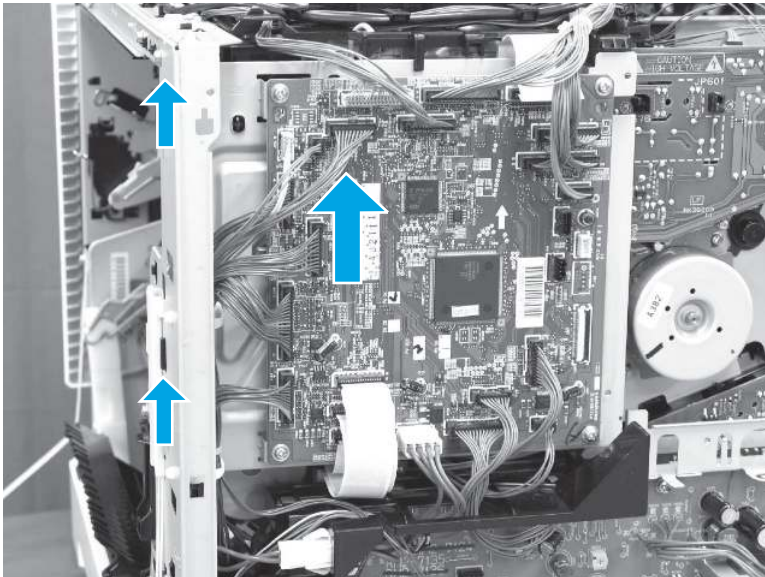
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-2495 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-2496 Remove the plate

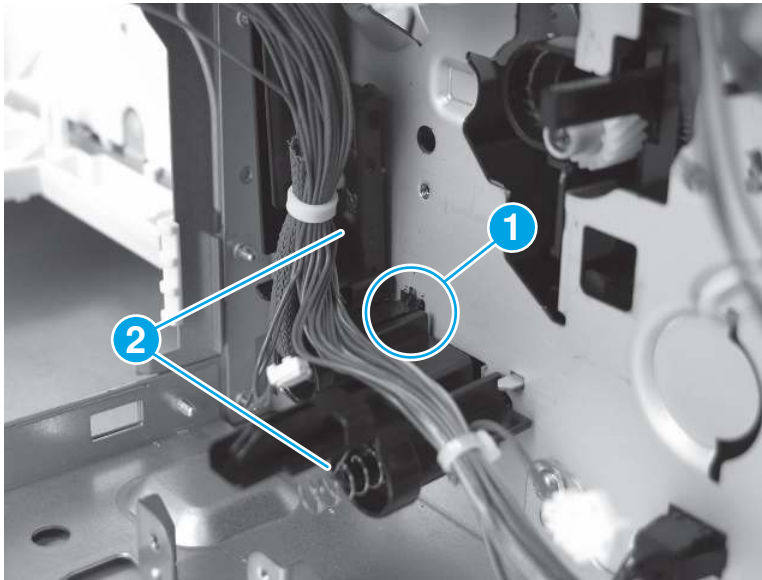


Remove the pickup drive assembly and motor (M5)

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive assembly and motor.

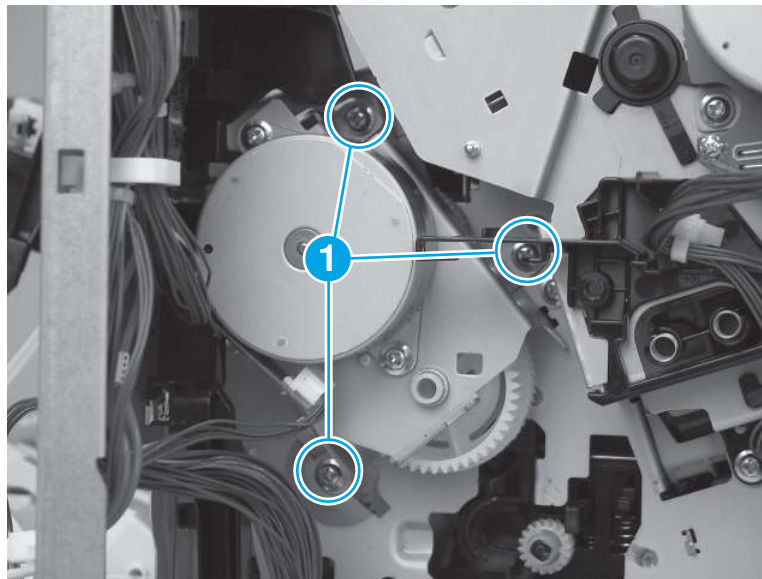
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then move the guide (callout 2) out of the way.

Figure 5-2497 Move the guide out of the way



2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

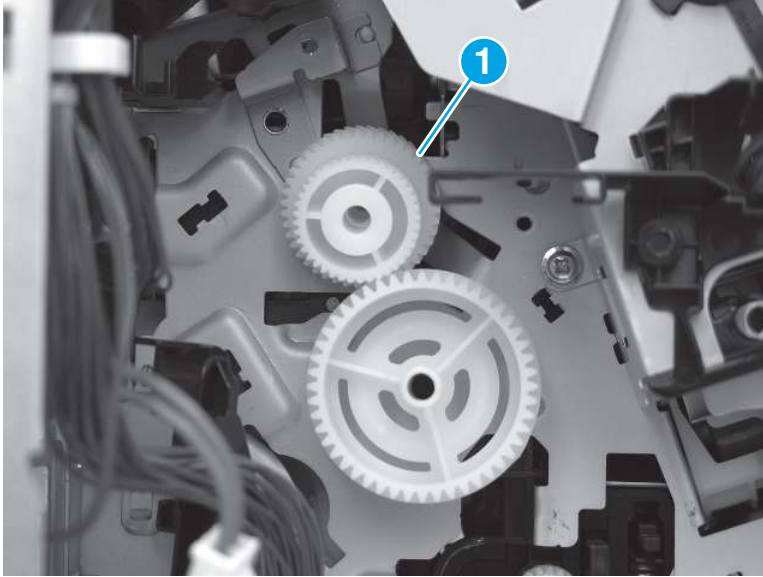
Figure 5-2498 Remove three screws



3. Remove the assembly.

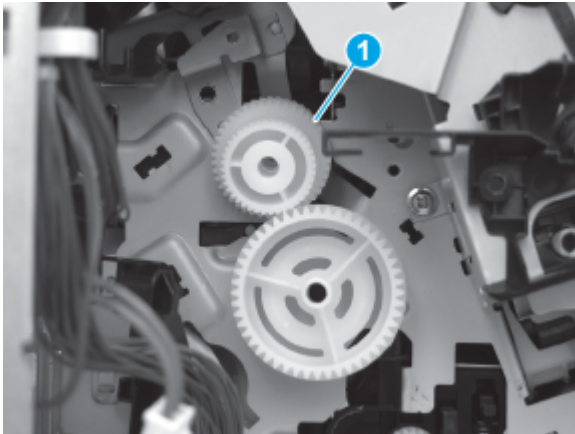
⚠ CAUTION: One gear on the back side of the assembly is not captive. Handle the assembly carefully.

Figure 5-2499 Remove the assembly



4. If the gear (callout 1) was not removed with the assembly in the previous step, remove it now.

Figure 5-2500 Remove the gear if installed

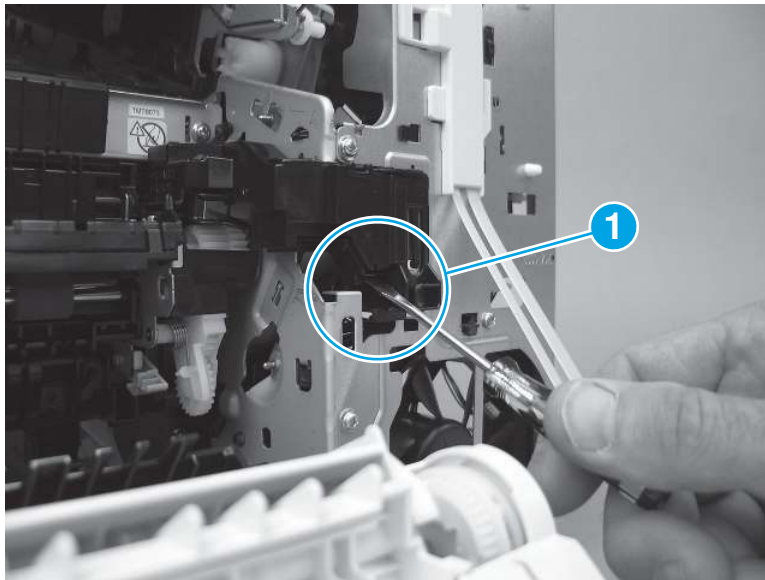


Remove the registration assembly

Follow these steps to remove the registration assembly.

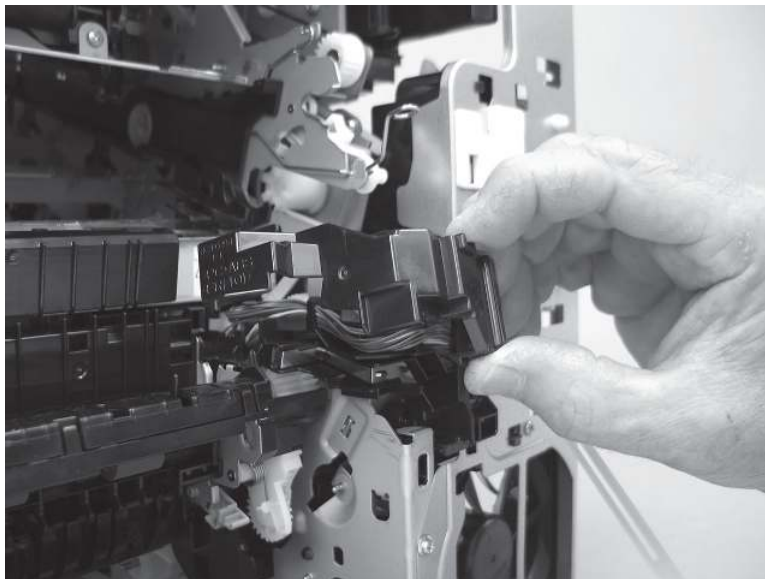
1. At the right side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2501 Release one tab



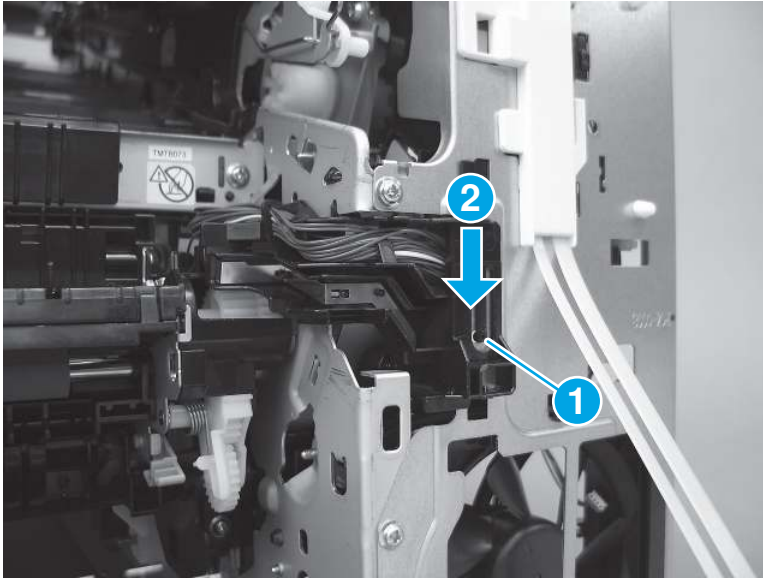
2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2502 Remove the cover



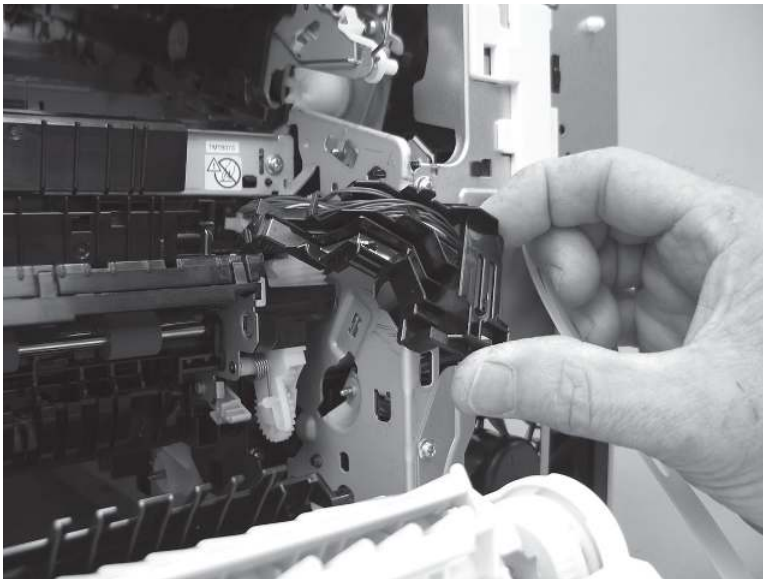
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then push down on the guide (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2503 Release the guide



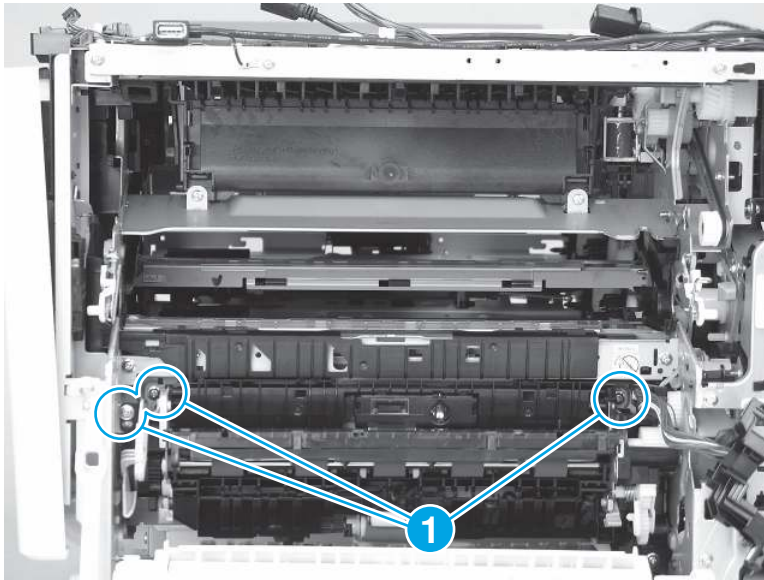
4. Move the guide out of the way.

Figure 5-2504 Move the guide out of the way



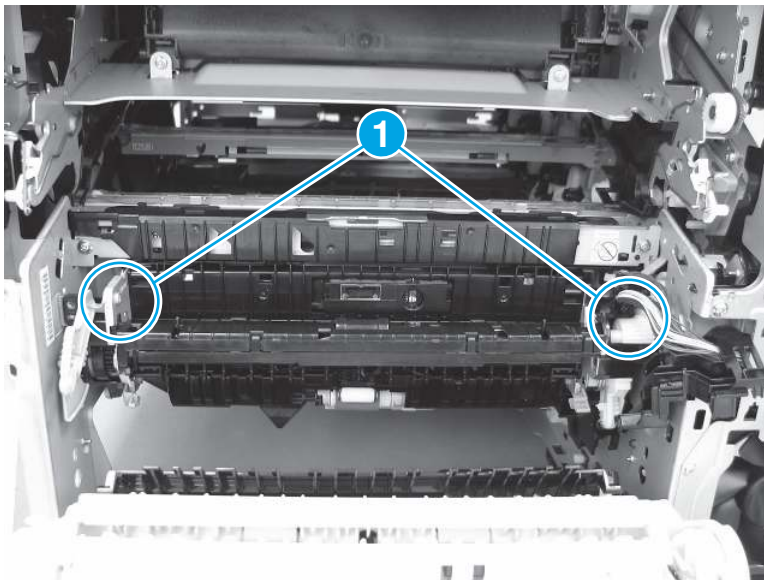
5. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2505 Remove three screws



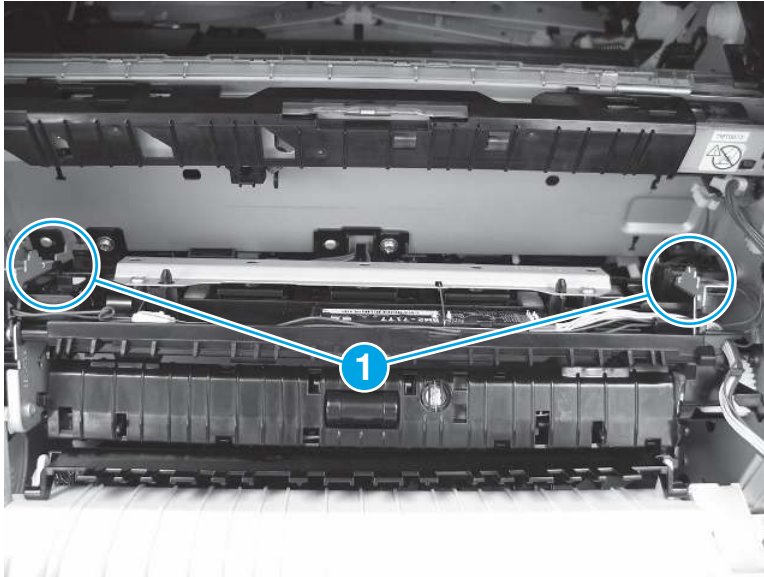
6. Before proceeding, locate the sheet metal portion (callout 1) of the assembly. When handling the assembly, use the sheet metal as handles.

Figure 5-2506 Locate the sheet metal portion of the assembly



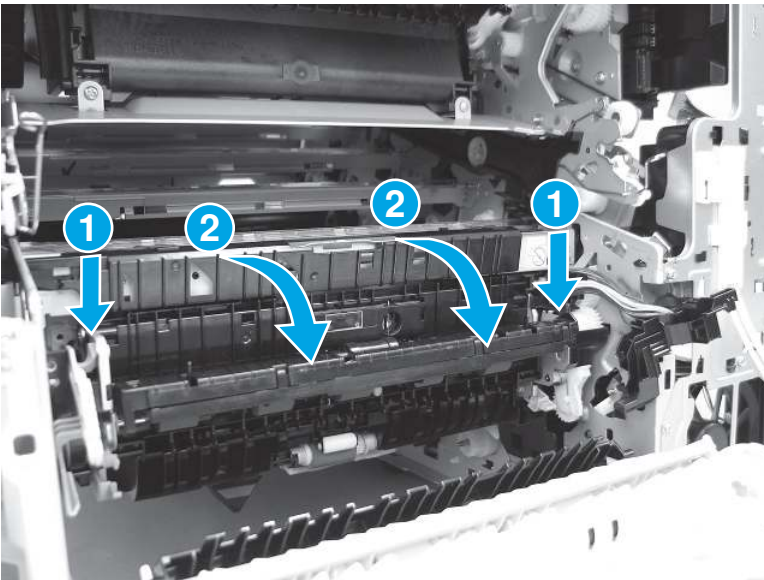
7. Before proceeding, take note of the sheet-metal tabs (callout 1) on the back of the assembly that fasten it to the chassis (the figure shows the assembly removed so the tabs can be viewed).

Figure 5-2507 Locate the sheet metal portion of the assembly



8. Grasp the sheet-metal handles (callout 1), and then rotate the top of the assembly away from the chassis (callout 2) to release the top tabs.

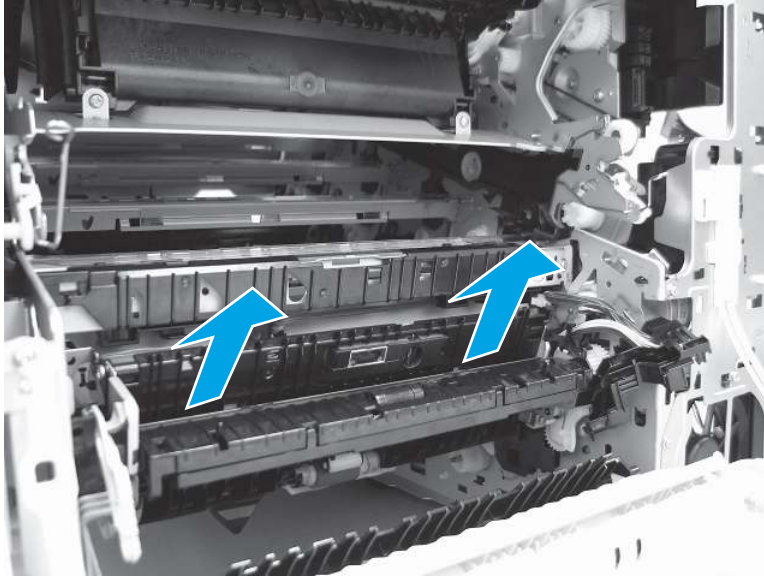
Figure 5-2508 Rotate the top of the assembly away from the chassis



9. Pull up on the assembly to release the bottom tabs.

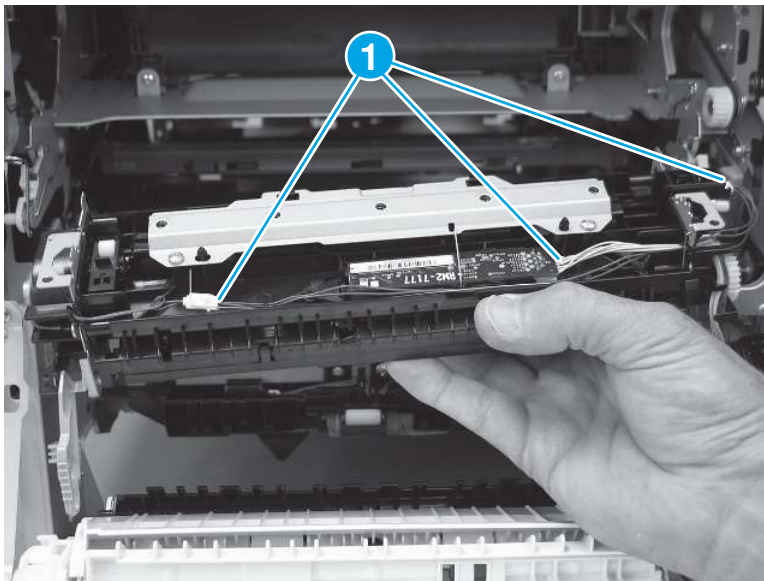
⚠ CAUTION: The assembly is still attached to the printer by a wire harness. Do not attempt to completely remove the assembly.

Figure 5-2509 Release the bottom tabs



10. Turn the registration assembly over to access the back side, disconnect three connectors (callout 1), and then remove the assembly.

Figure 5-2510 Remove the assembly

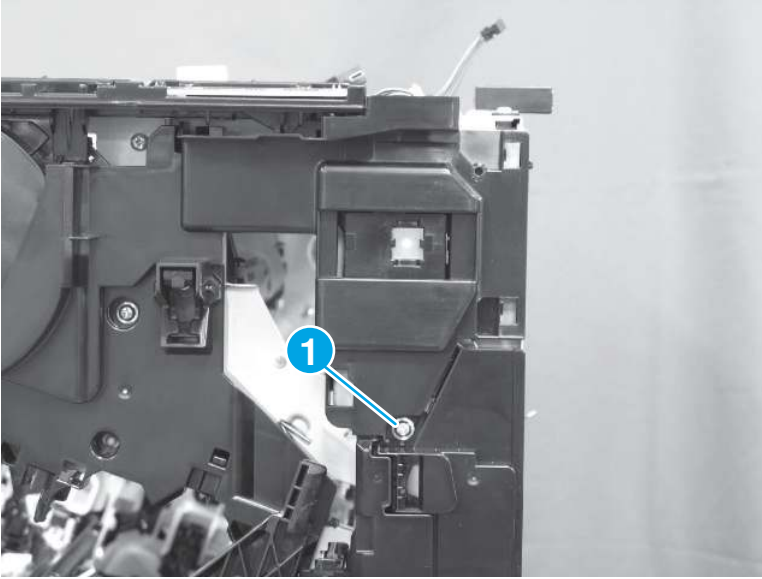


Remove the paper density-detect assembly

Follow these steps to remove the density-detect assembly.

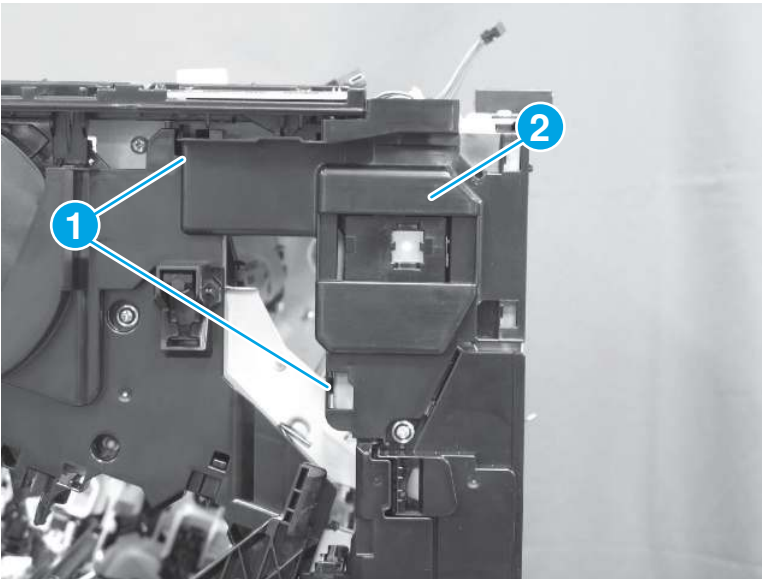
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2511 Remove one screw



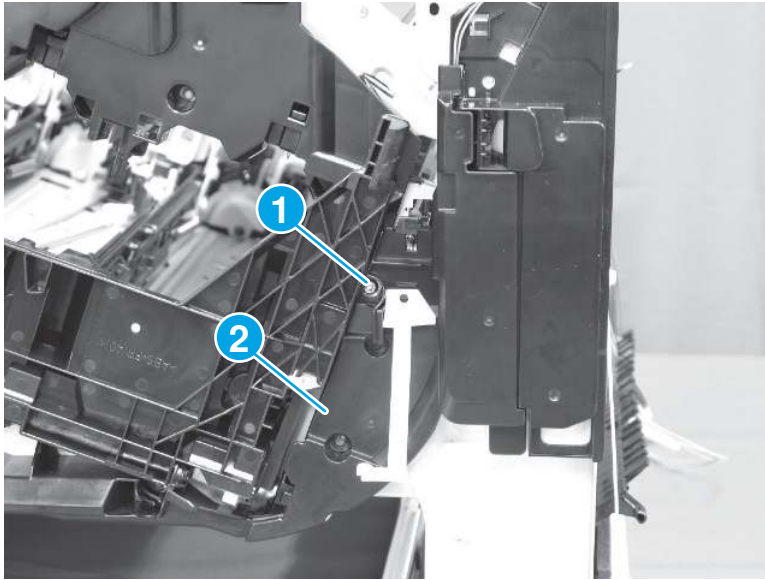
2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 5-2512 Remove the cover



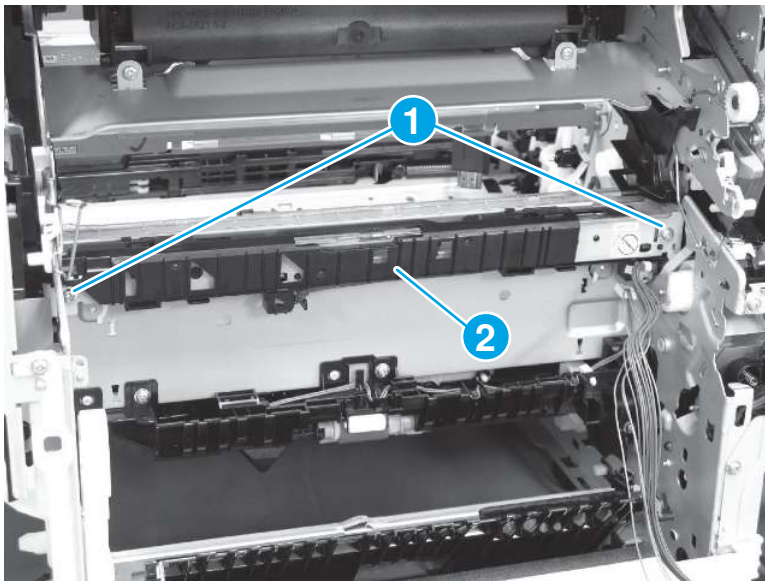
3. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cover (callout 2).

Figure 5-2513 Remove the cover



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the density-detect assembly (callout 2)..

Figure 5-2514 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Main-drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the main drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-84 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L25-67902	Main-drive assembly with instruction guide

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

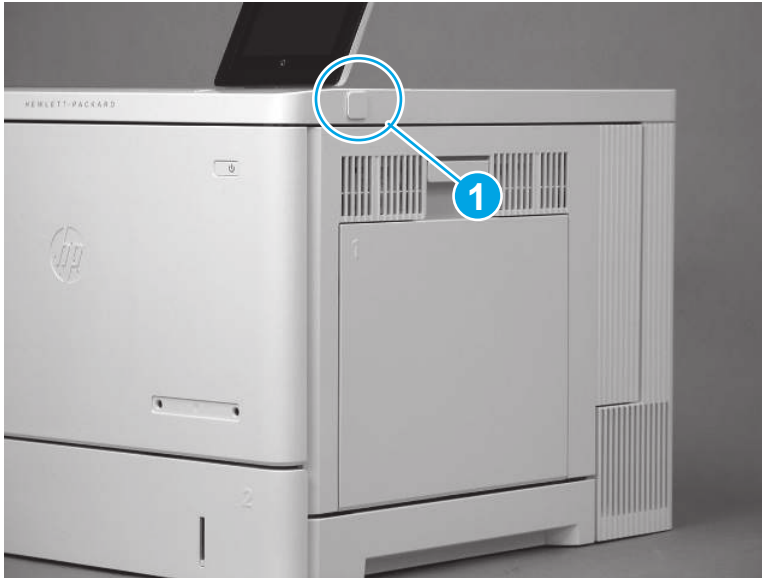
Remove the USB cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the USB cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Locate the USB cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2515 Locate the USB cover



2. Pull the cover off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2516 Remove the cover



Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

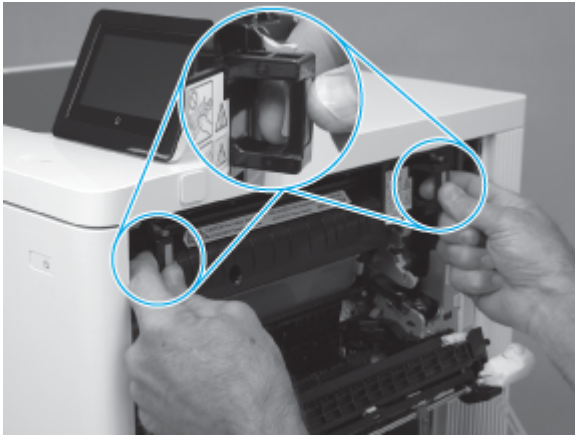
⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is very hot. After turning the printer power off, allow the fuser to cool for at least 30 minutes before removing it.

Figure 5-2517 Open the right door



2. Grasp the two fuser handles, and then squeeze the two blue triggers on the handles to release the fuser.

Figure 5-2518 Release the fuser



3. Slide the fuser straight out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2519 Remove the fuser



Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

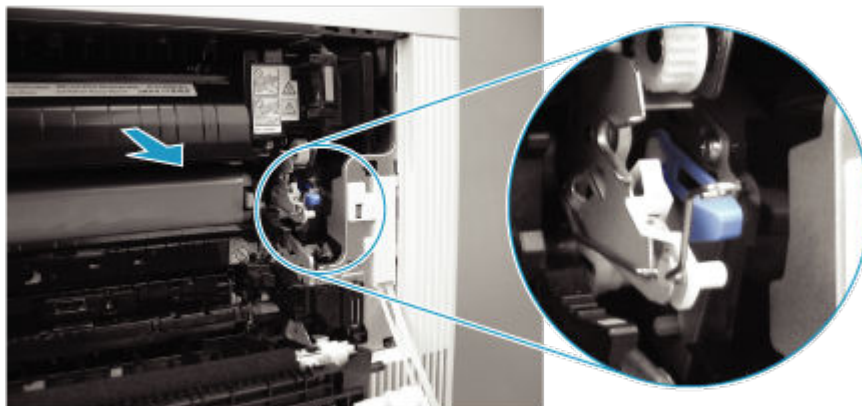
1. Open the right door.

Figure 5-2520 Open the right door



2. Pull the blue lever to release the ITB drive coupling.

Figure 5-2521 Release the ITB drive coupling



3. Push in on the blue arm to release the secondary transfer roller assembly, and then completely lower the assembly.


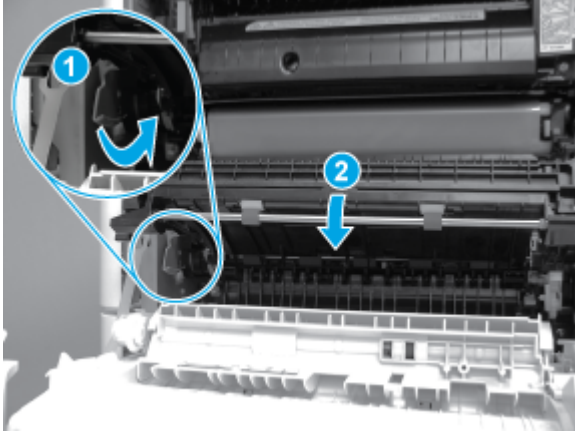
 **NOTE:** Press the blue arm on the secondary transfer roller assembly a second time to release the roller assembly when it stops at the halfway open position.

Figure 5-2522 Lower the secondary transfer roller assembly



4. Release the left-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).


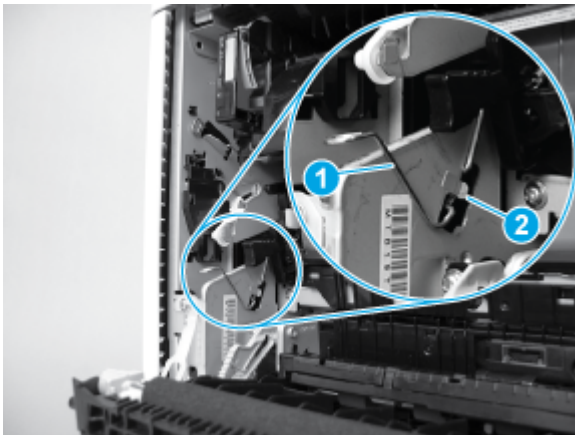

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

Figure 5-2523 Release the front-side ITB spring

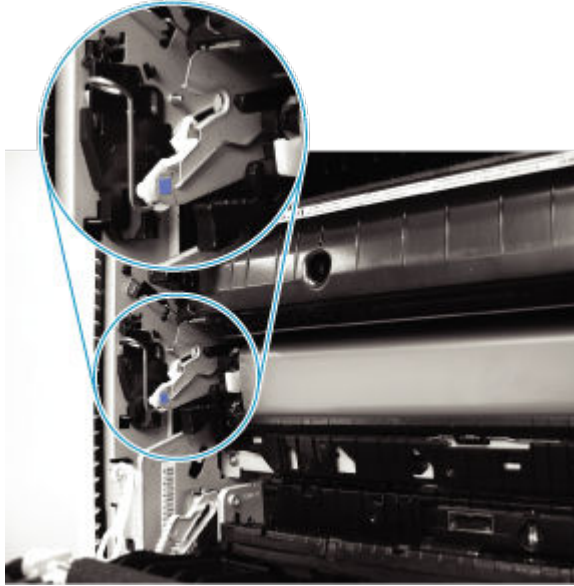


5. Place the left-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **NOTE:** For late production M552/M553/E55040/E57540 printers and all M554/M555/M578 printers, this ITB spring is not installed.

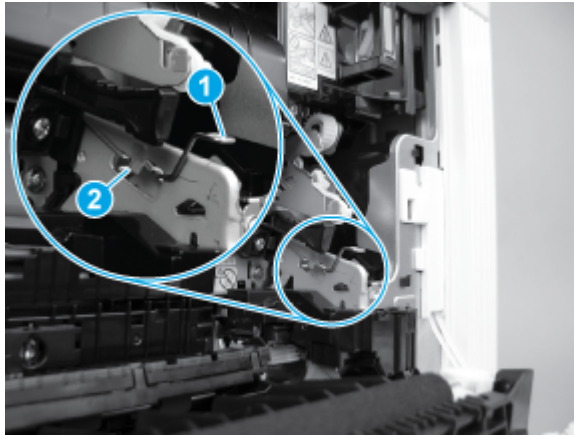
 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

Figure 5-2524 Place the spring on the holder



6. Release the right-side ITB spring (callout 1) from the tab (callout 2).

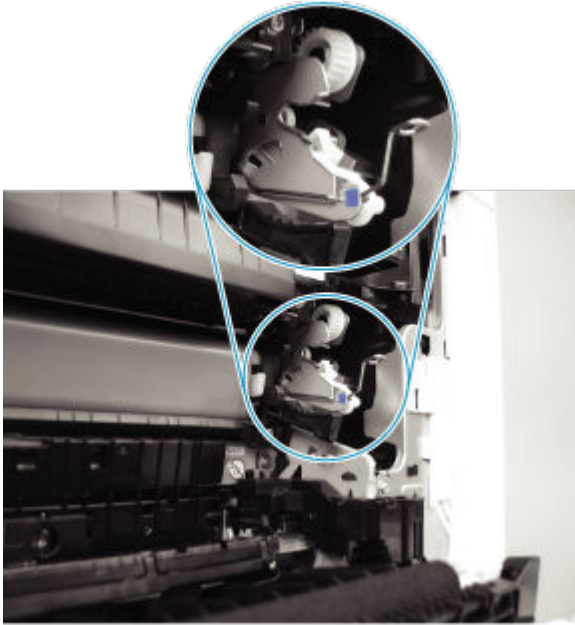
Figure 5-2525 Release the rear-side ITB spring



7. Place the right-side ITB spring on the holder to keep it out of the way.

 **TIP:** The holder is colored blue to help locate it.

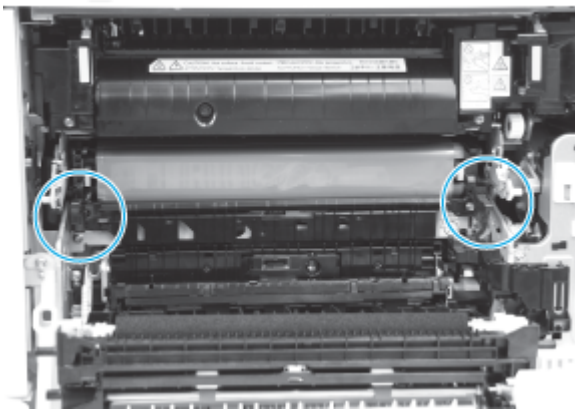
Figure 5-2526 Place the spring on the holder



8. Grasp the two blue handles on the ITB.

⚠ CAUTION: If the ITB is removed to access other assemblies in the printer, use care. The ITB is a sensitive assembly. Be careful when handling the ITB so that it is not damaged. Always place the ITB in a safe and protected location.

Figure 5-2527 Grasp the ITB handles



9. Pull the ITB out of the printer to remove it.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 5-2528 Remove the ITB



Remove the control panel (M553x/M555/E55040)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for the M553x/M555/E55040 printers only.

M555 models: Removing the control panel is similar to the procedure below. For the M555, a flat cable connects the control panel to the formatter.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 5-2529 Tilt the control panel up



2. Use the small flat-blade screwdriver supplied in this kit to release the control-panel screws cover tabs.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2530 Release the control-panel screws cover tabs



3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2531 Remove the cover

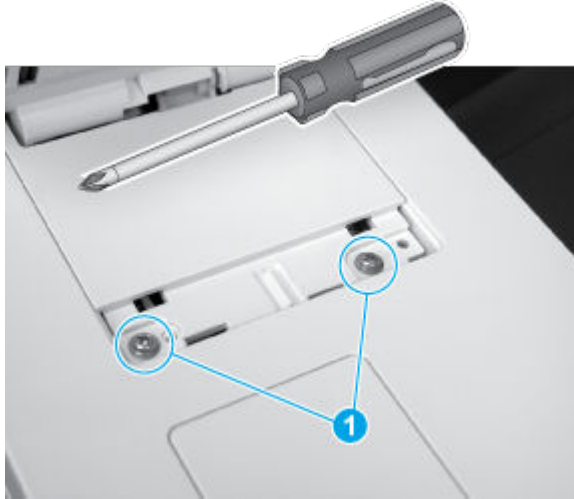


4. Use the small Phillips screwdriver supplied in this kit to remove two screws (callout 1).

 **IMPORTANT:** Store the screws in a secure place where they cannot fall down into the printer.

 **TIP:** The screwdriver has a reversible shaft. Simply pull the shaft out of the handle, and then reinstall it with the desired end facing out.

Figure 5-2532 Remove two screws



5. Rotate the control-panel base toward the front of the printer.

Figure 5-2533 Rotate the control-panel base up



6. Slightly slide the control-panel base toward the rear of the printer (callout 1) to release it, and then turn the control panel over (callout 2) to access the bottom side.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2534 Turn the control panel over



7. Disconnect one USB cable (callout 1), one connector (callout 2), and then remove the control panel.


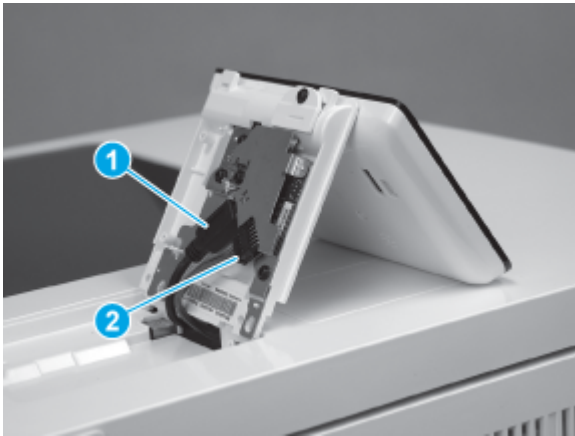

 **NOTE:** M555 only: Disconnect one flat cable (not shown), and then remove the control panel.

Figure 5-2535 Disconnect two connectors



Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

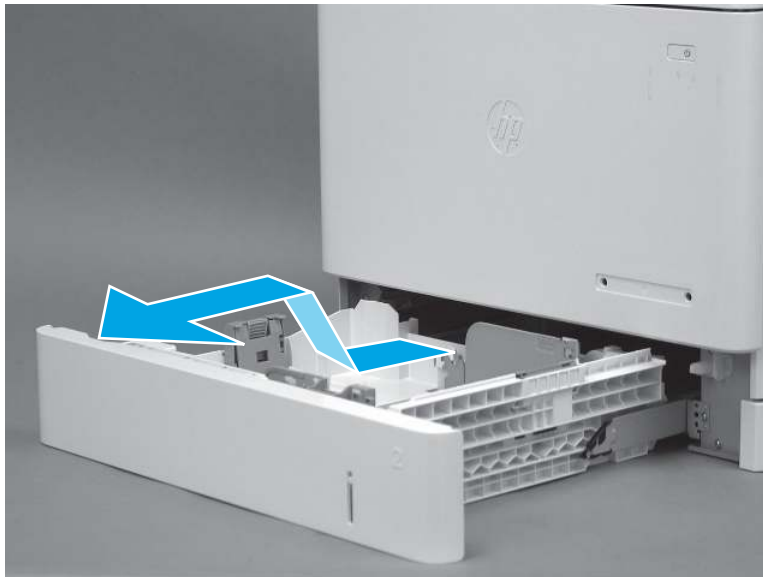
Figure 5-2536 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE:** For a replacement tray: If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2537 Remove the tray



Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP printer, However, the procedure is correct for MFP printers.

1. Open the front door.

Figure 5-2538 Open the front door



2. Open the TCU.

 **NOTE:** The toner collection hatch cover automatically closes when the TCU is opened.

Figure 5-2539 Open the TCU



3. Pull the TCU away from the printer at an angle to remove it.

 **CAUTION:** Do not open the toner collection hatch cover when handling the TCU. If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off by using a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



Figure 5-2540 Remove the TCU

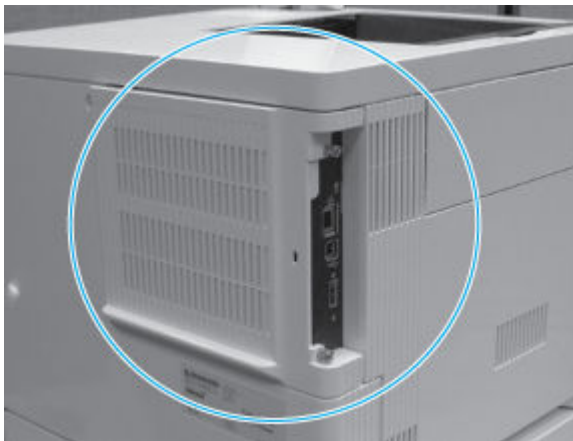


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2541 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2542 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the formatter (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J2 (callout 1; this is the touchscreen connector for the M553x and E55040 printers)
- All models: J9 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J18 (this connector is empty unless the optional hard-disk drive is installed)
- M553n/dn and M552dn: J25 (this is the wireless connector for the M553x and E55040 models)
- All models: J57
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


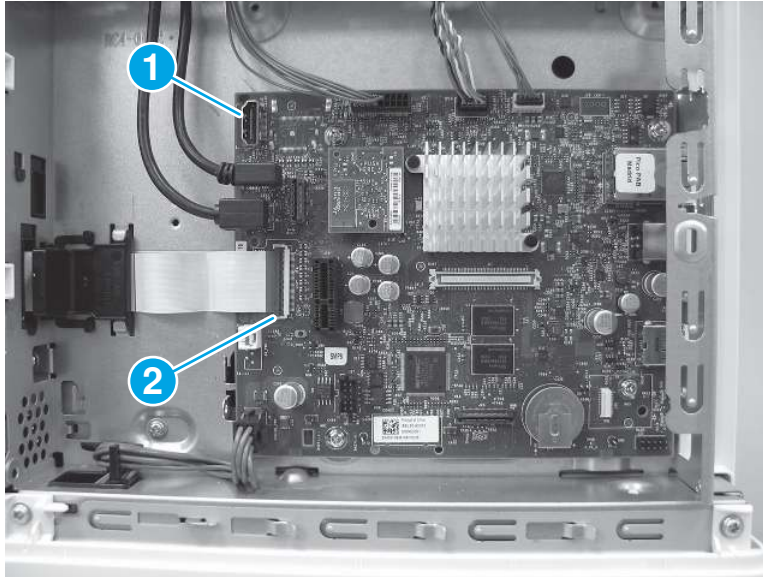
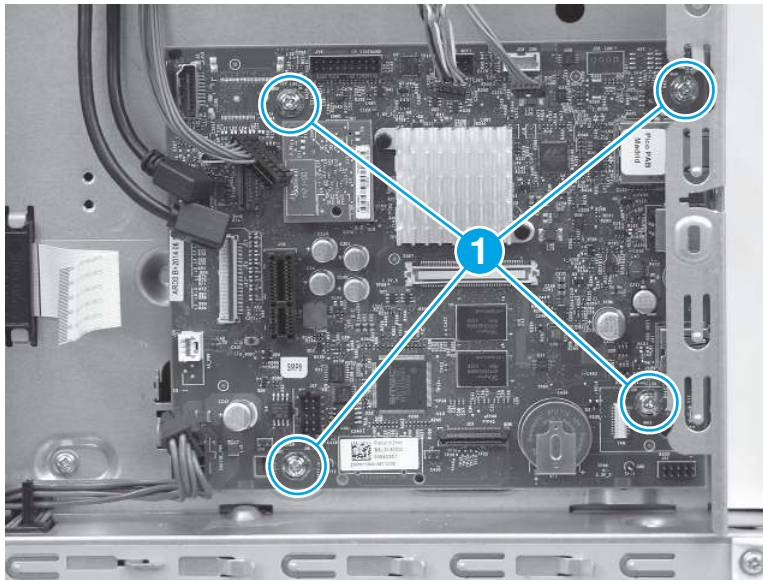
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2543 Disconnect all connectors




2. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the formatter..


Figure 5-2544 Remove four screws



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

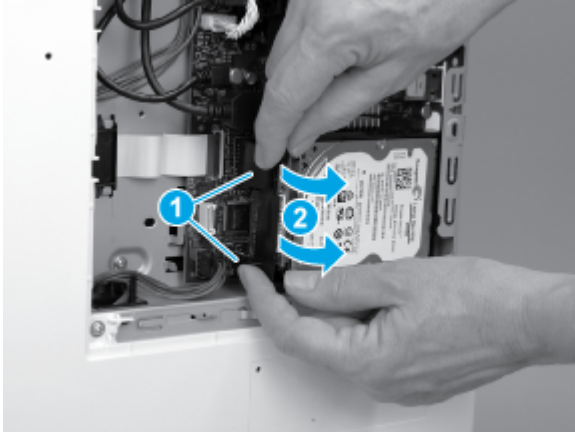
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-2545 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2546 Remove the HDD



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

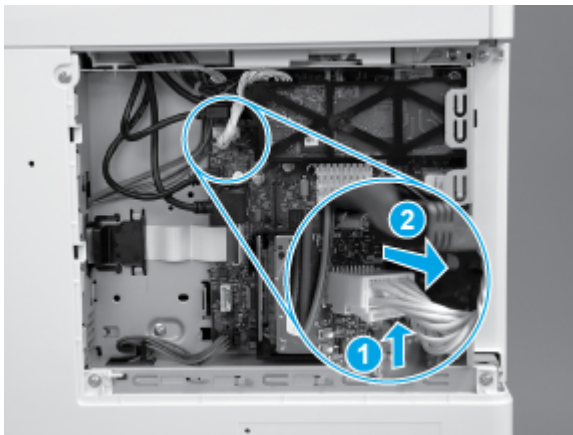
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2547 Locate the fax PCA



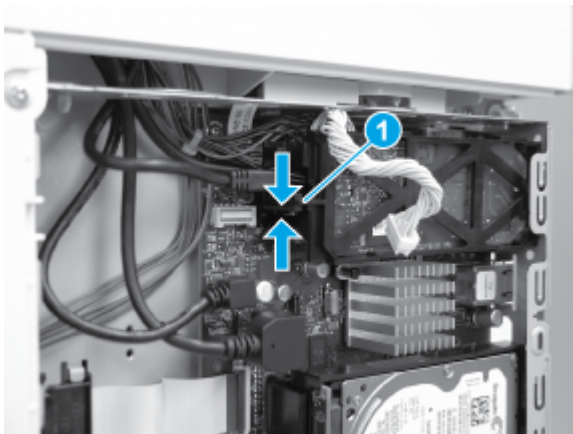
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-2548 Disconnect one connector



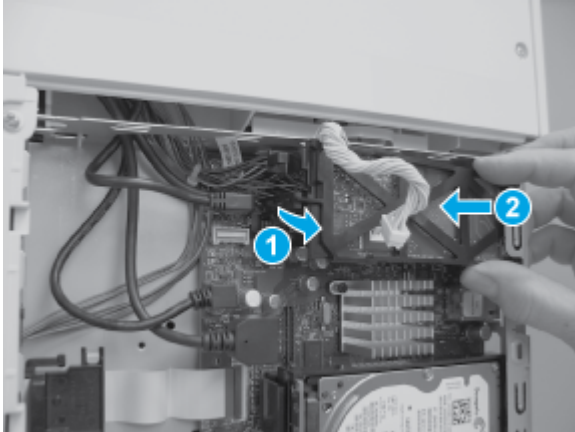
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-2549 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2550 Remove the fax PCA



Remove the formatter (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter (MFP).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

The following connectors are empty:

- All models: J1 (this connector is empty unless the optional DIMM is installed)
- All models: J3
- M577dn: J15 (this is the fax connector for the M577f/z/c models)
- All models: J21 (this connector is empty unless the optional internal USB ports component is installed)
- All models: J23
- All models: J24
- All models: J51
- All models: J57
- All models: J97
- All models: J98 (this connector is empty unless the optional trusted platform module (TPM) is installed)


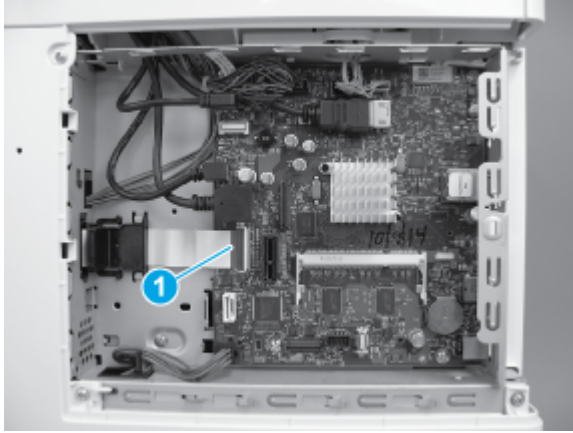
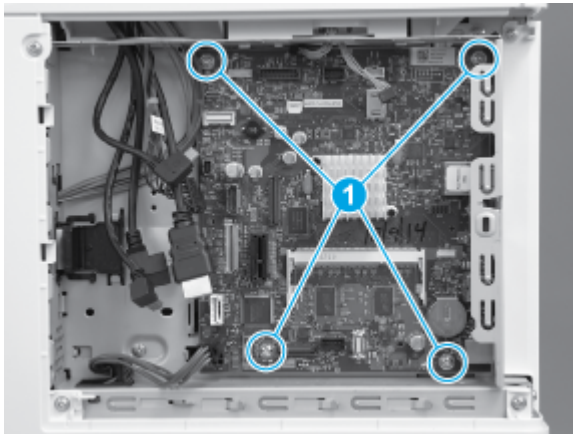
 **IMPORTANT:** The flat-cable connector (callout 1) is a Zero Insertion Force (ZIF) connector that uses a hinged retainer to secure the flat cable. The hinged retainer must be opened to release the flat cable.

Figure 5-2551 Disconnect all connectors



2. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2552 Remove four screws



3. Remove the formatter.

Figure 5-2553 Remove the formatter



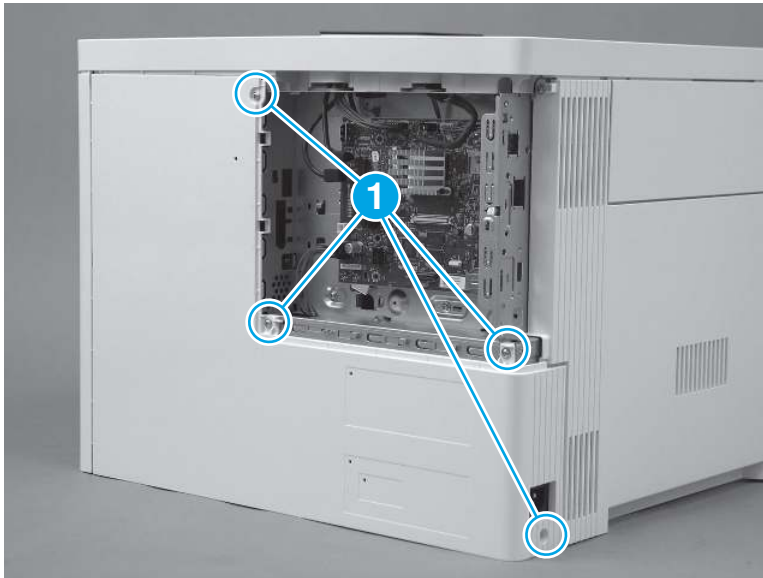
Remove the rear cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

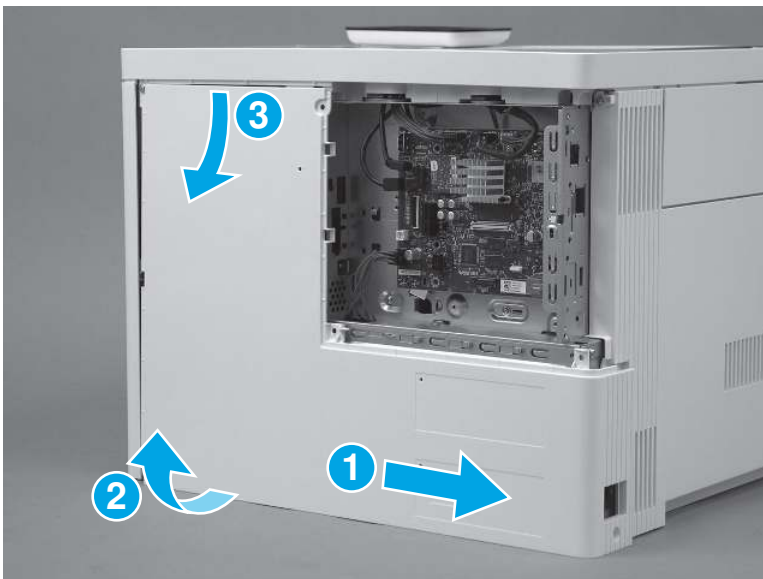
1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2554 Remove four screws




2. Slightly slide the cover to the right (callout 1), rotate the bottom of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then pull the top of the cover away from the printer (callout 3) to remove the cover.

Figure 5-2555 Remove the cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP)

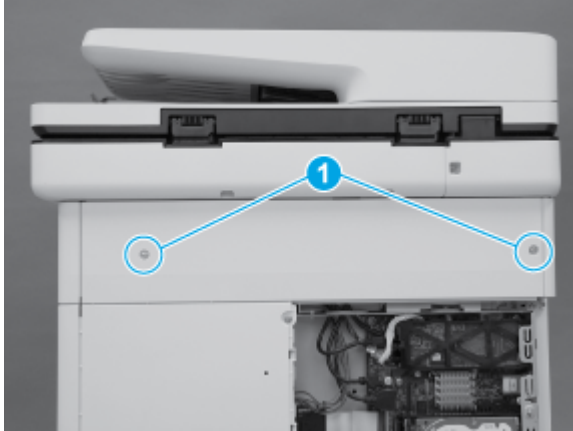
Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

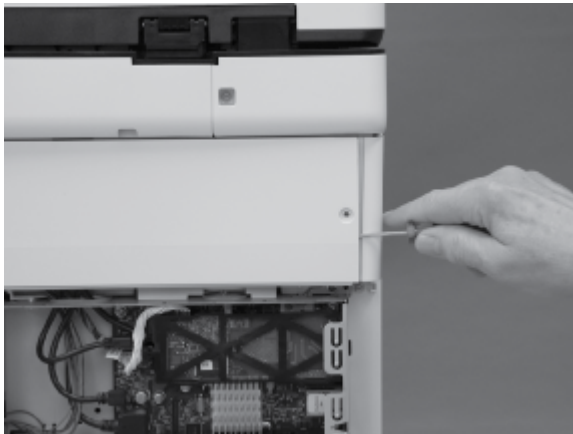
 **TIP:** These two screws are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling them, rotate the screws counterclockwise to align them with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn them clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw holes.

Figure 5-2556 Remove two screws



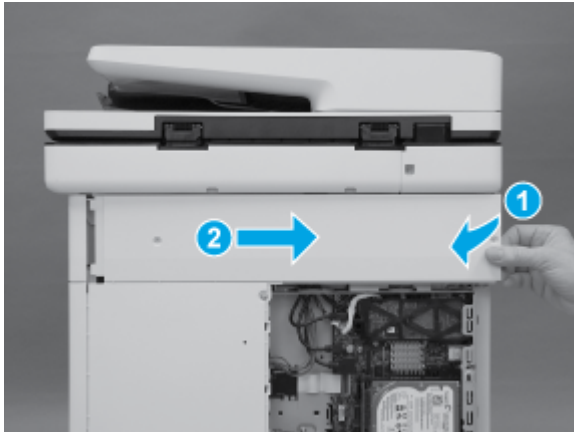
2. Use a small, flat blade screwdriver to release the right edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2557 Release the right edge



3. Pull the right edge of the cover (callout 1) away from the printer, and then slide the cover to the right (callout 2).

Figure 5-2558 Slide the cover right




4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2559 Remove the cover



Remove the rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. Remove four screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2560 Remove four screws




2. Slide the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2561 Remove the cover



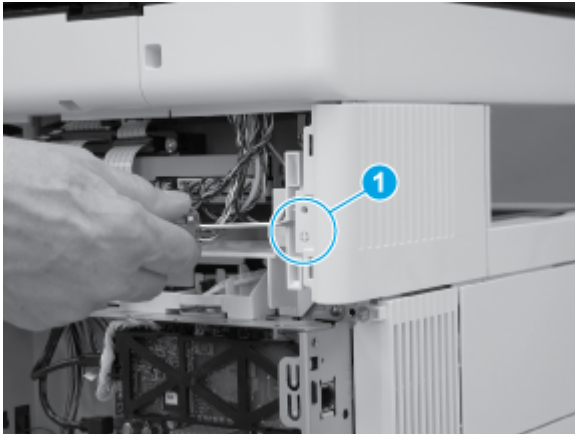
Remove the left upper cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the left side of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2562 Release one tab



2. Slide the left upper cover toward the back of the printer.

Figure 5-2563 Slide the cover back




3. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2564 Remove the left upper cover



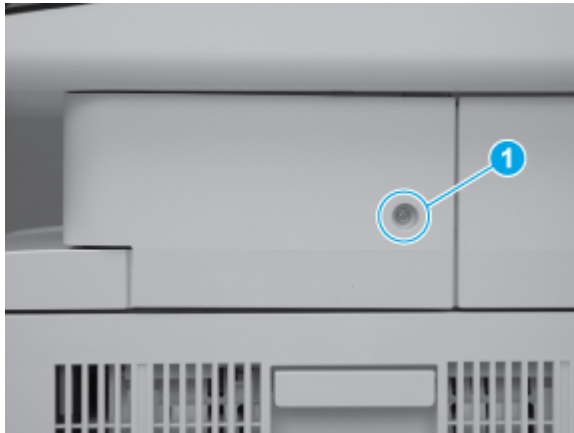
Remove the right front upper cover (MFP non-stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the right front upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for non-stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2565 Remove one screw



2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2566 Release two tabs




3. Rotate the front of the cover to the right to remove it.

Figure 5-2567 Rotate the cover



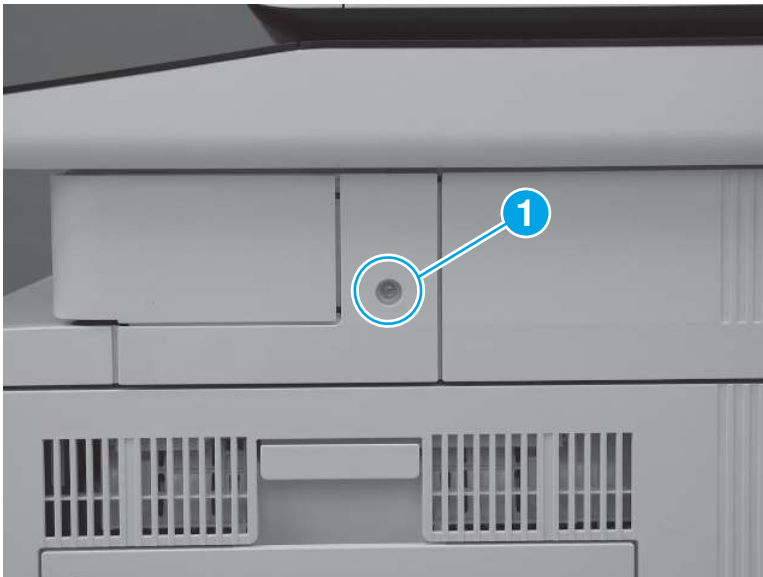
Remove the stapler cover (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for stapler models only.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2568 Remove one screw



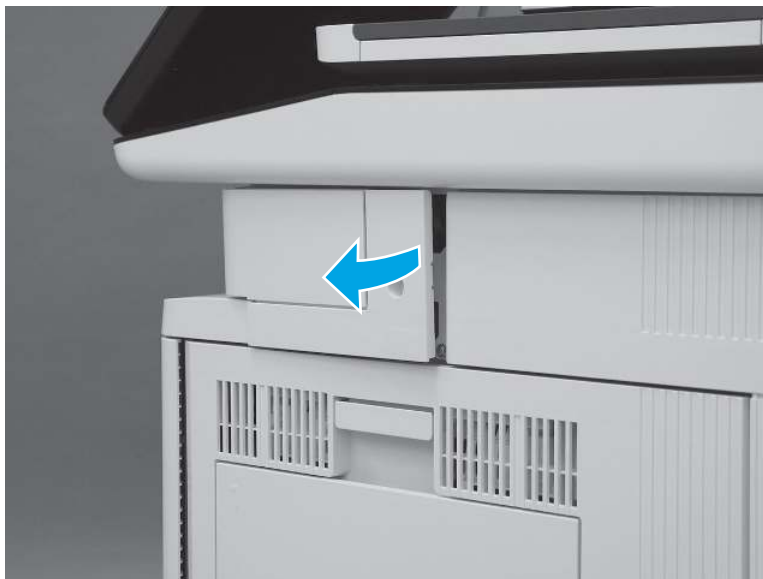
2. Release two tabs at the front edge of the cover (callout 1).

Figure 5-2569 Release two tabs



3. Release the back edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2570 Release the back edge of the cover



4. Rotate the cover away from the printer to remove it.


Figure 5-2571 Remove the cover



Remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) (MFP)

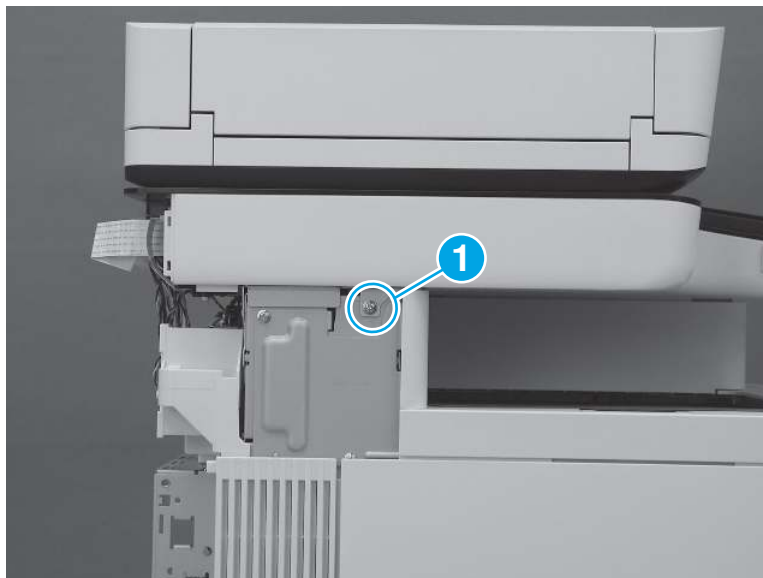
Follow these steps to remove the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

 **NOTE:** The ISA includes the document feeder, image scanner, scanner control board (SCB), control panel, keyboard (flow models) and NFC PCA (not all models).

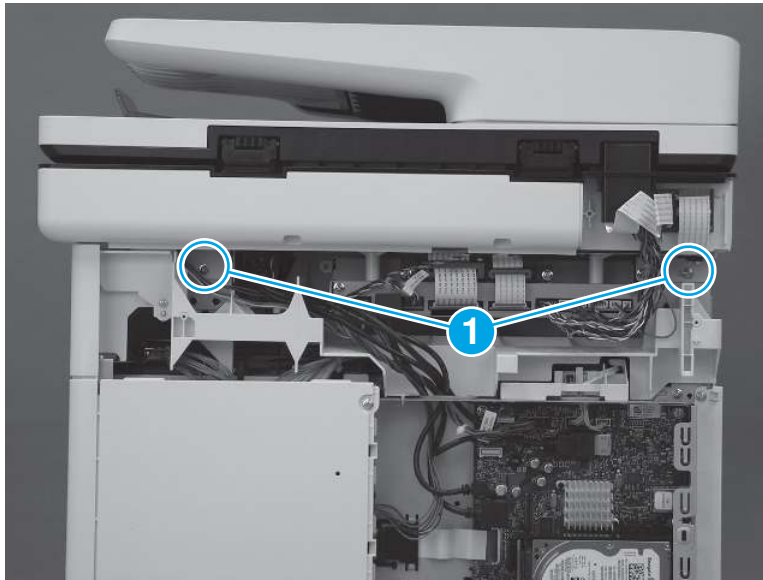
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2572 Remove one screw



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

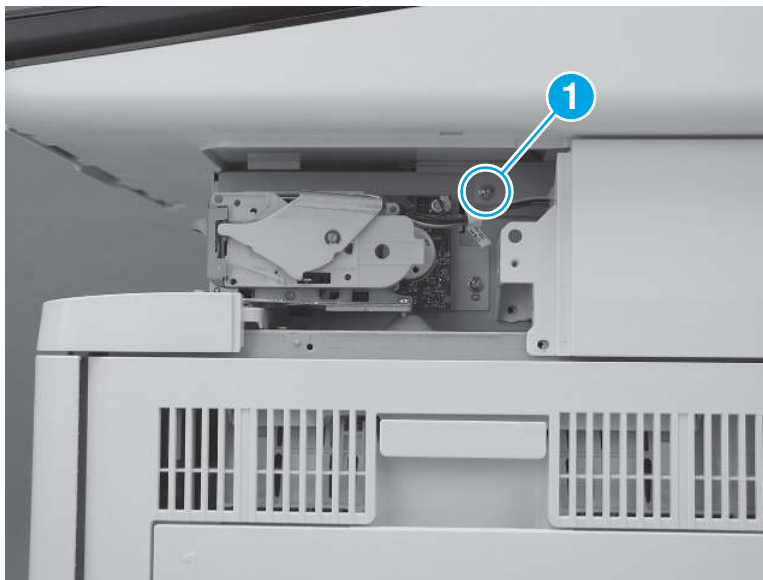
Figure 5-2573 Remove two screws



3. At the right side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

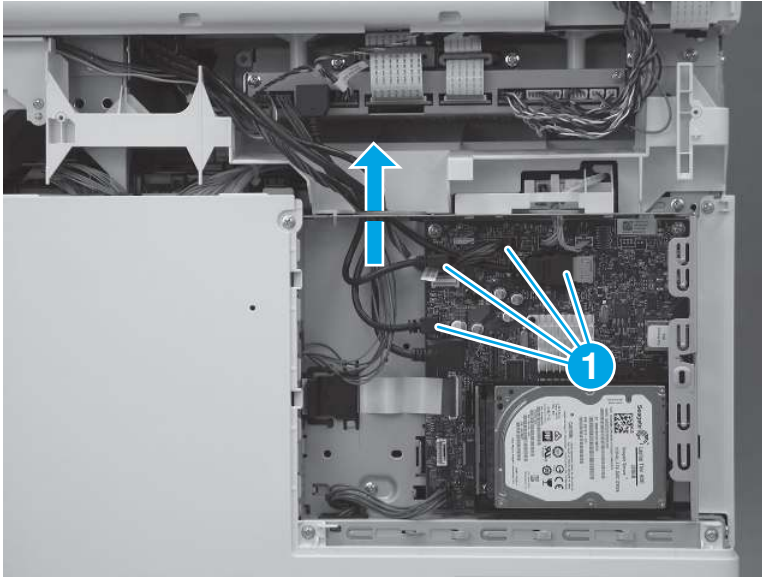
 **NOTE:** The M577z is shown in the figure below. The procedure is correct for all MFP models.

Figure 5-2574 Remove one screw



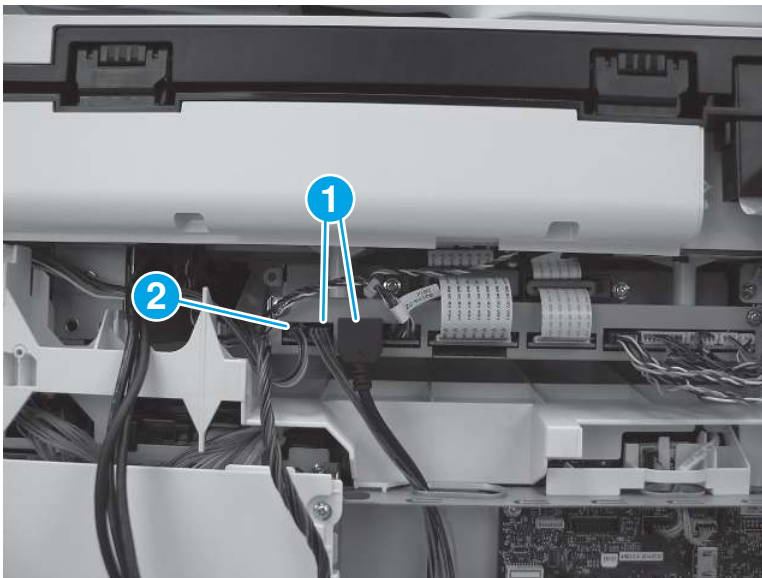
4. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1) on the formatter, and then pass the wire harnesses and cables through the top opening in the formatter case (callout 2).

Figure 5-2575 Disconnect cables and connectors



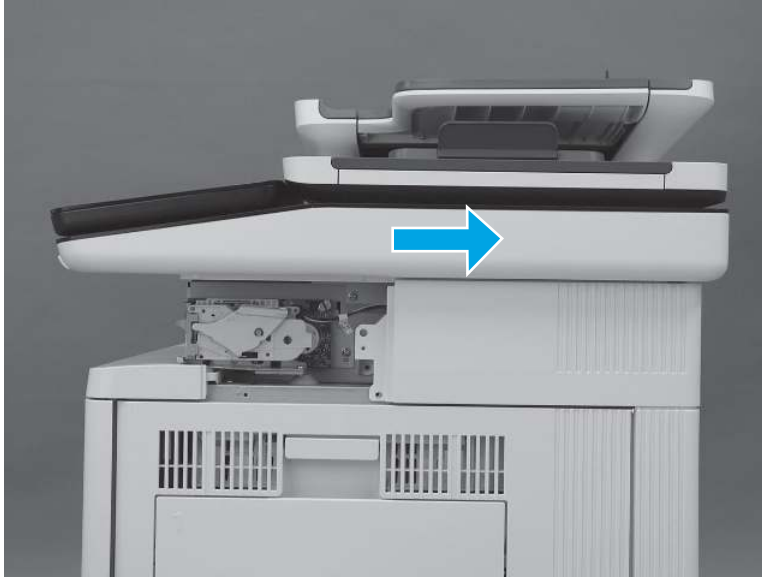
5. Disconnect two connectors on the scanner control board (callout 1).
MFP stapler models: Disconnect one connector for the stapler on the scanner control board (callout 2).

Figure 5-2576 Disconnect connectors



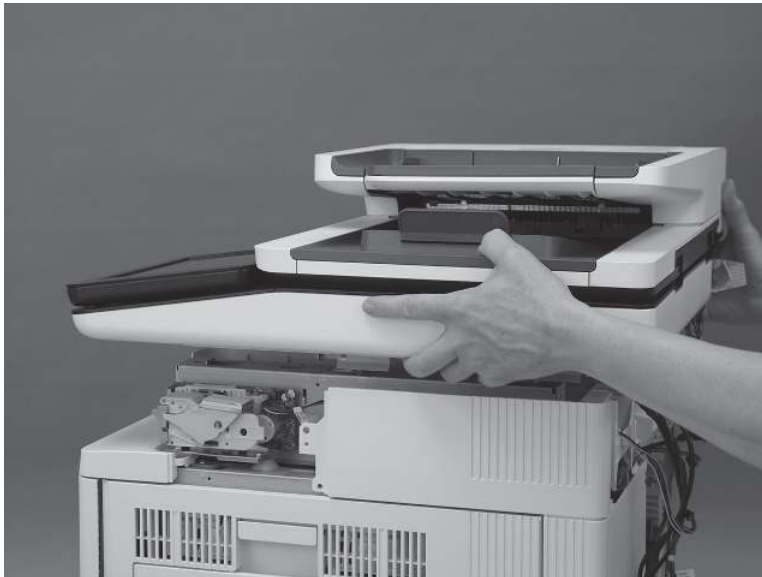
6. Slide the image scanner toward the back of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2577 Release the image scanner




7. Lift the ISA straight up to remove it.

Figure 5-2578 Remove the ISA



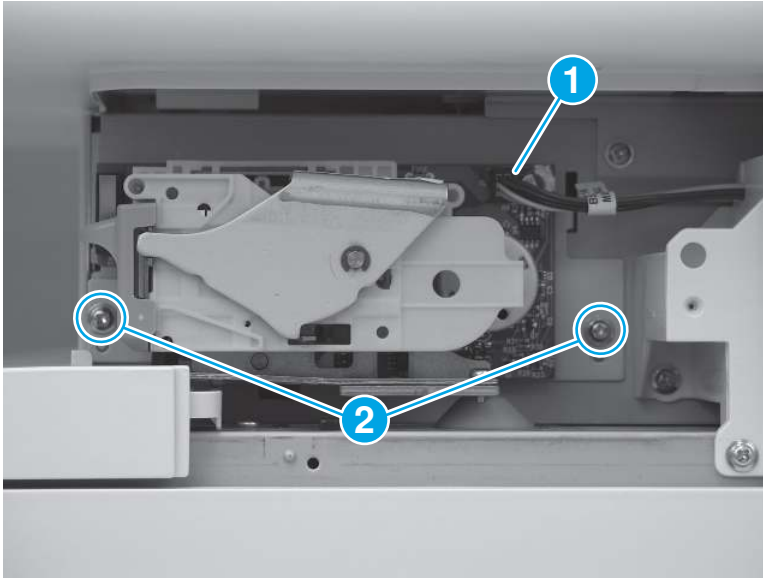
Remove the stapler unit (MFP stapler models)

Follow these steps to remove the stapler unit.

 **NOTE:** This step is for stapler models only.

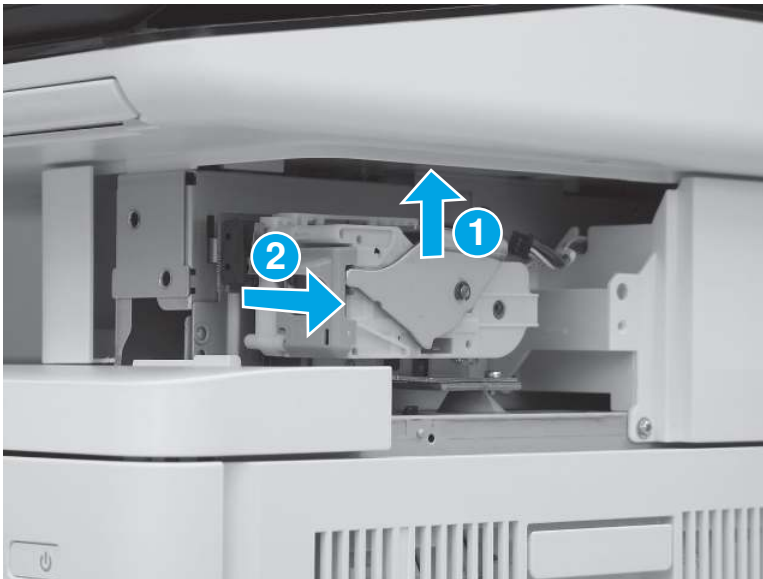
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove two screws (callout 2).

Figure 5-2579 Disconnect connector and remove screws



2. Slide the stapler unit up (callout 1), and then pull it away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2580 Remove the stapler unit



Remove the right upper cover (MFP)

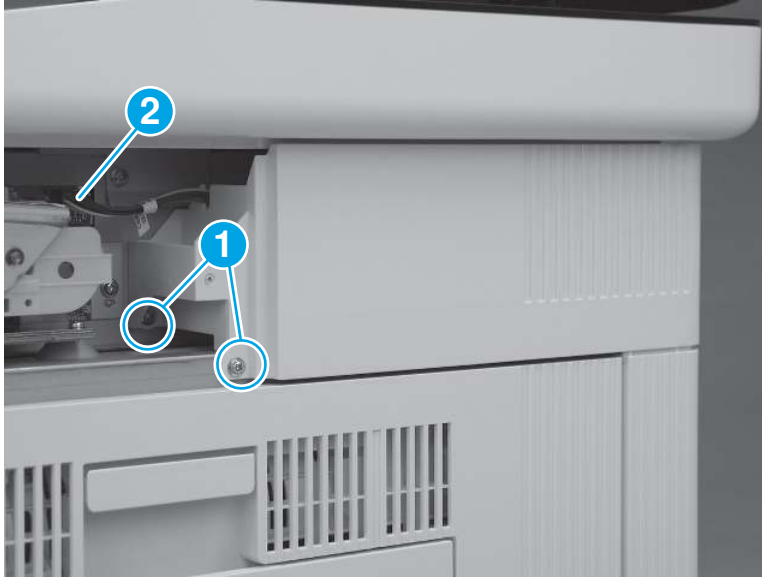
Follow these steps to remove the right upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the right side of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).

Figure 5-2581 Remove two screws and one connector



2. At the back of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

M577/M578z: Disconnect one connector (callout 2).


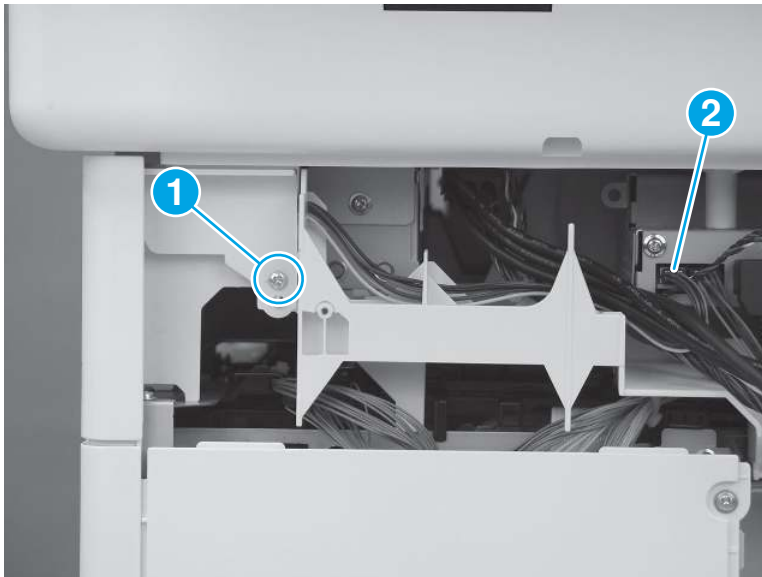
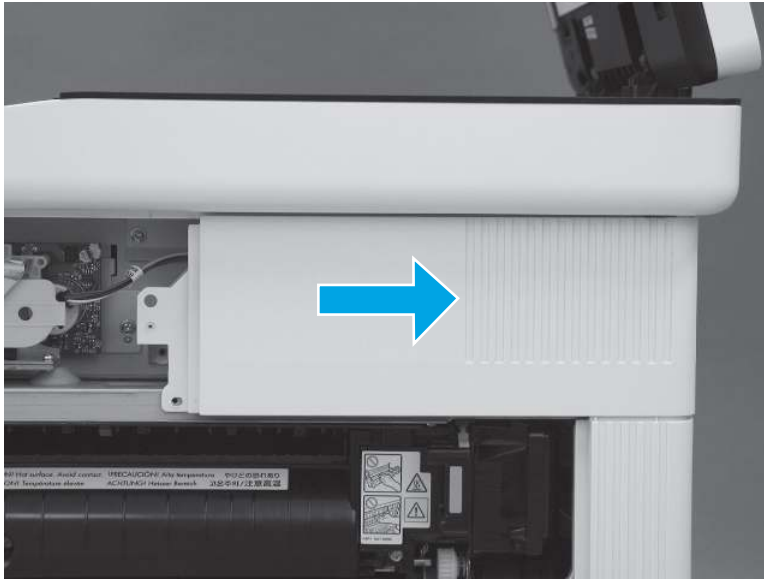
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is smaller than the screws removed in the previous step. When reinstalling the right upper cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2582 Remove one screw and connector



3. Slide the cover toward the back of the printer.

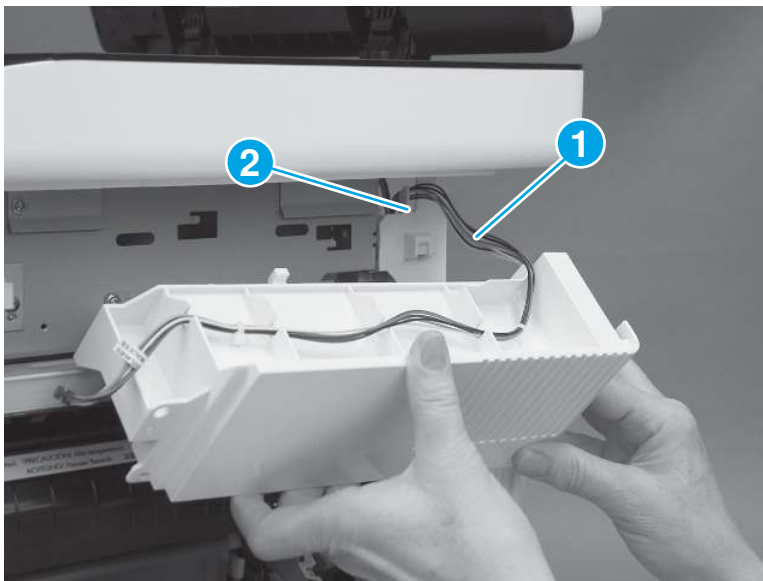
Figure 5-2583 Slide the cover



4. Lift the cover away from the printer to remove it.


M577/M578z: Release the cables (callout 1) through the slot (callout 2) in the printer.

Figure 5-2584 Remove the cover



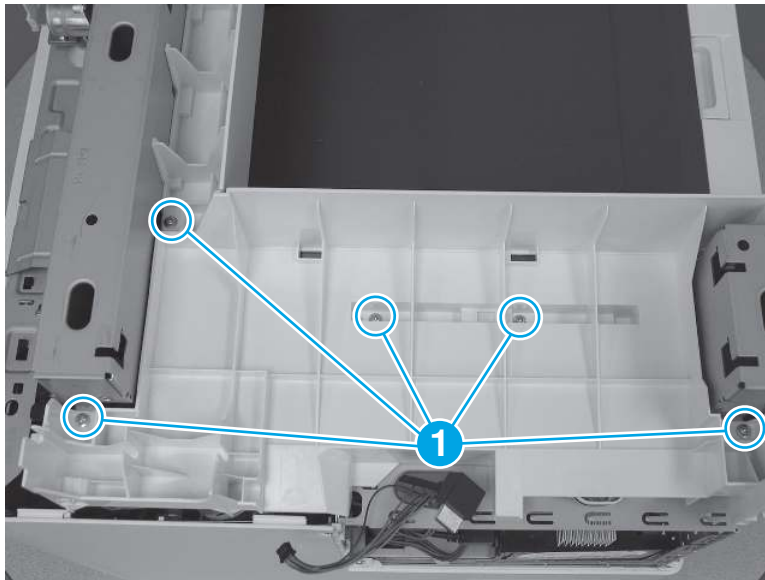
Remove the top rear cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top rear cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

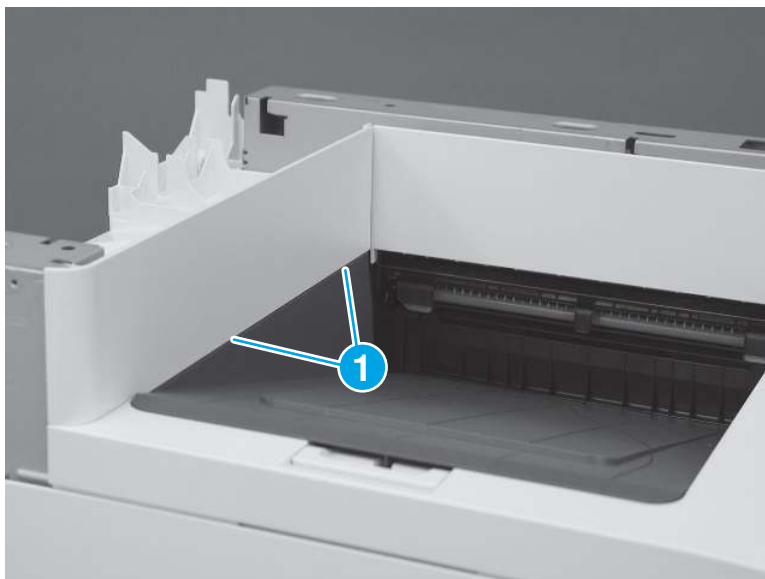
1. At the top of the printer, remove five screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2585 Remove five screws



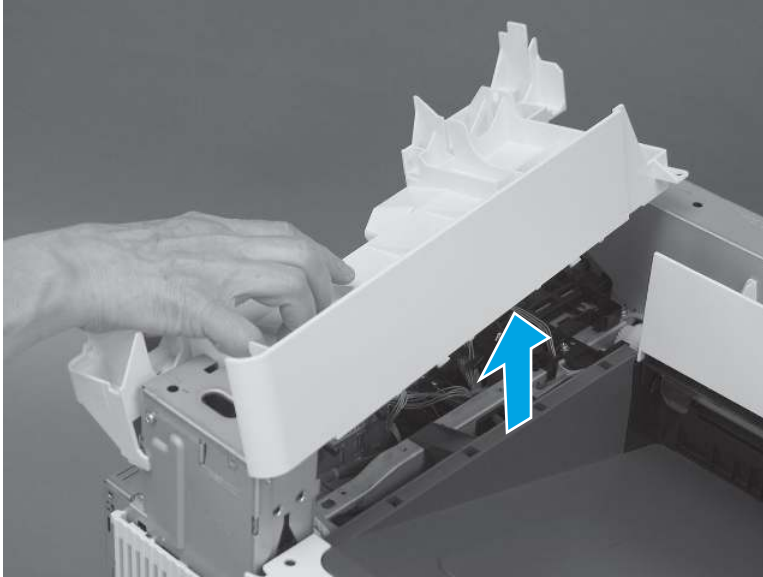
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the front edge of the cover.

Figure 5-2586 Release two tabs



3. Remove the top rear cover.

Figure 5-2587 Remove the cover



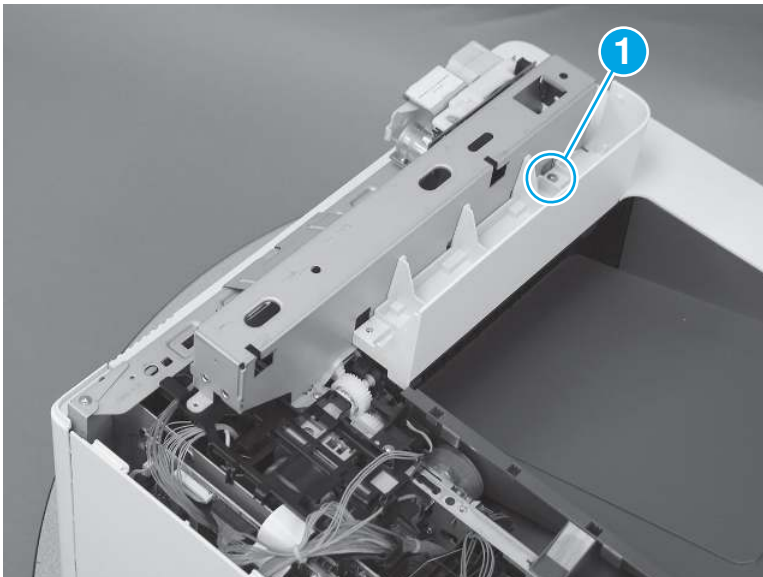
Remove the paper feed cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

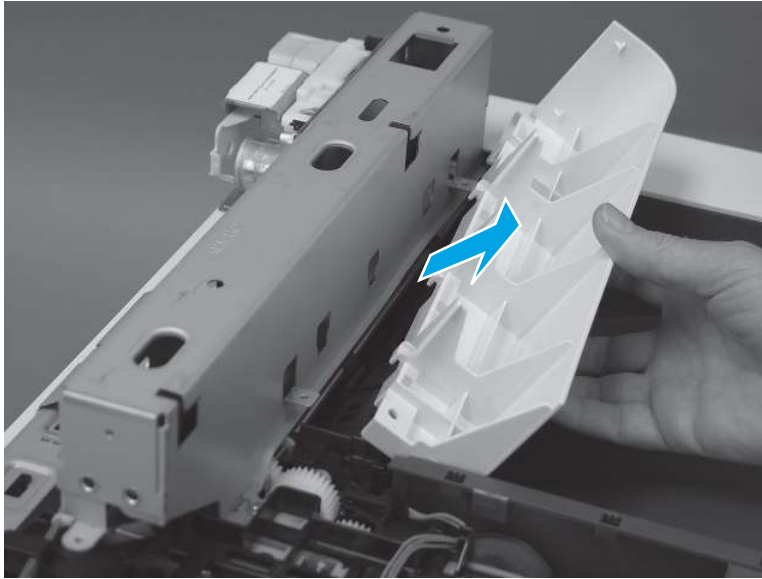
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2588 Remove one screw



2. Lift the cover up to remove it.

Figure 5-2589 Remove the cover



Remove the top cover (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

1. At the front of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).


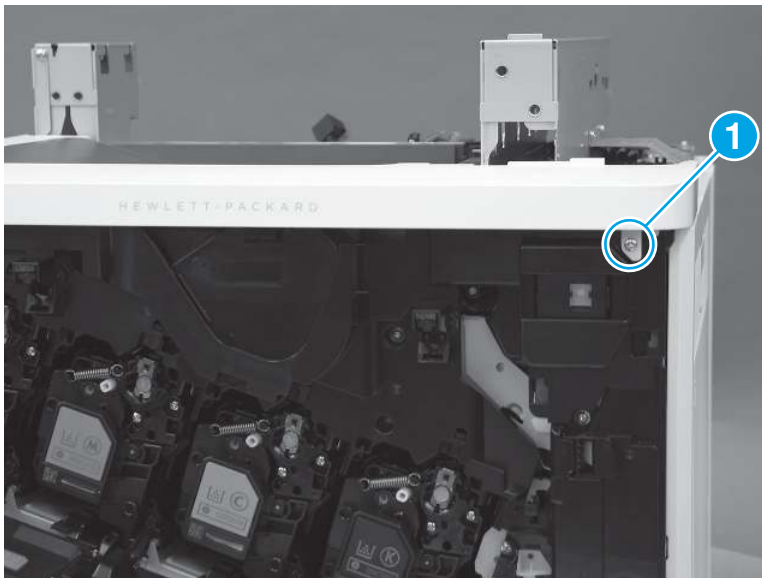
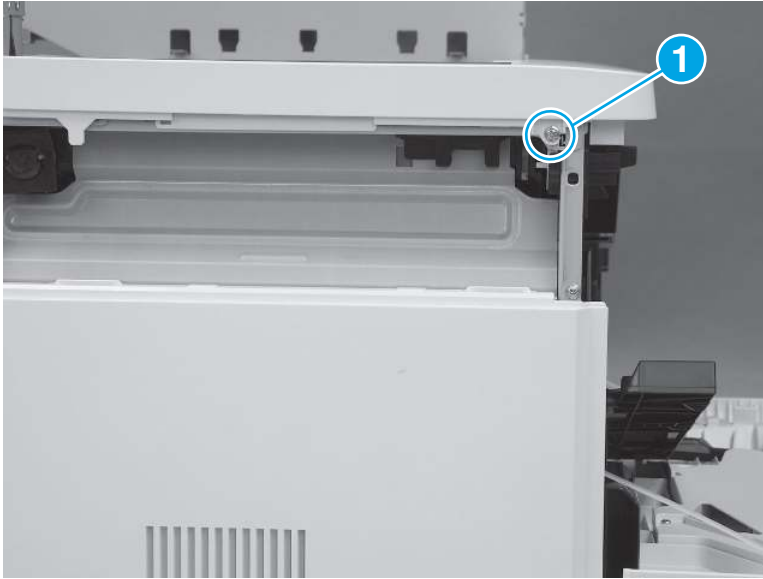
 **Reinstallation tip:** This screw is longer and a different type of screw than the screw removed in the next step. When reinstalling the top cover, make sure that this screw is installed in the correct position.

Figure 5-2590 Remove one screw



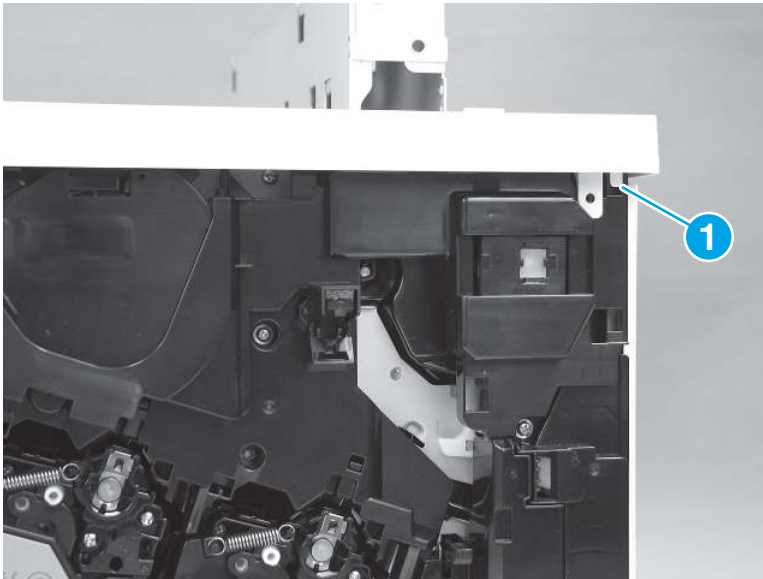
2. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2591 Remove one screw



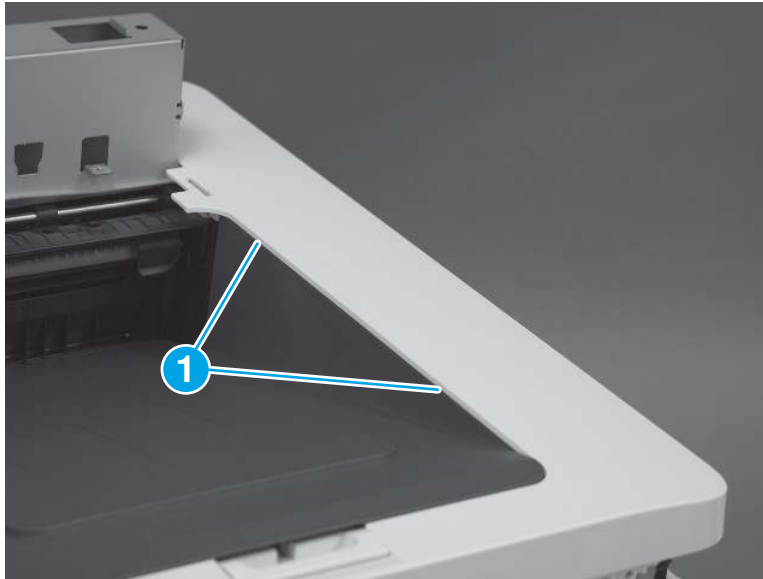
3. At the front of the printer, release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 5-2592 Release one tab




4. At the top of the printer, release two tabs (callout 1) next to the output bin, and then remove the top cover.

Figure 5-2593 Remove the cover



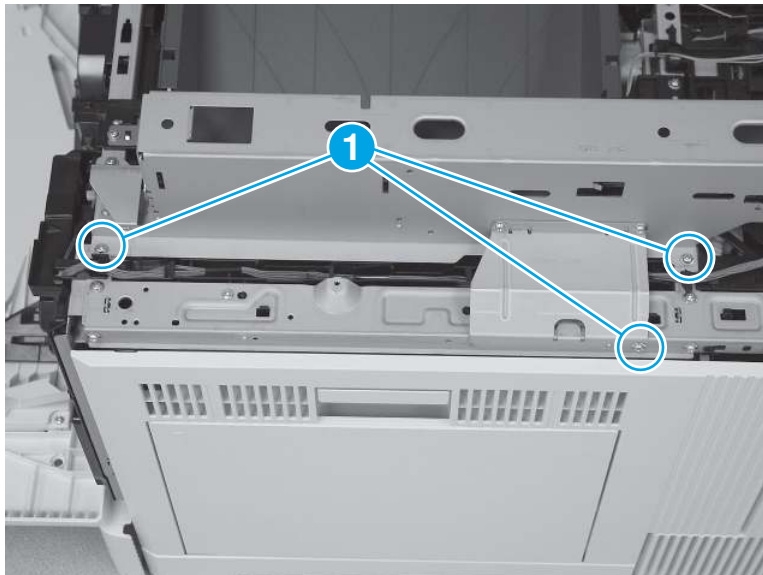
Remove the top bracket (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the top bracket.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for MFP models only.

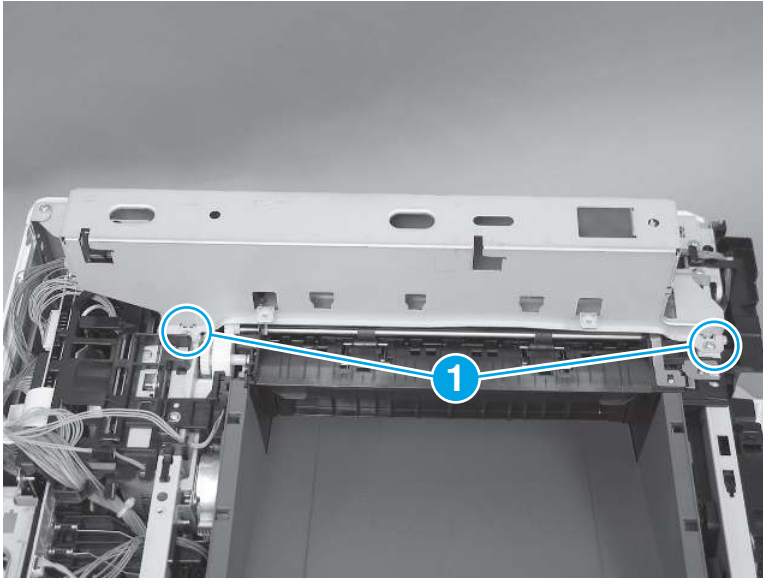
1. At the top of the printer, remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2594 Remove three screws



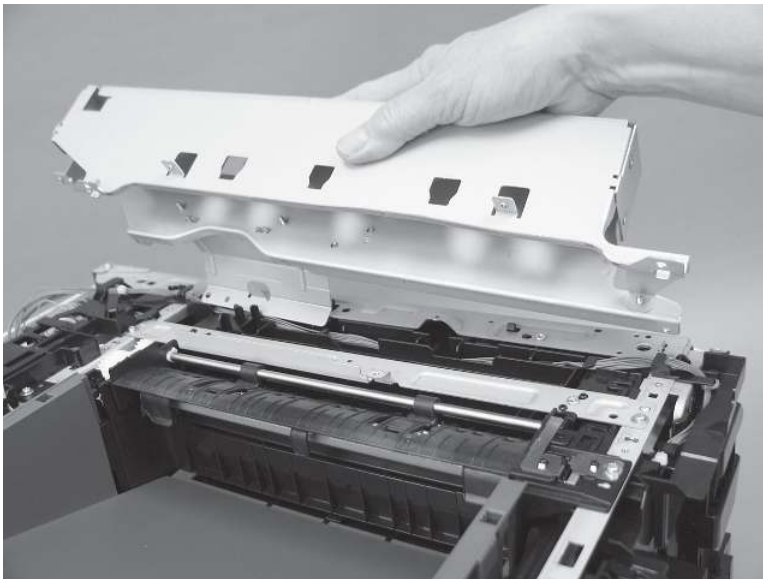
2. At the top of the printer, remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2595 Remove two screws



3. Lift the top bracket up to remove it.

Figure 5-2596 Remove the bracket



Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

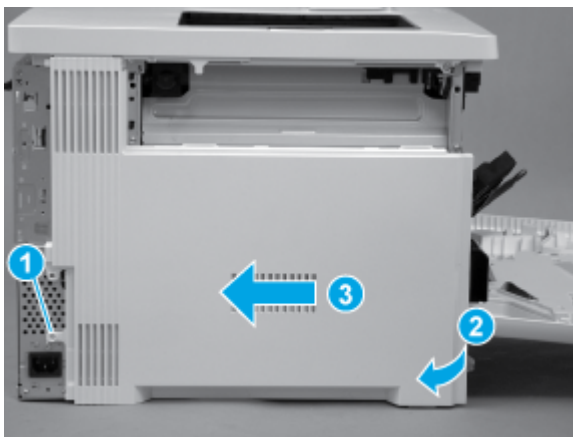
1. At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2597 Remove one screw



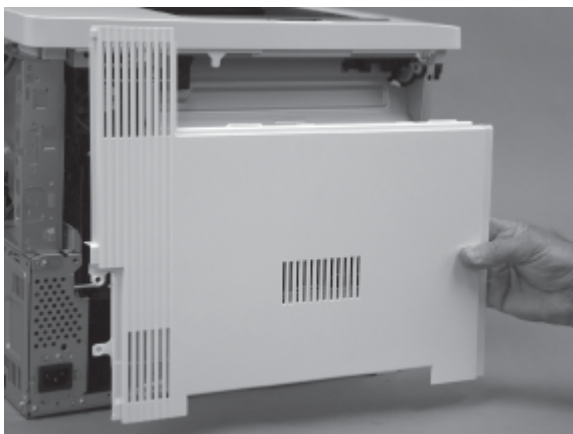
2. Release one tab (callout 1), rotate the front edge of the cover away from the printer (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 5-2598 Release the cover



3. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2599 Remove the cover



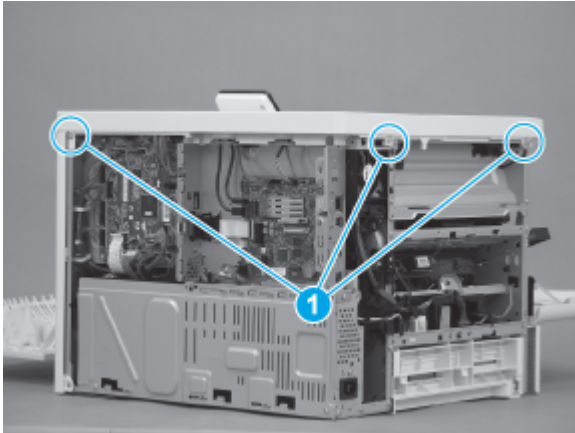
Remove the upper cover (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the upper cover.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for SFP models only.

1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2600 Remove three screws



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slightly separate the corner of the cover from the chassis.



 **NOTE:** This is a self-tapping plastic-thread screw. Make sure that this screw is used in this location when it is reinstalled.

Figure 5-2601 Remove one screw and release one tab



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up on the cover to release it.

 **IMPORTANT:** **M554 models:** Disconnect the control-panel flat cable at the formatter.


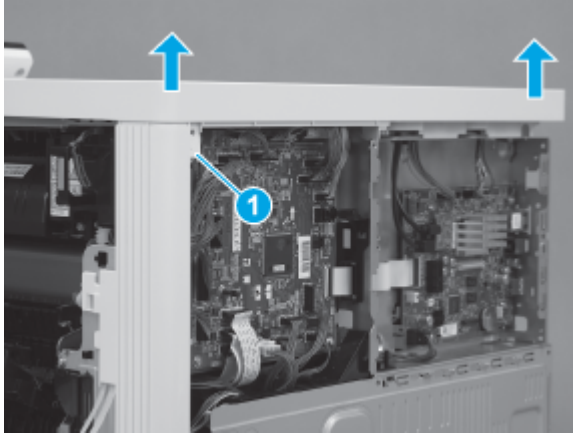
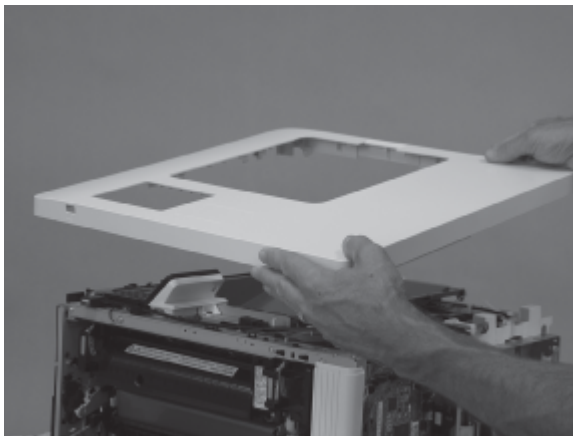
 **NOTE:** If the cover does not release, check for additional tabs by locating the triangles embossed in the cover at tab locations.

Figure 5-2602 Release the cover



4. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2603 Remove the cover

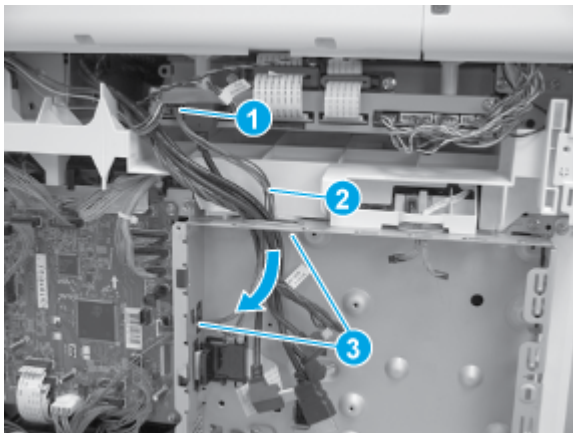


Remove the formatter case

Follow these steps to remove the formatter case.

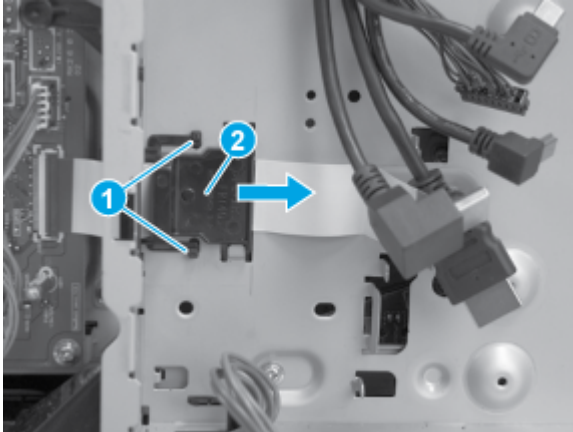
1. **MFP only:** Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness (callout 2) through two openings in the formatter case (callout 3).

Figure 5-2604 Disconnect one connector



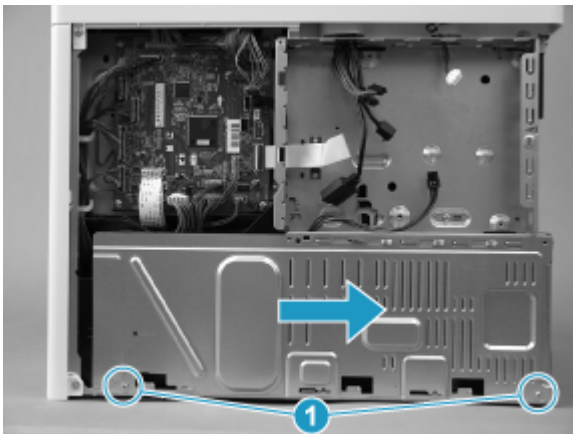
2. Release two tabs (callout 1) on the black plastic bracket. Hold the tabs in the released position, and then slide the bracket (callout 2) to the right to remove it from the formatter case.

Figure 5-2605 Remove the bracket



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the low-voltage power supply (LVPS) cover to the right to remove it.

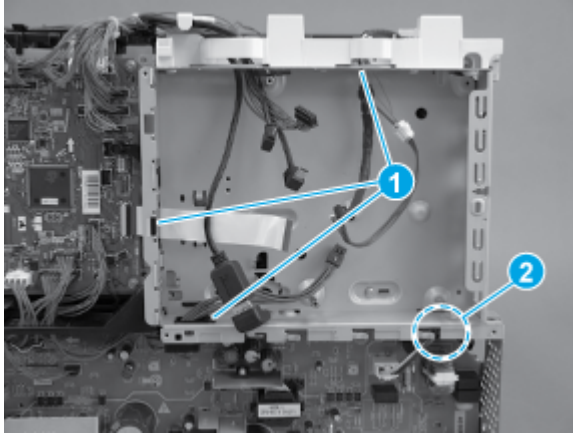
Figure 5-2606 Remove the LVPS cover



4. Pass two wire harnesses and one flat cable (callout 1) through the opening in the formatter case, and then release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

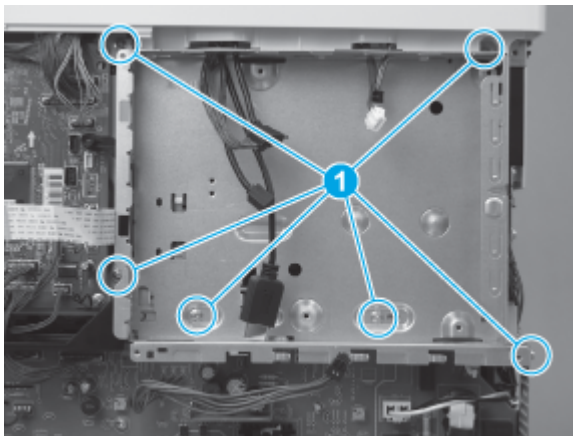
⚠ CAUTION: The flat cable might be attached to the formatter case with double-sided tape. Make sure that this tape is released, so that the flat cable is not damaged when the formatter case is removed.

Figure 5-2607 Release wire harnesses and flat cable



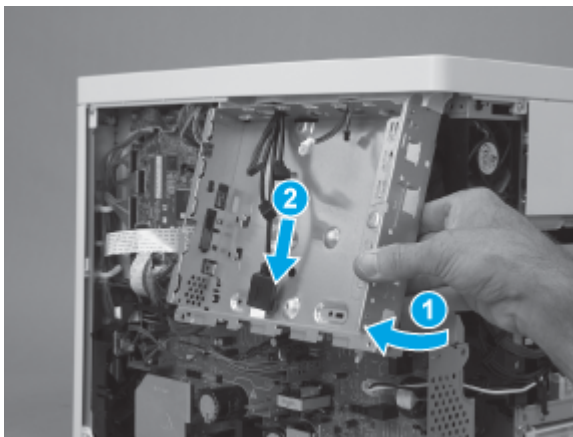
5. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2608 Remove six screws



6. Rotate the bottom of the formatter case away from the printer (callout 1), and then pull it down (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2609 Release the formatter case



7. Pass the wire harnesses through the opening in the formatter case to remove it.


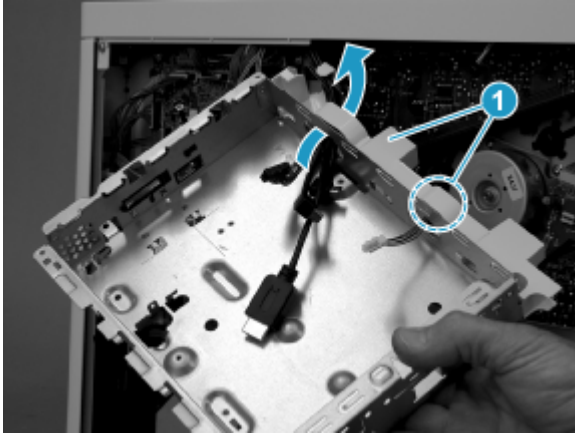

 **IMPORTANT:** If the formatter case is removed so that it can be replaced, make sure to transfer the memory PCA (island of data) and plastic bracket (callout 1) to the replacement case.

Figure 5-2610 Remove the formatter case



Remove the right rear cover

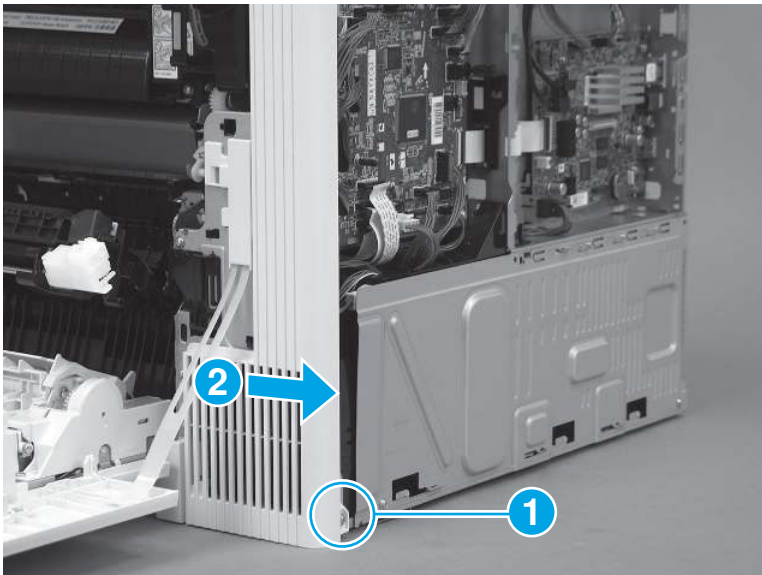
Follow these steps to remove the right rear cover.

 **NOTE:** The figures in this topic show a SFP model. However, the procedure is correct for an MFP.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the cover toward the rear of the printer (callout 2) to release it.

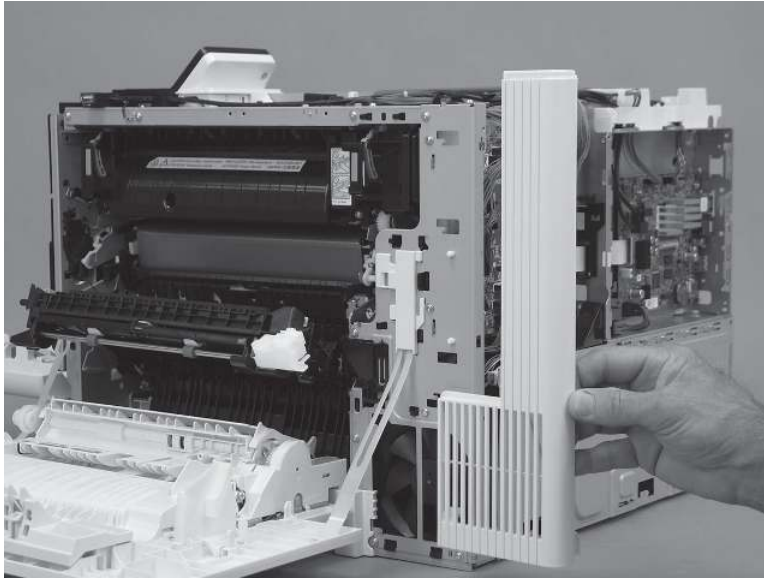
 **TIP:** If the right door is closed, open it now.

Figure 5-2611 Release the cover



2. Remove the cover.

Figure 5-2612 Remove the cover

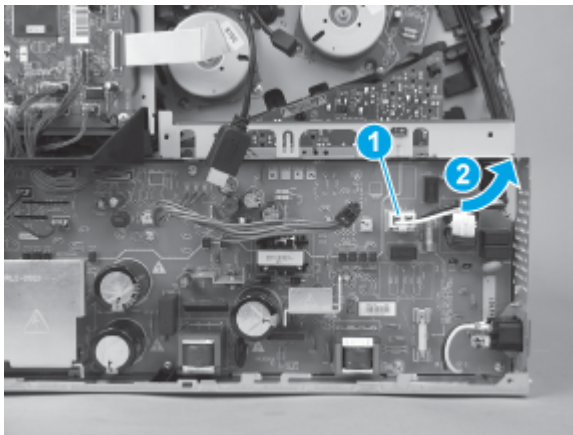


Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

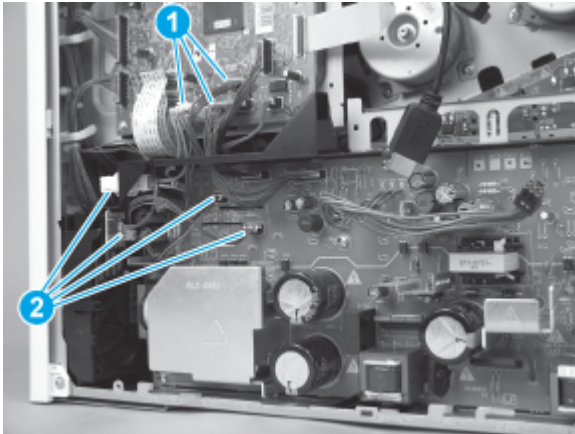
1. Disconnect one wire harness (callout 1), and then pass the wire harness through the opening (callout 2) in the chassis.

Figure 5-2613 Disconnect one wire harness



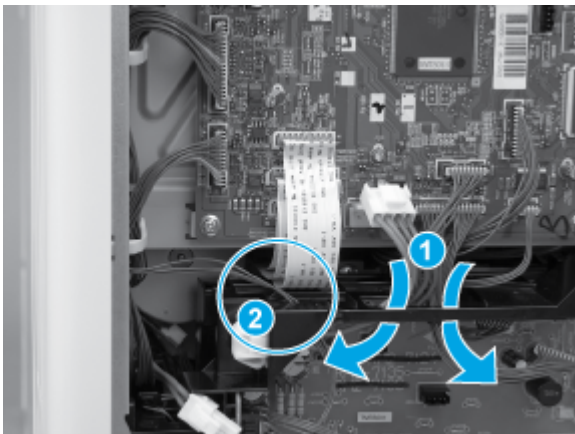
2. Disconnect three connectors on the DC controller (callout 1), and then disconnect four connectors (callout 2) on the LVPS.

Figure 5-2614 Disconnect seven connectors



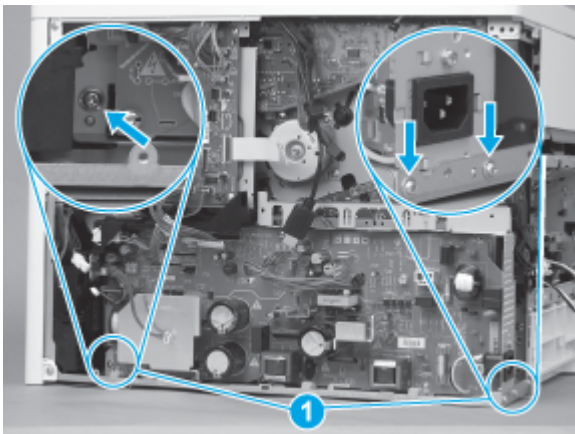
3. Pass the wire harnesses from the DC controller to the LVPS through the opening in the chassis (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-2615 Pass the wire harnesses through the opening



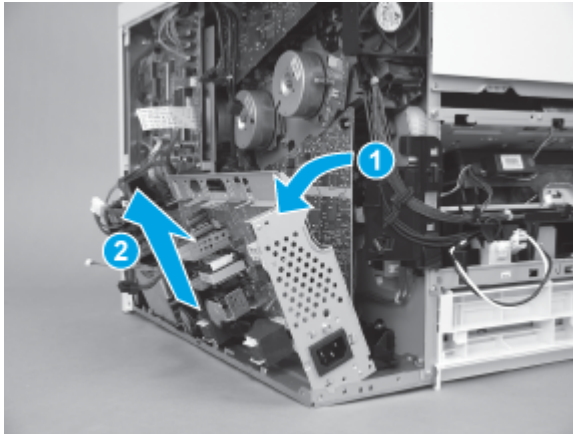
4. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2616 Remove three screws



5. Rotate the top of the LVPS away from the printer (callout 1), and then slide it up and out (callout 2) of the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2617 Remove the LVPS

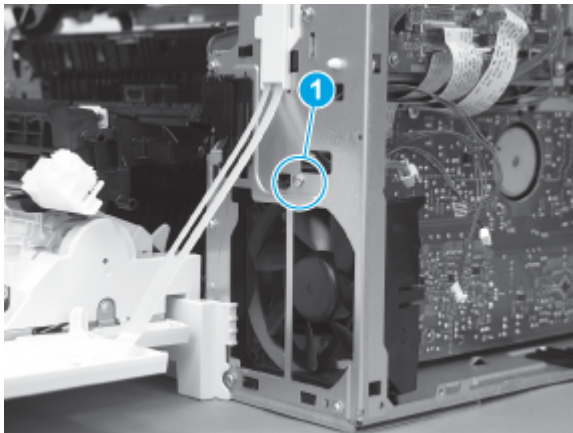


Remove the power supply fan (FM1)

Follow these steps to remove the power supply fan.

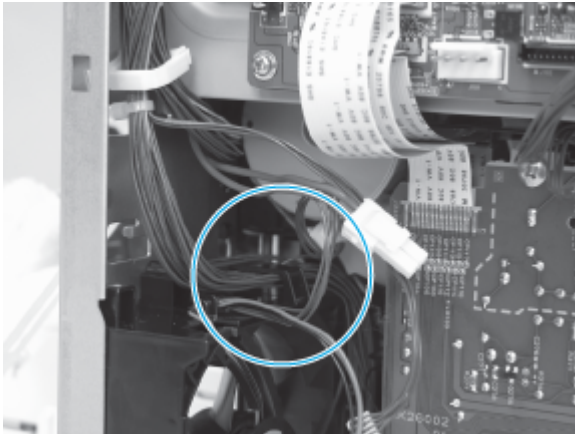
1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2618 Remove one screw



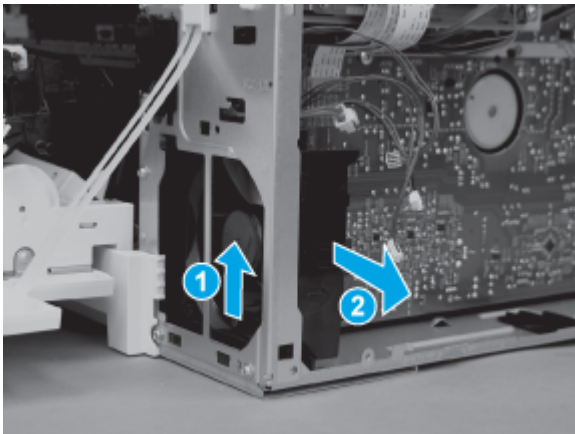
2. Release the wire harnesses from the retainer on the top of the fan bracket.

Figure 5-2619 Release the wire harnesses



3. Lift the fan up (callout 1), and then slide it out of the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2620 Remove the fan

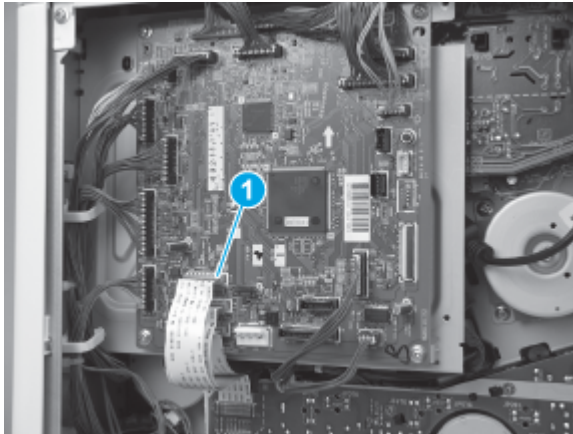


Remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply D (HVPSD).

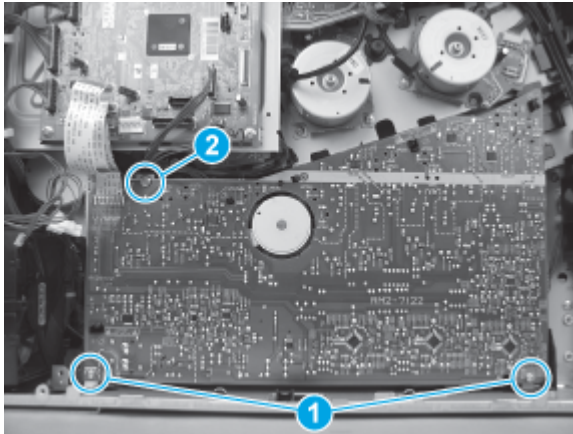
1. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1) on the DC controller.

Figure 5-2621 Disconnect one flat cable



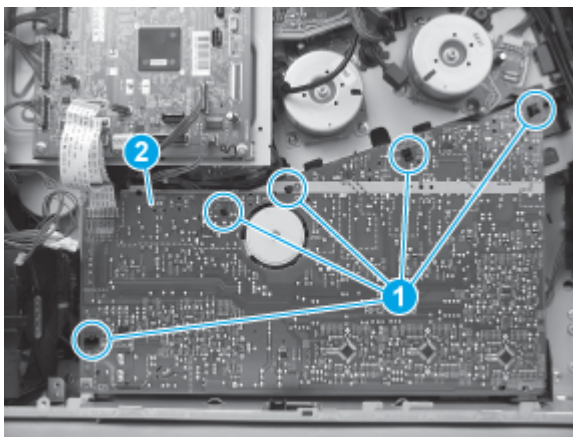
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove one self tapping screw (callout 2) on the HVPSD.

Figure 5-2622 Remove three screws



3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the HVPSD (callout 2).

Figure 5-2623 Remove the HVPSD

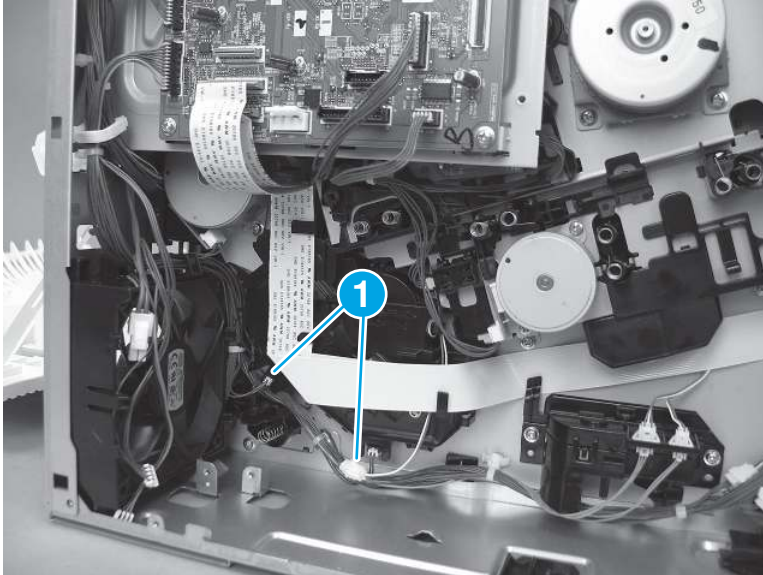


Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

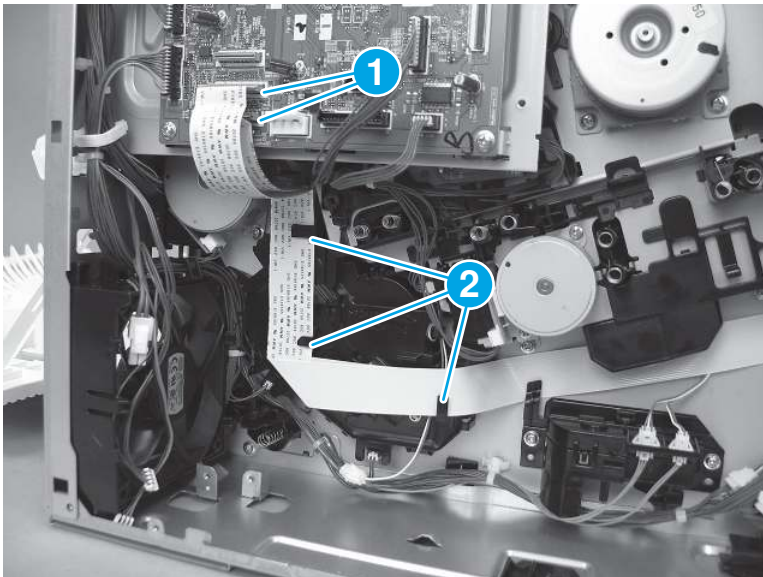
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-2624 Disconnect two connectors



2. Disconnect two flat cables (callout 1), and then release them from the retainers (callout 2).

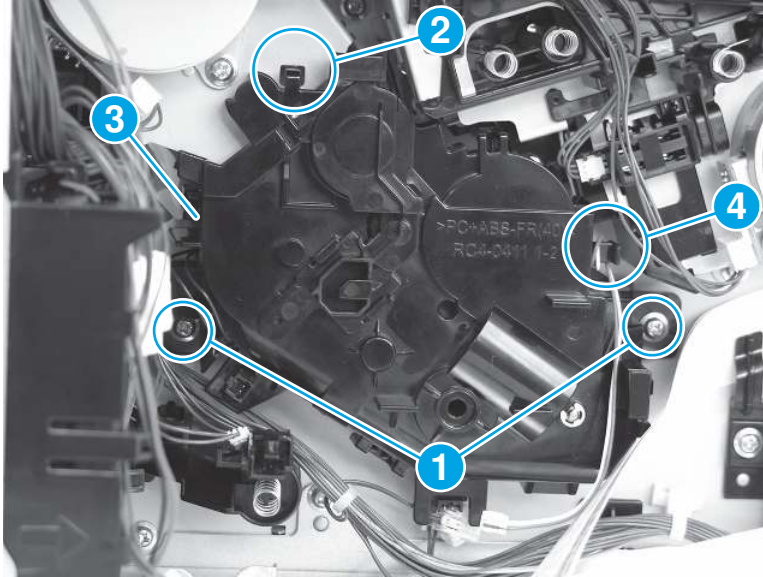
Figure 5-2625 Disconnect two flat cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

 **NOTE:** Release one wire harness from the retainer (callout 4) as the assembly is removed.

Figure 5-2626 Remove the assembly



Remove the DC controller (DCC) and sheet-metal bracket

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller and sheet-metal bracket together.



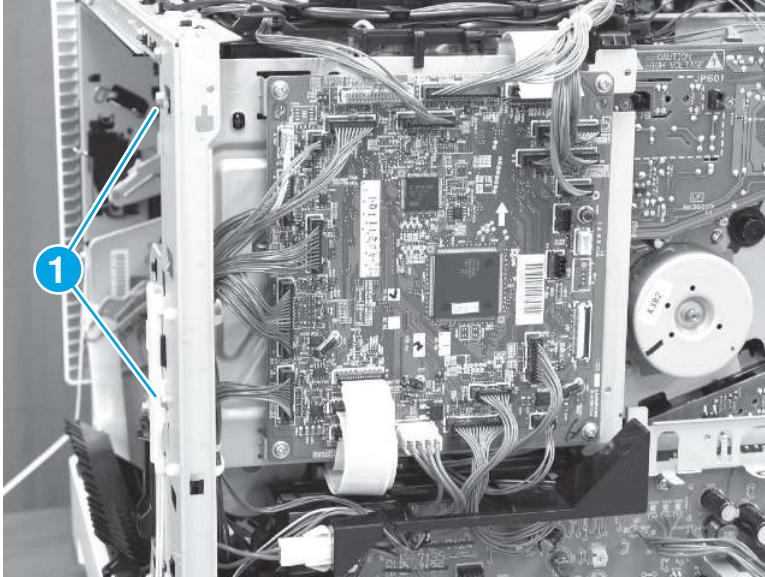
NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors, and then remove two screws (callout 1).

Empty DCC connectors

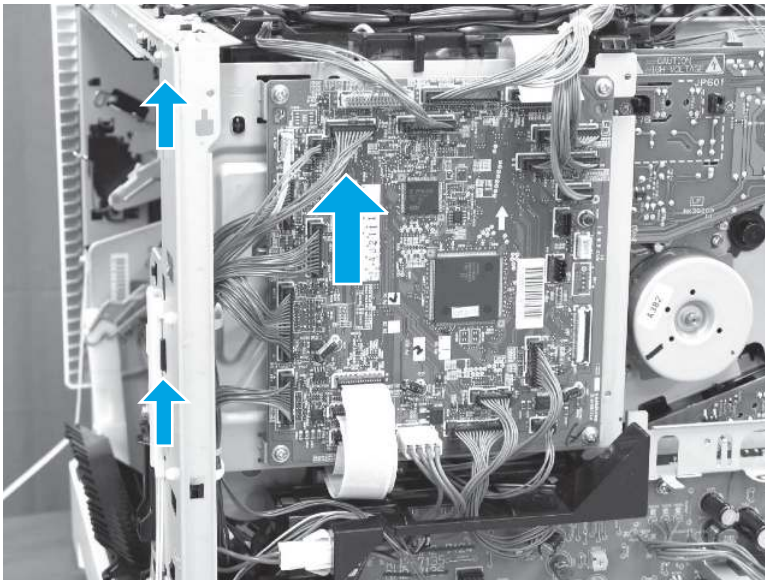
- J140
- J141
- J143

Figure 5-2627 Remove two screws



2. Lift up on the DC controller and sheet-metal plate to remove it.

Figure 5-2628 Remove the plate



Remove the high-voltage power supply T (HVPST)

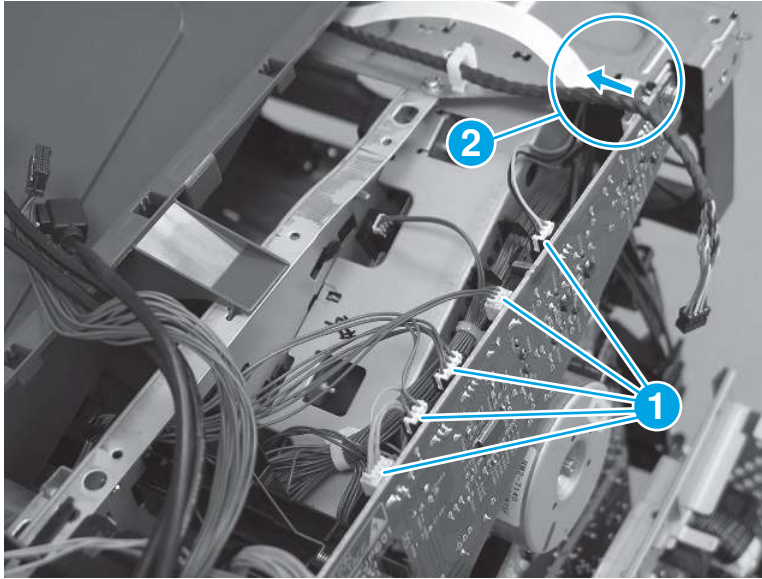
Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply T.



NOTE:  ESD sensitive part.

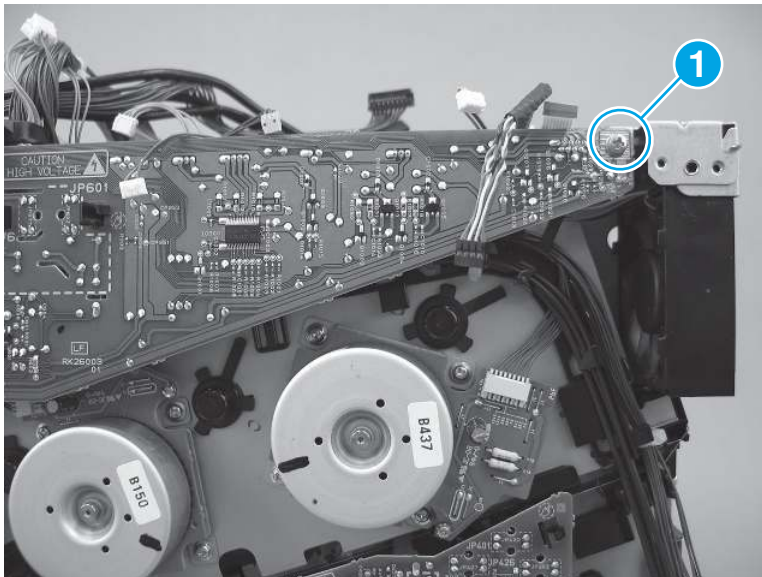
1. Disconnect five connectors (callout 1), and then disconnect one flat cable (callout 2).

Figure 5-2629 Disconnect five connectors and one flat cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1).

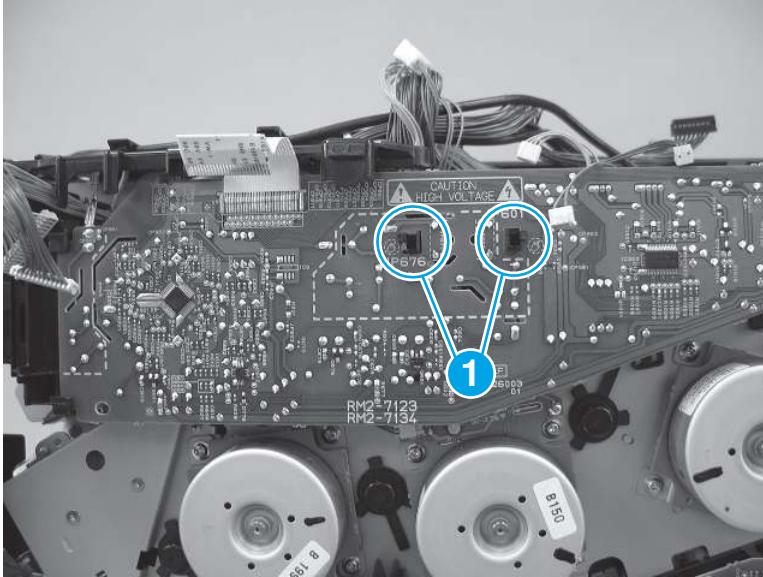
Figure 5-2630 Remove one screw



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then separate the HVPST from the printer.

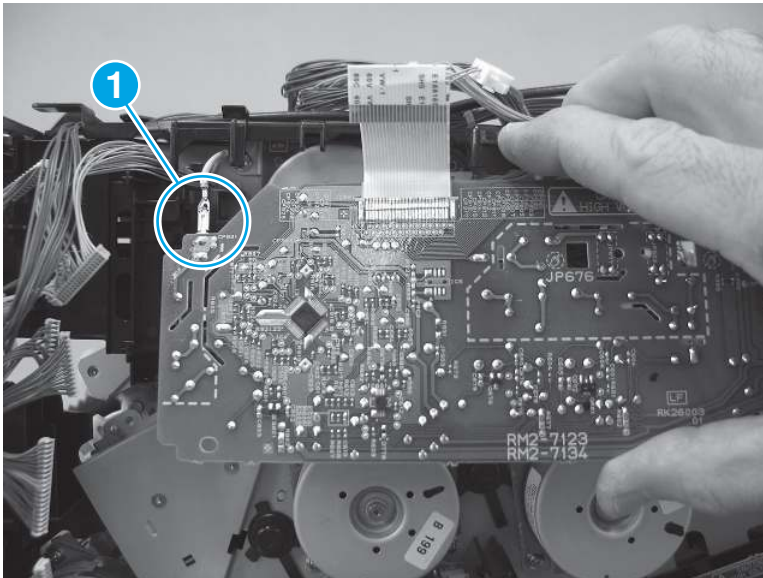
⚠ CAUTION: Do not attempt to completely remove the HVPST. It is still connected to the printer by ground wire harness.

Figure 5-2631 Release the HVPST



4. Release one ground wire connector (callout 1), and then remove the HVPST.

Figure 5-2632 Remove the HVPST



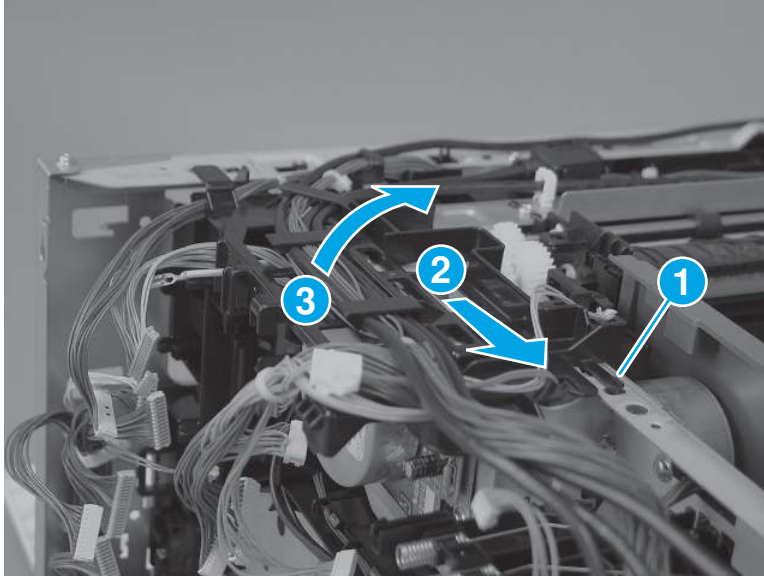
Remove the fuser drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive assembly.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the guide to release it (callout 2), and then rotate the guide up and away from the chassis to move it out of the way (callout 3).

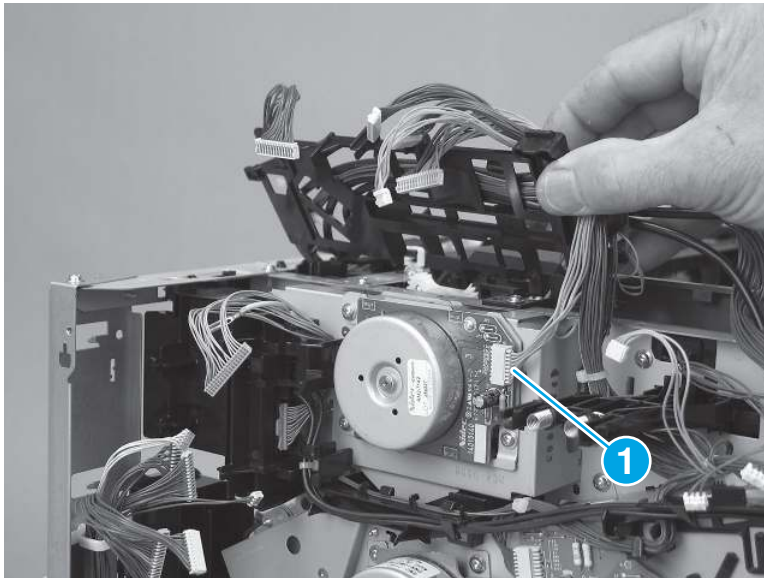
⚠ CAUTION: One wire harnesses in the guide is still attached to the fuser motor. Do not attempt to completely remove the guide.

Figure 5-2633 Move the guide out of the way



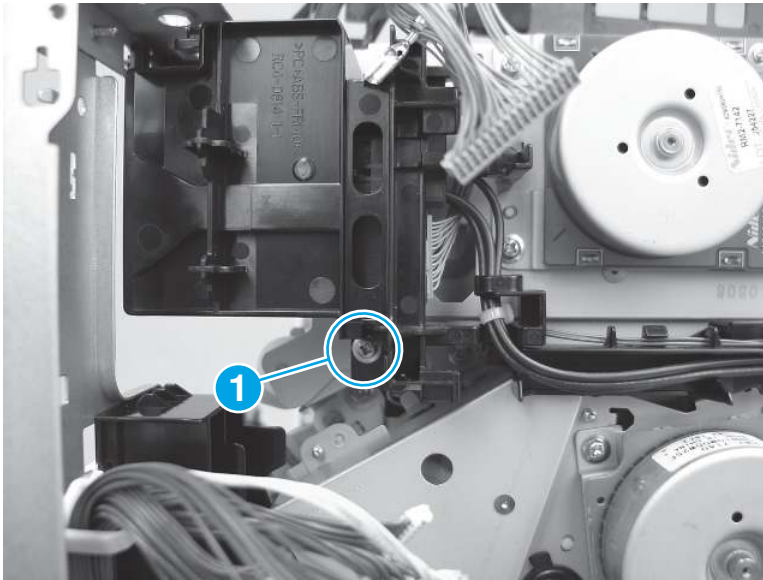
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2634 Disconnect one connector



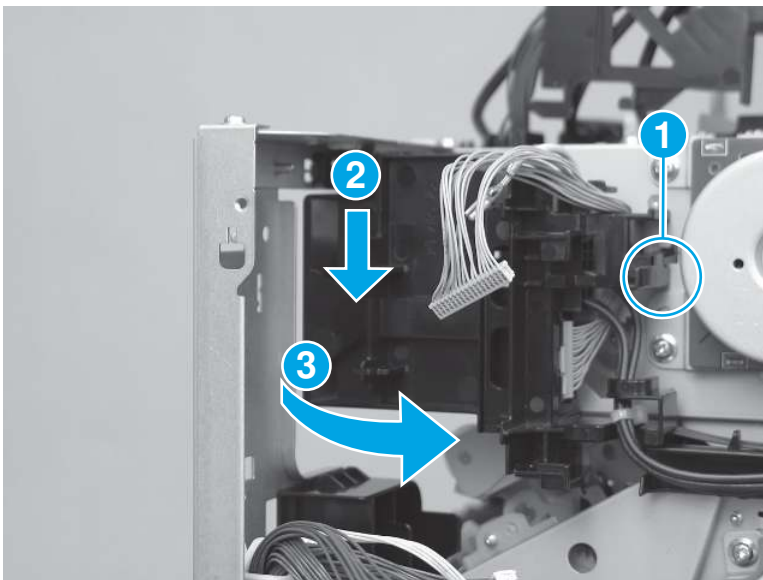
3. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2635 Remove one screw



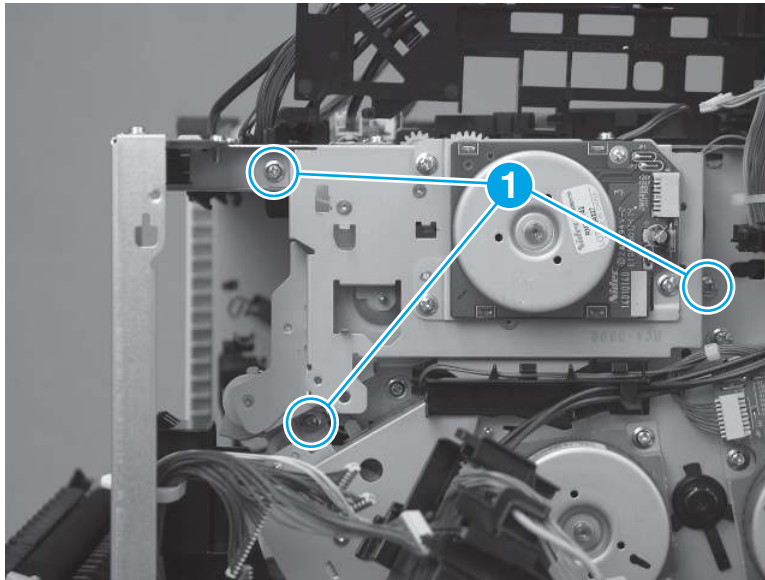
4. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the guide down to release it (callout 2), and then rotate the guide away from the chassis to remove it (callout 3).

Figure 5-2636 Remove the guide



5. Remove three screws (callout 1).

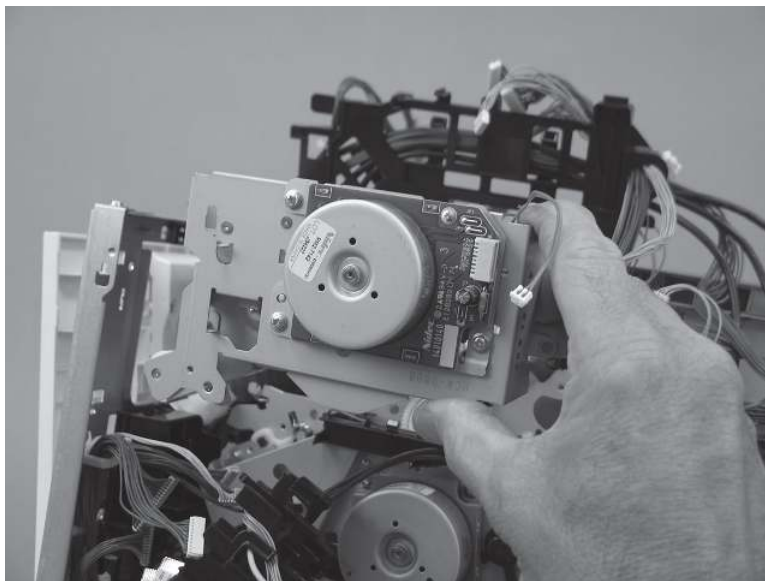
Figure 5-2637 Remove three screws



6. Remove the assembly.

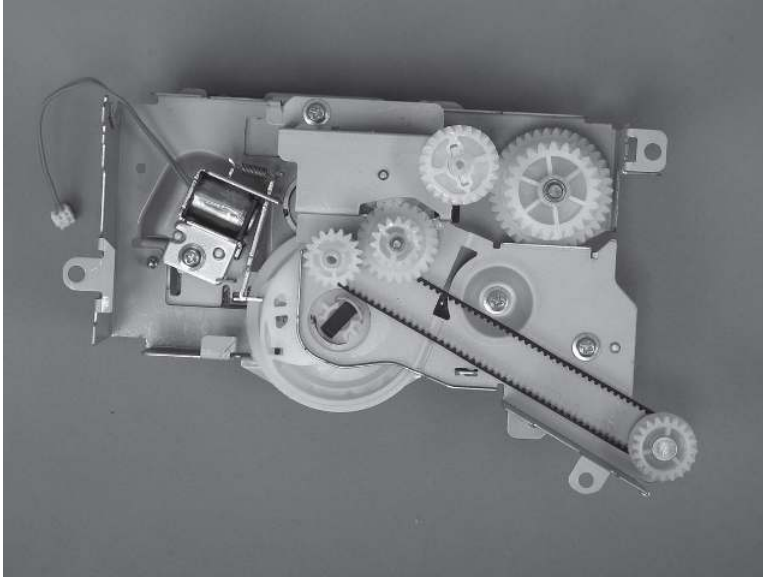
⚠ CAUTION: Two gears on the back side of the assembly are not captive. Handle the assembly carefully.

Figure 5-2638 Remove the assembly



7. **Optional step:** Two gears (callout 1) on the back side of the assembly are not captive. If the gears are dislodged, install them as shown.

Figure 5-2639 Remove the assembly



Remove the main-drive assembly

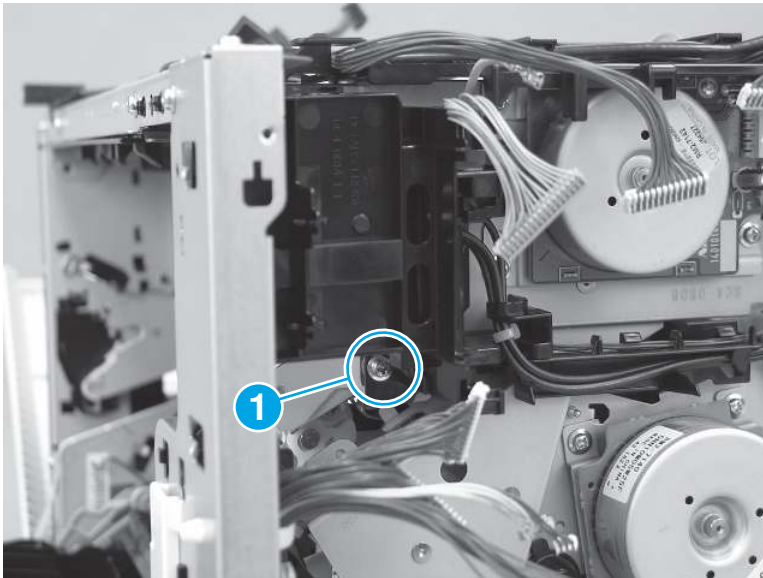
Follow these steps to remove the main-drive assembly.

-  **IMPORTANT:** If the toner cartridges have not already been removed prior to servicing the product, remove them now.

The toner cartridges are sensitive to strong light. Set them aside and cover them with paper to protect them.

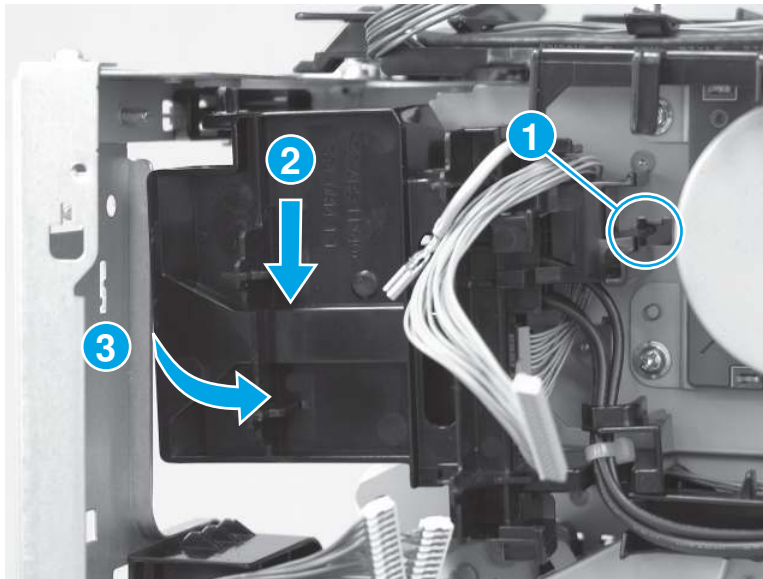
1. At the rear side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2640 Remove one screw



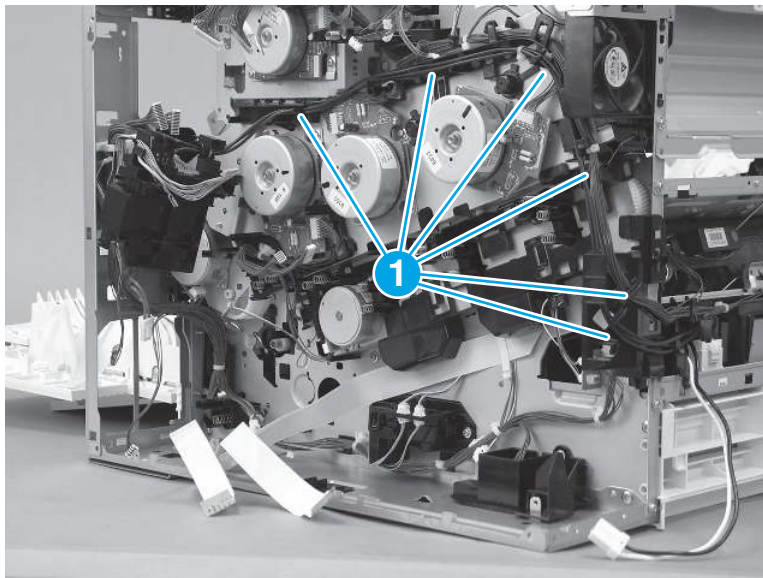
2. Release one tab (callout 1), push down on the cover (callout 2), and then rotate the cover away (callout 3) from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2641 Remove the cover



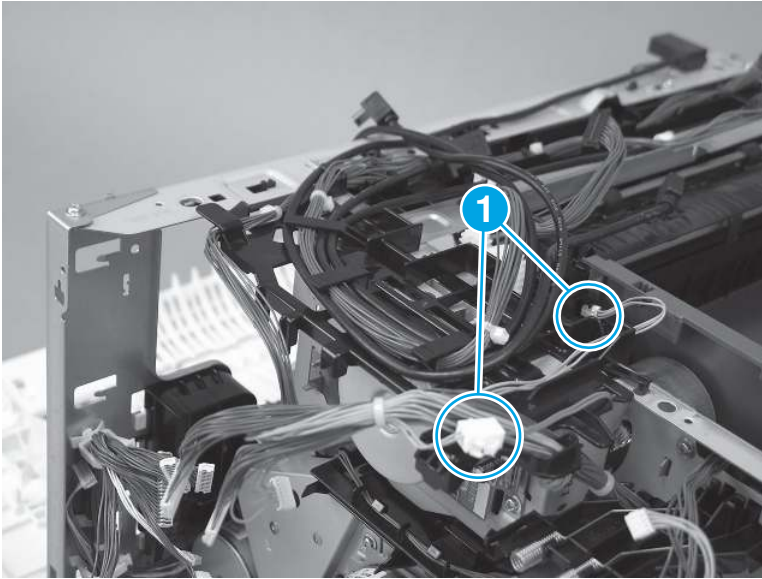
3. Release the wire harnesses from the guides (callout 1).

Figure 5-2642 Release the wire harnesses



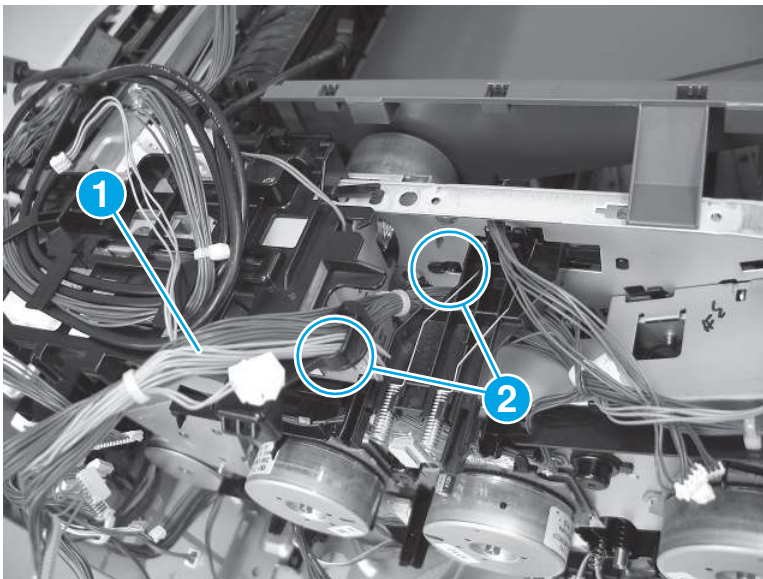
4. At the top of the printer, disconnect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-2643 Disconnect two connectors



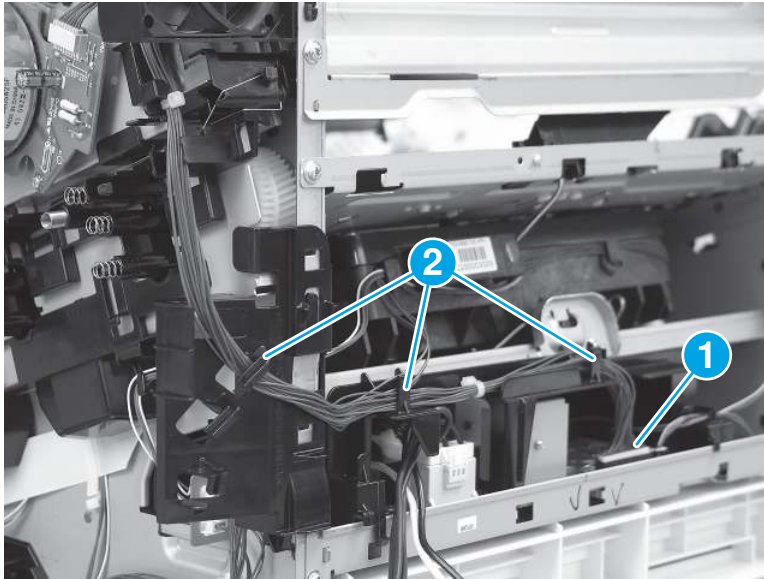
5. Release the wire harnesses (callout 1) from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 5-2644 Release the wire harnesses



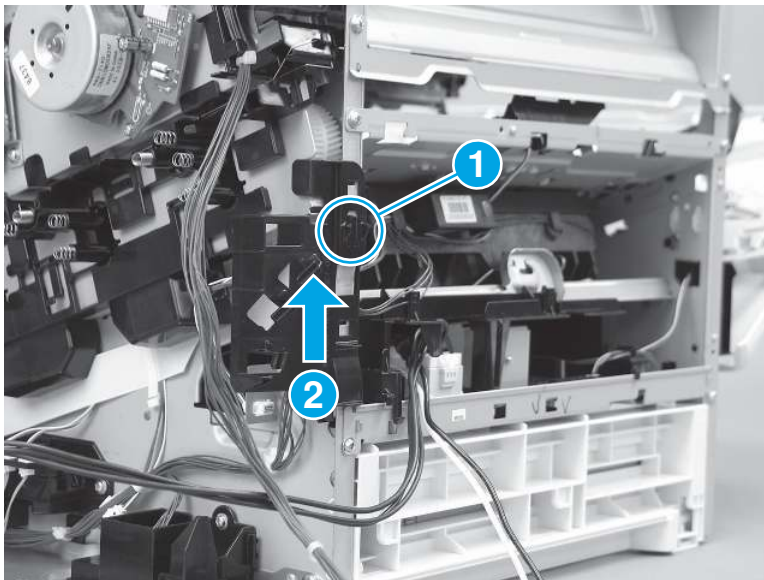
6. At the left side of the printer, disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 5-2645 Disconnect one connector



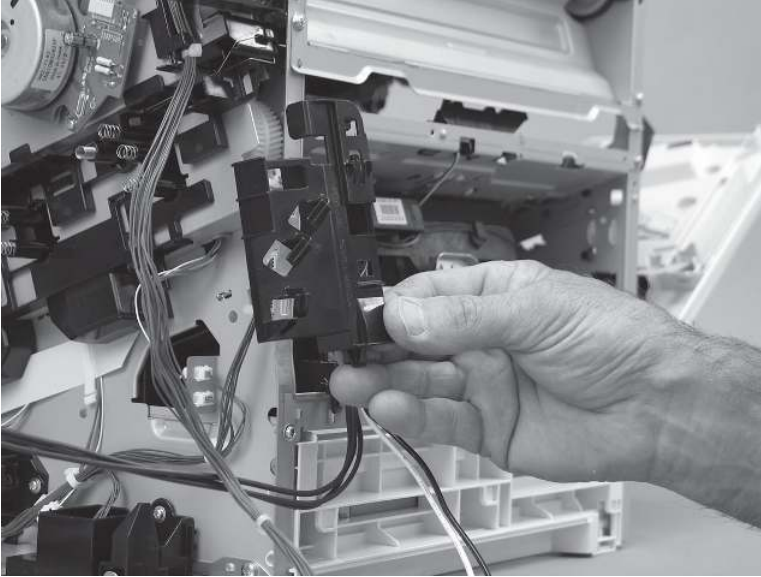
7. Release one tab (callout 1), and then push up on the guide (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2646 Release the guide



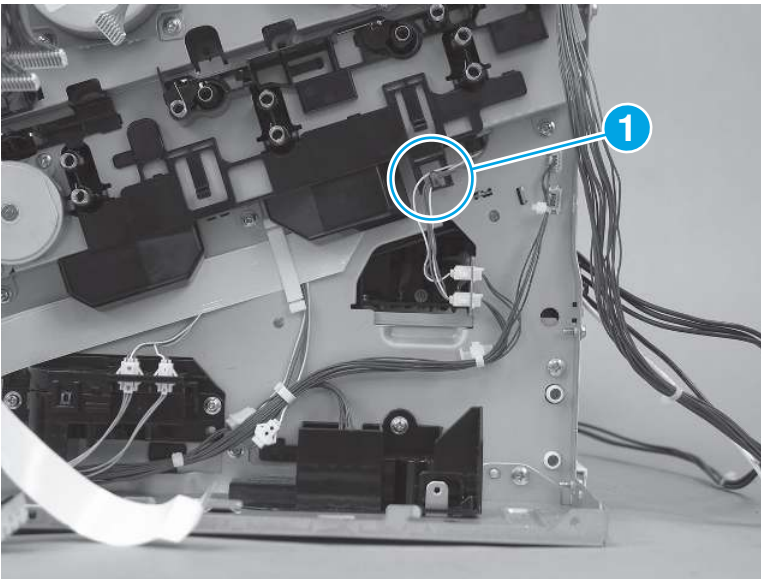
8. Remove the guide.

Figure 5-2647 Remove the guide



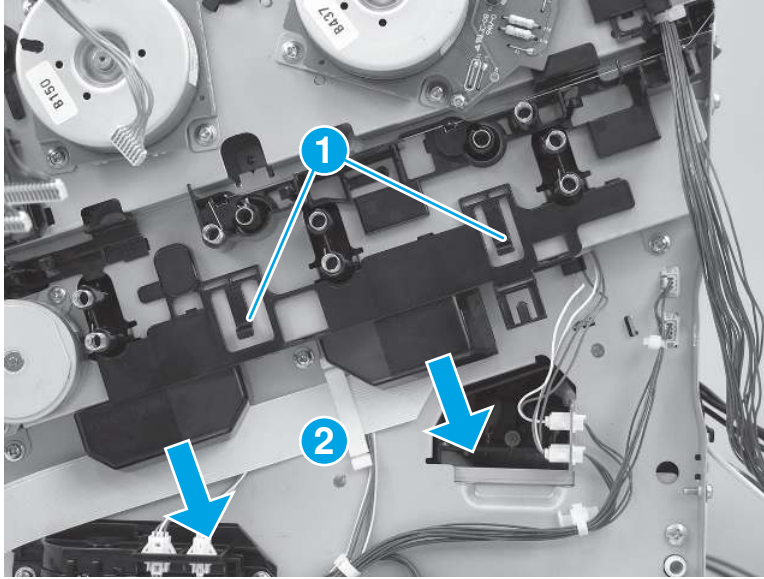
9. Release one wire harness (callout 1) from the retainer.

Figure 5-2648 Release one wire harness



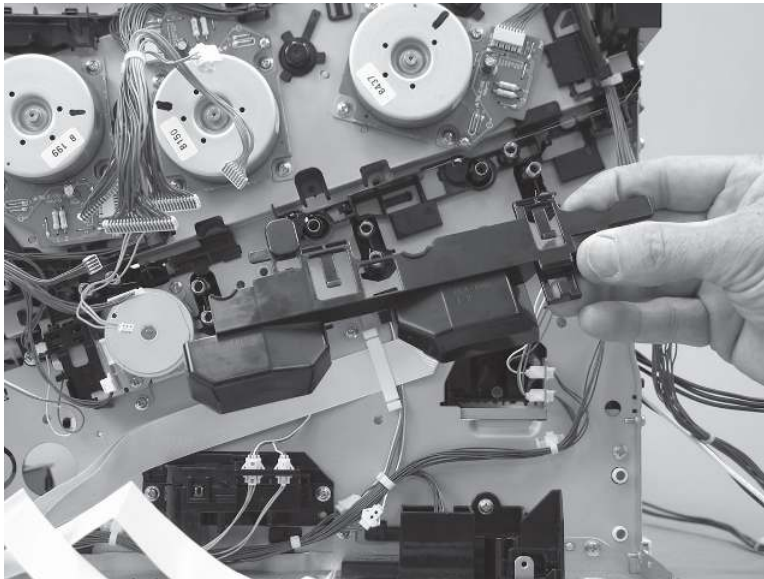
10. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then pull down on the guide (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2649 Release the guide



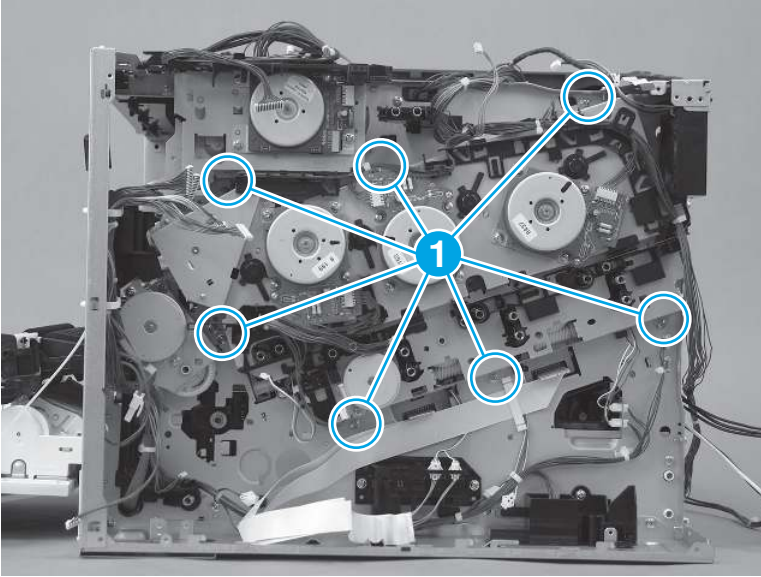
11. Remove the guide.

Figure 5-2650 Remove the guide



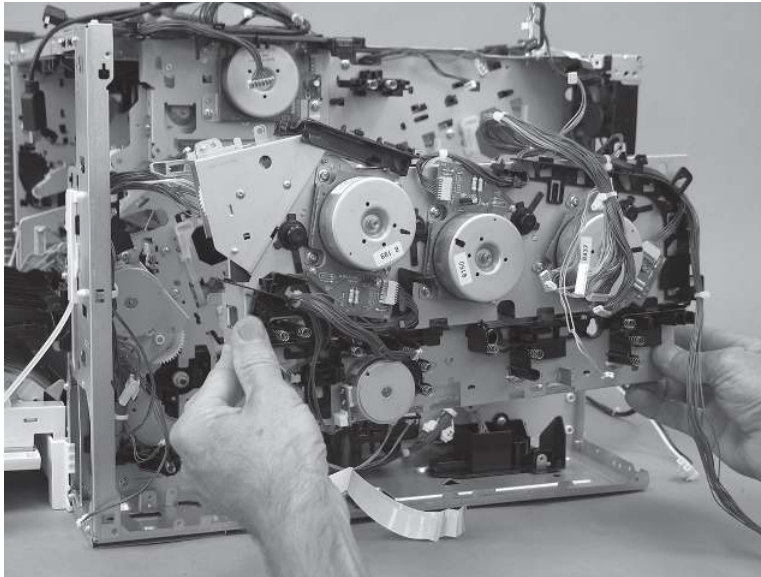
12. Remove seven screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2651 Remove seven screws



13. Carefully remove the main-drive assembly.

Figure 5-2652 Remove the main-drive assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the main-drive assembly

Follow these steps to install the main-drive assembly.

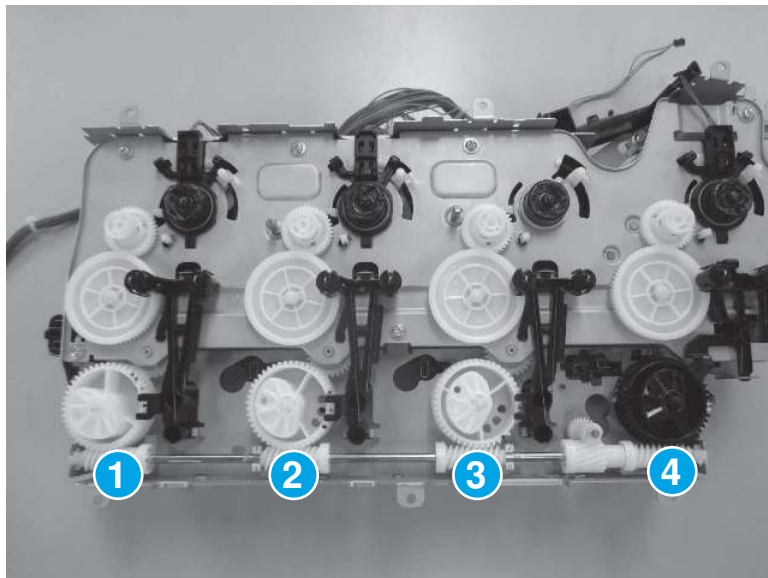
CAUTION:  When handling the drive assembly, take care not to wipe any of the grease off of the gears on the back side of the assembly.

1. Check the main drive cam alignment.

The cams on the back side of the assembly must be correctly aligned before the replacement assembly is installed.

- a. Locate the 4 gears and cams (callouts 1-4) on the back side of the assembly.

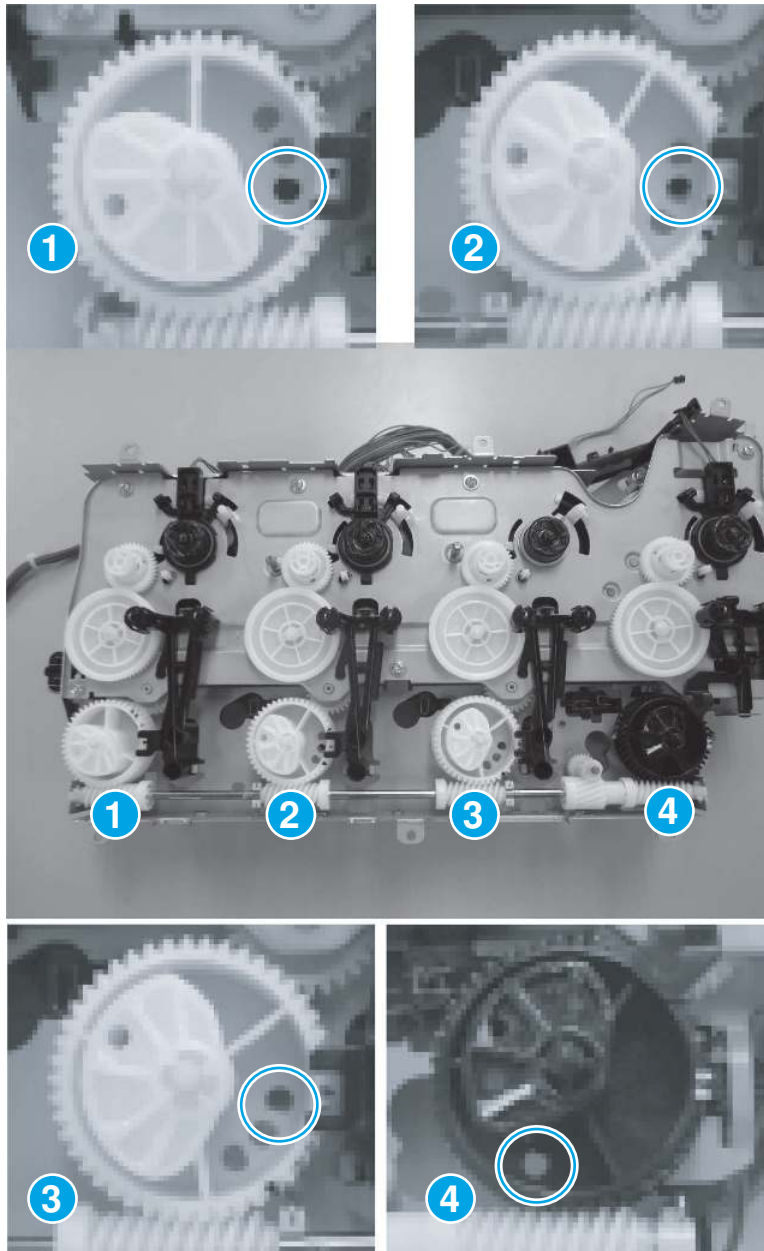
Figure 5-2653 Main drive gear and cam locations



- b. Verify the alignment of the holes in the 4 gears with the holes in the assembly chassis as shown.

 **TIP:** Rotate the shaft under the gears to change the alignment if necessary.

Figure 5-2654 Main drive gear and cam locations



2. Before proceeding, make sure that the blue ITB drive handle is in the locked (callout 1; pushed in) position on the replacement main-drive assembly.


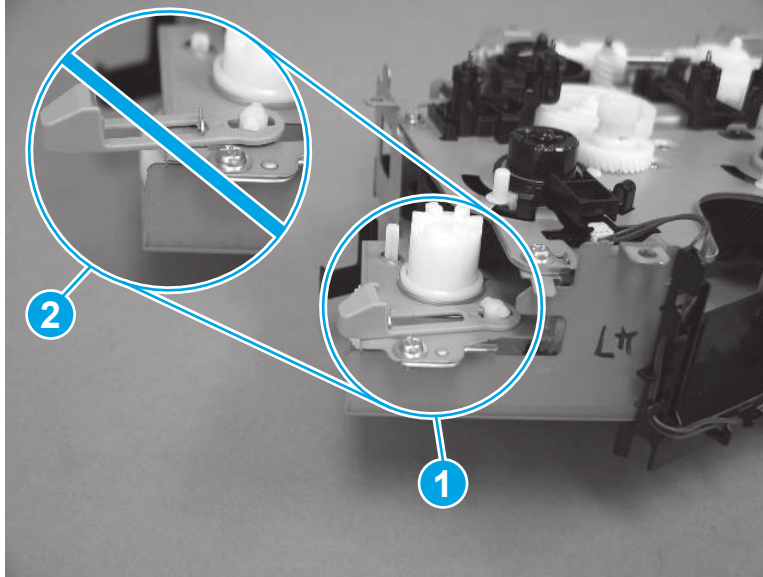
 **NOTE:** If the drive handle is in the unlocked (callout 2; pulled out) position it will be difficult to install assembly.

Figure 5-2655 Check the blue ITB drive handle



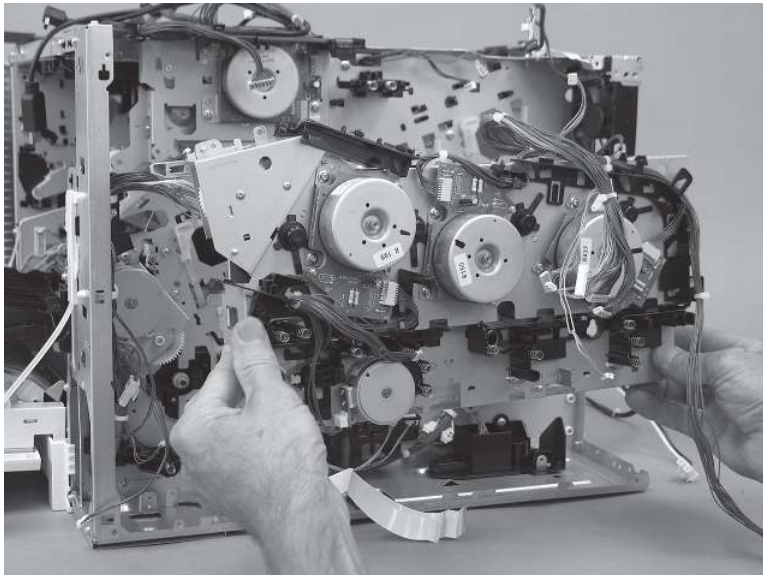
3. With the **front door closed**, carefully position the replacement main-drive assembly on the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: When handling the assembly, take care not to wipe any of the grease off of the gears on the back side of the assembly.

💡 TIP: Place the bottom of the assembly on the printer first, and then rotate the top of the assembly onto the printer.

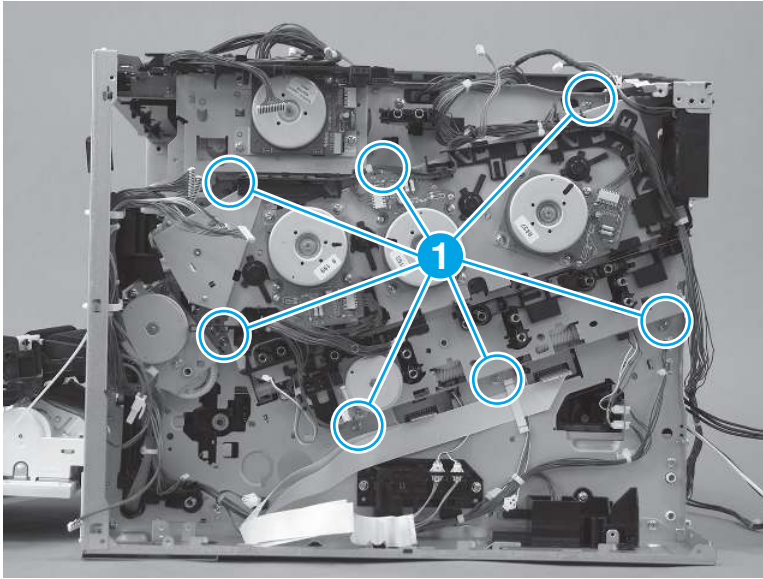
Make sure that the entire assembly fits flush up against the chassis.

Figure 5-2656 Install the main-drive assembly



4. Install seven screws (callout 1).

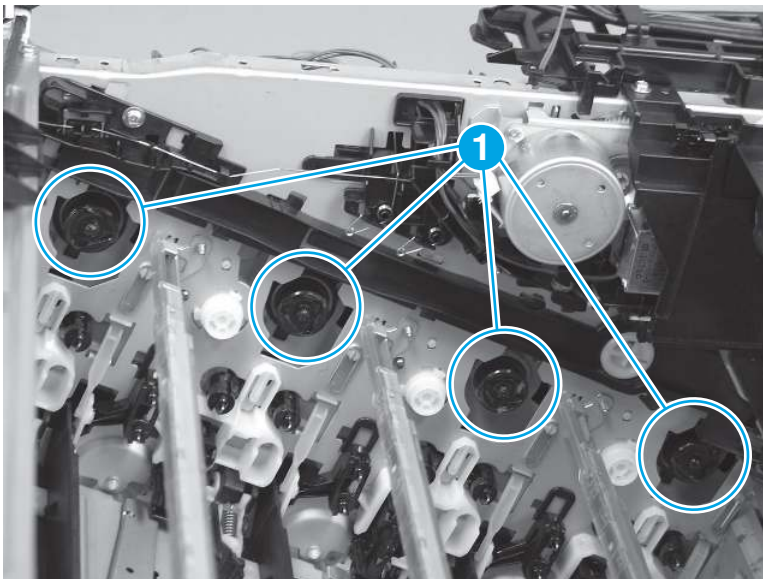
Figure 5-2657 Install seven screws



5. To verify that the assembly is correctly fastened to the chassis, open and close the front door while observing the cartridge drive gears (callout 1). The gears must freely move in and out when the door is opened and closed.

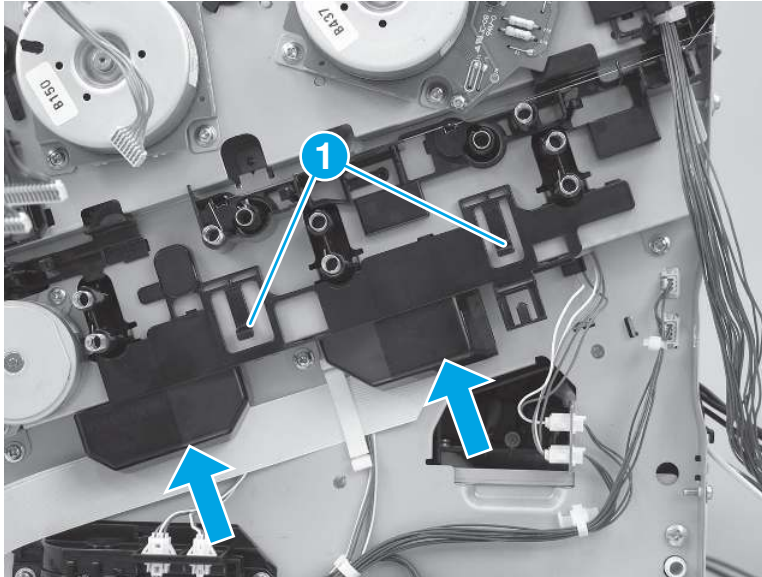
 **NOTE:** If the gears do not move freely, remove the assembly, reposition it on the chassis, and then verify that the gears move freely.

Figure 5-2658 Verify that the assembly is correctly fastened to the chassis



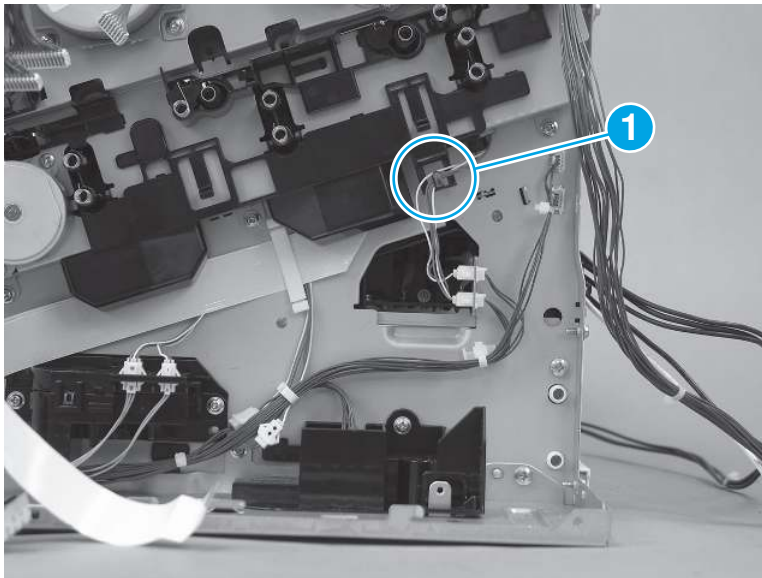
6. Position the guide on the assembly, push up to install it, and then make sure that the two tabs (callout 1) snap into place

Figure 5-2659 Install the guide



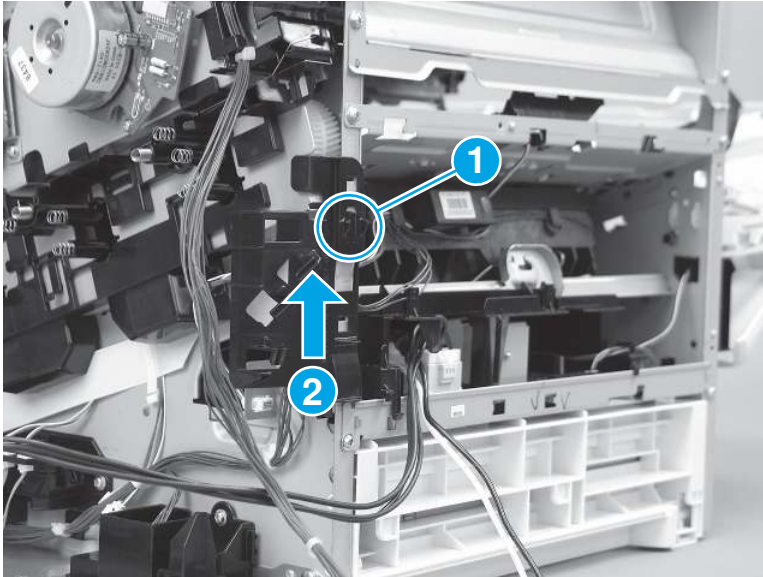
7. Install one wire harness (callout 1) on the retainer.

Figure 5-2660 Install one wire harness



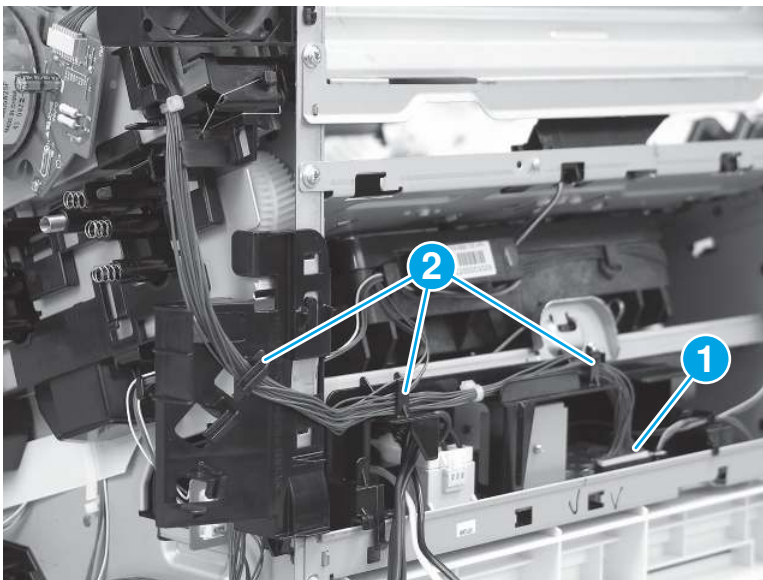
8. Position the guide on the assembly, push up to install it, and then make sure that the two tabs (callout 1) snap into place.

Figure 5-2661 Install the guide



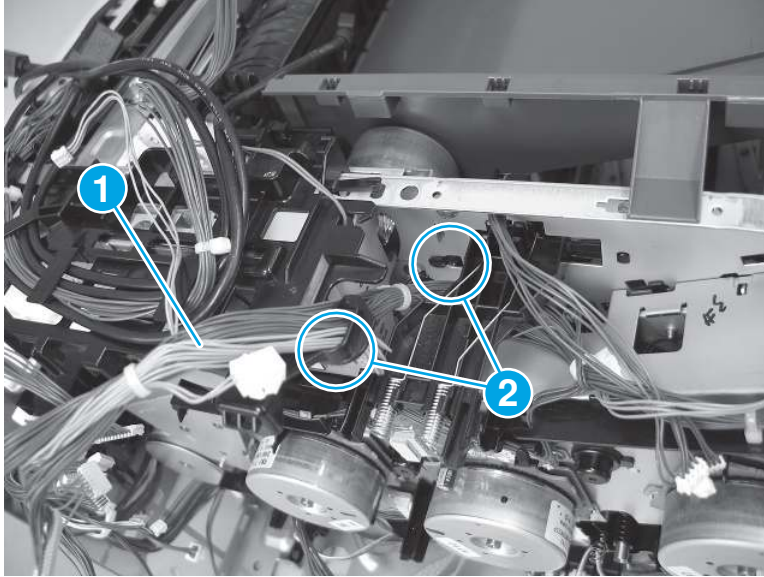
9. At the left side of the printer, connect one connector (callout 1), and then release the wire harnesses from the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 5-2662 Connect one connector



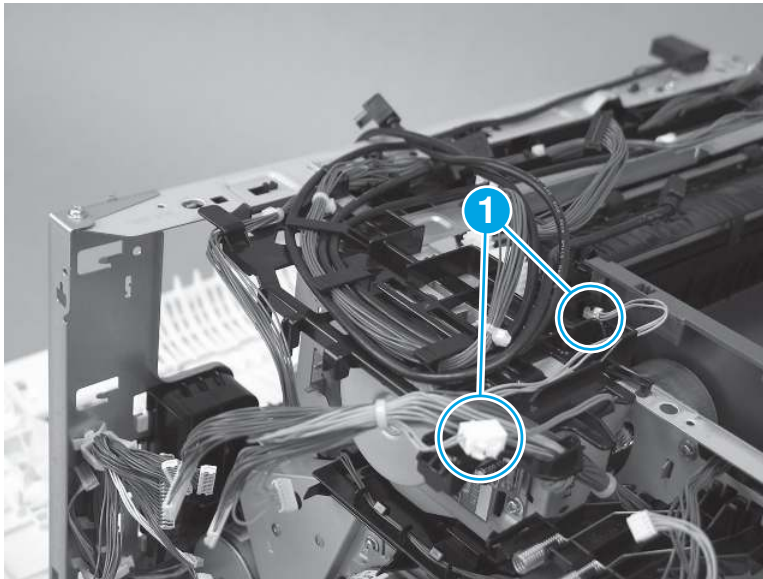
10. At the top of the printer, install the wire harnesses (callout 1) in the retainers (callout 2).

Figure 5-2663 Install the wire harnesses



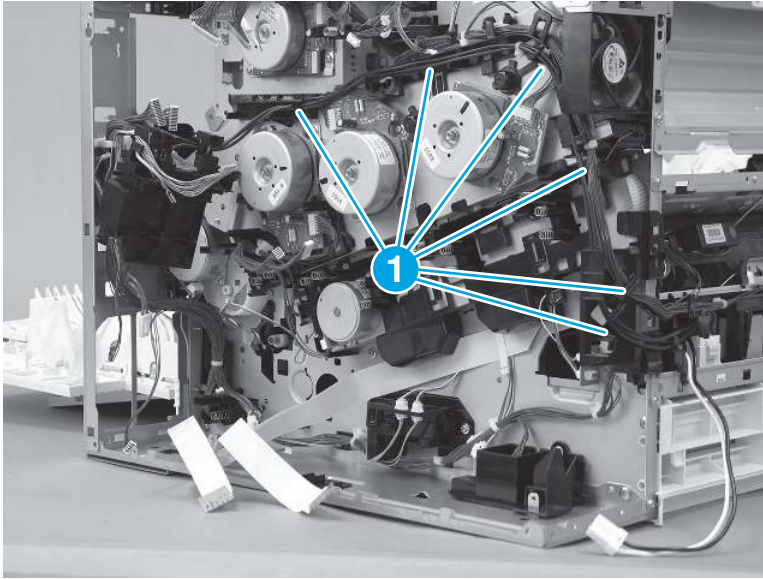
11. Connect two connectors (callout 1).

Figure 5-2664 Connect two connectors



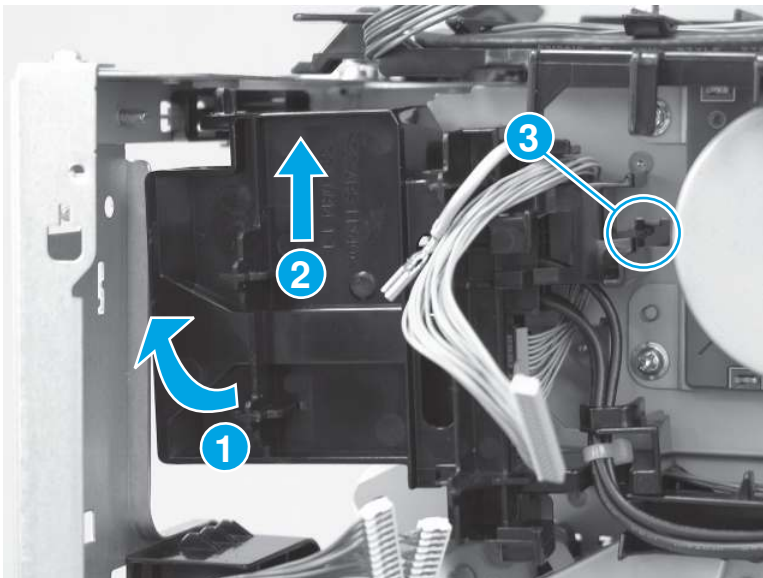
12. Install the wire harnesses in the guides (callout 1).

Figure 5-2665 Install the wire harnesses



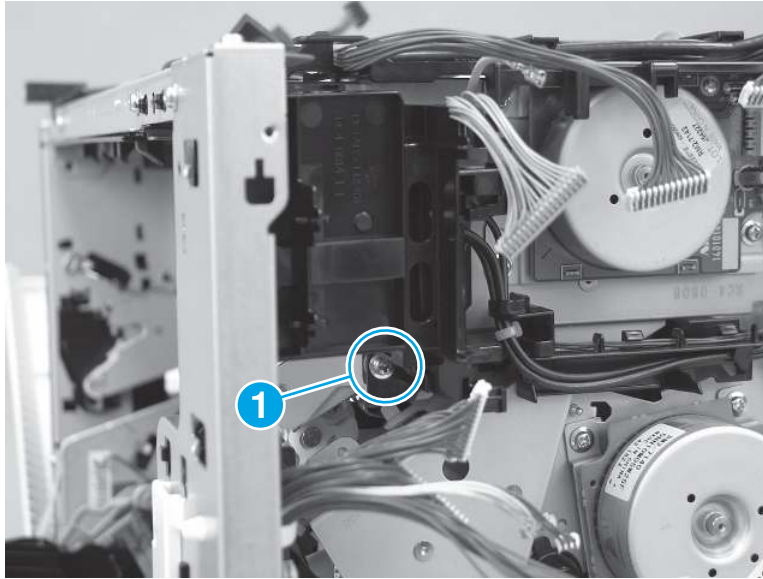
13. At the rear side of the printer do the following:
 - a. Position the right edge of the cover on the printer.
 - b. Rotate the left edge of the cover toward (callout 1) the printer to install it.
 - c. Push up on the cover (callout 2) to engage it.
 - d. Make sure that one tab (callout 3) snaps into place.

Figure 5-2666 Install the cover



14. Install one screw (callout 1).

Figure 5-2667 Install one screw



Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder

Learn how to remove and replace the 550-sheet paper feeder parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5

Learn about removing and replacing Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-85 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5150-020CN	Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

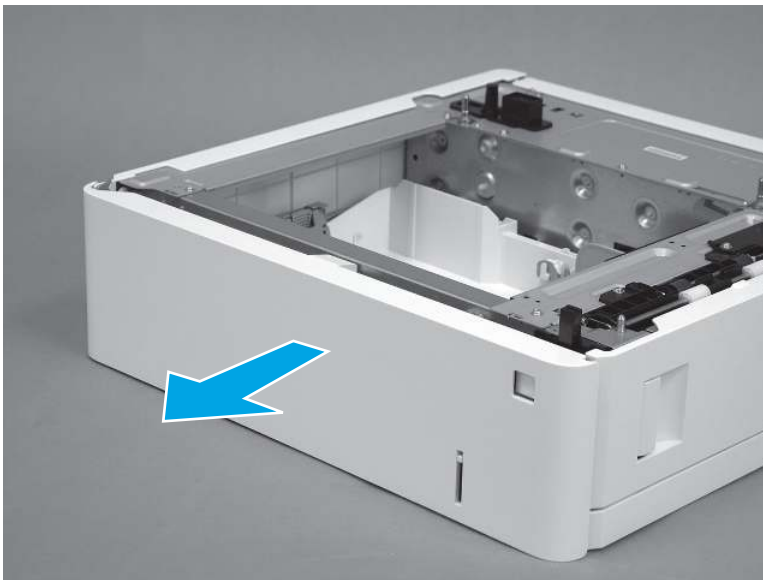
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the tray

Follow these steps to remove Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-2668 Pull the tray out

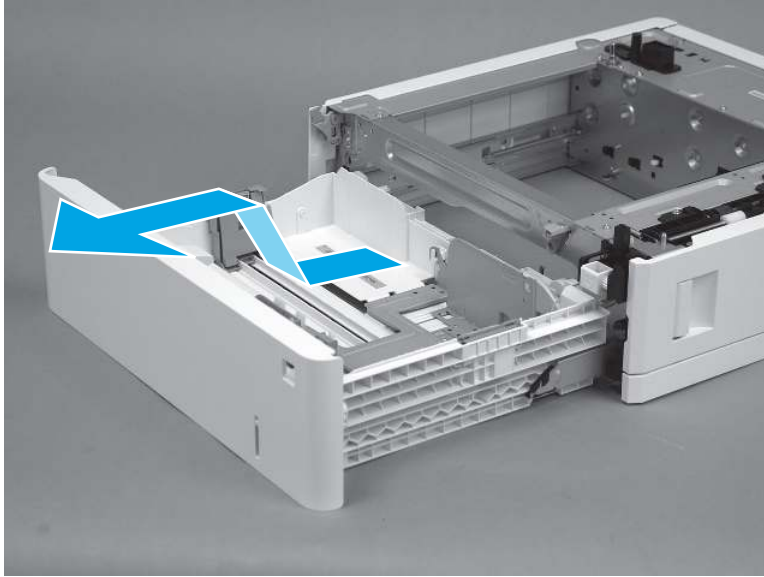


2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.



NOTE: For a replacement tray: If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.


Figure 5-2669 Remove the tray



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-86 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

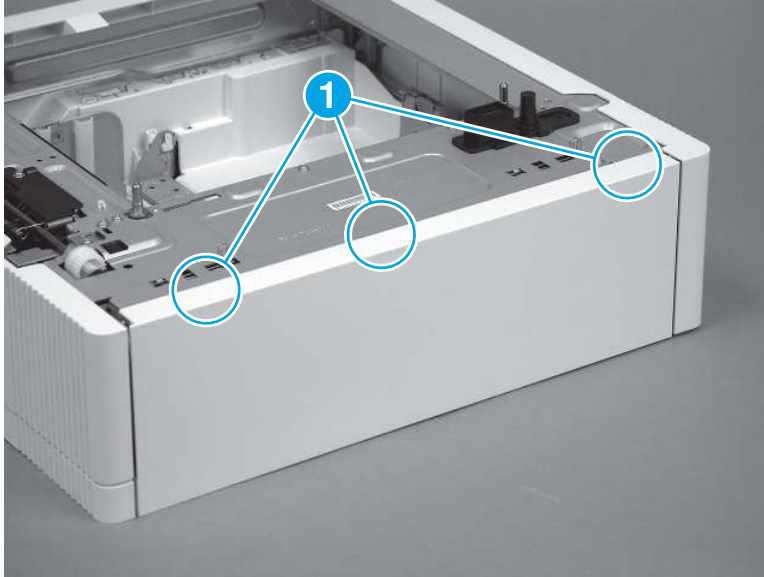
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

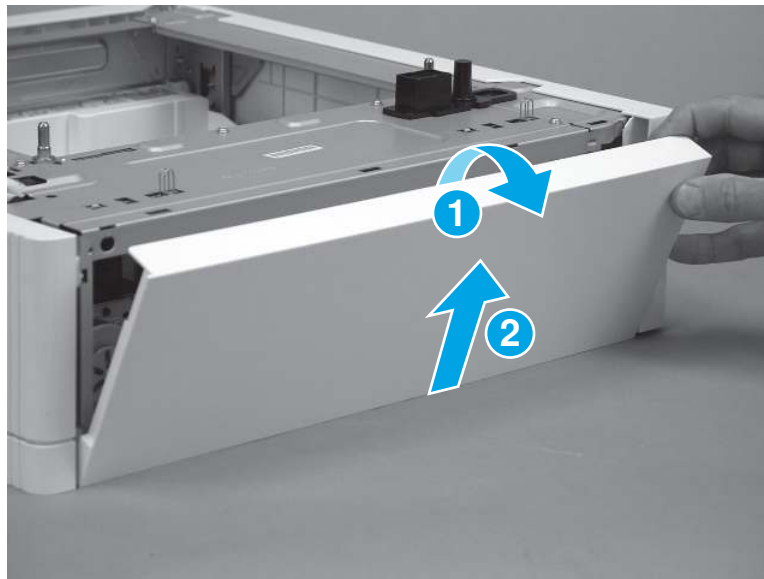
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2670 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2671 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


- Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

- To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Right door (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the right door (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-87 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5146-000CN	Right door (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

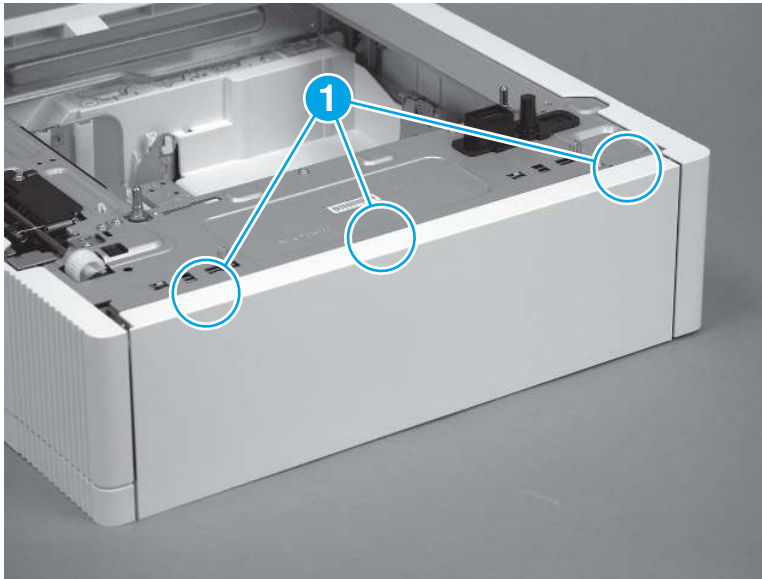
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

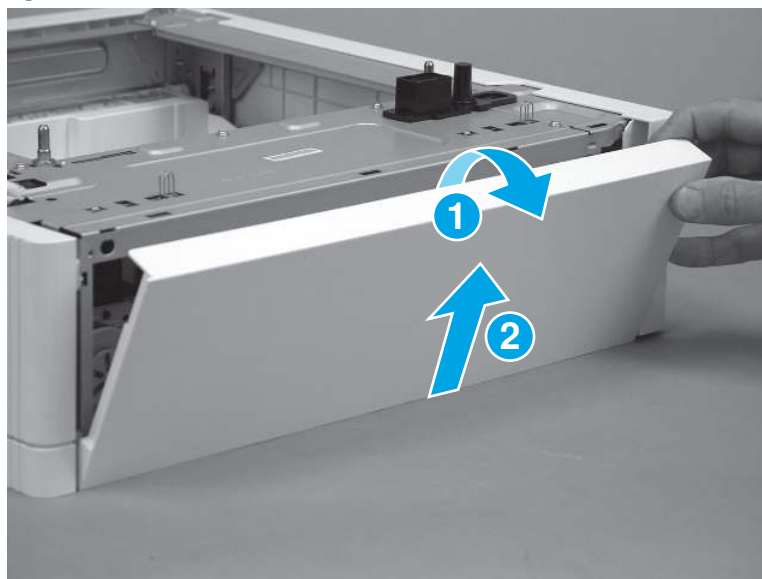
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2672 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2673 Remove the cover

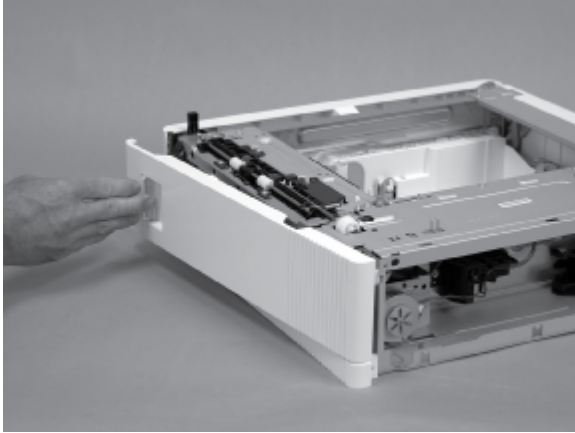


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

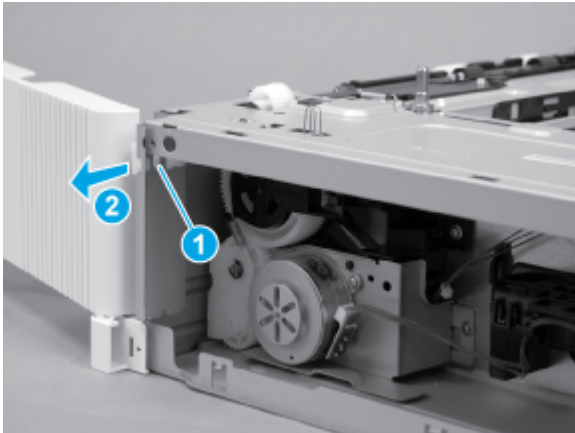
1. Open the door.

Figure 5-2674 Open the door



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the door-hinge bracket away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2675 Release the hinge bracket

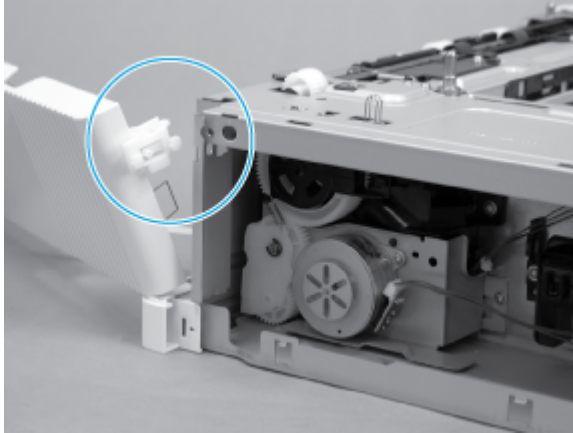


3. Remove the door-hinge bracket from the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: The door is still attached to the accessory by the door link. Do not attempt to completely remove the door.

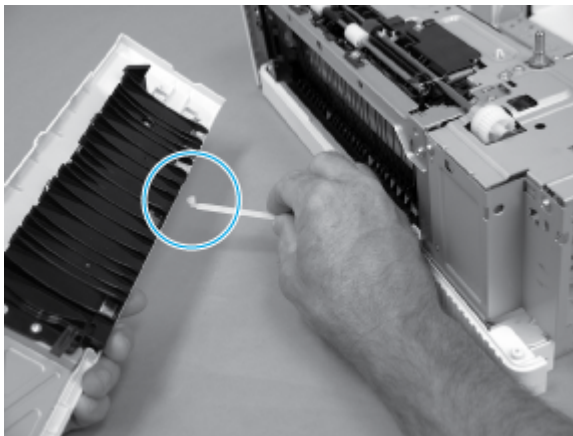
The door hinge bracket is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the door.

Figure 5-2676 Remove the hinge bracket



4. Release the door link from the slot in the door to remove the right door.

Figure 5-2677 Release the hinge bracket



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Right door hinge bracket (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the right door hinge bracket (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-88 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1781-000CN	Right door hinge bracket (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

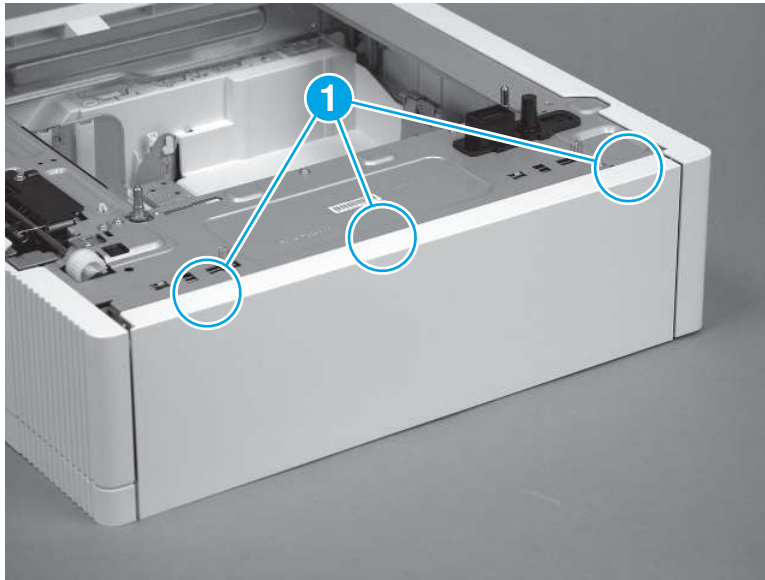
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

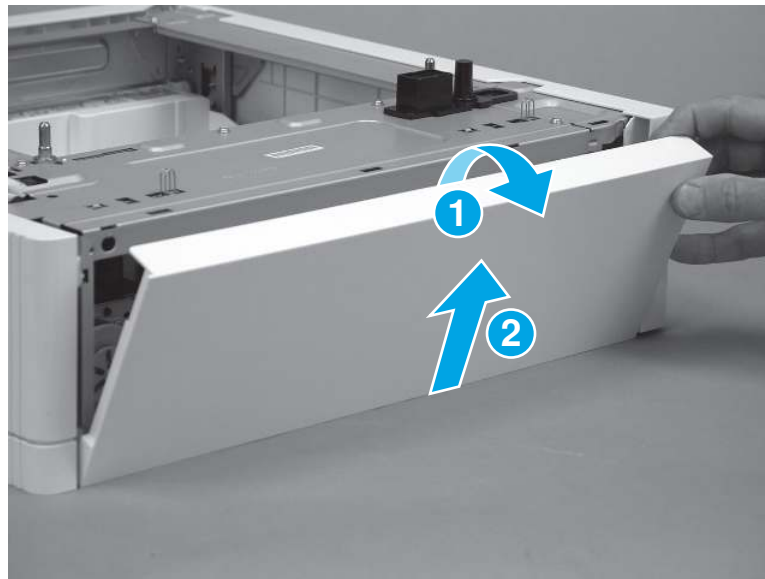
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2678 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2679 Remove the cover

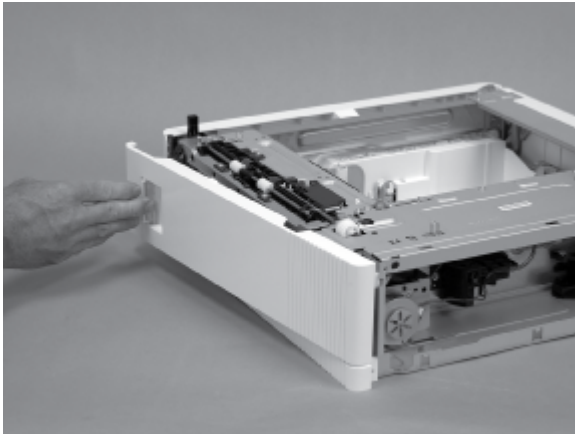


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

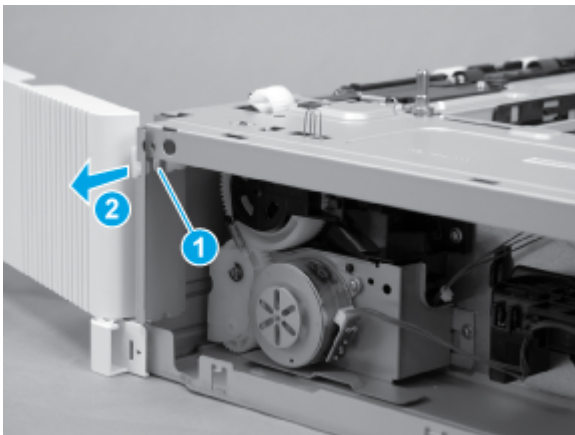
1. Open the door.

Figure 5-2680 Open the door



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the door-hinge bracket away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2681 Release the hinge bracket

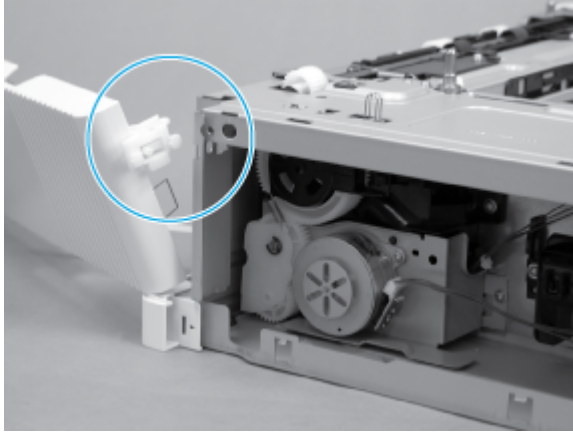


3. Remove the door-hinge bracket from the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: The door is still attached to the accessory by the door link. Do not attempt to completely remove the door.

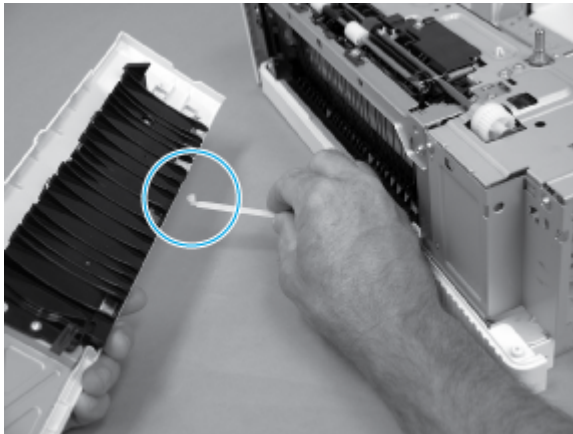
The door hinge bracket is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the door.

Figure 5-2682 Remove the hinge bracket



4. Release the door link from the slot in the door to remove the right door.

Figure 5-2683 Release the hinge bracket

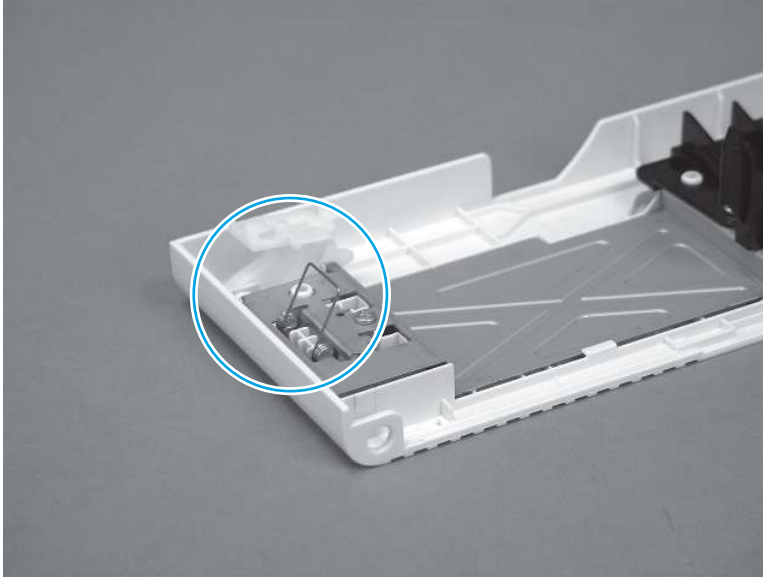


Remove the right door hinge bracket

Follow these steps to remove the right door hinge bracket.

- Separate the right door hinge bracket from the door to remove it.

Figure 5-2684 Remove the hinge bracket



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right-lower cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the right-lower cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-89 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1793-000CN	Right-lower cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

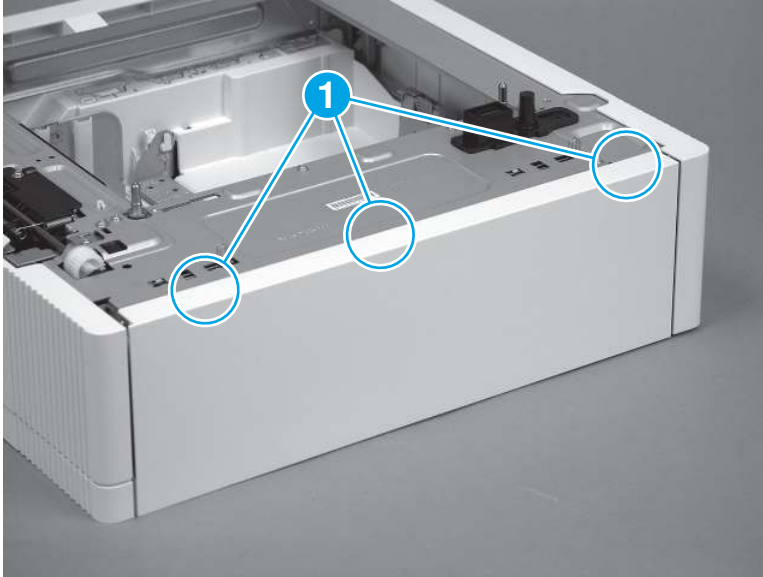
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

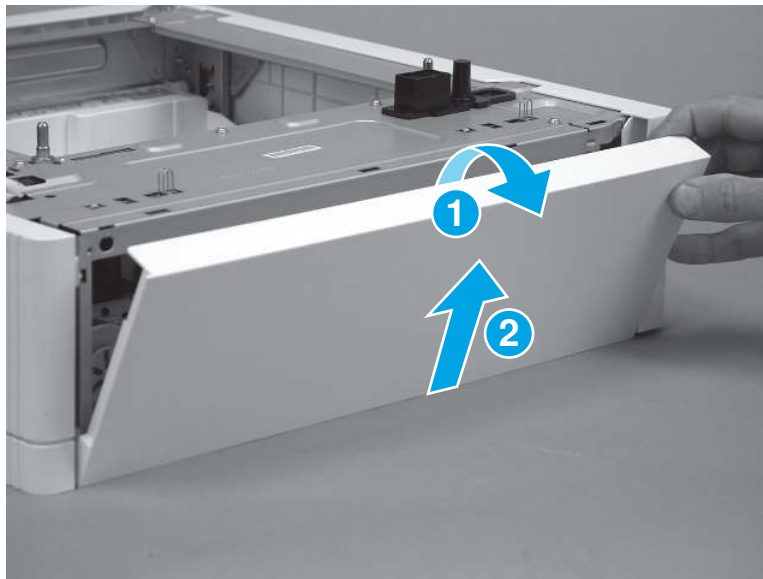
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2685 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2686 Remove the cover

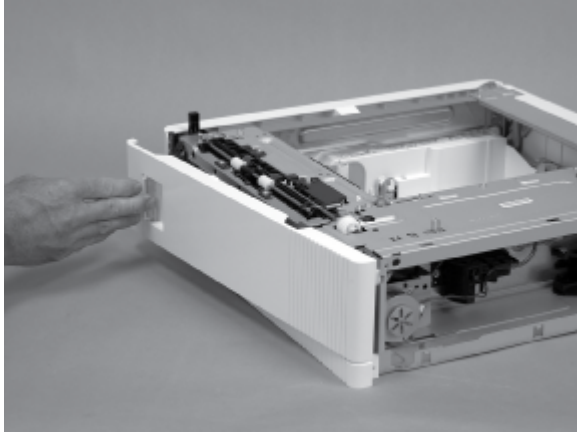


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

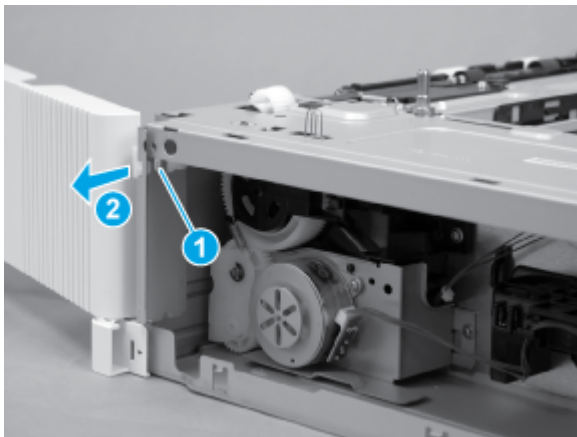
1. Open the door.

Figure 5-2687 Open the door



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the door-hinge bracket away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2688 Release the hinge bracket

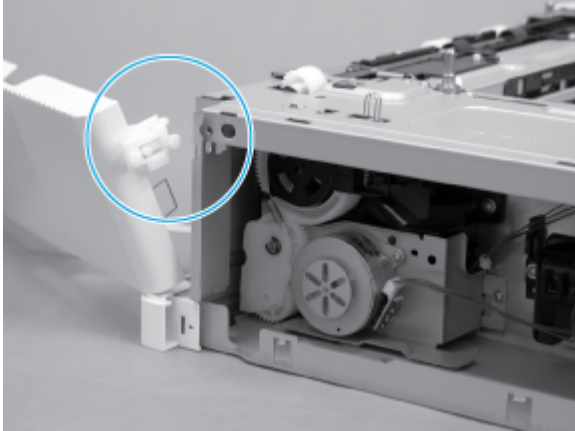


3. Remove the door-hinge bracket from the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: The door is still attached to the accessory by the door link. Do not attempt to completely remove the door.

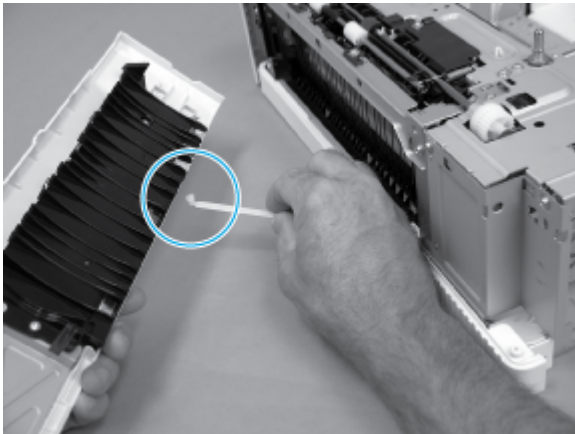
The door hinge bracket is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the door.

Figure 5-2689 Remove the hinge bracket



4. Release the door link from the slot in the door to remove the right door.

Figure 5-2690 Release the hinge bracket

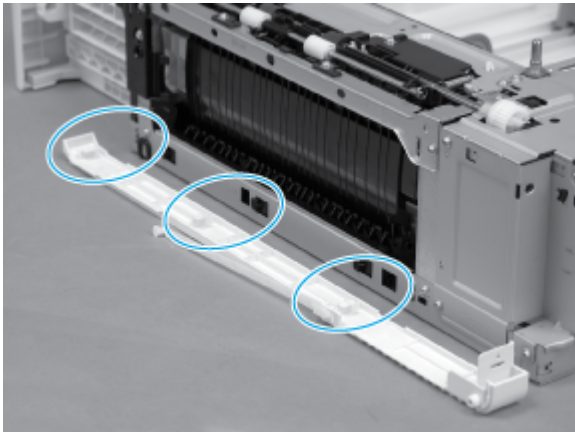


Remove the right-lower cover

Follow these steps to remove the right-lower cover.

1. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover.

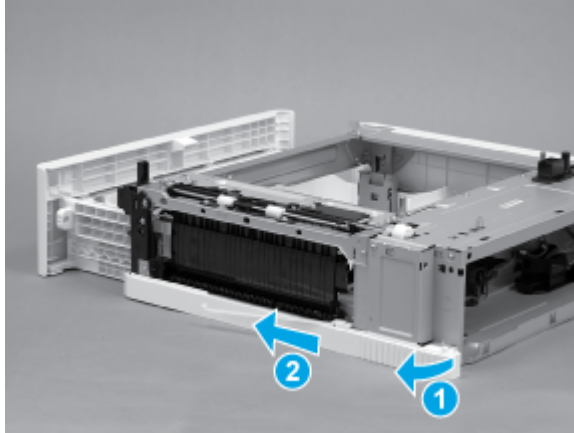
Figure 5-2691 Cover mounting tabs



2. Partially open the tray, slightly flex the end of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then slide it towards the front of the accessory (callout 2) to release it.

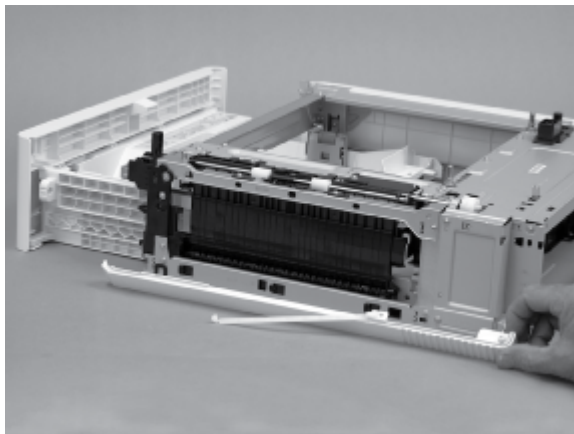
⚠ CAUTION: The three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover are easily damaged. Do not over flex the end of the cover when it is released. Push in on the middle tab to protect it when removing the cover.

Figure 5-2692 Release the cover



3. Remove the right-lower cover.

Figure 5-2693 Remove the cover

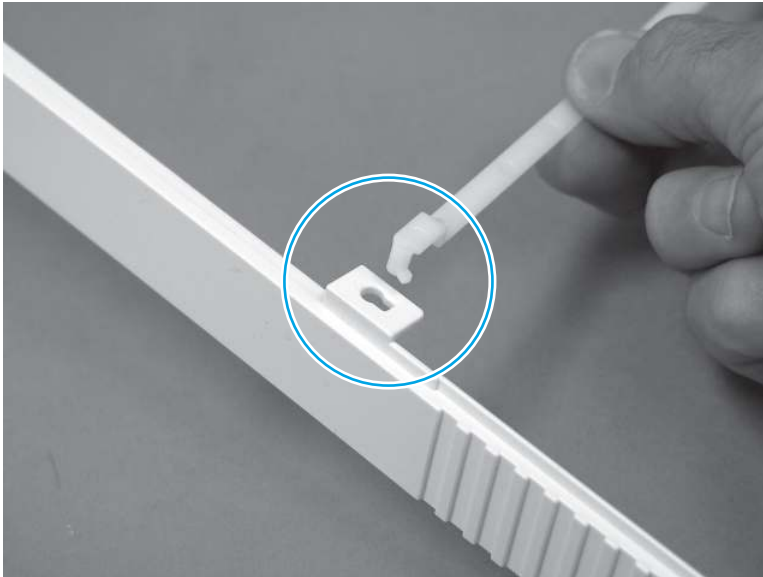


Remove the right-door link

Follow these steps to remove the right-door link.

- Rotate the door link to align the keyed end of the link to pass through the keyed portion of the right-lower cover to remove it.

Figure 5-2694 Remove the right-door link



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right-door link (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the right-door link (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-90 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1778-000CN	Right-door link (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

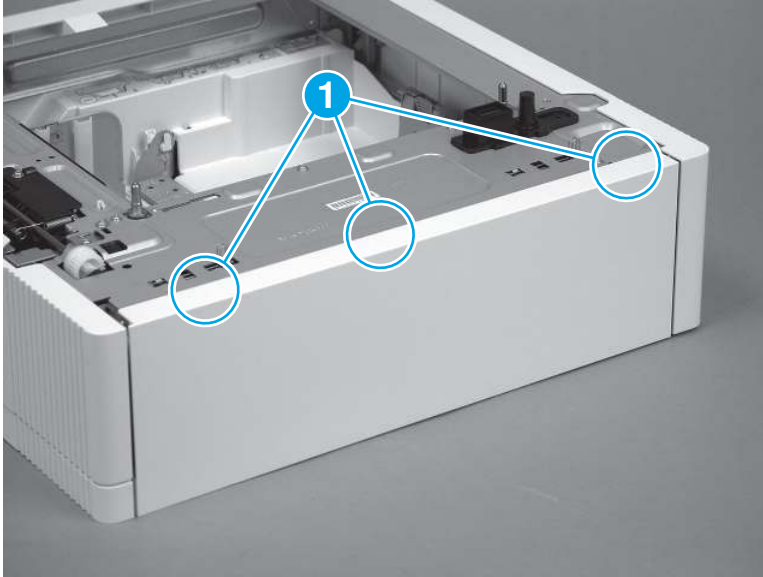
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

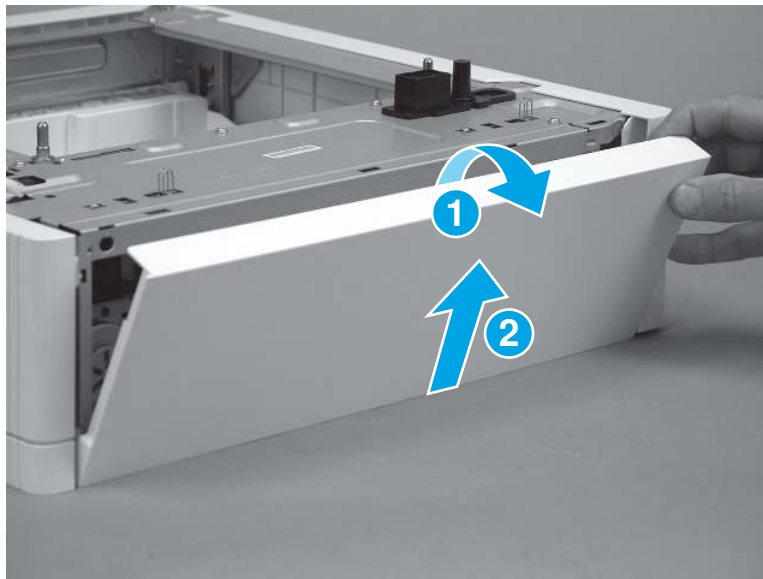
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2695 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2696 Remove the cover

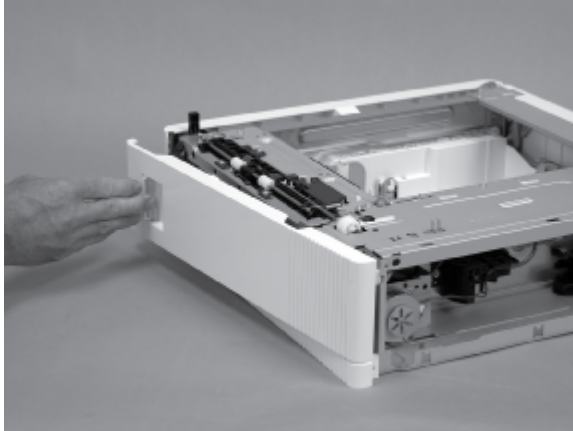


Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

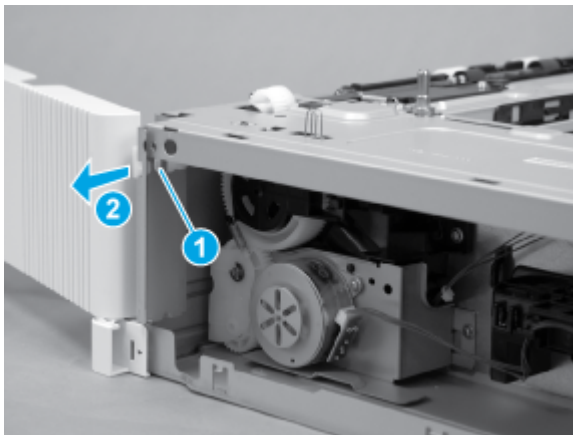
1. Open the door.

Figure 5-2697 Open the door



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the door-hinge bracket away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2698 Release the hinge bracket

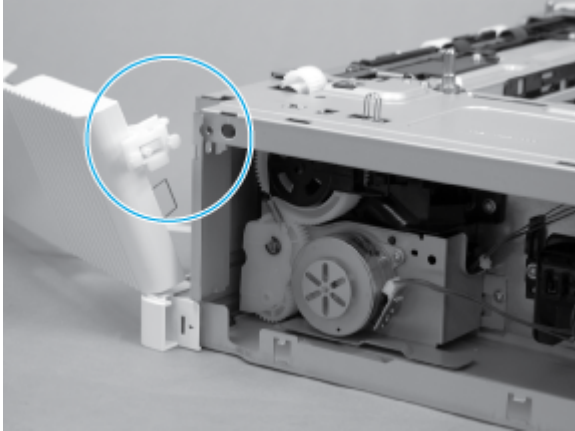


3. Remove the door-hinge bracket from the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: The door is still attached to the accessory by the door link. Do not attempt to completely remove the door.

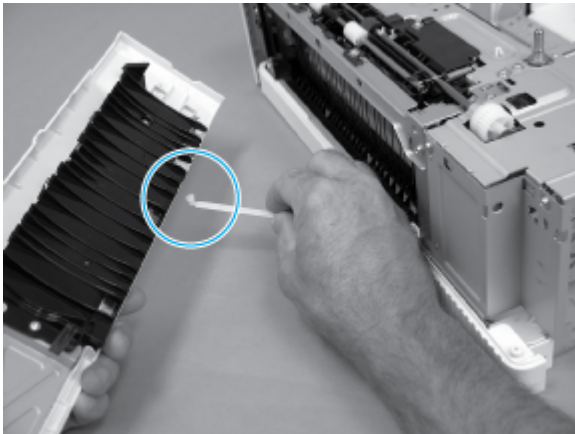
The door hinge bracket is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the door.

Figure 5-2699 Remove the hinge bracket



4. Release the door link from the slot in the door to remove the right door.

Figure 5-2700 Release the hinge bracket

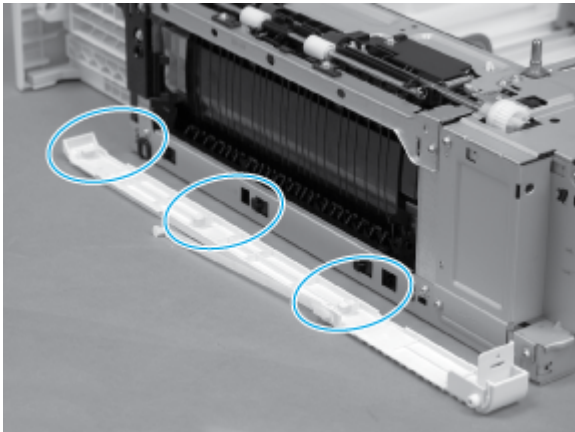


Remove the right-lower cover

Follow these steps to remove the right-lower cover.

1. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover.

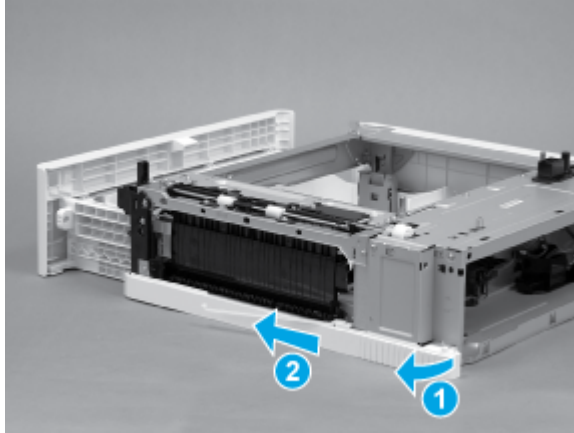
Figure 5-2701 Cover mounting tabs



2. Partially open the tray, slightly flex the end of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then slide it towards the front of the accessory (callout 2) to release it.

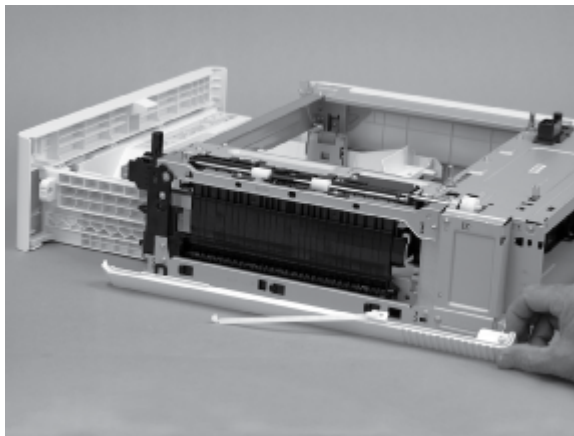
⚠ CAUTION: The three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover are easily damaged. Do not over flex the end of the cover when it is released. Push in on the middle tab to protect it when removing the cover.

Figure 5-2702 Release the cover



3. Remove the right-lower cover.

Figure 5-2703 Remove the cover

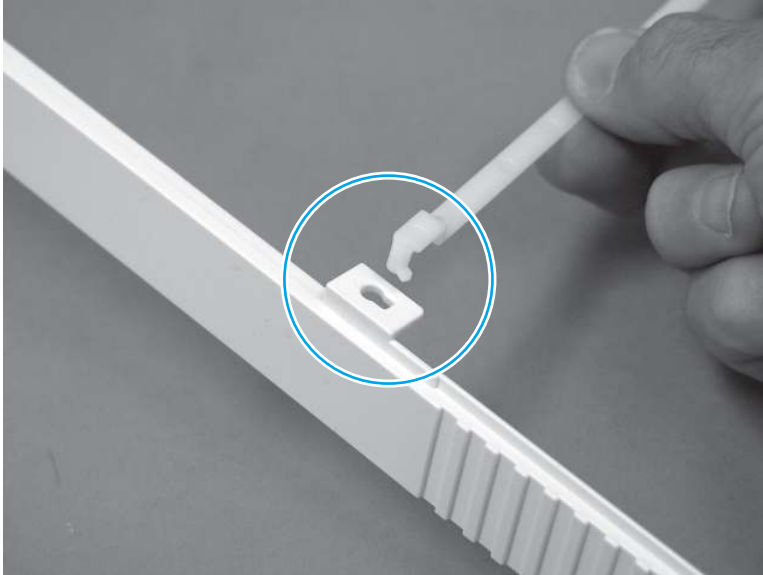


Remove the right-door link

Follow these steps to remove the right-door link.

- Rotate the door link to align the keyed end of the link to pass through the keyed portion of the right-lower cover to remove it.

Figure 5-2704 Remove the right-door link



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the left cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-91 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1791-000CN	Left cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

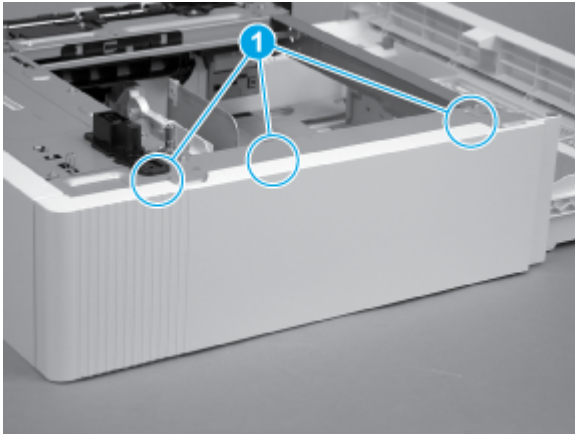
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

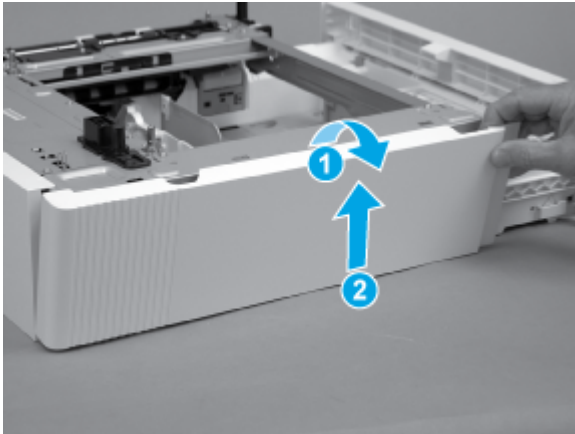
1. Partially pull the tray out of the accessory, and then release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2705 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2706 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: OP drawer holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the drawer holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-92 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-0445-000CN	OP drawer holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

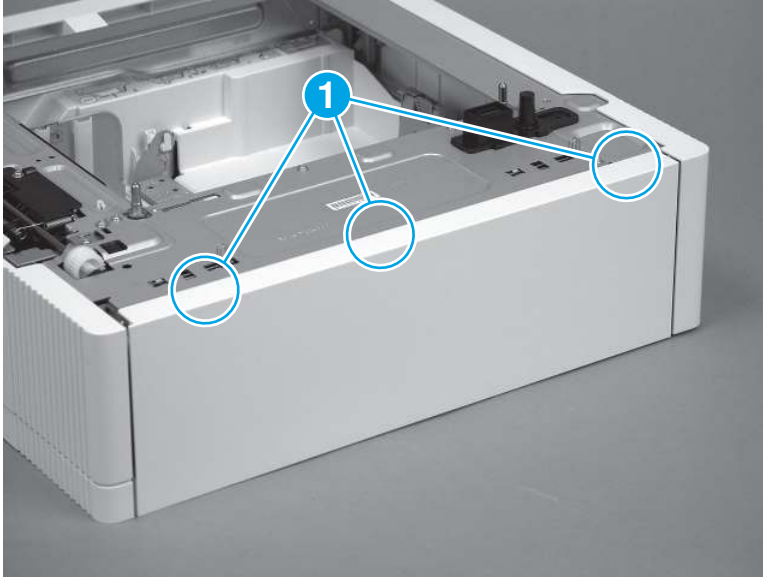
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

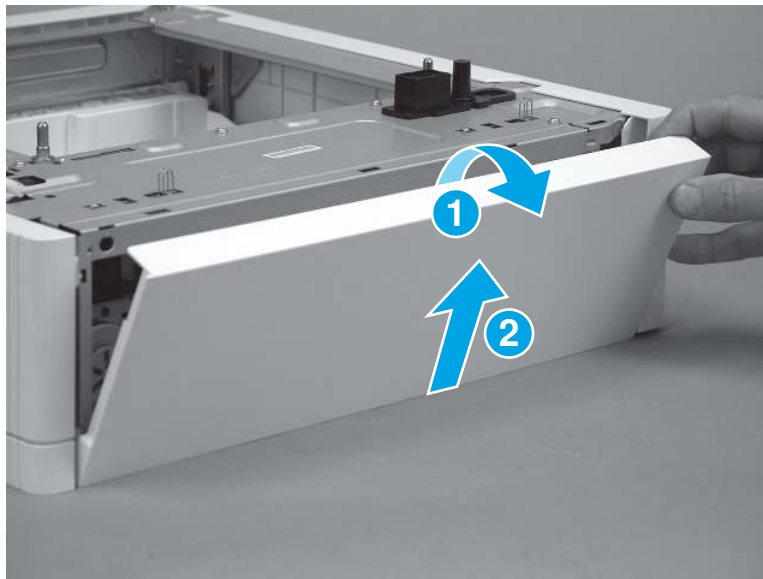
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2707 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2708 Remove the cover

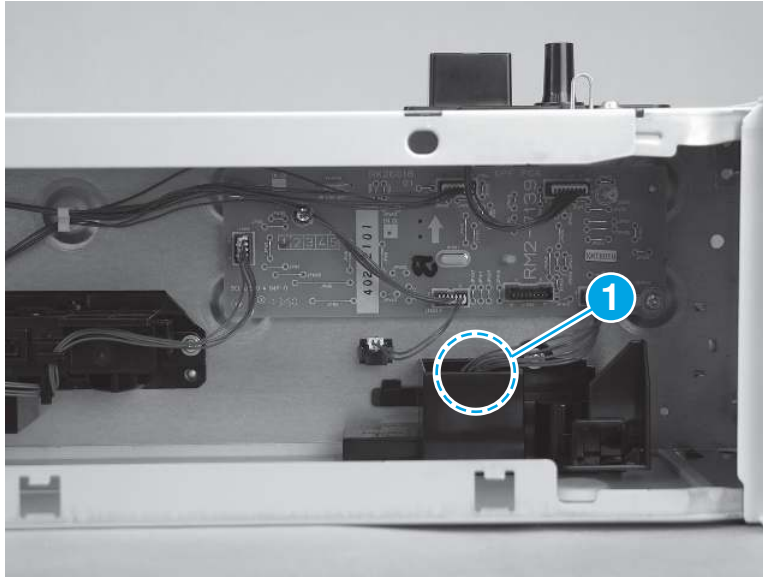


Remove the OP drawer holder

Follow these steps to remove the OP drawer holder.

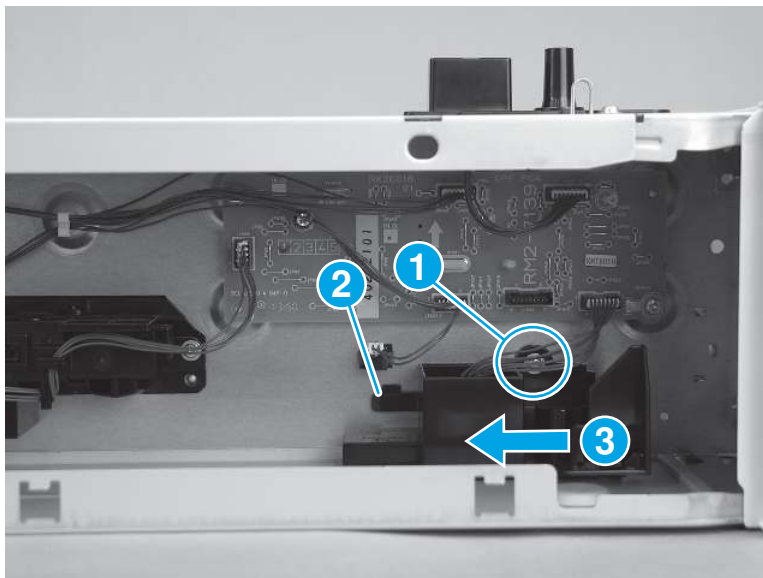
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2709 Disconnect one connector



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the OP drawer holder as shown (callout 3) to remove it.

Figure 5-2710 Remove the drawer holder



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the auto close assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-93 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5147-000CN	Auto close assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

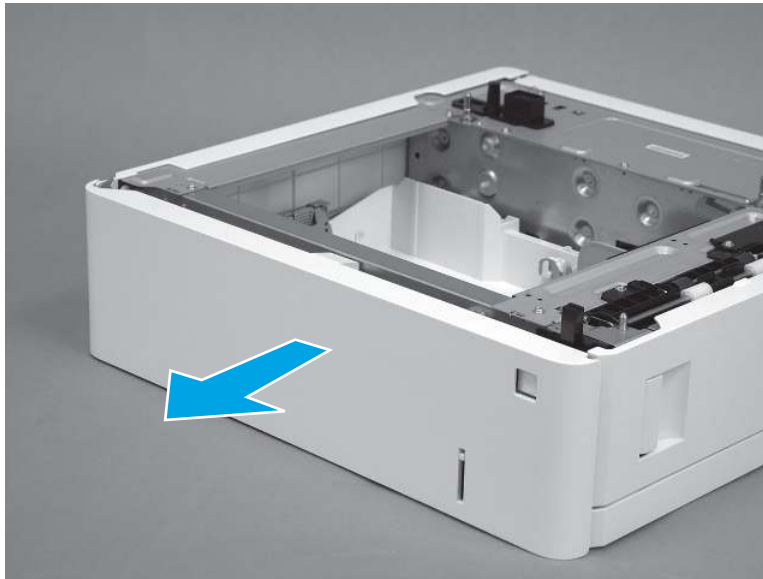
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the tray

Follow these steps to remove Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

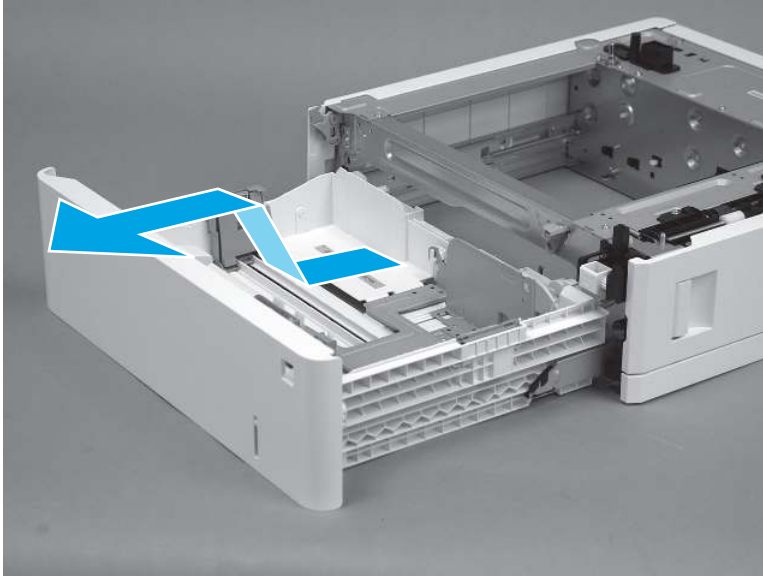
Figure 5-2711 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2712 Remove the tray



Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-94 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

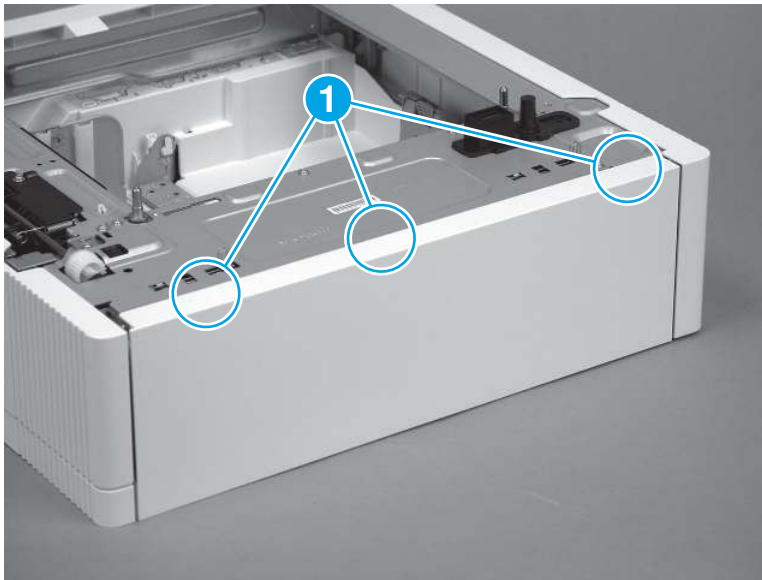
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

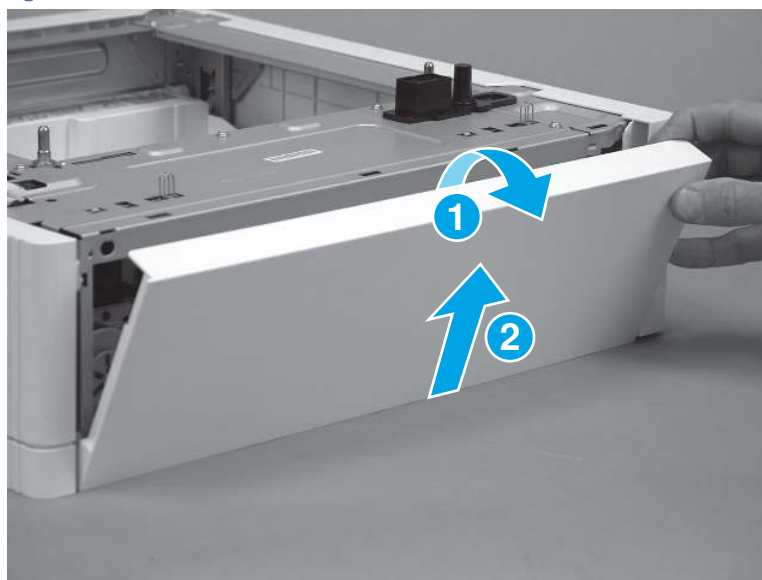
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2713 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).


Figure 5-2714 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

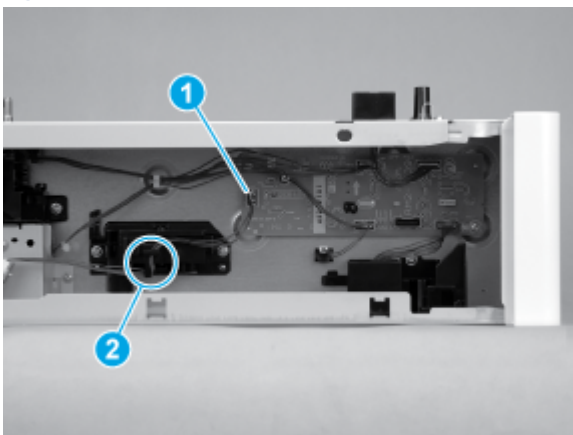
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the auto close assembly

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

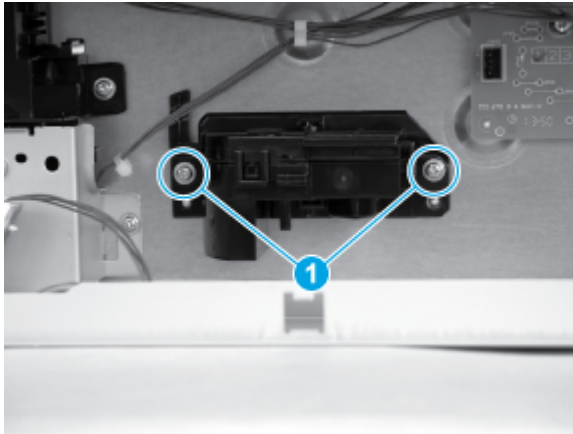
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1; J903), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-2715 Disconnect one connector



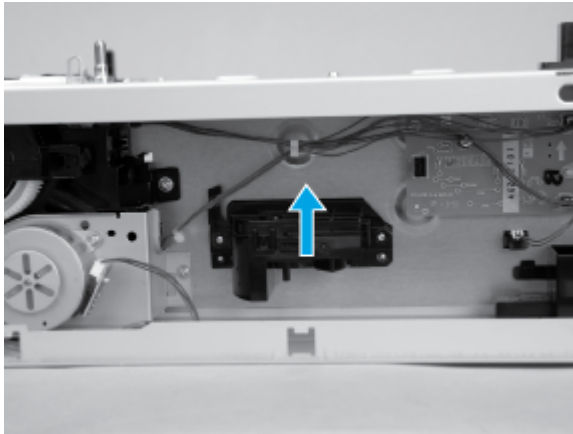
2. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2716 Remove two screws



3. Lift up on the assembly to release it.

Figure 5-2717 Release the assembly



4. Remove the auto close assembly.

Figure 5-2718 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Switch button (SW12) (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the switch button (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.



WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.



CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-95 Part information

Part number	Part description
WC2-5806-000CN	Switch button (SW12) (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

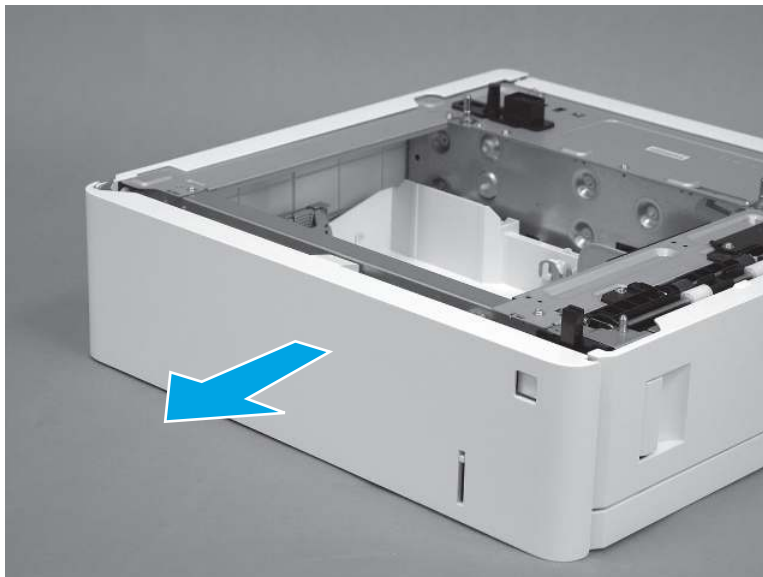
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the tray

Follow these steps to remove Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-2719 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.


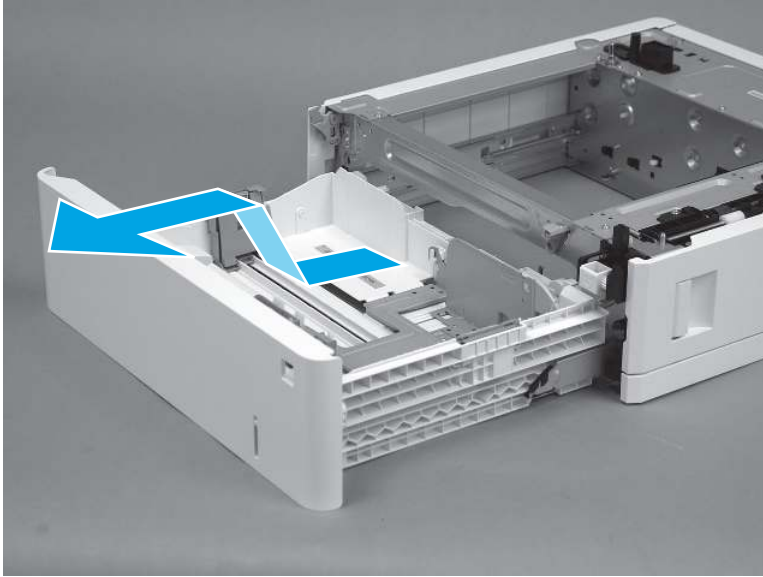
 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2720 Remove the tray



Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-96 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

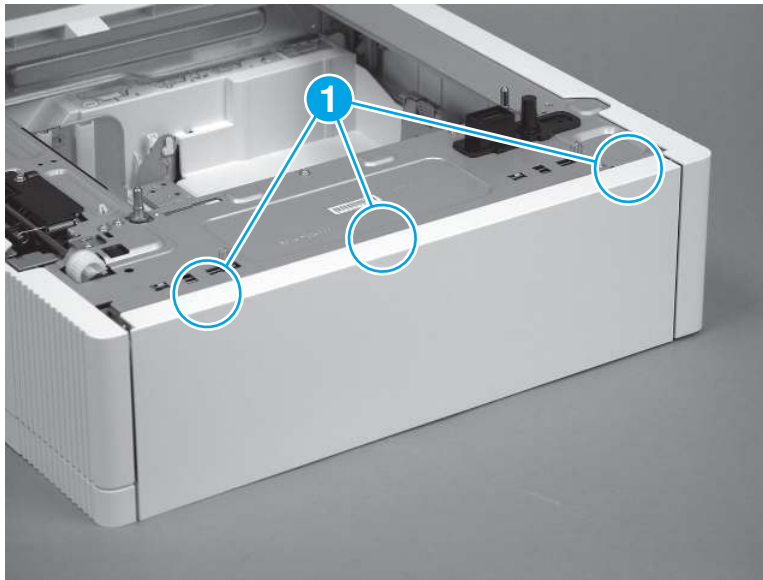
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

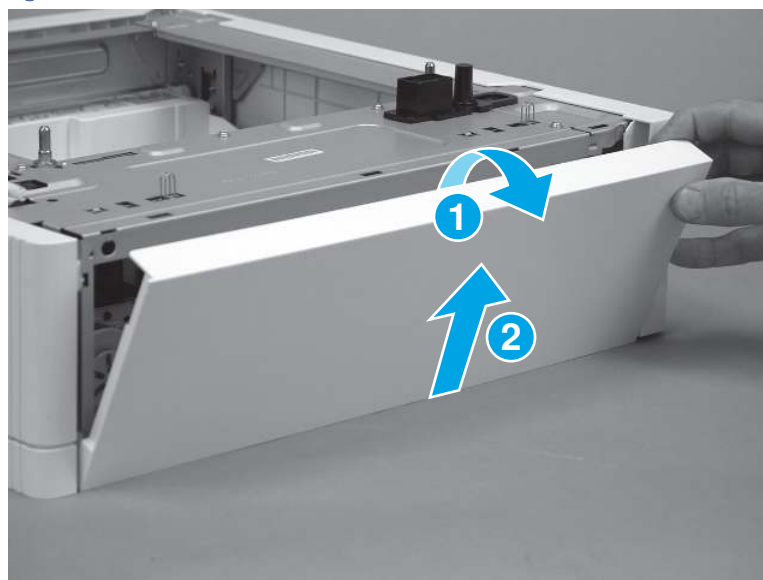
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2721 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).


Figure 5-2722 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

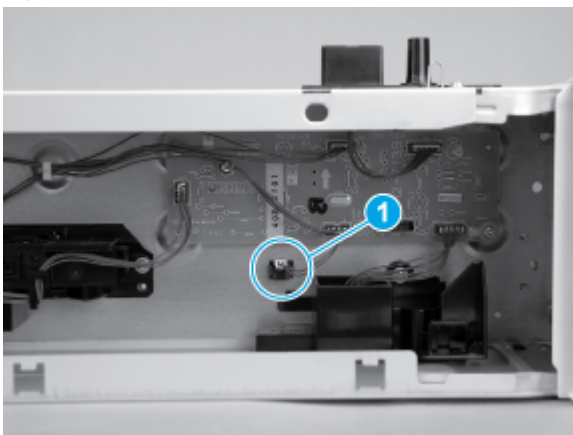
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the switch button (SW12)

Follow these steps to remove the switch button.

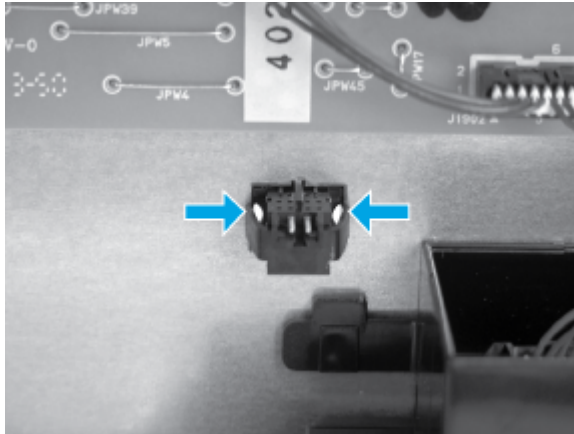
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2723 Disconnect one connector



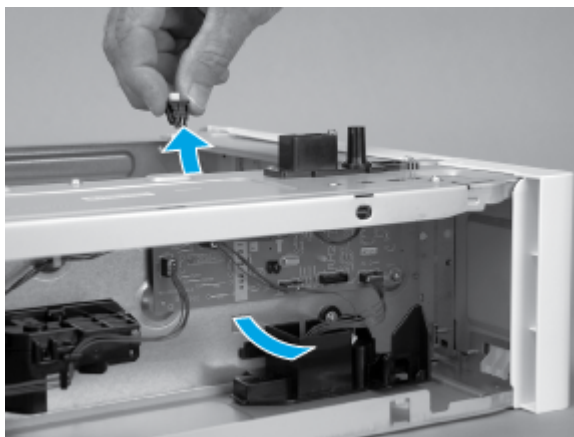
2. Squeeze two tabs to release them, and then push the switch through the opening in the chassis into the tray cavity.

Figure 5-2724 Squeeze two tabs



3. Remove the switch button (SW12).

Figure 5-2725 Remove the switch button (SW12)



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.




CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.
-

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Drawer connector holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the drawer connector holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-97 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1741-000CN	Drawer connector holder (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-98 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

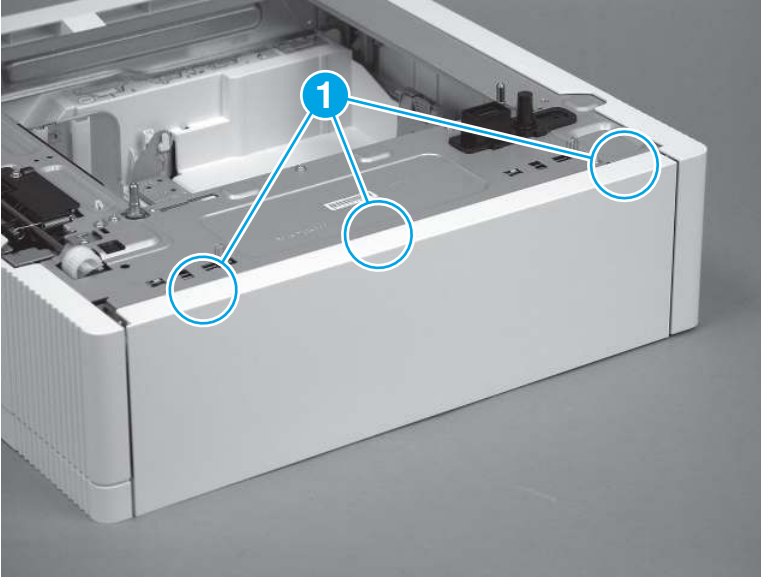
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

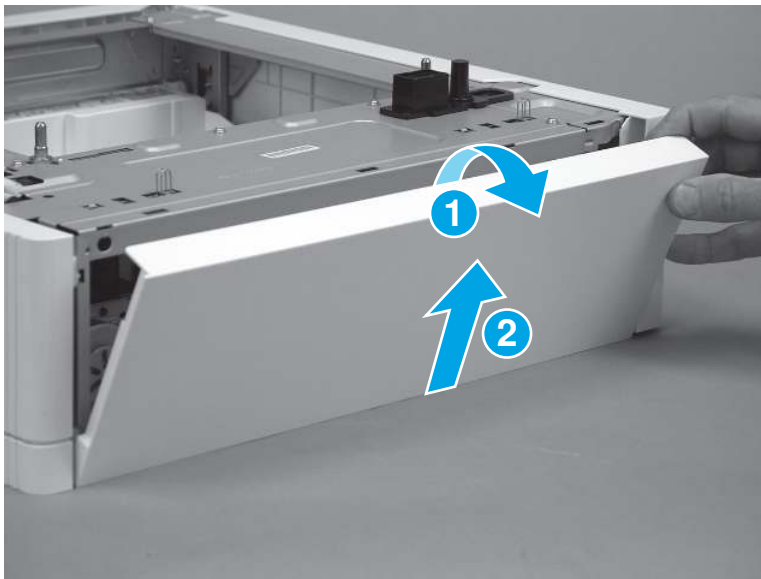
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2726 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2727 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

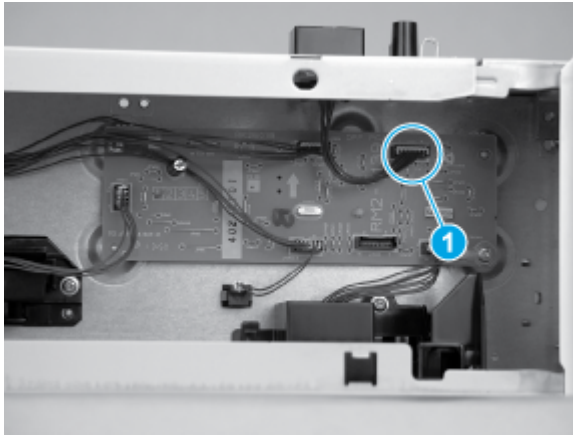
NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the drawer connector holder

Follow these steps to remove the drawer connector holder.

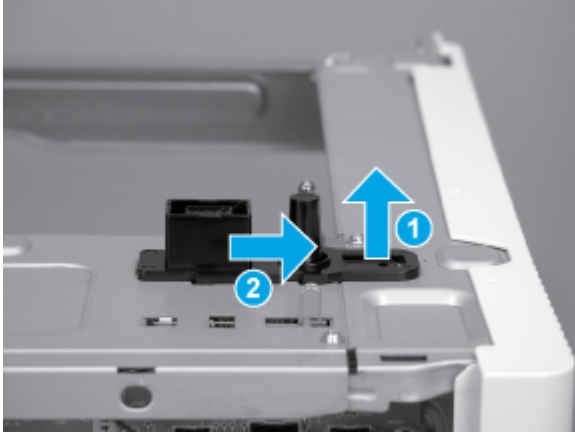
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1; J901).

Figure 5-2728 Disconnect one connector



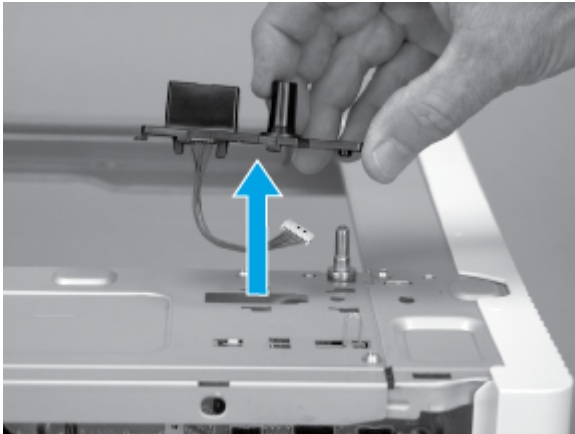
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the drawer connector holder as shown (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2729 Release one tab



3. Remove the drawer connector holder.

Figure 5-2730 Remove the tray connector



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Paper-feeder drive PCA (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the paper-feeder drive PCA (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-99 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-7139-000CN	Paper-feeder drive PCA (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-100 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

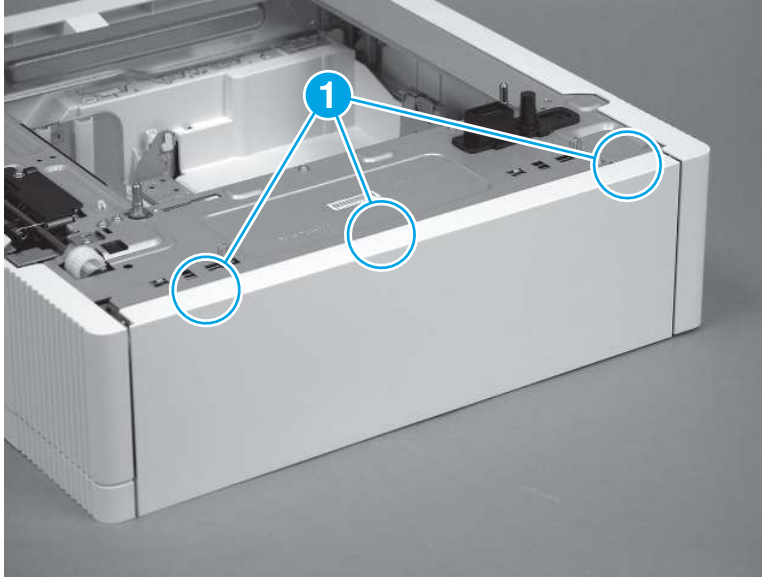
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

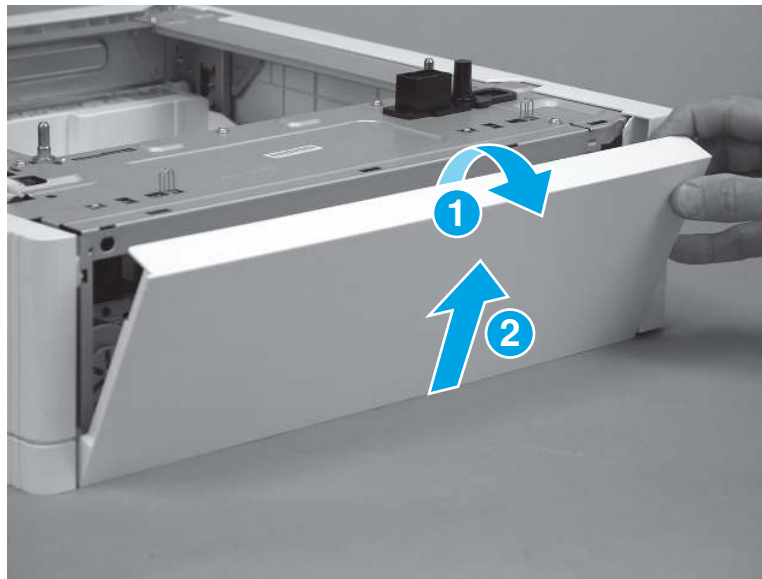
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2731 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2732 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

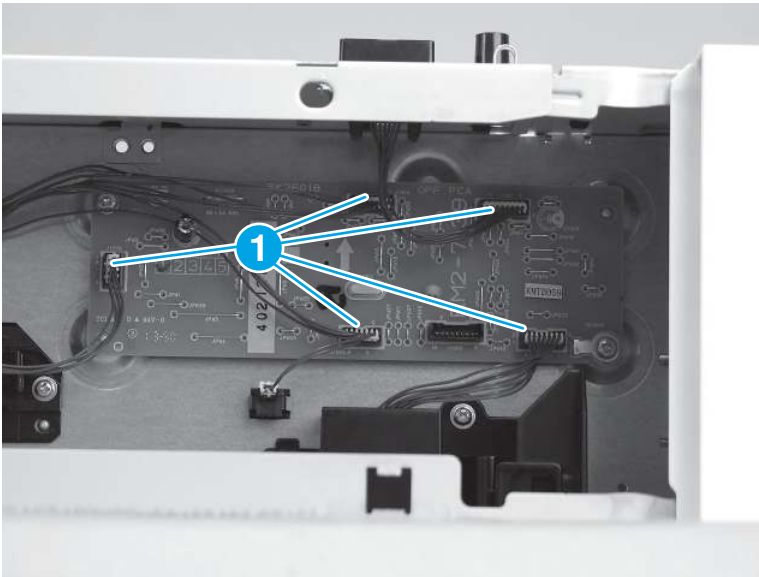
Remove the paper-feeder drive PCA

Follow these steps to remove the paper-feeder drive PCA.

1. Disconnect 5 connectors (callout 1).

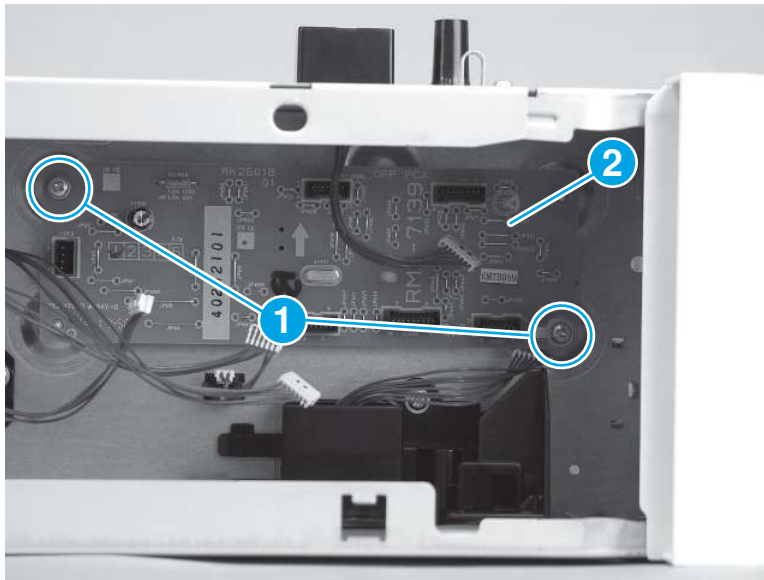
NOTE:  The J908 connector is empty.

Figure 5-2733 Disconnect all of the connectors



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the paper-feeder drive PCA (callout 2).

Figure 5-2734 Remove the PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper-feed assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper-feed assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-101 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5145-000CN	Paper-feed assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

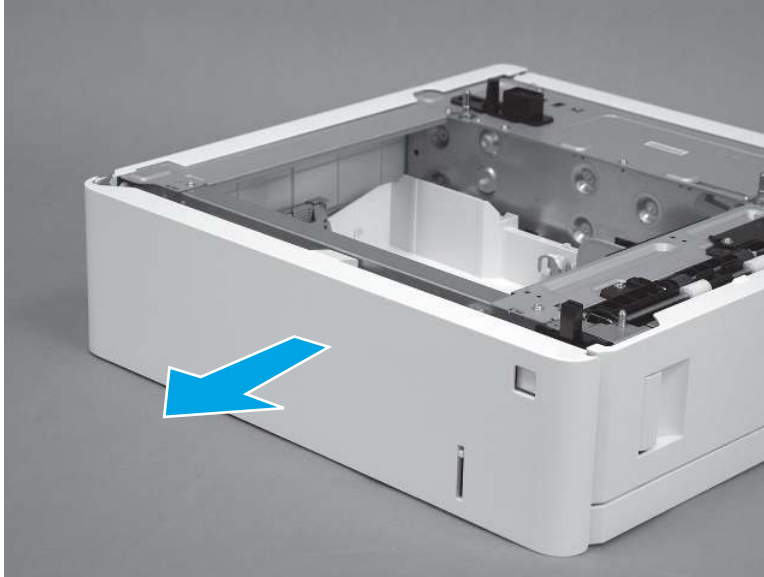
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the tray

Follow these steps to remove Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

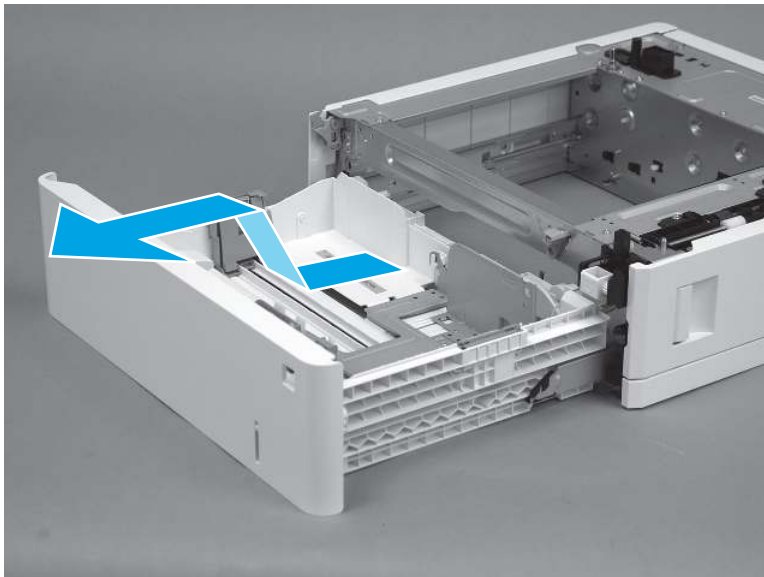
Figure 5-2735 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2736 Remove the tray



Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-102 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

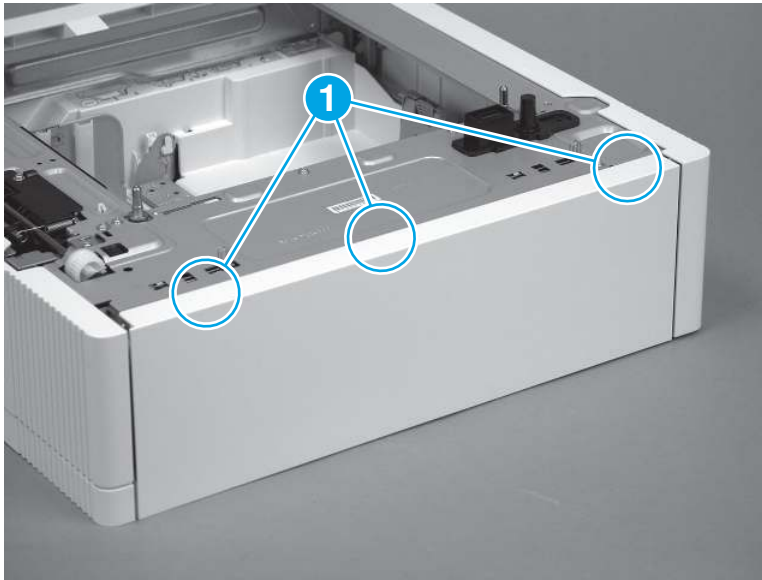
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

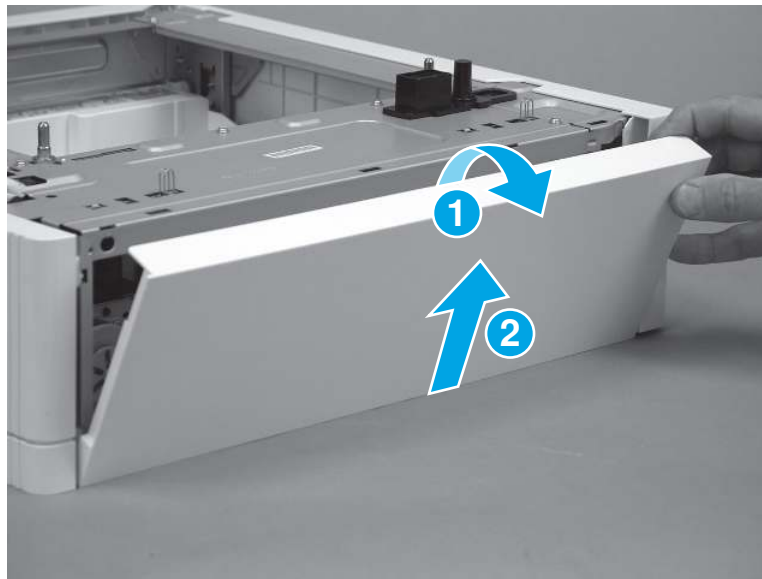
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2737 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2738 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

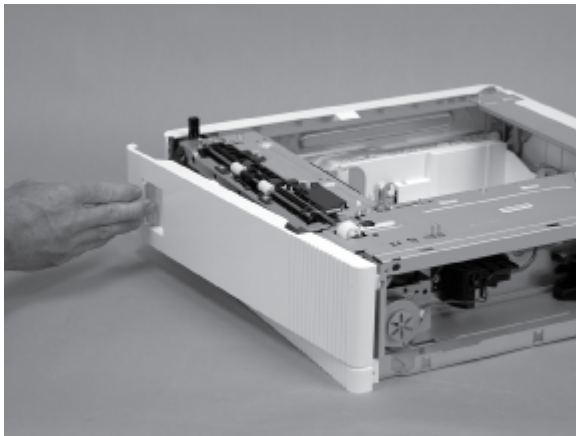
NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

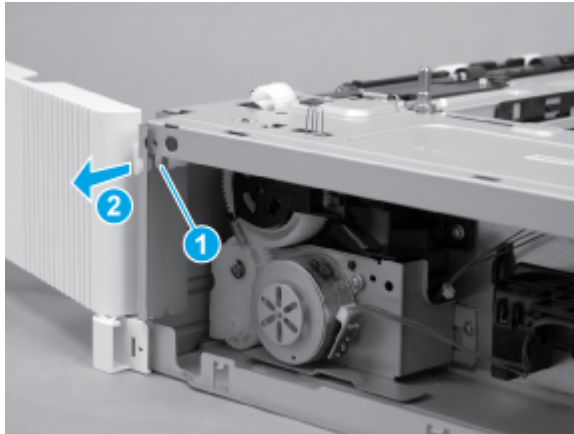
1. Open the door.

Figure 5-2739 Open the door



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the door-hinge bracket away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2740 Release the hinge bracket

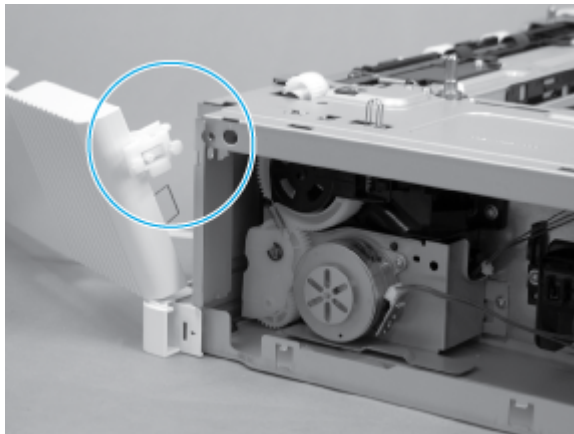


3. Remove the door-hinge bracket from the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: The door is still attached to the accessory by the door link. Do not attempt to completely remove the door.

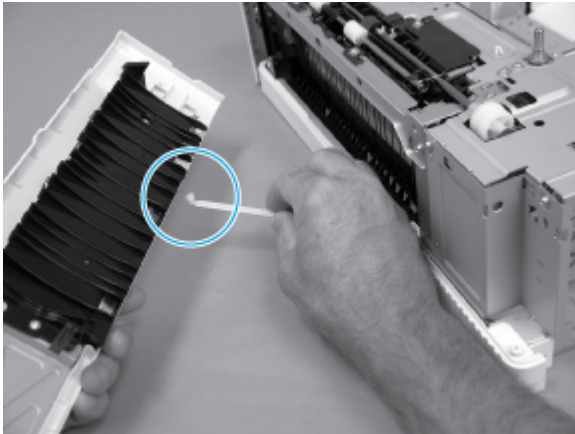
The door hinge bracket is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the door.

Figure 5-2741 Remove the hinge bracket



4. Release the door link from the slot in the door to remove the right door.

Figure 5-2742 Release the hinge bracket

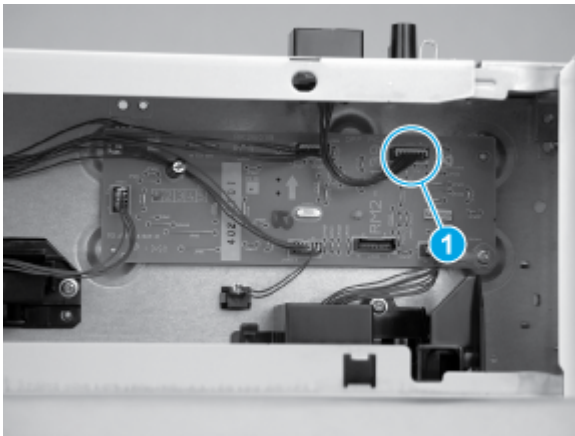


Remove the drawer connector holder

Follow these steps to remove the drawer connector holder.

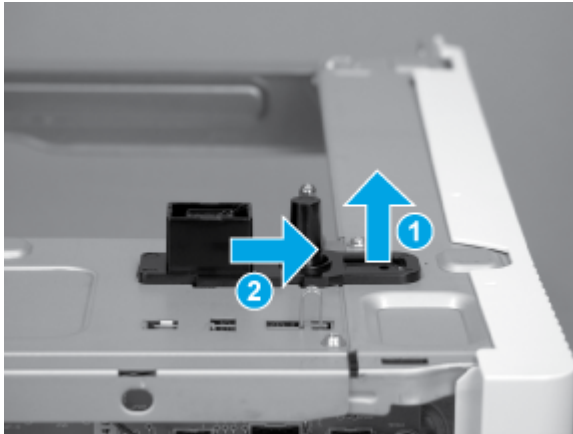
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1; J901).

Figure 5-2743 Disconnect one connector



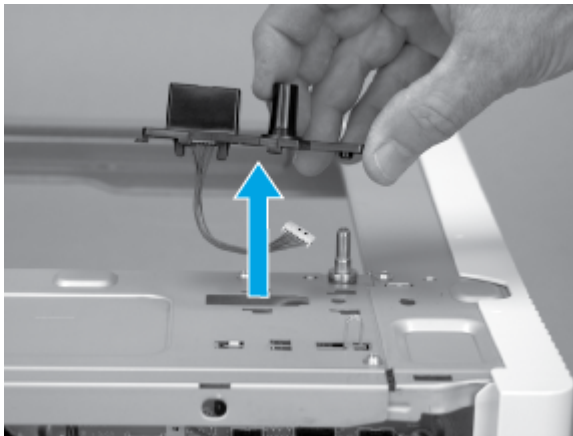
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the drawer connector holder as shown (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2744 Release one tab



3. Remove the drawer connector holder.

Figure 5-2745 Remove the tray connector

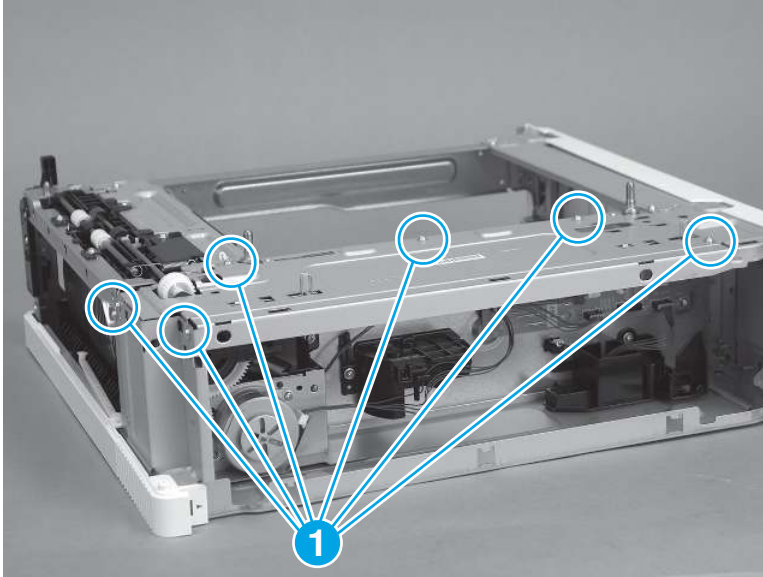


Remove the paper feed assembly

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed assembly.

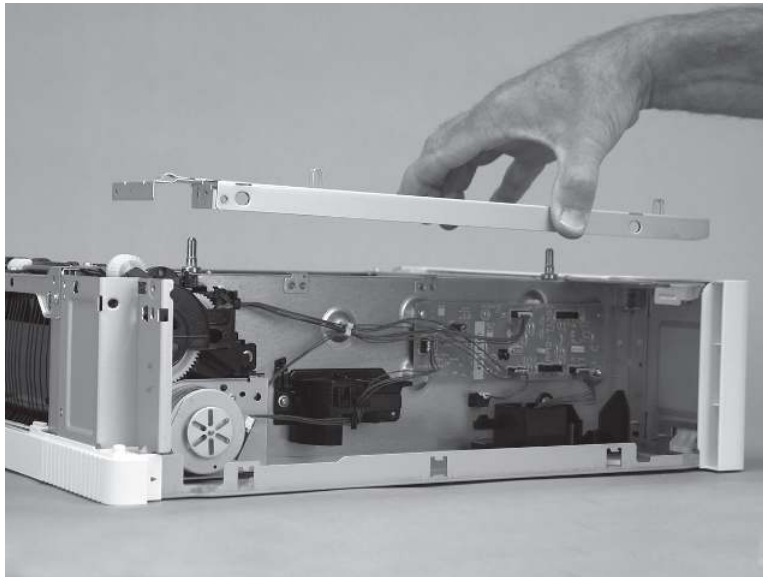
1. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2746 Remove six screws



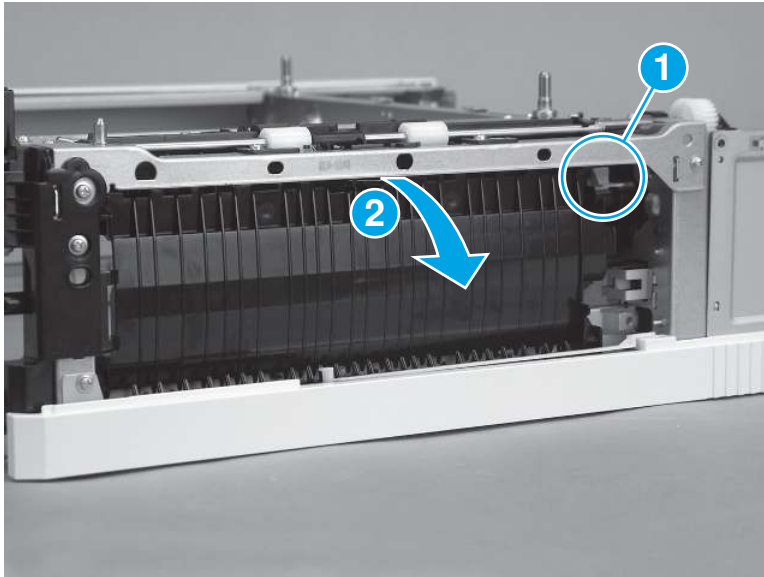
2. Remove the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 5-2747 Remove the sheet-metal plate



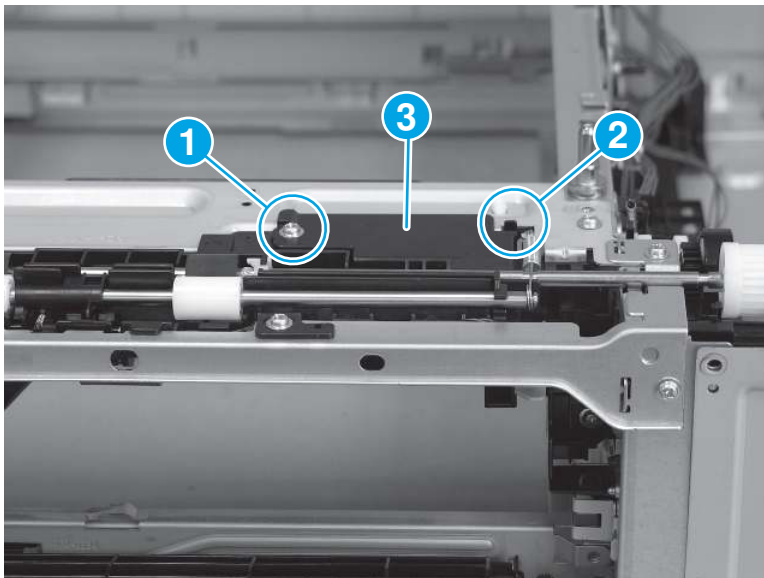
3. Release the green jam handle (callout 1), and then rotate the paper feed guide down (callout 2) and out of the way.

Figure 5-2748 Release the paper feed guide



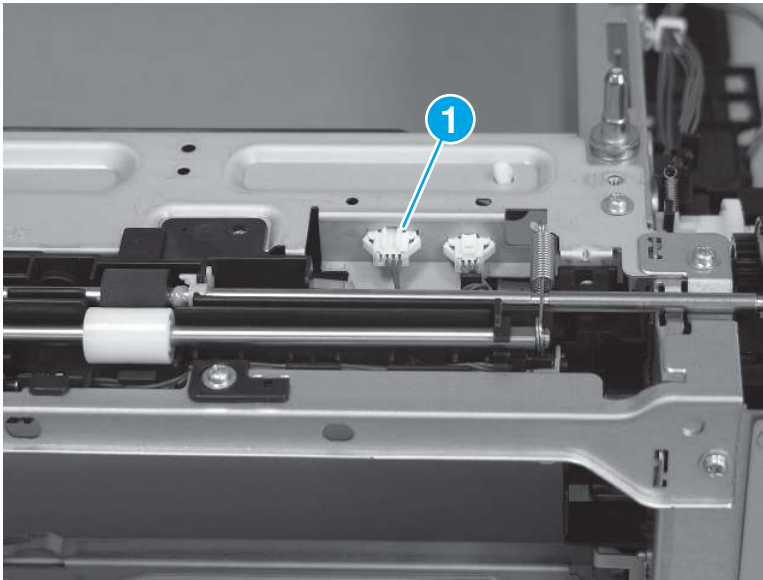
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the cover (callout 3).

Figure 5-2749 Remove the cover



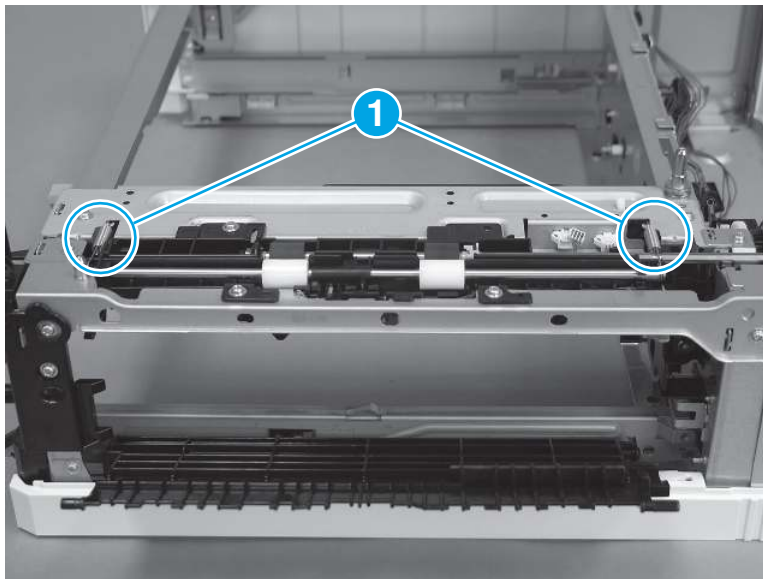
5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2750 Disconnect one connector



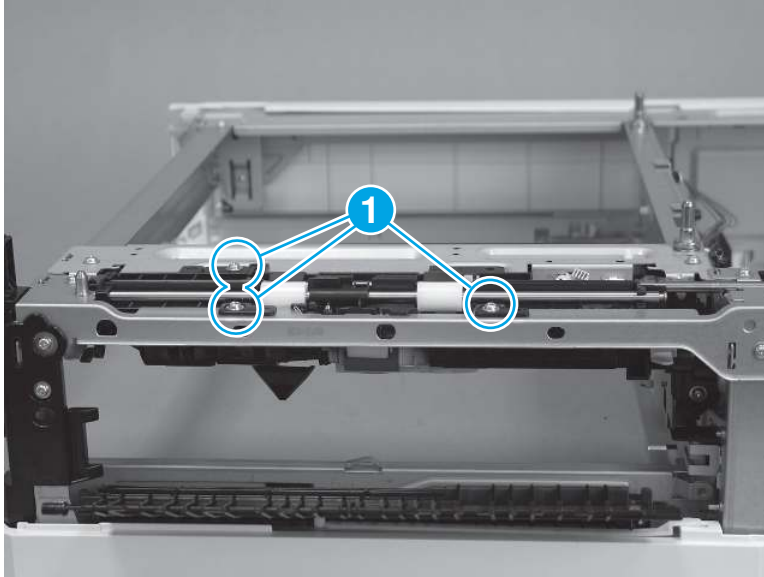
6. Remove two springs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2751 Remove two springs



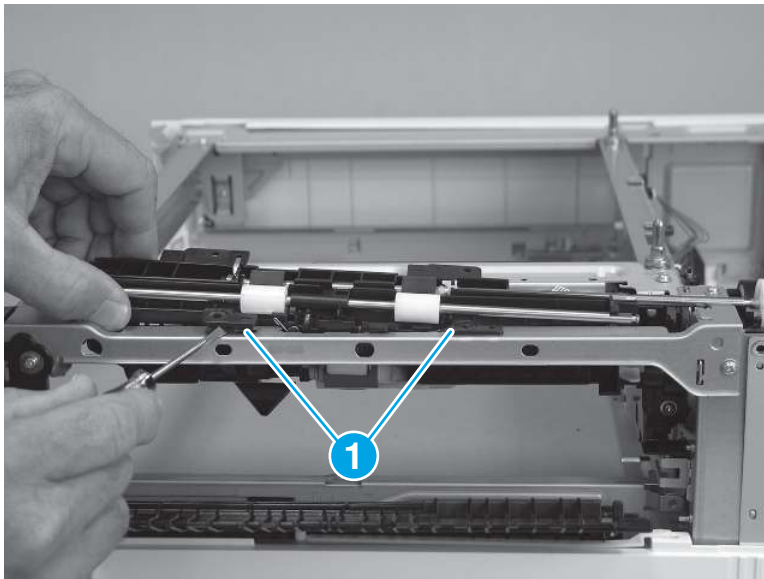
7. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2752 Remove three screws



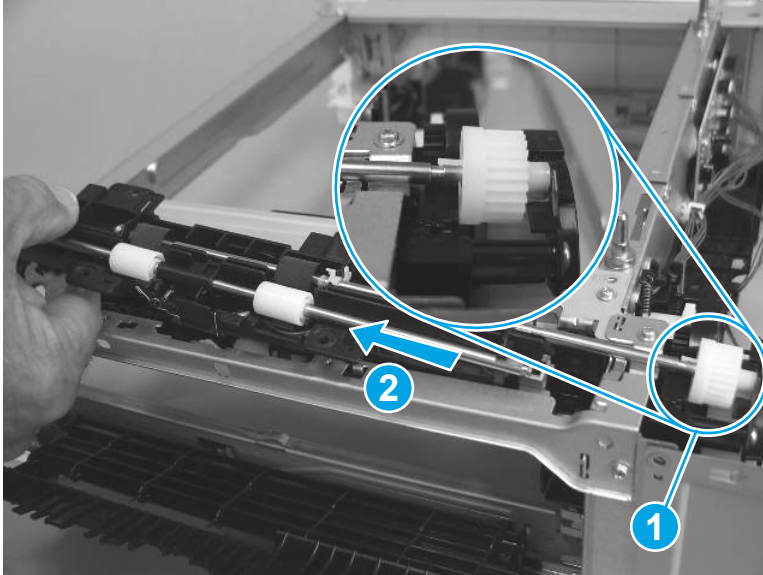
8. Slightly raise the tray end of the assembly, and then release two alignment pins (callout 1).

Figure 5-2753 Release two alignment pins



9. Release one tab on the gear (callout 1), slide the assembly away (callout 2) from the lifter drive assembly to release the shaft from the gear, and then remove the paper feed assembly.

Figure 5-2754 Remove the paper feed assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.



CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.



IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.



NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.



NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper pickup assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-103 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5154-000CN	Paper pickup assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder) NOTE: The tray pickup and separation roller assembly is included with the paper pickup assembly.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

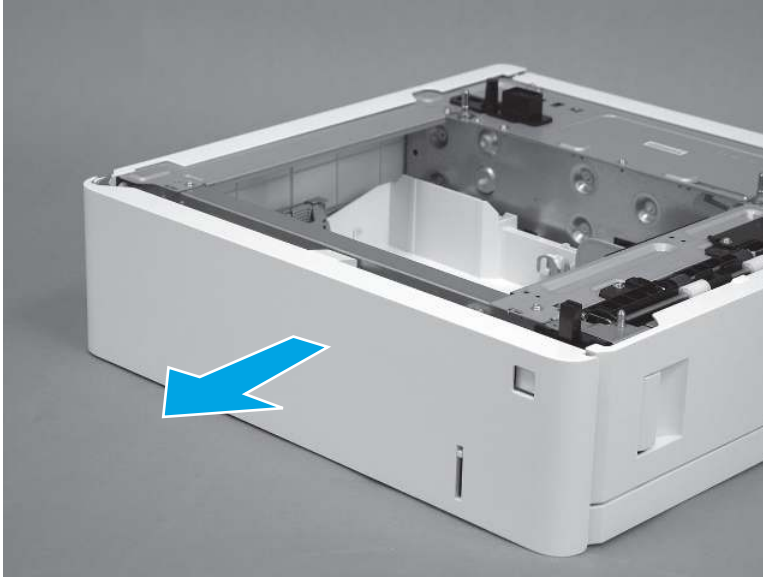
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the tray

Follow these steps to remove Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

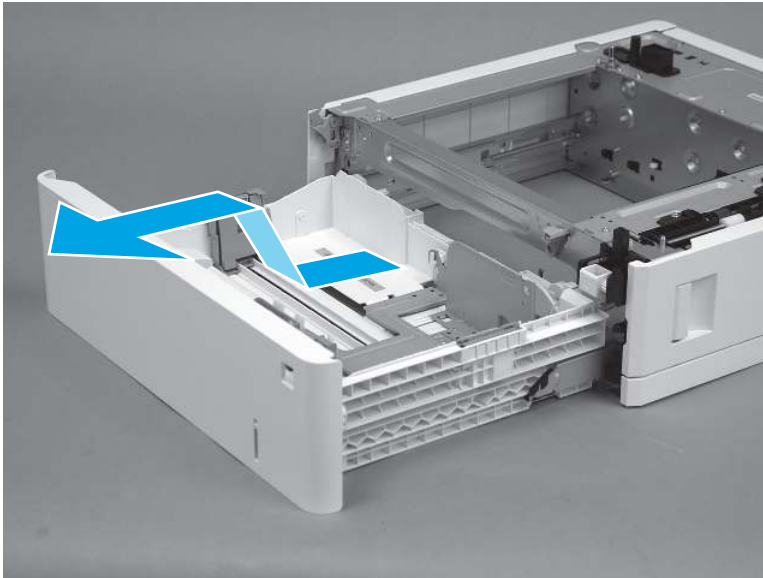
Figure 5-2755 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2756 Remove the tray



Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-104 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

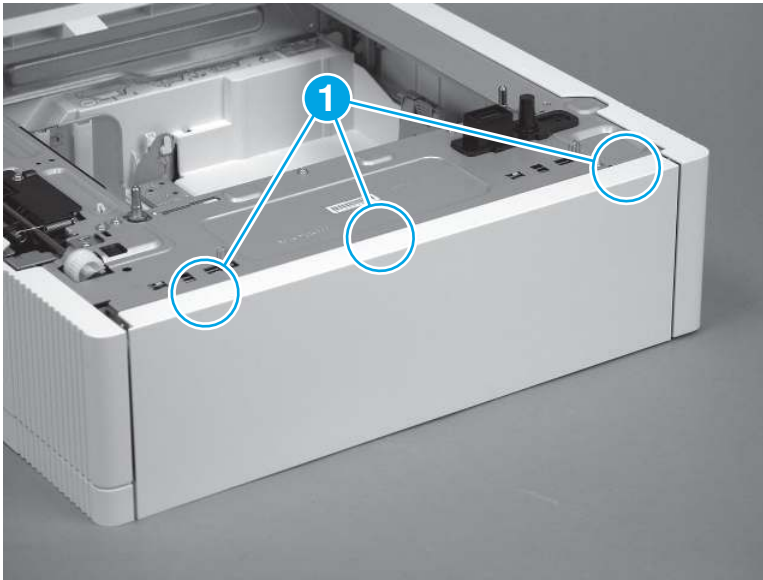
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

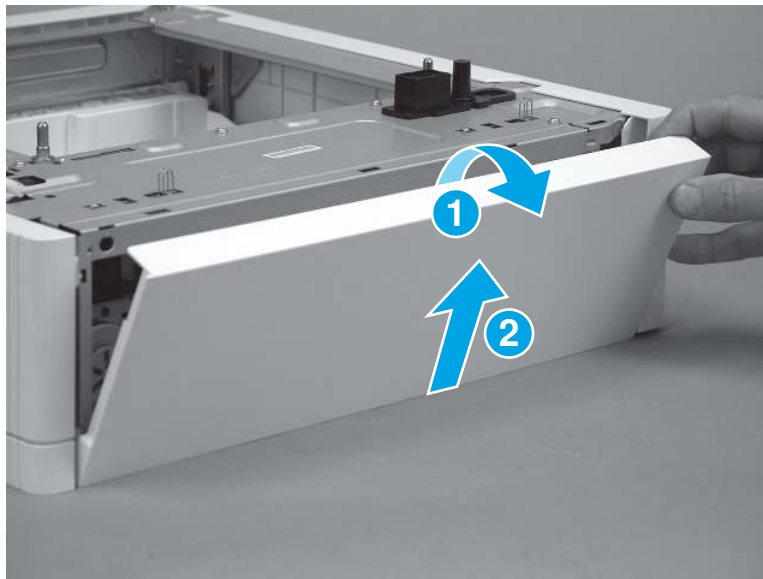
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2757 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).

Figure 5-2758 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

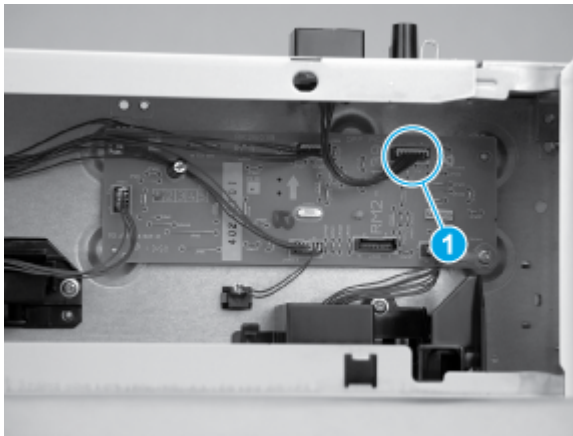
NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the drawer connector holder

Follow these steps to remove the drawer connector holder.

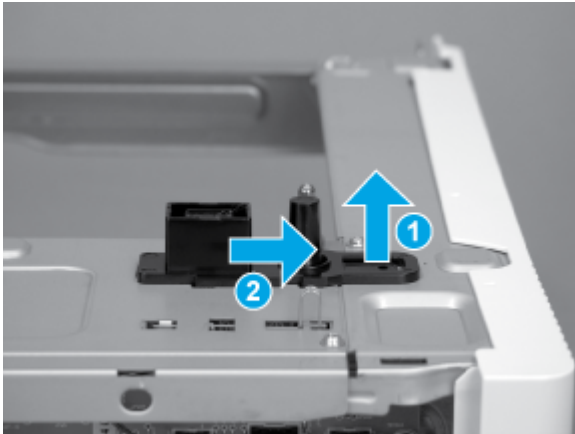
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1; J901).

Figure 5-2759 Disconnect one connector



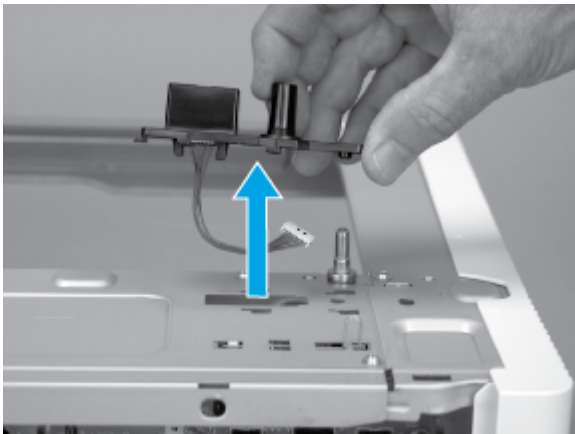
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the drawer connector holder as shown (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2760 Release one tab



3. Remove the drawer connector holder.

Figure 5-2761 Remove the tray connector

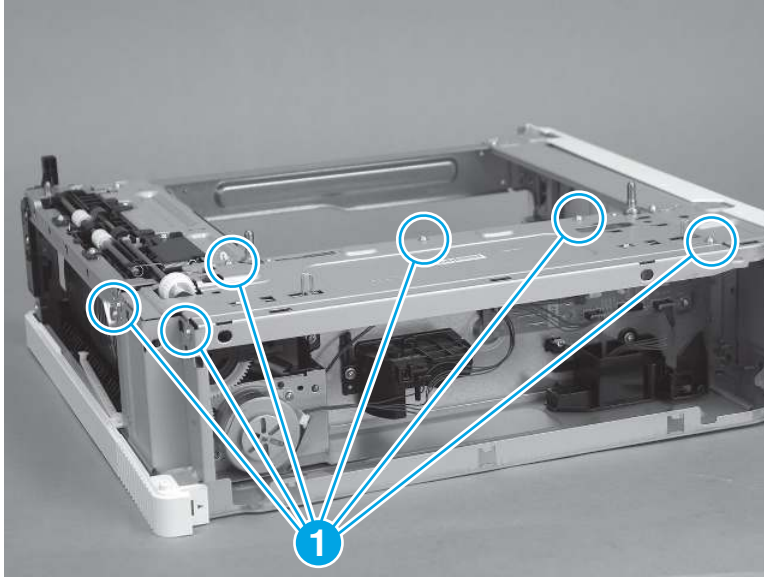


Remove the paper feed assembly

Follow these steps to remove the paper feed assembly.

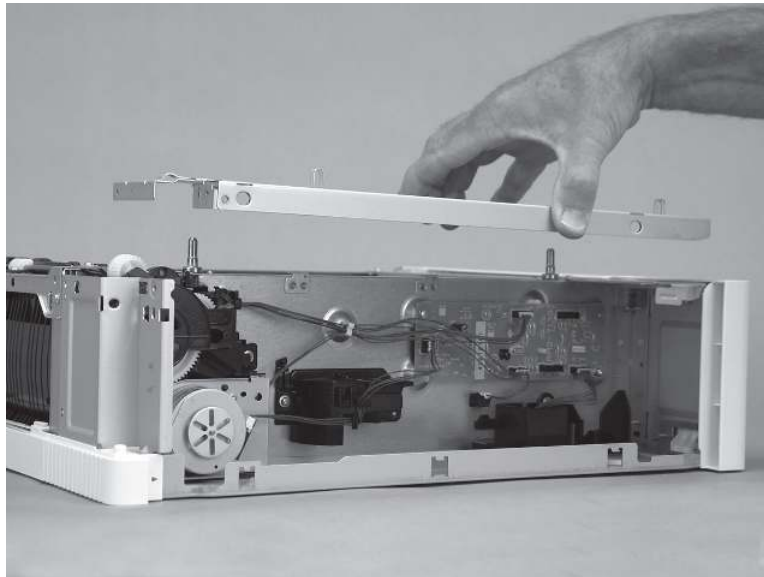
1. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2762 Remove six screws



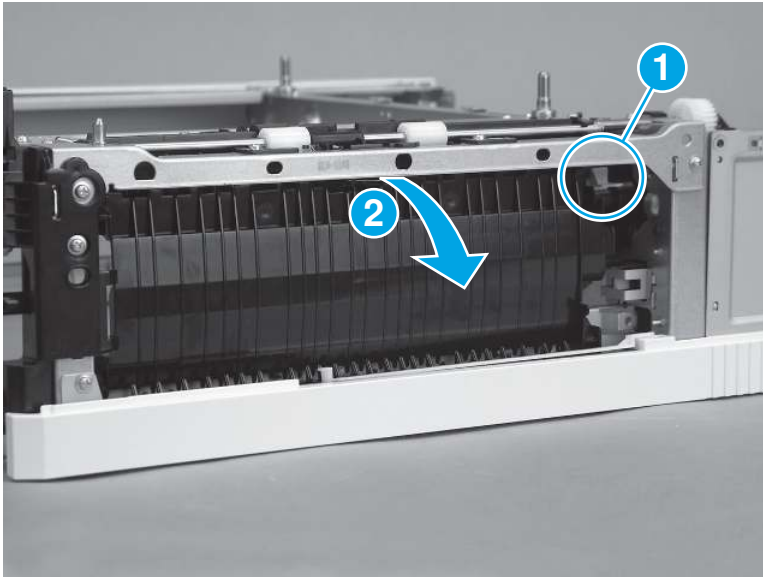
2. Remove the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 5-2763 Remove the sheet-metal plate



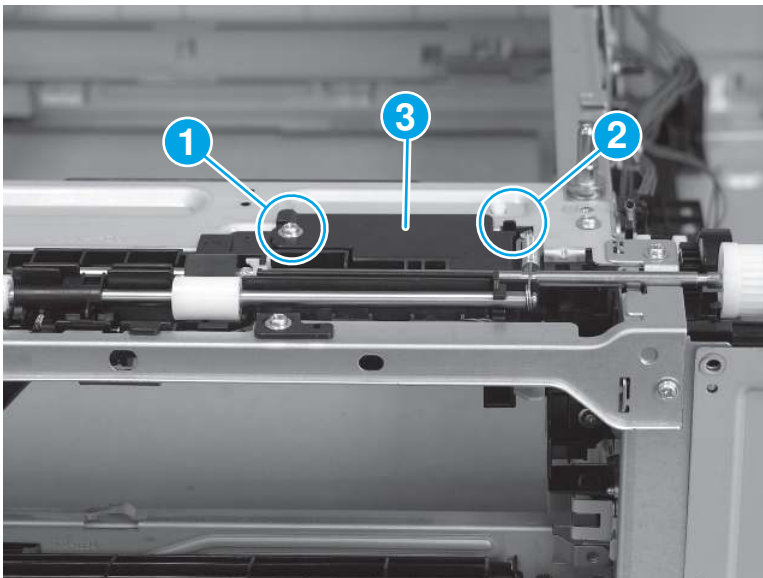
3. Release the green jam handle (callout 1), and then rotate the paper feed guide down (callout 2) and out of the way.

Figure 5-2764 Release the paper feed guide



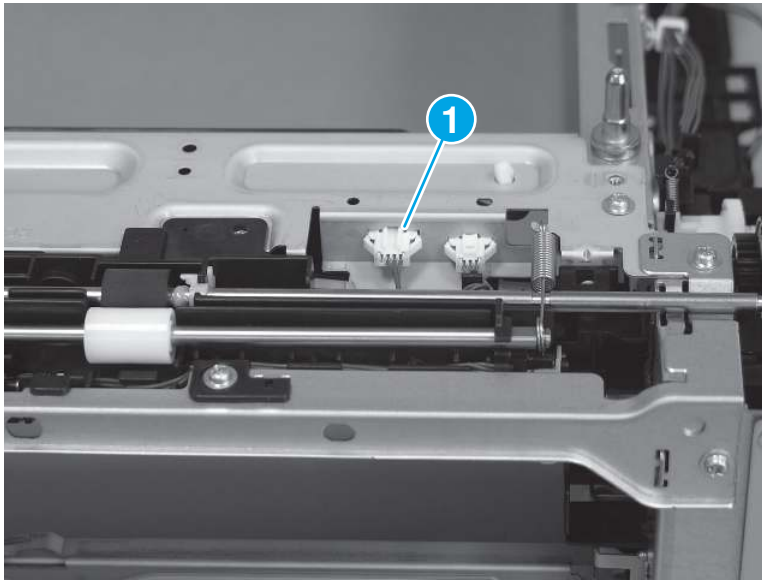
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the cover (callout 3).

Figure 5-2765 Remove the cover



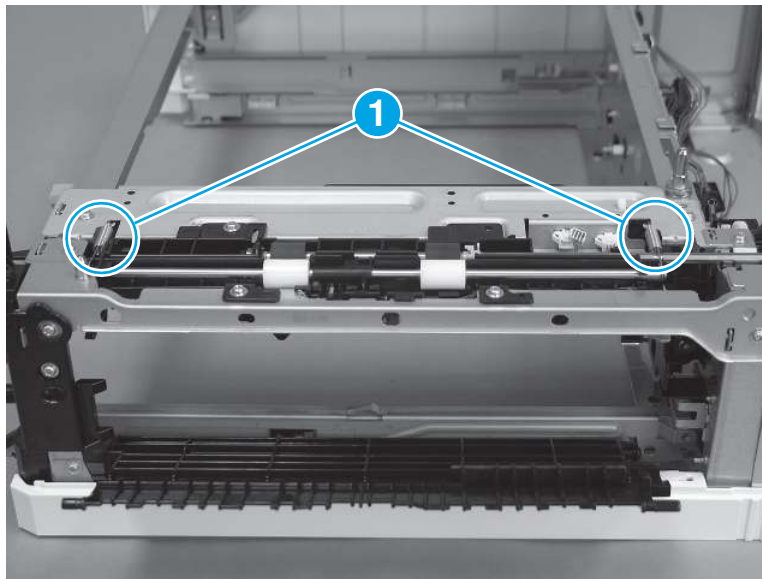
5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2766 Disconnect one connector



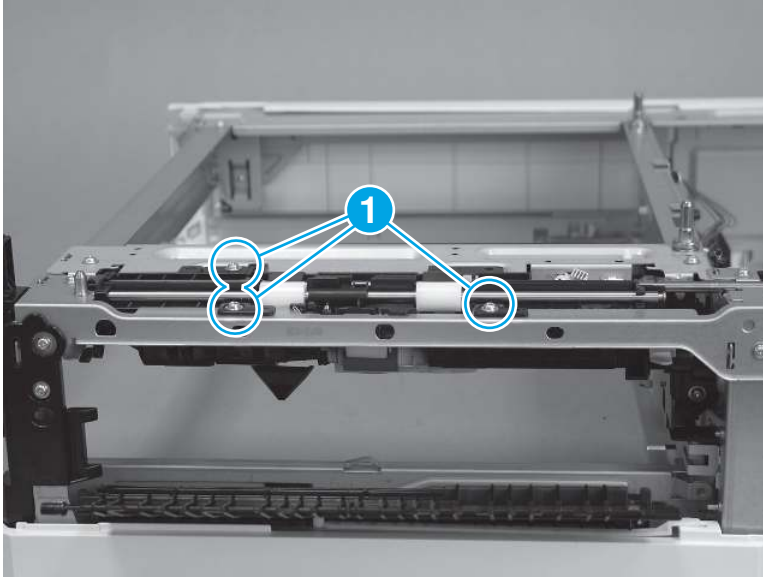
6. Remove two springs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2767 Remove two springs



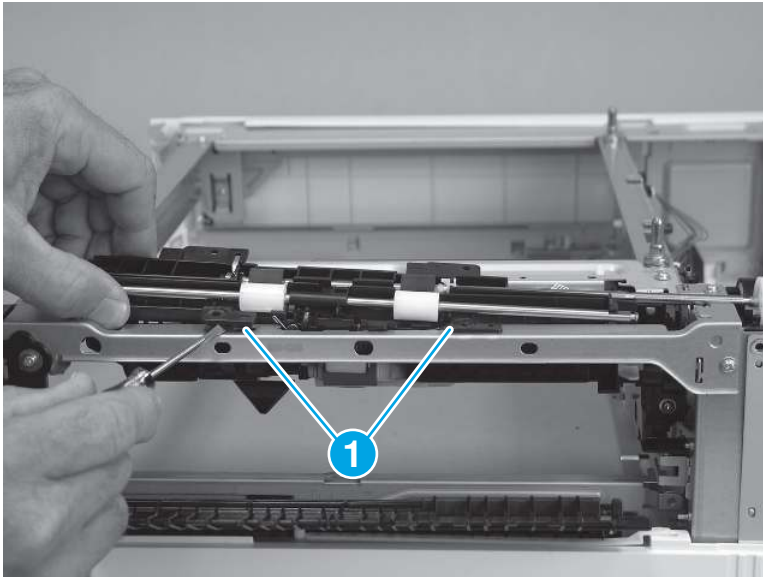
7. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2768 Remove three screws



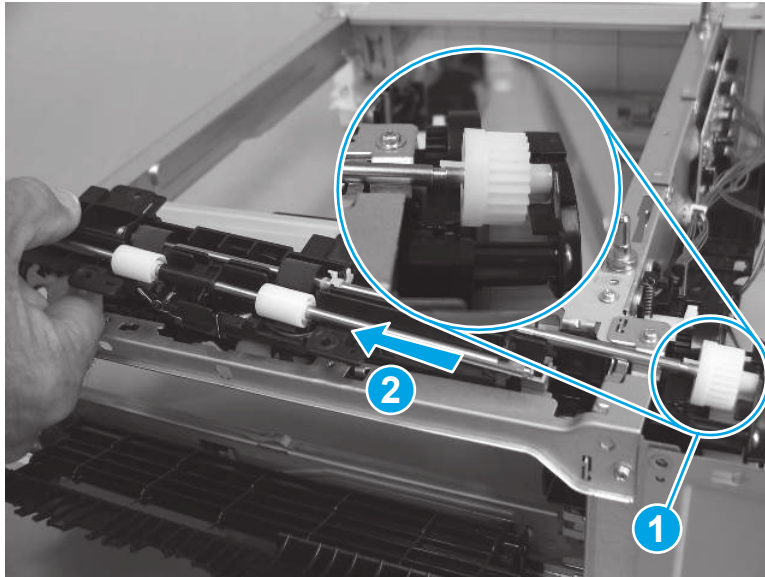
8. Slightly raise the tray end of the assembly, and then release two alignment pins (callout 1).

Figure 5-2769 Release two alignment pins



9. Release one tab on the gear (callout 1), slide the assembly away (callout 2) from the lifter drive assembly to release the shaft from the gear, and then remove the paper feed assembly.

Figure 5-2770 Remove the paper feed assembly

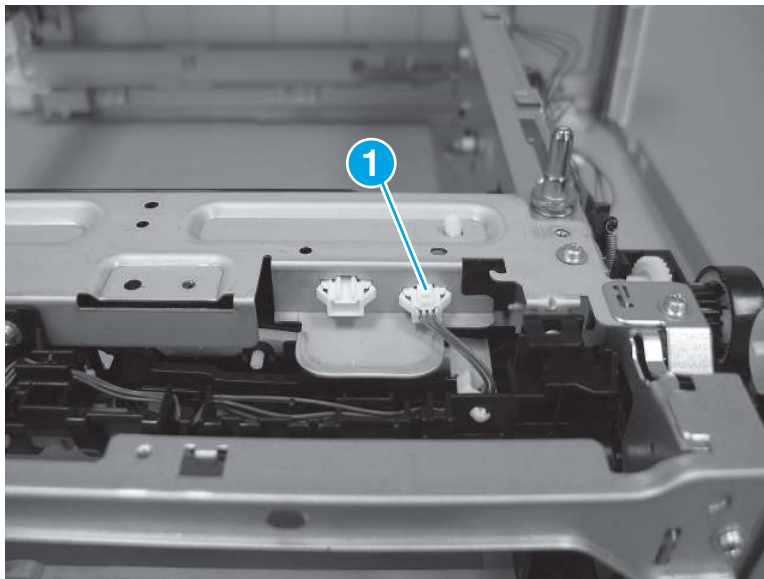


Remove the paper pickup assembly

Follow these steps to remove the paper pickup assembly.

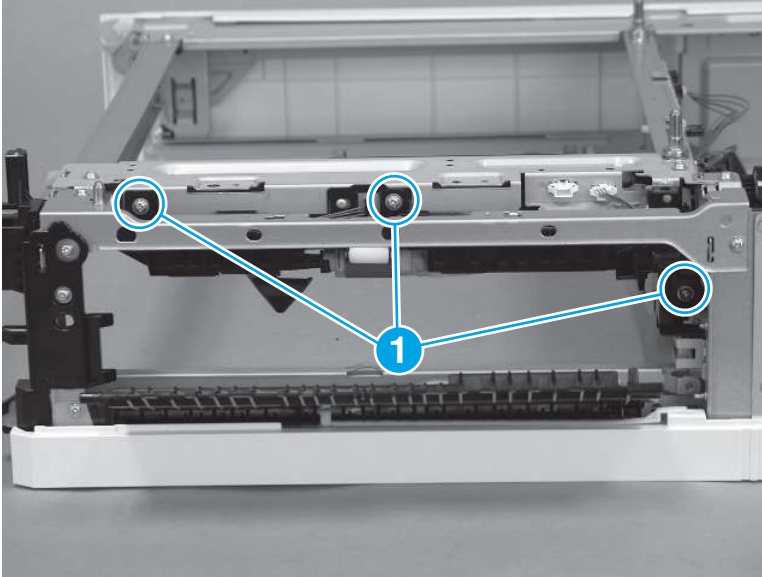
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2771 Disconnect one connector



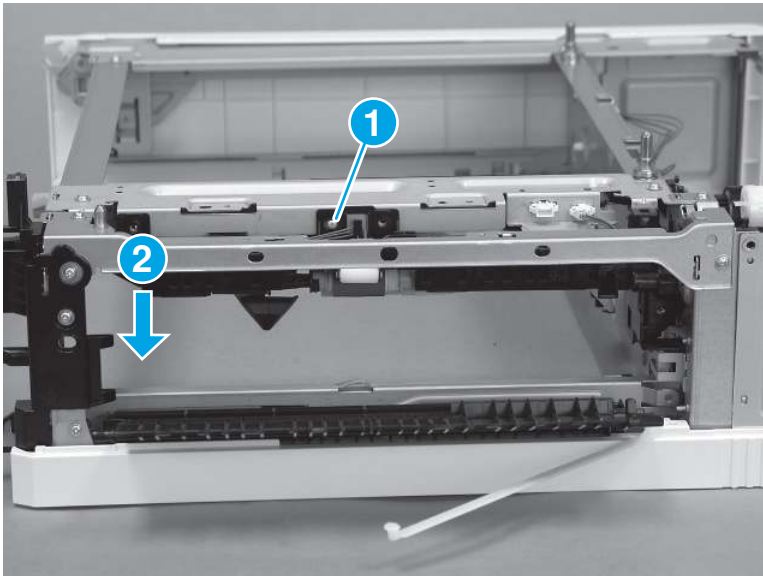
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2772 Remove three screws



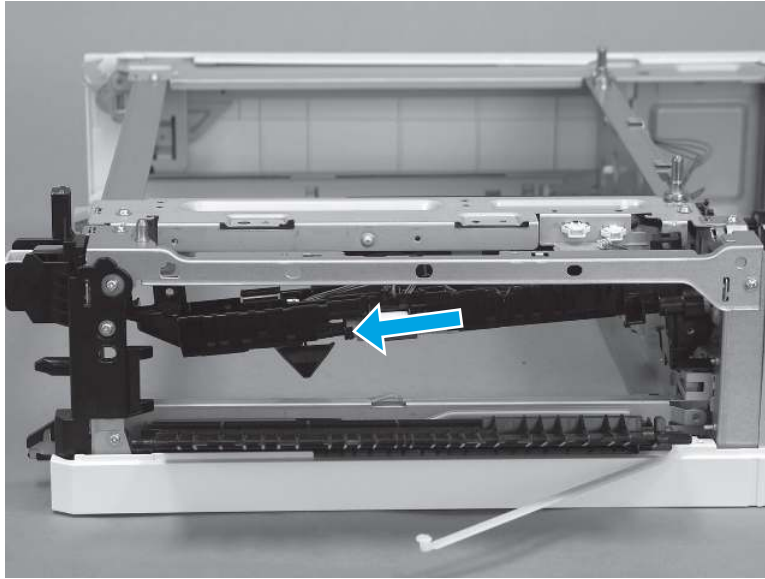
3. Release one alignment pins (callout 1), and then lower the left end of the assembly (callout 2)—the end near the tray cavity.

Figure 5-2773 Lower the end of the assembly



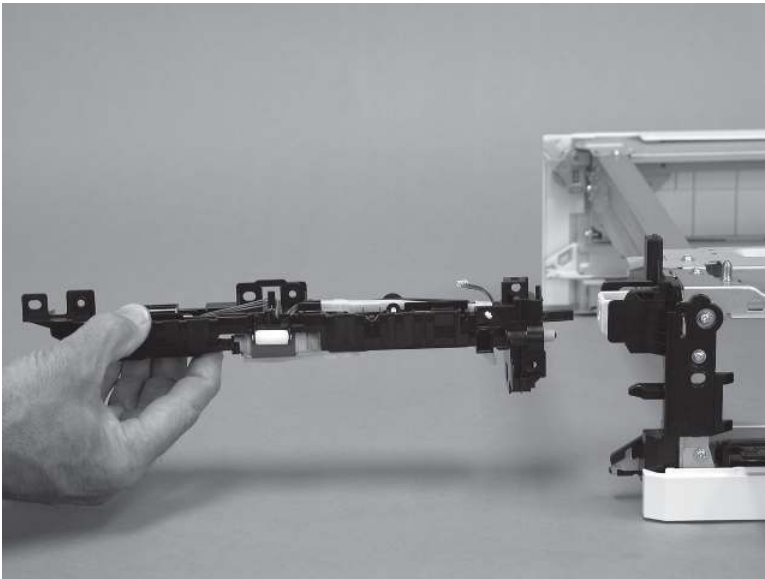
4. Slide the paper pickup assembly to the left to release it from the drive gear on the lifter drive assembly.

Figure 5-2774 Release the assembly from the drive gear



5. Remove the paper pickup assembly through the tray cavity.

Figure 5-2775 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.



1. Dispose of the defective part.




NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Feeder drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the feeder drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-105 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5148-000CN	Feeder drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

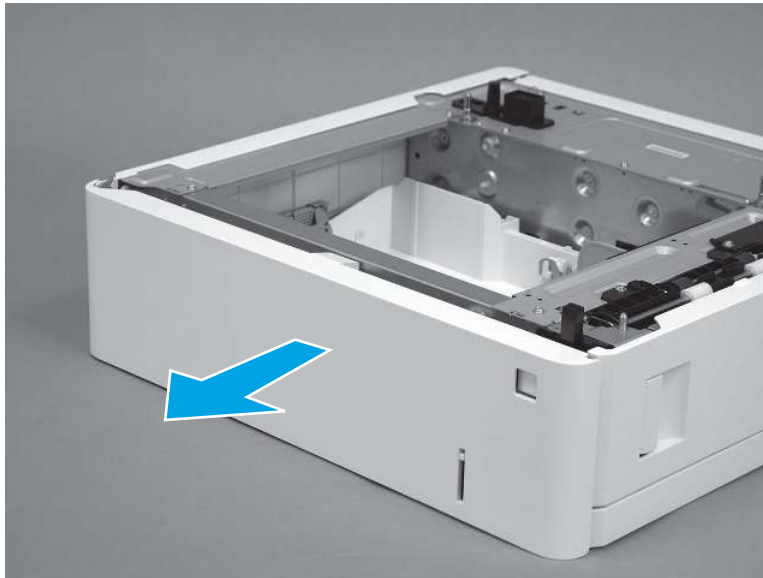
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the tray

Follow these steps to remove Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

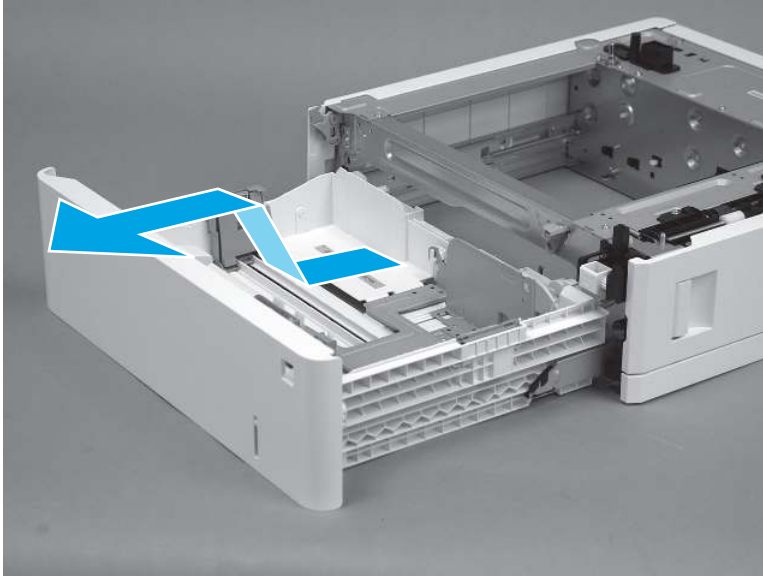
Figure 5-2776 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2777 Remove the tray



Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-106 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

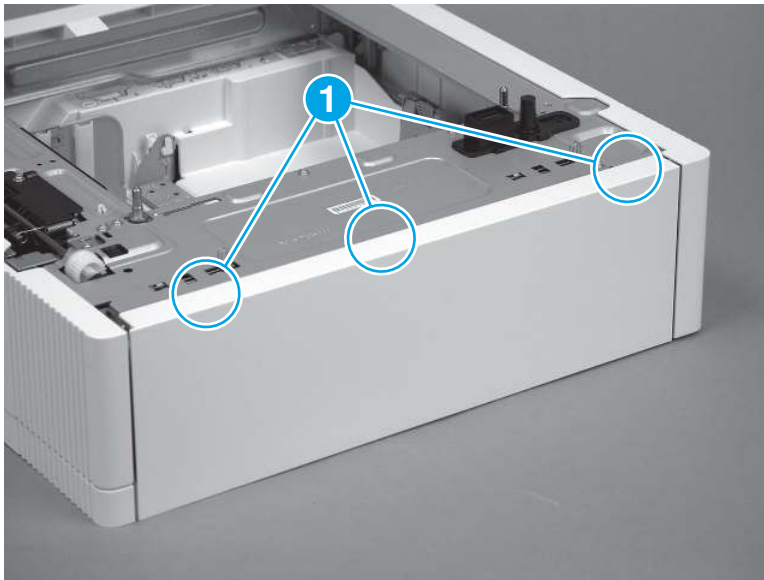
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

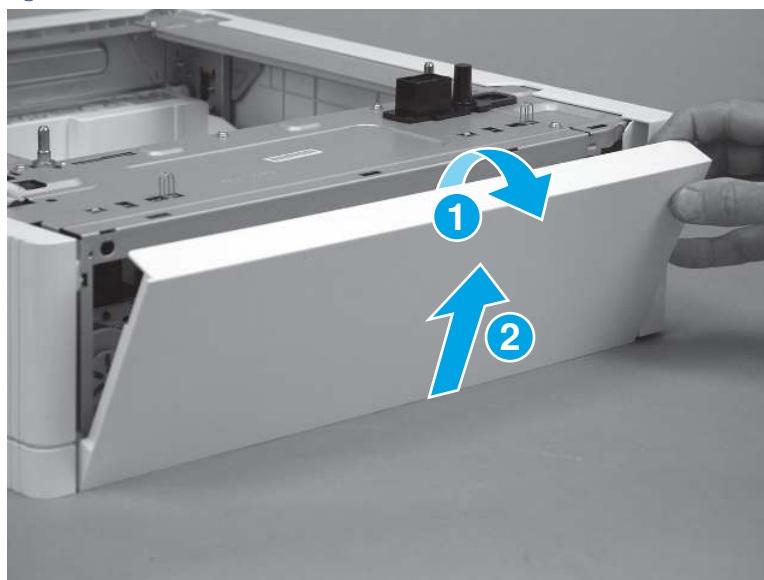
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2778 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).


Figure 5-2779 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

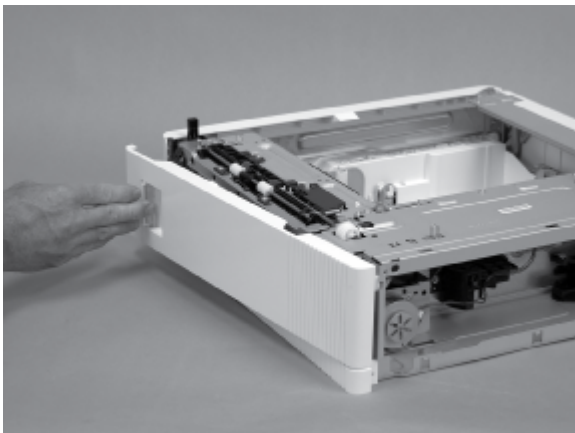
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

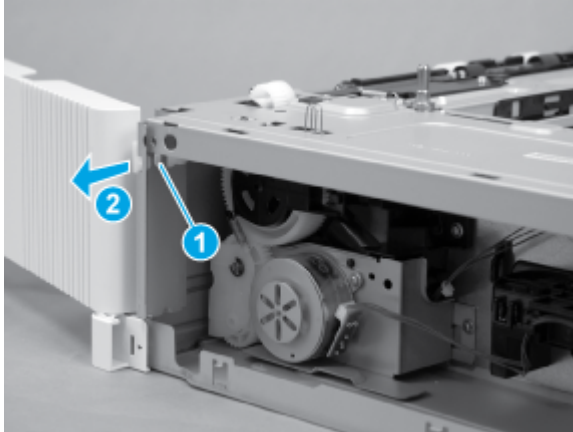
1. Open the door.

Figure 5-2780 Open the door



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the door-hinge bracket away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2781 Release the hinge bracket

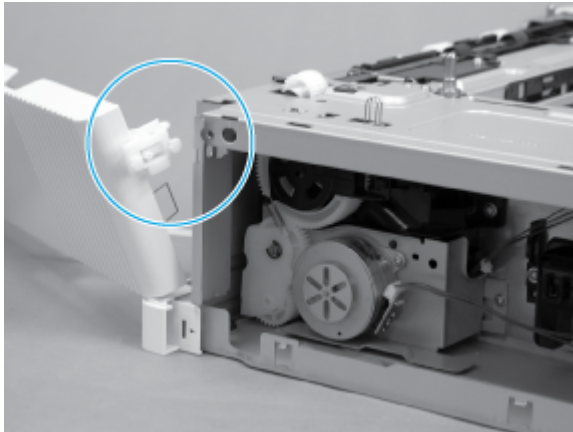


3. Remove the door-hinge bracket from the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: The door is still attached to the accessory by the door link. Do not attempt to completely remove the door.

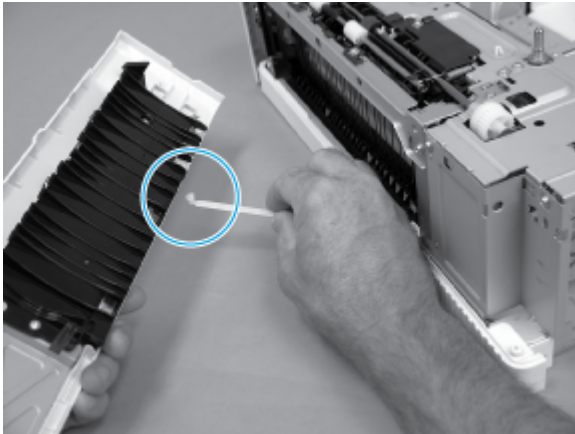
The door hinge bracket is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the door.

Figure 5-2782 Remove the hinge bracket



4. Release the door link from the slot in the door to remove the right door.

Figure 5-2783 Release the hinge bracket

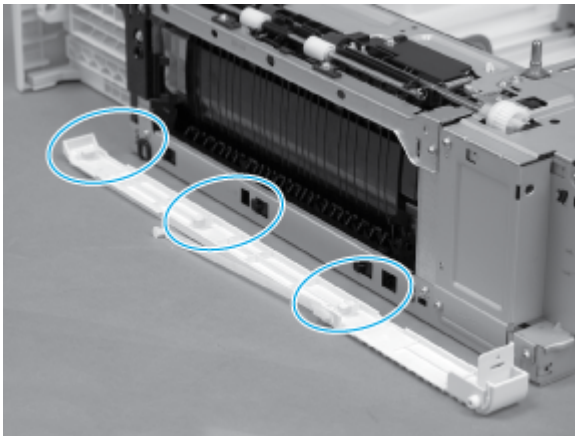


Remove the right-lower cover

Follow these steps to remove the right-lower cover.

1. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover.

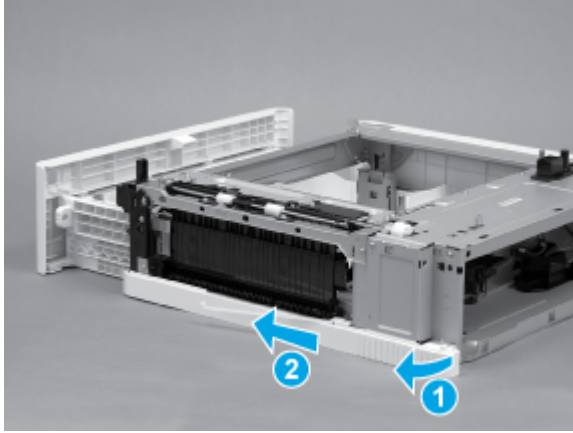
Figure 5-2784 Cover mounting tabs



2. Partially open the tray, slightly flex the end of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then slide it towards the front of the accessory (callout 2) to release it.

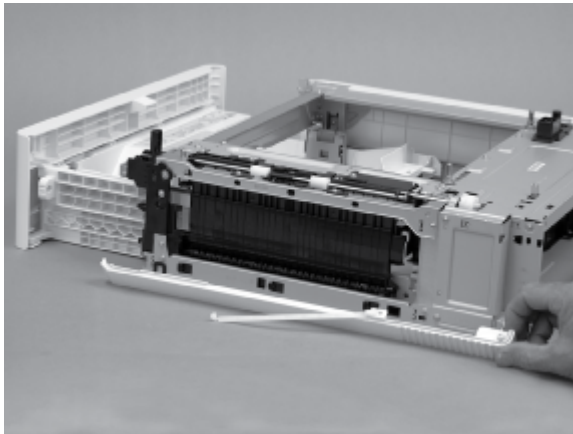
⚠ CAUTION: The three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover are easily damaged. Do not over flex the end of the cover when it is released. Push in on the middle tab to protect it when removing the cover.

Figure 5-2785 Release the cover



3. Remove the right-lower cover.

Figure 5-2786 Remove the cover

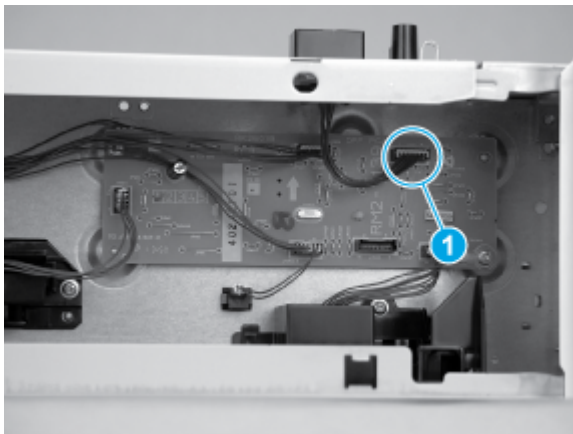


Remove the drawer connector holder

Follow these steps to remove the drawer connector holder.

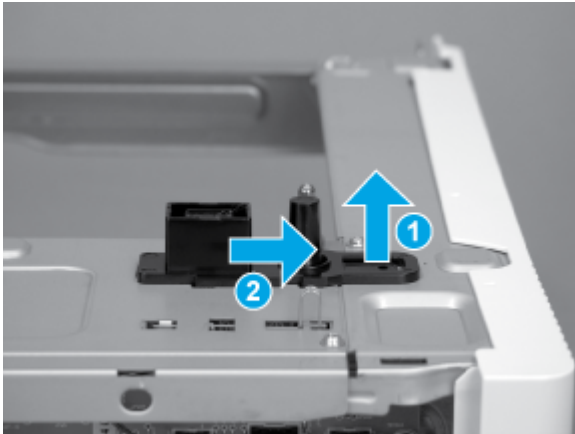
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1; J901).

Figure 5-2787 Disconnect one connector



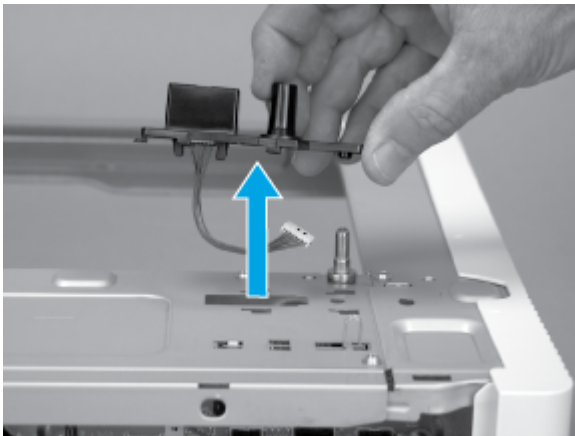
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the drawer connector holder as shown (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2788 Release one tab



3. Remove the drawer connector holder.

Figure 5-2789 Remove the tray connector

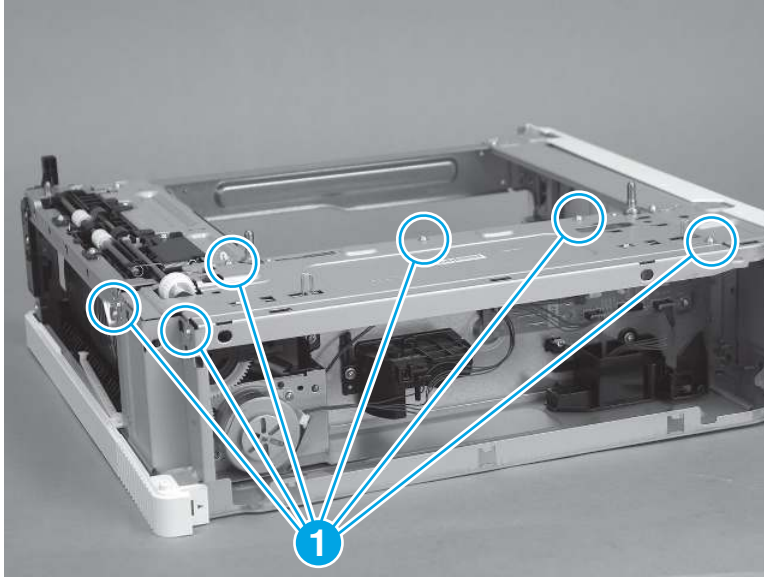


Remove the feeder drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the feeder drive assembly.

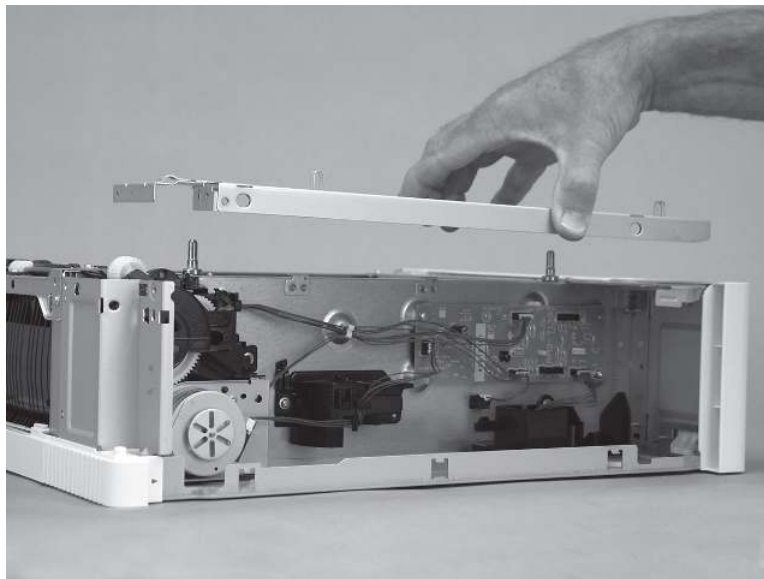
1. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2790 Remove six screws



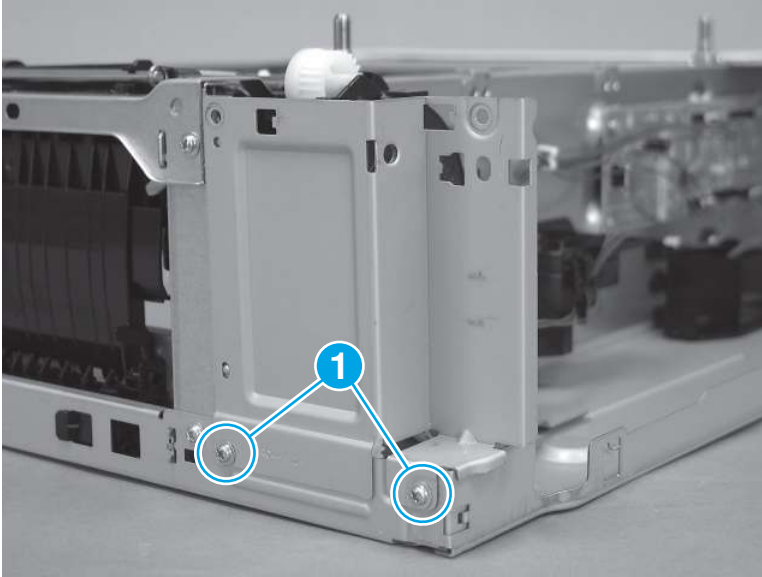
2. Remove the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 5-2791 Remove the sheet-metal plate



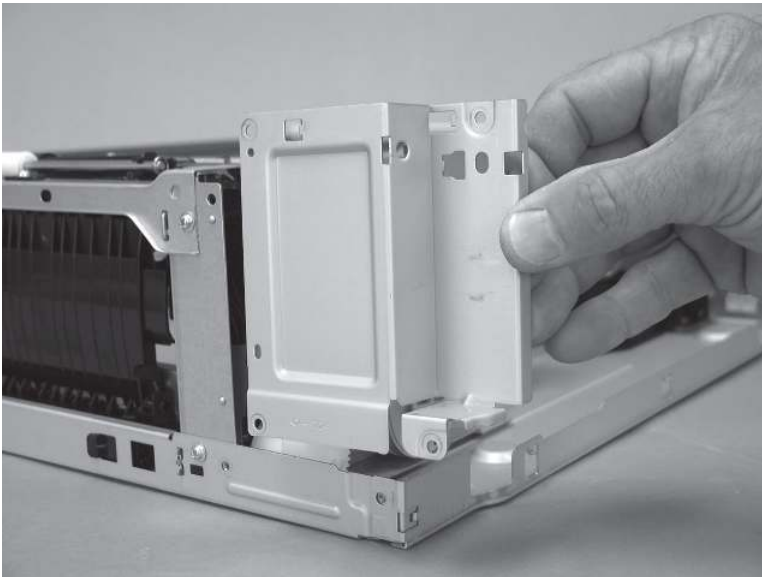
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2792 Remove two screws



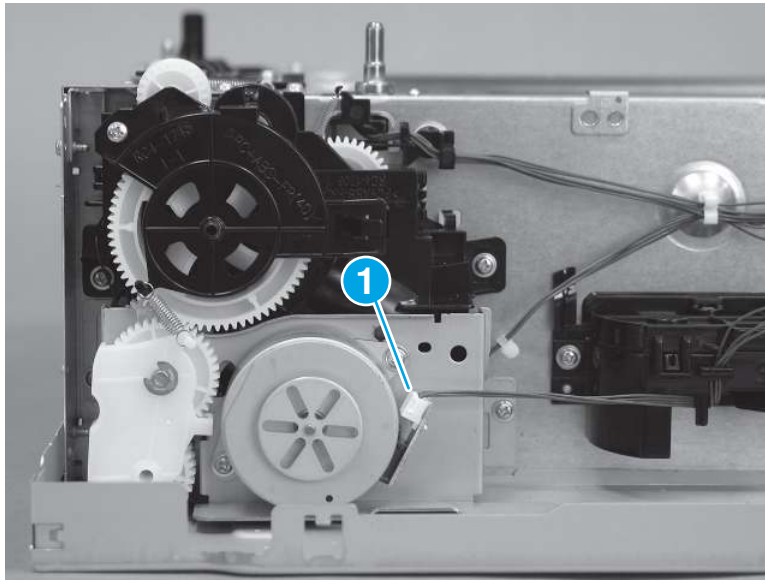
4. Remove the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 5-2793 Remove the sheet-metal plate



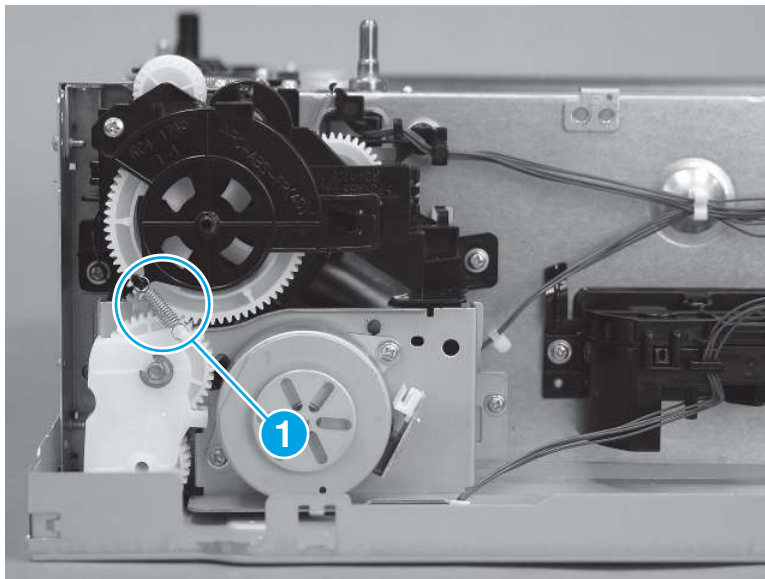
5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2794 Disconnect one connector



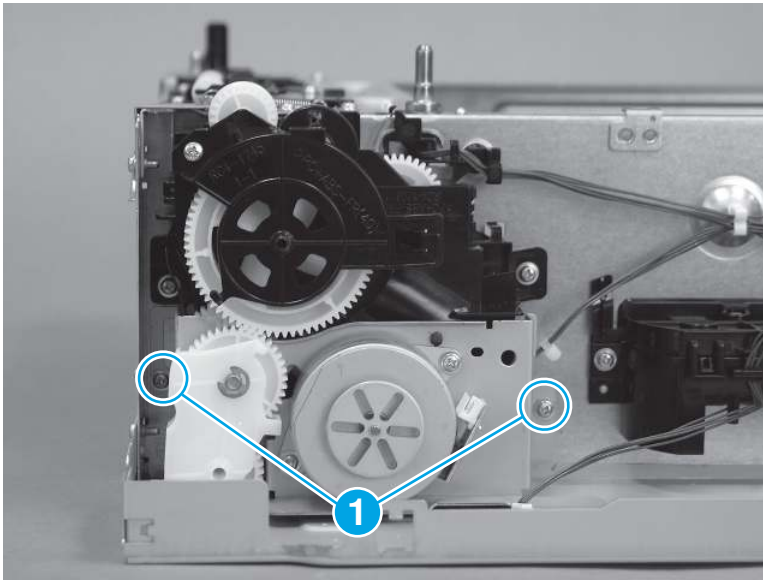
6. Remove one spring (callout 1).

Figure 5-2795 Remove one spring



7. Remove two screws (callout 1).

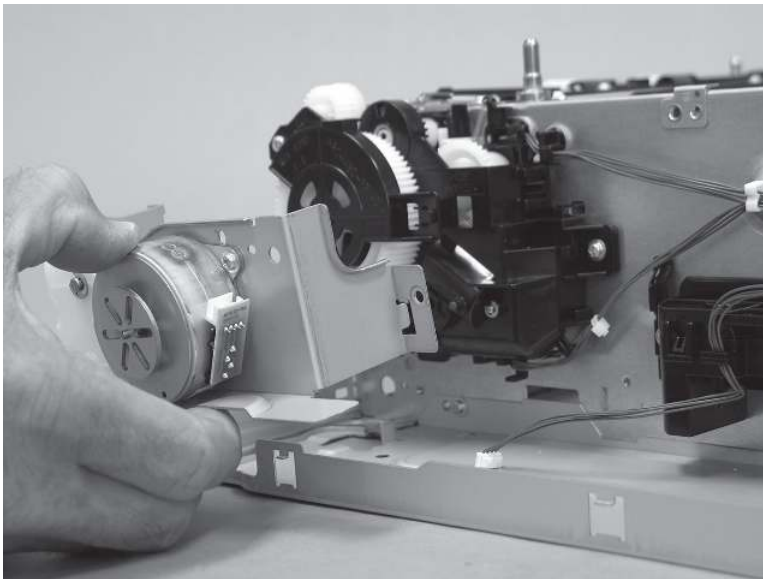
Figure 5-2796 Remove two screws



8. Remove the feeder drive assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: If the assembly is being removed to access another part, take care not to wipe any of the grease off of the gears.

Figure 5-2797 Remove the assembly





Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.

📄 NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.


Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)


Learn about removing and replacing the lifter drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

 **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-107 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-5149-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

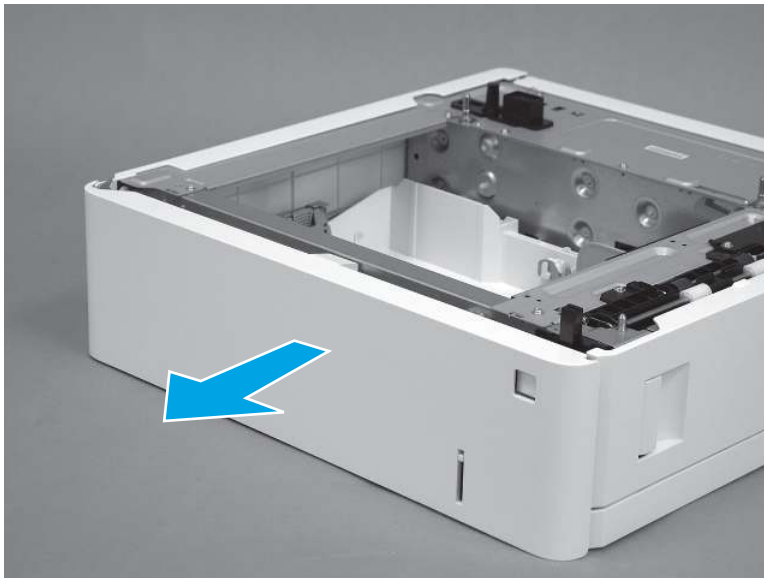
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the tray

Follow these steps to remove Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-2798 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.


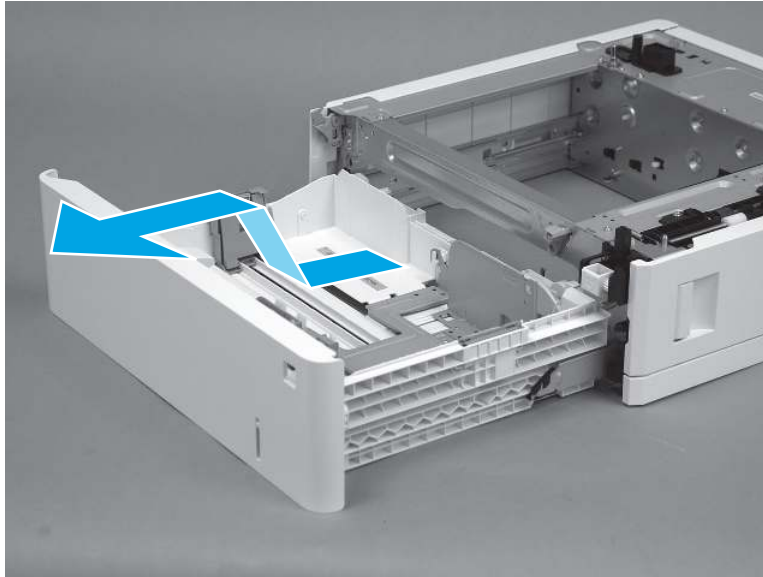
 **NOTE:** For a replacement tray: If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25–67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2799 Remove the tray



Removal and replacement: Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder).

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to <https://parts.hp.com/hpparts> to order the part.

Table 5-108 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-1792-000CN	Rear cover (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

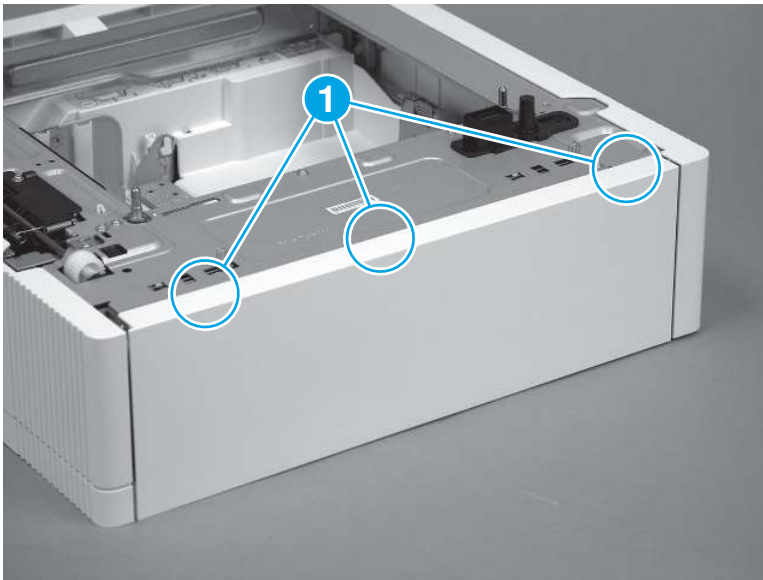
No post service test is available for this assembly.

Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

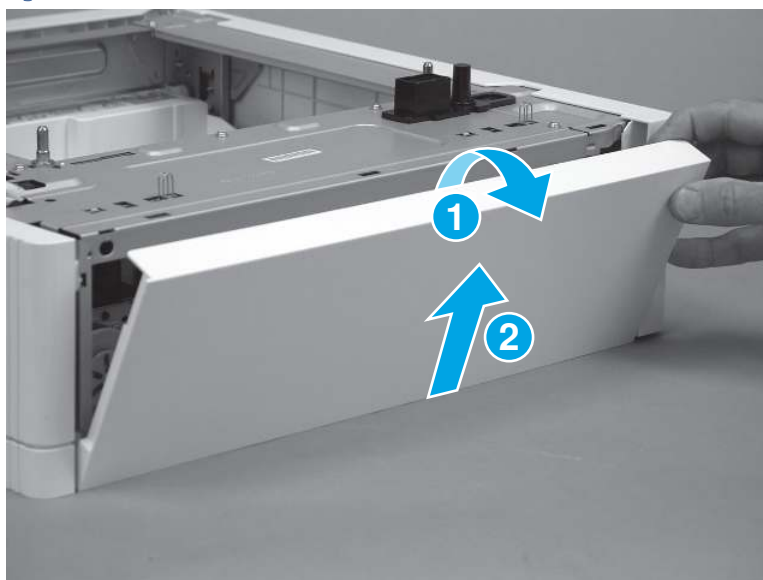
1. Release three tabs (callout 1).

Figure 5-2800 Release three tabs



2. Rotate the top of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then lift it up to remove it (callout 2).


Figure 5-2801 Remove the cover



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

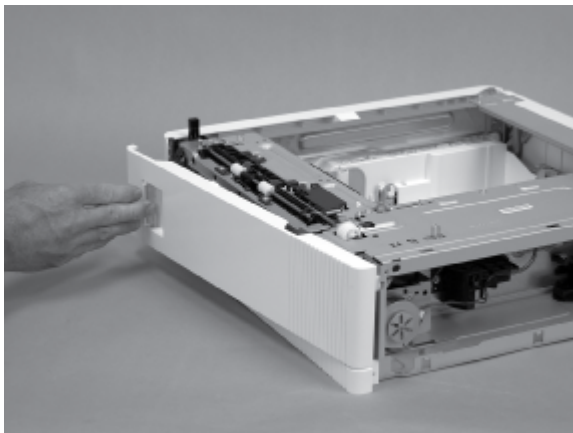
 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

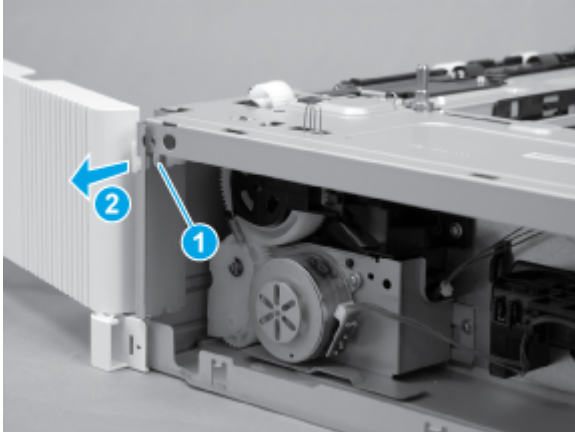
1. Open the door.

Figure 5-2802 Open the door



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the door-hinge bracket away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2803 Release the hinge bracket

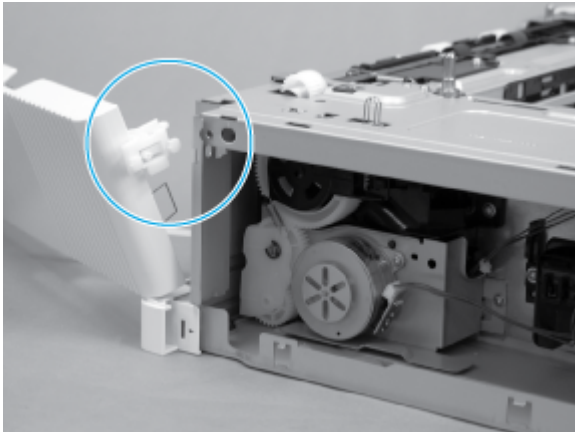


3. Remove the door-hinge bracket from the chassis.

⚠ CAUTION: The door is still attached to the accessory by the door link. Do not attempt to completely remove the door.

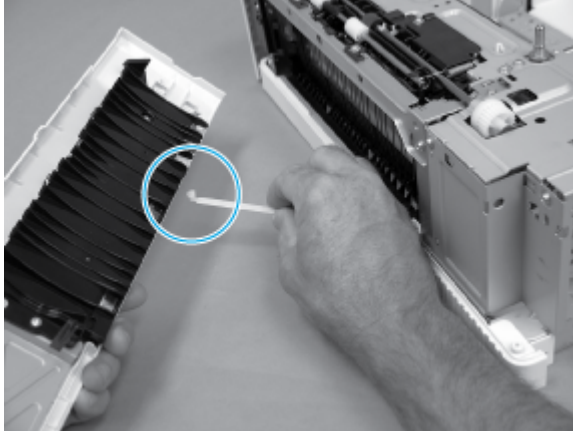
The door hinge bracket is not captive. Do not lose it when handling the door.

Figure 5-2804 Remove the hinge bracket



4. Release the door link from the slot in the door to remove the right door.

Figure 5-2805 Release the hinge bracket

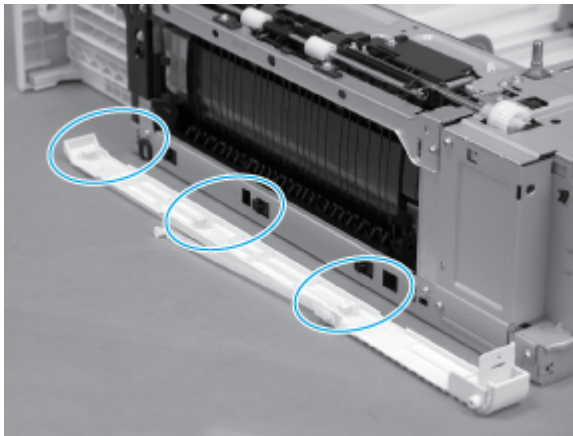


Remove the right-lower cover

Follow these steps to remove the right-lower cover.

1. Before proceeding, take note of the location of the three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover.

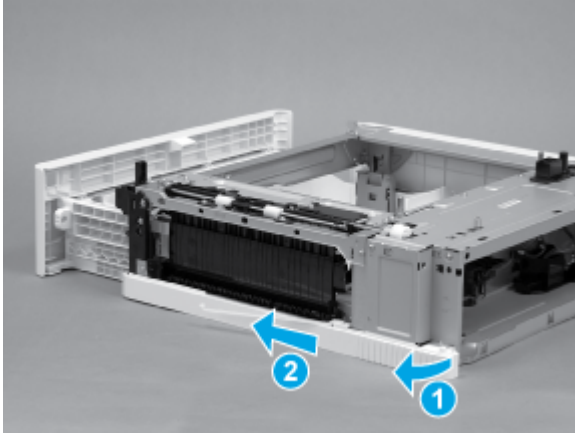
Figure 5-2806 Cover mounting tabs



2. Partially open the tray, slightly flex the end of the cover away from the accessory (callout 1), and then slide it towards the front of the accessory (callout 2) to release it.

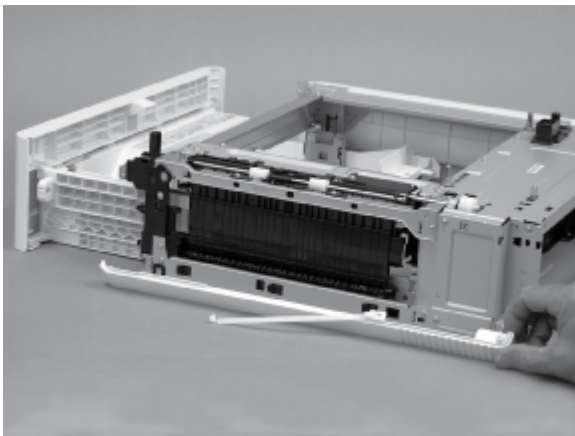
⚠ CAUTION: The three mounting tabs on the back side of the cover are easily damaged. Do not over flex the end of the cover when it is released. Push in on the middle tab to protect it when removing the cover.

Figure 5-2807 Release the cover



3. Remove the right-lower cover.

Figure 5-2808 Remove the cover

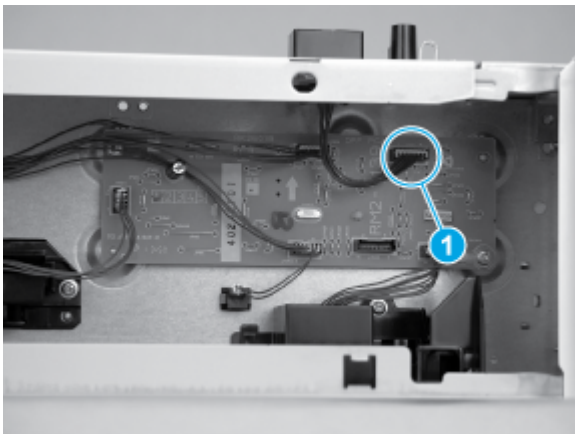


Remove the drawer connector holder

Follow these steps to remove the drawer connector holder.

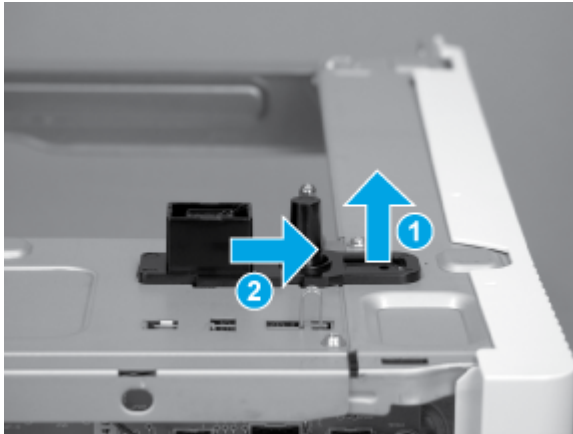
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1; J901).

Figure 5-2809 Disconnect one connector



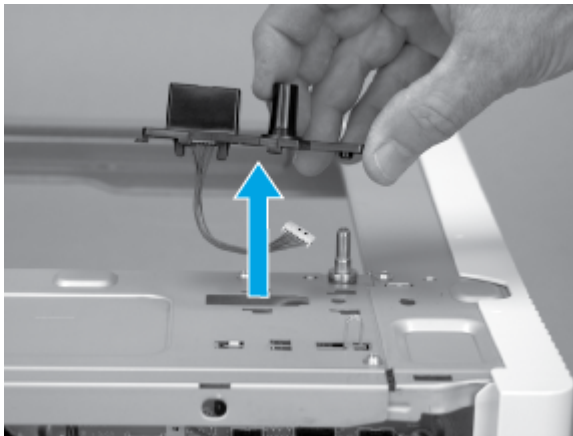
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the drawer connector holder as shown (callout 2) to release it.

Figure 5-2810 Release one tab



3. Remove the drawer connector holder.

Figure 5-2811 Remove the tray connector

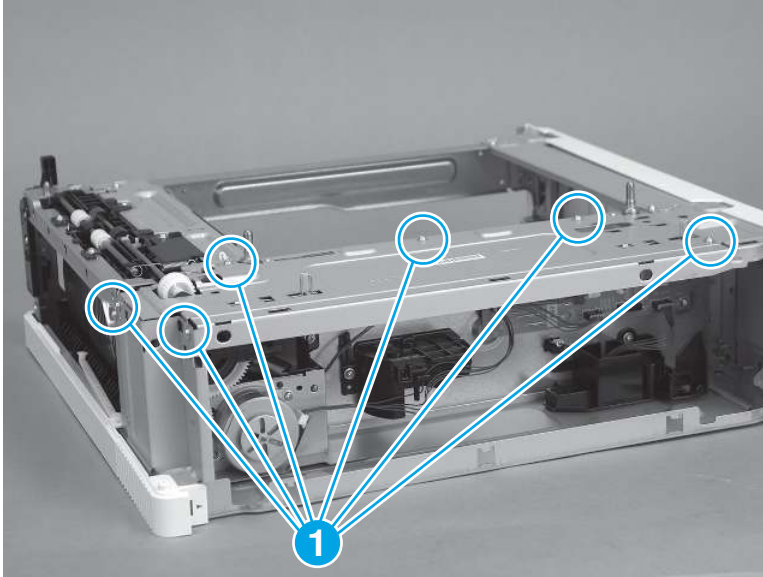


Remove the feeder drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the feeder drive assembly.

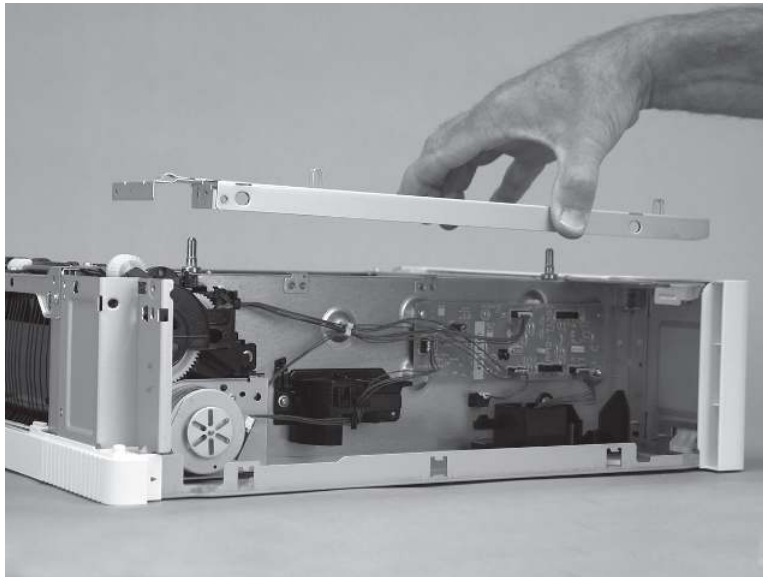
1. Remove six screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2812 Remove six screws



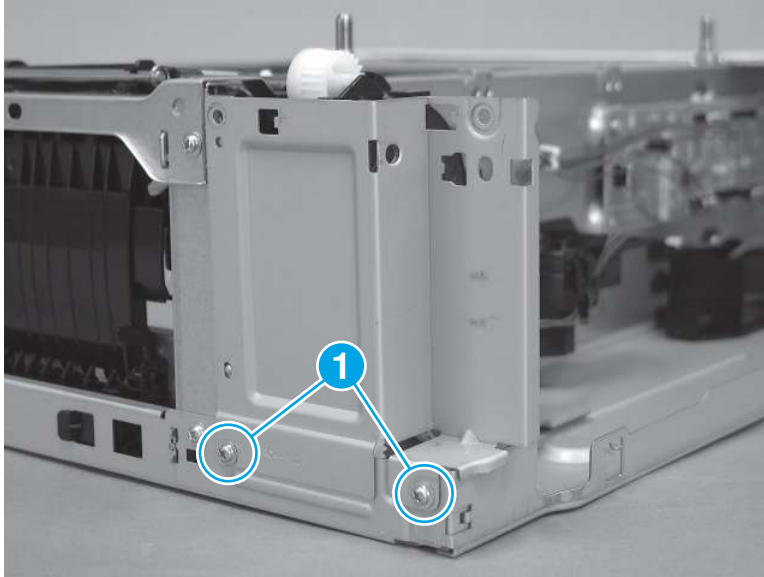
2. Remove the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 5-2813 Remove the sheet-metal plate



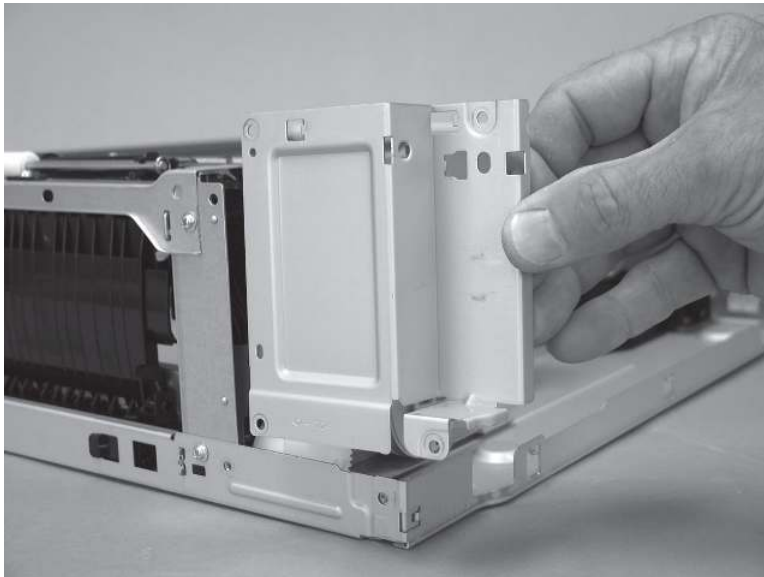
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2814 Remove two screws



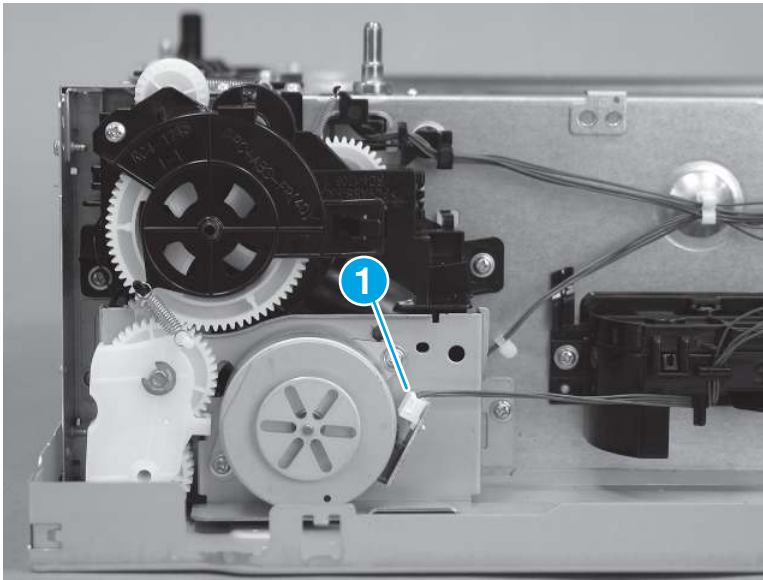
4. Remove the sheet-metal plate.

Figure 5-2815 Remove the sheet-metal plate



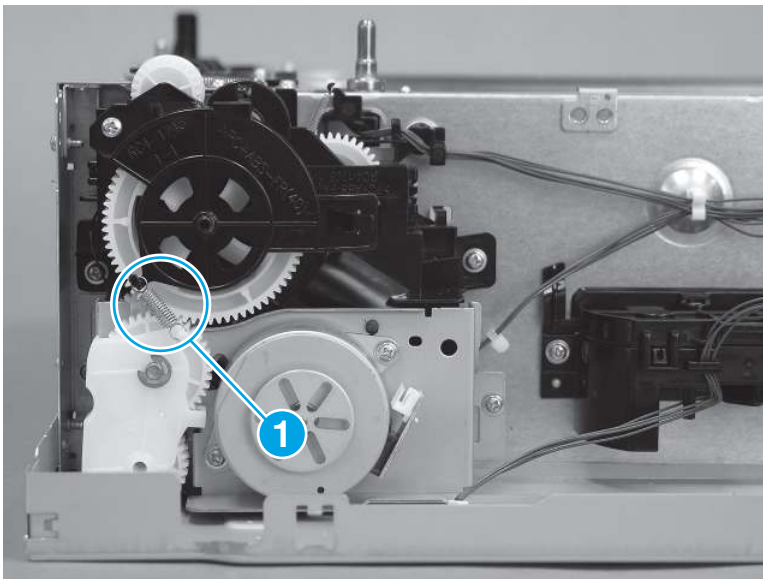
5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2816 Disconnect one connector



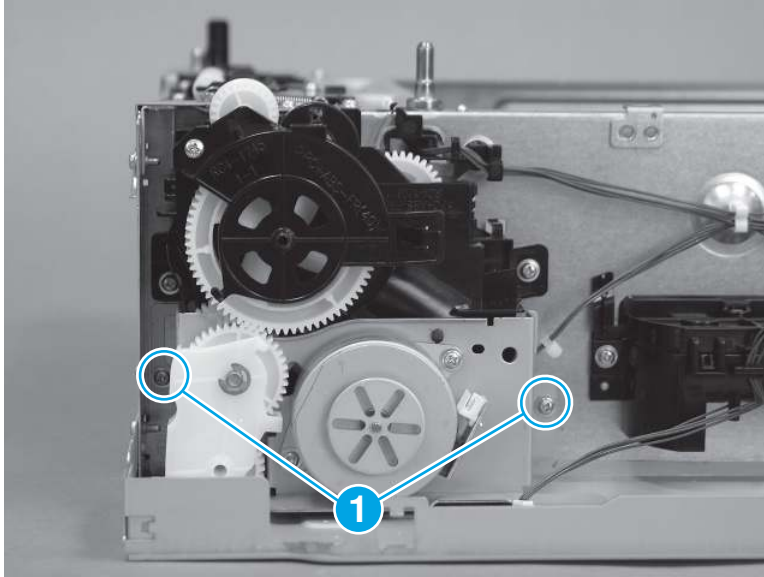
6. Remove one spring (callout 1).

Figure 5-2817 Remove one spring



7. Remove two screws (callout 1).

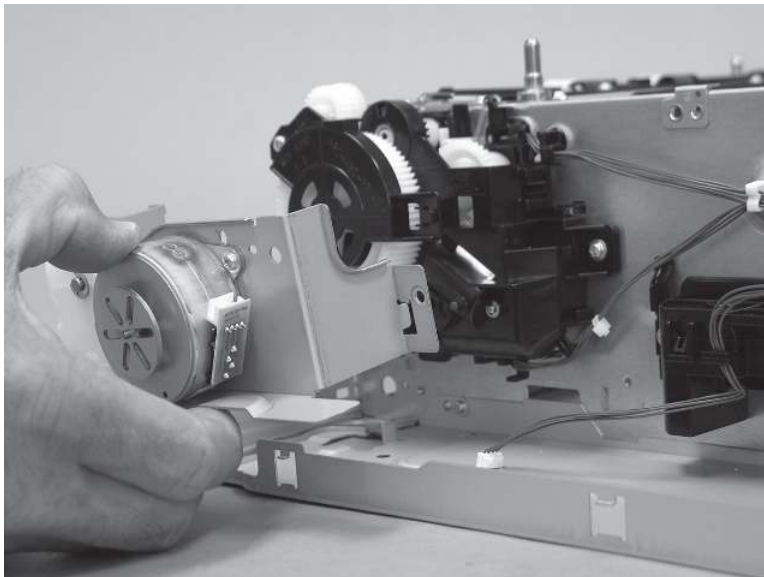
Figure 5-2818 Remove two screws



8. Remove the feeder drive assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: If the assembly is being removed to access another part, take care not to wipe any of the grease off of the gears.

Figure 5-2819 Remove the assembly

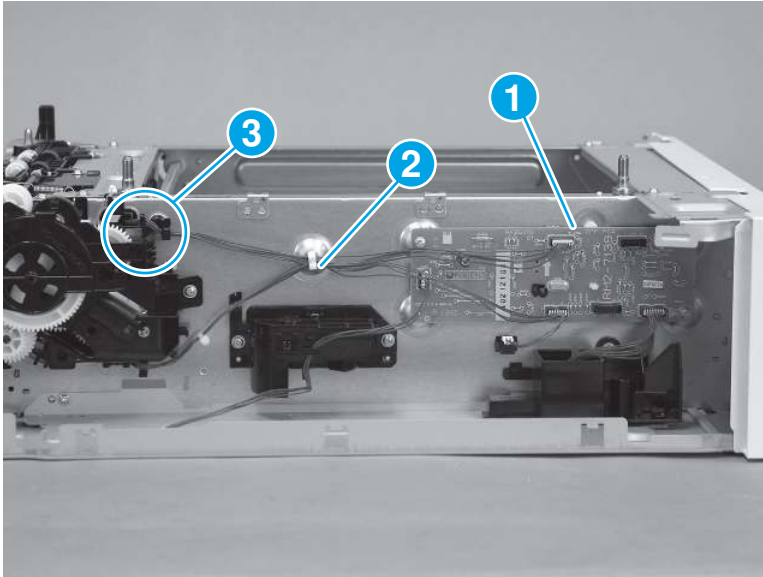


Remove the lifter drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the lifter drive assembly.

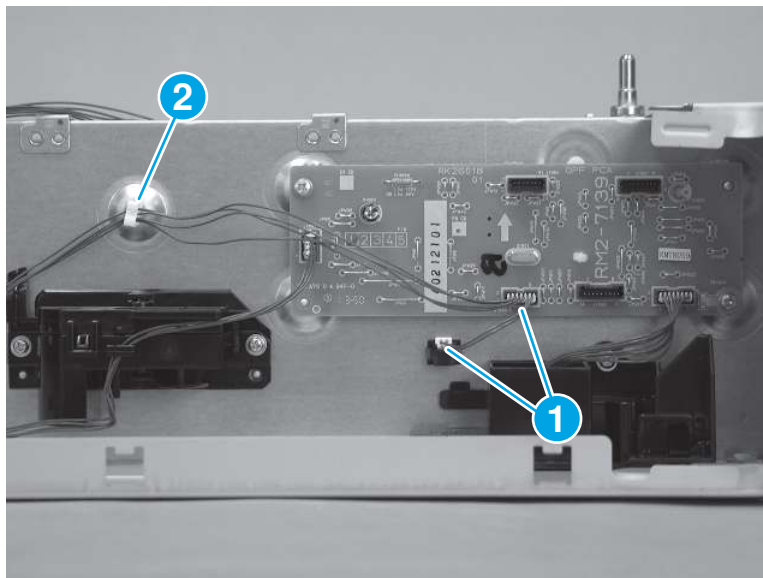
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1; J904), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2) and the guide (callout 3).

Figure 5-2820 Disconnect one connector



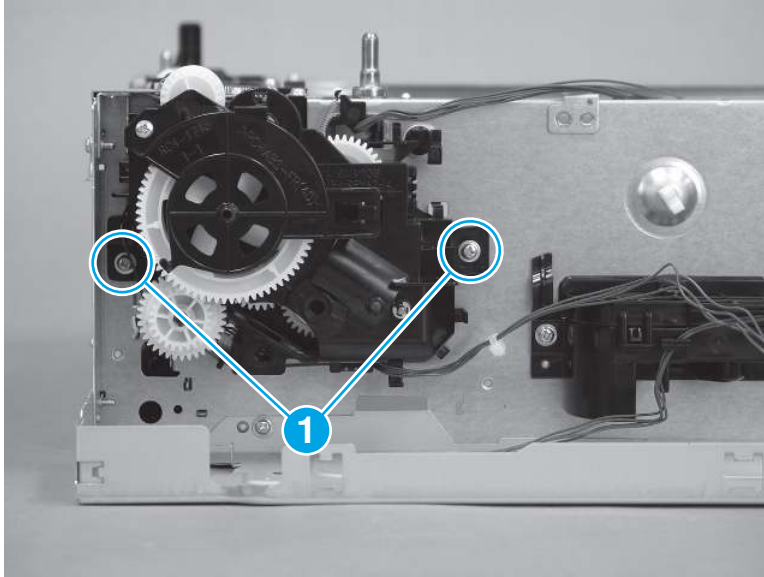
2. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1; J902 and the switch button), and then release the wire harness from the retainer (callout 2).

Figure 5-2821 Remove the sheet-metal plate



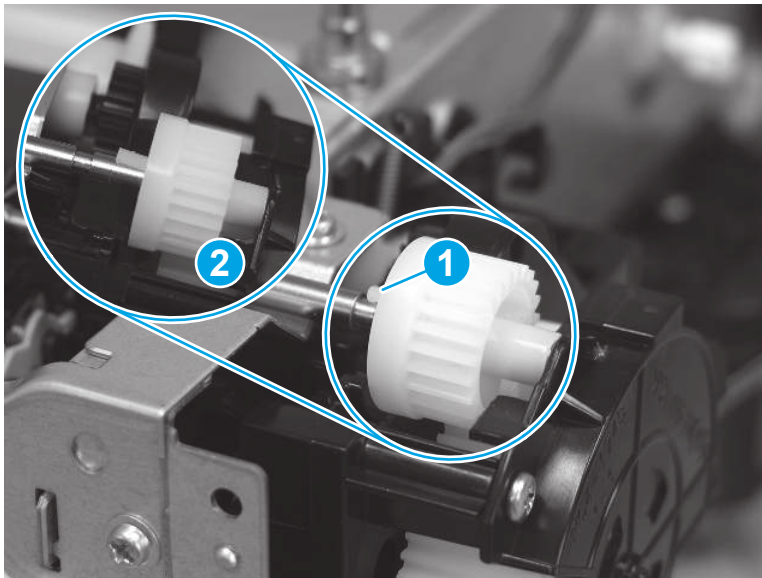
3. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 5-2822 Remove two screws



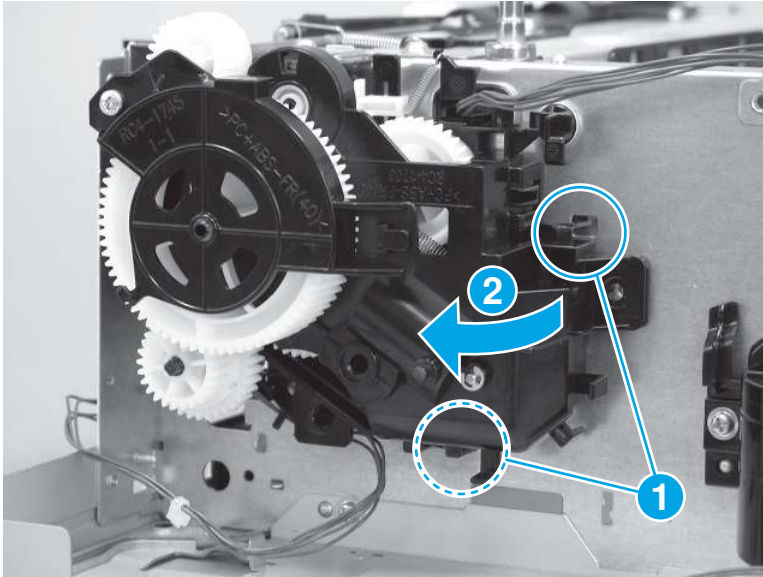
4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slightly pull the lifter drive assembly away from the chassis to release one gear (callout 2).

Figure 5-2823 Release one tab



5. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then rotate the assembly—as shown—away from the chassis (callout 2) to release it.

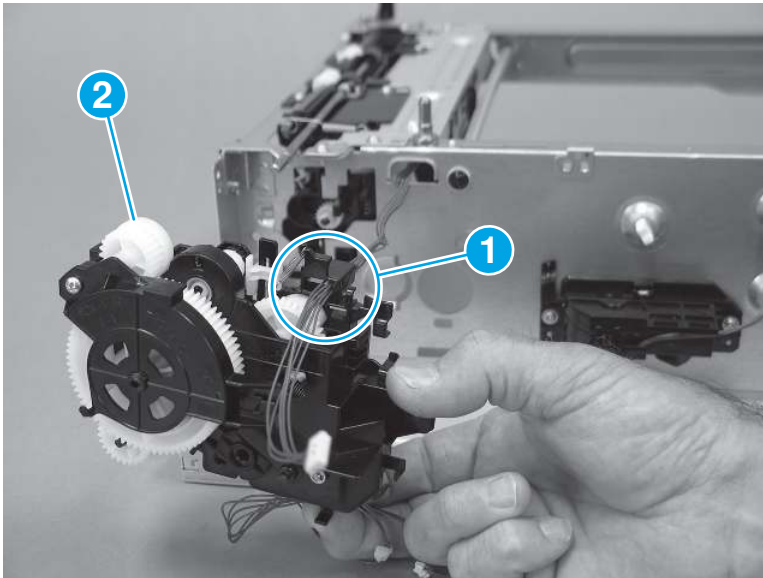
Figure 5-2824 Release two tabs



6. To remove the lifter drive assembly, feed the wire harness through the opening (callout 1) in the assembly.

 **Reinstallation tip:** If a replacement assembly is installed, transfer the gear (callout 2) to the replacement assembly.

Figure 5-2825 Remove the assembly



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.


 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Remove and replacement: Accessories

Learn how to remove and replace the accessories.

Removal and replacement: Fixed tray guide kit


Learn about removing and replacing the fixed tray guide kit.

 **NOTE:** The procedure in this section shows Tray 2 in the figures. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-109 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-7708	Fixed tray guide kit with instruction guide

NOTE: The kit includes four length guide locks, four width guide locks, and eight screws. Only one kit is required per printer.

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove Tray 2

Learn about removing Tray 2.

 **NOTE:** A SFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

The figures in this section show Tray 2. However, this procedure is also correct for Tray 3, Tray 4, or Tray 5. Always carefully read the instructions that accompany the figures.

1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 5-2826 Pull the tray out



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.


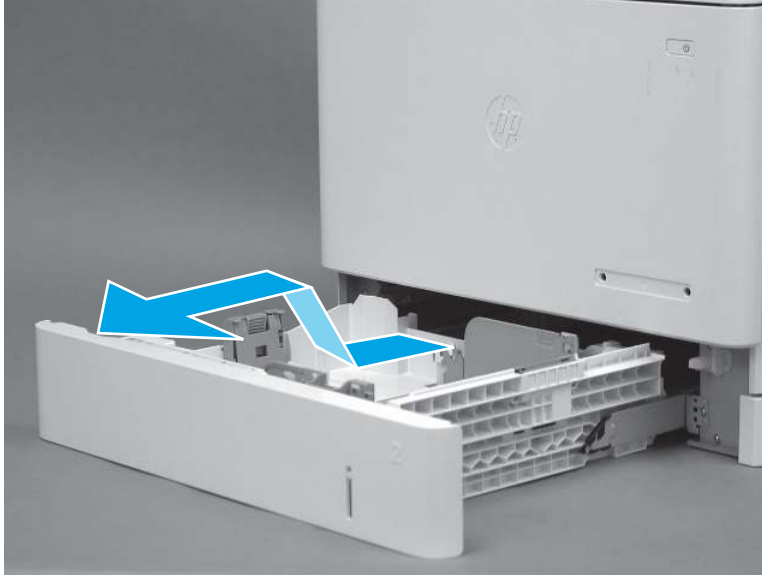
 **NOTE: For a replacement tray:** If the tray has Fixed Tray Guides installed and are still required, move hardware to new tray. If necessary, order new kit: 3GY25-67901 Kit - Fixed Tray Guide. Only one kit required per engine.

Figure 5-2827 Remove the tray



Install the fixed tray guide

Learn about installing the fixed tray guide.

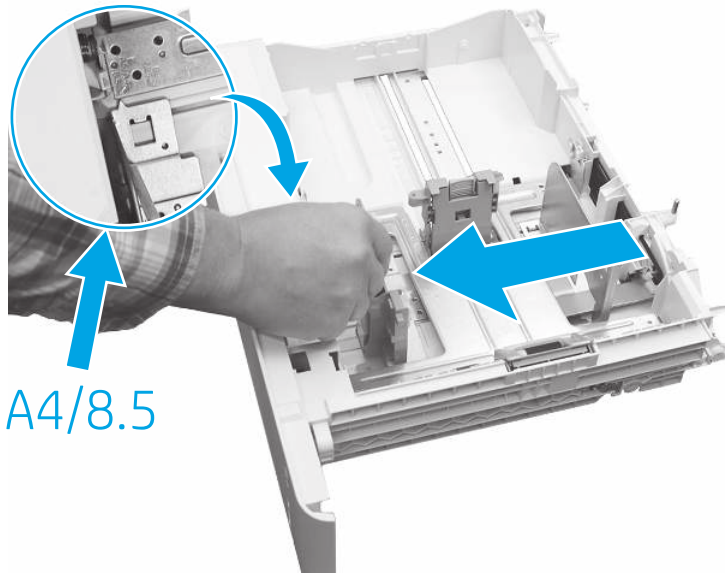
1. Identify the kit components.
 - **Callout 1:** Width guide lock
 - **Callout 2:** Length guide lock
 - **Callout 3:** Screws (self tapping)

Figure 5-2828 Identify kit components



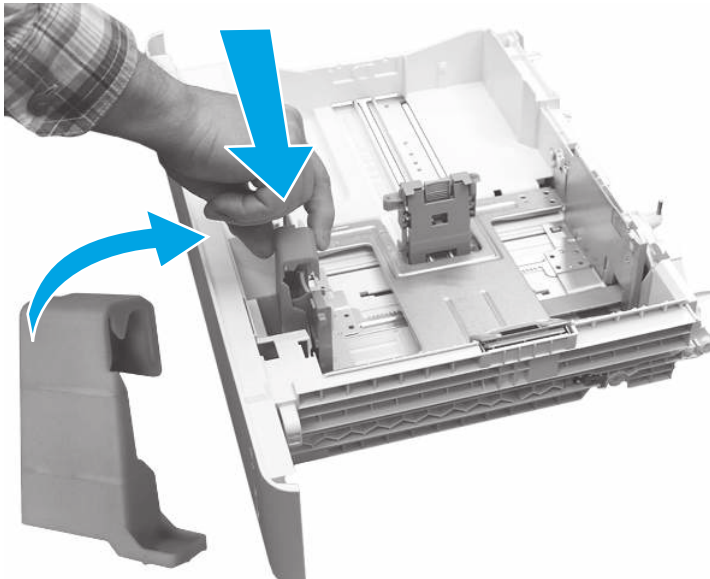
2. Adjust the sliding tray paper width guide to the **A4/8.5** setting.

Figure 5-2829 Adjust the tray paper width guide



3. Install the width guide lock over the width guide in the tray.

Figure 5-2830 Install the width guide lock

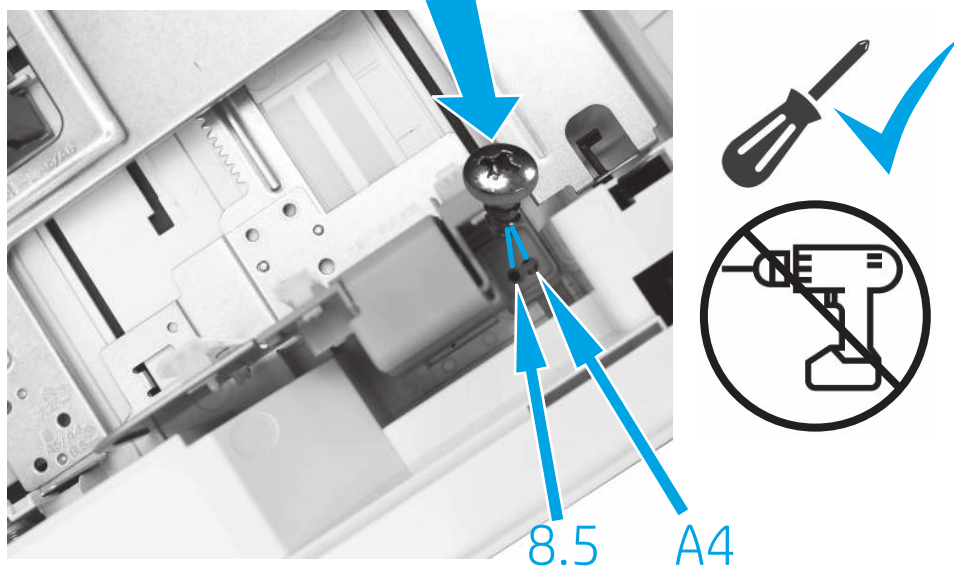


4. Install one screw to secure the lock in place.

CAUTION: Do not use a power screwdriver to install the screw.

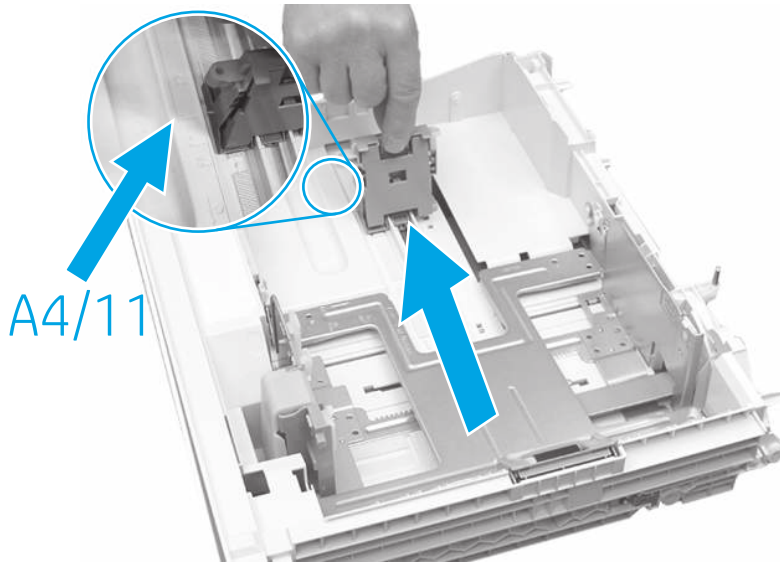
NOTE: Verify that the tray paper width guide is set to the **A4/8.5** setting.

Figure 5-2831 Install one screw



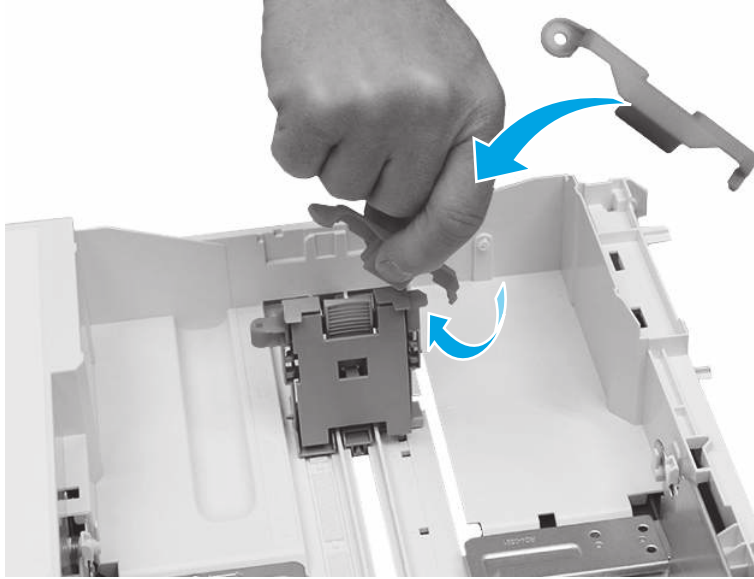
5. Adjust the sliding tray paper length guide to the **A4/11** setting.

Figure 5-2832 Adjust the tray paper length guide



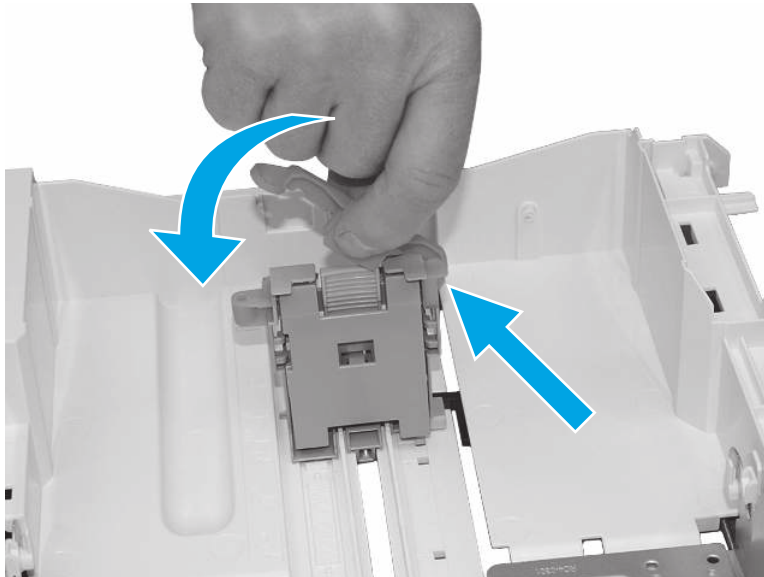
6. To install the length guide lock on the length guide in the tray, do the following:
 - a. Position the hooked end of the lock under the rear edge of the length guide (as shown).

Figure 5-2833 Install the length guide lock (1 of 2)



- b. Rotate the lock down and onto the length guide.

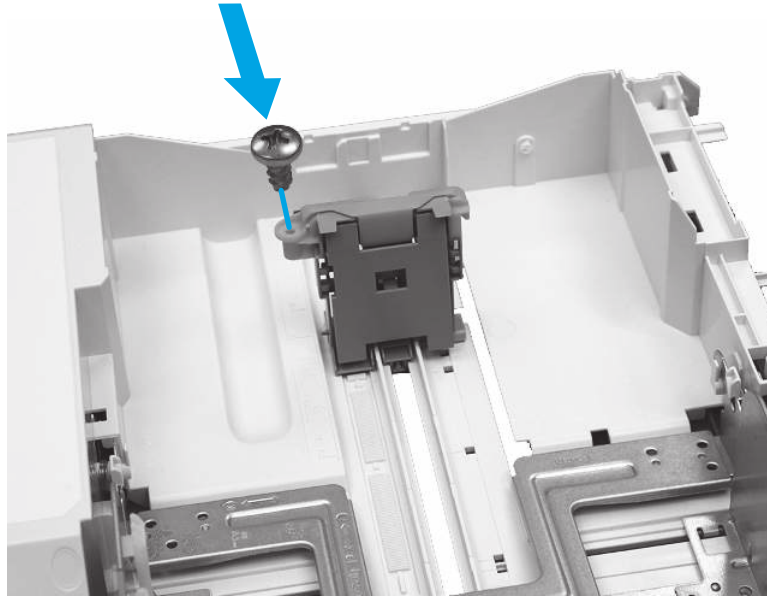
Figure 5-2834 Install the length guide lock (2 of 2)



- 7. Verify that the lock is correctly installed on the length guide. The lock mounting screw hole must align with the hole in the guide.

 **IMPORTANT:** If the hole in the lock and the guide are not aligned, remove the lock and reinstall it.

Figure 5-2835 Check length guide installation

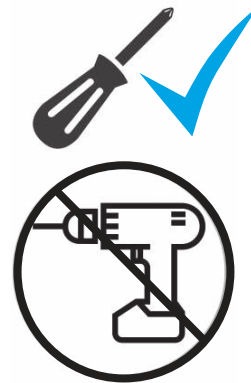


8. Install one screw to secure the lock in place.

CAUTION: Do not use a power screwdriver to install the screw.

NOTE: Reinstall the tray.

Figure 5-2836 Install one screw



Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module (M552/M553)

Learn about removing and replacing the trusted platform module (TPM).

IMPORTANT: M554 and M555: The TPM is a factory installed component and not a service part. For problems with the TPM, see the printer control-panel messages document (CPMD).

[Click here to access the current CPMD for this printer.](#)

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-110 Part information

Part number	Part description
F5S62-61001	Trusted platform module (TPM) with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

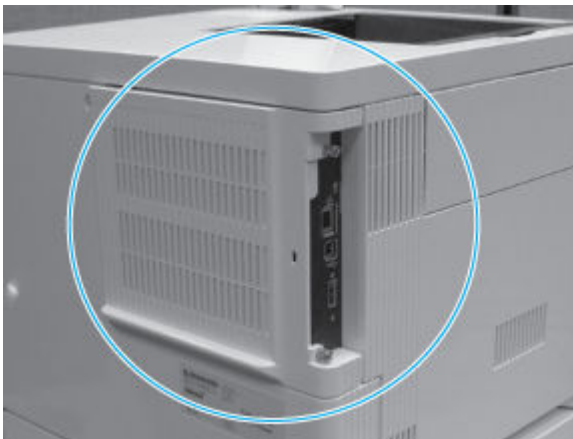
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2837 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-2838 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

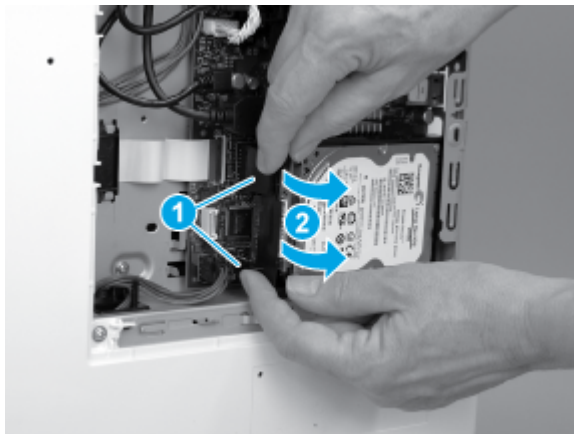
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-2839 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2840 Remove the HDD



Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)

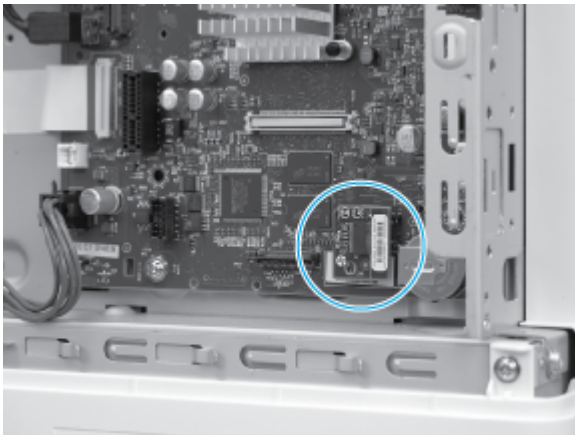
Follow these steps to remove the trusted platform module (TPM).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** Removing the TPM is only necessary for formatter or TPM accessory replacement.

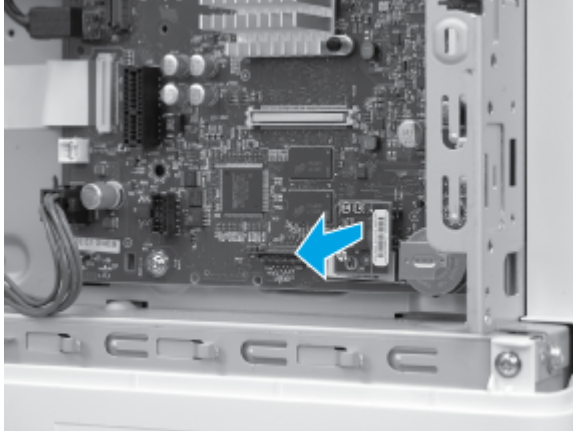
1. Locate the TPM component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2841 Locate the TPM



2. Pull the TPM straight off of the formatter to remove it.


Figure 5-2842 Remove the TPM



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the trusted platform module (TPM)

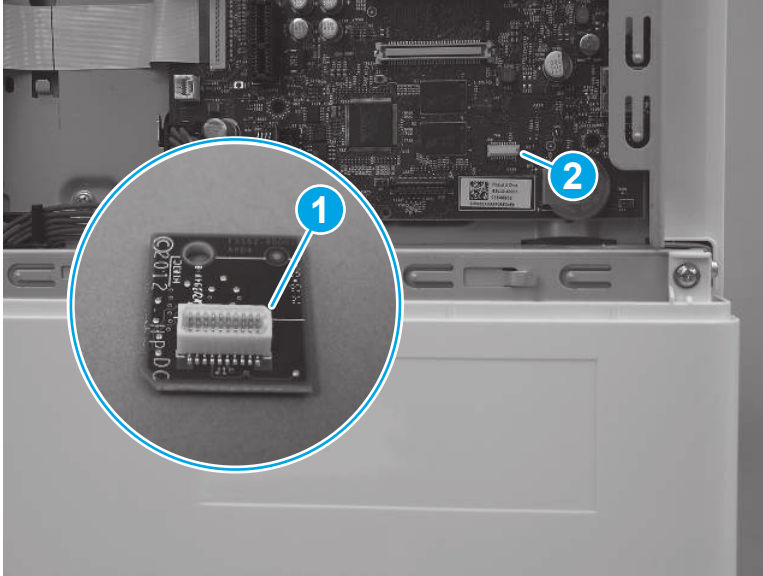
Follow these steps to install the trusted platform module (TPM).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

1. Align the connector on the TPM (callout 1) with the connector on the formatter (callout 2), and then push the TPM onto the formatter to install it.

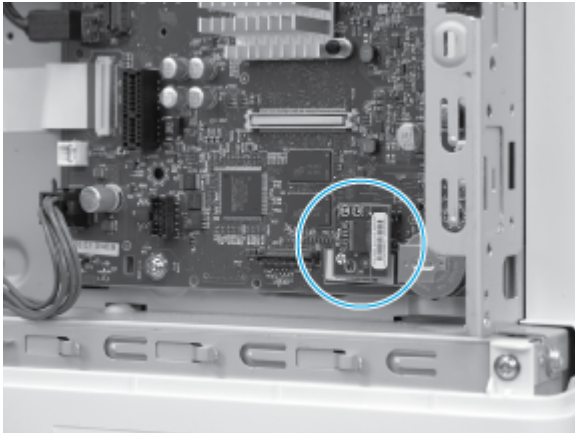
 **NOTE:** The TPM can only be install in one direction on the formatter.

Figure 5-2843 Install the TPM



2. Verify that the TPM is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 5-2844 Verify that the TPM is fully seated



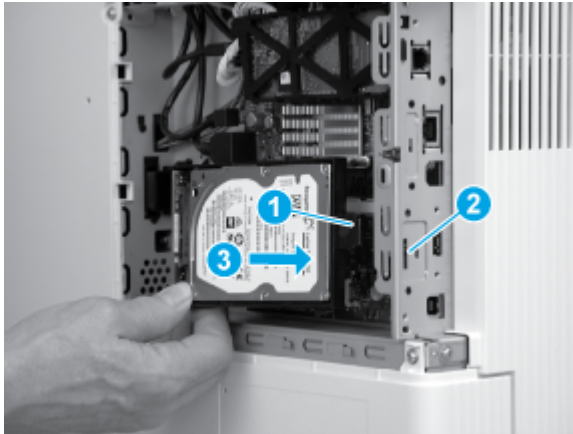
Install the HDD

Follow these steps to install the HD).

An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

1. Align the end of the bracket (callout 1) with the slot in the chassis (callout 2), and then slide the HDD into the printer (callout 3) to engage the bracket with the chassis.

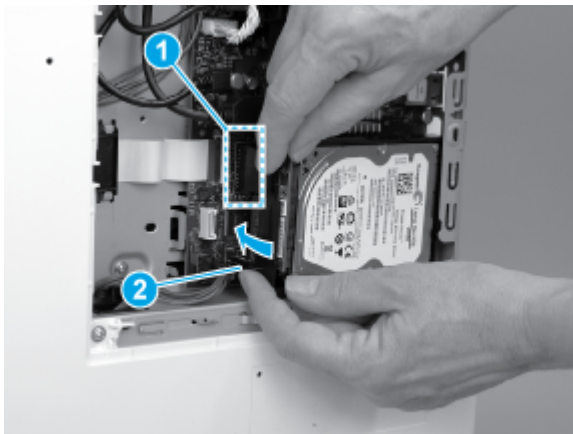
Figure 5-2845 Install the holder



2. Hold the HDD connector latch (callout 1) in the released position, and then rotate the HDD down and into the connector on the formatter to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tab (callout 2) snaps into place, and that the HDD is securely installed.

Figure 5-2846 Release the HDD



Install the formatter cover

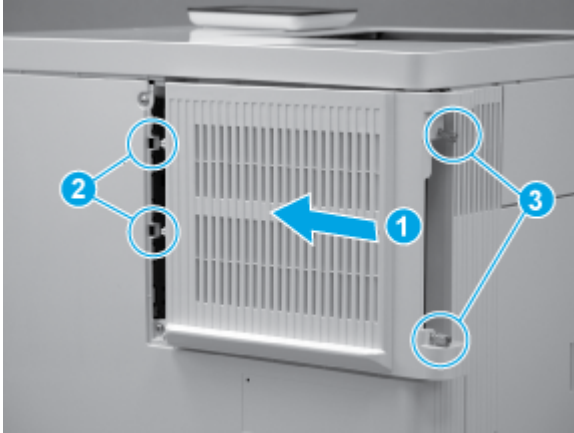
Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2847 Install the cover

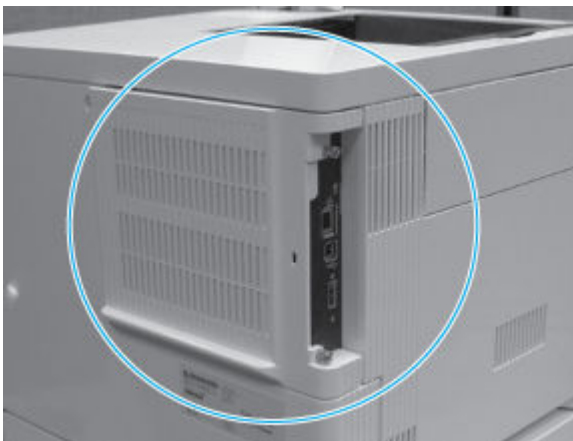


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2848 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2849 Loosen the thumbscrews



Removal and replacement: Trusted platform module (M577/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the trusted platform module (TPM).


 **IMPORTANT:** M578: The TPM is a factory installed component and not a service part. For problems with the TPM, see the printer control-panel messages document (CPMD).

[Click here to access the current CPMD for this printer.](#)

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-111 Part information

Part number	Part description
F5562-61001	Trusted platform module (TPM) with instruction guide

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

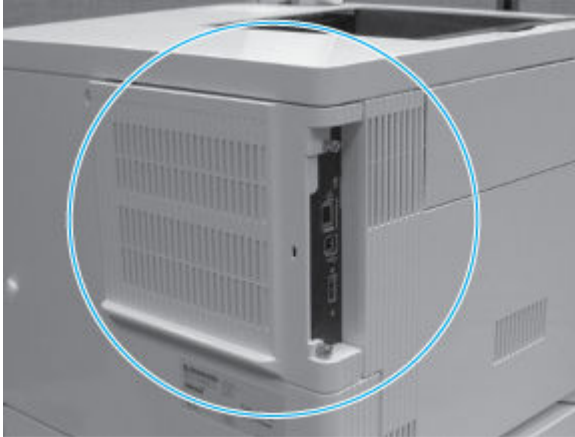
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

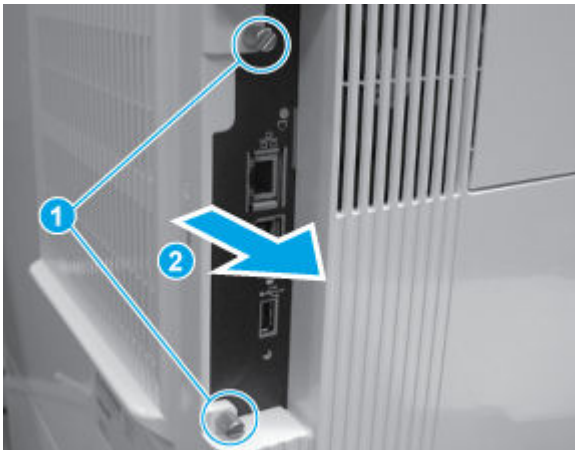
Figure 5-2850 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-2851 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

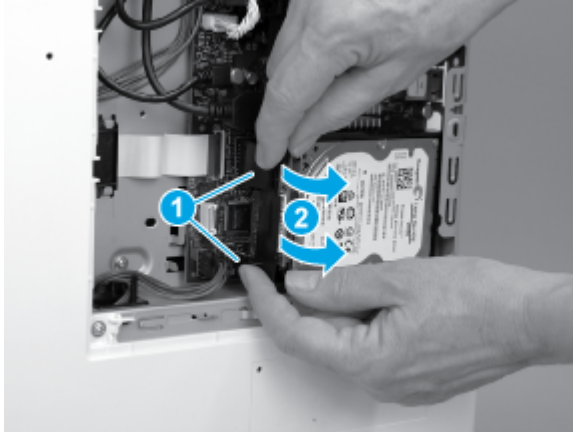
Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for HDD (or optionally installed HDD) models only. An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

 **NOTE:** If a HDD is not installed, skip this step.

1. Release two tabs (callout 1). Hold the tabs in the released position, and then rotate the hard disk drive (HDD) up (callout 2) to release the connector from the formatter

Figure 5-2852 Release the HDD



2. Slide the HDD away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 5-2853 Remove the HDD



Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)

Follow these steps to remove the trusted platform module (TPM).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** Removing the TPM is only necessary for formatter or TPM accessory replacement.

1. Locate the TPM component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2854 Locate the TPM



2. Pull the TPM straight off of the formatter to remove it.

Figure 5-2855 Remove the TPM



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.





NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the trusted platform module (TPM)

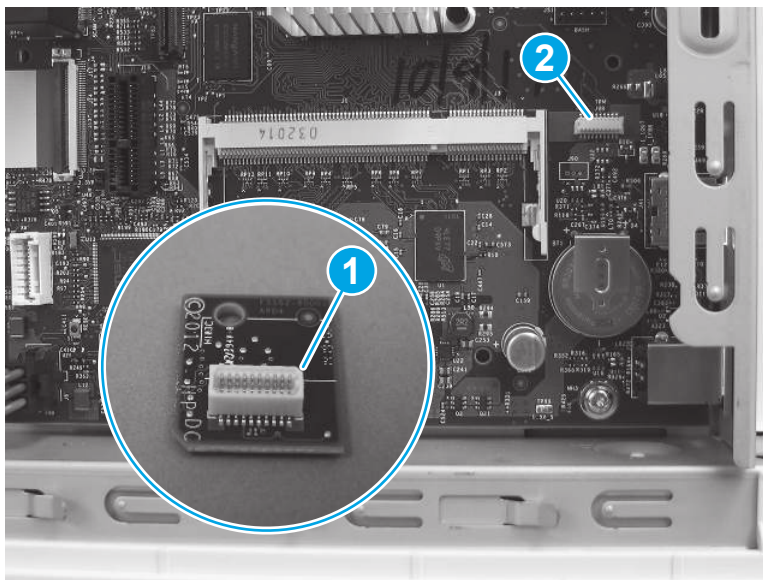
Follow these steps to install the trusted platform module (TPM).

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Align the connector on the TPM (callout 1) with the connector on the formatter (callout 2), and then push the TPM onto the formatter to install it.

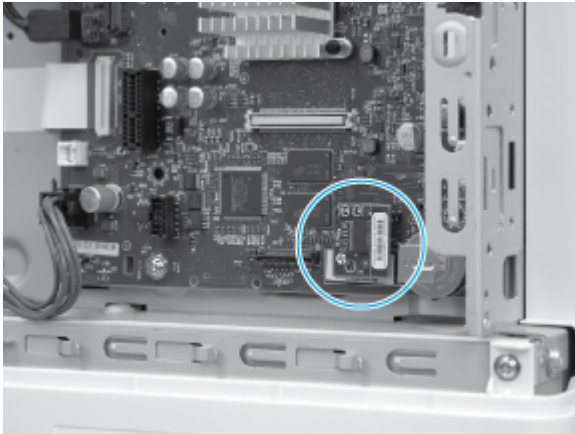
NOTE:  The TPM can only be install in one direction on the formatter.

Figure 5-2856 Install the TPM



2. Verify that the TPM is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 5-2857 Verify that the TPM is fully seated



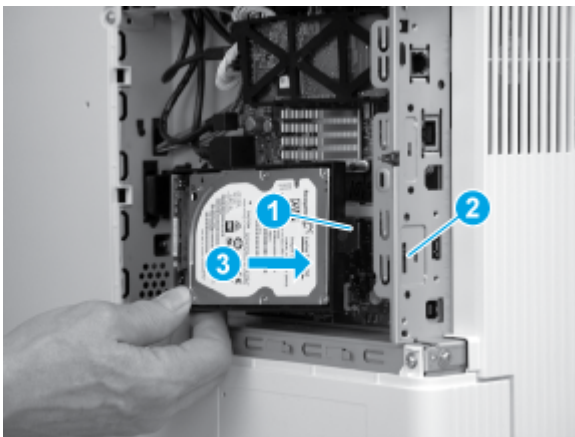
Install the HDD

Follow these steps to install the HD).

An MFP printer is shown in this section. However, the procedure is correct for all printer models.

1. Align the end of the bracket (callout 1) with the slot in the chassis (callout 2), and then slide the HDD into the printer (callout 3) to engage the bracket with the chassis.

Figure 5-2858 Install the holder

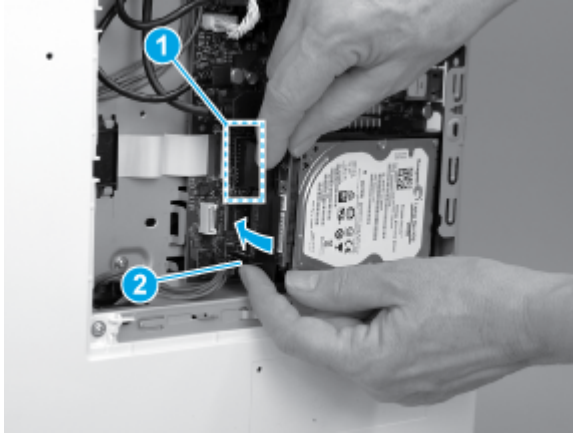


2. Hold the HDD connector latch (callout 1) in the released position, and then rotate the HDD down and into the connector on the formatter to install it.



NOTE: Make sure that the tab (callout 2) snaps into place, and that the HDD is securely installed.

Figure 5-2859 Release the HDD



Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).


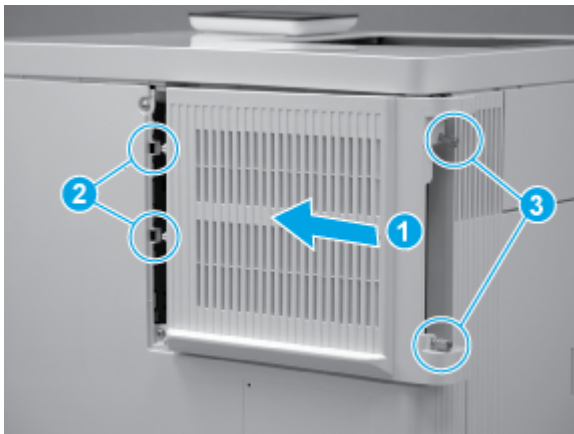
 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2860 Install the cover

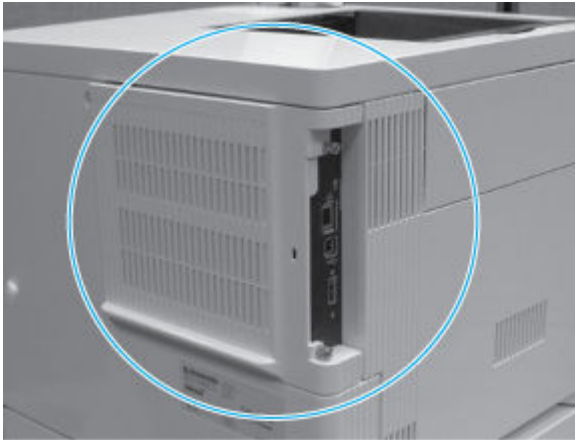


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

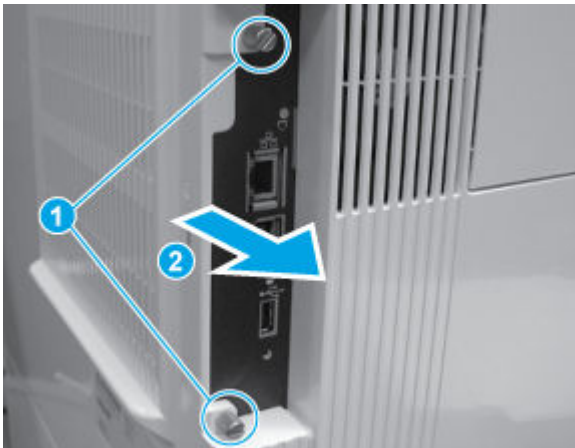
Figure 5-2861 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2862 Loosen the thumbscrews




Removal and replacement: Internal USB ports (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

Learn about removing and replacing the internal USB ports.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

 **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-112 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L28-67902	Internal USB ports

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

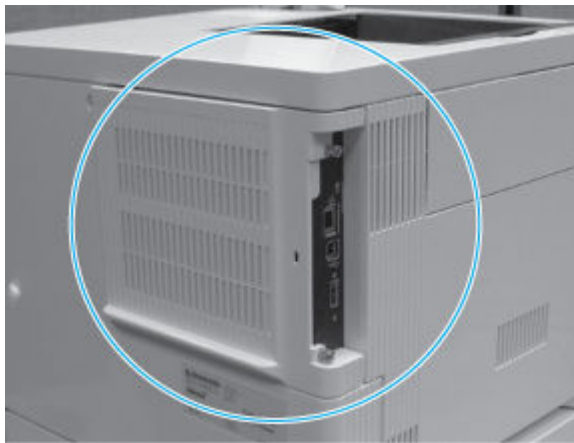
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2863 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.


 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2864 Loosen the thumbscrews



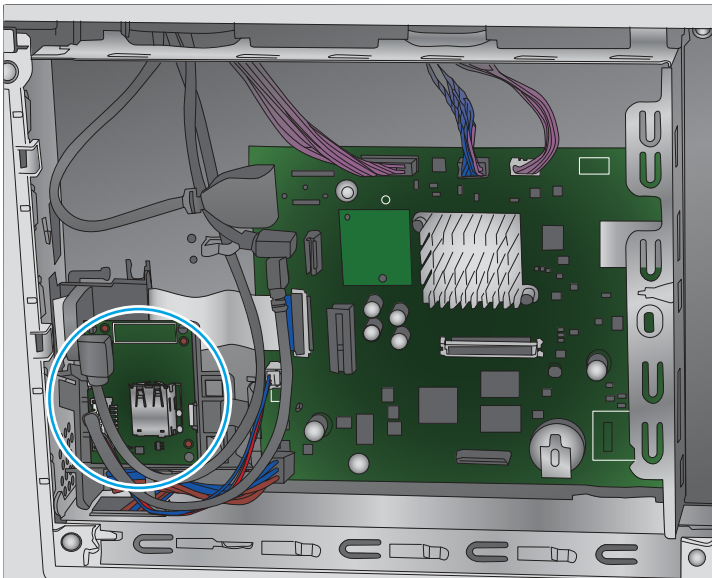
Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)

Follow these steps to remove the trusted platform module (TPM).

CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

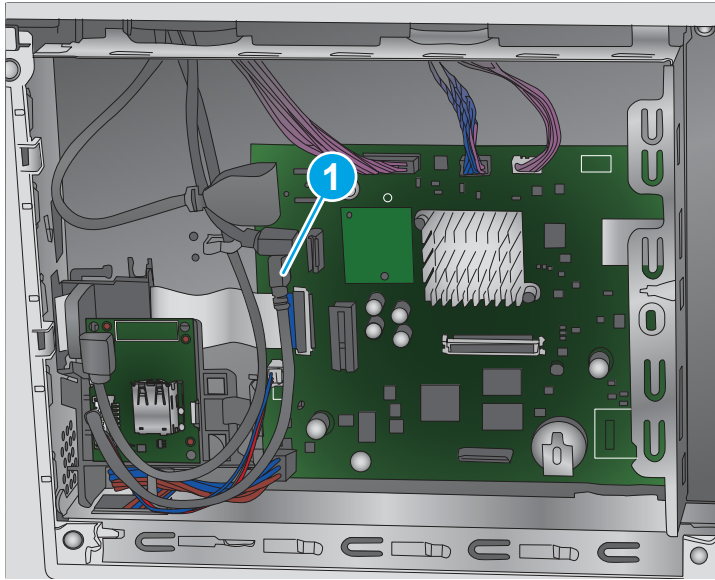
1. Locate the internal USB ports module on the formatter.

Figure 5-2865 Locate the USB ports module



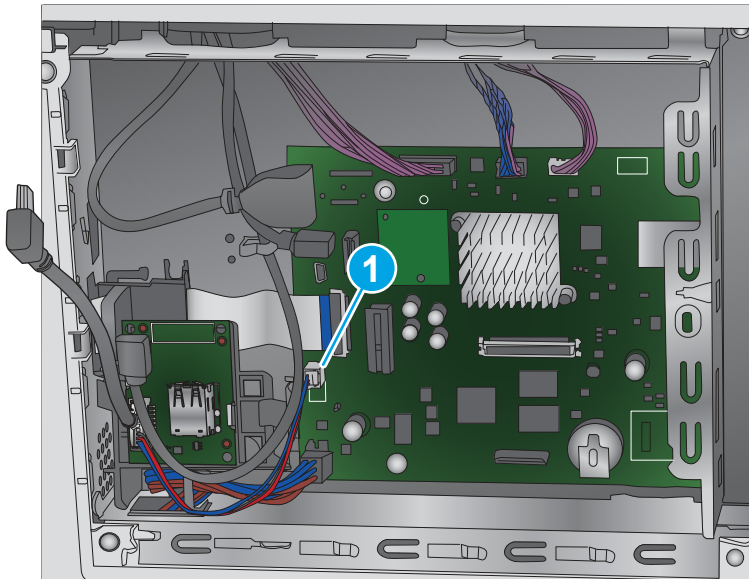
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2866 Disconnect one connector



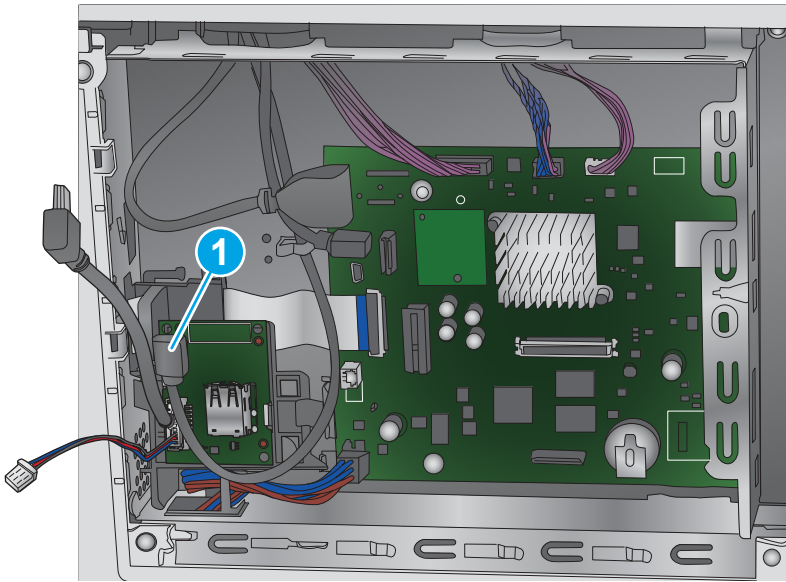
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2867 Disconnect one connector



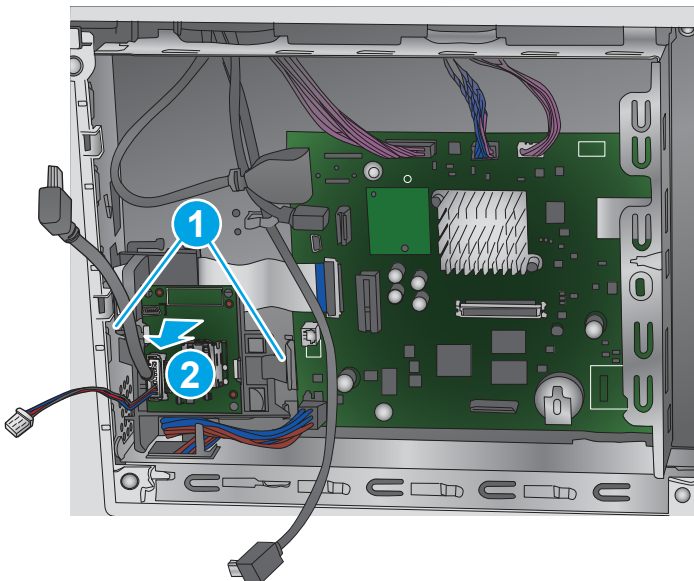
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2868 Disconnect one connector



5. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the internal USB ports module (callout 2).

Figure 5-2869 Remove the module



Unpack the replacement assembly


Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION:  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT:  Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE:  If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

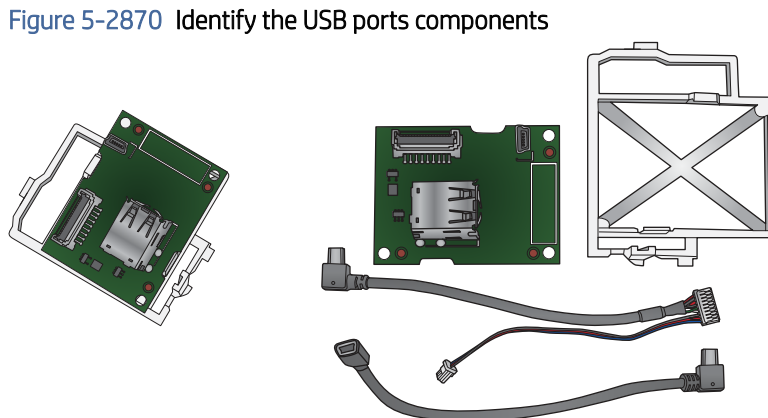
NOTE:  When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the internal USB ports module

Follow these steps to install the internal USB ports module.

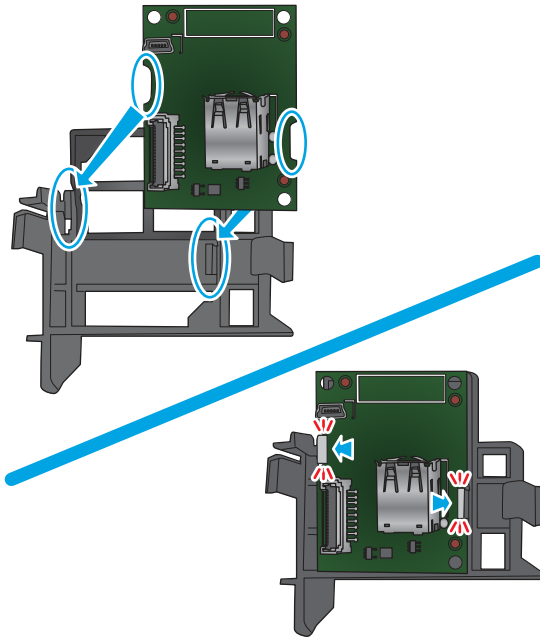
CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

1. Use the figure below to identify the correct internal USB ports components for the SFP model.



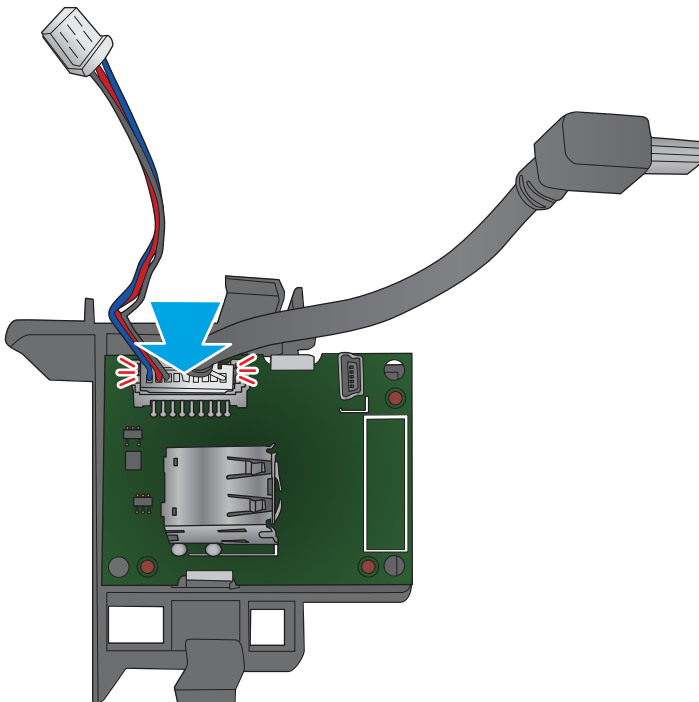
2. Position the notches on the internal USB ports PCA over the clips on the PCA holder and press down to attach the PCA to the holder. Make sure that the clips snap into place.

Figure 5-2871 Install the PCA in the holder



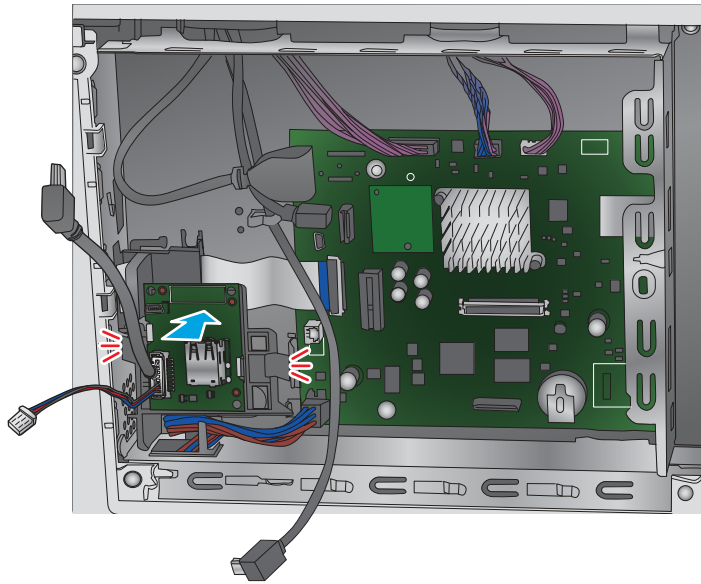
3. Connect the cable harness to the PCA.

Figure 5-2872 Connect the cable harness



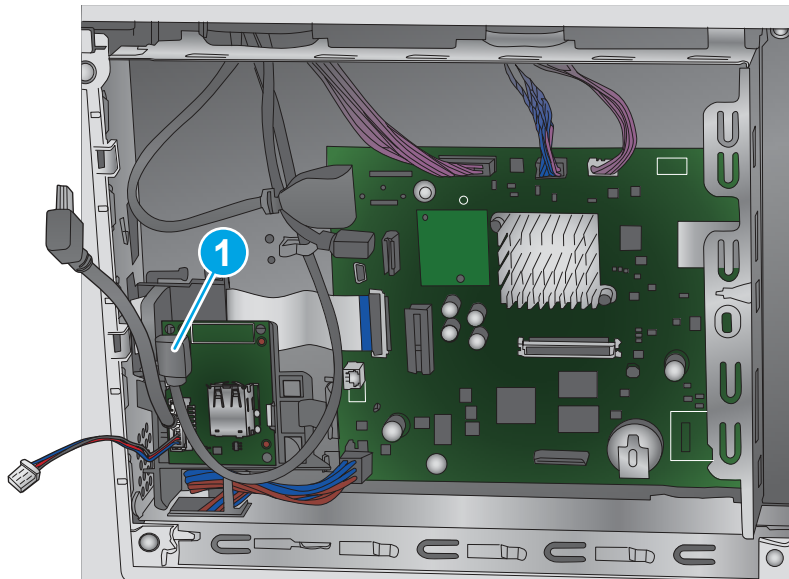
4. Press the internal USB ports module toward the formatter case until the clips snap into place.

Figure 5-2873 Install the module



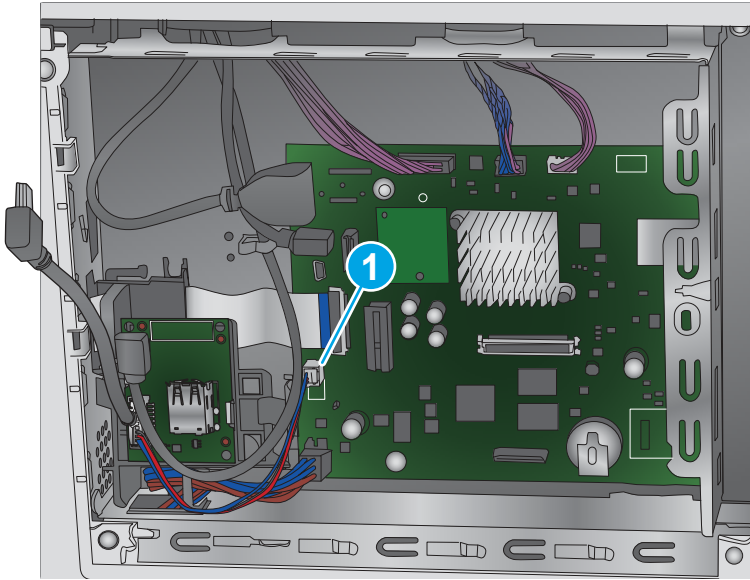
5. Connect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2874 Connect one connector



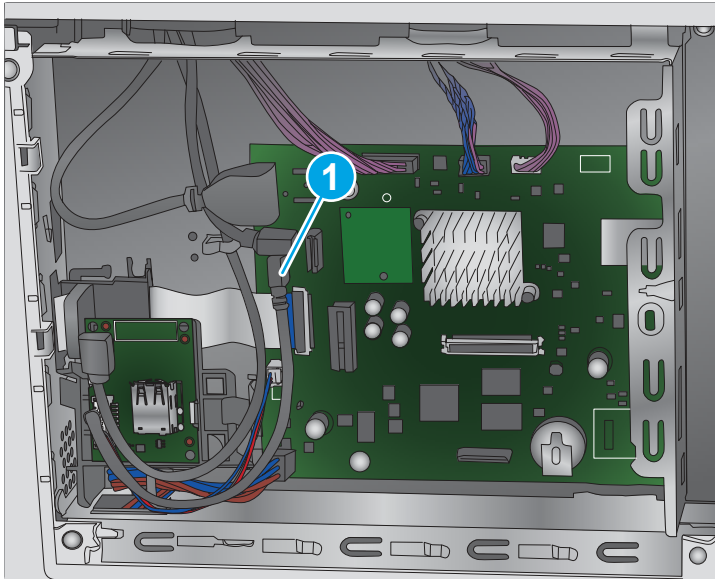
6. Connect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2875 Connect one connector



7. Connect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2876 Connect one connector



Install the formatter cover

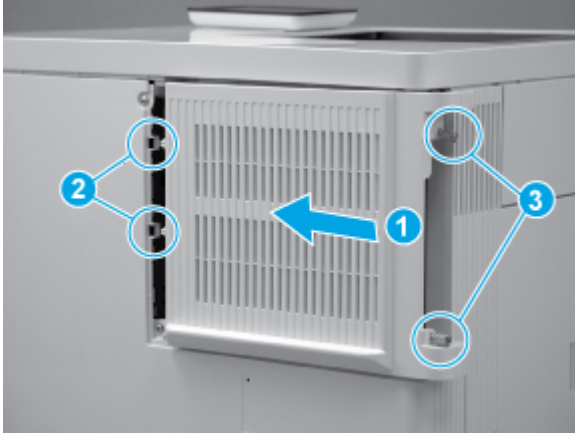
Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2877 Install the cover

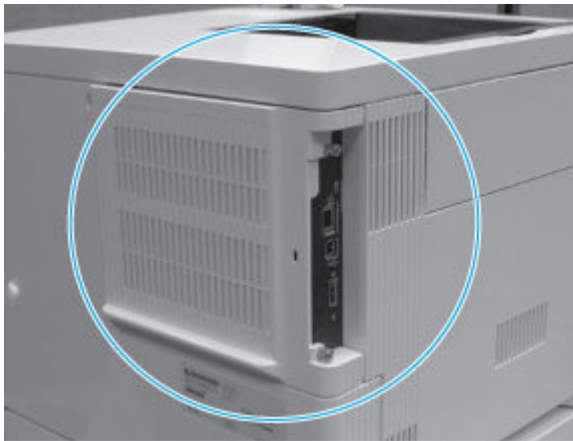


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2878 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2879 Loosen the thumbscrews



Removal and replacement: Internal USB ports (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the internal USB ports.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-113 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L28-67902	Internal USB ports

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

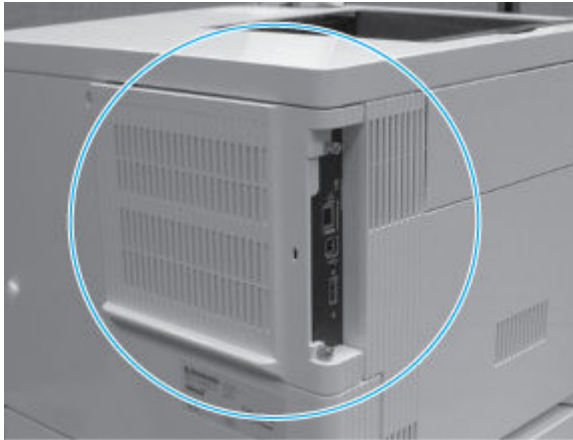
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

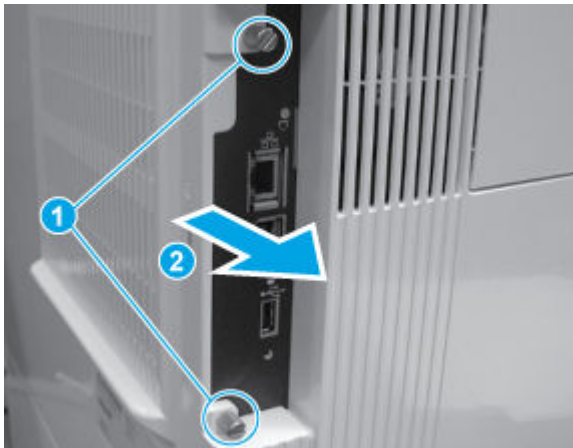
Figure 5-2880 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2881 Loosen the thumbscrews



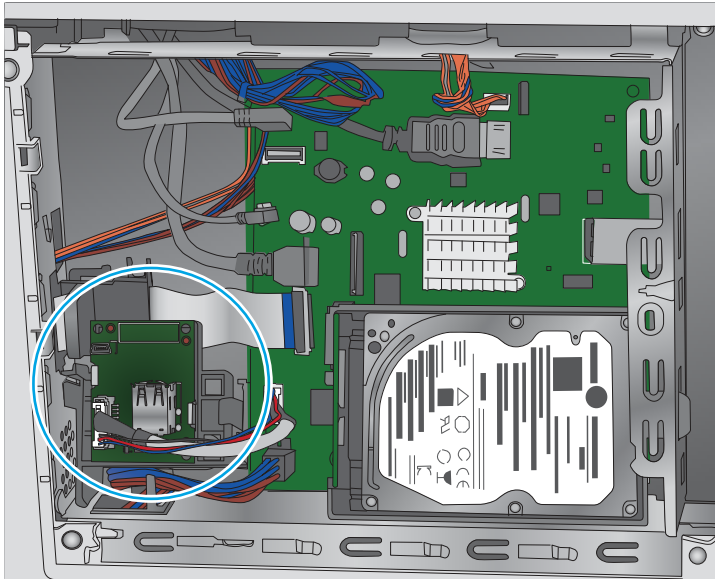
Remove the trusted platform module (TPM)

Follow these steps to remove the trusted platform module (TPM).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

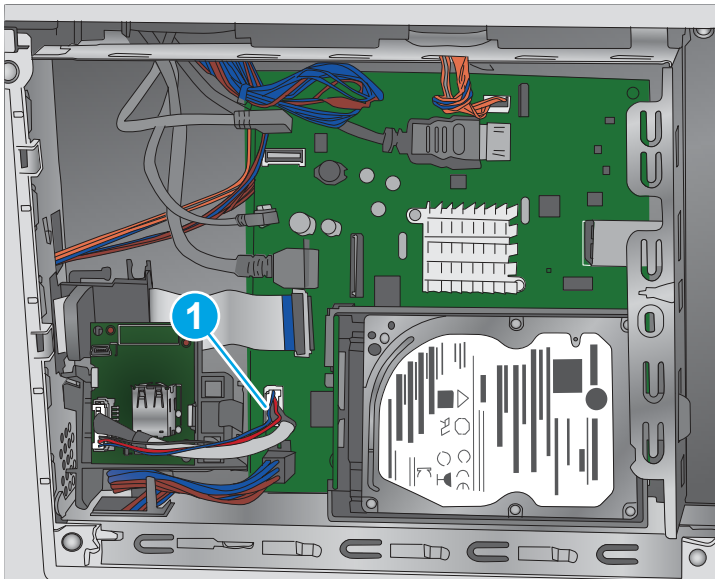
1. Locate the internal USB ports module on the formatter.

Figure 5-2882 Locate the USB ports module



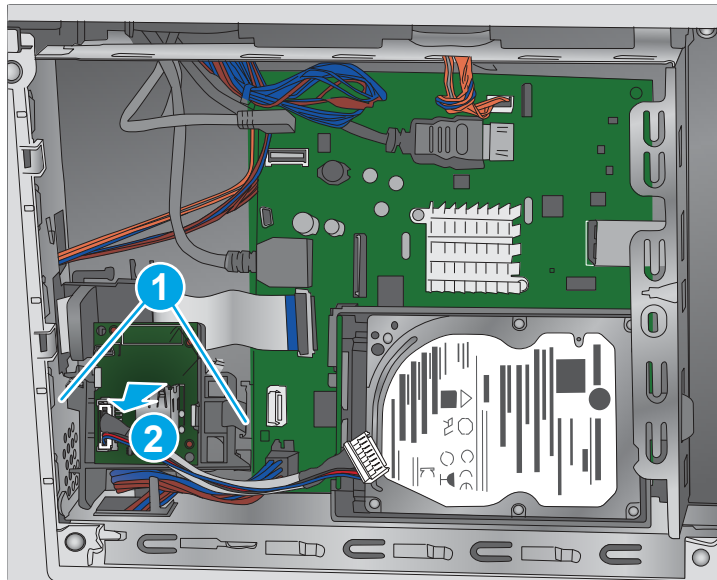
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2883 Disconnect one connector



3. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the internal USB ports module (callout 2).

Figure 5-2884 Remove the module



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

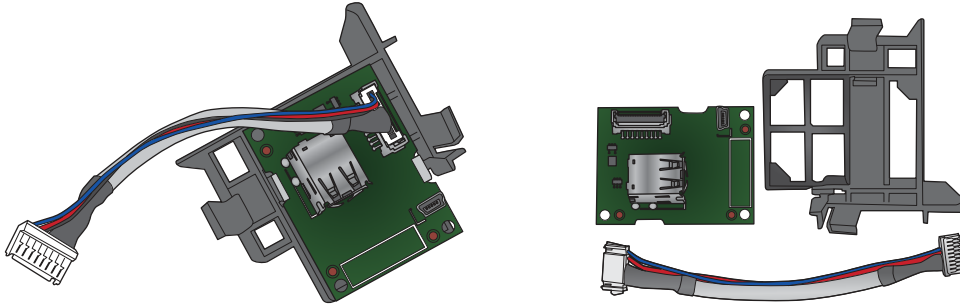
Install the internal USB ports module

Follow these steps to install the internal USB ports module.

⚠ CAUTION:  ESD sensitive part.

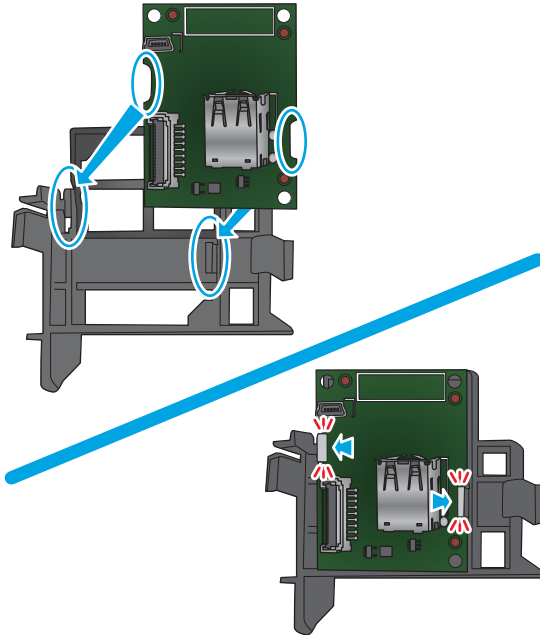
1. Use the figure below to identify the correct internal USB ports components for the SFP model.

Figure 5-2885 Identify the USB ports components



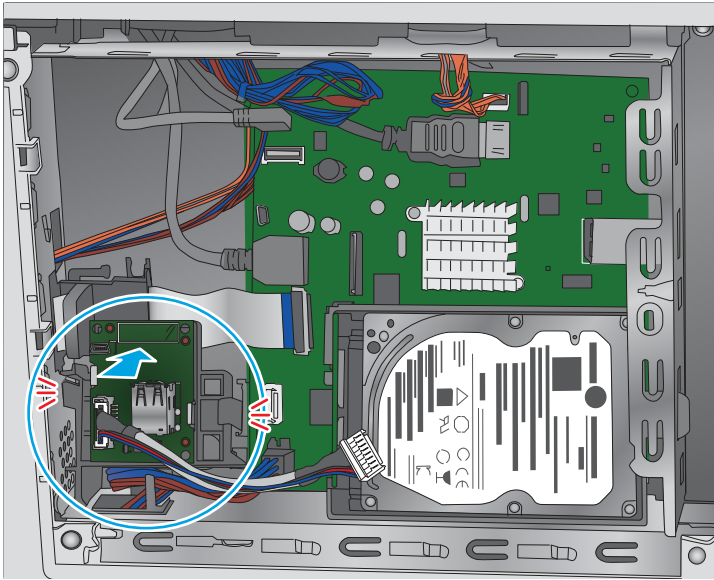
2. Position the notches on the internal USB ports PCA over the clips on the PCA holder and press down to attach the PCA to the holder. Make sure that the clips snap into place.

Figure 5-2886 Install the PCA in the holder



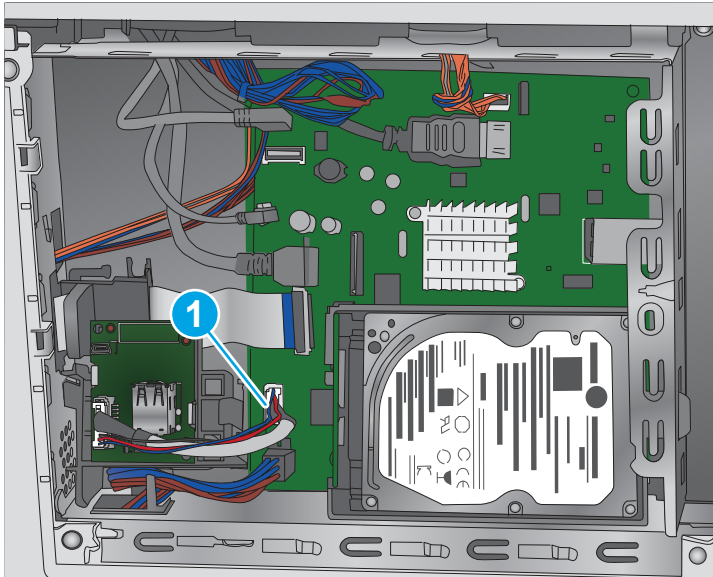
5. Press the internal USB ports module toward the formatter case until the clips snap into place.

Figure 5-2889 Install the module



6. Connect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 5-2890 Connect one connector



Install the formatter cover

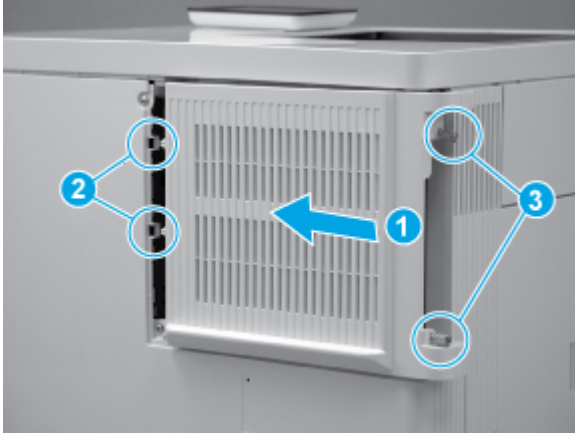
Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2891 Install the cover

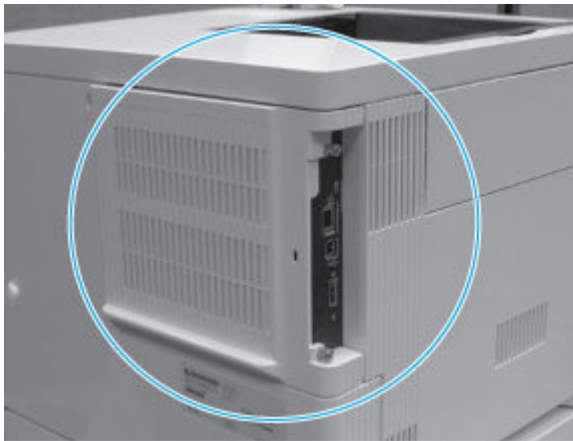


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

Figure 5-2892 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2893 Loosen the thumbscrews



Removal and replacement: Fax PCA (M577/M578/E57540)

Learn about removing and replacing the fax PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 5-114 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L53-67901	Analog FAX 600 kit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

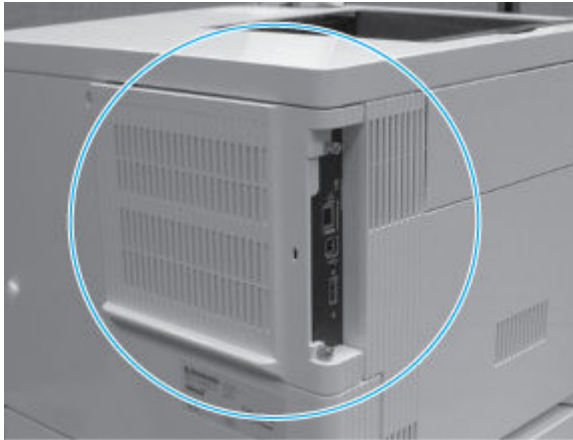
If possible, send and receive a fax from the printer.

Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

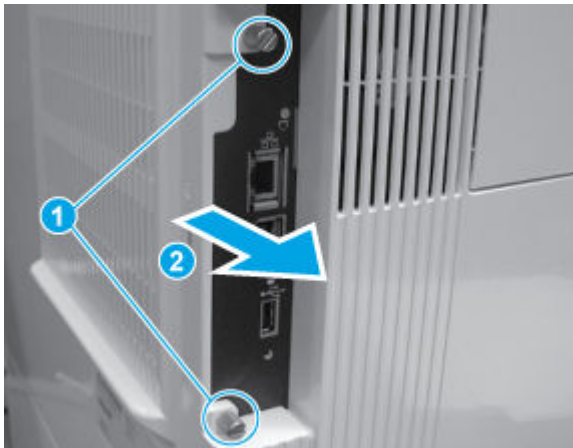
Figure 5-2894 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.


Figure 5-2895 Loosen the thumbscrews



Remove the fax PCA (fax models)

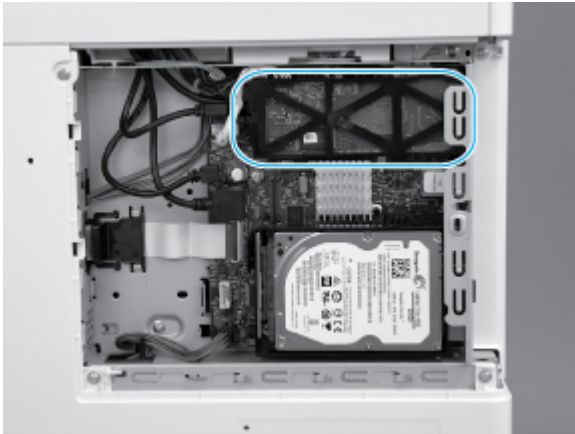
Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

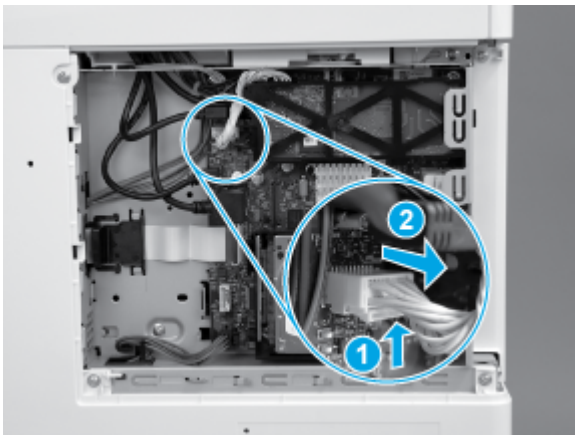
1. Locate the fax PCA component on the formatter.

Figure 5-2896 Locate the fax PCA



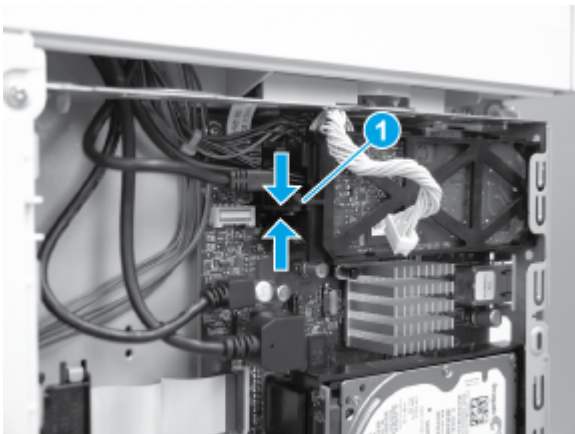
2. Release the connector latch (callout 1), and then pull the connector away from the formatter (callout 2) to disconnect it.

Figure 5-2897 Disconnect one connector



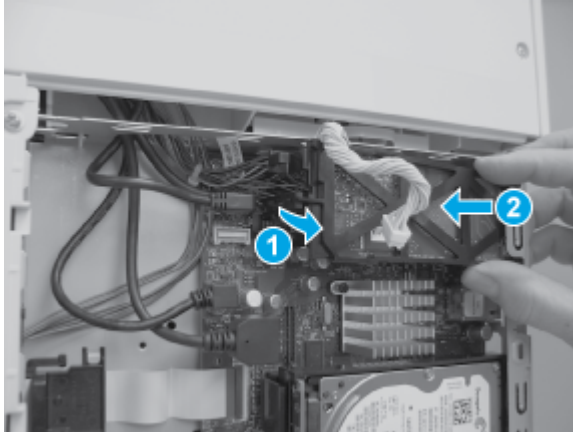
3. Release one retainer (callout 1) by pressing the bracket arms together.

Figure 5-2898 Release one latch



4. Rotate the end of the fax PCA (callout 1) away from the formatter, and then slide the PCA left (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 5-2899 Remove the fax PCA



Unpack the replacement assembly



Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.


1. Dispose of the defective part.


 **NOTE:** HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

<http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html>


2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

 **CAUTION:**  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

 **IMPORTANT:** Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

 **NOTE:** If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.


3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

 **NOTE:** When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the fax PCA (fax models)

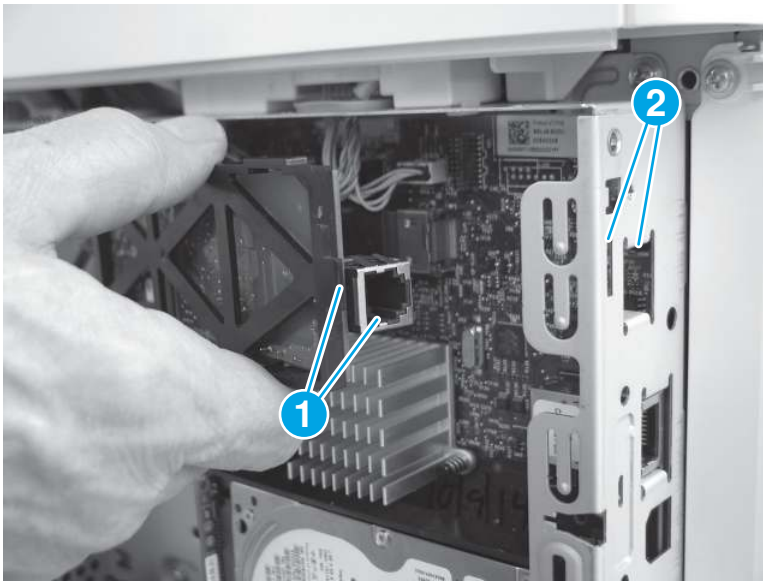
Follow these steps to install the fax PCA (fax models).

 **CAUTION:**  ESD sensitive part.

 **NOTE:** This procedure is for fax (or optionally installed fax) models only.

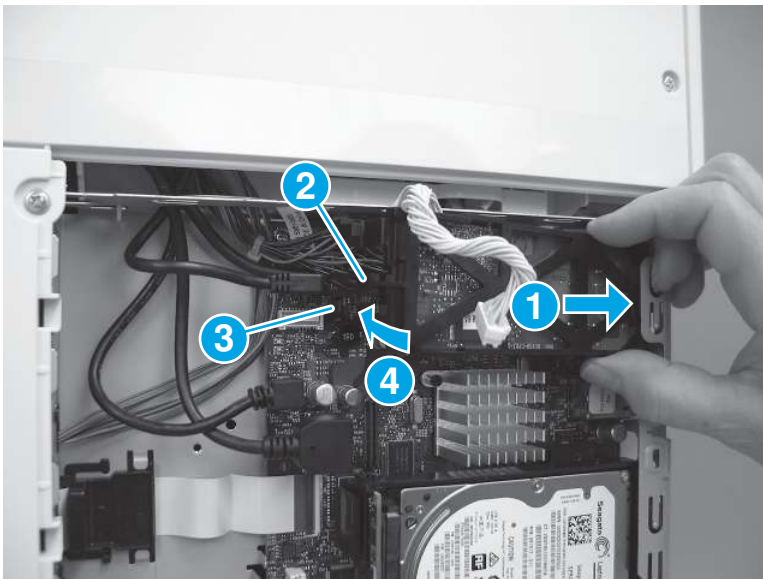
1. Position the tab and telephone port (callout 1) on the fax PCA in the slots (callout 2) in the formatter case.

Figure 5-2900 Position the fax PCA



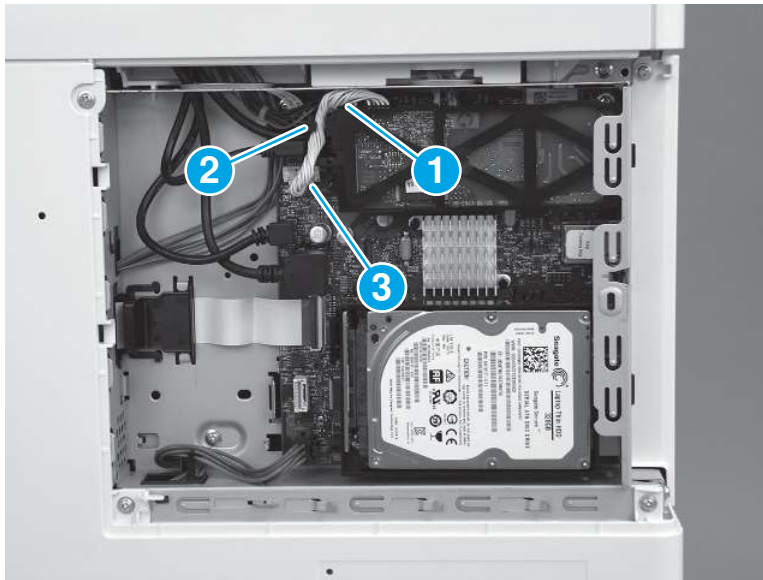
2. Slide the fax PCA to the right (callout 1) until the tab and telephone port described in the previous step and seated in the formatter case. Position the retainer (callout 2) in the slot (callout 3) in the formatter. Rotate the end of the fax PCA toward the formatter (callout 4) until the retainer snaps into place.

Figure 5-2901 Install the fax PCA



3. Position the cable (callout 1) in the guide (callout 2), and then connect one connector (callout 3).

Figure 5-2902 Connect the connector



Install the formatter cover

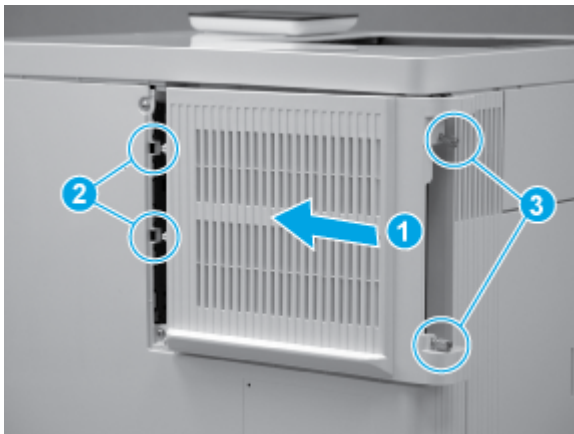
Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover onto the printer (callout 1) to install it.

 **NOTE:** Make sure that the tabs on the formatter cover align with the slots provided in the printer (callout 2). Tighten the two thumbscrews (callout 3).

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2903 Install the cover

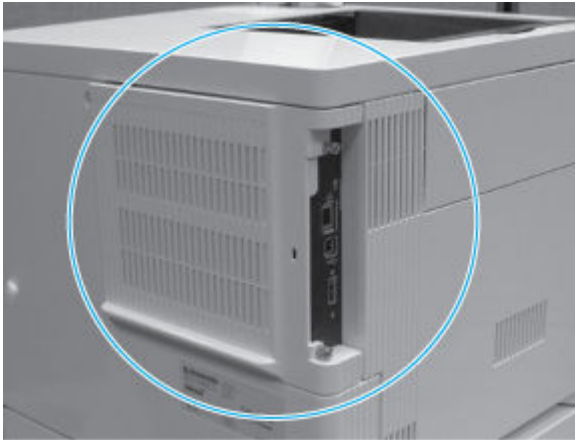


Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

1. Locate the formatter cover.

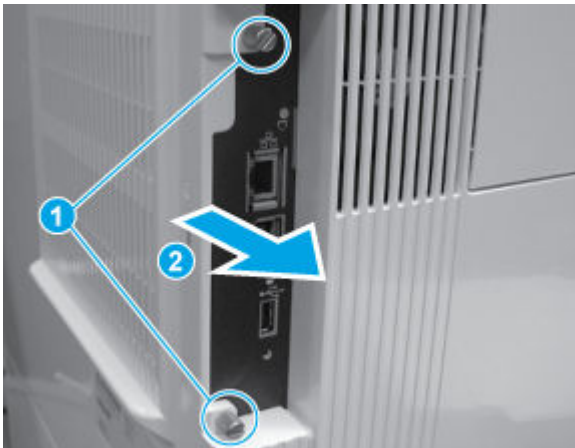
Figure 5-2904 Locate the formatter cover



2. Loosen the two thumbscrews (callout 1). Grasp the two thumbscrews, and then slide the cover away from the printer (callout 2) to remove it.

 **TIP:** If needed, use the edge of a coin to turn the thumbscrews.

Figure 5-2905 Loosen the thumbscrews



6 Parts and diagrams

Printer parts information including exploded assembly diagrams and part number lists.

HP service and support

Learn about HP access to additional service and support information.

Additional service and support for channel partners

Channel partners go to partner.hp.com, and then use the steps below to access the HP Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE).

 [View a video of how to use the HP Partner First Portal to access WISE.](#)

Access WISE for Channel partners

1. Select [Services & Support](#) (near the top of the screen).
2. Under [Services Delivery](#), select [Technical Support](#).
3. Select [Technical Documentation](#).

Find information about the following topics

- Service manuals
- Service advisories
- Up-to-date control panel message (CPMD) troubleshooting
- Solutions for printer issues and emerging issues
- Remove and replace part instructions and videos
- Install and configure
- Printer specifications
- Warranty and regulatory information

Additional service and support for HP internal personnel

HP internal personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE) sites:

 [View a video of how to access WISE for internal HP users.](#)

Americas (AMS)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Spanish](#)
- [WISE - Portuguese](#)
- [WISE - French](#)

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- [WISE - English](#)
- [WISE - Japanese](#)
- [WISE - Korean](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(simplified\)](#)
- [WISE - Chinese \(traditional\)](#)
- [WISE - Thai](#)

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- [WISE - English](#)

Additional technical support WISE videos

The videos below provide additional ways to access printer information using WISE.



[View a video of how to use WISE to find technical support videos \(model number search\).](#)



[View a video of ow to use WISE to find technical support videos \(Product detail page \[PDP\] search\).](#)

Order parts by authorized service providers

Find information about ordering parts and supplies for the printer.

Ordering

Order parts by authorized service providers.

Table 6-1 Ordering

Item or provider	Description
Order supplies and paper	www.hp.com/go/suresupply
Order parts from authorized service providers	www.hp.com/buy/parts or partsurfer.hp.com
Order through service or support providers	Contact an HP-authorized service or support provider.
Order using the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	To access, in a supported web browser on your computer, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address/URL field. The EWS contains a link to the HP SureSupply web site, which provides options for purchasing Original HP supplies.

Orderable parts

Not all of the parts shown in the exploded assembly diagrams are orderable parts.

Refer to the tables following the diagrams or the alphabetical/numerical parts lists to determine if a part is orderable.

Supplies and accessories

Learn about the supplies and accessories that are available for the printer.

To order cartridges, visit <http://www.hp.com> (some portions of the HP Web site are available in English only). Ordering cartridges online is not supported in all countries/regions. However, many countries/regions have information about ordering by telephone, locating a local store, and printing a shopping list. In addition, go to hp.com/supplies to obtain information about purchasing HP products in your country/region.

Use only the replacement cartridges that have the same cartridge number as the cartridge that is being replaced. Find the cartridge number in the following places:

- On the label of the cartridge that is being replaced.
- On a sticker inside the printer. Open the cartridge door to locate the sticker.
- Open the printer software (**HP Printer Assistant**), and then click **Shop > Shop For Supplies Online**.
- Open the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS), and then click **Tools > Supply Status** (under the **Product Information** item).

Table 6-2 Supplies part numbers

Item	Description	Part number (service)	Product number (new)
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF360-67901	CF360A
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508X High Yield Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF360-67902	CF360X
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF361-67901	CF361A
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508X High Yield Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF361-67902	CF361X
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Yellow Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF362-67901	CF362A
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508X High Yield Yellow Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF362-67902	CF362X
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508A Magenta Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF363-67901	CF363A
Toner cartridge (M552/M553/M557/E55040/E57540)	HP 508X High Yield Magenta Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	CF363-67902	CF363X
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	HP Cartridge LJ Black Managed Toner	W9060-67901	W9060MC (~ 15,000 pages)
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	HP Cartridge LJ Cyan Managed Toner	W9061-67901	W9061MC (~ 12,000 pages)

Table 6-2 Supplies part numbers (continued)

Item	Description	Part number (service)	Product number (new)
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	HP Cartridge LJ Yellow Managed Toner	W9062-67901	W9062MC (~ 12,000 pages)
Toner cartridge (E55040/E57540)	HP Cartridge LJ Magenta Managed Toner	W9063-67901	W9063MC (~ 12,000 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212A Black LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67905	W2120A (5,500 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212X High Yield Black LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67909	W2120X (13,000 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212A Cyan LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67906	W2121A (4,500 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212X High Yield Cyan LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67910	W2121X (10,000 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212A Yellow LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67907	W2122A (4,500 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212X High Yield Yellow LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67911	W2122X (10,000 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212A Magenta LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67908	W2123A (4,500 pages)
Toner cartridge (M554/M555/M578)	HP Cartridge-212X High Yield Magenta LaserJet Toner	7ZU81-67912	W2123AX (10,000 pages)
HP toner-collection unit	Replacement toner-collection unit with attached door.	B5L37-67901	B5L37A
HP Staple Cartridge Pack (stapler models only)	Replacement staple cartridges. Contains two staple cartridges of 1500 staples each.	Q7432-67001	Q7432A
HP LaserJet 200 ADF Roller Replacement Kit (M577/M578/E57540)	Replacement feed rollers for the document feeder.	W5U23-67901	B5L52A
Fuser kit (110V)	Fuser	B5L35-67902	B5L35A
Fuser kit (220V)	Fuser	B5L36-67902	B5L36A

Table 6-3 Accessories (M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040)

Item	Description	Part number (service)	Product number
550-sheet paper feeder NOTE: The M552 model accepts one 550-sheet paper feeder. The M553 and E55040 models accept up to three 550-sheet paper feeders.	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder (included with the x model)	B5L34-67901	B5L34A
Printer stand and storage	Optional stand with storage to support the printer Recommended when using multiple optional paper feeders.	B5L51-67901	B5L51A
HP secure 500 GB high-performance hard disk drive NOTE: Not supported for the M552dn.	Optional hard drive	B5L29-67903	B5L29A
1GB DDR3 Slim DIMM (SFP) NOTE: M553/M554/M555/E55040 only.	Optional DIMM for expanding the memory	5851-6422	G6W84A
HP internal USB ports	Two optional USB ports for connecting third-party devices	B5L28-67902	B5L28A
HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM) (M552/M553/E55040) NOTE: M554 and M555: The TPM is a factory installed component and not an accessory.	Automatically encrypts all data that passes through the product	F5S62-61001	F5S62A

Table 6-4 Accessories (M577, M578, and E57540)

Item	Description	Part number (service)	Product number
550-sheet paper feeder NOTE: The printer supports up to three 550-sheet paper feeders.	Optional 550-sheet paper feeder (included with the x model)	B5L34-67901	B5L34A
Fixed tray guide kit	Fixed tray guide kit for cassette trays	5851-7708	
Printer stand and storage	Optional stand with storage to support the printer Recommended when using multiple optional paper feeders.	B5L51-67901	B5L51A
HP secure 500 GB high-performance hard disk drive	Optional hard drive	B5L29-67903	B5L29A
1GB DDR3 x32 144-Pin 800MHz SODIMM (MFP)	Optional DIMM for expanding the memory	E5K48-67902	E5K48A
HP internal USB ports	Two optional USB ports for connecting third-party devices	B5L28-67902	B5L28A

Table 6-4 Accessories (M577, M578, and E57540) (continued)

Item	Description	Part number (service)	Product number
HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM) (M577/ E57540)	Automatically encrypts all data that passes through the product	F5S62-61001	F5S62A
NOTE: M578: The TPM is a factory installed component and not an accessory.			
HP LaserJet Keyboard Overlay Kit for Simplified Chinese & Traditional Chinese	Language-specific, adhesive overlay for the physical keyboard	5851-6002	A7W12A
HP LaserJet Keyboard Overlay Kit for Swedish	Language-specific, adhesive overlay for the physical keyboard	A7W14-67901	A7W14A
HP Smartcard NIPRNet Solution for US Government	Non-secure Internet Protocol (IP) Router Network for transmitting non-classified information		CC543B
NOTE: Requires installing the HP Internal USB ports accessory (B5L28A).			
HP Smartcard NIPRNet Solution for US Government	Secret Internet Protocol (IP) Router Network for transmitting classified information		F8B30A
NOTE: Requires installing the HP Internal USB ports accessory (B5L28A).			
HP Foreign Interface Harness	Optional port for connecting third-party devices	B5L31-67902	B5L31A
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax Accessory 600	Optional fax accessory for the dn model	B5L53-67901	B5L53A
HP Jetdirect 2900nw Print Server	USB wireless print server accessory		J8031A
HP Jetdirect 3000w NFC/Wireless Accessory	Wi-Fi direct accessory for "touch" printing from mobile devices		J8030A

Customer self-repair parts

Learn about printer customer self-repair parts.

Customer self-repair (CSR) parts are available for many HP LaserJet printers to reduce repair time.



NOTE: More information about the CSR program and benefits can be found at www.hp.com/go/csr-support and www.hp.com/go/csr-faq.

Genuine HP replacement parts can be ordered at www.hp.com/buy/parts or by contacting an HP-authorized service or support provider. When ordering, one of the following will be needed: part number, serial number (found on back of printer), product number, or printer name.

- Parts listed as **A**: Easy
- Parts listed as **B**: Difficult and/or requires tools


Table 6-5 Customer self-repair (CSR) parts


Kit name	Description	CSR level	Part number
Control panel kit (M553x/M555/E55040dw/E55040dn)	Control panel	A	B5L24-67903
Control panel kit (MFP)	Control panel	A	B5L47-67018
Secondary transfer roller kit	Secondary transfer roller	A	RM2-6575-000CN
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	ITB	B	RM2-6576-000CN
Tray 2-5 roller kit	Rollers for Tray 2 and the optional 550-sheet paper feeders	A	RM2-6577-000CN
ADF roller replacement Kit	Replacement feed rollers for the document feeder	A	W5U23-67901
Fuser kit (110V)	Fuser	A	B5L35-67902
Fuser kit (220V)	Fuser	A	B5L36-67902
embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC) kit (SFP)	eMMC module	A	5851-6436
500 GB secure high-performance hard disk drive (MFP)	Replacement hard disk drive	A	5851-6712
White backing kit A4 (MFP)	White backing for the document feeder (with retention clips)	A	5851-7740
Retention clip kit (MFP)	Retention clips for the document feeder white backing	A	5851-6573
Keyboard kit (flow models)	Keyboard (US)	A	B5L47-67019
Keyboard kit (flow models)	Keyboard (UK)	A	B5L47-67020
Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6019
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6020
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA: UK Kybd) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6021
Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6022
Keyboard overlay kit (ES, PT) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6023
Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT) (flow models)	Keyboard overlay	A	5851-6024

How to use parts lists and diagrams

Learn how to use the parts lists and diagrams.

The figures in this chapter show the major sub-assemblies in the printer and their component parts. A parts list table follows each exploded view assembly diagram. The table lists the item number, the associated part number, and the description of each part. If a part is not listed in the table, then it is not a field replacement unit (FRU).

 **NOTE:** Be sure to order the correct part. When looking for part numbers for electrical parts, pay careful attention to the voltage that is listed in the part description. Doing so will make sure that the selected part number is for the correct printer model.

 **NOTE:** The abbreviation “PCA” stands for “printed circuit-board assembly.” Components described as a PCA might consist of a single circuit board or a circuit board plus other parts, such as cables and sensors.

Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540)

Parts diagram and part list for the document feeder and image scanner.

Figure 6-1 Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540)

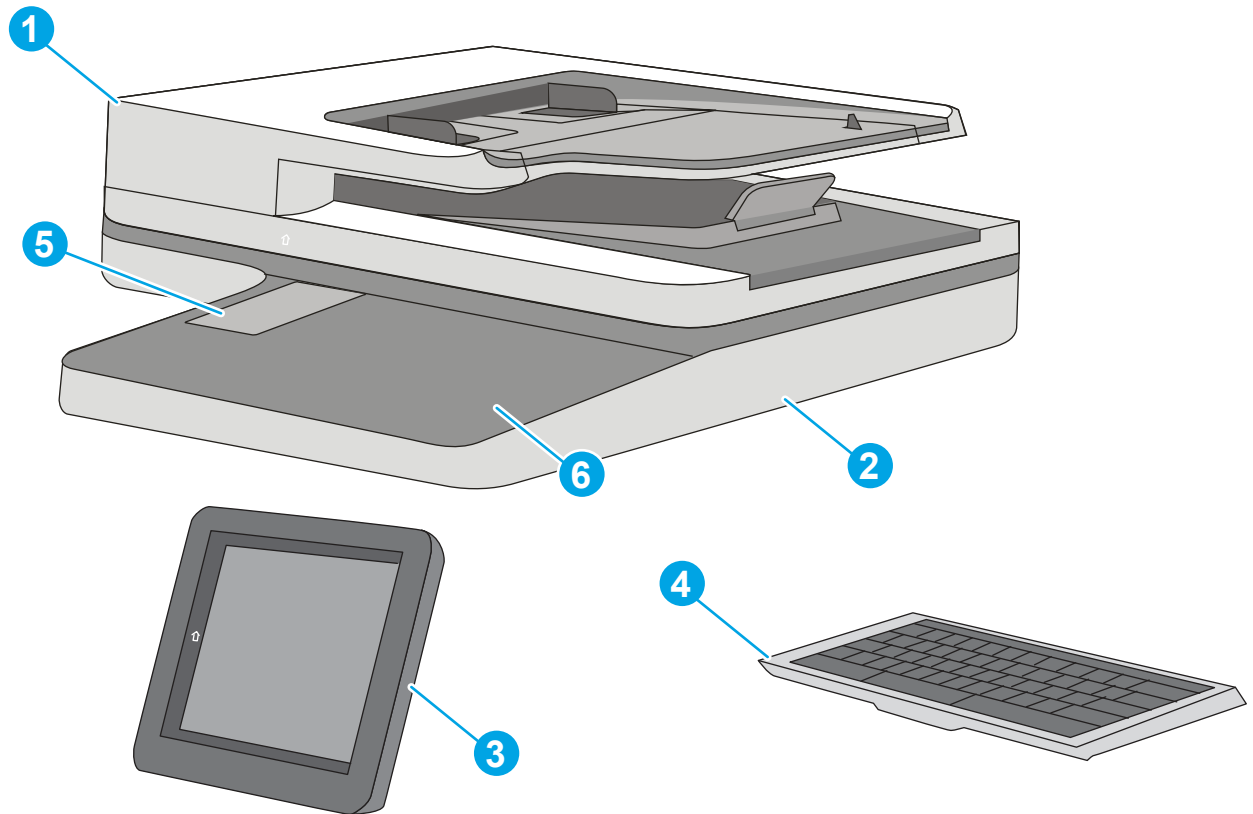


Table 6-6 Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	B5L47-67906	Kit - ADF whole unit Enterprise	1
1	B5L47-67907	Kit - ADF whole unit Workflow	1
2	B5L46-67904	Image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) kit; includes white backing and retention clips	1
3	B5L47-67018	Control panel (M577/M578/E57540) kit	1
4	B5L47-67019	Keyboard US (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	1
4	B5L47-67020	Keyboard UK (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	1
5	B5L46-40021	Cover, HIP (M577/M578/E57540)	1
6	B5L46-40026	Bezel, control panel with NFC icon (M577)	1
6	B5L46-40020	Bezel, control panel without NFC icon (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	B5L47-67903	Scan control board (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	B5L46-40002	Cover, keyboard (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	1

Table 6-6 Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
Not shown	B5L46-40011	Cover, rear (image scanner; M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	B5L46-40028	Cover, USB (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	B5L46-40024	Cover, right front upper (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	B5L46-60121	Cover assembly, stapler (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	1
Not shown	B5L46-60102	Stapler (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	1
Not shown	B5L46-60102	Hinge, left document feeder (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	COM39-60065	Hinge, right document feeder (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	B5L46-60121	Cable, stapler (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	1
Not shown	5851-5939	Cable, WU USB control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	5851-5938	Cable, HIP USB control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	5851-5936	Cable, HDMI control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	5851-5935	Cable, 18-pin control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	B5L46-60114	Cable, HDMI PAB to SCAM (M577/M578/E57540)	1
Not shown	5851-6019	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6020	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6021	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-SW, DE-SW, DA: UK Kybd)	1
Not shown	5851-6022	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	1
Not shown	5851-6023	Keyboard overlay kit (ES/PT)	1
Not shown	5851-6024	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	1

Parts and diagrams: Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

Parts diagram and parts list for the SFP printer covers.

Figure 6-2 Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

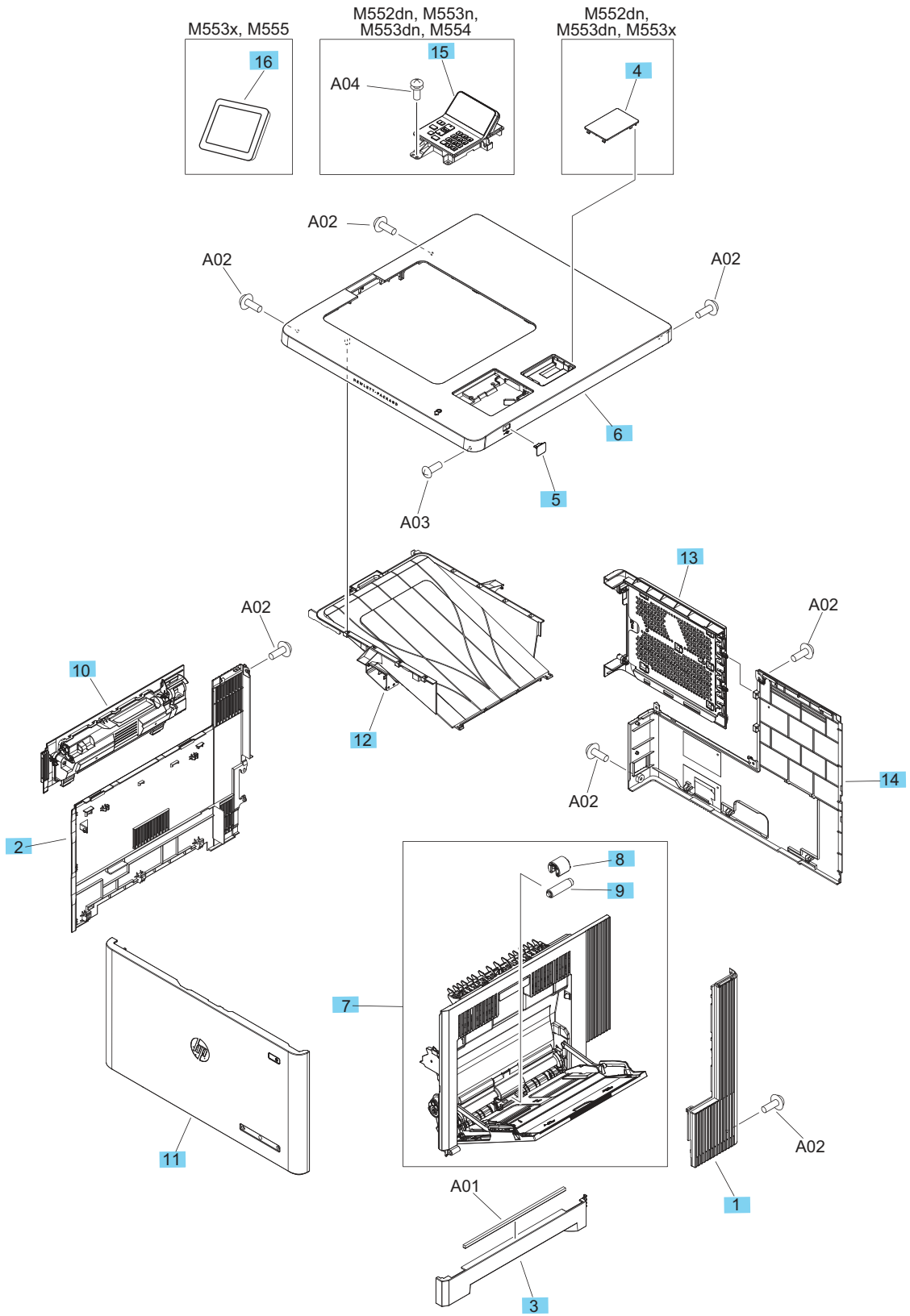


Table 6-7 Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RC4-0178-000CN	Cover, right rear	1
2	RC4-0179-000CN	Cover, left	1
3	RC4-0183-000CN	Handle, right	1
4	RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, HIP (M552dn, M553dn, M553x/E55040)	1
5	RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, USB	1
6	RL2-0096-000CN	Cover, upper (M553n)	1
6	RL2-0097-000CN	Cover, upper (M553x/E55040)	1
6	RL2-0098-000CN	Cover, upper (M552dn, M553dn)	1
7	RM2-0019-000CN	Door assembly, right	1
8	B5L24-67905	Roller, pickup, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	1
9	B5L24-67905	Roller, separation, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	1
10	B5L37-67901	Toner collection unit	1
11	B5L25-67901	Cover, front (M552, M553/E55040)	1
12	RM2-0044-000CN	Output bin	1
13	RM2-0084-000CN	Cover, formatter	1
14	RM2-0085-000CN	Cover, rear	1
15	RM2-7180-000CN	Control panel (M552dn, M553n, M553dn)	1
15	RM2-6582-000CN	Control panel (M554)	1
16	B5L24-67903	Control panel (M553x/E55040)	1
16	K0Q15-67904	Kit - control panel 4.3 inch CLJ M555	1
Not shown	RK3-1532-000CN	Cable, control panel (M554)	1
Not shown	RK3-1534-000CN	Cable, control panel (M555)	1

Parts and diagrams: Covers (M577/M578/E57540)

Parts diagram and parts list for the MFP printer covers.

Figure 6-3 Covers (M577/M578/E57540)

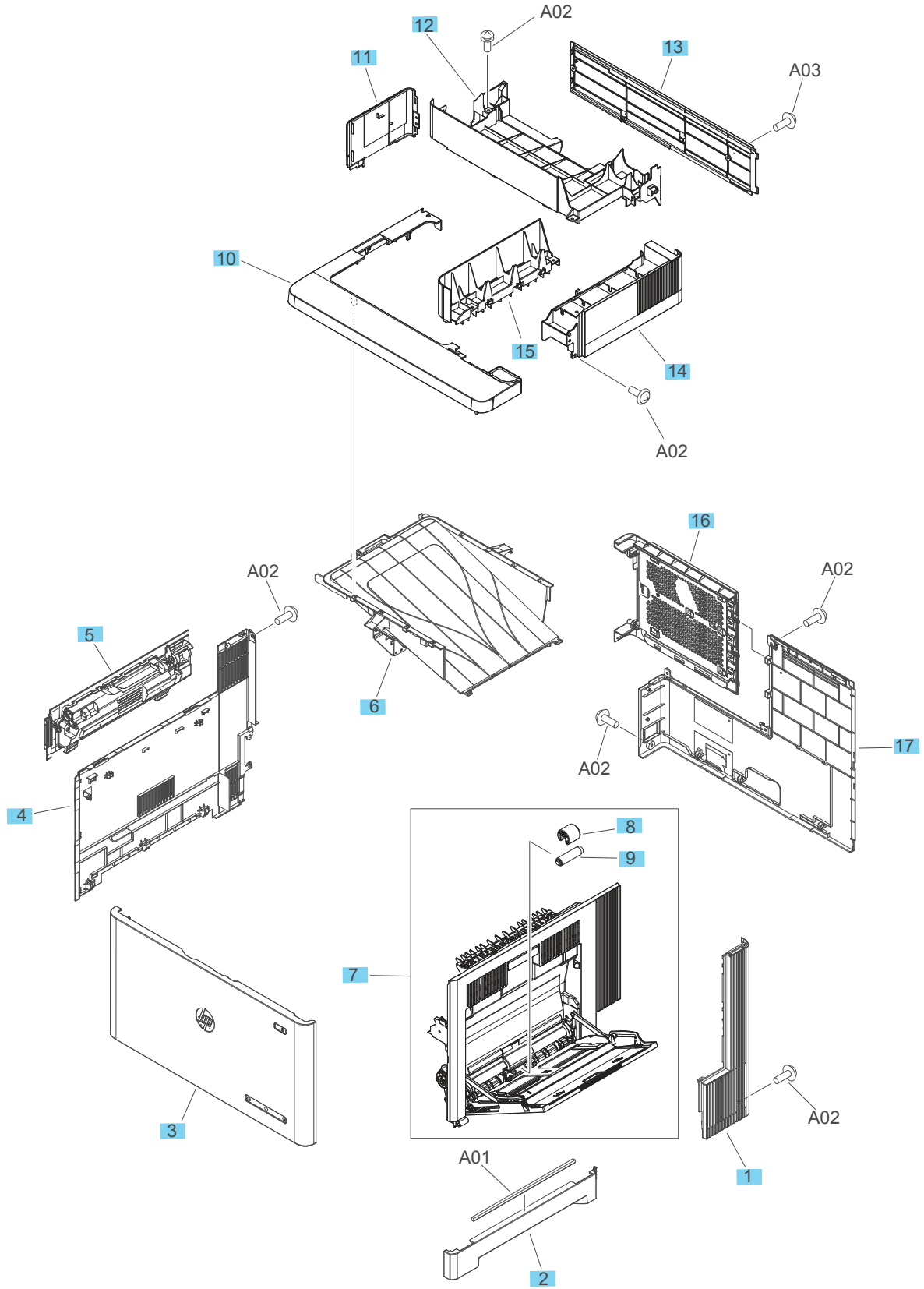


Table 6-8 Covers (M577/M578/E57540)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RC4-0178-000CN	Cover, right rear	1
2	RC4-0183-000CN	Handle, right	1
3	B5L46-67906	Cover, front (MFP)	1
4	RC4-0179-000CN	Cover, left	1
5	B5L37-67901	Toner collection unit	1
6	RM2-0044-000CN	Output bin	1
7	RM2-0019-000CN	Right door assembly	1
8	B5L24-67905	Roller, pickup, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	1
9	B5L24-67905	Roller, separation, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	1
10	RL2-0769-000CN	Cover, top (M577/M578/E57540)	1
11	RL2-0770-000CN	Cover, left upper (M577/M578/E57540)	1
12	RC4-3383-000CN	Cover, top rear (M577/M578/E57540)	1
13	RL2-0771-000CN	Cover, rear upper (M577/M578/E57540)	1
14	RL2-0772-000CN	Cover, right upper (M577/M578/E57540)	1
15	RC4-3382-000CN	Cover, paper feed (M577/M578/E57540)	1
16	RM2-0084-000CN	Cover, formatter	1
17	RM2-0085-000CN	Cover, rear	1

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 6-4 Internal assemblies (1 of 5)

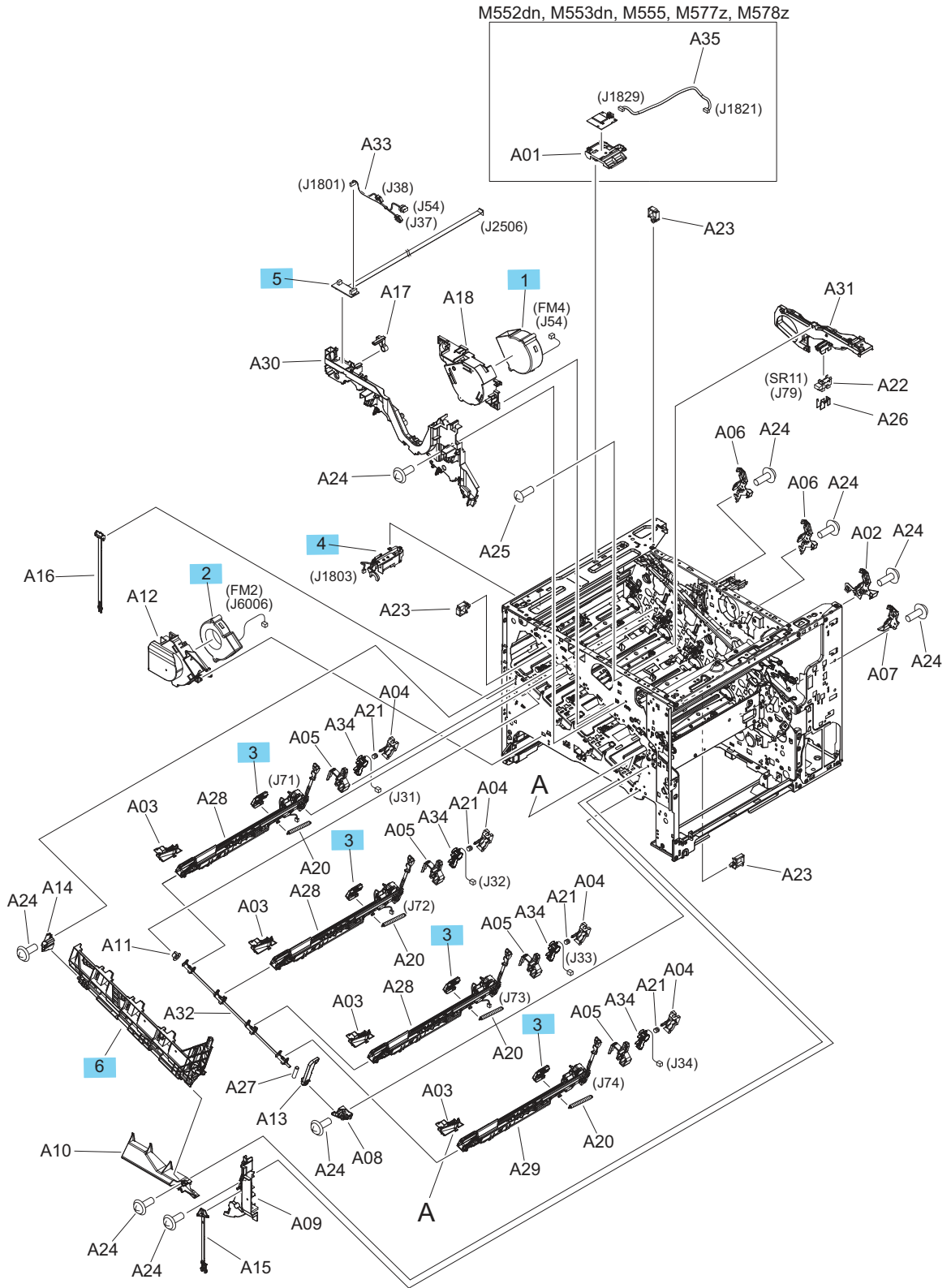


Table 6-9 Internal assemblies (1 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RK2-2418-000CN	Fan, fuser (FM4)	1
2	RK2-6124-000CN	Fan, cartridge (FM2)	1
3	RM2-0086-000CN	Glass cleaner assembly, dust-proof	4
4	RM2-7130-000CN	Waste toner detect PCA assembly	1
5	RM2-7156-000CN	Connecting PCA assembly	1
6	RL2-0013-010CN	Inner door	1
Not shown	1150-7968	Wireless PCA, embedded	1
Not shown	B5L24-60002	Near field communication (NFC) PCA, embedded (M553x/M555/E55040)	1
Not shown	B5L24-60001	Near field communication (NFC) PCA, embedded (M577z\E57540)	1

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 6-5 Internal assemblies (2 of 5)

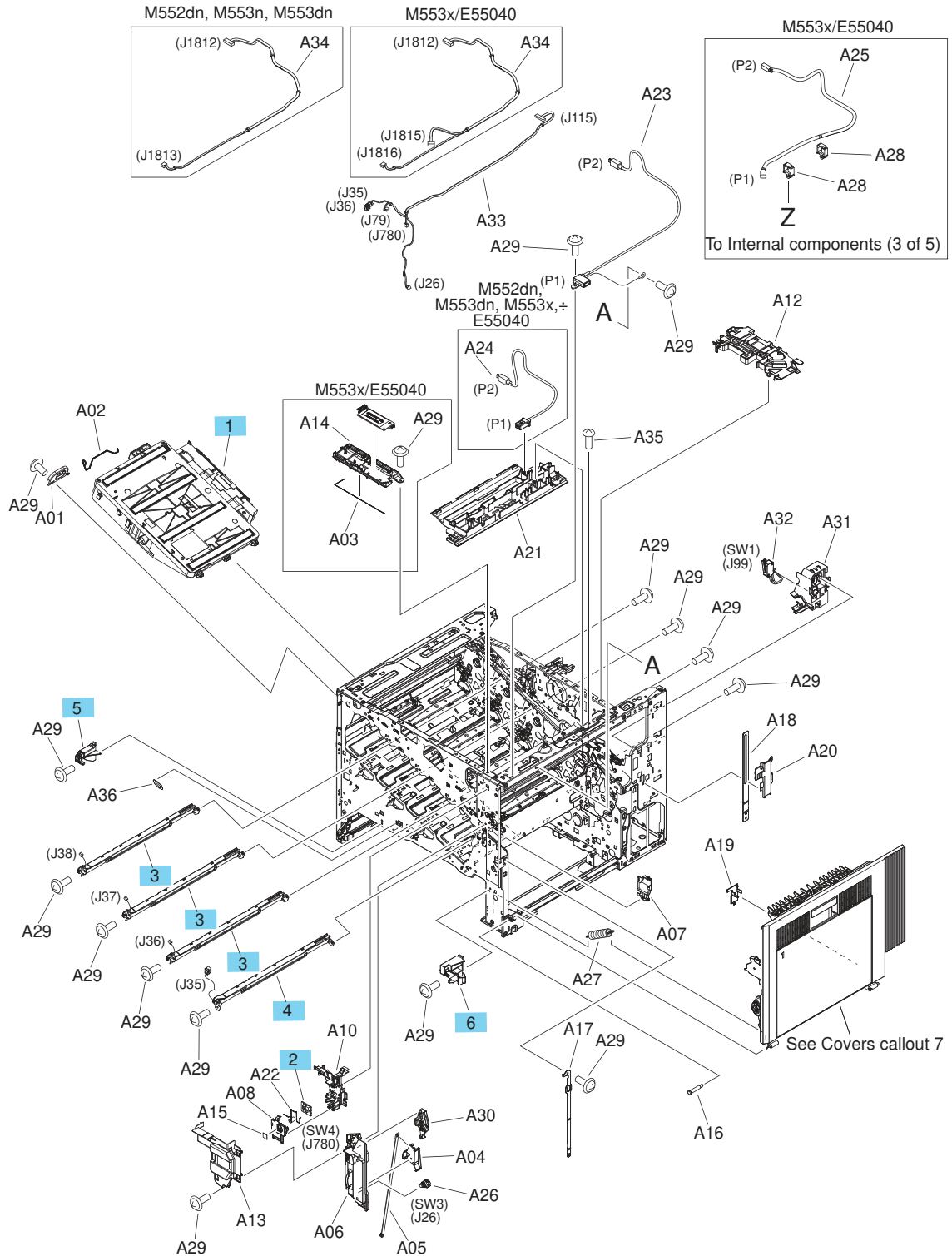


Table 6-10 Internal assemblies (2 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RM2-6545-000CN	Laser/scanner assembly	1
2	RM2-7133-000CN	Switch PCA assembly (SW4)	1
3	RM2-7168-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA assembly	3
4	RM2-7169-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA assembly	1
5	RC4-0132-000CN	Hinge, cover, front	1
6	RC4-0159-000CN	Hinge, cover, front	1

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 6-6 Internal assemblies (3 of 5)

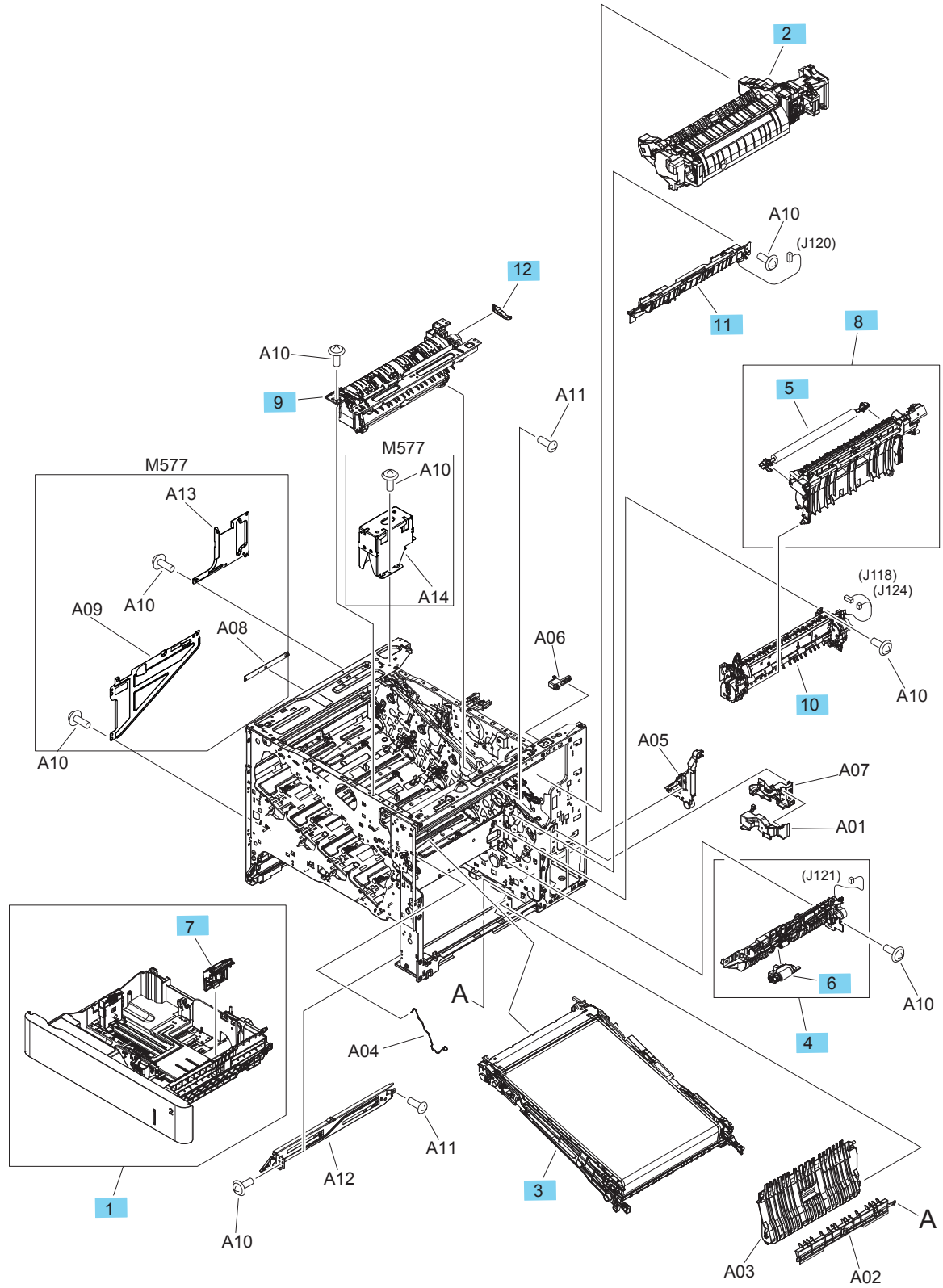


Table 6-11 Internal assemblies (3 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RM2-0007-000CN	Cassette (Tray 2)	1
2	B5L35-67902	Fuser kit (110V)	1
2	B5L36-67902	Fuser kit (220V)	3
3	RM2-6576-000CN	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	1
3	B5L24-69001	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) (Refurbished)	1
4	RM2-0017-000CN	Paper pickup assembly	1
5	RM2-6576-000CN	Roller, secondary transfer (includes ITB)	1
6	RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, paper pickup (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	1
7	RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, separation (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	1
8	RM2-0090-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (M553n)	1
8	RM2-0022-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	1
9	RM2-0092-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (M553n)	1
9	RM2-0016-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	1
10	RM2-0093-000CN	Registration assembly (M553n)	1
10	RM2-0018-000CN	Registration assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	1
11	RM2-7160-000CN	Density detect assembly	1
12	RC4-0830-000CN	Arm, solenoid	1

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 6-7 Internal assemblies (4 of 5)

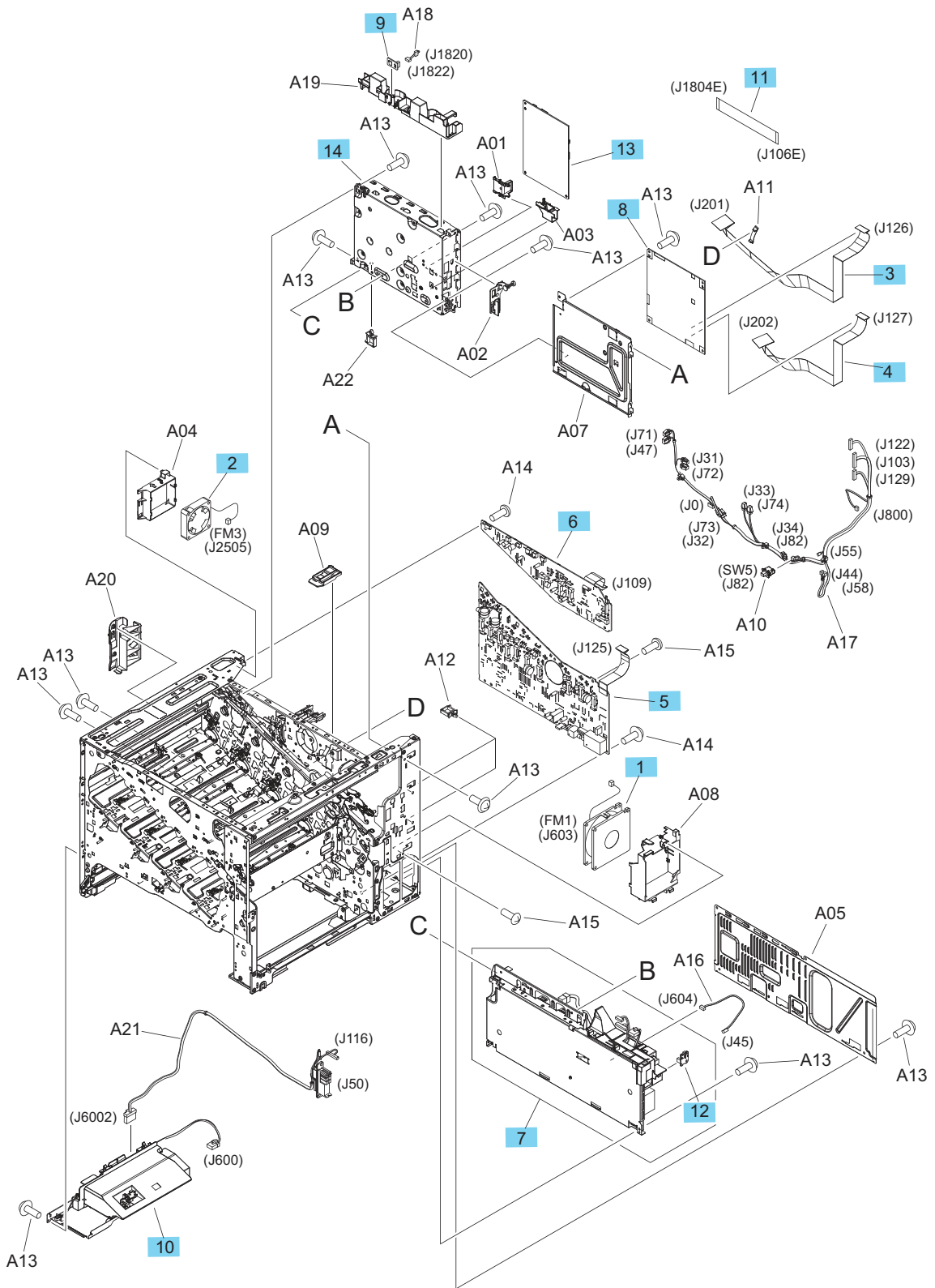


Table 6-12 Internal assemblies (4 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RK2-2416-000CN	Fan, power-supply (FM1)	1
2	RK2-2728-000CN	Fan, delivery (FM3)	1
3	RK2-6101-000CN	Cable, flexible flat	1
4	RK2-6103-000CN	Cable, flexible flat	1
5	RM2-7122-000CN	HVPS (D) PCA assembly	1
6	RM2-7134-000CN	HVPS (T) PCA assembly (M553n)	1
6	RM2-7123-000CN	HVPS (T) PCA assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	1
7	RM3-7157-000CN	Low-voltage power supply (110V)	1
7	RM3-7158-000CN	Low-voltage power supply (220V)	1
8	RM3-7450-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M552, M553, M555, E55040)	1
8	RM3-7451-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M577, E57540)	1
8	RM3-8465-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M554, M555)	1
8	RM3-8468-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M554, M555)	1
9	RM2-7138-000CN	Memory PCA assembly	1
10	RM3-7159-000CN	Fuser power supply PCA (110)	1
10	RM3-7160-000CN	Fuser power supply PCA (220V)	1
11	RK2-6111-000CN	Cable, flexible flat	1
12	RM2-7154-000CN	Environmental sensor PCA assembly	1
13	B5L23-67903	Formatter (M552)	1
13	B5L23-67904	Formatter (M552 India and China only)	1
13	B5L24-67909	Formatter (M553n, M553dn, M553dh)	1
13	B5L24-67908	Formatter (M553n, M553dn, M553dh India and China only)	1
13	B5L26-67901	Formatter (M553x, E55040)	1
13	B5L26-67902	Formatter (M553x, E55040 India and China only)	1
13	B5L46-67909	Formatter (M577, E57540)	1
13	B5L46-67911	Formatter (M577, E57540)	1
13	7ZU81-67904	Formatter (M554dn China/India)	1
13	7ZU81-67903	Formatter (M554dn)	1
13	7ZU78-67904	Formatter (M555dn China/India)	1
13	7ZU78-67903	Formatter (M555dn)	1
13	7ZU79-67904	Formatter (M555x China/India)	1

Table 6-12 Internal assemblies (4 of 5) (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
13	7ZU79-67903	Formatter (M555x)	1
13	7ZU85-67904	Formatter (M578 China/India)	1
13	7ZU85-67903	Formatter (M578)	1
14	RC4-0152-000CN	Formatter case	1
Not shown	B5L53-67901	Fax PCA (M577/M578/E57540 fax models)	1

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 5)

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 6-8 Internal assemblies (5 of 5)

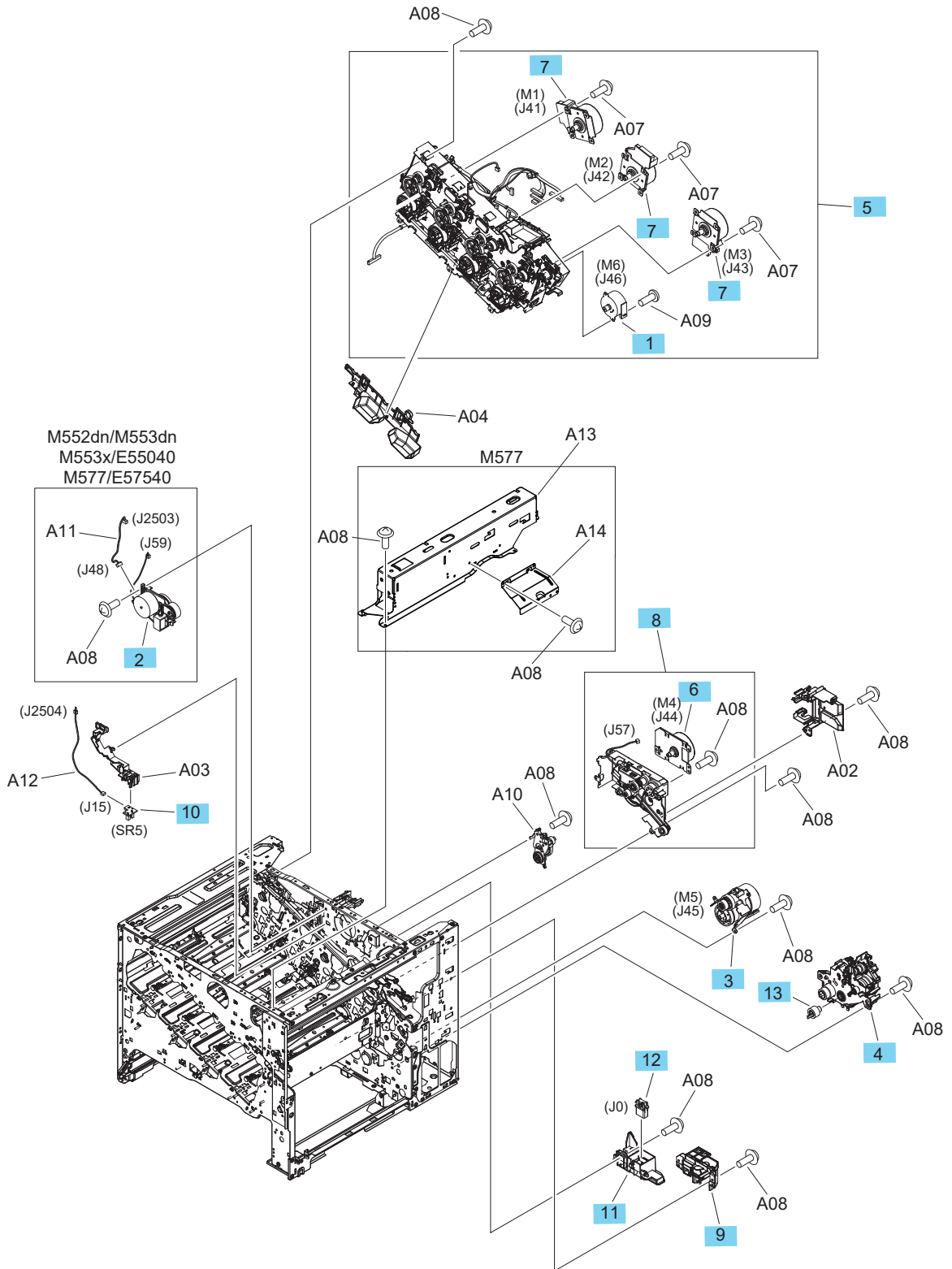


Table 6-13 Internal assemblies (5 of 5)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RK2-6027-000CN	Motor, stepping (M6)	1
2	RM2-0006-000CN	Duplexing drive assembly (M7, CL2; duplex models)	1
3	RM2-0008-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (M5)	1
4	RM2-0010-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (CL1)	1
5	B5L25-67902	Main motor drive assembly	1
6	RM2-0077-000CN	Motor assembly, fuser (M4)	1
7	RM2-0078-000CN	Motor assembly, drum (M1, M2, M3)	3
8	RM2-0091-010CN	Fuser drive assembly (M553n)	1
8	RM2-0009-010CN	Fuser drive assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	1
9	RM2-5147-000CN	Auto close assembly	1
10	RM2-7157-000CN	Estrangement detect PCA assembly (SR5)	1
11	RC4-0445-000CN	Holder, OP Drawer	1
12	VS1-7258-000CN	Connector, drawer	1
13	RU8-0577-000CN	Gear 18T	1

Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder covers

Parts diagram and part list for the 550-sheet paper feeder covers.

Figure 6-9 550-sheet paper feeder covers

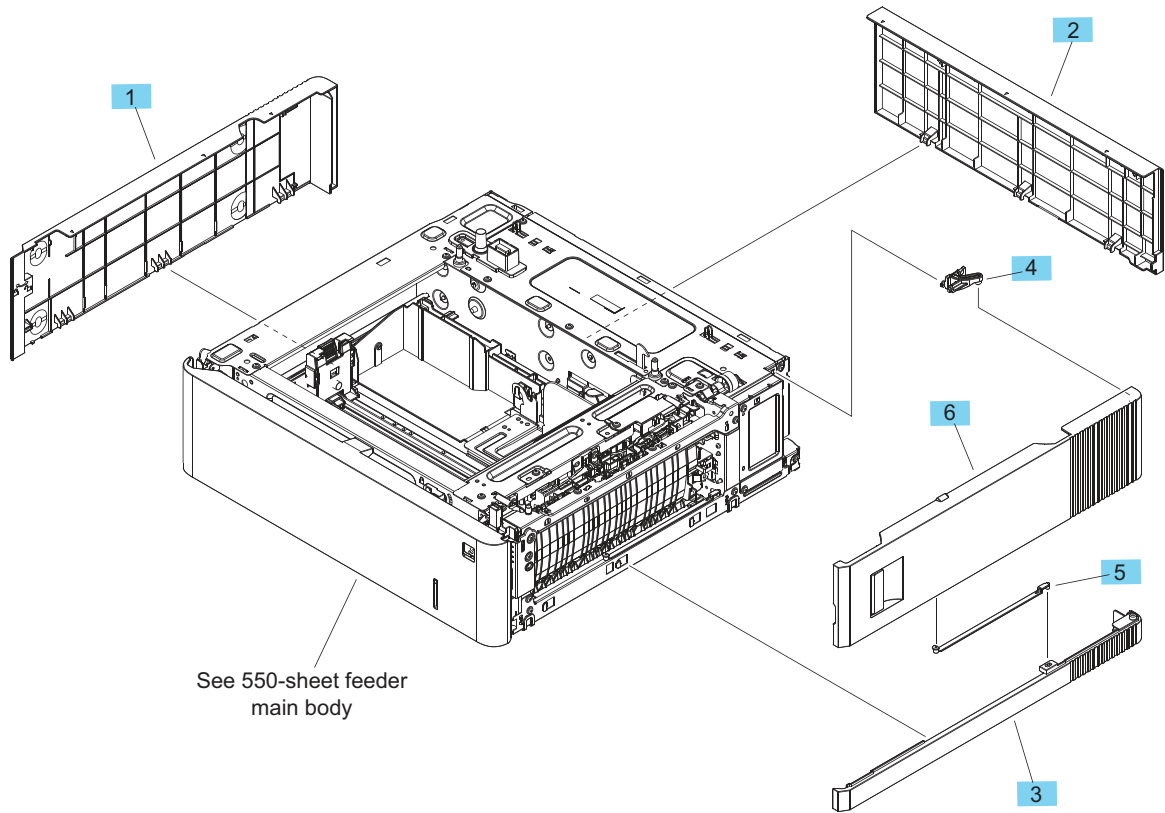


Table 6-14 550-sheet paper feeder covers

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RC4-1791-000CN	Cover, left (550-sheet feeder)	1
2	RC4-1792-000CN	Cover, rear (550-sheet feeder)	1
3	RC4-1793-000CN	Cover, right lower (550-sheet feeder)	1
4	RC4-1781-000CN	Hinge, door, right (550-sheet feeder)	1
5	RC4-1778-000CN	Link, door, right (550-sheet feeder)	1
6	RM2-5146-000CN	Door assembly, right (550-sheet feeder)	1

Parts and diagrams: 550-sheet paper feeder main body

Parts diagram and part list for the 550-sheet paper feeder main body.

Figure 6-10 550-sheet paper feeder main body

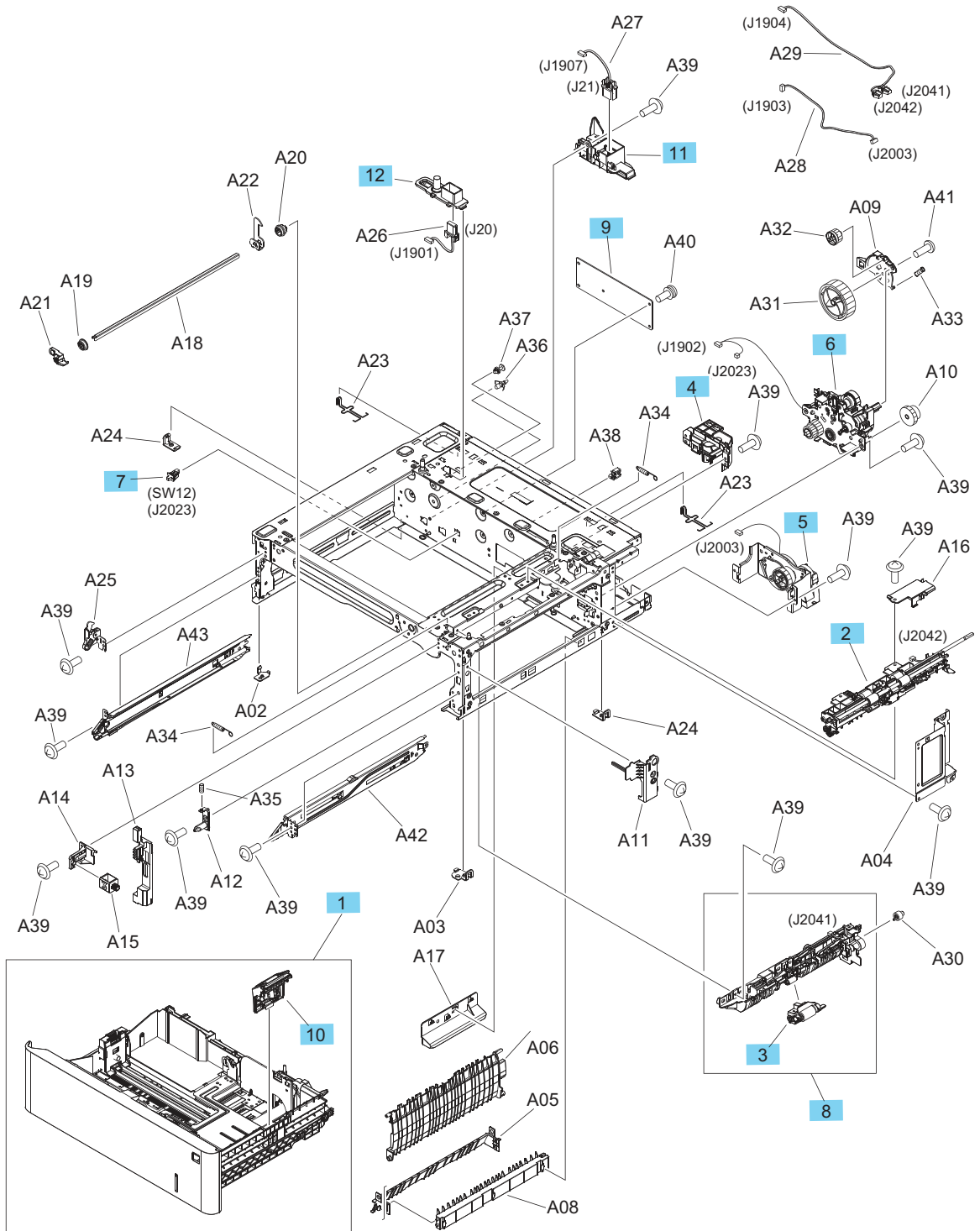


Table 6-15 550-sheet paper feeder main body

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RM2-5150-000CN	Cassette (tray; 550-sheet feeder)	1
2	RM2-5145-000CN	Paper feed assembly (550-sheet feeder)	1
3	RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, pickup (550-sheet feeder; part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	1
4	RM2-5147-000CN	Auto close assembly (550-sheet feeder)	1
5	RM2-5148-000CN	Feed drive assembly (550-sheet feeder)	1
6	RM2-5149-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (550-sheet feeder)	1
7	WC2-5806-000CN	Switch button (SW21; 550-sheet feeder)	1
8	RM2-5154-000CN	Paper pickup assembly (550-sheet feeder)	1
9	RM2-7139-000CN	Paper feed drive PCA assembly (550-sheet feeder)	1
10	RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, separation (550-sheet feeder; part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	1
11	RC4-0445-000CN	Holder, OP drawer (550-sheet feeder)	1
12	RC4-1741-000CN	Holder, drawer connector (550-sheet feeder)	1

Alphabetical parts list

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list

Description	Part number	Table and page
Arm, solenoid	RC4-0830-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Auto close assembly	RM2-5147-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Auto close assembly (550-sheet feeder)	RM2-5147-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Bezel, control panel with NFC icon (M577)	B5L46-40026	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Bezel, control panel without NFC icon (M577/M578/E57540)	B5L46-40020	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cable, 18-pin control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	5851-5935	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cable, HDMI PAB to SCAM (M577/M578/E57540)	B5L46-60114	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cable, HDMI control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	5851-5936	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cable, HIP USB control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	5851-5938	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cable, WU USB control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	5851-5939	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cable, control panel (M554)	RK3-1532-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cable, control panel (M555)	RK3-1534-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cable, flexible flat	RK2-6101-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Cable, flexible flat	RK2-6103-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Cable, flexible flat	RK2-6111-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Cable, stapler (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	B5L46-60121	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cassette (Tray 2)	RM2-0007-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Cassette (tray; 550-sheet feeder)	RM2-5150-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Connecting PCA assembly	RM2-7156-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
Connector, drawer	VS1-7258-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Control panel (M552dn, M553n, M553dn)	RM2-7180-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Control panel (M553x/E55040)	B5L24-67903	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Control panel (M554)	RM2-6582-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Control panel (M577/M578/E57540) kit	B5L47-67018	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cover assembly, stapler (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	B5L46-60121	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cover, HIP (M552dn, M553dn, M553x/E55040)	RC4-0213-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, HIP (M577/M578/E57540)	B5L46-40021	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cover, USB	RC4-0213-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, USB (M577/M578/E57540)	B5L46-40028	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cover, formatter	RM2-0084-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, formatter	RM2-0084-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, front (M552, M553/E55040)	B5L25-67901	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, front (MFP)	B5L46-67906	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, keyboard (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	B5L46-40002	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cover, left	RC4-0179-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, left	RC4-0179-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, left (550-sheet feeder)	RC4-1791-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
Cover, left upper (M577/M578/E57540)	RL2-0770-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, paper feed (M577/M578/E57540)	RC4-3382-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, rear	RM2-0085-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, rear	RM2-0085-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, rear (550-sheet feeder)	RC4-1792-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
Cover, rear (image scanner; M577/M578/E57540)	B5L46-40011	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cover, rear upper (M577/M578/E57540)	RL2-0771-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, right front upper (M577/M578/E57540)	B5L46-40024	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Cover, right lower (550-sheet feeder)	RC4-1793-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
Cover, right rear	RC4-0178-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, right rear	RC4-0178-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, right upper (M577/M578/E57540)	RL2-0772-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, top (M577/M578/E57540)	RL2-0769-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, top rear (M577/M578/E57540)	RC4-3383-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Cover, upper (M552dn, M553dn)	RL2-0098-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, upper (M553n)	RL2-0096-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Cover, upper (M553x/E55040)	RL2-0097-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
DC controller PCA assembly (M552, M553, M555, E55040)	RM3-7450-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
DC controller PCA assembly (M554, M555)	RM3-8465-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
DC controller PCA assembly (M554, M555)	RM3-8468-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
DC controller PCA assembly (M577, E57540)	RM3-7451-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Density detect assembly	RM2-7160-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Door assembly, right	RM2-0019-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Door assembly, right (550-sheet feeder)	RM2-5146-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
Duplexing drive assembly (M7, CL2; duplex models)	RM2-0006-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Environmental sensor PCA assembly	RM2-7154-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Estrangement detect PCA assembly (SR5)	RM2-7157-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Fan, cartridge (FM2)	RK2-6124-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
Fan, delivery (FM3)	RK2-2728-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Fan, fuser (FM4)	RK2-2418-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
Fan, power-supply (FM1)	RK2-2416-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Fax PCA (M577/M578/E57540 fax models)	B5L53-67901	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Feed drive assembly (550-sheet feeder)	RM2-5148-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Formatter (M552 India and China only)	B5L23-67904	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M552)	B5L23-67903	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M553n, M553dn, M553dh India and China only)	B5L24-67908	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M553n, M553dn, M553dh)	B5L24-67909	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M553x, E55040 India and China only)	B5L26-67902	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M553x, E55040)	B5L26-67901	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M554dn China/India)	7ZU81-67904	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M554dn)	7ZU81-67903	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M555dn)	7ZU78-67903	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M555x China/India)	7ZU79-67904	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M555x)	7ZU79-67903	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Formatter (M577, E57540)	B5L46-67909	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M577, E57540)	B5L46-67911	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M578 China/India)	7ZU85-67904	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter (M578)	7ZU85-67903	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Formatter case	RC4-0152-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Fuser drive assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	RM2-0009-010CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Fuser drive assembly (M553n)	RM2-0091-010CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Fuser kit (110V)	B5L35-67902	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Fuser kit (220V)	B5L36-67902	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Fuser power supply PCA (110)	RM3-7159-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Fuser power supply PCA (220V)	RM3-7160-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Gear 18T	RU8-0577-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Glass cleaner assembly, dust-proof	RM2-0086-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
HVPS (D) PCA assembly	RM2-7122-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
HVPS (T) PCA assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	RM2-7123-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
HVPS (T) PCA assembly (M553n)	RM2-7134-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Handle, right	RC4-0183-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Handle, right	RC4-0183-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Hinge, cover, front	RC4-0132-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
Hinge, cover, front	RC4-0159-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
Hinge, door, right (550-sheet feeder)	RC4-1781-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
Hinge, left document feeder (M577/M578/E57540)	B5L46-60102	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Hinge, right document feeder (M577/M578/E57540)	COM39-60065	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Holder, OP Drawer	RC4-0445-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Holder, OP drawer (550-sheet feeder)	RC4-0445-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Holder, drawer connector (550-sheet feeder)	RC4-1741-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) kit; includes white backing and retention clips	B5L46-67904	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Inner door	RL2-0013-010CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	RM2-6576-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) (Refurbished)	B5L24-69001	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Keyboard UK (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	B5L47-67020	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Keyboard US (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	B5L47-67019	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Keyboard overlay kit (ES/PT)	5851-6023	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd)	5851-6019	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd)	5851-6020	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	5851-6024	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	5851-6022	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Kit - ADF whole unit Enterprise	B5L47-67906	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Kit - ADF whole unit Workflow	B5L47-67907	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
Kit - control panel 4.3 inch CLJ M555	K0Q15-67904	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Laser/scanner assembly	RM2-6545-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
Lifter drive assembly (550-sheet feeder)	RM2-5149-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Lifter drive assembly (CL1)	RM2-0010-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Link, door, right (550-sheet feeder)	RC4-1778-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
Low-voltage power supply (110V)	RM3-7157-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Low-voltage power supply (220V)	RM3-7158-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Main motor drive assembly	B5L25-67902	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Memory PCA assembly	RM2-7138-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
Motor assembly, drum (M1, M2, M3)	RM2-0078-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Motor assembly, fuser (M4)	RM2-0077-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Motor, stepping (M6)	RK2-6027-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
Near field communication (NFC) PCA, embedded (M553x/M555/E55040)	B5L24-60002	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
Near field communication (NFC) PCA, embedded (M577z/E57540)	B5L24-60001	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
Output bin	RM2-0044-000CN	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Output bin	RM2-0044-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Paper delivery assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	RM2-0016-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Paper delivery assembly (M553n)	RM2-0092-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Paper feed assembly (550-sheet feeder)	RM2-5145-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Paper feed drive PCA assembly (550-sheet feeder)	RM2-7139-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Paper pickup assembly	RM2-0017-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Paper pickup assembly (550-sheet feeder)	RM2-5154-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Paper pickup drive assembly (M5)	RM2-0008-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947

Table 6-16 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Pre-exposure PCA assembly	RM2-7168-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
Pre-exposure PCA assembly	RM2-7169-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
Registration assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	RM2-0018-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Registration assembly (M553n)	RM2-0093-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Right door assembly	RM2-0019-000CN	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Roller, paper pickup (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	RM2-6577-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Roller, pickup (550-sheet feeder; part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	RM2-6577-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Roller, pickup, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B5L24-67905	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Roller, secondary transfer (includes ITB)	RM2-6576-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Roller, separation (550-sheet feeder; part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	RM2-6577-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Roller, separation (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	RM2-6577-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Roller, separation, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B5L24-67905	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Roller, separation, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	B5L24-67905	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Secondary transfer assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	RM2-0022-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Secondary transfer assembly (M553n)	RM2-0090-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
Switch PCA assembly (SW4)	RM2-7133-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
Switch button (SW21; 550-sheet feeder)	WC2-5806-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
Toner collection unit	B5L37-67901	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
Toner collection unit	B5L37-67901	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
Waste toner detect PCA assembly	RM2-7130-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
Wireless PCA, embedded	1150-7968	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936

Numerical parts list

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list

Part number	Description	Table and page
1150-7968	Wireless PCA, embedded	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
5851-5935	Cable, 18-pin control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-5936	Cable, HDMI control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-5938	Cable, HIP USB control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-5939	Cable, WU USB control panel (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-6019	Keyboard overlay kit (FR, IT, RU, DE, ES: UK Kybd)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-6020	Keyboard overlay kit (FR-CN, ES-LA, ES: US Kybd)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-6022	Keyboard overlay kit (ZHTW, ZHCN)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-6023	Keyboard overlay kit (ES/PT)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
5851-6024	Keyboard overlay kit (JA-KG, JA-KT)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
7ZU78-67903	Formatter (M555dn)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
7ZU79-67903	Formatter (M555x)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
7ZU79-67904	Formatter (M555x China/India)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
7ZU81-67903	Formatter (M554dn)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
7ZU81-67904	Formatter (M554dn China/India)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
7ZU85-67903	Formatter (M578)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
7ZU85-67904	Formatter (M578 China/India)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L23-67903	Formatter (M552)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
B5L23-67904	Formatter (M552 India and China only)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L24-60001	Near field communication (NFC) PCA, embedded (M577z\E57540)	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
B5L24-60002	Near field communication (NFC) PCA, embedded (M553x/M555/E55040)	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
B5L24-67903	Control panel (M553x/E55040)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
B5L24-67905	Roller, pickup, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
B5L24-67905	Roller, separation, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
B5L24-67905	Roller, separation, Tray 1 (part of Tray 1 roller kit)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
B5L24-67908	Formatter (M553n, M553dn, M553dh India and China only)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L24-67909	Formatter (M553n, M553dn, M553dh)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L24-69001	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) (Refurbished)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
B5L25-67901	Cover, front (M552, M553/E55040)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
B5L25-67902	Main motor drive assembly	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
B5L26-67901	Formatter (M553x, E55040)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L26-67902	Formatter (M553x, E55040 India and China only)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L35-67902	Fuser kit (110V)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
B5L36-67902	Fuser kit (220V)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
B5L37-67901	Toner collection unit	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
B5L37-67901	Toner collection unit	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
B5L46-40002	Cover, keyboard (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-40011	Cover, rear (image scanner; M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-40020	Bezel, control panel without NFC icon (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
B5L46-40021	Cover, HIP (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-40024	Cover, right front upper (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-40026	Bezel, control panel with NFC icon (M577)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-40028	Cover, USB (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-60102	Hinge, left document feeder (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-60114	Cable, HDMI PAB to SCAM (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-60121	Cable, stapler (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-60121	Cover assembly, stapler (M577/M578/E57540 stapler models)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-67904	Image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) kit; includes white backing and retention clips	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L46-67906	Cover, front (MFP)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
B5L46-67909	Formatter (M577, E57540)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L46-67911	Formatter (M577, E57540)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
B5L47-67018	Control panel (M577/M578/E57540) kit	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L47-67019	Keyboard US (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L47-67020	Keyboard UK (M577/M578/E57540 flow models)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L47-67906	Kit - ADF whole unit Enterprise	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
B5L47-67907	Kit - ADF whole unit Workflow	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
B5L53-67901	Fax PCA (M577/M578/E57540 fax models)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
COM39-60065	Hinge, right document feeder (M577/M578/E57540)	Document feeder and image scanner (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1926
K0Q15-67904	Kit - control panel 4.3 inch CLJ M555	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RC4-0132-000CN	Hinge, cover, front	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
RC4-0152-000CN	Formatter case	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RC4-0159-000CN	Hinge, cover, front	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
RC4-0178-000CN	Cover, right rear	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RC4-0178-000CN	Cover, right rear	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RC4-0179-000CN	Cover, left	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RC4-0179-000CN	Cover, left	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RC4-0183-000CN	Handle, right	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RC4-0183-000CN	Handle, right	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, HIP (M552dn, M553dn, M553x/E55040)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, USB	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RC4-0445-000CN	Holder, OP Drawer	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RC4-0445-000CN	Holder, OP drawer (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RC4-0830-000CN	Arm, solenoid	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RC4-1741-000CN	Holder, drawer connector (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RC4-1778-000CN	Link, door, right (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
RC4-1781-000CN	Hinge, door, right (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
RC4-1791-000CN	Cover, left (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
RC4-1792-000CN	Cover, rear (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC4-1793-000CN	Cover, right lower (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
RC4-3382-000CN	Cover, paper feed (M577/M578/E57540)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RC4-3383-000CN	Cover, top rear (M577/M578/E57540)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RK2-2416-000CN	Fan, power-supply (FM1)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RK2-2418-000CN	Fan, fuser (FM4)	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
RK2-2728-000CN	Fan, delivery (FM3)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RK2-6027-000CN	Motor, stepping (M6)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RK2-6101-000CN	Cable, flexible flat	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RK2-6103-000CN	Cable, flexible flat	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RK2-6111-000CN	Cable, flexible flat	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RK2-6124-000CN	Fan, cartridge (FM2)	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
RK3-1532-000CN	Cable, control panel (M554)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RK3-1534-000CN	Cable, control panel (M555)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RL2-0013-010CN	Inner door	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
RL2-0096-000CN	Cover, upper (M553n)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RL2-0097-000CN	Cover, upper (M553x/E55040)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RL2-0098-000CN	Cover, upper (M552dn, M553dn)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RL2-0769-000CN	Cover, top (M577/M578/E57540)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RL2-0770-000CN	Cover, left upper (M577/M578/E57540)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RL2-0771-000CN	Cover, rear upper (M577/M578/E57540)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RL2-0772-000CN	Cover, right upper (M577/M578/E57540)	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RM2-0006-000CN	Duplexing drive assembly (M7, CL2; duplex models)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-0007-000CN	Cassette (Tray 2)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-0008-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (M5)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-0009-010CN	Fuser drive assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-0010-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (CL1)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-0016-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-0017-000CN	Paper pickup assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-0018-000CN	Registration assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-0019-000CN	Door assembly, right	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RM2-0019-000CN	Right door assembly	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RM2-0022-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-0044-000CN	Output bin	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RM2-0044-000CN	Output bin	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RM2-0077-000CN	Motor assembly, fuser (M4)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-0078-000CN	Motor assembly, drum (M1, M2, M3)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-0084-000CN	Cover, formatter	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RM2-0084-000CN	Cover, formatter	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RM2-0085-000CN	Cover, rear	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RM2-0085-000CN	Cover, rear	Covers (M577/M578/E57540) on page 1933
RM2-0086-000CN	Glass cleaner assembly, dust-proof	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
RM2-0090-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (M553n)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-0091-010CN	Fuser drive assembly (M553n)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-0092-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (M553n)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-0093-000CN	Registration assembly (M553n)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-5145-000CN	Paper feed assembly (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-5146-000CN	Door assembly, right (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder covers on page 1948
RM2-5147-000CN	Auto close assembly	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-5147-000CN	Auto close assembly (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-5148-000CN	Feed drive assembly (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-5149-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-5150-000CN	Cassette (tray; 550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-5154-000CN	Paper pickup assembly (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-6545-000CN	Laser/scanner assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
RM2-6576-000CN	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-6576-000CN	Roller, secondary transfer (includes ITB)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, paper pickup (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, pickup (550-sheet feeder; part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, separation (550-sheet feeder; part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-6577-000CN	Roller, separation (part of Tray 2-5 roller kit)	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-6582-000CN	Control panel (M554)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RM2-7122-000CN	HVPS (D) PCA assembly	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM2-7123-000CN	HVPS (T) PCA assembly (M552, M553dn, M553x, M554, M555, E55040, M577, M578, E57540)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM2-7130-000CN	Waste toner detect PCA assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
RM2-7133-000CN	Switch PCA assembly (SW4)	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
RM2-7134-000CN	HVPS (T) PCA assembly (M553n)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944

Table 6-17 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-7138-000CN	Memory PCA assembly	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM2-7139-000CN	Paper feed drive PCA assembly (550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950
RM2-7154-000CN	Environmental sensor PCA assembly	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM2-7156-000CN	Connecting PCA assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 5) on page 1936
RM2-7157-000CN	Estrangement detect PCA assembly (SR5)	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
RM2-7160-000CN	Density detect assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 5) on page 1941
RM2-7168-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
RM2-7169-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 5) on page 1938
RM2-7180-000CN	Control panel (M552dn, M553n, M553dn)	Covers (M552/M553/M554/M555/E55040) on page 1930
RM3-7157-000CN	Low-voltage power supply (110V)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM3-7158-000CN	Low-voltage power supply (220V)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM3-7159-000CN	Fuser power supply PCA (110)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM3-7160-000CN	Fuser power supply PCA (220V)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM3-7450-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M552, M553, M555, E55040)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM3-7451-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M577, E57540)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM3-8465-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M554, M555)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RM3-8468-000CN	DC controller PCA assembly (M554, M555)	Internal assemblies (4 of 5) on page 1944
RU8-0577-000CN	Gear 18T	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
VS1-7258-000CN	Connector, drawer	Internal assemblies (5 of 5) on page 1947
WC2-5806-000CN	Switch button (SW21; 550-sheet feeder)	550-sheet paper feeder main body on page 1950

A

Review the certificates of volatility for the printer.

Certificate of Volatility

Review the certificates of volatility for the printers.

Figure A-1 Certificate of Volatility (M522/M553; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: Color LaserJet Enterprise M552 and M553	Part Number: M552n=B5L23A; M553n=B5L24A M553dn=B5L25A; M553x=B5L26A		Address: HP Inc. 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714	
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1GB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Temporary storage for system operation and print buffer.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): EEPROM	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): None	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): eMMC	Size: 4GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: JEDI and user data	Steps to clear memory: Firmware update
Type (HDD, Tape, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Walk-up USB print				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				

Figure A-2 Certificate of Volatility (M522/M553; 2 of 2)

RF/RFID			
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Purpose			
Frequency:)		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications:			
Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: Wireless direct print.			
Frequency: 2.4Ghz		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications: 802.11 b/g			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: NFC; to support tap to print only			
Specifications: NFC Tag Type 4 ISO 14443B Compliant			
Author Information			
Name: Jose Luis (Boise, ID – LaserJet MFP R&D) 208-333-4489	Title: Security Technical Market Engineer	Email:	Business Unit: IPG
			Date Prepared: 1/22/15

Figure A-3 Certificate of Volatility (M554/M555; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Enterprise M554 and M555		Part Number: M554dn=7ZU81A M555dn=7ZU78A; M555x= 7ZU79A		Address: HP Inc 11311 Chinden Boulevard Boise, ID 83714
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1GB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Temporary storage for system operation and print buffer.	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): EEPROM	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): None	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): eMMC	Size: 4GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: OS and user data	Steps to clear memory: Firmware update
Type (HDD, Tape, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Walkup USB print, firmware updates				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				

Figure A-4 Certificate of Volatility (M554/M555; 2 of 2)

RF/RFID	
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below	
Purpose:	
Frequency:	Bandwidth:
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications:	

Other Transmission Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose: Wireless direct print (M555x only)	
Frequency: 2.4Ghz, 5GHz	Bandwidth: 2401 - 2495 MHz; depending on selected channel in 2.4GHz band. 5180 - 5825 MHz; depending on selected channel in 5GHz band.
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n	

Other Transmission Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose: M555x only Device Beaconsing Secure Print Apps	
Frequency: 2.4Ghz	Bandwidth: 2400-2483.5 MHz; depending on selected channel.
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):
Specifications: BTLE4.0 compliant	

Other Capabilities	
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:	
Purpose:	
Specifications:	

Author Information			
Name: Jose Luis (Boise, ID – LaserJet MFP R&D) 208-333-4489	Title: Security Technical Market Engineer	Email:	Business Unit: IPG
			Date Prepared: 7/10/20

Figure A-5 Certificate of Volatility (M577; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M577		Part Number: B5L46A=M577dn B5L47A= M577f B5L48A= M577z B5L54A= M577c		Address: HP Inc. 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1792MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Operation system and print/scan buffer	Steps to clear memory:
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc):	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory:
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc):	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory:
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): HDD	Size: 320GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: OS and user data	Steps to clear memory: firmware update
Type (HDD, Tape, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Walkup USB Print				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
RF/RFID				
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Purpose:				
Frequency:		Bandwidth:		
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):		
Specifications:				

Figure A-6 Certificate of Volatility (M577; 2 of 2)

Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: WiFi Direct Print			
Frequency: 2.4 GHz		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below: NFC			
Purpose: To support Tap-to-Print only			
Specifications: NFC Tag Type 4 ISO14443B Compliant			
Author Information			
Name: Jose Luis (Boise, ID – LaserJet MFP R&D) 208-333-4489	Title: Security Technical Market Engineer	Email:	Business Unit: IPG
			Date Prepared: 1/22/15

Figure A-7 Certificate of Volatility (M578; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP M578		Part Number: 7ZU85A=M578dn 7ZU86A=M578f 7ZU87A=M578c 7ZU88A=M578z		Address: HP Inc 11311 Chinden Boulevard Boise, ID 83714
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1792MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Temporary storage for operation system and print/scan buffer.	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory: .
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): EEPROM	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore.	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): None	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): HDD	Size: 500GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: OS and user data	Steps to clear memory: Firmware update
Type (HDD, Tape, etc):	Size:	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function:	Steps to clear memory:
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below Walkup USB print, scan to USB, firmware updates				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				

Figure A-8 Certificate of Volatility (M578; 2 of 2)

RF/RFID			
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications:			
Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: Wireless direct print (M578z only)			
Frequency: 2.4Ghz, 5GHz		Bandwidth: 2401 - 2495 MHz; depending on selected channel in 2.4GHz band. 5180 - 5825 MHz; depending on selected channel in 5GHz band.	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications: 802.11 b/g/n			
Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: M578z only Device Beacons Secure Print Apps			
Frequency: 2.4Ghz		Bandwidth: 2400-2483.5 MHz; depending on selected channel.	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications: BTLE4.0 compliant			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Specifications:			
Purpose: WiFi			
Frequency: 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz band		Data rate: 802.11b: up to 11 Mbps 802.11a/g: up to 54 Mbps 802.11n: up to 300 Mbps	
Modulation: CCK, DQPSK, DBPSK for DSSS 64QAM, 16QAM, QPSK, BPSK for OFDM		Effective Radiate Power (EIRP): 2.4 GHz 2400 – 2483.5 MHz: 19.8 dBm Max 5 GHz 5150 – 5350 MHz: 22.5 dBm max 5470 – 5725 MHz: 22.2 dBm max	
Specifications: 802.11 a/b/g/n 3.3V +/- 10%			
Purpose: BLE (Bluetooth Low Energy)			
Frequency: 2.4 to 2.4835 GHz band		Data rate: BT-LE: up to 2 Mbps	
Modulation: Gaussian frequency shift modulation		Effective Radiate Power (EIRP): BLE: 1.2 dBm max	
Specifications: BTLE4.0 compliant 3.3V +/- 10%			
Author Information			
Name: Jose Luis (Boise, ID – LaserJet MFP R&D) 208-333-4489	Title: Security Technical Market Engineer	Email:	Business Unit: IPG
			Date Prepared: 7/10/20

Figure A-9 Certificate of Volatility (E55040dn; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Managed E55040dn	Part Number: E55040dn =3GX99A	Address: HP Inc. 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714		
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1 GB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Used for temporary storage during the process of jobs, and for applications that are running on the OS.	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): eMMC	Size: 4GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data for processing system functions	Steps to clear memory: 1. Power cycle the printer to erase the customer data partition cryptographically. 2. Instigate a non-secure fast erase from the EWS.
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Walk up USB Print				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
RF/RFID				
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Purpose:				
Frequency:	Bandwidth			
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):			
Specifications:				

Figure A-10 Certificate of Volatility (E55040dn; 2 of 2)

Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Specifications:			
Author Information			
Name	Title	Email	Business Unit
Robert Mejia	System Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Date Prepared: 12/10/2019			

Figure A-11 Certificate of Volatility (E55040dw; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Managed E55040dw	Part Number: E55040dw =3GX98A	Address: HP Inc 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714		
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1 GB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Used for temporary storage during the process of jobs, and for applications that are running on the OS.	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered off the memory is erased.
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): eMMC	Size: 4GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data for processing system functions	Steps to clear memory: 1. Power cycle the printer to erase the customer data partition cryptographically. 2. Instigate a non-secure fast erase from the EWS.
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Walk up USB Print				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
RF/Rfid				
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Purpose:				
Frequency:	Bandwidth			
Modulation:	Effective Radiate Power (ERP):			
Specifications:				

Figure A-12 Certificate of Volatility (E55040dw; 2 of 2)

Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose: Wireless direct print			
Frequency: 2.4Ghz		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications 802.11 b/g/n			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Specifications:			
Author Information			
Name	Title	Email	Business Unit
Casey Campbell	Technical Marketing Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Robert Mejia	System Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Date Prepared: 04/10/2018			

Figure A-13 Certificate of Volatility (E57540c; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E57540c		Part Number: E57540c = 3GY26A		Address: HP Inc. 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1792MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Used for temporary storage during the processing of jobs and for applications running on the OS.	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered OFF, the memory is erased.
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32 KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): HDD	Size: 320GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions	Steps to clear memory: 1. Erase and Unlock Encrypted Disk – This changes the encryption keys rendering all data unreadable. 2. Secure Storage Erase – Erases temporary files and job data by overwriting information one or three times. 3. Secure Disk Erase – Industry standard ATA Secure Erase. Overwrites all data on the HDD. 4. Secure File Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Print jobs, HP digitally signed firmware upgrades, 3rd party application loading. USB ports can be disabled.				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Diagnostic service logs can be uploaded. Print files can be printed via a USB thumb drive.				

Figure A-14 Certificate of Volatility (E57540c; 2 of 2)

RF/RFID			
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications:			
Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Specifications:			
Author Information			
Name	Title	Email	Business Unit
Casey Campbell	Technical Marketing Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Robert Mejia	System Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Date Prepared: 04/10/2018			

Figure A-15 Certificate of Volatility (E57540dn; 1 of 2)

HP Certificate of Volatility				
Model: HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP E57540dn	Part Number: E57540dn = 3GY25A		Address: HP Inc. 11311 Chinden Blvd Boise, ID 83714	
Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain volatile memory (Memory whose contents are lost when power is removed)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (SRAM, DRAM, etc): DRAM	Size: 1792MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Used for temporary storage during the processing of jobs and for applications running on the OS.	Steps to clear memory: When the printer is powered OFF, the memory is erased.
Non-Volatile Memory				
Does the device contain non-volatile memory (Memory whose contents are retained when power is removed)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): IOD EEPROM	Size: 32 KB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Store customer setting data for backup/restore	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Type (Flash, EEPROM, etc): SPI	Size: 4MB	User Modifiable: <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No	Function: BIOS	Steps to clear memory: There are no steps to clear this data.
Mass Storage				
Does the device contain mass storage memory (Hard Disk Drive, Tape Backup)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe the type, size, function, and steps to clear the memory below				
Type (HDD, Tape, etc): HDD	Size: 320GB	User Modifiable: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	Function: Stores customer data, OS, applications, digitally signed firmware images, persistent data, and temporary data used for processing and system functions	Steps to clear memory: 1.Erase and Unlock Encrypted Disk – This changes the encryption keys rendering all data unreadable. 2.Secure Storage Erase – Erases temporary files and job data by overwriting information one or three times. 3.Secure Disk Erase – Industry standard ATA Secure Erase. Overwrites all data on the HDD. 4.Secure File Erase – Erases files when jobs finish processing by overwriting them one or three times.
USB				
Does the item accept USB input and if so, for what purpose (i.e. Print Jobs, device firmware updates, scan upload)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Print jobs, HP digitally signed firmware upgrades, 3rd party application loading. USB ports can be disabled.				
Can any data other than scan upload be sent to the USB device)? <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below				
Diagnostic service logs can be uploaded. Print files can be printed via a USB thumb drive.				

Figure A-16 Certificate of Volatility (E57540dn; 2 of 2)

RF/RFID			
Does the item use RF or RFID for receive or transmit of any data including remote diagnostics. (e.g. Cellular phone, Bluetooth) <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications:			
Other Transmission Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other methods of non-wired access to transmit or receive any data whatsoever (e.g. anything other than standard hard wired TCP/IP, direct USB, or parallel connections)? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Frequency:		Bandwidth:	
Modulation:		Effective Radiate Power (ERP):	
Specifications			
Other Capabilities			
Does the device employ any other method of communications such as a Modem to transmit or receive any data whatsoever? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No If Yes please describe below:			
Purpose:			
Specifications:			
Author Information			
Name	Title	Email	Business Unit
Casey Campbell	Technical Marketing Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Robert Mejia	System Engineer	Technical.Marketing@hp.com	IPG
Date Prepared: 4/10/2018			

Glossary of terms

802.11

802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n

802.11b/g/n can share the same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices might occasionally suffer interferences from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

AC

An electric current that reverses its direction many times a second at regular intervals. For example, the 110V line current found in a typical US electrical wall receptacle.

AC Control Module (PageWide)

The AC Control Module controls the heating elements in the airflow assembly. Functions include voltage monitoring (ensuring correct operation in a low-quality-power environment), isolation (low voltage heater control signals are isolated from the high voltage AC power for safety), AC switching (power is switched on/off to the heater), and heating element configuration (heating element configuration is changed between series and parallel for temperature predictability).

ADF

An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a device that automatically feeds an original sheet (or multiple sheets) of paper into the image scanner. The document feeder is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

Airflow System (PageWide)

The airflow system conditions the printed pages to avoid page curling due to the ink on the page. The airflow system functionally consists of a fan and heating elements. The pressurized air is blown on the page through the nozzles that are placed on the paper path of the airflow system between print and eject zone.

BOOTP

Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assigns an IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables "diskless workstation" computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD

A Charged Coupled Device (CCD) is the scanner module which enables a scan job. A CCD locking mechanism is used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when the printer is moved.

CIS

A Contact Image Sensor (CIS) scanner captures an image using the printer's optical path. Red, green, and blue LEDs sequentially illuminate a small strip of the document (often called a raster line), and the optical system captures each color in a single row of Charged Coupled Device (CCD) sensors that cover the entire page width.

Collation

Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel

The control panel is a flat, typically vertical panel or screen where the user can control and/or monitor the printer. The control panel is found on the front of the printer.

Coverage

Coverage is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. If the paper or original has complicated images or a large amount of text, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

DC

An electric current flowing in one direction only. Typically, a low voltage load current supplied to an electrical assembly.

DCC

The DC controller (DCC) controls the operation of the printer sub-systems and electrical components. The DCC sends out various signals to operate motors, solenoids, and other printer components based on the print command and image data that the host computer sends the formatter.

Default

The value or setting that is in effect when a printer is unboxed, reset, or initialized.

DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. The DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

Digital Send Software

Digital send software allows a multi-function printer (MFP) to scan and send information quickly and securely to email, network folders, other printers, and fax services.

DIMM

A Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM) is a small circuit board that holds memory. The DIMM stores all data within the printer, such as printing data and received fax data.

DPI

Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution (more visible detail in the image and a larger file size).

Duplex

A mechanism that automatically turns over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a duplex unit can print on both sides of the paper during one print cycle.

Duty Cycle

Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally, the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period.

For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month the printer limit is 2,400 pages a day (assuming 20 working days/month).

Dynamic Security

Dynamic Security is a toner cartridge design and process for authenticating genuine HP supplies. HP printers use toner cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip, or modified chip, or non-HP circuitry might not work (now or in the future).

e-Duplex

Single-pass electronic duplex (e-Duplex) printer use two separate scan modules to scan the front-side and back-side of an e-duplex copy job page in a single pass through the document feeder.

EMC

EMC is a measure of a device's ability to operate as intended in its shared operating environment while, at the same time, not affecting the ability of other equipment within the same environment to operate as intended.

EMI

EMI is the electromagnetic energy which affects the functioning of an electronic device. Electronic devices (like printers) are a source of EMI. Because it is rare for electronics to operate in isolation, products are generally engineered to function in the presence of some amount of EMI.

eMMC

An embedded Multi-Media Card is a compact memory device consisting of NAND flash memory and a simple storage controller.

Emulation

Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior. This is different from simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

EPS

Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) is a PostScript (PS) code file which is used for storing font and vector graphic image information.

ESD

An electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a sudden flow of electricity between two electrically charged objects caused by contact, an electrical short, or dielectric breakdown. Discharge of built up static electricity.

Ethernet

Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. Ethernet has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to present.

Ferrite

A ferrite is used to reduce the amount of radio frequency noise (or interference) in a wire or cable. A ferrite enables proper EMC/EMI performance for regulatory purposes.

FFC

Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) are designed for Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA) to PCA connections (for example, connecting a fax PCA to the formatter).

FIH

A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) is a port that enables HP multifunction printers (MFPs) to use third-party devices to extend the capabilities of the MFP.

Firmware

The formatter stores the printer firmware. A remote firmware upgrade process is used to overwrite and upgrade the firmware.

Flash memory

Flash memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

Flow integrated scanner assembly

A printer scanner assembly that includes a slide-out external physical keyboard.

Formatter (LaserJet)

The formatter controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement and timing with the DC controller PCA, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

FTP

FTP stands for File Transfer Protocol. FTP is a protocol designed for transferring files over the Internet. Files stored on an FTP server can be accessed using an FTP client, such as a web browser, FTP software program, or a command line interface.

Fuser Unit

The fuser unit is part of a laser printer that adheres the toner onto the printed page. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to make sure that the toner stays on the paper permanently (which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer).

Gateway

A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. A gateway is used to connect two different computer networks, especially a connection to the Internet.

Grayscale

Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of a color image printed in monochrome. Colors are represented by a range of gray shades from white to black.

Halftone

Halftone is a way of reproducing a photograph or other image in which the various tones of gray or color are produced by variously sized dots of ink or toner. Halftone simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

HDD

A Hard-Disk Drive (HDD) (commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk) is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

IEEE

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

Image scanner

The image scanner (or Sub Scanner Assembly) contains the components to digitally scan an original source document. The image scanner is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

IP address

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that a device uses in order to identify and communicate with other devices on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM

The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a method of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete in one minute.

IPP

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing and managing print jobs, media size, resolution, etc. IPP can be used locally, or over the internet to reach hundreds of printers. IPP also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a capable and secure printing solution.

ISA

The Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA) includes the document feeder and image scanner.

ISO

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. It produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

JBIG

Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality. It was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used for other images.

JPEG

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a commonly used standard method of loss compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED

A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that can indicate the status of a printer (formatter LEDs) or a component in a contact image sensor (CIS) scanner that helps capture an image.

LEDM

Low end data model (LEDM) provides one consistent data representation method and defines the dynamic and capabilities tickets shared between clients and devices, as well as the access protocol, event, security, and discovery methods.

LPDC

Late point differentiation configuration (LPDC) allows the channel partner to configure the speed to the printer depending on the customer's order. LPDC configuration is stored on the Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

LVPS - SMPS

Low Voltage Power Supplies (LVPS) and Switching Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) supply direct current (DC) voltages to various printer components and assemblies.

MAC address

Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (for example, 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is

usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by the manufacturer and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on a large network.

MEt

HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) effectively doubles the standard memory through a variety of font- and data-compression methods. MEt is available only in Printer Command Language (PCL) mode; it is not functional when printing in PostScript (PS) mode.

MFP

A Multi Function Printer (MFP) is a printer that incorporates multiple functionalities in a single physical body. For example, an MFP printer can scan, digitally send, fax, copy, and print.

MHV

Miniature High Voltage (MHV) is designed for high voltage applications of BNC connectors (DC voltage between 500 V and 5 kV).

Modem

A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MPCA (PageWide)

The MPCA integrates both formatter (LaserJet) and engine control electronics (DC controller) into a single assembly. The Main PCA (MPCA) controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

NAND

NAND is not an acronym (the term is short for **NOT AND** a Boolean operator and logic gate). NAND (flash) memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

NVRAM

Nonvolatile random access memory (NVRAM) is used to store I/O and information about the print environment configuration (stored data even when the power is turned off).

OPC

Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer. It is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape. An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface during its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately due to wear from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

Originals

The first example of something, such as a document, photograph, or text which is copied, reproduced, or translated to produce additional copies. The original itself is not copied or derived from something else.

PCA

Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA). Once the printed circuit board (PCB) is complete, electronic components must be assembled to form a functional printed circuit assembly or PCA.

PCL

Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol. PCL has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early Inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printers and laser printers.

PDF

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems. A PDF represents two dimension documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PJL

Printer job language (PJL) is an integral part of printer configuration, in addition to the standard PCL and PostScript (PS). With standard cabling, the printer can use PJL to perform a variety of functions like dynamic I/O switching, context-sensitive switching, and isolation of print environment settings from one print job to the next.

PML

Printer management language (PML) allows remote configuration of the printer and status read-back from the printer through the I/O ports.

PostScript (PS)

PostScript (PS) is a Page Description Language (PDL) and programming language used primarily in electronic and desktop publishing. PostScript is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

PPM

Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Print Media

Media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, scanner, fax, or copier.

Printer Driver

A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

Printhead (PageWide)

The printhead converts the digital firing instructions from the printer electronics into properly formed and timed microscopic drops of the four ink colors.

Printhead Wiper (PageWide)

The printhead wiper system keeps the printhead nozzles firing correctly throughout the life of the printer as it performs the wiping and capping functions. The wiping function cleans the nozzles of ink residue and particulates. The capping function keeps the nozzles moist during storage and when the printer is idle.

Protocol

A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

RAM

Random Access Memory (RAM) is the printer memory device where the data in current use is kept so it can be quickly retrieved by the device's processor. This memory is an important factor in avoiding errors and printing documents properly. Printer memory is used to store, and process print jobs as they are sent to the printer from a computer. After printing, the job is cleared from the memory to make room for more print jobs. Printer memory is directly linked to two print characteristics: speed and print quality. More memory allows you to print faster and print larger, high-quality graphics.

REDI sensor

An optical reflective edge detection interrupter (REDI) sensor. Usually used in conjunction with mirrors to sense the presence or absence of paper in the paper path. These sensors are carefully aligned and calibrated at the factory, so care must be taken when servicing these sensors.

Resolution

The sharpness of an image is measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the DPI, the greater the resolution.

SCB

The Scanner Control Board (SCB) controls the functions of the image scanner components in the Sub Scanner Assembly (SSA).

Service fluid and aerosol management systems (PageWide)

There are two types of service fluid, shipping fluid and ink. The service fluid management system is contained entirely within the duplex module. Service fluid is discharged as droplets from the printhead, and then collected in a container inside the duplex module. Some of the droplets are called aerosol because they are lighter than air. Aerosol can float inside the printer and collect on the lens of optical sensors, producing false failures. The aerosol management system transports the aerosol and collects it in a safe place. Aerosol management consists of an aerosol fan, mounted on the rear wall of the air flow assembly, which creates air flow that pulls the aerosol through the holes in the platen and into the aerosol filter inside the duplex module.

SFP

A single-function printer only processes print jobs sent from a host computer or from an USB port on the printer.

SMB

Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. SMB also provides an authenticated inter-process communication mechanism.

SMTP

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for email transmissions across the internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipient of a message is specified, and the message text is transferred. It is a client server protocol where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SODIMM

Small outline dual in-line memory module (SODIMM) is a thin profile memory storage device (a smaller alternative to a standard DIMM device).

SSA

The Sub-Scanner Assembly is the image scanner component of the Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA, which includes the document feeder and the image scanner).

Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP

The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP) are the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the internet and most commercial networks run.

TIFF

Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bit mapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images use tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge

A bottle or container that holds toner, which is used in a machine like a printer. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers. The toner forms the text and images on printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind the fibers in the paper.

TPM

The HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a security accessory for printers. The TPM strengthens protection of encrypted credentials and data stored on your printer. Certificate private keys are both generated by and protected by the TPM. Once installed, the printer and the TPM are sealed, and the printer owns the TPM. The TPM may not be moved to another device without losing its ownership from the original printer. Installing a TPM accessory might necessitate a firmware upgrade. The TPM prevents the printer from starting if the TPM is missing. If the TPM is removed from the printer, a control-panel error message appears indicating that the TPM is missing.



NOTE: The TPM is not a service part for some printer models. Check the printer service manual to determine if the TPM is a replaceable service part.

TWAIN

An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN compliant scanner with TWAIN-compliant software, a scan can be initiated from the program. TWAIN is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.

URL

Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use. The second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB

Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Walk-up USB

Some printers support direct printing from a USB flash drive (the walk-up USB port is usually near the control panel).

Watermark

A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282. Watermarks have been used by paper makers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

XPS

XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format developed by Microsoft. This has benefits for portable document and electronic documents. It is an XML-based specification based on a new print path and vector-based, device-independent document format.

ZIF Connector

Zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors use a mechanical locking method to secure Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) to a Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA).

Index

Symbols/Numerics

- 10/100/1000 functions
 - theory of operations 81
- 550-sheet paper feeder covers
 - parts 1948
- 550-sheet paper feeder main body
 - parts 1949
- 550-sheet trays
 - jams 302, 321
 - jams MFP 311
 - jams SFP 296

A

- accessories 375, 1920
 - formatter 31
- accessories, input
 - tray 3-5 132
- accessories, toner part numbers 375, 1920
- accessories)
 - remove and replace 1871
- accessory
 - dual inline memory module 31
 - embedded Multi-Media Controller 31
 - hard-disk drive 31
 - HP Internal USB Ports 31
 - HP Trusted Platform Module 31
 - part numbers 31
- acoustic specifications 26
- assemblies 550-sheet paper feeder
 - remove and replace 1763
- assemblies base printer, remove and replace 772
- assembly locations 381
- authorized service providers,
 - parts 374, 1919
- auto on / auto off mode
 - setup and operation 75
- automatic cleaning page intervals
 - set up 41

B

- backup error
 - 32.WX.YZ error 295
 - reset error 295
 - restore error 295
- Backup/Restore (Maintenance) menu
 - control-panel menu 255
- base printer
 - configuration 7
 - information 4
 - specifications 10
- basic printer operation 71
- bin, output
 - locating MFP 6, 382
 - locating SFP 4, 381
- blank pages
 - troubleshooting 366
- block diagram
 - high-voltage power supply 91
 - low-voltage power supply 88
- Bonjour
 - identifying 167
- browser requirements
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167

C

- cables
 - USB, troubleshooting 366
- calibrate the printer
 - print quality 341, 342
- Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 254
- Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control-panel menu 255
- calibration, color
 - theory 112, 116
- cartridge
 - life detection 109
 - memory chip 109
 - presence detection 109
 - remove 386, 1123
 - replacing 388

- toner level detection 109
- unpack 387
- cartridges, toner part numbers 375, 1920
- caution vi
- certificate of volatility 1967
- Channel partners
 - WISE vii, 139, 373, 379, 1918
- checklists
 - pre-troubleshooting 140, 141
- circuit base printer, diagrams 222
- circuit diagrams, block
 - high-voltage power supplies 82
- circuits
 - fuser control 93
 - high-voltage power supply 92
- clean the paper path
 - maintenance 40
- cleaning
 - page 40
 - page automatic 40
 - rollers 40
 - tray 1 rollers 41
 - tray 2-X rollers and separation pad 48, 56
- cleaning mechanism
 - ITB 115
- cleaning page 254, 255
 - automatic 40, 41
 - maintenance 40
 - print 40, 346
- cleaning, base printer 40
- clutches
 - DC controller 86
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 120
 - theory of operation 83
- cold rest
 - reset 259
- color self calibration
 - theory 112, 116
- component diagnostics
 - solve problems 198

- component test
 - solve problems 204
 - components
 - DC controller 82, 83
 - engine-control system 82
 - intermediate transfer belt (ITB) 112
 - pickup, feed, and delivery 117
 - components diagram
 - fuser control 93
 - configuration
 - base printer 7
 - printer 1
 - configuration page
 - determine installed
 - firmware 144
 - find information 225
 - solve problems 225
 - configurations, M552, M553, M554, M555, and E55040 printers 7
 - configurations, M577, M578, and E57540 printers 9
 - connection
 - NFC 81
 - wireless 81
 - connectivity and performance
 - troubleshooting 365
 - connector error
 - 65.WX.YZ error 296
 - connector locations
 - external plug and port diagrams 216
 - printed circuit assembly diagrams 211
 - control functions
 - fuser control 93
 - control panel 80
 - locating MFP 6, 382
 - locating SFP 4, 381
 - solve problems 271
 - control panel diagnostic flowcharts (M856/E85055/M776) 274
 - control panel messages 290
 - control panel, MFP system
 - diagnostics
 - solve problems 271
 - control-panel menu
 - Maintenance 254
 - control-panel menu)
 - Service (Maintenance) 257
 - USB Firmware Upgrade (Maintenance) 257
 - conventions used vi
 - cooling
 - areas and fans 82
 - fans 85
 - copy settings
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 171
 - copy-quality problems
 - light or faint copies 363
 - modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality 362
 - vertical lines, bands, or streaks 358
 - copy-quality troubleshooting 356
 - CoV
 - certificate of volatility 1967
 - covers
 - remove and replace 579
 - covers MFP
 - parts 1931
 - covers SFP
 - parts 1928
 - covers, locating SFP 5, 382
 - CPMD 290
 - cross section diagrams
 - 550-sheet paper feeder 208
 - base printer 208
 - CSR parts
 - part numbers 378, 1923
 - customer self-repair (CSR) A parts and accessories 384
 - customer self-repair (CSR) B parts and accessories 506
 - customer self-repair parts
 - part numbers 378, 1923
- D**
- DC controller
 - clutches 86
 - components 82
 - fans 82, 85
 - motors 82, 84
 - sensors 87
 - solenoids 86
 - switches 86
 - theory of operation 83
 - DC controller communication error
 - 55.WX.YZ error 296
 - DC controller firmware error
 - 70.WX.YZ error 296
 - DC motors 82, 84
 - defeating
 - interlocks 268
 - defeating interlocks
 - solve problems 188, 269
 - definitions and terms
 - glossary 1984
 - detection
 - ITB 114
 - determine problem source 140
 - developing unit
 - engagement and disengagement control 111
 - development
 - image formation 104, 105
 - development process 99
 - devices, input
 - information 27
 - diagnostics
 - component, solve problems 198
 - engine 268
 - diagrams
 - solve problems 206
 - use parts lists and diagrams 1924
 - diagrams, block
 - solve problems 206
 - diagrams, cross section 208
 - diagrams, external plug and port locations 216
 - diagrams, general circuit base printer 222
 - diagrams, major component locations 217
 - diagrams, printed circuit assembly
 - connector locations 211
 - diagrams, sensors and switches 206
 - diagrams, timing chart 221
 - digital send settings
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 171
 - digital sending error (firmware)
 - 44.WX.YZ error 295
 - dimensions, MFP printers 24
 - dimensions, SFP printers 21
 - disable cartridge check
 - solve problems 196
 - document feeder
 - jams 312
 - paper-feeding problems (MFP) 333
 - remove and replace parts 537
 - whole unit replacement 1926
 - document feeder / scanner
 - theory of operations 65
 - document feeder and scanner
 - information 1
 - specifications 2
 - document feeder error
 - 31.WX.YZ error 295

- doors
 - remove and replace 579
 - drum cleaning 99
 - image formation 107
 - duplex unit
 - motors 84
 - duplexer
 - jams MFP 311
 - jams SFP 296
 - duplexer error
 - 69.WX.YZ error 296
 - duplexing reverse and duplex feed
 - control
 - duplexing 128
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 128
 - duplexing unit
 - duplexing reverse and duplex feed
 - control 128
 - jam detection/prevention 128
 - reverse and duplex feed
 - control 128
- E**
- electrical specifications 26
 - email problems
 - get help from WISE 365, 371
 - Embedded Jetdirect error
 - 80.WX.YZ error 296
 - Embedded Web Server (EWS)
 - assigning passwords 38
 - features 167
 - features, security 35
 - network connection 167
 - engagement and disengagement
 - control
 - developing unit 111
 - engine
 - diagnostics 268
 - test page 268
 - engine error (LaserJet)
 - 46.WX.YZ error 295
 - 63.WX.YZ error 296
 - engine error (PageWide)
 - 61.WX.YZ error 296
 - engine laser/scanner system
 - laser/scanner failure
 - detection 98
 - laser/scanner safety 99
 - engine test
 - solve problems 149, 268
 - engine-control system
 - components 82
 - event log error (firmware)
 - 42.WX.YZ error 295
 - exhaust fans 82
 - exploded parts views, use parts lists
 - and diagrams 1924
 - Explorer, versions supported
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167
 - external panels
 - remove and replace 579
 - external plug and port diagrams
 - locations 216
- F**
- factory settings
 - reset 259, 261
 - failure detection
 - laser/scanner 97
 - low-voltage power supply 90
 - motors 82, 84
 - faint copies
 - copy-quality problems 363
 - fan error
 - 58.WX.YZ error 296
 - fans
 - DC controller 82, 85
 - exhaust 82
 - intake 82
 - theory of operation 83
 - type/speed 85
 - fax functions
 - theory of operations 81
 - fax problems
 - get help from WISE 365, 371
 - fax settings
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 173
 - Feed speed control
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
 - firmware
 - determine the installed
 - version 144
 - theory of operations 82
 - firmware communication error
 - 49.WX.YZ error 295
 - firmware install error
 - 99.WX.YZ error 296
 - hard disk error 296
 - remote firmware upgrade
 - error 296
 - firmware locations
 - active and repository 261
 - firmware upgrade
 - firmware version determine 144
 - firmware upgrade)
 - embedded web server 144
 - USB flash drive, control
 - panel 144
 - USB flash drive, pre-boot
 - menu 144
 - firmware, upgrade
 - downloading 144
 - firmware, version determine
 - find information 144
 - firmware, version determining 144
 - flash memory
 - theory of operations 82
 - flatbed
 - scanning and image capture
 - (MFP) 70
 - flowcharts
 - troubleshooting 140, 142
 - format disk
 - solve problems 261
 - formatter
 - locating MFP 7, 383
 - locating SFP 5, 382
 - formatter accessories 31
 - formatter control system 75
 - functions
 - low-voltage power supply 90
 - functions and failure detection
 - low-voltage power supply 88
 - fuser
 - jams 305, 324
 - fuser bias
 - high-voltage power supply 91, 93
 - fuser circuits
 - fuser control 93
 - fuser control 93
 - circuits 93
 - components diagram 93
 - control functions 93
 - fuser circuits 93
 - fuser control functions 95
 - fuser heater protection 97
 - fuser identification 93, 97
 - fuser life detection 93
 - fuser temperature control 93, 95
 - fuser unit life detection 97
 - heater protection 93
 - temperature control 93
 - fuser control functions
 - fuser control 95
 - fuser error
 - 41.WX.YZ error 295
 - laser scanner error 295

- paper path error 295
- fuser error (LaserJet)
 - 50.WX.YZ error 295
- fuser heater protection
 - fuser control 93, 97
- fuser identification
 - fuser control 93, 97
- fuser life detection
 - fuser control 93
- fuser temperature control
 - fuser control 93, 95
- fuser unit life detection
 - fuser control 97
- fuser wrapping jam detection
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 131
- fusing
 - image formation 106
- fusing process 99

G

- general configuration
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 170
- glossary
 - terms and definitions 1984

H

- hard disk partition error
 - 98.WX.YZ error 296
- hard disks
 - encrypted 38, 40
- hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning 274, 278
- high-voltage power supplies (HVPS)
 - operations 82
- high-voltage power supply 91
 - circuit block diagram 91
 - circuits 92
 - fuser bias 91, 93
 - operation 91
- home button is unresponsive 274, 277
- HP Embedded Web Server
 - copy settings 167, 168, 171
 - digital send settings 167, 168, 171
 - fax settings 167, 168, 173
 - network settings 167, 168, 175
 - print settings 167, 168, 171
 - scan settings 167, 168, 171
 - security settings 35, 36, 167, 168, 174
 - supplies 173

- HP Embedded Web Server
 - general configuration 167, 168, 170
 - HP Web Services 167, 168, 175
 - information pages 167-169
 - other links list 167, 168, 171
 - troubleshooting tools 167, 168, 173
- HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)
 - features 167
 - features, security 35
 - network connection 167
- HP internal users
 - WISE vii, 139, 373, 379, 1918
- HP Web Services
 - enabling 167, 168, 175
- HVPS (high-voltage power supplies)
 - operations 82

I

- I/O functions
 - theory of operations 81
- image capture system
 - scanning (MFP6 only) 70
- image defects, repetitive ruler 335
- image formation development
 - theory of operation 104
- image formation drum cleaning
 - theory of operation 107
- image formation fusing
 - theory of operation 106
- image formation ITB cleaning
 - theory of operation 107
- image formation laser-beam exposure
 - theory of operation 104
- image formation pre-exposure
 - theory of operation 103
- image formation primary charging
 - theory of operation 103
- image formation primary transfer
 - theory of operation 105
- image formation secondary transfer
 - theory of operation 105
- image formation separation
 - theory of operation 106
- image quality
 - check toner-cartridge status 345
 - tray 1 rollers, clean 41
 - tray 2-X rollers and separation pad, clean 48, 56
- image-formation process
 - development process 99
 - drum cleaning 99

- fusing process 99
 - laser-beam exposure 99
 - primary charging 99
 - primary transfer process 99
 - secondary transfer process 99
 - separation process 99
- image-quality troubleshooting 334
 - print-quality assessment page, print 339
 - print-quality troubleshooting pages, print 336
- information
 - document feeder and scanner 1
 - input devices 27
 - printer 1
 - printer base 4
- information pages
 - configuration page 225
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167-169
 - Jetdirect page 225
- initial rotation period 71, 73
- input accessory error
 - 67.WX.YZ error 296
- input devices
 - information 27
 - remove and replace, 550-sheet paper feeder 1763
- input/output error
 - 40.WX.YZ error 295
- input/output functions
 - theory of operations 81
- installation
 - printer 28
- installation, base printer 31
- installation, document feeder / scanner 28
- installation, input devices 56
- intake fans 82
- interface ports
 - locating MFP 7, 383
 - locating SFP 5, 382
- interlocks
 - defeating 268
- intermediate transfer belt (ITB)
 - components 112
 - operations 112
- internal assemblies (1 of 5), parts 1934
- internal assemblies (2 of 5), parts 1937
- internal assemblies (3 of 5), parts 1939
- internal assemblies (4 of 5), parts 1942

- internal assemblies (5 of 5), parts 1946
- internal assemblies 550-sheet paper feeder 1763
- internal assemblies base printer 772
- internal diagnostics error
 - 90.WX.YZ error 296
 - video display error 296
- internal parts 550-sheet paper feeder remove and replace 1763
- internal parts base printer, remove and replace 772
- internal test and information pages solve problems 225
- Internet Explorer, versions supported HP Embedded Web Server 167
- IP Security 38, 39
- IPsec 38, 39
- ITB
 - cleaning mechanism 115
 - detection 114
 - primary-transfer roller engagement and disengagement control 113
- ITB (intermediate transfer belt) operation 112
- ITB cleaning image formation 107

J

- jam detection
 - tray 3-5 132, 136
- jam detection/prevention
 - duplexing unit 128
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 129
- jam error (LaserJet) 13.WX.YZ error 295
- jam error (PageWide) 13.WX.YZ error 295
- jams
 - 550-sheet trays 302, 321
 - 550-sheet trays MFP 311
 - 550-sheet trays SFP 296
 - auto-navigation 297, 312
 - auto-navigation MFP 311
 - auto-navigation SFP 296
 - causes of 297, 312
 - causes of MFP 311
 - causes of SFP 296
 - document feeder 312
 - duplexer MFP 311
 - duplexer SFP 296

- fuser 305, 324
- fuser wrapping jam detection 131
- locations (MFP) 311
- locations (SFP) 297
- locations MFP 311
- locations SFP 296
- lower-right door 302, 321
- output bin 310, 329
- output bin MFP 311
- output bin SFP 296
- right door 305, 324
- Tray 1 298, 315
- Tray 1 MFP 311
- Tray 1 SFP 296
- Tray 2 299, 317
- Tray 2 MFP 311
- Tray 2 SFP 296
- tray 3-5 132, 136
- Jetdirect page solve problems 225
- JetIntelligence
 - toner cartridge 37, 110
- job accounting error (firmware) 48.WX.YZ error 295
- job management error (firmware) 295
- job pipeline error (firmware) 295
- job parser error (firmware) 47.WX.YZ error 295
- printer calibration error 295

K

- keyboard 80
- keypad
 - locating SFP 4, 381

L

- laser scanner error (LaserJet)
 - 51.WX.YZ error 296
 - 52.WX.YZ error 296
- laser-beam exposure 99
- image formation 104
- laser/scanner
 - failure detection 97
 - operations 97
 - safety 97
- laser/scanner failure detection
 - engine laser/scanner system 98
- laser/scanner safety
 - engine laser/scanner system 99
- last rotation period 71, 73
- latent image formation 99

- life detection
 - toner cartridge 110
- light copies
 - copy-quality problems 363
- lines, bands, streaks
 - copy-quality problems 358
- local area network (LAN)
 - locating MFP 7, 383
- lock
 - formatter 38, 40
- low-voltage power supply 88
 - circuit block diagram 88
 - failure detection 90
 - functions 90
 - functions and failure detection 88
 - operation 88
 - over-current/over-voltage protection 88, 90
 - sleep mode operation 88
 - voltage descriptions 89
- lower-right door
 - jams 302, 321

M

- maintenance
 - clean the paper path 40
 - cleaning page 40
 - printer 28
- maintenance, base printer 31
- maintenance, document feeder / scanner 28
- maintenance, input devices 56
- major component diagrams
 - locations 217
- major component locations
 - diagrams 217
- manual print modes
 - print quality 342
- manual sensor test
 - solve problems 201
- memory
 - toner cartridge 109
- Memory Enhancement technology
 - theory of operations 82
- Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) 75
- memory error
 - 82.WX.YZ error 296
 - EMMC error 296
 - hard disk error 296
- memory functions
 - theory of operations 82

- memory, E55040
 - included 13
- memory, E57540
 - included 19
- memory, M552/M553
 - included 10
- memory, M554/M555
 - included 11
- memory, M577
 - included 14
- memory, M578
 - included 16
- menu
 - General menu 231
 - Manage Supplies menu 247
 - Networking menu 249
 - Print menu 177, 236
 - Settings menu
 - Print menu 177, 236
 - General menu 231
 - Print menu 177, 236
 - Manage Supplies menu 247
 - Networking menu 249
 - Supplies menu 253
 - Support Tools menu
 - Maintenance menu
 - Troubleshooting menu 257
 - Trays menu 254
 - Troubleshooting menu 257
- menu, control panel
 - Backup/Restore (Maintenance) menu 255
 - Backup/Restore menu 254
 - Calibrate/Cleaning menu 254, 255
 - Reports menu 229
 - Service (Maintenance) menu 257
 - Service menu 254
 - Settings menu 230
 - Support Tools menu 254
 - USB Firmware Upgrade (Maintenance) menu 257
 - USB Firmware Upgrade menu 254
- menus control panel, control panel
 - Calibrate/Cleaning) 254
- menus, control panel
 - Calibrate/Cleaning 255
- motor control
 - tray 3-5 132, 134
- motor error (LaserJet)
 - 59.WX.YZ error 296
- motors
 - DC controller 82, 84
 - failure detection 82, 84
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system 117
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 120
 - stepping 82, 84
 - theory of operation 83
- movement of paper through printer
 - See pickup, feed, and delivery
- multiple feed prevention
 - Tray 3-5 135
- N**
 - Near Field Communication error
 - 81.WX.YZ error 296
 - Bluetooth error 296
 - external I/O card error 296
 - internal EIO error 296
 - wireless error 296
 - Netscape Navigator, versions supported
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167
 - network port
 - locating SFP 5, 382
 - network settings
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 175
 - networks, E55040
 - supported 13
 - networks, E57540
 - supported 19
 - networks, M552/M553
 - supported 10
 - networks, M554/M555
 - supported 11
 - networks, M577
 - supported 14
 - networks, M578
 - supported 16
 - NFC connection 81
 - no control panel sound 274, 276
 - note vi
 - NVRAM
 - theory of operations 82
- O**
 - on/off button
 - locating MFP 6, 382
 - locating SFP 4, 381
 - operating-environment range
 - printer 27
 - operation
 - high-voltage power supply 91
 - low-voltage power supply 88
 - Sleep delay 75
 - Sleep mode 75
 - operation sequence 71, 73
 - operations
 - laser/scanner 97
 - toner cartridge memory 109
 - orderable parts 375, 1920
 - other links list
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 171
 - output accessory error
 - 66.WX.YZ error 296
 - output bin
 - clear jams 310, 329
 - clear jams MFP 311
 - clear jams SFP 296
 - locating MFP 6, 382
 - locating SFP 4, 381
 - over-current/over-voltage protection
 - low-voltage power supply 88, 90
 - OXPd/Web kit error
 - 45.WX.YZ error 295
- P**
 - page error
 - 21.WX.YZ error 295
 - pages
 - blank 366
 - not printing 366
 - printing slowly 366
 - pages per minute, E55040 13
 - pages per minute, E57540 19
 - pages per minute, M552/M553 10
 - pages per minute, M554/M555 11
 - pages per minute, M577 14
 - pages per minute, M578 16
 - panels, external
 - remove and replace 579
 - paper
 - jams 297, 312
 - jams MFP 311
 - jams SFP 296
 - selecting 347
 - paper handling
 - solve problems 296
 - paper handling error (LaserJet)
 - 56.WX.YZ error 296
 - paper jams
 - 550-sheet trays 302, 321
 - 550-sheet trays MFP 311
 - 550-sheet trays SFP 296
 - document feeder 312
 - duplexer MFP 311
 - duplexer SFP 296

- fuser 305, 324
- locations (MFP) 311
- locations (SFP) 297
- locations MFP 311
- locations SFP 296
- lower-right door 302, 321
- output bin 310, 329
- output bin MFP 311
- output bin SFP 296
- right door 305, 324
- Tray 1 298, 315
- Tray 1 MFP 311
- Tray 1 SFP 296
- Tray 2 299, 317
- Tray 2 MFP 311
- Tray 2 SFP 296
- paper movement
 - duplexing unit 128
 - operation 117
- paper path
 - printer 117
- paper path sensor test
 - solve problems 200
- paper path test
 - solve problems 198
- paper pickup
 - tray 3-5 132
- part numbers
 - customer self-repair parts 378, 1923
 - formatter accessories 31
 - supplies 31
- partial clean (disk)
 - solve problems 261
- parts 374, 1919
 - 550-sheet paper feeder
 - covers 1948
 - 550-sheet paper feeder main
 - body 1949
 - covers MFP 1931
 - covers SFP 1928
 - document feeder and scanner
 - whole units 1926
 - use parts lists and
 - diagrams 1924
- parts and diagrams, using 1924
- parts internal 550-sheet paper feeder
 - remove and replace 1763
- parts internal base printer, remove
 - and replace 772
- parts list and diagrams, how to
 - use 1924
- parts, internal assemblies (1 of
 - 5) 1934
- parts, internal assemblies (2 of
 - 5) 1937
- parts, internal assemblies (3 of
 - 5) 1939
- parts, internal assemblies (4 of
 - 5) 1942
- parts, internal assemblies (5 of
 - 5) 1946
- parts, order by authorized service
 - providers 374, 1919
- parts, orderable 375, 1920
- parts, ordering 374, 1919
- performance and connectivity
 - troubleshooting 365
- periods of the operation
 - sequence 71, 73
- pickup and feed functions, other
 - tray 3-5 132
- pickup, feed, and delivery
 - components 117
 - duplexing unit 128
 - overview 117
- pickup, feed, and delivery system
 - fuser wrapping jam
 - detection 131
 - jam detection/prevention 129
- PJL (printer job language) 75, 79
- PML (printer management
 - language) 75, 79
- ports
 - locating MFP 7, 383
- power
 - consumption 26
- power connection
 - locating MFP 7, 383
 - locating SFP 5, 382
- power management
 - E55040/E57540 78
 - M552/M553/M554/M555/
 - M577 79
 - M552/M553/M554/M555/M577/
 - M578/E55040/E57540 76
 - M577/M578/E55040/
 - E57540 77
 - theory of operation 76
- power switch
 - locating MFP 6, 382
 - locating SFP 4, 381
- pre-boot menu options 149
- pre-exposure
 - image formation 103
- pre-troubleshooting checklist 140, 141
- primary charging
 - image formation 103
- primary charging process 99
- primary-transfer roller engagement
 - and disengagement control
 - ITB 113
- print a cleaning page 40, 346
- print a print-quality assessment
 - page 339
- print a print-quality troubleshooting
 - pages 336
- print bar error (PageWide)
 - 62.WX.YZ error 296
- print quality
 - manual print modes 342
- print settings
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 171
- print-quality assessment page
 - print 339
- print-quality troubleshooting 335
- print-quality troubleshooting pages
 - print 336
- print/stop test
 - solve problems 197, 199
- printed circuit assembly diagrams
 - connector locations 211
- printer
 - information, configuration, and
 - specifications 1
 - installation and maintenance 28
 - operating-environment
 - range 27
 - resets 259
 - space requirements 26
- printer information, configuration,
 - and specifications
 - document feeder and scanner
 - specifications 2
 - document feeder and scanner
 - views 1
- printer installation and maintenance
 - base printer 31
 - cleaning 40
 - document feeder / scanner 28
 - input devices 56
 - security 33
- printer job language (PJL) 75, 79
- printer management language
 - (PML) 75, 79
- printer memory error
 - 20.WX.YZ error 295
- printer resets
 - solve problems 259
- printer settings
 - copy-quality problems 362

- printer, base
 - configuration 7
 - information 4
 - specifications 10
- printing
 - period in operation sequence 71, 73
 - troubleshooting 366
- Process Cleaning Page 254, 255
- product number
 - locating SFP 5, 382
 - location MFP 7, 383

R

- RAM
 - theory of operations 82
- real-time clock error
 - 11.WX.YZ error 295
- rear door
 - locating MFP 7, 383
- removal and replacement 373
- remove
 - toner cartridges 386, 1123
 - tray 1 pickup roller 42, 772
- remove and replace
 - 550-sheet paper feeder, internal parts and assemblies 1763
 - accessories 1871
 - external panels, covers, and doors 579
- remove and replace parts
 - document feeder / scanner 537
- remove and replace, internal parts and assemblies base printer 772
- repetitive image defect ruler 335
- replacement parts
 - customer self-repair parts 378, 1923
- replacing
 - toner cartridges 388
- Reports menu
 - control-panel menu 229
- resets
 - printer 259
- reverse and duplex feed control
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, duplexing unit 128
- revision history iii
- right door
 - jams 305, 324
- roller, tray 1 pickup
 - remove 42, 772
- rollers
 - cleaning 40

S

- safety
 - laser/scanner 97
- scan or copy quality improvement
 - copy-quality problems 362
- scan settings
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 171
- scanner
 - remove and replace parts 537
- scanner and document feeder
 - information 1
 - specifications 2
- scanner error
 - 30.WX.YZ error 295
- scanner tests (MFP)
 - solve problems 194
 - troubleshooting 194
- scanner, image
 - whole unit replacement part 1926
- scanner/document feeder
 - theory of operations 65
- scanning
 - image capture (MFP) 70
- seal, toner cartridge
 - theory of operation 109
- secondary transfer
 - image formation 105
- secondary transfer processes 99
- security
 - dynamic security 38, 111
 - Embedded Web Server (EWS) 35
 - encrypted hard disk 38, 40
 - HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) 35
- security error
 - 33.WX.YZ error 295
- security settings
 - HP Embedded Web Server 35, 36, 167, 168, 174
- security, base printer 33
- sensor error
 - 54.WX.YZ error 296
 - 58.WX.YZ error 296
- sensor test, manual
 - solve problems 201
- sensor test, paper path
 - solve problems 200
- sensor test, tray/bin manual
 - solve problems 203
- sensors
 - DC controller 87

- pickup, feed, and delivery
 - system 117
- pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 118
- theory of operation 83
- sensors and switches diagrams
 - 550-sheet paper feeder 206
 - base printer 206
 - document feeder 206
- separation
 - image formation 106
- separation process 99
- serial number
 - locating MFP 7, 383
 - locating SFP 5, 382
- Service (Maintenance) menu
 - control-panel menu 257
- service and support
 - WISE vii, 139, 373, 379, 1918
- service ID
 - restore 259
- Settings menu
 - control-panel menu 230
- sleep delay
 - operation 75
- sleep mode
 - low-voltage power supply 88
 - operation 75
- sleep settings 75
- solenoids
 - DC controller 86
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system 117
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 120
 - theory of operation 83
- solve connectivity problems 369
- solve performance problems 366
 - factors affecting print performance 366
 - print speeds 368
 - printer does not print 368
 - printer prints slowly 369
- solve problems
 - circuit diagrams 222
 - component test 204
 - configuration page 225
 - control panel 271
 - control panel messages 290
 - copy-quality
 - troubleshooting 356
 - CPMD 290
 - cross section diagrams 208
 - defeating interlocks 188, 269
 - diagrams 206

- diagrams, block 206
- disable cartridge check 196
- engine test 149, 268
- external plug and port location
 - diagrams 216
- firmware upgrade 144
- firmware, determine version 144
- format disk and partial clean
 - functions 261
- image-quality
 - troubleshooting 334
- individual component
 - diagnostics 198
- internal test and information
 - pages 225
- LED diagnostics 190
- major component locations
 - diagrams 217
- manual sensor test 201
- output is curled or wrinkled 296, 331
- paper does not feed
 - automatically 296, 333
- paper does not feed from Tray 2-X 296, 331
- paper handling 296
- paper path sensor test 200
- paper path test 198
- performance and connectivity
 - troubleshooting 365
- print-quality
 - troubleshooting 335
- print/stop test 197, 199
- printed circuit assembly connector
 - location diagrams 211
- printer does not pick up
 - paper 296
- printer does not pick up paper or misfeeds 296
- printer feeds incorrect page
 - size 296, 330
- printer picks up multiple sheets of paper 296
- printer pulls from incorrect
 - tray 296, 330
- printer resets 259
- printer will not duplex or duplexes
 - incorrectly 296, 331
- scanner tests (MFP) 194
- sensors and switches
 - diagrams 206
- system diagnostics, MFP control
 - panel 271
- timing chart diagrams 221
- tray/bin manual sensor test 203
- troubleshooting tools 149
- solving
 - direct-connect problems 369
- space requirements
 - printer 26
- specifications
 - base printer 10
 - document feeder and scanner 2
 - electrical and acoustic 26
 - printer 1
- specifications, document feeder and scanner
 - printer information, configuration, and specifications 2
- standby period 71, 73
- stepping motors 82, 84
- supplies 375, 1920
 - HP Embedded Web Server 173
 - remove toner cartridges 386, 1123
 - replacing toner cartridges 388
 - toner cartridges 31
 - unpack toner cartridges 387
- supplies error (LaserJet)
 - 10.WX.YZ error 295
- supplies error (PageWide)
 - 17.WX.YZ error 295
- Support Tools menu
 - control-panel menu 254
- switches
 - DC controller 86
 - pickup, feed, and delivery
 - system 117
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system,
 - engine 118
 - theory of operation 83
- system error (LaserJet)
 - 62.WX.YZ error 296
- system requirements
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167

T

- terms and definitions
 - glossary 1984
- tests
 - disable cartridge check 268
 - engine 268
- theory of operation 65
 - clutches 83
 - DC controller 83
 - engagement and disengagement
 - control, developing unit 111
 - fans 83
- image formation
 - development 104
- image formation drum
 - cleaning 107
- image formation fusing 106
- image formation ITB
 - cleaning 107
- image formation laser-beam
 - exposure 104
- image formation pre-exposure 103
- image formation primary
 - charging 103
- image formation primary
 - transfer 105
- image formation secondary
 - transfer 105
- image formation separation 106
- ITB cleaning mechanism 115
- ITB unit detection 114
- JetIntelligence, toner
 - cartridge 37, 110
- life detection, toner
 - cartridge 110
- motors 83
- primary-transfer roller
 - engagement and
 - disengagement control,
 - ITB 113
- seal, toner cartridge 109
- sensors 83
- solenoids 83
- switches 83
- toner cartridges 108
- toner level, toner cartridge 110
- Tray 3-5 paper path 133
- theory of operations
 - 10/100/1000 functions 81
 - ADF / scanner 65
 - base printer 71
 - document feeder / scanner 65
 - fax functions 81
 - firmware 82
 - flash memory 82
 - I/O functions 81
 - input devices 132
 - input/output functions 81
 - Memory Enhancement
 - technology 82
 - memory functions 82
 - NVRAM 82
 - printer, base 71
 - RAM 82
 - scanner / document feeder 65
 - USB functions 81

- USB hosts functions 81
- wireless functions 81
- timing chart, diagrams 221
- tip vi
- toner
 - image formation, use during 99
- toner cartridge
 - diagnostic test 268
 - JetIntelligence 37, 110
 - life detection 109, 110
 - memory chip 109
 - presence detection 109
 - seal 109
 - toner level detection 109, 110
- toner cartridges
 - remove 386, 1123
 - replacing 388
 - supplies 31
 - theory of operation 108
 - unpack 387
- toner cartridges, part numbers 375, 1920
- toner level
 - toner cartridge 110
- toner-collection-unit door
 - locating MFP 7, 383
 - locating SFP 5, 382
- touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 274
- touchscreen control panel 80
- touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 274, 275
- transfer processes 99
- transfer unit
 - operation 112
- tray
 - location assemblies, 550-sheet paper feeder 27
- Tray 1
 - jams 298, 315
 - jams MFP 311
 - jams SFP 296
- Tray 1 paper pickup and feed
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- tray 1 pickup roller
 - remove 42, 772
- tray 1 rollers
 - cleaning 41
- Tray 1)
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2
 - jams 299, 317
 - jams MFP 311
- jams SFP 296
- pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2 lift operation
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2 media type detection
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2 multiple-feed prevention
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2 paper pickup
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2 paper presence detection
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2 presence detection
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- Tray 2 skew feed prevention
 - pickup, feed, and delivery system, engine 122
- tray 2-X rollers and separation pad
 - cleaning 48, 56
- tray 3-5
 - input accessories 132
 - motor control 132, 134
 - paper pickup 132
- Tray 3-5
 - electrical components 134
 - multiple feed prevention 135
 - paper path 133
 - tray lift operation 135
 - tray presence detection 135
- Tray 3-5 paper path
 - theory of operation 133
- tray lift operation
 - Tray 3-5 135
- tray motor error (LaserJet)
 - 60.WX.YZ error 296
- tray presence detection
 - Tray 3-5 135
- tray/bin manual sensor test
 - solve problems 203
- trays
 - locating MFP 6, 382
 - locating SFP 4, 381
- trays, E55040
 - capacity 13
 - included 13
- trays, E57540
 - capacity 19
 - included 19
- trays, M552/M553
 - capacity 10
 - included 10
- trays, M554/M555
 - capacity 11
 - included 11
- trays, M577
 - capacity 14
 - included 14
- trays, M578
 - capacity 16
 - included 16
- troubleshooting
 - blank pages 366
 - check toner-cartridge status 345
 - checklist 140, 141
 - component test 204
 - control panel 271
 - defeating interlocks 188, 269
 - direct-connect problems 369
 - disable cartridge check 196
 - engine test 149, 268
 - flowchart 140, 142
 - format disk and partial clean functions 261
 - jams 297, 312
 - jams MFP 311
 - jams SFP 296
 - LED diagnostics 190
 - manual sensor test 201
 - network problems 369
 - pages not printing 366
 - pages printing slowly 366
 - paper path sensor test 200
 - paper path test 198
 - print/stop test 197, 199
 - printer resets 259
 - scanner tests (MFP) 194
 - system diagnostics, MFP control panel 271
 - tray/bin manual sensor test 203
 - USB cables 366
 - wired network 369
- troubleshooting tools
 - control panel messages 290
 - copy-quality troubleshooting 356
 - CPMD 290
 - determine the problem source 140
 - diagrams 206
 - diagrams, block 206
 - firmware upgrade 144
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167, 168, 173

- image-quality
 - troubleshooting 334
- individual component
 - diagnostics 198
- performance and connectivity
 - troubleshooting 365
- print-quality
 - troubleshooting 335
- solve problems 149

- HP internal users and Channel partners vii, 139, 373, 379, 1918

U

- unpack
 - toner cartridges 387
- upgrade, product firmware 144
- USB Firmware Upgrade (Maintenance)
 - menu
 - control-panel menu 257
- USB functions
 - theory of operations 81
- USB hosts functions
 - theory of operations 81
- USB port
 - troubleshooting 366

V

- vertical lines, bands, or streaks
 - copy-quality problems 358
- views, document feeder and scanner
 - printer information, configuration, and specifications 1
- voltage descriptions
 - low-voltage power supply 89

W

- waiting period 71, 73
- warning vi
- web browser requirements
 - HP Embedded Web Server 167
- Web-based Interactive Search Engine (WISE)
 - HP internal users and Channel partners vii, 139, 373, 379, 1918
- weight, MFP printers 24
- weight, SFP printers 21
- wireless connection 81
- wireless functions
 - theory of operations 81
- WISE
 - email problems 365, 371
 - fax problems 365, 371